HP Color LaserJet MFP E87640, E87650, E87660

Service Manual

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2017 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 04/2017

Trademark Credits

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

Conventions used in this guide

TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Precautions 1
Safety warning 2
Caution for safety 3
Toxic material 3
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 3
Handling precautions 5
Removal and Replacement precautions 5
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 5
ESD precautions 7

2 Product specifications and description 9
Product overview 10
Specifications 11
General specifications 11
Print specifications 13
Scan specifications 16
Copy specifications 17
Supplies 19
Maintenance parts 20
Paper handling specifications 23
Network and software specifications 29
Network interface 29
Software and solutions 30
Options 32
Optional configurations 32
Options list 33
Option specifications 34
Machine external view 38
Front view 38
Rear view 39
Inner view 40
Feeding system 41

Feeding system overview 41
Main components and functions 42
Rollers 42
Sensor, motor, and solenoid 44
Cassette 46
Pickup unit 47
Registration unit 47
MP feeder assembly 48
Fuser unit 50
Fuser unit overview 50
Fuser unit drive 51
Fuser unit temperature control 51
Loop control 52
Image creation 54
Printing process overview 54
Imaging unit 55
Imaging unit overview 55
Drum drive 55
Developer unit 56
Toner cartridge 58
Intermediate transfer belt unit 59
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit overview 59
Transfer belt drive 59
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaning 60
Toner reservoir unit 61
Main function 61
Working mechanism 61
Troubleshooting 62
Laser scanner assembly 63
Laser scanner assembly overview 63
Laser scanning optical path 63
Laser synchronizing detectors 64
Automatic CPR adjustment 65
Drive system 69
Pickup and cassette lift drive 69
Feed drive 70
Registration drive 71
Fuser release/output drive 72
Drive motors 72
Main drive unit motors 74
Toner supply/reservoir drive 75

Engage transfer roller drive 76
TCU drive 76
Flatbed Scanner System 77
Flatbed scanner system overview 77
Scanning system components 79
Caution for moving the scanner 85
Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX) 87
Flow ADF overview 87
Sensors 88
Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM) 89
Flow ADF drive system 89
Flow ADF document lifting drive system 90
Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System 90
Flow ADF specification 91
Flow ADF Registration 91
Flow ADF Scanning Position 92
Mixed Size Original (MSO) 92
Dual sensor cleaning method 93
Flow ADF z bundles (GX) 94
Hardware configuration 95
Main controller 98
Main controller for previous model 99
Main controller 102
Master system operation key (MSOK) 105
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5) 106
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4) 108
Fuser drive assembly 109
High voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA 110
Eraser PCA 114
Fuser PCA 114
Waste Sensor PCA 114
Paper Size sensor PCA 115
Flow ADF PCA 115
Scan joint PCA 116
CCDM PCA 117
WLED IF PCA 117
WLED PCA 118
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 119
High capacity input tray (HCI) 123
Side high capacity input tray (sHCI) 127

3 Removal and replacement 131
For additional service and support 137
Service approach 137
Precautions when replacing parts 137
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 137
Precautions when handling PCA 138
Releasing plastic latches 138
Before performing service 139
After performing service 139
Post-service test 139
Print-quality test 139
Copy-quality test 139
Fax-quality test 139
Parts removal order 140
Maintenance 141
Machine cleaning for maintenance 141
Cleaning the laser scanner assembly window 141
Cleaning the paper dust stick 142
Cleaning the scan glass 145
Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS 146
Removal and replacement procedures 148
Accessories 148
Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module 149
Introduction 149
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 150
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive 150
Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM) 151
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 151
Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 153
Introduction 153
Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory 154
Step 2: Install the FIH accessory 154
NFC Kit Installation 155
Introduction 155
Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit 156
Step 2: Install the NFC kit 156
Replacement of maintenance parts 161
Toner collection unit (TCU) 162
Introduction 162
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU) 163
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 163

Imaging drum unit 164
Introduction 164
Step 1: Remove the imaging drum 165
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 166
Developer unit 167
Introduction 167
Step 1: Remove the developer unit 168
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 172
Fuser unit 173
Introduction 173
Step 1: Remove the fuser unit 174
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 174
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner 176
Introduction 176
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU) 177
Step 2: Remove the ITB cleaner 177
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 178
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 180
Introduction 180
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU) 181
Step 2: Remove the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner 181
Step 3: Remove the ITB 182
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 185
Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers 187
Introduction 187
Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers 188
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 190
Multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller 191
Introduction 191
Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller 192
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 194
Flow ADF pickup roller assembly 196
Introduction 196
Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly 197
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 200
Flow ADF separation roller assembly 201
Introduction 201
Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly 202
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 204
Formatter cover 205
Introduction 205

Before performing service 205
Required tools 205
After performing service 205
Post service test 206
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 206
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 206
Accelerator board 208
Introduction 208
Before performing service 208
Required tools 208
After performing service 208
Post service test 209
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 209
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board 209
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 210
Island of data (IOD) 211
Introduction 211
Before performing service 211
Required tools 211
After performing service 211
Post service test 212
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 212
Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD) 212
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 213
Formatter hard disk drive (HDD) 214
Introduction 214
Before performing service 214
Required tools 214
After performing service 214
Post service test 215
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 215
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) 215
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 216
Formatter 217
Introduction 217
Before performing service 217
Required tools 217
After performing service 217
Post service test 218
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 218
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board 218

Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive 219
Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA 219
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 220
Control panel 221
Introduction 221
Before performing service 221
Required tools 221
After performing service 221
Post service test 222
Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel 222
Step 2: Remove the control-panel 222
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 223
Keyboard (z bundles) 225
Introduction 225
Before performing service 225
Required tools 225
After performing service 225
Post service test 226
Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel 226
Step 2: Remove the control-panel 226
Step 3: Remove the keyboard 227
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 228
Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU) 230
Introduction 230
Before performing service 230
Required tools 230
After performing service 230
Post service test 231
Step 1: Remove the IPTU 231
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 231
Replacing the main SVC part 233
Front top inner cover 234
Introduction 234
Before performing service 234
Required tools 234
After performing service 234
Post service test 235
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 235
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 235
Front power cover 236
Introduction 236

Before performing service 236
Required tools 236
After performing service 236
Post service test 237
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 237
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 237
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 238
Front power switch 239
Introduction 239
Before performing service 239
Required tools 239
After performing service 239
Post service test 240
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 240
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 240
Step 3: Remove the front power switch 241
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 242
Output bin 244
Introduction 244
Before performing service 244
Required tools 244
After performing service 244
Post service test 245
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 245
Step 2: Remove the output bin 245
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 245
Top right cover 247
Introduction 247
Before performing service 247
Required tools 247
After performing service 247
Post service test 248
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 248
Step 2: Remove the front power cover 248
Step 3: Remove the top right cover 249
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 250
Left cover 251
Introduction 251
Before performing service 251
Required tools 251
After performing service 251

Post service test 252
Step 1: Remove the left cover 252
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 252
Lower rear cover 254
Introduction 254
Before performing service 254
Required tools 254
After performing service 254
Post service test 255
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 255
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 255
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 256
Upper rear cover 257
Introduction 257
Before performing service 257
Required tools 257
After performing service 257
Post service test 258
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 258
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 258
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 259
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 259
Left rear corner cover 261
Introduction 261
Before performing service 261
Required tools 261
After performing service 261
Post service test 262
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 262
Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover 262
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 263
Right rear cover 264
Introduction 264
Before performing service 264
Required tools 264
After performing service 264
Post service test 265
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 265
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 265
Right door 267
Introduction 267

Before performing service 267
Required tools 267
After performing service 267
Post service test 268
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 268
Step 2: Remove the right door 268
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 270
Front cover 272
Introduction 272
Before performing service 272
Required tools 272
After performing service 272
Post service test 273
Step 1: Remove the front cover 273
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 273
Paper dust brush 275
Introduction 275
Before performing service 275
Required tools 275
After performing service 275
Post service test 276
Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit 276
Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush 276
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 276
Inner front cover 278
Introduction 278
Before performing service 278
Required tools 278
After performing service 279
Post service test 279
Step 1: Remove the front cover 279
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 279
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 280
Step 4: Remove the output bin 281
Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit 281
Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 282
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 282
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 283
Front cover open sensor 285
Introduction 285
Before performing service 285

Required tools 285
After performing service 286
Post service test 286
Step 1: Remove the front cover 286
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 286
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 287
Step 4: Remove the output bin 288
Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush 288
Step 6: Remove the inner front cover 289
Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor 291
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 291
High voltage power supply (HVPS) board 292
Introduction 292
Before performing service 292
Required tools 292
After performing service 292
Post service test 293
Step 1: Remove the left cover 293
Step 2: Remove the HVPS 293
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 295
Laser scanner assembly 296
Introduction 296
Before performing service 296
Required tools 296
After performing service 296
Post service test 297
Step 1: Remove the left cover 297
Step 2: Remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 298
Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly 299
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 301
Laser scanner assembly fan 302
Introduction 302
Before performing service 302
Required tools 302
After performing service 302
Post service test 303
Step 1: Remove the left cover 303
Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly fan 303
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 304
Main board 305
Introduction 305

Before performing service 305
Required tools 305
After performing service 306
Post service test 306
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 306
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 306
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 307
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 307
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 308
Step 6: Remove the main board 309
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 312
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 313
Introduction 313
Before performing service 313
Required tools 313
After performing service 313
Post service test 314
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 314
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 314
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 315
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 315
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 317
Introduction 317
Before performing service 317
Required tools 317
After performing service 317
Post service test 318
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 318
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 318
Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans 319
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 320
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1 321
Introduction 321
Before performing service 321
Required tools 321
After performing service 321
Post service test 322
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 322
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 322
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 323
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1 323

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 324
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2 325
Introduction 325
Before performing service 325
Required tools 325
After performing service 325
Post service test 326
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 326
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 326
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 327
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2 327
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 328
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3 329
Introduction 329
Before performing service 329
Required tools 329
After performing service 329
Post service test 330
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 330
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 330
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 331
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 331
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 332
Fuser drive board 334
Introduction 334
Before performing service 334
Required tools 334
After performing service 334
Post service test 335
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 335
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 335
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 336
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board 336
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 337
Developer fan 338
Introduction 338
Before performing service 338
Required tools 338
After performing service 338
Post service test 339
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 339

Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 339
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 340
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 340
Step 5: Remove the developer fan 341
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 344
Lower tray connector 345
Introduction 345
Before performing service 345
Required tools 345
After performing service 345
Post service test 346
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 346
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 346
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 347
Step 4: Remove the lower tray connector 347
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 348
Fuser fan 350
Introduction 350
Before performing service 350
Required tools 350
After performing service 350
Post service test 351
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 351
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 351
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 352
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 352
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 354
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 356
Main drive unit 357
Introduction 357
Before performing service 357
Required tools 357
After performing service 358
Post service test 358
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 358
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 358
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 359
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 359
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 360
Step 6: Remove the main drive unit 361
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 364

Alienation motor 365
Introduction 365
Before performing service 365
Required tools 365
After performing service 366
Post service test 366
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 366
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 366
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 367
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 367
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 368
Step 6: Remove the main drive unit 369
Step 7: Remove the alienation motor 372
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 372
Inductor unit 374
Introduction 374
Before performing service 374
Required tools 374
After performing service 374
Post service test 375
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 375
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 375
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 376
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage 376
Step 5: Remove the inductor unit 377
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 377
Auto closing unit 379
Introduction 379
Before performing service 379
Required tools 379
After performing service 379
Post service test 380
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 380
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 380
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 381
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage 381
Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit 382
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 383
Fuser/output drive unit 384

Introduction 384
Before performing service 384
Required tools 384
After performing service 385
Post service test 385
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 385
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 385
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 386
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 386
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 388
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 390
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 390
Right door open sensor 392
Introduction 392
Before performing service 392
Required tools 392
After performing service 393
Post service test 393
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 393
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 393
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 394
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 394
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 396
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 398
Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor 398
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 399
Right door open switch 400
Introduction 400
Before performing service 400
Required tools 400
After performing service 400
Post service test 401
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 401
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 401
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 402
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage 402
Step 5: Remove the fuser fan 404
Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit 406
Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor 406
Step 8: Remove the right door open switch 407
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 407

Pickup drive unit 1 409
Introduction 409
Before performing service 409
Required tools 409
After performing service 409
Post service test 410
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 410
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 410
Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover 411
Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 411
Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1 412
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 412
Pickup drive unit 2 414
Introduction 414
Before performing service 414
Required tools 414
After performing service 414
Post service test 415
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 415
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 415
Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2 416
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 416
Feed/MP drive unit 418
Introduction 418
Before performing service 418
Required tools 418
After performing service 418
Post service test 419
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 419
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 419
Step 3: Remove the feed/MP drive unit 420
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 420
Registration drive assembly 422
Introduction 422
Before performing service 422
Required tools 422
After performing service 423
Post service test 423
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 423
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 423
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 424

Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 424
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 425
Step 6: Remove the main drive unit 426
Step 7: Remove the registration drive assembly 429
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 429
Toner supply drive unit 431
Introduction 431
Before performing service 431
Required tools 431
After performing service 432
Post service test 432
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 432
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 432
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 433
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 433
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 434
Step 6: Remove the main board and cage 435
Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit 438
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 438
Toner supply and toner reservoir motors 439
Introduction 439
Before performing service 439
Required tools 439
After performing service 440
Post service test 440
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 440
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 440
Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 441
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 441
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 442
Step 6: Remove the main board and cage 443
Step 7: Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors 445
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 446
CRUM connector 447
Introduction 447
Before performing service 447
Required tools 447
After performing service 448
Post service test 448
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 448
Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover 448

Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover 449
Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover 449
Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage 450
Step 6: Remove the main board and cage 451
Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit 454
Step 8: Remove the CRUM connector 454
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 454
Toner collection unit (TCU) drive 456
Introduction 456
Before performing service 456
Required tools 456
After performing service 457
Post service test 457
Step 1: Remove the front cover. 457
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 457
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 458
Step 4: Remove the output bin 459
Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush 459
Step 6: Remove the inner front cover 460
Step 7: Remove the TCU drive 461
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 461
Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 463
Introduction 463
Before performing service 463
Required tools 463
After performing service 464
Post service test 464
Step 1: Remove the TCU 464
Step 2: Remove the front cover. 464
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 465
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 465
Step 5: Remove the output bin 466
Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush 467
Step 7: Remove the inner front cover 467
Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors 468
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 469
Reservoir unit 470
Introduction 470
Before performing service 470
Required tools 470
After performing service 471

Post service test 471
Step 1: Remove the front cover. 471
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 471
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 472
Step 4: Remove the output bin 473
Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush 473
Step 6: Remove the inner front cover 474
Step 7: Remove the reservoir unit 475
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 480
Auto size sensor 481
Introduction 481
Before performing service 481
Required tools 481
After performing service 481
Post service test 481
Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor 482
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 482
Front cover open sensor 483
Introduction 483
Before performing service 483
Required tools 483
After performing service 484
Post service test 484
Step 1: Remove the front cover. 484
Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover 484
Step 3: Remove the front power cover 485
Step 4: Remove the output bin 486
Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush 486
Step 6: Remove the inner front cover 487
Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor 488
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 488
Fuser out sensor (on the right door) 490
Introduction 490
Before performing service 490
Required tools 490
After performing service 490
Post service test 491
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 491
Step 2: Remove the right door 492
Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor 493
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 495

Feed 2 sensor (on the right door) 496
Introduction 496
Before performing service 496
Required tools 496
After performing service 496
Post service test 497
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 497
Step 2: Remove the right door 498
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 499
Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor 503
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 503
Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door) 505
Introduction 505
Before performing service 505
Required tools 505
After performing service 505
Post service test 506
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 506
Step 2: Remove the right door 507
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 508
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 508
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 517
Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor 519
Introduction 519
Before performing service 519
Required tools 519
After performing service 519
Post service test 520
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 520
Step 2: Remove the right door 521
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 523
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 526
Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor 535
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 536
Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor 537
Introduction 537
Before performing service 537
Required tools 537
After performing service 537
Post service test 538
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 538

Step 2: Remove the right door 539
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 541
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 544
Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor 553
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 554
Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid 556
Introduction 556
Before performing service 556
Required tools 556
After performing service 556
Post service test 557
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 557
Step 2: Remove the right door 558
Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper 560
Step 4: Remove the MP unit 563
Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid 572
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 574
Output unit 575
Introduction 575
Before performing service 575
Required tools 575
After performing service 576
Post service test 576
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 576
Step 2: Remove the right door 577
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 579
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 579
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 580
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 581
Step 7: Remove the output unit 582
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 583
Return sensor (on the output unit) 584
Introduction 584
Before performing service 584
Required tools 584
After performing service 585
Post service test 585
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 585
Step 2: Remove the right door 586
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 588
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 588

Step 5: Remove the top right cover 589
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 590
Step 7: Remove the output unit 591
Step 8: Remove the return sensor 592
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 592
Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit) 594
Introduction 594
Before performing service 594
Required tools 594
After performing service 595
Post service test 595
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 595
Step 2: Remove the right door 596
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 598
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 598
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 599
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 600
Step 7: Remove the output unit 601
Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor 602
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 603
Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit) 604
Introduction 604
Before performing service 604
Required tools 604
After performing service 605
Post service test 605
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 605
Step 2: Remove the right door 606
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 608
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 608
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 609
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 610
Step 7: Remove the output unit 611
Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor 612
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 614
Output gate solenoid (on the output unit) 616
Introduction 616
Before performing service 616
Required tools 616
After performing service 617
Post service test 617

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 617
Step 2: Remove the right door 618
Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover 620
Step 4: Remove the front power cover 620
Step 5: Remove the top right cover 621
Step 6: Remove the fuser unit 622
Step 7: Remove the output unit 623
Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid 624
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 625
Pickup unit 2 626
Introduction 626
Before performing service 626
Required tools 626
After performing service 626
Post service test 627
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 627
Step 2: Remove the right door 628
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 629
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 632
Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2) 633
Introduction 633
Before performing service 633
Required tools 633
After performing service 633
Post service test 634
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 634
Step 2: Remove the right door 635
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 637
Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 639
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 640
Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2) 641
Introduction 641
Before performing service 641
Required tools 641
After performing service 641
Post service test 642
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 642
Step 2: Remove the right door 643
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 644
Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2 647
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 647

Pickup unit 1 649
Introduction 649
Before performing service 649
Required tools 649
After performing service 649
Post service test 650
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 650
Step 2: Remove the right door 651
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 652
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 655
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 657
Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1) 658
Introduction 658
Before performing service 658
Required tools 658
After performing service 659
Post service test 659
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 659
Step 2: Remove the right door 660
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 662
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 664
Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 666
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 667
Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1) 668
Introduction 668
Before performing service 668
Required tools 668
After performing service 668
Post service test 669
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 669
Step 2: Remove the right door 670
Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2 672
Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1 674
Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1 676
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 677
Registration assembly 679
Introduction 679
Before performing service 679
Required tools 679
After performing service 679
Post service test 680

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 680
Step 2: Remove the right door 681
Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush 682
Step 4: Remove the registration assembly 683
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 687
Registration sensor assembly 688
Introduction 688
Before performing service 688
Required tools 688
After performing service 688
Post service test 689
Step 1: Remove the right rear cover 689
Step 2: Remove the right door 690
Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush 692
Step 4: Remove the registration assembly 692
Step 5: Remove the registration sensor 696
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 698
Internal hard disk drive (HDD) 699
Introduction 699
Before performing service 699
Required tools 699
After performing service 699
Post service test 700
Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover 700
Step 2: Remove the output bin 700
Step 3: Remove the HDD 701
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 701
Flow ADF 703
Flow ADF whole unit 703
Introduction 703
Before performing service 703
Required tools 703
After performing service 703
Post service test 703
Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit 704
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 706
Flow ADF jam access cover 707
Introduction 707
Before performing service 707
Required tools 708
After performing service 708

Post service test 708
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 709
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 709
Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover 710
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 712
Flow ADF input tray 713
Introduction 713
Before performing service 713
Required tools 713
After performing service 713
Post service test 714
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 715
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 715
Step 3: Remove the dampening unit 716
Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit 717
Step 5: Remove the input tray 718
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 718
Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) 720
Introduction 720
Before performing service 720
Required tools 720
After performing service 720
Post service test 721
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 722
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 722
Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly 723
Step 4: Remove the paper path cover 724
Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly 724
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 725
Flow ADF front motor 727
Introduction 727
Before performing service 727
Required tools 727
After performing service 727
Post service test 727
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 728
Step 2: Remove the front motor 728
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 729
Flow ADF rear motors 731
Introduction 731
Before performing service 731

Required tools 731
After performing service 732
Post service test 732
Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors 733
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 734
Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2 735
Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors 736
Step 5: Remove the exit motor 738
Step 6: Remove the feed motor 739
Step 7: Remove the REGI motor 740
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 740
Flow ADF PCA fan 741
Introduction 741
Before performing service 741
Required tools 741
After performing service 741
Post service test 741
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 742
Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan 742
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 743
Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan 744
Introduction 744
Before performing service 744
Required tools 744
After performing service 744
Post service test 744
Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover 745
Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan 745
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 746
Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA 747
Introduction 747
Before performing service 747
Required tools 747
After performing service 747
Post service test 748
Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover 749
Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover 749
Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly 750
Step 4: Remove the paper path cover 751
Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA 751
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 753

White backing 753
Introduction 754
Before performing service 754
Required tools 754
After performing service 754
Post service test 754
Step 1: Remove the white backing 754
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 755
Scanner unit (image scanner unit) 756
Scanner whole unit 756
Introduction 756
Before performing service 756
Required tools 756
After performing service 756
Post service test 757
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 757
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 757
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit 758
Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel 761
Step 5: Remove the control panel 761
Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles) 762
Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit 763
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 767
Scan glass 768
Introduction 768
Before performing service 768
Required tools 768
After performing service 768
Post service test 768
Step 1: Remove the scan glass 768
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 769
LED lamp module 770
Introduction 770
Before performing service 770
Required tools 770
After performing service 770
Post service test 771
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 771
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 771
Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit 772
Step 4: Remove the scanner glass 774

Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module 776
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 777
Scanner imaging unit 778
Introduction 778
Before performing service 778
Required tools 778
After performing service 778
Post service test 778
Step 1: Remove the scanner glass 779
Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit 779
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 780
Scan joint board 782
Introduction 782
Before performing service 782
Required tools 782
After performing service 782
Post service test 782
Step 1: Remove the formatter cover 783
Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover 783
Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit 783
Step 4: Remove the scan joint board 786
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 789
APS sensor 790
Introduction 790
Before performing service 790
Required tools 790
After performing service 790
Post service test 790
Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit 791
Step 2: Remove the scanner glass 793
Step 3: Remove the APS sensor 794
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 795
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 797
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 798
Introduction 798
Before performing service 798
Required tools 798
After performing service 798
Post service test 798
Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover 798
Step 2: Remove the printer right door 799

Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 801
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 803
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 804
Introduction 804
Before performing service 804
Required tools 804
After performing service 804
Post service test 804
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 804
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 805
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 806
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 808
Introduction 808
Before performing service 808
Required tools 808
After performing service 808
Post service test 808
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 808
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 809
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 809
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 810
Introduction 810
Before performing service 810
Required tools 810
After performing service 810
Post service test 810
Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover 810
Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 811
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 811
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 813
Introduction 813
Before performing service 813
Required tools 813
After performing service 813
Post service test 813
Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover 814
Step 2: Remove the printer right door 814
Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 816
Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 818
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 820
Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray 821

Bottom HCI tray feed motor 822
Introduction 822
Before performing service 822
Required tools 822
After performing service 822
Post service test 822
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 822
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor 823
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 824
Bottom HCI tray pickup motor 825
Introduction 825
Before performing service 825
Required tools 825
After performing service 825
Post service test 825
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 825
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor 826
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 826
Bottom HCI tray PCA 828
Introduction 828
Before performing service 828
Required tools 828
After performing service 828
Post service test 828
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 828
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA 829
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 829
Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 831
Introduction 831
Before performing service 831
Required tools 831
After performing service 831
Post service test 831
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 831
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 832
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 832
Bottom HCI tray shaft motor 833
Introduction 833
Before performing service 833
Required tools 833
After performing service 833

Post service test 833
Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover 833
Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor 834
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 834
Side high capacity input (sHCI) 835
Side HCI rear cover 836
Introduction 836
Before performing service 836
Required tools 836
After performing service 836
Post service test 836
Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover 836
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 837
Side HCI feed motor 838
Introduction 838
Before performing service 838
Required tools 838
After performing service 838
Post service test 838
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 839
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 839
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 839
Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor 840
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 840
Side HCI pickup motor 842
Introduction 842
Before performing service 842
Required tools 842
After performing service 842
Post service test 842
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 843
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 843
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 843
Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor 844
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 844
Side HCI PCA 845
Introduction 845
Before performing service 845
Required tools 845
After performing service 845
Post service test 845

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 846
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 846
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 846
Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA 847
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 847
Side HCI lift-up motor 848
Introduction 848
Before performing service 848
Required tools 848
After performing service 848
Post service test 848
Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover 849
Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover 849
Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover 849
Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor 850
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 850

4 Parts and diagrams 851
For additional service and support information 852
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 853
Ordering 853
Orderable parts 853
Related documentation and software 853
How to use the parts list and diagrams 853
Main parts 854
Main assembly 854
Output 856
First cassette 858
Second cassette 860
Main frame assembly 862
Main frame registration 864
CPR frame assembly 866
Toner frame guide (CMYK) 868
Rear frame assembly 870
Drive system 872
Main frame pickup 1 and 2 874
Main frame pickup 876
Cover 878
Right door 880
MP tray 882
Right door guide 884

Right door output and takeaway 886
T2 transfer 888
Flow ADF 890
Flow ADF open cover 892
Flow ADF upper pickup 894
Flow ADF stacker 896
Flow ADF main frame 898
Flow ADF image scanner 900
Flow ADF image scanner, lower 902
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 904
DCF main 904
DCF frame 906
DCF rear frame 908
Opt feed drive 910
DCF second pickup 912
High capacity input tray (HCI) 914
HCI main 914
HCI drive 916
HCI cassette 918
HCI frame 920
HCI main pickup 922
High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI) 924
sHCI main 1 924
sHCI main 3 926
sHCI main 5 928
sHCI main 6 930
Pickup cover unit 932
sHCI frame 934
Finishers 936
Booklet finisher 936
Mainline finisher 1 938
Mainline finisher 2 940
Mainline finisher 3 942
Mainline finisher 4 944
Mainline finisher 5 946
Mainline finisher 6 948
Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 950
Low output, hb motor, and top guide 952
SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 954
Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 956
Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 958

FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 960
Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 962
Three fold blade 964
Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 966
Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 968
Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 970
Front alignment (tamper) 972
Rear alignment (tamper) 974
Shield 976
PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 978
Finisher sub booklet 980
IPTU (bridge) 982
Inner finisher 984
Sub-inner finisher 984
Finisher sub 1 986
Finisher sub 7 988
Finisher sub 8 990
Alphabetical parts list 992
Numerical parts list 1013

5 Problem solving 1035
Troubleshooting process 1036
Determine the problem source 1036
Power subsystem 1036
Power-on checks 1036
Control panel checks 1040
Control panel diagnostic flowcharts 1040
Individual component diagnostics 1045
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics 1045
Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics 1047
Tools for troubleshooting 1049
Tools for troubleshooting 1050
Problem-solving checklist 1050
Step 1: Check that the printer power is on 1050
Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages 1050
Step 3: Test print functionality 1050
Step 4: Test copy functionality 1051
Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality 1051
Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality 1051
Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer 1051
Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality 1051

Factors that affect printer performance 1051
Print menu map 1053
Print current settings pages 1053
Print event log 1053
Pre-boot menu options 1055
Remote Admin 1064
Required software and network connection 1064
Connect a remote connection 1066
Disconnect a remote connection 1070
Control panel menus 1072
Reports menu 1072
Settings menu 1075
Copy menu (MFP only) 1119
Scan menu (MFP only) 1124
Fax menu (fax models only) 1133
Print menu 1137
Supplies menu 1138
Trays menu 1139
Troubleshooting menu 1140
Maintenance menu 1142
Backup/Restore menu 1142
Calibration/Cleaning menu 1142
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 1145
Clear paper jams 1146
Clearing original document jams 1146
Clearing paper jams 1150
Service mode (tech mode) 1159
Entering service mode 1159
Service mode menu tree 1160
Information 1165
General 1165
Supply status 1165
Software version 1165
Print reports 1166
Maintenance counts 1166
Part replacement count 1166
Diagnostics 1167
Engine diagnostics 1167
Fax diagnostics 1180
Scanner diagnostics 1185
Adjustment 1189

Image management 1195
Print test patterns 1196
Service functions 1197
Main memory clear 1197
Debug log 1197
Capture log 1197
Transfer assembly control mode 1198
Envelope rotate 1198
Drain 1199
Print quality troubleshooting guide 1200
Image quality problems and solutions 1200
Vertical black band 1203
Vertical white band, light band 1204
Horizontal periodic black band or dot 1206
Horizontal periodic light/dark band or dot 1206
Foggy image 1207
Light image 1208
Blurred image 1209
Incorrect color registration 1210
Uneven pitch and jitter image 1210
Skewed image 1211
Blank copy 1213
Poor fusing performance 1214
Stain on back of paper 1215
Setting standard tone 1215
Duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out 1218
Other errors 1219
Image system problem 1219
Fuser problem 1225
Scanner and Flow ADF problems 1227
Drive unit problem 1230
Feeding system problem 1230
Laser scanner assembly problem 1232
Electrical circuit problem 1232
Adjusting the Flow ADF skew 1238

6 Diagrams 1243
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER) 1244
Connection Diagram (Scanner) 1245
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB) 1246
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup) 1247

Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock) 1248
Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB) 1249

7 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher 1251
Precautions 1252
Caution for safety 1252
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 1252
Handling precautions 1253
Removal and replacement precautions 1254
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 1254
ESD precautions 1255
Product specification and description 1256
Finisher system 1256
Finisher sectional view 1256
Sensor location 1256
Roller location 1257
Jam removal guide 1259
Paper path 1260
Electrical parts layout 1261
Finisher and booklet module 1261
IPTU 1265
Punch unit 1265
Each unit functions 1266
PCA connection information 1267
Finisher PCA 1267
Switch PCA 1268
Booklet maker PCA 1268
Service approach 1269
Precautions when replacing parts 1269
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 1269
Precautions when handling PCA 1269
Releasing plastic latches 1270
Before performing service 1270
After performing service 1271
Post-service test 1271
Print-quality test 1271
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 1271
Ordering 1271
Orderable parts 1271
Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers) 1272
Top output bin 1274

Introduction 1274
Before performing service 1274
Required tools 1274
After performing service 1274
Post service test 1275
Step 1: Remove the top output bin 1275
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1275
Right top cover 1276
Introduction 1276
Before performing service 1276
Required tools 1276
After performing service 1276
Post service test 1277
Step 1: Remove the right top cover 1277
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1277
Top cover 1279
Introduction 1279
Before performing service 1279
Required tools 1279
After performing service 1279
Post service test 1280
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1280
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1280
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1282
Front door 1283
Introduction 1283
Before performing service 1283
Required tools 1283
After performing service 1283
Post service test 1284
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1284
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1284
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1286
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1288
Rear cover 1290
Introduction 1290
Before performing service 1290
Required tools 1290
After performing service 1290
Post service test 1291
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1291

Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1291
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1293
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1294
Front cover 1295
Introduction 1295
Before performing service 1295
Required tools 1295
After performing service 1295
Post service test 1296
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1296
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1296
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1298
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1300
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1302
Front lower cover 1303
Introduction 1303
Before performing service 1303
Required tools 1303
After performing service 1304
Post service test 1304
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1304
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1304
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1306
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1308
Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher) 1310
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 1310
Booklet tray 1312
Introduction 1312
Before performing service 1312
Required tools 1312
After performing service 1312
Post service test 1313
Step 1: Remove the booklet tray 1313
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1314
Caster cover 1315
Introduction 1315
Before performing service 1315
Required tools 1315
After performing service 1315
Post service test 1316
Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only) 1316

Step 2: Remove the caster cover 1317
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1318
Lower shield assembly 1319
Introduction 1319
Before performing service 1319
Required tools 1320
After performing service 1320
Post service test 1320
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1320
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1320
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1322
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1324
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1326
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray 1327
Step 7: Remove the caster cover 1328
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1329
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 1331
Upper shield assembly 1332
Introduction 1332
Before performing service 1332
Required tools 1333
After performing service 1333
Post service test 1333
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1333
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1333
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1335
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1337
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1339
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray 1340
Step 7: Remove the caster cover 1341
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1342
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1344
Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly 1346
Controller PCA 1348
Introduction 1348
Before performing service 1348
Required tools 1348
After performing service 1348
Post service test 1349
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1349
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1349

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1351
Step 4: Remove the controller PCA 1352
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1353
Stapler unit 1354
Introduction 1354
Before performing service 1354
Required tools 1354
After performing service 1355
Post service test 1355
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1355
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1355
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1357
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1359
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1361
Step 6: Remove the staple unit 1362
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 1364
Dummy feed guide 1366
Introduction 1366
Before performing service 1366
Required tools 1366
After performing service 1366
Post service test 1367
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1367
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1367
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1369
Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher) 1370
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1371
Top jam access cover 1372
Introduction 1372
Before performing service 1372
Required tools 1372
After performing service 1373
Post service test 1373
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1373
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1373
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1375
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1377
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1379
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor 1380
Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover 1381
Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly 1381

Top lower feed assembly 1383
Introduction 1383
Before performing service 1383
Required tools 1383
After performing service 1384
Post service test 1384
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1384
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1384
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1386
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1388
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1390
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher) 1391
Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover 1392
Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher) 1392
Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly 1395
Ejector unit 1396
Introduction 1396
Before performing service 1396
Required tools 1397
After performing service 1397
Post service test 1397
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1397
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1397
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1399
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1401
Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1403
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1404
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1405
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1406
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1408
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1410
Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly 1419
Front tamper unit 1421
Introduction 1421
Before performing service 1421
Required tools 1422
After performing service 1422
Post service test 1422
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1422
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1422
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1424

Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1426
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1428
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1429
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1430
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1431
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1433
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1435
Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit 1444
Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly 1445
Rear tamper unit 1446
Introduction 1446
Before performing service 1446
Required tools 1447
After performing service 1447
Post service test 1447
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1447
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1447
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1449
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1451
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1453
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1454
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1455
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1456
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1458
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1460
Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit 1469
Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly 1470
Feed entrance motor (M1) 1471
Introduction 1471
Before performing service 1471
Required tools 1471
After performing service 1471
Post service test 1472
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1472
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1472
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1474
Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1) 1475
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1476
Feed exit motor (M2) 1477
Introduction 1477
Before performing service 1477

Required tools 1477
After performing service 1477
Post service test 1478
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1478
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1478
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1480
Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2) 1481
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1482
Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1483
Introduction 1483
Before performing service 1483
Required tools 1483
After performing service 1483
Post service test 1484
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1484
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1484
Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1486
Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor 1487
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1490
Front tamper motor (M6) 1491
Introduction 1491
Before performing service 1491
Required tools 1492
After performing service 1492
Post service test 1492
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1492
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1493
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1494
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1496
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1498
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1499
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1500
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1501
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1503
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1505
Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher) 1514
Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7) 1515
Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly 1516
Rear tamper motor (M7) 1517
Introduction 1517
Before performing service 1517

Required tools 1518
After performing service 1518
Post service test 1518
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1518
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1519
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1520
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1522
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1524
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1525
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1526
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1527
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1529
Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher) 1531
Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher) 1540
Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7) 1541
Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly 1542
SCU motor (M10) 1543
Introduction 1543
Before performing service 1543
Required tools 1544
After performing service 1544
Post service test 1544
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1544
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1544
Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher) 1546
Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher) 1548
Step 5: Remove the rear cover 1550
Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher) 1551
Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher) 1552
Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher) 1553
Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher) 1555
Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10) 1557
Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly 1559
Main tray moving motor (M11) 1561
Introduction 1561
Before performing service 1561
Required tools 1561
After performing service 1561
Post service test 1562
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1562
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1562

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1564
Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11) 1565
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1569
Booklet finisher front cover 1571
Introduction 1571
Before performing service 1571
Required tools 1571
After performing service 1571
Post service test 1572
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1572
Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly 1572
Booklet finisher 1574
Introduction 1574
Before performing service 1574
Required tools 1574
After performing service 1574
Post service test 1575
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1575
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1575
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1577
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher 1578
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1583
Booklet finisher PCA 1585
Introduction 1585
Before performing service 1585
Required tools 1585
After performing service 1585
Post service test 1586
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1586
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1586
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1588
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher 1589
Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA 1594
Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly 1596
Booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1597
Introduction 1597
Before performing service 1597
Required tools 1597
After performing service 1598
Post service test 1598
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1598

Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1598
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1600
Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1601
Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1602
Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit 1603
Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly 1608
Booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1609
Introduction 1609
Before performing service 1609
Required tools 1609
After performing service 1609
Post service test 1610
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1610
Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1610
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1611
TE presser motor (M14) 1612
Introduction 1612
Before performing service 1612
Required tools 1612
After performing service 1612
Post service test 1613
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1613
Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14) 1613
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1614
Stopper moving motor (M16) 1615
Introduction 1615
Before performing service 1615
Required tools 1615
After performing service 1615
Post service test 1616
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1616
Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1616
Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16) 1618
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1618
Separate pawl motor (M17) 1620
Introduction 1620
Before performing service 1620
Required tools 1620
After performing service 1620
Post service test 1621
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1621

Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17) 1621
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1622
Folding roller motor (M18) 1623
Introduction 1623
Before performing service 1623
Required tools 1623
After performing service 1623
Post service test 1624
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher) 1624
Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher) 1624
Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher) 1626
Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18) 1627
Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly 1628
Blade motor (M19) 1629
Introduction 1629
Before performing service 1629
Required tools 1629
After performing service 1629
Post service test 1630
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1630
Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield 1630
Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19) 1632
Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly 1632
C fold motor (M20) 1634
Introduction 1634
Before performing service 1634
Required tools 1634
After performing service 1634
Post service test 1635
Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover 1635
Step 2: Remove the C fold motor 1635
Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly 1640
Problem solving 1641
Control panel message document (CPMD) 1642
Control-panel messages and event log entries 1642
Finisher system diagram 1643

8 Inner finisher 1645
Precautions 1646
Caution for safety 1646
Electric shock and fire safety precautions 1646

Handling precautions 1647
Removal and replacement precautions 1648
Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury 1648
ESD precautions 1649
Product Specification and Description 1650
Specification 1650
Finisher System 1655
Sectional view 1655
Paper path 1656
Electrical parts layout 1657
Block Diagram 1659
PBA Connection Information 1659
Service approach 1660
Precautions when replacing parts 1660
Precautions when assembling and disassembling 1660
Precautions when handling PCA 1660
Releasing plastic latches 1661
Before performing service 1661
After performing service 1661
Post-service test 1661
Print-quality test 1662
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 1662
Ordering 1662
Orderable parts 1662
Removal and replacment (inner finisher) 1663
Entrance sensor 1664
Introduction 1664
Before performing service 1664
Required tools 1664
After performing service 1664
Post service test 1664
Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor 1665
Entrance motor 1668
Introduction 1668
Before performing service 1668
Required tools 1668
After performing service 1668
Post service test 1668
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1669
Step 2: Remove the entrance motor 1672
Exit sensor 1674

Introduction 1674
Before performing service 1674
Required tools 1674
After performing service 1674
Post service test 1674
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1675
Step 2: Remove the exit sensor 1678
Exit motor 1679
Introduction 1679
Before performing service 1679
Required tools 1679
After performing service 1679
Post service test 1679
Step 1: Remove the exit motor 1680
Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly 1682
Introduction 1682
Before performing service 1682
Required tools 1682
After performing service 1682
Post service test 1682
Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1683
Front Jogger Motor 1686
Introduction 1686
Before performing service 1686
Required tools 1686
After performing service 1686
Post service test 1686
Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor 1687
Front Jogger Home Sensor 1698
Introduction 1698
Before performing service 1698
Required tools 1698
After performing service 1698
Post service test 1698
Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor 1699
Rear Jogger Motor 1710
Introduction 1710
Before performing service 1710
Required tools 1710
After performing service 1710
Post service test 1710

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor 1711
Rear Jogger Home Sensor 1719
Introduction 1719
Before performing service 1719
Required tools 1719
After performing service 1719
Post service test 1719
Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor 1720
Stapler 1725
Introduction 1725
Before performing service 1725
Required tools 1725
After performing service 1725
Post service test 1725
Step 1: Remove the stapler 1726
Stapler position sensor assembly 1728
Introduction 1728
Before performing service 1728
Required tools 1728
After performing service 1728
Post service test 1728
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1729
Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1732
Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly 1735
Traverse Motor 1739
Introduction 1739
Before performing service 1739
Required tools 1739
After performing service 1739
Post service test 1739
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1740
Step 2: Remove the traverse motor 1743
Stacker Motor 1744
Introduction 1744
Before performing service 1744
Required tools 1744
After performing service 1744
Post service test 1744
Step 1: Remove the stacker motor 1745
Stacker Encoder Sensor 1751
Introduction 1751

Before performing service 1751
Required tools 1751
After performing service 1751
Post service test 1751
Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor 1752
Stacker Lower Limit Switch 1758
Introduction 1758
Before performing service 1758
Required tools 1758
After performing service 1758
Post service test 1758
Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch 1759
Stack Beam Sensor 1765
Introduction 1765
Before performing service 1765
Required tools 1765
After performing service 1765
Post service test 1765
Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor 1766
Stack Position Sensor 1770
Introduction 1770
Before performing service 1770
Required tools 1770
After performing service 1770
Post service test 1770
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1771
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1774
Paper Holding Lever Solenoid 1780
Introduction 1780
Before performing service 1780
Required tools 1780
After performing service 1780
Post service test 1780
Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid 1781
Paper Support Motor 1788
Introduction 1788
Before performing service 1788
Required tools 1788
After performing service 1788
Post service test 1788
Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor 1789

Step 2: Remove the paper support motor 1795
Paper Support Home Sensor 1797
Introduction 1797
Before performing service 1797
Required tools 1797
After performing service 1797
Post service test 1797
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1798
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1801
Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor 1807
Ejector Motor assembly 1809
Introduction 1809
Before performing service 1809
Required tools 1809
After performing service 1809
Post service test 1809
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1810
Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor 1813
Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly 1819
Main Paddle Motor 1823
Introduction 1823
Before performing service 1823
Required tools 1823
After performing service 1823
Post service test 1823
Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor 1824
Main Paddle Home Sensor 1825
Introduction 1825
Before performing service 1825
Required tools 1825
After performing service 1825
Post service test 1825
Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor 1826
Main Paddle 1827
Introduction 1827
Before performing service 1827
Required tools 1827
After performing service 1827
Post service test 1827
Step 1: Remove the main paddle 1828
Ejector assembly 1829

Introduction 1829
Before performing service 1829
Required tools 1829
After performing service 1829
Post service test 1829
Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor 1830
Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly 1836
Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly 1840
Punch Dust Full Sensor 1841
Introduction 1841
Before performing service 1841
Required tools 1841
After performing service 1841
Post service test 1841
Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers 1842
Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor 1845
Door Switch 1846
Introduction 1846
Before performing service 1846
Required tools 1846
After performing service 1846
Post service test 1846
Step 1: Remove the door switch 1847
Top Door Switch 1850
Introduction 1850
Before performing service 1850
Required tools 1850
After performing service 1850
Post service test 1850
Step 1: Remove the top door switch 1851
End Fence Home Sensor 1855
Introduction 1855
Before performing service 1855
Required tools 1855
After performing service 1855
Post service test 1855
Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor 1856
Problem solving 1857
Control panel message document (CPMD) 1642
Control-panel messages and event log entries 1858
Block Diagram 1859

Appendix A Appendix: Printer specifications 1861
Printer dimensions 1862
Printer space requirements 1863
Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions 1864
Certificate of Volatility 1865

Glossary 1867

Index 1875

List of tables

Table 2-1 General specifications 11
Table 2-2 Print specifications 13
Table 2-3 Scan specifications 16
Table 2-4 Copy specifications 17
Table 2-5 Supplies 19
Table 2-6 Maintenance table 22
Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications 23
Table 2-8 Network interface 29
Table 2-9 Software and solutions 30
Table 2-10 Options list 33
Table 2-11 Option specifications 34
Table 2-12 Front view 38
Table 2-13 Printer rear view 39
Table 2-14 Inner view 40
Table 2-15 Rollers 42
Table 2-16 Roller period table 43
Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid 44
Table 2-18 Basic cassette 46
Table 2-19 ITB unit 59
Table 2-20 Laser scanning optical path 64
Table 2-21 Pickup and cassette lift drive 69
Table 2-22 Feed drive 70
Table 2-23 Registration drive 71
Table 2-24 Fuser release/output drive 72
Table 2-25 Drive motor 73
Table 2-26 Main drive unit motors 74
Table 2-27 Toner supply/reservoir drive 75
Table 2-28 Engage transfer roller drive 76
Table 2-29 TCU drive 76
Table 2-30 Flow ADF overview 87
Table 2-31 Flow ADF sensors 88
Table 2-32 Connections 101

Table 2-33 Connections 104
Table 2-34 Connection 105
Table 2-35 Connections 106
Table 2-36 Connections 108
Table 2-37 Connections 110
Table 2-38 HVPS PCA Connections 111
Table 2-39 Connections 114
Table 2-40 Connections 115
Table 2-41 Connections 116
Table 2-42 Connection 117
Table 2-43 Connections 117
Table 2-44 Connections 118
Table 2-45 DCF paper feeding system 119
Table 2-46 DCF electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 121
Table 2-47 DCF PCA connection 122
Table 2-48 HCI paper feeding system 123
Table 2-49 HCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 125
Table 2-50 HCI PCA connection 126
Table 2-51 sHCI paper feeding system 127
Table 2-52 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 129
Table 2-53 sHCI PCA connection 130
Table 3-1 Document feeder motors 733
Table 4-1 Main assembly 855
Table 4-2 Output 857
Table 4-3 First cassette 859
Table 4-4 Second cassette 861
Table 4-5 Main frame assembly 863
Table 4-6 Main frame registration 865
Table 4-7 CPR frame assembly 867
Table 4-8 Toner frame guide (CMYK) 869
Table 4-9 Rear frame assembly 871
Table 4-10 Drive system 873
Table 4-11 Main frame pickup 1 and 2 875
Table 4-12 Main frame pickup 877
Table 4-13 Cover 879
Table 4-14 Right door 881
Table 4-15 MP tray 883
Table 4-16 Right door guide 885
Table 4-17 Right door output and takeaway 887
Table 4-18 T2 transfer 889
Table 4-19 Flow ADF 891

Table 4-20 Flow ADF open cover 893
Table 4-21 Flow ADF upper pickup 895
Table 4-22 Flow ADF stacker 897
Table 4-23 Flow ADF main frame 899
Table 4-24 Flow ADF image scanner 901
Table 4-25 Flow ADF image scanner, lower 903
Table 4-26 DCF main 905
Table 4-27 DCF frame 907
Table 4-28 DCF rear frame 909
Table 4-29 Opt feed drive 911
Table 4-30 DCF second pickup 913
Table 4-31 HCI main 915
Table 4-32 HCI drive 917
Table 4-33 HCI cassette 919
Table 4-34 HCI frame 921
Table 4-35 HCI main pickup 923
Table 4-36 sHCI main 1 925
Table 4-37 sHCI main 3 927
Table 4-38 sHCI main 5 929
Table 4-39 sHCI main 6 931
Table 4-40 Pickup cover unit 933
Table 4-41 sHCI frame 935
Table 4-42 Booklet finisher 937
Table 4-43 Mainline finisher 1 939
Table 4-44 Mainline finisher 2 941
Table 4-45 Mainline finisher 3 943
Table 4-46 Mainline finisher 4 945
Table 4-47 Mainline finisher 5 947
Table 4-48 Mainline finisher 6 949
Table 4-49 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 951
Table 4-50 Low output, hb motor, and top guide 953
Table 4-51 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 955
Table 4-52 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 957
Table 4-53 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 959
Table 4-54 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 961
Table 4-55 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 963
Table 4-56 Three fold blade 965
Table 4-57 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 967
Table 4-58 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 969
Table 4-59 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 971
Table 4-60 Front alignment (tamper) 973

Table 4-61 Rear alignment (tamper) 975
Table 4-62 Shield 977
Table 4-63 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 979
Table 4-64 Finisher sub booklet 981
Table 4-65 IPTU (bridge) 983
Table 4-66 Sub-inner finisher 985
Table 4-67 Finisher sub 1 987
Table 4-68 Finisher sub 7 989
Table 4-69 Finisher sub 8 991
Table 5-8 Reports menu 1072
Table 5-9 Settings menu 1075
Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) 1119
Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) 1124
Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) 1133
Table 5-13 Print Options menu 1137
Table 5-14 Supplies menu 1138
Table 5-15 Trays menu 1139
Table 5-16 Troubleshooting 1140
Table 5-17 Backup/Restore menu 1142
Table 5-18 Calibrate/Cleaning menu 1143
Table 5-19 Information 1160
Table 5-20 Maintenance counts 1162
Table 5-21 Diagnostics 1163
Table 5-22 Service functions 1164
Table 5-23 Troubleshooting procedure 1203
Table 5-24 Troubleshooting procedure 1205
Table 5-25 Troubleshooting procedure 1206
Table 5-26 Troubleshooting procedure 1207
Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure 1207
Table 5-28 Troubleshooting procedure 1208
Table 5-29 Troubleshooting procedure 1209
Table 5-30 Troubleshooting procedure 1210
Table 5-31 Troubleshooting procedure 1211
Table 5-32 Troubleshooting procedure 1211
Table 5-33 Troubleshooting procedure 1213
Table 5-34 Troubleshooting procedure 1214
Table 5-35 Troubleshooting procedure 1215
Table 7-1 Sensor locations 1256
Table 7-2 Roller location 1257
Table 7-3 Jam removal guide 1259
Table 7-4 Paper path 1260

Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout 1262
Table 7-6 IPTU 1265
Table 7-7 Punch unit 1265
Table 7-8 1266
Table 7-9 Finisher PCA 1267
Table 7-10 Switch PCA 1268
Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification 1650
Table 8-2 Media performance 1653
Table 8-3 Finisher system—sectional view 1655
Table 8-4 Finisher system—paper path 1656
Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout 1657
Table 8-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information 1659

List of figures

Figure 2-1 Options 32
Figure 2-2 Printer front view 38
Figure 2-3 Printer rear view 39
Figure 2-4 Inner view 40
Figure 2-5 Rollers 42
Figure 2-6 Sensor, motor, solenoid 44
Figure 2-7 Basic cassette 46
Figure 2-8 Pickup unit 1 47
Figure 2-9 Pickup unit 2 47
Figure 2-10 Registration roller 48
Figure 2-11 MP feeder assembly 48
Figure 2-12 Paper separation 49
Figure 2-13 Fuser unit 50
Figure 2-14 Fuser drive 51
Figure 2-15 Fuser unit temperature control 52
Figure 2-16 Loop control 53
Figure 2-17 Printing process overview 54
Figure 2-18 Imaging unit 55
Figure 2-19 Drum drive 56
Figure 2-20 Developer unit 57
Figure 2-21 Developer auger 57
Figure 2-22 Toner cartridge 58
Figure 2-23 ITB unit 59
Figure 2-24 Transfer belt drive 60
Figure 2-25 ITB cleaning 61
Figure 2-26 Toner reservoir unit 62
Figure 2-27 Laser scanner assembly 63
Figure 2-28 Laser scanning optical path 64
Figure 2-29 Laser synchronizing detectors 65
Figure 2-30 Automatic CPR adjustment 66
Figure 2-31 Main scan skew adjustment 68
Figure 2-32 Pickup and cassette lift drive 69

Figure 2-33 Feed drive 70
Figure 2-34 Registration drive 71
Figure 2-35 Fuser release/output drive 72
Figure 2-36 Drive motor 73
Figure 2-37 Main drive unit motors 74
Figure 2-38 Toner supply/reservoir drive 75
Figure 2-39 Engage transfer roller drive 76
Figure 2-40 TCU drive 76
Figure 2-41 Scanner system overview 77
Figure 2-42 Scan process 78
Figure 2-43 Image processing 79
Figure 2-44 Scanning system components 80
Figure 2-45 FR carriage 81
Figure 2-46 HR carriage 82
Figure 2-47 Imaging unit 82
Figure 2-48 Wire driving 83
Figure 2-49 Timing belt 84
Figure 2-50 Shading sheet 85
Figure 2-51 Remove scan locking screw 85
Figure 2-52 Tighten scan locking screw 86
Figure 2-53 Flow ADF overview 87
Figure 2-54 Flow ADF sensors 88
Figure 2-55 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed 89
Figure 2-57 Flow ADF document lifting drive system 90
Figure 2-58 Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System 90
Figure 2-59 Flow ADF Registration 91
Figure 2-60 Flow ADF Scanning Position 92
Figure 2-61 MSO 1 92
Figure 2-62 MSO 2 93
Figure 2-63 MSO 3 93
Figure 2-64 Dual sensor cleaning method 94
Figure 2-65 Dual sensor cleaning method 94
Figure 2-68 Block diagram 99
Figure 2-69 Clock diagram 100
Figure 2-70 Connection information 101
Figure 2-71 Block diagram 102
Figure 2-72 Clock diagram 103
Figure 2-73 Connection information 104
Figure 2-74 MSOK 105
Figure 2-75 LVPS PCA (Type 5) 106
Figure 2-76 LVPS PCA (Type 4) 108

Figure 2-77 Fuser drive board 110
Figure 2-78 HVPS PCA 111
Figure 2-79 Eraser PCA 114
Figure 2-80 Fuser PCA 114
Figure 2-81 Waste sensor PCA 114
Figure 2-82 Paper size sensor PCA 115
Figure 2-83 Flow ADF PCA 115
Figure 2-84 Scan joint PCA 116
Figure 2-85 CCDM PCA 117
Figure 2-86 WLED IF PCA 117
Figure 2-87 WLED PCA 118
Figure 2-88 Paper feeding system 119
Figure 2-89 Paper path 120
Figure 2-90 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 121
Figure 2-91 PCA connection and DCF 122
Figure 2-92 Paper feeding system 123
Figure 2-93 HCI paper path 124
Figure 2-94 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 125
Figure 2-95 HCI PCA connection 126
Figure 2-96 Paper feeding system 127
Figure 2-97 sHCI paper path 128
Figure 2-98 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions 129
Figure 2-99 sHCI PCA connection 130
Figure 3-1 Remove the TCU 141
Figure 3-2 Remove laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool 141
Figure 3-3 Laser scanner assembly color entrances 142
Figure 3-4 Laser scanner assembly color entrances 142
Figure 3-5 Open the front door 143
Figure 3-6 Remove the TCU 143
Figure 3-7 Remove paper dust stick 144
Figure 3-8 Remove the paper dust 144
Figure 3-9 Install the paper dust stick 144
Figure 3-10 Install the TCU 145
Figure 3-11 Close the front door 145
Figure 3-12 Clean the scanner glass 146
Figure 3-13 Peel back the white backing and release one tab 146
Figure 3-14 Clean flow document feeder white bar 147
Figure 3-15 Remove the formatter cover 150
Figure 3-16 Locate the TPM 151
Figure 3-17 Connect the FIH 154
Figure 3-18 Release the HIP cover 156

Figure 3-19 Remove the HIP cover 156
Figure 3-20 Identify USB connector 157
Figure 3-21 Select USB cable 157
Figure 3-22 Install the USB cable 158
Figure 3-23 Install the white power connector 158
Figure 3-24 Attach the metal ground connector 159
Figure 3-25 Position the NFC accessory in the HIP recess 159
Figure 3-26 Install the NFC accessory 160
Figure 3-27 Remove the TCU 163
Figure 3-28 Release locking lever 165
Figure 3-29 Remove the drum unit 165
Figure 3-30 Shutter open/close 168
Figure 3-31 Release the toner collection valve 169
Figure 3-32 Tilt toner supply pipe up 169
Figure 3-33 Remove the metal bracket 170
Figure 3-34 Developer unit removal 170
Figure 3-35 Open the developer unit 171
Figure 3-36 Distribute the developer powder 171
Figure 3-37 Fuser unit screw locations 174
Figure 3-38 Fuser unit removal 174
Figure 3-39 Remove the TCU 177
Figure 3-40 ITB screw location 177
Figure 3-41 ITB cleaner removal 178
Figure 3-42 Remove the TCU 181
Figure 3-43 ITB screw location 181
Figure 3-44 ITB cleaner removal 182
Figure 3-45 Disconnect one connector and slide the latch 183
Figure 3-46 Remove two screws 183
Figure 3-47 Remove the ITB 184
Figure 3-48 Clean the CPR sensors 184
Figure 3-49 Align arrows 185
Figure 3-50 Remove the two cassettes 188
Figure 3-51 Slide the return guide 188
Figure 3-52 Remove rollers 189
Figure 3-53 Coupler locations 189
Figure 3-54 Remove cover 192
Figure 3-55 Remove cover 193
Figure 3-56 MP tray flag orientation 193
Figure 3-57 Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller 194
Figure 3-58 Remove the pickup roller assembly 197
Figure 3-59 Remove the pickup roller assembly cover 197

Figure 3-60 Remove the pickup roller components 198
Figure 3-61 Remove the pickup roller assembly 199
Figure 3-62 Pickup roller components-disassembled 199
Figure 3-63 Remove the separation roller cover 202
Figure 3-64 Remove one plastic clip 202
Figure 3-65 Remove the separation roller 203
Figure 3-66 Remove the separation roller 203
Figure 3-67 Remove the formatter cover 206
Figure 3-68 Remove the formatter cover 209
Figure 3-69 Remove the formatter cover 212
Figure 3-70 Remove the formatter cover 215
Figure 3-71 Remove the formatter cover 218
Figure 3-72 Remove the document feeder bezel 222
Figure 3-73 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 223
Figure 3-74 Remove the USB interconnect cable 223
Figure 3-75 Remove the document feeder bezel 226
Figure 3-76 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 227
Figure 3-77 Remove the USB interconnect cable 227
Figure 3-78 Disconnect one FFC 228
Figure 3-79 Remove the control-panel keyboard 228
Figure 3-80 Remove the IPTU 231
Figure 3-81 Remove the front top inner cover 235
Figure 3-82 Remove the front top inner cover 237
Figure 3-83 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 237
Figure 3-84 Remove the front power cover 238
Figure 3-85 Remove the front top inner cover 240
Figure 3-86 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 241
Figure 3-87 Remove the front power cover 241
Figure 3-88 Remove one screw and the power switch board 242
Figure 3-89 Remove two screws and the power switch button 242
Figure 3-90 Remove the front top inner cover 245
Figure 3-91 Remove the output bin 245
Figure 3-92 Remove the front top inner cover 248
Figure 3-93 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 249
Figure 3-94 Remove the front power cover 249
Figure 3-95 Remove the top right cover 250
Figure 3-96 Left dummy cover 252
Figure 3-97 Remove the left cover 252
Figure 3-98 Remove the formatter cover 255
Figure 3-99 Remove the lower rear cover 255
Figure 3-100 Remove the formatter cover 258

Figure 3-101 Remove the lower rear cover 259
Figure 3-102 Remove the upper rear cover 259
Figure 3-103 Remove the formatter cover 262
Figure 3-104 Remove the left rear corner cover 262
Figure 3-105 Remove four screws 265
Figure 3-106 Remove the right rear cover 265
Figure 3-107 Remove four screws 268
Figure 3-108 Remove the right rear cover 268
Figure 3-109 Disconnect one connector 269
Figure 3-110 Release the right hinge 269
Figure 3-111 Release the left dampener 270
Figure 3-112 Remove the right door 270
Figure 3-113 Remove the front cover 273
Figure 3-114 Remove the TCU 276
Figure 3-115 Remove the paper dust brush 276
Figure 3-116 Remove the front cover 279
Figure 3-117 Remove the front top inner cover 280
Figure 3-118 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 280
Figure 3-119 Remove the front power cover 281
Figure 3-120 Remove the output bin 281
Figure 3-121 Remove the TCU 282
Figure 3-122 Remove the paper dust brush 282
Figure 3-123 Remove seven screws 283
Figure 3-124 Remove the inner cover 283
Figure 3-125 Remove the front cover 286
Figure 3-126 Remove the front top inner cover 287
Figure 3-127 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 287
Figure 3-128 Remove the front power cover 288
Figure 3-129 Remove the output bin 288
Figure 3-130 Remove the paper dust brush 289
Figure 3-131 Remove seven screws 289
Figure 3-132 Remove the inner cover 290
Figure 3-133 Remove one screw and the cover open sensor 291
Figure 3-134 Left dummy cover 293
Figure 3-135 Remove the left cover 293
Figure 3-136 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 294
Figure 3-137 Disconnect three connectors 294
Figure 3-138 Remove the HVPS cover 295
Figure 3-139 Left dummy cover 297
Figure 3-140 Remove the left cover 297
Figure 3-141 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 298

Figure 3-142 Disconnect three connectors 298
Figure 3-143 Remove the HVPS cover 299
Figure 3-144 Remove the laser scanner fan and holder 299
Figure 3-145 Remove two screws and disconnect two connectors 300
Figure 3-146 Laser scanner assembly 300
Figure 3-147 Left dummy cover 303
Figure 3-148 Remove the left cover 303
Figure 3-149 Remove the laser scanner assembly fan 304
Figure 3-150 Remove the formatter cover 306
Figure 3-151 Remove the lower rear cover 307
Figure 3-152 Remove the upper rear cover 307
Figure 3-153 Remove the left rear corner cover 308
Figure 3-154 Remove one screw 308
Figure 3-155 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 309
Figure 3-156 Identify the formatter cables 309
Figure 3-157 Disconnect one connector 310
Figure 3-158 Remove the main board 310
Figure 3-159 Position of MSOK board 311
Figure 3-160 Install the MSOK board 311
Figure 3-161 Install the flat cable 312
Figure 3-162 Remove the formatter cover 314
Figure 3-163 Remove the lower rear cover 315
Figure 3-164 Remove the LVPS cover 315
Figure 3-165 Remove the formatter cover 318
Figure 3-166 Remove the lower rear cover 319
Figure 3-167 Remove the LVPS fans 319
Figure 3-168 Correct installation of LVPS fans 320
Figure 3-169 Remove the formatter cover 322
Figure 3-170 Remove the lower rear cover 323
Figure 3-171 Remove the LVPS cover 323
Figure 3-172 Remove LVPS board 1 324
Figure 3-173 Remove the formatter cover 326
Figure 3-174 Remove the lower rear cover 327
Figure 3-175 Remove the LVPS cover 327
Figure 3-176 LVPS board 2 328
Figure 3-177 Remove the formatter cover 330
Figure 3-178 Remove the lower rear cover 331
Figure 3-179 Remove the upper rear cover 331
Figure 3-180 Remove the shield-LVPS sub upper 332
Figure 3-181 LVPS board 3 332
Figure 3-182 Remove the formatter cover 335

Figure 3-183 Remove the lower rear cover 336
Figure 3-184 Remove the LVPS cover 336
Figure 3-185 Fuser drive board 337
Figure 3-186 Remove the formatter cover 339
Figure 3-187 Remove the lower rear cover 340
Figure 3-188 Remove the LVPS cover 340
Figure 3-189 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 341
Figure 3-190 Disconnect one connector 341
Figure 3-191 Disconnect one connector and remove four screws 342
Figure 3-192 Remove the fan shroud 342
Figure 3-193 Release the cables 343
Figure 3-194 Remove two screws and release five tabs 343
Figure 3-195 Remove the developer fan 344
Figure 3-196 Remove the formatter cover 346
Figure 3-197 Remove the lower rear cover 347
Figure 3-198 Remove the LVPS cover 347
Figure 3-199 Disconnect one connector 348
Figure 3-200 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 348
Figure 3-201 Remove the formatter cover 351
Figure 3-202 Remove the lower rear cover 352
Figure 3-203 Remove the upper rear cover 352
Figure 3-204 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 353
Figure 3-205 Disconnect one connector 353
Figure 3-206 LVPS connectors installation 354
Figure 3-207 Release the cables and remove three screws 354
Figure 3-208 Disconnect one connector 355
Figure 3-209 Release five tabs 355
Figure 3-210 Remove the fuser fan 356
Figure 3-211 Remove the formatter cover 358
Figure 3-212 Remove the lower rear cover 359
Figure 3-213 Remove the upper rear cover 359
Figure 3-214 Remove the left rear corner cover 360
Figure 3-215 Remove one screw 360
Figure 3-216 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 361
Figure 3-217 Identify the formatter cables 361
Figure 3-218 Disconnect and release cables 362
Figure 3-219 Disconnect flat cables 362
Figure 3-220 Remove eight screws 363
Figure 3-221 Remove the main drive unit 363
Figure 3-222 Remove cables and guides 364
Figure 3-223 Remove the formatter cover 366

Figure 3-224 Remove the lower rear cover 367
Figure 3-225 Remove the upper rear cover 367
Figure 3-226 Remove the left rear corner cover 368
Figure 3-227 Remove one screw 368
Figure 3-228 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 369
Figure 3-229 Identify the formatter cables 369
Figure 3-230 Disconnect and release cables 370
Figure 3-231 Disconnect flat cables 370
Figure 3-232 Remove eight screws 371
Figure 3-233 Remove the main drive unit 371
Figure 3-234 Remove cables and guides 372
Figure 3-235 Remove the alienation motor 372
Figure 3-236 Remove the formatter cover 375
Figure 3-237 Remove the lower rear cover 376
Figure 3-238 Remove the LVPS cover 376
Figure 3-239 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 377
Figure 3-240 Remove the inductor unit 377
Figure 3-241 Remove the formatter cover 380
Figure 3-242 Remove the lower rear cover 381
Figure 3-243 Remove the LVPS cover 381
Figure 3-244 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 382
Figure 3-245 Remove the CST rail cover 382
Figure 3-246 Remove the auto closing unit 383
Figure 3-247 Remove the formatter cover 385
Figure 3-248 Remove the lower rear cover 386
Figure 3-249 Remove the upper rear cover 386
Figure 3-250 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 387
Figure 3-251 Disconnect one connector 387
Figure 3-252 LVPS connectors installation 388
Figure 3-253 Release the cables and remove three screws 388
Figure 3-254 Disconnect one connector 389
Figure 3-255 Release five tabs 389
Figure 3-256 Remove the fuser fan 390
Figure 3-257 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 390
Figure 3-258 Remove the formatter cover 393
Figure 3-259 Remove the lower rear cover 394
Figure 3-260 Remove the upper rear cover 394
Figure 3-261 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 395
Figure 3-262 Disconnect one connector 395
Figure 3-263 LVPS connectors installation 396
Figure 3-264 Release the cables and remove three screws 396

Figure 3-265 Disconnect one connector 397
Figure 3-266 Release five tabs 397
Figure 3-267 Remove the fuser fan 398
Figure 3-268 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 398
Figure 3-269 Remove the side door open sensor 399
Figure 3-270 Remove the formatter cover 401
Figure 3-271 Remove the lower rear cover 402
Figure 3-272 Remove the upper rear cover 402
Figure 3-273 Disconnect connectors and remove screws 403
Figure 3-274 Disconnect one connector 403
Figure 3-275 LVPS connectors installation 404
Figure 3-276 Release the cables and remove three screws 404
Figure 3-277 Disconnect one connector 405
Figure 3-278 Release five tabs 405
Figure 3-279 Remove the fuser fan 406
Figure 3-280 Remove the fuser/output drive unit 406
Figure 3-281 Remove the side door open sensor 407
Figure 3-282 Remove micro-switch 407
Figure 3-283 Remove the formatter cover 410
Figure 3-284 Remove the lower rear cover 411
Figure 3-285 Remove the LVPS cover 411
Figure 3-286 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage 412
Figure 3-287 Remove pickup drive unit 1 412
Figure 3-288 Remove the formatter cover 415
Figure 3-289 Remove the lower rear cover 416
Figure 3-290 Remove pickup drive unit 2 416
Figure 3-291 Remove the formatter cover 419
Figure 3-292 Remove the lower rear cover 420
Figure 3-293 Remove the feed/MP drive unit 420
Figure 3-294 Remove the formatter cover 423
Figure 3-295 Remove the lower rear cover 424
Figure 3-296 Remove the upper rear cover 424
Figure 3-297 Remove the left rear corner cover 425
Figure 3-298 Remove one screw 425
Figure 3-299 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 426
Figure 3-300 Identify the formatter cables 426
Figure 3-301 Disconnect and release cables 427
Figure 3-302 Disconnect flat cables 427
Figure 3-303 Remove eight screws 428
Figure 3-304 Remove the main drive unit 428
Figure 3-305 Remove cables and guides 429

Figure 3-306 Remove the registration drive assembly 429
Figure 3-307 Remove the formatter cover 432
Figure 3-308 Remove the lower rear cover 433
Figure 3-309 Remove the upper rear cover 433
Figure 3-310 Remove the left rear corner cover 434
Figure 3-311 Remove one screw 434
Figure 3-312 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 435
Figure 3-313 Identify the formatter cables 435
Figure 3-314 Disconnect one connector 436
Figure 3-315 Remove one screw 436
Figure 3-316 Remove five screws 437
Figure 3-317 Install the flat cable 437
Figure 3-318 Remove the toner supply drive unit 438
Figure 3-319 Remove the formatter cover 440
Figure 3-320 Remove the lower rear cover 441
Figure 3-321 Remove the upper rear cover 441
Figure 3-322 Remove the left rear corner cover 442
Figure 3-323 Remove one screw 442
Figure 3-324 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 443
Figure 3-325 Identify the formatter cables 443
Figure 3-326 Disconnect one connector 444
Figure 3-327 Remove one screw 444
Figure 3-328 Remove five screws 445
Figure 3-329 Install the flat cable 445
Figure 3-330 Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors 446
Figure 3-331 Remove the formatter cover 448
Figure 3-332 Remove the lower rear cover 449
Figure 3-333 Remove the upper rear cover 449
Figure 3-334 Remove the left rear corner cover 450
Figure 3-335 Remove one screw 450
Figure 3-336 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws 451
Figure 3-337 Identify the formatter cables 451
Figure 3-338 Disconnect one connector 452
Figure 3-339 Remove one screw 452
Figure 3-340 Remove five screws 453
Figure 3-341 Install the flat cable 453
Figure 3-342 Remove the toner supply drive unit 454
Figure 3-343 Remove the CRUM connector 454
Figure 3-344 Remove the front cover 457
Figure 3-345 Remove the front top inner cover 458
Figure 3-346 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 458

Figure 3-347 Remove the front power cover 459
Figure 3-348 Remove the output bin 459
Figure 3-349 Remove the paper dust brush 460
Figure 3-350 Remove seven screws 460
Figure 3-351 Remove the inner cover 461
Figure 3-352 Remove the TCU drive 461
Figure 3-353 Remove the TCU 464
Figure 3-354 Remove the front cover 465
Figure 3-355 Remove the front top inner cover 465
Figure 3-356 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 466
Figure 3-357 Remove the front power cover 466
Figure 3-358 Remove the output bin 467
Figure 3-359 Remove the paper dust brush 467
Figure 3-360 Remove seven screws 468
Figure 3-361 Remove the inner cover 468
Figure 3-362 Remove the TCU unit detect sensor 469
Figure 3-363 Remove the front cover 471
Figure 3-364 Remove the front top inner cover 472
Figure 3-365 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 472
Figure 3-366 Remove the front power cover 473
Figure 3-367 Remove the output bin 473
Figure 3-368 Remove the paper dust brush 474
Figure 3-369 Remove seven screws 474
Figure 3-370 Remove the inner cover 475
Figure 3-371 Close the shutters and release the cables 475
Figure 3-372 Disconnect four connectors 476
Figure 3-373 Remove drum units 476
Figure 3-374 Lower the developer release levers 477
Figure 3-375 Release the toner supply pipes 477
Figure 3-376 Remove eight screws 478
Figure 3-377 Disconnect one connector and release the cables 478
Figure 3-378 Remove the black toner reservoir 479
Figure 3-379 Position the locator pins 479
Figure 3-380 Remove screws 482
Figure 3-381 Remove the front cover 484
Figure 3-382 Remove the front top inner cover 485
Figure 3-383 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 485
Figure 3-384 Remove the front power cover 486
Figure 3-385 Remove the output bin 486
Figure 3-386 Remove the paper dust brush 487
Figure 3-387 Remove seven screws 487

Figure 3-388 Remove the inner cover 488
Figure 3-389 Remove the front cover open sensor 488
Figure 3-390 Remove four screws 491
Figure 3-391 Remove the right rear cover 491
Figure 3-392 Disconnect one connector 492
Figure 3-393 Release the right hinge 492
Figure 3-394 Release the left dampener 493
Figure 3-395 Remove the right door 493
Figure 3-396 Remove one screw 494
Figure 3-397 Remove one screw 494
Figure 3-398 Remove one screw 494
Figure 3-399 Disconnect one connector 495
Figure 3-400 Remove four screws 497
Figure 3-401 Remove the right rear cover 497
Figure 3-402 Disconnect one connector 498
Figure 3-403 Release the right hinge 498
Figure 3-404 Release the left dampener 499
Figure 3-405 Remove the right door 499
Figure 3-406 Remove four screws 500
Figure 3-407 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover 500
Figure 3-408 Remove two screws 501
Figure 3-409 Remove one screw 501
Figure 3-410 Remove the feed guide take away lower 502
Figure 3-411 Remove two screws 502
Figure 3-412 Remove the feed guide take away upper 503
Figure 3-413 Disconnect one connector and remove the feed 2 sensor 503
Figure 3-414 Remove four screws 506
Figure 3-415 Remove the right rear cover 506
Figure 3-416 Disconnect one connector 507
Figure 3-417 Release the right hinge 507
Figure 3-418 Release the left dampener 508
Figure 3-419 Remove the right door 508
Figure 3-420 Release the hinge arm 509
Figure 3-421 Remove one screw and bushing cover 509
Figure 3-422 Remove one e-ring and bushing 510
Figure 3-423 Remove one e-ring and bushing 510
Figure 3-424 Remove the shaft 511
Figure 3-425 Remove one screw 511
Figure 3-426 Release the hinge 512
Figure 3-427 Remove one screw 512
Figure 3-428 Remove one screw 513

Figure 3-429 Release the feed roller assembly 513
Figure 3-430 Rotate the feed roller assembly 514
Figure 3-431 Remove three screws 514
Figure 3-432 Remove the duplex lower guide 515
Figure 3-433 Remove one screw 515
Figure 3-434 Remove two screws 516
Figure 3-435 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 516
Figure 3-436 Release the MP unit 517
Figure 3-437 Remove the MP unit 517
Figure 3-438 Remove four screws 520
Figure 3-439 Remove the right rear cover 521
Figure 3-440 Disconnect one connector 521
Figure 3-441 Release the right hinge 522
Figure 3-442 Release the left dampener 522
Figure 3-443 Remove the right door 523
Figure 3-444 Remove four screws 523
Figure 3-445 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover 524
Figure 3-446 Remove two screws 524
Figure 3-447 Remove one screw 525
Figure 3-448 Remove the feed guide take away lower 525
Figure 3-449 Remove two screws 526
Figure 3-450 Remove the feed guide take away upper 526
Figure 3-451 Release the hinge arm 527
Figure 3-452 Remove one screw and bushing cover 527
Figure 3-453 Remove one e-ring and bushing 528
Figure 3-454 Remove one e-ring and bushing 528
Figure 3-455 Remove the shaft 529
Figure 3-456 Remove one screw 529
Figure 3-457 Release the hinge 530
Figure 3-458 Remove one screw 530
Figure 3-459 Remove one screw 531
Figure 3-460 Release the feed roller assembly 531
Figure 3-461 Rotate the feed roller assembly 532
Figure 3-462 Remove three screws 532
Figure 3-463 Remove the duplex lower guide 533
Figure 3-464 Remove one screw 533
Figure 3-465 Remove two screws 534
Figure 3-466 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 534
Figure 3-467 Release the MP unit 535
Figure 3-468 Remove the MP unit 535
Figure 3-469 Remove the MP empty sensor 536

Figure 3-470 Remove four screws 538
Figure 3-471 Remove the right rear cover 539
Figure 3-472 Disconnect one connector 539
Figure 3-473 Release the right hinge 540
Figure 3-474 Release the left dampener 540
Figure 3-475 Remove the right door 541
Figure 3-476 Remove four screws 541
Figure 3-477 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover 542
Figure 3-478 Remove two screws 542
Figure 3-479 Remove one screw 543
Figure 3-480 Remove the feed guide take away lower 543
Figure 3-481 Remove two screws 544
Figure 3-482 Remove the feed guide take away upper 544
Figure 3-483 Release the hinge arm 545
Figure 3-484 Remove one screw and bushing cover 545
Figure 3-485 Remove one e-ring and bushing 546
Figure 3-486 Remove one e-ring and bushing 546
Figure 3-487 Remove the shaft 547
Figure 3-488 Remove one screw 547
Figure 3-489 Release the hinge 548
Figure 3-490 Remove one screw 548
Figure 3-491 Remove one screw 549
Figure 3-492 Release the feed roller assembly 549
Figure 3-493 Rotate the feed roller assembly 550
Figure 3-494 Remove three screws 550
Figure 3-495 Remove the duplex lower guide 551
Figure 3-496 Remove one screw 551
Figure 3-497 Remove two screws 552
Figure 3-498 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 552
Figure 3-499 Release the MP unit 553
Figure 3-500 Remove the MP unit 553
Figure 3-501 Remove the MP Tray upper 554
Figure 3-502 Remove the MP paper length sensor 554
Figure 3-503 Remove four screws 557
Figure 3-504 Remove the right rear cover 558
Figure 3-505 Disconnect one connector 558
Figure 3-506 Release the right hinge 559
Figure 3-507 Release the left dampener 559
Figure 3-508 Remove the right door 560
Figure 3-509 Remove four screws 560
Figure 3-510 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover 561

Figure 3-511 Remove two screws 561
Figure 3-512 Remove one screw 562
Figure 3-513 Remove the feed guide take away lower 562
Figure 3-514 Remove two screws 563
Figure 3-515 Remove the feed guide take away upper 563
Figure 3-516 Release the hinge arm 564
Figure 3-517 Remove one screw and bushing cover 564
Figure 3-518 Remove one e-ring and bushing 565
Figure 3-519 Remove one e-ring and bushing 565
Figure 3-520 Remove the shaft 566
Figure 3-521 Remove one screw 566
Figure 3-522 Release the hinge 567
Figure 3-523 Remove one screw 567
Figure 3-524 Remove one screw 568
Figure 3-525 Release the feed roller assembly 568
Figure 3-526 Rotate the feed roller assembly 569
Figure 3-527 Remove three screws 569
Figure 3-528 Remove the duplex lower guide 570
Figure 3-529 Remove one screw 570
Figure 3-530 Remove two screws 571
Figure 3-531 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 571
Figure 3-532 Release the MP unit 572
Figure 3-533 Remove the MP unit 572
Figure 3-534 Remove two screws and three gears 573
Figure 3-535 Remove the bracket-rear 573
Figure 3-536 Remove seven screws 573
Figure 3-537 Remove two screws 574
Figure 3-538 Remove four screws 576
Figure 3-539 Remove the right rear cover 577
Figure 3-540 Disconnect one connector 577
Figure 3-541 Release the right hinge 578
Figure 3-542 Release the left dampener 578
Figure 3-543 Remove the right door 579
Figure 3-544 Remove the front top inner cover 579
Figure 3-545 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 580
Figure 3-546 Remove the front power cover 580
Figure 3-547 Remove the top right cover 581
Figure 3-548 Fuser unit screw locations 581
Figure 3-549 Fuser unit removal 582
Figure 3-550 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 582
Figure 3-551 Remove the output unit 583

Figure 3-552 Remove four screws 585
Figure 3-553 Remove the right rear cover 586
Figure 3-554 Disconnect one connector 586
Figure 3-555 Release the right hinge 587
Figure 3-556 Release the left dampener 587
Figure 3-557 Remove the right door 588
Figure 3-558 Remove the front top inner cover 588
Figure 3-559 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 589
Figure 3-560 Remove the front power cover 589
Figure 3-561 Remove the top right cover 590
Figure 3-562 Fuser unit screw locations 590
Figure 3-563 Fuser unit removal 591
Figure 3-564 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 591
Figure 3-565 Remove the output unit 592
Figure 3-566 Return sensor 592
Figure 3-567 Remove four screws 595
Figure 3-568 Remove the right rear cover 596
Figure 3-569 Disconnect one connector 596
Figure 3-570 Release the right hinge 597
Figure 3-571 Release the left dampener 597
Figure 3-572 Remove the right door 598
Figure 3-573 Remove the front top inner cover 598
Figure 3-574 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 599
Figure 3-575 Remove the front power cover 599
Figure 3-576 Remove the top right cover 600
Figure 3-577 Fuser unit screw locations 600
Figure 3-578 Fuser unit removal 601
Figure 3-579 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 601
Figure 3-580 Remove the output unit 602
Figure 3-581 Remove two screws 602
Figure 3-582 Remove the duplex 1 sensor 603
Figure 3-583 Remove four screws 605
Figure 3-584 Remove the right rear cover 606
Figure 3-585 Disconnect one connector 606
Figure 3-586 Release the right hinge 607
Figure 3-587 Release the left dampener 607
Figure 3-588 Remove the right door 608
Figure 3-589 Remove the front top inner cover 608
Figure 3-590 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 609
Figure 3-591 Remove the front power cover 609
Figure 3-592 Remove the top right cover 610

Figure 3-593 Fuser unit screw locations 610
Figure 3-594 Fuser unit removal 611
Figure 3-595 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 611
Figure 3-596 Remove the output unit 612
Figure 3-597 Remove one screw and the guide 612
Figure 3-598 Remove the black adhesive strip 613
Figure 3-599 Release two tabs 613
Figure 3-600 Disconnect one connector 614
Figure 3-601 Remove the output 1 bin full sensor 614
Figure 3-602 Remove four screws 617
Figure 3-603 Remove the right rear cover 618
Figure 3-604 Disconnect one connector 618
Figure 3-605 Release the right hinge 619
Figure 3-606 Release the left dampener 619
Figure 3-607 Remove the right door 620
Figure 3-608 Remove the front top inner cover 620
Figure 3-609 Remove two screws and rotate the cover 621
Figure 3-610 Remove the front power cover 621
Figure 3-611 Remove the top right cover 622
Figure 3-612 Fuser unit screw locations 622
Figure 3-613 Fuser unit removal 623
Figure 3-614 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 623
Figure 3-615 Remove the output unit 624
Figure 3-616 On the output unit, disconnect one connector and remove two gears 624
Figure 3-617 Output gate solenoid 625
Figure 3-618 Remove four screws 627
Figure 3-619 Remove the right rear cover 627
Figure 3-620 Disconnect one connector 628
Figure 3-621 Release the right hinge 628
Figure 3-622 Release the left dampener 629
Figure 3-623 Remove the right door 629
Figure 3-624 Remove one screw and the cover 630
Figure 3-625 Remove three screws 630
Figure 3-626 Rotate pickup unit 2 631
Figure 3-627 Disconnect one connector 631
Figure 3-628 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 632
Figure 3-629 Remove four screws 634
Figure 3-630 Remove the right rear cover 635
Figure 3-631 Disconnect one connector 635
Figure 3-632 Release the right hinge 636
Figure 3-633 Release the left dampener 636

Figure 3-634 Remove the right door 637
Figure 3-635 Remove one screw and the cover 637
Figure 3-636 Remove three screws 638
Figure 3-637 Rotate pickup unit 2 638
Figure 3-638 Disconnect one connector 639
Figure 3-639 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 639
Figure 3-640 Remove the sensor 640
Figure 3-641 Remove four screws 642
Figure 3-642 Remove the right rear cover 642
Figure 3-643 Disconnect one connector 643
Figure 3-644 Release the right hinge 643
Figure 3-645 Release the left dampener 644
Figure 3-646 Remove the right door 644
Figure 3-647 Remove one screw and the cover 645
Figure 3-648 Remove three screws 645
Figure 3-649 Rotate pickup unit 2 646
Figure 3-650 Disconnect one connector 646
Figure 3-651 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 647
Figure 3-652 Remove prefeed sensor 2 647
Figure 3-653 Remove four screws 650
Figure 3-654 Remove the right rear cover 650
Figure 3-655 Disconnect one connector 651
Figure 3-656 Release the right hinge 651
Figure 3-657 Release the left dampener 652
Figure 3-658 Remove the right door 652
Figure 3-659 Remove one screw and the cover 653
Figure 3-660 Remove three screws 653
Figure 3-661 Rotate pickup unit 2 654
Figure 3-662 Disconnect one connector 654
Figure 3-663 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 655
Figure 3-664 Remove three screws 655
Figure 3-665 Rotate pickup unit 1 656
Figure 3-666 Disconnect one connector 656
Figure 3-667 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 657
Figure 3-668 Remove four screws 659
Figure 3-669 Remove the right rear cover 660
Figure 3-670 Disconnect one connector 660
Figure 3-671 Release the right hinge 661
Figure 3-672 Release the left dampener 661
Figure 3-673 Remove the right door 662
Figure 3-674 Remove one screw and the cover 662

Figure 3-675 Remove three screws 663
Figure 3-676 Rotate pickup unit 2 663
Figure 3-677 Disconnect one connector 664
Figure 3-678 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 664
Figure 3-679 Remove three screws 665
Figure 3-680 Rotate pickup unit 1 665
Figure 3-681 Disconnect one connector 666
Figure 3-682 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 666
Figure 3-683 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor 667
Figure 3-684 Remove four screws 669
Figure 3-685 Remove the right rear cover 670
Figure 3-686 Disconnect one connector 670
Figure 3-687 Release the right hinge 671
Figure 3-688 Release the left dampener 671
Figure 3-689 Remove the right door 672
Figure 3-690 Remove one screw and the cover 672
Figure 3-691 Remove three screws 673
Figure 3-692 Rotate pickup unit 2 673
Figure 3-693 Disconnect one connector 674
Figure 3-694 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 674
Figure 3-695 Remove three screws 675
Figure 3-696 Rotate pickup unit 1 675
Figure 3-697 Disconnect one connector 676
Figure 3-698 Align gear, coupler, and bracket 676
Figure 3-699 Remove five screws and the bracket. 677
Figure 3-700 Remove the sensor 677
Figure 3-701 Remove four screws 680
Figure 3-702 Remove the right rear cover 680
Figure 3-703 Disconnect one connector 681
Figure 3-704 Release the right hinge 681
Figure 3-705 Release the left dampener 682
Figure 3-706 Remove the right door 682
Figure 3-707 Remove the paper dust brush 683
Figure 3-708 Remove two screws 683
Figure 3-709 Remove the gear cover 684
Figure 3-710 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 684
Figure 3-711 Remove the registration assembly 685
Figure 3-712 Install the gear side of the shaft 685
Figure 3-713 Remove the bushing 686
Figure 3-714 Install the bushing 686
Figure 3-715 Install the front of the shaft 687

Figure 3-716 Remove four screws 689
Figure 3-717 Remove the right rear cover 690
Figure 3-718 Disconnect one connector 690
Figure 3-719 Release the right hinge 691
Figure 3-720 Release the left dampener 691
Figure 3-721 Remove the right door 692
Figure 3-722 Remove the paper dust brush 692
Figure 3-723 Remove two screws 693
Figure 3-724 Remove the gear cover 693
Figure 3-725 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 694
Figure 3-726 Remove the registration assembly 694
Figure 3-727 Install the gear side of the shaft 695
Figure 3-728 Remove the bushing 695
Figure 3-729 Install the bushing 696
Figure 3-730 Install the front of the shaft 696
Figure 3-731 Remove three screws and the cover 697
Figure 3-732 Release retainers and remove five screws 697
Figure 3-733 Release one retainer and disconnect two connectors 698
Figure 3-734 Remove the front top inner cover 700
Figure 3-735 Remove the output bin 700
Figure 3-736 Remove the HDD cover 701
Figure 3-737 Remove the HDD 701
Figure 3-738 Remove document feeder connector cover 704
Figure 3-739 Remove the cable choke 704
Figure 3-740 Disconnect document feeder harness 705
Figure 3-741 Alignment marks 705
Figure 3-742 Remove screws 706
Figure 3-743 Release the document feeder 706
Figure 3-744 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 709
Figure 3-745 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 709
Figure 3-746 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 710
Figure 3-747 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 710
Figure 3-748 Disconnect one connector 711
Figure 3-749 Remove the jam access cover ground wire 711
Figure 3-750 Remove the jam access cover door arm support 712
Figure 3-751 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 715
Figure 3-752 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 715
Figure 3-753 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 716
Figure 3-754 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 716
Figure 3-755 Remove the document feeder damping unit 717
Figure 3-756 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover screws 717

Figure 3-757 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly 718
Figure 3-758 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector 718
Figure 3-759 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 722
Figure 3-760 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 722
Figure 3-761 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 723
Figure 3-762 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 723
Figure 3-763 Remove the pickup roller assembly 724
Figure 3-764 Remove the document feeder paper path cover 724
Figure 3-765 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws 725
Figure 3-766 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin 725
Figure 3-767 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 728
Figure 3-768 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 728
Figure 3-769 Remove the document feeder front motor 729
Figure 3-770 Document feeder motors 733
Figure 3-771 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 734
Figure 3-772 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 734
Figure 3-773 Remove the motor 735
Figure 3-774 Disconnect one connector 736
Figure 3-775 Pickup motor 737
Figure 3-776 Pre-REGI motor 737
Figure 3-777 Remove the main fan 738
Figure 3-778 Remove the motor 738
Figure 3-779 Disconnect one connector 739
Figure 3-780 Remove the motor 739
Figure 3-781 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 742
Figure 3-782 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 742
Figure 3-783 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector 743
Figure 3-784 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 745
Figure 3-785 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 745
Figure 3-786 Remove the document feeder PCA fan 746
Figure 3-787 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws 749
Figure 3-788 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws 749
Figure 3-789 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws 750
Figure 3-790 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws 750
Figure 3-791 Remove the pickup roller assembly 751
Figure 3-792 Remove the document feeder paper path cover 751
Figure 3-793 Remove one screw 752
Figure 3-794 Remove the pick/feed cover 752
Figure 3-795 Remove the ultrasonic sensor 753
Figure 3-796 Remove the formatter cover 757
Figure 3-797 Remove the upper rear cover 758

Figure 3-798 Remove document feeder connector cover 758
Figure 3-799 Remove the cable choke 759
Figure 3-800 Disconnect document feeder harness 759
Figure 3-801 Alignment marks 760
Figure 3-802 Remove screws 760
Figure 3-803 Release the document feeder 761
Figure 3-804 Remove the document feeder bezel 761
Figure 3-805 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors 762
Figure 3-806 Remove the USB interconnect cable 762
Figure 3-807 Disconnect one FFC 763
Figure 3-808 Remove the control-panel keyboard 763
Figure 3-809 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover 764
Figure 3-810 Release scan-left cover 764
Figure 3-811 Remove scan-right cover 765
Figure 3-812 Disconnect scan cables 765
Figure 3-813 Remove screws 766
Figure 3-814 Remove screws 766
Figure 3-815 Lift up and release image scanner unit 766
Figure 3-816 Remove scan glass 769
Figure 3-817 Remove the formatter cover 771
Figure 3-818 Remove the upper rear cover 771
Figure 3-819 Remove document feeder connector cover 772
Figure 3-820 Remove the cable choke 772
Figure 3-821 Disconnect document feeder harness 773
Figure 3-822 Alignment marks 773
Figure 3-823 Remove screws 774
Figure 3-824 Release the document feeder 774
Figure 3-825 Remove scan glass 775
Figure 3-826 Remove transparent tape 776
Figure 3-827 Disconnect cable 776
Figure 3-828 Remove screws and release LED lamp module 776
Figure 3-829 Remove scan glass 779
Figure 3-830 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover 779
Figure 3-831 Disconnect flat cable 780
Figure 3-832 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit 780
Figure 3-833 Remove the formatter cover 783
Figure 3-834 Remove the upper rear cover 783
Figure 3-835 Remove document feeder connector cover 784
Figure 3-836 Remove the cable choke 784
Figure 3-837 Disconnect document feeder harness 785
Figure 3-838 Alignment marks 785

Figure 3-839 Remove screws 786
Figure 3-840 Release the document feeder 786
Figure 3-841 Release scan-left cover 787
Figure 3-842 Remove scan-right cover 787
Figure 3-843 Remove three screws 788
Figure 3-844 Remove three screws and the scanner rear cover 788
Figure 3-845 Remove screws and release scan joint board 789
Figure 3-846 Remove document feeder connector cover 791
Figure 3-847 Remove the cable choke 791
Figure 3-848 Disconnect document feeder harness 792
Figure 3-849 Alignment marks 792
Figure 3-850 Remove screws 793
Figure 3-851 Release the document feeder 793
Figure 3-852 Remove scan glass 794
Figure 3-853 Remove joint board cover 794
Figure 3-854 Remove screw 794
Figure 3-855 Disconnect harness 795
Figure 3-856 Remove screws and release APS sensor 795
Figure 3-857 Remove four screws 799
Figure 3-858 Remove the right rear cover 799
Figure 3-859 Disconnect one connector 800
Figure 3-860 Release the right hinge 800
Figure 3-861 Release the left dampener 801
Figure 3-862 Remove the right door 801
Figure 3-863 Remove the lower right cover 802
Figure 3-864 Slide the hinge pin 802
Figure 3-865 Remove the DCF right door 803
Figure 3-866 Remove the DCF rear cover 805
Figure 3-867 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer 805
Figure 3-868 Remove the feed drive unit 806
Figure 3-869 Remove the feed motor 806
Figure 3-870 Remove the DCF rear cover 809
Figure 3-871 Remove the DCF pickup motor 809
Figure 3-872 Remove the DCF rear cover 811
Figure 3-873 Remove the DCF PCA 811
Figure 3-874 Remove four screws 814
Figure 3-875 Remove the right rear cover 814
Figure 3-876 Disconnect one connector 815
Figure 3-877 Release the right hinge 815
Figure 3-878 Release the left dampener 816
Figure 3-879 Remove the right door 816

Figure 3-880 Remove the lower right cover 817
Figure 3-881 Slide the hinge pin 817
Figure 3-882 Remove the DCF right door 818
Figure 3-883 Remove two screws and the cable cover 818
Figure 3-884 Remove five screws and two brackets 819
Figure 3-885 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws 819
Figure 3-886 Remove the pickup units 820
Figure 3-887 Remove the rear cover 823
Figure 3-888 Disconnect two connectors and open the clamp 823
Figure 3-889 Remove the feed drive unit 823
Figure 3-890 Remove the feed motor 824
Figure 3-891 Remove the rear cover 826
Figure 3-892 Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor 826
Figure 3-893 Remove the rear cover 829
Figure 3-894 Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA 829
Figure 3-895 Remove the rear cover 832
Figure 3-896 Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor 832
Figure 3-897 Remove the rear cover 834
Figure 3-898 Remove the shaft motor 834
Figure 3-899 Remove the sHCI rear cover 837
Figure 3-900 Right sHCI cover 839
Figure 3-901 Remove the sHCI cable cover 839
Figure 3-902 Remove the sHCI rear cover 839
Figure 3-903 Drive PH 840
Figure 3-904 Feed motor 840
Figure 3-905 Right sHCI cover 843
Figure 3-906 Remove the sHCI cable cover 843
Figure 3-907 Remove the sHCI rear cover 843
Figure 3-908 Pickup motor 844
Figure 3-909 Right sHCI cover 846
Figure 3-910 Remove the sHCI cable cover 846
Figure 3-911 Remove the sHCI rear cover 846
Figure 3-912 sHCI PCA 847
Figure 3-913 Right sHCI cover 849
Figure 3-914 Remove the sHCI cable cover 849
Figure 3-915 Remove the sHCI rear cover 849
Figure 3-916 sHCI lift-up motor 850
Figure 4-1 Main assembly 854
Figure 4-2 Output 856
Figure 4-3 First cassette 858
Figure 4-4 Second cassette 860

Figure 4-5 Main frame assembly 862
Figure 4-6 Main frame registration 864
Figure 4-7 CPR frame assemlby 866
Figure 4-8 Toner frame guide (CMYK) 868
Figure 4-9 Rear frame assembly 870
Figure 4-10 Drive system 872
Figure 4-11 Main frame pickup 1 and 2 874
Figure 4-12 Main frame pickup 876
Figure 4-13 Cover 878
Figure 4-14 Right door 880
Figure 4-15 MP tray 882
Figure 4-16 Right door guide 884
Figure 4-17 Right door output and takeaway 886
Figure 4-18 T2 transfer 888
Figure 4-19 Flow ADF 890
Figure 4-20 Flow ADF open cover 892
Figure 4-21 Flow ADF upper pickup 894
Figure 4-22 Flow ADF stacker 896
Figure 4-23 Flow ADF main frame 898
Figure 4-24 Flow ADF image scanner 900
Figure 4-25 Flow ADF image scanner, lower 902
Figure 4-26 DCF main 904
Figure 4-27 DCF frame 906
Figure 4-28 DCF rear frame 908
Figure 4-29 Opt feed drive 910
Figure 4-30 DCF second pickup 912
Figure 4-31 HCI main 914
Figure 4-32 HCI drive 916
Figure 4-33 HCI cassette 918
Figure 4-34 HCI frame 920
Figure 4-35 HCI main pickup 922
Figure 4-36 sHCI main 1 924
Figure 4-37 sHCI main 3 926
Figure 4-38 sHCI main 5 928
Figure 4-39 sHCI main 6 930
Figure 4-40 Pickup cover unit 932
Figure 4-41 sHCI frame 934
Figure 4-42 Booklet finisher 936
Figure 4-43 Mainline finisher 1 938
Figure 4-44 Mainline finisher 2 940
Figure 4-45 Mainline finisher 3 942

Figure 4-46 Mainline finisher 4 944
Figure 4-47 Mainline finisher 5 946
Figure 4-48 Mainline finisher 6 948
Figure 4-49 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output 950
Figure 4-50 Low output, hb motor, and top guide 952
Figure 4-51 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide 954
Figure 4-52 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor 956
Figure 4-53 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam 958
Figure 4-54 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade 960
Figure 4-55 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame 962
Figure 4-56 Three fold blade 964
Figure 4-57 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide 966
Figure 4-58 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output 968
Figure 4-59 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor 970
Figure 4-60 Front alignment (tamper) 972
Figure 4-61 Rear alignment (tamper) 974
Figure 4-62 Shield 976
Figure 4-63 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle 978
Figure 4-64 Finisher sub booklet 980
Figure 4-65 IPTU (bridge) 982
Figure 4-66 Sub-inner finisher 984
Figure 4-67 Finisher sub 1 986
Figure 4-68 Finisher sub 7 988
Figure 4-69 Finisher sub 8 990
Figure 5-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 1041
Figure 5-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 1042
Figure 5-3 No control panel sound 1043
Figure 5-4 Home button is unresponsive 1044
Figure 5-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional) 1045
Figure 5-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock 1047
Figure 5-8 Defeat the front door interlock 1048
Figure 5-12 Open the Control Panel 1065
Figure 5-13 Turn Windows features on or off 1065
Figure 5-14 Enable the telnet client feature 1066
Figure 5-15 Select the +3:Administrator item 1067
Figure 5-16 Select the +A:Remote Admin item 1067
Figure 5-17 Select the 1:Start Telnet item 1067
Figure 5-18 Telnet connecting message 1067
Figure 5-19 Telnet error message 1068
Figure 5-20 Telnet server function initialized 1068
Figure 5-21 Open a command window 1069

Figure 5-22 Start a telnet session 1069
Figure 5-23 Establish a telnet connection 1069
Figure 5-24 Enter the PIN 1070
Figure 5-25 Remote Admin window 1070
Figure 5-26 Access the administrator menu 1071
Figure 5-27 Access the remote admin menu 1071
Figure 5-28 Terminate the telnet connection 1072
Figure 5-29 Open the Flow ADF cover 1146
Figure 5-30 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1147
Figure 5-31 Open the Flow ADF cover 1147
Figure 5-32 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1148
Figure 5-33 Open input tray 1148
Figure 5-34 Remove jam from the Flow ADF 1149
Figure 5-35 Open the Flow ADF 1149
Figure 5-36 Remove jam from the feed area 1150
Figure 5-37 Open right door 1150
Figure 5-38 Remove jam 1151
Figure 5-39 Remove tray 1151
Figure 5-40 Remove jam 1152
Figure 5-41 Open bottom right door 1152
Figure 5-42 Remove jam 1153
Figure 5-43 Remove paper 1153
Figure 5-44 Open right door 1154
Figure 5-45 Remove jam 1154
Figure 5-46 Open right door 1155
Figure 5-47 Remove jam 1155
Figure 5-48 Open right door 1156
Figure 5-49 Remove jam 1156
Figure 5-50 Open right door 1157
Figure 5-51 Remove jam 1157
Figure 5-52 Remove paper 1158
Figure 5-53 Bin full sensor 1158
Figure 5-54 Service tools view 1159
Figure 5-55 Information 1160
Figure 5-56 Maintenance counts 1162
Figure 5-57 Diagnostics 1163
Figure 5-58 Service functions 1164
Figure 5-62 Typical faulty images 1203
Figure 5-63 Typical faulty images 1204
Figure 5-64 Typical faulty images 1206
Figure 5-65 Typical faulty images 1206

Figure 5-66 Typical faulty images 1207
Figure 5-67 Typical faulty images 1208
Figure 5-68 Typical faulty images 1209
Figure 5-69 Typical faulty images 1210
Figure 5-70 Typical faulty images 1210
Figure 5-71 Typical faulty images 1211
Figure 5-72 Typical faulty images 1213
Figure 5-73 Typical faulty images 1214
Figure 5-74 Typical faulty images 1215
Figure 5-75 Typical faulty images 1218
Figure 7-1 Sensor locations 1256
Figure 7-2 Roller location 1257
Figure 7-3 Jam removal guide 1259
Figure 7-4 Paper path 1260
Figure 7-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2) 1261
Figure 7-6 Electrical parts layout (2 of 2) 1262
Figure 7-7 IPTU 1265
Figure 7-8 Punch unit 1265
Figure 7-9 1266
Figure 7-10 Finisher PCA 1267
Figure 7-11 Switch PCA 1268
Figure 7-12 Booklet maker PCA 1268
Figure 7-13 Remove the top output bin 1275
Figure 7-14 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1277
Figure 7-15 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1280
Figure 7-16 Remove six screws 1281
Figure 7-17 Remove six screws 1281
Figure 7-18 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1282
Figure 7-19 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1284
Figure 7-20 Remove six screws 1285
Figure 7-21 Remove six screws 1285
Figure 7-22 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1286
Figure 7-23 Lift the top hinge pin 1286
Figure 7-24 Remove the top hinge pin 1287
Figure 7-25 Release the lower hinge pin 1287
Figure 7-26 Remove the lower hinge pin 1288
Figure 7-27 Remove one screw and the front door 1288
Figure 7-28 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1291
Figure 7-29 Remove six screws 1292
Figure 7-30 Remove six screws 1292
Figure 7-31 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1293

Figure 7-32 Remove seven screws 1293
Figure 7-33 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1294
Figure 7-34 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1296
Figure 7-35 Remove six screws 1297
Figure 7-36 Remove six screws 1297
Figure 7-37 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1298
Figure 7-38 Lift the top hinge pin 1298
Figure 7-39 Remove the top hinge pin 1299
Figure 7-40 Release the lower hinge pin 1299
Figure 7-41 Remove the lower hinge pin 1300
Figure 7-42 Remove one screw and the front door 1300
Figure 7-43 Remove the jam-access knob 1301
Figure 7-44 Remove one screw 1301
Figure 7-45 Remove five screws and the front cover 1302
Figure 7-46 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1304
Figure 7-47 Remove six screws 1305
Figure 7-48 Remove six screws 1305
Figure 7-49 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1306
Figure 7-50 Lift the top hinge pin 1306
Figure 7-51 Remove the top hinge pin 1307
Figure 7-52 Release the lower hinge pin 1307
Figure 7-53 Remove the lower hinge pin 1308
Figure 7-54 Remove one screw and the front door 1308
Figure 7-55 Remove the jam-access knob 1309
Figure 7-56 Remove one screw 1309
Figure 7-57 Remove five screws and the front cover 1310
Figure 7-58 Remove three screws and the front lower cover 1310
Figure 7-59 Remove the booklet tray 1313
Figure 7-60 Install the booklet tray 1313
Figure 7-61 Remove the booklet tray 1316
Figure 7-62 Install the booklet tray 1316
Figure 7-63 Remove four screws 1317
Figure 7-64 Remove the caster cover 1317
Figure 7-65 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1320
Figure 7-66 Remove six screws 1321
Figure 7-67 Remove six screws 1321
Figure 7-68 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1322
Figure 7-69 Lift the top hinge pin 1322
Figure 7-70 Remove the top hinge pin 1323
Figure 7-71 Release the lower hinge pin 1323
Figure 7-72 Remove the lower hinge pin 1324

Figure 7-73 Remove one screw and the front door 1324
Figure 7-74 Remove the jam-access knob 1325
Figure 7-75 Remove one screw 1325
Figure 7-76 Remove five screws and the front cover 1326
Figure 7-77 Remove seven screws 1326
Figure 7-78 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1327
Figure 7-79 Remove the booklet tray 1327
Figure 7-80 Install the booklet tray 1328
Figure 7-81 Remove four screws 1328
Figure 7-82 Remove the caster cover 1329
Figure 7-83 Remove four screws 1329
Figure 7-84 Release the lower shield 1330
Figure 7-85 Disconnect two connectors 1330
Figure 7-86 Locate sensors 1331
Figure 7-87 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1333
Figure 7-88 Remove six screws 1334
Figure 7-89 Remove six screws 1334
Figure 7-90 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1335
Figure 7-91 Lift the top hinge pin 1335
Figure 7-92 Remove the top hinge pin 1336
Figure 7-93 Release the lower hinge pin 1336
Figure 7-94 Remove the lower hinge pin 1337
Figure 7-95 Remove one screw and the front door 1337
Figure 7-96 Remove the jam-access knob 1338
Figure 7-97 Remove one screw 1338
Figure 7-98 Remove five screws and the front cover 1339
Figure 7-99 Remove seven screws 1339
Figure 7-100 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1340
Figure 7-101 Remove the booklet tray 1340
Figure 7-102 Install the booklet tray 1341
Figure 7-103 Remove four screws 1341
Figure 7-104 Remove the caster cover 1342
Figure 7-105 Remove four screws 1342
Figure 7-106 Release the lower shield 1343
Figure 7-107 Disconnect two connectors 1343
Figure 7-108 Locate sensors 1344
Figure 7-109 Lower the output tray 1344
Figure 7-110 Remove six screws 1345
Figure 7-111 Release the shield 1345
Figure 7-112 Disconnect one connector 1346
Figure 7-113 Locate sensors 1346

Figure 7-114 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1349
Figure 7-115 Remove six screws 1350
Figure 7-116 Remove six screws 1350
Figure 7-117 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1351
Figure 7-118 Remove seven screws 1351
Figure 7-119 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1352
Figure 7-120 Remove the controller PCA 1352
Figure 7-121 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1355
Figure 7-122 Remove six screws 1356
Figure 7-123 Remove six screws 1356
Figure 7-124 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1357
Figure 7-125 Lift the top hinge pin 1357
Figure 7-126 Remove the top hinge pin 1358
Figure 7-127 Release the lower hinge pin 1358
Figure 7-128 Remove the lower hinge pin 1359
Figure 7-129 Remove one screw and the front door 1359
Figure 7-130 Remove the jam-access knob 1360
Figure 7-131 Remove one screw 1360
Figure 7-132 Remove five screws and the front cover 1361
Figure 7-133 Remove seven screws 1361
Figure 7-134 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1362
Figure 7-135 Move the staple unit to the front 1362
Figure 7-136 Remove the staple cartridge 1363
Figure 7-137 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws 1363
Figure 7-138 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws 1364
Figure 7-139 Remove the staple unit 1364
Figure 7-140 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1367
Figure 7-141 Remove six screws 1368
Figure 7-142 Remove six screws 1368
Figure 7-143 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1369
Figure 7-144 Remove seven screws 1369
Figure 7-145 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1370
Figure 7-146 Remove two screws and the feed guide 1370
Figure 7-147 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1373
Figure 7-148 Remove six screws 1374
Figure 7-149 Remove six screws 1374
Figure 7-150 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1375
Figure 7-151 Lift the top hinge pin 1375
Figure 7-152 Remove the top hinge pin 1376
Figure 7-153 Release the lower hinge pin 1376
Figure 7-154 Remove the lower hinge pin 1377

Figure 7-155 Remove one screw and the front door 1377
Figure 7-156 Remove the jam-access knob 1378
Figure 7-157 Remove one screw 1378
Figure 7-158 Remove five screws and the front cover 1379
Figure 7-159 Remove seven screws 1379
Figure 7-160 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1380
Figure 7-161 Remove the feed exit motor 1380
Figure 7-162 Remove two screws 1381
Figure 7-163 Remove the top jam access cover 1381
Figure 7-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1384
Figure 7-165 Remove six screws 1385
Figure 7-166 Remove six screws 1385
Figure 7-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1386
Figure 7-168 Lift the top hinge pin 1386
Figure 7-169 Remove the top hinge pin 1387
Figure 7-170 Release the lower hinge pin 1387
Figure 7-171 Remove the lower hinge pin 1388
Figure 7-172 Remove one screw and the front door 1388
Figure 7-173 Remove the jam-access knob 1389
Figure 7-174 Remove one screw 1389
Figure 7-175 Remove five screws and the front cover 1390
Figure 7-176 Remove seven screws 1390
Figure 7-177 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1391
Figure 7-178 Remove the feed exit motor 1391
Figure 7-179 Remove two screws 1392
Figure 7-180 Remove the top jam access cover 1392
Figure 7-181 Remove two screws 1393
Figure 7-182 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector 1393
Figure 7-183 Remove three screws 1394
Figure 7-184 Remove the feed assembly 1394
Figure 7-185 Locate sensors and connector 1395
Figure 7-186 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1397
Figure 7-187 Remove six screws 1398
Figure 7-188 Remove six screws 1398
Figure 7-189 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1399
Figure 7-190 Lift the top hinge pin 1399
Figure 7-191 Remove the top hinge pin 1400
Figure 7-192 Release the lower hinge pin 1400
Figure 7-193 Remove the lower hinge pin 1401
Figure 7-194 Remove one screw and the front door 1401
Figure 7-195 Remove the jam-access knob 1402

Figure 7-196 Remove one screw 1402
Figure 7-197 Remove five screws and the front cover 1403
Figure 7-198 Remove seven screws 1403
Figure 7-199 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1404
Figure 7-200 Remove the booklet tray 1404
Figure 7-201 Install the booklet tray 1405
Figure 7-202 Remove four screws 1405
Figure 7-203 Remove the caster cover 1406
Figure 7-204 Remove four screws 1406
Figure 7-205 Release the lower shield 1407
Figure 7-206 Disconnect two connectors 1407
Figure 7-207 Locate sensors 1408
Figure 7-208 Lower the output tray 1408
Figure 7-209 Remove six screws 1409
Figure 7-210 Release the shield 1409
Figure 7-211 Disconnect one connector 1410
Figure 7-212 Locate sensors 1410
Figure 7-213 Move the staple unit to the center 1411
Figure 7-214 Disconnect three connectors 1411
Figure 7-215 Remove two screws 1412
Figure 7-216 Remove one screw 1412
Figure 7-217 Rotate the sensor 1413
Figure 7-218 Remove one screw 1413
Figure 7-219 Remove the front tamper shaft 1414
Figure 7-220 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1414
Figure 7-221 Remove one screw 1415
Figure 7-222 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1415
Figure 7-223 Disconnect one connector 1416
Figure 7-224 Disconnect one connector 1416
Figure 7-225 Disconnect one connector 1417
Figure 7-226 Remove two screws 1417
Figure 7-227 Lift the edges of the tampers 1418
Figure 7-228 Remove the ejector unit 1418
Figure 7-229 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1419
Figure 7-230 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1419
Figure 7-231 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1422
Figure 7-232 Remove six screws 1423
Figure 7-233 Remove six screws 1423
Figure 7-234 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1424
Figure 7-235 Lift the top hinge pin 1424
Figure 7-236 Remove the top hinge pin 1425

Figure 7-237 Release the lower hinge pin 1425
Figure 7-238 Remove the lower hinge pin 1426
Figure 7-239 Remove one screw and the front door 1426
Figure 7-240 Remove the jam-access knob 1427
Figure 7-241 Remove one screw 1427
Figure 7-242 Remove five screws and the front cover 1428
Figure 7-243 Remove seven screws 1428
Figure 7-244 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1429
Figure 7-245 Remove the booklet tray 1429
Figure 7-246 Install the booklet tray 1430
Figure 7-247 Remove four screws 1430
Figure 7-248 Remove the caster cover 1431
Figure 7-249 Remove four screws 1431
Figure 7-250 Release the lower shield 1432
Figure 7-251 Disconnect two connectors 1432
Figure 7-252 Locate sensors 1433
Figure 7-253 Lower the output tray 1433
Figure 7-254 Remove six screws 1434
Figure 7-255 Release the shield 1434
Figure 7-256 Disconnect one connector 1435
Figure 7-257 Locate sensors 1435
Figure 7-258 Move the staple unit to the center 1436
Figure 7-259 Disconnect three connectors 1436
Figure 7-260 Remove two screws 1437
Figure 7-261 Remove one screw 1437
Figure 7-262 Rotate the sensor 1438
Figure 7-263 Remove one screw 1438
Figure 7-264 Remove the front tamper shaft 1439
Figure 7-265 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1439
Figure 7-266 Remove one screw 1440
Figure 7-267 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1440
Figure 7-268 Disconnect one connector 1441
Figure 7-269 Disconnect one connector 1441
Figure 7-270 Disconnect one connector 1442
Figure 7-271 Remove two screws 1442
Figure 7-272 Lift the edges of the tampers 1443
Figure 7-273 Remove the ejector unit 1443
Figure 7-274 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1444
Figure 7-275 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1444
Figure 7-276 Remove the front tamper 1445
Figure 7-277 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1447

Figure 7-278 Remove six screws 1448
Figure 7-279 Remove six screws 1448
Figure 7-280 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1449
Figure 7-281 Lift the top hinge pin 1449
Figure 7-282 Remove the top hinge pin 1450
Figure 7-283 Release the lower hinge pin 1450
Figure 7-284 Remove the lower hinge pin 1451
Figure 7-285 Remove one screw and the front door 1451
Figure 7-286 Remove the jam-access knob 1452
Figure 7-287 Remove one screw 1452
Figure 7-288 Remove five screws and the front cover 1453
Figure 7-289 Remove seven screws 1453
Figure 7-290 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1454
Figure 7-291 Remove the booklet tray 1454
Figure 7-292 Install the booklet tray 1455
Figure 7-293 Remove four screws 1455
Figure 7-294 Remove the caster cover 1456
Figure 7-295 Remove four screws 1456
Figure 7-296 Release the lower shield 1457
Figure 7-297 Disconnect two connectors 1457
Figure 7-298 Locate sensors 1458
Figure 7-299 Lower the output tray 1458
Figure 7-300 Remove six screws 1459
Figure 7-301 Release the shield 1459
Figure 7-302 Disconnect one connector 1460
Figure 7-303 Locate sensors 1460
Figure 7-304 Move the staple unit to the center 1461
Figure 7-305 Disconnect three connectors 1461
Figure 7-306 Remove two screws 1462
Figure 7-307 Remove one screw 1462
Figure 7-308 Rotate the sensor 1463
Figure 7-309 Remove one screw 1463
Figure 7-310 Remove the front tamper shaft 1464
Figure 7-311 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1464
Figure 7-312 Remove one screw 1465
Figure 7-313 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1465
Figure 7-314 Disconnect one connector 1466
Figure 7-315 Disconnect one connector 1466
Figure 7-316 Disconnect one connector 1467
Figure 7-317 Remove two screws 1467
Figure 7-318 Lift the edges of the tampers 1468

Figure 7-319 Remove the ejector unit 1468
Figure 7-320 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1469
Figure 7-321 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1469
Figure 7-322 Remove the rear tamper 1470
Figure 7-323 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1472
Figure 7-324 Remove six screws 1473
Figure 7-325 Remove six screws 1473
Figure 7-326 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1474
Figure 7-327 Remove seven screws 1474
Figure 7-328 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1475
Figure 7-329 Remove the feed entrance motor 1475
Figure 7-330 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1478
Figure 7-331 Remove six screws 1479
Figure 7-332 Remove six screws 1479
Figure 7-333 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1480
Figure 7-334 Remove seven screws 1480
Figure 7-335 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1481
Figure 7-336 Remove the feed exit motor 1481
Figure 7-337 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1484
Figure 7-338 Remove six screws 1485
Figure 7-339 Remove six screws 1485
Figure 7-340 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1486
Figure 7-341 Remove the jam-access knob 1486
Figure 7-342 Remove one screw 1487
Figure 7-343 Remove five screws and the front cover 1487
Figure 7-344 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws 1488
Figure 7-345 Slide the gear off of the shaft 1488
Figure 7-346 Remove the sensor 1489
Figure 7-347 Remove two screws 1489
Figure 7-348 Remove the buffer motor 1490
Figure 7-349 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1492
Figure 7-350 Remove six screws 1493
Figure 7-351 Remove six screws 1493
Figure 7-352 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1494
Figure 7-353 Lift the top hinge pin 1494
Figure 7-354 Remove the top hinge pin 1495
Figure 7-355 Release the lower hinge pin 1495
Figure 7-356 Remove the lower hinge pin 1496
Figure 7-357 Remove one screw and the front door 1496
Figure 7-358 Remove the jam-access knob 1497
Figure 7-359 Remove one screw 1497

Figure 7-360 Remove five screws and the front cover 1498
Figure 7-361 Remove seven screws 1498
Figure 7-362 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1499
Figure 7-363 Remove the booklet tray 1499
Figure 7-364 Install the booklet tray 1500
Figure 7-365 Remove four screws 1500
Figure 7-366 Remove the caster cover 1501
Figure 7-367 Remove four screws 1501
Figure 7-368 Release the lower shield 1502
Figure 7-369 Disconnect two connectors 1502
Figure 7-370 Locate sensors 1503
Figure 7-371 Lower the output tray 1503
Figure 7-372 Remove six screws 1504
Figure 7-373 Release the shield 1504
Figure 7-374 Disconnect one connector 1505
Figure 7-375 Locate sensors 1505
Figure 7-376 Move the staple unit to the center 1506
Figure 7-377 Disconnect three connectors 1506
Figure 7-378 Remove two screws 1507
Figure 7-379 Remove one screw 1507
Figure 7-380 Rotate the sensor 1508
Figure 7-381 Remove one screw 1508
Figure 7-382 Remove the front tamper shaft 1509
Figure 7-383 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1509
Figure 7-384 Remove one screw 1510
Figure 7-385 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1510
Figure 7-386 Disconnect one connector 1511
Figure 7-387 Disconnect one connector 1511
Figure 7-388 Disconnect one connector 1512
Figure 7-389 Remove two screws 1512
Figure 7-390 Lift the edges of the tampers 1513
Figure 7-391 Remove the ejector unit 1513
Figure 7-392 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1514
Figure 7-393 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1514
Figure 7-394 Remove the front tamper 1515
Figure 7-395 Remove two screws 1515
Figure 7-396 Release the belt and remove the motor 1516
Figure 7-397 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1518
Figure 7-398 Remove six screws 1519
Figure 7-399 Remove six screws 1519
Figure 7-400 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1520

Figure 7-401 Lift the top hinge pin 1520
Figure 7-402 Remove the top hinge pin 1521
Figure 7-403 Release the lower hinge pin 1521
Figure 7-404 Remove the lower hinge pin 1522
Figure 7-405 Remove one screw and the front door 1522
Figure 7-406 Remove the jam-access knob 1523
Figure 7-407 Remove one screw 1523
Figure 7-408 Remove five screws and the front cover 1524
Figure 7-409 Remove seven screws 1524
Figure 7-410 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1525
Figure 7-411 Remove the booklet tray 1525
Figure 7-412 Install the booklet tray 1526
Figure 7-413 Remove four screws 1526
Figure 7-414 Remove the caster cover 1527
Figure 7-415 Remove four screws 1527
Figure 7-416 Release the lower shield 1528
Figure 7-417 Disconnect two connectors 1528
Figure 7-418 Locate sensors 1529
Figure 7-419 Lower the output tray 1529
Figure 7-420 Remove six screws 1530
Figure 7-421 Release the shield 1530
Figure 7-422 Disconnect one connector 1531
Figure 7-423 Locate sensors 1531
Figure 7-424 Move the staple unit to the center 1532
Figure 7-425 Disconnect three connectors 1532
Figure 7-426 Remove two screws 1533
Figure 7-427 Remove one screw 1533
Figure 7-428 Rotate the sensor 1534
Figure 7-429 Remove one screw 1534
Figure 7-430 Remove the front tamper shaft 1535
Figure 7-431 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws 1535
Figure 7-432 Remove one screw 1536
Figure 7-433 Remove the rear tamper shaft 1536
Figure 7-434 Disconnect one connector 1537
Figure 7-435 Disconnect one connector 1537
Figure 7-436 Disconnect one connector 1538
Figure 7-437 Remove two screws 1538
Figure 7-438 Lift the edges of the tampers 1539
Figure 7-439 Remove the ejector unit 1539
Figure 7-440 Reinstall the front tamper shaft 1540
Figure 7-441 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft 1540

Figure 7-442 Remove the rear tamper 1541
Figure 7-443 Remove two screws 1541
Figure 7-444 Release the belt and remove the motor 1542
Figure 7-445 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1544
Figure 7-446 Remove six screws 1545
Figure 7-447 Remove six screws 1545
Figure 7-448 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1546
Figure 7-449 Lift the top hinge pin 1546
Figure 7-450 Remove the top hinge pin 1547
Figure 7-451 Release the lower hinge pin 1547
Figure 7-452 Remove the lower hinge pin 1548
Figure 7-453 Remove one screw and the front door 1548
Figure 7-454 Remove the jam-access knob 1549
Figure 7-455 Remove one screw 1549
Figure 7-456 Remove five screws and the front cover 1550
Figure 7-457 Remove seven screws 1550
Figure 7-458 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1551
Figure 7-459 Remove the booklet tray 1551
Figure 7-460 Install the booklet tray 1552
Figure 7-461 Remove four screws 1552
Figure 7-462 Remove the caster cover 1553
Figure 7-463 Remove four screws 1553
Figure 7-464 Release the lower shield 1554
Figure 7-465 Disconnect two connectors 1554
Figure 7-466 Locate sensors 1555
Figure 7-467 Lower the output tray 1555
Figure 7-468 Remove six screws 1556
Figure 7-469 Release the shield 1556
Figure 7-470 Disconnect one connector 1557
Figure 7-471 Locate sensors 1557
Figure 7-472 Disconnect one connector 1558
Figure 7-473 Remove two screws 1558
Figure 7-474 Remove two screws and the motor 1559
Figure 7-475 Install the motor and bracket 1559
Figure 7-476 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1562
Figure 7-477 Remove six screws 1563
Figure 7-478 Remove six screws 1563
Figure 7-479 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1564
Figure 7-480 Remove seven screws 1564
Figure 7-481 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1565
Figure 7-482 Lower the output tray 1565

Figure 7-483 Open two retainers 1566
Figure 7-484 Disconnect three connectors 1566
Figure 7-485 Disconnect one connector 1567
Figure 7-486 Remove four screws and the motor assembly 1567
Figure 7-487 Remove the motor assembly 1568
Figure 7-488 Remove the bushing 1568
Figure 7-489 Install the bushing 1569
Figure 7-490 Install the motor assembly 1569
Figure 7-491 Remove five screws and the cover 1572
Figure 7-492 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1575
Figure 7-493 Remove six screws 1576
Figure 7-494 Remove six screws 1576
Figure 7-495 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1577
Figure 7-496 Remove seven screws 1577
Figure 7-497 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1578
Figure 7-498 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher 1578
Figure 7-499 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw 1579
Figure 7-500 Release the metal bracket 1579
Figure 7-501 Remove one screw 1580
Figure 7-502 Slide the right rail 1580
Figure 7-503 Remove one screw 1581
Figure 7-504 Remove the booklet finisher 1581
Figure 7-505 Position the hooks 1582
Figure 7-506 Align arrows 1582
Figure 7-507 Align arrows 1583
Figure 7-508 Extend the right rail 1583
Figure 7-509 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1586
Figure 7-510 Remove six screws 1587
Figure 7-511 Remove six screws 1587
Figure 7-512 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1588
Figure 7-513 Remove seven screws 1588
Figure 7-514 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1589
Figure 7-515 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher 1589
Figure 7-516 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw 1590
Figure 7-517 Release the metal bracket 1590
Figure 7-518 Remove one screw 1591
Figure 7-519 Slide the right rail 1591
Figure 7-520 Remove one screw 1592
Figure 7-521 Remove the booklet finisher 1592
Figure 7-522 Position the hooks 1593
Figure 7-523 Align arrows 1593

Figure 7-524 Align arrows 1594
Figure 7-525 Extend the right rail 1594
Figure 7-526 Remove two screws 1595
Figure 7-527 Remove one screw and the metal cover 1595
Figure 7-528 Remove four screws and the PCA 1596
Figure 7-529 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1598
Figure 7-530 Remove six screws 1599
Figure 7-531 Remove six screws 1599
Figure 7-532 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1600
Figure 7-533 Remove seven screws 1600
Figure 7-534 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1601
Figure 7-535 Remove five screws and the cover 1601
Figure 7-536 Remove two screws 1602
Figure 7-537 Remove two screws 1602
Figure 7-538 Remove the lower right shield 1603
Figure 7-539 Remove two screws 1603
Figure 7-540 Raise the jam access cover 1604
Figure 7-541 Raise the booklet width guide 1604
Figure 7-542 Disconnect three connectors 1605
Figure 7-543 Remove two screws 1605
Figure 7-544 Release the guide arm 1606
Figure 7-545 Lower the width guide 1606
Figure 7-546 Remove one screw 1607
Figure 7-547 Remove the fold stopper unit 1607
Figure 7-548 Adjust the alignment gauge 1608
Figure 7-549 Remove five screws and the cover 1610
Figure 7-550 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor 1611
Figure 7-551 Remove five screws and the cover 1613
Figure 7-552 Remove the TE presser motor 1614
Figure 7-553 Remove five screws and the cover 1616
Figure 7-554 Remove two screws 1617
Figure 7-555 Remove two screws 1617
Figure 7-556 Remove the lower right shield 1618
Figure 7-557 Remove the stopper moving motor 1618
Figure 7-558 Remove five screws and the cover 1621
Figure 7-559 Remove the separate pawl motor 1622
Figure 7-560 Remove six screws and the right top cover 1624
Figure 7-561 Remove six screws 1625
Figure 7-562 Remove six screws 1625
Figure 7-563 Disconnect one connector and release retainer 1626
Figure 7-564 Remove seven screws 1626

Figure 7-565 Remove four screws and the rear cover 1627
Figure 7-566 Remove the folding roller motor 1627
Figure 7-567 Remove five screws and the cover 1630
Figure 7-568 Remove two screws 1631
Figure 7-569 Remove two screws 1631
Figure 7-570 Remove the lower right shield 1632
Figure 7-571 Remove the blade motor 1632
Figure 7-572 Remove five screws and the cover 1635
Figure 7-573 Check arrow alignment 1636
Figure 7-574 Disconnect two connectors 1636
Figure 7-575 Remove four screws 1637
Figure 7-576 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt 1637
Figure 7-577 Remove the bracket and motor 1638
Figure 7-578 Remove two screws 1638
Figure 7-579 Install one screw 1639
Figure 7-580 Check arrow alignment 1639
Figure 7-581 Align arrows 1640
Figure 7-582 Finisher system diagram 1643
Figure 8-1 Finisher system—sectional view 1655
Figure 8-2 Finisher system—paper path 1656
Figure 8-3 Finisher system—electrical parts layout 1657
Figure 8-4 Finisher system—block diagram 1659
Figure 8-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information 1659
Figure 8-6 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7) 1665
Figure 8-7 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7) 1665
Figure 8-8 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7) 1666
Figure 8-9 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7) 1666
Figure 8-10 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7) 1667
Figure 8-11 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7) 1667
Figure 8-12 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7) 1667
Figure 8-13 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1669
Figure 8-14 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1669
Figure 8-15 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1670
Figure 8-16 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1670
Figure 8-17 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1671
Figure 8-18 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1672
Figure 8-19 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7) 1672
Figure 8-20 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7) 1673
Figure 8-21 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1675
Figure 8-22 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1675
Figure 8-23 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1676

Figure 8-24 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1676
Figure 8-25 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1677
Figure 8-26 Remove the exit sensor 1678
Figure 8-27 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3) 1680
Figure 8-28 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3) 1680
Figure 8-29 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3) 1681
Figure 8-30 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6) 1683
Figure 8-31 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6) 1683
Figure 8-32 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6) 1684
Figure 8-33 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1684
Figure 8-34 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1685
Figure 8-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22) 1687
Figure 8-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22) 1687
Figure 8-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22) 1688
Figure 8-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22) 1688
Figure 8-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22) 1689
Figure 8-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22) 1689
Figure 8-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22) 1690
Figure 8-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22) 1690
Figure 8-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22) 1691
Figure 8-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22) 1691
Figure 8-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22) 1692
Figure 8-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22) 1692
Figure 8-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22) 1693
Figure 8-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22) 1693
Figure 8-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22) 1694
Figure 8-50 Remove the front jogger motor (16 of 22) 1694
Figure 8-51 Remove the front jogger motor (17 of 22) 1695
Figure 8-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22) 1695
Figure 8-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22) 1696
Figure 8-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22) 1696
Figure 8-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22) 1697
Figure 8-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22) 1697
Figure 8-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1699
Figure 8-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1699
Figure 8-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1700
Figure 8-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1700
Figure 8-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1701
Figure 8-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1701
Figure 8-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1702
Figure 8-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1702

Figure 8-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1703
Figure 8-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1703
Figure 8-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15) 1704
Figure 8-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6) 1704
Figure 8-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6) 1705
Figure 8-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6) 1705
Figure 8-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1706
Figure 8-72 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1706
Figure 8-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15) 1707
Figure 8-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15) 1707
Figure 8-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15) 1708
Figure 8-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15) 1708
Figure 8-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor 1709
Figure 8-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1711
Figure 8-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1711
Figure 8-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1712
Figure 8-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1712
Figure 8-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1713
Figure 8-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1713
Figure 8-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1714
Figure 8-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1714
Figure 8-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15) 1715
Figure 8-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3) 1715
Figure 8-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3) 1716
Figure 8-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3) 1716
Figure 8-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3) 1717
Figure 8-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3) 1717
Figure 8-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3) 1718
Figure 8-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11) 1720
Figure 8-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11) 1720
Figure 8-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11) 1721
Figure 8-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11) 1721
Figure 8-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11) 1722
Figure 8-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11) 1722
Figure 8-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11) 1723
Figure 8-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11) 1723
Figure 8-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11) 1724
Figure 8-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11) 1724
Figure 8-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3) 1726
Figure 8-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3) 1726
Figure 8-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2) 1727

Figure 8-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2) 1727
Figure 8-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1729
Figure 8-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1729
Figure 8-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1730
Figure 8-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1730
Figure 8-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1731
Figure 8-112 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6) 1732
Figure 8-113 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6) 1732
Figure 8-114 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6) 1733
Figure 8-115 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6) 1733
Figure 8-116 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6) 1734
Figure 8-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7) 1735
Figure 8-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7) 1735
Figure 8-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7) 1736
Figure 8-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7) 1736
Figure 8-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7) 1737
Figure 8-122 Remove the stapler position sensor (6 of 7) 1737
Figure 8-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7) 1738
Figure 8-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1740
Figure 8-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1740
Figure 8-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1741
Figure 8-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1741
Figure 8-128 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1742
Figure 8-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2) 1743
Figure 8-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2) 1743
Figure 8-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1745
Figure 8-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1745
Figure 8-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1746
Figure 8-134 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1746
Figure 8-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1747
Figure 8-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1747
Figure 8-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1748
Figure 8-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1748
Figure 8-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1749
Figure 8-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1749
Figure 8-141 Remove the stacker motor 1750
Figure 8-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1752
Figure 8-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1752
Figure 8-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1753
Figure 8-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1753
Figure 8-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1754

Figure 8-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1754
Figure 8-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1755
Figure 8-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1755
Figure 8-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1756
Figure 8-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1756
Figure 8-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor 1757
Figure 8-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1759
Figure 8-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1759
Figure 8-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1760
Figure 8-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1760
Figure 8-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1761
Figure 8-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1761
Figure 8-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1762
Figure 8-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1762
Figure 8-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1763
Figure 8-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1763
Figure 8-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2) 1764
Figure 8-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2) 1764
Figure 8-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1766
Figure 8-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1766
Figure 8-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1767
Figure 8-168 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1767
Figure 8-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1768
Figure 8-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1768
Figure 8-171 Remove the stack beam sensor 1769
Figure 8-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1771
Figure 8-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1771
Figure 8-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1772
Figure 8-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1772
Figure 8-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1773
Figure 8-177 Remove the tray 1774
Figure 8-178 Remove the sub-tray 1774
Figure 8-179 Remove the PBA 1775
Figure 8-180 Remove the PBA 1775
Figure 8-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1776
Figure 8-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1776
Figure 8-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1777
Figure 8-184 Remove the guide harness front 1777
Figure 8-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1778
Figure 8-186 Remove one screw 1778
Figure 8-187 Release the sensor 1779

Figure 8-188 Remove the sensor 1779
Figure 8-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1781
Figure 8-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1781
Figure 8-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15) 1782
Figure 8-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15) 1782
Figure 8-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15) 1783
Figure 8-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15) 1783
Figure 8-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15) 1784
Figure 8-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15) 1784
Figure 8-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15) 1785
Figure 8-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15) 1785
Figure 8-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1786
Figure 8-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1786
Figure 8-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1787
Figure 8-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4) 1787
Figure 8-203 Remove the tray 1789
Figure 8-204 Remove the sub-tray 1789
Figure 8-205 Remove the PBA 1790
Figure 8-206 Remove the PBA 1790
Figure 8-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1791
Figure 8-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1791
Figure 8-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1792
Figure 8-210 Remove the guide harness front 1792
Figure 8-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1793
Figure 8-212 Remove one screw 1793
Figure 8-213 Release the sensor 1794
Figure 8-214 Remove the sensor 1794
Figure 8-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1798
Figure 8-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1798
Figure 8-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1799
Figure 8-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1799
Figure 8-219 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1800
Figure 8-220 Remove the tray 1801
Figure 8-221 Remove the sub-tray 1801
Figure 8-222 Remove the PBA 1802
Figure 8-223 Remove the PBA 1802
Figure 8-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1803
Figure 8-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1803
Figure 8-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1804
Figure 8-227 Remove the guide harness front 1804
Figure 8-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1805

Figure 8-229 Remove one screw 1805
Figure 8-230 Release the sensor 1806
Figure 8-231 Remove the sensor 1806
Figure 8-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1807
Figure 8-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1807
Figure 8-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4) 1808
Figure 8-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4) 1808
Figure 8-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1810
Figure 8-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1810
Figure 8-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1811
Figure 8-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1811
Figure 8-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1812
Figure 8-241 Remove the tray 1813
Figure 8-242 Remove the sub-tray 1813
Figure 8-243 Remove the PBA 1814
Figure 8-244 Remove the PBA 1814
Figure 8-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1815
Figure 8-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1815
Figure 8-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1816
Figure 8-248 Remove the guide harness front 1816
Figure 8-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1817
Figure 8-250 Remove one screw 1817
Figure 8-251 Release the sensor 1818
Figure 8-252 Remove the sensor 1818
Figure 8-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1819
Figure 8-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1819
Figure 8-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6) 1820
Figure 8-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6) 1820
Figure 8-257 Remove two belt-timing gears 1821
Figure 8-258 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw 1821
Figure 8-259 Disconnect connectors 1822
Figure 8-260 Remove the motor assembly 1822
Figure 8-261 Remove the motor assembly 1824
Figure 8-262 Remove the main paddle motor 1824
Figure 8-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor 1826
Figure 8-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor 1826
Figure 8-265 Remove the main paddle 1828
Figure 8-266 Remove the tray 1830
Figure 8-267 Remove the sub-tray 1830
Figure 8-268 Remove the PBA 1831
Figure 8-269 Remove the PBA 1831

Figure 8-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate 1832
Figure 8-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly 1832
Figure 8-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly 1833
Figure 8-273 Remove the guide harness front 1833
Figure 8-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray 1834
Figure 8-275 Remove one screw 1834
Figure 8-276 Release the sensor 1835
Figure 8-277 Remove the sensor 1835
Figure 8-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4) 1836
Figure 8-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4) 1836
Figure 8-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6) 1837
Figure 8-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6) 1837
Figure 8-282 Remove two belt-timing gears 1838
Figure 8-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw 1838
Figure 8-284 Disconnect connectors 1839
Figure 8-285 Remove the motor assembly 1839
Figure 8-286 Remove two screws 1840
Figure 8-287 Remove the ejector assembly 1840
Figure 8-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7) 1842
Figure 8-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7) 1842
Figure 8-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7) 1843
Figure 8-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7) 1843
Figure 8-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7) 1844
Figure 8-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly 1845
Figure 8-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor 1845
Figure 8-295 Remove three screws 1847
Figure 8-296 Remove the e-ring 1847
Figure 8-297 Remove the sheet-punch front 1848
Figure 8-298 Remove the punch dummy 1848
Figure 8-299 Remove the bracket-SPT B 1849
Figure 8-300 Remove the door switch 1849
Figure 8-301 Remove the cover-rear 1851
Figure 8-302 Remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile 1851
Figure 8-303 Remove the tray 1852
Figure 8-304 Remove the finisher sub-tray frame 1852
Figure 8-305 Remove the PBA cover 1853
Figure 8-306 Remove four screws 1853
Figure 8-307 Remove one screw 1854
Figure 8-308 Remove the switch assembly 1854
Figure 8-309 Remove the sensor 1854
Figure 8-310 Remove the end fence home sensor 1856

1 Precautions

Please read the precautions listed below and follow them closely in order to prevent accidents or damage to the printer.

- Safety warning
- Caution for safety
- ESD precautions

Safety warning

1. Service should be performed by a factory trained service technician.

   This printer contains high voltages and lasers which are dangerous. This printer should only be serviced by a factory trained service technician.

2. Use HP replacement parts.

   There are no customer serviceable parts inside the printer. Do not make any unauthorized changes or additions to the printer as these could cause the printer to malfunction and create an electric shock or fire hazard.

3. Laser Safety Statement.

   The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, chapter 1 Subchapter J for Class I(1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1. Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so that there is never human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance or a prescribed service condition.

   - Wavelength: 800 nm
   - Beam divergence
     - Parallel: 11 degrees
     - Perpendicular: 35 degrees
   - Maximum power of energy output: 12 mW

   ⚠ WARNING! Do not operate or service the printer when the protective cover is removed from the laser/scanner assembly. The reflected laser, although invisible, can cause eye damage.

   Following these safety precautions will reduce the risk of fire, electric shock, and personal injury.



4. Lithium battery not replaceable by user.

Caution for safety

Toxic material

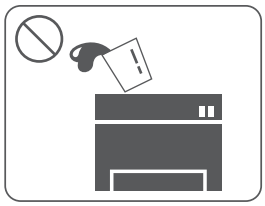
This printer contains toxic materials which could cause illness if ingested.

- Keep the imaging unit and toner cartridge away from children. The toner powder in the imaging unit and the toner cartridge might be harmful. If the toner powder is swallowed, contact a doctor.

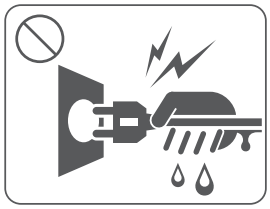
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.

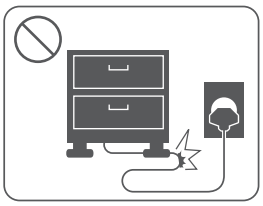


5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.



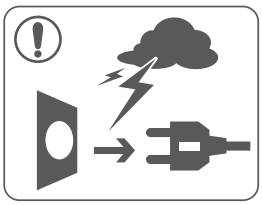
6. Use caution when plugging or unplugging the power cable.

7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

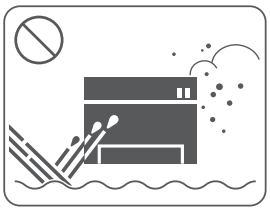


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the machine or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

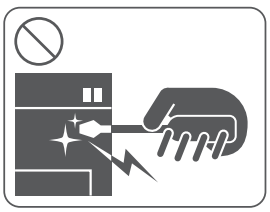


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the machine near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the SMPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.
2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.
3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.
4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.
5. Do place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and Replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.

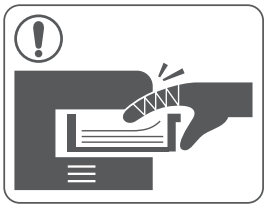


2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.



4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

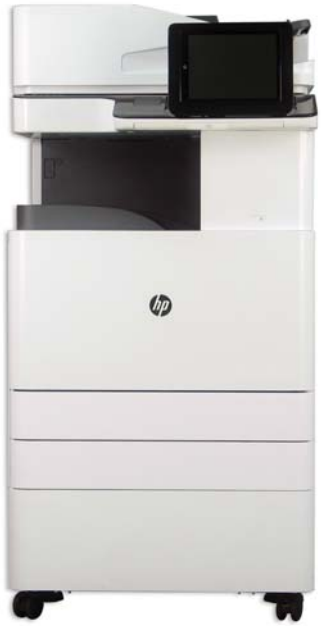
⚠ CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

2 Product specifications and description

- Product overview
- Specifications
- Machine external view
- Feeding system
- Fuser unit
- Image creation
- Laser scanner assembly
- Drive system
- Flatbed Scanner System
- Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX)
- Hardware configuration
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
- High capacity input tray (HCI)
- Side high capacity input tray (sHCI)

Product overview



- **Printing speed**
  - E87640
    - Up to 40 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 21 ppm in A3
  - E87650
    - Up to 50 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 26 ppm in A3
  - E87660
    - Up to 60 ppm in A4/Letter
    - Up to 31 ppm in A3
- **Processor**
  - Quad Core 1.5 GHz
- **Memory**
  - 7 GB (3 GB Formatter + 4 GB)
- **ADF**
  - Flow ADF
- **Control panel**
  - 8 inch touch screen

Specifications

Product specifications are subject to change without notice.

NOTE: The specification in this manual is the reference information for the service engineer. Do not use this specification for sales.

General specifications

Table 2-1 General specifications

Item		Specification
Processor	CPU	1.5 GHz (Quad Core)
User Interface	Operational Panel	8 inch touch screen
	LED	2 (Power/Status)
	Key/Button	1 (Power)
Memory	Total	7 GB (3 GB Formatter + 4 GB)
Storage	Standard	320 GB HDD
Interface	USB (Host)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)
	USB (Device)	Yes (Hi-Speed USB 3.0, 2.0)
	USB (EDI)	N/A
	Wired LAN	Standard (Ethernet 10/100/1G Base TX)
	Additional Wired LAN Support	Yes (optional)
	Wireless LAN/NFC	• Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n + NFC Active Type) • Optional (IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ac + BLE + NFC Active Type)
Warmup Time	From Power off (power on to ready)	23 sec
	From Sleep	12 sec
Power Consumption	Ready	Less than 30 W
	Normal operation	Less than 900 W
	Max/Peak	Less than 1300 W
	Sleep/Low Power Mode	Less than 2.0 W
	TEC (Default Mode)	• E87640: 2.1 kWh • E87650: 2.717 kWh • E87660: 3.05 kWh
Power Requirement	• Input Voltage (Europe): AC 220–240 V (-10%-6%) • Input voltage (USA): AC 110–127 V (-10%-6%) • Input Voltage (Korea): AC 220–240 V (-10%-6%) • Rated Frequency: 50/60 Hz	

Table 2-1 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
Acoustic Noise Level (Sound Power/ Pressure)	Printing Mode	**Simplex** • E87640, E87650 – Tray 2: Less than 54 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 56 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 56 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 58 dBA **Duplex** • E87640, E87650 – Tray 2: Less than 57 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 59 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA
	Copying Mode	**Simplex** • E87640 – Tray 2: Less than 58 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 60 dBA • E87650, E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 59 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 61 dBA **Duplex** • E87640 – Tray 2: Less than 60 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 62 dBA • E87650

Table 2-1 General specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 63 dBA • E87660 – Tray 2: Less than 61 dBA – MP Tray/Optional trays: Less than 64 dBA
	Ready Mode	30 dBA
Dimensions (W x D x H)	Set (without stand)	• 585 x 771.1 x 932.2 mm (23 x 30.3 x 36.7 in)
Weight	Set (with supplies)	• E87640, E87650, E87660: 113.1 kg (249.3 lb)
Recommended Monthly Print Volume	• E87640: 20,000 pages • E87650: 25,000 pages • E87660: 30,000 pages	
Max Monthly Duty Cycle	• E87640: 200,000 pages • E87650: 250,000 pages • E87660: 330,000 pages	

Print specifications

Table 2-2 Print specifications

Item		Specification
Print speed	Simplex	• E87640 – Up to 40 ppm in A4 (40 ppm in Letter) – Up to 21 ppm in A3 (21 ppm in 11x17) • E87650 – Up to 50 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 26 ppm in A3 (26 ppm in 11x17) • E87660 – Up to 60 ppm in A4 (50 ppm in Letter) – Up to 31 ppm in A3 (31 ppm in 11x17)

Table 2-2 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Duplex (Simplex to Duplex)	• E87640 – Up to 40 ipm in A4 (40 ipm in Letter) – Up to 21 ipm in A3 (21 ipm in 11x17) • E87650 – Up to 50 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 26 ipm in A3 (26 ipm in 11x17) • E87660 – Up to 60 ipm in A4 (50 ipm in Letter) – Up to 31 ipm in A3 (31 ipm in 11x17)
FPOT	From Ready	• E87640: as fast as 9.9 s • E87650: as fast as 8.9 s • E87660: as fast as 8.3 s
	From Sleep	• E87640: as fast as 21.9 s • E87650: as fast as 20.9 s • E87660: as fast as 20.3 s
Resolution		1200 x 1200 dpi (Full Speed)
Printer Language		PCL5/PCL6(XL)/PostScript Level 3/PDF v1.7
Font	PCL	95 scalable fonts (including OCR-A/OCR-B)/1 Bitmap
	PostScript 3	136 scalable fonts
Supporting Operating Systems	Windows	• Windows XP (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2003 Server (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows Vista (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2008 Server (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 7 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 2008 Server R2 (64–bit) • Windows 8 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows 8.1 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Windows Server 2012 (64–bit) • Windows Server 2012 R2 (64–bit)

Table 2-2 Print specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Linux	• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, 6 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Fedora 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 (32–bit, 64–bit) • OpenSuSE 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 13.1 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Ubuntu 10.04, 11.04, 11.10, 12.04, 12.10, 13.04, 13.10, 14.04 (32–bit, 64–bit) • SuSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 11 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Debian 6, 7 (32–bit, 64–bit) • Mint 13, 14, 15, 16 (32–bit, 64–bit)
	Mac OS	Mac OS X 10.6–10.10
Direct Print	PRN/PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS	
Print Features	• WSD print • Secure print • Stored print • Booklet • N-up • Cover page • Barcode • Eco • Poster • Glossy • Watermark • Tray priority setting • Auto tray setting • Tray protection • USB print • Secure PDF print • Google Cloud print	

Scan specifications

Table 2-3 Scan specifications

Item			Specification
Scan Speed		Scan to folder speeds (hardware)	DN bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 90 ipm @ 300 DPI • Duplex: 180 ipm @ 300 DPI Z bundles (black and white, gray scale, and color) • Simplex: 120 ipm @ 300 DPI • Duplex: 240 ipm @ 300 DPI
Color Mode			Mono/Gray/Color
Compatibility			Network TWAIN/Network SANE
Scan Method			MMT
File Formats			• PDF • Searchable PDF • Compact PDF • PDF Encryption • Digital Signature in PDF • PDF/A • Single-Page PDF • Multi-page PDF • TIFF • Single-Page TIFF • Multi-page TIFF • XPS • Single-Page XPS • Multi-page XPS • JPEG
Resolution	Optical (ADF)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Optical (Image Scanner)		Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Enhanced (ADF)		Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi
	Enhanced (Image Scanner)		Up to 4800 x 4800 dpi

Table 2-3 Scan specifications (continued)

Item			Specification
Scan Destinations			• Email • FTP • SMB • HDD • USB • WSD • PC • Internet FAX
Multi-destinations			Yes
Communication Protocol			• SMTP (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • POP3 (IPv4, IPv6, SSL/TLS) • FTP (IPv4, IPv6) • SMB (IPv4, IPv6) • WSD • T4Net
Scan Size		ADF	• Min. A6 SEF 105 mm x 148 mm (4.13 in x 5.83) • Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
		Image Scanner	Max. 297 mm x 437 mm (11.7 in x 17.2 in)
Scan Original Types			Text/Text & Photo/Photo

Copy specifications

Table 2-4 Copy specifications

Item		Specification
Copy Speed	Single Document Multiple Copy (SDMC)	• E87640 – Up to 40 cpm in A4 • E87650 – Up to 50 cpm in A4 • E87660 – Up to 60 cpm in A4
	Multiple Document Multiple Copy (MDMC)	• E87640

Table 2-4 Copy specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
		– Simplex to Simplex: Up to 40 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 40 ipm in A4/Letter • E87650 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 50 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 50 ipm in A4/Letter • E87660 – Simplex to Simplex: Up to 60 cpm in A4/Letter – Duplex to Simplex: Up to 60 ipm in A4/Letter
FCOT	From Ready	• E87640: 6.1 s • E87650: 5.1 s • E87660: 4.5 s
Resolution	Flow ADF	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
	Image Scanner	• Scan: 600 x 600 dpi • Printing: 600 x 600 dpi
Reduce/Enlarge	Flow ADF	25–400% in 1% increments
	Image Scanner	25–400% in 1% increments
	Preset	25% / 50% A3→A5 / 61% A3→B5 / 64% Ledger→Letter / 70% A3→A4 | B4→B5 | A4→A5 / 77% Ledger→Legal / 78% Legal→Letter / 81% B4→A4 | B5→A5 / 86% A3→B4 | A4→B5 / 104% Executive→Letter / 115% B4→A3 / 121% Legal→Ledger / 122% A4→B4 / 129% Letter→Ledger / 141% A4→A3 | A5→A4 / 150% / 200% A5→A3 / 400%
Darkness Control	11 levels	
Contrast Control	11 levels	
Multi Copy	1–9,999	
Duplex Copy	Built-in	

Table 2-4 Copy specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Copy Original Type	• Text • Text and Printed Photo • Text and Glossy Photo • Newspaper • Printed Photo • Glossy Photo • Copied Original • Map • Light Original
Copy Features	• ID Copy • N-up • Booklet • Image Repeat • Auto Fit • Book Copy • Poster Copy • Watermark • Image Overlay • Stamp • Covers • Job Build • Preview • Erase Edge • Image Shift • Image Adjustment • Background Adjustment

Supplies

Table 2-5 Supplies

Item		Part number	Average yield	Conditions for yield
Initial Toner Cartridge NOTE: Only China, Korea	Black		Approx. 30,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage

Table 2-5 Supplies (continued)

Item		Part number	Average yield	Conditions for yield
	Cyan Magenta Yellow		Approx. 20,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
Toner Cartridge	Black	W9050MC	Approx. 45,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
	Cyan	W9051MC	Approx. 30,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
	Magenta	W9053MC	Approx. 30,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
	Yellow	W9052MC	Approx. 30,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, Continuous job, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
TCU		SAM-JC96-09590A	Approx. 71,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Color Ratio (C30% : M70%) Simplex Mode 5% Coverage
Staples				

NOTE: Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

IMPORTANT: Toner cartridges or other supplies must be purchased in the same country as the printer being used. Otherwise, new toner cartridges or other supplies will be incompatible with the printer. This is due to differing configurations of toner cartridges and other supplies according to the conditions of a specific country.

Maintenance parts

Some of the printer parts have a shorter lifespan than the life of the printer.

HP recommends replacing the following maintenance parts at specific intervals to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer.

Item		Part number	Life	Remark
Developer Unit	Yellow	SAM-JC96-11600A	720,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage
	Magenta	SAM-JC96-11601A	720,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage
	Cyan	SAM-JC96-11602A	720,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage

Item		Part number	Life	Remark
	Black	SAM-JC96-11603A	720,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage
OPC Drum Unit	Black	W9054MC	Approx. 220,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/job Mono Mode, Simplex Mode, 5% Coverage
	Cyan Magenta Yellow	W9055MC	Approx. 180,000 pages	@ A4/Letter LEF, 4 pages/jobs, Simplex Mode 5% Coverage
Fuser Unit	220 V	SAM-JC91-01194A	360,000 pages	
	110 V	SAM-JC91-01195A	360,000 pages	
ITB		SAM-JC93-01375A	360,000 pages	NOTE: Clean the CPR sensor after replacing the ITB.
ITB Cleaner			180,000 pages	
Transfer Roller Assembly			360,000 pages	
Pickup/Feed/Reverse (Separation) Roller (for Tray 2-X)			360,000 pages	
MP Pickup/Feed/Reverse (Separation) Roller			200,000 pages	
Flow ADF pickup roller assembly			200,000 pages	
Flow ADF reverse (separation) roller assembly			100,000 pages	

NOTE:

- Depending on the print patterns and job mode used, the lifespan can differ.
- See Replacing the maintenance part for further instructions.

Maintenance table

- EM: Emergency Maintenance (as needed)
- C: Clean
- R: Replace

NOTE: The total pages at the top of the table represents the lifespan for each maintenance part.

When replacing the fuser unit, the engineer does not need to replace Paper Path and Flow ADF's material items such as pickup, feed, separation rollers, and so on.

The usage of fuser unit and pickup, feed, separation roller will be different as the usage of Copy, Scan, and Print job.

Table 2-6 Maintenance table

Section	Item	EM	30K	45K	72K	100K	180K	200K	220K	360K	720K
Waste Toner	TCU	C			R						
	Around TCU	C									
Imaging Unit	Toner Cartridge Y, M, C	C	R								
	Toner Cartridge K	C		R							
	Drum Unit Y, M, C	C					R				
	Drum Unit K	C							R		
	Developer Unit	C									R
	Around Toner Pipe	C									
	Paper Dust Stick	C									
Fuser Unit	Fuser Unit	C								R	
Transfer Unit	ITB Unit	C								R	
	CPR Sensor									C	
	ITB Cleaner						R				
	Transfer Roller Assembly (T2)	C								R	
Paper Path	Pickup/ Feed/ Reverse (Separation) Roller (for Tray 2-X)*	C								R	
	MP Pickup/ Feed/ Reverse (Separation) roller*	C						R			
	Registration assembly / Feed/ Duplex Roller	C									
Flow ADF	Flow ADF pickup roller assembly	C						R			

Table 2-6 Maintenance table (continued)

Section	Item	EM	30K	45K	72K	100K	180K	200K	220K	360K	720K
	Flow ADF reverse (separation) roller assembly	C				R					
	White sheet/White sponge/ Feed roller	C									

* Replace those three parts at the same time.

Paper handling specifications

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications

Item		Specification
Input Capacity	Standard	1040 sheets
	Multipurpose	100 sheets
	Maximum	6140 sheets NOTE: MP (100) + 2 Tray (1040) + HCI bottom (2000) + sHCI (3000)
Standard Cassette Tray	Capacity	• 520 sheets x 2 (Based on Xerox Premier 80g/m^2) • Envelope: 50 sheets (only Tray 2 support) NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No.10, No. 9
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 98 mm x 139.7 mm — 297 mm x 390 mm (3.9 in x 5.5 in — 11.7 in x 15.4 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.8 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Thick Cardstock • Heavy Cardstock • Extra Heavy Cardstock 1 • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1 ,2 ,3 4 • Label • Transparency • Envelope (Cassette 1 Only)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 70-90 g/m² (18.5-24 lb/ Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91-105 g/m² (25-28 lb/ Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper : 106-176 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 1 Paper : 177-220 g/m² • Extra Heavy Weight 2: 221–256 g/m² (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Weight 3: 257–300 g/m² • Thick Cardstock: 164–216 g/m2 (Duplex) • Heavy Cardstock: 217–256 g/m2 (Duplex) • Extra Heavy Cardstock: 257–300 g/m² • Thick Glossy: 164–216 g/m² • Heavy Glossy: 217–256 g/m² • Transparency: 138–146 g/m² • Label: 120–150 g/m² • Envelope: 75–90 g/m² (Only Tray 2 support) • Thick Envelope: 91–120 g/m² (Only Tray 2 support) • Thin Paper: 60-69 g/m² (16-19 lb/ Duplex) • Cotton paper : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Colored : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Pre-Printed : 71-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Recycled : 60-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105-120 g/m² (Duplex) • Letterhead : 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75-90 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock : 105-163 g/m² (Duplex) • Thin Glossy : 106-163 g/m² (Duplex)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
MP Tray	Capacity	• Plain Paper: 100 sheets at 80 g/m^2 • Envelopes: 10 sheets at 75 g/m^2 NOTE: Supported Envelopes: Monarch, DL, C4, C5, C6, No. 10, No. 9 • Labels: 20 sheets at 120–159 g/m^2 • Thick Paper: 10 sheets at 176 g/m^2
	Media Sizes	98 mm x 139.7 mm — 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in — 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2 ,3 ,4 • Envelope • Transparency • Label

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Weight	• 60 to 256 g/m^2: Simplex, Duplex • 257 to 325 g/m^2: Simplex • Envelope: 75–90 g/m^2, Simplex • Label: 120–150 g/m^2, Simplex
	Sensing	Paper Empty Detect: Yes Paper Size Detect: Yes
ADF	Capacity	250 sheets
	Document Size	• Width: 105 mm — 297 mm (5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5in — 17 in)
	Document Weight	• Simplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (11.25–43.24 lb) (Guarantee) 42–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support) • Duplex: 60–163 g/m^2 (13.25–43.25 lb) (Guarantee) 50–60 g/m^2 and 163–220 g/m^2 (Support)
	Auto Detected Size	A3/A4/A5/A6 SEF/B4/B5/Letter/Legal/ Statement/Folio/Executive
Image Scanner	Document Size	• Width: 140 mm — 297 mm (5.5 in — 11.7 in) • Length: 140 mm — 432 mm (5.5 in — 17 in)
Output Capacity	Standard	500 sheets, face down
	Maximum	615 sheets [500 sheets (Standard) + 125 sheets (Job Separator)]
Printing Size	Maximum Size	320 mm x 457 mm (12.6 in x 18 in)
	Minimum Size	98 mm x 139.7 mm (3.8 in x 5.5 in)
Maximum Printing Area	Simplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 1.5 mm
	Duplex	Top: 4.2 +/- 2 mm / Left: 4.2 +/- 2 mm
Duplex Printing	Support	Built-in
	Media Sizes	139.7 mm x 182 mm — 320 mm x 457 mm (5.5 in x 7.2 in — 12.6 in x 18 in)

Table 2-7 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Media Types	• Plain • Thin • Bond • Hole Punched • Pre-Printed • Recycled • Thin Cardstock • Letterhead • Thick • Cotton • Colored • Archive • Thin Glossy • Thick Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy Weight • Extra Heavy Weight 1, 2
	Media weight	16–17 lb (60 to 256 g/m^2)

Network and software specifications

Network interface

Table 2-8 Network interface

Item		Specifications
Network OS		**Windows** • XP (32/64 bit) • 2003 (32/64 bit) • Vista (32/64 bit) • Windows 7 • Windows 8 **Mac** • Mac OS 10.5 –10.8 **Linux** • RedHat 8–9 • Fedora Core 1–4 • Mandrake 9.2–10.1 • SuSE 8.2–9.2 **Novell** • Netware 5.x, 6.x (TCP/IP Only) **Others** • Unix (HP-UX, Solaris, SumOS, SCO)
Network Protocols	TCP/IP	TCP/IPv4, HTTP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, LDAP, SMTP, SSL/TLS, IPSec, DNS, WINS, SLP, Bonjour, SSDP, DDNS, DHCP/BOOTP, IPv6
	IPX/SPX	No
	Ether Talk	No
	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	Yes
	Others	HTTPS, IPSec, 802.1x
IP Addressing	Static IP	Yes
	Auto IP	Yes
	BOOTP	Yes
	DHCP	Yes
SNMP/MIB Access	MIB-2 (RFC 1213)	Yes
	Host Resource MIB (RFC 2790)	Yes

Table 2-8 Network interface (continued)

Item		Specifications
	Printer MIB (RFC 3805)	Yes
	Finisher MIB (RFC 3806)	Yes
	Private MIB	Yes
	HP Compatibility	Yes — Partially
	SNMP Trap	Yes
Printing Protocols	Windows Printing (SMB)	No
	LPR/LPD	Yes
	IPP	Yes
	Netware I-Print	No
	Netware NDPS	No
	Ether Talk	No
	Port 9100	Yes
Device Discovery	DNS	Yes
	Dynamic DNS	Yes
	Multicast DNS (Bonjoure)	Yes
	WSD (including Print and Scan)	Yes (Print and Scan)
	SLP	Yes
	uPNP (SSDP)	Yes

Software and solutions

Table 2-9 Software and solutions

Item		Specifications
Application	Anyweb Print	N/A
	Easy Printer Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Color Manager	Windows/Mac
	Easy Document Creator	Windows
	Net PC Fax	Windows/Mac
	Direct Printing Utility	Windows
	Easy Deployment Manager	Windows
	Easy Eco Driver	Windows
	Universal Printer Driver	Windows
	Universal Scan Driver	Windows
Mobile Printing	Google Cloud Print (GCP)	Yes

Table 2-9 Software and solutions (continued)

Item		Specifications
	Airprint	Yes
Smart App	Smart Workspace	Yes
	Workbook Composer	Yes
	Smart Color Manager	Yes
	Smart Service App	Yes
	Hancom Office	Yes
Solution	Device Management	Fleet Admin Pro (UniThru)
	Output Management	CounThru Enterprise/Pro
	Document Management and Distribution	SmarThru Workflow 3.0
	Security	SecuThur Pro 1.0
	Mobility	SCP 1.0 (14.09)
Security	Authentication (Local)	Yes
	Authentication (Network)	Yes (SMB/Kerberos/LDAP/IPSec/EAP)
	IP Address Filtering	Yes (IPv4 Filtering/IPv6 Filtering/MAC Filtering)
	HDD Overwrite (Standard)	9
	HDD Overwrite (Maximum Overwrites)	Yes
	Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted Secure Print	Yes
	Encrypted PDF Mode (Encrypted Scanning)	Yes
	IP Sec	Yes
	Smart Card Authentication	Yes

Options

Optional configurations

Figure 2-1 Options



Options list

Table 2-10 Options list

Item	Part numbers	Remark
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Y1G168	
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Y1F98A	
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Y1F21A	
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Y1F20A	
Fax Kit		
Fax Multiline Kit		
Foreign interface harness (FIH) Kit		
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Y1G01A	
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Department	Y1G22A	For dual cassette feeder (DCF)
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (110V)	Y1G22A#BGJ	For HCI/sHCI
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accessory Department (220V)	Y1G22A#B19	
Wireless/NFC Kit		
Wireless/NFC/BLE Kit		
Additional Network Kit (Dual Network Kit)		
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Y1G00A	
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Y1G18A	
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Y1G07A	
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch	Y1G02A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch	Y1G03A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Y1G04A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	Two and three hole punch (for America, Asia, and Africa)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	Two and four hole punch (for Europe)
HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	Swedish four hole punch (for Sweden)
HP LaserJet Inner/Booklet Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G13A	• Regular staples for the HP LaserJet Inner Finisher • Regular saddle staples for the HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Staples NOTE: The HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher and HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher have two staple slots.	Y1G14A	• Regular staples for HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher

Option specifications

Table 2-11 Option specifications

Item		Specification
HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder	Part number	Y1F98A
	Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
	Media Sizes	• Cassette 1: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in) • Cassette 2: 148.5 mm x 210 mm — 297 mm x 432 mm (5.8 in x 8.2 in — 12 in x 18 in)
	Media Types	Plain/Thin/Bond/Hole Punched/Preprinted/Recycled/Thin Cardstock/Letterhead/Thick/Cotton/Colored/Archive/Thin Glossy/Heavy Weight/Extra Heavy Weight
	Media Weight	• Plain Paper: 71–90 g/m^2 (18.5–24 lb/Duplex) • Thick Paper: 91–105 g/m^2 (25–28 lb/Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper: 106–176 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 1: 177–216 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 2: 217–256 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Heavy Weight Paper 3: 257–300 g/m^2 • Thin Paper: 60–69 g/m^2 (16–19 lb/Duplex) • Cotton Paper: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Colored: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Preprinted: 71–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Recycled: 60–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Bond Paper: 105–120 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Letterhead: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Hole Punched Paper: 75–90 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Thin Cardstock: 105–163 g/m^2 (Duplex) • Thin Glossy: 106–163 g/m^2 (Duplex)

Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: Yes
	Dimensions	556 mm x 610 mm x 265 mm (22.3 in x 24 in x 10 in)
	Weight	Net 20 kg, Packing 23.5 kg
HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department	Part number	Y1G21A
	Capacity	2000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m^2)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper
	Media Weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	Part number	Y1F20A
	Capacity	3000 sheets at 20 lb (80 g/m^2)
	Media Sizes	A4, Letter
	Media Types	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Punched Paper
	Media weight	60 to 300 gsm
	Sensing	• H/W Install Detect: Yes • Paper Empty and Low Level Detect: Yes • Paper Type Detect: No • Paper Size Detect: No
HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	Part number	Y1G16A
	Dimensions	585 mm x 670 mm x 257 mm
	Weight (Net)	18 kg
HP LaserJet Job Separator Department	Part number	Y1G01A
	Capacity	125 sheets at (80 g/m^2)
HP LaserJet Inner Finisher	Part number	Y1G00A

Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Capacity	500 sheets stacking, internal
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 50 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 500 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 50 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: Front flat and corner (45), Dual, Rear flat and corner (45)
	Saddle Stapling	N/A
	Offline Stapling	N/A
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	N/A
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher	Part number	Y1G18A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 3,250 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 3000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m^2 sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single , 45 degree), Center (Double)
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher	Part number	Y1G07A
	Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 2000 sheets stacking
	Staple Cartridge Capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
	Stacking	• Top Tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm) • Finishing Tray: 2000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 gsm)

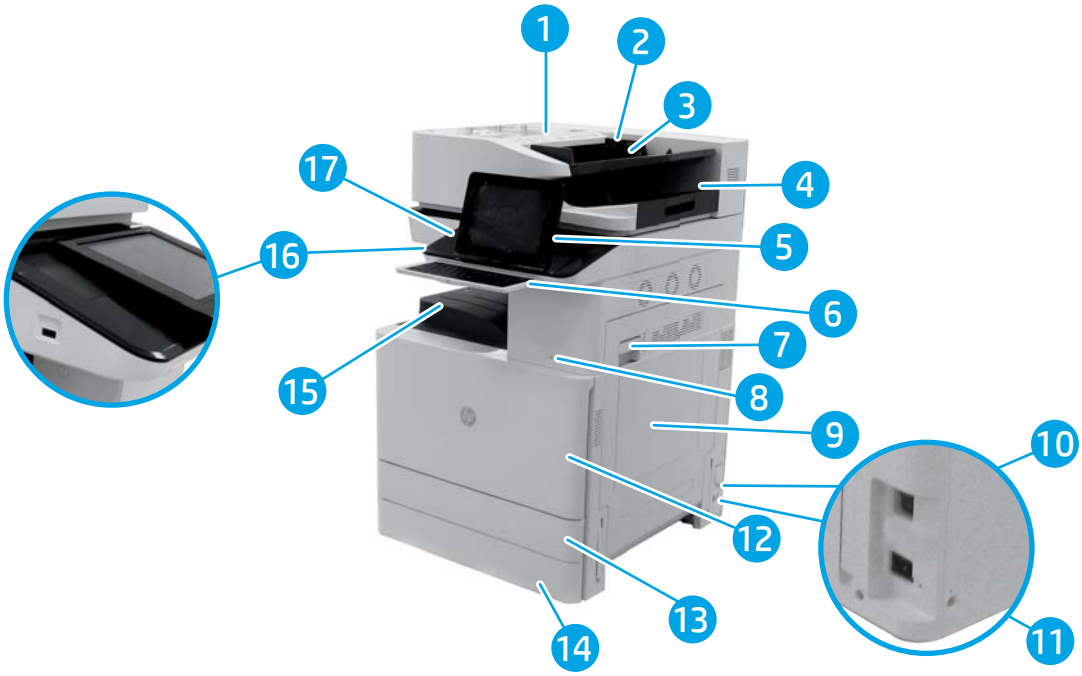
Table 2-11 Option specifications (continued)

Item		Specification
	Stapling	• Maximum Number of Sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 g/m² sheet • Stapling Positions: 2 Corners (Single), Center (Double)
	Saddle Stapling	Maximum Number of Sheets: 25 sheets stapling with 80 g/m² sheet
	Offline Stapling	Yes
	Offset at Non-Staple Job	Yes
	Offset at Staple Job	Yes
	Output Stacking	Face Down
1. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory 2. HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory 3. HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Part numbers	1. Y1G10A 2. Y1G11A 3. Y1G12A
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–300 g/m²
1. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch 2. P LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch 3. HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch	Part numbers	1. Y1G02A 2. Y1G03A 3. Y1G04A
	Available Unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
	Paper Wight	52–256 g/m²

Machine external view

Front view

Figure 2-2 Printer front view

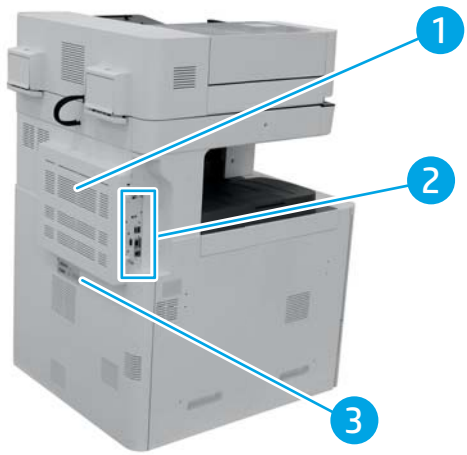


1	Flow ADF cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Flow ADF width guides
3	Flow ADF input tray
4	Flow ADF output tray
5	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
6	Physical keyboard. Pull the keyboard straight out to use it. CAUTION: Close keyboard when it is not in use.
7	Right door (access for clearing jams)
8	On/off button
9	Tray 1
10	Power switch
11	Power connection
12	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)

13	Tray 2
14	Tray 3
15	Output bin
16	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
17	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Rear view

Figure 2-3 Printer rear view

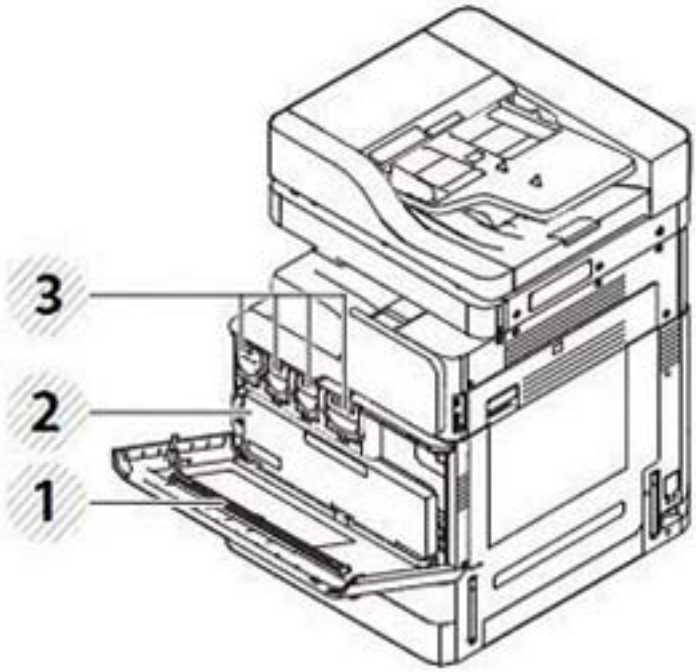


1	Formatter cover
2	Interface ports
3	Serial number and product number label

Inner view

Inner view

Figure 2-4 Inner view

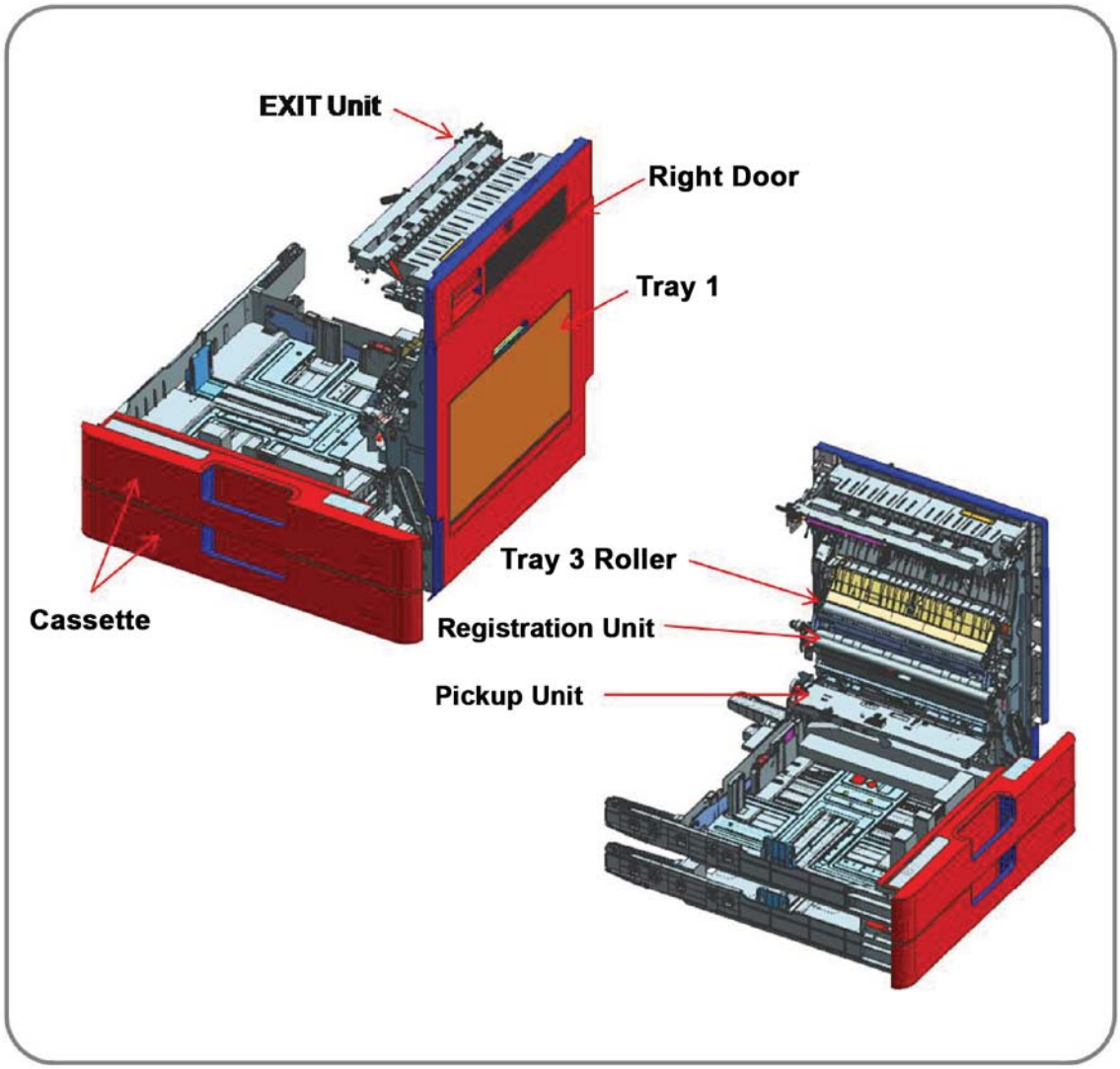


1	Laser scanner assembly window cleaning stick
2	Toner Collection Unit
3	Toner Cartridges
4	Imaging units (behind inner cover)

Feeding system

Feeding system overview

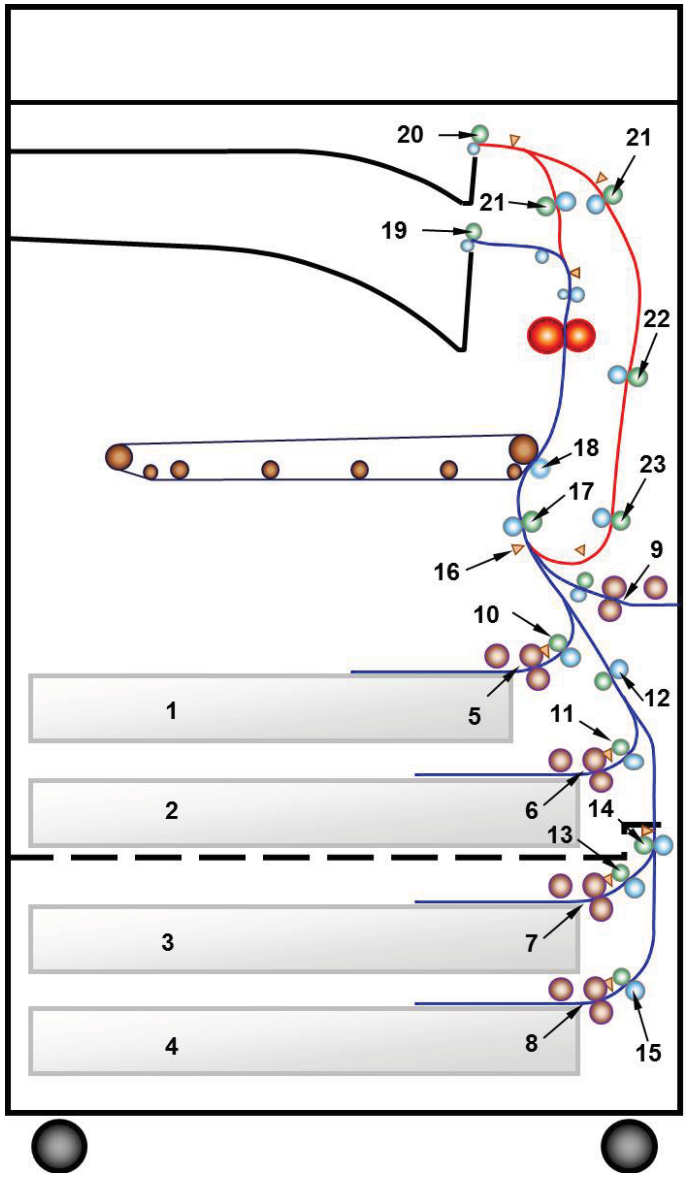
The feeding system picks up paper from the cassette or Tray 1 and moves it to the printing mechanism inside the printer. The feeding system consists of the pickup unit, registration unit, transfer roller assembly, and exit unit.



Main components and functions

Rollers

Figure 2-5 Rollers



1	Tray 2	13	Tray 4 feed roller (optional)
2	Tray 3	14	Tray 4 trans roller (optional)
3	Tray 4 (optional)	15	Tray 5 feed roller (optional)
4	Tray 5 (optional)	16	Registration sensor
5	Tray 2 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	17	Registration roller
6	Tray 3 pickup/reverse/feed rollers	18	Transfer roller
7	Tray 4 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	19	Output roller (1st)
8	Tray 5 pickup/reverse/feed rollers (optional)	20	Output roller (2nd)

9	MP Tray pickup/reverse/feed rollers	21	Output roller (trans)
10	Tray 2 feed roller	22	Duplex 1 roller
11	Tray 3 feed roller	23	Duplex 2 roller
12	Tray 3 trans roller	23	Duplex 3 roller

- Pickup roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller picks up the paper from the tray.
- Feed roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller is placed against the reverse roller. It transfers the paper from the pickup roller to the feed roller.
- Reverse roller (Tray 2, 3, 4, 5, and MP Tray)
  - This roller is placed against the feed roller and transfers only one sheet of paper to the feed roller. When two or more sheets of paper are being transferred from the pickup roller, the load of the torque limiter of the reverse roller is heavier than the frictional force between the sheets of paper. As a result, the reverse roller is stopped and the lower sheet of paper is not transferred.
- Feed roller
  - This roller transfers the paper sent from the feed/reverse roller to the registration roller.
- Registration roller
  - This roller aligns the leading edge of the paper and transfers the paper to the transfer roller assembly.

Table 2-16 Roller period table

Roller	Periodic
OPC/Drum	94.5 mm
Charge Roller (CR)	37.7 mm
Magnetic roller (MR)	32.3 mm
Transfer roller	44.0 mm
Transfer roller (T2)	75.4 mm
Fuser Belt (HR)	110 mm
Fuser Pressure Roller (PR)	114.7 mm

Sensor, motor, and solenoid

Figure 2-6 Sensor, motor, solenoid

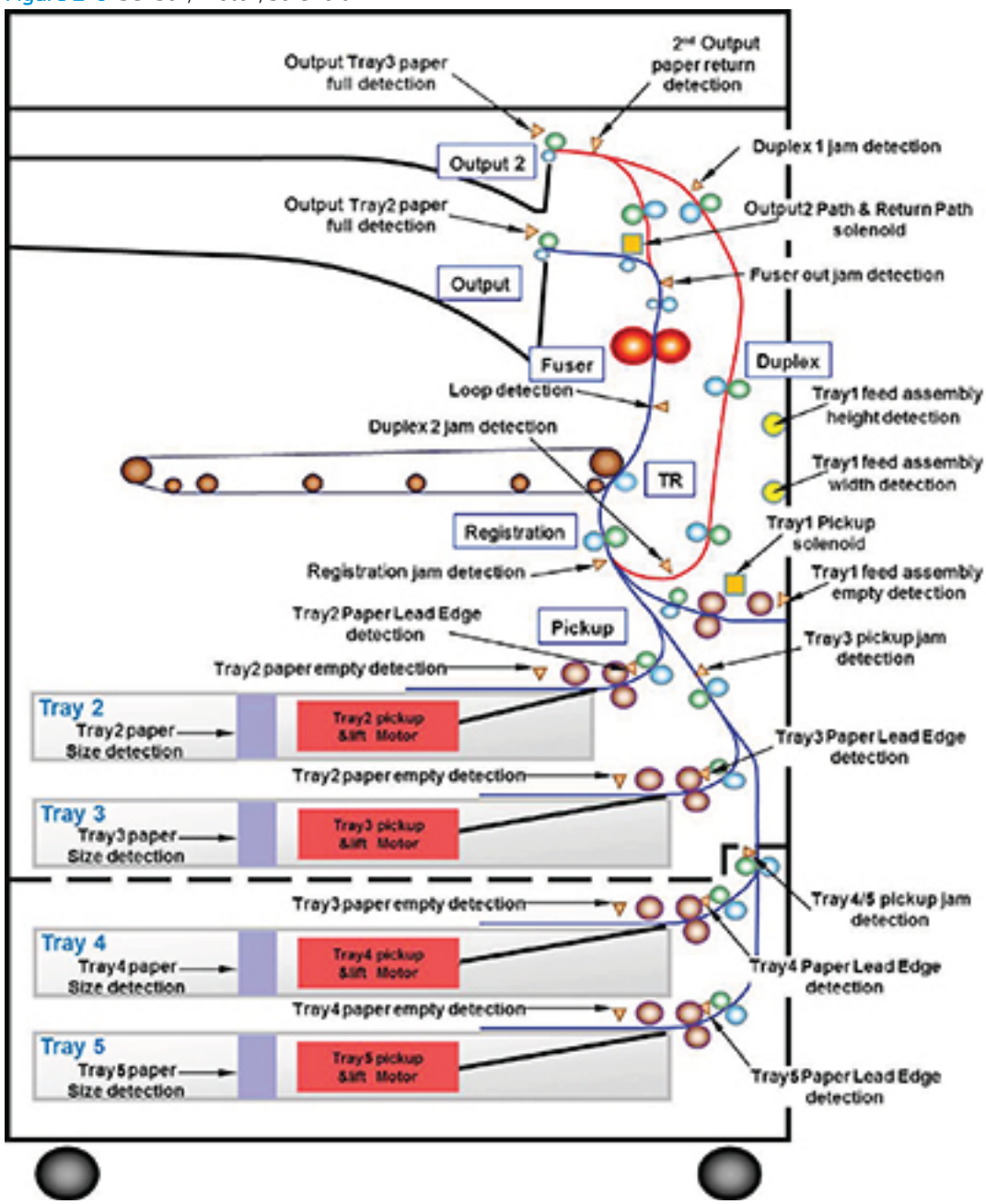


Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid

Item	Function
Tray 2 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper size
Tray 2 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper empty
Tray 2 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 upper limit
Tray 2 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 2 paper Lead Edge

Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid (continued)

Item	Function
Tray 3 paper size detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper size
Tray 3 paper empty detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper empty
Tray 3 upper limit detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 upper limit
Tray 3 paper Lead Edge detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper Lead Edge
Tray 3 paper feed jam detection sensor	Detects Tray 3 paper feed jam
Tray 4 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper size
Tray 4 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper empty
Tray 4 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 upper limit
Tray 4 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4 paper Lead Edge
Tray 4/4 paper feed jam detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 4/4 paper feed jam
Tray 5 paper size detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper size detection
Tray 5 paper empty detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper empty
Tray 5 upper limit detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 upper limit
Tray 5 paper Lead Edge detection (option) sensor	Detects Tray 5 paper Lead Edge
Paper registration jam detection sensor	Detects Paper registration jam
Paper fuser-out jam detection sensor	Detects Paper fuser-out jam
Output Tray 2 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 2 paper full
Output 2 tray path and Return path solenoid	Changes paper path
Return motor	Controls 2nd output tray and duplex printing
Output Tray 3 paper full detection sensor	Detects output Tray 3 paper full
Output 2 paper return detection sensor	Detects Duplex Return position
1st Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
2nd Duplex motor	Controls duplex printing
Duplex 1 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 1 jam
Duplex 2 jam detection sensor	Detects Duplex 2 jam

Table 2-17 Sensor, motor, solenoid (continued)

Item	Function
MP feed assembly paper empty detection sensor	Detects MP feed assembly: paper empty NOTE: If paper is loaded in the MP Tray, that tray takes priority over trays 2,3,4, or 5.
MP feed assembly	Controls MP feed assembly pickup roller
MP feed assembly paper width detection sensor	Detects MP feed assembly paper width
Tray 2 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 3 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 4 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Tray 5 Pickup and Lift motor	Drives the pickup roller and the knock up plate
Paper Loop Detection sensor	Detects paper loop between transfer Nip and fusing Nip At warm-up, Detects the fuser jam

Cassette

The cassette stores paper. The paper size is set using the guides in each tray.

Figure 2-7 Basic cassette

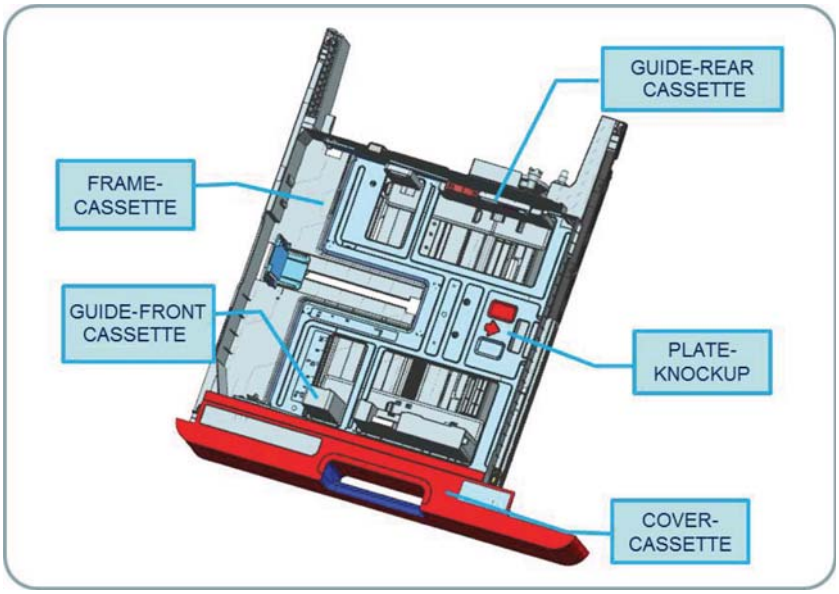


Table 2-18 Basic cassette

Item	Description
1	Structure: Drawer Type
2	Capacity: 520 sheets (80 g/m² paper standard)

Table 2-18 Basic cassette (continued)

Item	Description
3	Paper type • Plain paper: A5, A4, A3, B5, B4, Letter, 11 in x 17 in (Ledger), Statement, Legal • Special Paper: Envelope (Tray 2 Only), Label, Transparency
4	Paper weight • Plain paper: 60–300 g/m²
5	Plate knock up lift type: Lift Motor + Up Limit Sensor

Pickup unit

When paper pickup occurs, the pickup roller moves down in order to come in contact with the surface of the paper. If the cassette is installed, the LEVER-INPUT CST is pushed and the pickup roller moves down. The feed and separation rollers make sure that a single sheet of paper is moved into the paper path, and that the feed roller moves the paper as far as the registration (REGI) roller.

NOTE: The pickup unit 1 and pickup unit 2 are not interchangeable.

Figure 2-8 Pickup unit 1

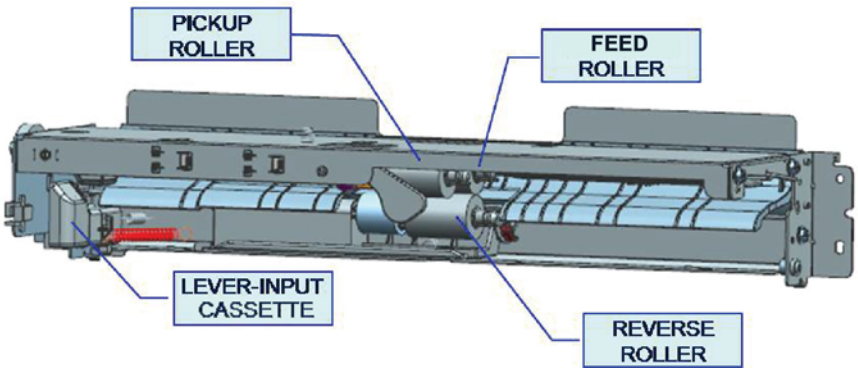
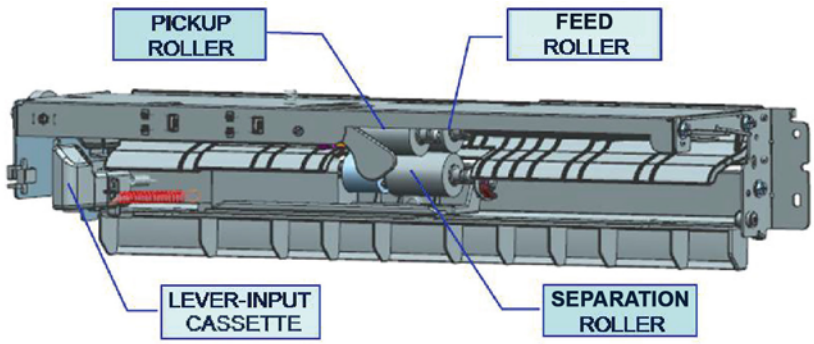


Figure 2-9 Pickup unit 2

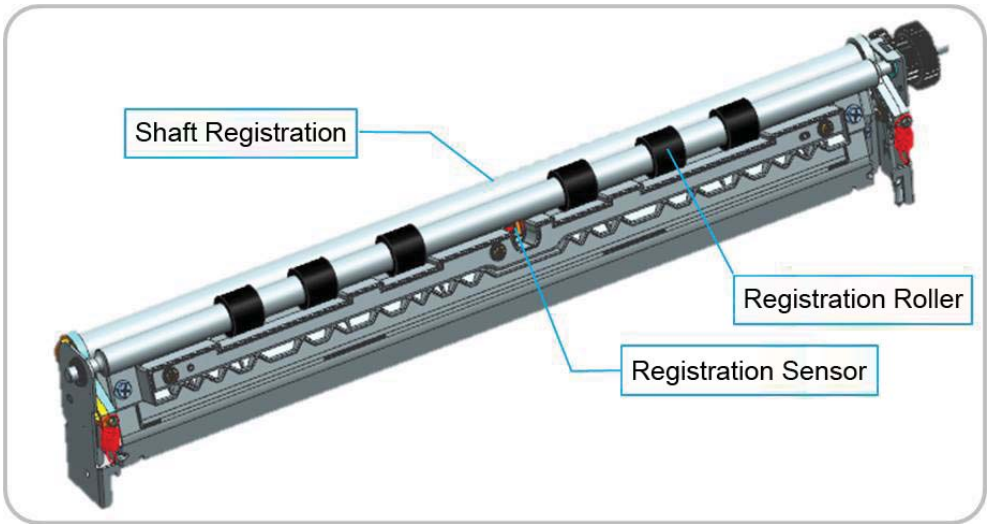


Registration unit

The registration roller is driven by the registration/multipurpose motor. The registration roller clutch is located between the registration/Tray 1 motor and registration roller, or on the transfer belt (for color), and it controls

power to the registration roller in order to match paper and an image on the drum at the predetermined registration point.

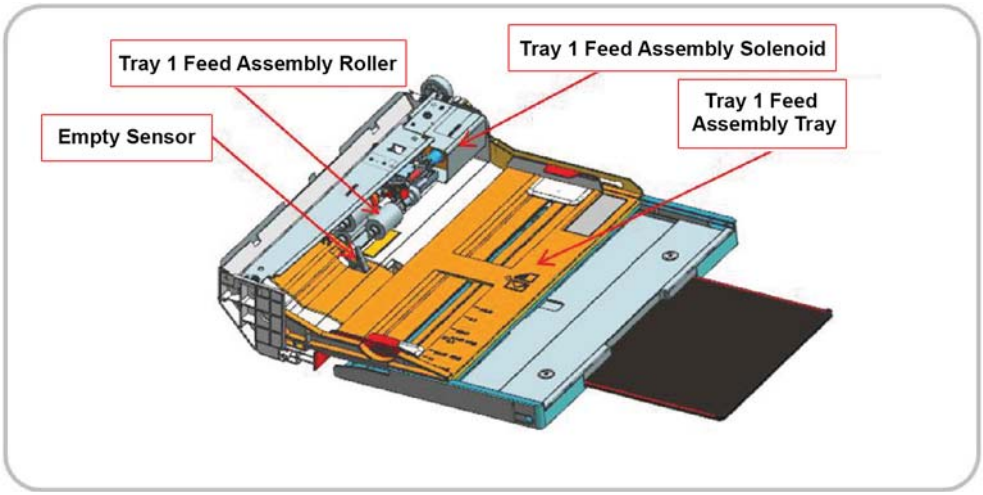
Figure 2-10 Registration roller



MP feeder assembly

The MP feed assembly allows feeding of special media cardstock and custom size paper.

Figure 2-11 MP feeder assembly

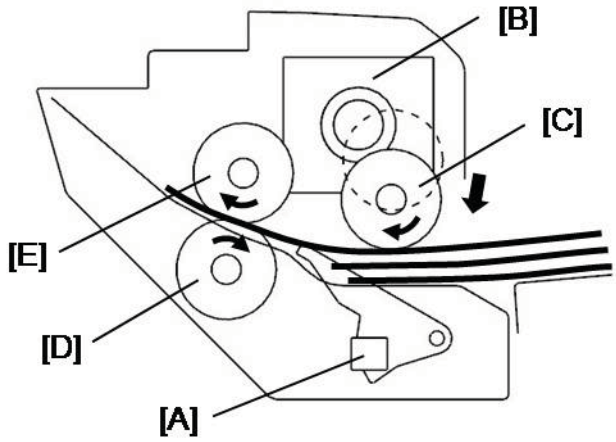


Specification

- Capacity: 100 sheets (80g/m² paper standard)
- Media size: 98 mm x 148 mm – 320 mm x 1200 mm (3.87 in x 5.8 in – 12.6 in x 47.2 in)
- Media weight: Plain paper 60 – 320 g/m²
- Feeding speed: 32 ppm, 40 ppm, 48 ppm Letter/A4 LEF (Long Edge Feeding)

Paper separation

Figure 2-12 Paper separation



When the MP paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a MP printing job, the MP solenoid [B] drops the pickup roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack in the MP Tray.

This machine uses a Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR) system for feeding paper. The friction between the reverse roller [D] and feed roller [E] separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

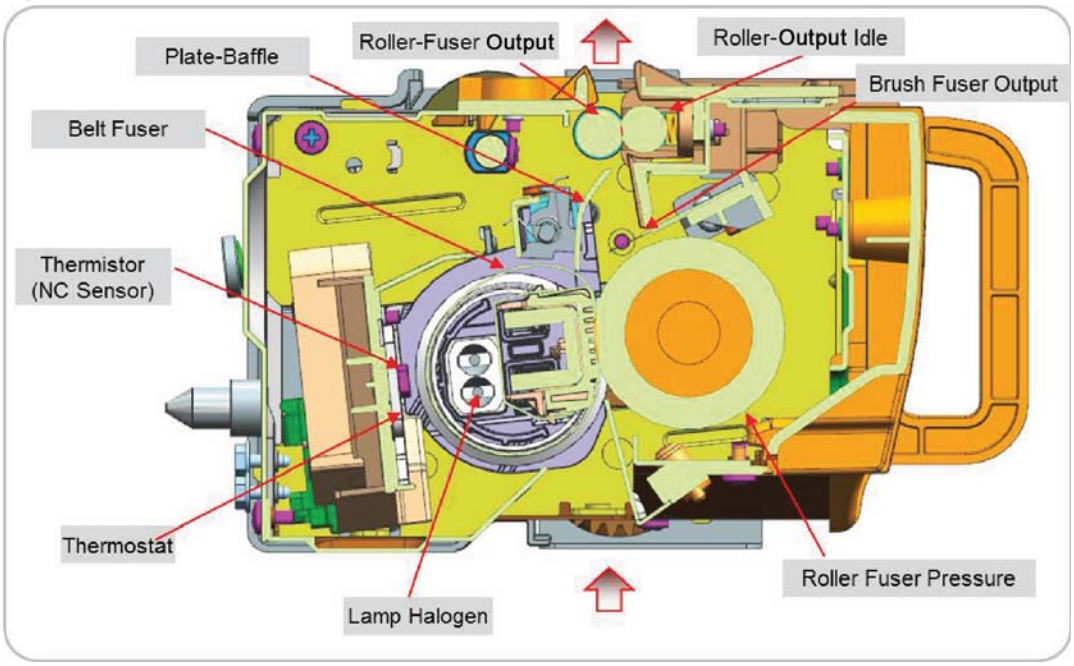
Fuser unit

Fuser unit overview

This section describes the image fusing process used by the printer.

This unit fuses the toner that was transferred by the transfer roller onto the paper, by applying a combination of heat and pressure to complete the fusing process. This printer uses an instant fusing system (NIF type). The fuser unit design for this model has improved. The fuser belt has been changed to require less heat capacity and still fuse the toner properly. Additionally, the life has been improved by incorporating a sub-bush system with a lubricant storage design.

Figure 2-13 Fuser unit



- **Lamp halogen**

  The fuser unit has two halogen lamps. One heats the center of the fusing belt, the other heats the end of axial direction. These halogen lamps are lit alternately to heat the fusing belt. Each lamp has its coil in a different location. The coil of the center heater lamp is in the center, the coils on the side heater lamp are on both sides. The lamps are fixed inside of the fusing belt. When the fusing belt rotates, the lamps do not rotate.

- **Belt fuser**

  The belt fuser gets heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper. The belt fuser consists of three thin-layers. The thin fusing belt reduces warm up and mode changing time. To prevent the fusing belt from adhering to the toner, the surface of the fuser belt is fluorinated. There is a nip inside the fusing belt. Tension springs are used to keep a constant nip area where the fusing belt contacts the pressure roller.

- **Roller fuser pressure**

  The pressure roller makes sure there is a proper nip width between the pressure roller and fusing belt. It is made up of the soft silicone sponge rubber. The pressure roller is driven by the driving system and drives the fusing belt.

- **Thermistor (NC sensor)**

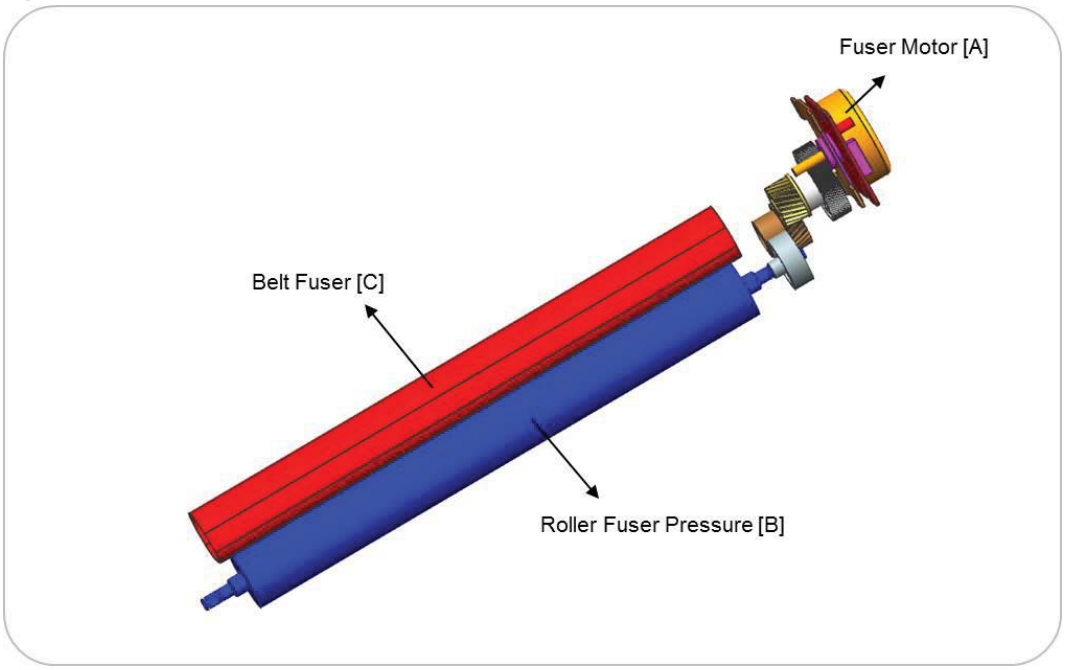
  The temperature of the fusing belt is maintained by NC sensors (non-contact type thermistors) located near the center and the end of the fusing belt.

- **Thermostats**

  The thermostat cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot as a result of a problem, such as a NC sensor malfunction. The thermostat is used to prevent abnormal operation. When a thermostat is triggered, it must be replaced as well as the other damaged parts in the fuser unit.

Fuser unit drive

Figure 2-14 Fuser drive

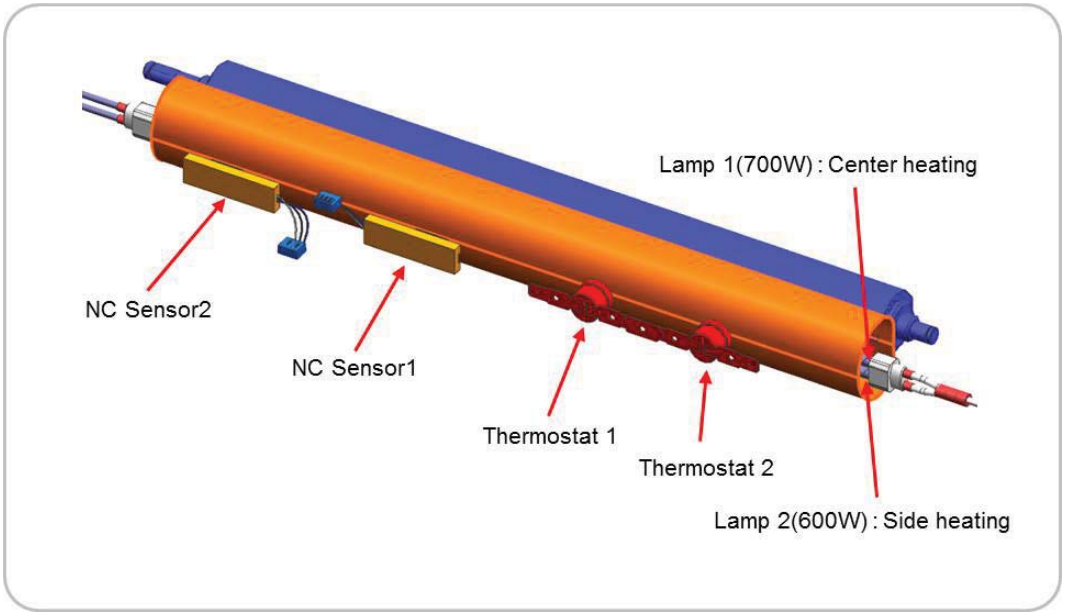


The fuser motor (A) drives the pressure roller (B) through the gear train. The fuser belt is driven by the pressure roller.

Fuser unit temperature control

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the fusing lamp. The lamp stays on until the NC sensors detect the standby temperature. The CPU then raises the temperature up to the printing temperature.

Figure 2-15 Fuser unit temperature control



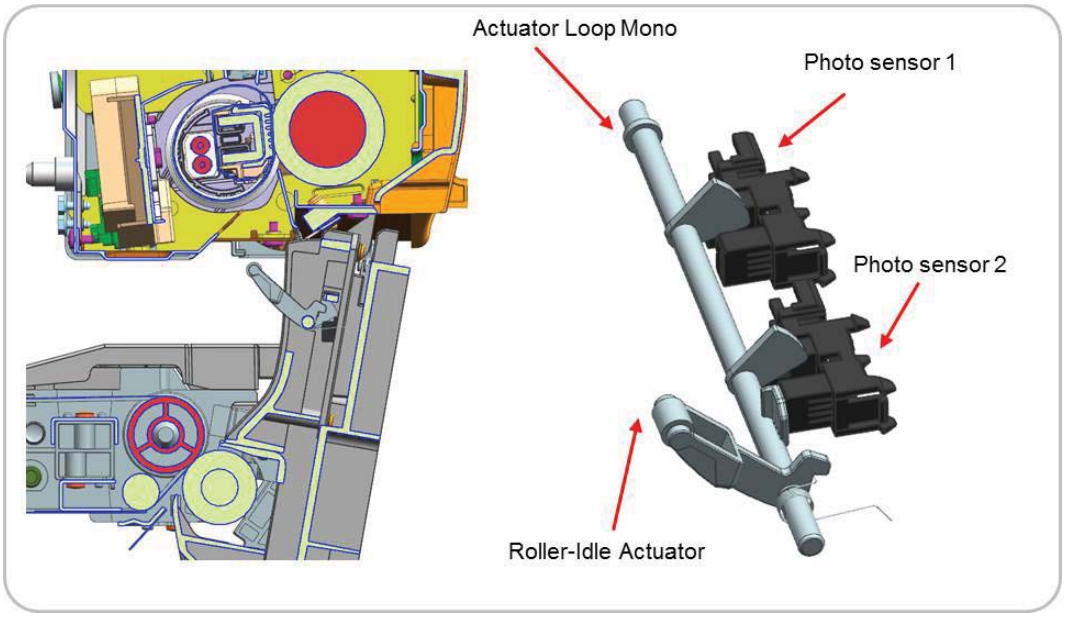
Overheat protection

- The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp in the following cases:
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 220°C for 20 seconds.
  - The belt temperature detected by the NC sensors keeps higher than 230°C for 3 seconds.
  - The relay off works when the belt temperature detected by the NC sensors is higher than 230°C.
- The following components are used when thermistor overheat protection fails:
  - Two thermostats get into line with the common ground wire of the fusing lamp.
  - If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 195°C, it opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp. If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 195°C, it also opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp.

Loop control

The tension of the paper between the OPC nip and the fuser nip is known as the paper loop level.

Figure 2-16 Loop control



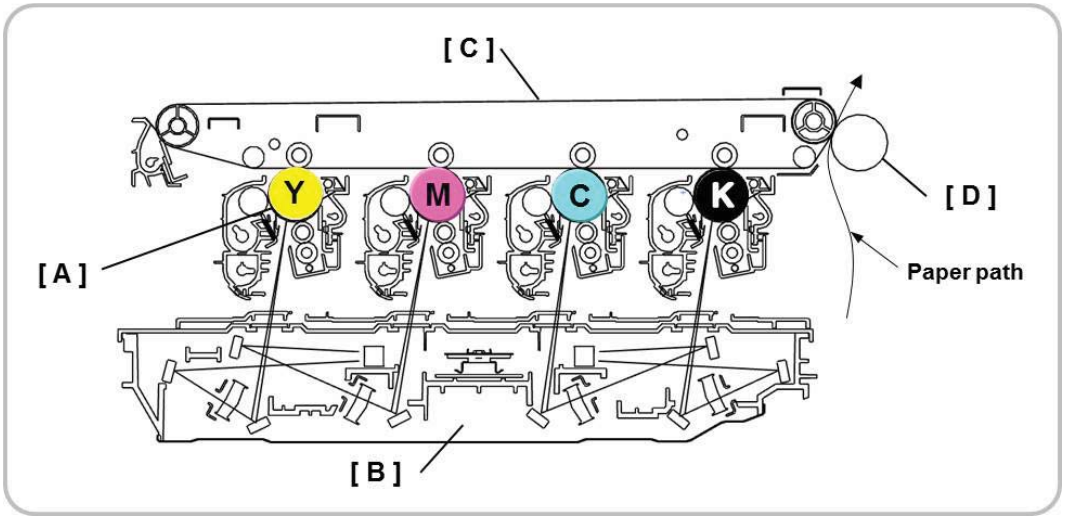
The paper loop level is controlled by monitoring photo sensors 1 and 2. The fuser unit controls the motor speed for the paper loop level.

Image creation

Printing process overview

This printer uses four drum units, four development units, and four laser beams for color printing. Each drum unit consists of a drum, charge roller, and cleaning blade. Each development unit consists of a magnetic roller and mixing auger.

Figure 2-17 Printing process overview



The OPC drum (A) is charged with a negative voltage and is exposed by the light from the laser scanner assembly (B).

The light produced by the laser creates a latent image by discharging on the surface of the OPC drum. The negatively charged toner is attracted to the latent drum image due to an electric field. The toner (real image) on each OPC drum is moved to the ITB (C) by the positive bias applied to the first transfer roller. All four toners (color image) are transferred to the paper by a positive charge applied to the second transfer roller (D).

1. OPC drum charge: The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge.
2. Laser exposure: Light produced by a laser diode hits the charged OPC through the lens and mirrors.
3. Development: The developing roller carries negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface. This printer uses four independent drum and development units (one for each color).
4. Transfer:
   - Image transfer: The first transfer roller opposite the OPC drums transfer toner from the drums to the ITB. Four toner images are super-imposed onto the belt.
   - Paper transfer: The second transfer roller transfers the toner from the ITB to the media.
5. Cleaning the OPC drum: The cleaning brush and blade remove remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.
6. Quenching for OPC drum: Quenching is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.

Imaging unit

Imaging unit overview

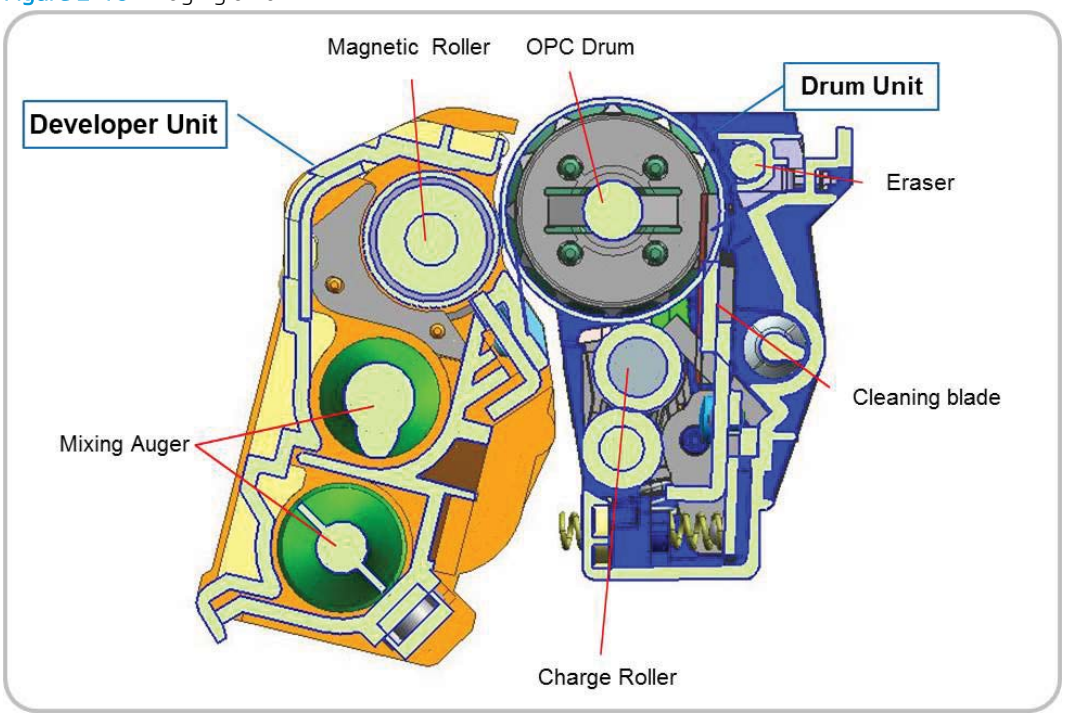
This printer uses a tandem type drum and development units. It uses four color developing during one paper path to increase color printing productivity.

The development units are not interchangeable, but the drum units for Y, M, and C color are interchangeable. The black drum unit is independent. The diameter of the drum is 30 mm with a circumference of about 94.2 mm.

The drum unit has the charge roller to charge the drum surface and cleaning roller to clean the charge roller.

The e-label is the sub part of the drum unit. It stores the count information and other data. If the drum unit is replaced, the count information stored by the old drum unit will not be kept.

Figure 2-18 Imaging unit



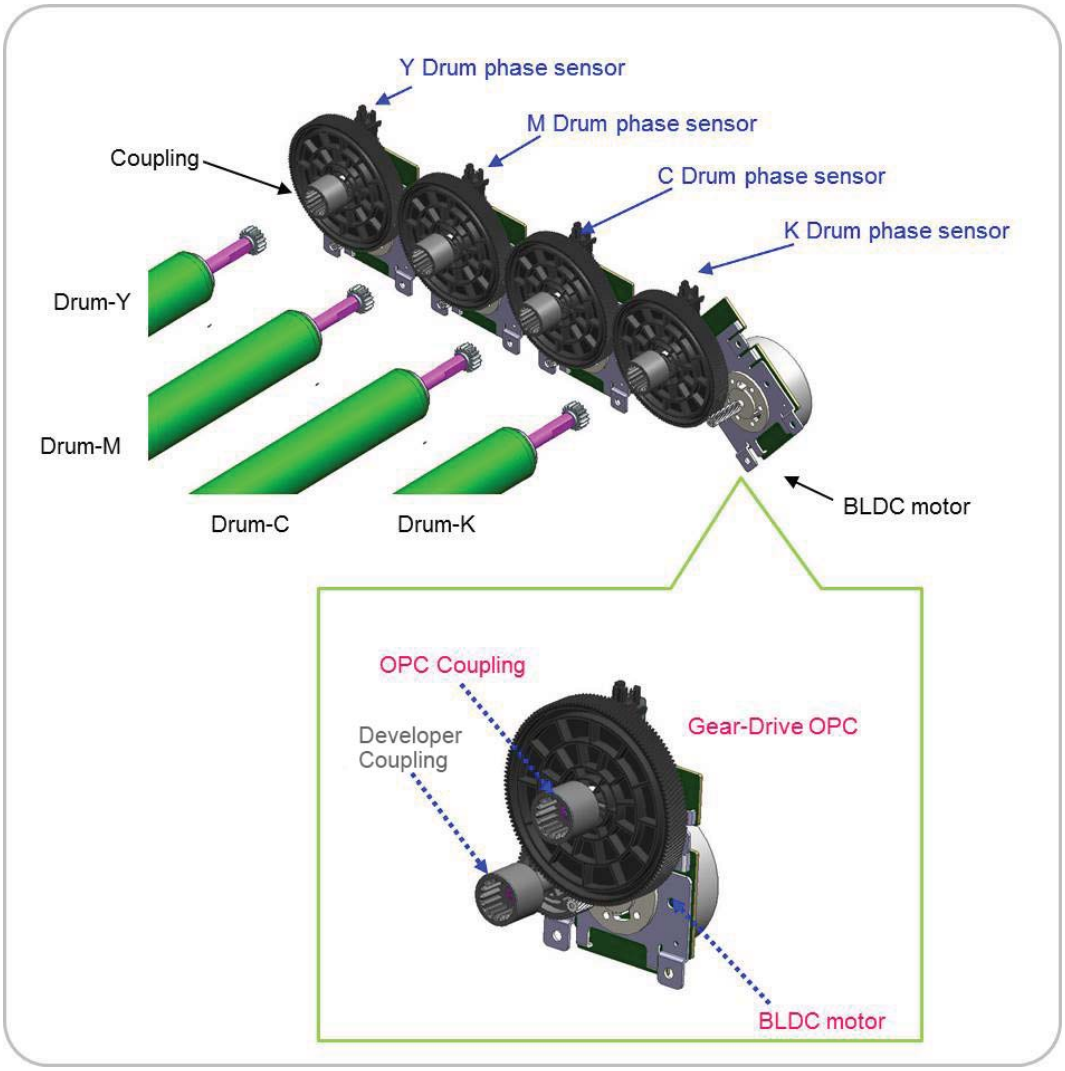
Drum drive

The color OPCs and magnetic roller are driven by each color motor. The OPC drum and magnetic roller are powered by the coupling.

The Brushless Direct Current (BLDC) motor maintains constant speed. The speed sync for each color depends on the BLDC motor.

Phase sync for each OPC job prints the pattern on the Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB) and is adjusted automatically.

Figure 2-19 Drum drive

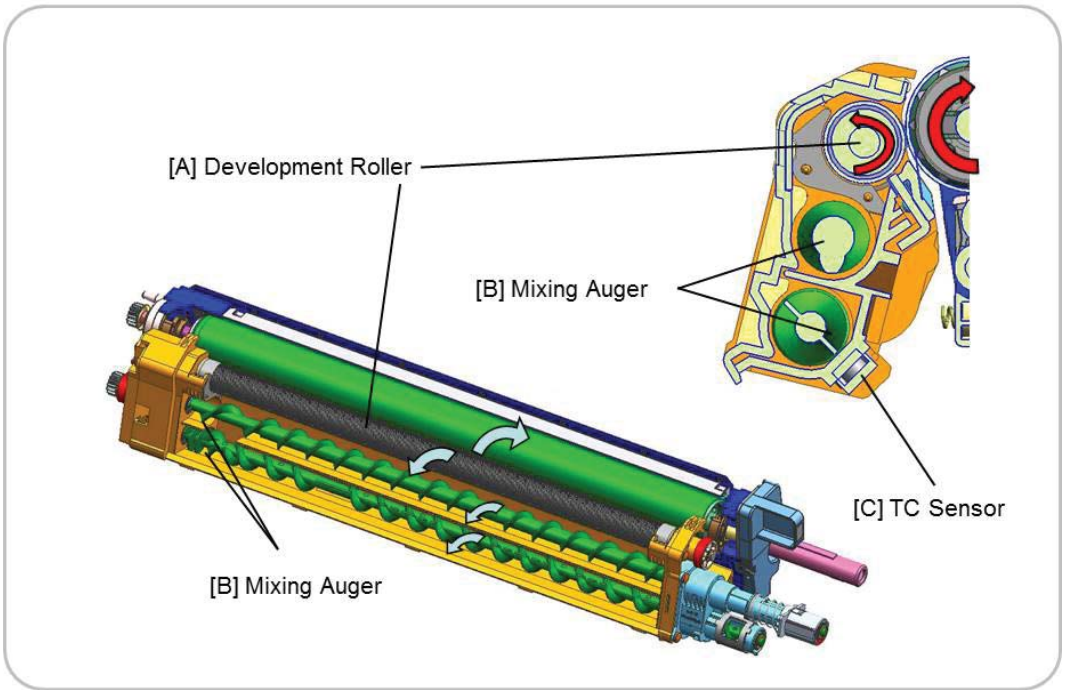


Developer unit

This printer uses a dual-component development system that has four development units. Each new unit contains 245 g of magnetic toner carrier (developer powder). The developer powder is supplied to the magnetic (development) roller (A) by the two mixing augers (B). The diameter of the magnetic roller is 18 mm.

Each development unit has a toner carrier (TC) sensor (C). The TC sensor is used for controlling the operating range of toner density.

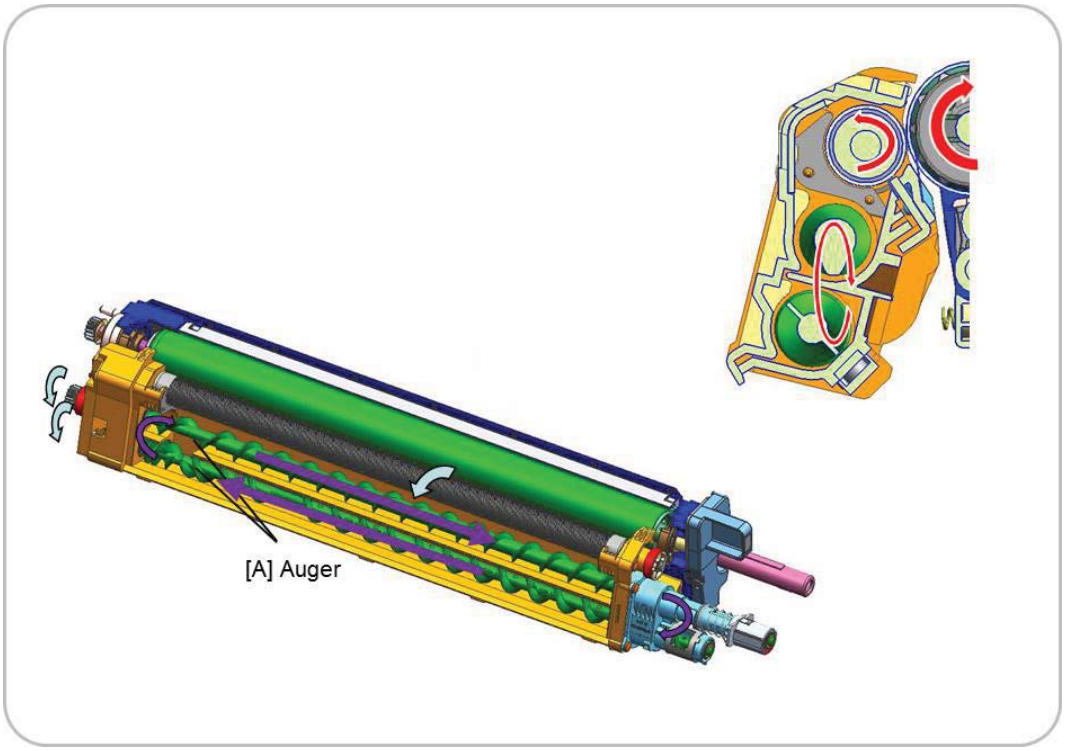
Figure 2-20 Developer unit



Developer agitation

Two mixing augers (A) circulate the developer forward and backward to agitate the developer in order to sufficiently mix the toner and developer.

Figure 2-21 Developer auger



Agitation occurs at the following times:

- During the process control self-checking (warm up)
- During toner supply job
- During development job

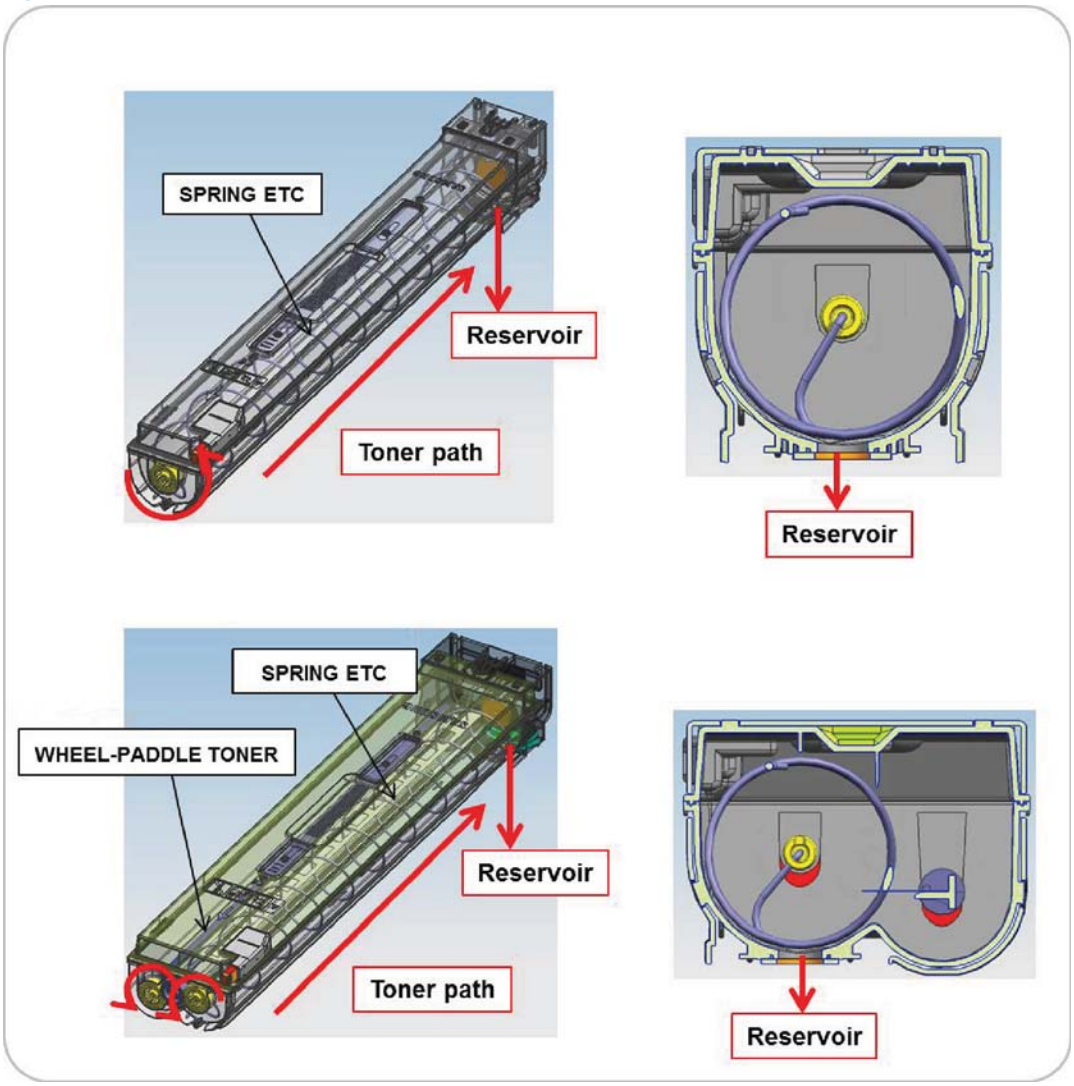
If the developer unit is stored above 45°C (113°F), the toner might harden and will not work properly. If the toner in the development unit has hardened, an installation error occurs.

Toner cartridge

When the toner and carrier in the toner cartridge is mixing:

- The YMC cartridge contains 570 g of toner and the K cartridge contains 840 g of toner. Additionally, the YMC cartridge contains 55 g of carrier and K cartridge contains 80 g of carrier.
- The toner in the YMC cartridge is transferred to the Reservoir by the Spring-ETC.
- The toner in the K cartridge is transferred to the Spring-ETC by the Wheel-Paddle Toner and transferred to the Reservoir by Spring-ETC.

Figure 2-22 Toner cartridge



Intermediate transfer belt unit

Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit overview

The toner on the four drums is transferred to the Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) by the first transfer roller.

The image overlapped by four colors is transferred to the paper by the second transfer roller. The remaining toners are removed by the cleaning blade and transferred to the toner collection unit.

This process is completed with one rotation of the ITB. The arrow above the C and M drums on the following diagram shows the direction of the ITB rotation. The ITB is rotated by friction between the drive roller and the ITB. The tension roller provides tension to prevent slipping.

There are three color plane registration (CPR) sensors and one photo sensor. Two CPR sensors are for line position adjustment and one is for process control. The photo sensor monitors the position of the first transfer rollers.

Figure 2-23 ITB unit

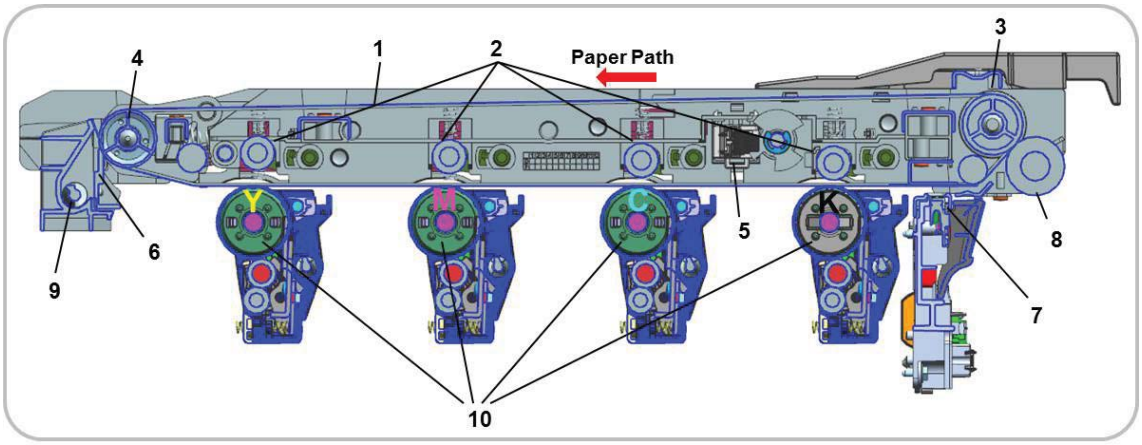


Table 2-19 ITB unit

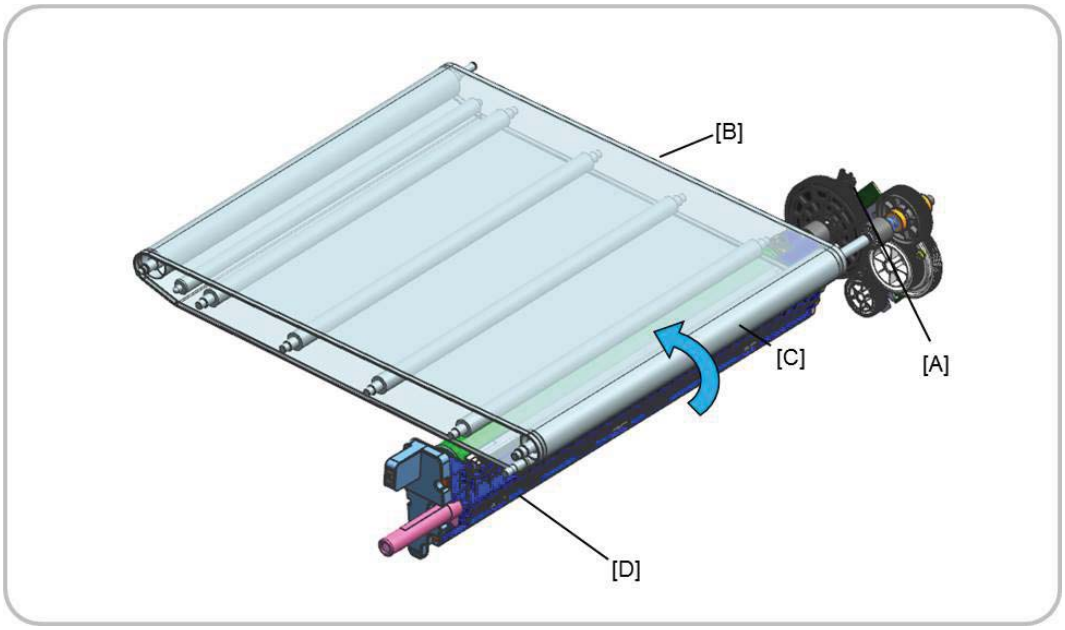
1	Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB)
2	First Transfer Roller
3	ITB Drive Roller
4	Tension Roller
5	Photo Sensor
6	Cleaning Blade
7	Color Plane Registration (CPR) Sensor
8	Second Transfer Roller
9	Toner Collection Auger
10	Drum Unit

Transfer belt drive

The drive motor (A) drives the ITB (B) by using gears and the ITB drive roller (C).

The ITB (B) and black OPC (C) is synchronized by the drive motor (A).

Figure 2-24 Transfer belt drive



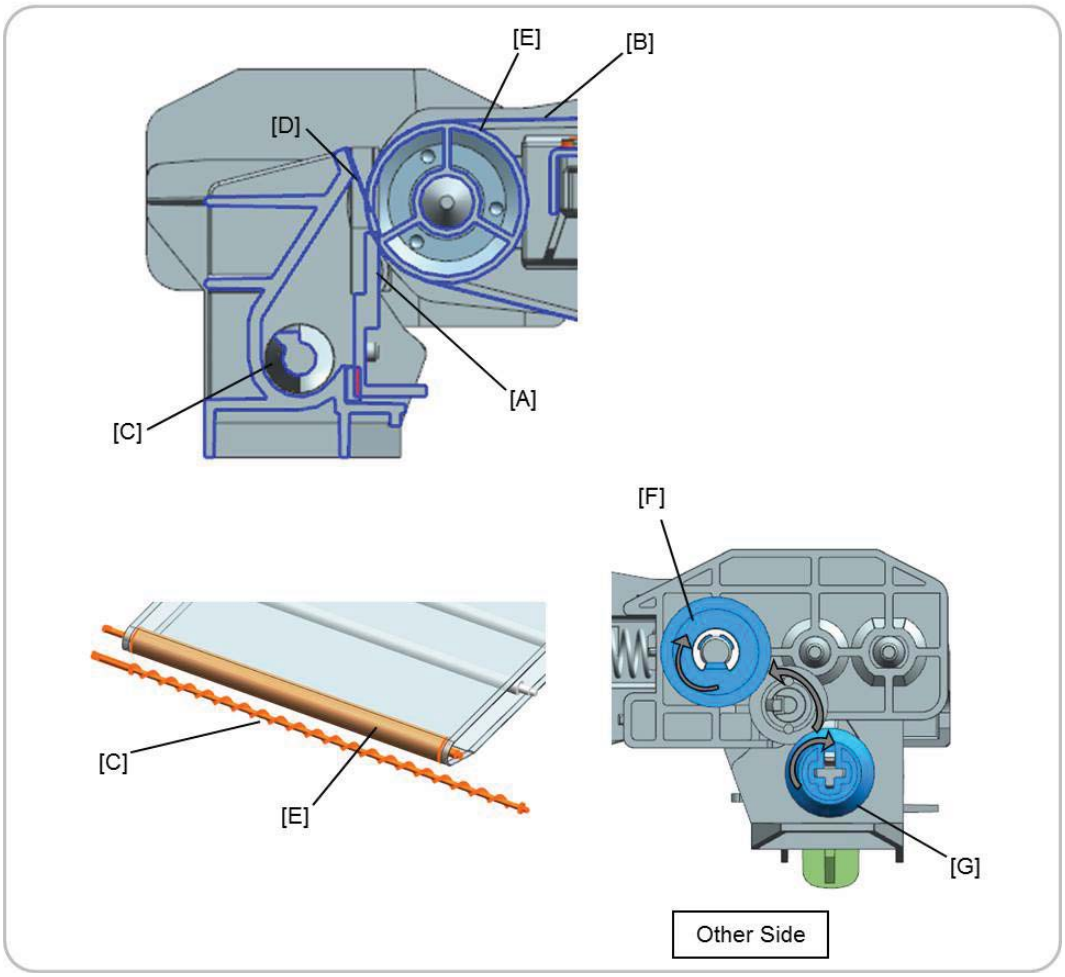
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaning

The intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner removes toner during printing. Belt cleaning is completed while the ITB makes one rotation. The ITB drive motor drives the ITB cleaning motor.

The cleaning blade (A) in the ITB cleaner always contacts the ITB (B). The cleaning blade removes the used toner from the ITB. The toner collection auger (C) transfers the waste toner to the toner collection unit.

The seal (D) on the ITB cleaner protects against toner contamination. The driving power by the driver roller is transferred to the tension roller (E). The toner collection auger gear (F) drives the gear (G) and collects the toner.

Figure 2-25 ITB cleaning



Toner reservoir unit

Main function

- Toner Buffer Space (about 0.6 K page volume) which allows users to continue printing until a new toner cartridge is delivered from purchase.
- A toner supply unit that is more accurate from the toner full sensing algorithm.
  - Minimizes the remaining toner in toner cartridge.
  - A uniform toner supply volume per second prevents an abnormal case of toner-density control error in the development unit.

Working mechanism

- Toner level sensing method in the Reservoir unit:
  - The toner level is checked by time with a floating actuator shuttering light sensor (toner full sensor).
- Toner supply to Reservoir unit:

– As the toner level (High, Middle, and Low) in the reservoir unit decreases so does the toner bottle supply motor 1500 ms, 900 ms, and 600 ms.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode and execute the toner dispense motor.

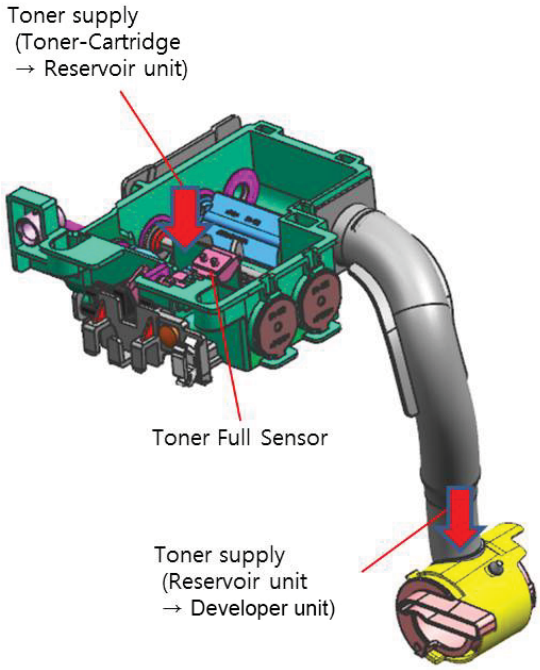
   Service Mode > Diagnostics Engine Diagnostics Engine Test Routines > Toner Dispense Motor (Y,M,C,BK)

   NOTE: There is no test routine for the toner full sensor in the reservoir unit.

2. Check the gear noise and motor operation.

   If the reservoir driving gear is working without abnormal noise, then each reservoir unit does not have a mechanical problem.

   Figure 2-26 Toner reservoir unit



Laser scanner assembly

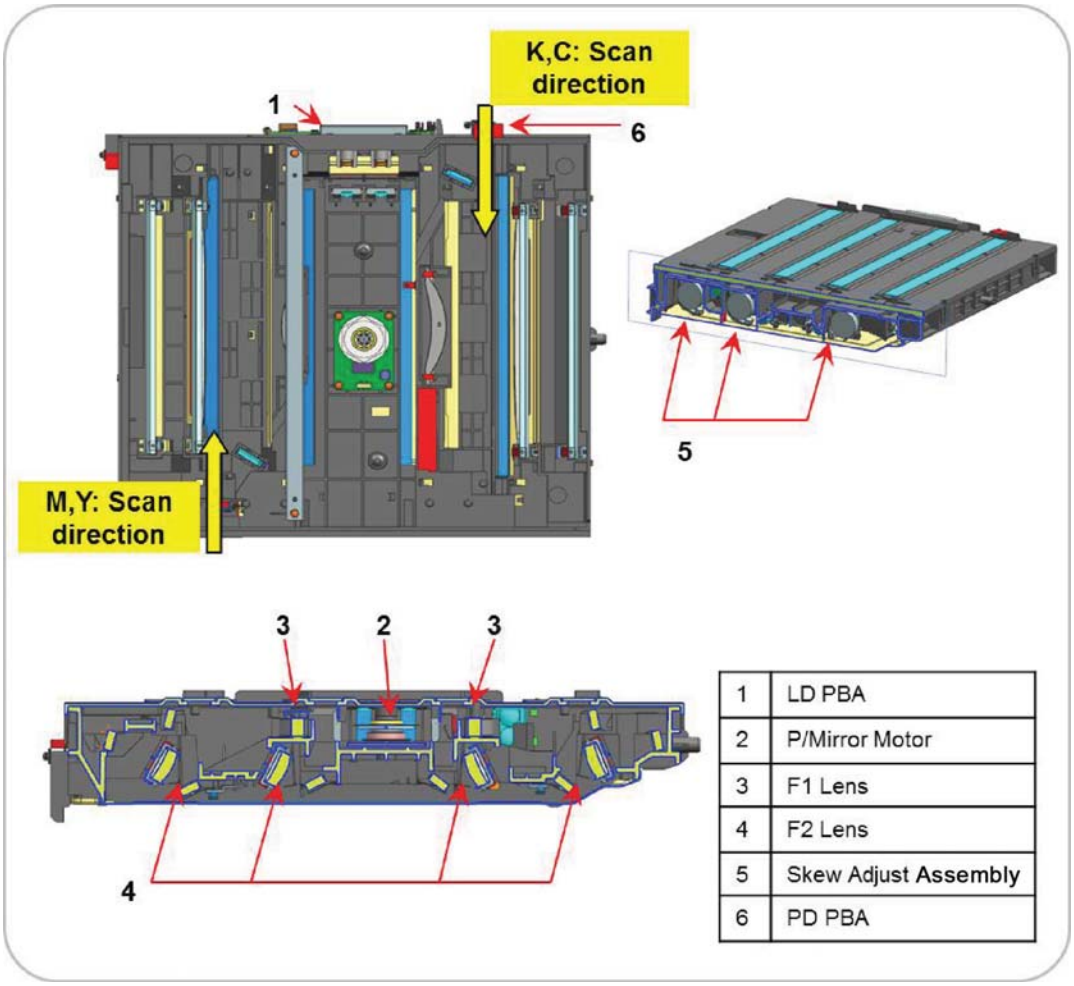
Laser scanner assembly overview

The laser scanner assembly consists of one polygon motor and four laser diodes (LD) units. The Laser scanner assembly forms a latent image on the surface of four OPC drums. For this process, the laser scanner assembly has a collimator lens, cylindrical lens, two F-Theta lenses, and two reflective mirrors on an optical path for each color.

This Laser scanner assembly uses the cross scan type scanning. K Color and C Color scan the laser from the rear to the front. M Color and Y Color scan the laser from the front to the rear.

The laser scanner assembly has a skew adjustment function which adjusts the scanning line by step motor.

Figure 2-27 Laser scanner assembly



1	LD PBA
2	P/Mirror Motor
3	F1 Lens
4	F2 Lens
5	Skew Adjust Assembly
6	PD PBA

Laser scanning optical path

The laser from the laser scanner assembly is placed at intervals of 78 mm for each color. All colors use the same polygon motor for oblique incidence.

The F2 lens (A) determines the slope of the primary scanning line and the image position of the secondary scanning direction. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer. The primary scanning line slope difference is adjusted by the skew adjustment in the laser scanner assembly.

Reflective mirrors (B) on each color path adjust the curvature of primary scanning. This setting is adjusted by the manufacturer.

Figure 2-28 Laser scanning optical path

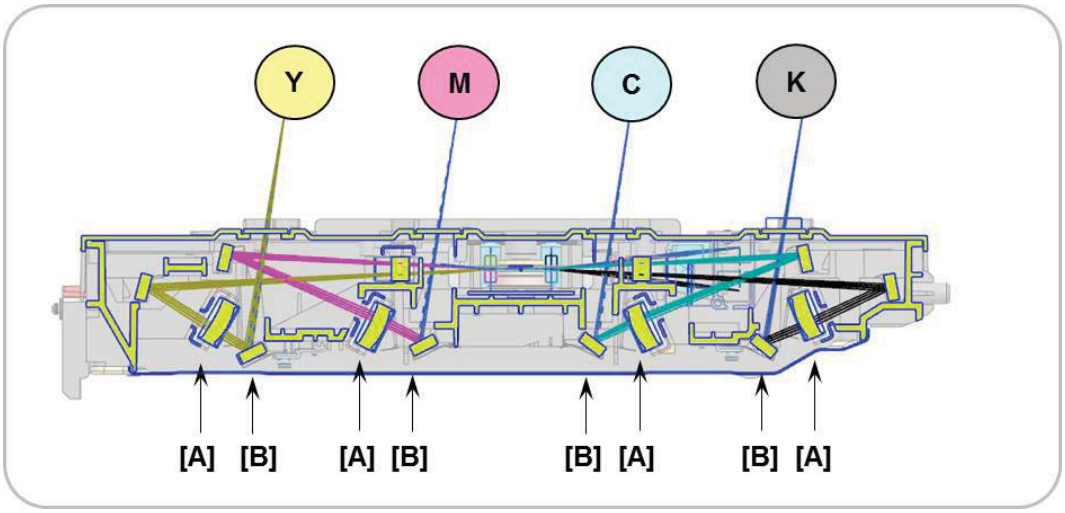


Table 2-20 Laser scanning optical path

Item	Specification	Remark
LD Unit	Laser Diode: Quad Beam Driving IC: Dual LD x 8	LD x 4 (for each color)
P/Motor Speed	• E87640: 22,087 rpm • E87650: 27,520 rpm • E87660: 33,071 rpm	
Speed	• E87640: 187 mm/s • E87650: 233 mm/s • E87660: 280 mm/s	
H/W interface	Interface with printer: 50 pin + 60 pin + 8 pin	FFC + FFC + Wire

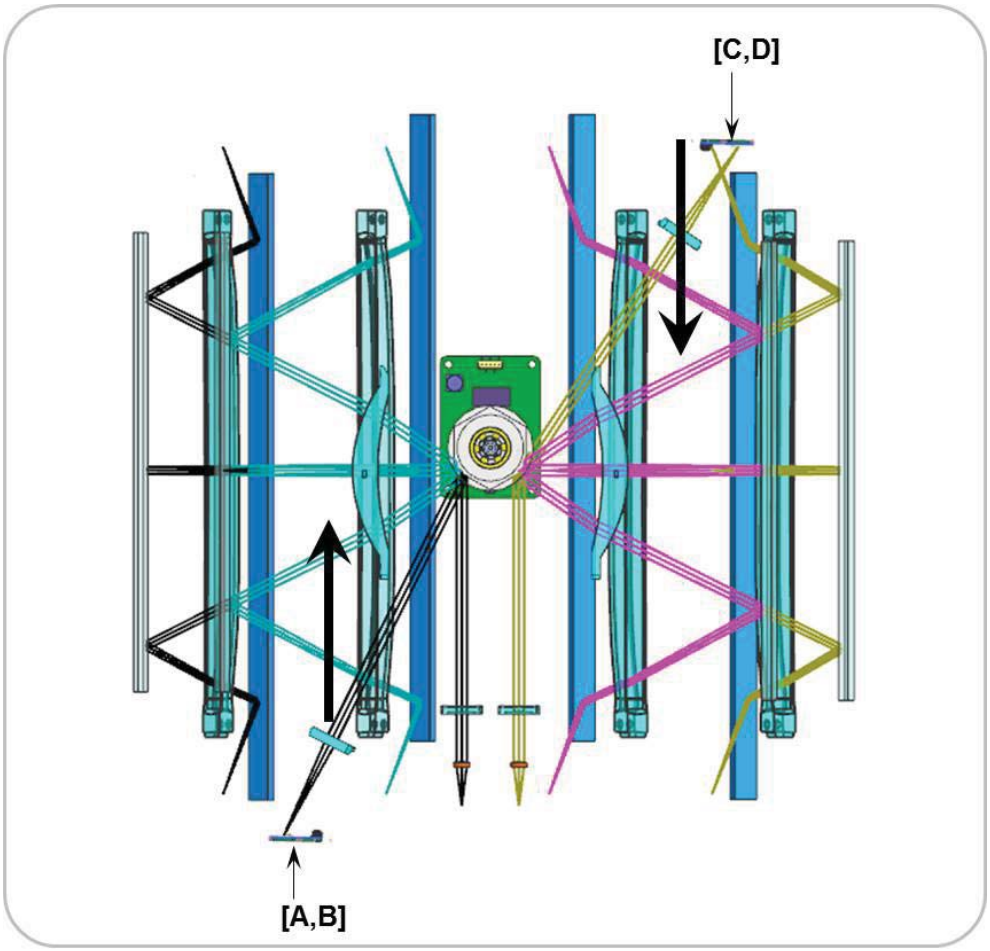
Laser synchronizing detectors

The laser scanner assembly has two beam detector sensor boards (PD PBA includes four sensors). The PD PBAs are located at each corner of the laser optics housing unit.

The two PD PBAs detect the following:

- (A, B): Scanning start position for K, C
- (C, D): Scanning start position for M, Y

Figure 2-29 Laser synchronizing detectors



Main scan start detection

The PD PBAs detect four beams at the scanning start point and create the horizontal sync (Hsync) signal. Data is scanned by Hsync.

The arrow in the previous diagram shows the data scanning direction for each color. Black/Cyan and Yellow/Magenta use the same polygon motor scanning in opposite directions.

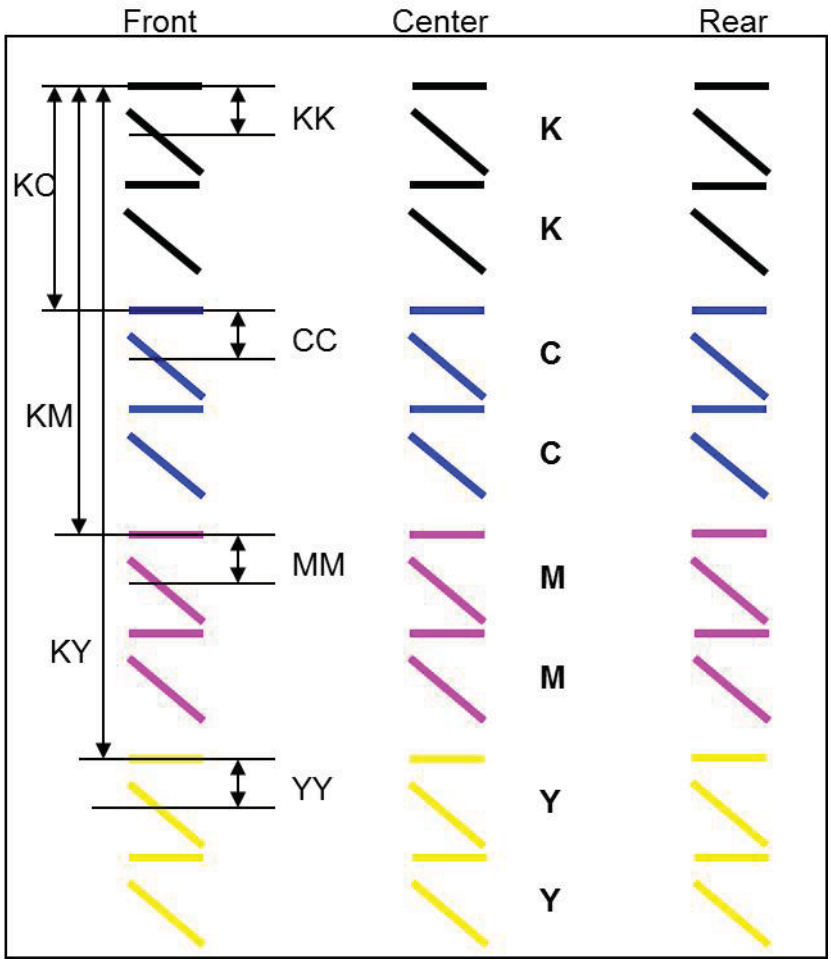
Automatic CPR adjustment

During automatic CPR adjustment, the line patterns below are created eight times on the intermediate transfer belt (ITB). The spaces between the lines (KK, CC, MM, YY, KC, KM, KY) are measured by the front, center, and rear CPR sensors. The controller takes the average of the spaces and then adjusts the following positions and magnification:

- Sub scan line position for CMY
- Main scan line position for CMY
- Magnification ratio for CMY
- Skew for CMY

The ITB cleaning unit cleans the ITB after the patterns are measured.

Figure 2-30 Automatic CPR adjustment



- KK, CC, MM, YY: Spaces between two lines of the same color.
- KC, KM, KY: Spaces between a black line and each color line.

Adjustment

- **Sub Scan line position for CMY**

  The adjustment of the sub scan line position for CMY is based on the line position for K (black). The printer measures the gaps between the lines of each color in the pattern on the ITB. When the gaps for a color are incorrect, the printer moves the image of the color up or down the sub scan axis. To do this, it changes the laser write timing for that color.

- **Main Scan line position for CMY**

  When the printer detects that the image is out of position in the main scan direction, it changes the laser write start timing for each scan line.

- **Magnification Adjustment for CMY**

  When the printer detects that magnification adjustment is necessary, it changes the LD clock frequency for the required color.

- **Skew for CMY**

The adjustment of the skew for CMY is based on the line position for K (black).

Adjustment Conditions

Line position adjustment can be turned on or off. However, it is normally recommended to turn on this function.

Line position adjustment timing depends on several settings. These settings include the following:

- ΔT = Temperature change of the laser scanner assembly between the temperature of the previous line position adjustment and the current temperature.
- Pages = Total printed pages after previous line position adjustment.

Interval During Print Job

Line position adjustment interrupts printing and then starts automatically when one of these conditions occurs when the printer checks at the sheet interval:

- ΔT > Temperature threshold (laser scanner assembly temperature: [default 3°C])
- Pages > Output threshold for all outputs (default: 500 pages)

Toner Collection Unit Not-Installed/Installed

- Line position adjustment starts automatically when toner collection unit is removed and reinstalled.

Drum Unit or Developer Unit Replaced

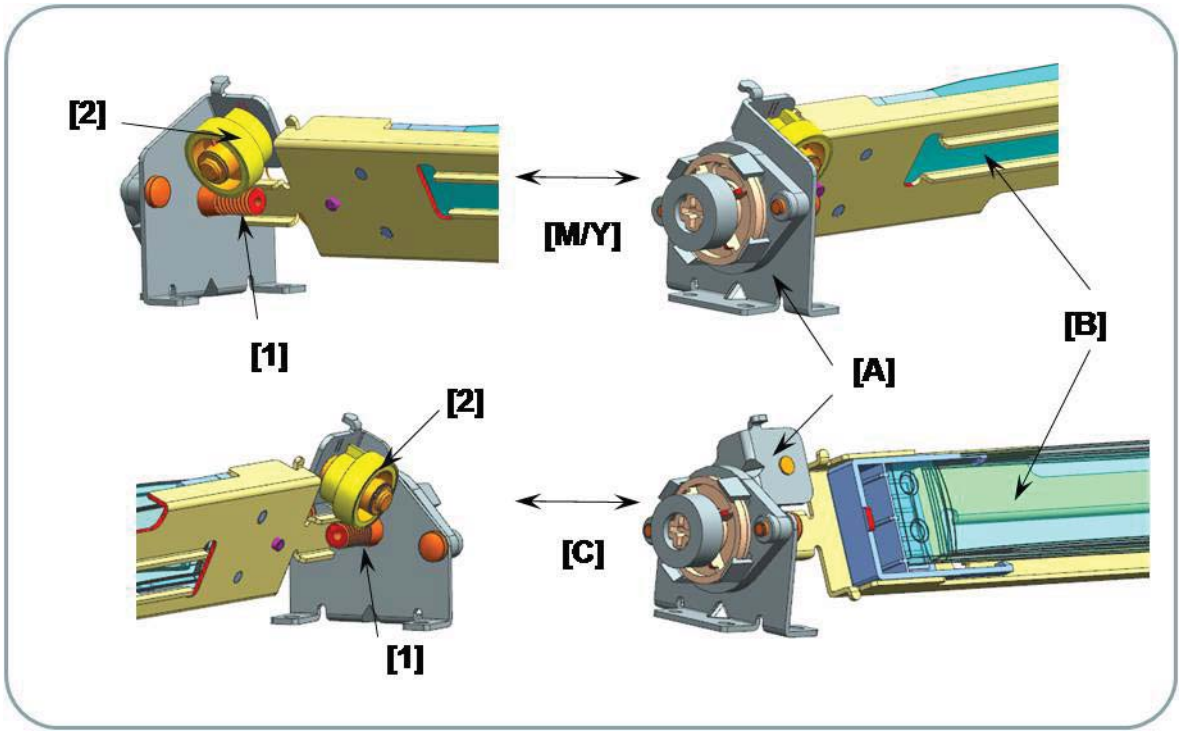
- When the printer detects a new drum unit or developer unit, line position adjustment is automatically performed.

ITB Replaced

- When the printer detects a new ITB or other ITB, SVC engineers have to execute the adjustment manually.

Main Scan Skew Adjustment

Figure 2-31 Main scan skew adjustment



- The skew adjustment assembly (A) consists of the worm gear (1) for adjustment and worm gear (2). When Color Plane Registration (CPR) executes, it detects and adjusts the scanning line slope manually.
- The skew adjustment assembly (A) for magenta, cyan, and yellow adjusts the skew angle of the F2 lens (B). This mechanism corrects main scan skew.

Drive system

Pickup and cassette lift drive

Figure 2-32 Pickup and cassette lift drive

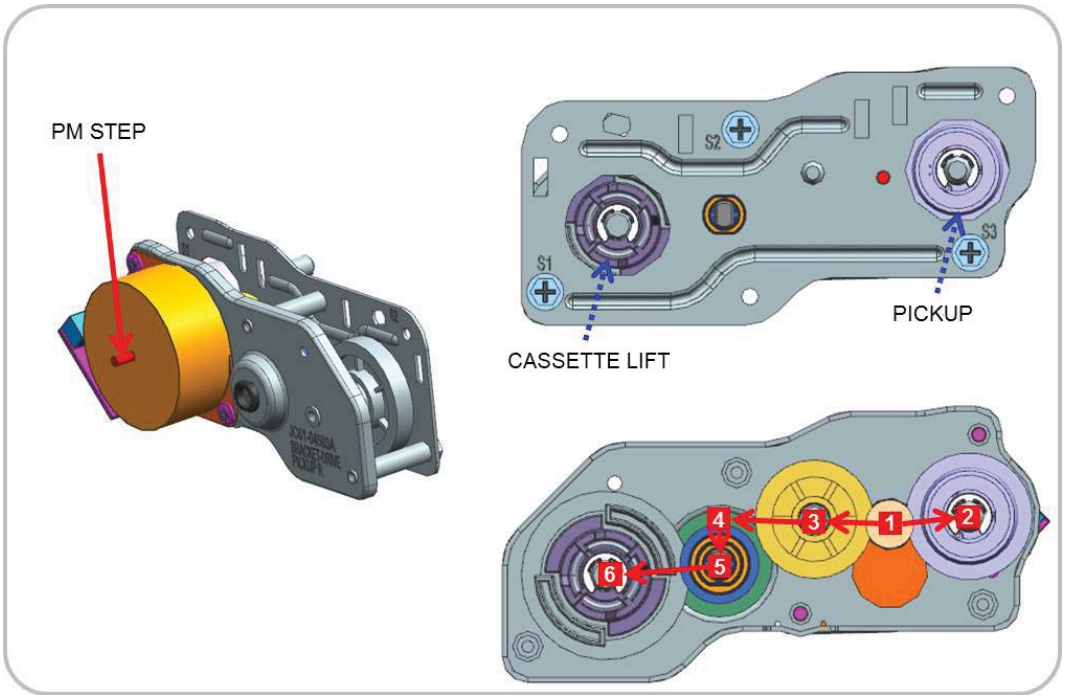


Table 2-21 Pickup and cassette lift drive

Power train	Pickup: normal rotation (pickup input) counter rotation (cassette lift input)
• 1 PM STEP → normal rotation → 2 Gear (pickup driving) • 1 PM STEP → counter rotation → 3 Gear → 4 5 Gear → 6 Gear & Coupler (cassette lift driving)	

Feed drive

Figure 2-33 Feed drive

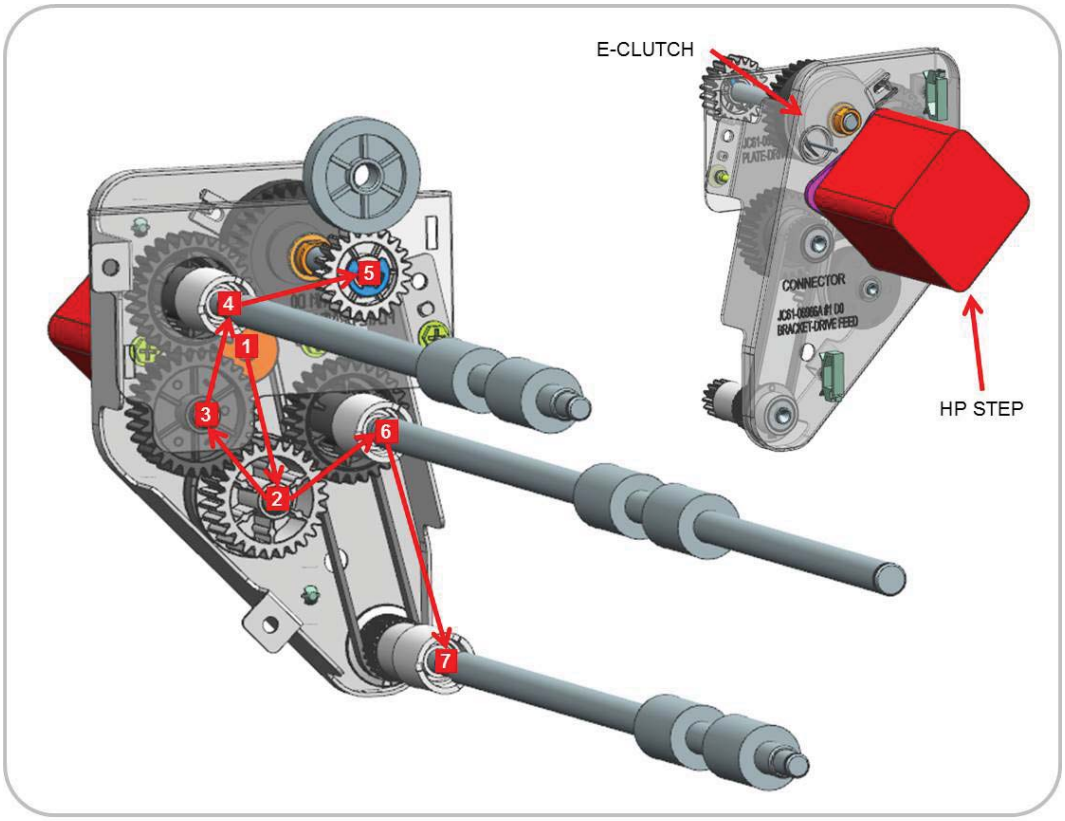


Table 2-22 Feed drive

Power Train	HP STEP → Feed & MP drive
• 1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 3 Gear → 4 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 5 E-Clutch & Gear (MP driving)	
• 1 HP STEP → 2 Pulley & Coupler → 6 Gear & Coupler (Feed Roller driving) → 7 Pulley & Coupler (Feed Roller driving)	

Registration drive

Figure 2-34 Registration drive

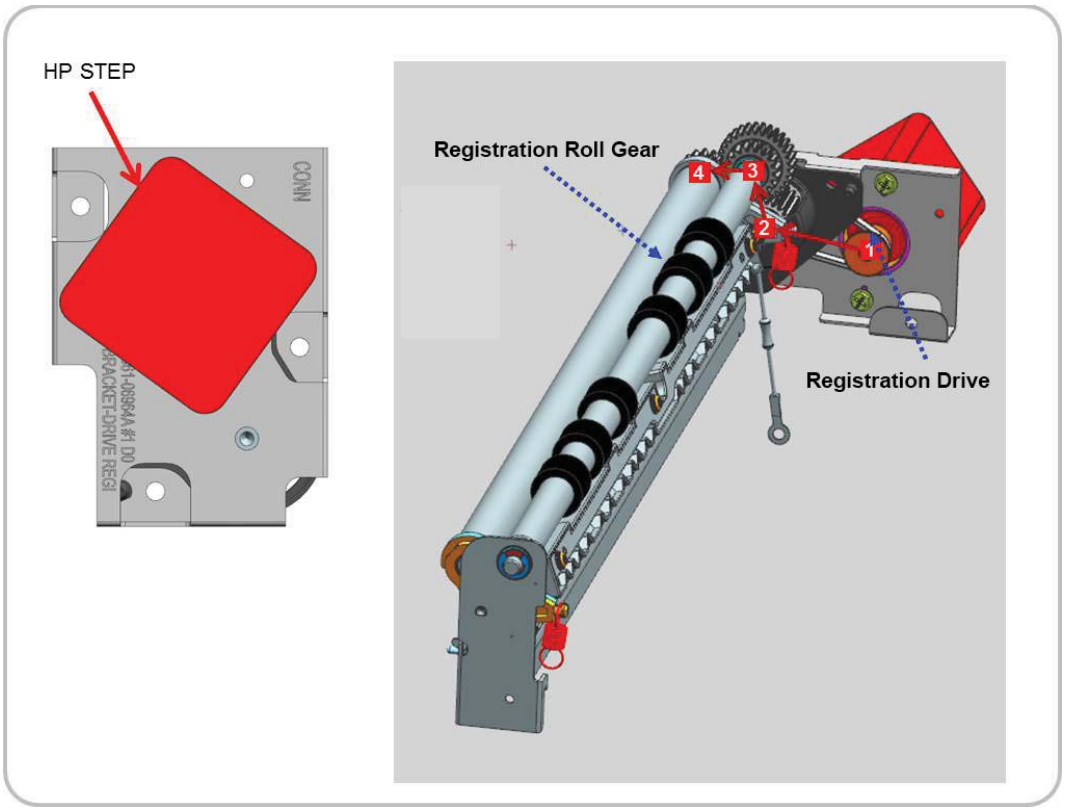


Table 2-23 Registration drive

Power Train	HP STEP → Registration driving
• 1 HP STEP → 2 Gear → 3 Gear (Registration Roller driving)	

Fuser release/output drive

Figure 2-35 Fuser release/output drive

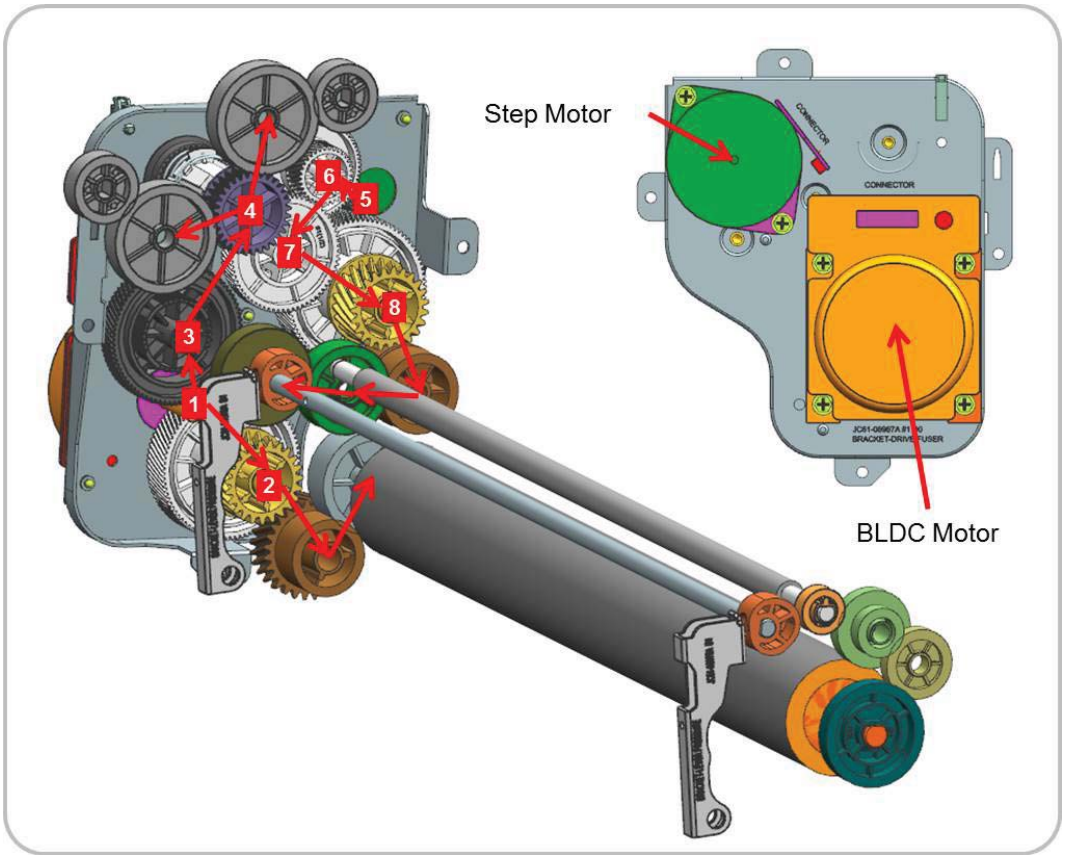


Table 2-24 Fuser release/output drive

Power Train	BLDC → Fuser and output driving PM Step → Fuser release driving
• 1 BLDC → 2 Gear (Fuser P/R driving) • 1 BLDC → 3 Gear & Pulley → 4 Gear (output driving) • 5 PM Step → 6 Gear → 7 Gear → 8 Gear (Fuser Release driving)	

Drive motors

The following diagram shows the location of the printer drive motors.

Figure 2-36 Drive motor

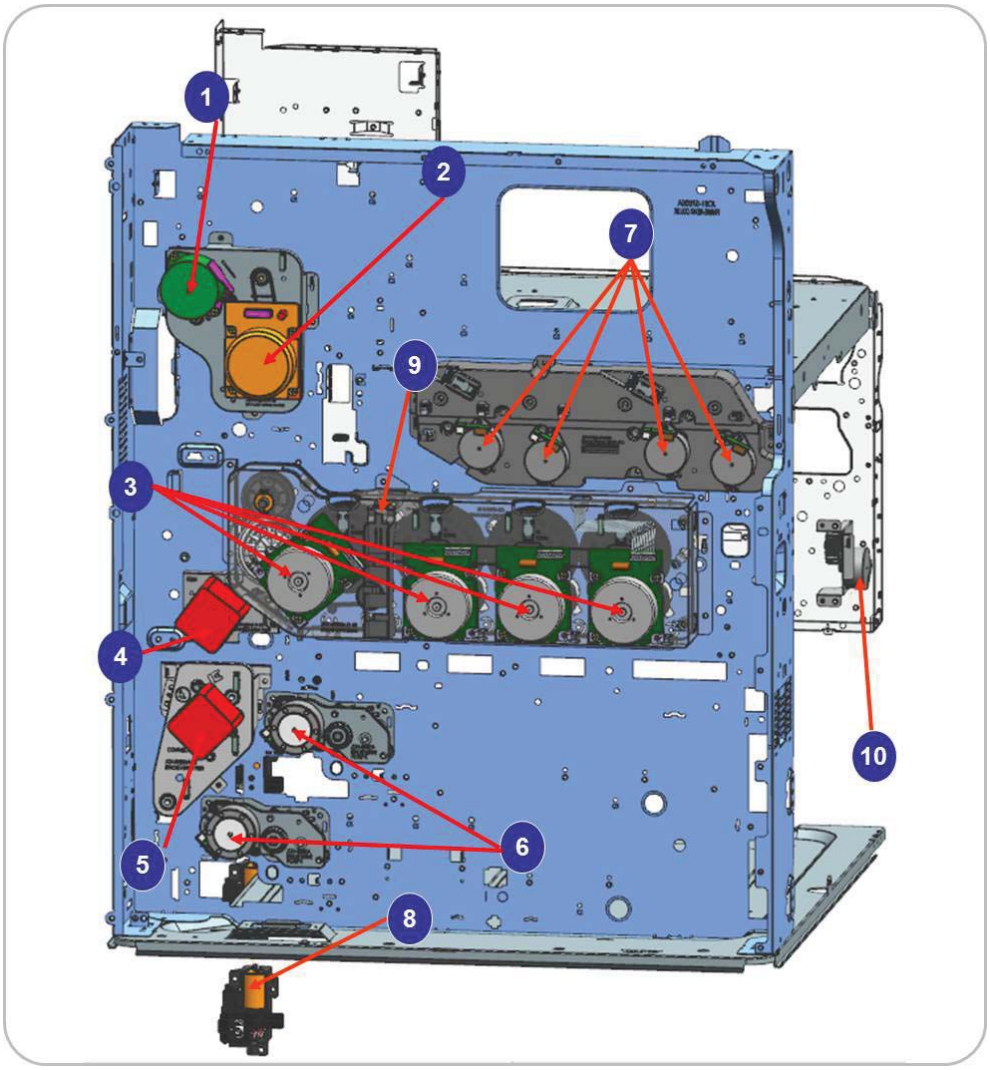


Table 2-25 Drive motor

Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
1	Fuser Release	PM-STEP	1	Fuser Release driving
2	Fuser and Exit	BLDC	1	Fuser and Exit driving
3	Main OPC, Development, and ITB	BLDC	4	OPC and PTB Belt driving
4	Registration assy	HP-STEP	1	Registration driving
5	Feed/MP	HP-STEP	1	Feed roller 1, 2, 3 driving
		E-CLT	1	Feed/MP driving control
6	Pickup	PM-STEP	2	Pickup roller/cassette lift driving (Reverse driving at cassette lift driving)
7	Toner Supply and Reservoir	PM-STEP	4	Toner transfer (Reservoir → Development unit)

Table 2-25 Drive motor (continued)

Number	Motor	Motor type	Qty	Function
8	Engage transfer assembly	PM-STEP	1	T1 Engage/Disengage driving
9	TCU	PM-STEP	1	TCU driving

Main drive unit motors

Figure 2-37 Main drive unit motors

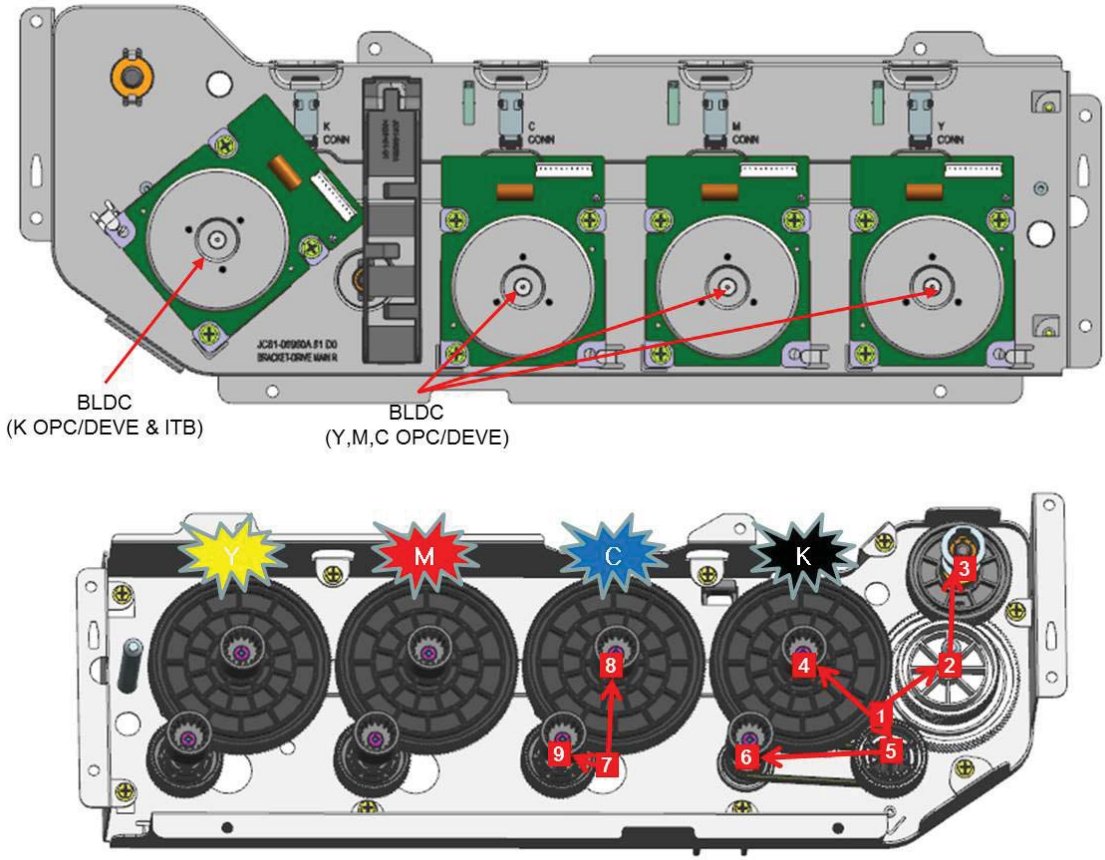


Table 2-26 Main drive unit motors

Power Train	BLDC → OPC & Development & ITB driving

- 1 BLDC → 2 Gear → 3 Gear & Coupler (ITB driving)
- 1 BLDC → 4 Gear & Coupler (K OPC driving)
- 1 BLDC → 5 Gear & Pulley → 5 Gear & Coupler (K Development driving)
- 7 BLDC → 8 Gear & Coupler (Y, M, C OPC driving)
- 7 BLDC → 9 Gear & Coupler (Y, M, C Development driving)

Toner supply/reservoir drive

Figure 2-38 Toner supply/reservoir drive

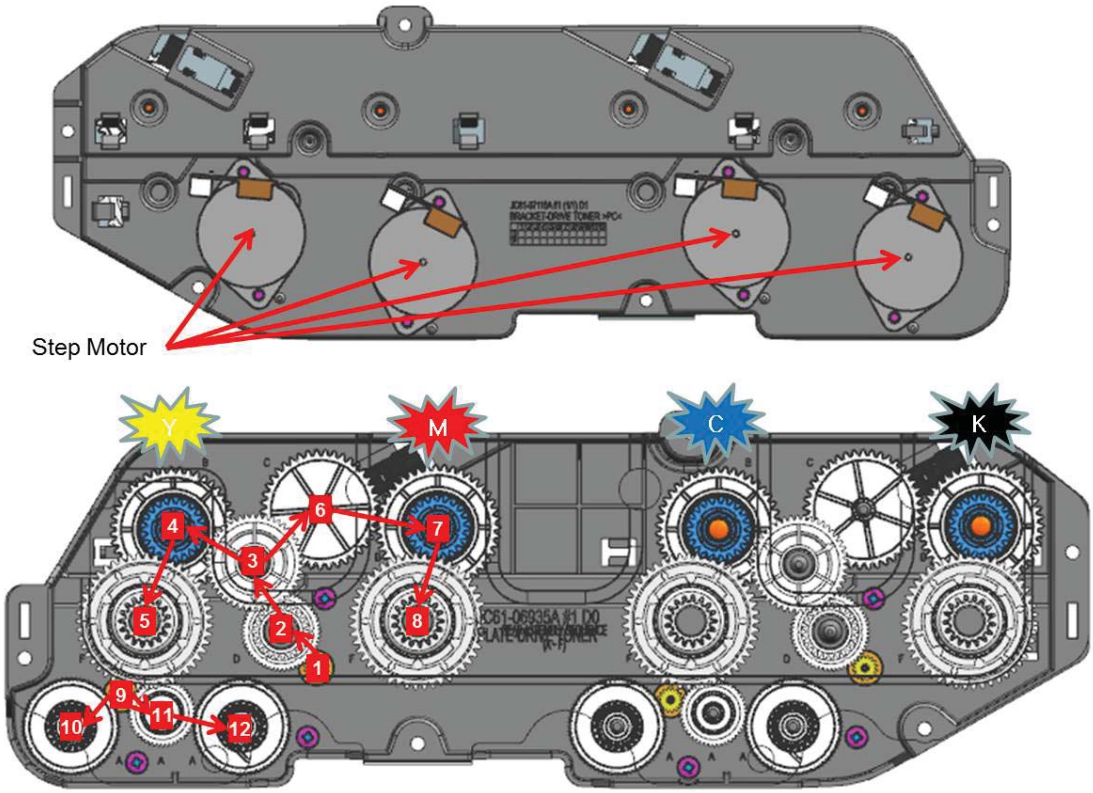


Table 2-27 Toner supply/reservoir drive

Power Train	PM Step → Toner Supply, Reservoir driving
•	1 PM Step → 2 Gear → 3 Gear → 4 Gear & Latch → 5 Gear (Y, C Toner Supply driving)
•	1 PM Step → 2 Gear → 6 Gear (Photo Interrupt) → 7 Gear & Latch → 8 Gear (M, K Toner Supply driving)
•	9 PM Step → 10 Gear (Y, C Toner Reservoir driving)
•	9 PM Step → 11 Gear → 12 Gear (M, K Toner Reservoir driving)

Engage transfer roller drive

Figure 2-39 Engage transfer roller drive

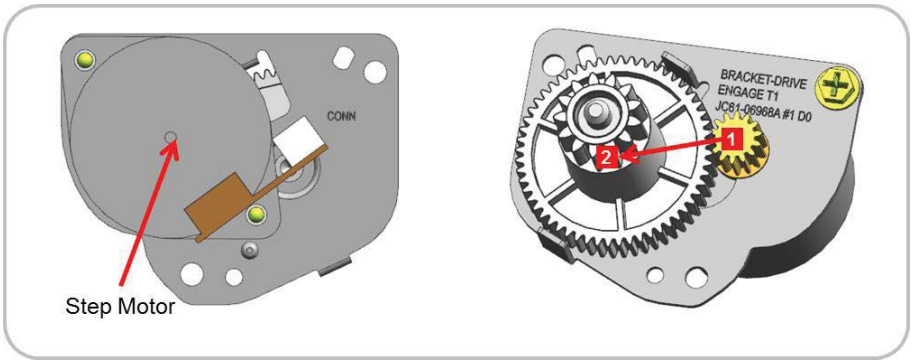


Table 2-28 Engage transfer roller drive

Power Train	PM Step → Engage transfer roller driving
• 1 PM Step → 2 Gear (Engage transfer roller driving)	

TCU drive

Figure 2-40 TCU drive

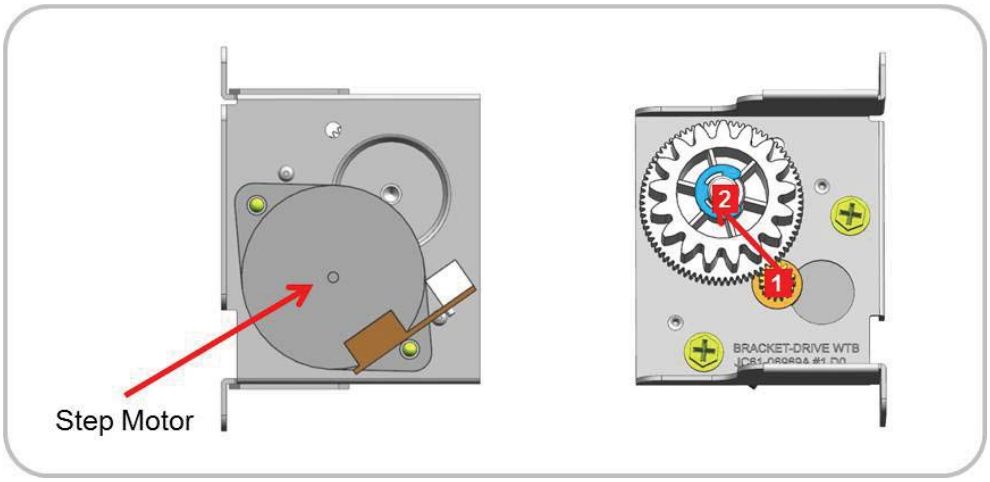


Table 2-29 TCU drive

Power Train	PM Step → TCU driving
• 1 PM Step → 2 Gear (TCU driving)	

Flatbed Scanner System

Flatbed scanner system overview

The scanner converts a hardcopy original into data. To scan an original, the scanner uses the lens and Charge Coupled Device (CCD). The scanner stores and transfers the converted image to the storage space or transfers the scanned data to the printer engine for copy.

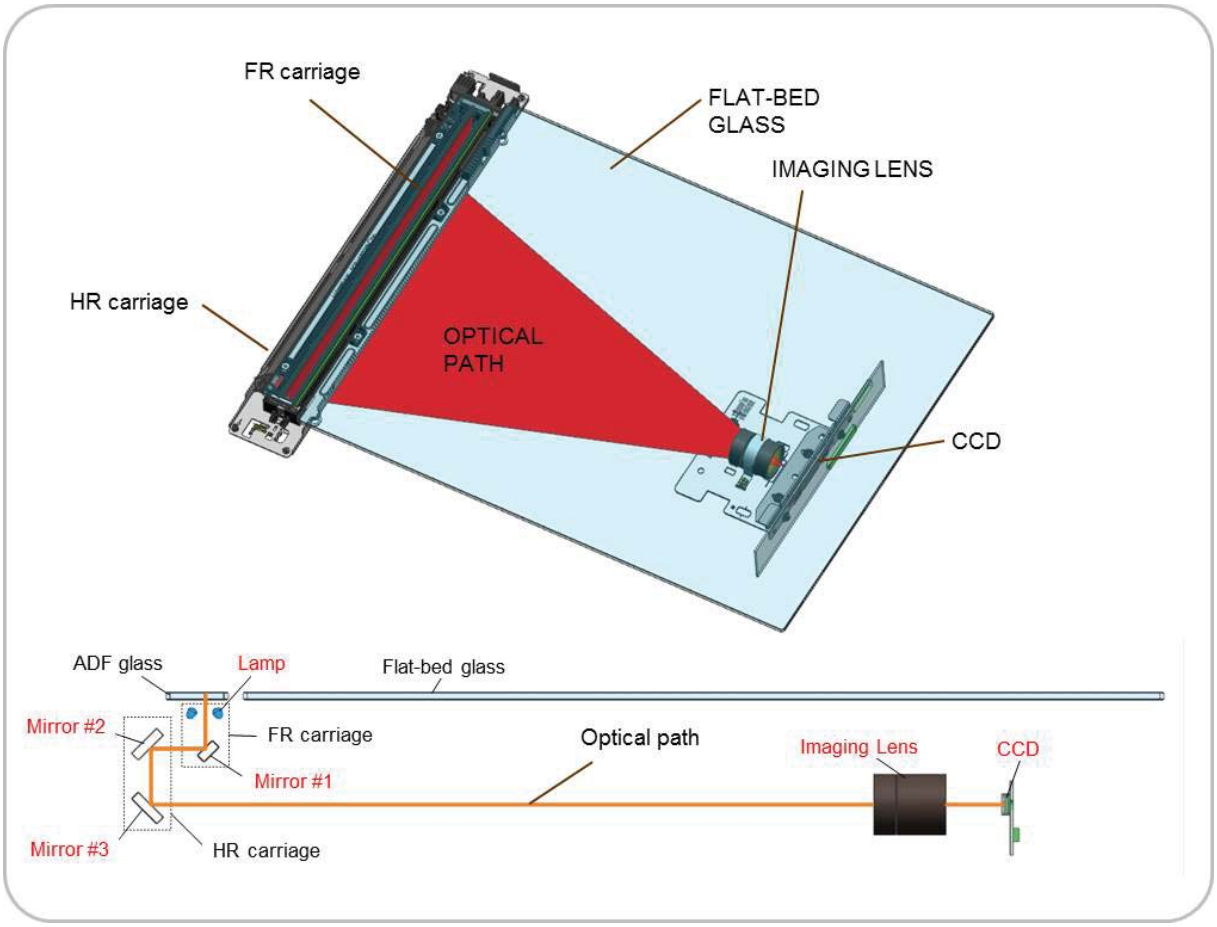
For scan operation, the scanner uses a full rate (FR) carriage and a half rate (HR) carriage that is moved by a wire. It scans the original document on the scanner glass or from the ADF.

The scanner system consists of the three following modules:

- **Full Rate (FR) carriage**: Illuminates the original and reflects the light at a 90 degree angle.
- **Half Rate (HR) carriage**: Transfers the reflected light from the FR carriage to the lens.
- **Imaging module**: Makes an image on the CCD.

The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage. This keeps a regular gap between the original and the imaging lens.

Figure 2-41 Scanner system overview

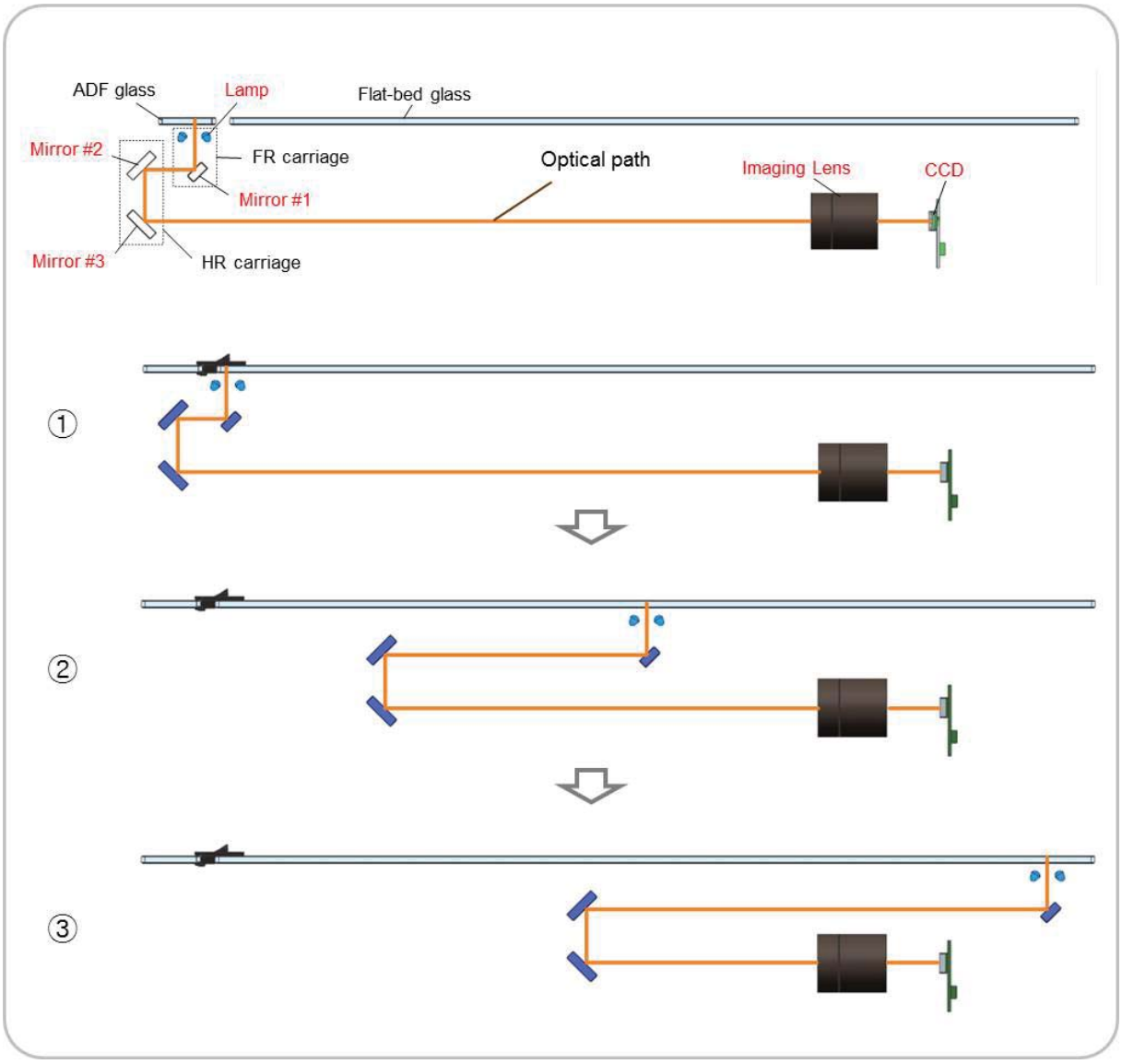


The following describes the scan process:

1. The FR carriage lamp illuminates the original. The reflected light is moved to Mirror #1.
2. The reflected light from Mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through Mirror #2 and #3.
3. The light becomes smaller and makes an optical image.
4. The optical image is generated to the electrical signal by the CCD sensor.

To make a stable image, a gap must be maintained between the original and the lens. To maintain this gap, the HR carriage moves half the distance and half the speed of the FR carriage.

Figure 2-42 Scan process



The optical image made by the CCD sensor is changed to an electrical-analog signal.

Each color element signal in the optical image is separated by the CCD sensor into red, green, and blue.

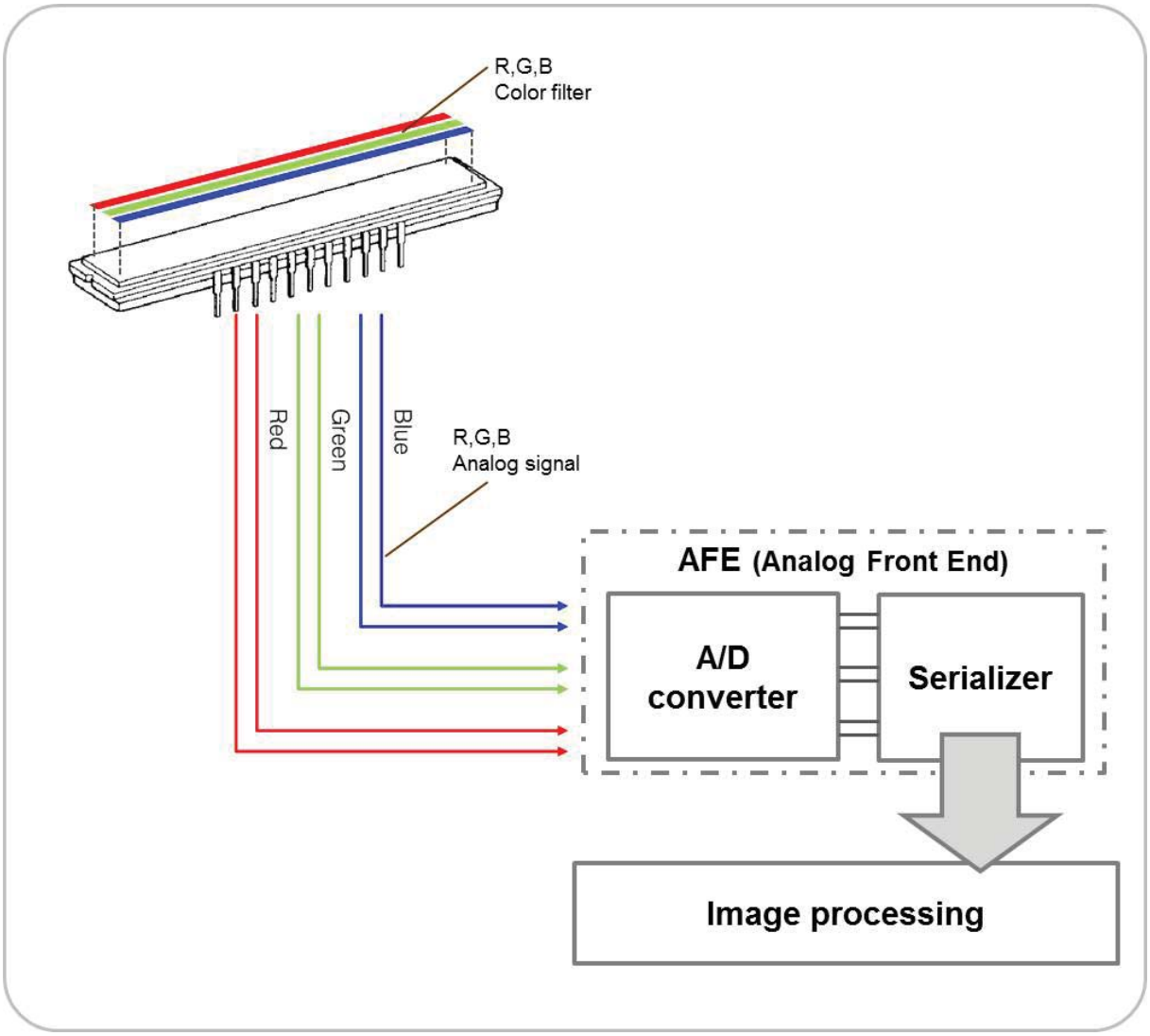
The red CCD sensor extracts the red color from the optical image, the green CCD sensor extracts the green color from the optical image, and the blue CCD sensor extracts the blue color from the optical image.

The analog image signal is changed to a digital image signal by the A/D converter and is transferred to the processor.

The image scan of the main scanning direction is performed by the CCD sensor. The CCD sensor consists of approximately 7500 pixels. The image scan of the sub scanning direction is performed by the FR carriage and HR carriage. The carriage is moved by a wire driven by the scan motor.

Scan resolution is 600 dpi.

Figure 2-43 Image processing



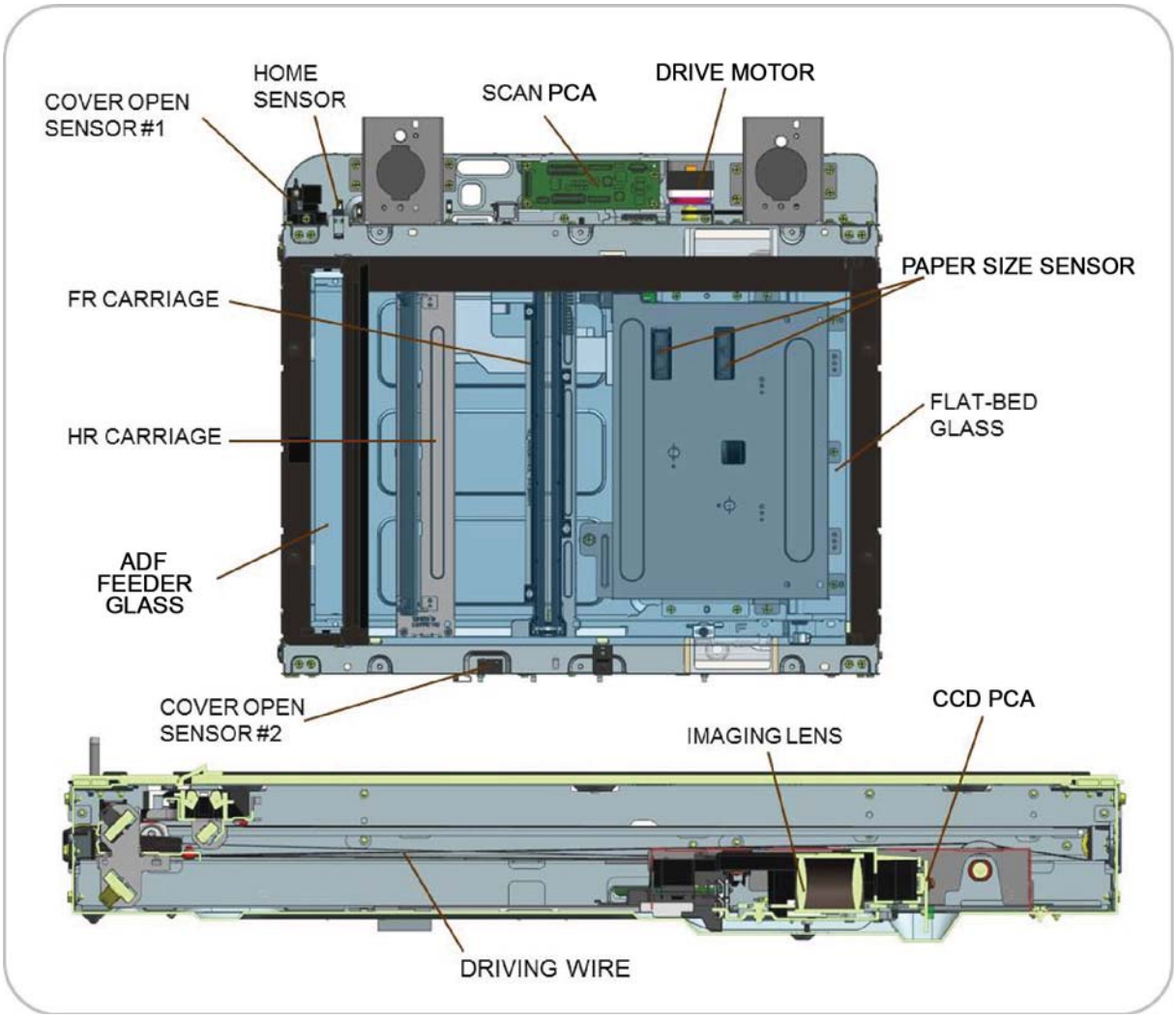
Scanning system components

The following shows the construction and purpose of the scanning system.

To scan the original on the scanner glass, two carriages driven by the motor move at a regular speed. The motor drives the timing belt, pulley, and wire. The wire pulley rolls and releases the wire to move the carriage.

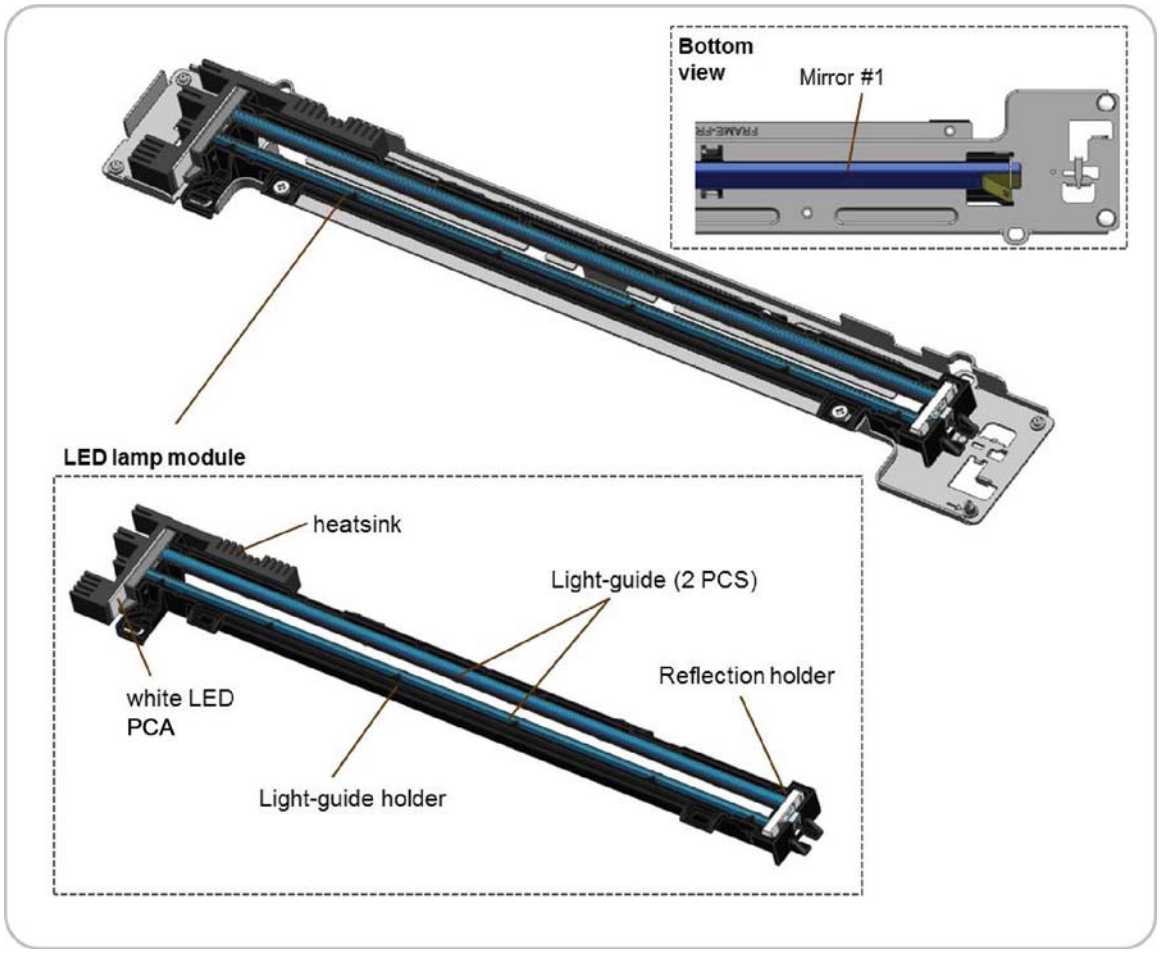
The scanner consists of the scanner glass, FR carriage, HR carriage, imaging unit, and driving unit.

Figure 2-44 Scanning system components



- FR Carriage

Figure 2-45 FR carriage



– LED lamp module

  This module illuminates the original. Two white LEDs are assembled on the side of the module. The original is illuminated by the light-guide. The heat sink is attached to the LED PCB. When the heat sink is broken or expired, an engineer needs to replace it.

  - Light-guide

    The light-guide changes the light from point type to line type. The light-guide is made by transparent resin and controls the amount of light in the scan area uniformly.

  - White LED

    The white LED emits white light. The heat sink attached to the PCA prevents heat deterioration.

  - Reflection holder

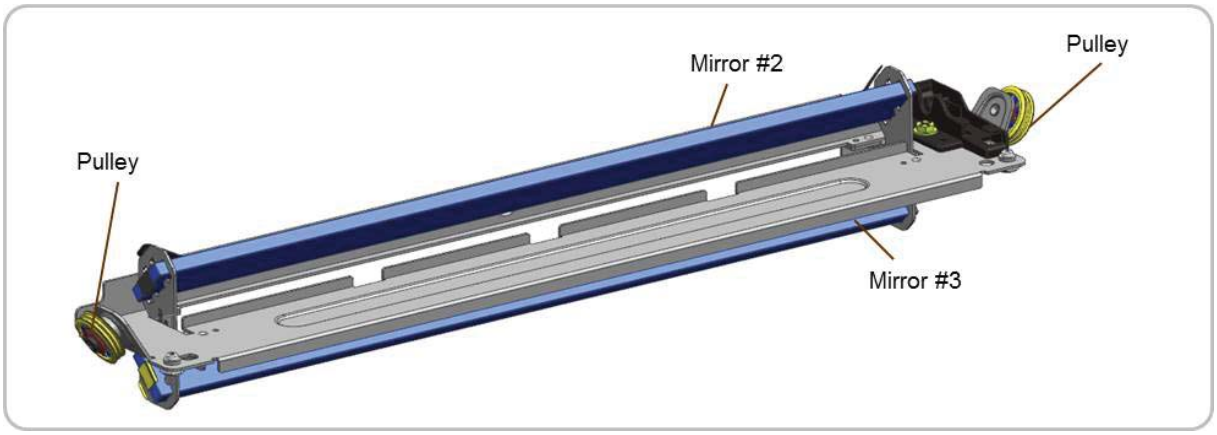
    The reflection holder reflects the light that has passed through the light-guide.

– Mirror #1

  Mirror #1 reflects light at a 90 degree angle.

HR Carriage (mirror unit)

Figure 2-46 HR carriage



- Mirror #2 and #3

  Mirrors #2 and #3 are positioned at a 45 degree angle in order to change the direction of the light. The reflected light from mirror #1 is sent to the imaging lens through mirrors #2 and #3.

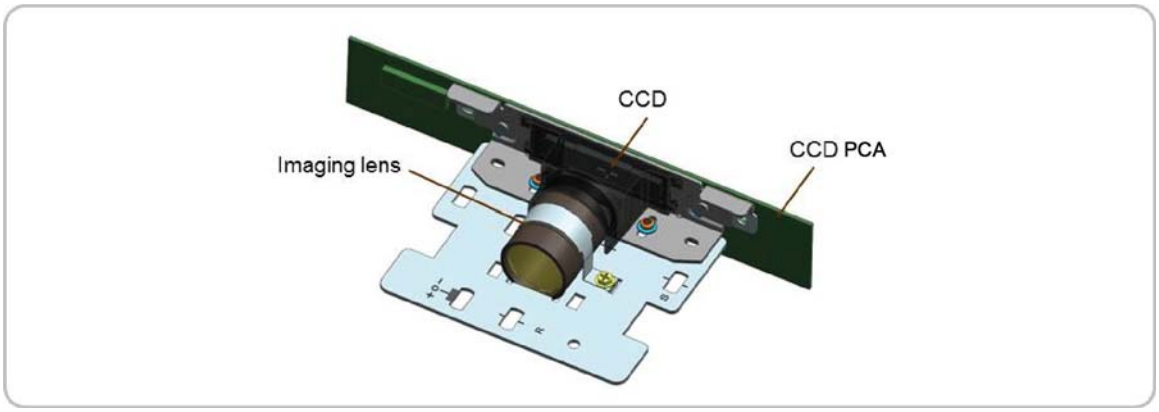
- Pulley

  The pulley is a ball bearing type. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which makes the HR carriage move. The HR carriage moves half the distance at half the speed of the FR carriage.

Imaging unit

The imaging unit changes the optical image to an electrical signal.

Figure 2-47 Imaging unit



- Imaging lens

  The reflected light from the imaging lens is focused on the CCD. The image is reduced to the fixed CCD sensor and pixel size.

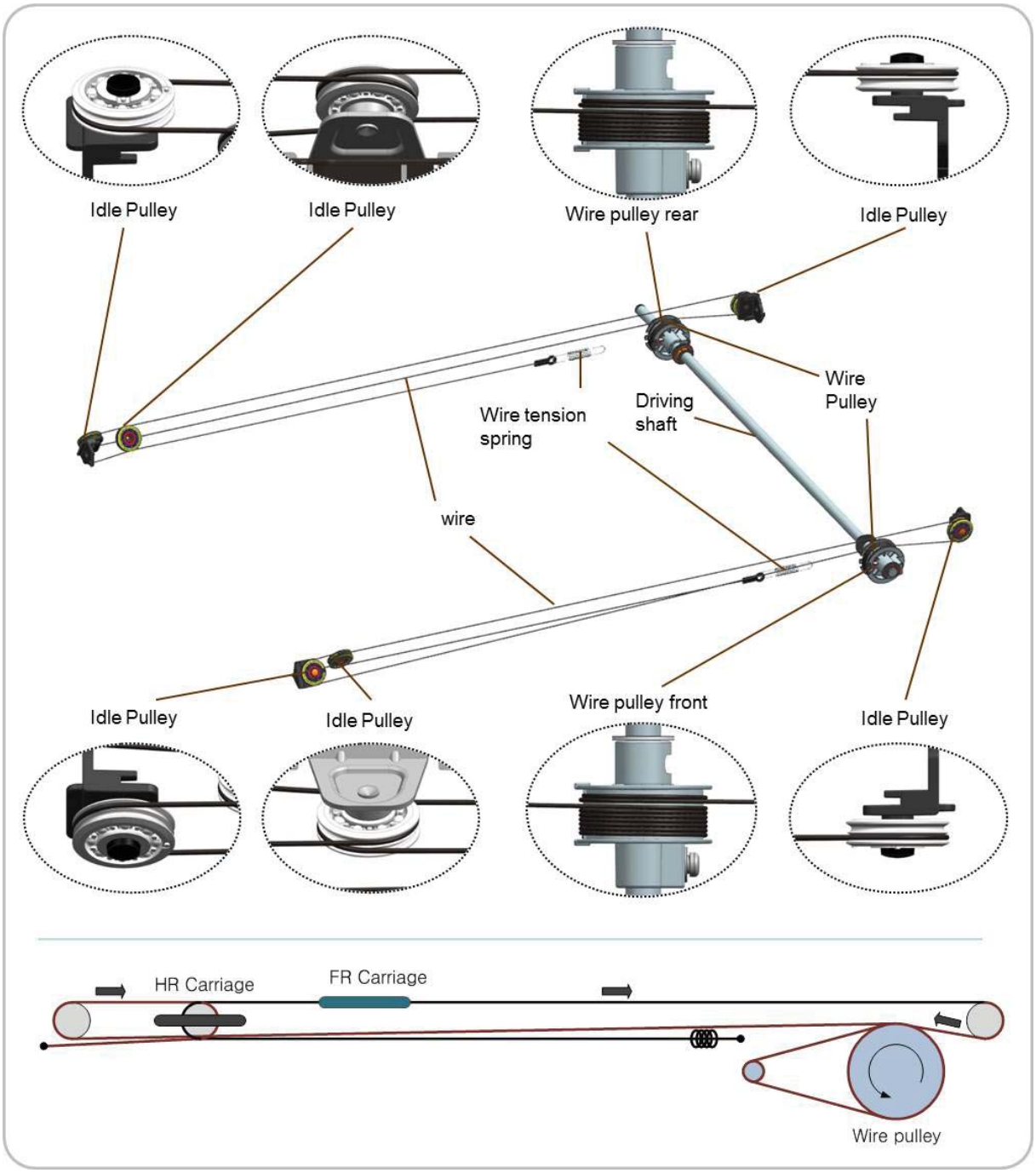
- CCD PCA

  The image made by the imaging lens is changed to an electrical signal by the CCD. The CCD consists of three channel line sensors for image creation. The brightness and darkness of the image depends on the voltage level from the CCD. The output voltage is changed to a digital signal. The digital signal makes the scanned image.

Wire driving

To move the carriages, the wire is assembled in the front and rear of the scanner. The pulley rolls and releases the wire which moves the FR carriage and the HR carriage.

Figure 2-48 Wire driving



Scanner glass (flatbed glass)

The original is placed on the scanner glass for scan or copy jobs. The scanner glass is made of tempered glass and is held in place by the frame to prevent distortion.

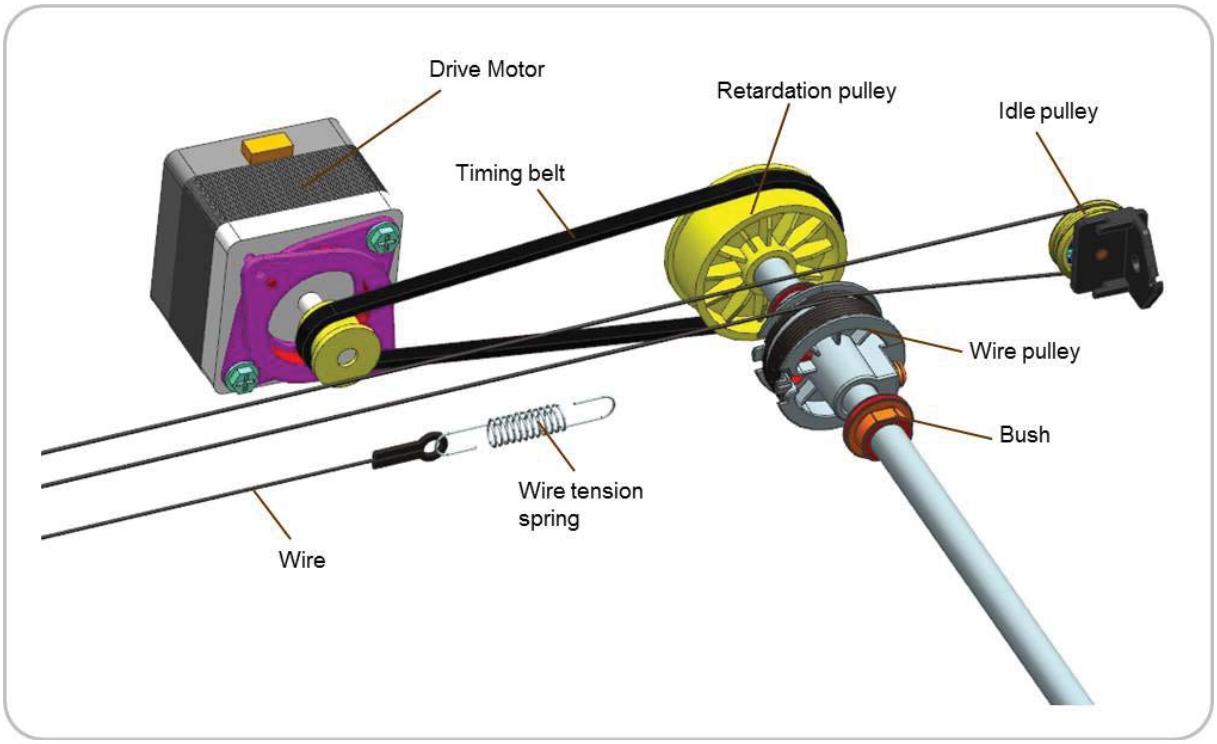
Drive motor

The scanner drive system uses the step motor to move the carriage. The step motor controls the position and maintains constant speed. The motor power is transferred to the wire through the timing belt and pulley.

Timing belt

The timing belt has a regular sawtooth gear and transfers the motor power to the pulley.

Figure 2-49 Timing belt



Paper size sensor

The paper size sensor automatically detects the size of the original on the scanner glass. The paper size sensor uses two sensors. An infrared LED is used to detect the dark original.

Home sensor

The home sensor detects the FR carriage position. The home sensor is a transmission photosensor.

Cover open sensor #1

When the ADF unit opens and closes, a function is triggered which detects whether the paper size sensor is on or off.

Cover open sensor #2

The cover open sensor #2 detects when the ADF unit is closed using magnetic force.

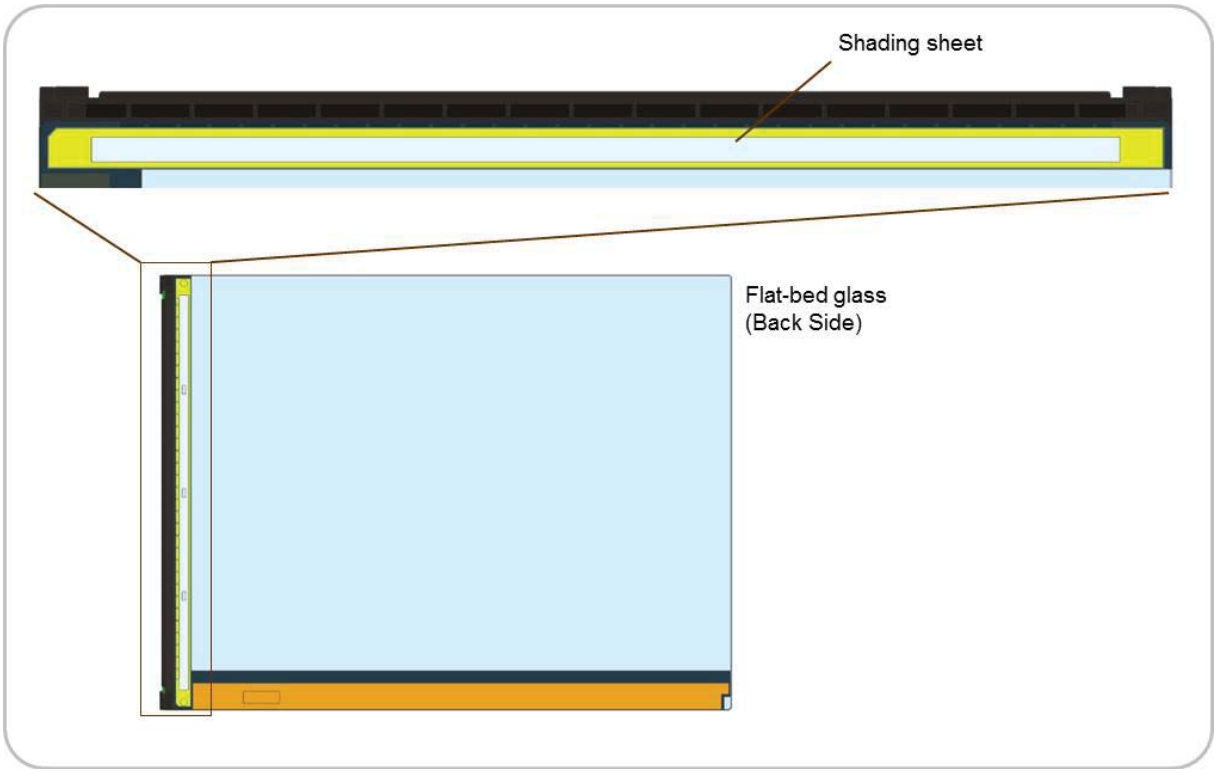
ADF glass

ADF glass scans the original through the ADF unit. The FR carriage reads the original as it passes. If the original is contaminated, a horizontal black or white line might appear.

Shading sheet

The shading sheet detects white color in the base. Before every scan job, the scan module reads the shading sheet to scan the image with the same color and brightness. If the original is contaminated, a vertical image might occur.

Figure 2-50 Shading sheet



Caution for moving the scanner

Lock the FR and HR carriages to prevent damage when shipping or moving the printer.

When installing

After unpacking, before turning on the printer, the scan locking screw must be removed. If the locking screw is not removed scanner failure will occur.

1. When installing the printer, remove the scan locking screw.
2. After removing the screw, assemble the screw cap from the accessory package.

Figure 2-51 Remove scan locking screw

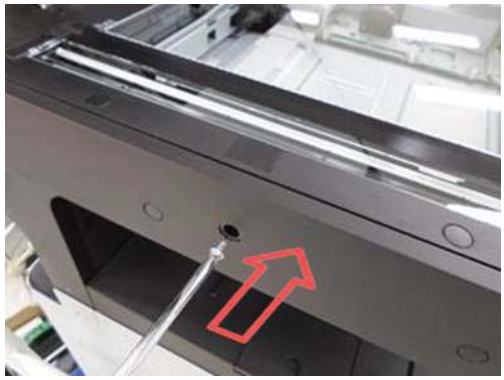


When moving

When moving the printer, tighten the scan locking screw to prevent damage to the carriages.

1. Make sure the FR carriage is located in the home position.
2. Remove the screw cap.
3. Tighten the M3x8 screw to secure the FR carriage.

Figure 2-52 Tighten scan locking screw



Flow Automatic Document Feeder (Flow ADF) dn/z bundles (GX)

Flow ADF overview

Figure 2-53 Flow ADF overview

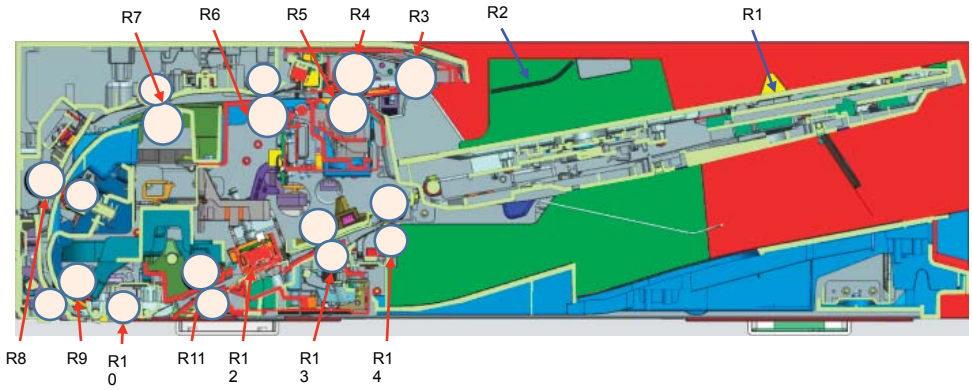


Table 2-30 Flow ADF overview

Part		Function
R1	STACKER ASSY	Original paper input tray
R2	GUIDE-DOCU F&R	Original paper guide (front/rear)
R3	PICKUP ROLLER	Pick up original paper from the input tray
R4	ADF ROLLERr	Original paper feed roller
R5	SEPARATION ROLLER	Original paper separation roller
R6	FEED ROLLER	Original paper transfer roller (A6 size)
R7	PRE REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (1 round)
R8	REGI ROLLER	Original paper alignment roller (2 round)
R9	SCAN IN ROLLER	Feeds an original paper before scanning
R10	SIMPLEX WHITE-ROLLER	Support of simplex scanning unit
R11	SIMPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the duplex white-roller
R12	D-CIS MODULE	Back side image scan unit
R13	DUPLEX SCAN OUT ROLLER	Transfer a scanned original paper to the exit roller
R14	EXIT ROLLER	Sends an original paper to the exit tray

Sensors

Figure 2-54 Flow ADF sensors

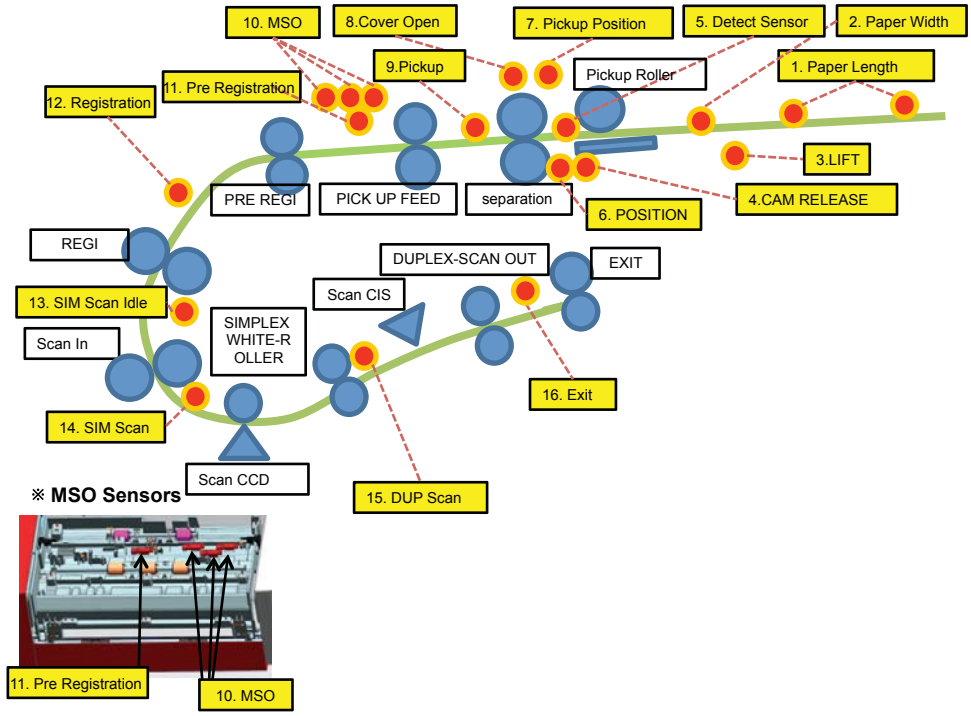
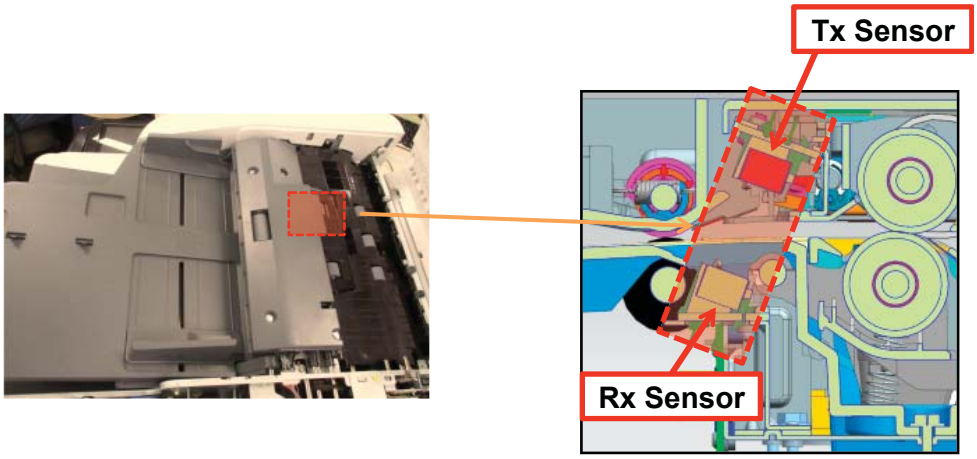


Table 2-31 Flow ADF sensors

Callout	Item	Function
1	Paper Length Sensor	Detects paperlength
2	Paper Width Sensor	Detects paperwidth
3	Stacker Lift Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
4	Cam Release Sensor	Sensing 'Separation Roller' rotation
5	Detect Sensor	Detects if tray is empty
6	Position Sensor	Detects Stacker Position
7	Pickup Position Sensor	Sensing 'Pickup Roller' rotation
8	Cover Open Sensor	Detects if cover is open or closed
9	Pickup Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the feed path
10	MSO Sensor	Detects mix size
11	Pre-Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the pre-regi path
12	Regi Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Regi path
13	SIM Scan Idle Sensor	Sensing 'Scan In Roller' rotation
14	SIM Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan In path
15	DUP Scan Sensor	Detects if there is a jam on the Scan Out path
16	Exit Sensor	Paper Exit Sensing

Ultra Sonic Multi-feed (USM)

Figure 2-55 Flow ADF Ultra Sonic Multifeed

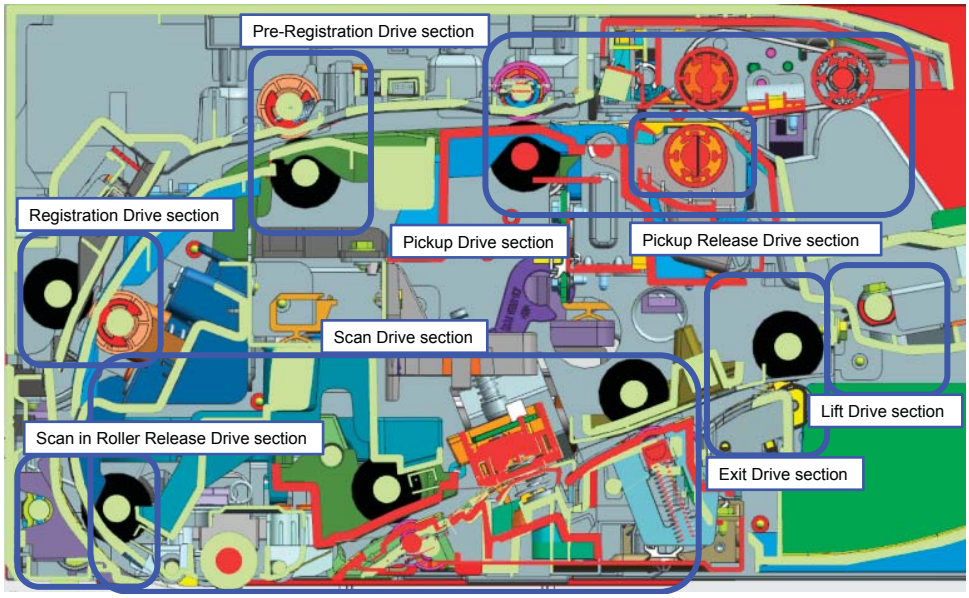


- This sensor detects multi-feeds.
- Component: Ultrasonic Sensor Tx Board, Rx Board , HIC Board (Amp and Filter)
- The Rx Sensor has a different level on each paper status: no paper, one paper, multiple papers.
- Detect the multi-feeding through the level change of Rx Sensor.
- Transmit and receive operation of 300 khz frequency.

Flow ADF drive system

The flow ADF drive system consists of eight motors.

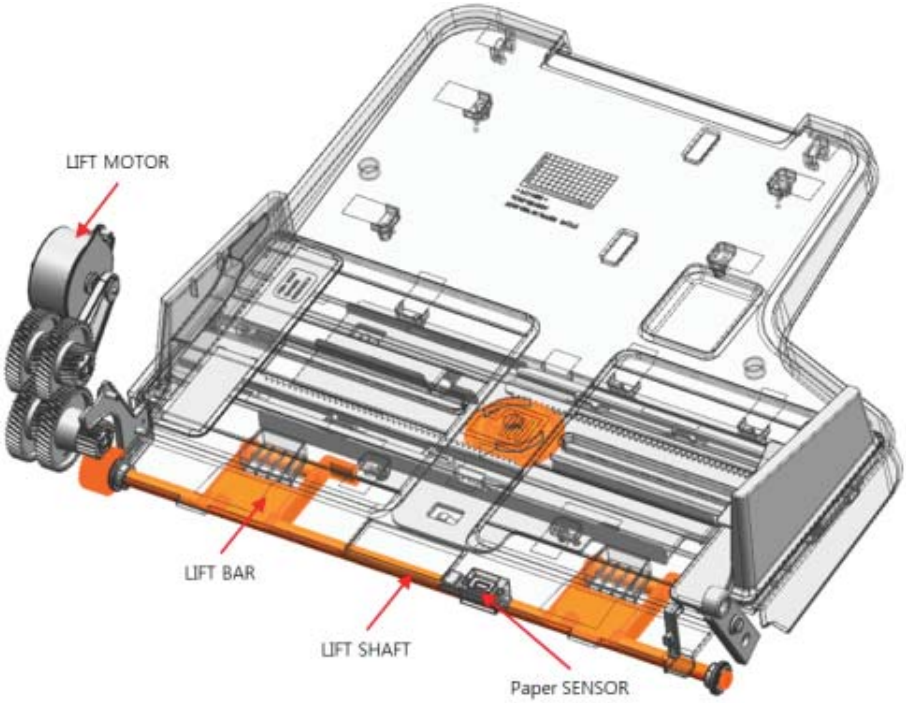
Figure 2-56 Flow ADF drive system



The Flow ADF drive system has eight sections: Pickup Release Drive, Pickup Drive, Pre-Regi Drive, Regi Drive, Scan-in Roller Release Drive, Scan Drive, Exit Drive, and Lift Drive sections.

Flow ADF document lifting drive system

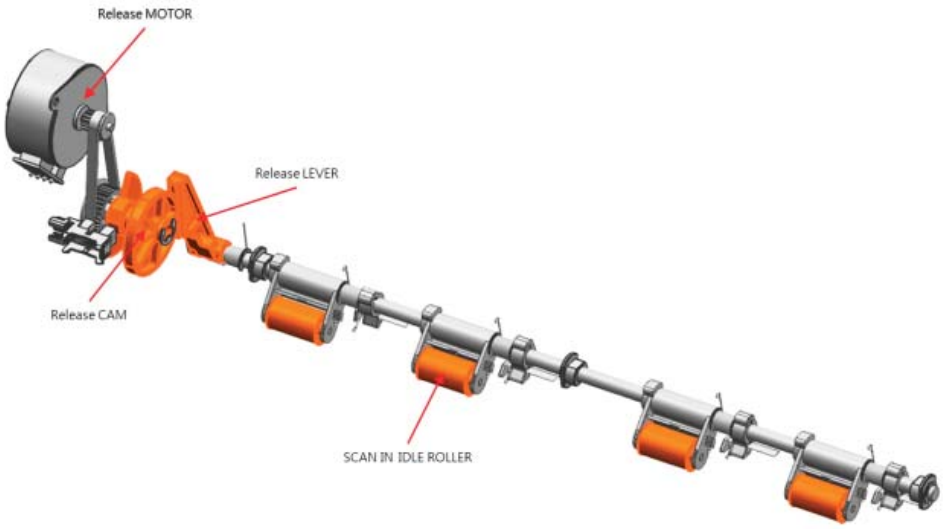
Figure 2-57 Flow ADF document lifting drive system



- Component: LIFT MOTOR, LIFT SHAFT, LIFT BAR, PAPER SENSOR
- LIFT MOTOR Starts > LIFT SHAFT and LIFT BAR lift Tray
- PAPER SENSOR detects paper in the Tray
- Paper contacts PICKUP ROLLER and stops movement
- Document is passed through SCAN OUT SENSOR. Duplex scanning starts.

Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System

Figure 2-58 Flow ADF Scan-In Roller Release Drive System



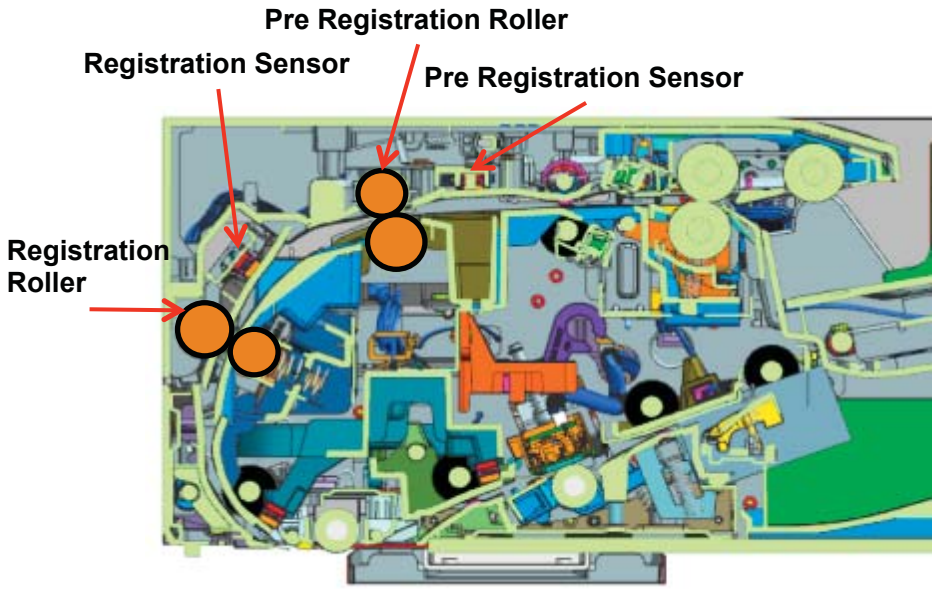
- Holds the rear of the paper using cam motion for improved scan quality
- Component: RELEASE MOTOR, RELEASE CAM, SCAN-IN IDLE ROLLER
- Motor and cam operation repeats for every piece of paper

Flow ADF specification

Capacity	250 pages (stacker lifting)
Scan Speed	120/240 ipm
Pickup	Semi-Retard
Registration	2 times registration
Motor	8 each
Stacker	Lifting
Scanning	White Roller/White Bar
MSO	Support

Flow ADF Registration

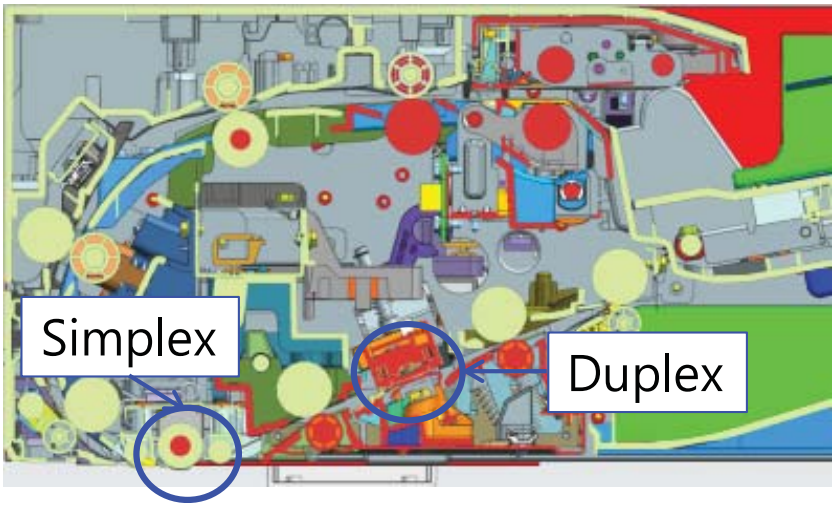
Figure 2-59 Flow ADF Registration



The Flow ADF has two times registration.

Flow ADF Scanning Position

Figure 2-60 Flow ADF Scanning Position



	Type	Simplex	Duplex
Scanning	Z-GX	White Roller	White Bar

Mixed Size Original (MSO)

The MSO detects the size of mixed size papers and sets the alignment of the papers to the rear.

Figure 2-61 MSO 1

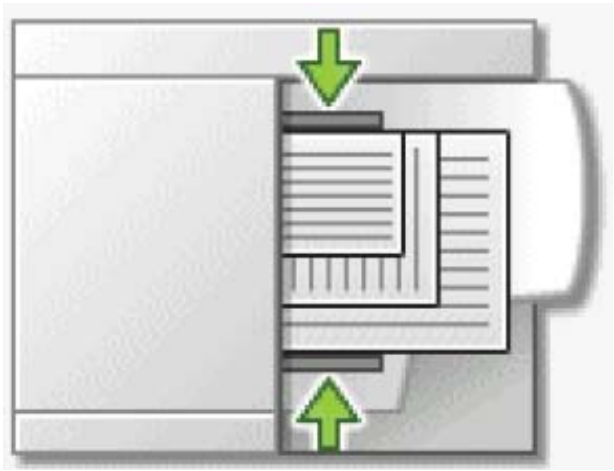
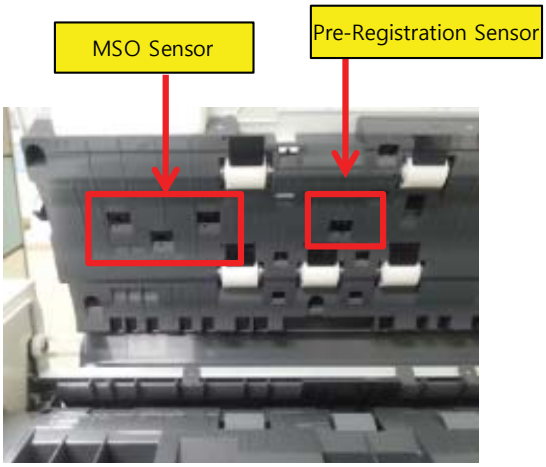


Figure 2-62 MSO 2



MX4	
XEROX (DC-IV C7780)	
CANON (IR ADV C7270)	

Figure 2-63 MSO 3

Max Width Length	A3 SEF (297mm)	A4 LEF (297mm)	B4 SEF (257mm)	B5 LEF (257mm)	A4 SEF (210mm)	A5 LEF (210mm)	B5 SEF (182mm)	A5 SEF (148mm)
A3 SEF (420mm)								
A4 LEF (210mm)								
B4 SEF (363mm)								
B5 LEF (182mm)								
A4 SEF (297mm)								
A5 LEF (148mm)								
B5 SEF (257mm)								
A5 SEF (210mm)								

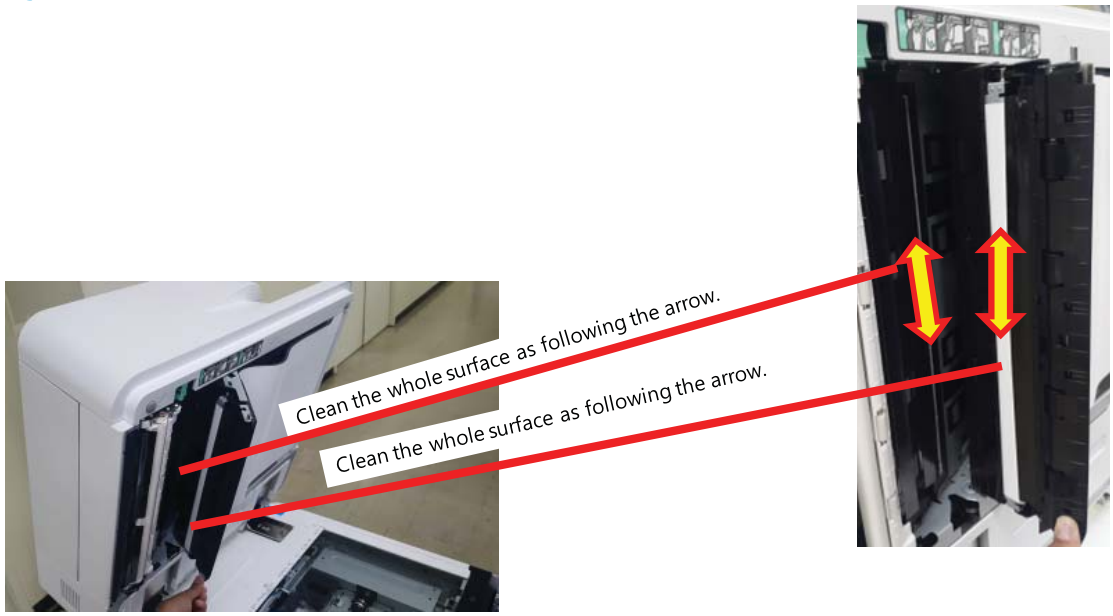
Dual sensor cleaning method

- Component: LEVER GUIDE EXIT F, GUIDE-EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY.
- Open LEVER GUIDE EXIT F.
- Cleans with a D-CIS GLASS in the direction indicated.
- Cleans the GUIDE EXIT UPPER ASSEMBLY in the direction indicated.

Figure 2-64 Dual sensor cleaning method



Figure 2-65 Dual sensor cleaning method



Flow ADF z bundles (GX)

Model	Engine	Scanner						
		Platen	DN-sGX			Z-GX		
Color	40 ppm	Same at whole model	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity	Scan Speed	USM	Capacity
	50 ppm		90/180 ipm	X	250 sheet	120/240 ipm	0	250 sheet
	60 ppm							
Mono	40 ppm							
	50 ppm							
	60 ppm							

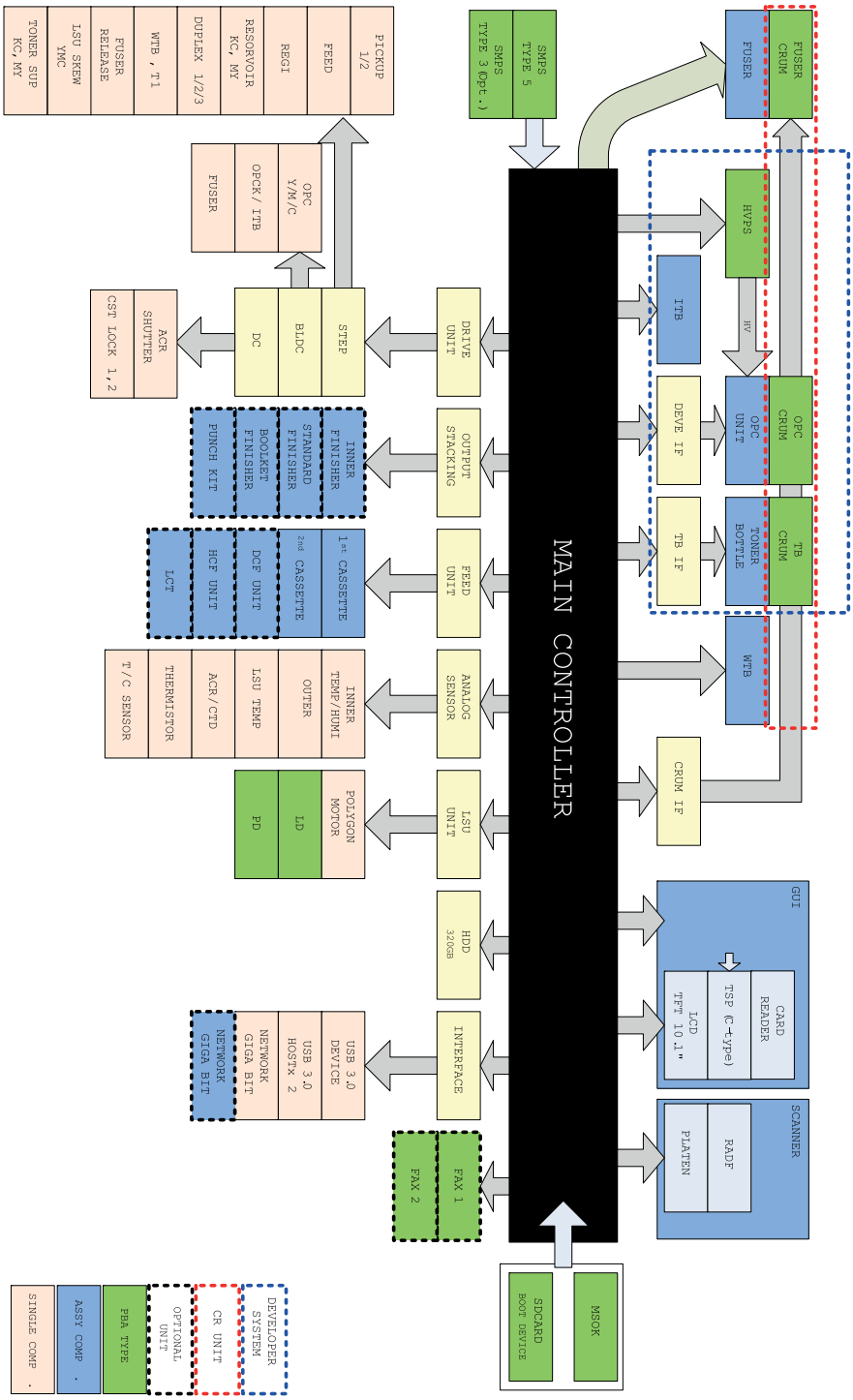
Hardware configuration

The electronic circuit system consists of the following:

- Main controller (main board)
- OPE unit
- ADF (flow ADF/ADF) controller
- HVPS board
- LVPS board
- Fuser drive assembly

Electronic circuit diagram

Figure 2-66 Electronic circuit diagram



The main controller handles the video controller, engine controller, and scan controller.

The main controller receives print data from the host through the network or USB port and receives copy data from the scan controller. The main controller uses this information to generate printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print, including the laser scanner assembly, HVPS, FAN, fuser, and so on.

The main controller communicates with the drive system and other devices through Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (UART). The main controller communicates with and checks the life of the toner cartridge, drum, and developer units through I2C.

The main controller uses Quad Core CPU 1.5 GHz, DDR3 4 GB memory, Micro SD 4 GB, and a 320 GB SATA HDD to control the engine driving, video signal processing, and user interface.

A MICOM controls power to the fuser lamp and power to the system according to an optimized energy saving algorithm. The MICOM communicates with the OPE controller through the USB 3.0 protocol to display the system information on the control panel.

The OPE unit displays the status of the system using the control panel TFT LCD in response to user actions or the main controller.

The soft power switch in the OPE unit is used to safely shut down the system.

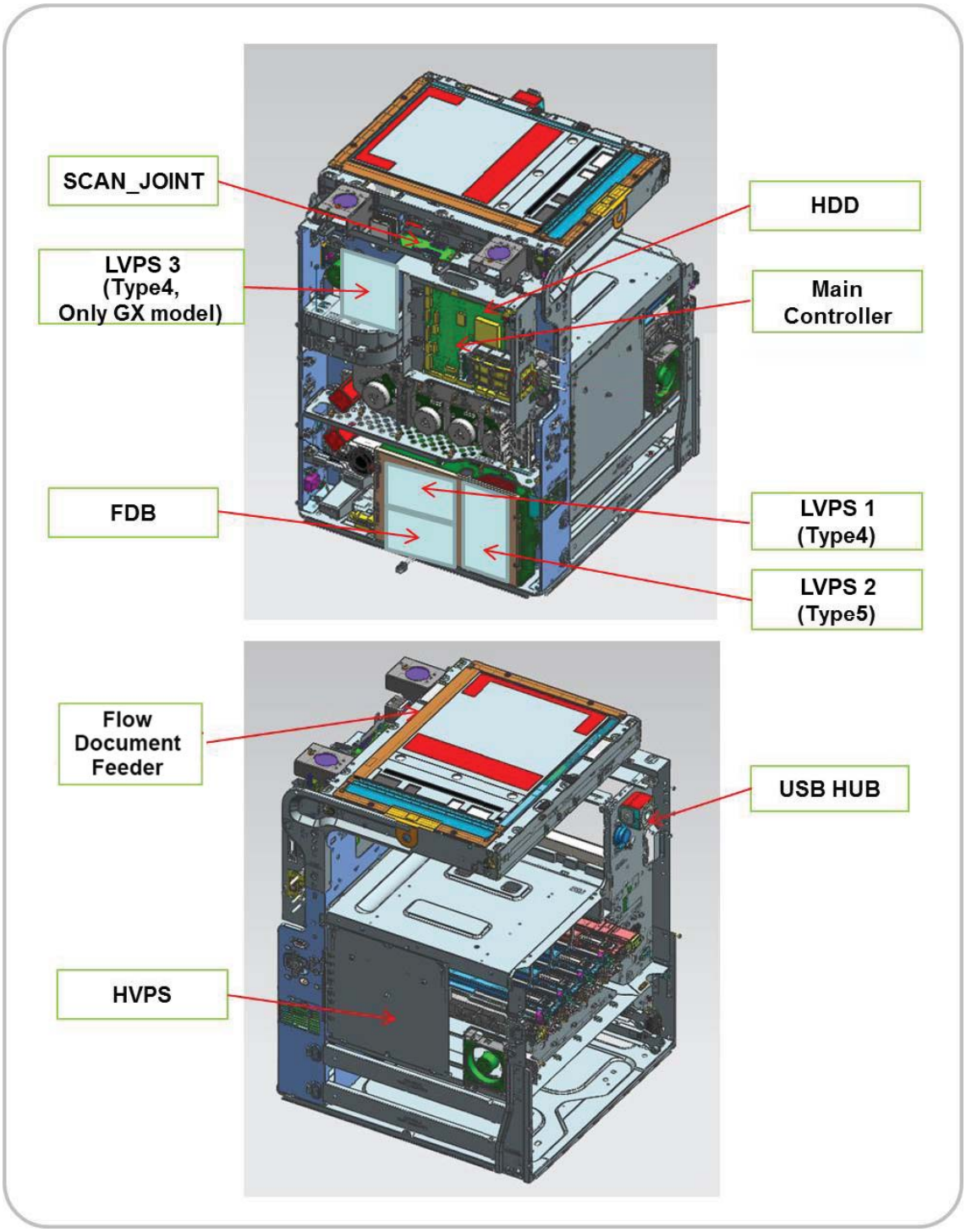
The ADF controller controls some mechanisms required to scan continuously from the ADF. The ADF controller communicates with the main controller to synchronize scan timing.

The HVPS board generates and controls high-voltage channels. The fuser drive assembly controls power to the fuser lamp. The LVPS board generates 5 V and 24 V power for the system.

Circuit board locations

The following diagrams show the locations of the printer circuit boards:

Figure 2-67 Circuit board locations



Main controller

NOTE: The main controller for the previous model is not compatible with the new model (IR/UI). Take care to not use the incompatible Main Controller during replacement.

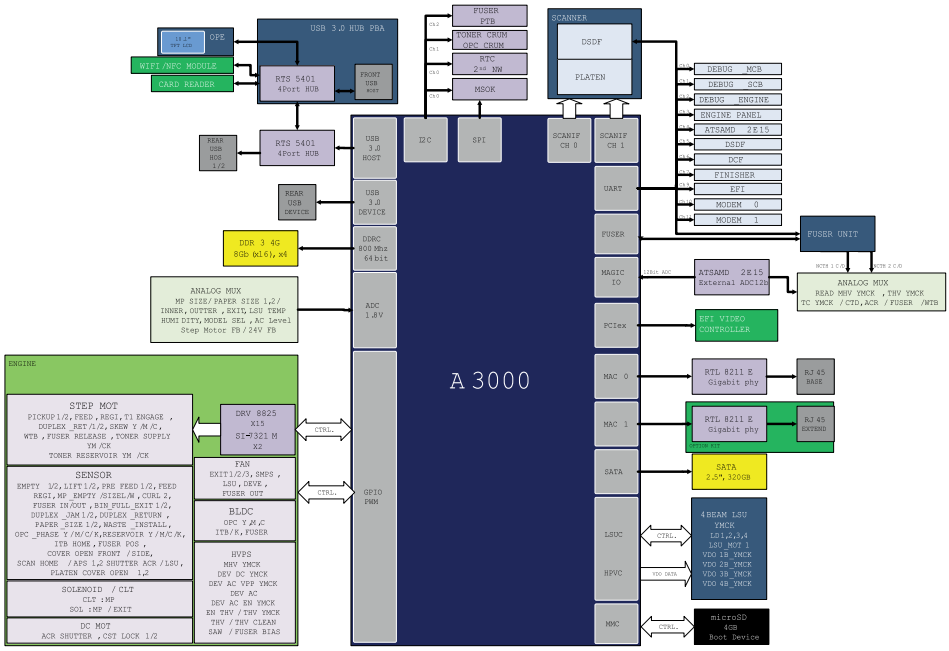
Main controller for previous model

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 4 GB), Micro SD (4 GB), 1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, Modem) by UART.

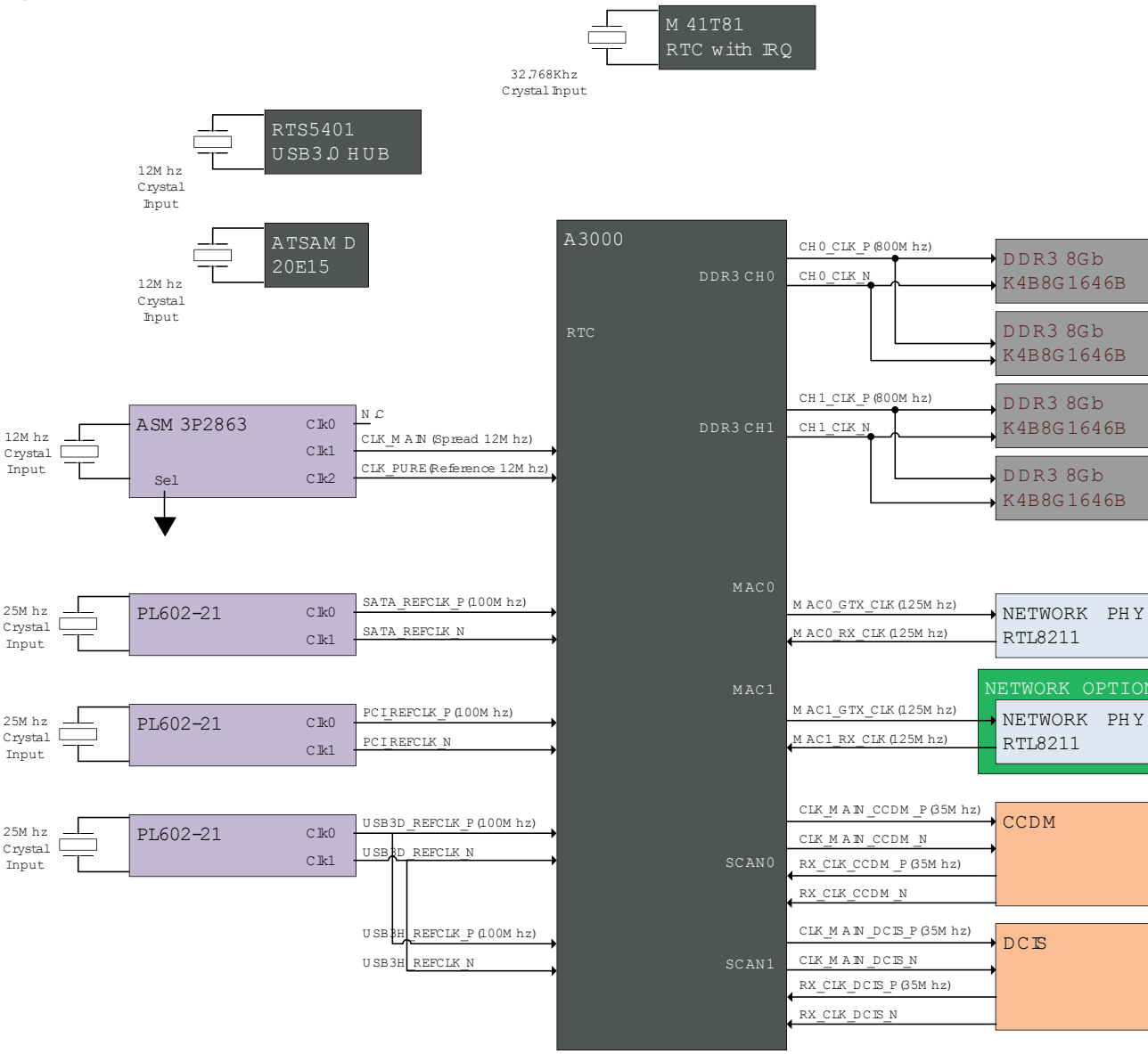
Main controller block diagram

Figure 2-68 Block diagram



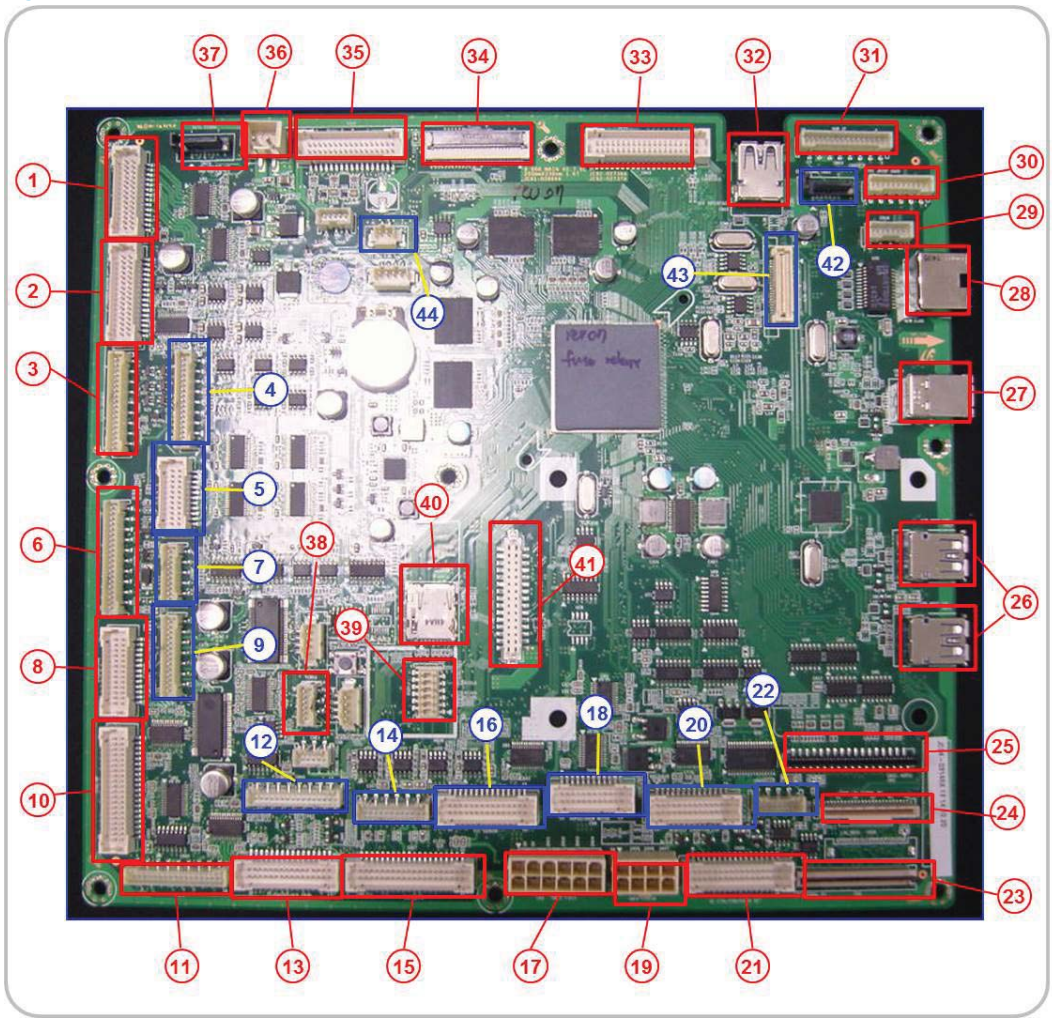
Main controller clock diagram

Figure 2-69 Clock diagram



Main controller connection information

Figure 2-70 Connection information



1	OUTPUT	12	FINISHER	23	Laser scanner assembly 1 COLOR	34	CCDM
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	OPC E-Label/T1	24	Laser scanner assembly 2 COLOR	35	Flow ADF
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	OPC HOME SENS	25	HVPS COLOR	36	HDD POWER
4	TB/E-Label	15	OPC BLDC COLOR	26	USB HOST 1/2	37	HDD SIGNAL
5	TONER SUP/RES	16	TC SENS/RES FULL	27	USB DEVICE	38	SIDE FAN
6	CPR/CTD COLOR	17	LVPS TYPE5	28	NETWORK	39	MSOK
7	Registration assembly/T1 POS SENS	18	HVPS POWER/ Laser scanner assembly SKEW	29	EFI POWER	40	SD CARD
8	PICKUP 1/2	19	LVPS TYPE4	30	FIH JOINT	41	FAX JOINT
9	FEED/Registration assembly MOT	20	FRONT IF COLOR	31	UI IF	42	2ND NETWORK
10	SIDE	21	Fuser drive assembly IF	32	USB HOST/HUB	43	EFI SIGNAL
11	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	22	Laser scanner assembly PD	33	DCIS	44	CPU FAN

Information

- Part Number:
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

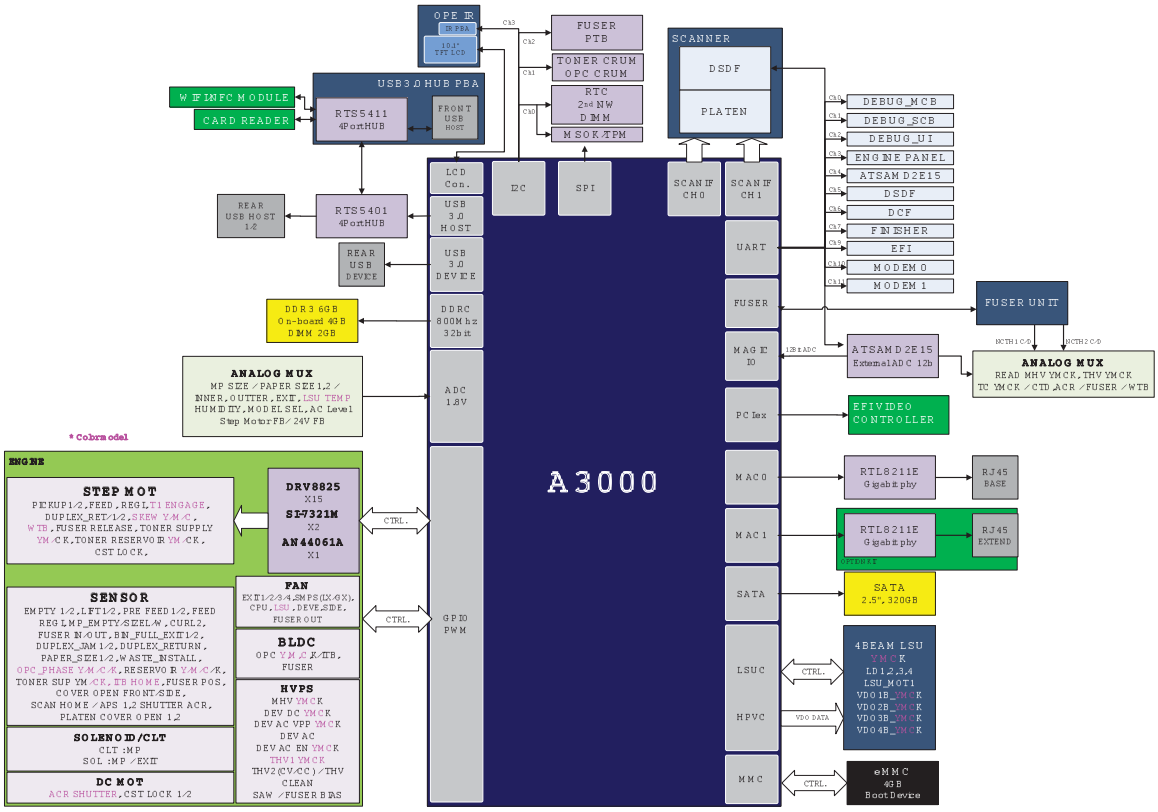
Main controller

The main controller consists of the main processor (A3000), memory (DDR3 6 GB), eMMC (4 GB)1 G Ethernet PHY, USB 3.0 HUB, and Micom (Power/Fuser control). It can control Video/UI/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.5 GHz CPU) controls video, engine, UI display, and communicates with the various devices. The HDD is connected to the main controller by a SATA cable and connected to the other device (such as ADF, dual cassette feeder (DCF), Finisher, and Modem) by UART.

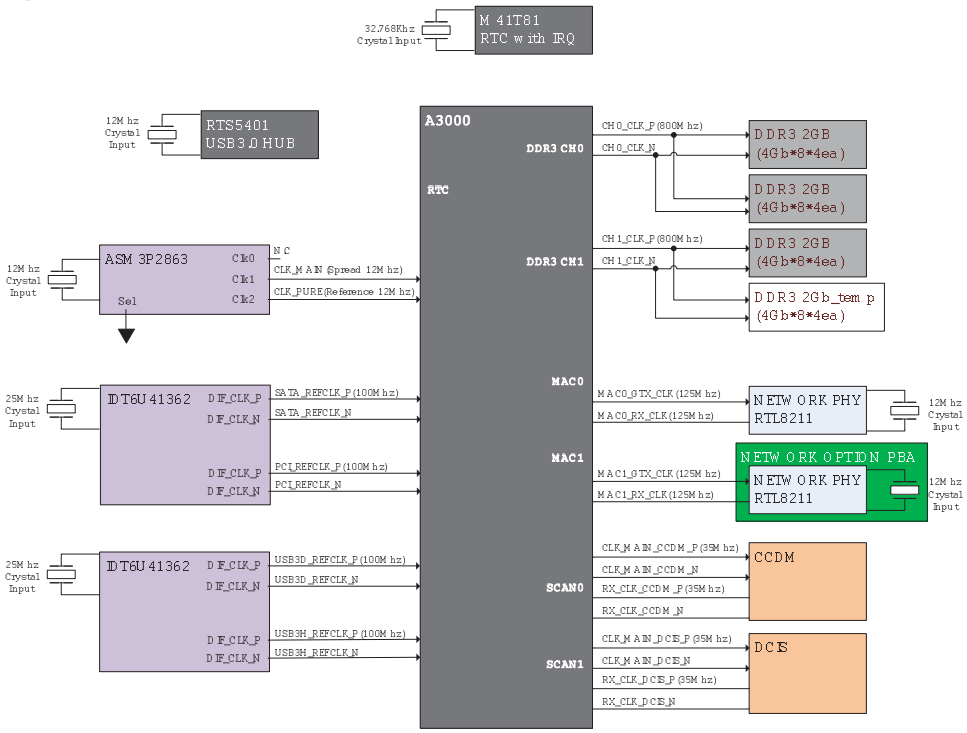
Main controller block diagram

Figure 2-71 Block diagram



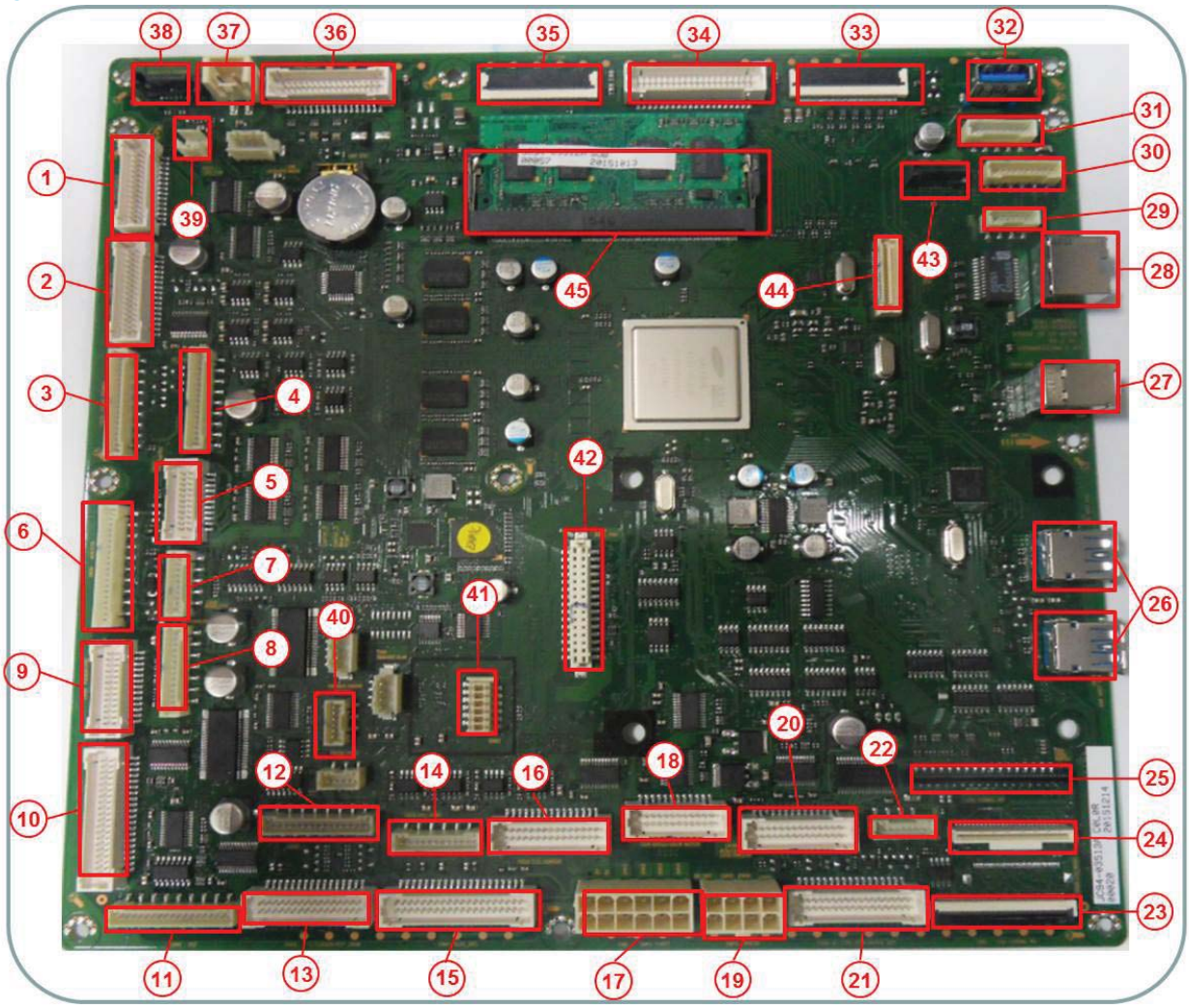
Main controller clock diagram

Figure 2-72 Clock diagram



Main controller connection information

Figure 2-73 Connection information



1	OUTPUT	12	FINISHER	23	Laser scanner assembly 1 COLOR	34	DCIS
2	FUSER DRIVE	13	OPC E-Label/T1	24	Laser scanner assembly 2 COLOR	35	CCDM
3	FUSER DRAWER	14	OPC HOME SENS	25	HVPS COLOR	36	Flow ADF
4	TB/E-Label	15	OPC BLDC COLOR	26	USB HOST 1/2	37	HDD POWER
5	TONER SUP/RES	16	TC SENS/RES FULL	27	USB DEVICE	38	HDD SIGNAL
6	CPR_CTD COLOR	17	LVPS TYPE5	28	NETWORK	39	CPU FAN
7	Registration assembly/T1 POS SENS	18	HVPS POWER/ Laser scanner assembly SKEW	29	EFI POWER	40	SIDE FAN
8	PICKUP 1/2	19	LVPS TYPE4	30	FIH JOINT	41	MSOK
9	FEED/Registration assembly MOT	20	FRONT IF COLOR	31	HUB IF	42	FAX JOINT
10	SIDE	21	Fuser drive assembly IF	32	USB HOST/HUB	43	EFI SIGNAL
11	dual cassette feeder (DCF) IF	22	Laser scanner assembly PD	33	UI IF	44	2ND NETWORK
						45	DDR3 DIMM

Information

- Part Number:
- Part Name: PBA-MAIN

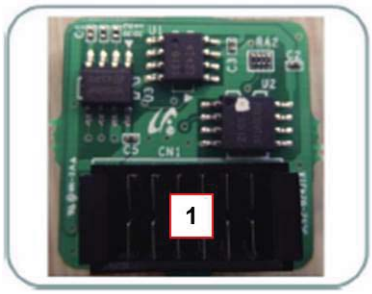
Master system operation key (MSOK)

MSOK PCA is used to store all system information and consists of serial flash memory, an EEPROM, and a X-E-Label. The flash memory (4 MB), EEPROM (256 KB) and X-E-Label are used for all system operations such as system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information.

NOTE: When a main board needs to be exchanged, reinstall the MSOK PCA to the new main board to retain the system information.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the same orientation as when it was removed in order for the printer to function.

Figure 2-74 MSOK



1	Main PCA I/F connector

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 5)

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 2-75 LVPS PCA (Type 5)



1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V 1/2/3/4 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off
4	OUTPUT_DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 8.0 A (110 V)/5.0 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 275 W
    - DC 5 V: 35 W
    - DC 24 V: 240 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00249A	SAM-JC44-00250A
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 5H	LVPS 220V Type 5H

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN2)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground

- DC output connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+24V1	Power
2	GND	24 V ground
3	+24V2	Power
4	GND	24 V ground
5	+24V3	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V4	Power
8	GND	24 V ground

- Signal Connector (CN4)

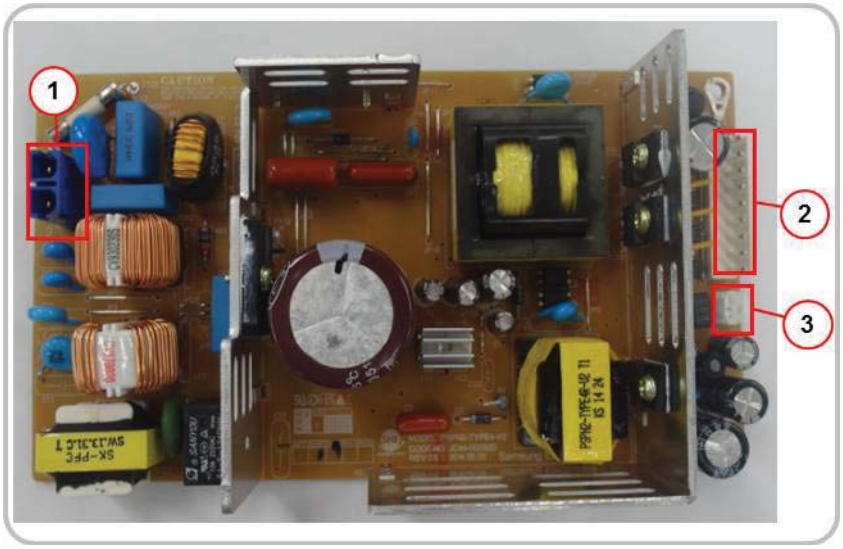
PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) PCA (Type 4)

NOTE: Some models have three LVPS boards. (Type5 x 1 each, Type4 x 2 each)

The low voltage power supply (LVPS) board supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

Figure 2-76 LVPS PCA (Type 4)



1	INPUT_AC
2	OUTPUT_DC +24 V1/2/3 and DC +5 V 1/2 (to Main PCA)
3	24 V on/off

Specification

- General input/output voltage
  - AC 110 V (110 V — 127 V)
  - AC 220 V (220 V — 240 V)
  - Input current: 6.3 A (110 V)/5 A (220 V)
  - Output power: 205 W
    - DC 5 V: 25 W
    - DC 24 V: 180 W

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00091D	SAM-JC44-00092D
Part name	LVPS 110V Type 4	LVPS 220V Type 4

Input/output connector

- AC input connector (CN1)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	AC_L	AC input
2	AC_N	

- DC output connector (CN4)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	+5V1	Power
2	GND	5 V ground
3	+5V2	Power
4	GND	5 V ground
5	+24V1	Power
6	GND	24 V ground
7	+24V2	Power
8	GND	24 V ground
9	+24V3	Power

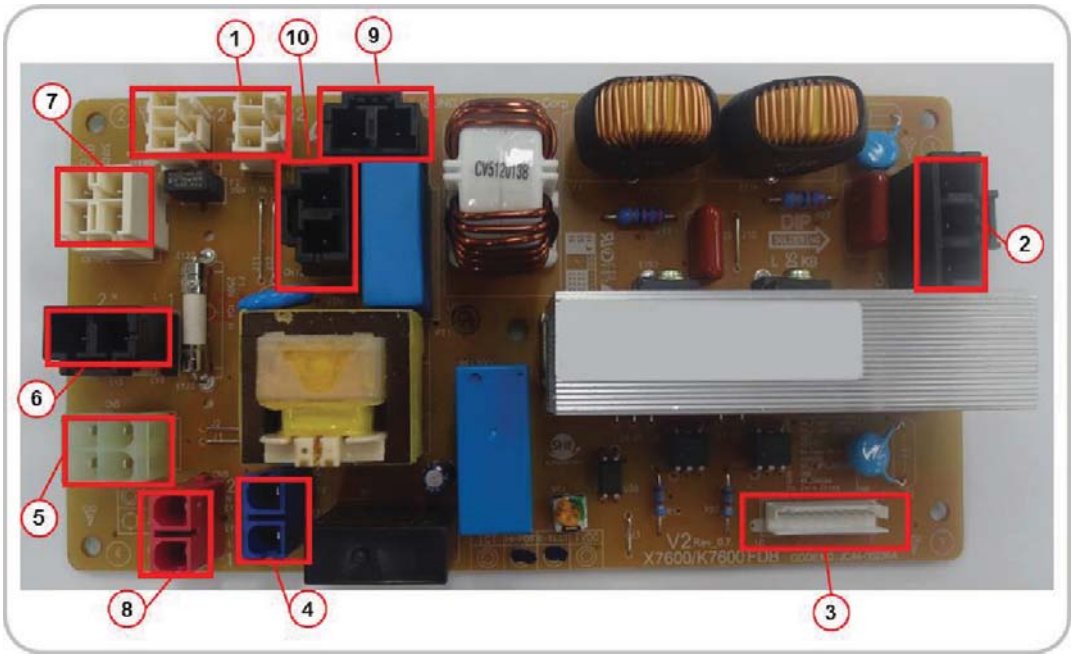
- Signal Connector (CN3)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	GND	Active Low
2	24 V On/Off	
3	GND	

Fuser drive assembly

This board supplies voltage to the fuser AC, heater, and main board.

Figure 2-77 Fuser drive board



1	Option Heater
2	Fuser Lamp
3	Fuser drive assembly I/F
4	LVPS (Type 5)
5	Main Switch
6	AC Inlet
7	Option Heater Switch
8	LVPS (Type 4)
9/10	Reactor

Information

	110 V	220 V
Part number	SAM-JC44-00235B	SAM-JC44-00236B
Part name	Fuser Drive Board 110V	Fuser Drive Board 220V

High voltage power supply (HVPS) PCA

The HVPS board generates 15 high-voltage channels, including ITHV (4), MHV (4), DEV (4), FUSER, SAW, and 2THV(+/-).

Figure 2-78 HVPS PCA

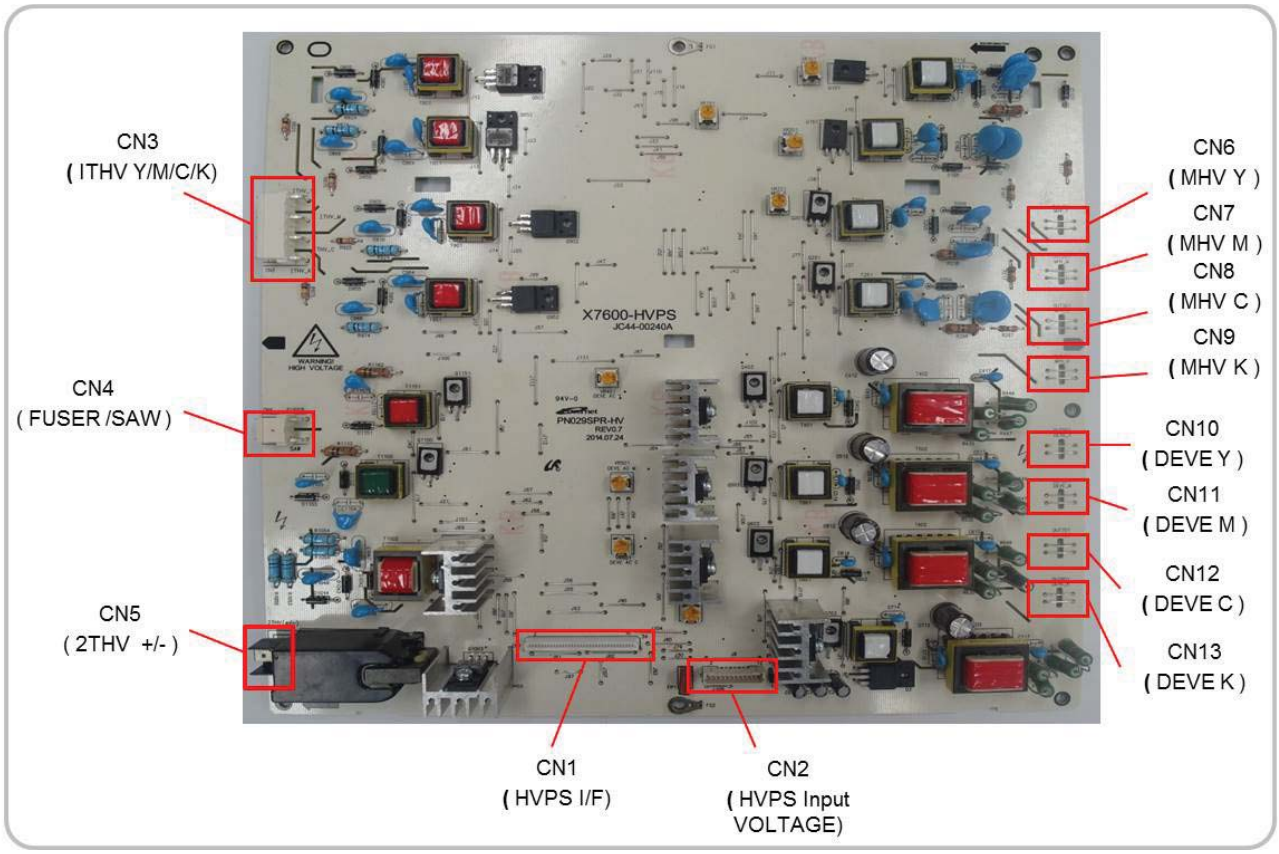


Table 2-38 HVPS PCA Connections

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
1	DETECT	
2	PWM_ITHV_C	PWM signal
3	PWM_ITHV_K	PWM signal
4	PWM_ITHV_M	PWM signal
5	READ_ITHV_C	Output voltage
6	PWM_ITHV_Y	PWM signal
7	READ_ITHV_K	Output voltage
8	READ_ITHV_M	Output voltage
9	PWM_FUSEBIAS	PWM signal
10	READ_ITHV_Y	Output voltage
11	PWM_SAW	PWM signal
12	READ_MHV_Y	Output voltage
13	PWM_THV2_MINUS	PWM signal
14	READ_MHV_M	Output voltage
15	PWM_THV2_P_CV	PWM signal

Table 2-38 HVPS PCA Connections (continued)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
16	READ_MHV_C	Output voltage
17	READ_THV2	Output voltage
18	PWM_MHV_Y	PWM signal
19	PWM_DEVE_DC_K	PWM signal
20	PWM_MHV_M	PWM signal
21	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_K	PWM signal
22	PWM_MHV_C	PWM signal
23	PWM_DEVE_DC_C	PWM signal
24	PWM_MHV_K	PWM signal
25	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_C	PWM signal
26	PWM_THV2_P_CC	PWM signal
27	PWM_DEVE_DC_M	PWM signal
28	THV2_CV_SELECT	Input signal
29	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_M	PWM signal
30	N.C	
31	PWM_DEVE_DC_Y	PWM signal
32	READ_MHV_K	Output voltage
33	PWM_DEVE_AC_VPP_Y	PWM signal
34	PWM_DEVE_AC_VFREQ	PWM signal
35	DETECT	
	CN2	
1	24 V	Input voltage
2	24 V	Input voltage
3	24 V	Input voltage
4	3.3 V	Input voltage
5	GND	GND
6	GND	GND
7	GND	GND
8	READ_HVPS_24	Output voltage
9	nEN_DEVE_AC_Y	nEN signal
10	nEN_DEVE_AC_M	nEN signal
11	nEN_DEVE_AC_C	nEN signal
12	nEN_DEVE_AC_K	nEN signal

Table 2-38 HVPS PCA Connections (continued)

PIN assign	PIN name	Description
	Connections	
CN3	ITHV Y/M/C/K	Output voltage
CN5	2THV +/-	Output voltage
CN6	MHV Y	Output voltage
CN7	MHV M	Output voltage
CN8	MHV C	Output voltage
CN9	MHV K	Output voltage
CN10	DEVE Y	Output voltage
CN11	DEVE M	Output voltage
CN12	DEVE C	Output voltage
CN13	DEVE K	Output voltage
	CN4	
1	FUSER_BIAS	Output voltage
2	SAW_PLATE	Output voltage

Specification

- Input voltage: DC 24 V, 3.3 V
- Output voltage:
  - MHV Y/M/C/K: -1395 V
  - DEVE DC Y/M/C/K: -606 V
  - DEV AC Y/M/C/K: Vpp 920 V
  - THV1 Y/M/C/K: 45.5 uA
  - THV2+(CV): 2020 V
  - THV2+(CC): 25.5 uA
  - THV2–: –1310 V
  - FUSER: 998 V
  - SAW: -998 V

Information

- Part number: SAM-JC44-00240A
- Part name: HVPS

Eraser PCA

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

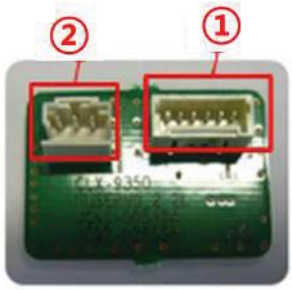
Figure 2-79 Eraser PCA



Fuser PCA

The Fuser PCA includes a CRU memory for Fuser Unit Life Cycle counting. The Fuser PCA provides a connection interface for the pressure sensor.

Figure 2-80 Fuser PCA



1	Fuser EEPROM, Pressure Sensor I/F
2	Pressure Sensor (Not used)

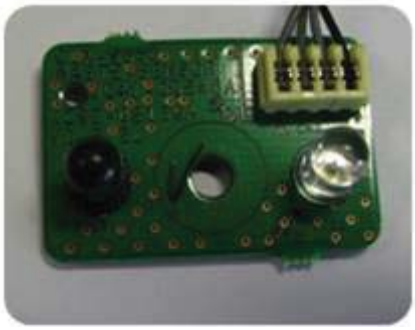
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-FUSER

Waste Sensor PCA

The waste sensor PCA detects the waste toner level inside the toner collection unit.

Figure 2-81 Waste sensor PCA



Information

- Part number:
- Part name: WASTE SENSOR RX

Paper Size sensor PCA

The paper size sensor PCA is used for detecting the size of the paper in the tray.

Figure 2-82 Paper size sensor PCA

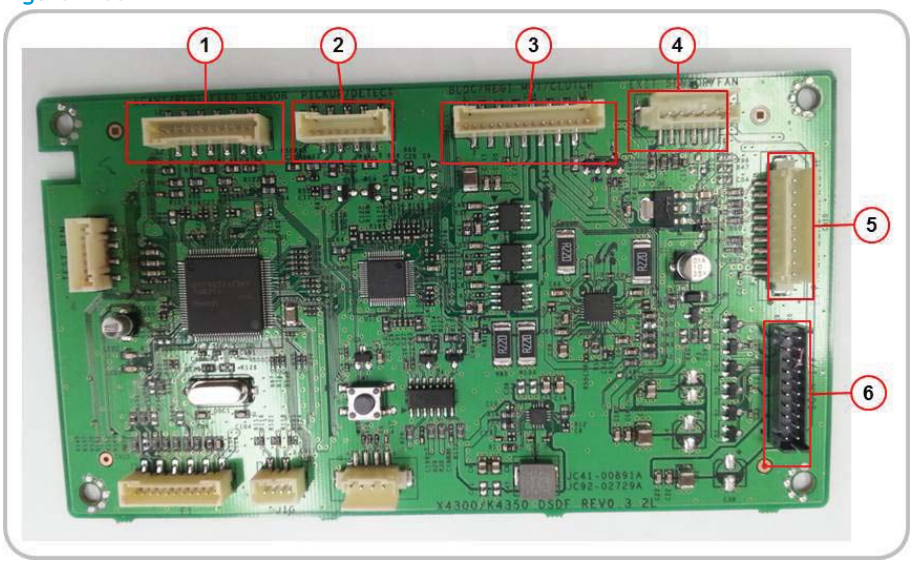


Flow ADF PCA

The flow ADF-PCA uses the R5F562TAEDFP (100 MHz Main Clock) for controlling the flow ADF unit and interfaces with the main board through UART.

The flow ADF-PCA has three motor driver ICs to control the BLDC/step motor and controls one BLDC motor, two step motors, one clutch, one fan, and 11 sensors.

Figure 2-83 Flow ADF PCA



1	Scan Position 1/2, Registration, Feed Sensor
2	Pickup, Paper Detect, Cover Open Sensor
3	BLDC Motor, Registration Motor, Pickup Clutch

4	Output Sensor, Fan
5	Paper Length 1/2, Width Sensor
6	Scan Joint PCA

Information

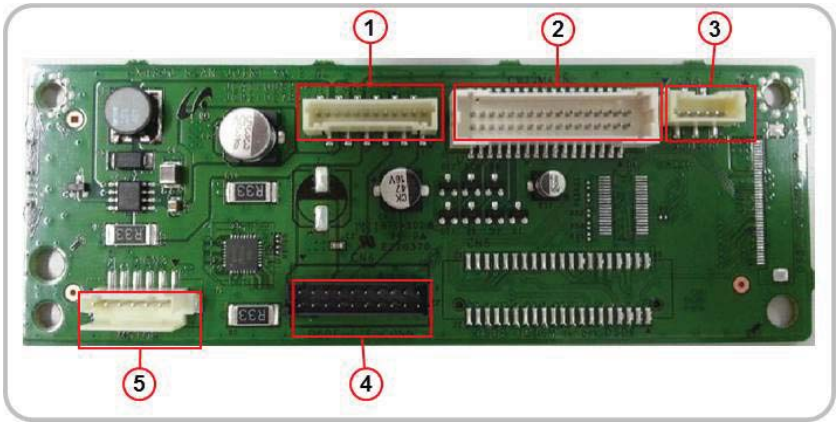
- Part number: SAM-JC92-02964A
- Part name: Flow ADF-PCA
- Part number: SAM-JC92-02964B
- Part name: Flow ADF-PCA (sGX)

Scan joint PCA

The scan joint PCA has a Bipolar Step Motor driving IC and interfaces with the WLED, APS sensor (1, 2), cover open sensor (1, 2), home position sensor, and main board.

The scan joint PCA also functions as the relay board to interface with the ADF I/F and power board.

Figure 2-84 Scan joint PCA



1	WLED IF PCA
2	MAIN PCA
3	Cover Open 2, Home Sensor
4	ADF/flow ADF PCA
5	Image Scanner Motor

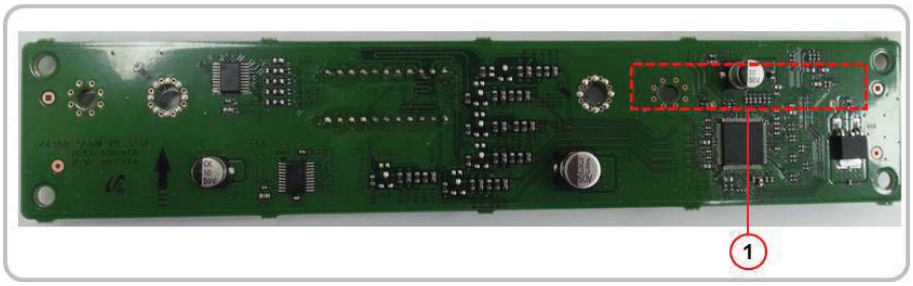
Information

- Part number: SAM-JC92-02781A
- Part name: PCA-SCAN JOINT

CCDM PCA

The CCDM PCA is used in the scanner unit and converts the reflected light from an original document to electrical signals. The reflected light from an original document is converted to three-color analog signals: red, green, and blue. The ADC converts each analog signal to digital. For a high speed data transmission, the digital data signal is converted to a LVDS format with serialization. The CCDM PCA includes the CCD, ADC, Logic IC, and so on.

Figure 2-85 CCDM PCA



1	MAIN PCA

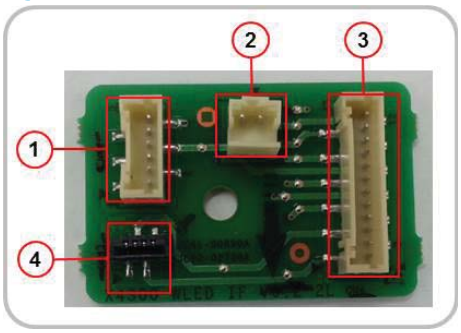
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-CCDM

WLED IF PCA

The WLED IF PCA interfaces with the WLED and sensors inside the Image Scanner unit.

Figure 2-86 WLED IF PCA



1	APS1, APS2 Sensor
2	Cover Open1 Sensor
3	SCAN JOINT PCA
4	WLED PCA

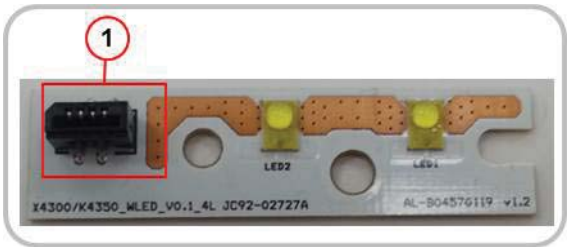
Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED IF

WLED PCA

The WLED PCA consists of two WLEDs used as scanner light.

Figure 2-87 WLED PCA



1	WLED PCA

Information

- Part number:
- Part name: PBA-WLED

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-88 Paper feeding system

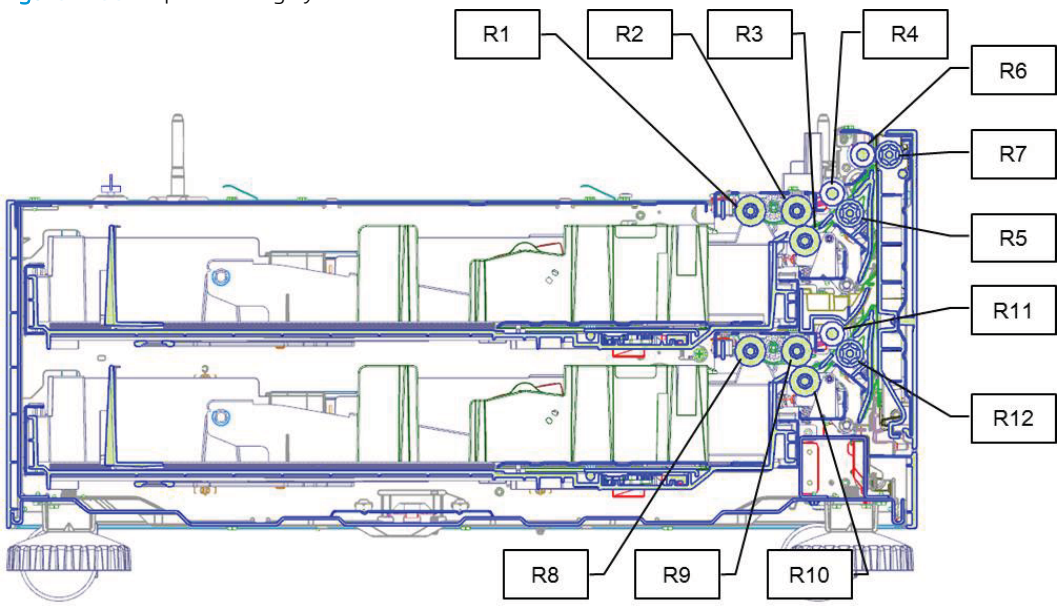
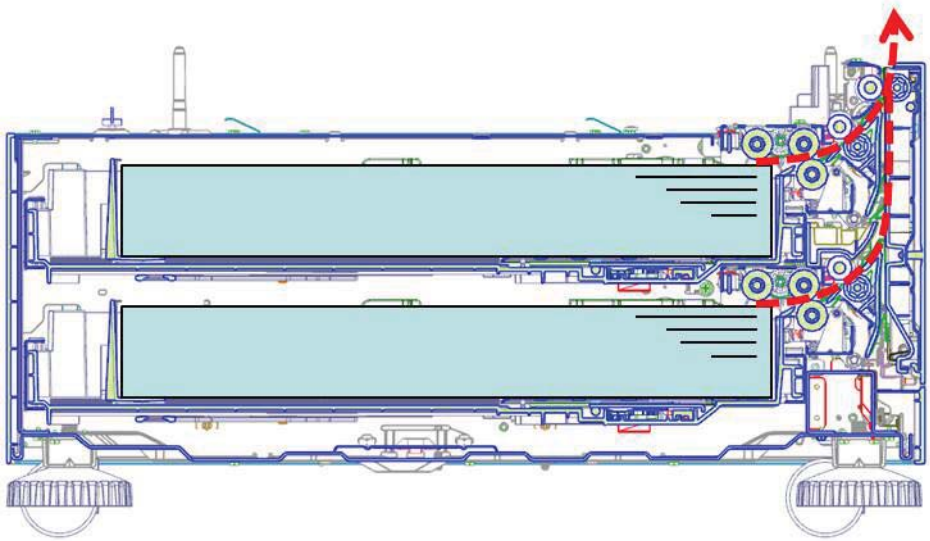


Table 2-45 DCF paper feeding system

Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4/5	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4/5	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
5	R8	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
5	R9	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
5	R10	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
5	R11	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
5	R12	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-89 Paper path



Electrical parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Figure 2-90 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

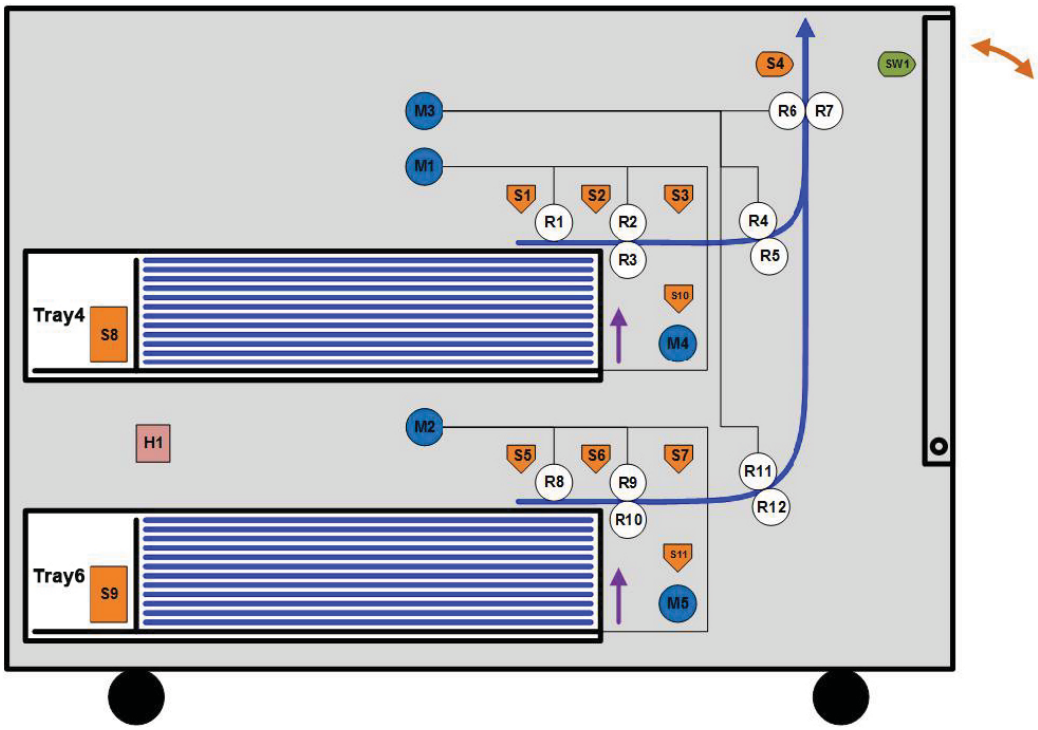


Table 2-46 DCF electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 3.
4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 3.
4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
4/5	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
5	S5	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in Tray 4.
5	S6	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting-up of Tray 4.
5	S7	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R9-R10 and R11-12.
4	S8	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 3.
5	S9	Paper size sensor	Detects tray insertion and paper size in Tray 4.
4/5	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of right cover.
4	M1	Tray 3 pickup motor	
5	M2	Tray 4 pickup motor	
4/5	M3	Tray feed motor	

PCA connection

Figure 2-91 PCA connection and DCF

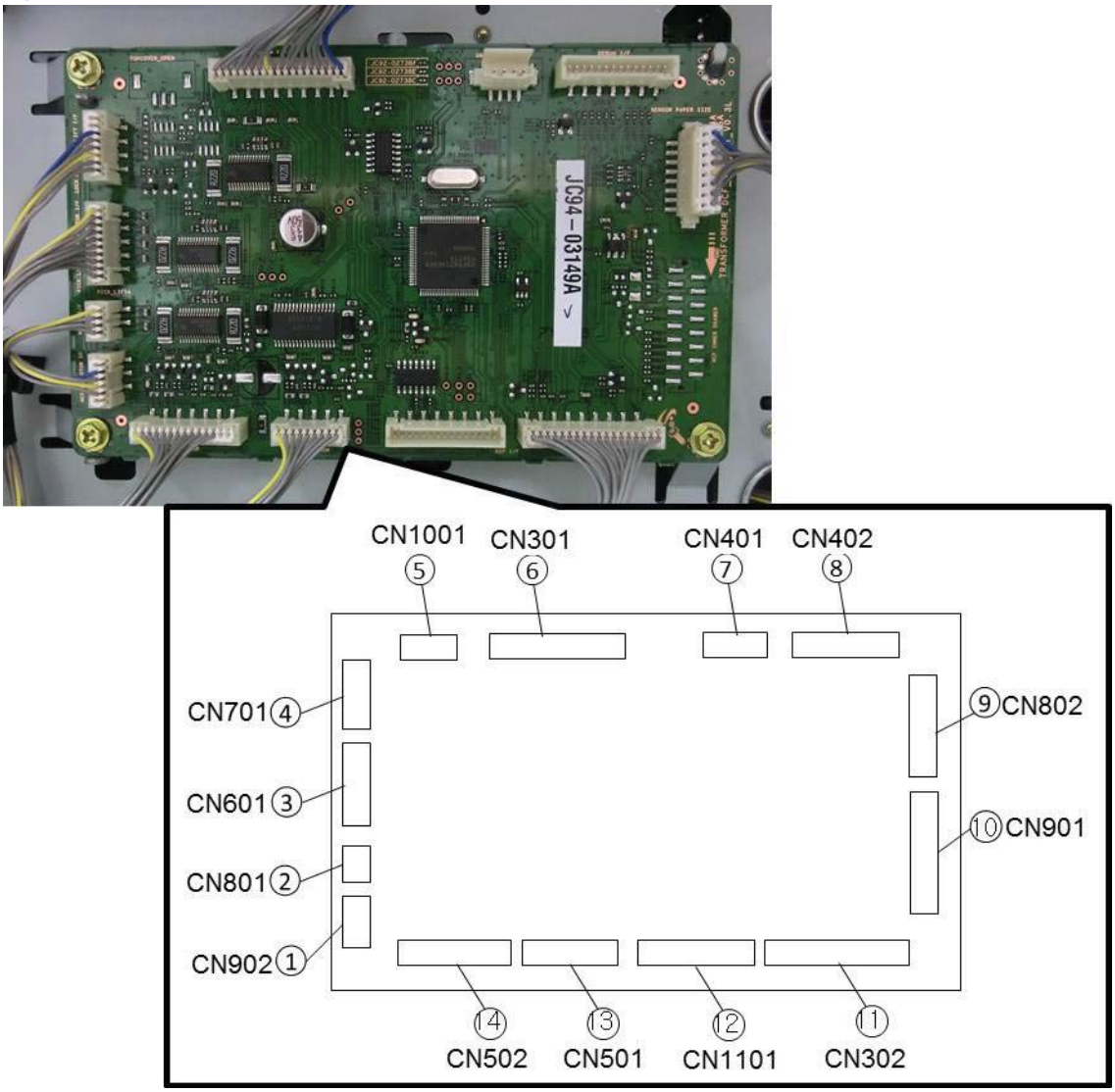


Table 2-47 DCF PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN801	2	PICK/LIFT4 MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/LCT HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN802	9	SENSOR PAPER SIZE
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR

High capacity input tray (HCI)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-92 Paper feeding system

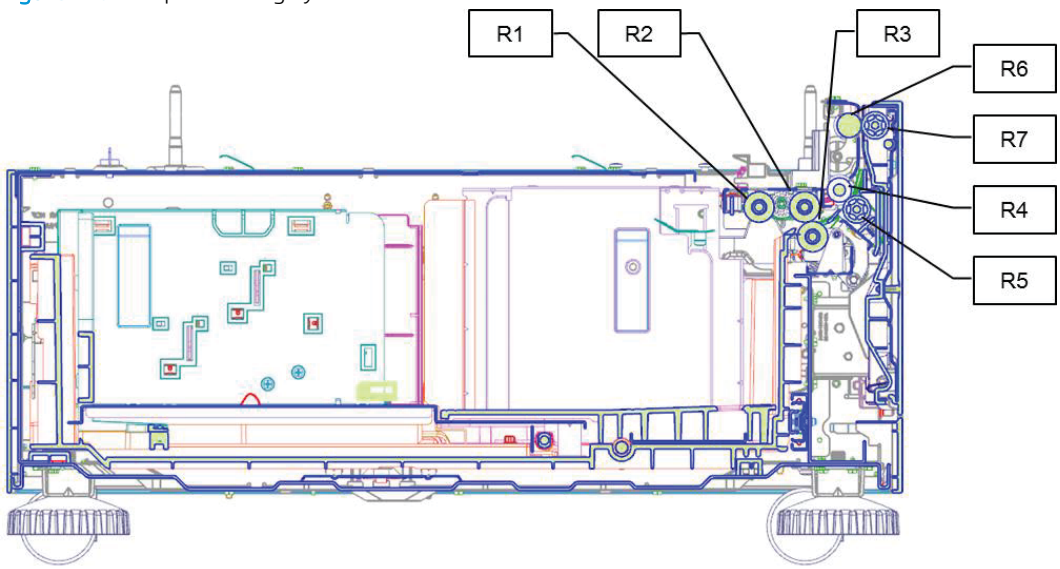
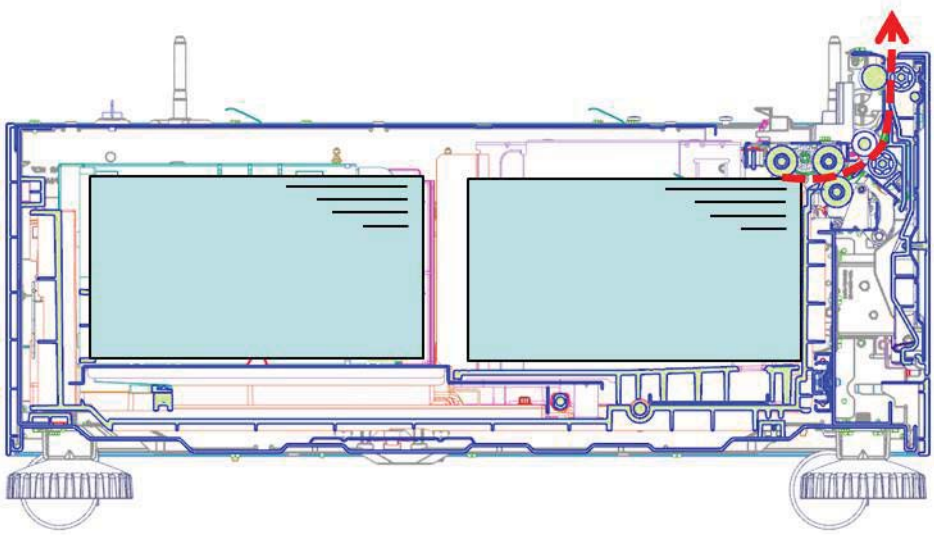


Table 2-48 HCI paper feeding system

Tray number	Roller number	Roller name	Function
4	R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
4	R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
4	R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
4	R4	Prefeed roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
4	R5	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.
4	R6	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the basic machine.
4	R7	Idle roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-93 HCI paper path



Electrical parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Figure 2-94 Electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

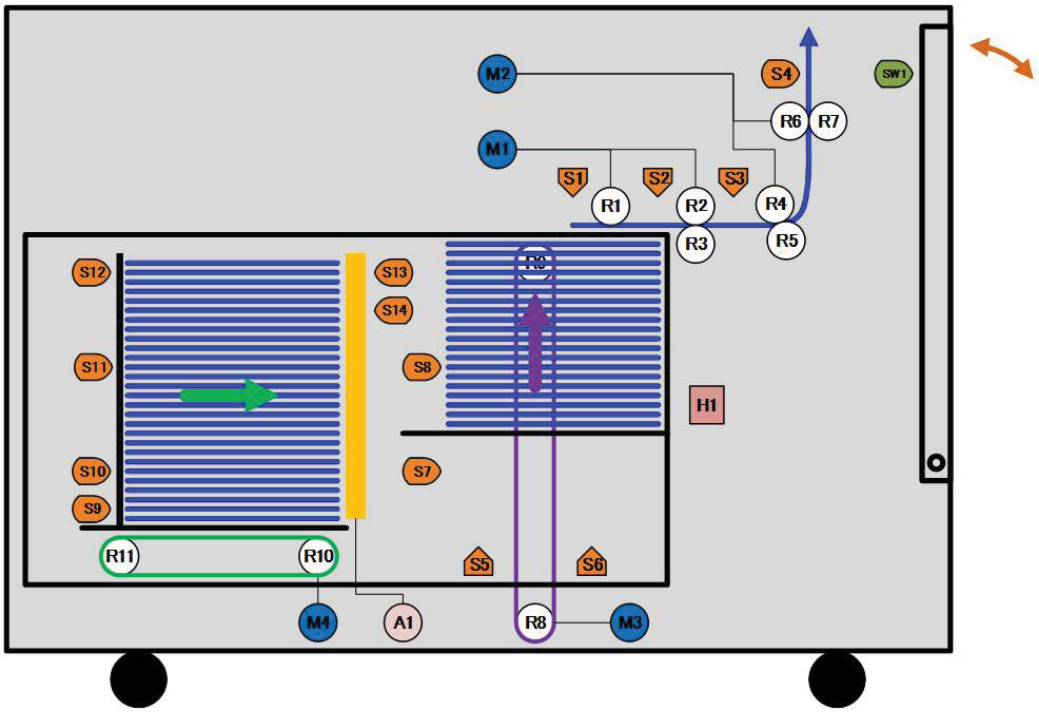


Table 2-49 HCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Tray number	Callouts	Description	Function
3/4	S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in main tray.
3/4	S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
3/4	S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
3/4	S4	Path sensor	Detects paper passing through R6-R7.
3/4	S5	Tray insertion sensor	Detects tray insertion.
3/4	S6	Knockup home sensor	Detects home position of knock-plate.
3/4	S7	Main tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S8	Main tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in main tray.
3/4	S9	Shift tray no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in sub tray.
3/4	S10	Shift tray level sensor 1	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S11	Shift tray level sensor 2	Detects paper residual quantity in sub tray.
3/4	S12	Shift plate home sensor	Detects home position of shift plate.
3/4	S13	Shift plate end sensor	Detects end position of shift plate.
3/4	S14	Solenoid home sensor	Detects home position of solenoid.
3/4	SW1	Side door open switch	Detects opening of solenoid.
3	M1	Tray pickup motor	
3	M2	Tray feed motor	
3	M3	Tray lift up motor	
3	M4	Paper shift motor	

PCA connection

Figure 2-95 HCI PCA connection

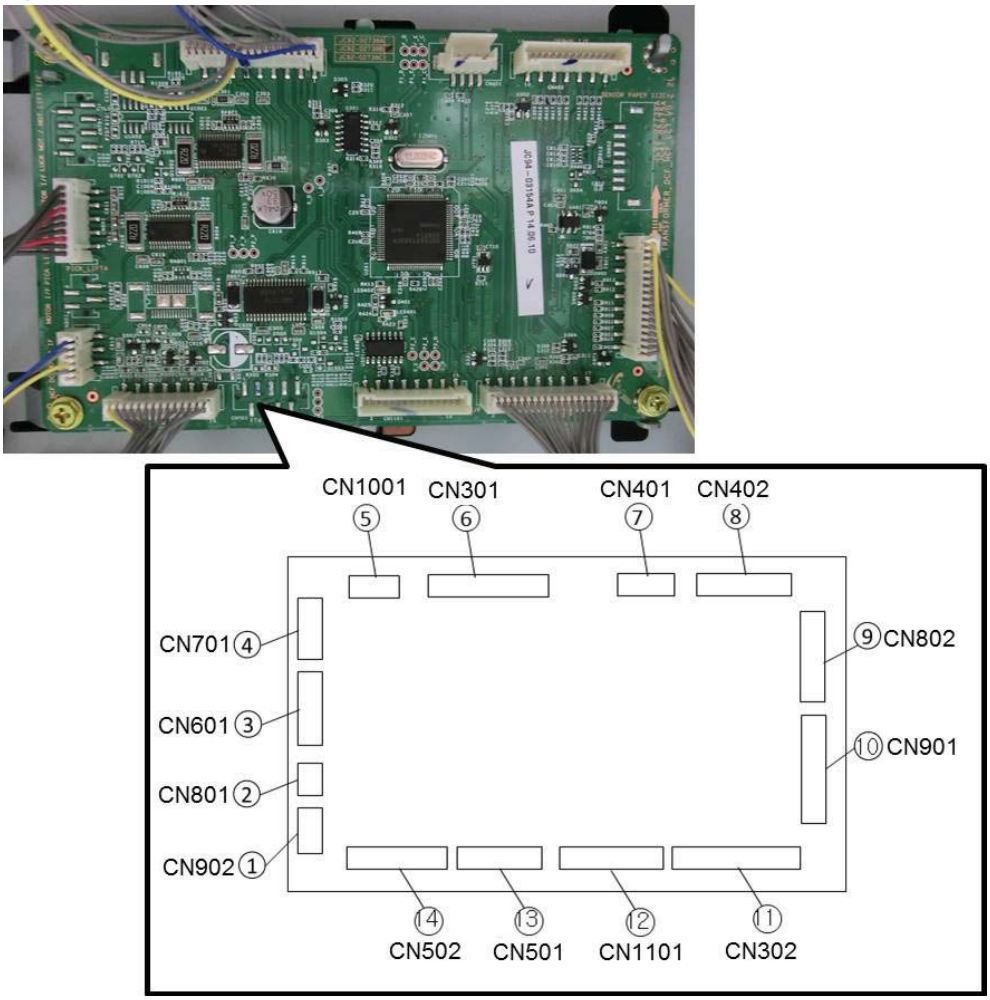


Table 2-50 HCI PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN902	1	DC MOTOR I/F
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN901	10	HCI INNER DRAWER
CN302	11	SUB I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

Side high capacity input tray (sHCI)

Paper feeding system (rollers and functions)

Figure 2-96 Paper feeding system

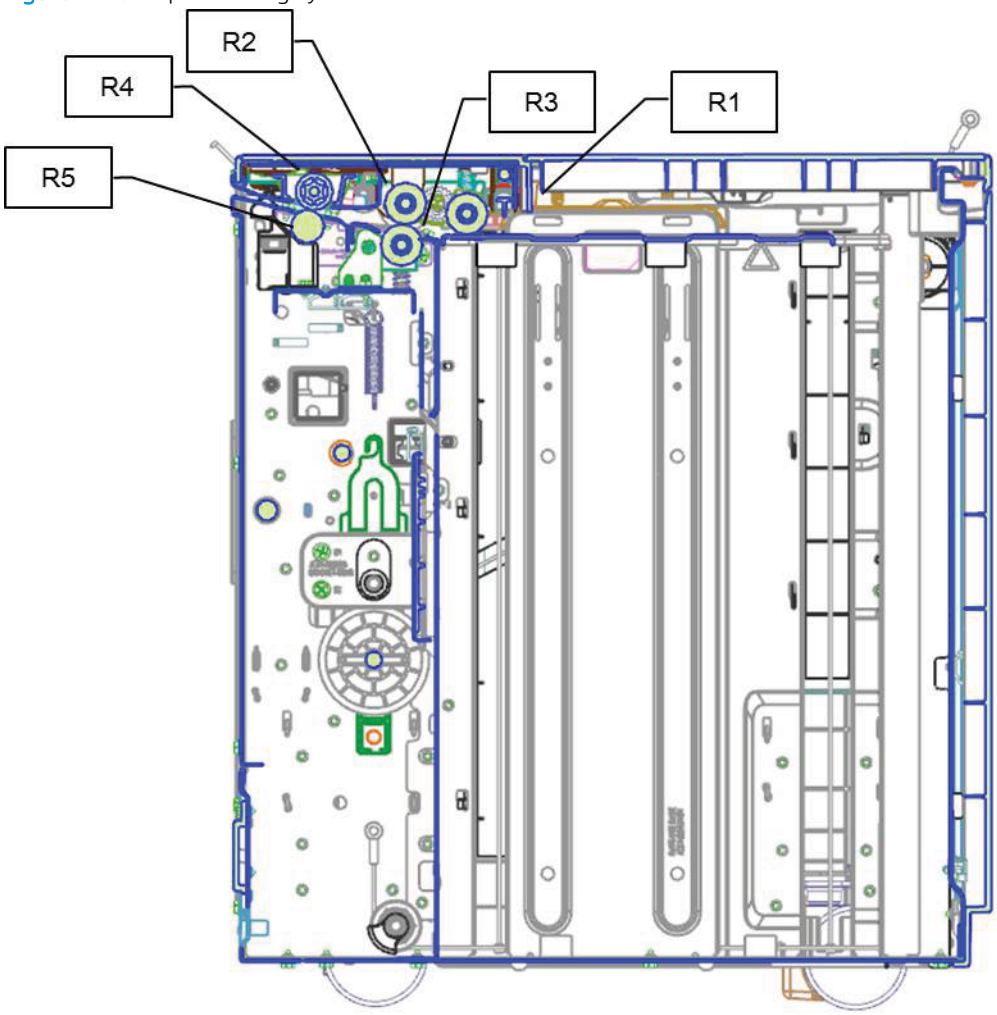


Table 2-51 sHCI paper feeding system

Roller number	Roller name	Function
R1	Pickup roller	Transports paper from the paper stack.
R2	Feed roller	Transports one sheet of paper to the prefeed roller.
R3	Reverse (separation) roller	Makes sure paper is moved one at a time.
R4	Idle roller	Transports paper to the feed roller.
R5	Feed roller	Makes paper transportation smooth.

Paper path

Figure 2-97 sHCI paper path

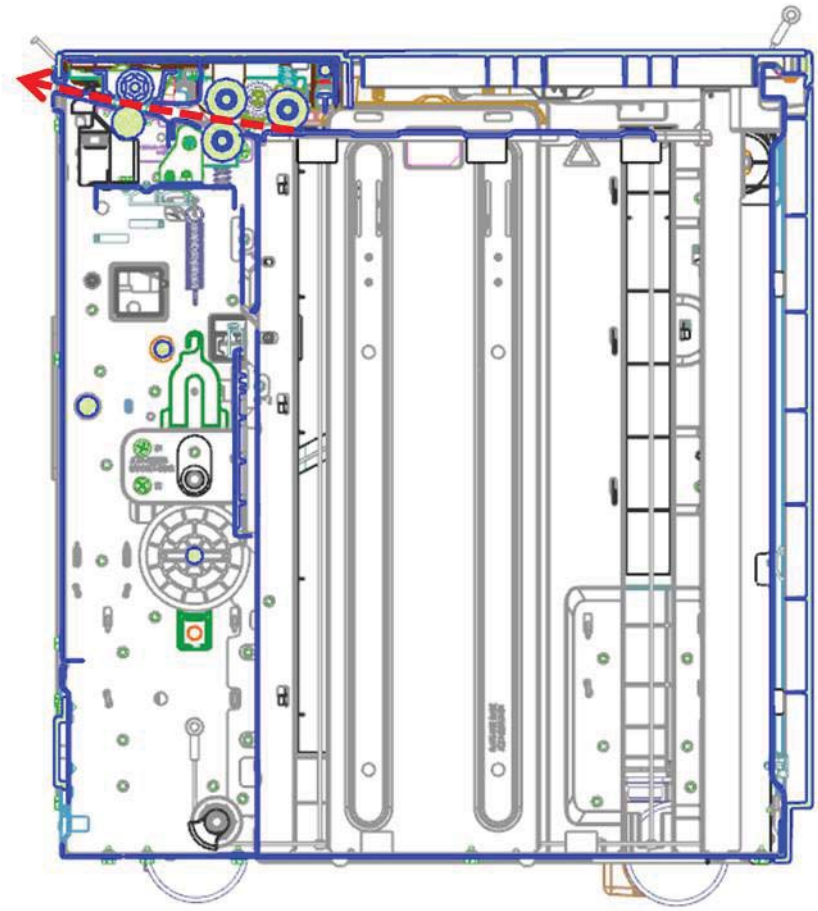


Figure 2-98 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

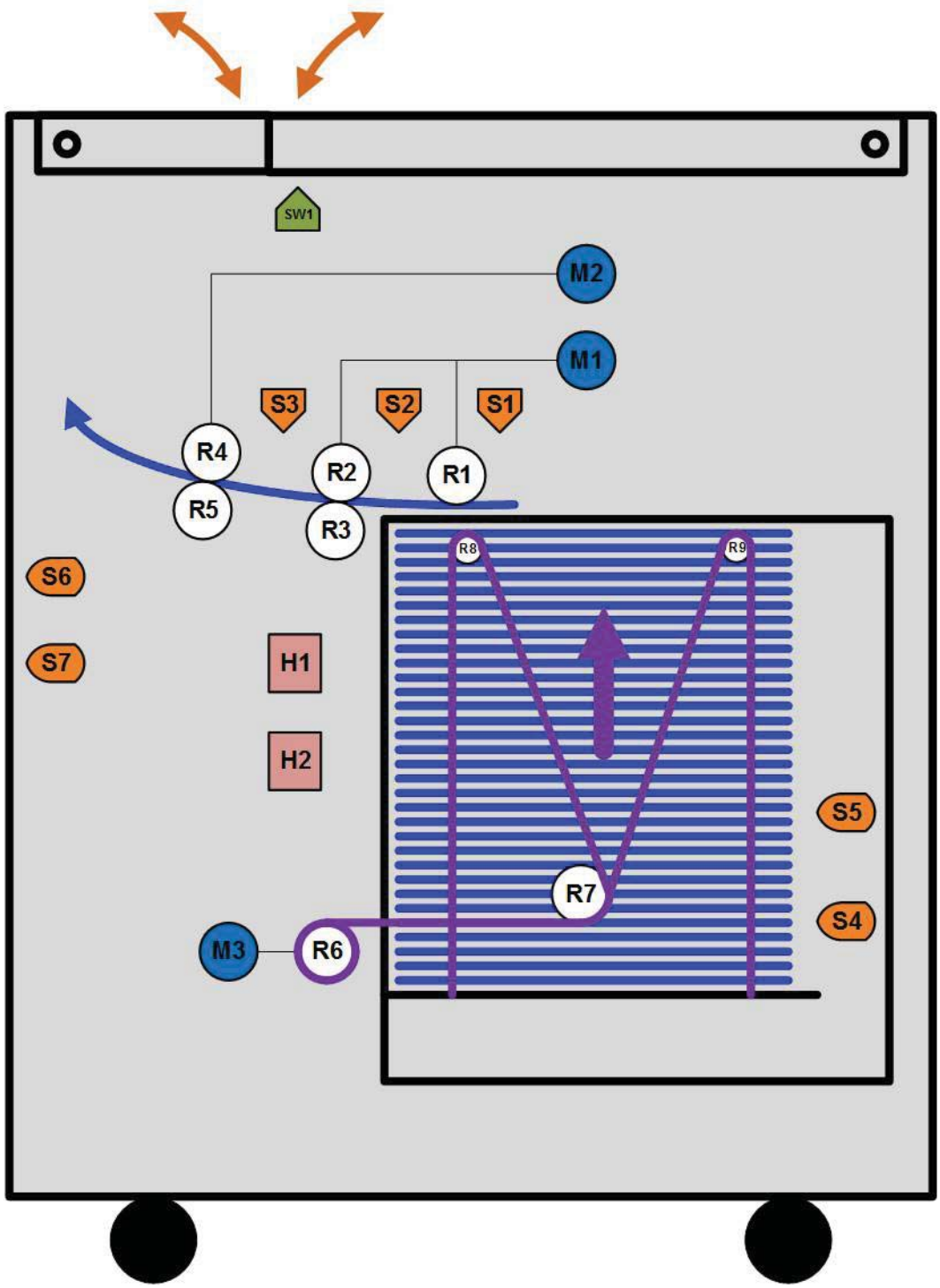


Table 2-52 sHCI electric parts locations, descriptions, and functions

Callouts	Description	Function
S1	Pickup no paper sensor	Detects paper empty in tray.
S2	Pickup level sensor	Detects upper limit of lifting up of main tray.
S3	Prefeed sensor	Detects paper between R2-R3 and R4-5.
S4	Paper level sensor 1	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S5	Paper level sensor 2	Detects paper residual paper quantity in tray.
S6	Install sensor 1	Detects installation of SL-sHCI501S to the basic

PCA connection

Figure 2-99 sHCI PCA connection

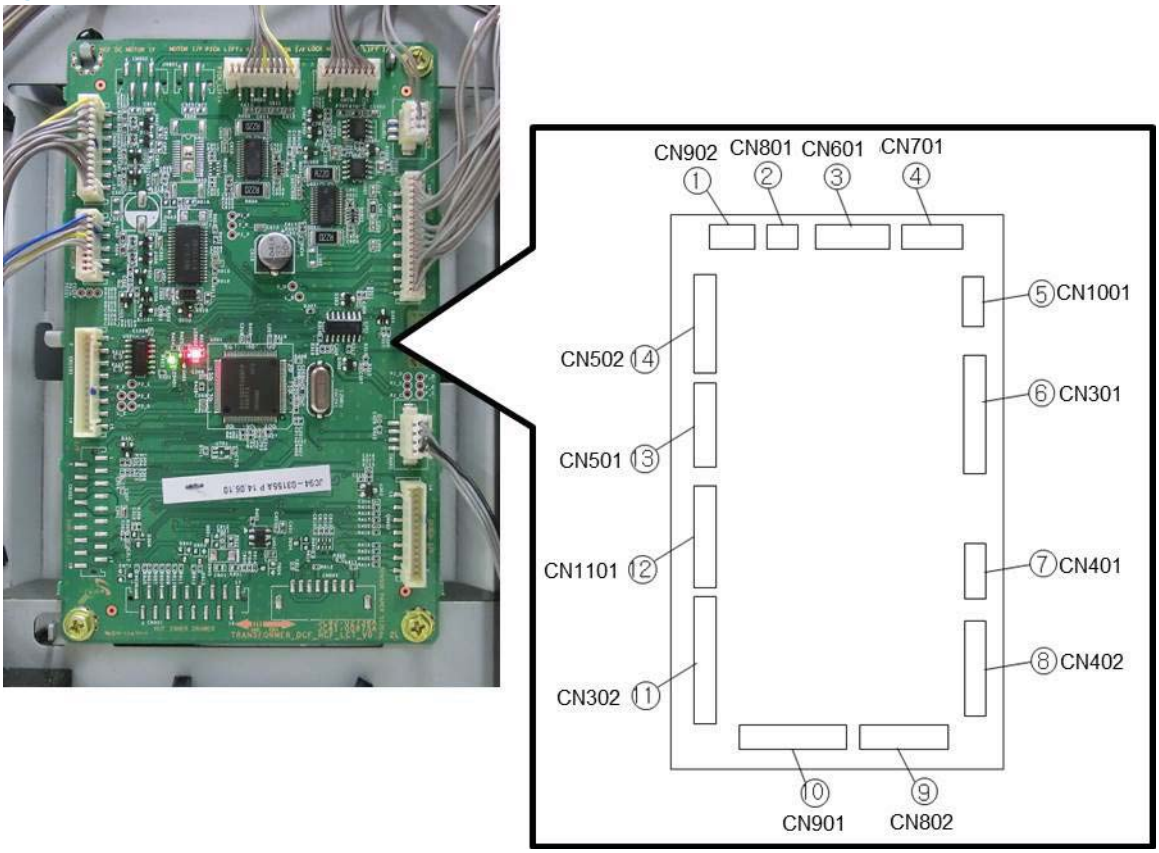


Table 2-53 sHCI PCA connection

Connector number	Item number	Connection
CN601	3	PICK/LIFT3 & FEED MOTOR I/F
CN701	4	LOCKMOT/MOT LIFT/sHCI HOME I/F
CN1001	5	TOPCOVER/OPEN INTERLOCK
CN301	6	MAIN I/F
CN401	7	UART DEBUG I/F
CN402	8	E1 JTAG DEBUG I/F
CN1101	12	BBP I/F
CN501	13	T4 SENSOR
CN502	14	T3 SENSOR

3 Removal and replacement

- For additional service and support
- Service approach
  - Precautions when replacing parts
  - Before performing service
  - After performing service
  - Post-service test
- Maintenance
  - Machine cleaning for maintenance
- Removal and replacement procedures
  - Accessories
  - Replacement of maintenance parts
- Formatter cover
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Accelerator board
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Island of data (IOD)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)

  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Formatter hard disk drive (HDD)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Formatter
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
  - Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
  - Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive
  - Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA
  - Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Control panel
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
  - Step 2: Remove the control-panel
  - Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Keyboard (z bundles)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
  - Step 2: Remove the control-panel
  - Step 3: Remove the keyboard
  - Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)
  - Introduction
  - Step 1: Remove the IPTU
  - Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly
- Replacing the main SVC part
  - Front top inner cover
  - Front power cover

- Front power switch
- Output bin
- Top right cover
- Left cover
- Lower rear cover
- Upper rear cover
- Left rear corner cover
- Right rear cover
- Right door
- Front cover
- Paper dust brush
- Inner front cover
- Front cover open sensor
- High voltage power supply (HVPS) board
- Laser scanner assembly
- Laser scanner assembly fan
- Main board
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2
- Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3
- Fuser drive board
- Developer fan
- Lower tray connector
- Fuser fan
- Main drive unit
- Alienation motor
- Inductor unit
- Auto closing unit
- Fuser/output drive unit

- Right door open sensor
- Right door open switch
- Pickup drive unit 1
- Pickup drive unit 2
- Feed/MP drive unit
- Registration drive assembly
- Toner supply drive unit
- Toner supply and toner reservoir motors
- CRUM connector
- Toner collection unit (TCU) drive
- Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors
- Reservoir unit
- Auto size sensor
- Front cover open sensor
- Fuser out sensor (on the right door)
- Feed 2 sensor (on the right door)
- Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door)
- Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor
- Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor
- Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid
- Output unit
- Return sensor (on the output unit)
- Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit)
- Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit)
- Output gate solenoid (on the output unit)
- Pickup unit 2
- Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2)
- Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)
- Pickup unit 1
- Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1)
- Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)

- Registration assembly
- Registration sensor assembly
- Internal hard disk drive (HDD)

- Flow ADF
  - Flow ADF whole unit
  - Flow ADF jam access cover
  - Flow ADF input tray
  - Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS)
  - Flow ADF front motor
  - Flow ADF rear motors
  - Flow ADF PCA fan
  - Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan
  - Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA
  - White backing
- Scanner unit (image scanner unit)
  - Scanner whole unit
  - Scan glass
  - LED lamp module
  - Scanner imaging unit
  - Scan joint board
  - APS sensor
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA
  - Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units
- Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray
  - Bottom HCI tray feed motor
  - Bottom HCI tray pickup motor
  - Bottom HCI tray PCA

- Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor
- Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

- Side high capacity input (sHCI)
  - Side HCI rear cover
  - Side HCI feed motor
  - Side HCI pickup motor
  - Side HCI PCA
  - Side HCI lift-up motor

For additional service and support

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Workbench (SAW) at http://sawpro.glb.itcs.hp.com.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at www.hp.com/partners/csn .

At these locations, find information on the following topics:

- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Channel partners, access training materials in the HP University and Partner Learning Center at https://content.ext.hp.com/sites/LMS/HPU.page.

To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.

Service approach

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.

- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Remove any finishing devices and the side HCI, if they are installed.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges, if needed.

After performing service

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

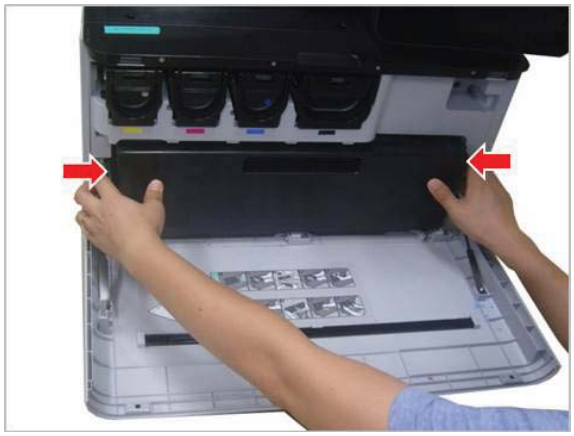
Maintenance

Machine cleaning for maintenance

Cleaning the laser scanner assembly window

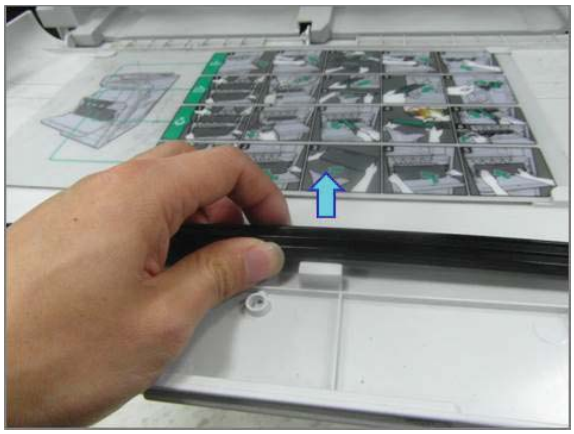
1. Open the front cover and remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-1 Remove the TCU



2. Remove the laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool located on the front cover.

Figure 3-2 Remove laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool



3. Insert the laser scanner assembly window cleaning tool into each color entrance.

Figure 3-3 Laser scanner assembly color entrances

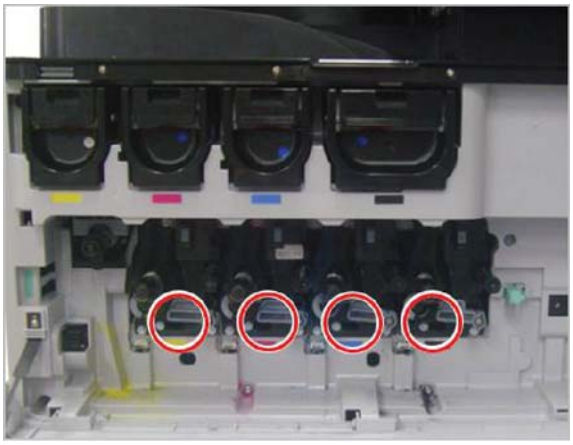
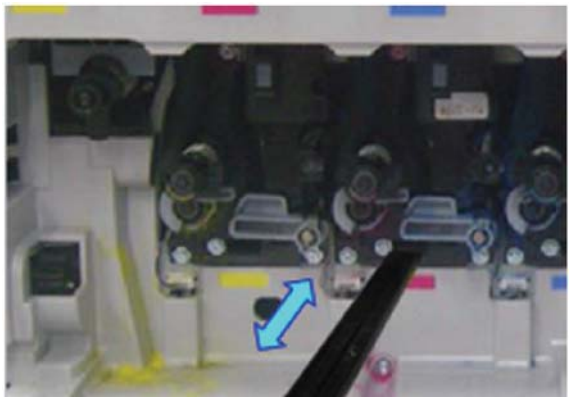
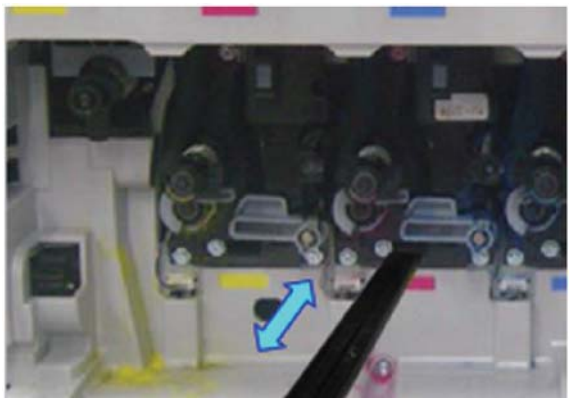


Figure 3-4 Laser scanner assembly color entrances





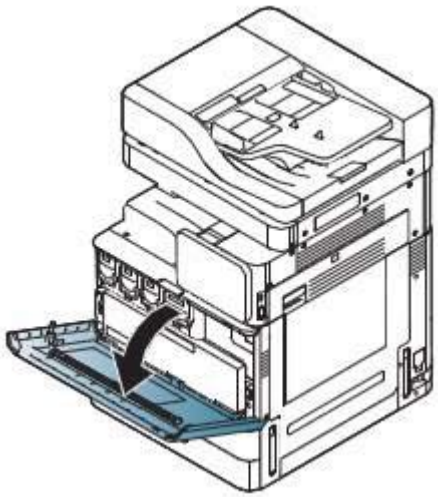
4. Slowly remove and reinsert the cleaning tool.
5. Repeat step 4 at least four times for each laser scanner assembly window.

Cleaning the paper dust stick

The paper dust stick needs to be cleaned after a specified number of pages are printed. A clean the paper dust stick message will appear. This is when the paper dust stick must be cleaned. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

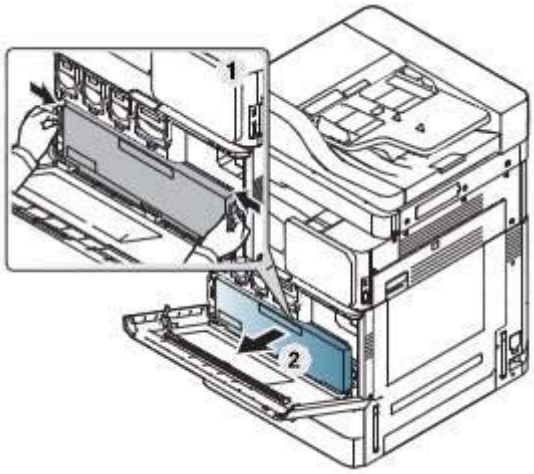
1. Open the front door.

Figure 3-5 Open the front door



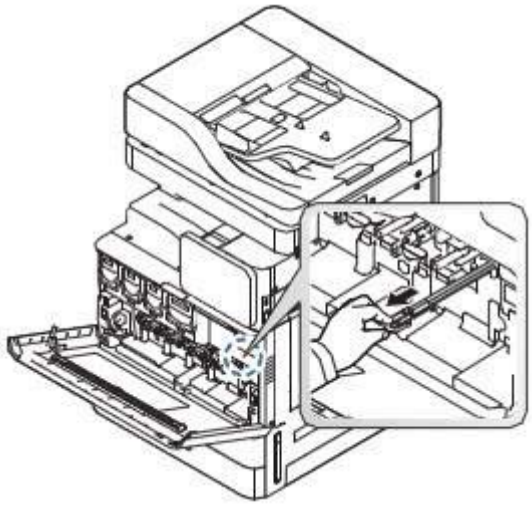
2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

Figure 3-6 Remove the TCU



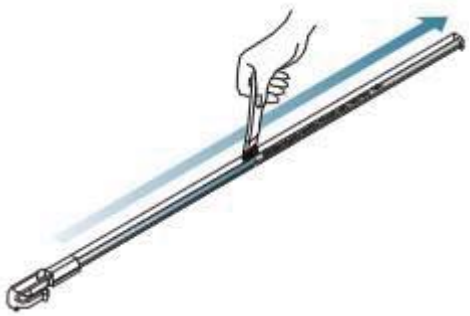
3. Pull out the paper dust stick.

Figure 3-7 Remove paper dust stick



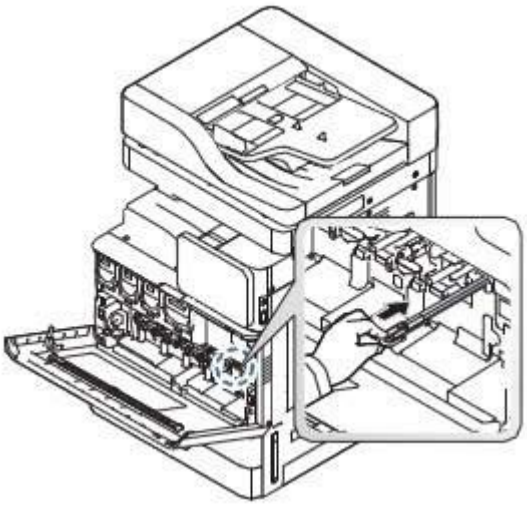
4. Remove the paper dust.

Figure 3-8 Remove the paper dust



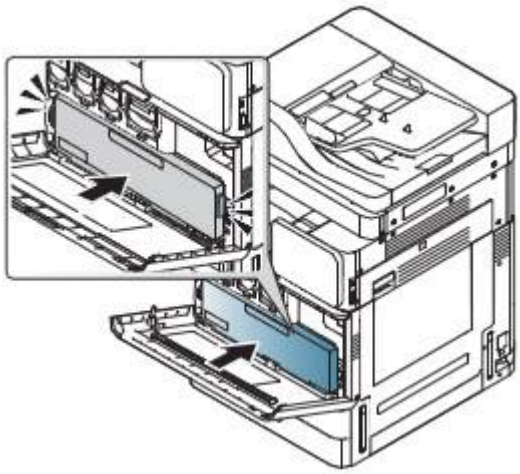
5. Insert the paper dust stick back into the slot.

Figure 3-9 Install the paper dust stick



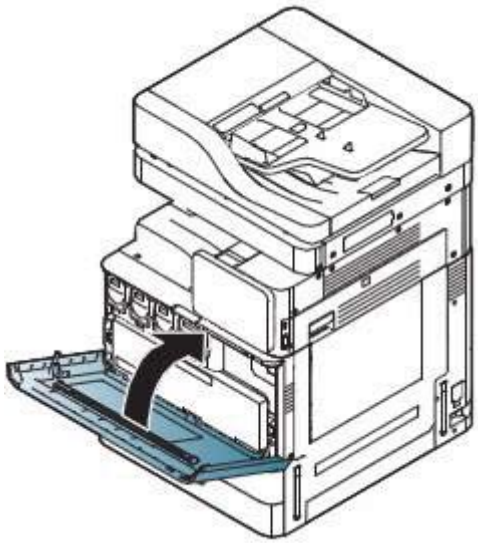
6. Insert the toner collection unit (TCU) until it locks in place on each side.

Figure 3-10 Install the TCU



7. Close the front door. Make sure the cover is securely closed. If the message still appears, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

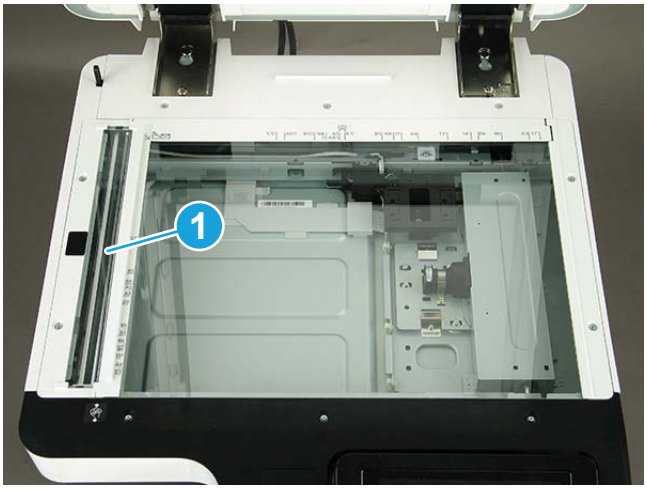
Figure 3-11 Close the front door



Cleaning the scan glass

- Open the flow ADF unit. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

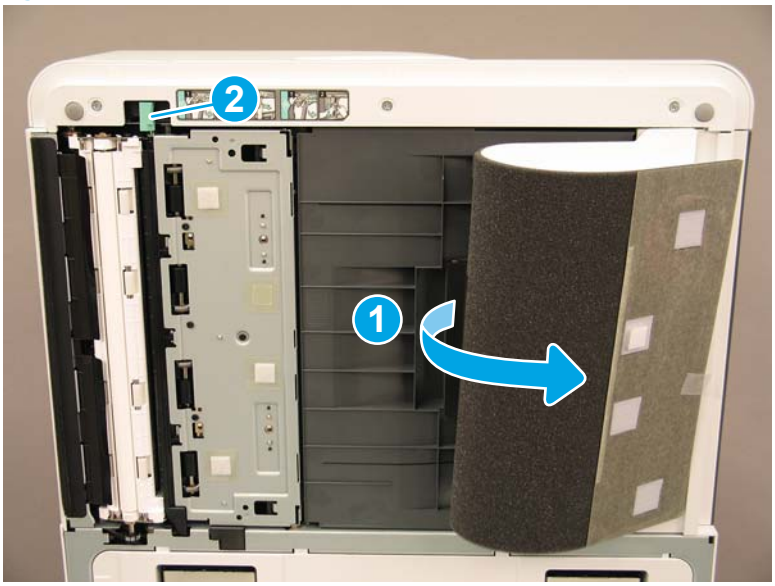
Figure 3-12 Clean the scanner glass



Cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS

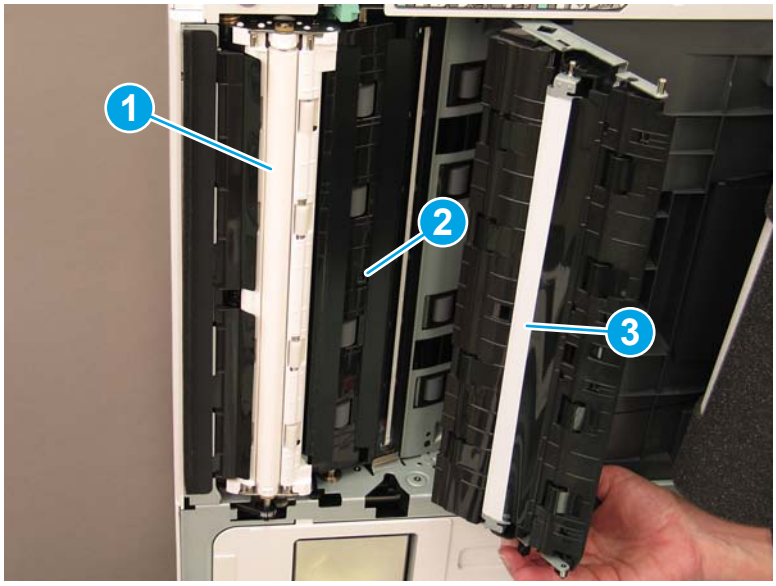
1. Open the ADF unit, peel back the white backing (callout 1), and then release the green tab (callout 2).

Figure 3-13 Peel back the white backing and release one tab



2. Open the access door. Clean the simplex white bar (callout 1), the CIS (callout 2), and the duplex white bar (callout 3) using a soft, lint-free, clean cloth.

Figure 3-14 Clean flow document feeder white bar



Removal and replacement procedures

Accessories

Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive
- Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the trusted platform module (TPM).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

CAUTION: This part contains components that are electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive. To reduce the possibility of ESD damage, always touch the sheet-metal chassis to ground yourself before touching an ESD sensitive part.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to http://h20141.www2.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

TPM kit number	
F5S62-61001	Trusted platform module

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.
- Connect the printer power cable.

- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

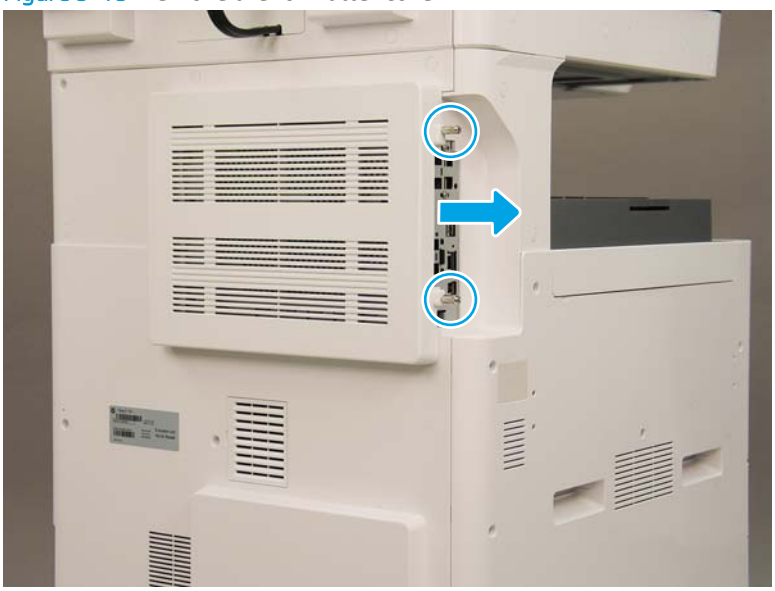
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

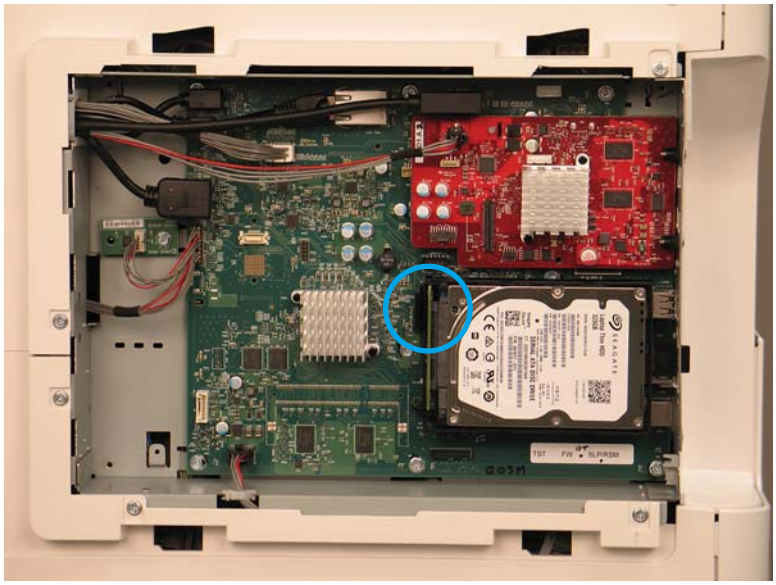
Figure 3-15 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.

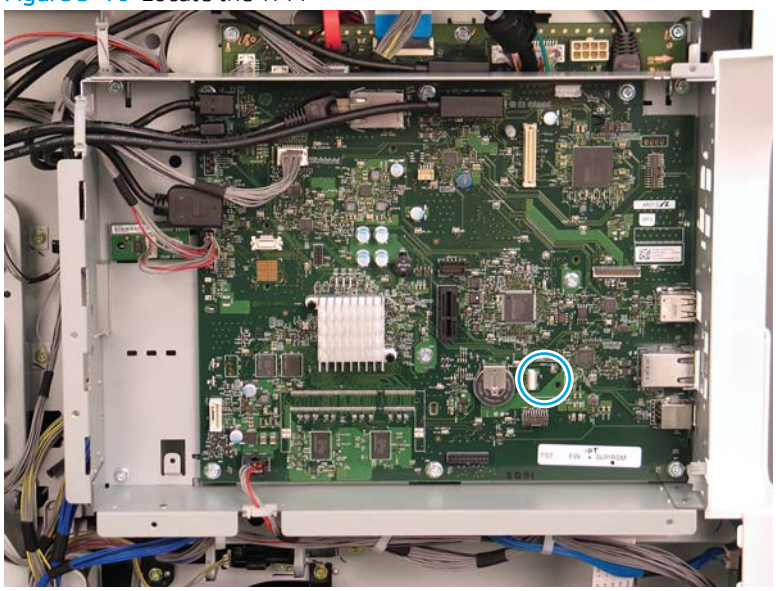


Step 3: Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

1. Locate the TPM component on the formatter.

   Figure 3-16 Locate the TPM



2. Gently pull the TPM straight off the formatter to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install accessory: HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory
- Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) accessory.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) part number	
B5L31-67902	Foreign interface harness

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Connect a third party solution to the FIH, and then verify it correctly functions.

Step 1: Unpack the FIH accessory

Unpack the accessory from the packaging.

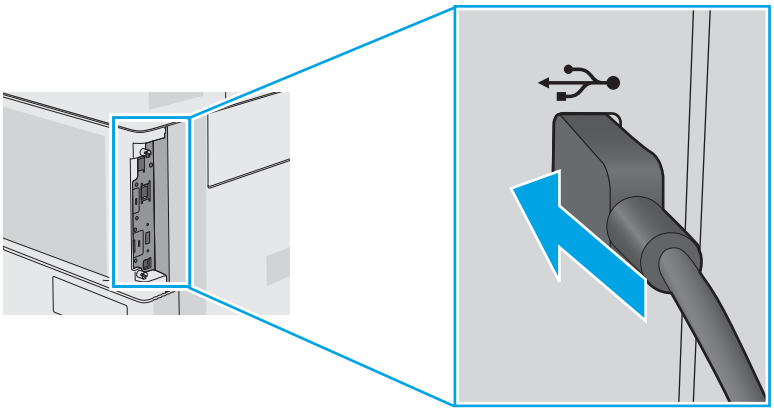
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

Step 2: Install the FIH accessory

- Locate the USB connector on the printer formatter. Connect the FIH to this connector

Figure 3-17 Connect the FIH



NFC Kit Installation

- Introduction
- Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit
- Step 2: Install the NFC kit

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to install the NFC kit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

NFC kit part number	
J8030-61001	Jetdirect Wireless Print Server with NFC Kit

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Verify that the light on the NFC accessory illuminates to confirm the installation is correct.

Verify that a wireless network icon appears on the control panel.

Step 1: Unpack the NFC kit

Unpack the kit from the packaging.

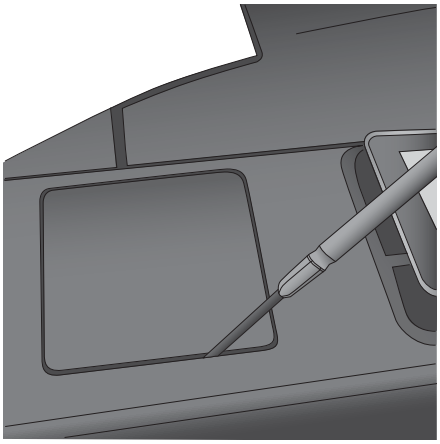
CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the part prior to installation.

Step 2: Install the NFC kit

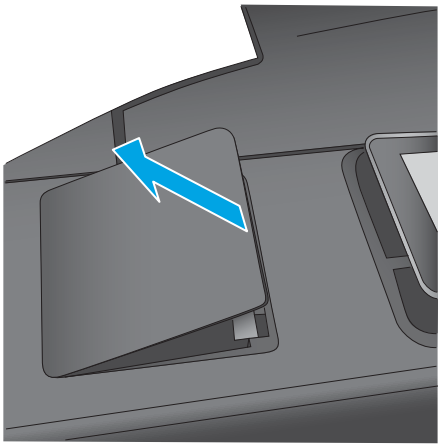
1. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the HIP cover.

   Figure 3-18 Release the HIP cover

2. Remove the HIP cover.

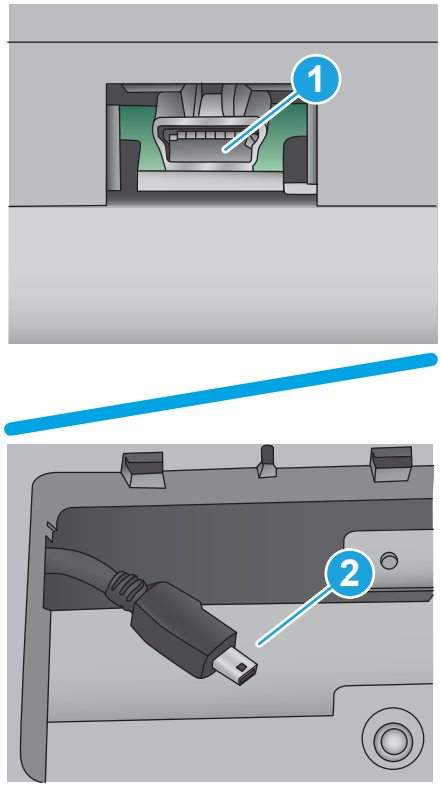
   Figure 3-19 Remove the HIP cover

3. Identify the USB connector in the HIP, and then attach the appropriate USB cable:

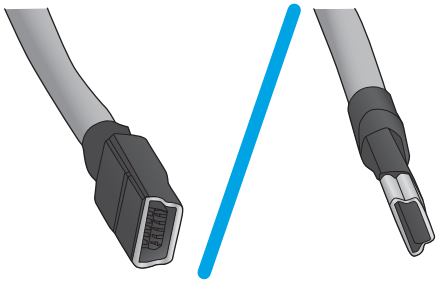
   a. Locate the USB connector that is along one of the short edges. A USB Mini B receptacle (callout 1) is the most common. However, on some models, a USB Mini B plug (callout 2) is used.

Figure 3-20 Identify USB connector



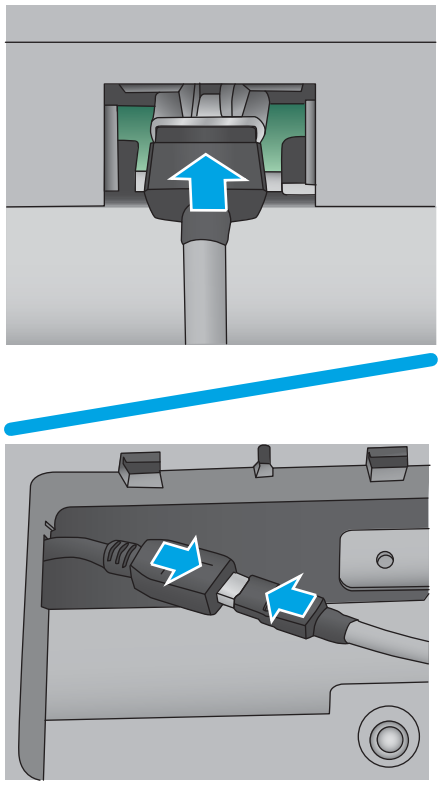
b. Select the appropriate cable from the two that are provided.

Figure 3-21 Select USB cable



c. Install the USB cable in the socket in the HIP. Note that the USB logo on the connector may face down on some models.

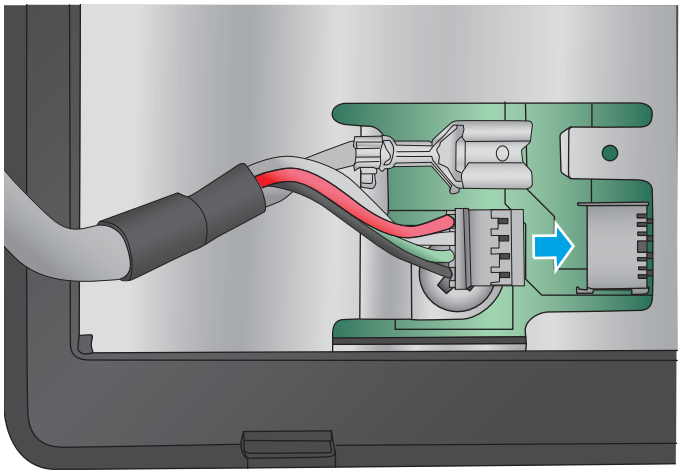
Figure 3-22 Install the USB cable



4. Attach the power and grounding ends of the USB cable:

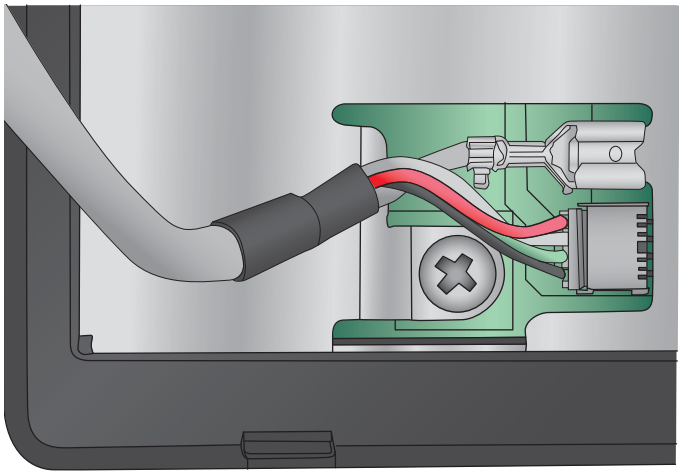
a. Attach the white power connector of the cable into the corresponding receptacle on the NFC accessory.

Figure 3-23 Install the white power connector



b. Attach the metal ground connector of the cable to the grounding tab on the NFC accessory.

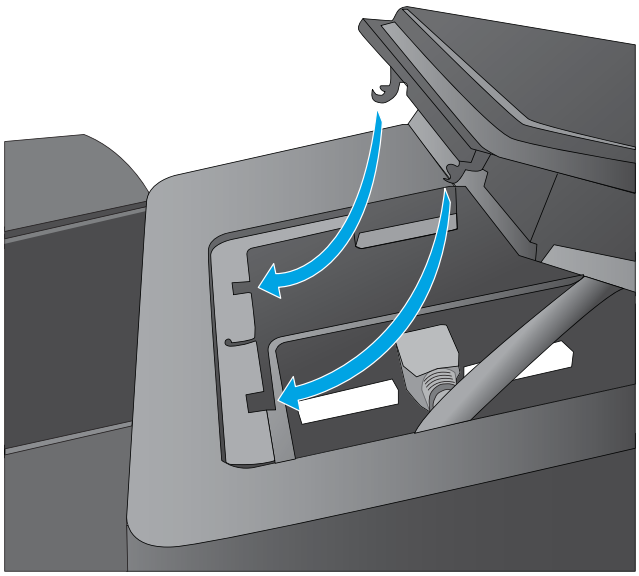
Figure 3-24 Attach the metal ground connector



5. Install the NFC accessory into the HIP recess.

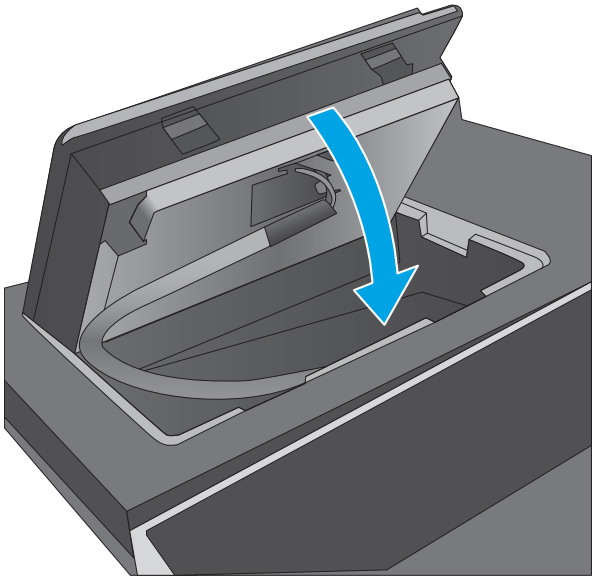
a. Install the hook-shaped clips on the NFC accessory into the HIP recess..

Figure 3-25 Position the NFC accessory in the HIP recess



b. Gently push the NFC accessory onto the rounded clips so that it is held securely in place within the recess.

Figure 3-26 Install the NFC accessory





Replacement of maintenance parts

Toner collection unit (TCU)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner collection unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner collection unit part number	
SAM-JC96-09590A	HP Managed LJ Toner Collection Unit

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

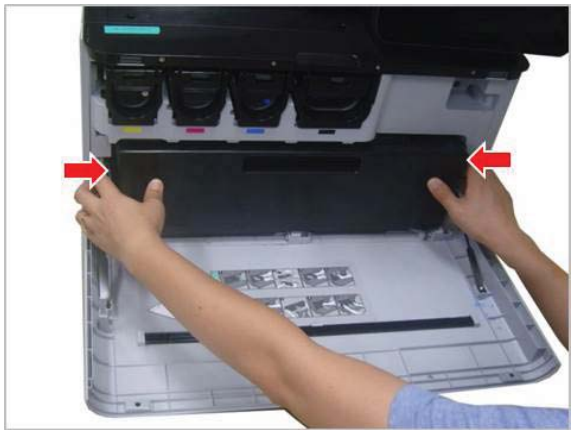
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 3-27 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Imaging drum unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the imaging drum
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the imaging drum unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Imaging drum unit part numbers	
W9054MC	HP LaserJet Black Imaging Drum Unit
W9055MC	HP LaserJet CMY Imaging Drum Unit

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

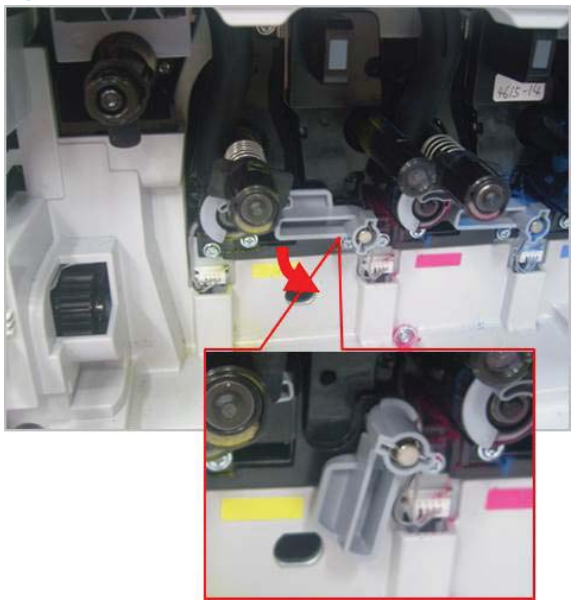
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the imaging drum

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).
2. There are four locking levers, one for each color. Pull down on the locking lever for the color drum unit that is being replaced.

Figure 3-28 Release locking lever



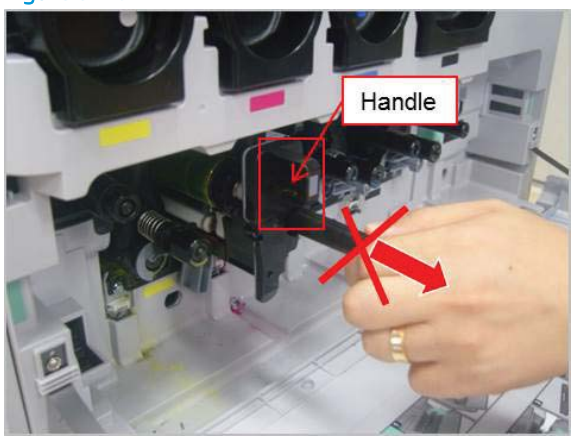
3. Grip the handle and remove the drum unit.

NOTE: Open the right door to remove the black drum.

CAUTION: Do not grip the waste toner connection when removing the drum unit.

CAUTION: Do not touch the shiny surface on the imaging drum. Cover the drum with a sheet of paper while it is out of the printer to limit light exposure.

Figure 3-29 Remove the drum unit



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the developer unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the developer unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Developer unit part numbers	
SAM-JC96-11603A	HP LaserJet Blk Developer Unit
SAM-JC96-11602A	HP LaserJet Cyan Developer Unit
SAM-JC96-11601A	HP LaserJet Magenta Developer Unit
SAM-JC96-11600A	HP LaserJet Yellow Developer Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the developer unit

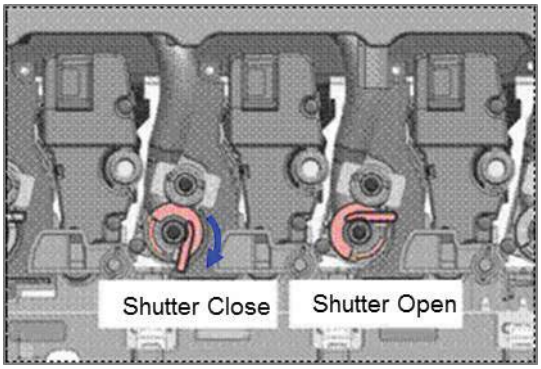
NOTE: Update the firmware to the latest version before replacing the developer unit.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
2. Remove the drum unit to the right of the developer to be replaced..

TIP: Also remove the adjacent drum unit to allow better access to the toner supply pipe.

3. Rotate the reservoir shutter lever down to ensure it is closed..

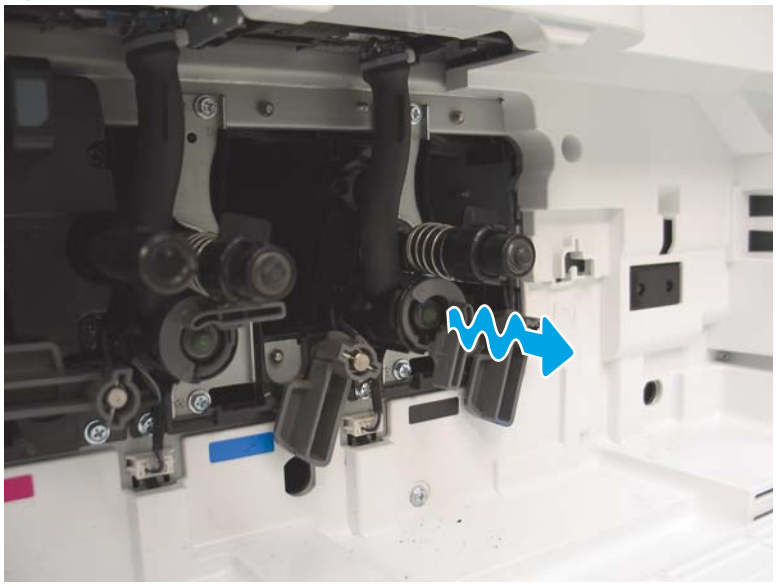
Figure 3-30 Shutter open/close



4. Release the valve from the waste toner connection by rotating the valve side-to-side while pulling it firmly away from the printer.

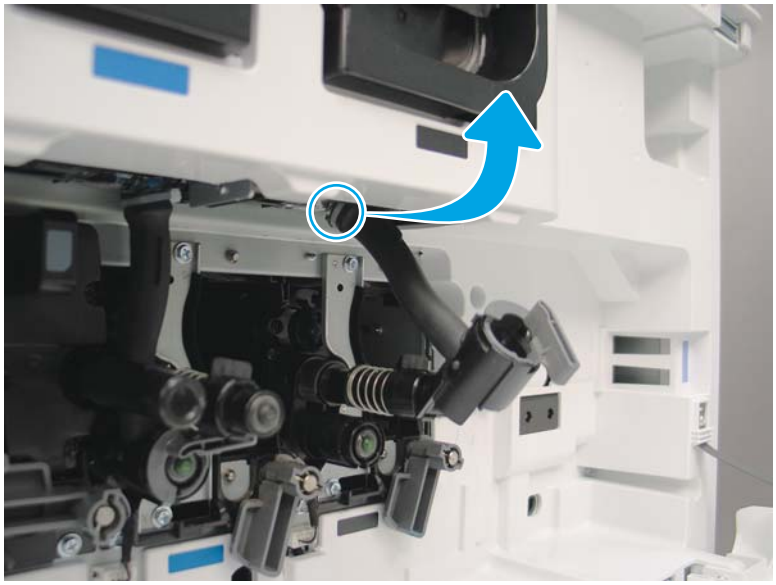
Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the valve is fully installed on the toner collection unit connection.

Figure 3-31 Release the toner collection valve



5. Reach to the top of the toner supply pipe, and then rotate it up.

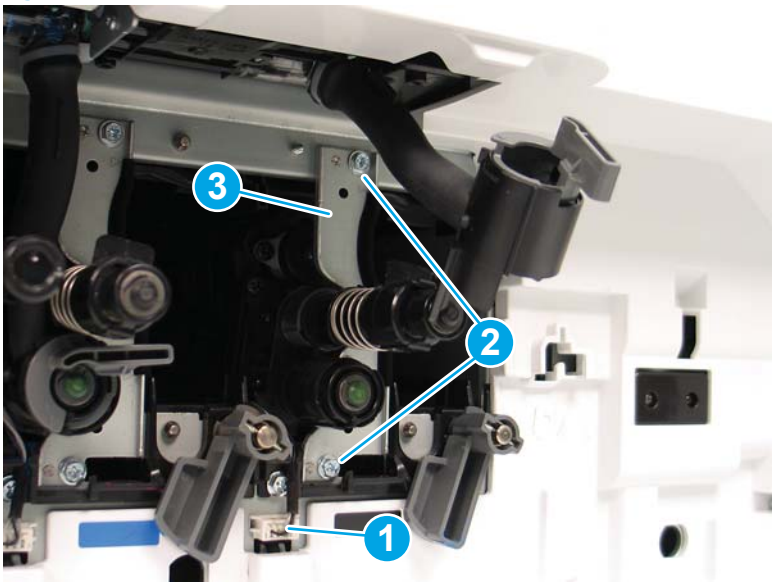
Figure 3-32 Tilt toner supply pipe up



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the metal bracket (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the bracket when reinstalling it.

Figure 3-33 Remove the metal bracket

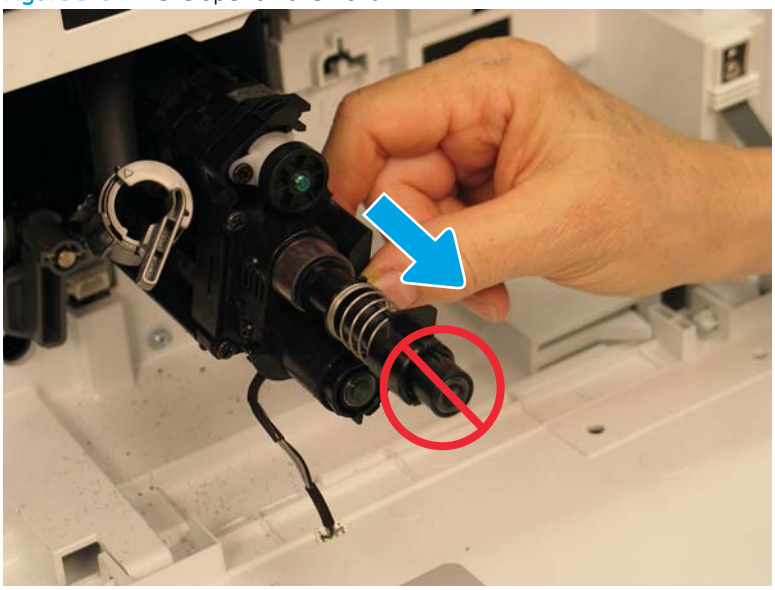


Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the bottom of the bracket first.

7. Hold the grip point of the developer unit and slide it away from the printer to remove it.

NOTE: Do not grip the toner collection unit connection when removing the developer unit.

Figure 3-34 Developer unit removal



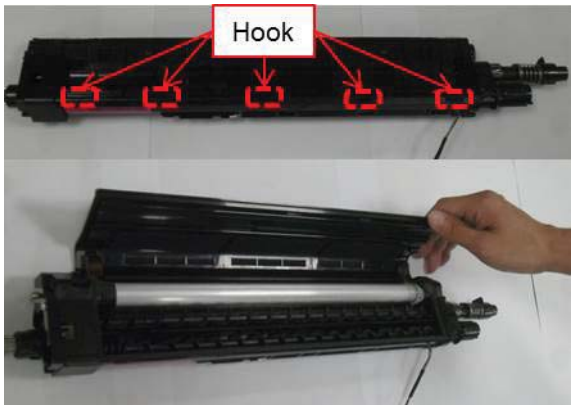
Reinstallation tip: Hold the toner supply pipe up and out of the way when reinstalling the developer unit.

8. Unpack the new developer unit box and check the components. In the box is a developer unit and a silver packet of developer powder.

IMPORTANT: Place the developer unit on sheets of paper or a disposable cover to catch any spilled developer powder.

9. Place one hand on top of the cover, and then release five hooks. Open the cover.

Figure 3-35 Open the developer unit



NOTE: Before filling the developer, shake the silver packet about three times to prevent the developer powder from scattering.

10. Distribute the developer powder evenly into the developer unit.

NOTE: Do not touch the silver roller.

Figure 3-36 Distribute the developer powder



11. Close the developer cover.

12. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Developer unit

- After the replacement developer unit is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

  i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

  ii. Select the Service menu.

  iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

  iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Development Unit (Developer) (YMCK).

viii. Select the check box on the right side of the screen for the developer unit just replaced.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser unit part number	
SAM-JC91-01195A	HP LaserJet 110V Fuser Assembly
SAM-JC91-01194A	HP LaserJet 220V Fuser Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

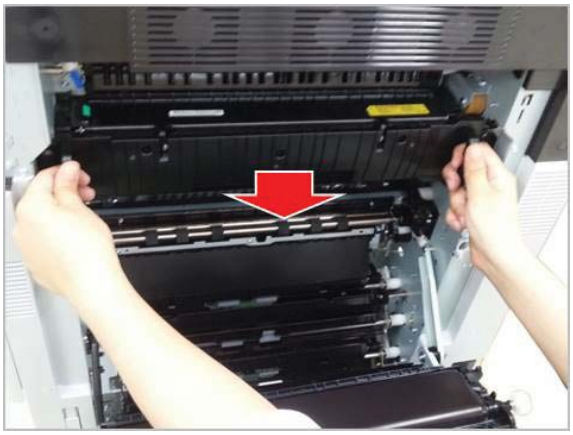
Figure 3-37 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

Figure 3-38 Fuser unit removal



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
- Step 2: Remove the ITB cleaner
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

ITB cleaner part number	
SAM-JC93-01377A	ITB Cleaner Blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

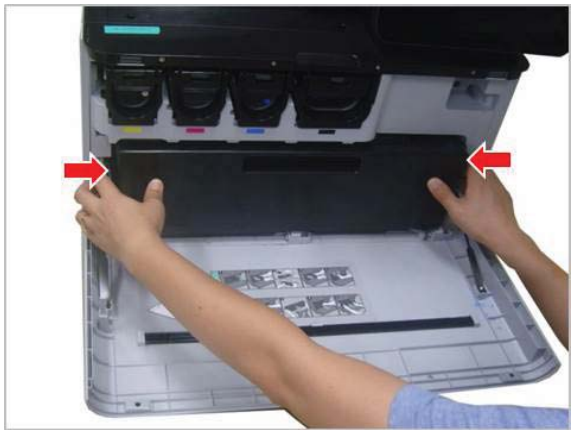
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 3-39 Remove the TCU

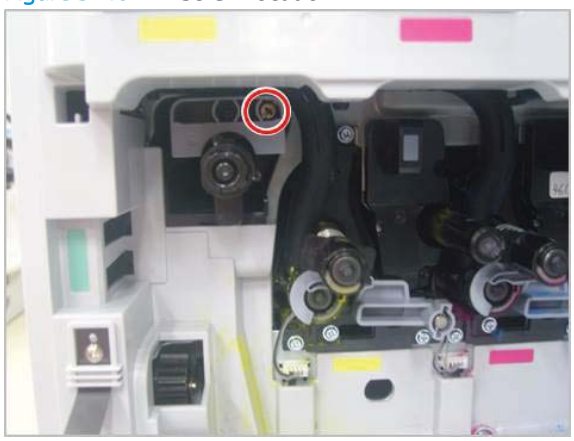


Step 2: Remove the ITB cleaner

1. Loosen the screw securing the ITB cleaner.

NOTE: The screw is captive and cannot be completely removed.

Figure 3-40 ITB screw location

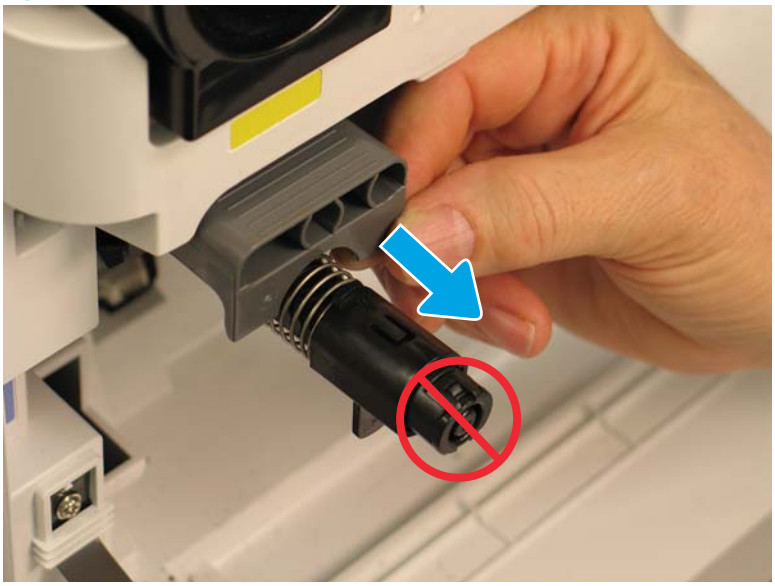


2. Grasp the ITB cleaner housing, and pull it out of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the waste toner connector.

Use care when removing the ITB cleaner as loose toner might be present on the metal shelf along the side of the cleaner.

Figure 3-41 ITB cleaner removal



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: ITB cleaner

▲ After the replacement cleaner is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ITB Cleaner.

viii. Select Transfer Cleaning Unit.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)
- Step 2: Remove the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner
- Step 3: Remove the ITB
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

ITB part number	
SAM-JC93-01375A	HP Laserjet Image Transfer Belt Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

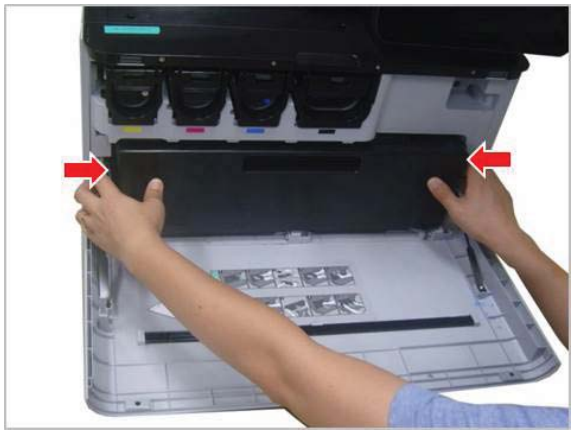
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 3-42 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner

1. Loosen the screw securing the ITB cleaner.

NOTE: The screw is captive and cannot be completely removed.

Figure 3-43 ITB screw location

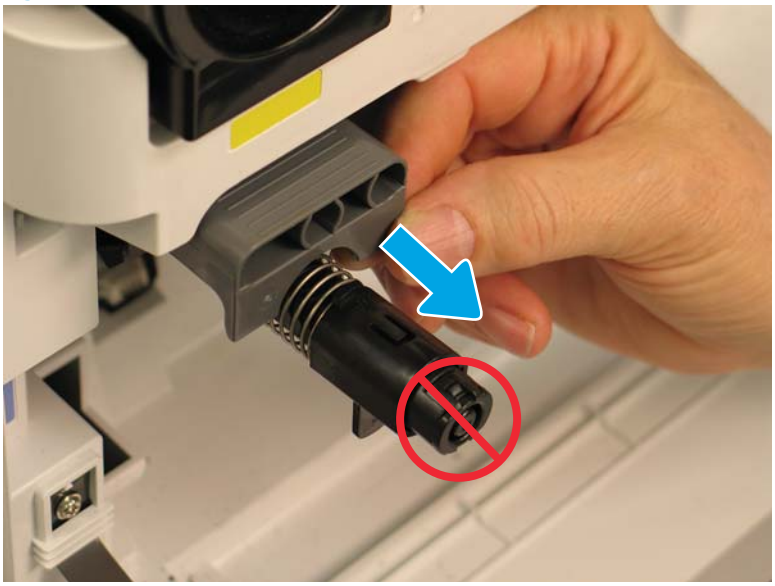


2. Grasp the ITB cleaner housing, and pull it out of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not grasp the waste toner connector.

Use care when removing the ITB cleaner as loose toner might be present on the metal shelf along the side of the cleaner.

Figure 3-44 ITB cleaner removal



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: ITB cleaner

▲ After the replacement cleaner is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ITB Cleaner.

viii. Select Transfer Cleaning Unit.

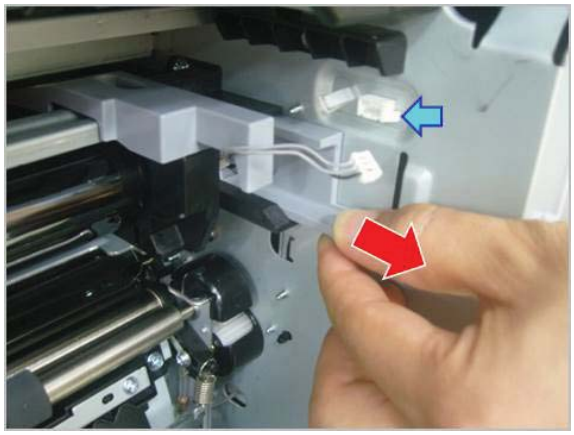
ix. Select Reset.

Step 3: Remove the ITB

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove the cable from the retainer, and then disconnect one connector. Slide the ITB latch toward the front of the printer to release the coupled drive.

Figure 3-45 Disconnect one connector and slide the latch



3. Remove two screws securing the ITB unit.

TIP: Use a magnetized screwdriver to prevent the screws from falling into the printer..

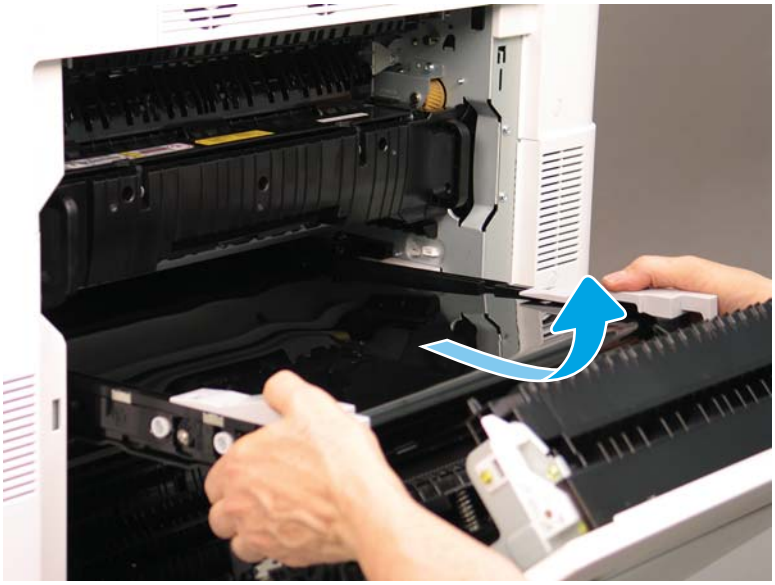
Figure 3-46 Remove two screws



4. Pull the ITB unit partially out of the printer, and then lift it up and out of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the ITB belt and be careful not to damage the it by hitting it on the door during removal.

Figure 3-47 Remove the ITB



5. While pushing the color plane registration (CPR) shutter toward the rear of the printer, clean the three CPR sensors with a damp, lint-free cloth.

Figure 3-48 Clean the CPR sensors

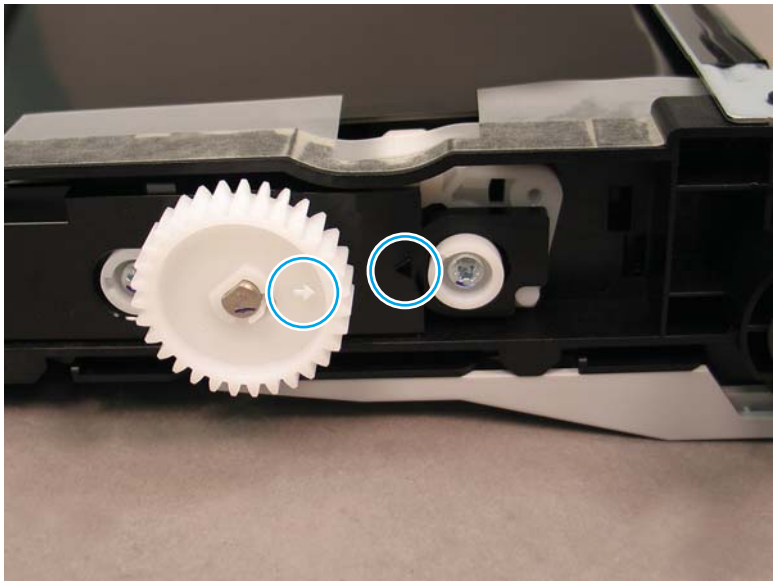


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: ITB unit

a. Before reinstalling the ITB, align the arrow on the gear with the arrowhead on the ITB frame.

Figure 3-49 Align arrows



b. After the replacement ITB is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

   i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

   ii. Select the Service menu.

   iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

   iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

   v. Select the Supply Status menu.

   vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

   vii. Select ITB (Image Transfer Belt).

   viii. Select Transfer Belt.

   ix. Select Reset.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers part number	
X3A92-67917	HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Rollers

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

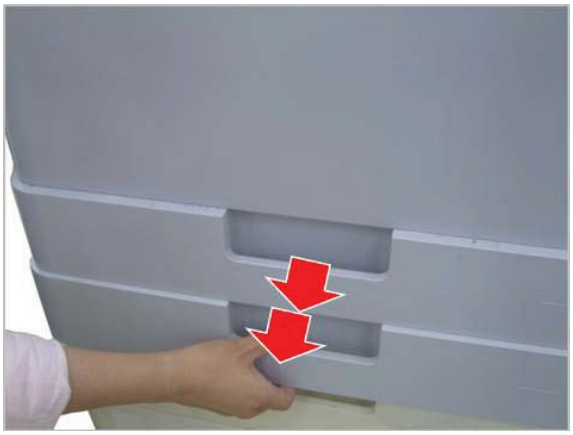
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

NOTE: HP recommends that all three rollers are replaced at the same time.

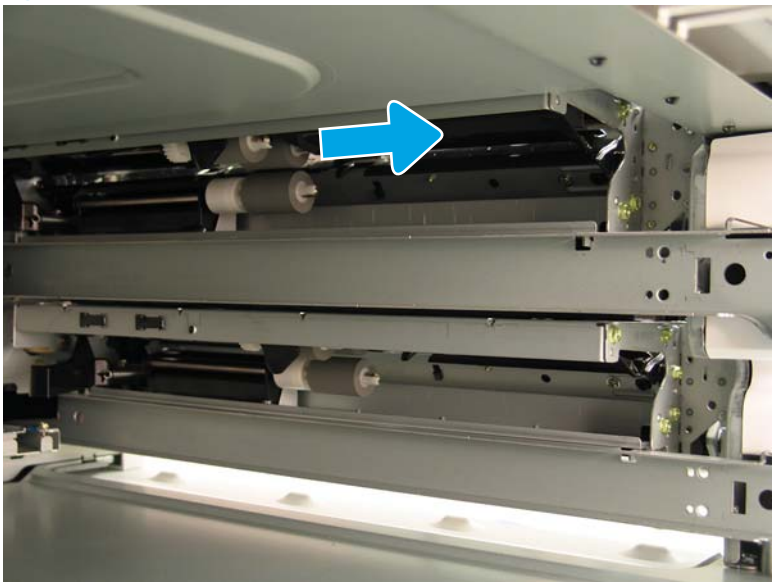
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the two cassettes.

Figure 3-50 Remove the two cassettes



3. Inside the tray opening, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.

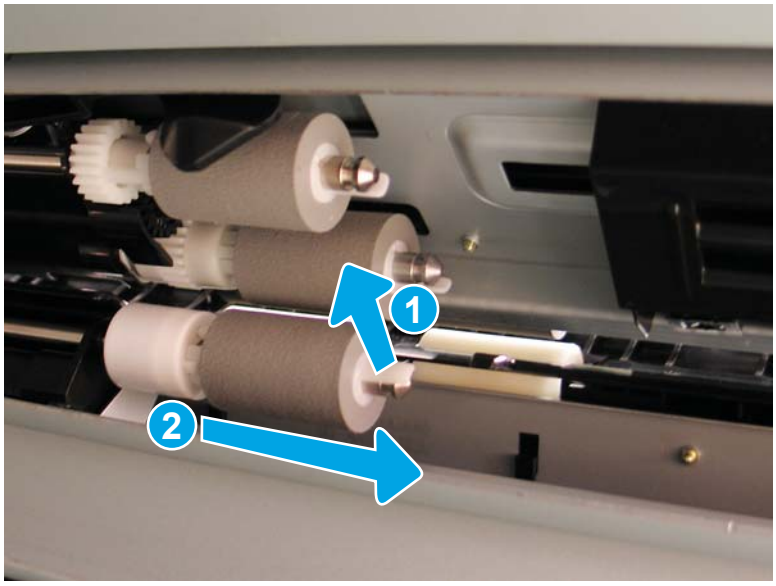
Figure 3-51 Slide the return guide



Reinstallation tip: After installing the new rollers, slide the return guide toward the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

4. Release the latch at the end of the rollers (callout 1) by pulling the latch tab away from the shaft, and then slide the pick, feed, and separation rollers off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove them.

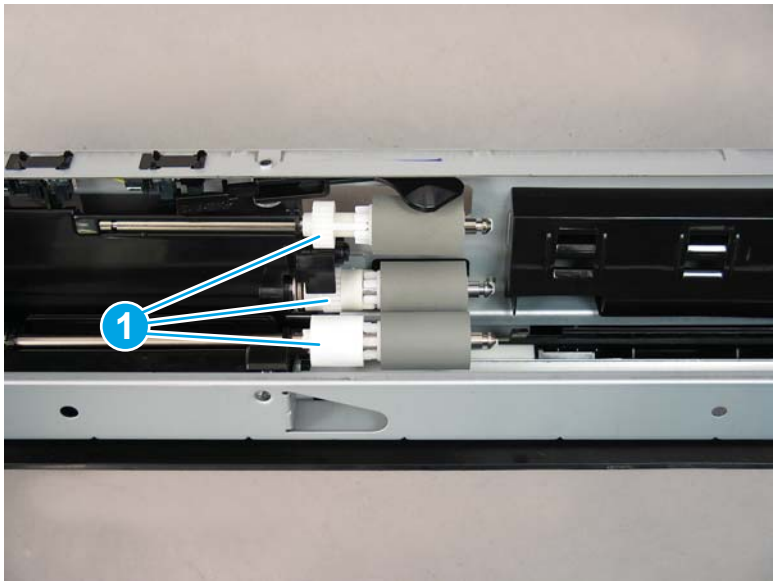
Figure 3-52 Remove rollers



5. When removing the rollers, make sure to leave the white couplers (callout 1) in place. If the couplers become dislodged, reinstall them as shown in the figure below.

NOTE: The figure shows the pickup assembly removed from the printer to more clearly show the positions of the couplers and rollers.

Figure 3-53 Coupler locations



6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Trays 2–x pick, feed, and separation rollers

- After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the access code (04087617).

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Tray X Rollers.

viii. Select the tray number for the rollers just replaced.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Multipurpose (MP) pickup/reverse/feed roller assembly part number	
X3A92-67918	HP LaserJet Tray 1 (MP) Roller

Required tools

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

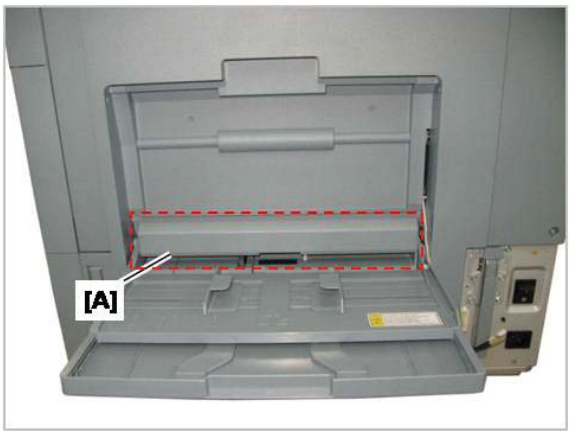
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller

1. Open the multipurpose (MP) tray. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

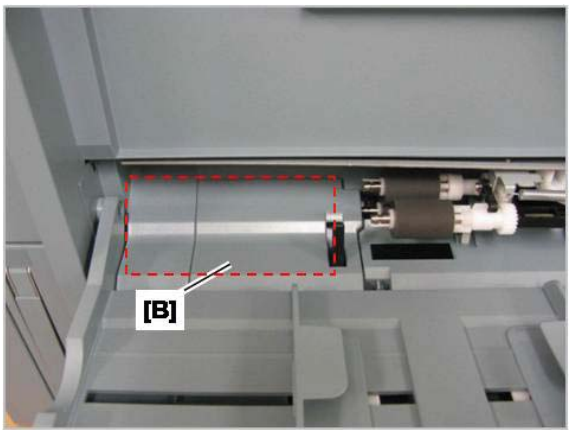
NOTE: The plastic tabs on the edges of the cover might require extra pressure to remove.

Figure 3-54 Remove cover



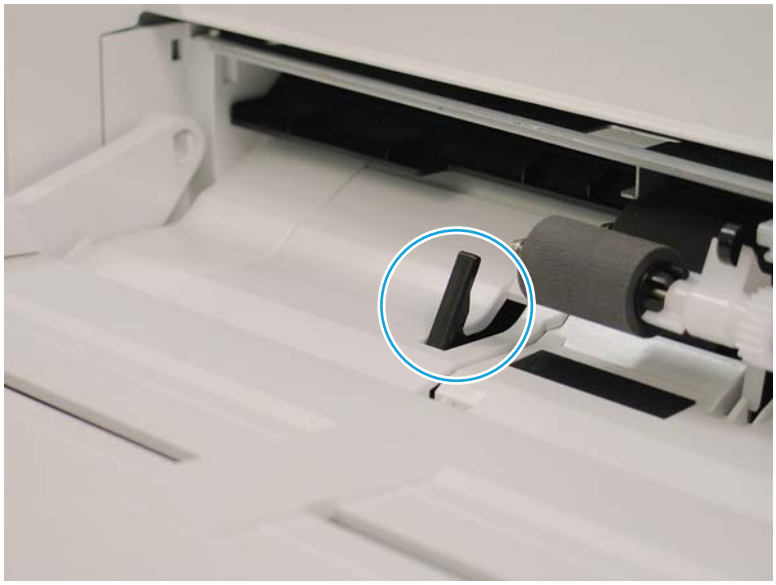
2. Remove the cover shown (B) using a small flat blade screwdriver to release the tab on the right side of the cover.

Figure 3-55 Remove cover



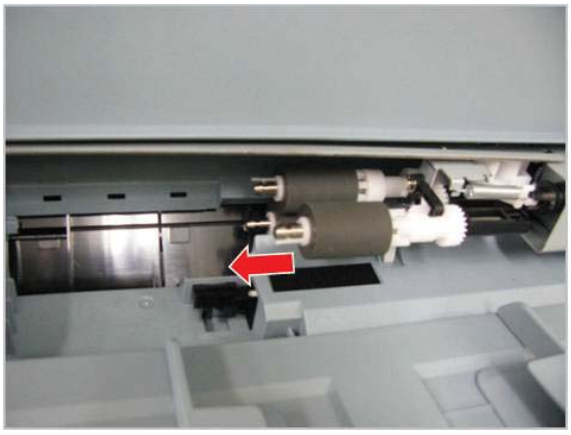
Note the orientation of the flag.

Figure 3-56 MP tray flag orientation



3. Release the small tab and remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller. Use caution and remove slowly to avoid loosening the parts behind the rollers. If these parts come loose, they might fall into the printer and will be difficult to retrieve. Note the location of all components.

Figure 3-57 Remove the MP pickup/reverse/feed roller



NOTE: It is recommended to replace all three rollers at the same time.

4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: MP pickup/reverse/feed roller

▲ After the replacement rollers are installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select Tray X Rollers.

viii. Select Tray 1 Roller Kit.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF pickup roller assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the flow ADF pickup roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF pickup roller assembly part number	
X3A83-67917	HP LaserJet Flow ADF Pick and Sep Rollers

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

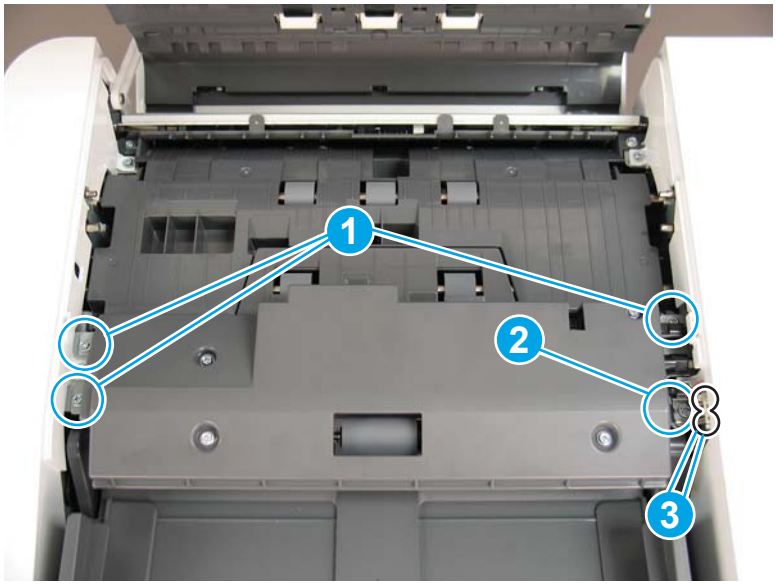
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the flow ADF pickup roller assembly

1. Open the document feeder top cover.
2. Remove the pickup roller assembly:

   ▲ Remove four screws (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and one ground wire (callout 3), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

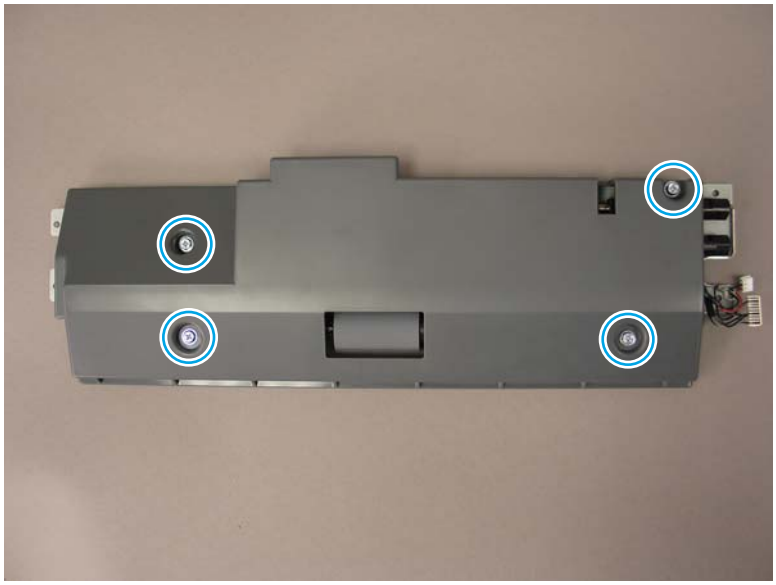
   Figure 3-58 Remove the pickup roller assembly

3. Remove the pickup rollers:

   a. Remove four screws and then remove the cover.

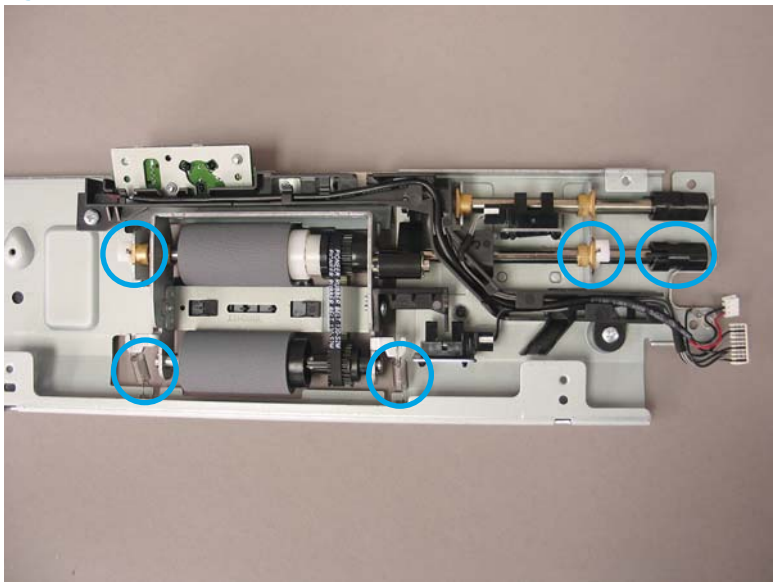
   Figure 3-59 Remove the pickup roller assembly cover

b. Remove two plastic clips and two bushings, disconnect two springs, and then remove the shaft coupler.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 3-60 Remove the pickup roller components



c. Slide the roller shaft and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

Figure 3-61 Remove the pickup roller assembly

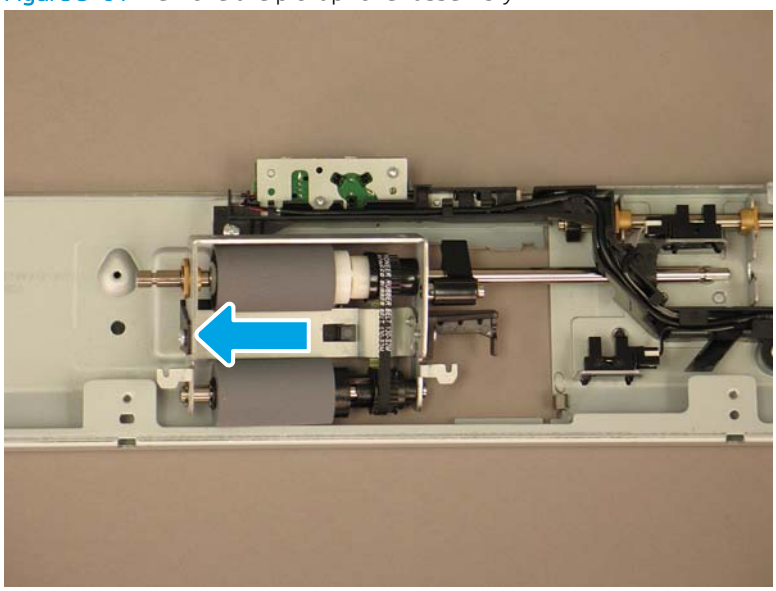
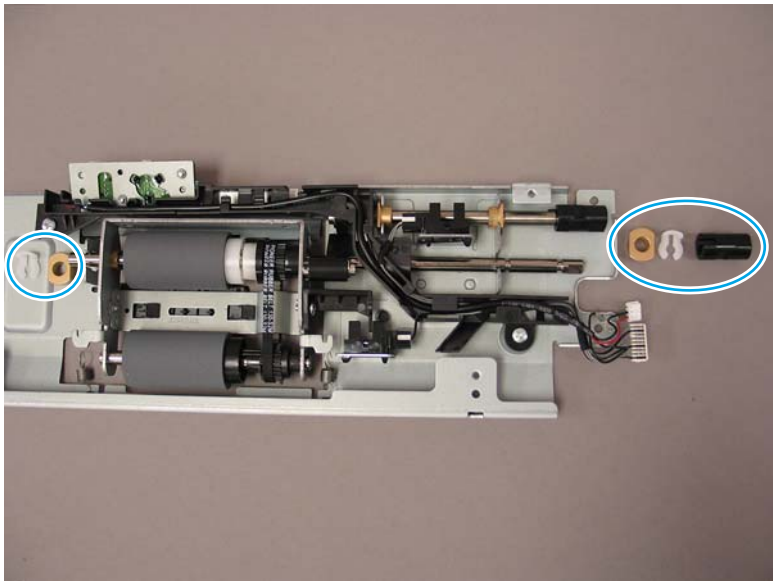


Figure 3-62 Pickup roller components-disassembled



4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Flow ADF pickup roller

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

viii. Select ADF Pickup Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF separation roller assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Flow ADF separation roller assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF separation roller assembly part number	
X3A83-67917	HP LaserJet Flow ADF Pick and Sep Rollers

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

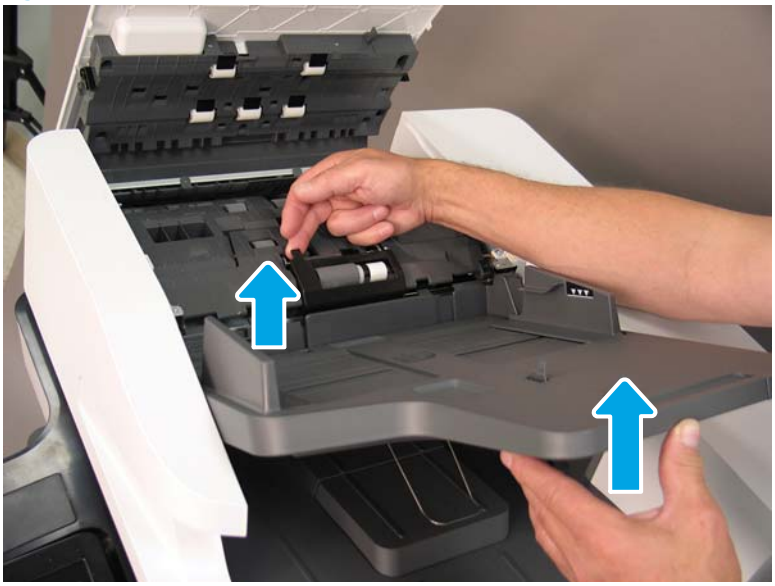
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the flow ADF separation roller assembly

1. Slightly lift the input tray, and then remove the separation roller cover.

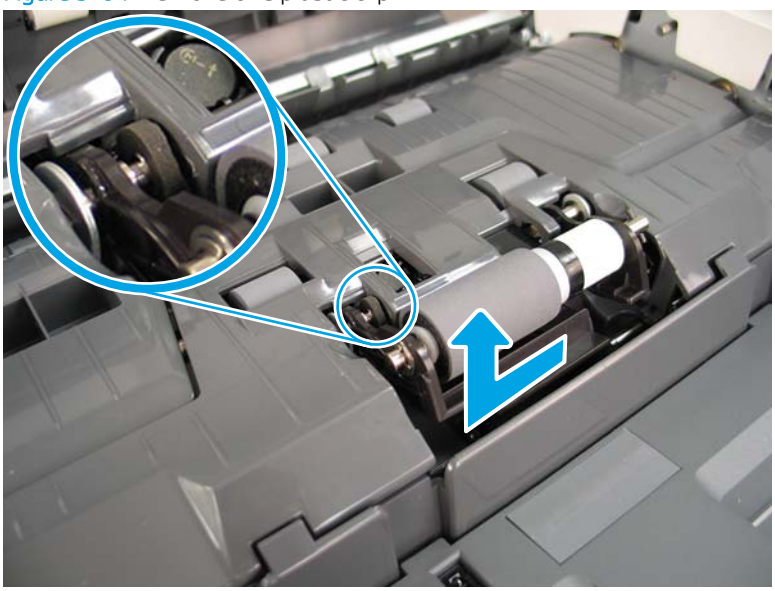
Figure 3-63 Remove the separation roller cover



2. Remove one plastic clip.

NOTE: The shaft is engaged in the coupler.

Figure 3-64 Remove one plastic clip

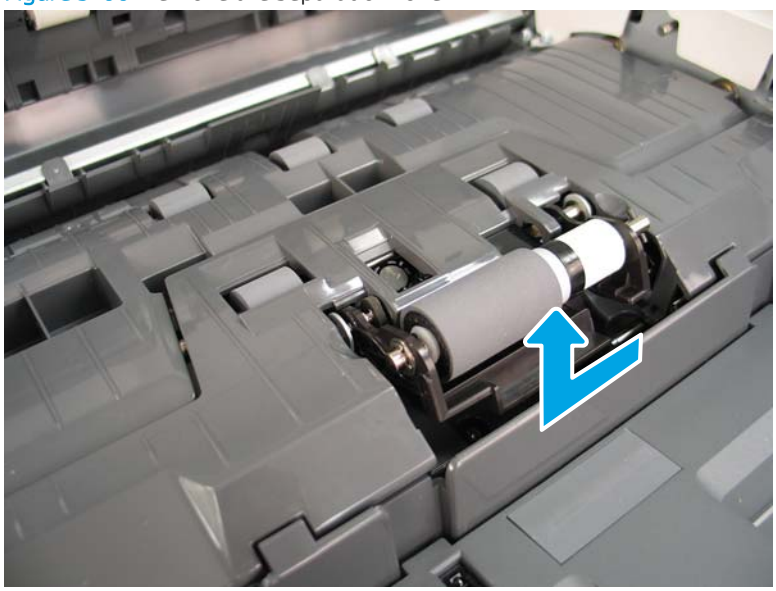


3. Slide the roller assembly to the front, and then pull up to release the claws from the shaft.

Figure 3-65 Remove the separation roller



Figure 3-66 Remove the separation roller



NOTE: Ensure the sponge washer (circled above) is retained during the removal of the roller assembly–it may fall off.

Reinstallation tip: Position the spring and shaft before attaching the claws to the shaft.

4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Flow ADF separation roller

▲ After the replacement roller is installed, follow these instructions to reset the firmware counter:

i. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu.

ii. Select the Service menu.

iii. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected in the drop-down menu, and then enter the service access code.

iv. Select the Service Tools menu.

v. Select the Supply Status menu.

vi. Select Field Replacement Unit.

vii. Select ADF Separation (Reverse) Roller.

viii. Select ADF Separation Roller.

ix. Select Reset.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter cover part number	
XXXXX	Formatter cover

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

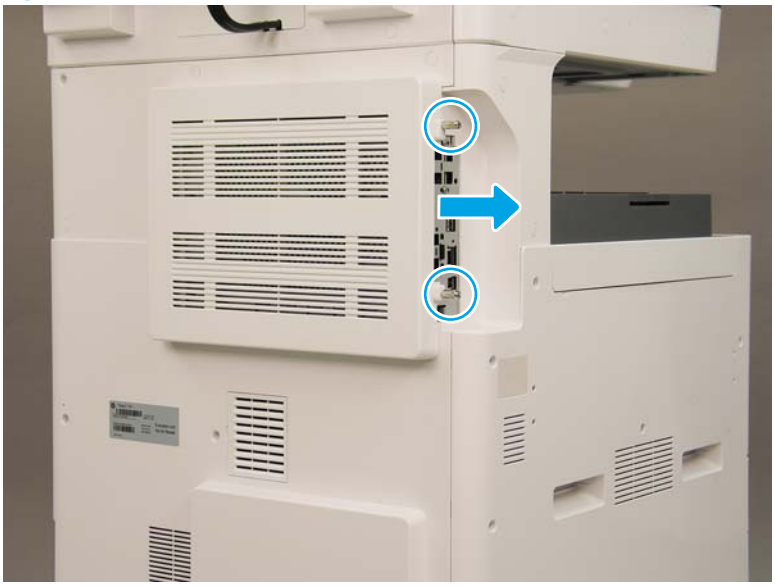
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-67 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Accelerator board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the accelerator board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Accelerator board part number	
X3A62-60001	Accelerator board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

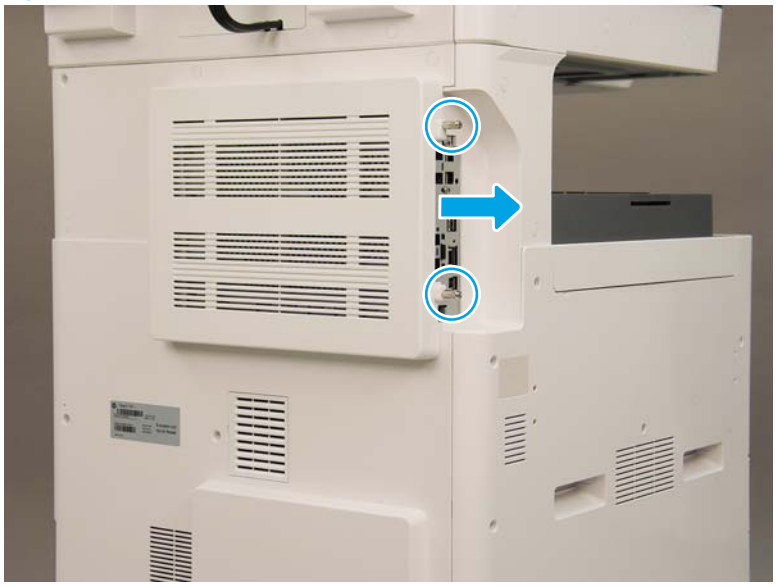
Post service test

Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-68 Remove the formatter cover



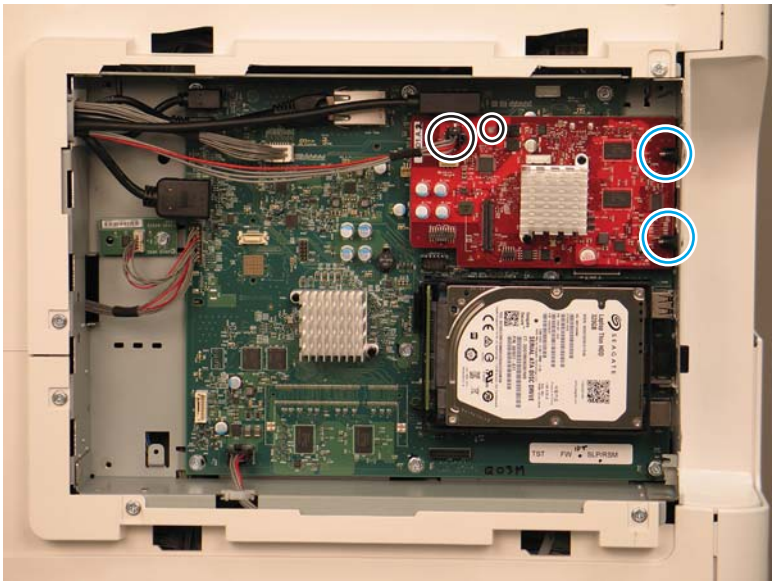
Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Island of data (IOD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the island of data (IOD).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Island of data (IOD) part number	
X3A92-60002	Island of Data Board

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

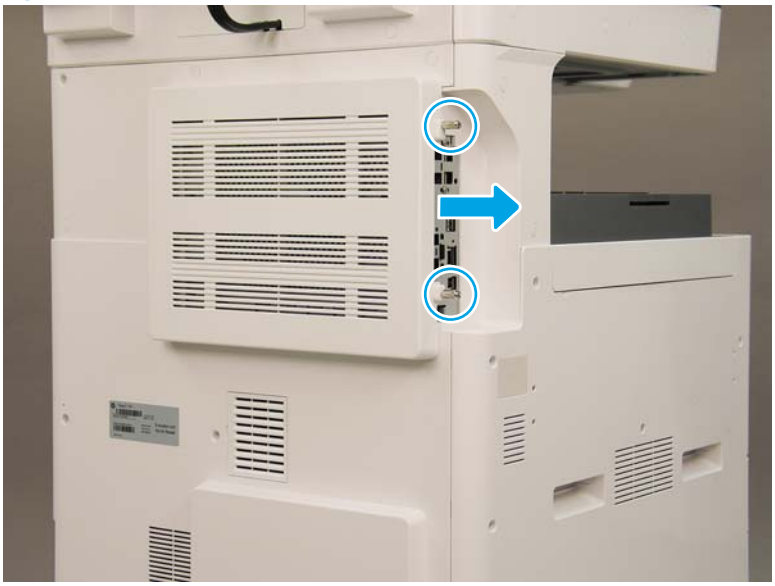
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-69 Remove the formatter cover

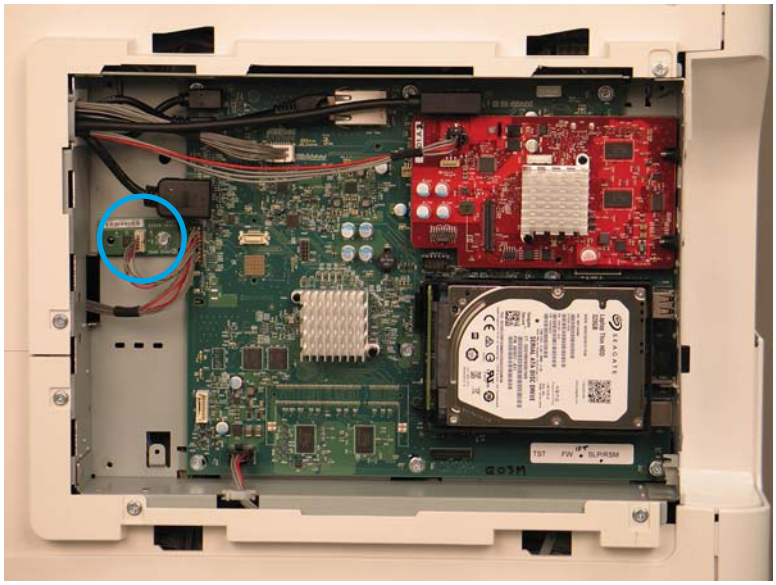


Step 2: Remove the island of data (IOD)

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the IOD.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter hard disk drive (HDD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the hard disk drive (HDD) located on the formatter board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter HDD part number	
691917-011	Formatter HDD - 320 GB SED

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

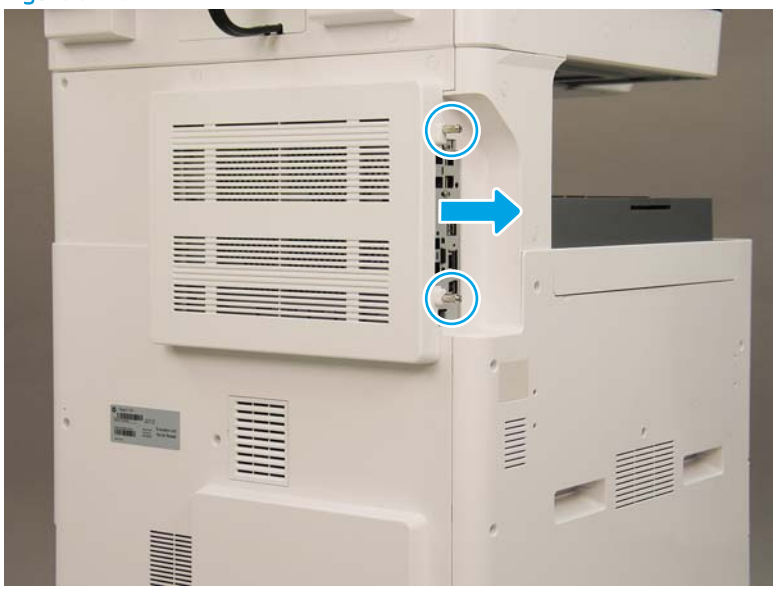
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

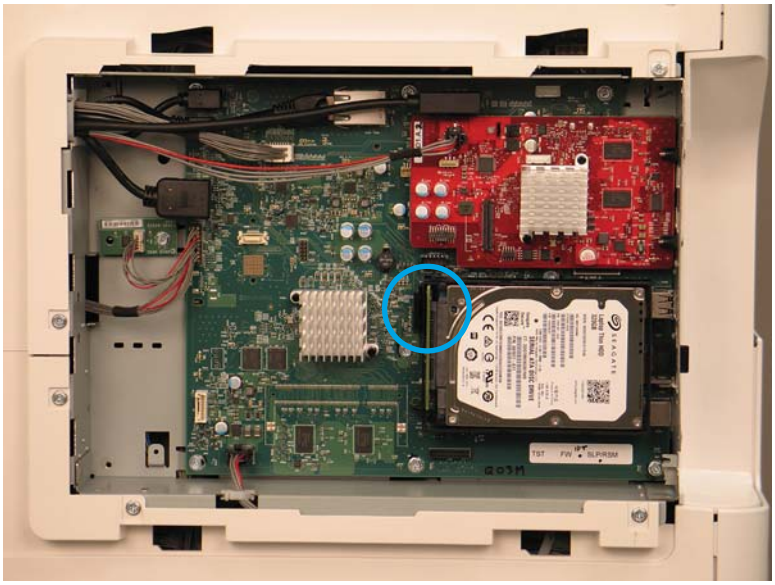
Figure 3-70 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

▲ Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Formatter

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the accelerator board
- Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive
- Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Formatter part number	
X3A92-60001	Formatter PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

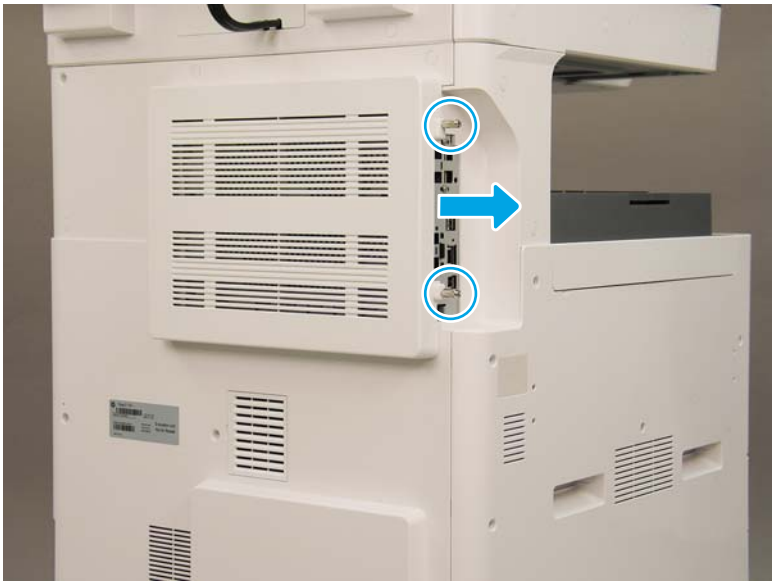
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

Figure 3-71 Remove the formatter cover

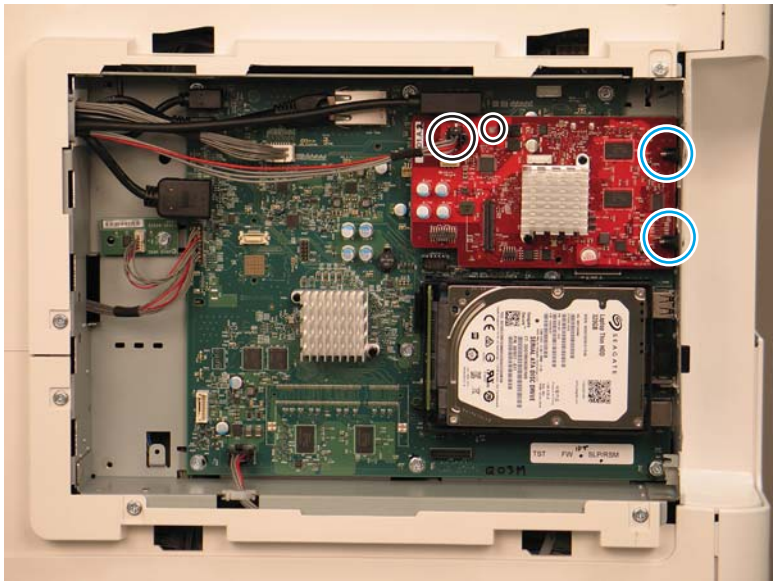


Step 2: Remove the accelerator board

▲ Loosen two screws, retained in plastic clips, on the outside of the formatter cage. Disconnect one connector, release the plastic locator pin, and then gently lift the accelerator board away from the formatter by the edges.

NOTE: A connector on the back of the accelerator board holds the board on the formatter.

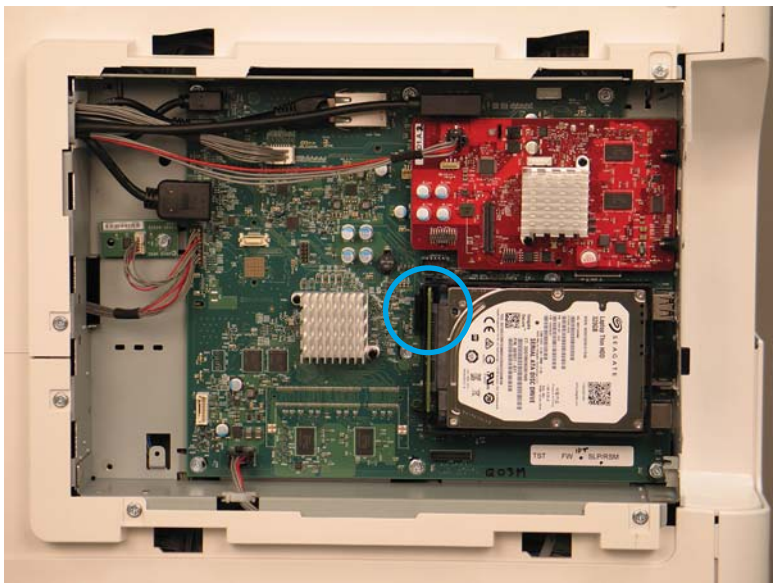
IMPORTANT: Do not lift the accelerator board by the heat sink.



Step 3: Remove the hard-disk drive

- Release one retainer, and then rotate the HDD away from the formatter to remove it.

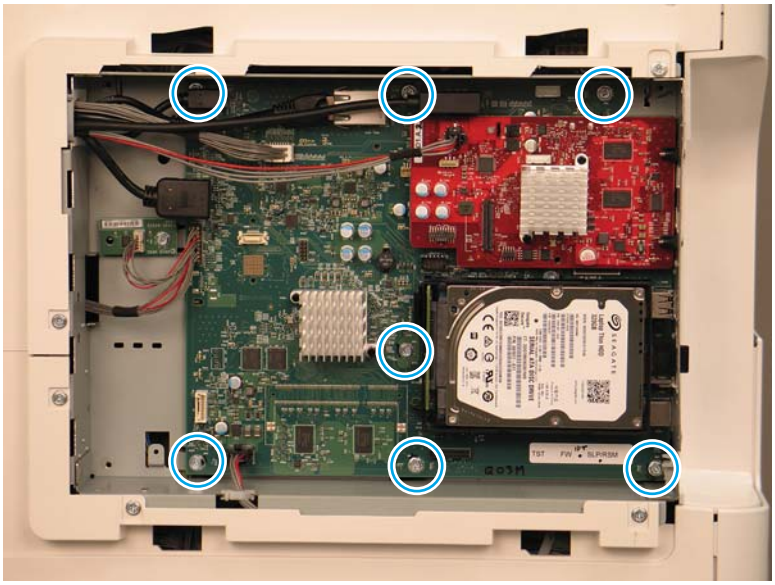
IMPORTANT: Do not replace the HDD and the island of data (IOD) at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 4: Remove the formatter PCA

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter board, remove seven screws, and then remove the formatter PCA.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter and the main PCA at the same time. Replace one component, turn the printer on and off, and then replace the second component.



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Control panel

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the control-panel
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the control panel.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Control panel part number	
B5L47-60101	Control panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Verify that the control panel illuminates and displays information while the printer is initializing. Verify control panel functionality after initialization.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-72 Remove the document feeder bezel



2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

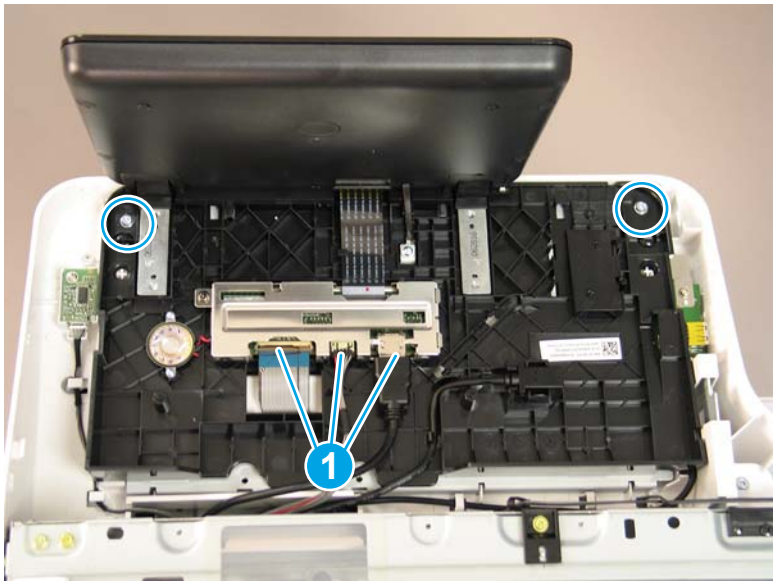
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-73 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-74 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Keyboard (z bundles)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel
- Step 2: Remove the control-panel
- Step 3: Remove the keyboard
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the keyboard.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboard part numbers	
B5L47-60102	US English Keyboard Assy
B5L47-60103	UK English Keyboard Assy

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Type on the keyboard and verify that it is recognized by the control panel.

Step 1: Remove the control-panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

   Figure 3-75 Remove the document feeder bezel

2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

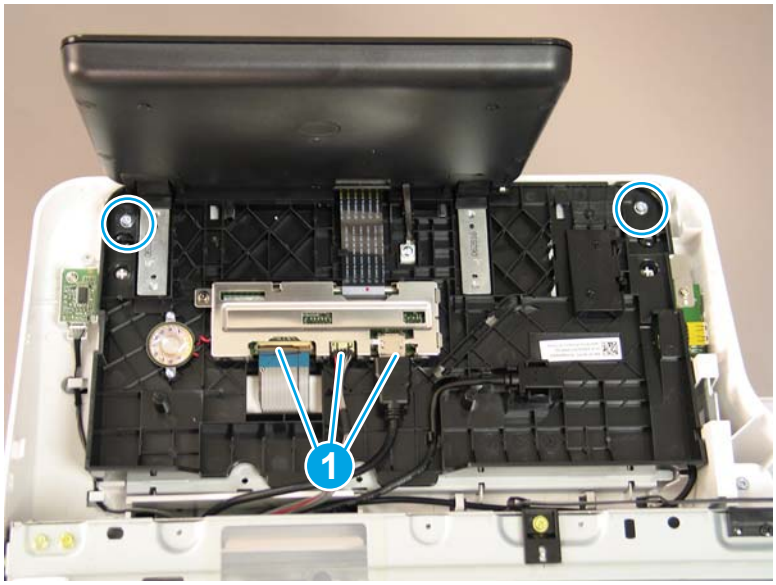
⚠ CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 2: Remove the control-panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-76 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-77 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Step 3: Remove the keyboard

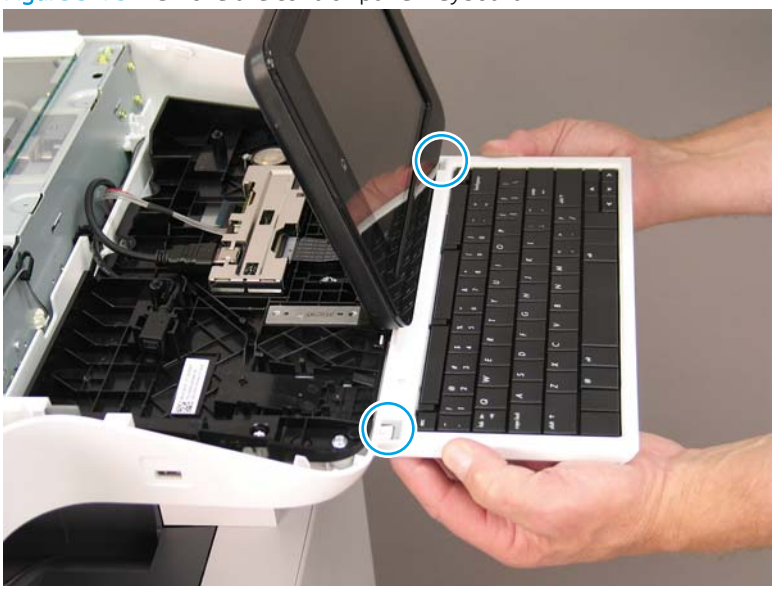
1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 3-78 Disconnect one FFC



2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

Figure 3-79 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the IPTU
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the intermediate paper transport unit (IPTU).

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

IPTU part number	
JC90-01401A	Finisher sub-bridge unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

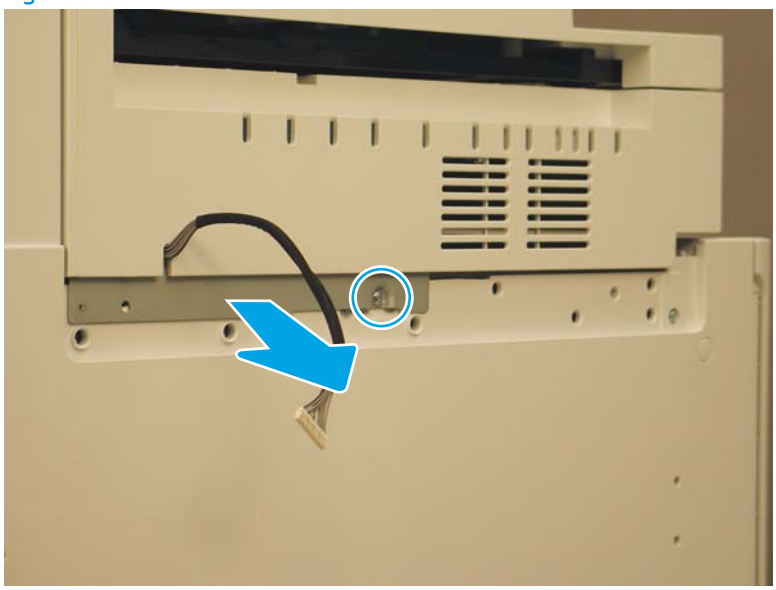
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the IPTU

▲ Remove one screw, and then slightly lift and slide the IPTU away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-80 Remove the IPTU



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Replacing the main SVC part

Front top inner cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front top inner cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front top inner cover part number	
SAM-JC63-05635A	Cover, Middle Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

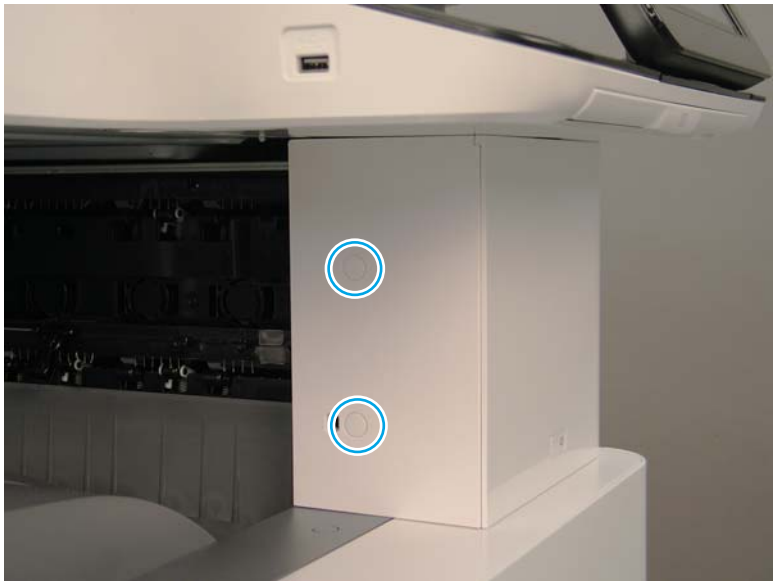
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-81 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front power cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front power cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front power cover part number	
SAM-JC63-02105A	Cover, Middle Right

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

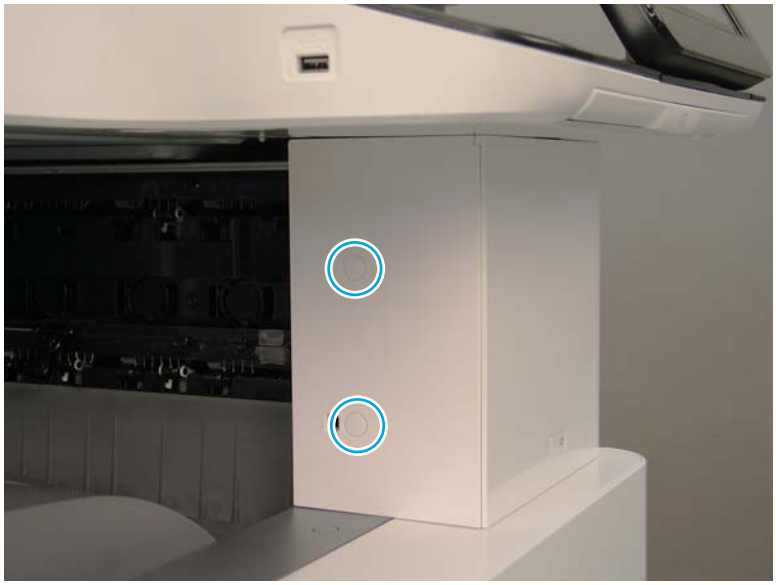
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-82 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

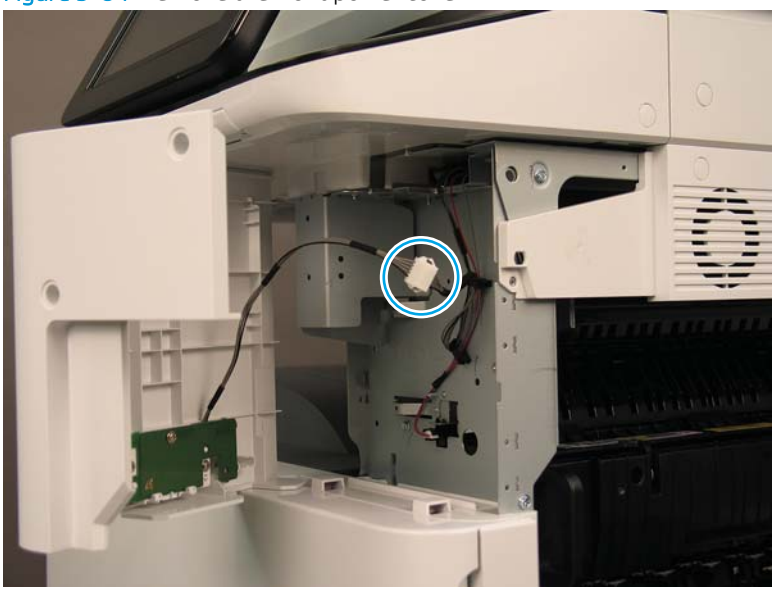
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-83 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-84 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front power switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power switch
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front power switch.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front power switch part number
Front power switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

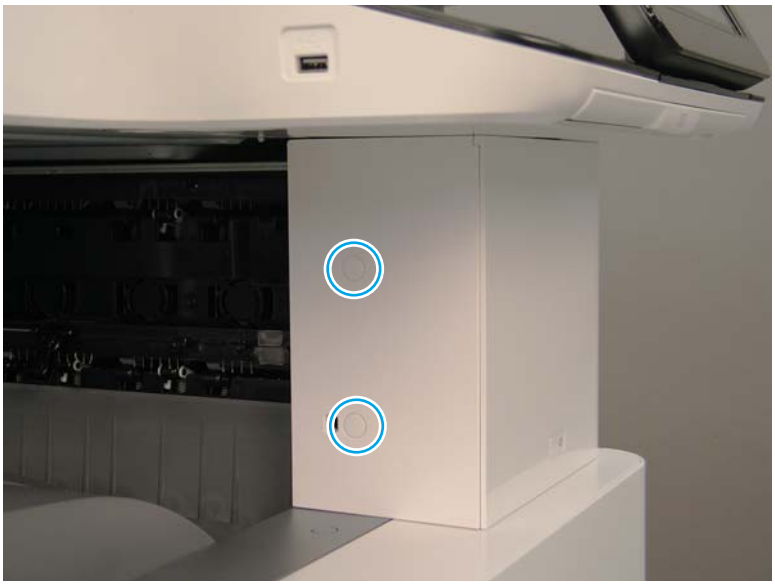
Post service test

Press the power switch and verify that the printer turns on.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-85 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

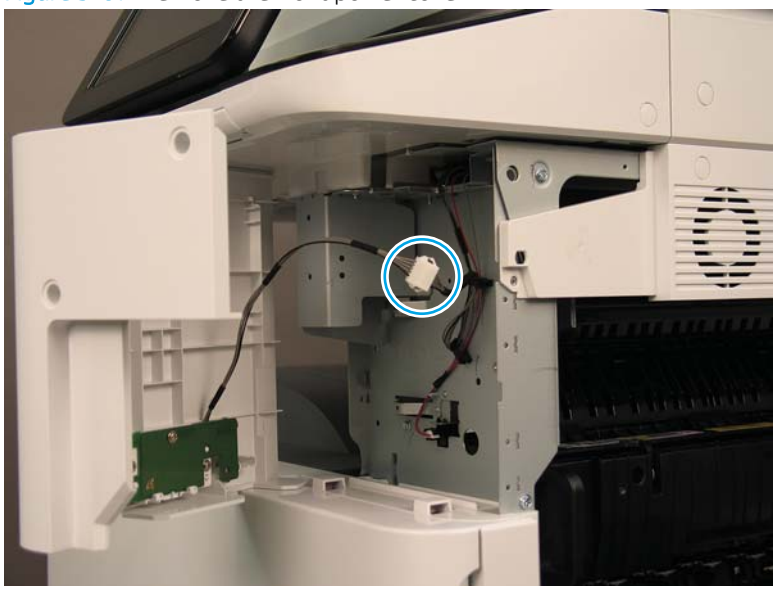
CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-86 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

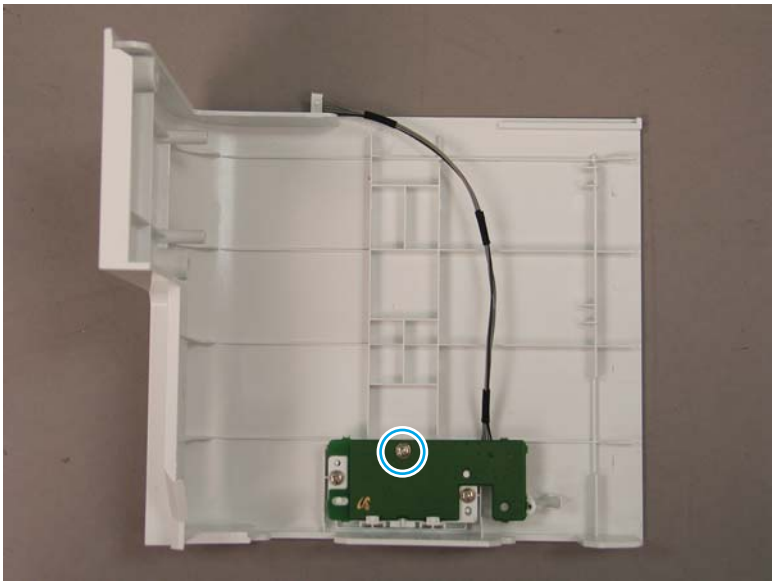
Figure 3-87 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Remove the front power switch

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the power switch board.

Figure 3-88 Remove one screw and the power switch board



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the power switch button.

Figure 3-89 Remove two screws and the power switch button



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output bin

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the output bin
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output bin.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output bin part number	
SAM-JC95-02101A	Cover, Output Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

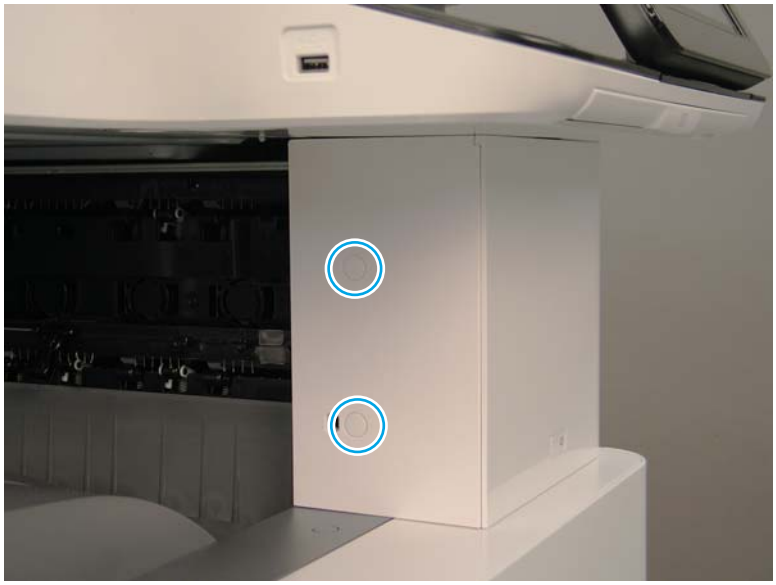
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-90 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-91 Remove the output bin



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top right cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the front power cover
- Step 3: Remove the top right cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top right cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top right cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04916B	Cover, Right Upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

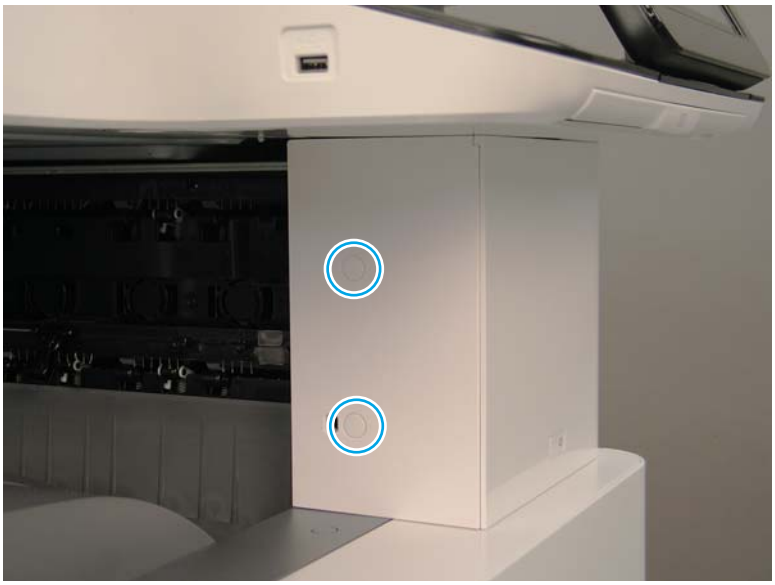
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-92 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

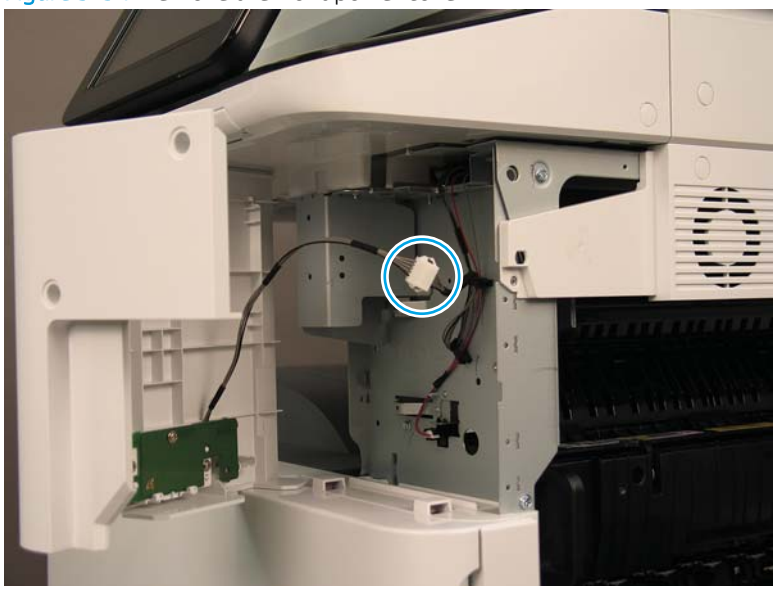
CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-93 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

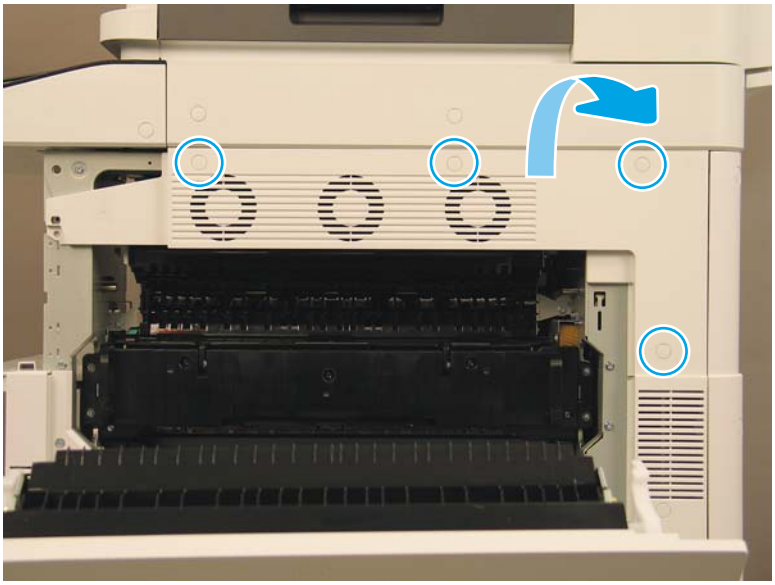
Figure 3-94 Remove the front power cover



Step 3: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-95 Remove the top right cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Left cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Left cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02100A	Cover, Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the left cover

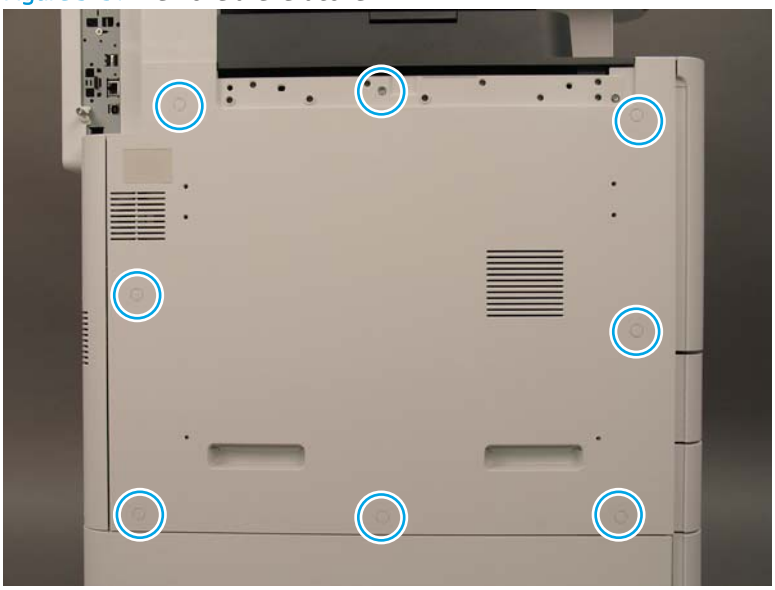
1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-96 Left dummy cover



2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

Figure 3-97 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower rear cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Lower rear cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02117A	Cover, Lower Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

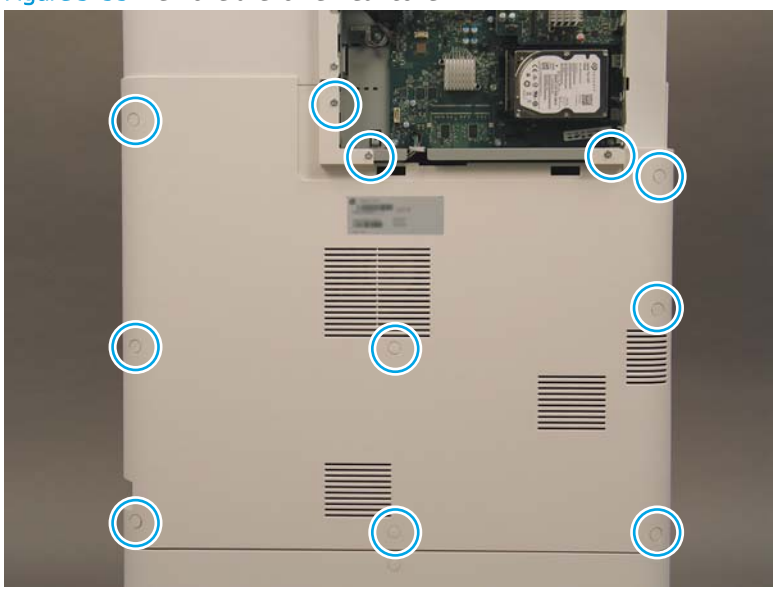
Figure 3-98 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

Figure 3-99 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper rear cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Upper rear cover part number	
SAM-JC63-05633A	Cover, Rear Upper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

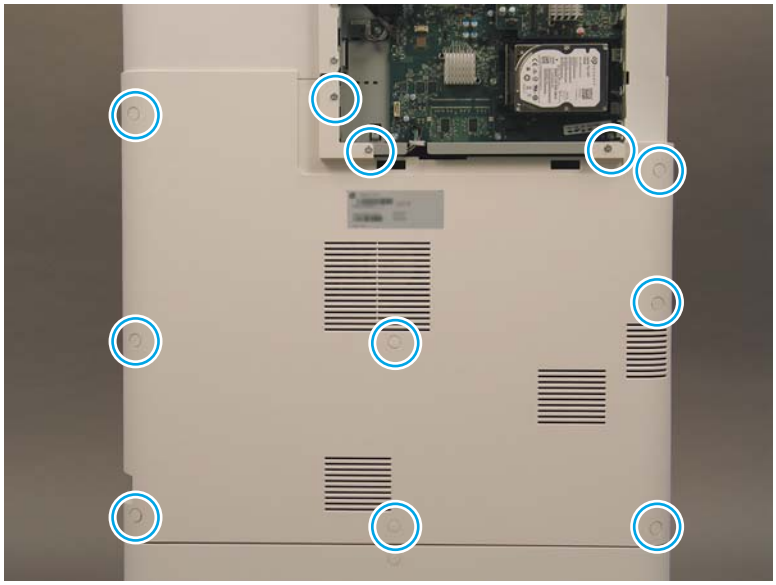
Figure 3-100 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

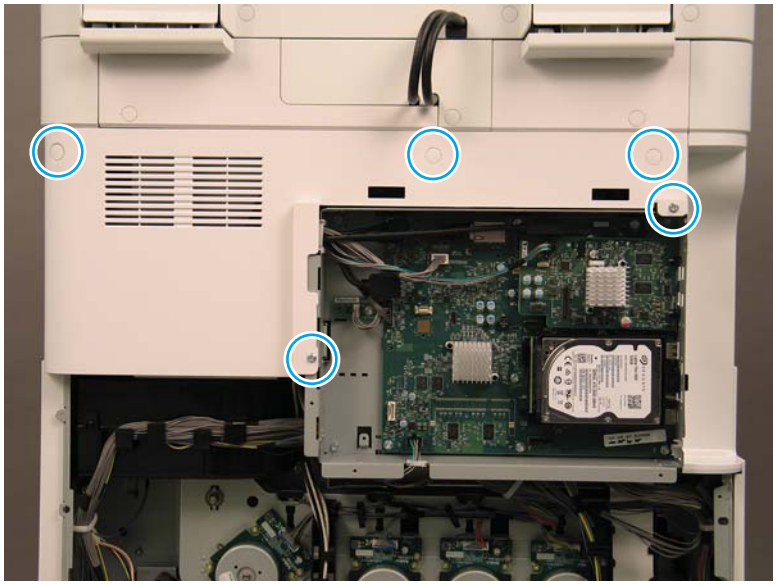
Figure 3-101 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-102 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Left rear corner cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the left rear corner cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Left rear corner cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04837A	Cover, Upper Left

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

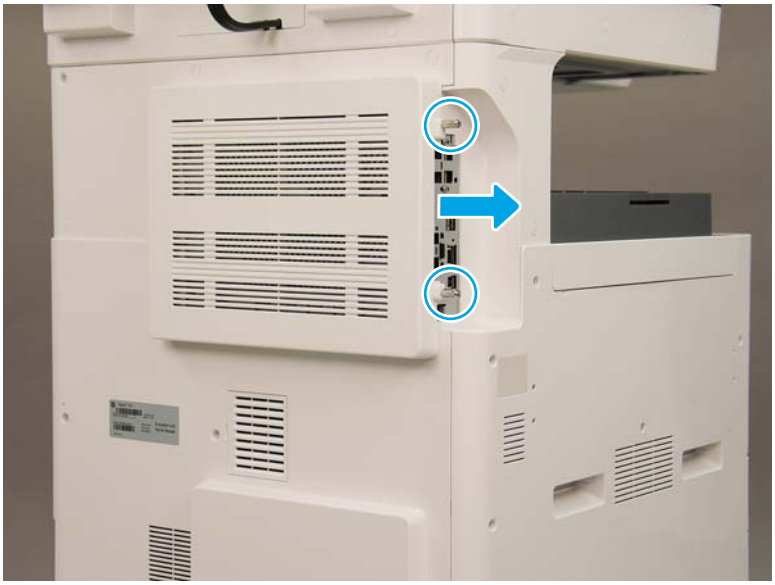
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

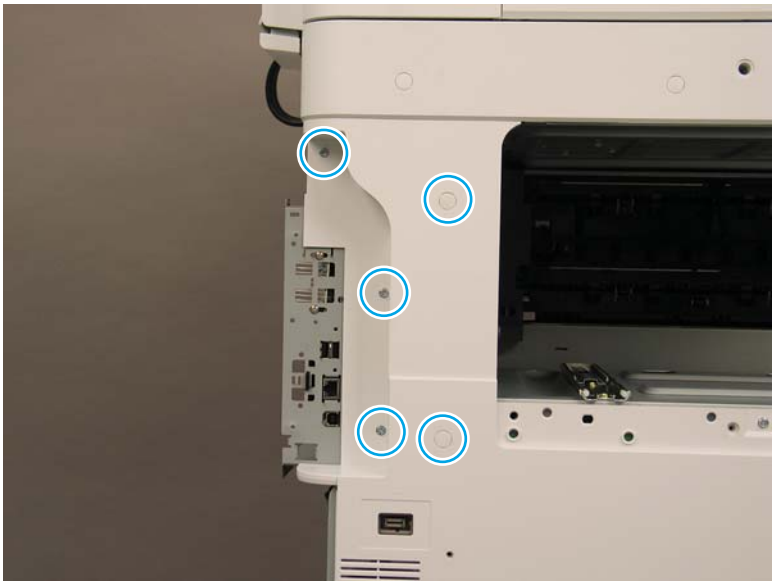
Figure 3-103 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-104 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right rear cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right rear cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02102A	Cover, Right Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

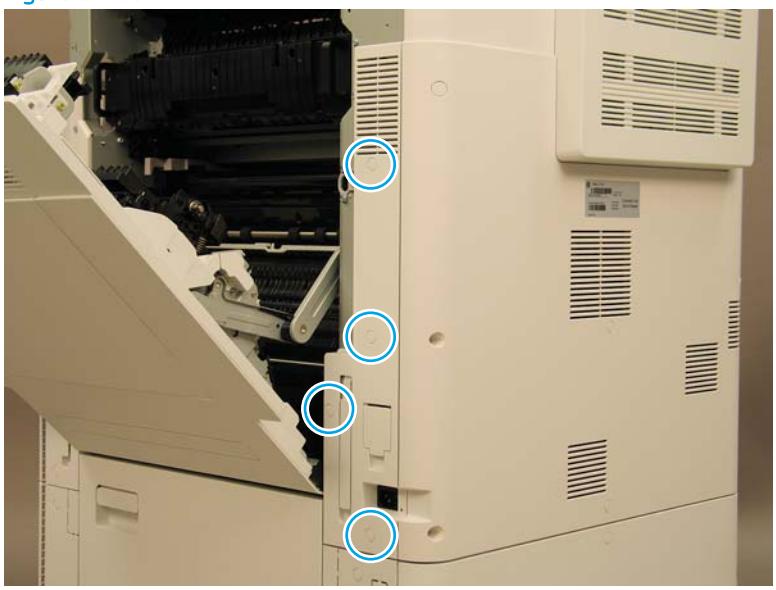
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

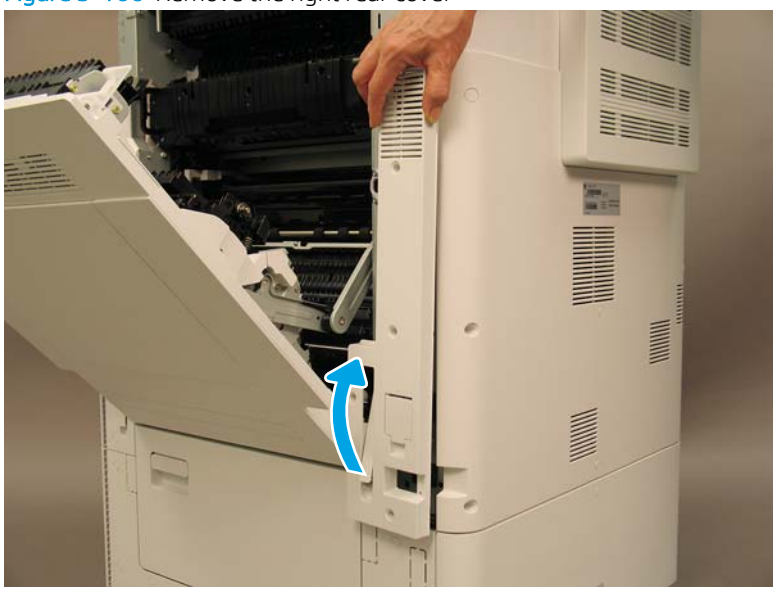
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-105 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

Figure 3-106 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right door.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door part number	
SAM-JC95-02092A	Right Door Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

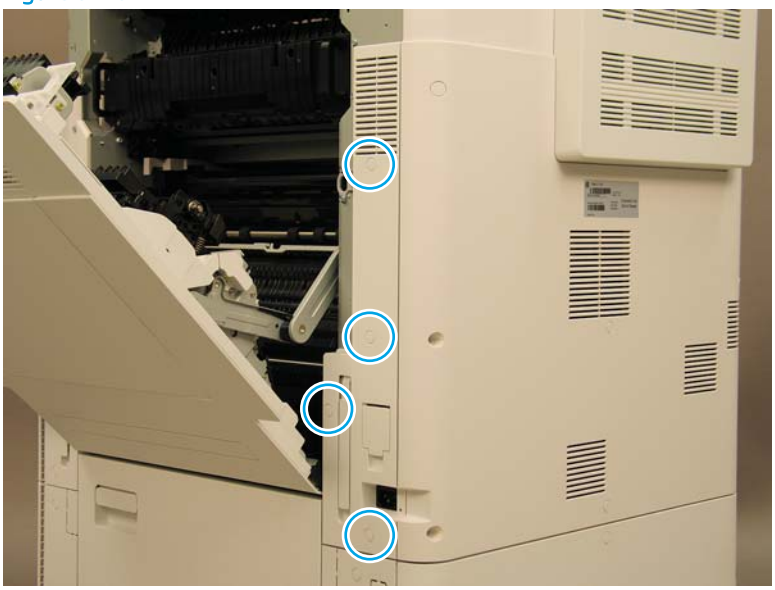
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

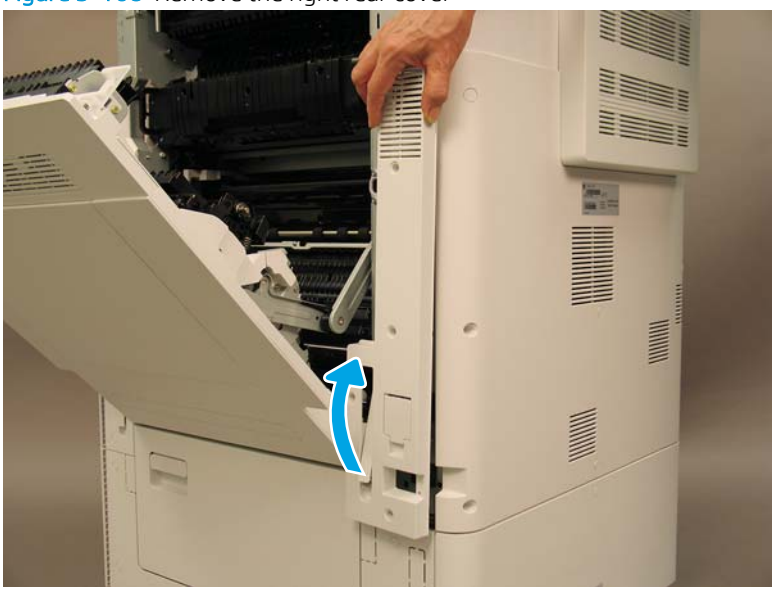
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-107 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

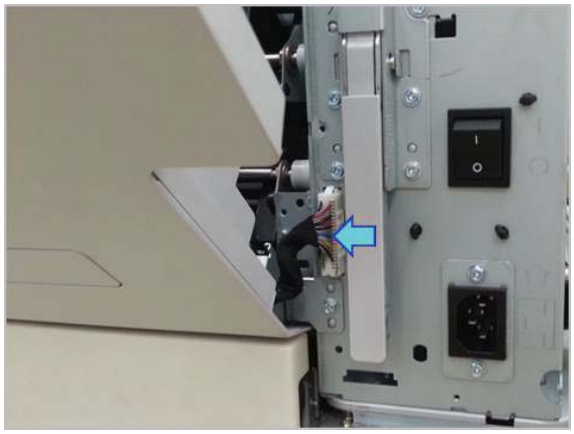
Figure 3-108 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

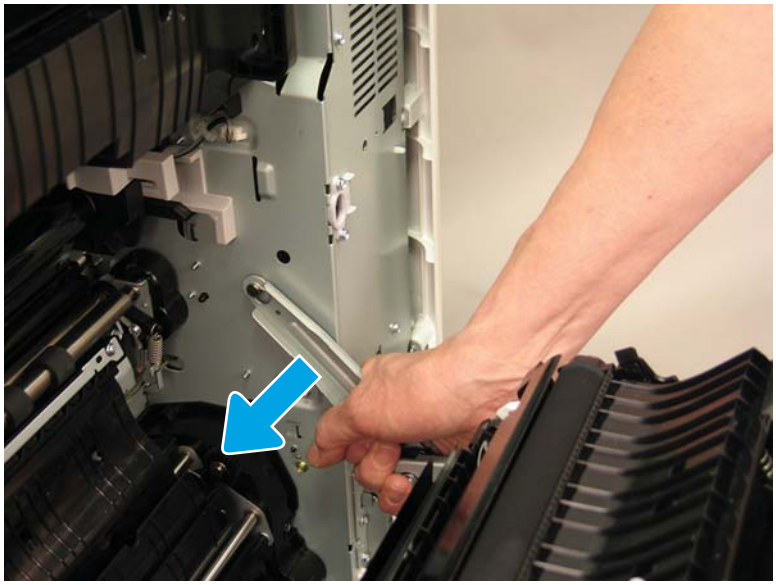
Figure 3-109 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

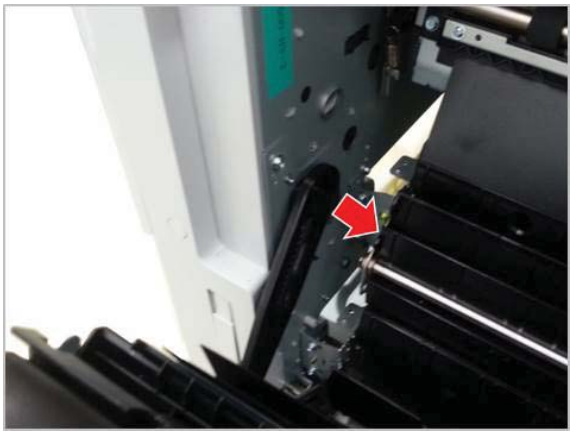
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-110 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

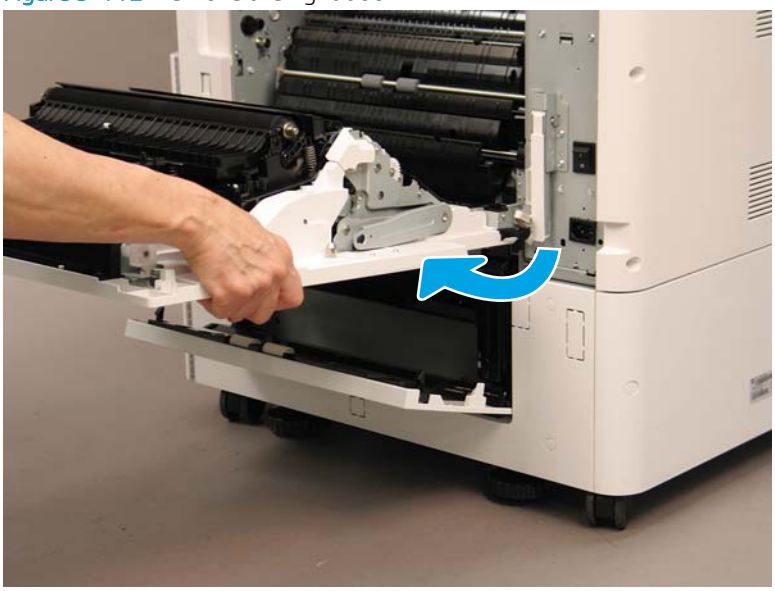
Figure 3-111 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-112 Remove the right door



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02109A	Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

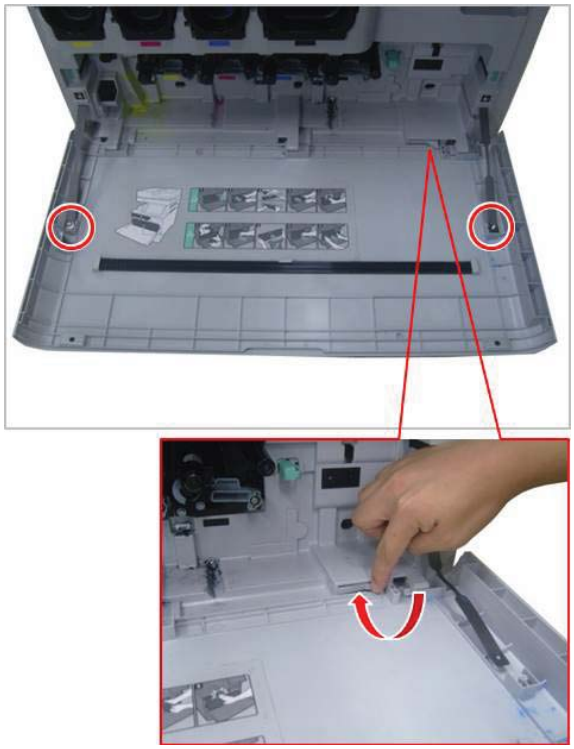
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 3-113 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper dust brush

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the paper dust brush.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper dust brush part number	
SAM-JC93-01026B	Paper Dust Brush

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

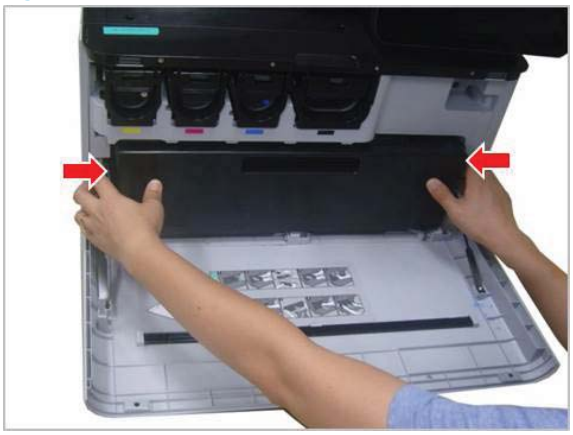
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

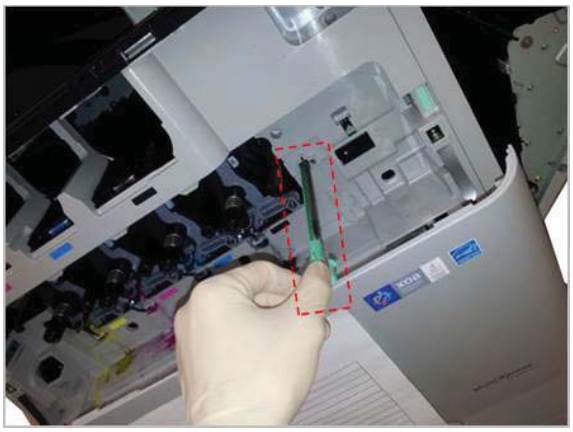
Figure 3-114 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the paper dust brush

- Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-115 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inner front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the inner front cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Inner front cover part number	
SAM-JC95-02110A	Cover, Inner Front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

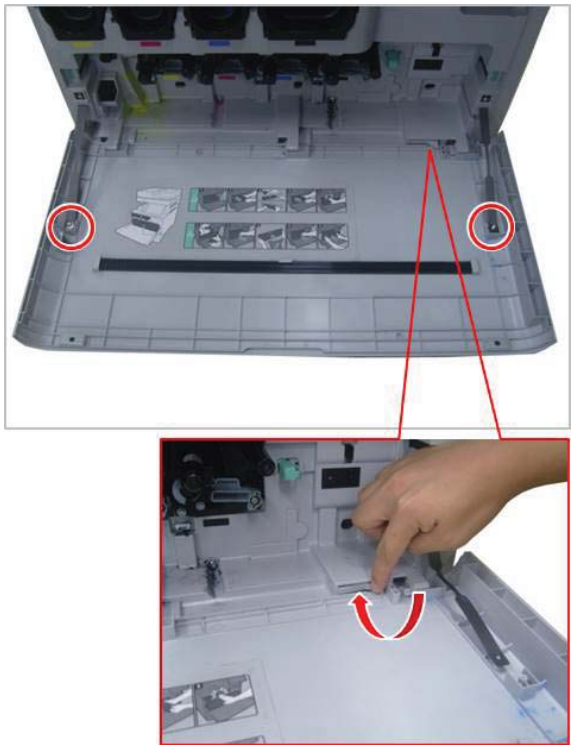
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

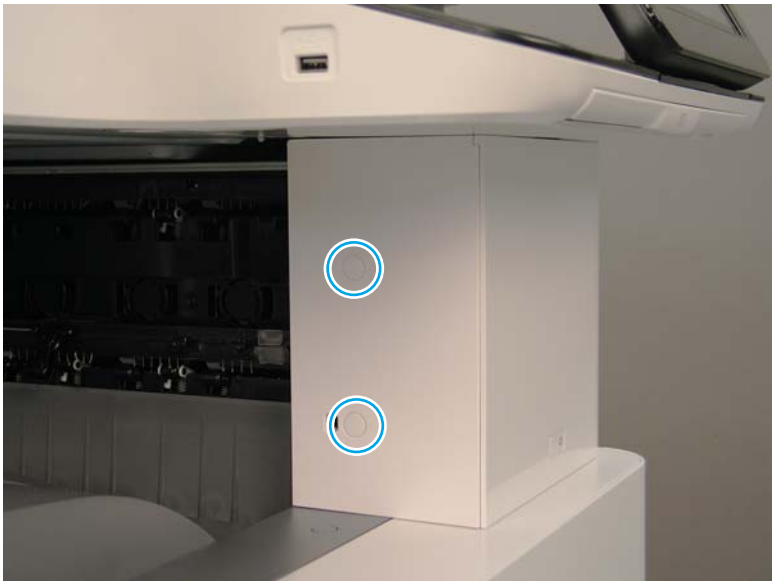
Figure 3-116 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-117 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

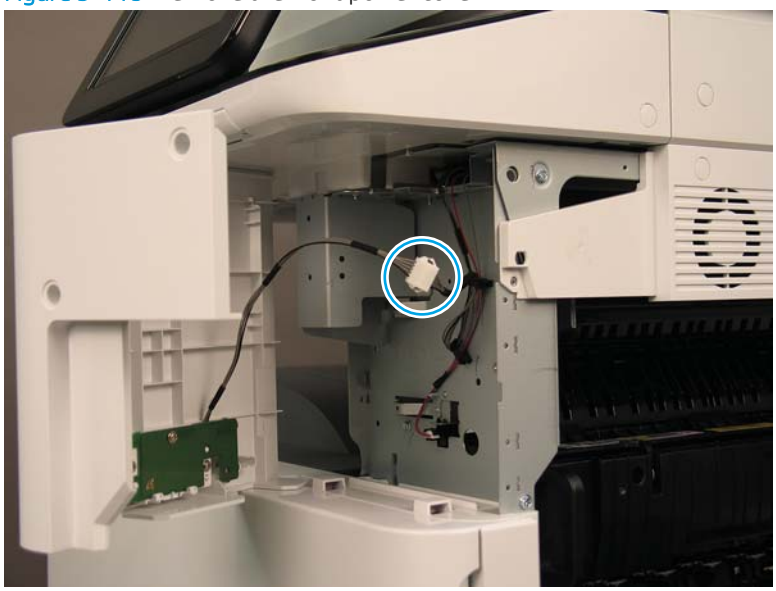
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-118 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-119 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-120 Remove the output bin



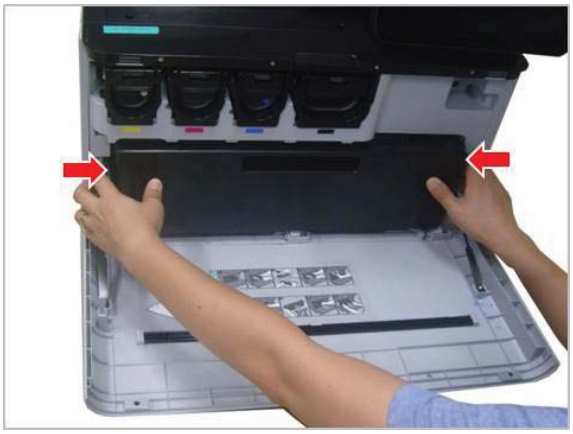
Step 5: Remove the toner collection unit

1. Open the front cover.

2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

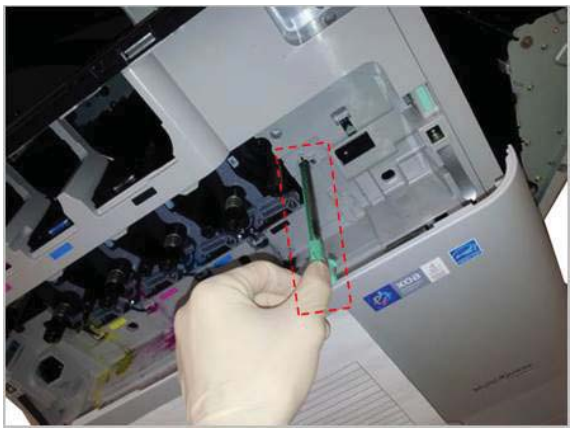
Figure 3-121 Remove the TCU



Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-122 Remove the paper dust brush

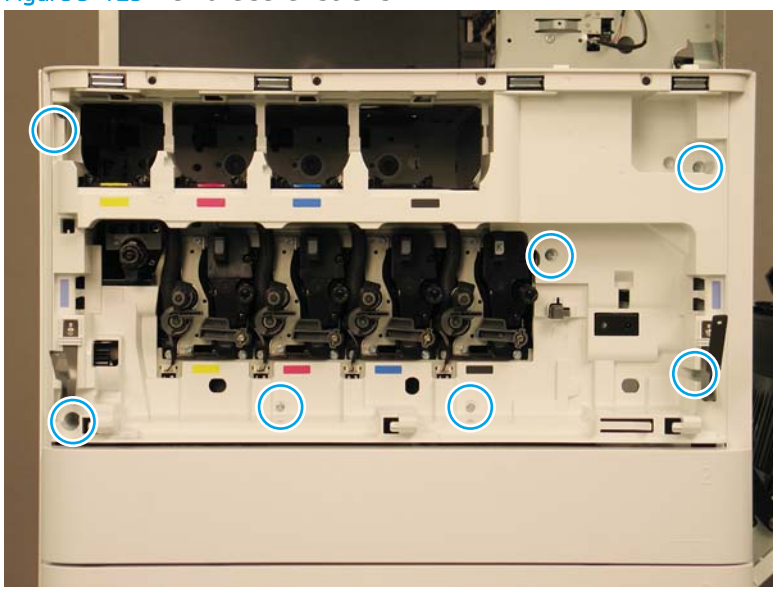


Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-123 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-124 Remove the inner cover



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover open sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 6: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front cover open sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover open sensor part number	
SAM-JC93-00466A	Front door switch open

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

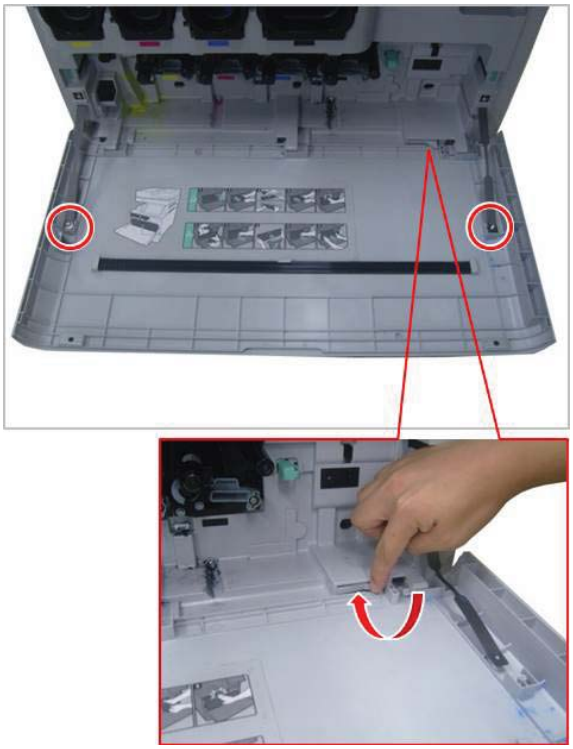
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

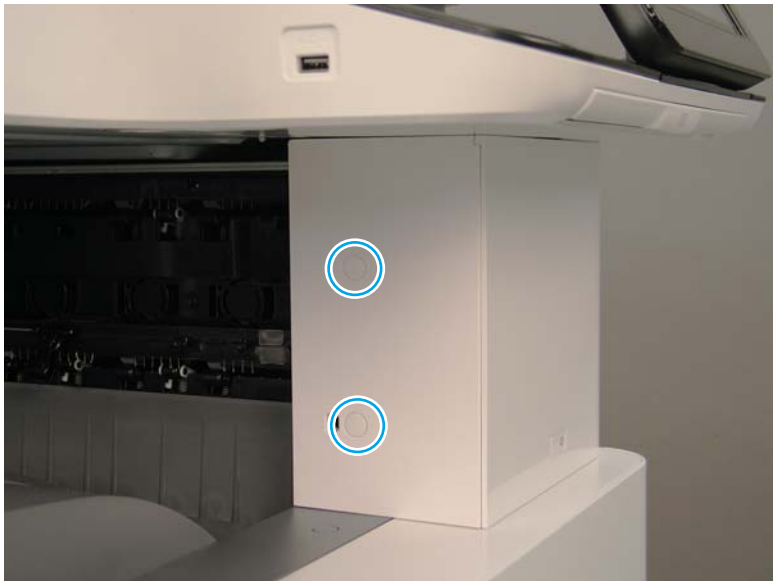
Figure 3-125 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-126 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

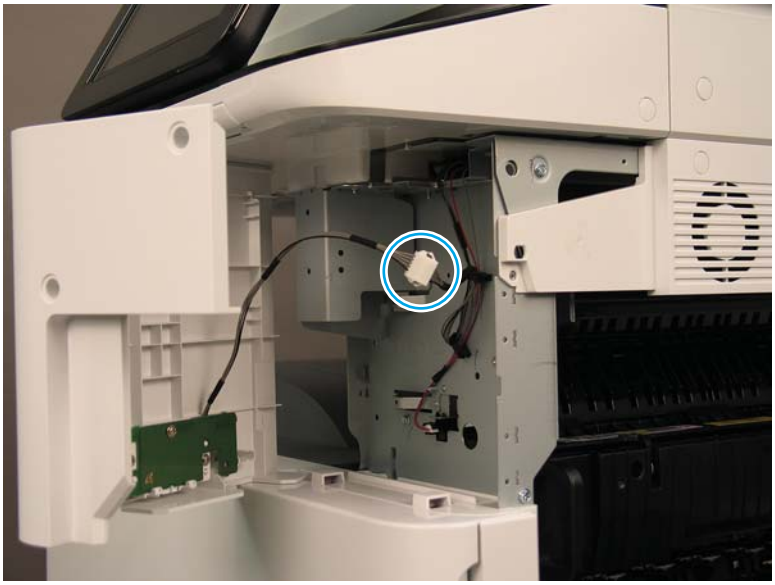
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-127 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-128 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

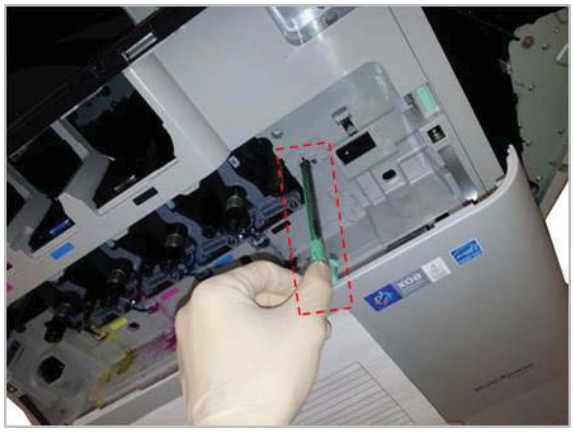
Figure 3-129 Remove the output bin



Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush

- Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-130 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 6: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-131 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

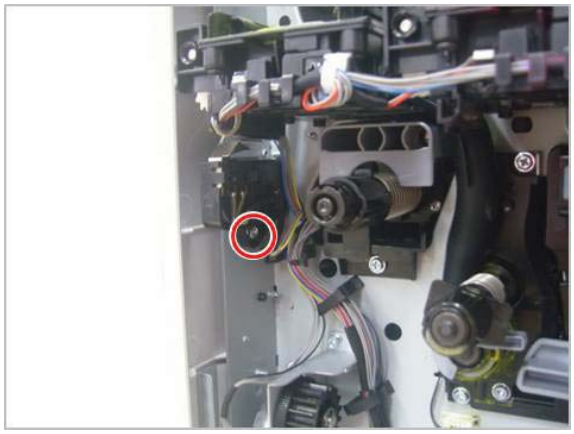
Figure 3-132 Remove the inner cover



Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor

1. Remove the toner cartridges.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the front cover open sensor.

Figure 3-133 Remove one screw and the cover open sensor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

High voltage power supply (HVPS) board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the HVPS
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

HVPS board part number	
SAM-JC44-00240A	HVPS 24V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the left cover

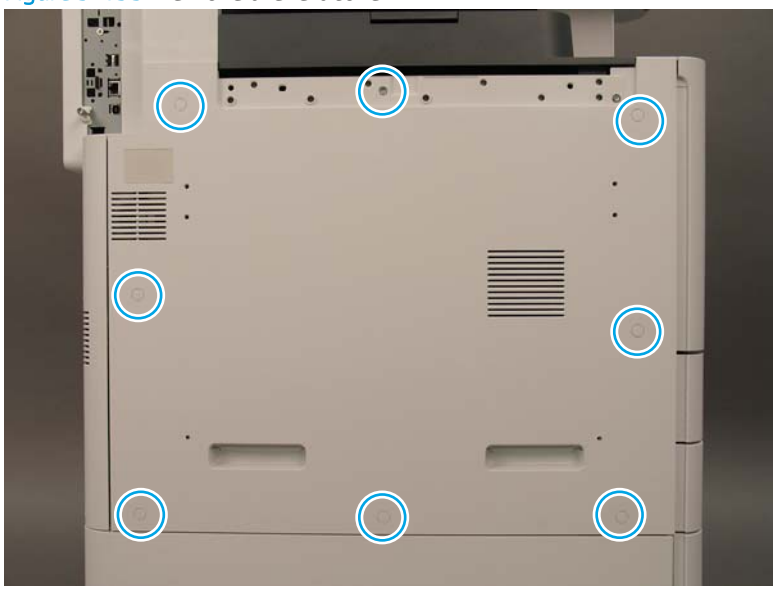
1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-134 Left dummy cover



2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

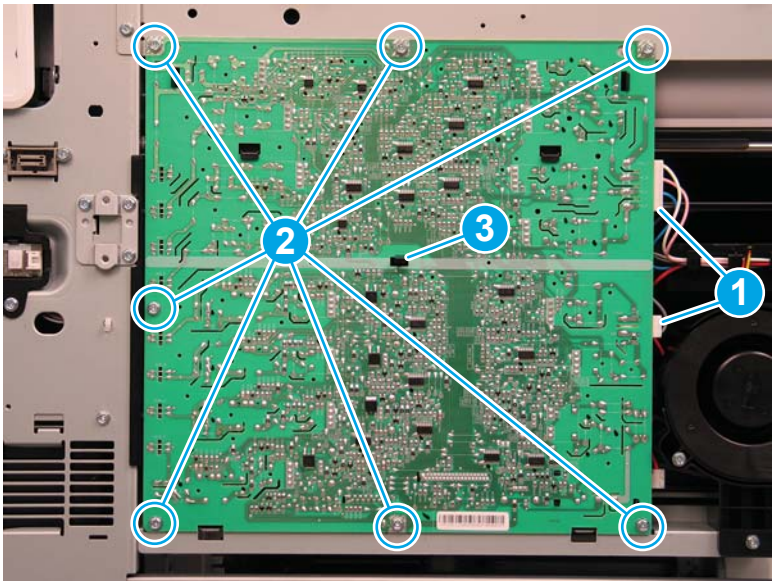
Figure 3-135 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the HVPS

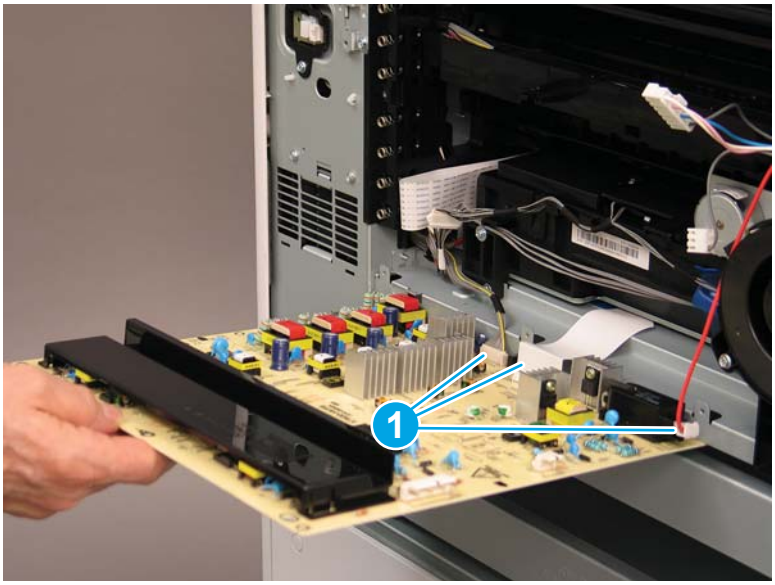
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then release one retainer in the center of the board (callout 3).

Figure 3-136 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



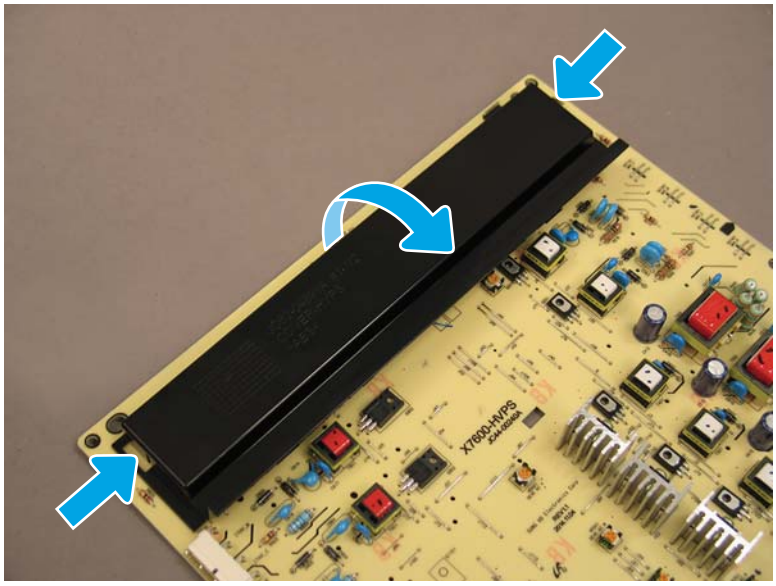
2. Tilt the board away from the printer, and then disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 3-137 Disconnect three connectors



3. If you are replacing the HVPS board, release two tabs and rotate the cover off of the board. Attach the cover to the replacement part before installing.

Figure 3-138 Remove the HVPS cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Laser scanner assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board
- Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Laser scanner assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04863A	Laser Scanner Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the left cover

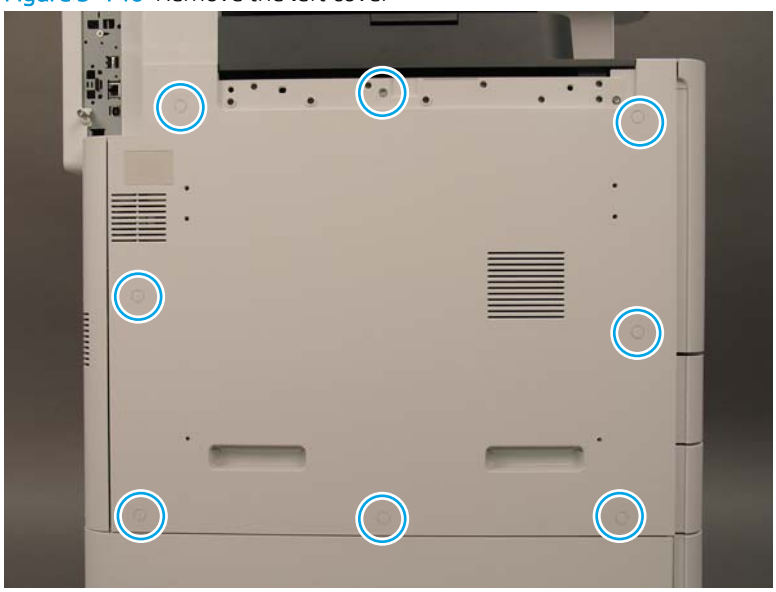
1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-139 Left dummy cover



2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

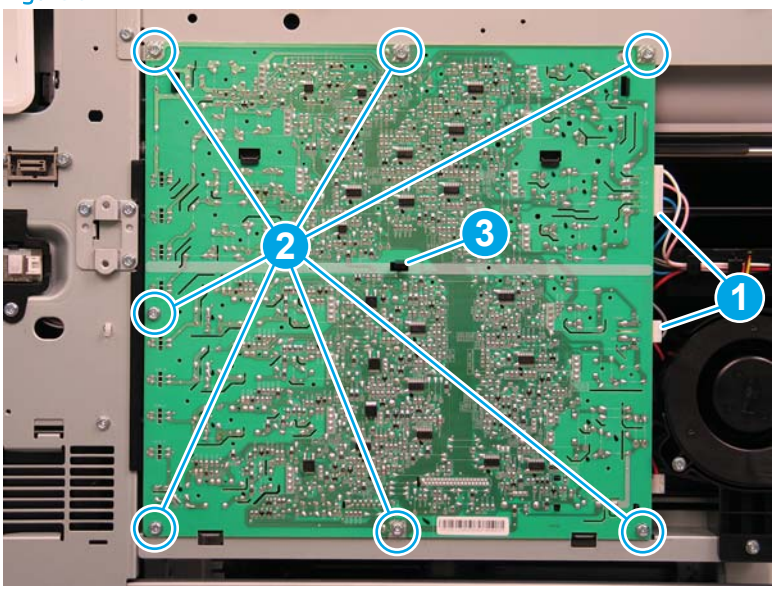
Figure 3-140 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the high voltage power supply (HVPS) board

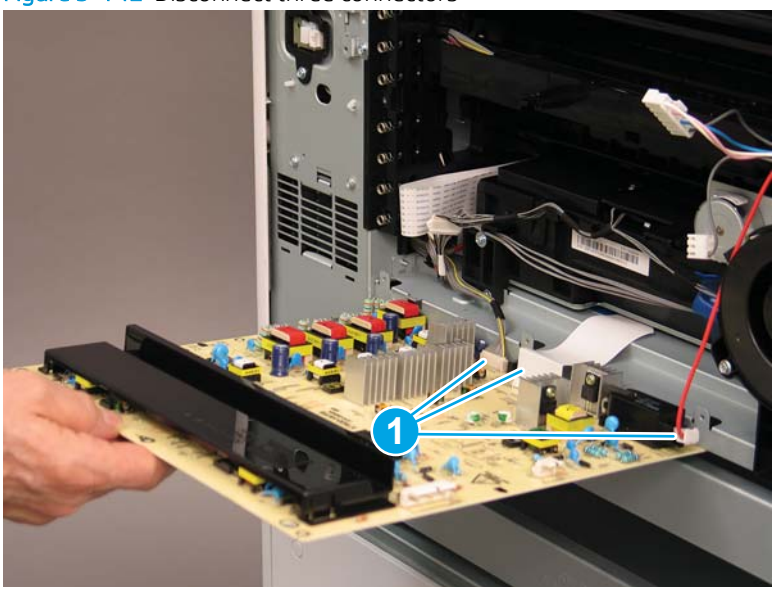
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then release one retainer in the center of the board (callout 3).

Figure 3-141 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



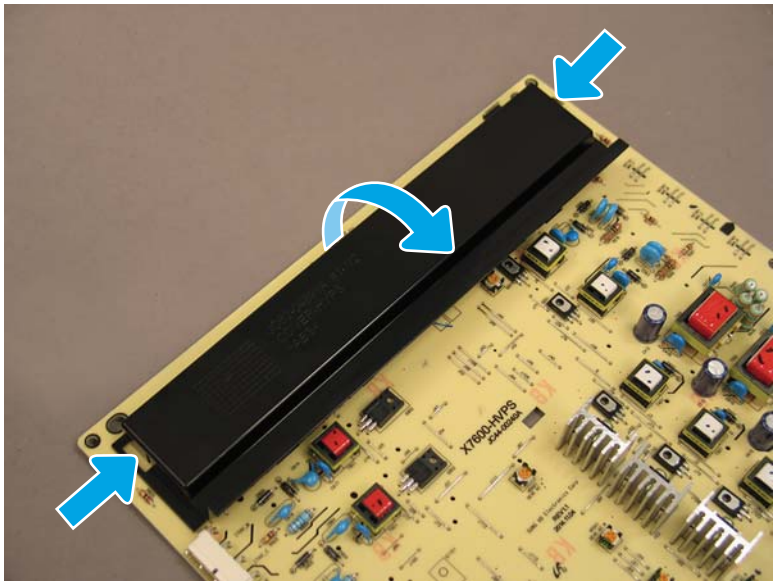
2. Tilt the board away from the printer, and then disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 3-142 Disconnect three connectors



3. If you are replacing the HVPS board, release two tabs and rotate the cover off of the board. Attach the cover to the replacement part before installing.

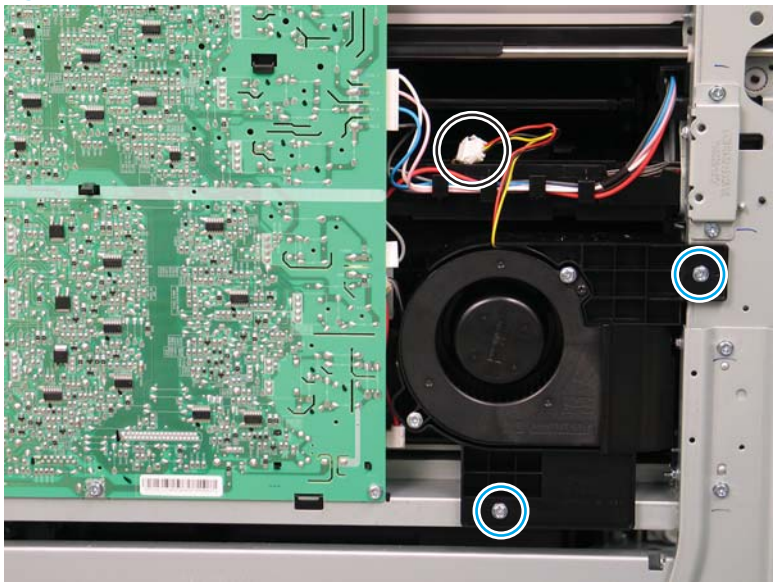
Figure 3-143 Remove the HVPS cover



Step 3: Remove the laser scanner assembly

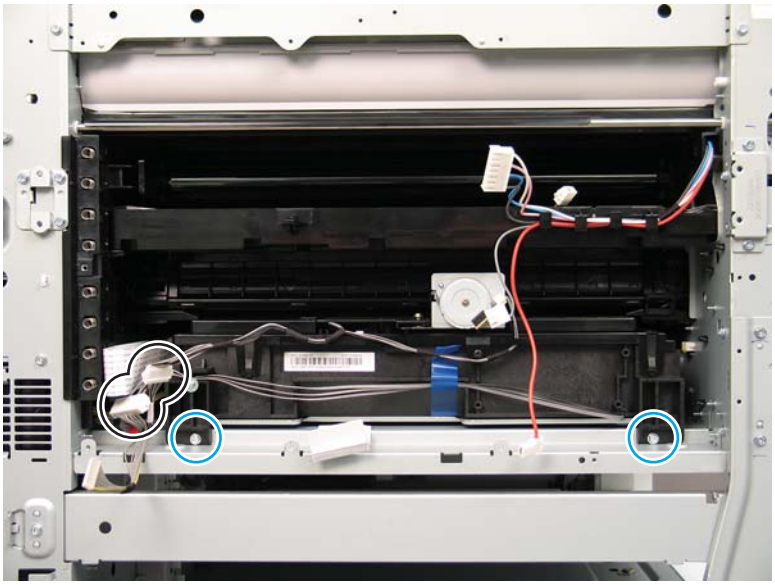
1. To remove the laser scanner fan and holder, disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws on the fan holder.

Figure 3-144 Remove the laser scanner fan and holder



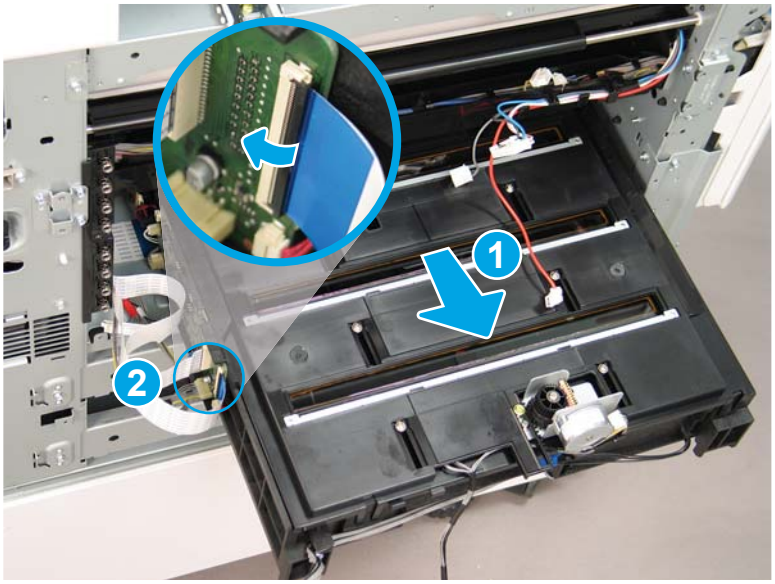
2. Remove two screws, and then disconnect two in-line connectors on the left.

Figure 3-145 Remove two screws and disconnect two connectors



3. Slide the laser scanner partially out of the printer (callout 1), and then disconnect two flat cables and one connector on the left. One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. After disconnecting the connectors, remove the laser scanner assembly from the printer.

Figure 3-146 Laser scanner assembly



Reinstallation tip: Align the locator pin on the back of the assembly with the opening in the printer sheet metal frame to guide the assembly into place. The screw holes on the front of the assembly will line up with the screw holes in the sheet metal when the assembly is correctly installed.

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the laser scanner assembly, make sure that the flat cable that routes over the top of the assembly does not become trapped under the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Laser scanner assembly fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the left cover
- Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly fan.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Laser scanner assembly fan part number	
SAM-JC31-01019A	Fan Type 8

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the left cover

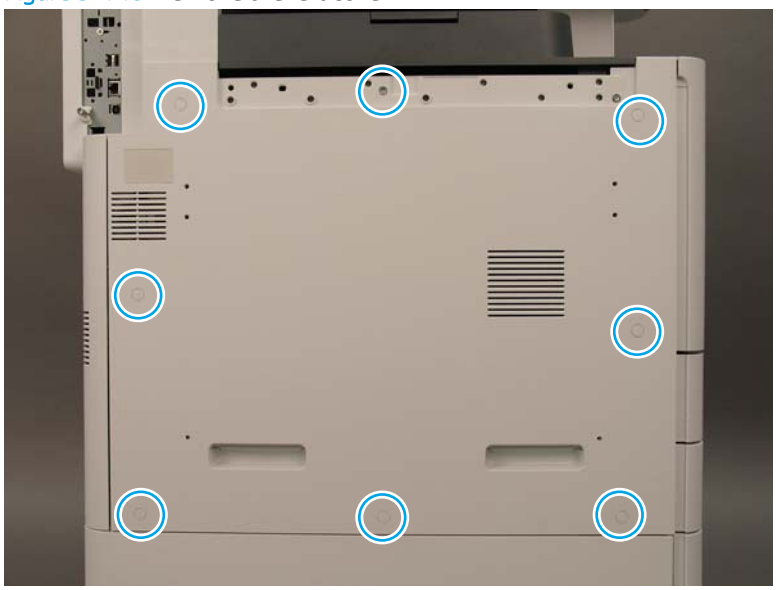
1. Remove the left-dummy cover.

Figure 3-147 Left dummy cover



2. Remove seven screw-caps and eight screws, and lift the left cover off of the printer.

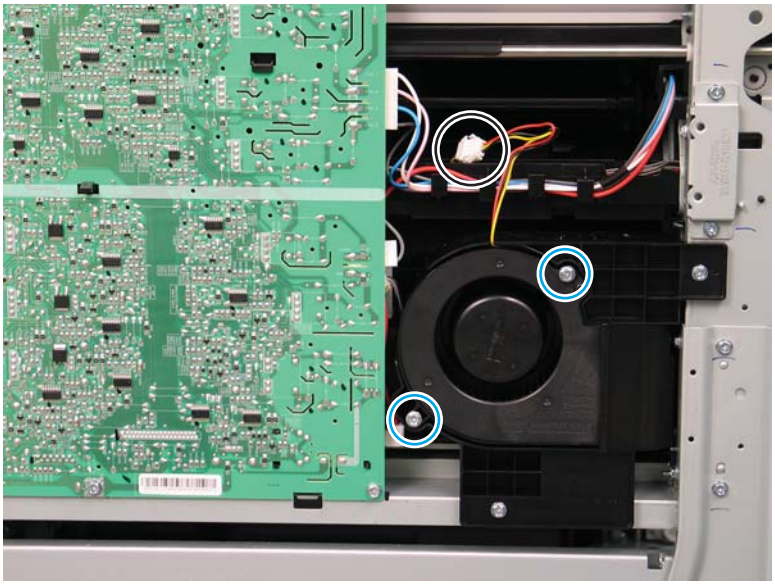
Figure 3-148 Remove the left cover



Step 2: Remove the laser scanner assembly fan

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the laser scanner assembly fan.

Figure 3-149 Remove the laser scanner assembly fan



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main board part number	
SAM-JC92-02958A	Main PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

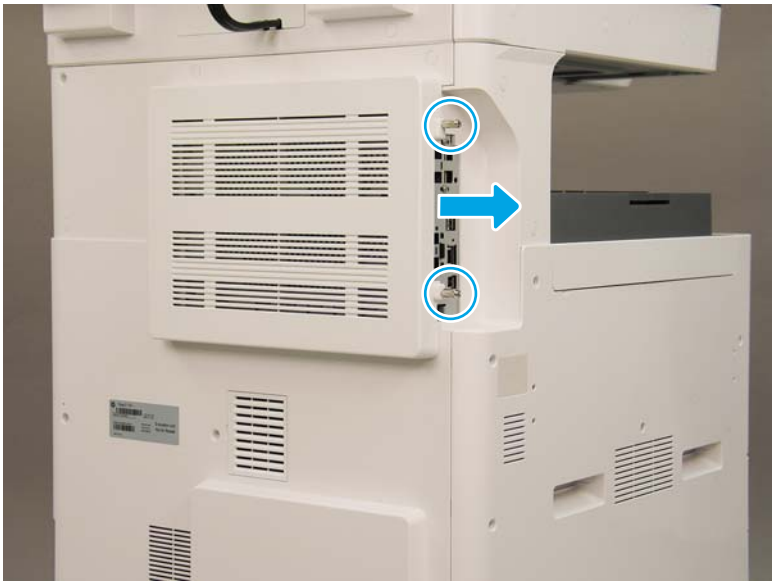
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

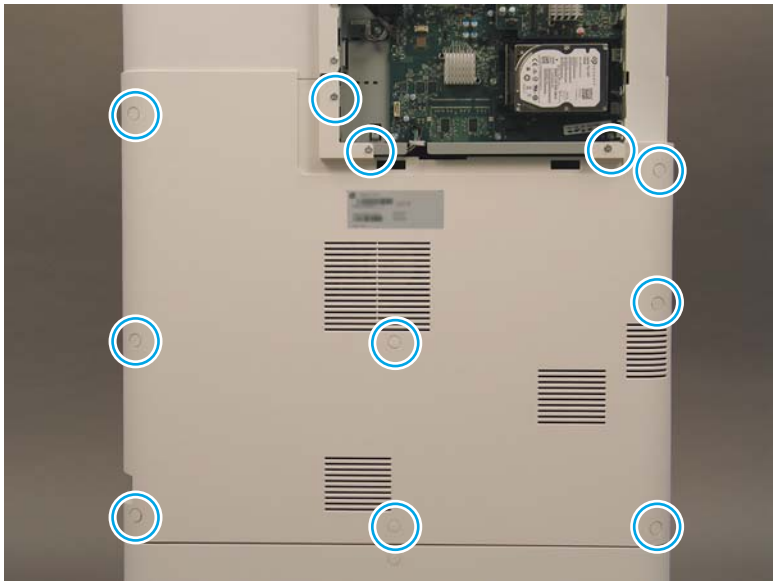
Figure 3-150 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

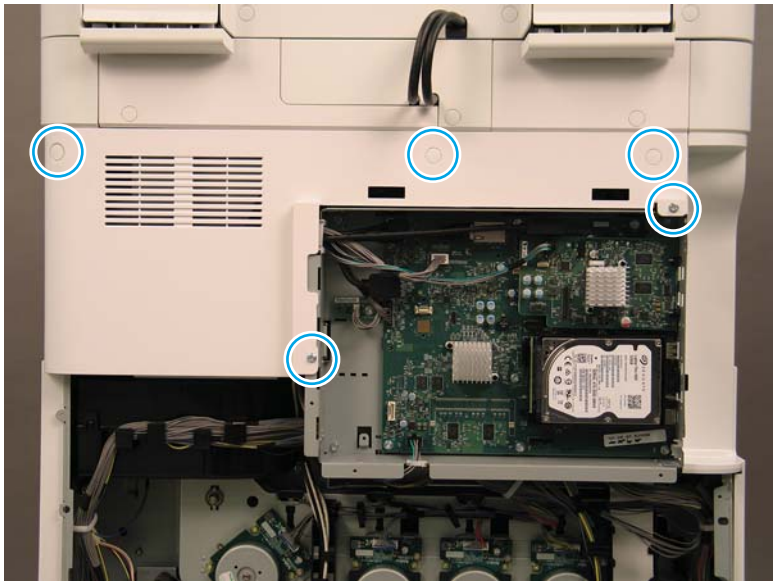
Figure 3-151 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

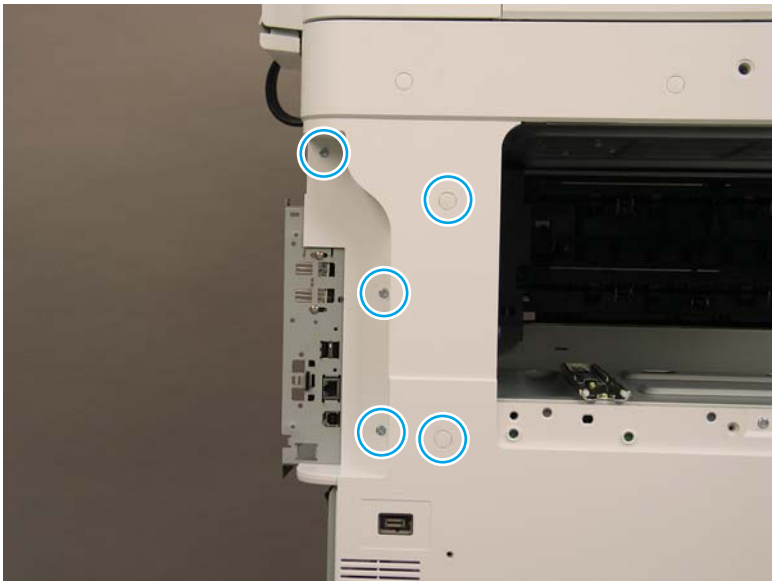
Figure 3-152 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

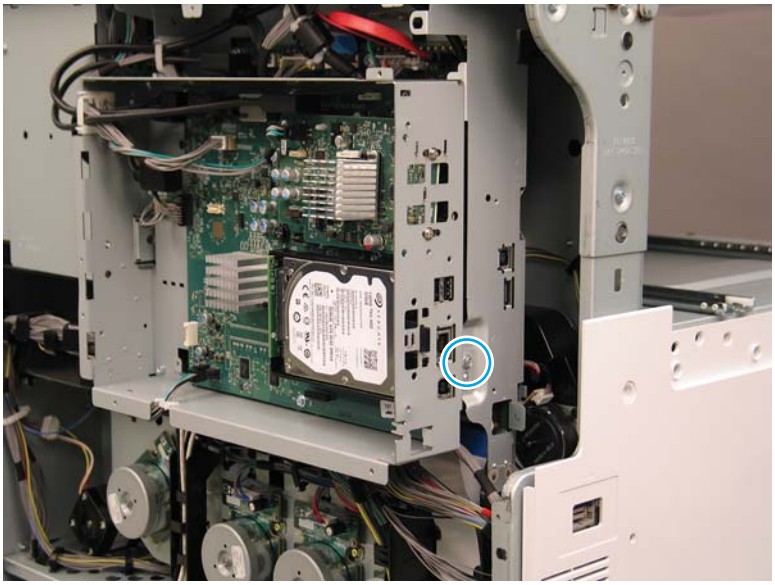
Figure 3-153 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

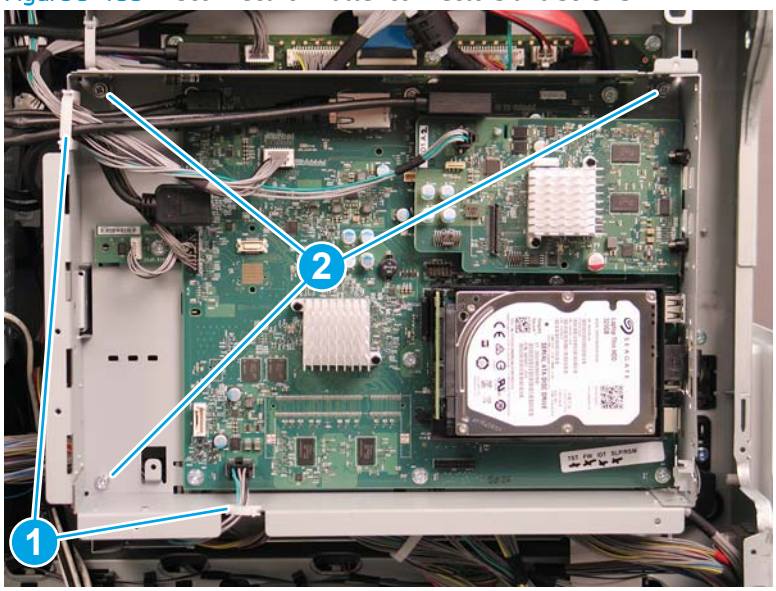
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-154 Remove one screw



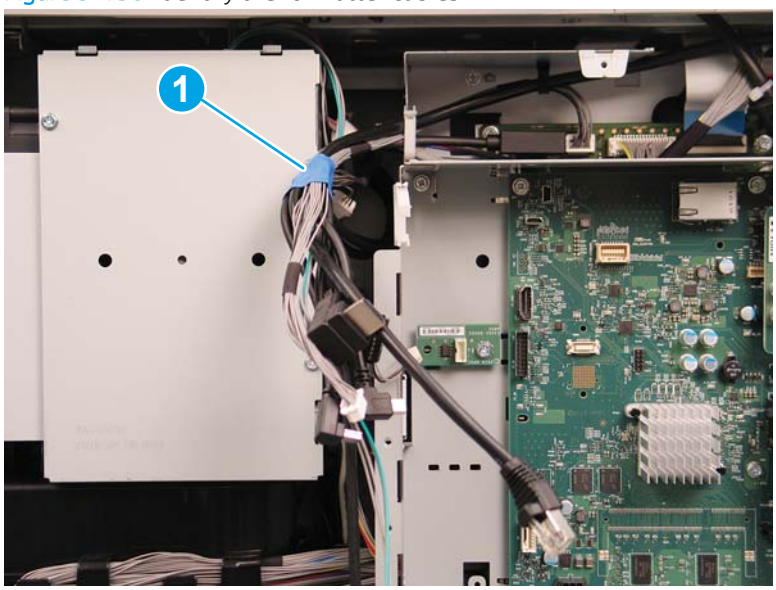
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-155 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-156 Identify the formatter cables



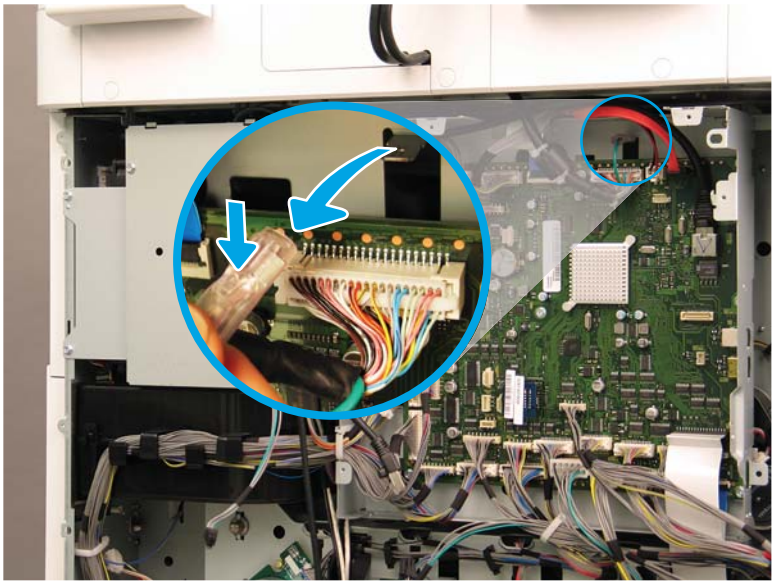
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

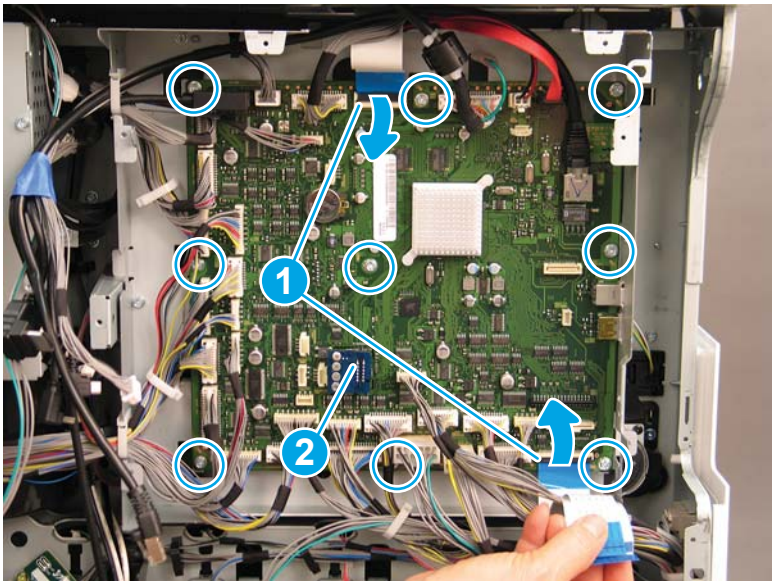
Figure 3-157 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 1) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Remove the MSOK board (callout 2) and install it on the replacement main board. Remove nine screws, and then remove the main board.

IMPORTANT: Do not lose or damage the MSOK chip. It must be installed on the replacement main board in the correct orientation in order for the printer to function. The MSOK chip is extremely difficult to replace if it is lost or damaged.

Figure 3-158 Remove the main board

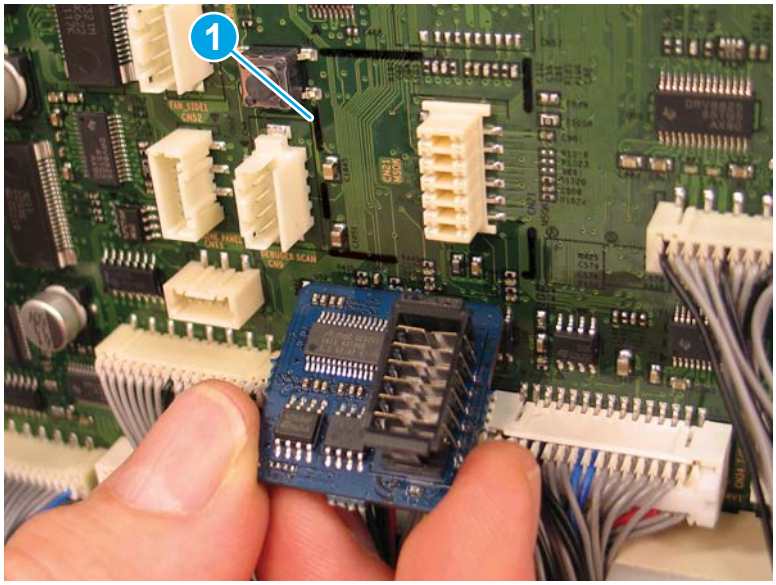


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board

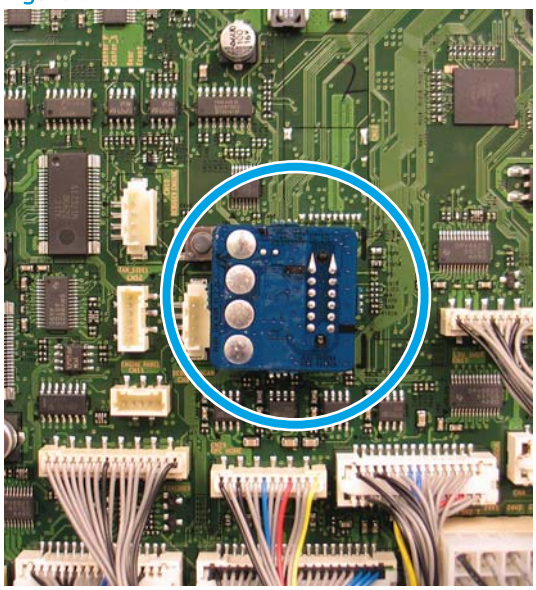
a. When reinstalling the MSOK board, note the dashed outline (callout 1) on the main board. When the MSOK board is installed correctly, it fits within this outline.

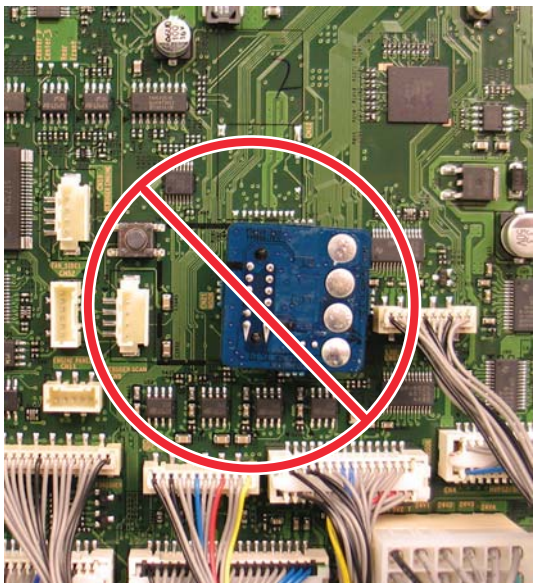
Figure 3-159 Position of MSOK board



b. Make sure that the MSOK board is installed correctly on the replacement main board.

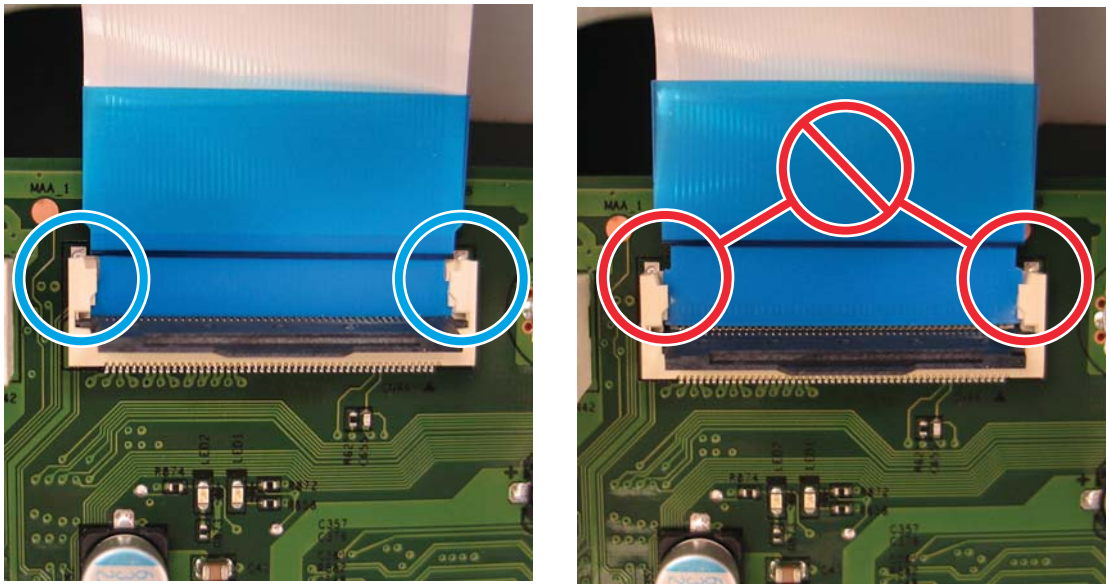
Figure 3-160 Install the MSOK board





c. When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-161 Install the flat cable



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS cover part number
LVPS cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

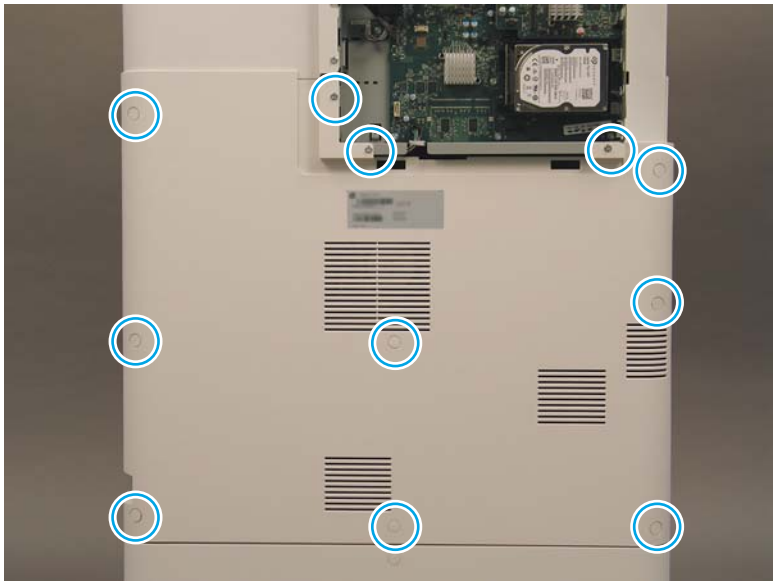
Figure 3-162 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

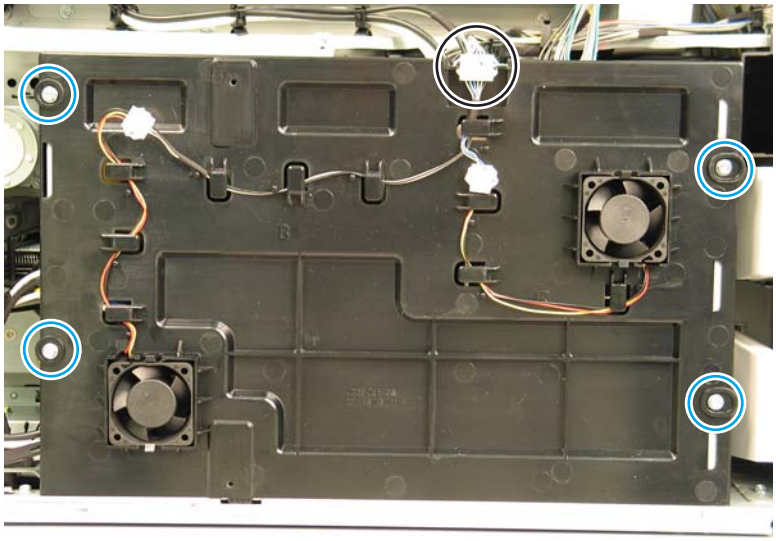
Figure 3-163 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-164 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans part number
Low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

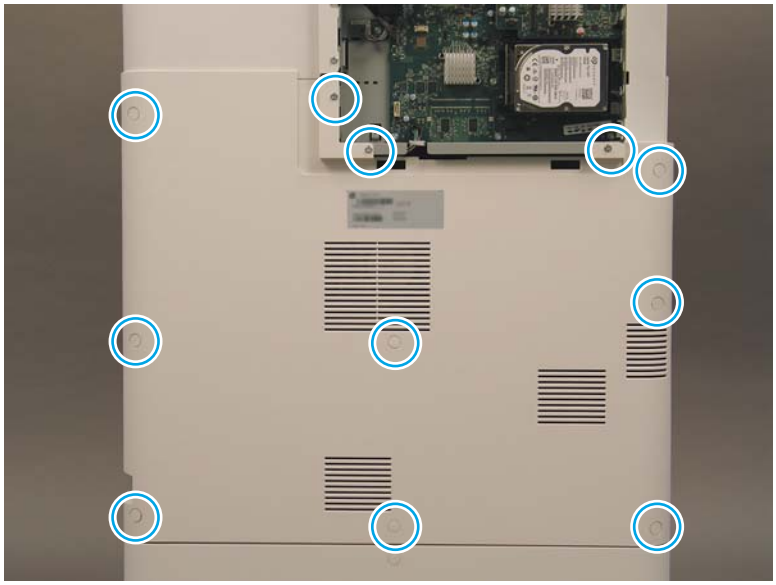
Figure 3-165 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

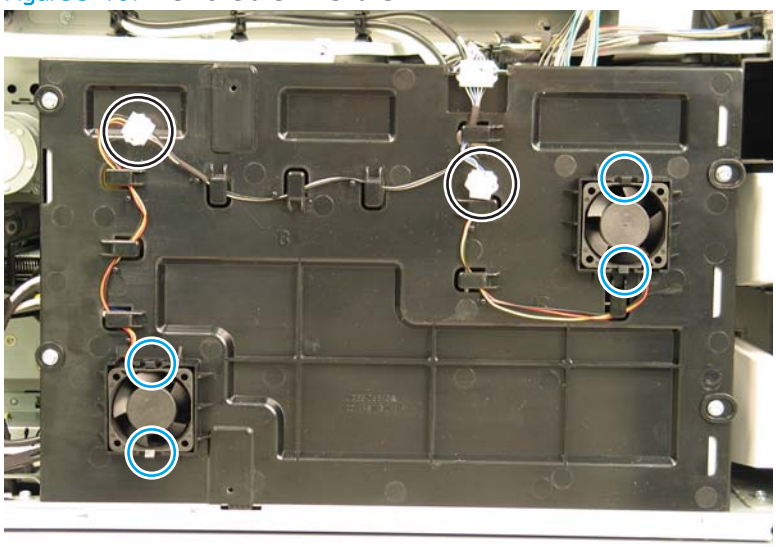
Figure 3-166 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS fans

1. Disconnect two connectors, release four tabs, and then remove the LVPS fans.

Figure 3-167 Remove the LVPS fans

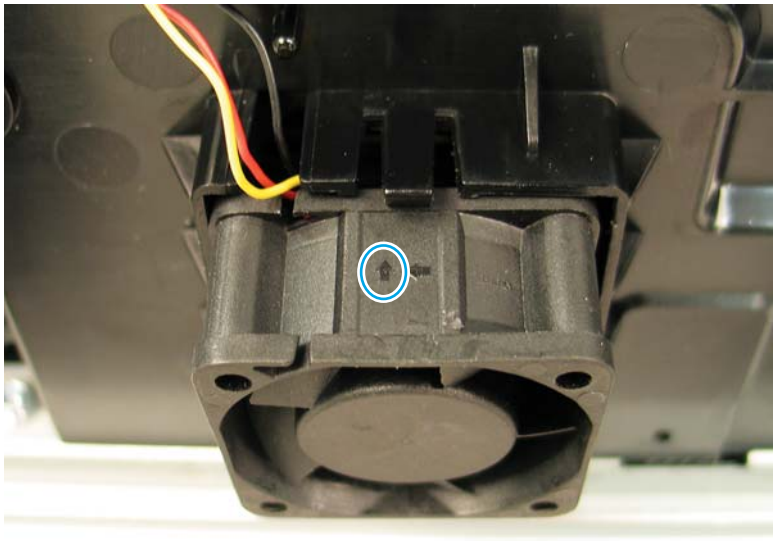


2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS fans

- When installing the replacement fans, make sure that the embossed arrow on the fans point toward the printer.

Figure 3-168 Correct installation of LVPS fans



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 1 part number	
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4
SAM-JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

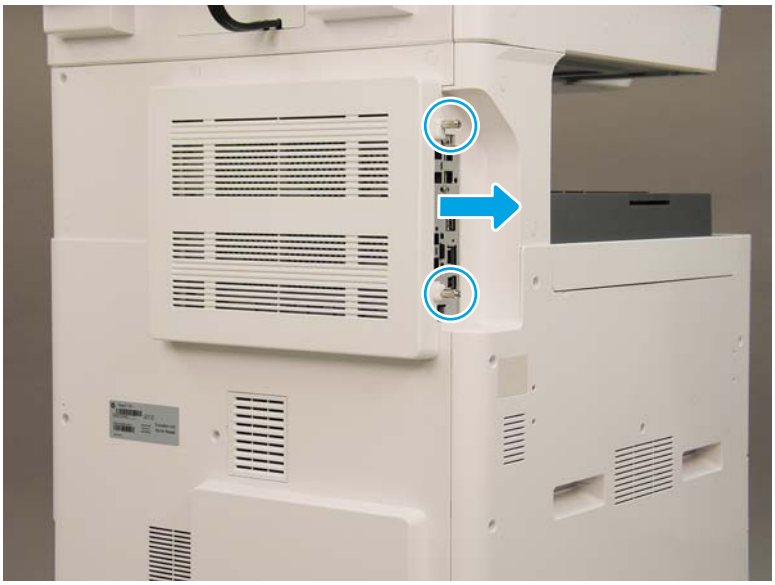
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

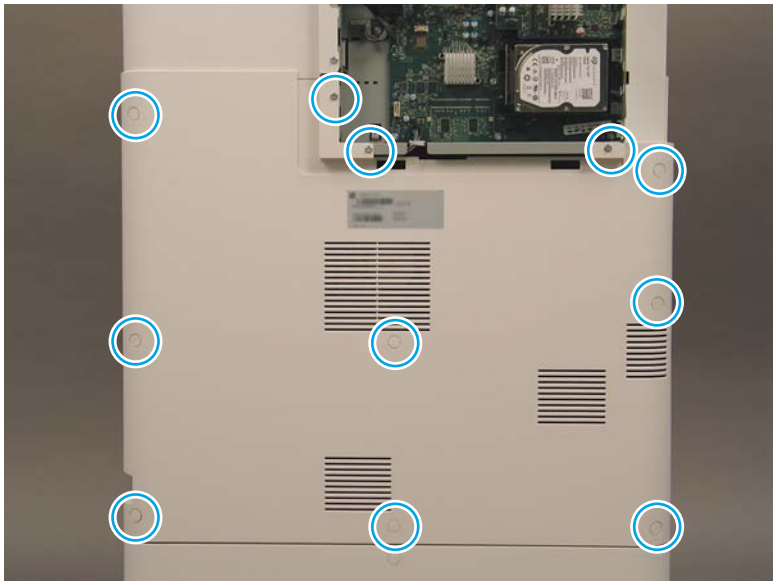
Figure 3-169 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

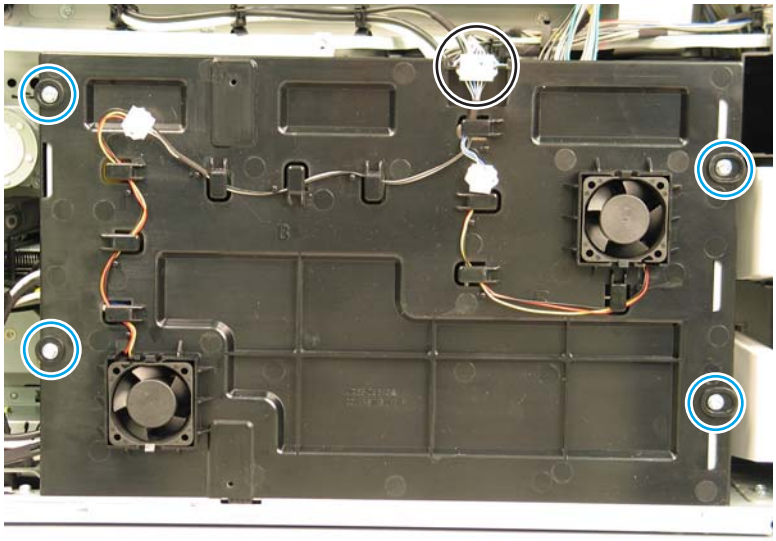
Figure 3-170 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-171 Remove the LVPS cover



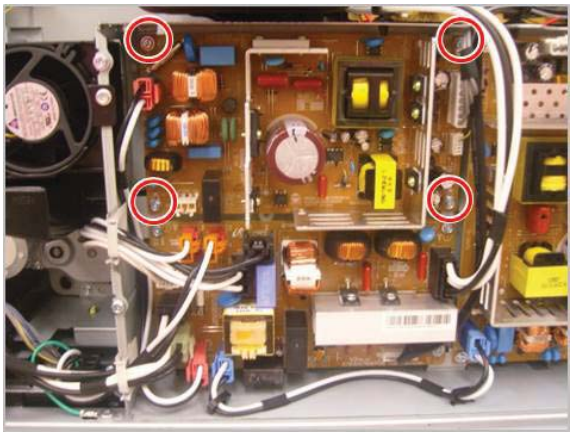
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 1

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 1.

Figure 3-172 Remove LVPS board 1



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 2 part number	
SAM-JC44-00100D	LVPS board 2

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

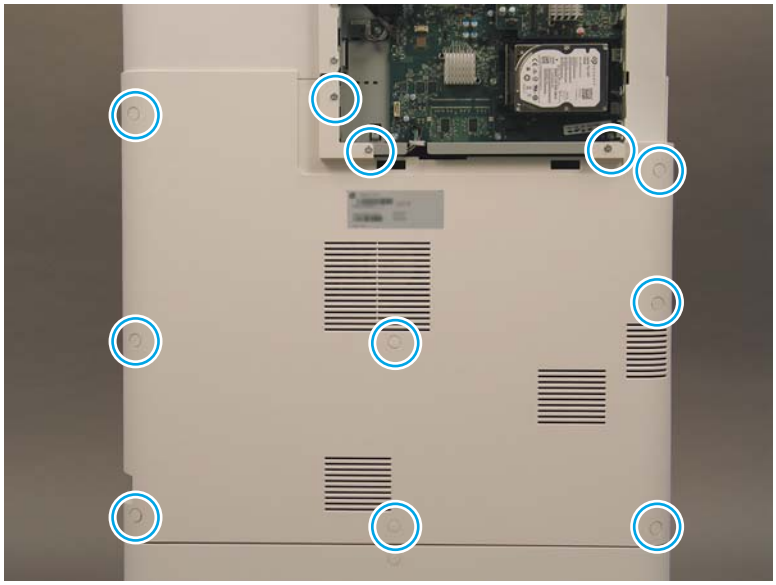
Figure 3-173 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

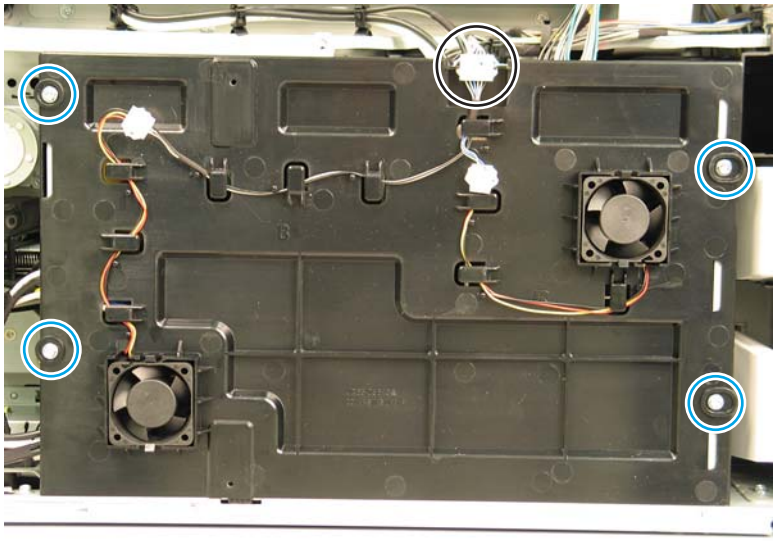
Figure 3-174 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-175 Remove the LVPS cover



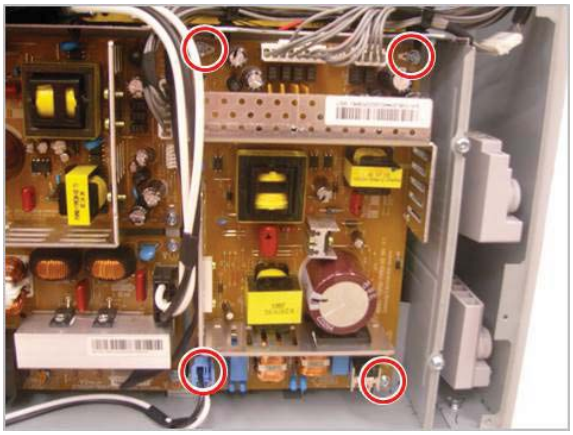
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 2

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 2.

Figure 3-176 LVPS board 2



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LVPS board 3 part number	
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS 110V Type 4
SAM-JC44-00092D	LVPS 220V Type 4

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

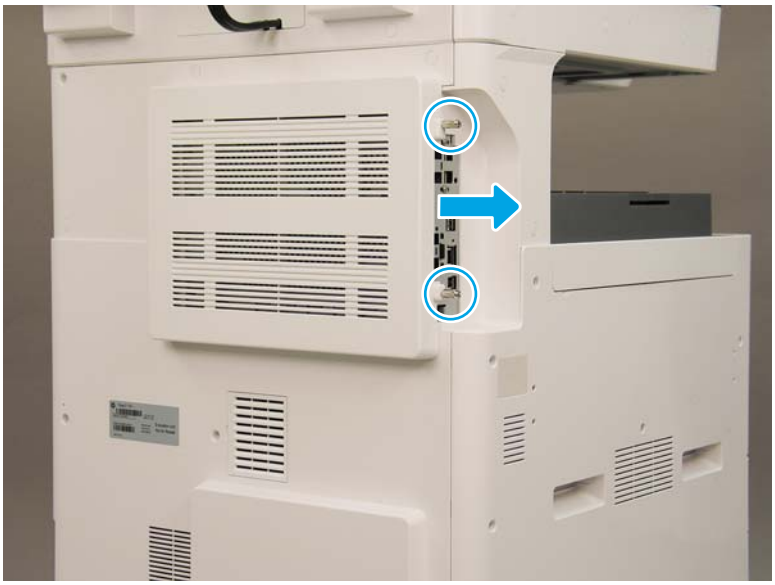
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

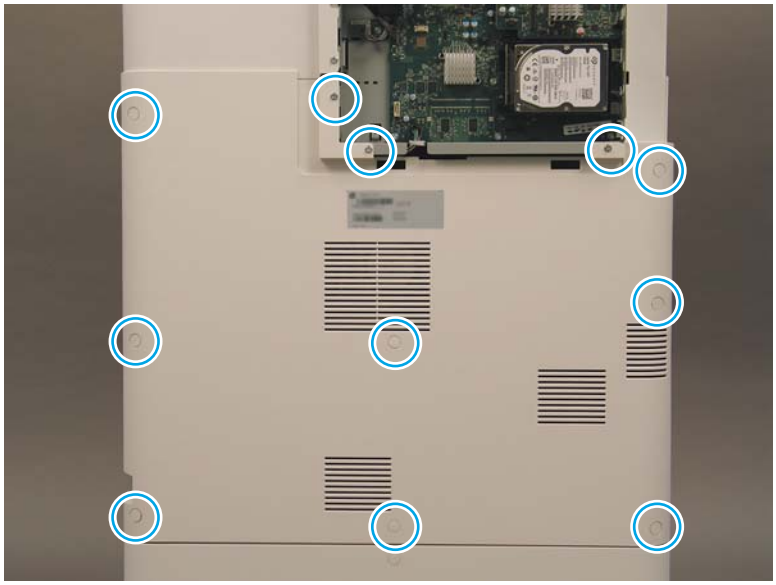
Figure 3-177 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

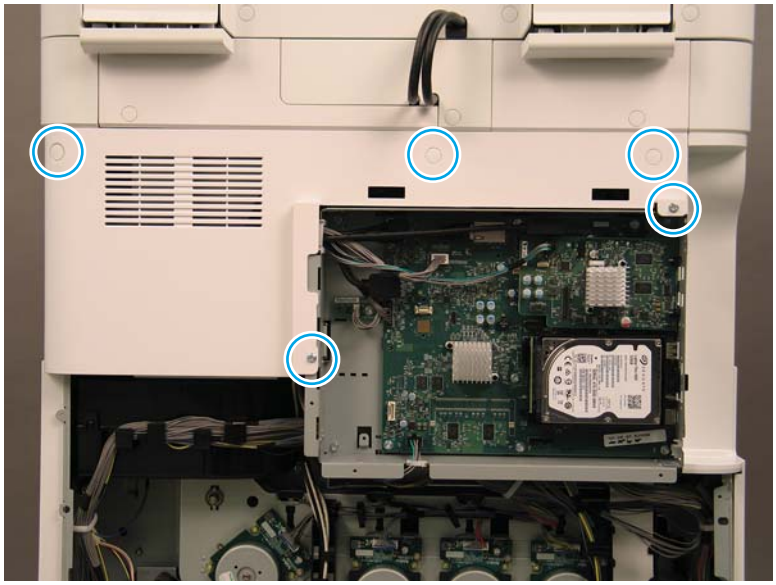
Figure 3-178 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-179 Remove the upper rear cover



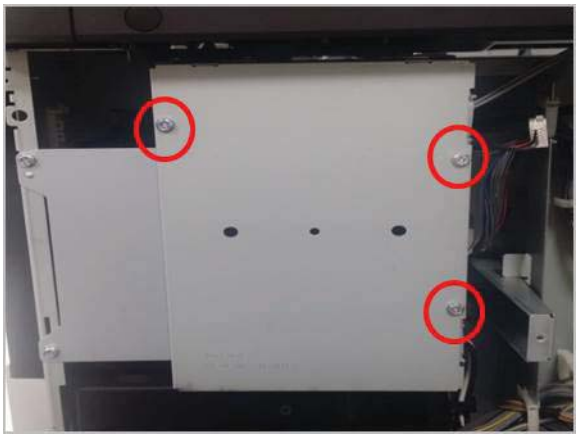
Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

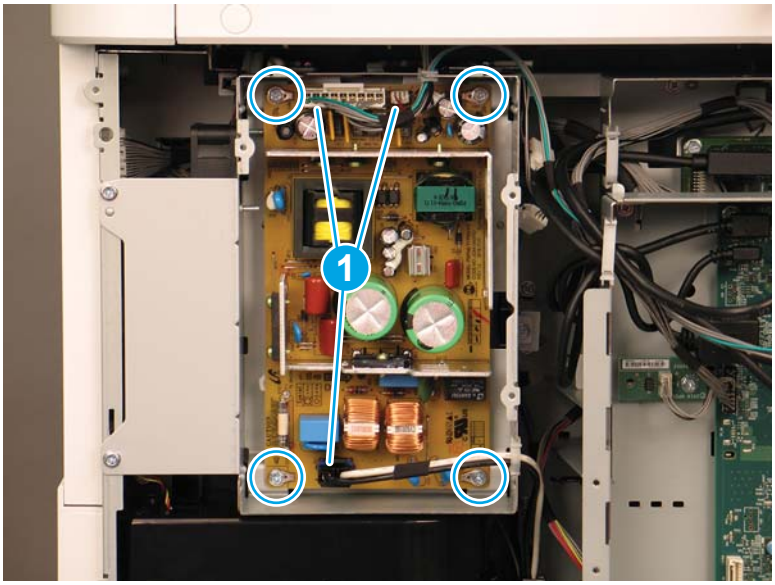
1. Remove three screws, then remove the shield-LVPS sub upper.

Figure 3-180 Remove the shield-LVPS sub upper



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove four screws, and then remove the LVPS board 3.

Figure 3-181 LVPS board 3



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser drive board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser drive board.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser drive board part number	
SAM-JC44-00235B	Fuser Drive Board 110V
SAM-JC44-00236B	Fuser Drive Board 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

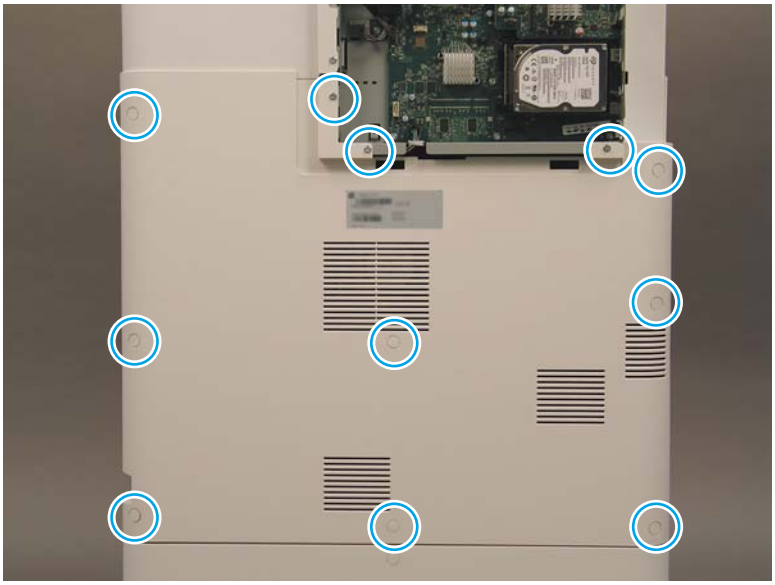
Figure 3-182 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

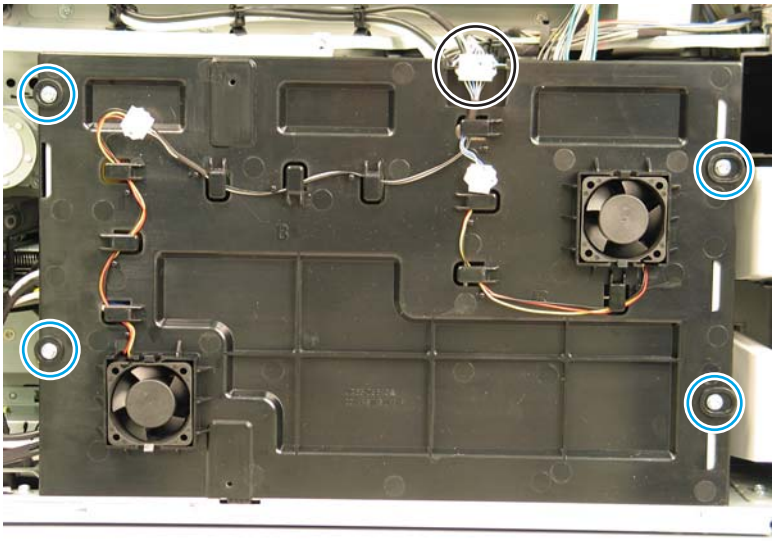
Figure 3-183 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-184 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 4: Remove the fuser drive board

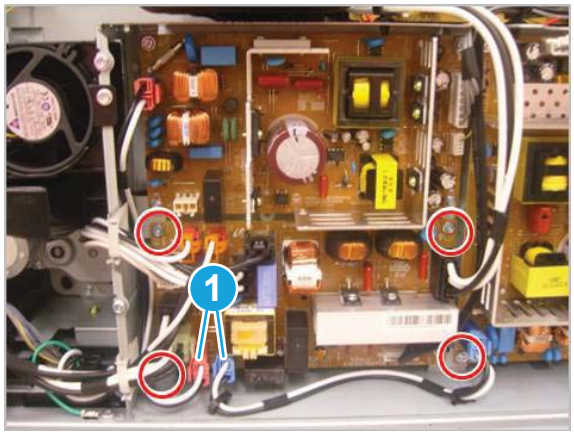
WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

NOTE: Many of the connectors on this board have retainers attached. Be sure to release the retainer before attempting to disconnect the connector.

▲ Disconnect twelve connectors and release one retainer on the lower left. Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser drive board.

Reinstallation tip: Two of the connectors (callout 1) can be mistakenly switched and connected to the wrong connector on the fuser drive board. If this happens, the printer will not power on. Make sure that the cables are installed in the correct positions.

Figure 3-185 Fuser drive board



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the developer fan
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the developer fan.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Developer fan part number
Developer fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

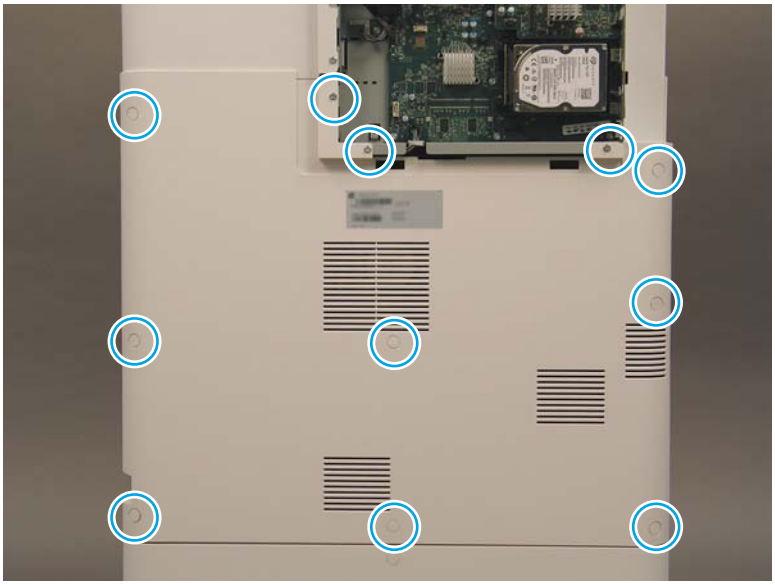
Figure 3-186 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

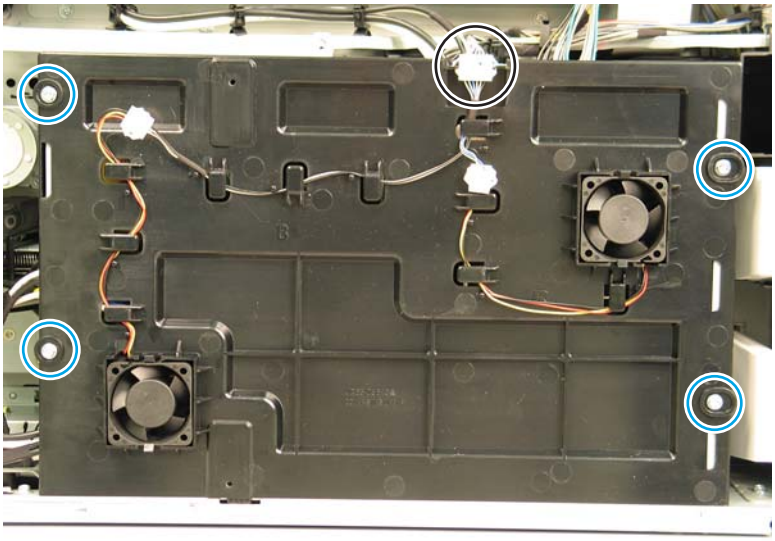
Figure 3-187 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-188 Remove the LVPS cover

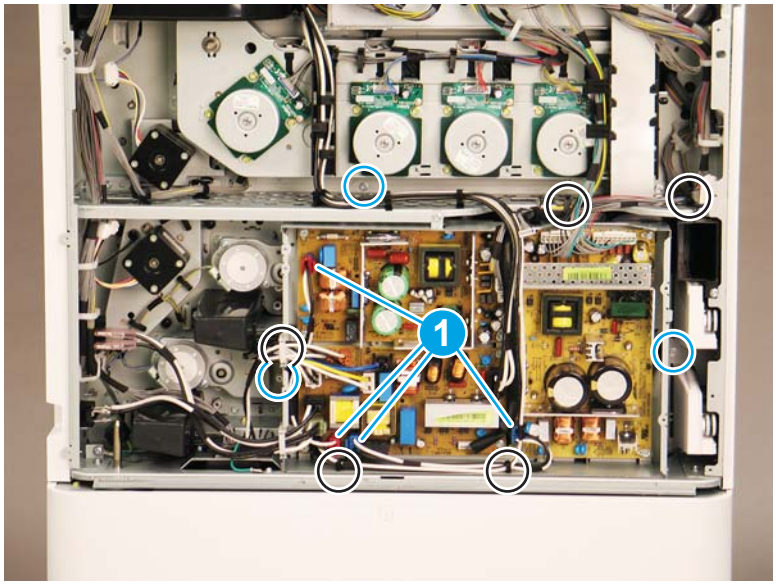


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

▲ Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

Figure 3-189 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the developer fan

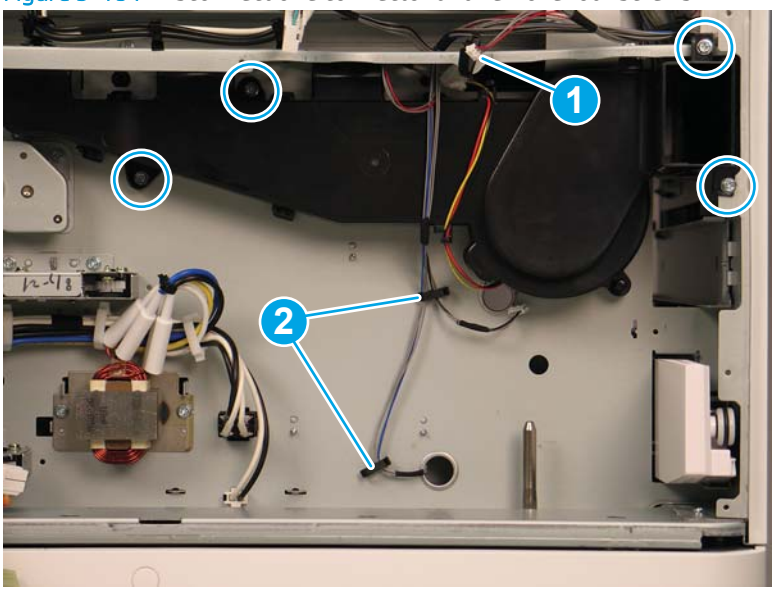
1. Remove Tray 2.
2. Inside the Tray 2 opening, disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-190 Disconnect one connector



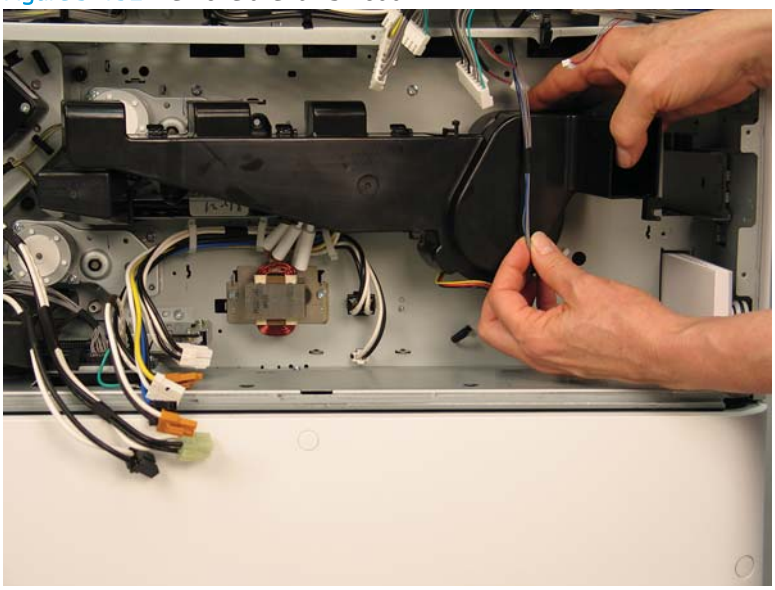
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two retainers (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-191 Disconnect one connector and remove four screws



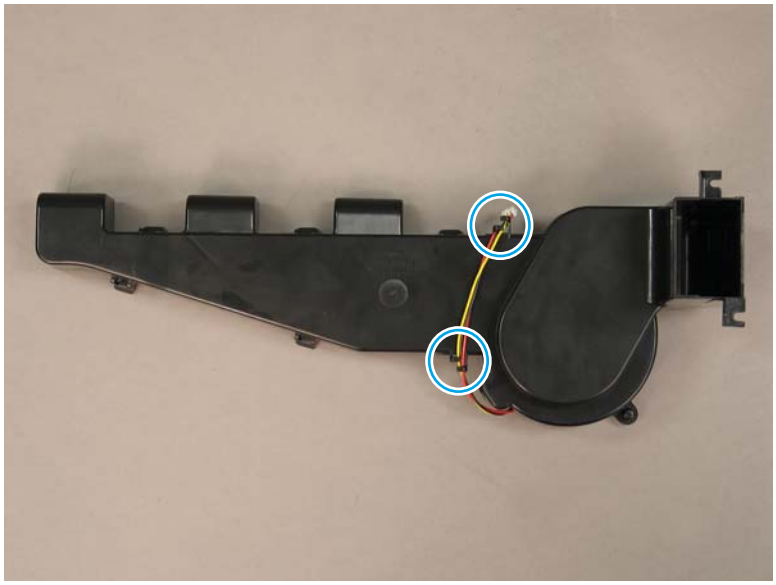
4. Remove the fan shroud under the cables.

Figure 3-192 Remove the fan shroud



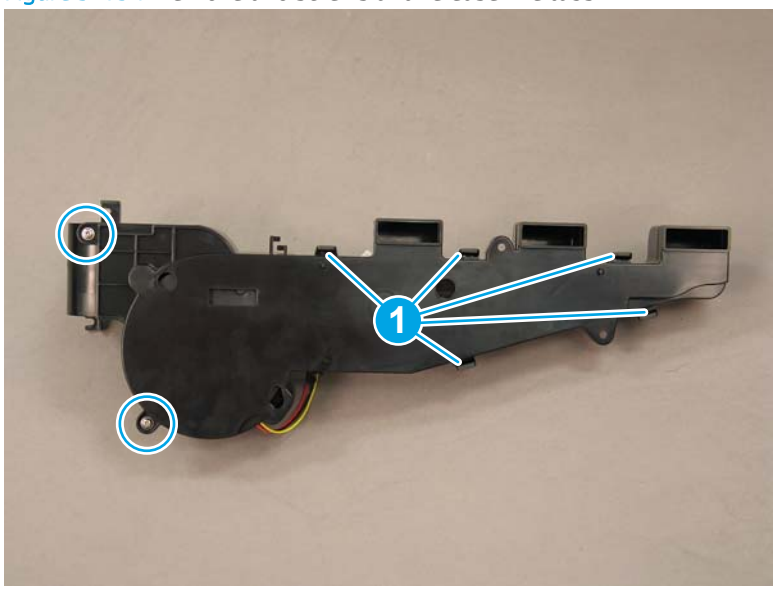
5. Release the cables from two retainers.

Figure 3-193 Release the cables



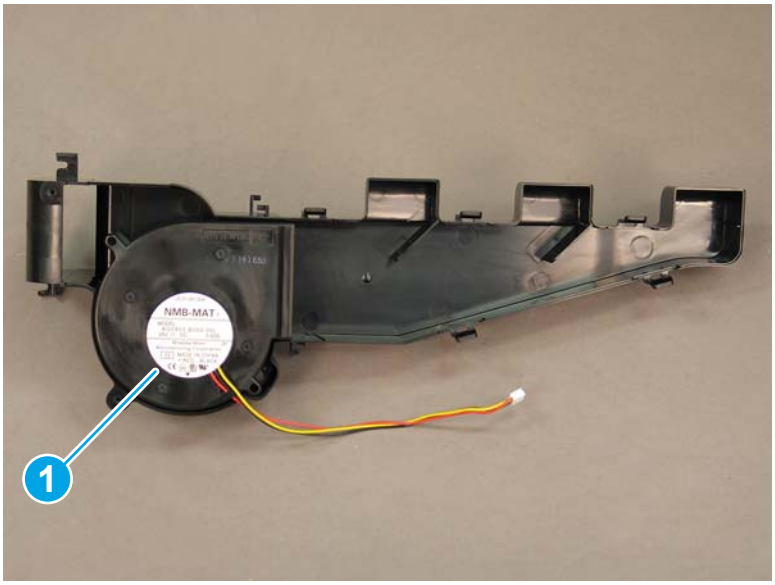
6. Turn the fan shroud over to the other side. Remove two screws, and then release five tabs (callout 1) to remove the fan cover.

Figure 3-194 Remove two screws and release five tabs



7. Remove the developer fan (callout 1).

Figure 3-195 Remove the developer fan



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower tray connector

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the lower tray connector
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower tray connector.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Lower tray connector part number
Lower tray connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

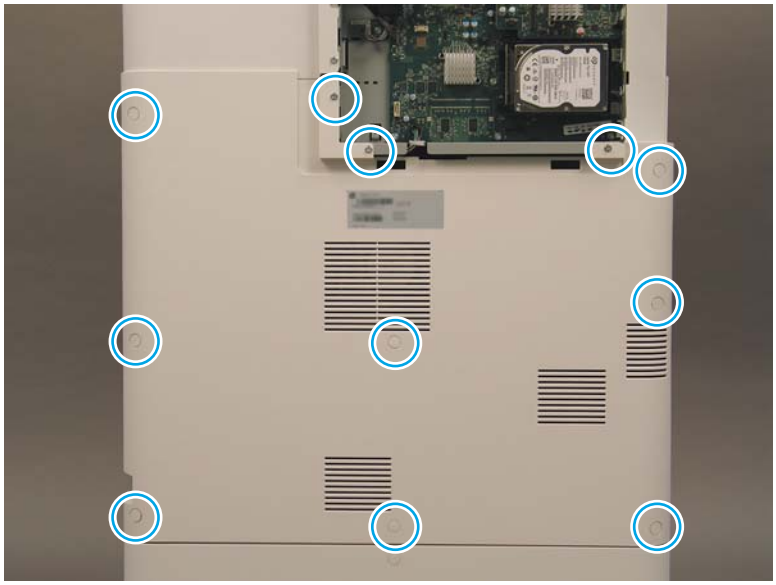
Figure 3-196 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

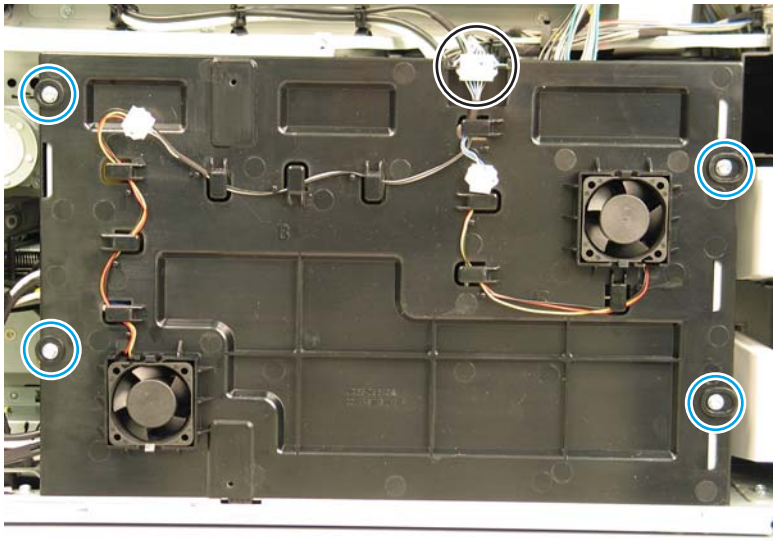
Figure 3-197 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

▲ Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

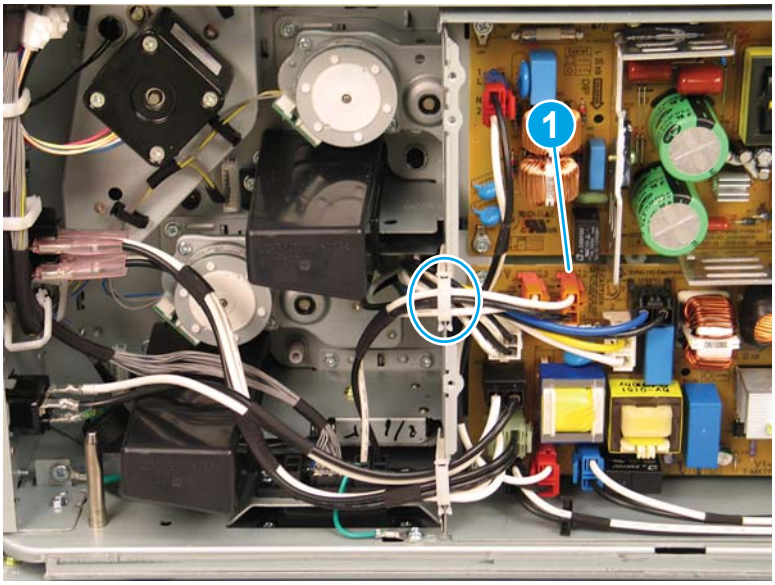
Figure 3-198 Remove the LVPS cover



Step 4: Remove the lower tray connector

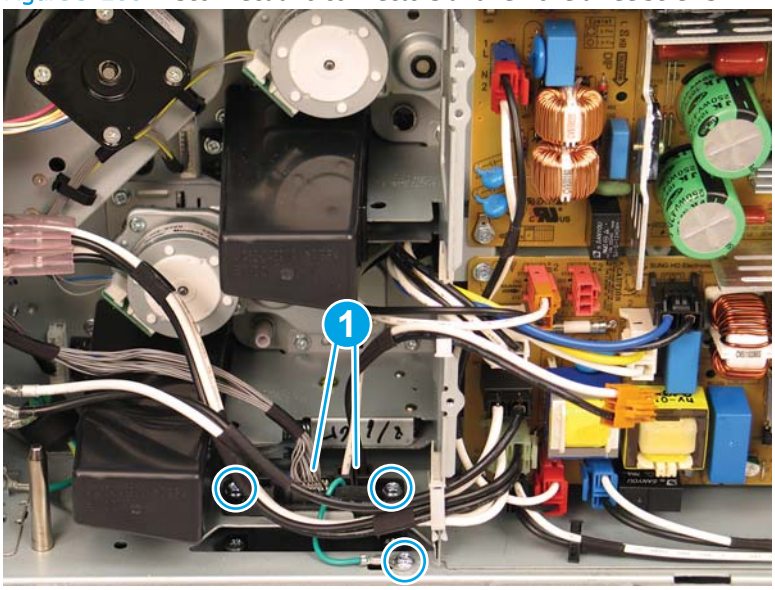
1. Release one retainer, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 3-199 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws, and then remove the lower tray connector.

Figure 3-200 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser fan.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser fan part number	
SAM-JC31-00161A	Fan Type 7

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

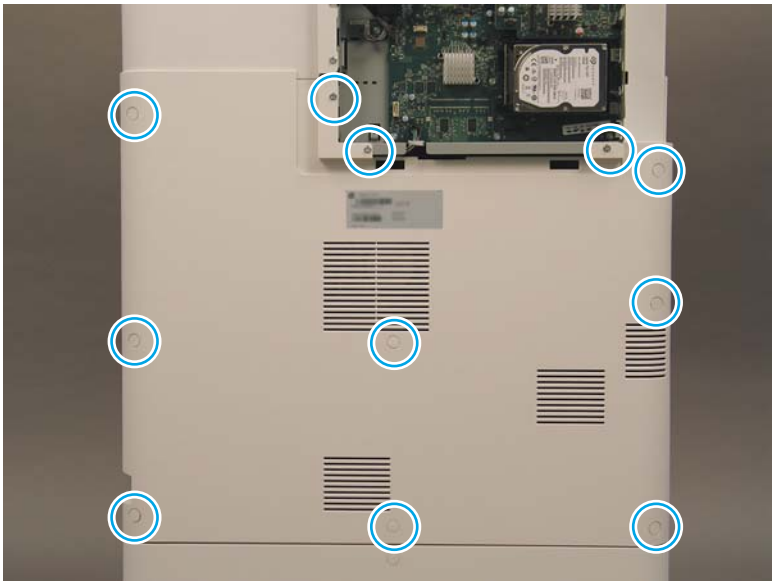
Figure 3-201 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

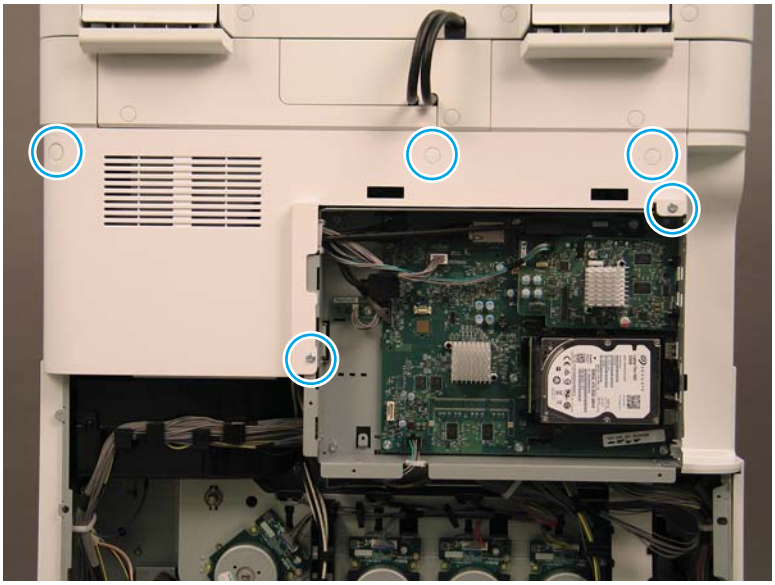
Figure 3-202 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-203 Remove the upper rear cover

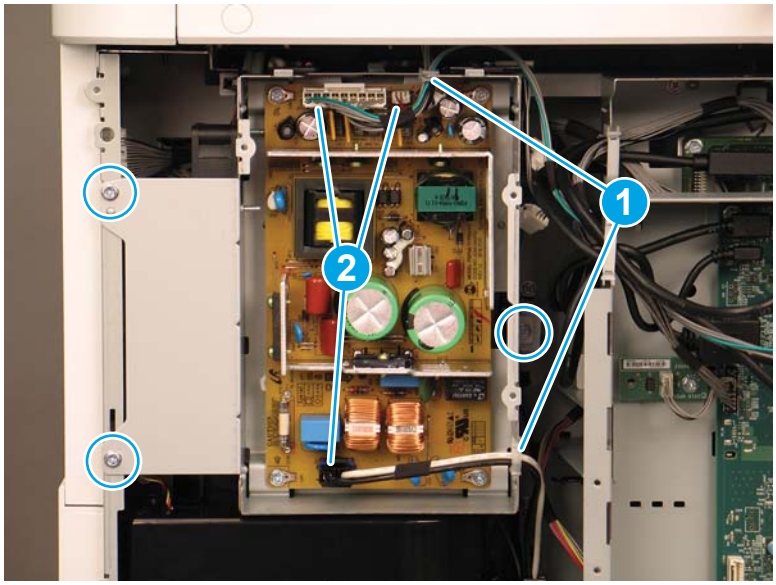


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

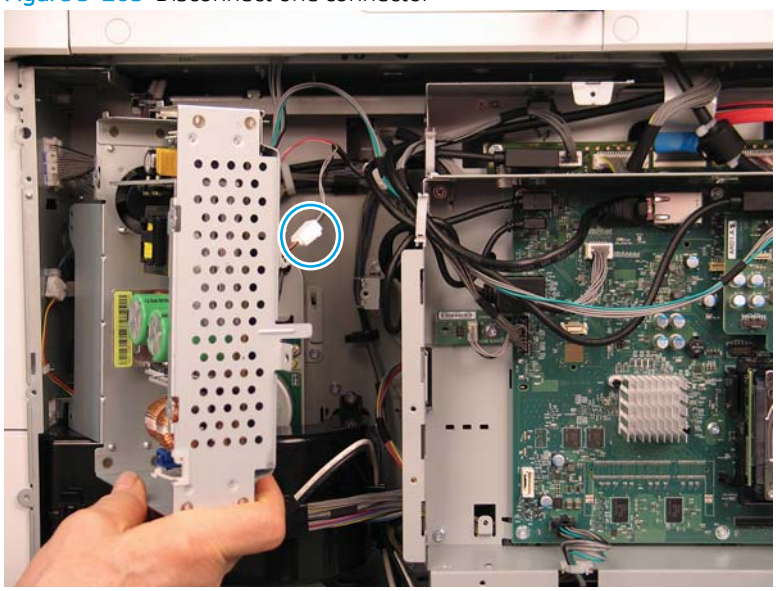
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-204 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-205 Disconnect one connector

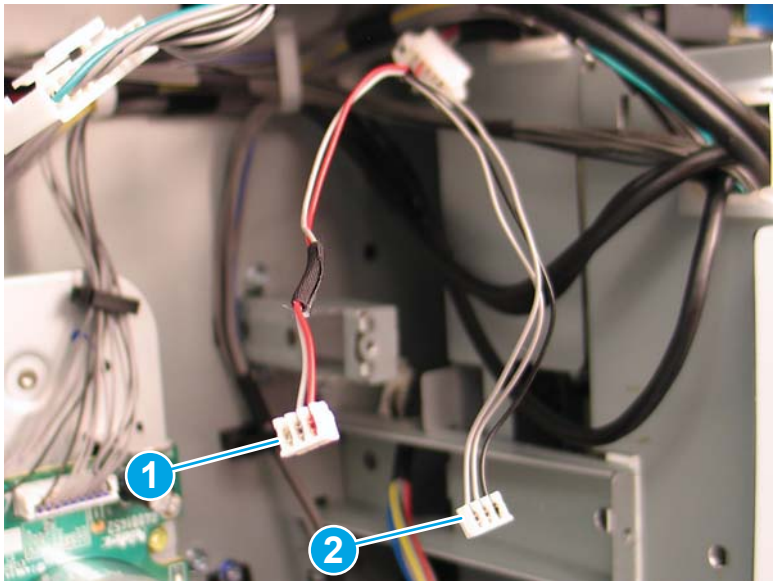


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-206 LVPS connectors installation

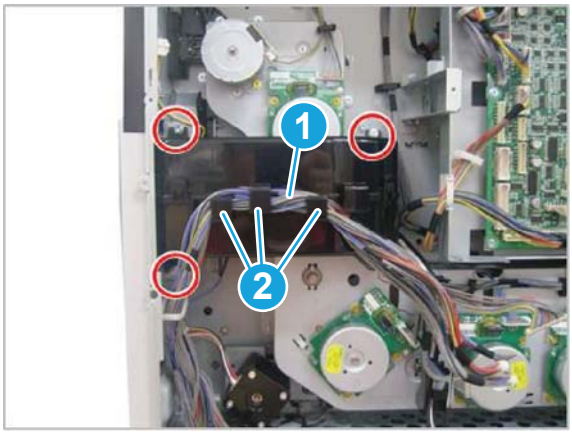


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

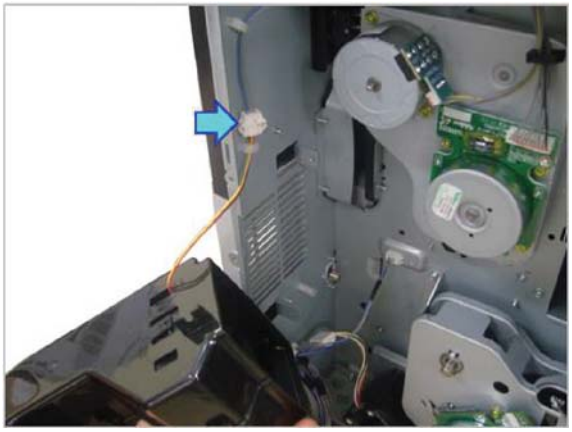
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-207 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-208 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-209 Release five tabs



4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

Figure 3-210 Remove the fuser fan



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01059C	Main Drive Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

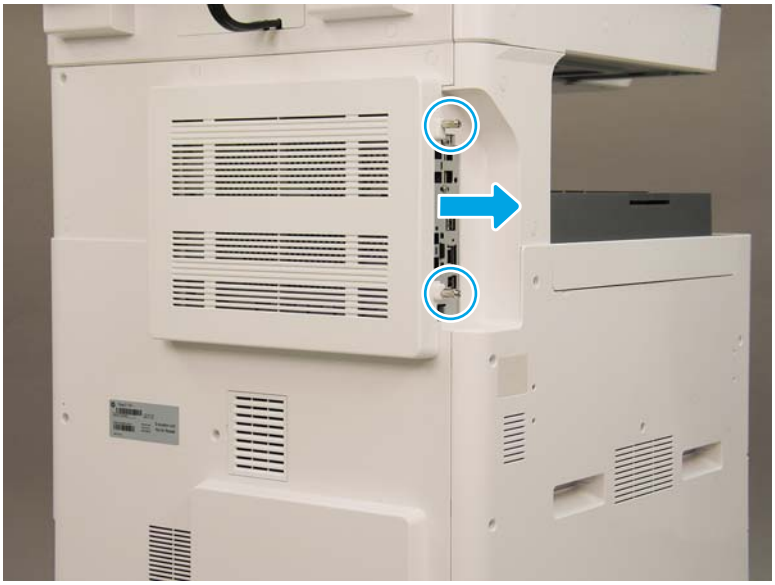
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

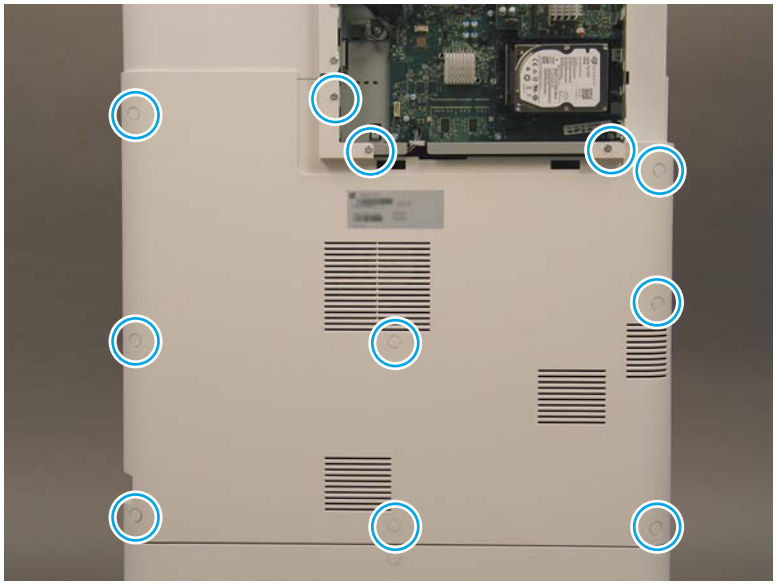
Figure 3-211 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

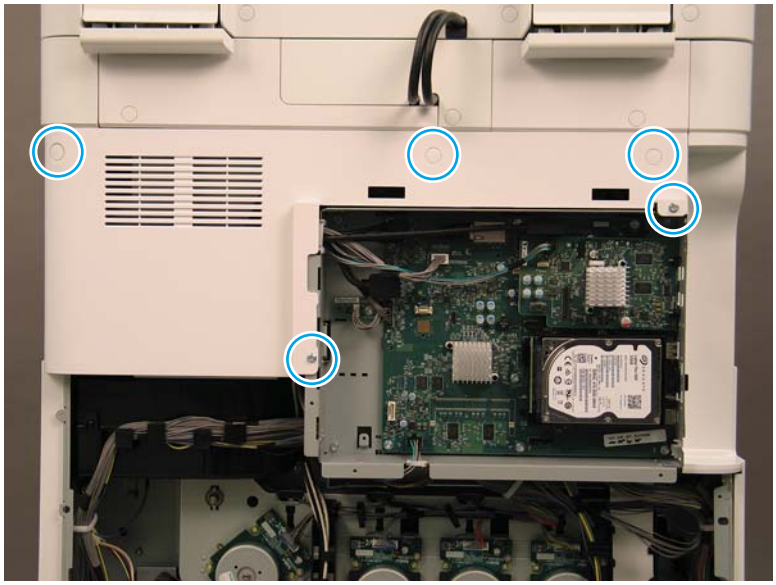
Figure 3-212 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

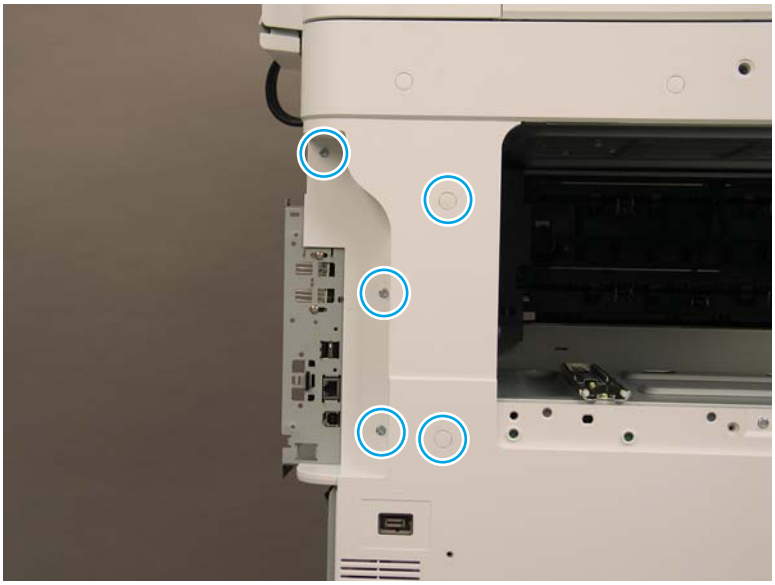
Figure 3-213 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

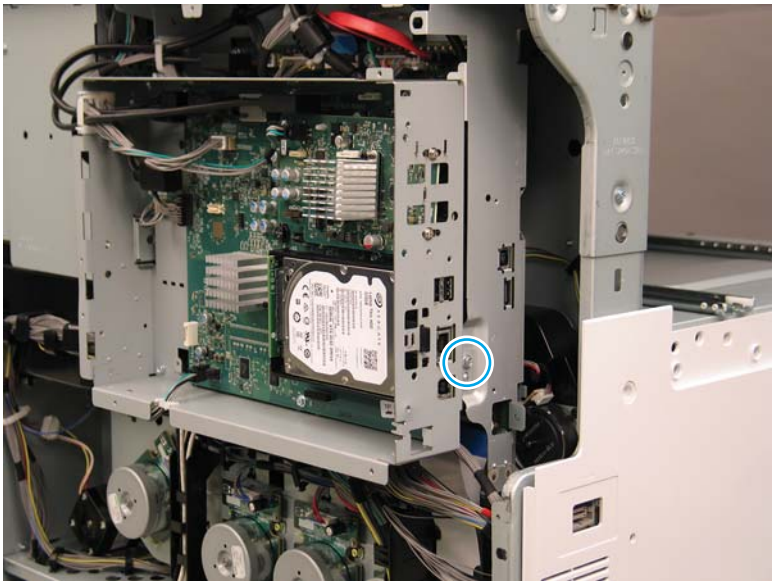
Figure 3-214 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

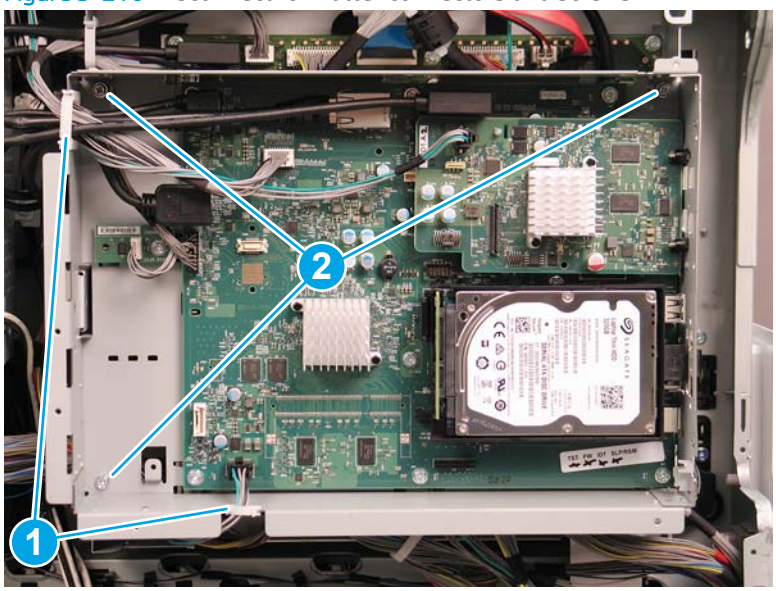
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-215 Remove one screw



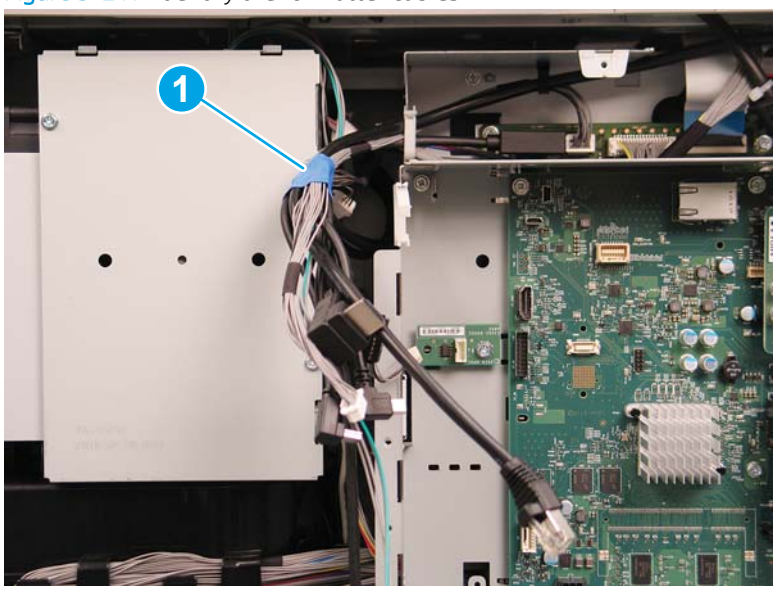
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-216 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-217 Identify the formatter cables

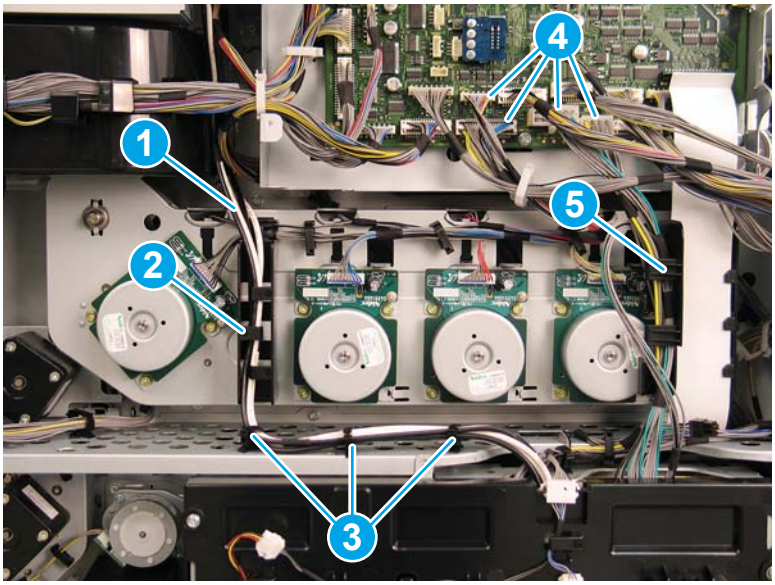


4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main drive unit

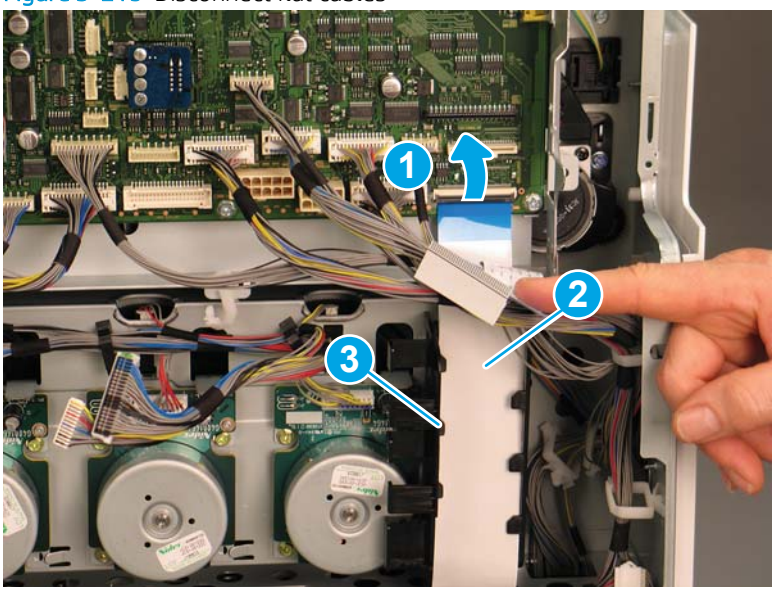
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 3-218 Disconnect and release cables



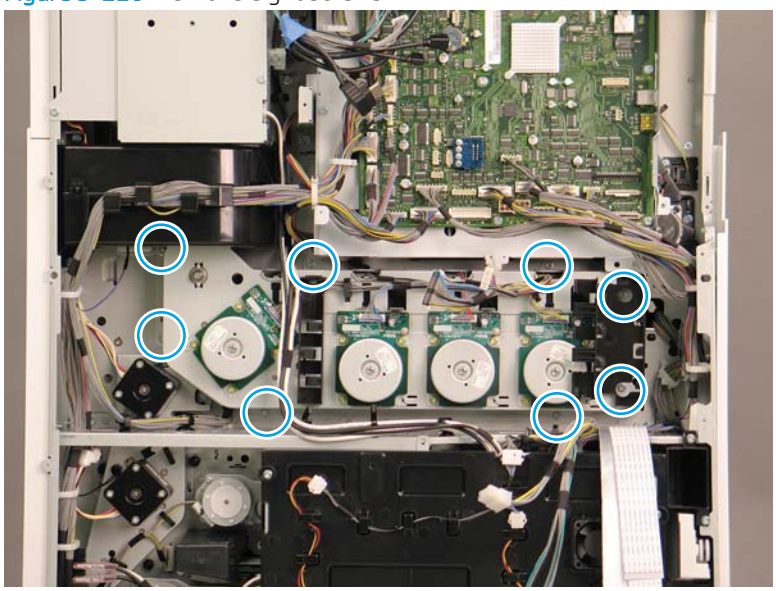
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 3-219 Disconnect flat cables



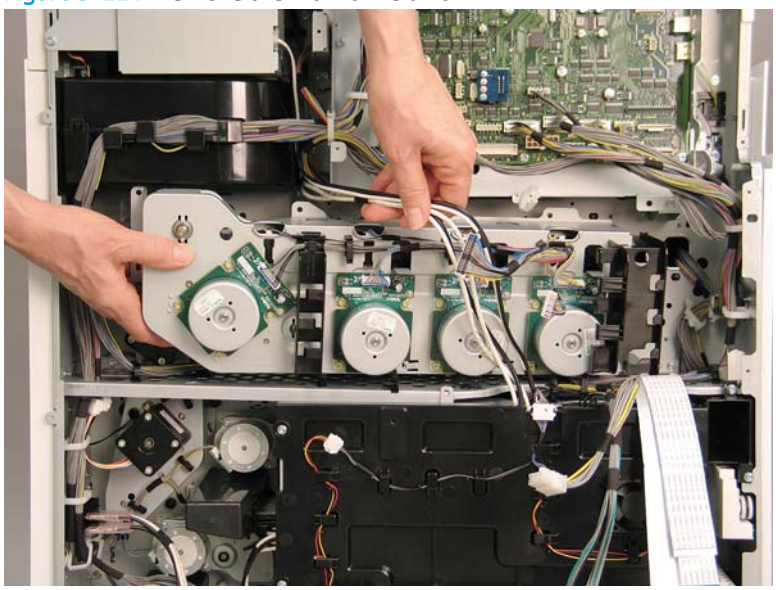
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 3-220 Remove eight screws



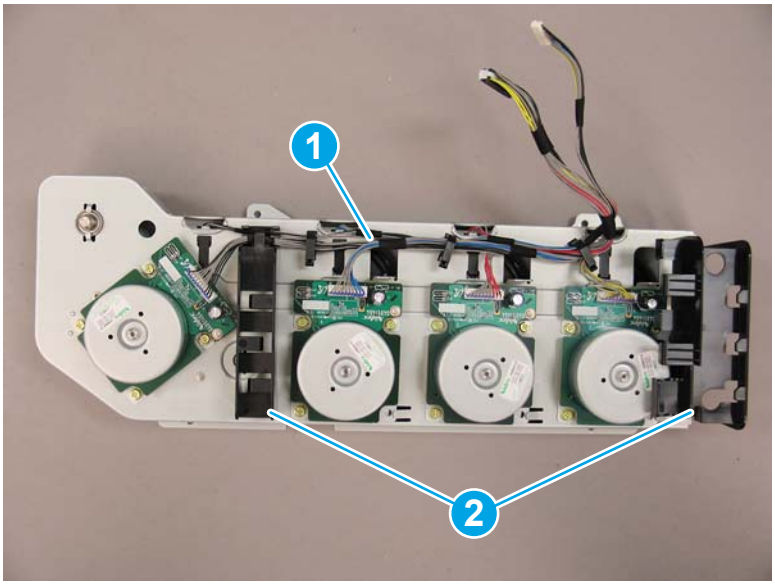
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 3-221 Remove the main drive unit



5. Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

Figure 3-222 Remove cables and guides



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Alienation motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the alienation motor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the alienation motor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Alienation motor part number
Alienation motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

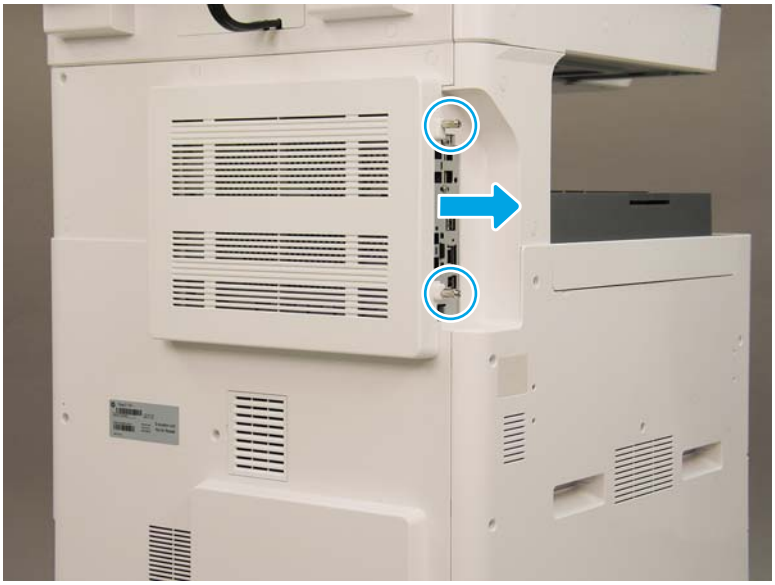
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

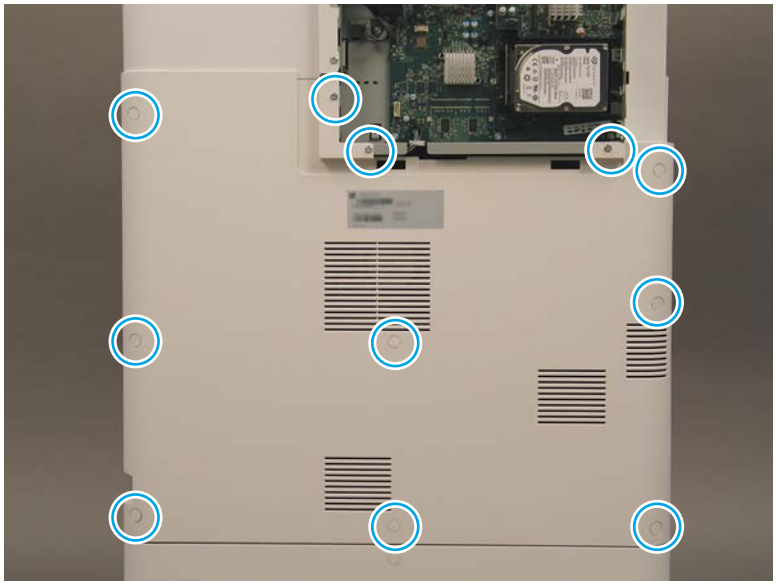
Figure 3-223 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

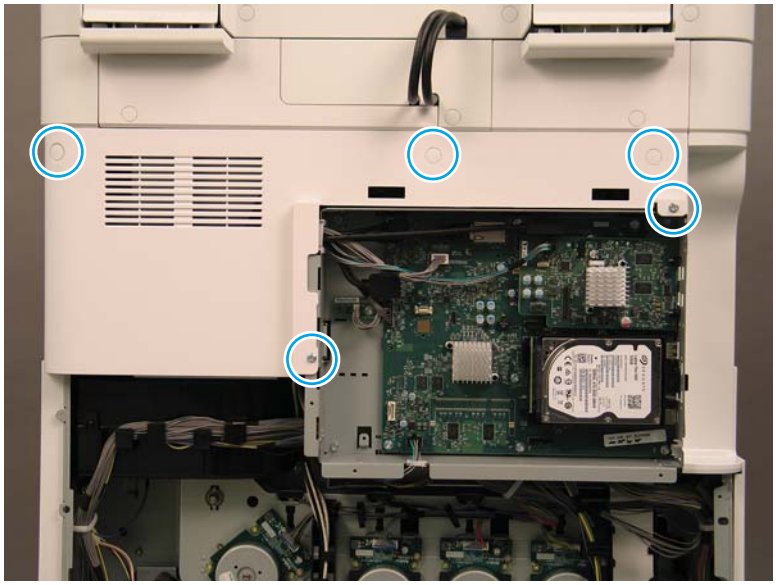
Figure 3-224 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

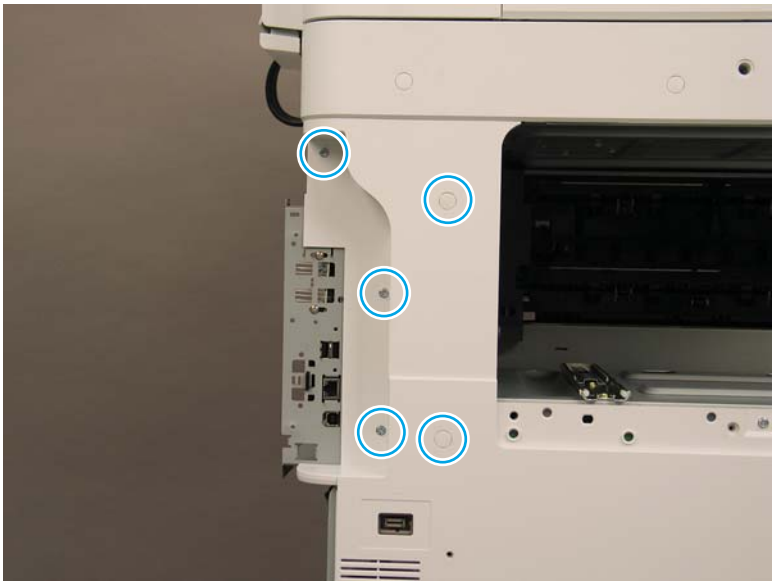
Figure 3-225 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

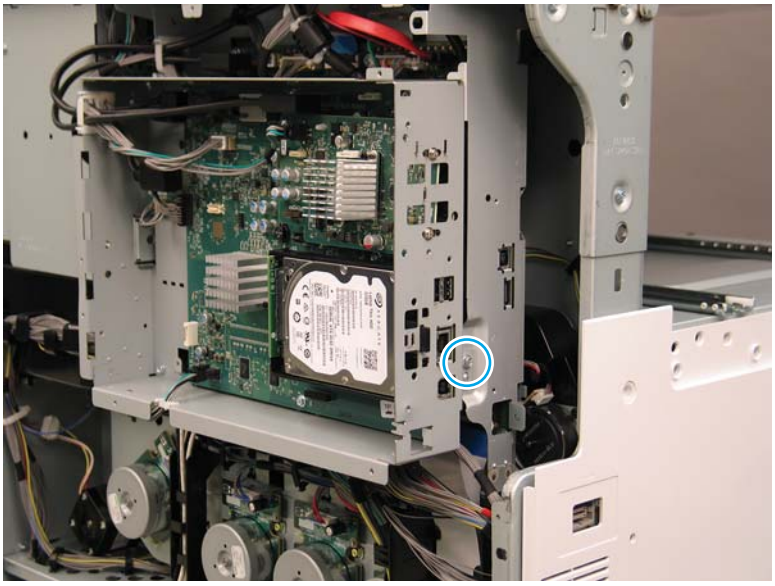
Figure 3-226 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

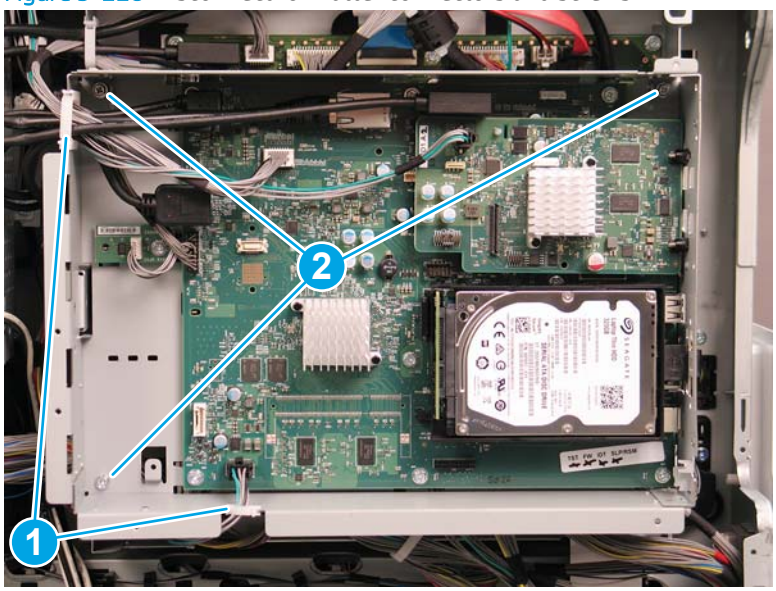
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-227 Remove one screw



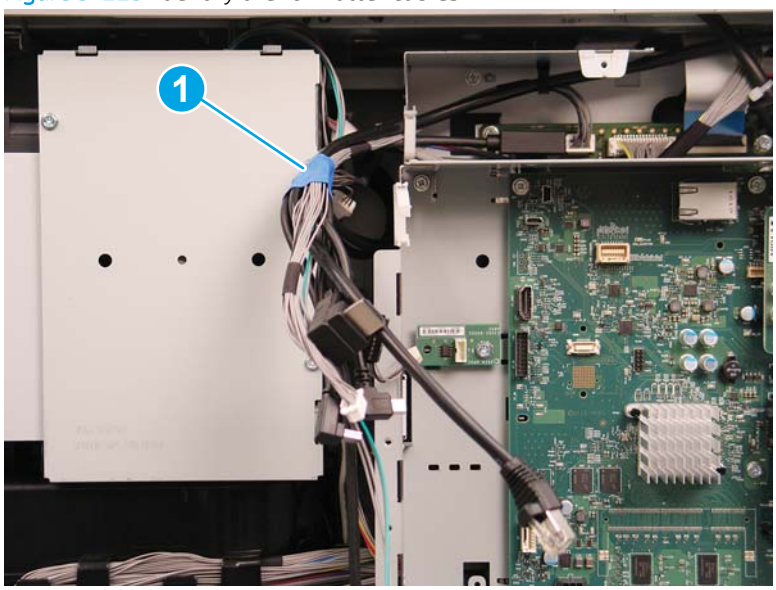
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-228 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-229 Identify the formatter cables

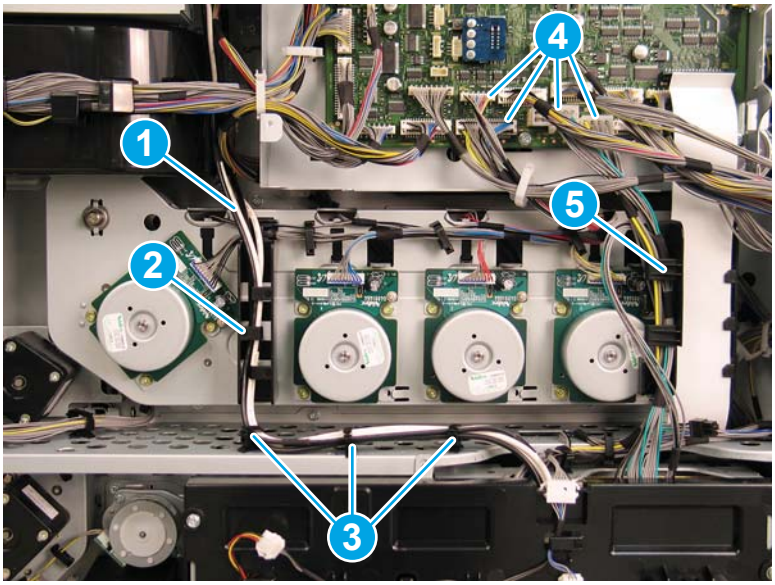


4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main drive unit

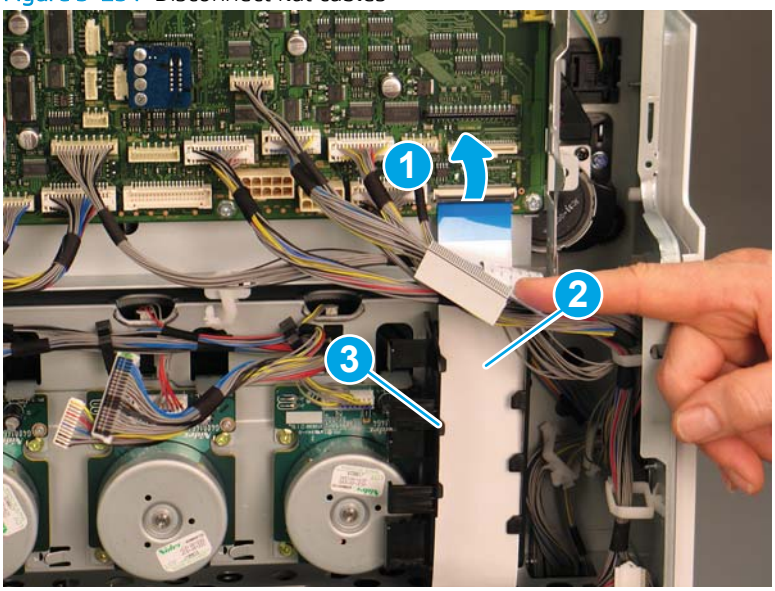
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 3-230 Disconnect and release cables



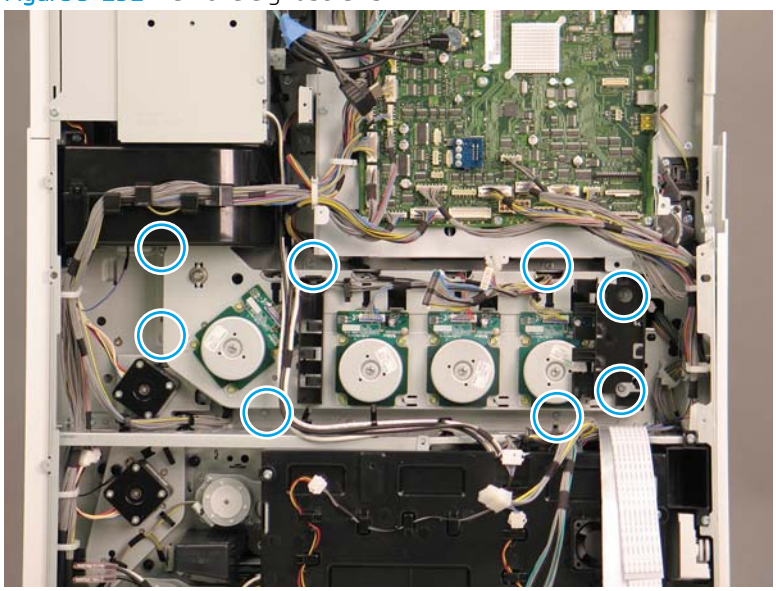
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 3-231 Disconnect flat cables



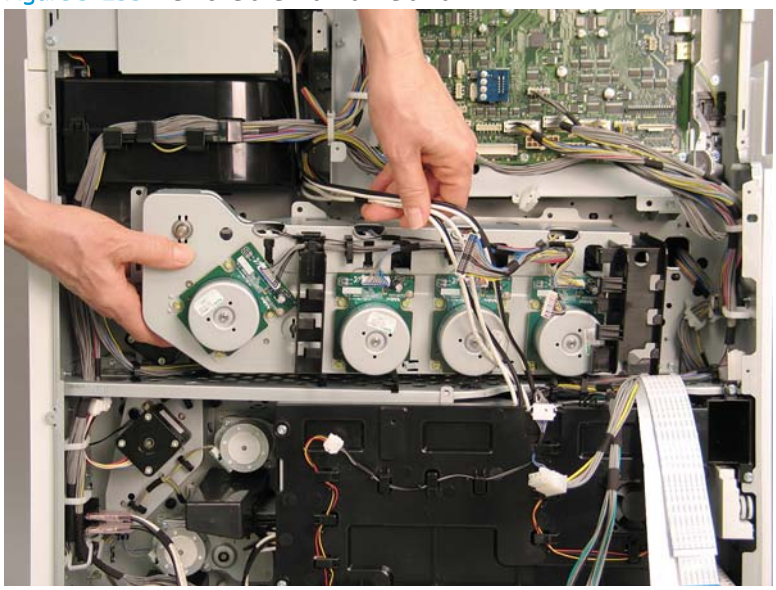
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 3-232 Remove eight screws



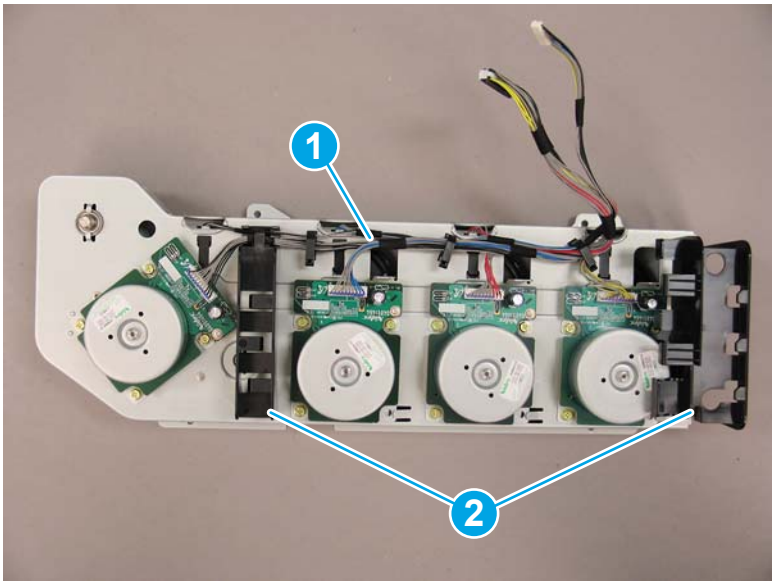
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 3-233 Remove the main drive unit



5. Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

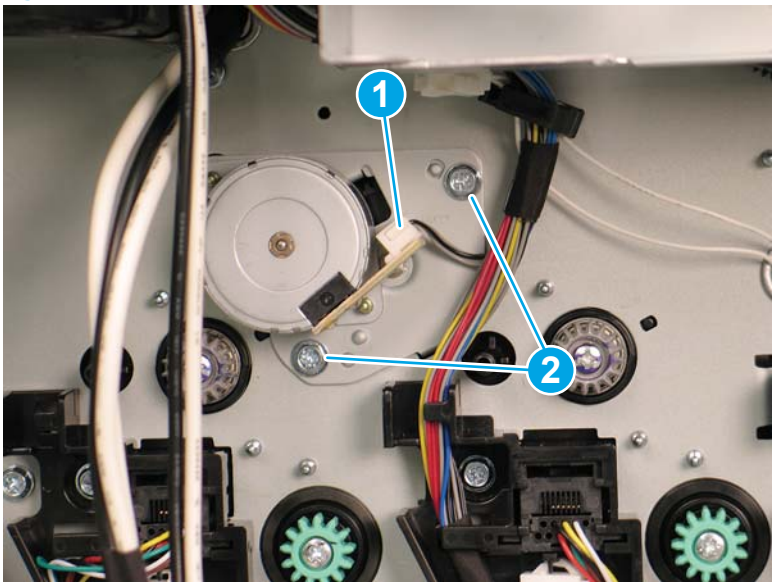
Figure 3-234 Remove cables and guides



Step 7: Remove the alienation motor

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the alienation motor.

Figure 3-235 Remove the alienation motor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inductor unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the inductor unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the inductor unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Inductor unit part number
Inductor unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

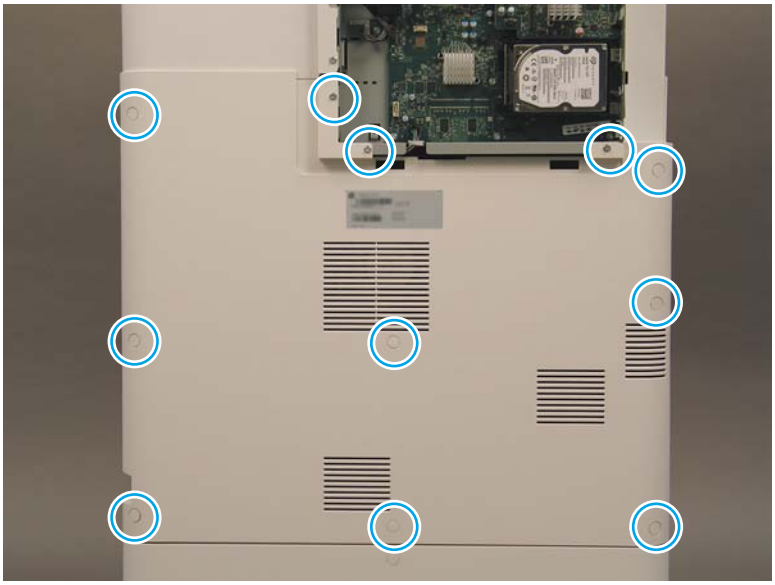
Figure 3-236 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

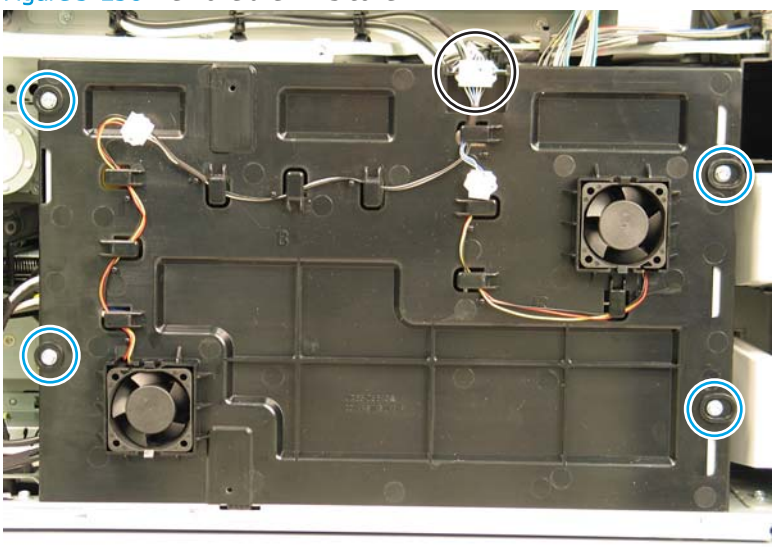
Figure 3-237 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-238 Remove the LVPS cover

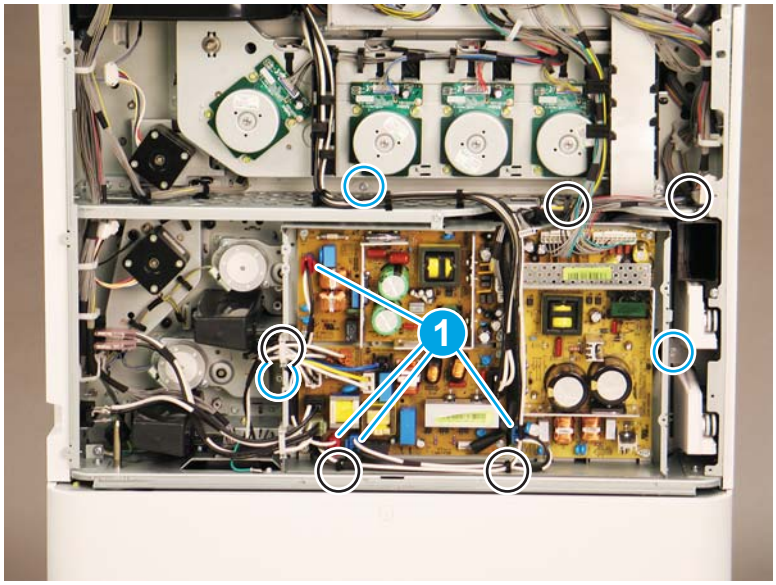


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

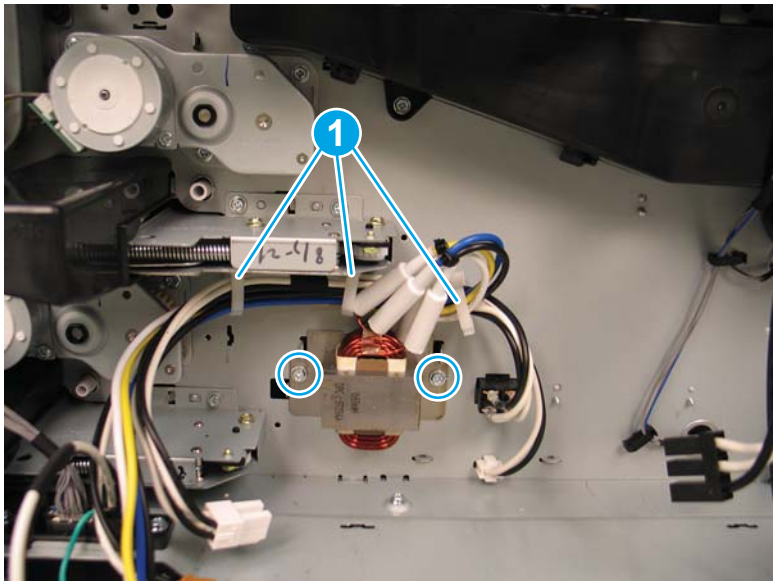
Figure 3-239 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the inductor unit

▲ Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws, and then remove the inductor unit.

Figure 3-240 Remove the inductor unit



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Auto closing unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the auto closing unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Auto closing unit part number
Auto closing unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

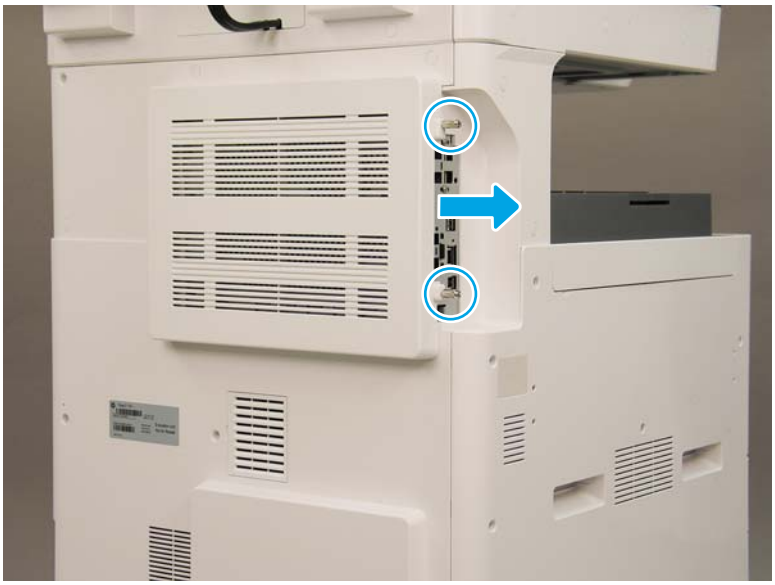
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

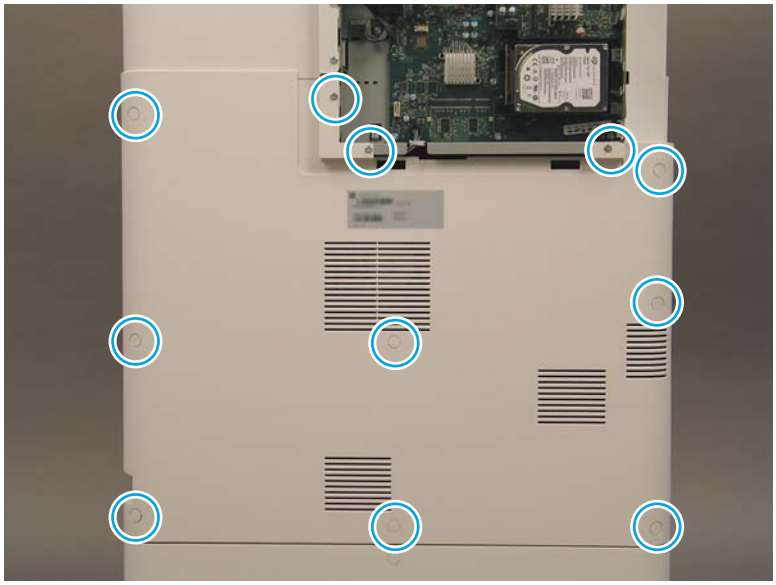
Figure 3-241 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

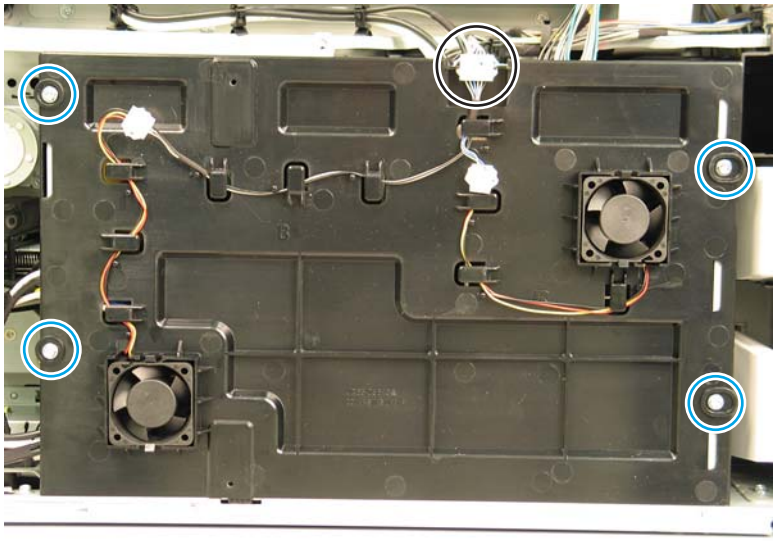
Figure 3-242 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-243 Remove the LVPS cover

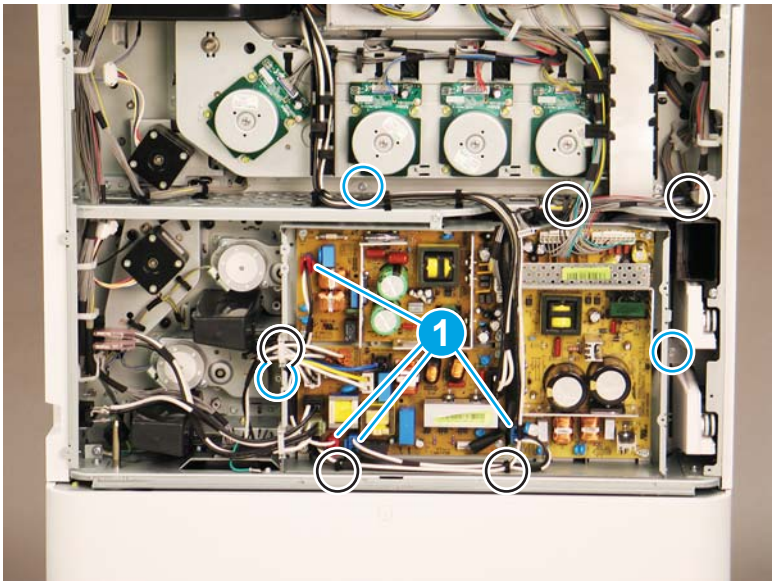


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and low-voltage power supply (LVPS) boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

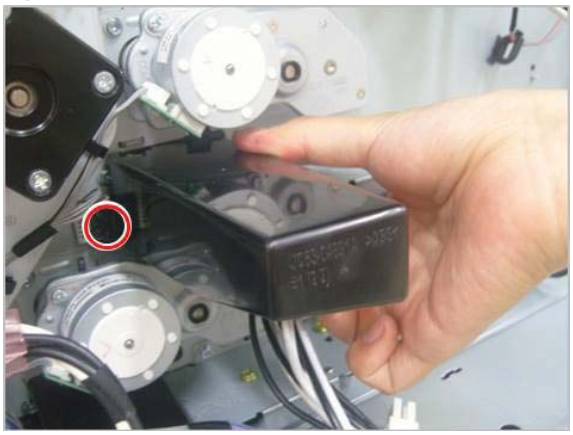
Figure 3-244 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the auto closing unit

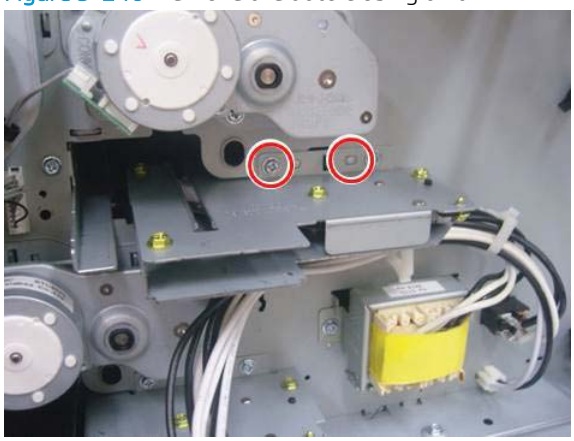
1. Remove Tray 2.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cassette rail cover.

Figure 3-245 Remove the CST rail cover



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the auto closing unit.

Figure 3-246 Remove the auto closing unit



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser/output drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser/output drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser/output drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01064A	Drive, Fuser Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

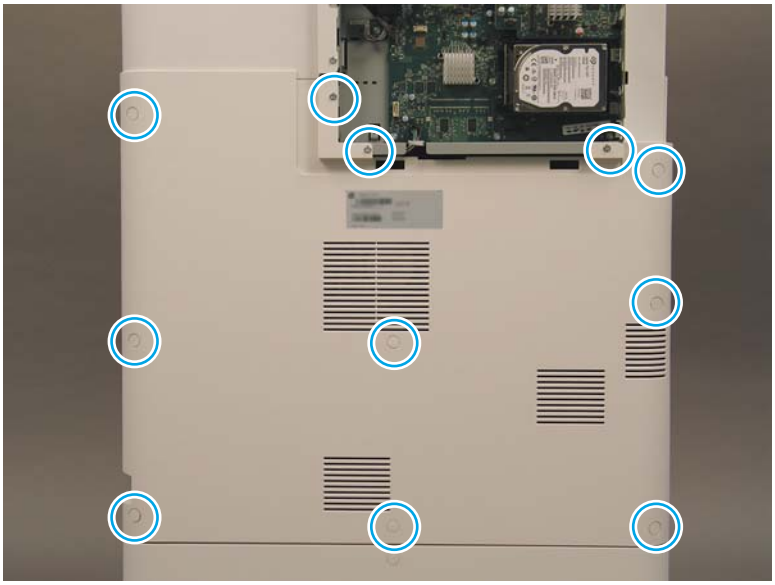
Figure 3-247 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

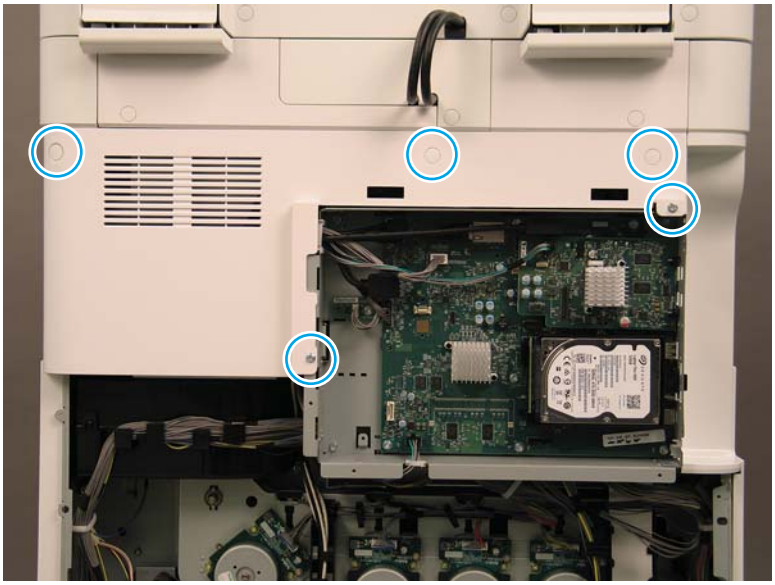
Figure 3-248 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-249 Remove the upper rear cover

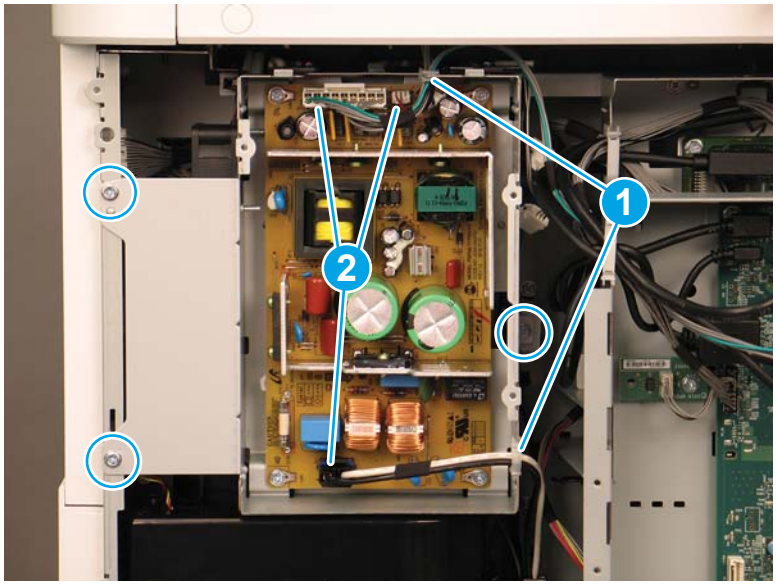


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

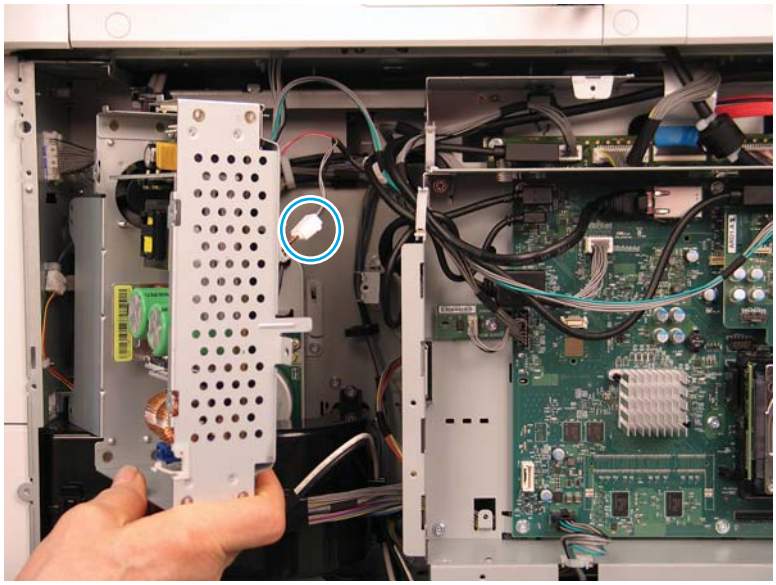
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-250 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-251 Disconnect one connector

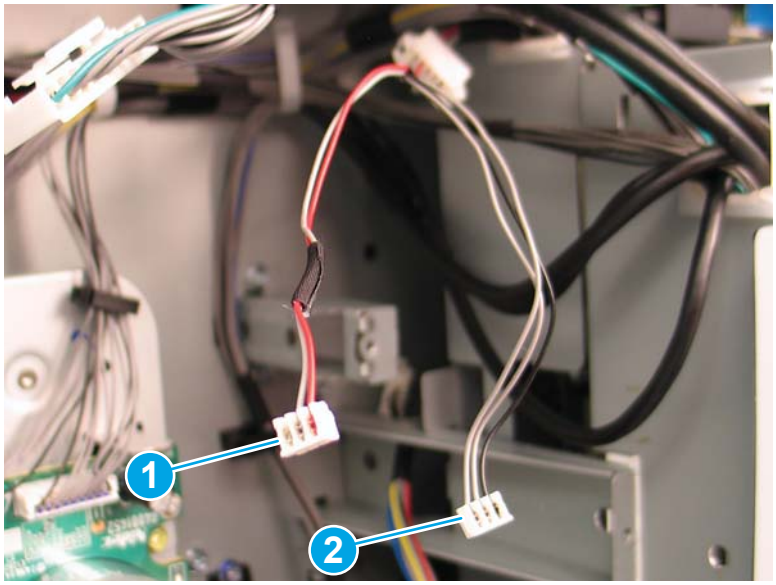


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-252 LVPS connectors installation

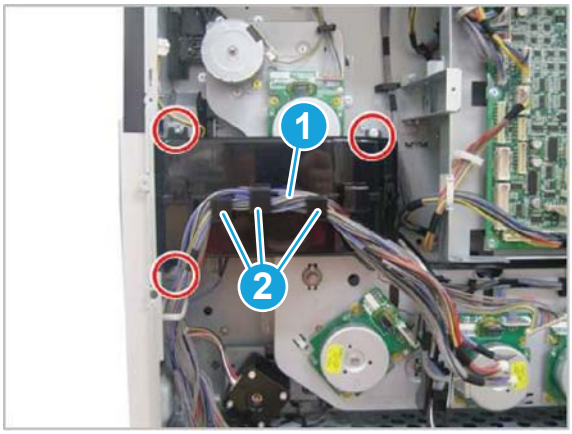


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

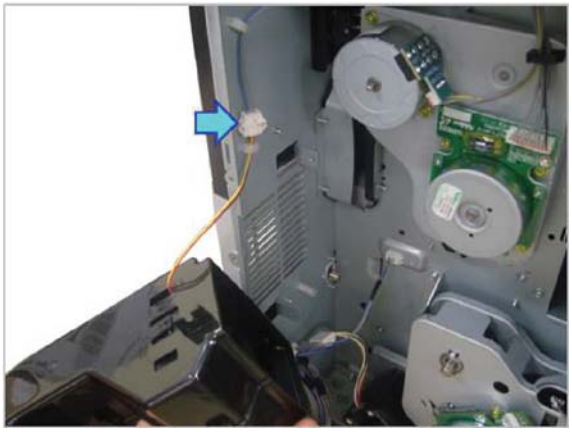
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-253 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-254 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-255 Release five tabs



4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

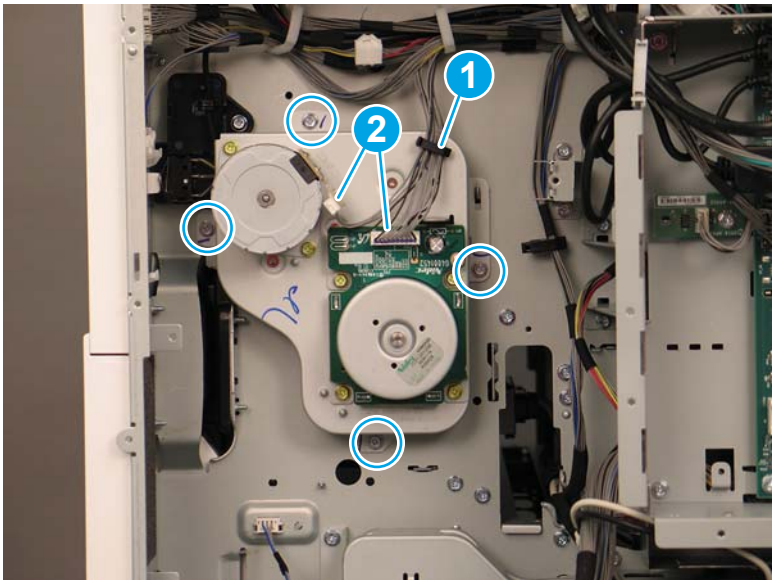
Figure 3-256 Remove the fuser fan



Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

Figure 3-257 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door open sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right door open sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door open sensor part number
Right door open sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

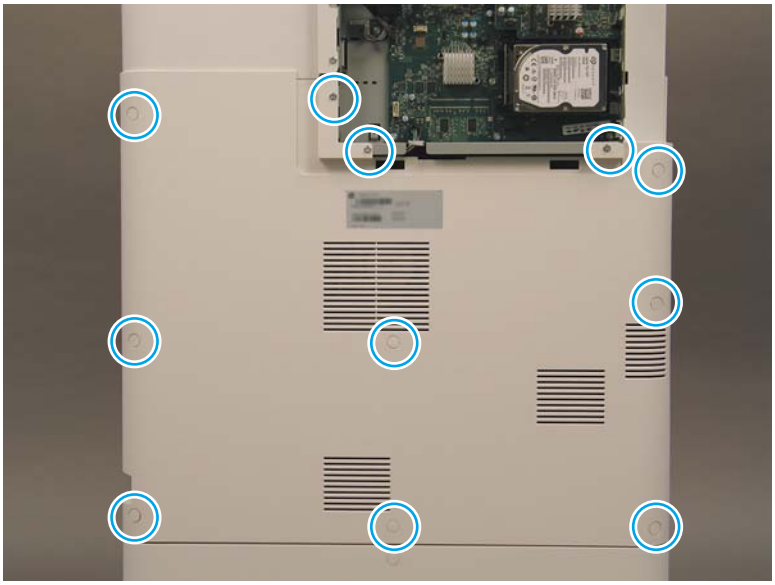
Figure 3-258 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

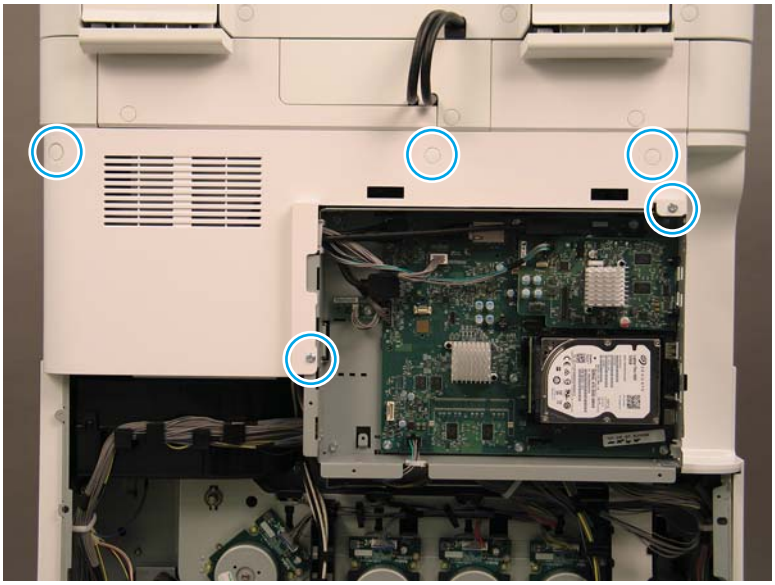
Figure 3-259 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-260 Remove the upper rear cover

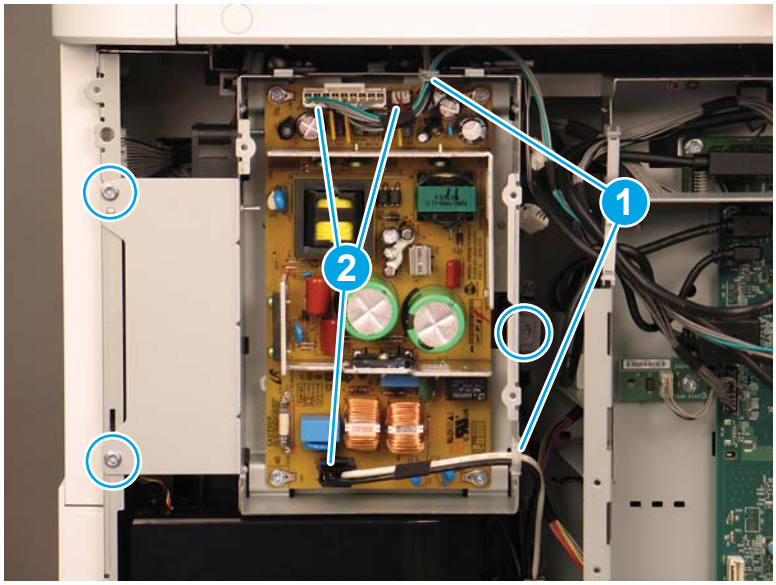


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

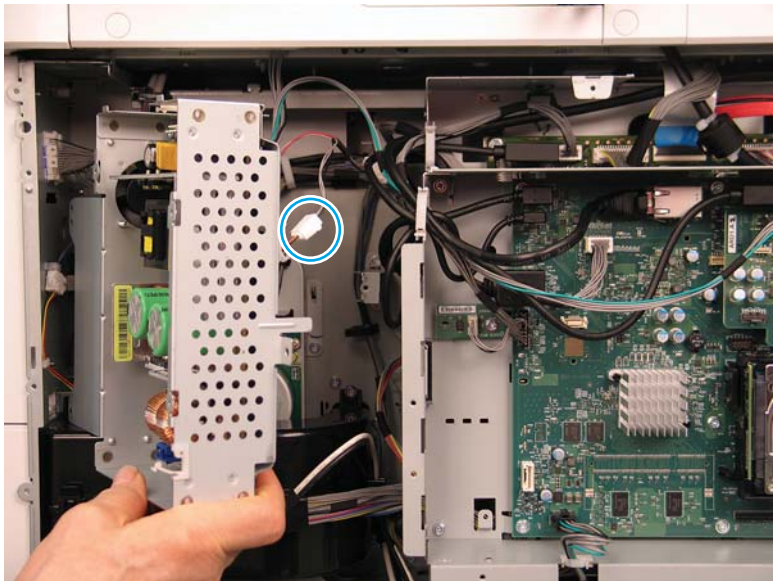
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-261 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-262 Disconnect one connector

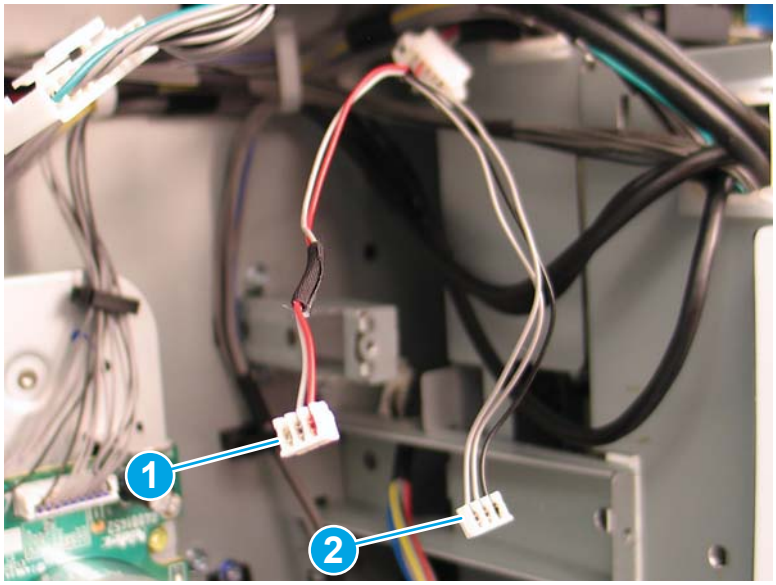


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-263 LVPS connectors installation

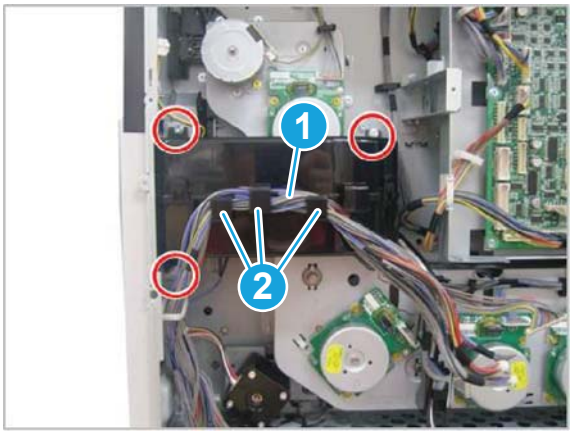


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

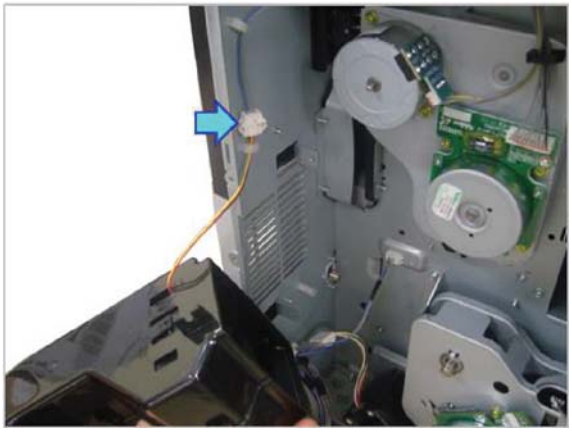
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-264 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-265 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-266 Release five tabs



4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

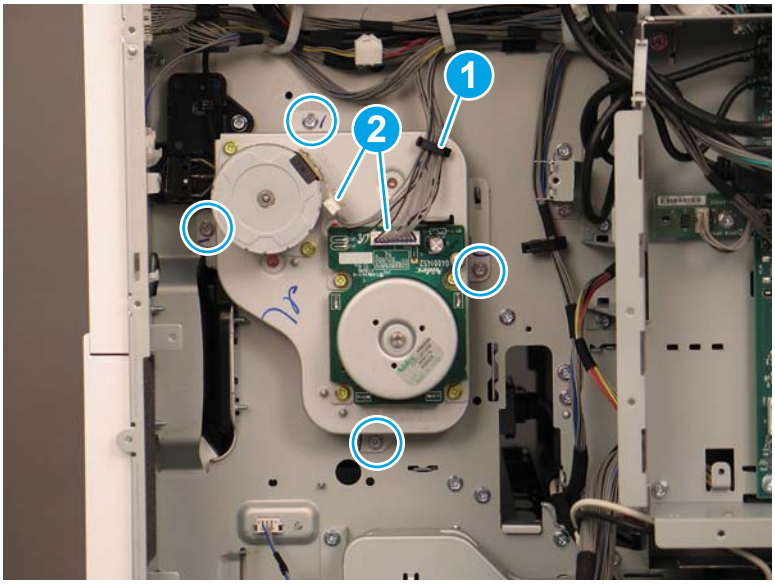
Figure 3-267 Remove the fuser fan



Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

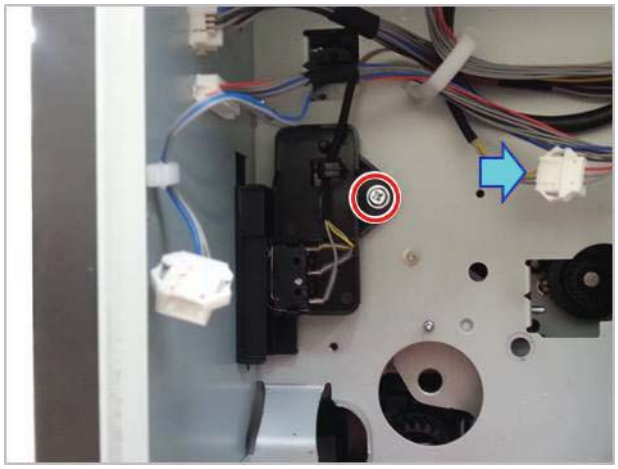
Figure 3-268 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor

- Disconnect one connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the right door open sensor.

Figure 3-269 Remove the side door open sensor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right door open switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage
- Step 5: Remove the fuser fan
- Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor
- Step 8: Remove the right door open switch
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the right door open switch.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right door open switch part number
Right door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

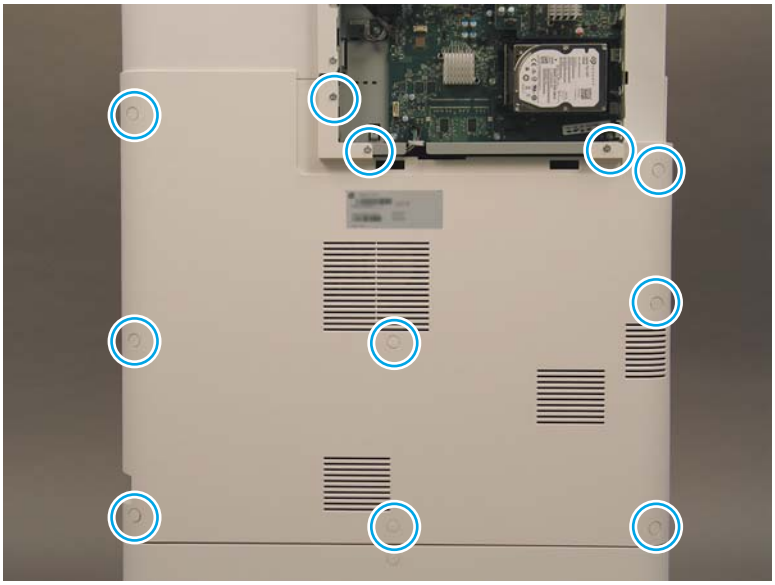
Figure 3-270 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

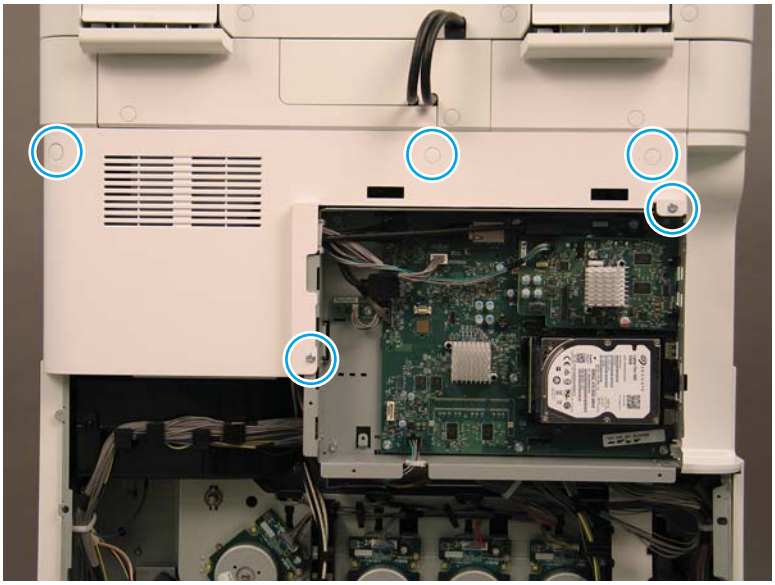
Figure 3-271 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-272 Remove the upper rear cover

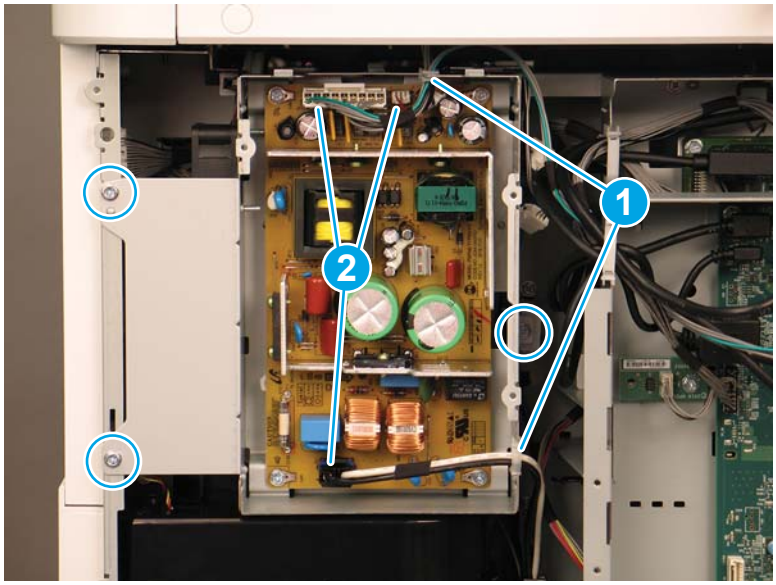


Step 4: Remove the LVPS board 3 and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

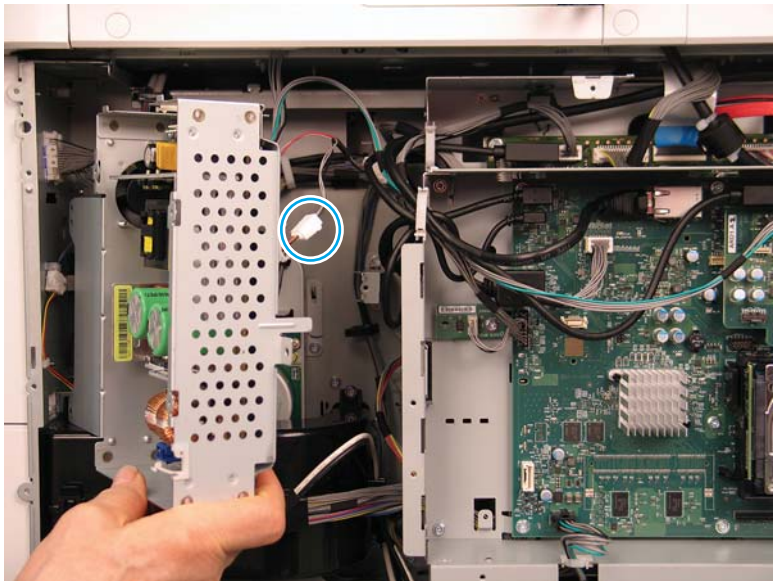
1. Release the cables from two retainers (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-273 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Lift the LVPS board and cage slightly away from the printer, and disconnect one connector behind the cage. Remove the LVPS board and cage.

Figure 3-274 Disconnect one connector

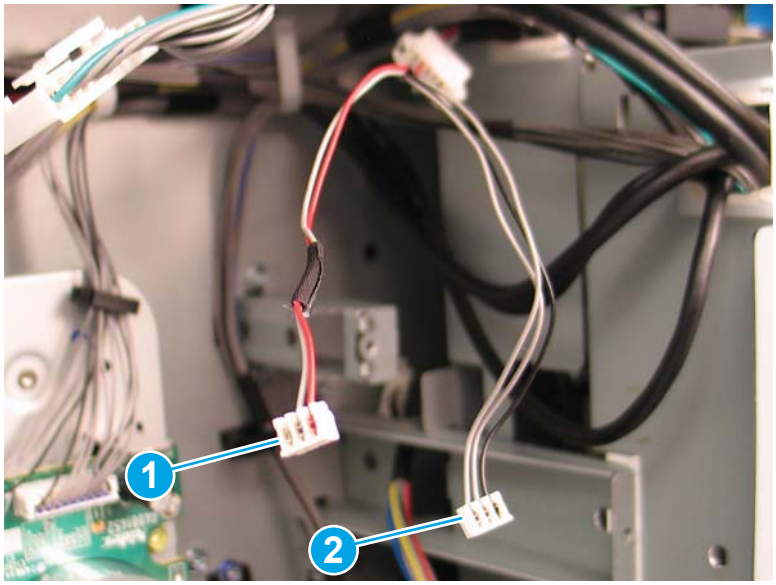


3. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: LVPS board and cage

- Two of the connectors are the same size and might be installed in the incorrect positions. Make sure that the two-wire harness (callout 1) is installed on the LVPS board 3 and the three-wire harness (callout 2) is installed in the fan connector behind the LVPS board 3 cage.

Figure 3-275 LVPS connectors installation

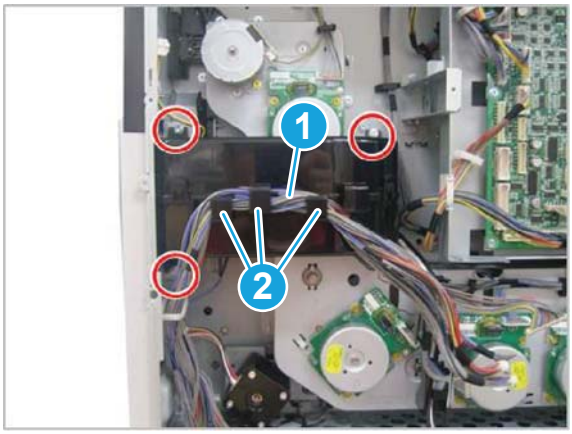


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the fuser fan

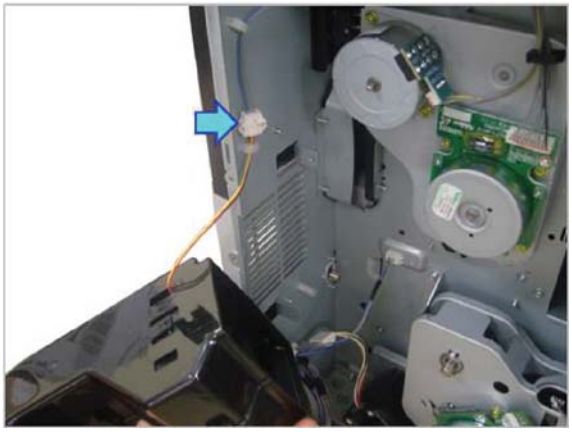
1. Release the cables (callout 1) from the cable guides (callout 2), and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-276 Release the cables and remove three screws



2. Pull the fuser fan housing slightly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-277 Disconnect one connector



3. If you are replacing the fuser fan, release five tabs along the edges of the fan housing. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Figure 3-278 Release five tabs



4. If you are replacing the fuser fan, separate the fan housing, and then remove the fuser fan. If you are removing the fuser fan housing to access an assembly behind it, skip this step.

Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the fan in the housing and install the replacement fan in the same orientation.

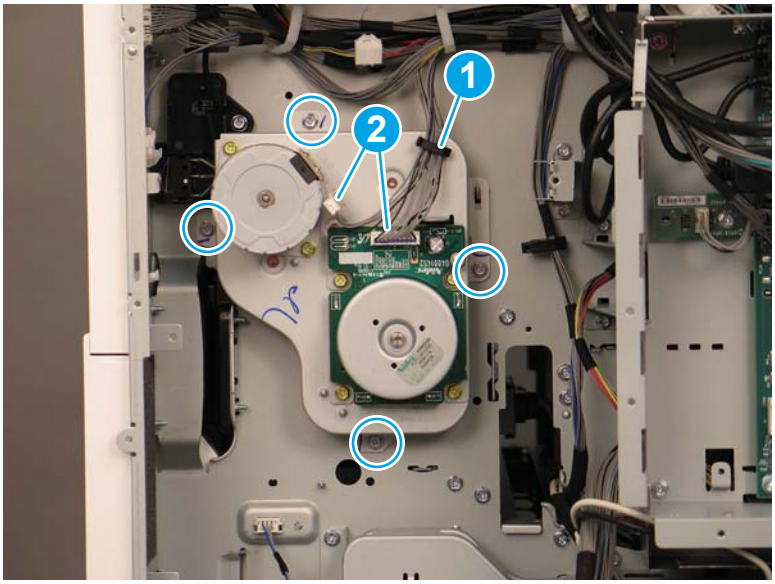
Figure 3-279 Remove the fuser fan



Step 6: Remove the fuser/output drive unit

- Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove four screws, and then remove the fuser/output drive unit.

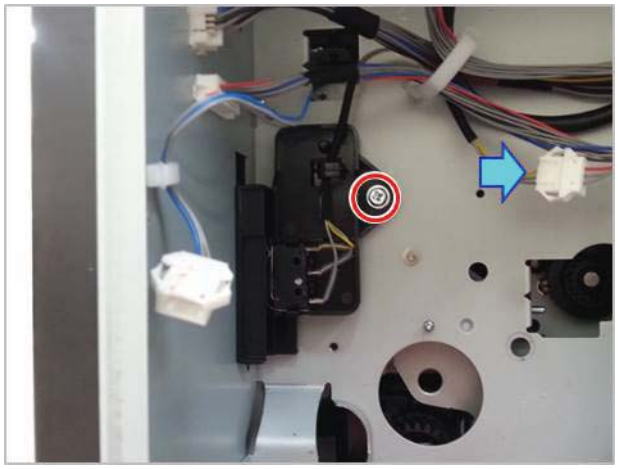
Figure 3-280 Remove the fuser/output drive unit



Step 7: Remove the right door open sensor

- Disconnect one connector. Remove one screw, and then remove the right door open sensor.

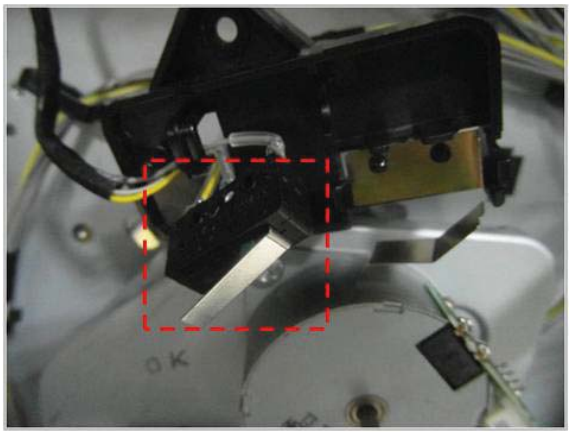
Figure 3-281 Remove the side door open sensor



Step 8: Remove the right door open switch

▲ Remove the micro-switch.

Figure 3-282 Remove micro-switch



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup drive unit 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover
- Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage
- Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup drive unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup drive unit 1 part number	
SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive, Pick up

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

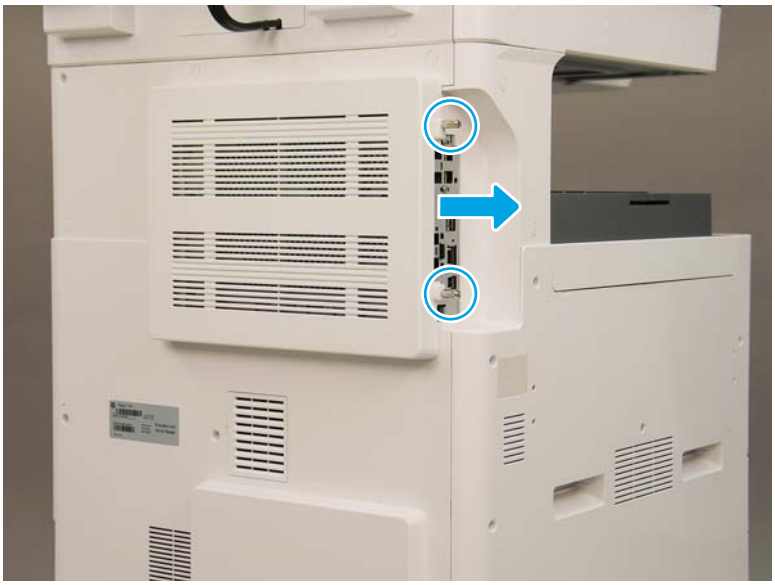
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

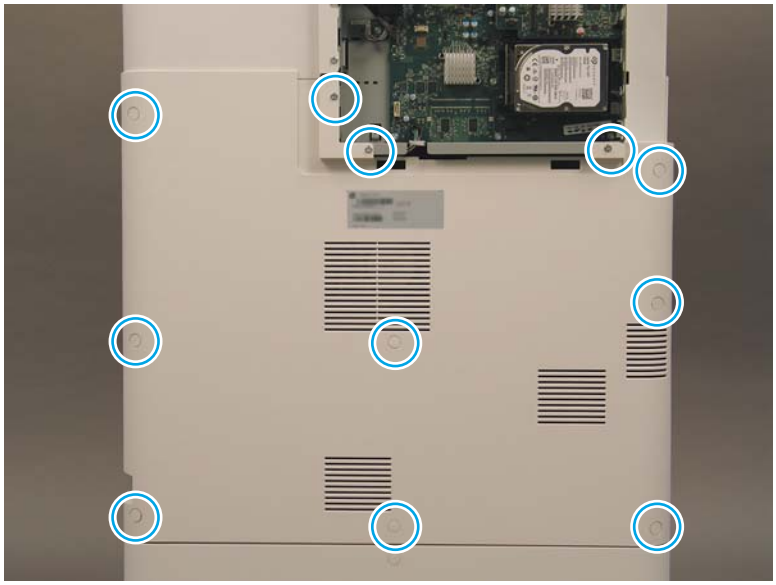
Figure 3-283 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

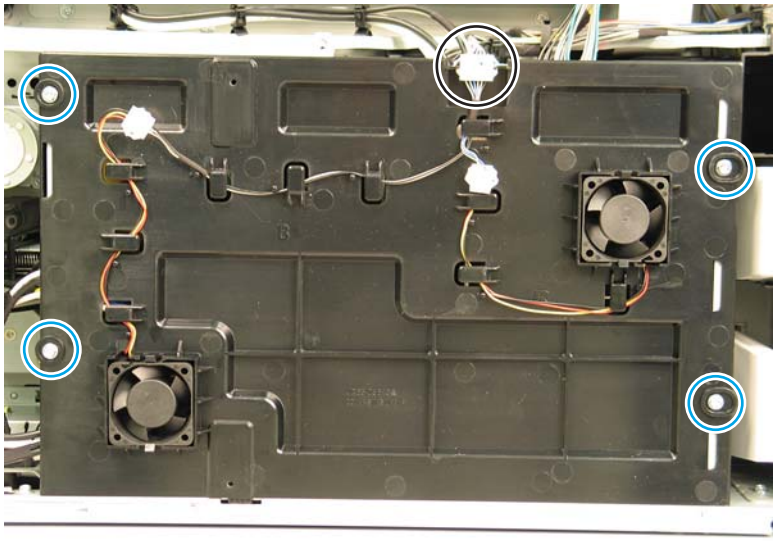
Figure 3-284 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the LVPS cover

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove four screws. Slide the LVPS cover to the left, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-285 Remove the LVPS cover

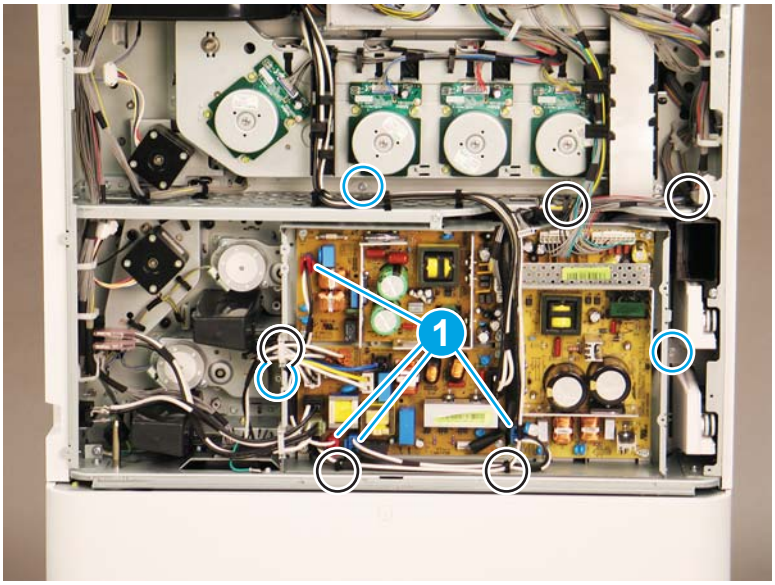


Step 4: Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage

⚠ WARNING! Wait five minutes after turning the printer off to allow the capacitors to dissipate any residual energy.

- Before removing the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage, note the location of four connectors (callout 1) that do not have to be disconnected. Disconnect the remaining connectors on the LVPS and fuser drive boards, and then release the cables from five retainers. Remove three screws, and then tilt the top of the cage out to remove it.

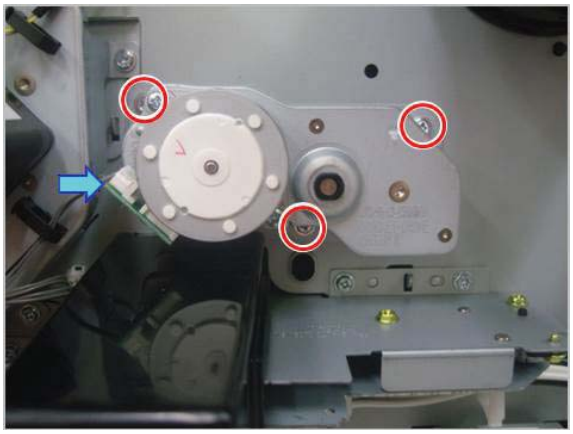
Figure 3-286 Remove the fuser drive and LVPS boards and cage



Step 5: Remove the pickup drive unit 1

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive unit 1.

Figure 3-287 Remove pickup drive unit 1



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup drive unit 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup drive unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup drive unit 2 part number	
SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive, Pick up

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

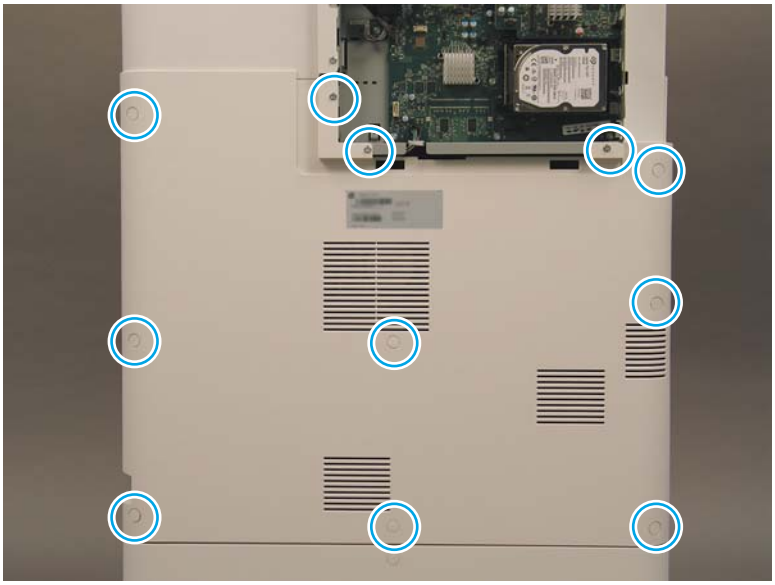
Figure 3-288 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

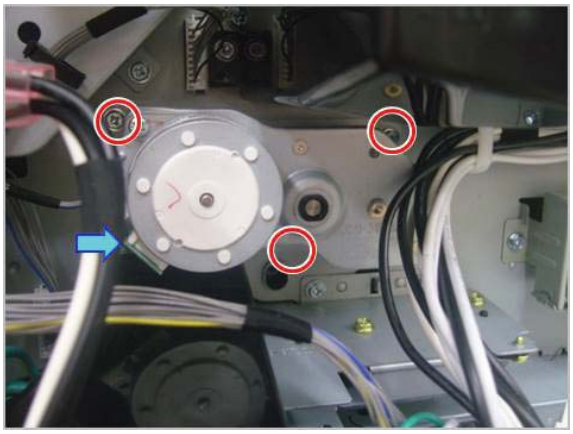
Figure 3-289 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the pickup drive unit 2

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the pickup drive unit 2.

Figure 3-290 Remove pickup drive unit 2



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed/MP drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the feed/MP drive unit
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed/MP drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed/MP drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01062A	Drive, Feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

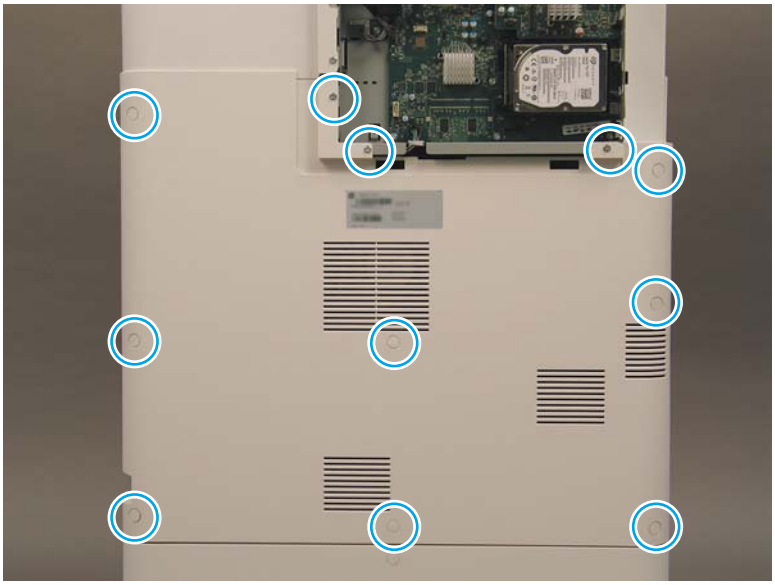
Figure 3-291 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

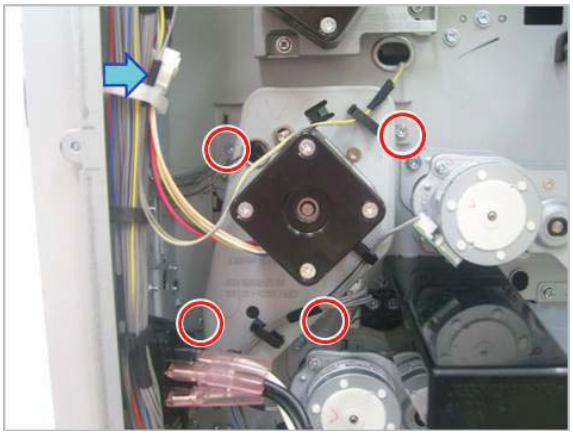
Figure 3-292 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the feed/MP drive unit

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove four screws, and then remove the feed/MP drive unit.

Figure 3-293 Remove the feed/MP drive unit



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration drive assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main drive unit
- Step 7: Remove the registration drive assembly
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration drive assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration drive assembly part number	
SAM-JC93-01061A	Drive, Registration

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

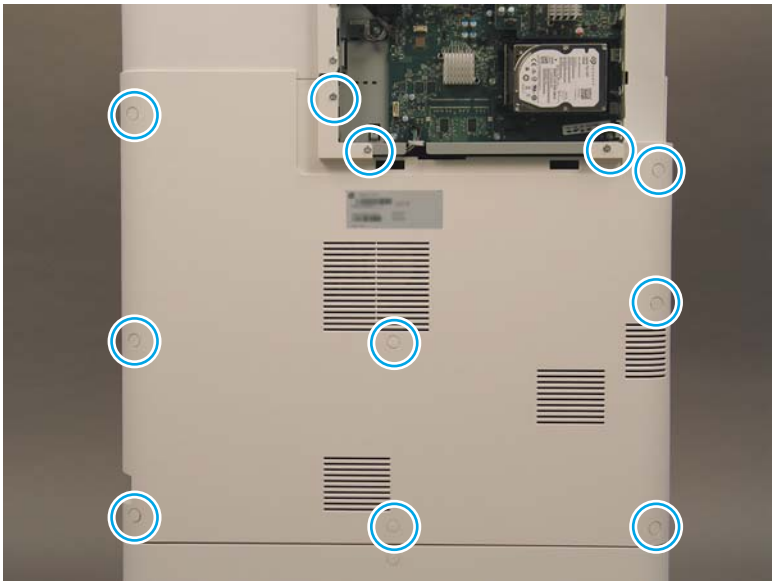
Figure 3-294 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

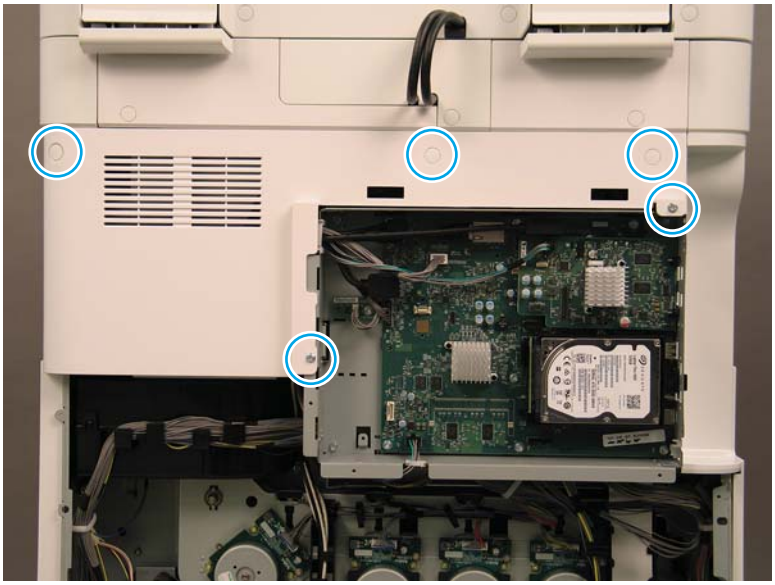
Figure 3-295 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

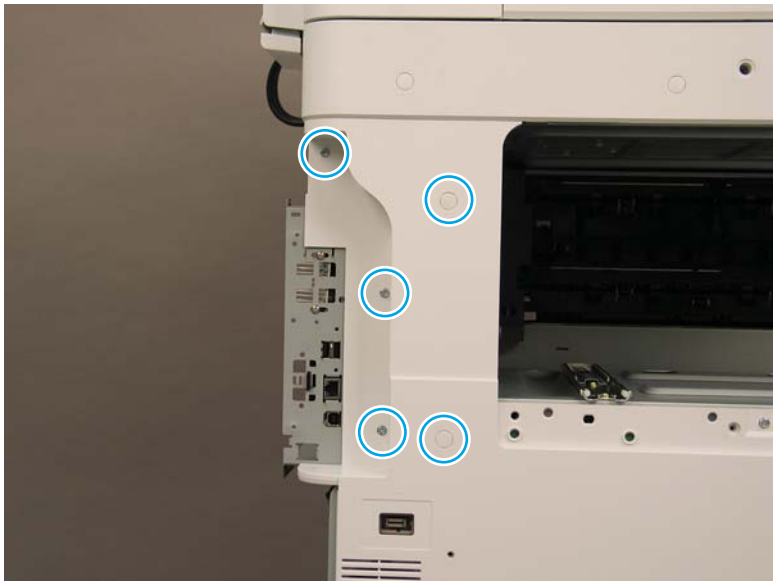
Figure 3-296 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

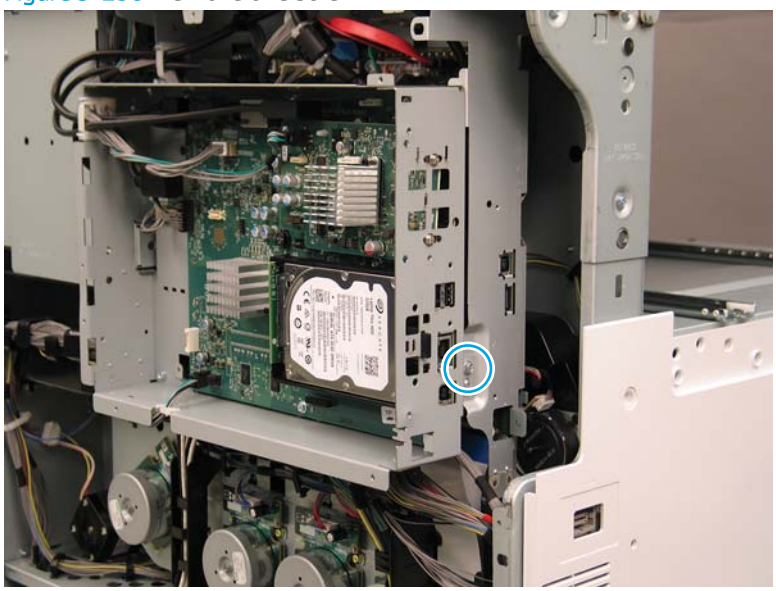
Figure 3-297 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

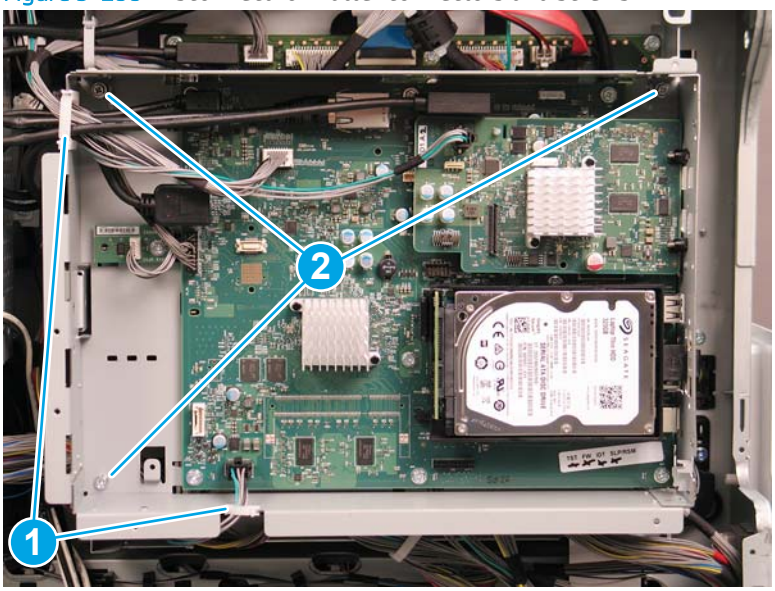
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-298 Remove one screw



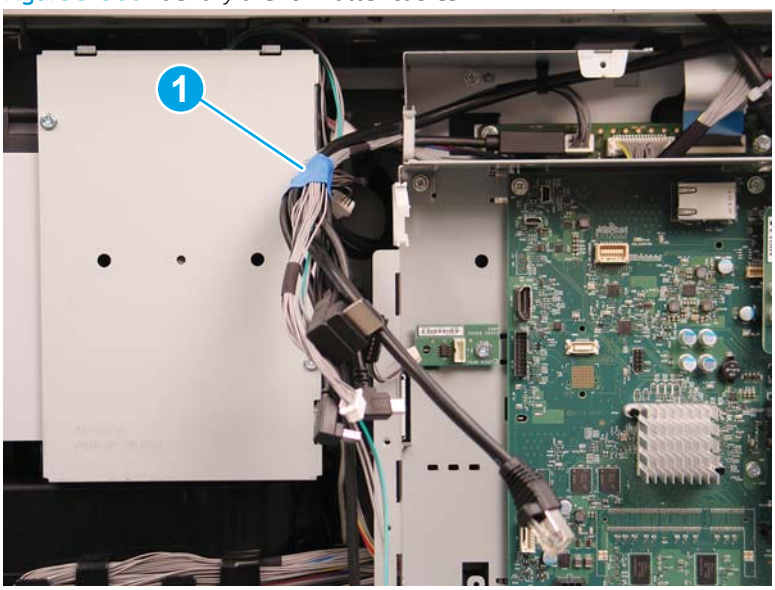
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-299 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-300 Identify the formatter cables

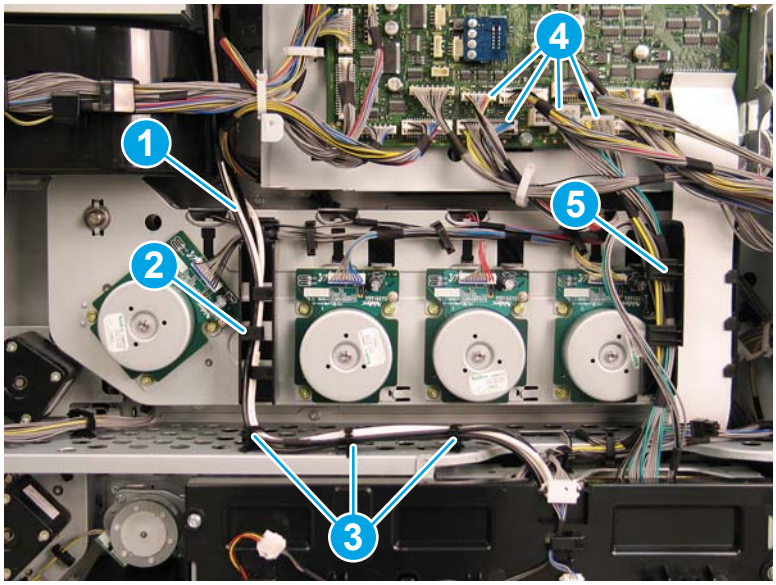


4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main drive unit

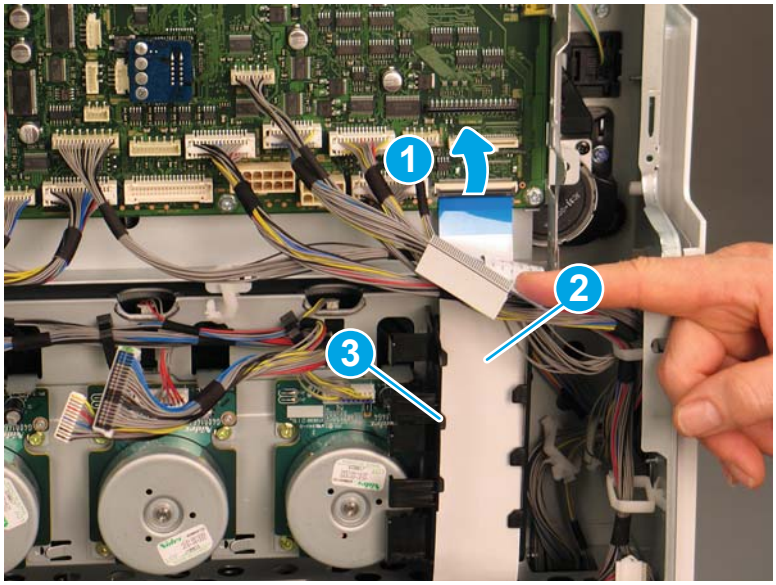
1. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), and then release three retainers (callout 3). Disconnect four connectors (callout 4), and then release the cables from the cable guide (callout 5).

Figure 3-301 Disconnect and release cables



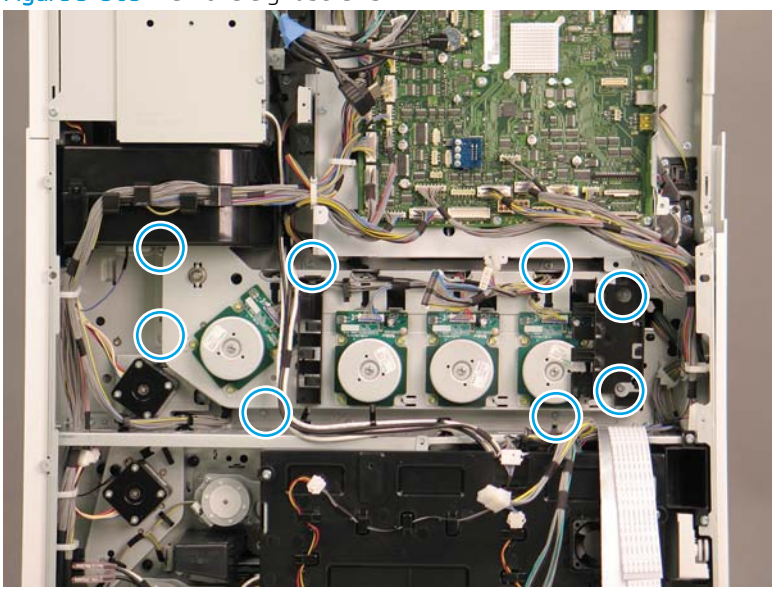
2. Disconnect three flat cables from the main board (callout 1). One of the flat cable connectors is a zero insertion force (ZIF) connector. Open the latch on the connector before removing the flat cable. Remove the flat cables (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 3-302 Disconnect flat cables



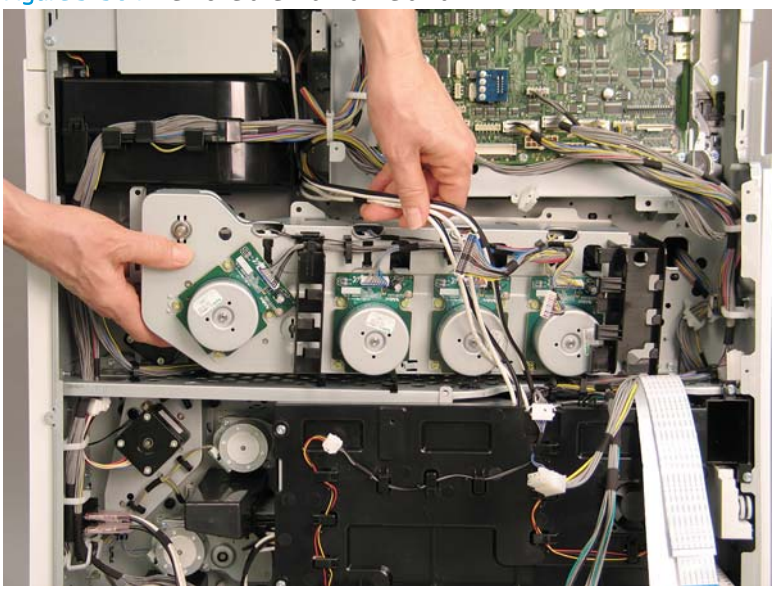
3. Remove eight screws.

Figure 3-303 Remove eight screws



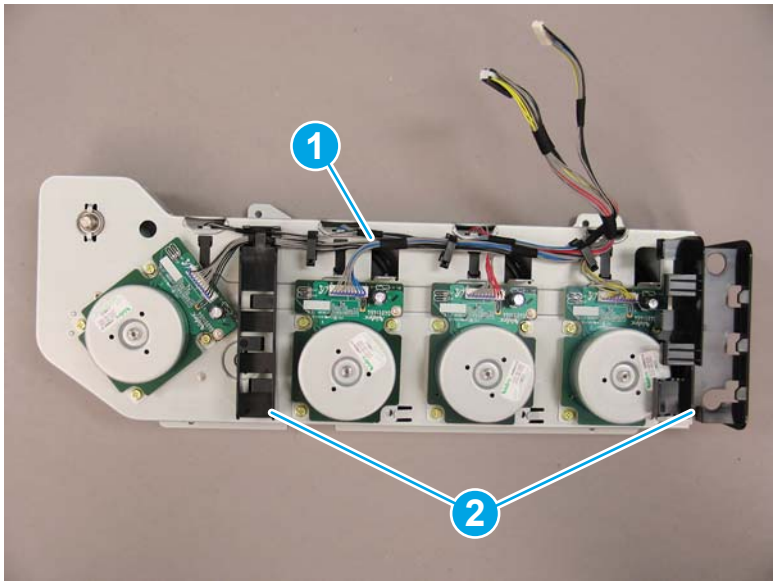
4. Lift the main drive unit up to release the hooks in the sheet metal, rotate it to the right, and then remove it from under the cables.

Figure 3-304 Remove the main drive unit



5. Move all the cables (callout 1) and cable guides (callout 2) from the old main drive unit and transfer them to the replacement unit.

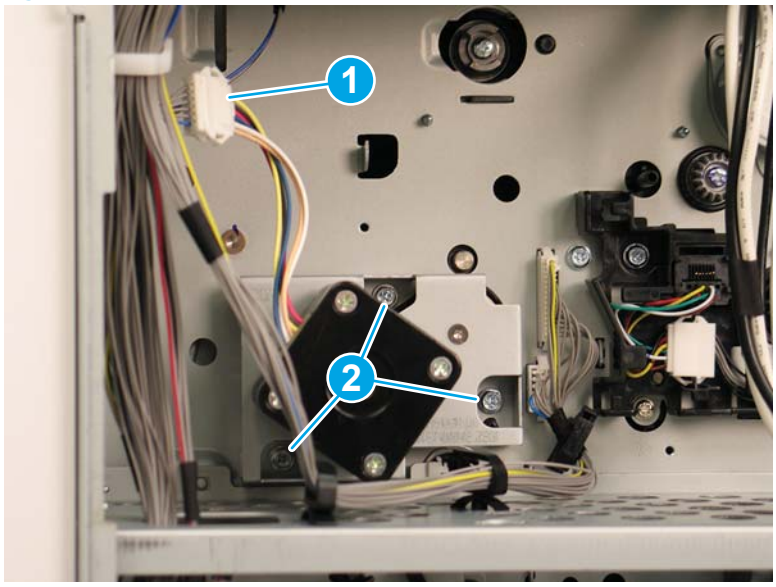
Figure 3-305 Remove cables and guides



Step 7: Remove the registration drive assembly

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Remove three screws (callout 2), then remove the registration drive assembly.

Figure 3-306 Remove the registration drive assembly



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner supply drive unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board and cage
- Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner supply drive unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner supply drive unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01065B	Drive, Toner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

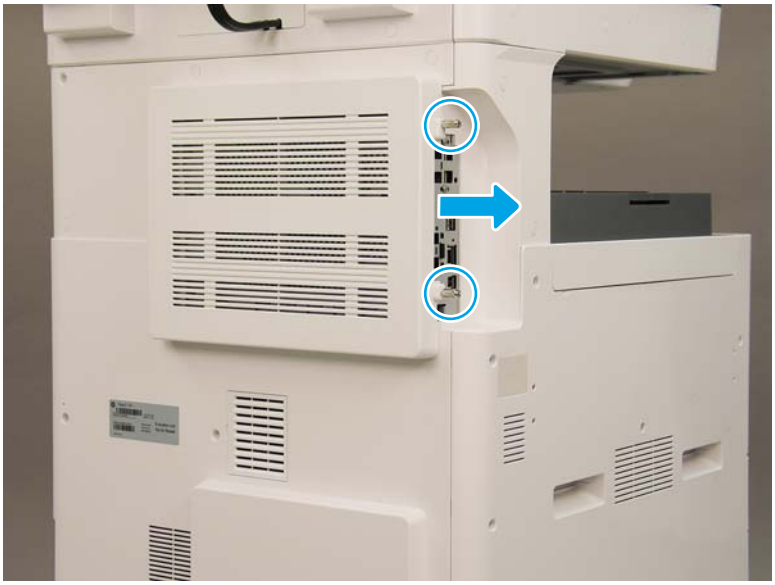
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

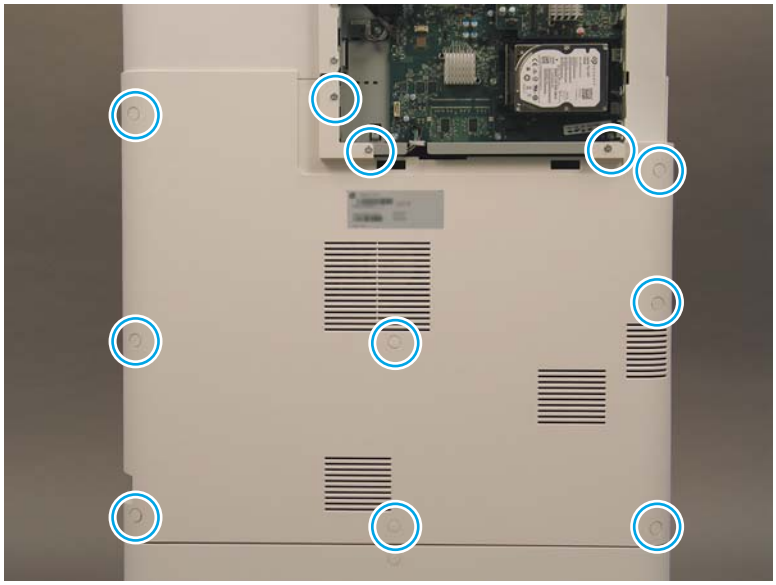
Figure 3-307 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

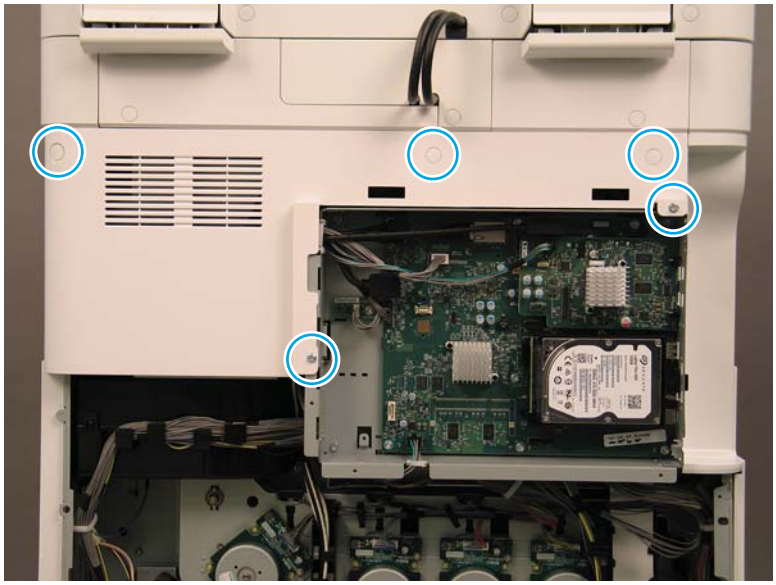
Figure 3-308 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

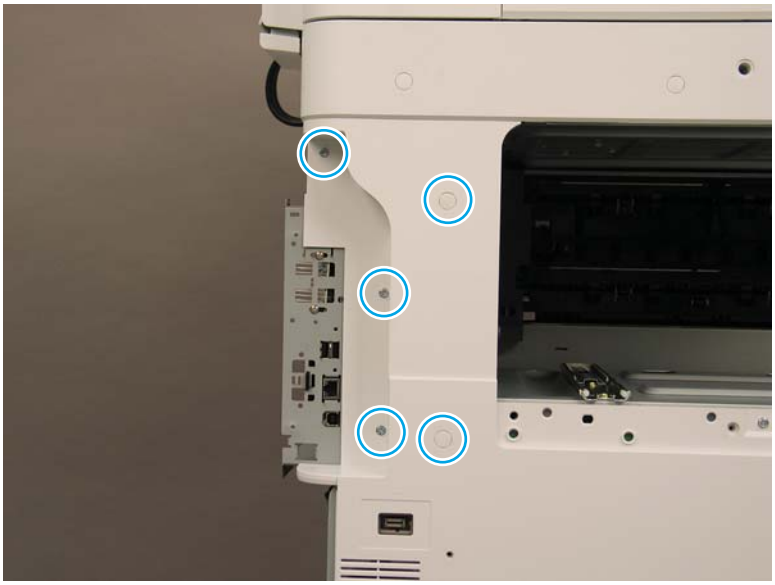
Figure 3-309 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

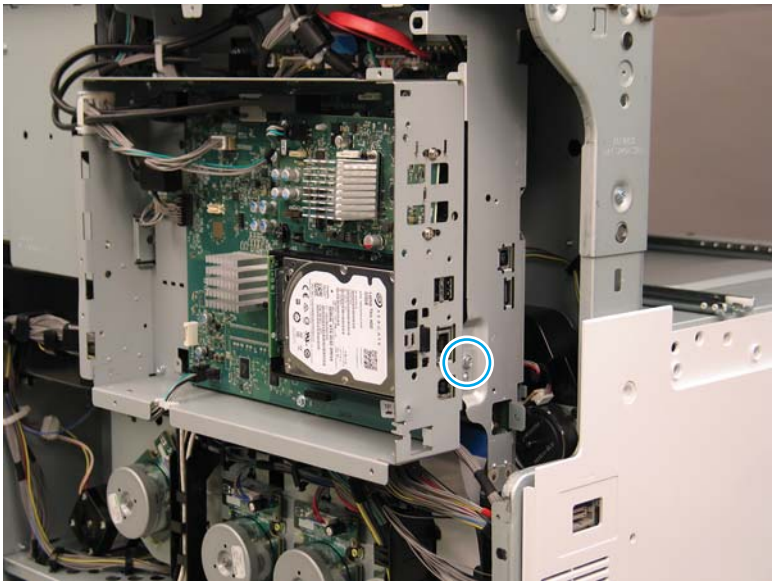
Figure 3-310 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

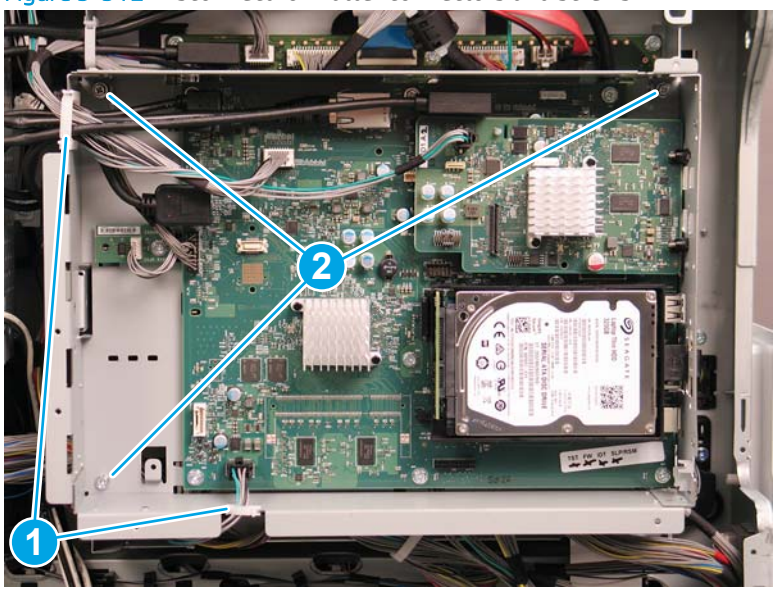
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-311 Remove one screw



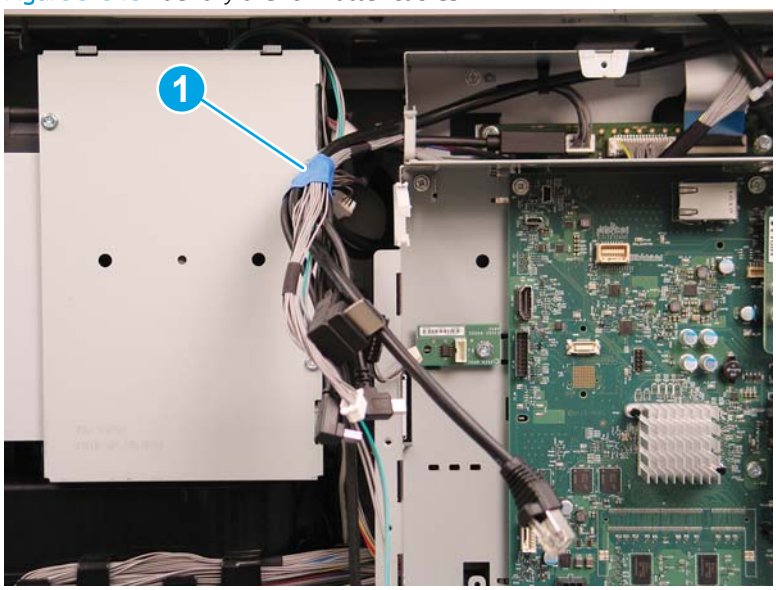
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-312 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-313 Identify the formatter cables



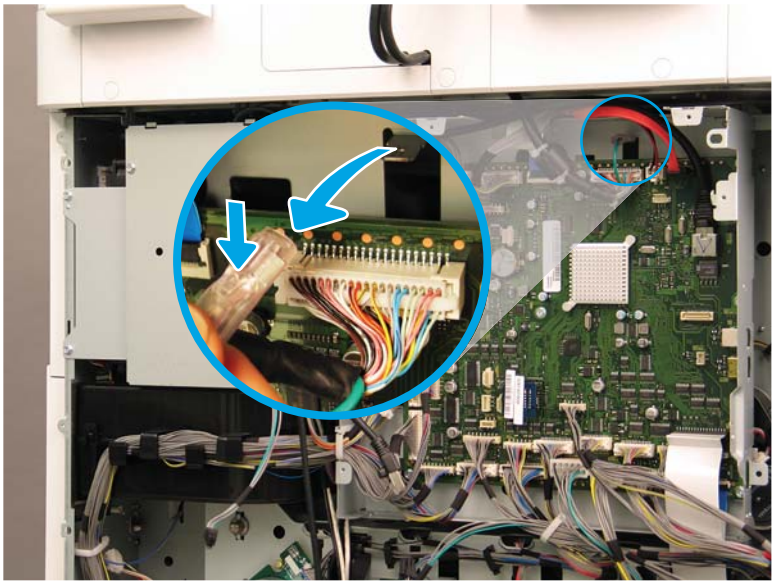
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board and cage

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

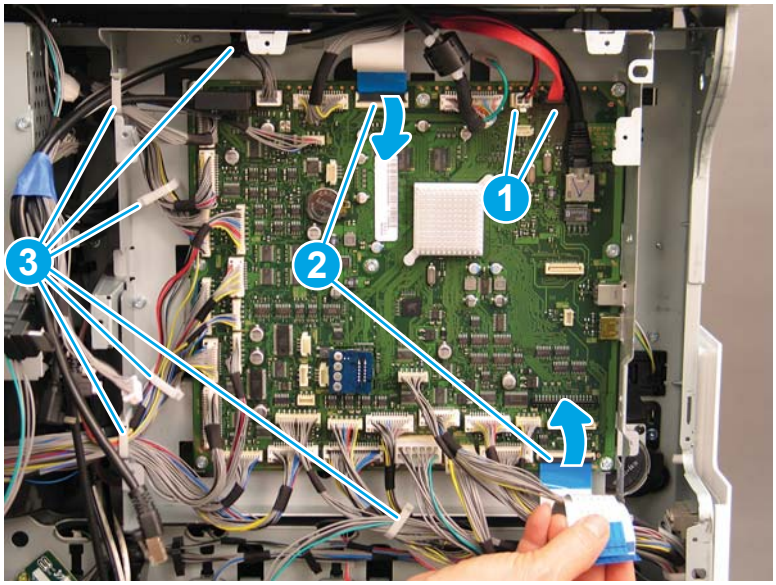
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 3-314 Disconnect one connector



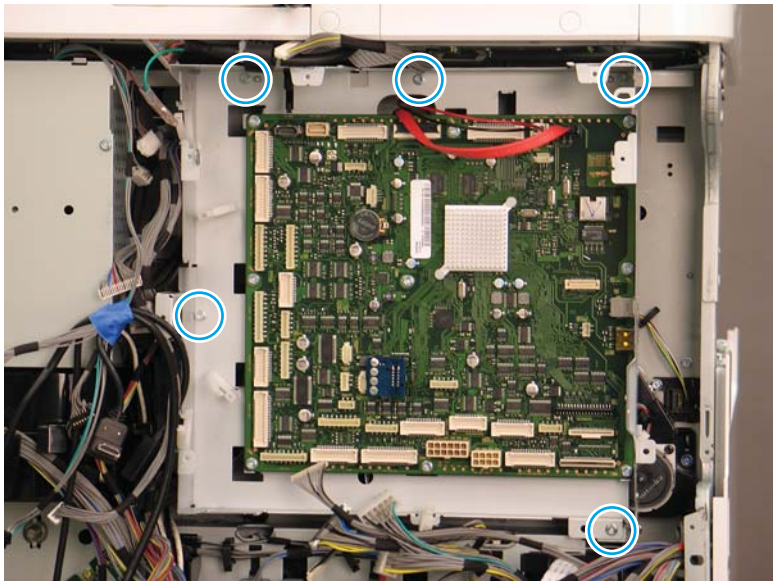
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 3-315 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 3-316 Remove five screws

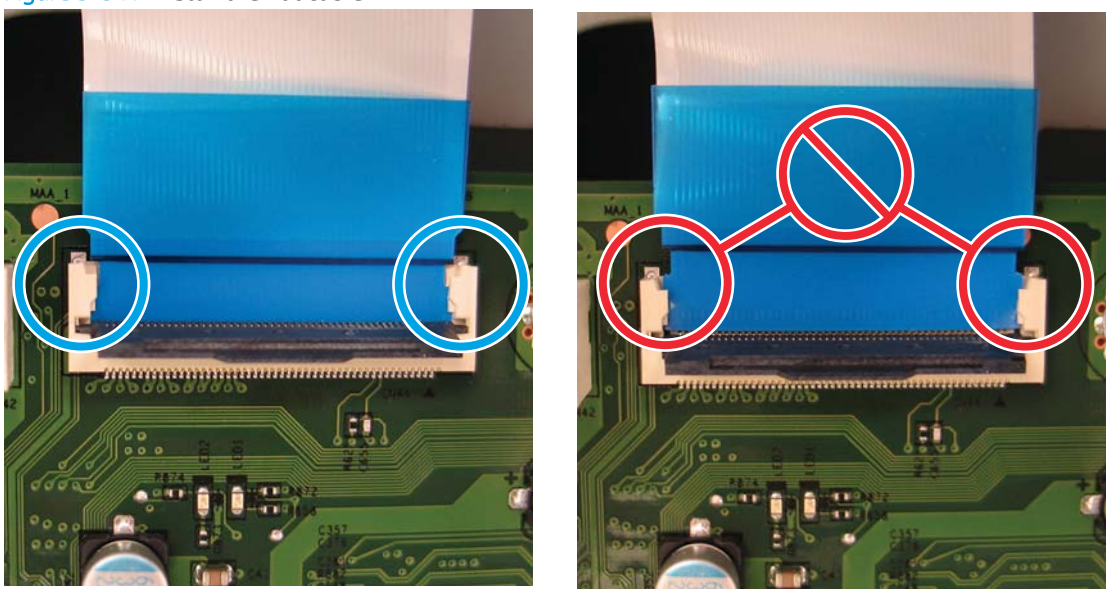


4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.
5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board and cage

- When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-317 Install the flat cable



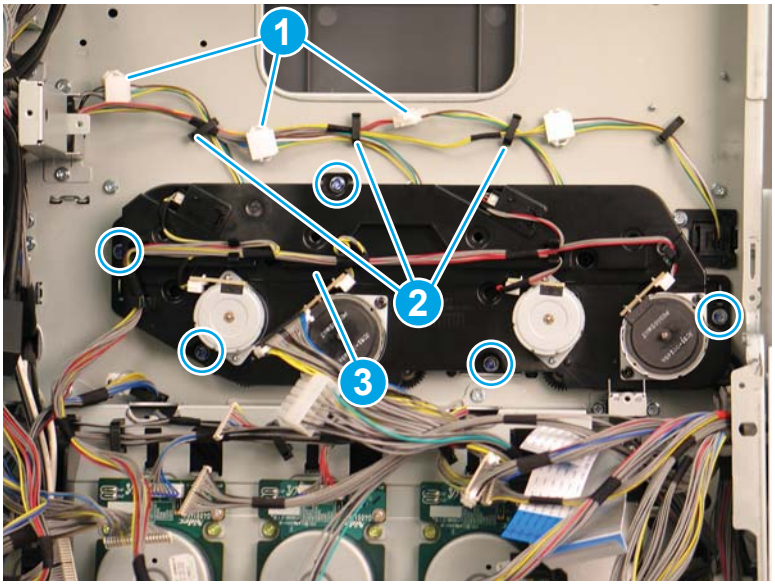
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit

▲ Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release cables from three retainers (callout 2). Release the cables from the guides (callout 3). Remove five screws and then remove the toner supply drive unit.

Reinstallation tip: Transfer the cables from the toner supply drive unit to the replacement part.

Figure 3-318 Remove the toner supply drive unit



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner supply and toner reservoir motors

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board and cage
- Step 7: Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner supply and toner reservoir motors.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner supply and toner reservoir motors part numbers	
SAM-JC31-00110A	Motor - Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

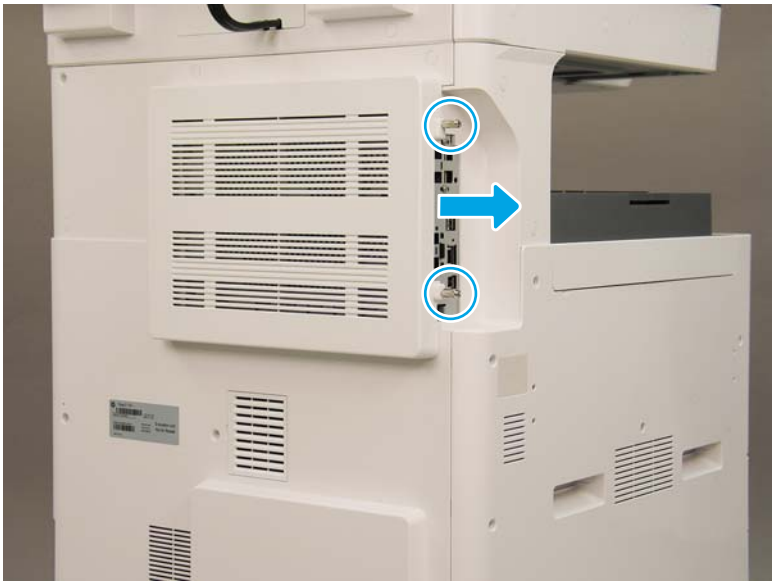
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

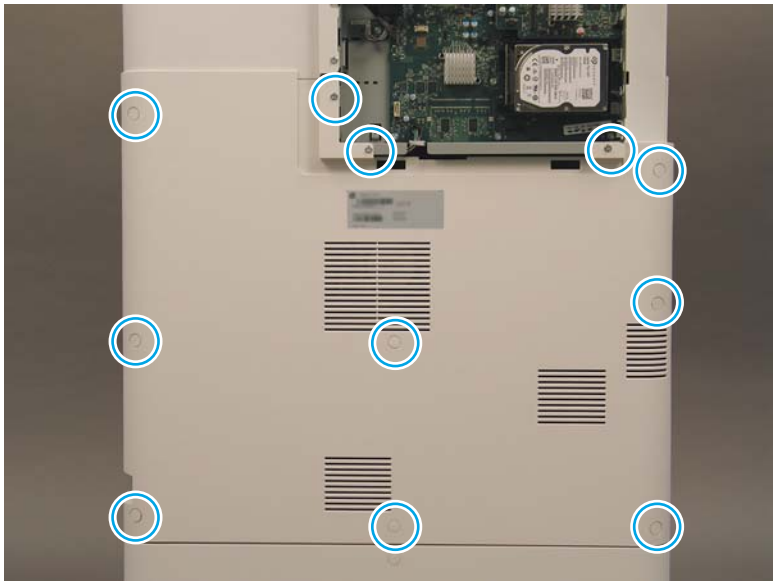
Figure 3-319 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

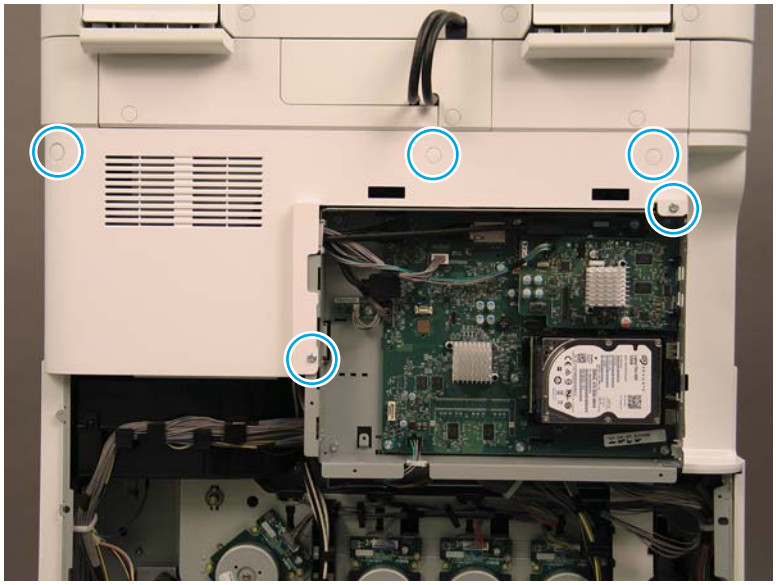
Figure 3-320 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

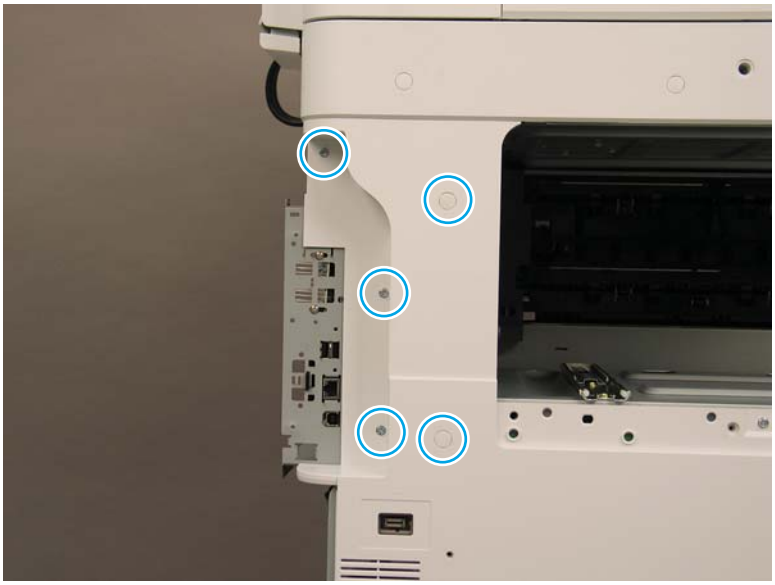
Figure 3-321 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

- Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

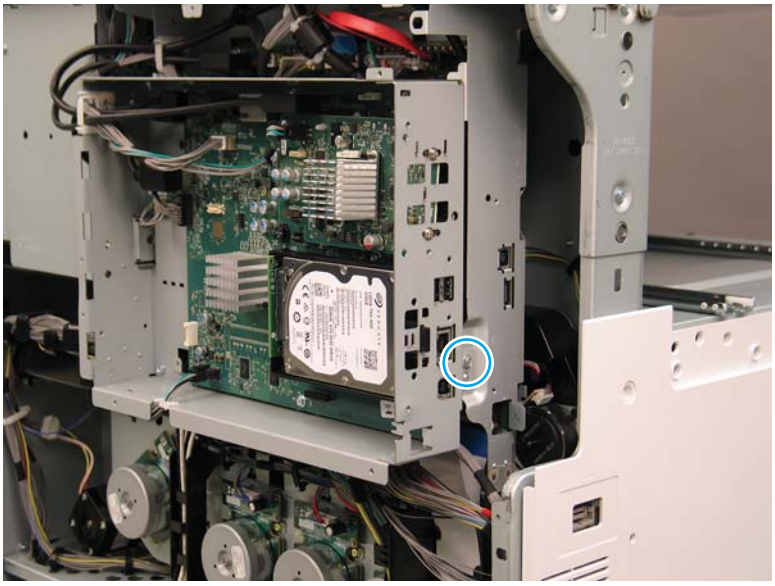
Figure 3-322 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

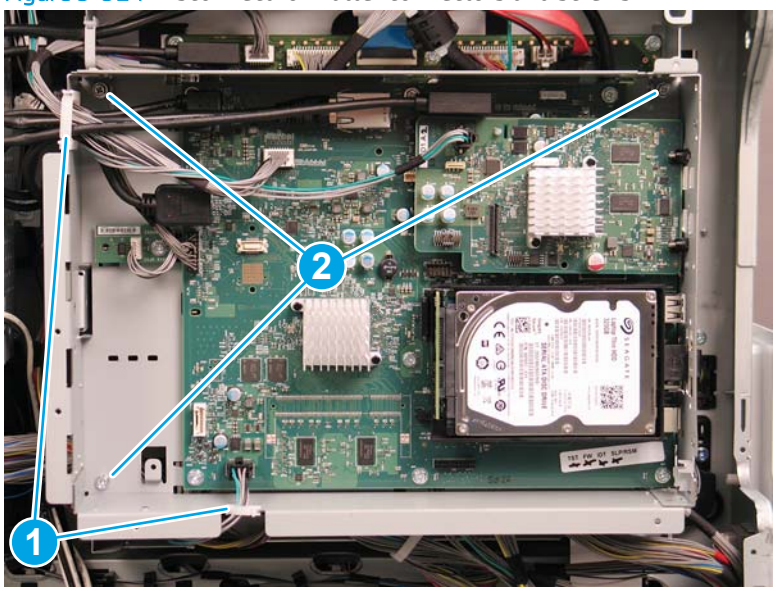
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-323 Remove one screw



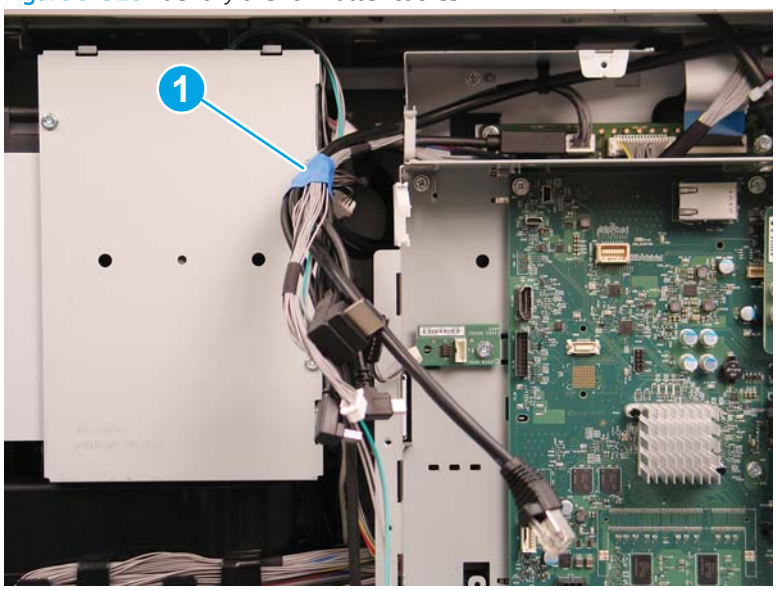
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-324 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-325 Identify the formatter cables



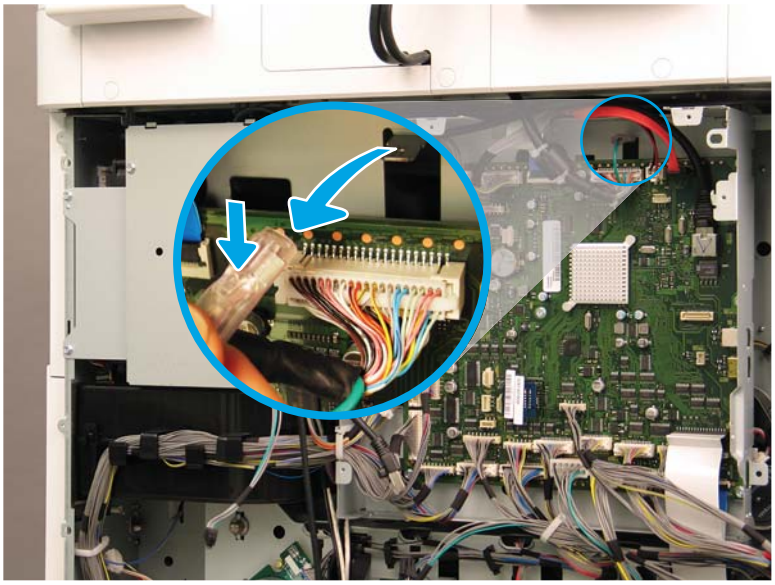
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board and cage

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

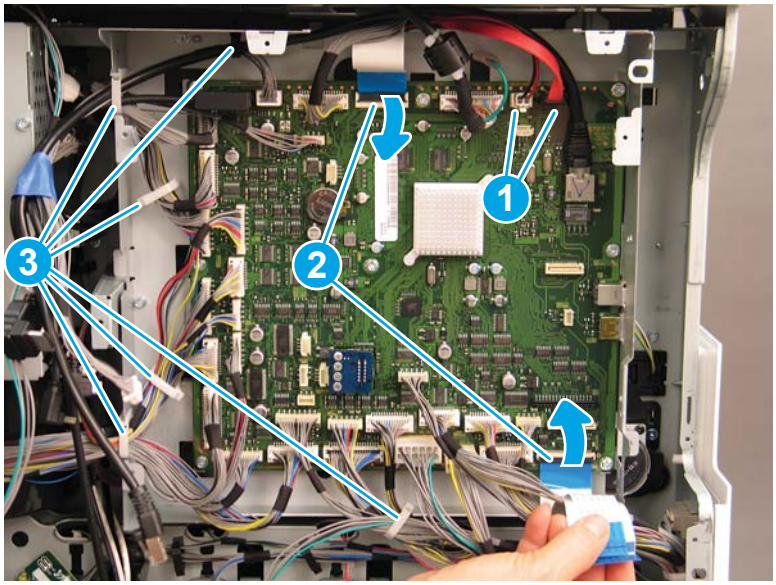
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 3-326 Disconnect one connector



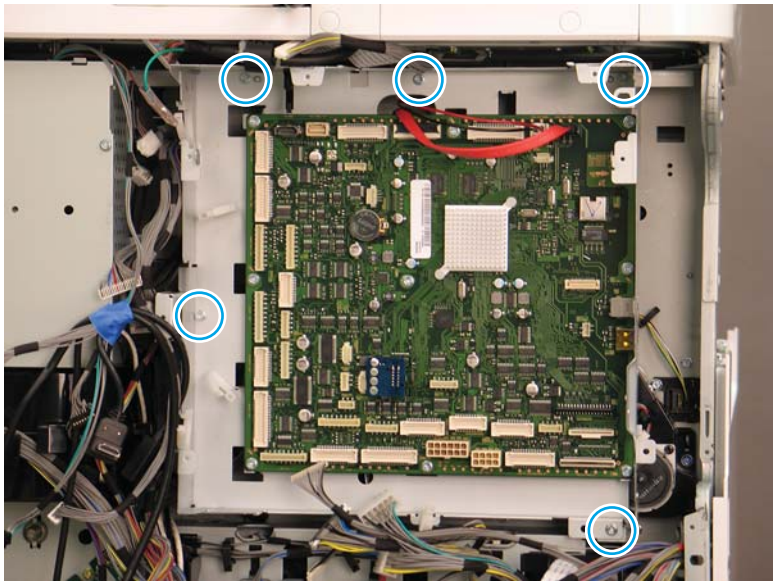
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 3-327 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 3-328 Remove five screws

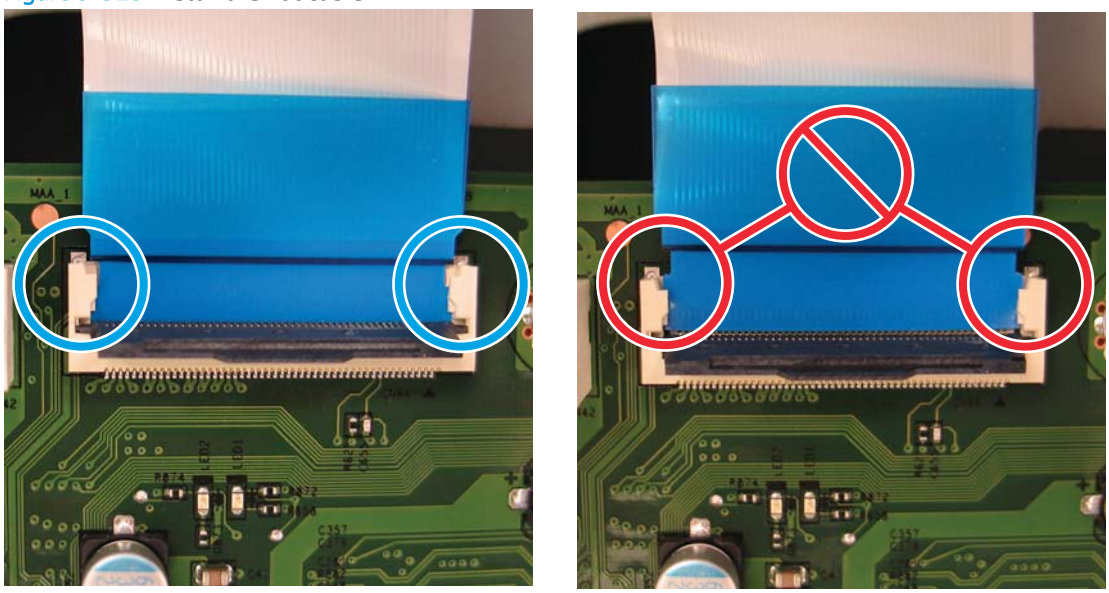


4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.
5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board and cage

- When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-329 Install the flat cable

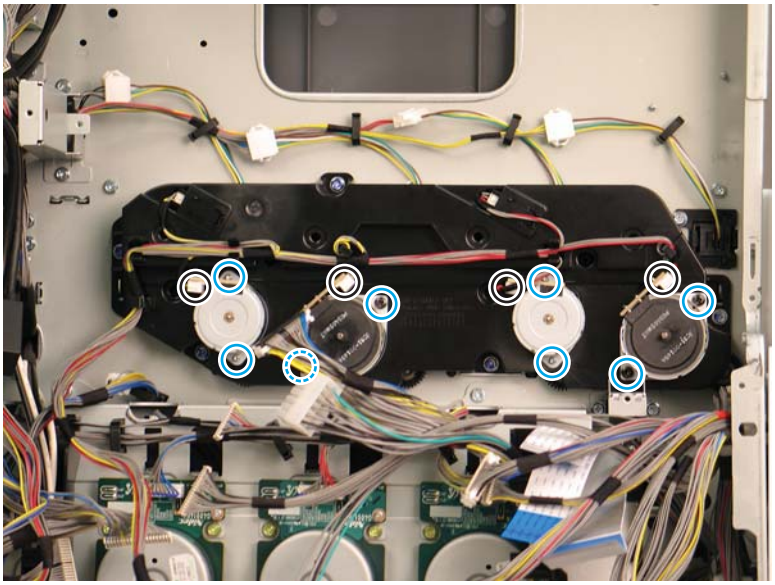


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors

- Disconnect one connector and remove two screws for each motor that is replaced.

Figure 3-330 Remove the toner supply and toner reservoir motors



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

CRUM connector

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover
- Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage
- Step 6: Remove the main board and cage
- Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit
- Step 8: Remove the CRUM connector
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the CRUM connector.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CRUM connector part number
CRUM connector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

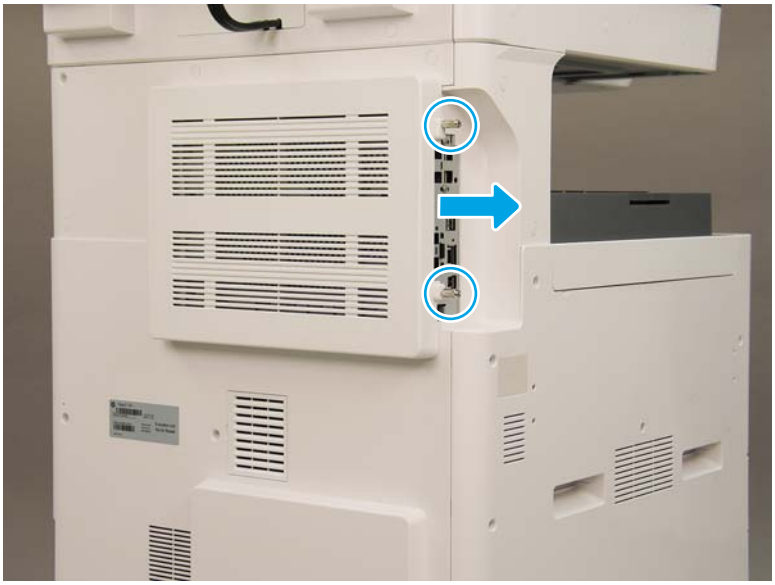
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

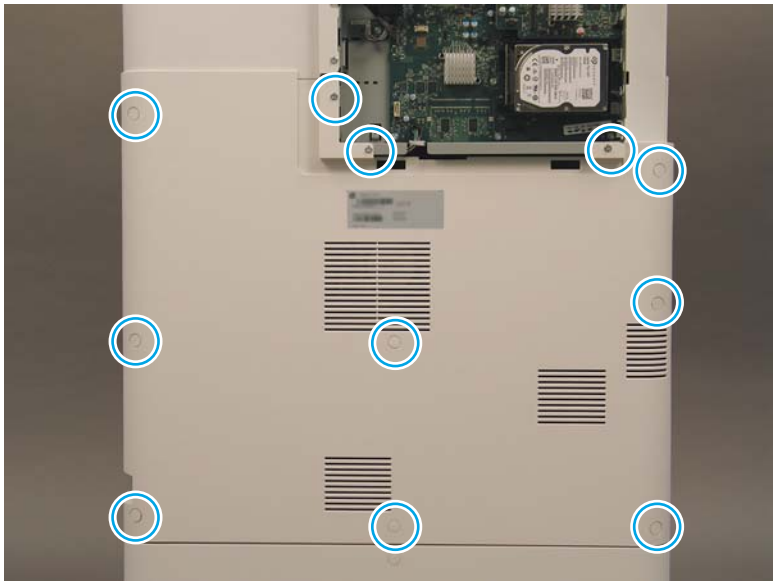
Figure 3-331 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the lower rear cover

- Remove 8 screw-caps and 11 screws. Lift left side, and then pull the cover straight out on the right.

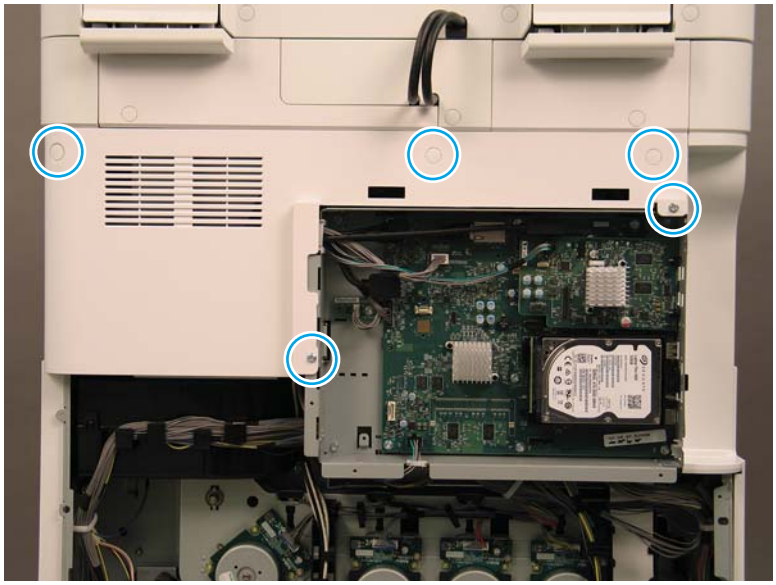
Figure 3-332 Remove the lower rear cover



Step 3: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

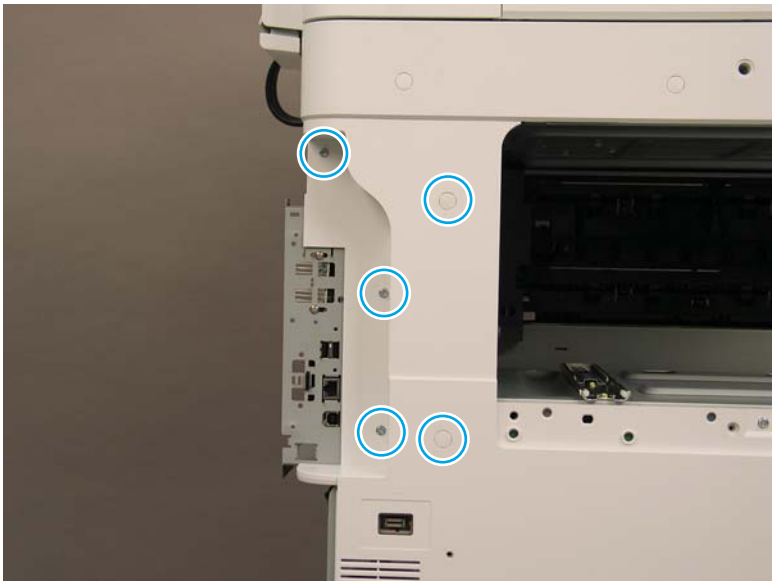
Figure 3-333 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 4: Remove the left rear corner cover

▲ Remove two screw caps and five screws. Slide the left rear corner cover up and away from the printer to remove it.

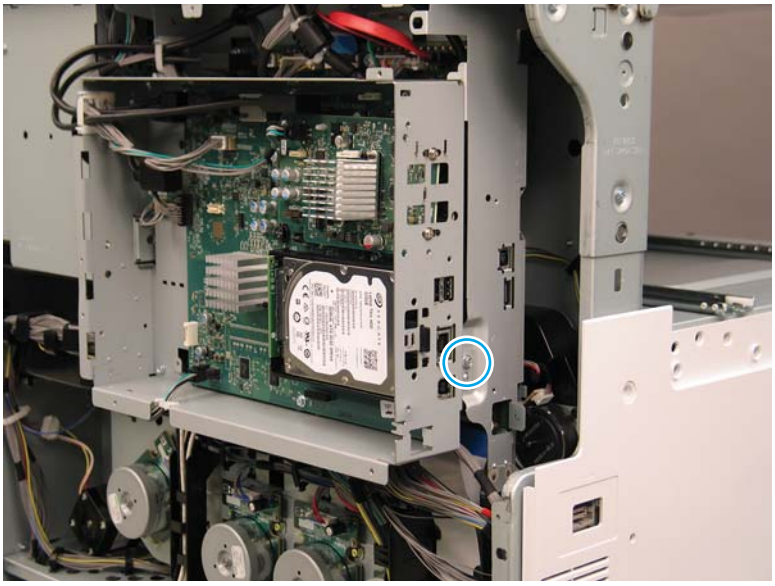
Figure 3-334 Remove the left rear corner cover



Step 5: Remove the formatter and cage

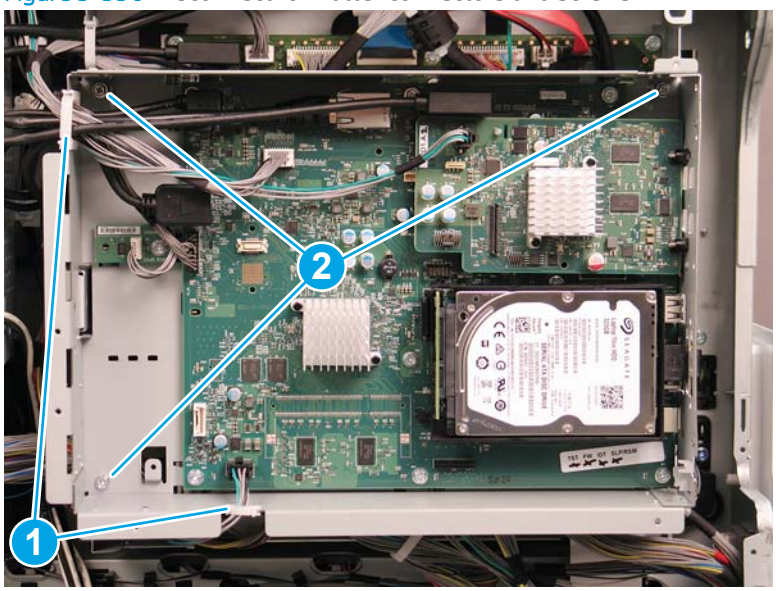
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-335 Remove one screw



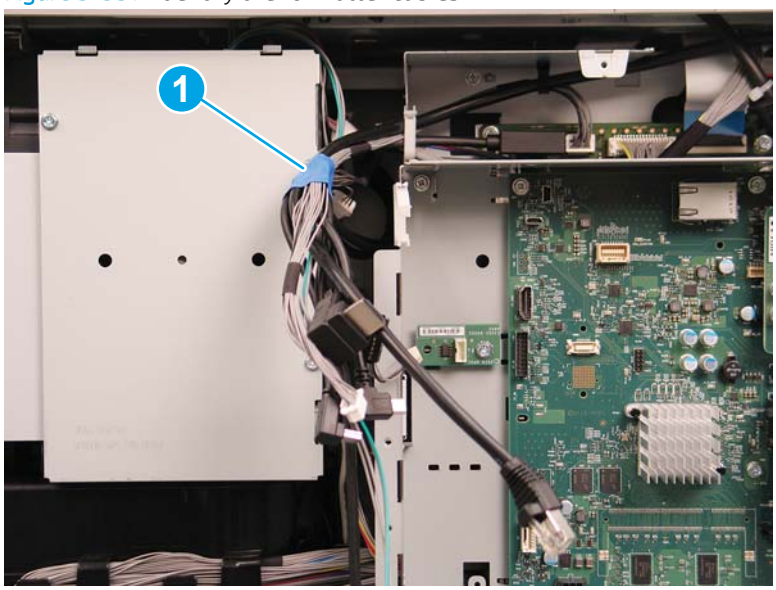
2. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter. Release the cables from two retainers on the sheet metal cage (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 3-336 Disconnect formatter connectors and screws



3. Before removing the formatter cage, place a piece of tape or a wire tie (callout 1) around the cables disconnected from the formatter on the left side. This will identify the cables that will be connected to the formatter during reassembly.

Figure 3-337 Identify the formatter cables



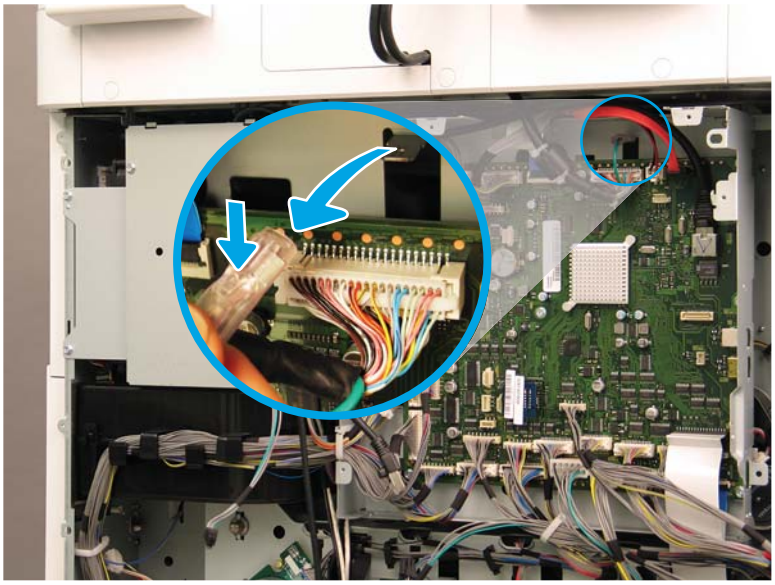
4. Lift the formatter cage up, push it to the right to clear the boss on the right side, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Step 6: Remove the main board and cage

1. One of the connectors that must be released above the main board is a spade connector.

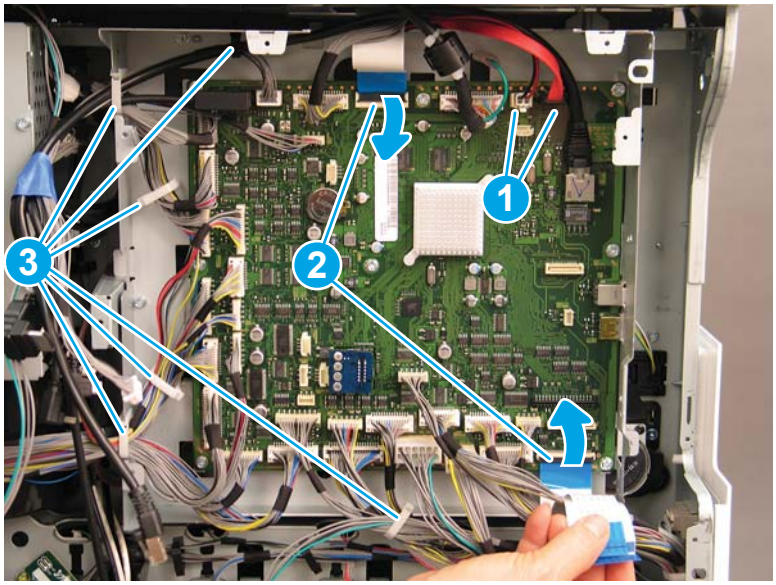
IMPORTANT: Press in on the center part of the cable connector to release the latch, and then pull the cable away from the printer to disconnect it. Do not pull on connector without depressing the center latch.

Figure 3-338 Disconnect one connector



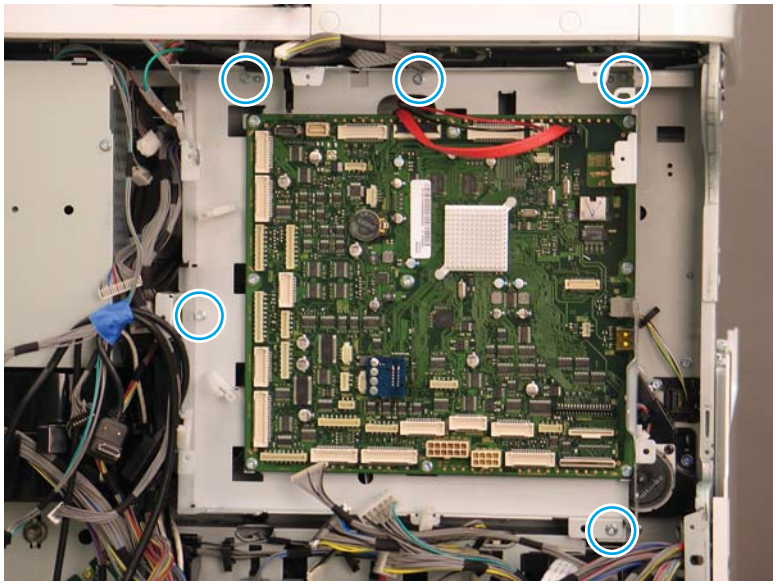
2. Do not disconnect the two hard disk drive (HDD) connectors at the top of the main board (callout 1). Disconnect all of the remaining connectors. Two of the flat cable connectors (callout 2) are zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors. Open the latch on the connectors before removing the flat cables. Release the cables from six retainers (callout 3).

Figure 3-339 Remove one screw



3. Remove five screws.

Figure 3-340 Remove five screws

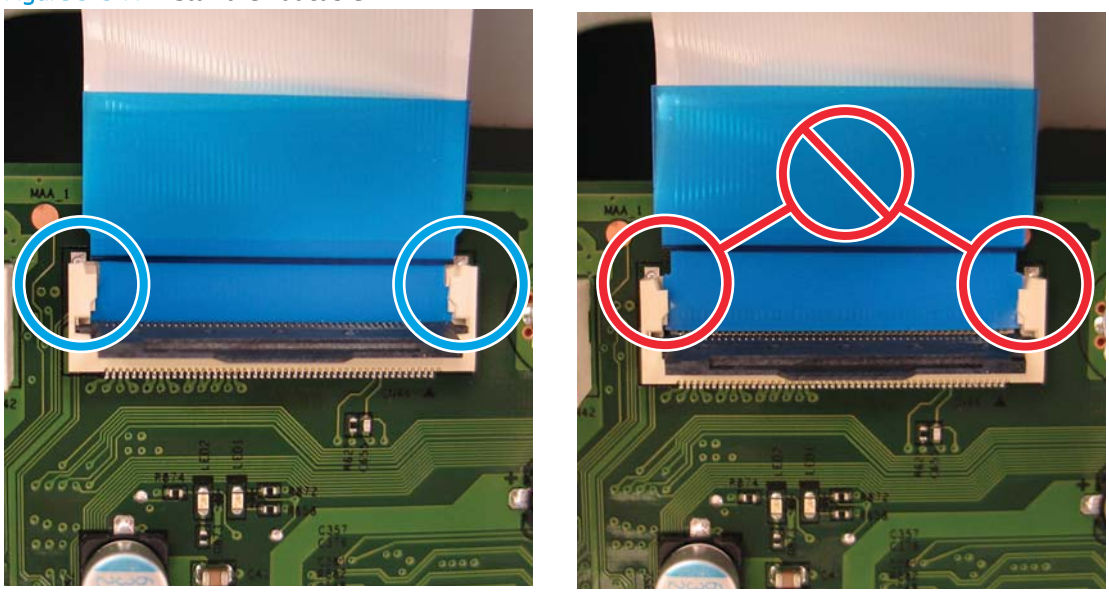


4. Lift the main board cage up, and then rotate the lower edge of the cage away from the printer to remove it.
5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Main board and cage

- When reinstalling the top flat cable, make sure that the cable is correctly installed in the ZIF connector before closing the latch to secure the cable.

Figure 3-341 Install the flat cable



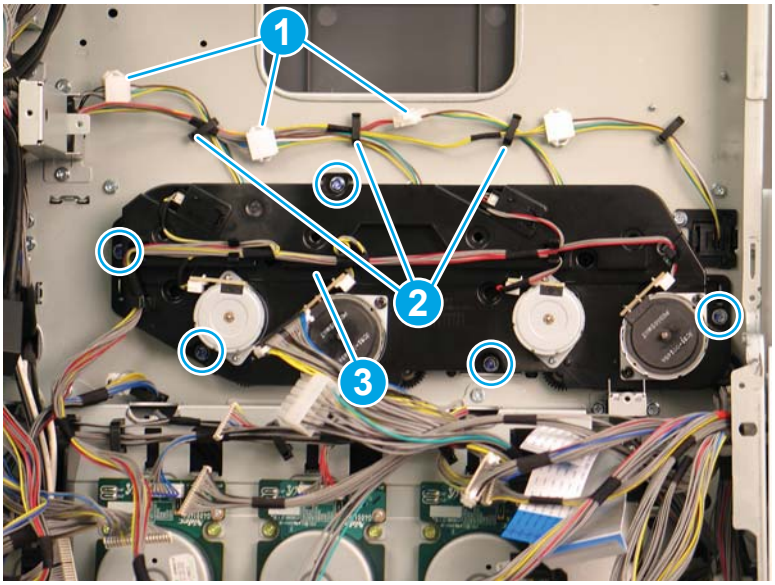
NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 7: Remove the toner supply drive unit

▲ Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release cables from three retainers (callout 2). Release the cables from the guides (callout 3). Remove five screws and then remove the toner supply drive unit.

Reinstallation tip: Transfer the cables from the toner supply drive unit to the replacement part.

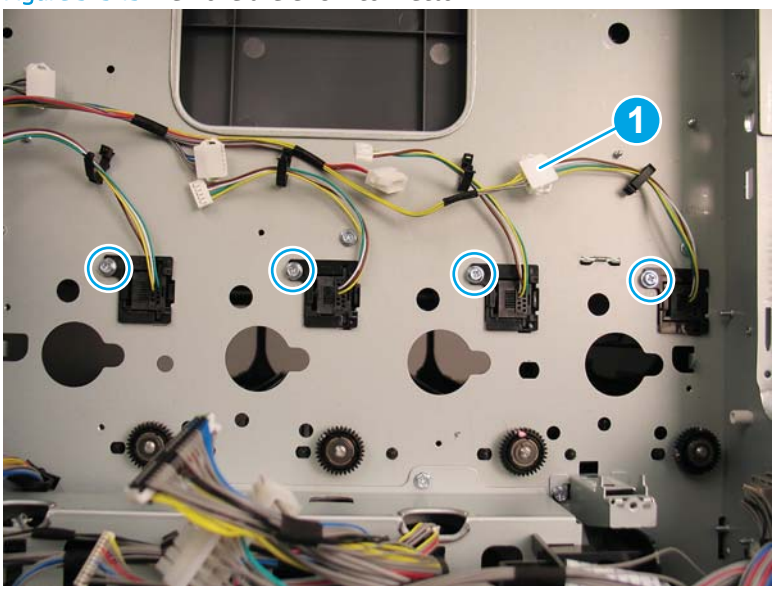
Figure 3-342 Remove the toner supply drive unit



Step 8: Remove the CRUM connector

▲ If replacing the yellow CRUM connector, disconnect one connector (callout 1). Remove the screw next to the defective CRUM connector. Release one tab on the right, and then remove the CRUM connector.

Figure 3-343 Remove the CRUM connector



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit (TCU) drive

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover.
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 6: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 7: Remove the TCU drive
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU) drive.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TCU drive part number	
SAM-JC93-01070A	Drive, Toner Collection Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

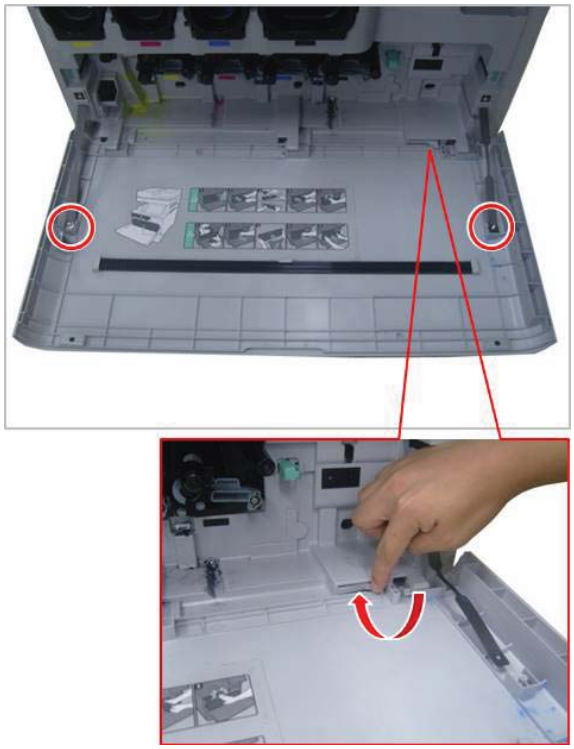
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

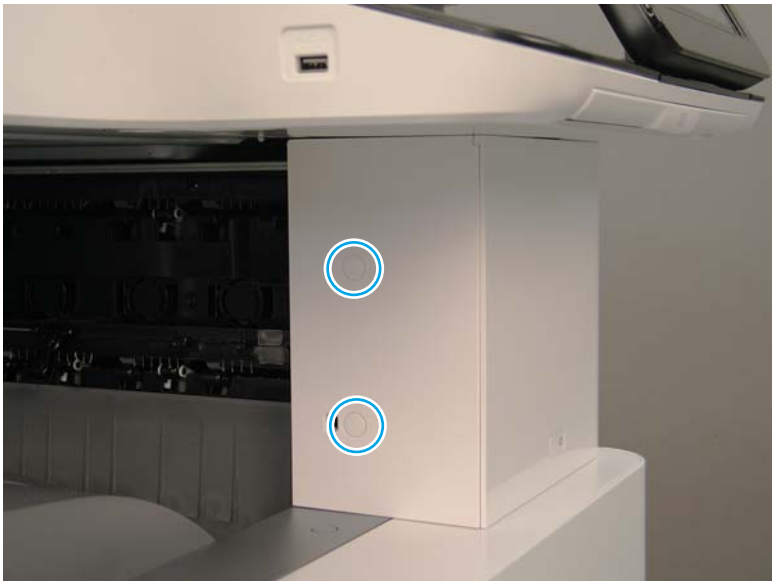
Figure 3-344 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-345 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

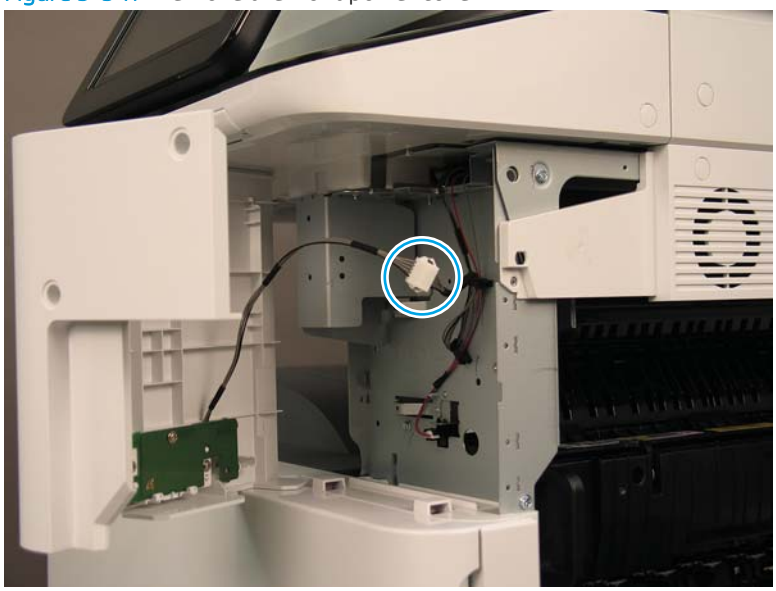
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-346 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-347 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

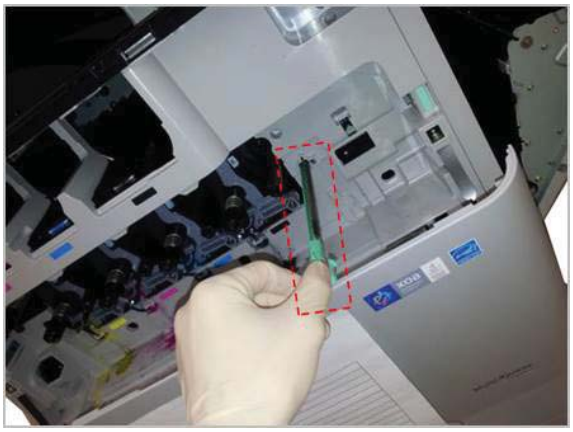
Figure 3-348 Remove the output bin



Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush

- Remove the paper dust brush.

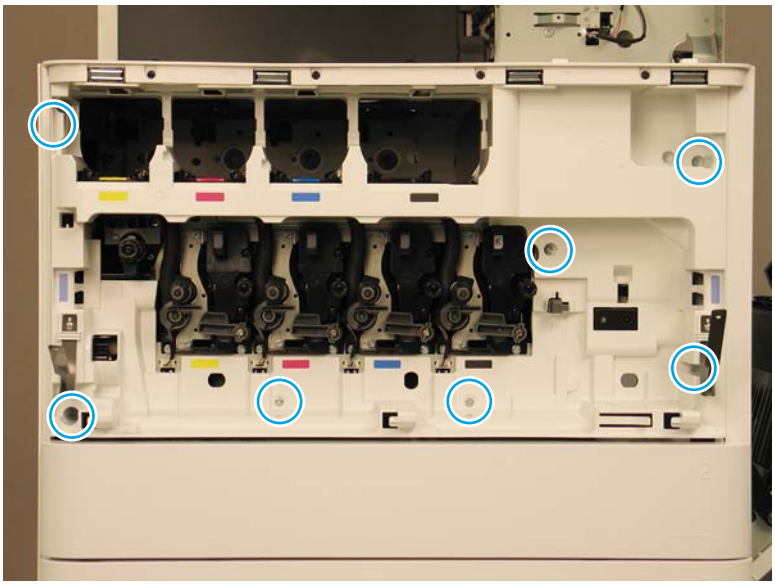
Figure 3-349 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 6: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-350 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-351 Remove the inner cover



Step 7: Remove the TCU drive

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the TCU drive.

Figure 3-352 Remove the TCU drive



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit (TCU) sensors

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the TCU
- Step 2: Remove the front cover.
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the output bin
- Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 7: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner collection unit (TCU) sensor.

Click here to view a video of the toner collection unit level sensor procedure.

Click here to view a video of the toner collection unit detect sensor procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TCU sensor part number
TCU sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

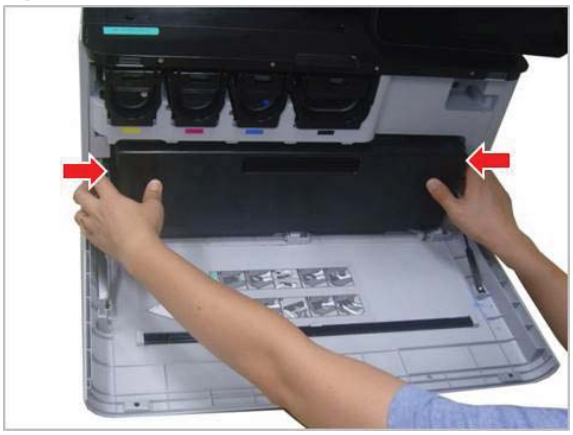
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the TCU

1. Open the front cover.
2. Push both hooks to release the toner collection unit (TCU).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

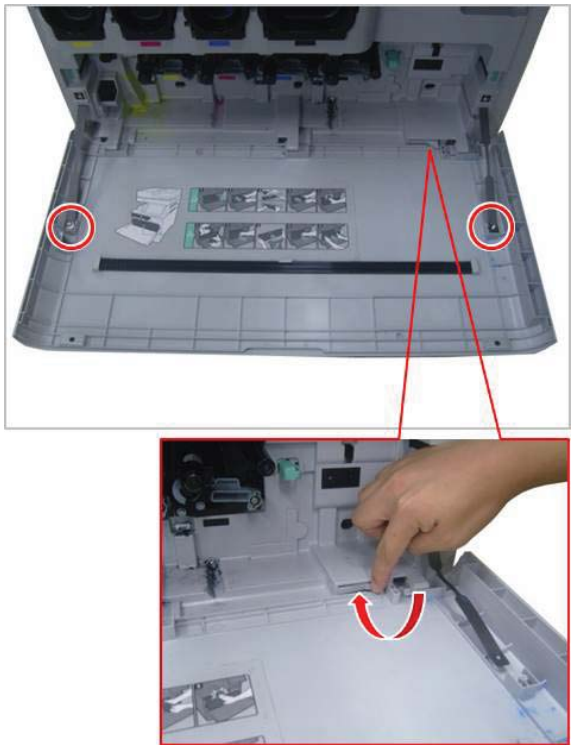
Figure 3-353 Remove the TCU



Step 2: Remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

Figure 3-354 Remove the front cover



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-355 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

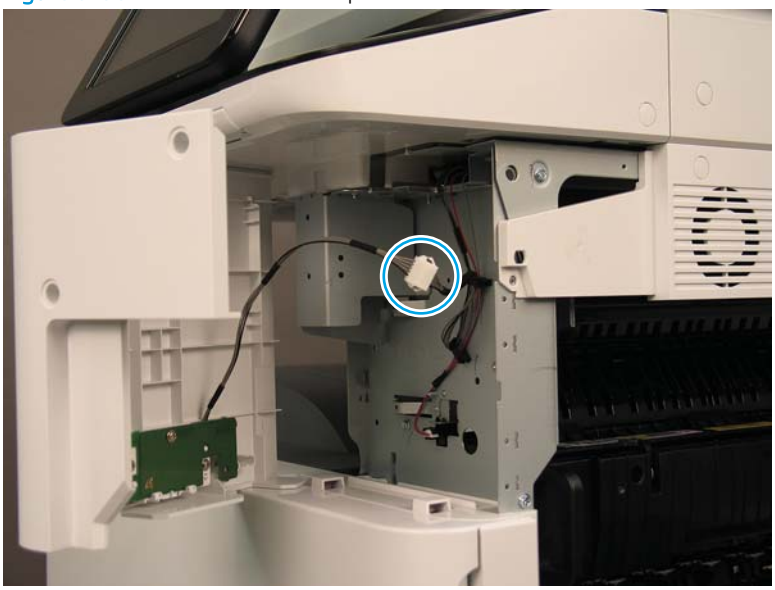
CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-356 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-357 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

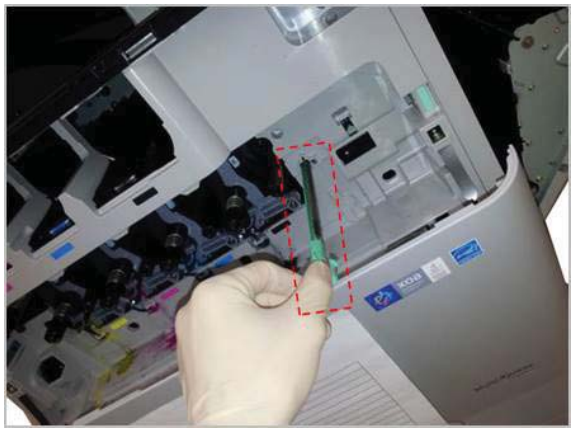
Figure 3-358 Remove the output bin



Step 6: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-359 Remove the paper dust brush

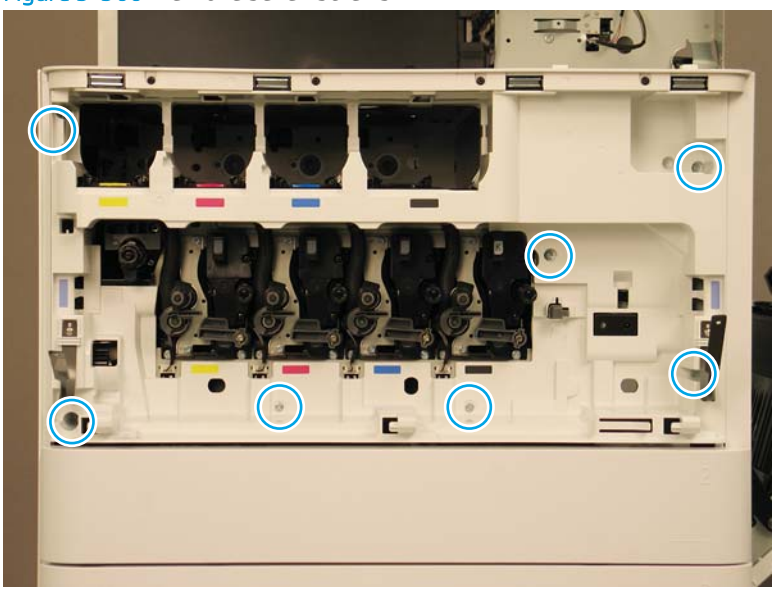


Step 7: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.

3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-360 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-361 Remove the inner cover



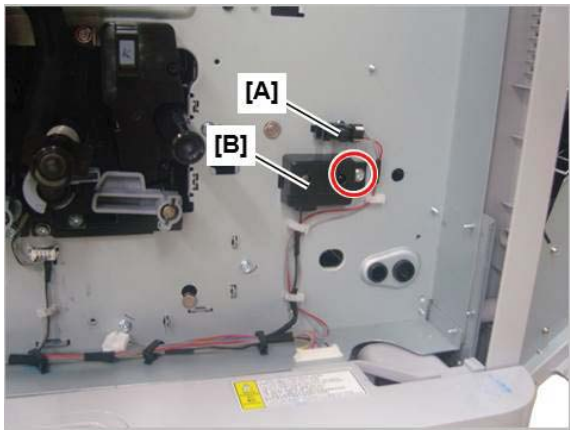
Step 8: Remove the TCU sensors

▲ Release the corresponding sensor.

a. [A]: Toner collection unit level sensor.

b. [B]: Toner collection unit detect sensor.

Figure 3-362 Remove the TCU unit detect sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Reservoir unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover.
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 6: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 7: Remove the reservoir unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the reservoir unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Reservoir unit part number	
SAM-JC93-01089B	Frame Toner Guide C/M/Y
SAM-JC93-01088B	Frame Toner Guide Black

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

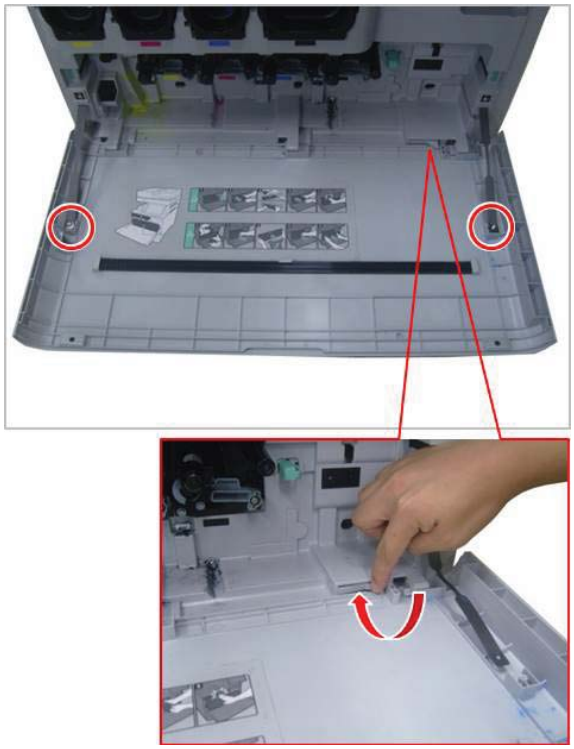
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

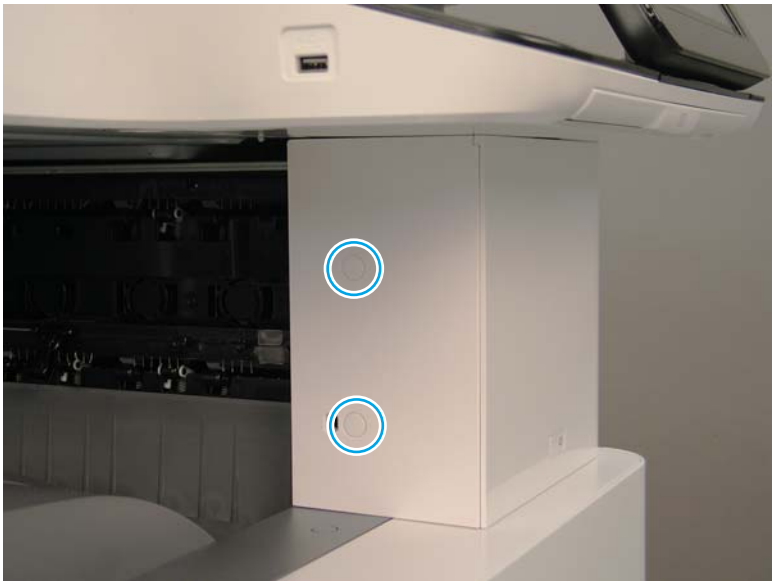
Figure 3-363 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-364 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

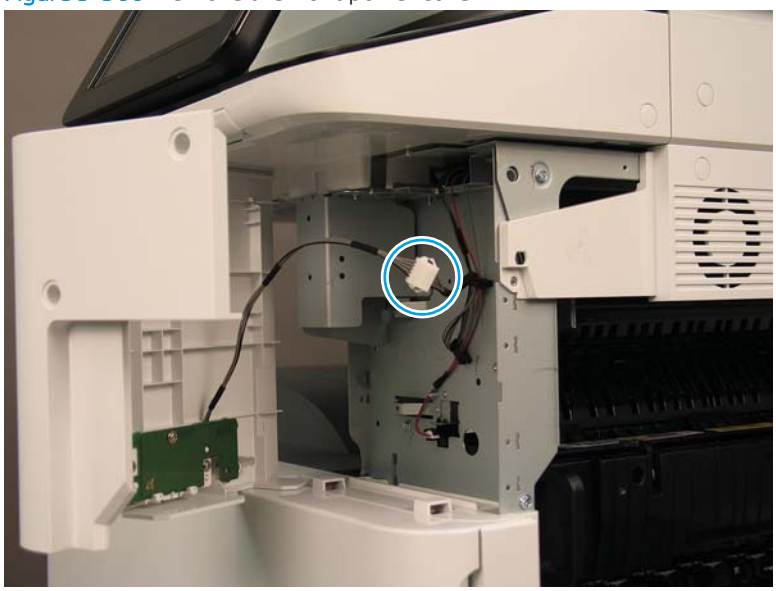
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-365 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-366 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

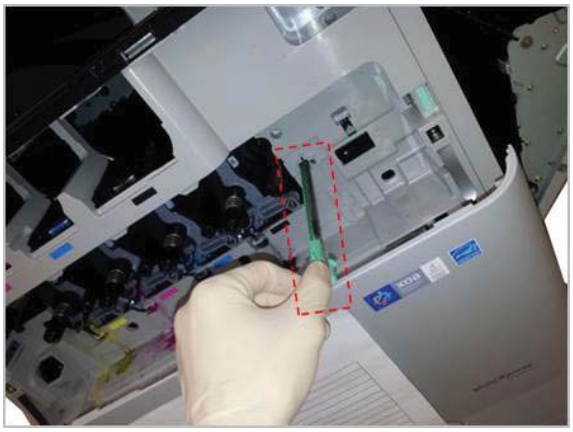
Figure 3-367 Remove the output bin



Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

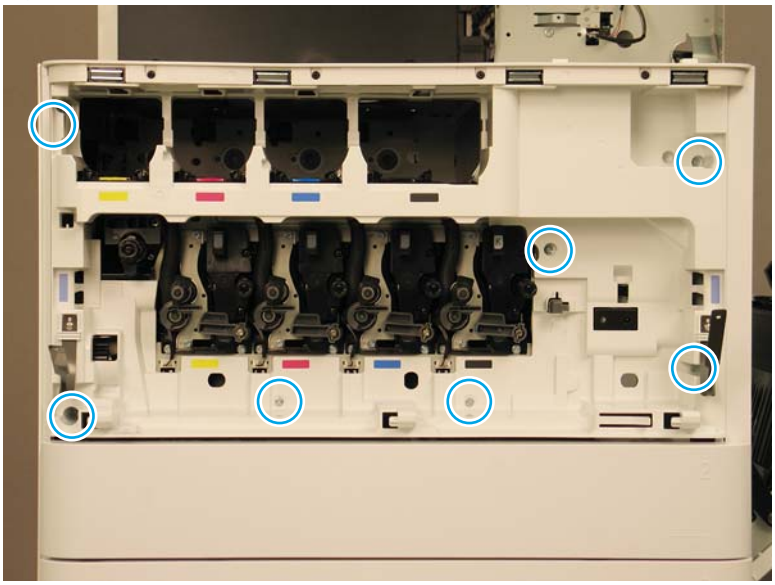
Figure 3-368 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 6: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-369 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-370 Remove the inner cover

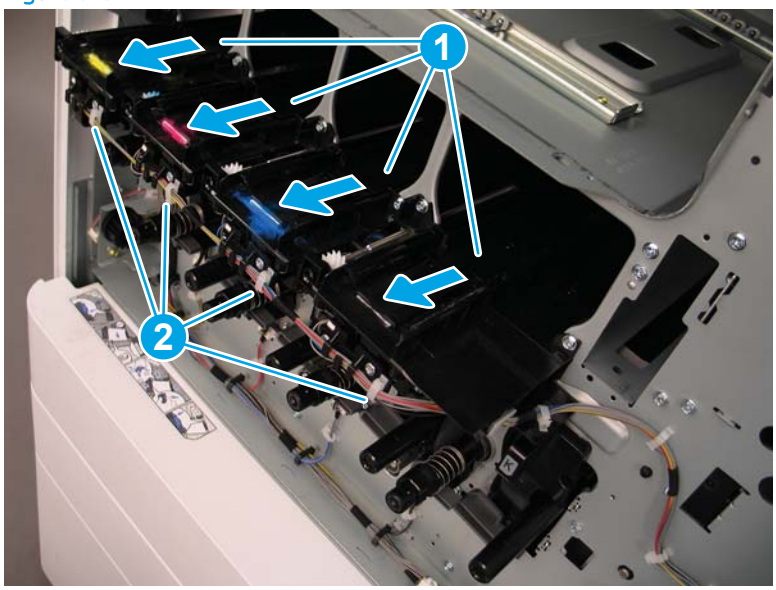


Step 7: Remove the reservoir unit

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first. Follow the instructions below to remove only those reservoirs required to reach the target reservoir.

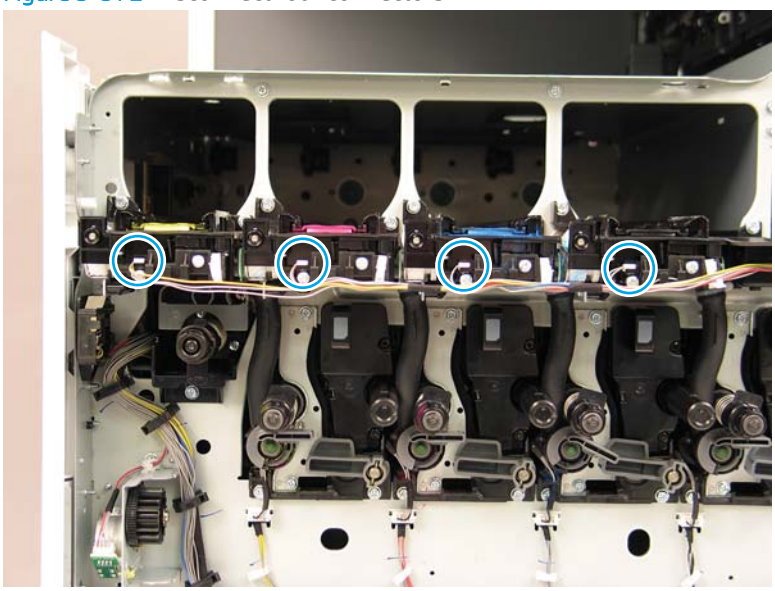
1. Close the toner reservoir shutters (callout 1), and then release the cables from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 3-371 Close the shutters and release the cables



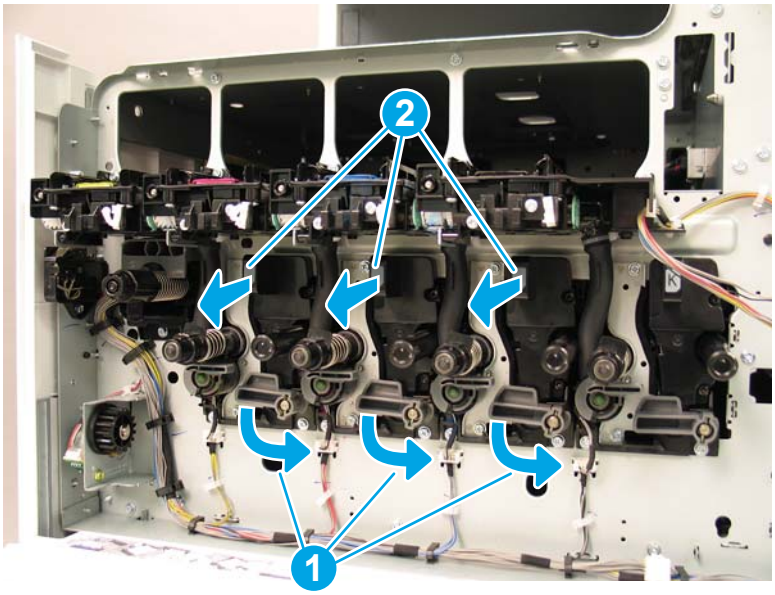
2. Disconnect four connectors.

Figure 3-372 Disconnect four connectors



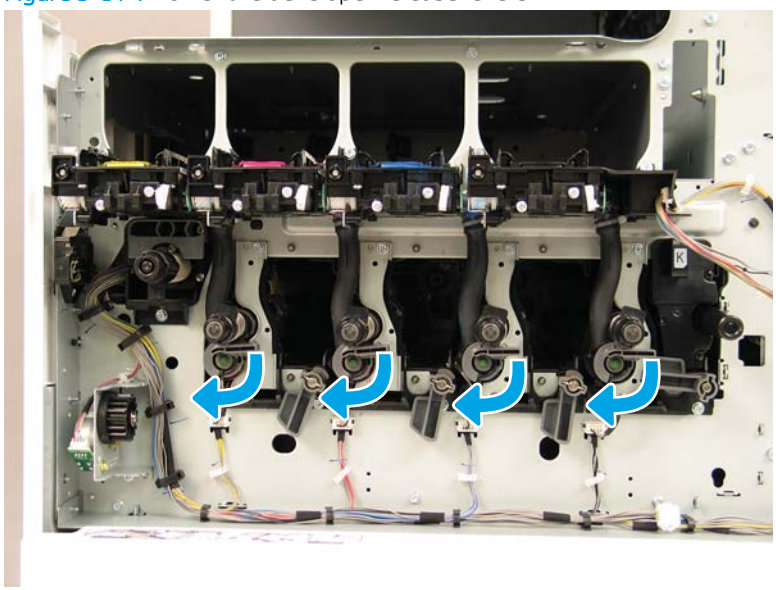
3. Lower the release levers (callout 1), and then remove the yellow, magenta, and cyan drum units (callout 2).

Figure 3-373 Remove drum units



4. Lower and close the release levers for all of the developer units. This stops the flow of toner from the toner reservoirs to the developer units.

Figure 3-374 Lower the developer release levers



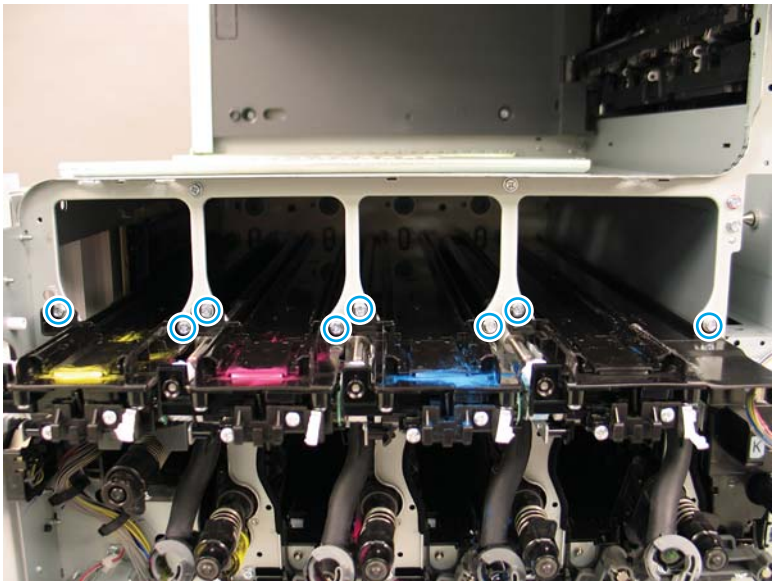
5. Release the valves from the toner connections by rotating the valves side-to-side while pulling them firmly away from the printer.

Figure 3-375 Release the toner supply pipes



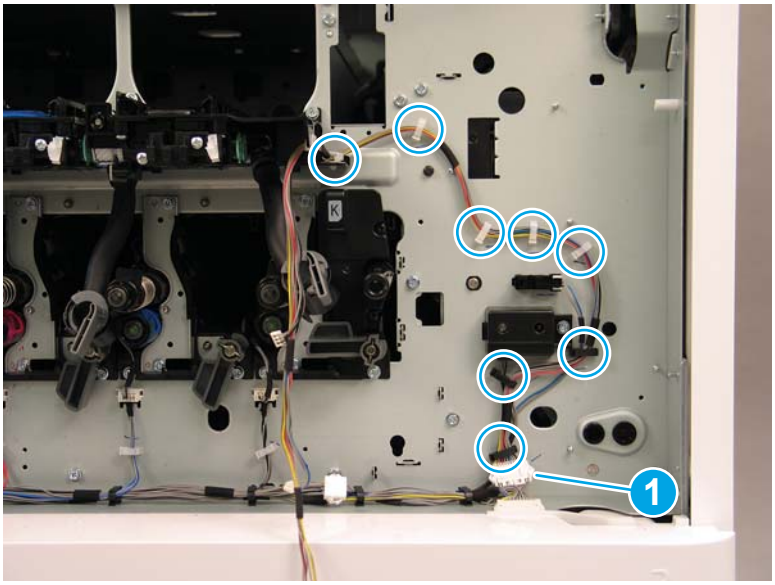
6. Remove eight screws.

Figure 3-376 Remove eight screws



7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cables from eight retainers.

Figure 3-377 Disconnect one connector and release the cables

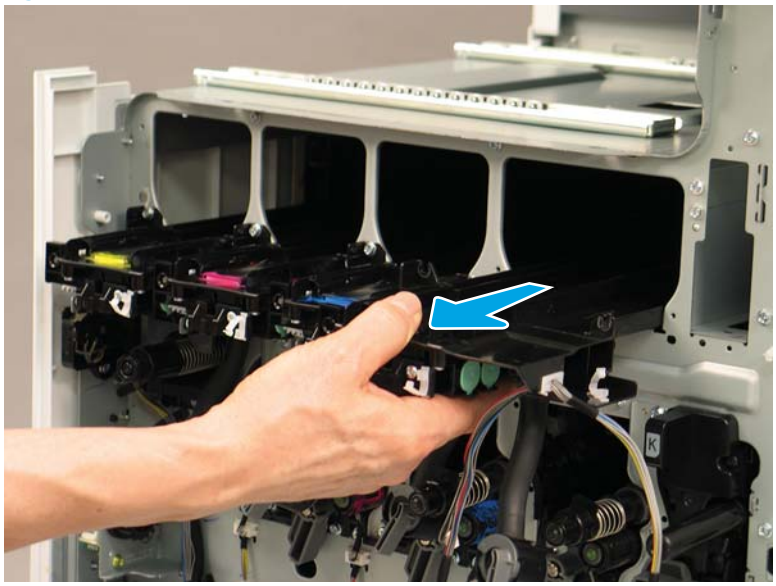


8. Remove the toner reservoir by sliding it out of the printer. The figure below shows the black toner reservoir. The procedure is the same for all of the toner reservoirs.

NOTE: The toner reservoirs must be removed in this order: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow. If you are replacing the yellow reservoir, the black, cyan, and magenta reservoirs must all be removed first.

NOTE: Removing the yellow toner reservoir requires removing the high voltage power supply.

Figure 3-378 Remove the black toner reservoir

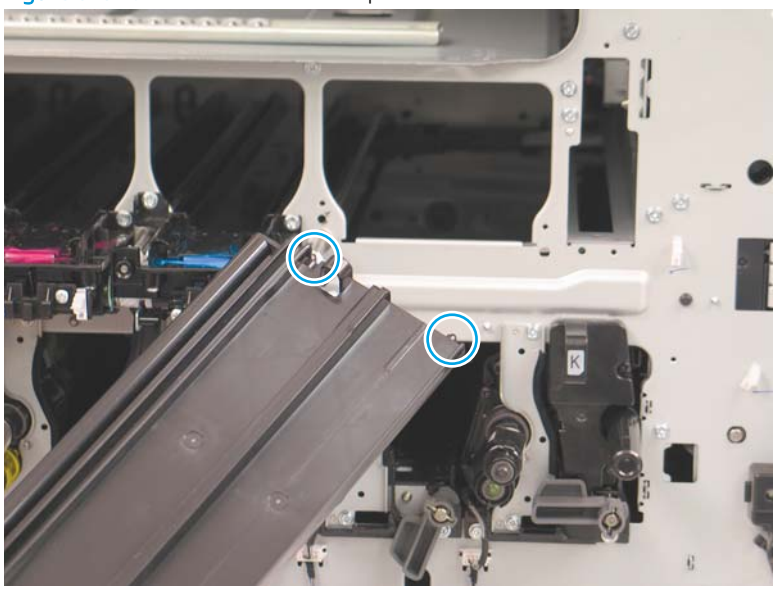


9. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Toner reservoir

▲ Position the locator pins on the toner reservoir into the openings in the sheet metal inside the printer.

Figure 3-379 Position the locator pins



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Auto size sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the auto size sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Auto size sensor part number	
SAM-JC92-02622A	Auto size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

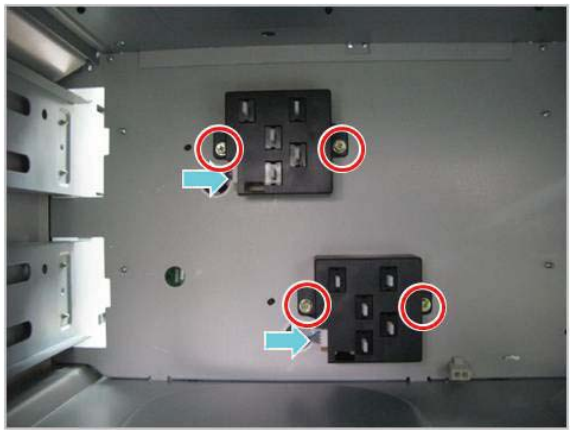
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the auto size sensor

▲ Do the following:

- Remove all trays to access the inside of the printer.
- Disconnect the connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-380 Remove screws



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover open sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover.
- Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 3: Remove the front power cover
- Step 4: Remove the output bin
- Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 6: Remove the inner front cover
- Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover open sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover open sensor part number
Front cover open sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

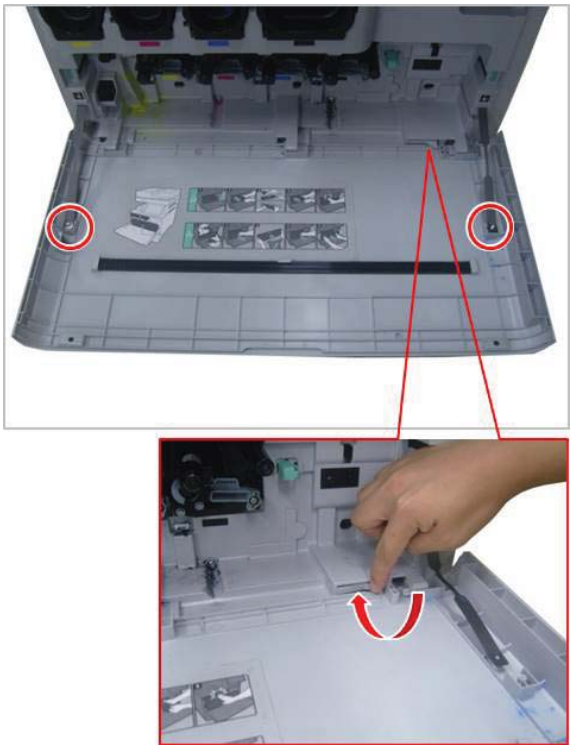
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front cover.

- Remove two screws securing the front cover. While pushing the right hook, remove the front cover.

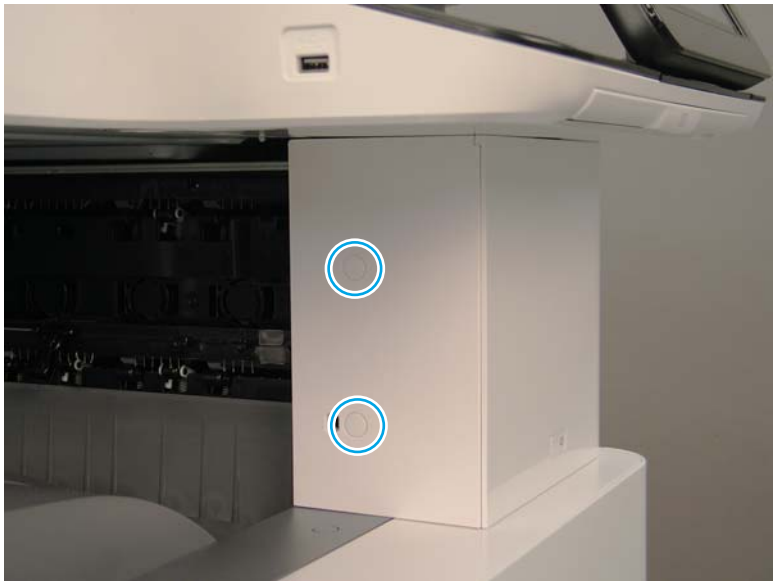
Figure 3-381 Remove the front cover



Step 2: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-382 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 3: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

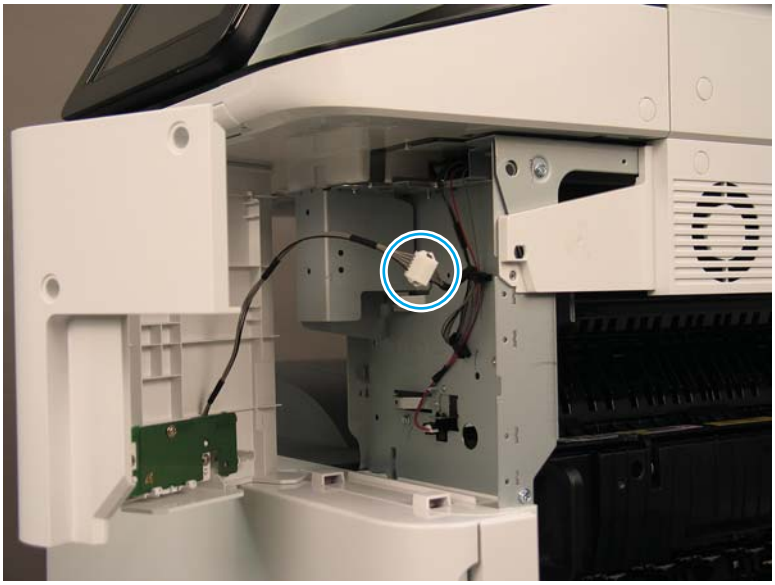
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-383 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-384 Remove the front power cover



Step 4: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

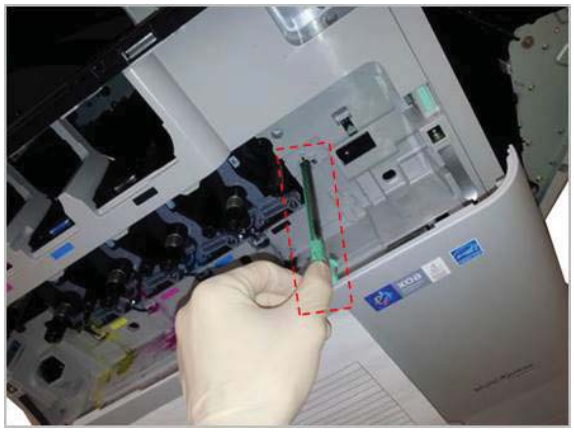
Figure 3-385 Remove the output bin



Step 5: Remove the paper dust brush

- Remove the paper dust brush.

Figure 3-386 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 6: Remove the inner front cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove the all of the toner cartridges.
3. Remove seven screws.

Figure 3-387 Remove seven screws



4. Lift the inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

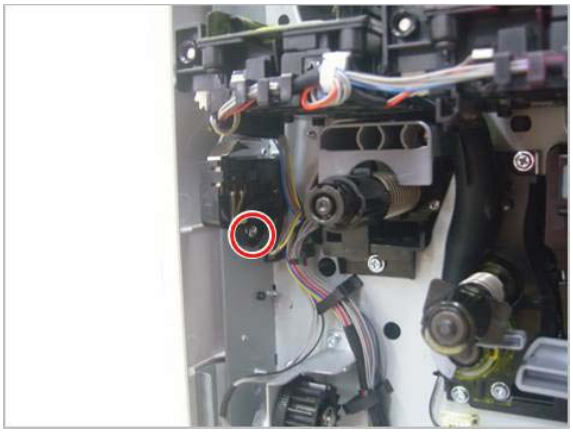
Figure 3-388 Remove the inner cover



Step 7: Remove the front cover open sensor

▲ Remove one screw, and then disconnect one in-line connector on the left side. Lift the lower edge of the sensor away from the printer, and then pull down to remove it.

Figure 3-389 Remove the front cover open sensor



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser out sensor (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Fuser out sensor part number
Fuser out sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

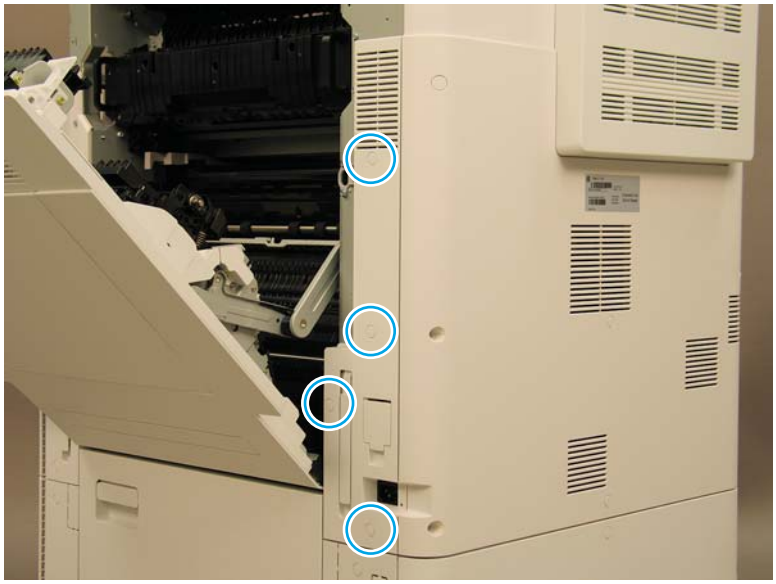
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

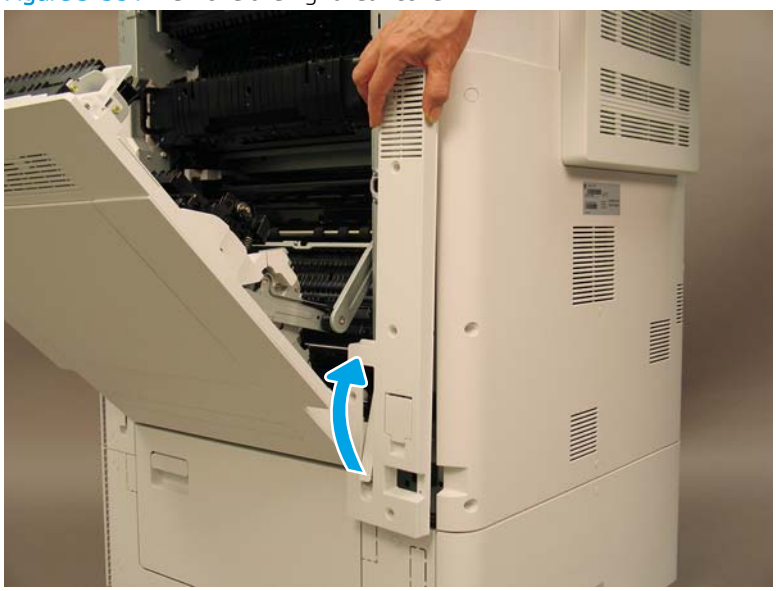
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-390 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

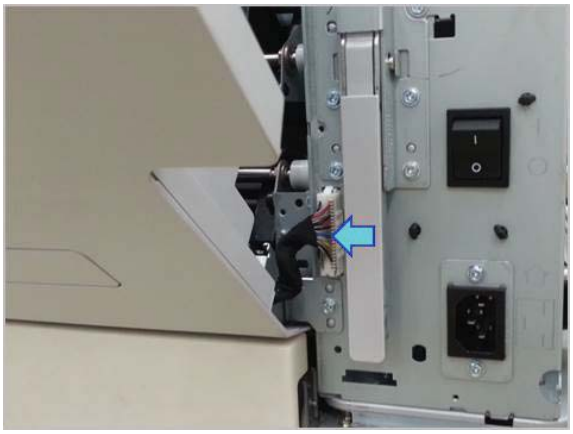
Figure 3-391 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

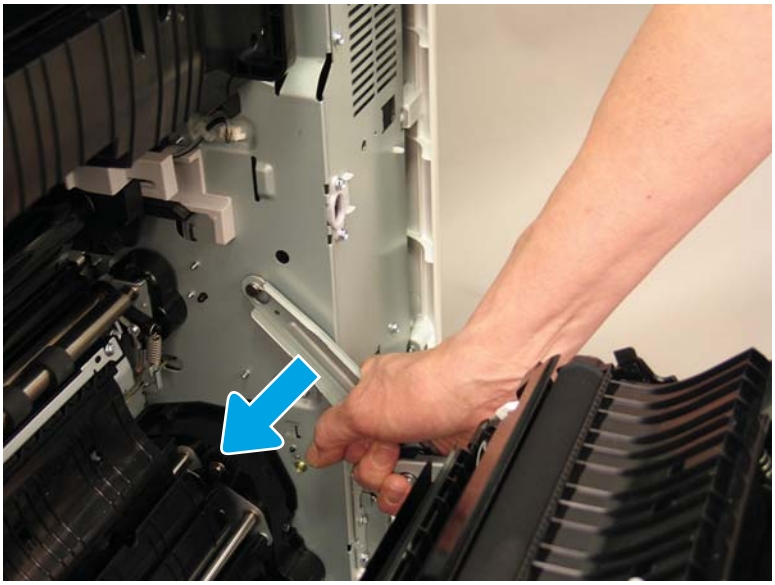
Figure 3-392 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

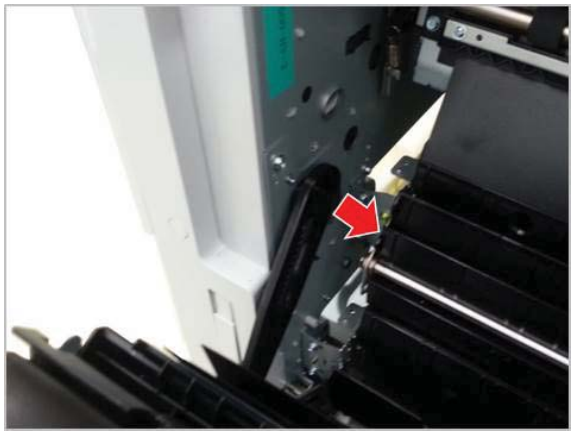
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-393 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

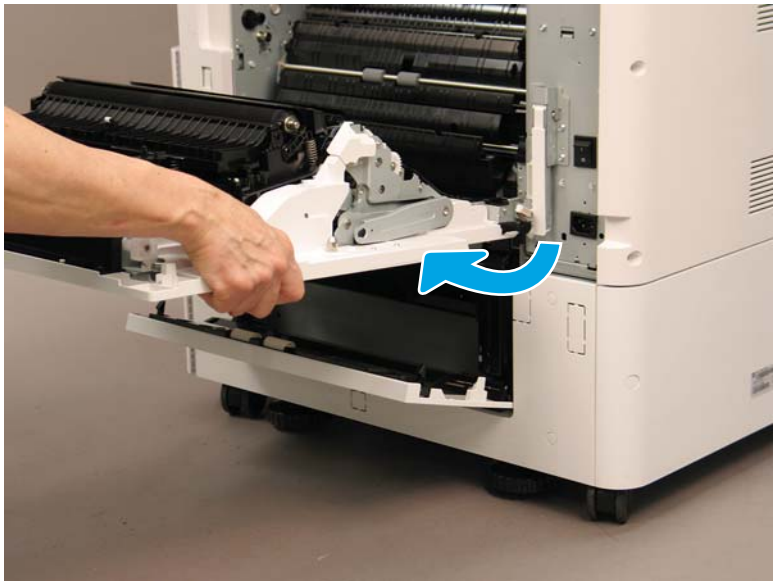
Figure 3-394 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-395 Remove the right door

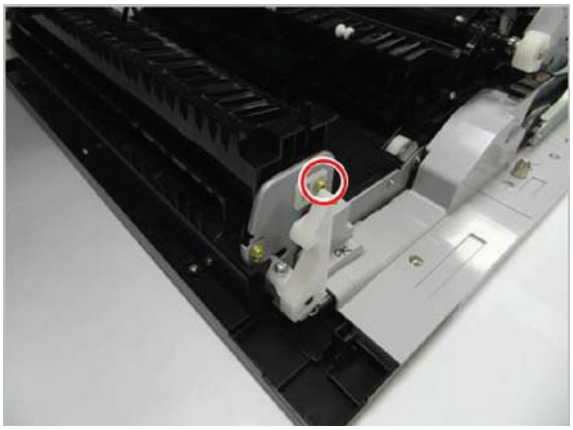


Step 3: Remove the fuser out sensor

1. Remove the right rear cover.
2. Remove the right door.

3. Remove one screw on the back, top corner of the door.

Figure 3-396 Remove one screw



4. Remove one screw on the front, top corner of the door, and then open the cover-side output.

Figure 3-397 Remove one screw



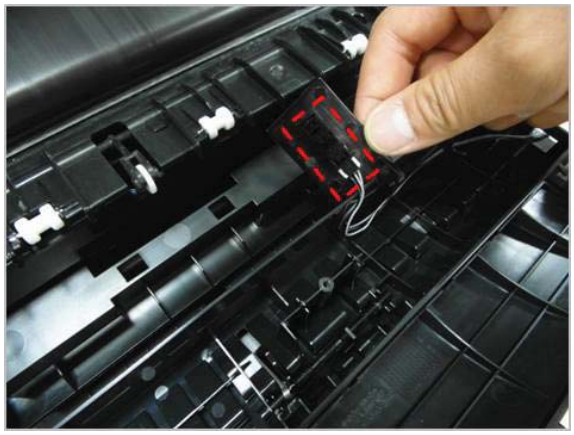
5. Remove one screw, and then rotate the sensor holder up.

Figure 3-398 Remove one screw



6. Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the fuser-out sensor from its holder.

Figure 3-399 Disconnect one connector



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed 2 sensor (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed 2 sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed 2 sensor part number
Feed 2 sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

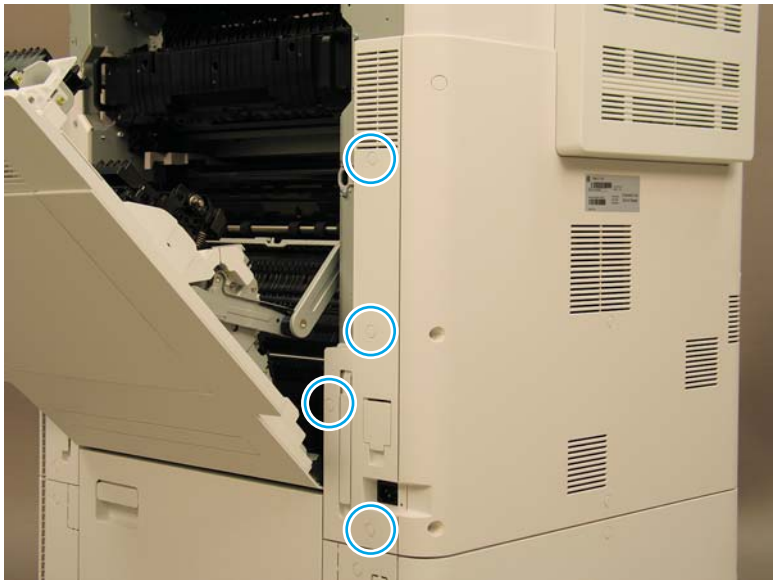
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

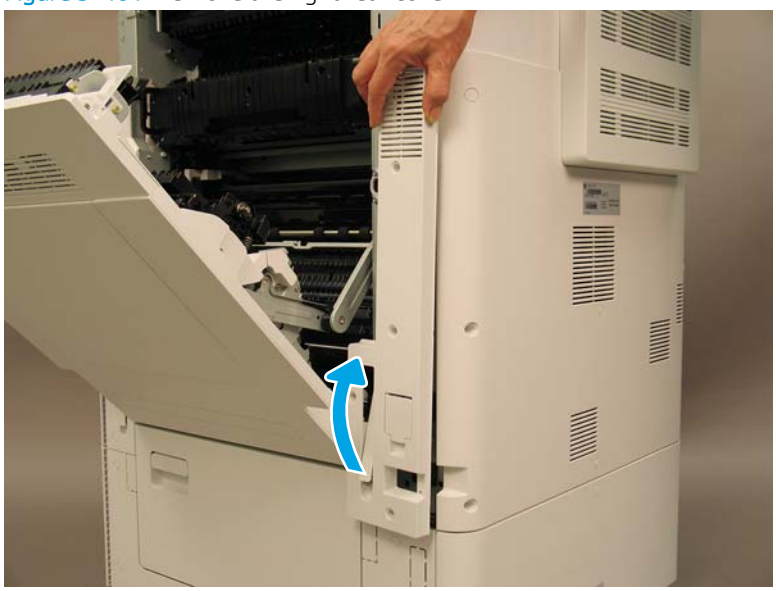
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-400 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

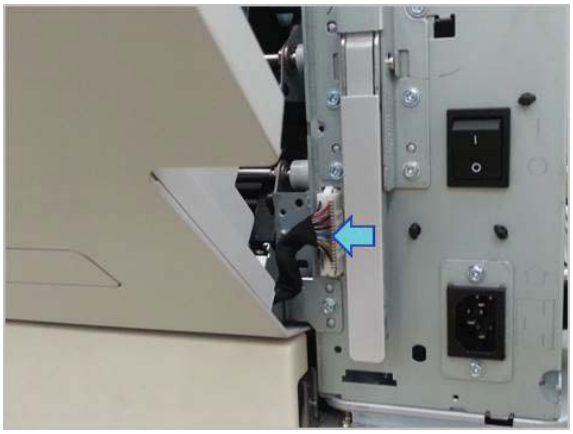
Figure 3-401 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

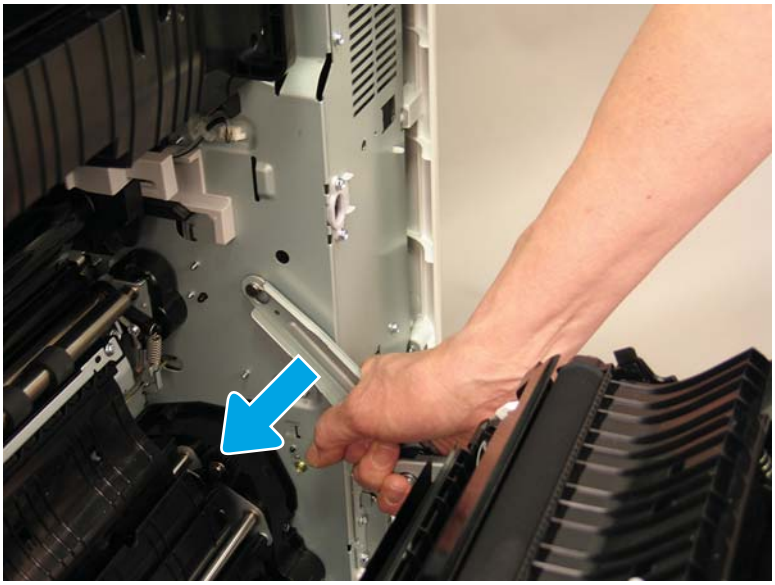
Figure 3-402 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

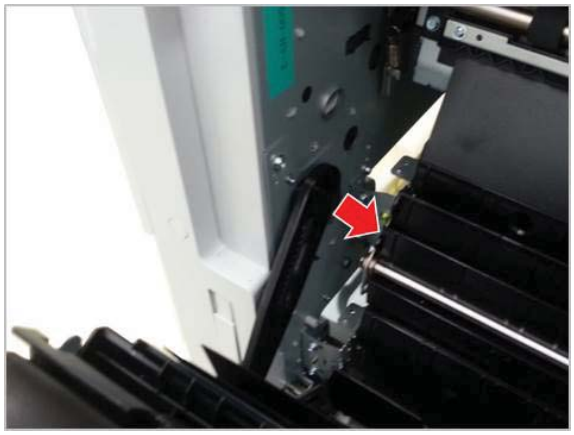
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-403 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

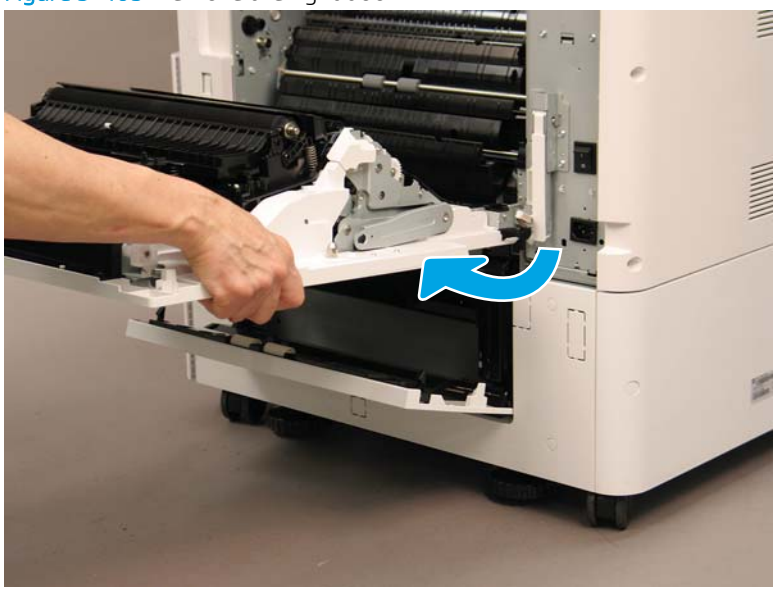
Figure 3-404 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

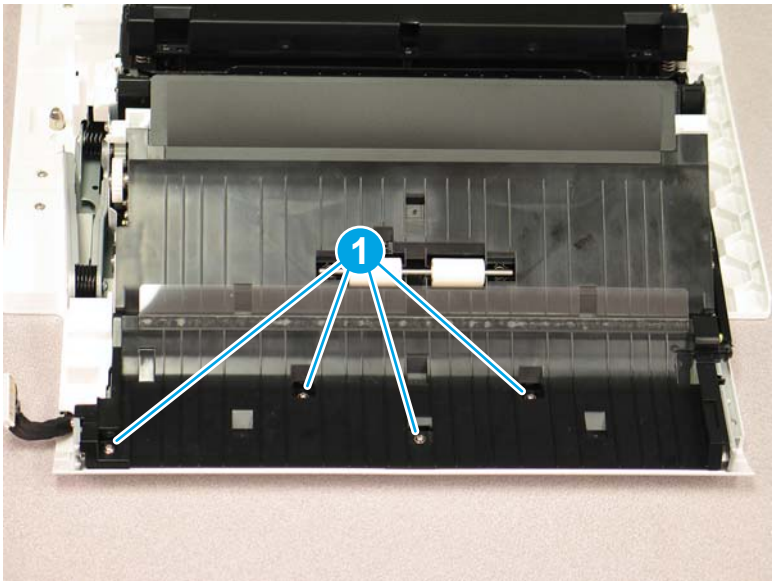
Figure 3-405 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

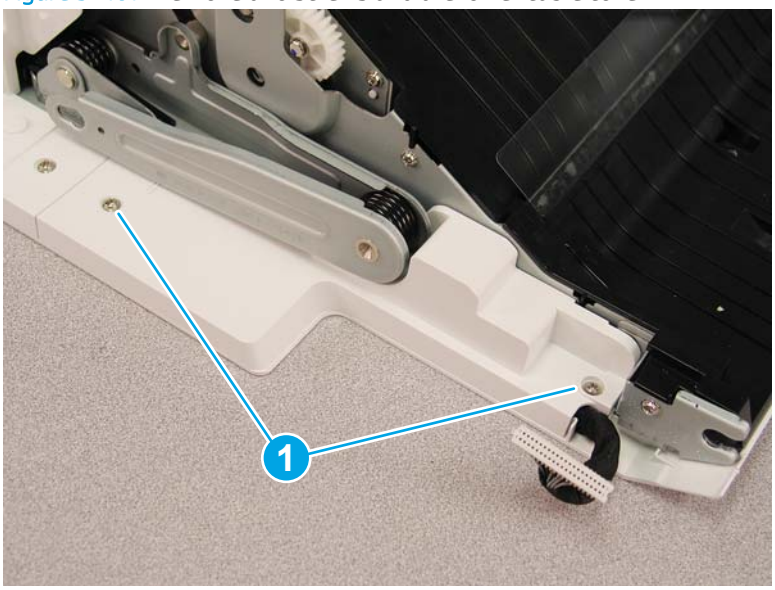
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-406 Remove four screws



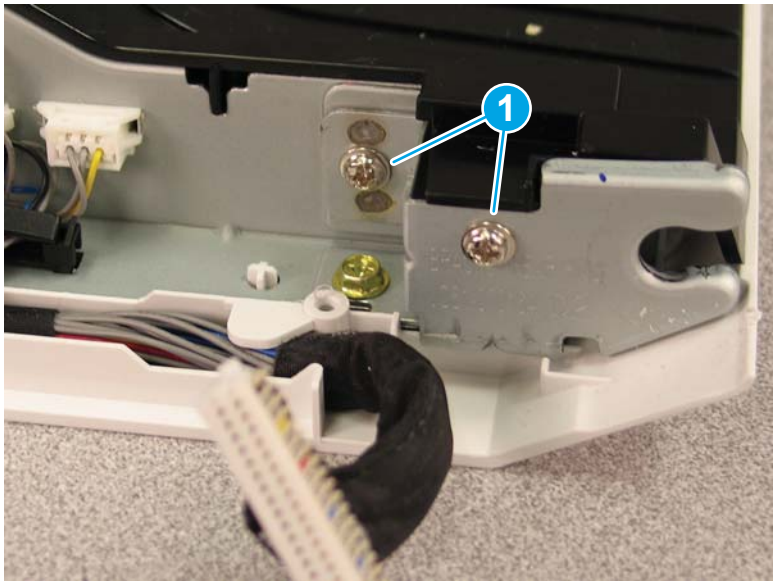
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 3-407 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



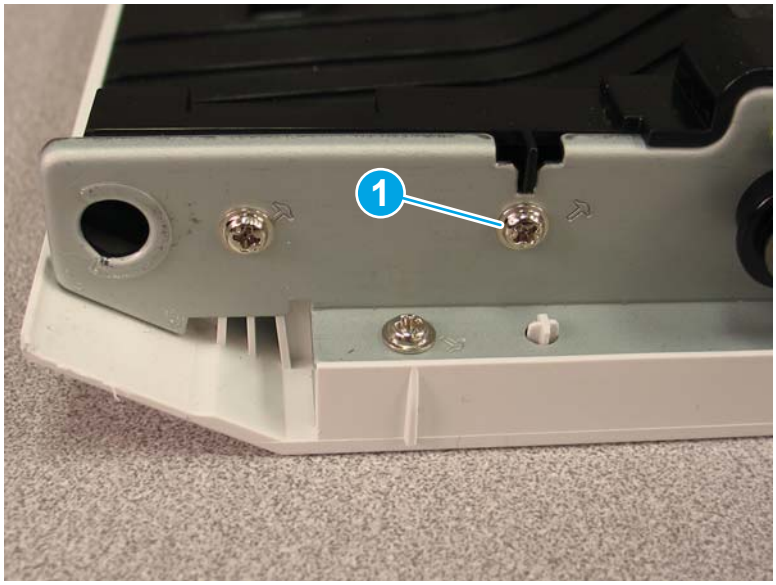
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-408 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-409 Remove one screw



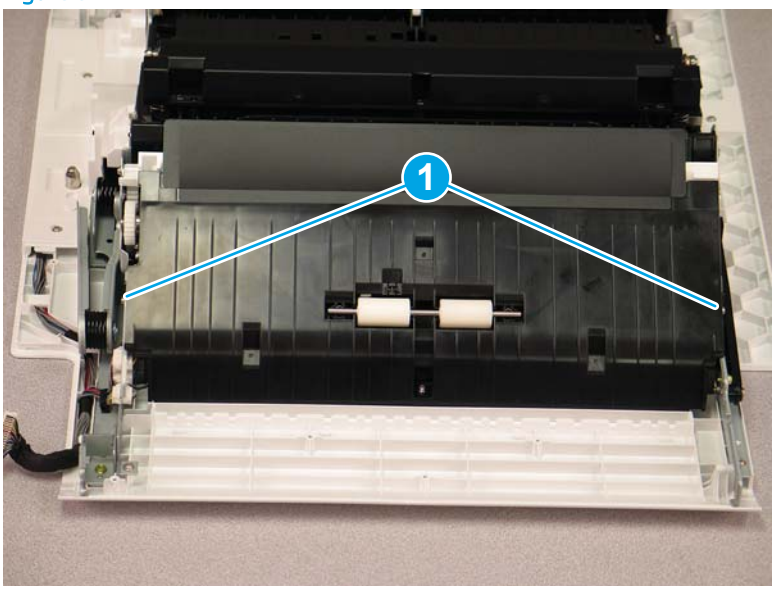
5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-410 Remove the feed guide take away lower



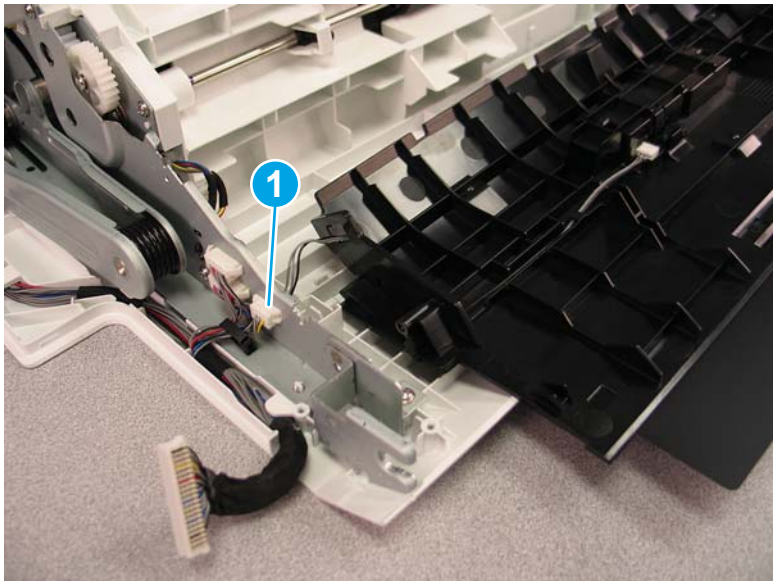
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-411 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

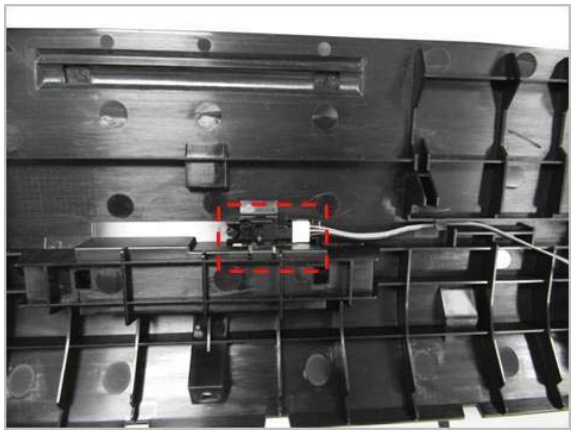
Figure 3-412 Remove the feed guide take away upper



Step 4: Remove the feed 2 sensor

- Disconnect the sensor connector, and then remove the feed 2 sensor located on the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 3-413 Disconnect one connector and remove the feed 2 sensor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) unit (on the right door)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) unit on the right door.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01352B	Tray 1, Door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

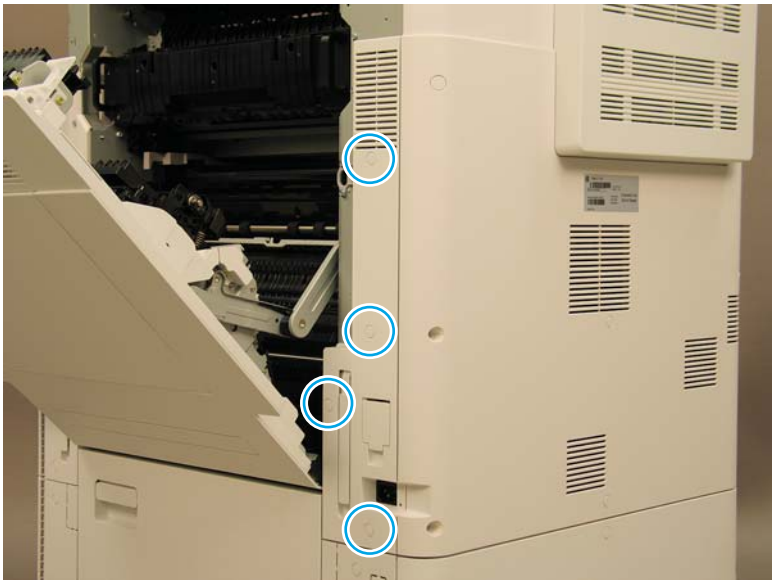
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

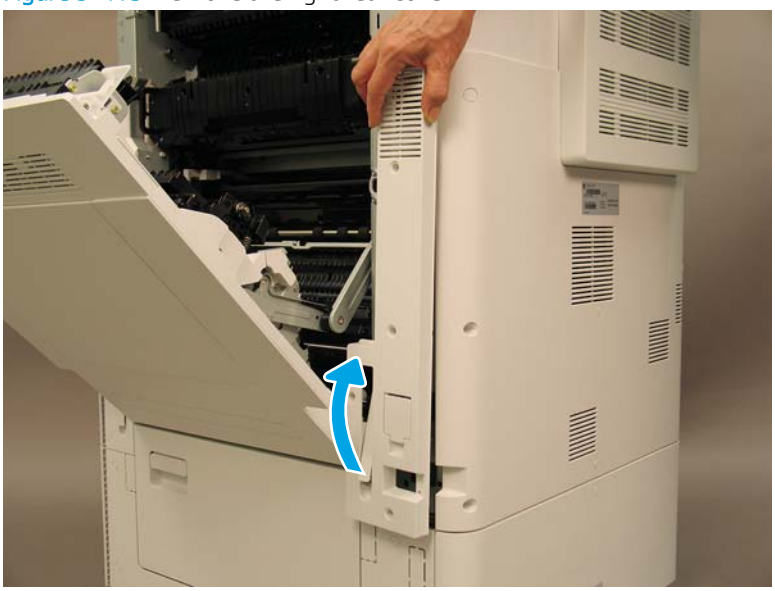
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-414 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

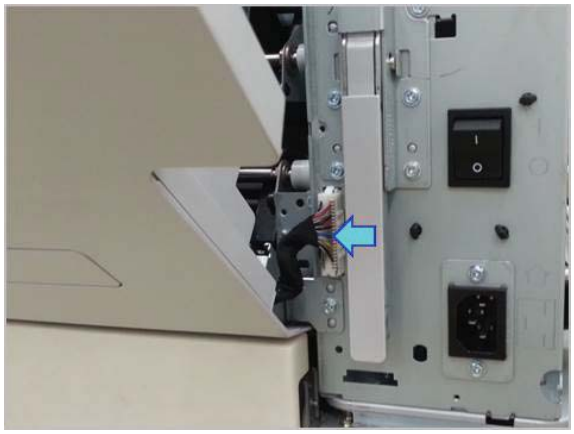
Figure 3-415 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

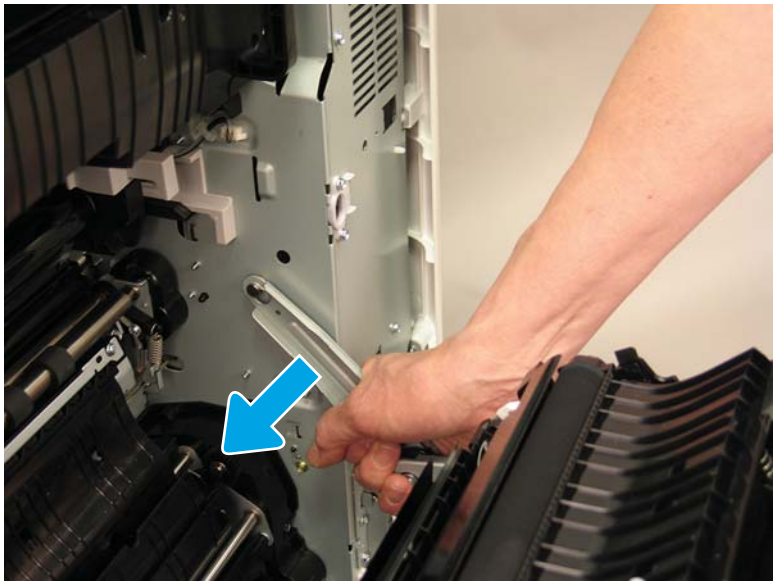
Figure 3-416 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

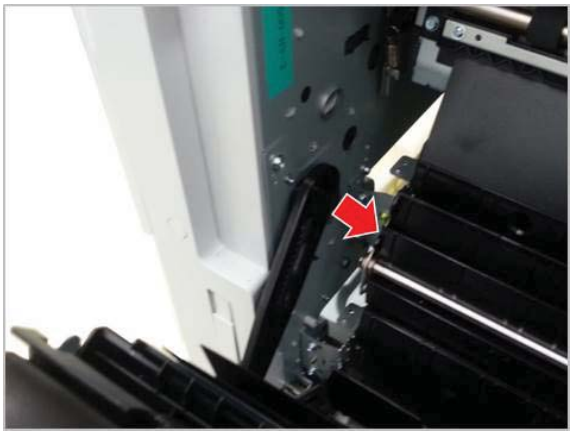
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-417 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

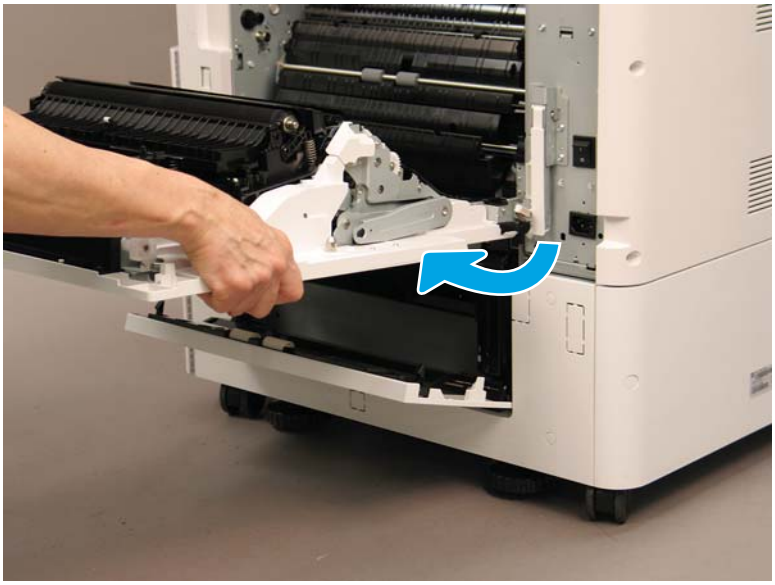
Figure 3-418 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-419 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

THIS SECTION IS FOR PLACEMENT ONLY (FPO). THE INSTRUCTIONS FOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION OF THIS ASSEMBLY ARE INCLUDED ELSEWHERE IN THIS CHAPTER AS A TARGET ASSEMBLY. THE INSTRUCTIONS FOR THIS SECTION WILL APPEAR HERE IN A FUTURE REVIEW.

Step 4: Remove the MP unit

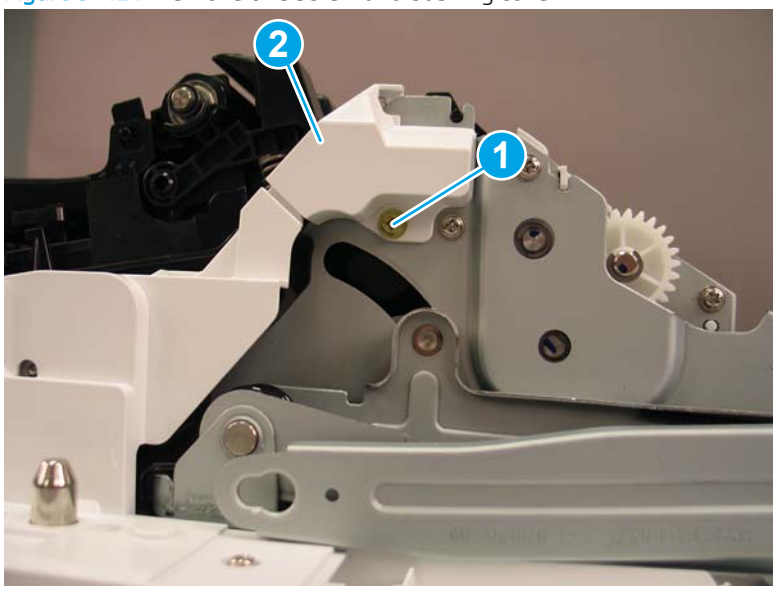
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 3-420 Release the hinge arm



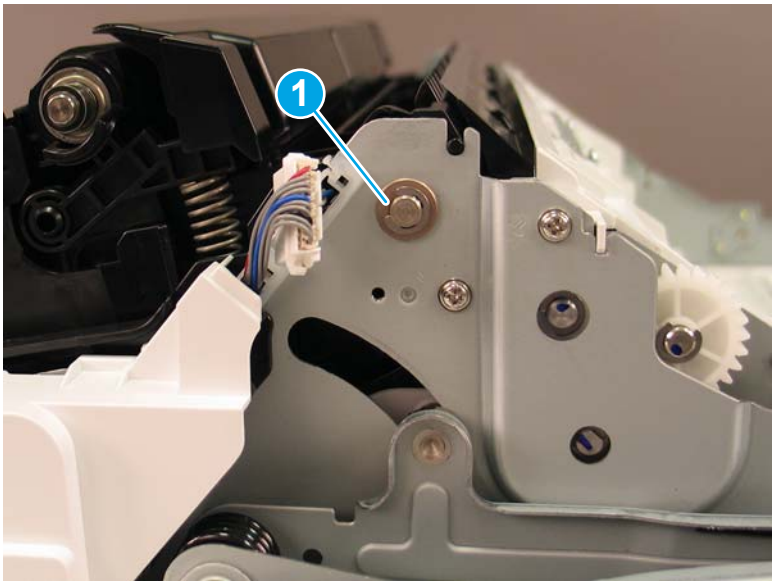
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 3-421 Remove one screw and bushing cover



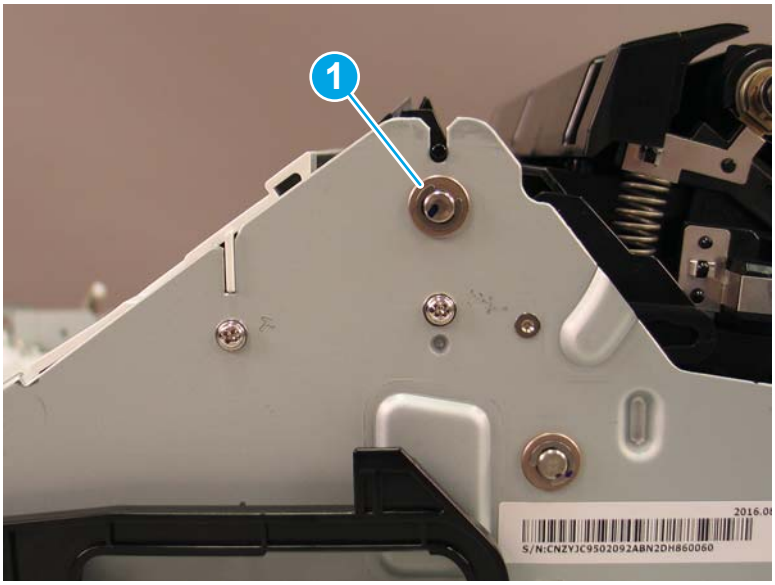
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-422 Remove one e-ring and bushing



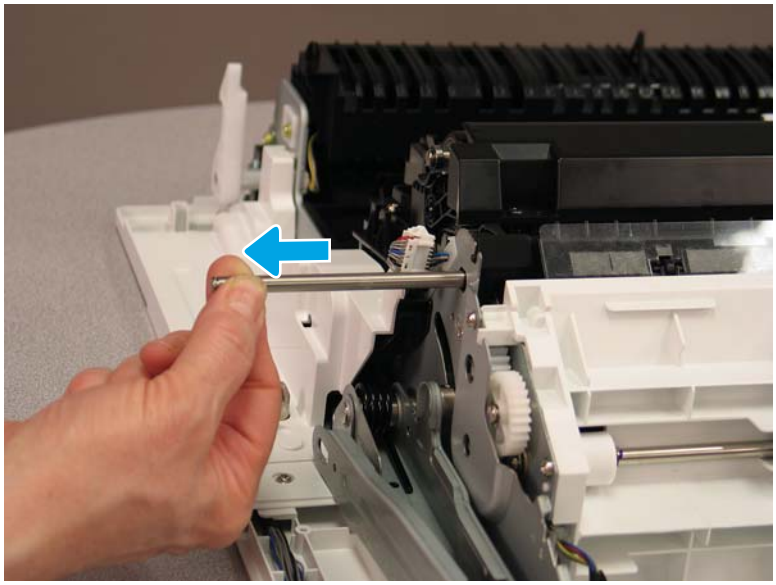
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-423 Remove one e-ring and bushing



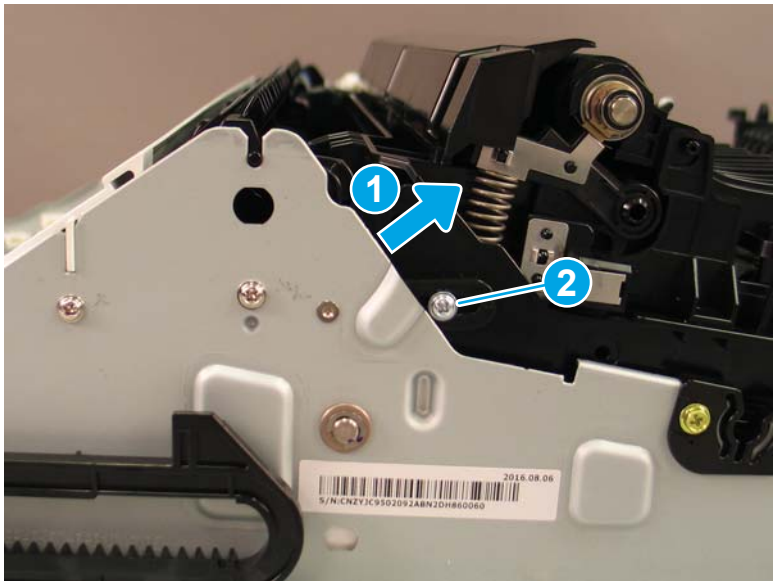
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-424 Remove the shaft



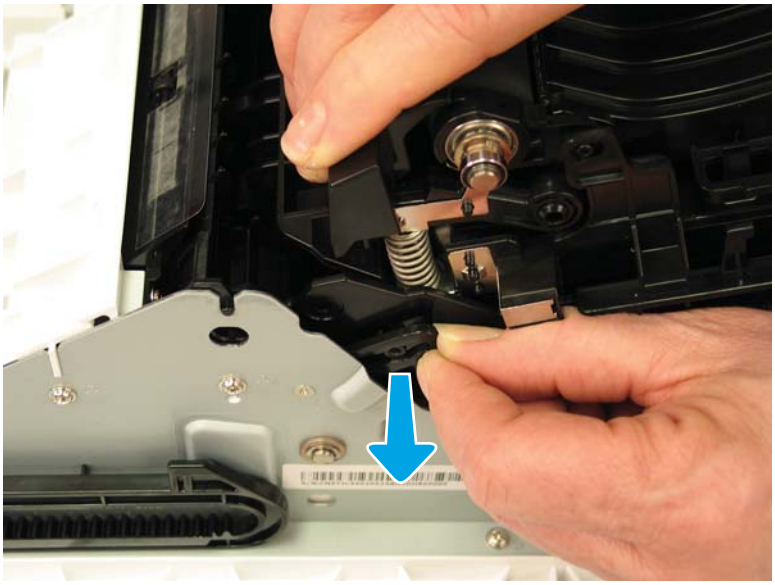
6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 3-425 Remove one screw



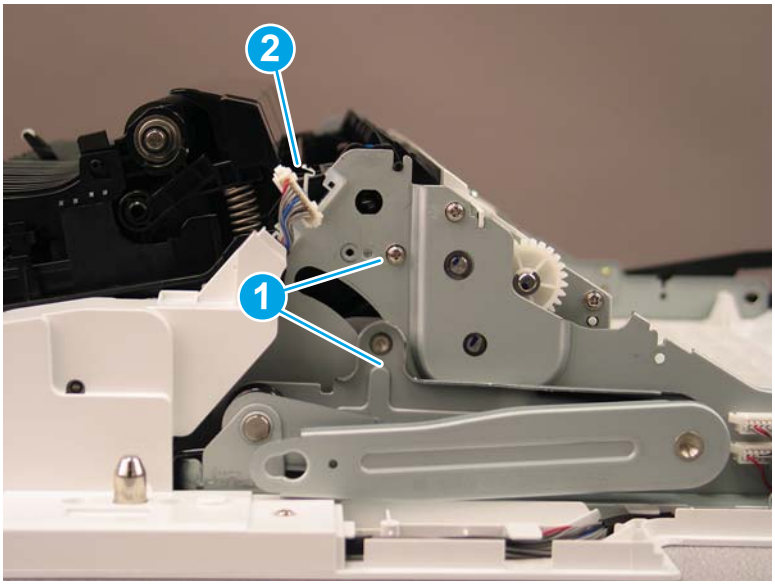
7. Release the hinge.

Figure 3-426 Release the hinge



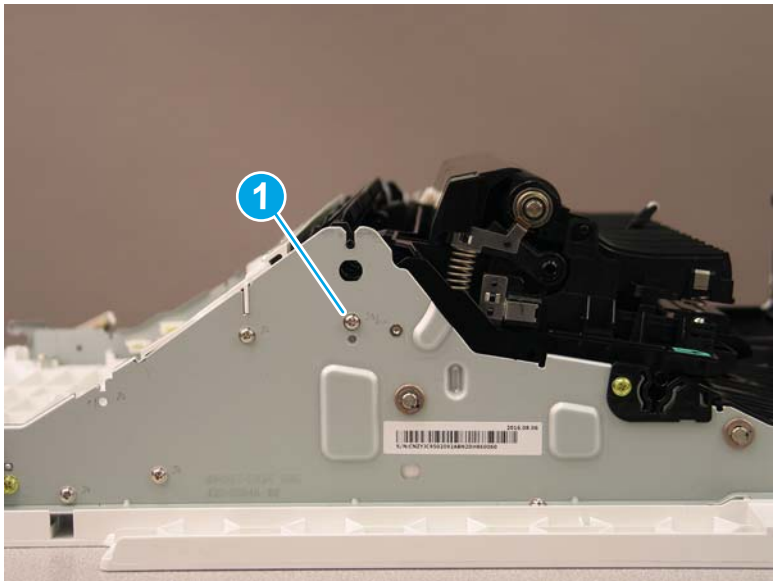
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 3-427 Remove one screw



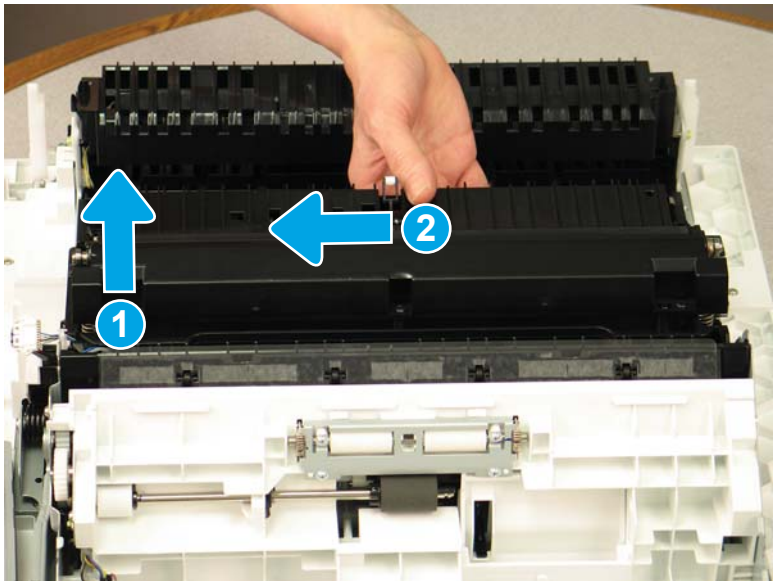
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-428 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

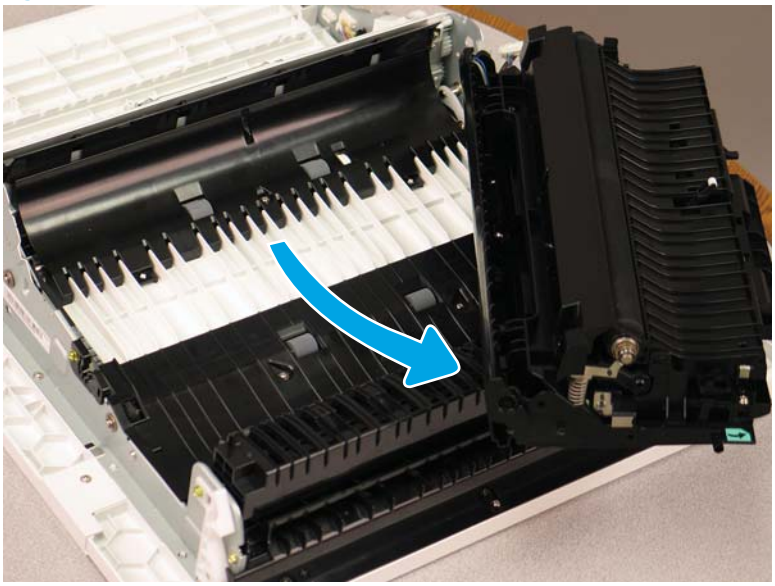
Figure 3-429 Release the feed roller assembly



11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

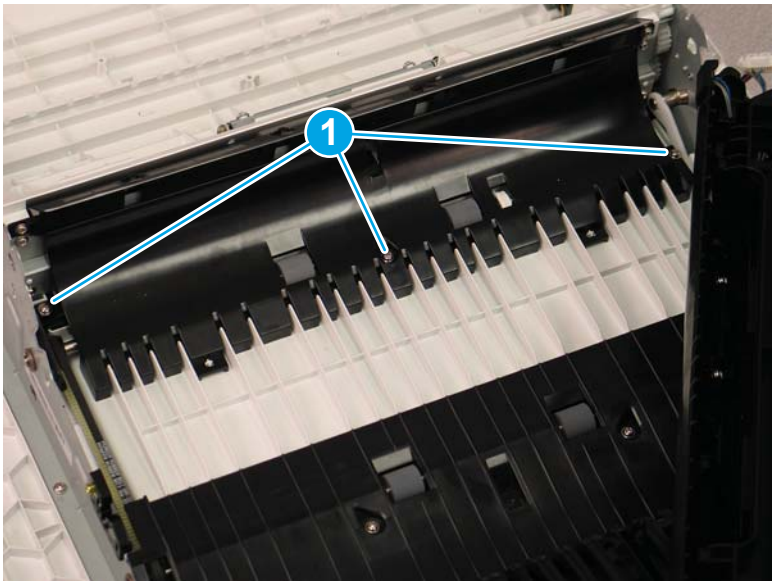
⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 3-430 Rotate the feed roller assembly



12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-431 Remove three screws



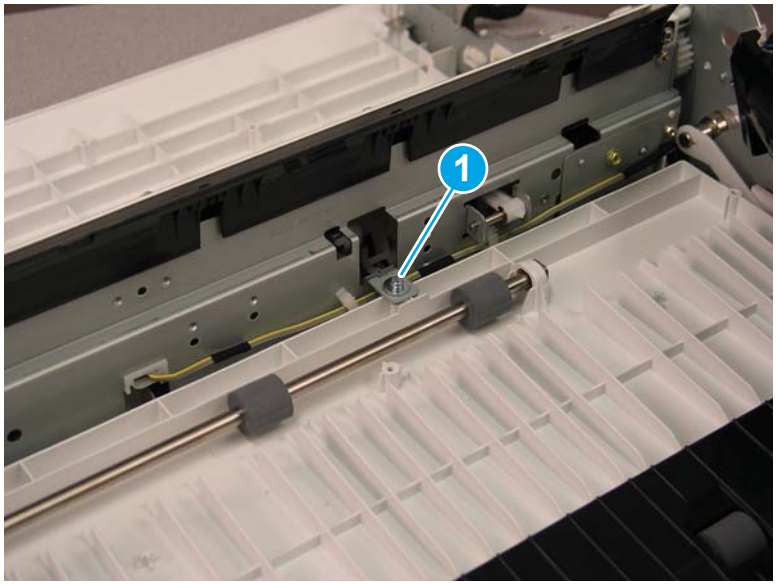
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 3-432 Remove the duplex lower guide



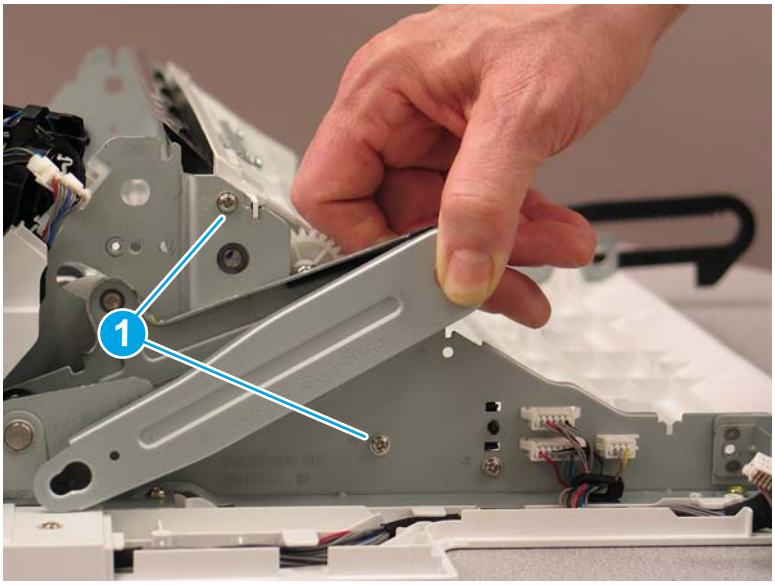
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-433 Remove one screw



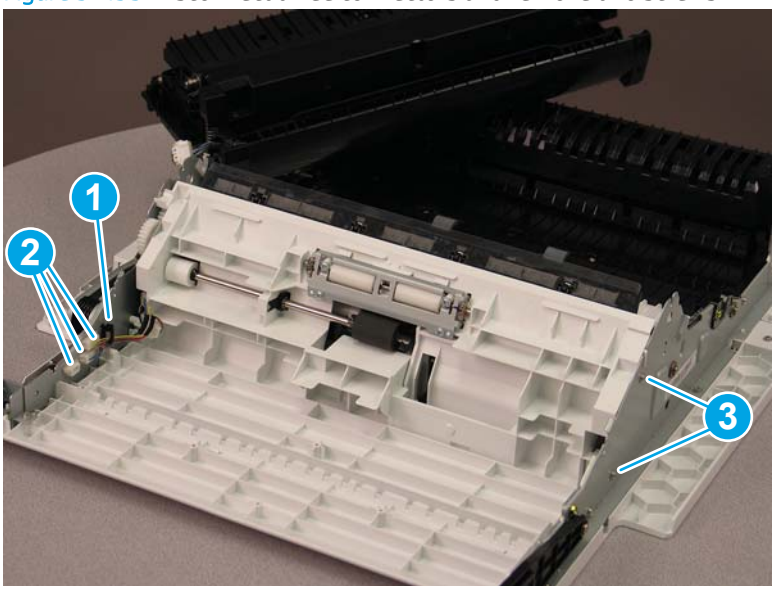
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-434 Remove two screws



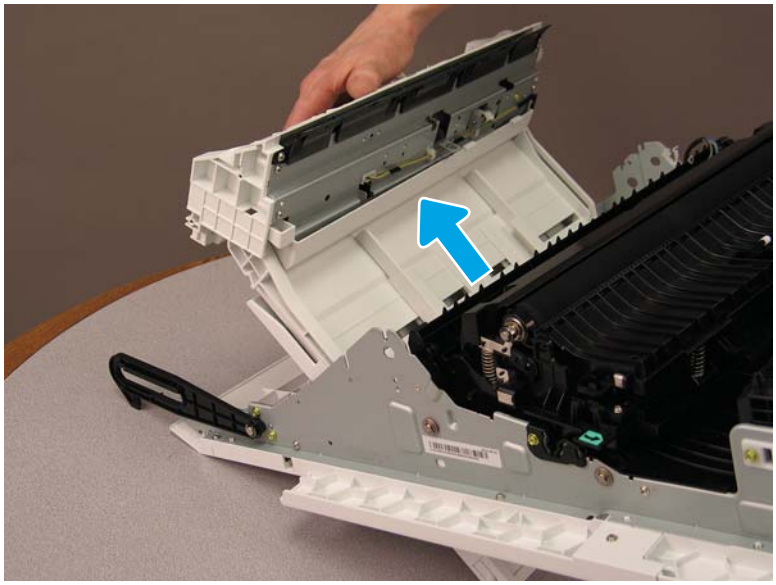
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-435 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



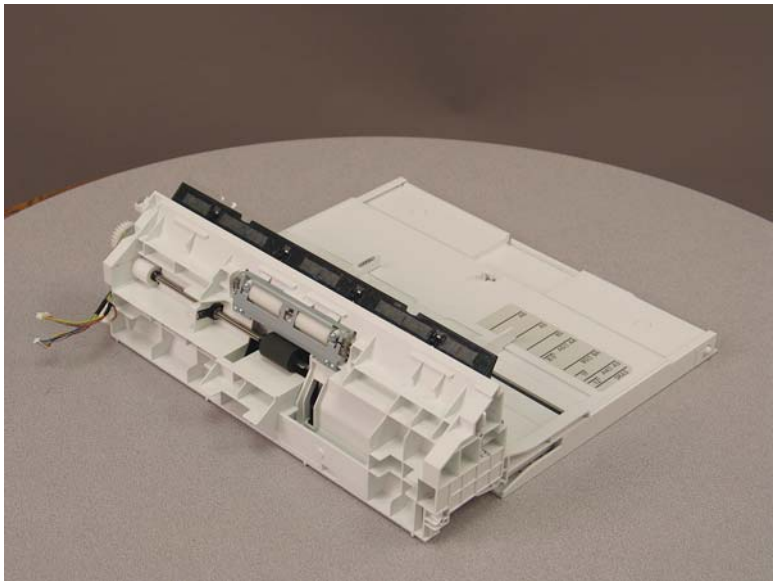
17. Release the MP unit from the right door.

Figure 3-436 Release the MP unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

Figure 3-437 Remove the MP unit



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) empty sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP empty sensor part number	
AM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

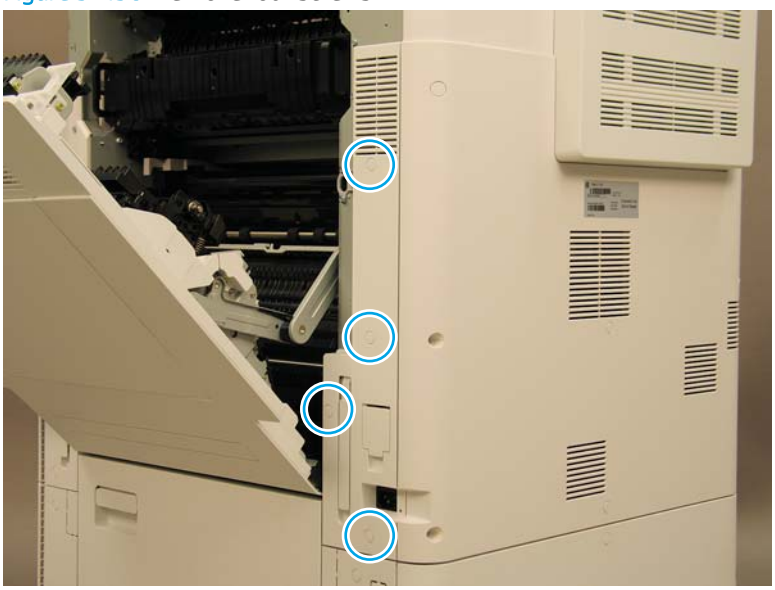
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

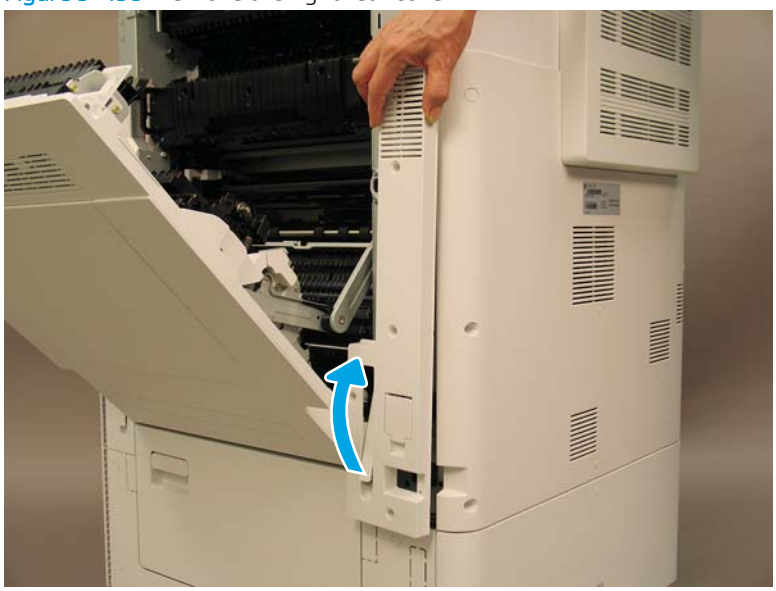
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-438 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

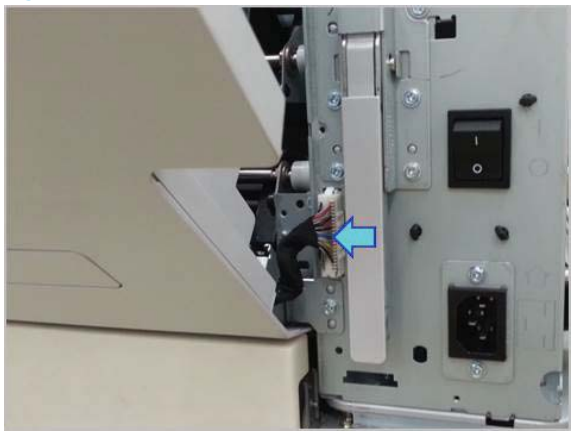
Figure 3-439 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

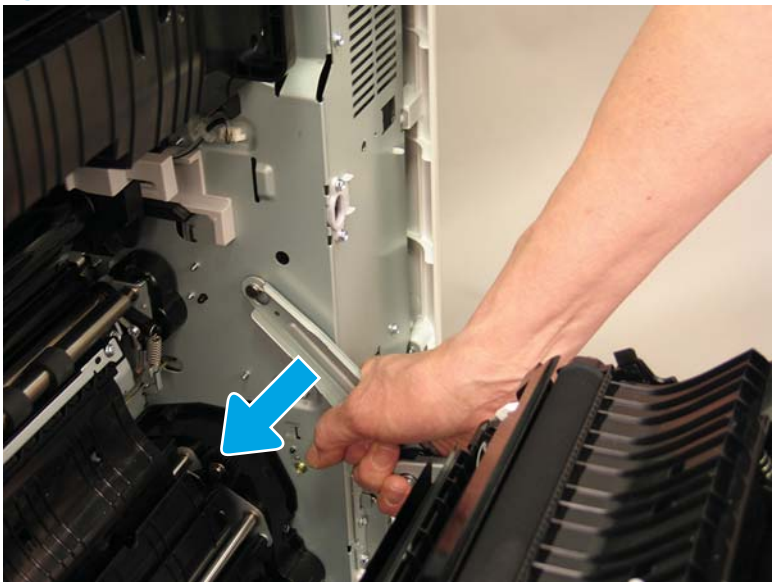
Figure 3-440 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

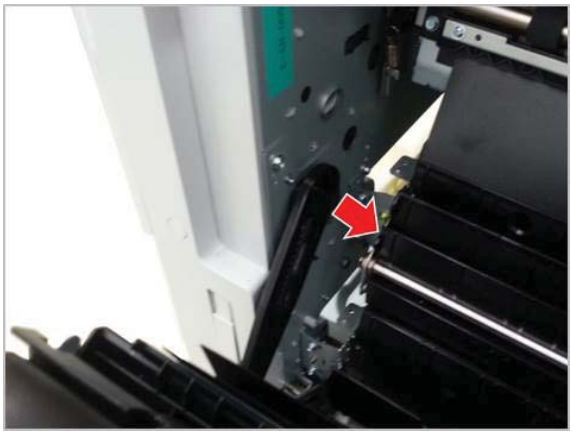
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-441 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

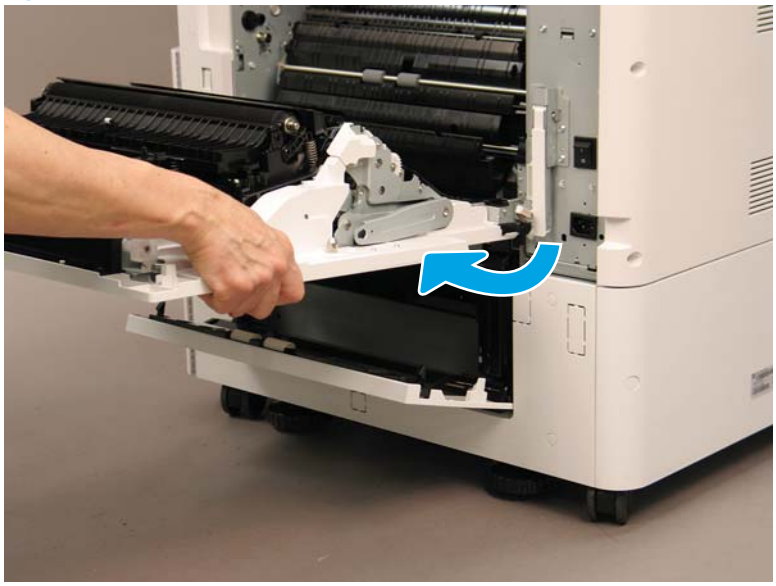
Figure 3-442 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

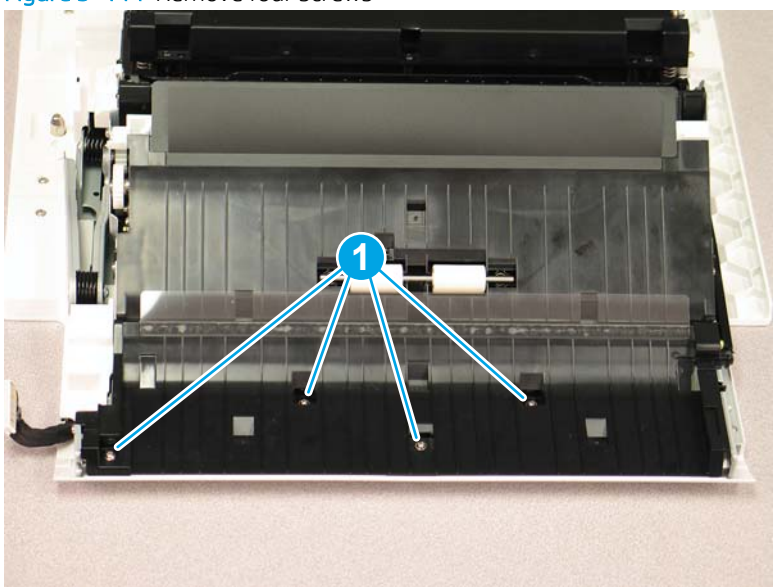
Figure 3-443 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

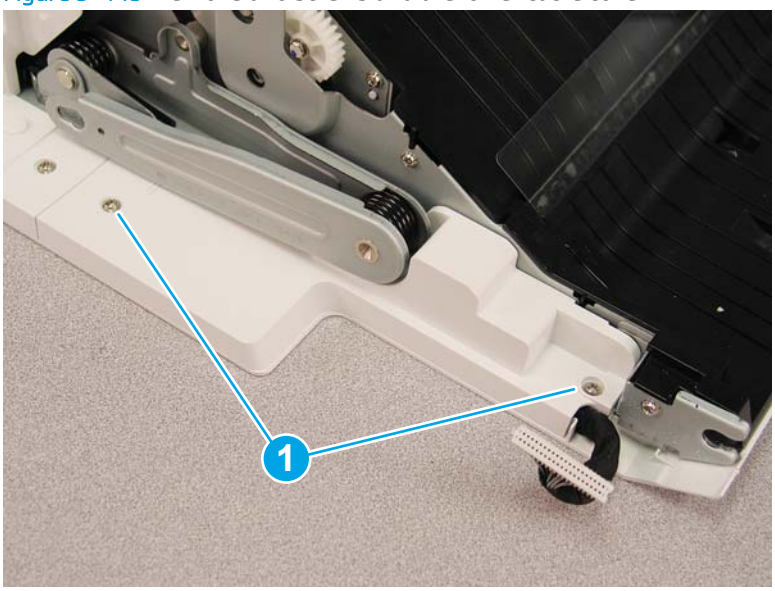
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-444 Remove four screws



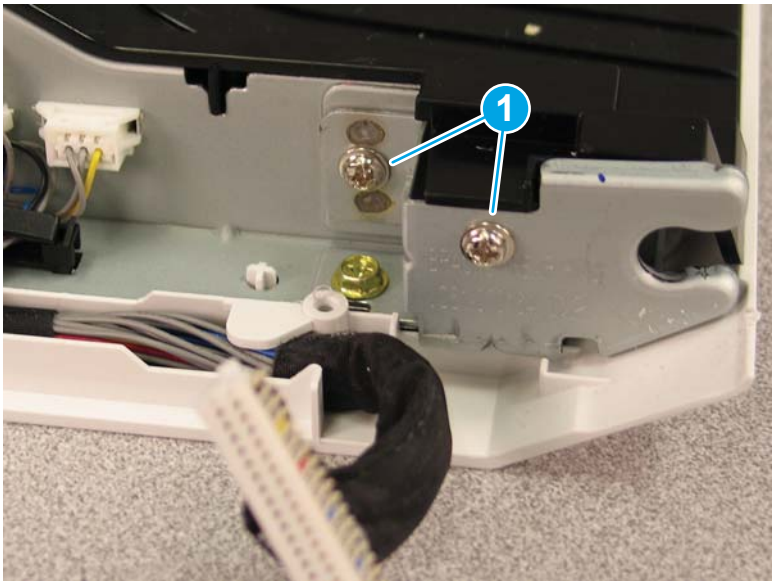
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 3-445 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



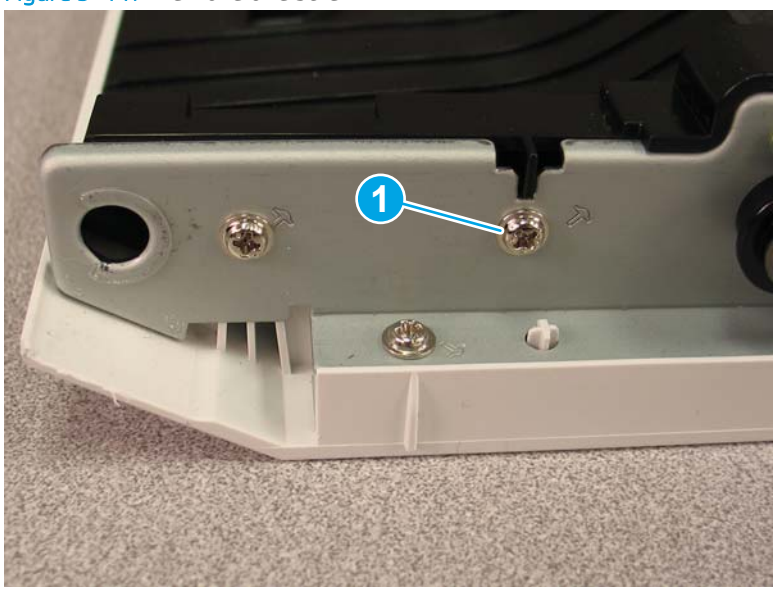
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-446 Remove two screws



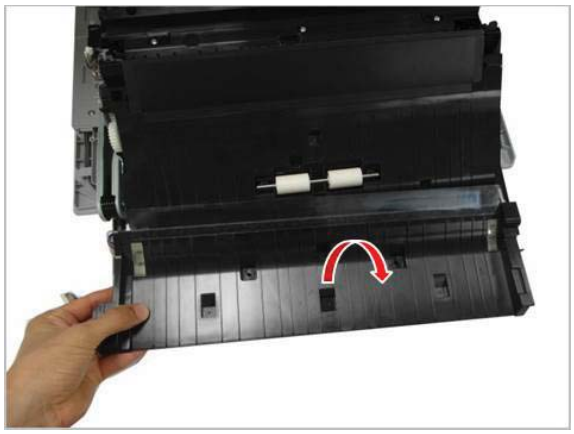
4. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-447 Remove one screw



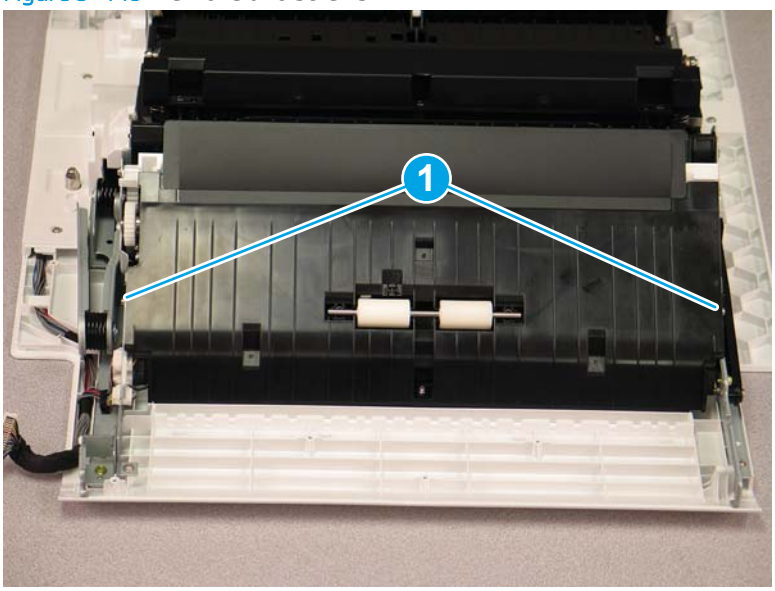
5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-448 Remove the feed guide take away lower



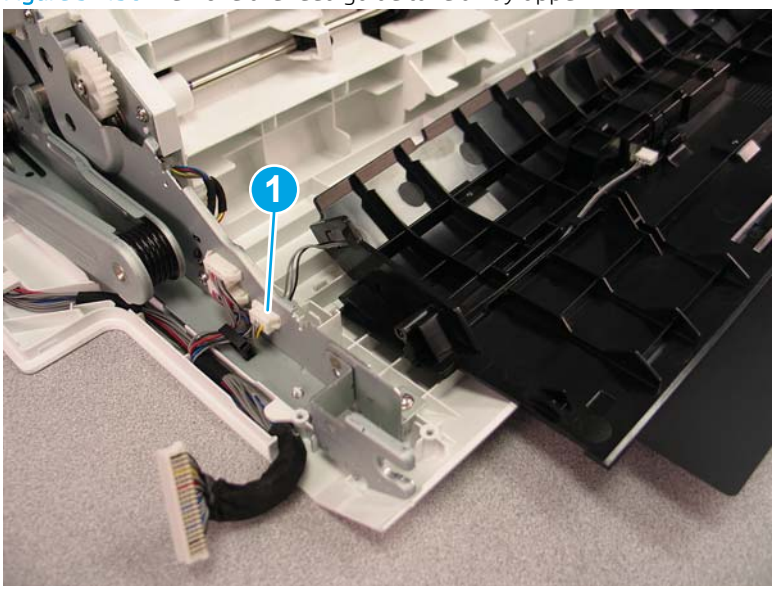
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-449 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 3-450 Remove the feed guide take away upper



Step 4: Remove the MP unit

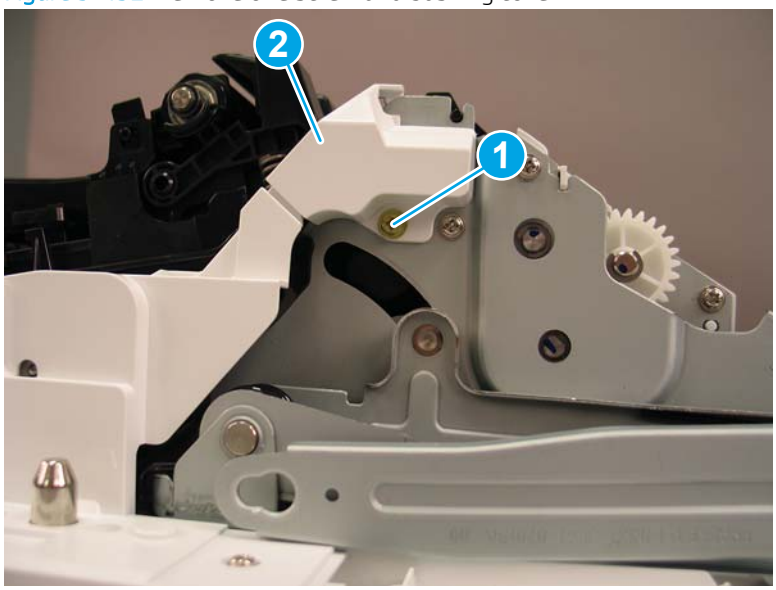
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 3-451 Release the hinge arm



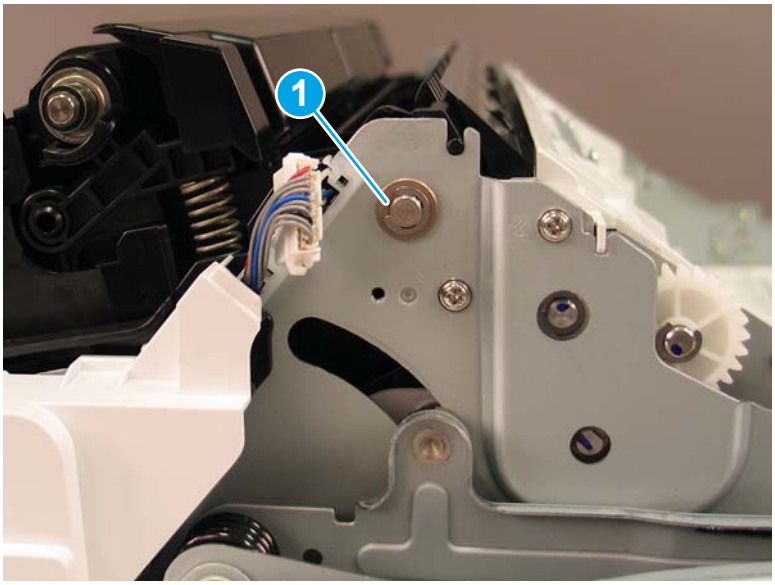
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 3-452 Remove one screw and bushing cover



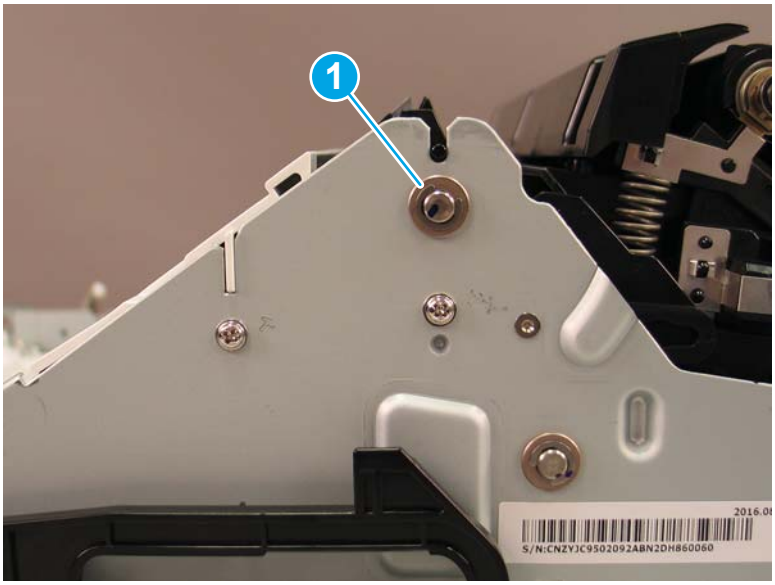
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-453 Remove one e-ring and bushing



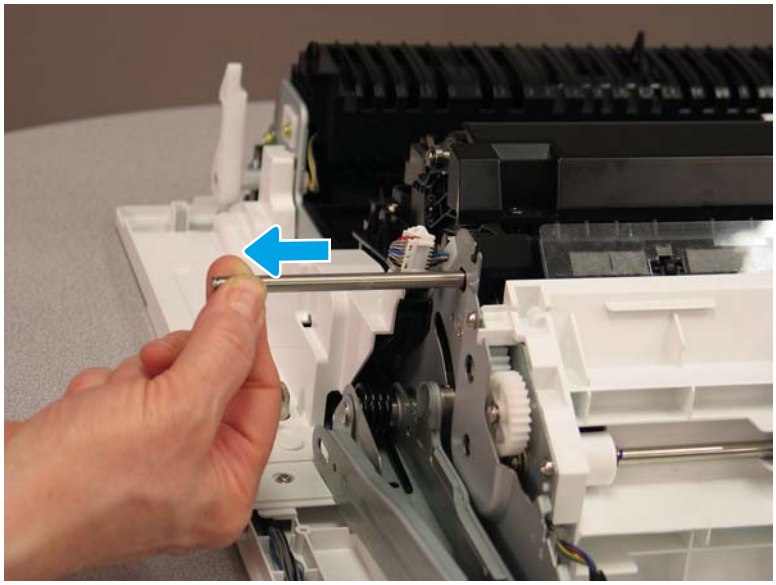
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-454 Remove one e-ring and bushing



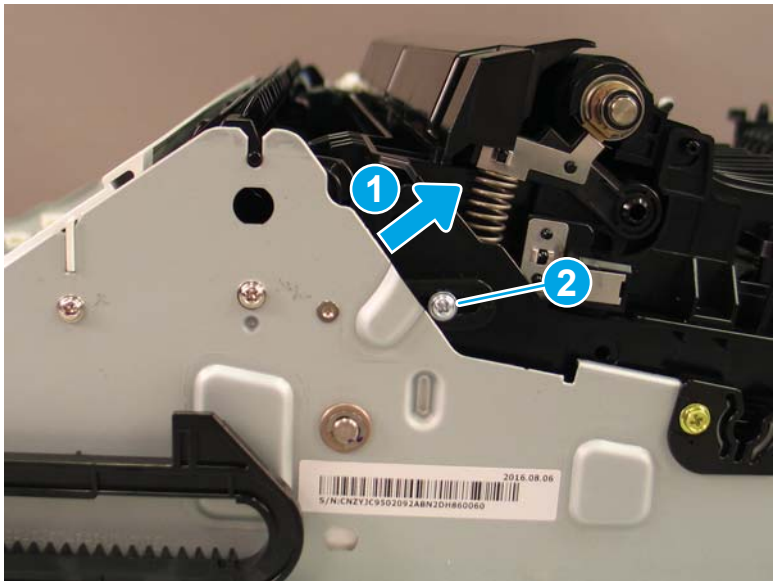
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-455 Remove the shaft



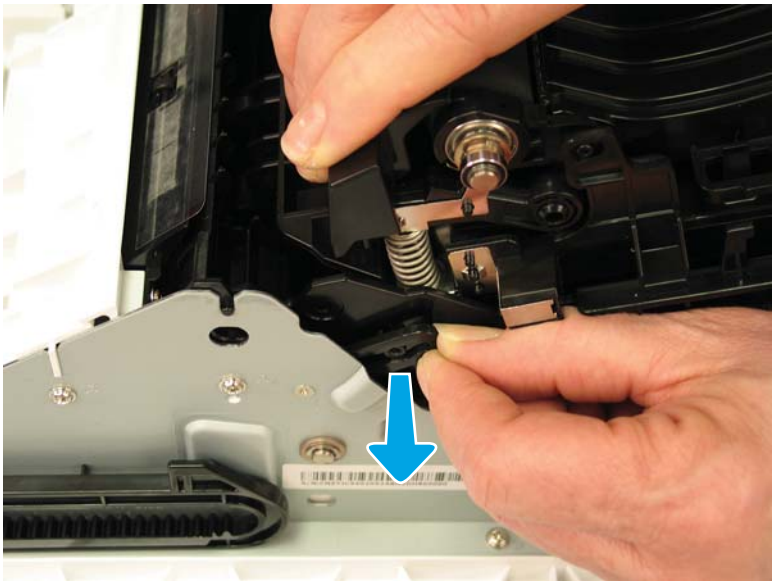
6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 3-456 Remove one screw



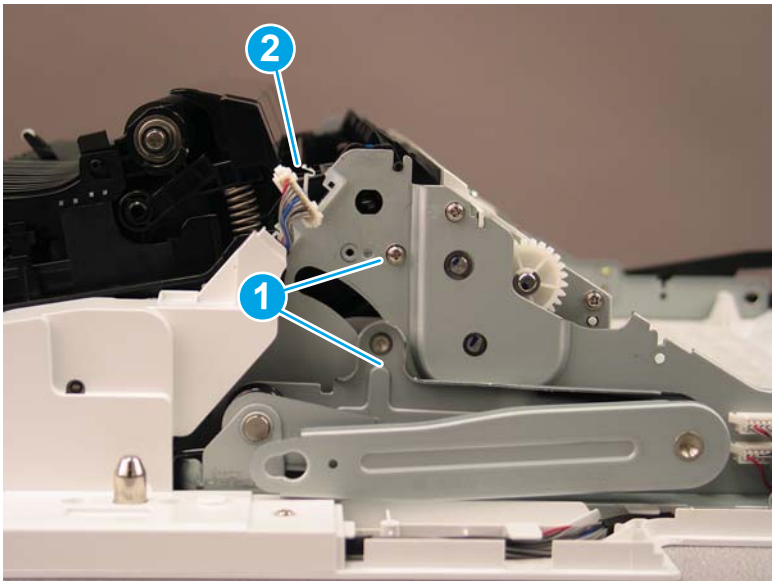
7. Release the hinge.

Figure 3-457 Release the hinge



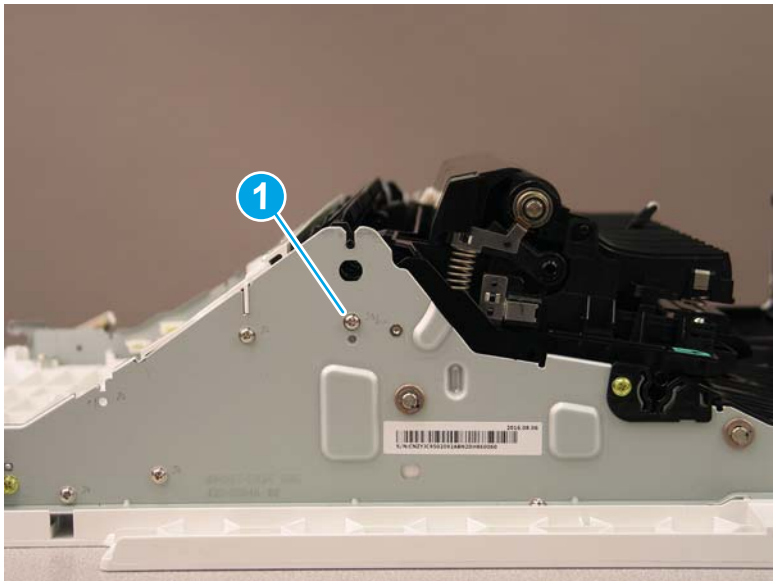
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 3-458 Remove one screw



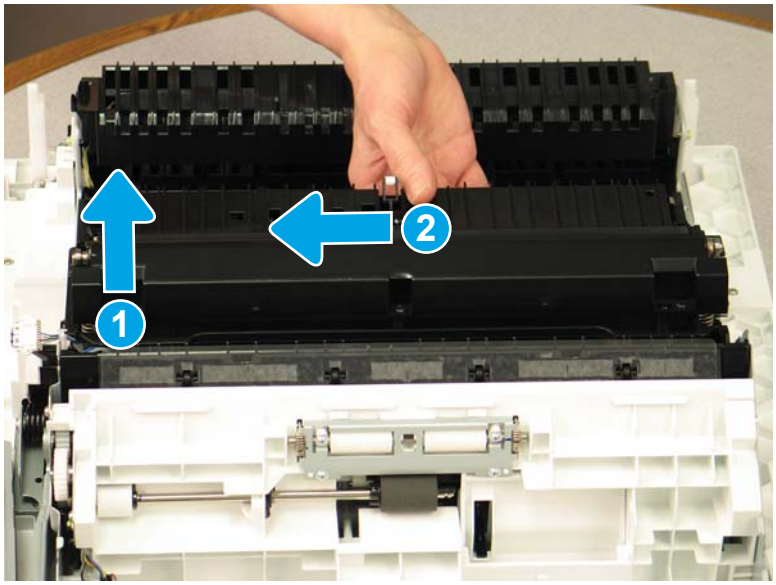
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-459 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

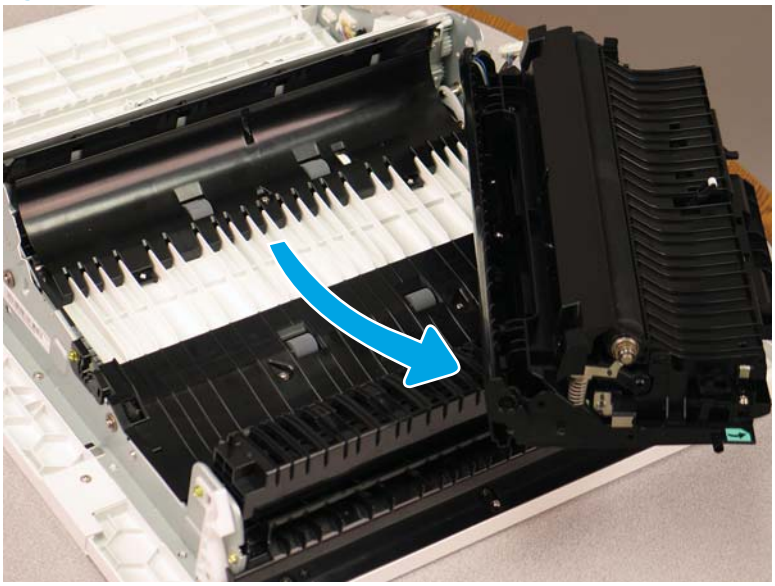
Figure 3-460 Release the feed roller assembly



11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

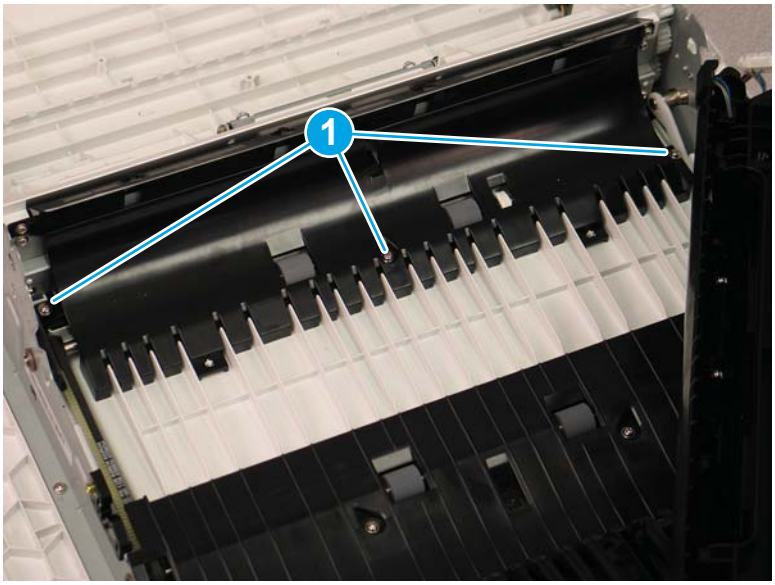
⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 3-461 Rotate the feed roller assembly



12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-462 Remove three screws



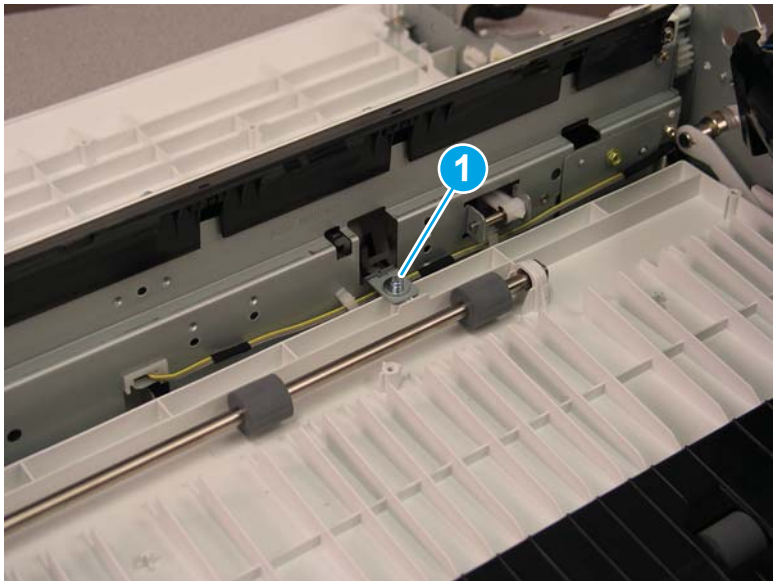
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 3-463 Remove the duplex lower guide



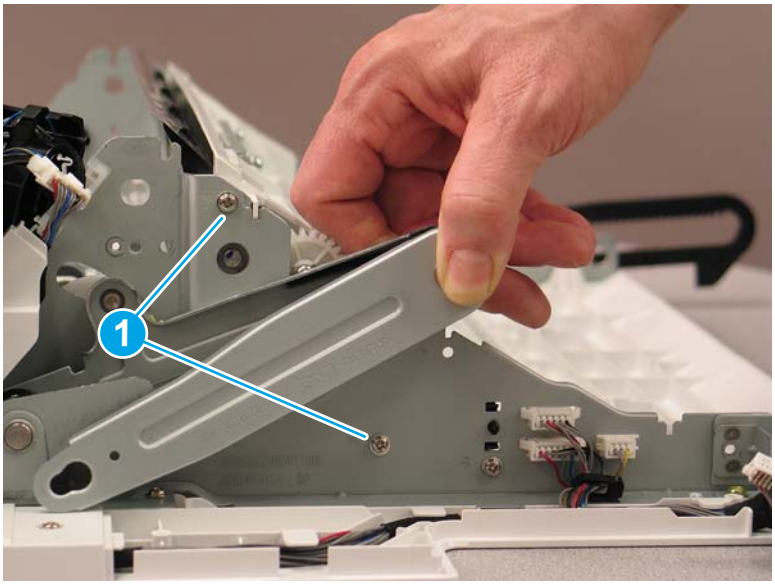
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-464 Remove one screw



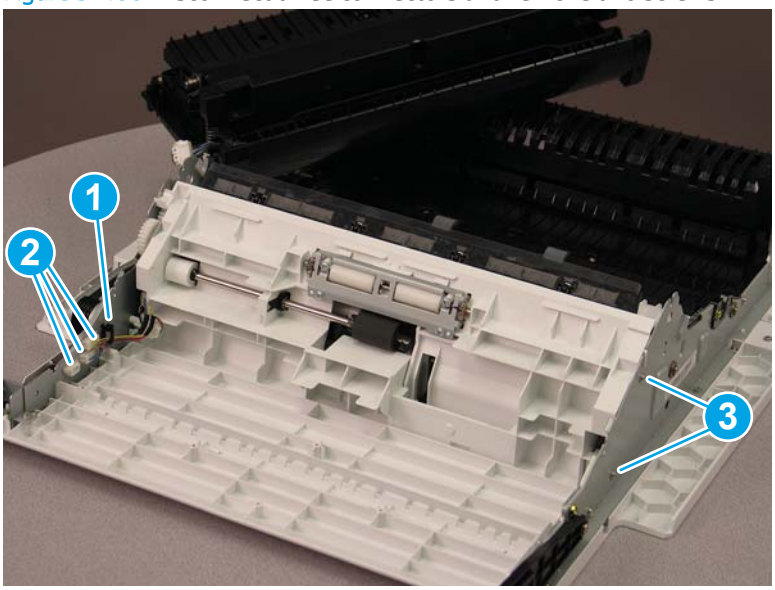
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-465 Remove two screws



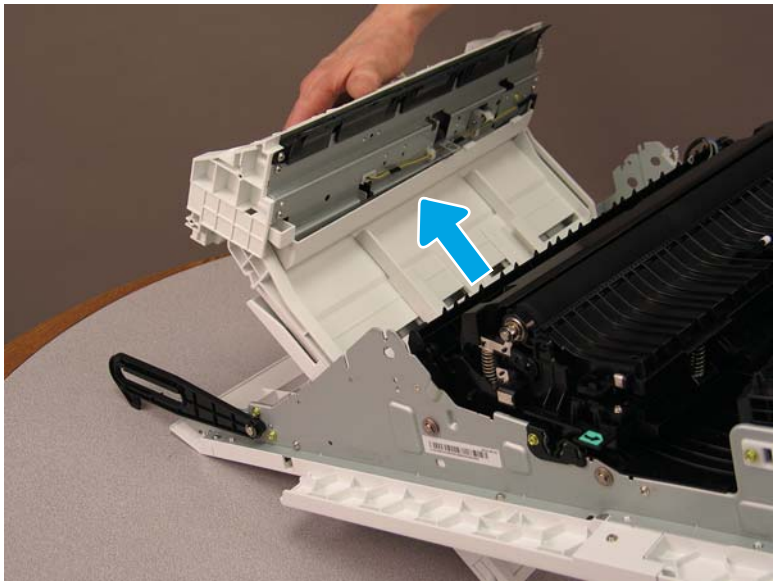
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-466 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



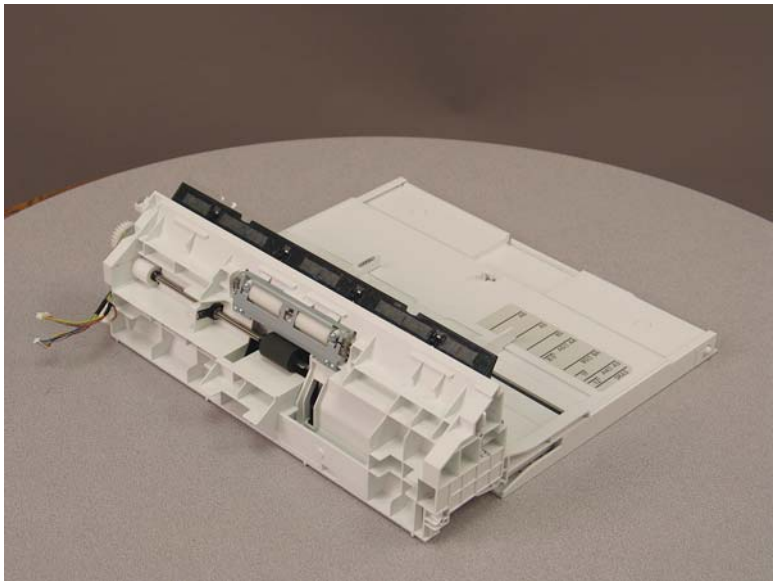
17. Release the MP unit from the right door.

Figure 3-467 Release the MP unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

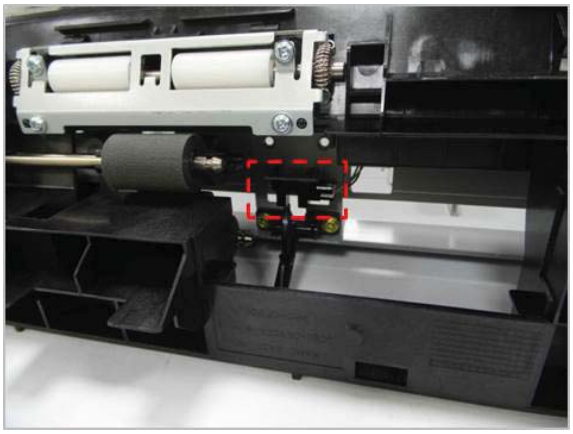
Figure 3-468 Remove the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP empty sensor

▲ Disconnect the connector, and then remove the MP empty sensor.

Figure 3-469 Remove the MP empty sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) paper length sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP paper length sensor part number
MP paper length sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

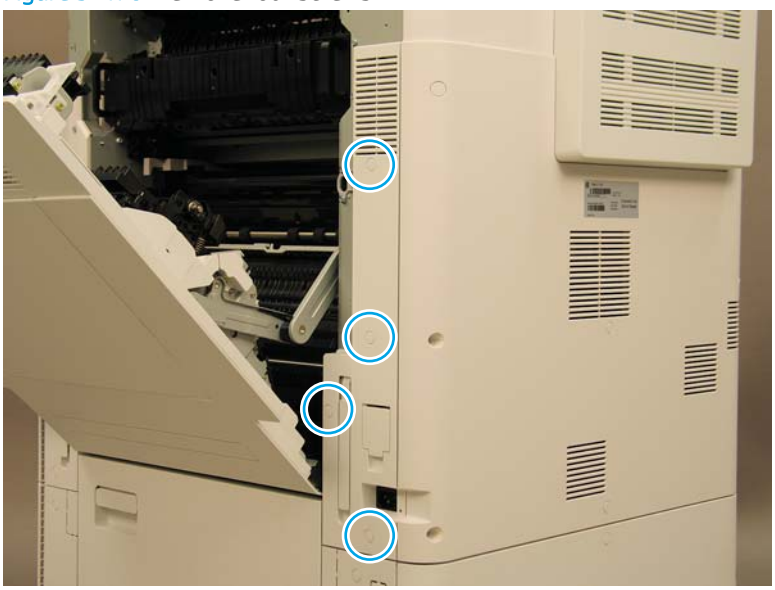
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

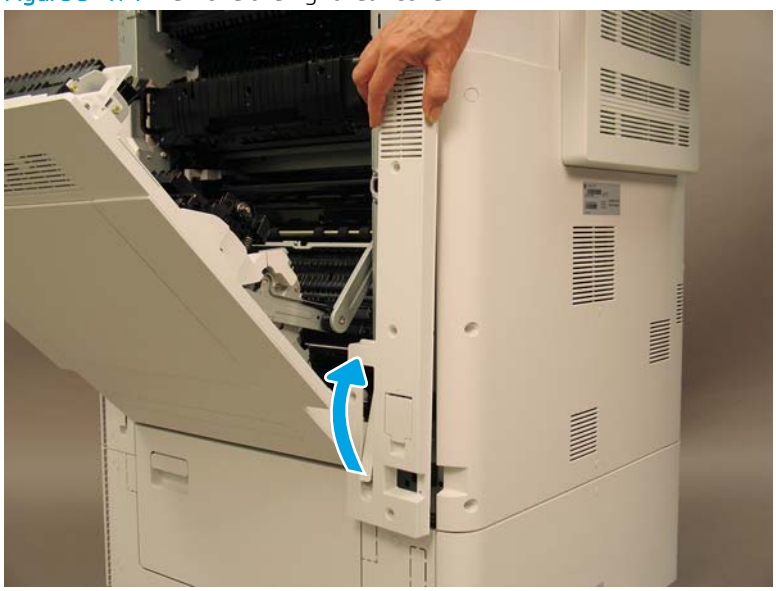
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-470 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

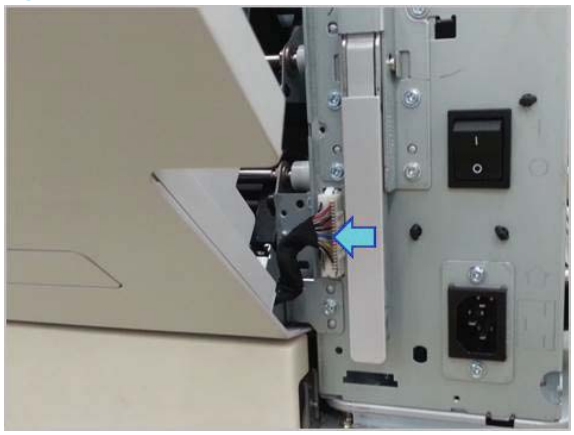
Figure 3-471 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

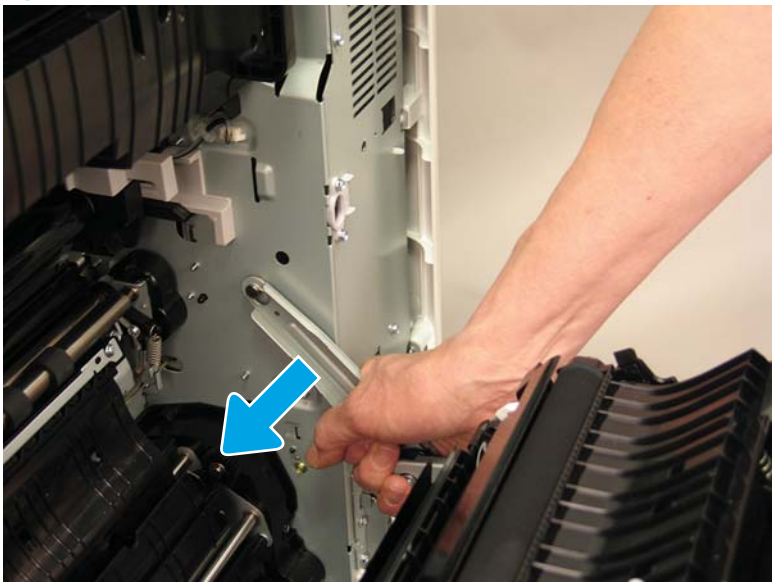
Figure 3-472 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

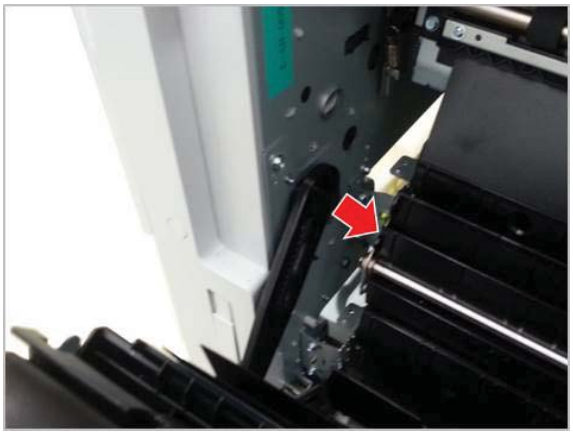
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-473 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

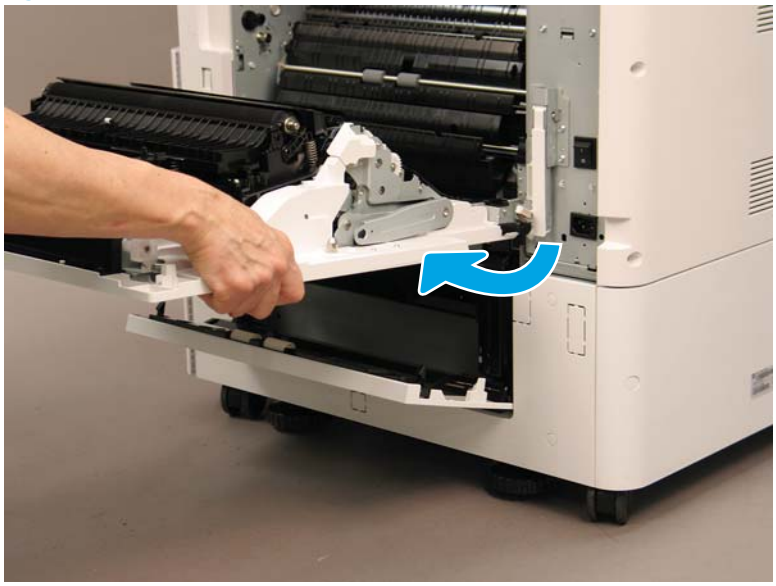
Figure 3-474 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

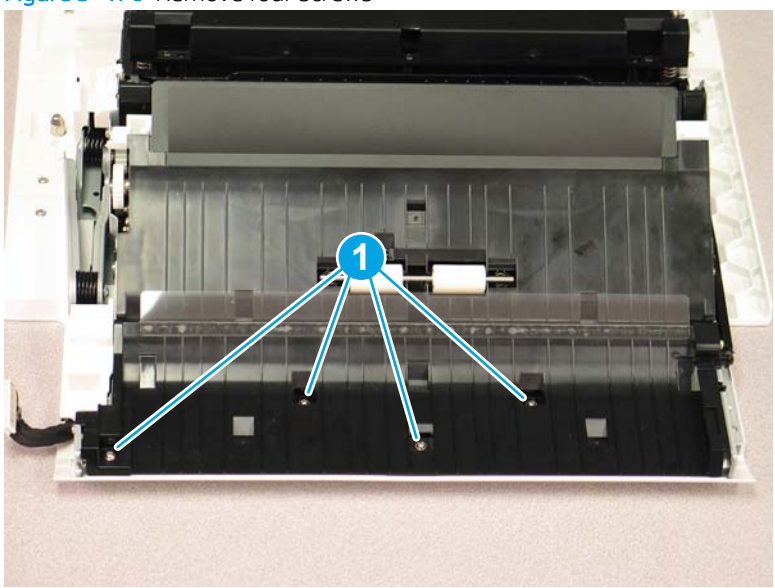
Figure 3-475 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

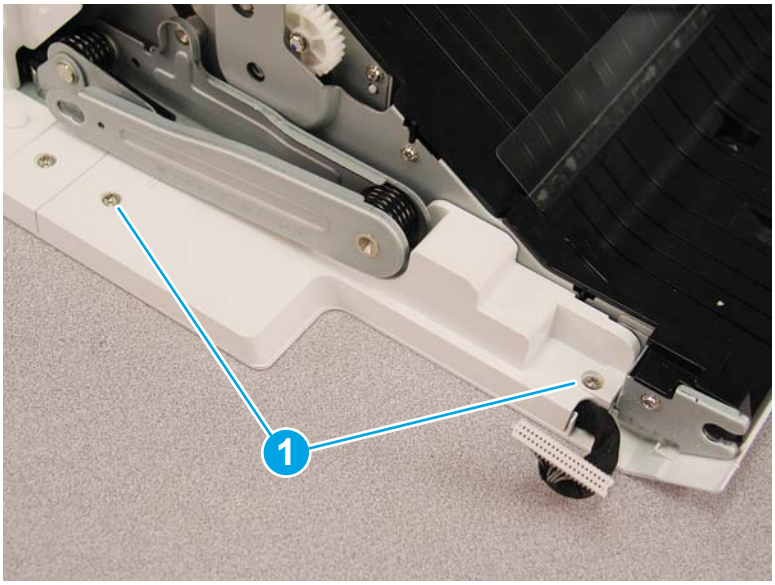
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-476 Remove four screws



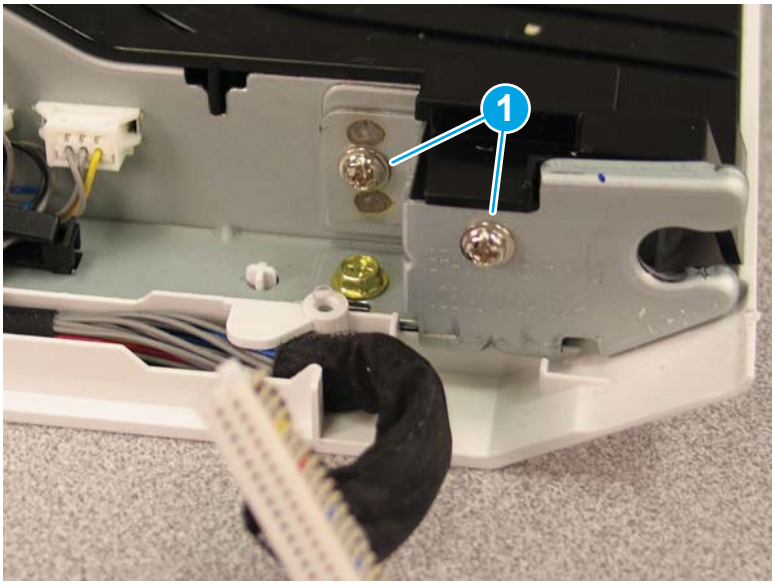
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 3-477 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



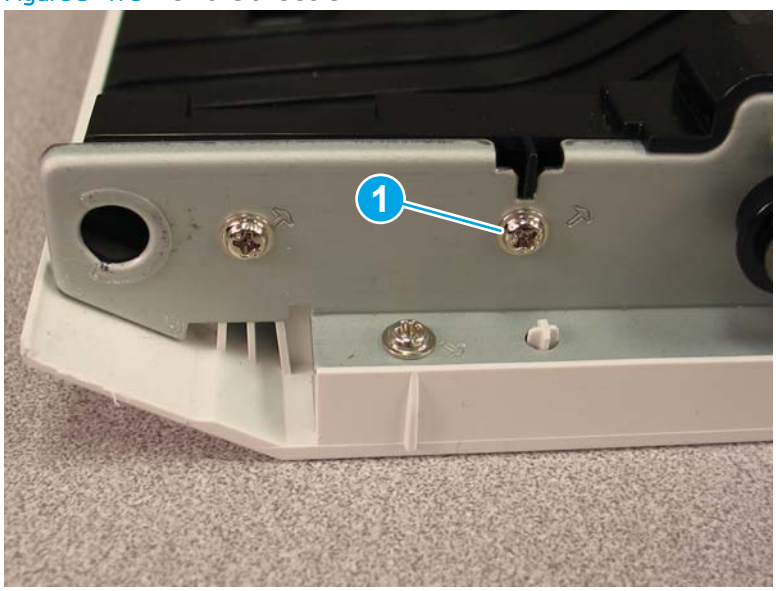
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-478 Remove two screws



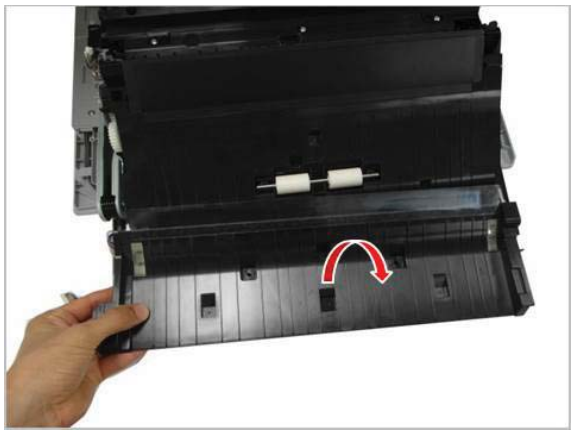
4. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-479 Remove one screw



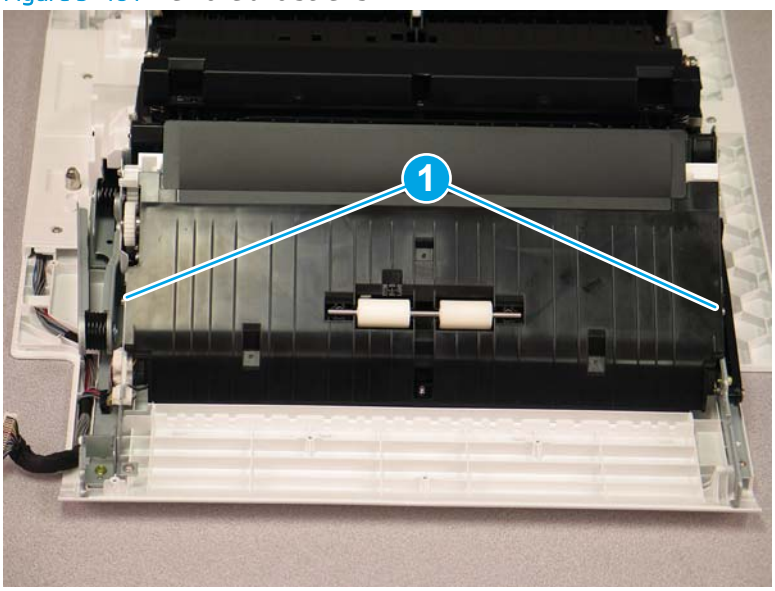
5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-480 Remove the feed guide take away lower



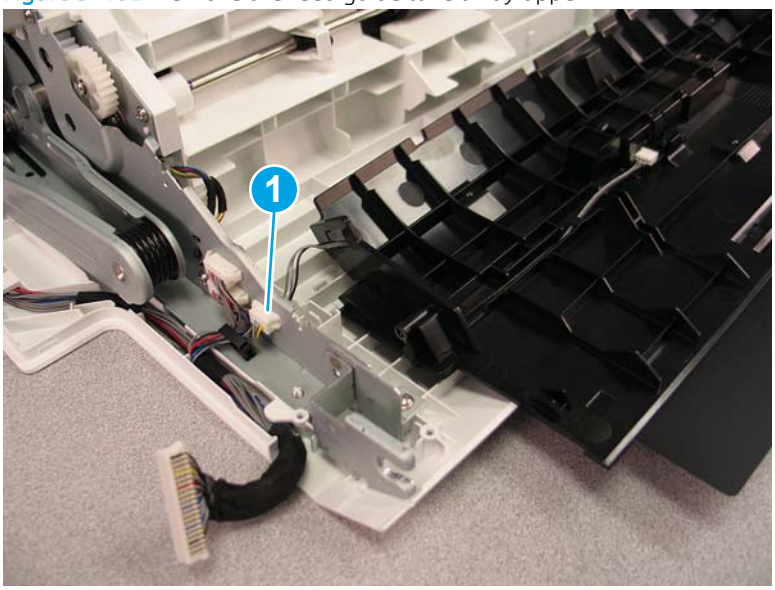
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-481 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 3-482 Remove the feed guide take away upper



Step 4: Remove the MP unit

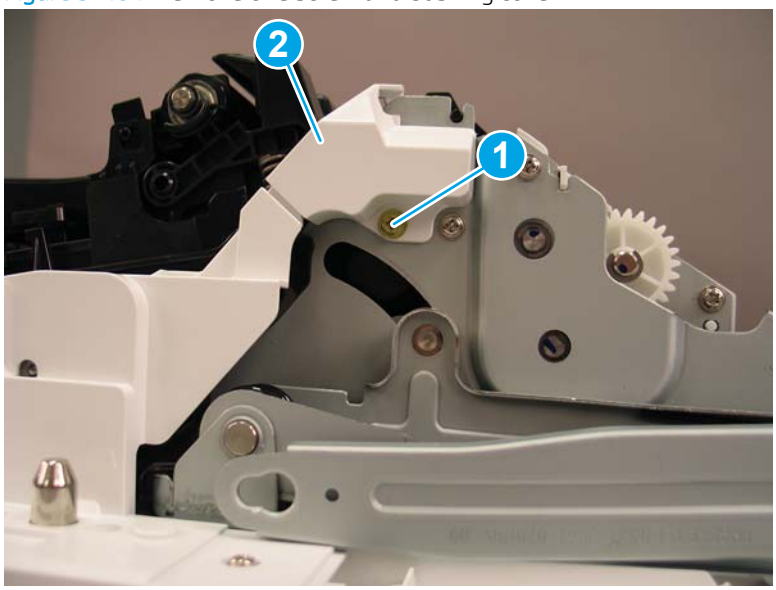
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 3-483 Release the hinge arm



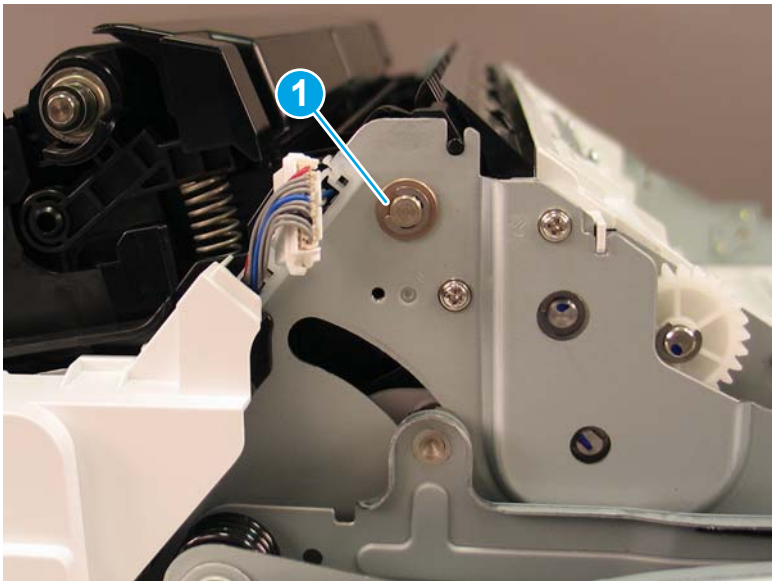
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 3-484 Remove one screw and bushing cover



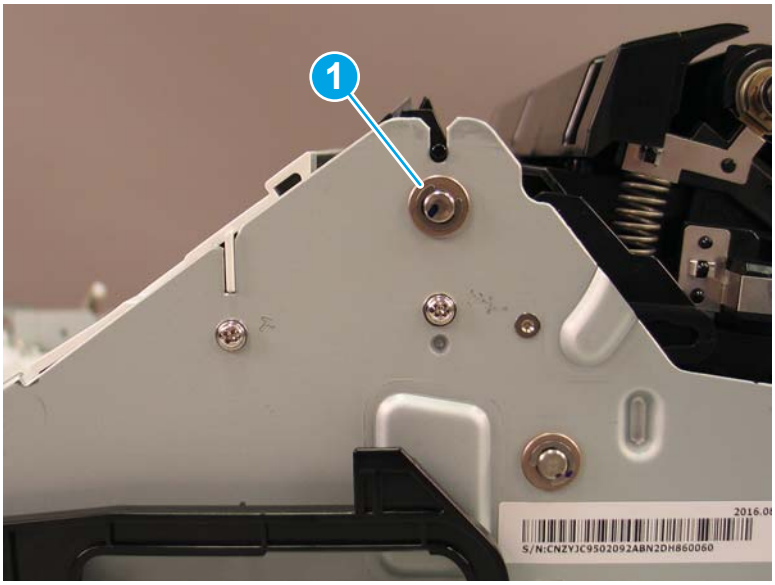
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-485 Remove one e-ring and bushing



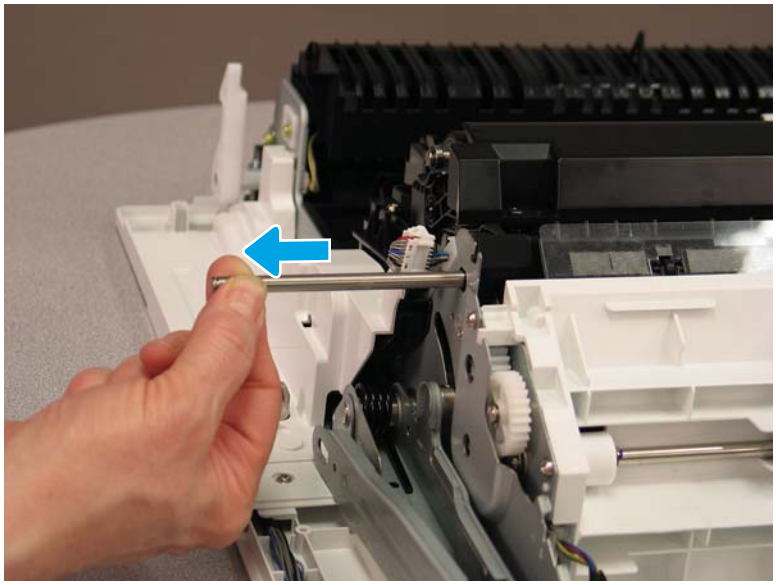
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-486 Remove one e-ring and bushing



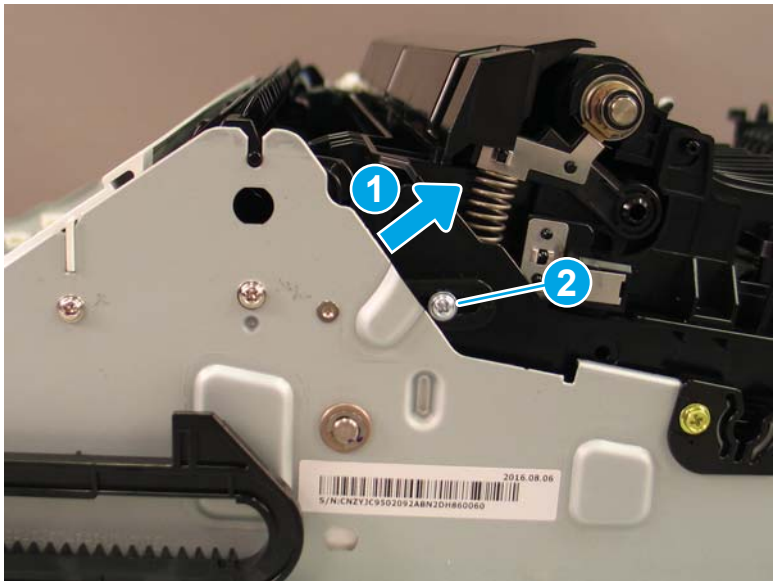
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-487 Remove the shaft



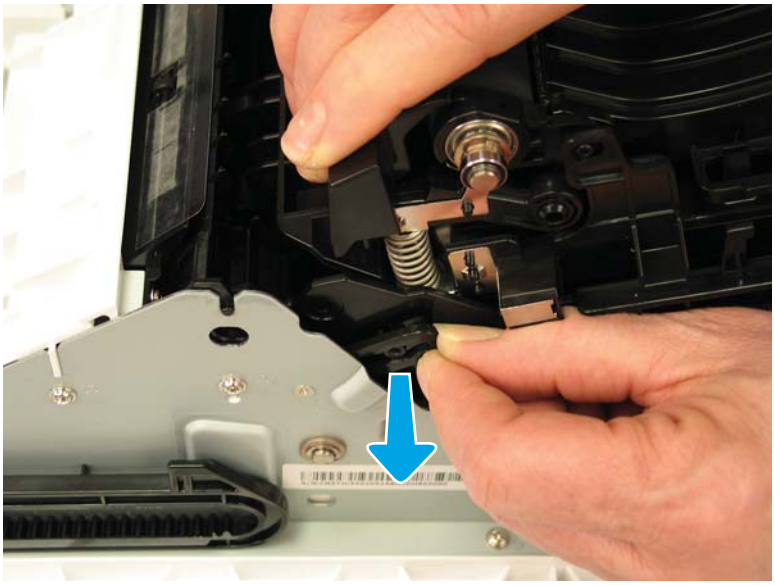
6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 3-488 Remove one screw



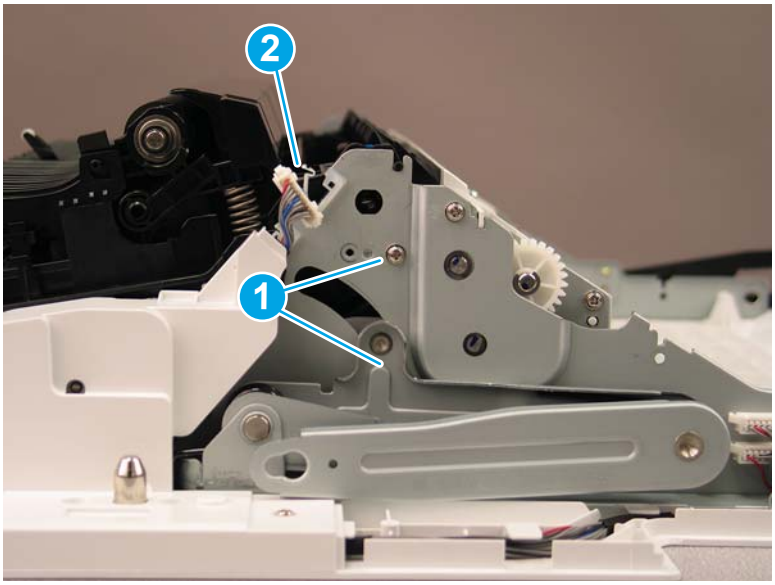
7. Release the hinge.

Figure 3-489 Release the hinge



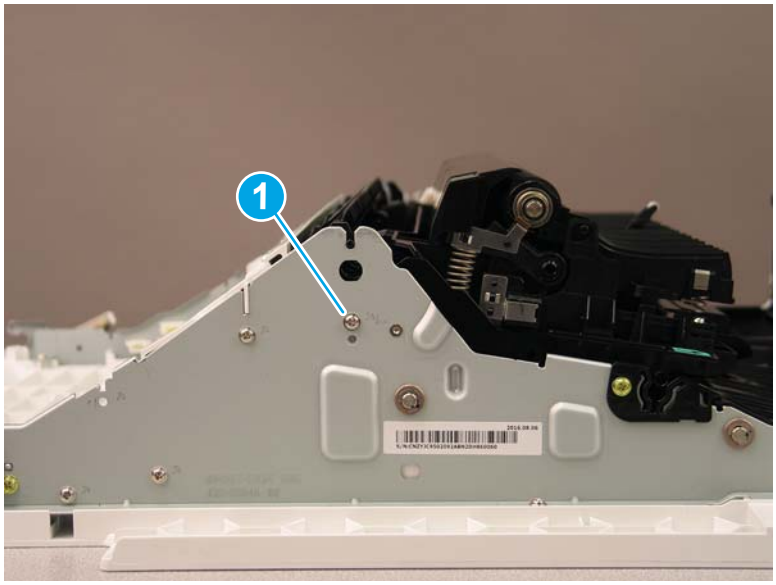
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 3-490 Remove one screw



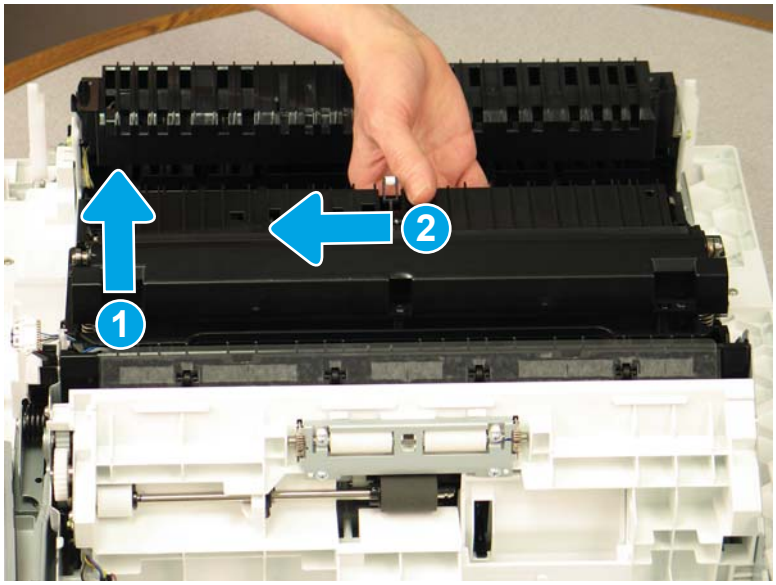
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-491 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

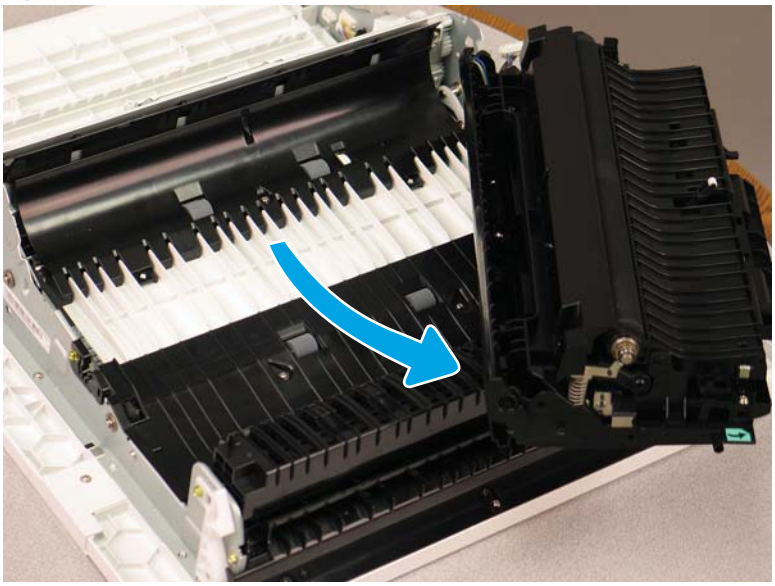
Figure 3-492 Release the feed roller assembly



11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

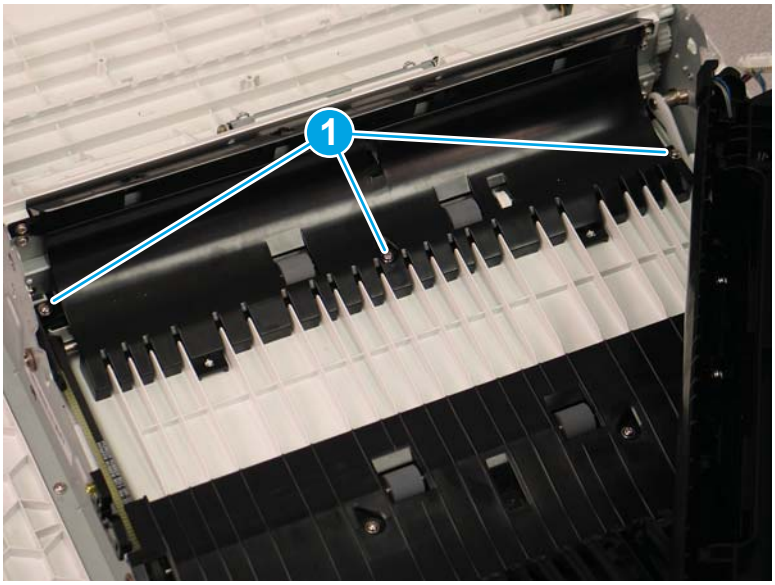
⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 3-493 Rotate the feed roller assembly



12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-494 Remove three screws



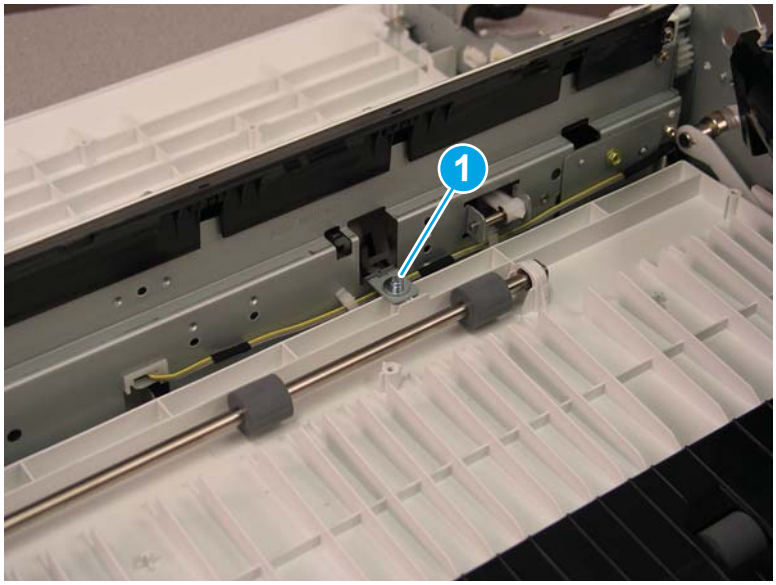
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 3-495 Remove the duplex lower guide



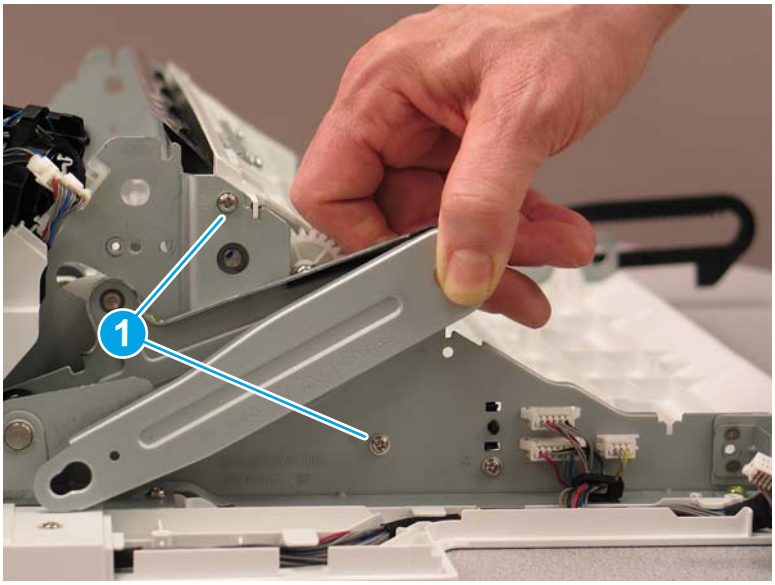
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-496 Remove one screw



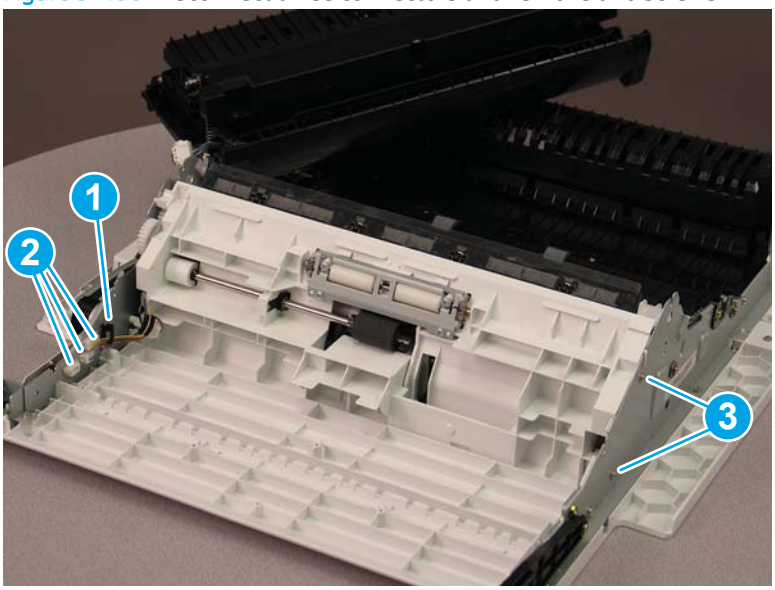
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-497 Remove two screws



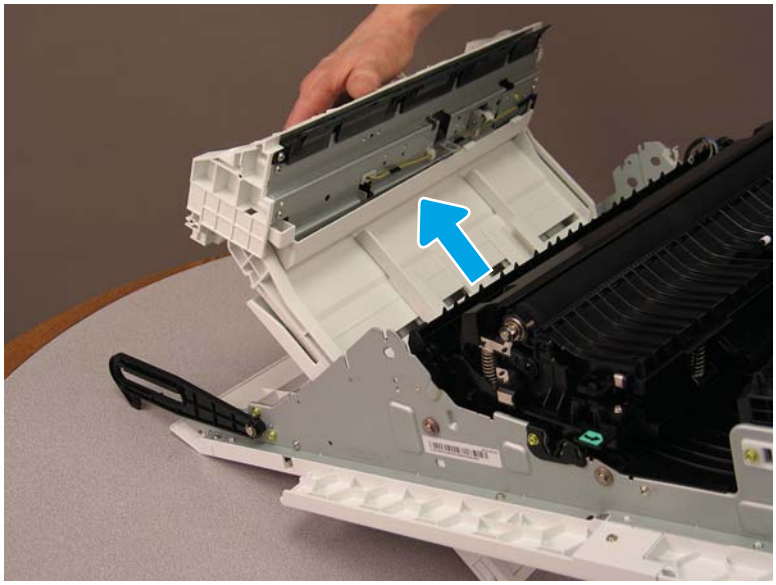
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-498 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



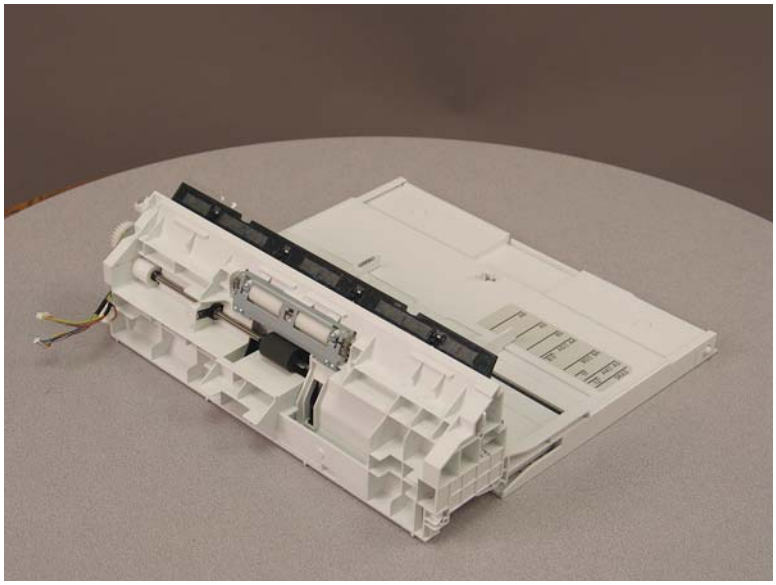
17. Release the MP unit from the right door.

Figure 3-499 Release the MP unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

Figure 3-500 Remove the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP paper length sensor

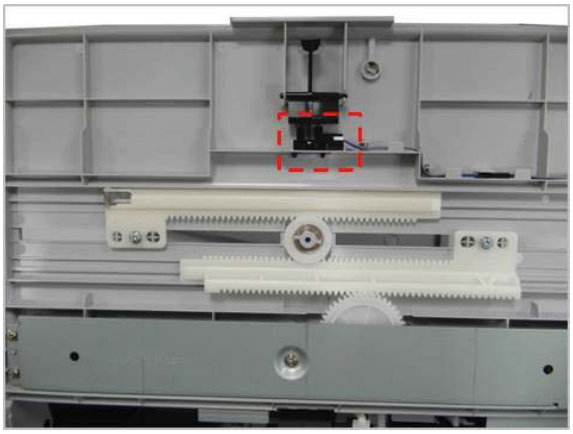
1. Remove the MP Tray upper.

Figure 3-501 Remove the MP Tray upper



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the MP paper length sensor.

Figure 3-502 Remove the MP paper length sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Multi-purpose (MP) solenoid

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper
- Step 4: Remove the MP unit
- Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the multi-purpose (MP) solenoid.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

MP solenoid part number	
SAM-JC33-00029B	Solenoid, Tray 1

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

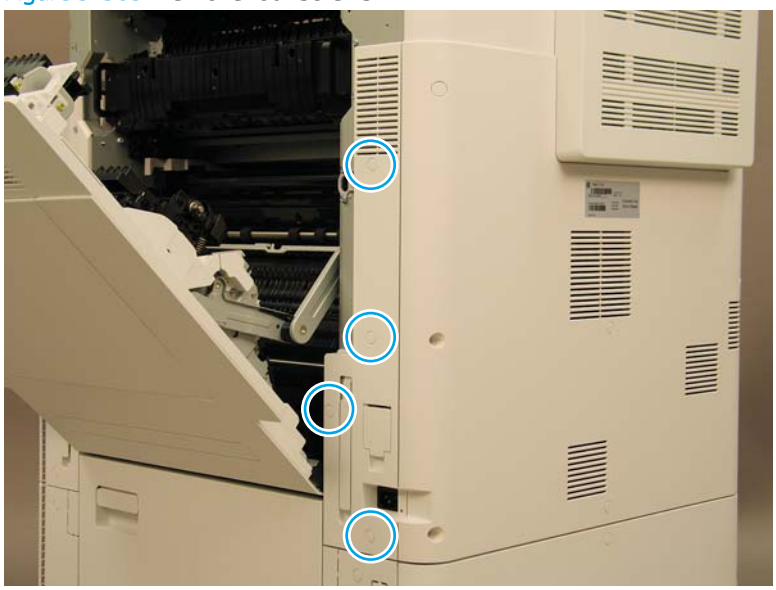
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

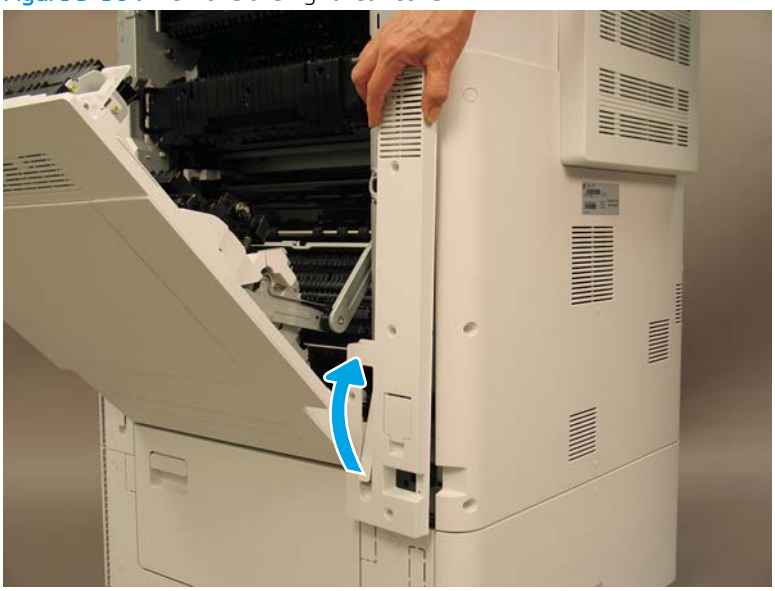
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-503 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

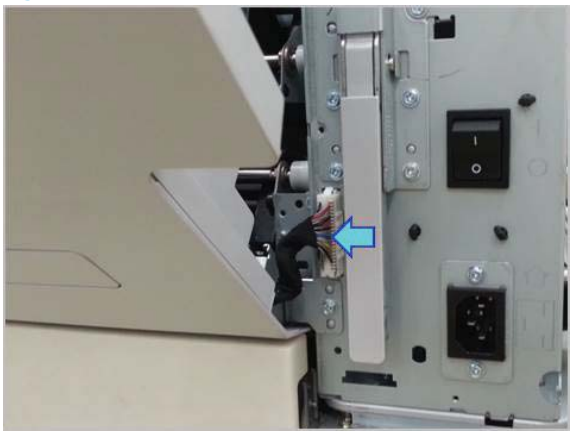
Figure 3-504 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

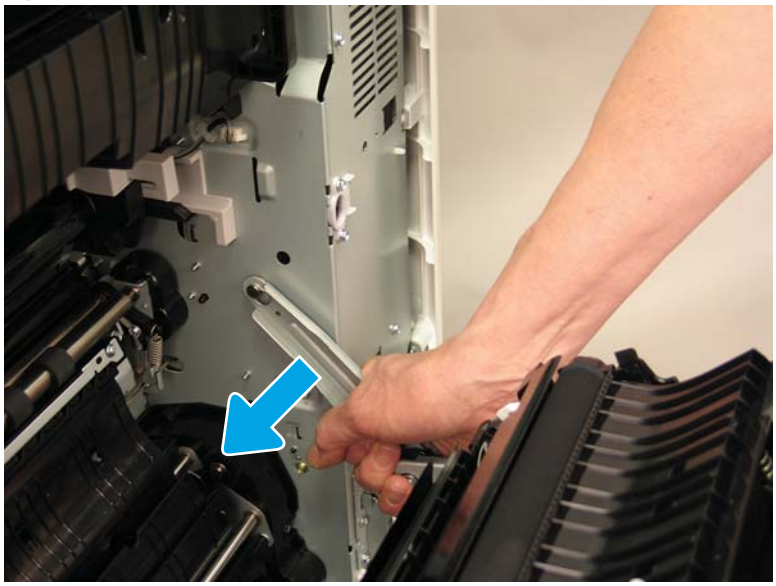
Figure 3-505 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

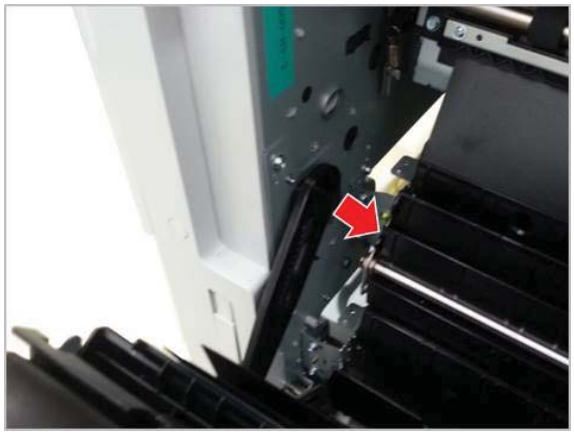
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-506 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

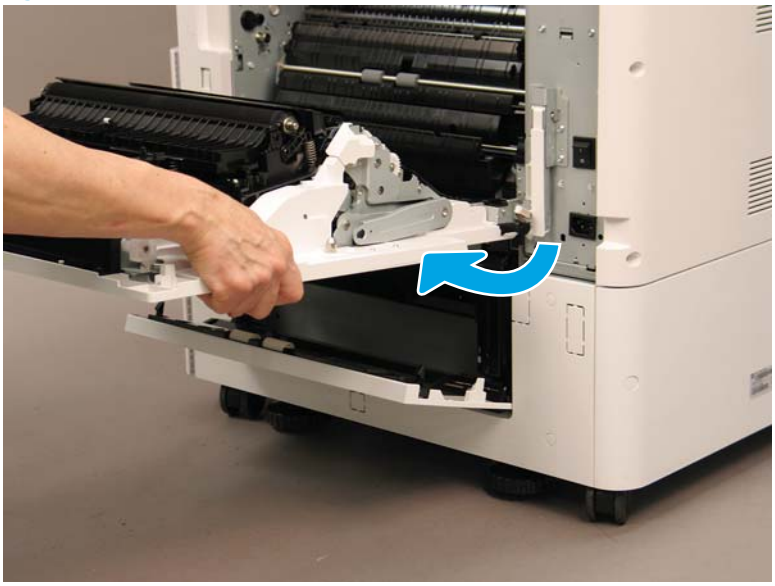
Figure 3-507 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

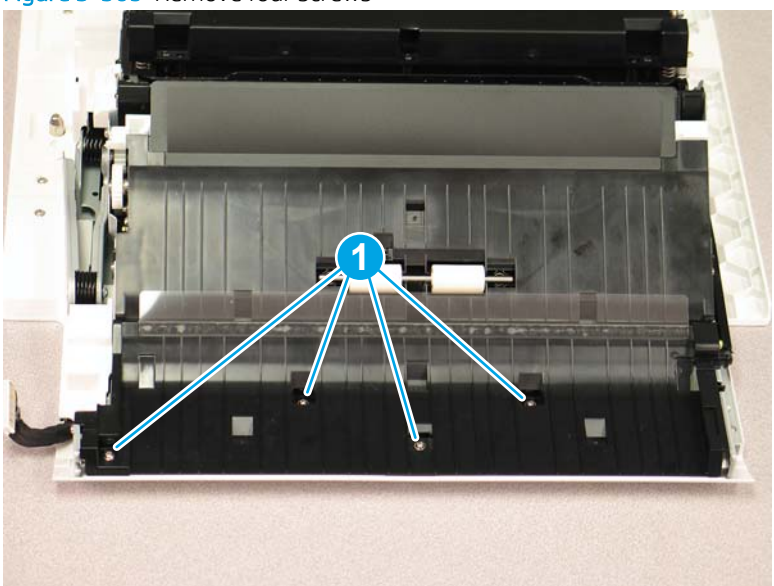
Figure 3-508 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the feed guide take away lower and feed guide take away upper

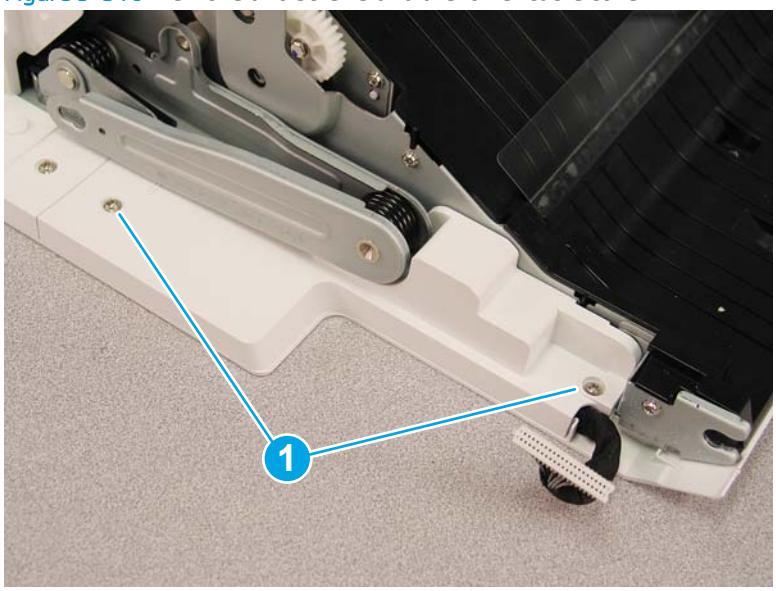
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 3-509 Remove four screws



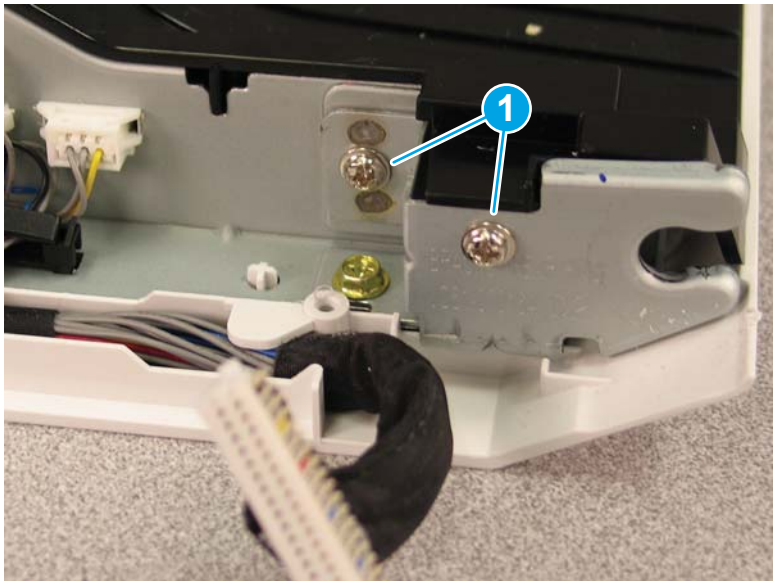
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the lower cable cover.

Figure 3-510 Remove two screws and the lower cable cover



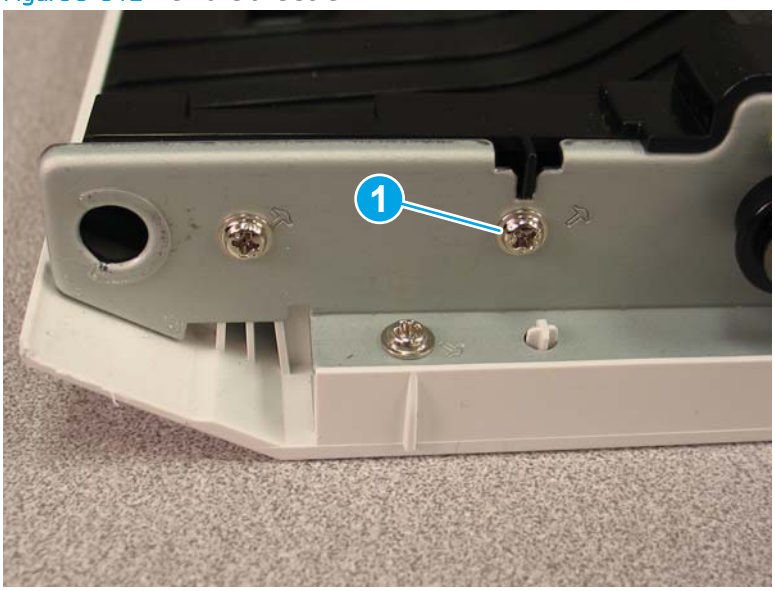
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 3-511 Remove two screws



4. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-512 Remove one screw



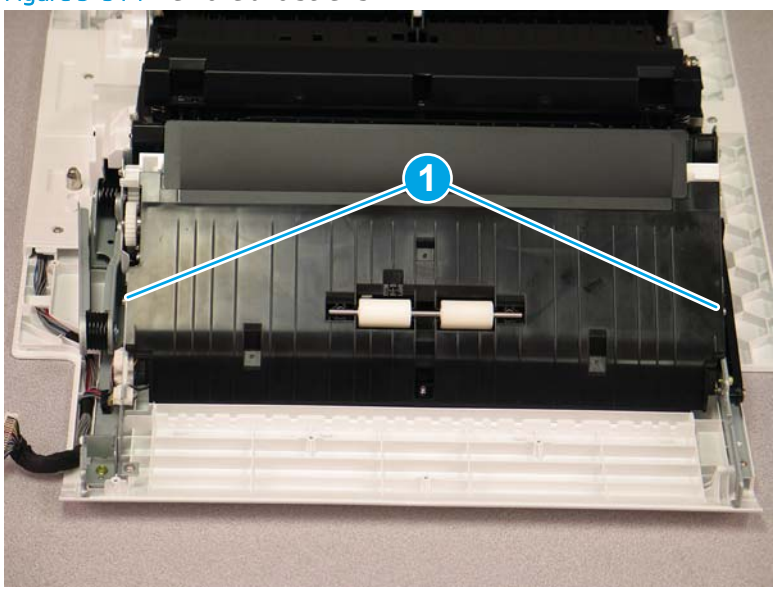
5. Remove the feed guide take away lower.

Figure 3-513 Remove the feed guide take away lower



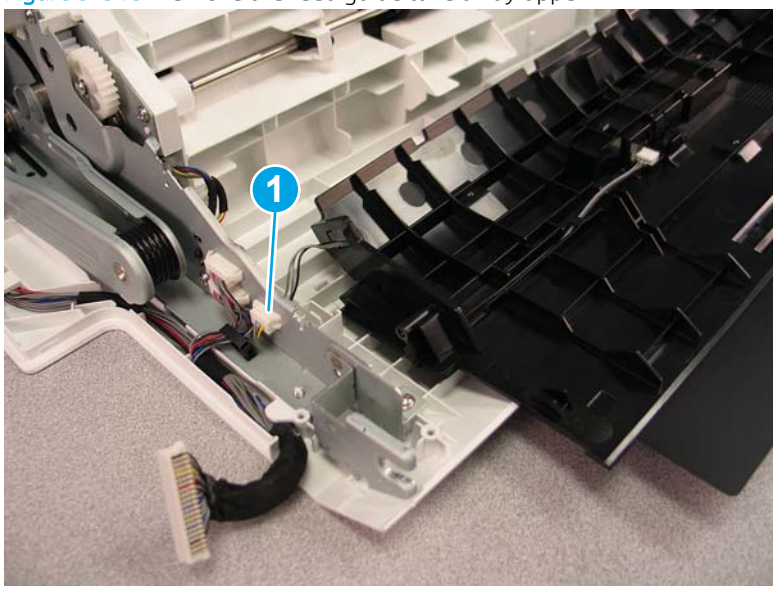
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-514 Remove two screws



7. Lift the feed guide take away upper slightly away from the right door, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 3-515 Remove the feed guide take away upper



Step 4: Remove the MP unit

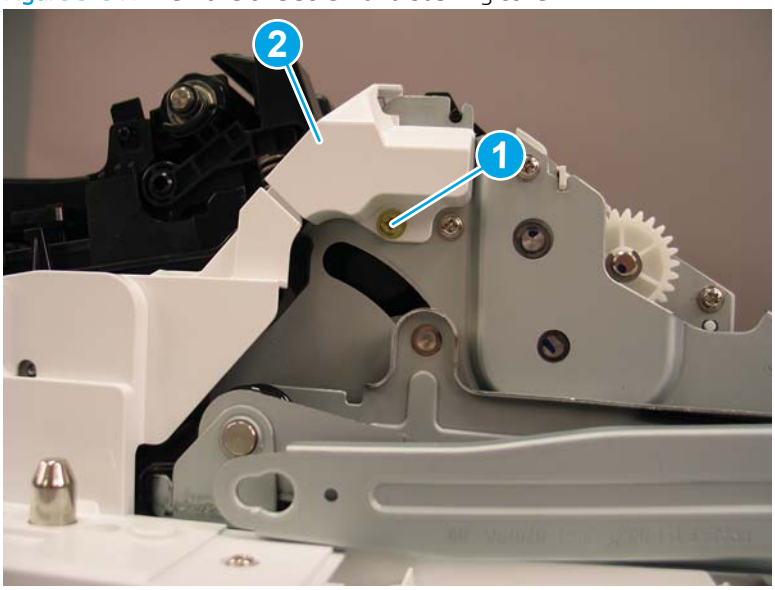
1. Hold the right door upright, open the MP tray, and then release the hinge arm (callout 1).

Figure 3-516 Release the hinge arm



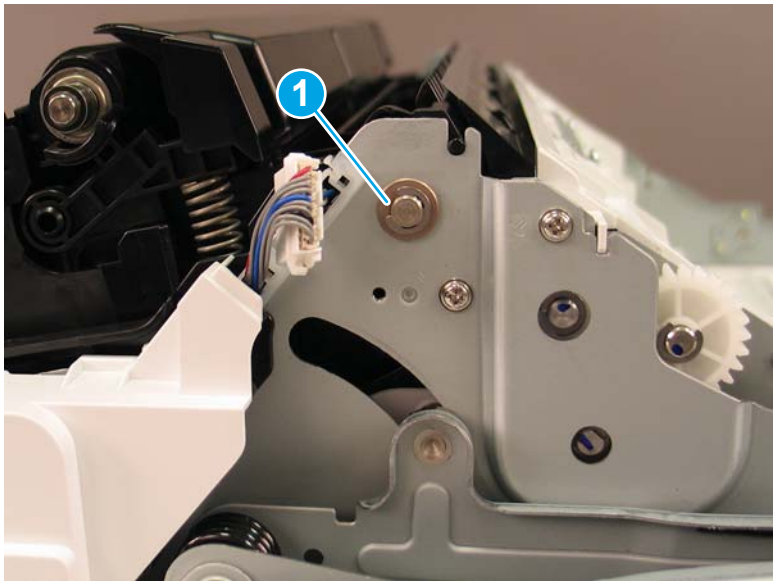
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the bushing cover (callout 2).

Figure 3-517 Remove one screw and bushing cover



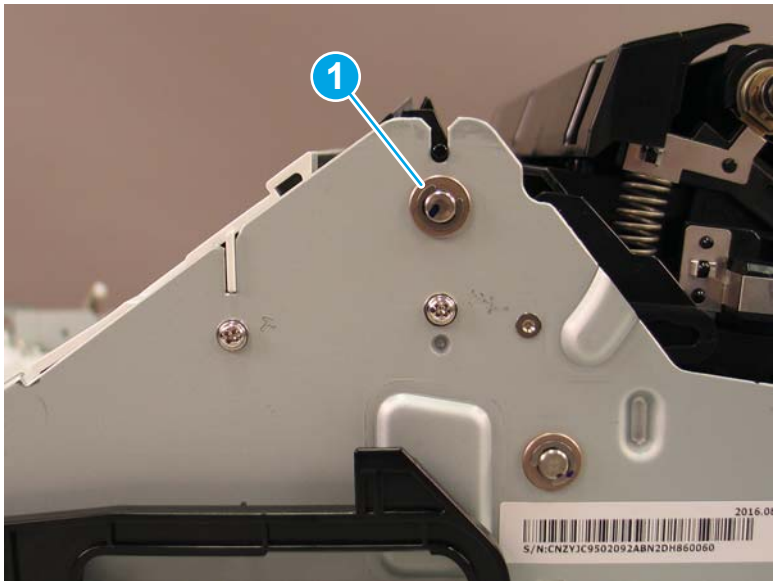
3. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-518 Remove one e-ring and bushing



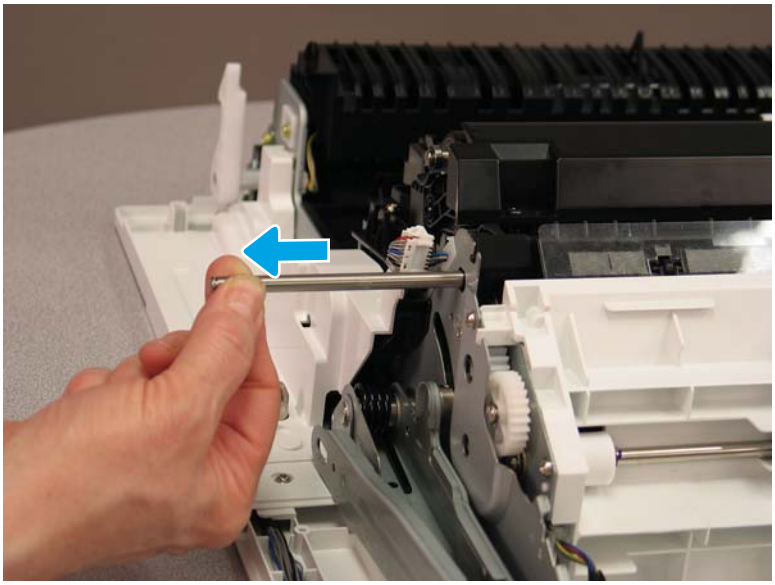
4. Remove one e-ring and bushing (callout 1).

Figure 3-519 Remove one e-ring and bushing



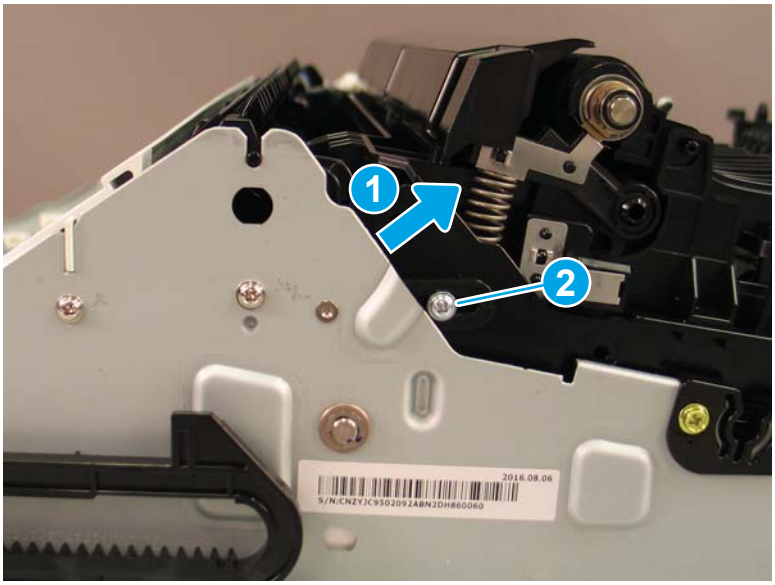
5. Remove the shaft.

Figure 3-520 Remove the shaft



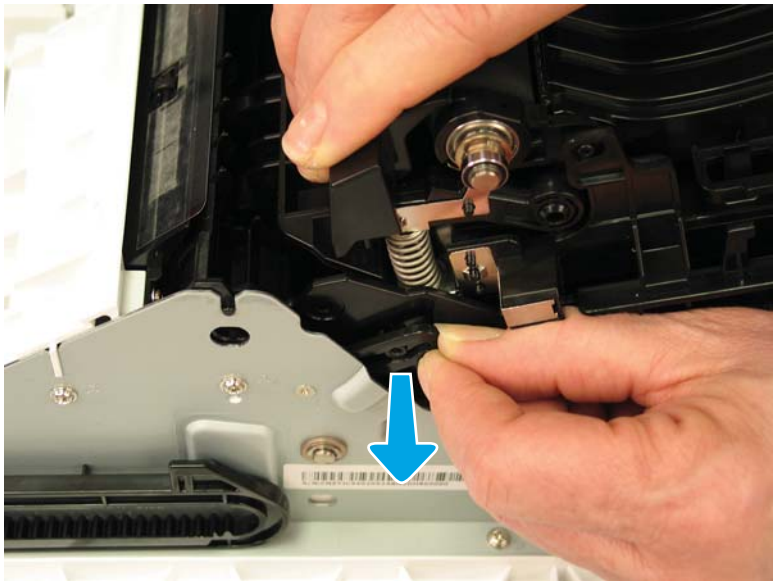
6. Pull the hinge arm up (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 3-521 Remove one screw



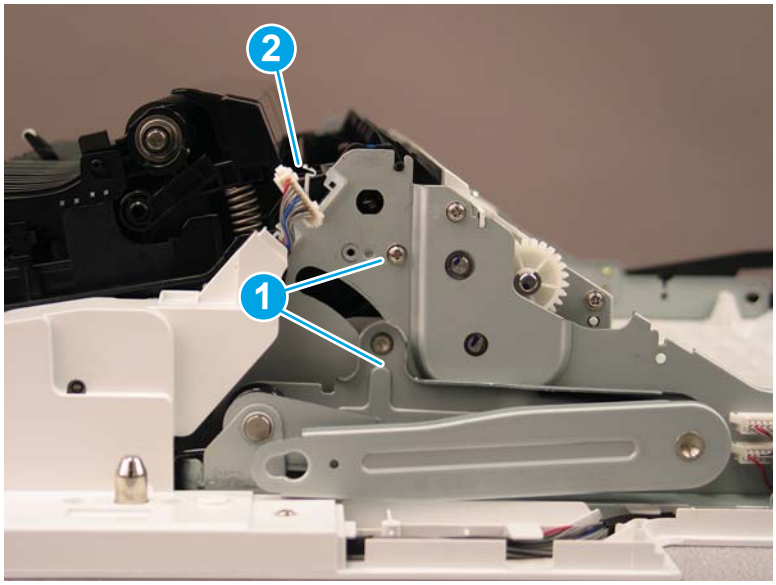
7. Release the hinge.

Figure 3-522 Release the hinge



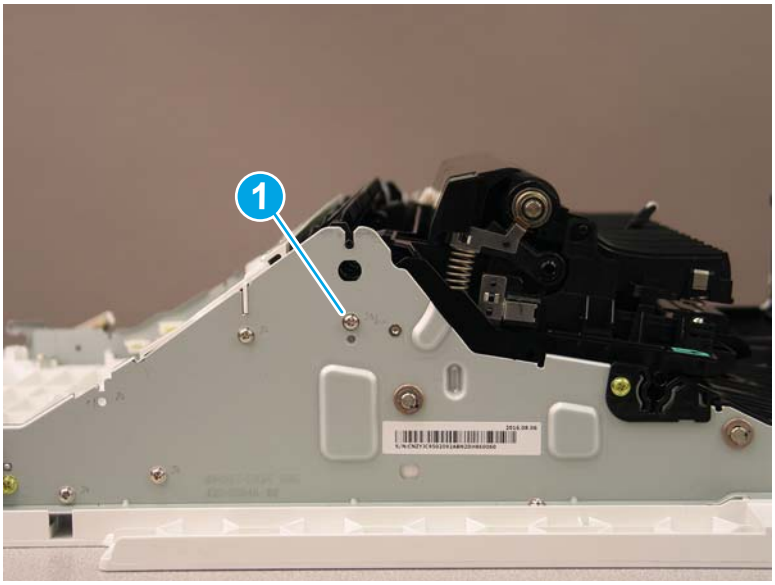
8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Figure 3-523 Remove one screw



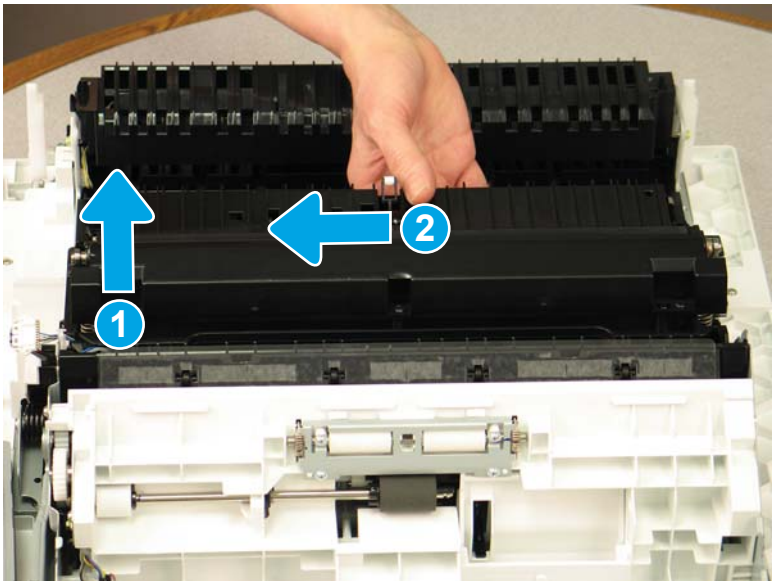
9. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-524 Remove one screw



10. Lift up on the feed roller assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2) to release it.

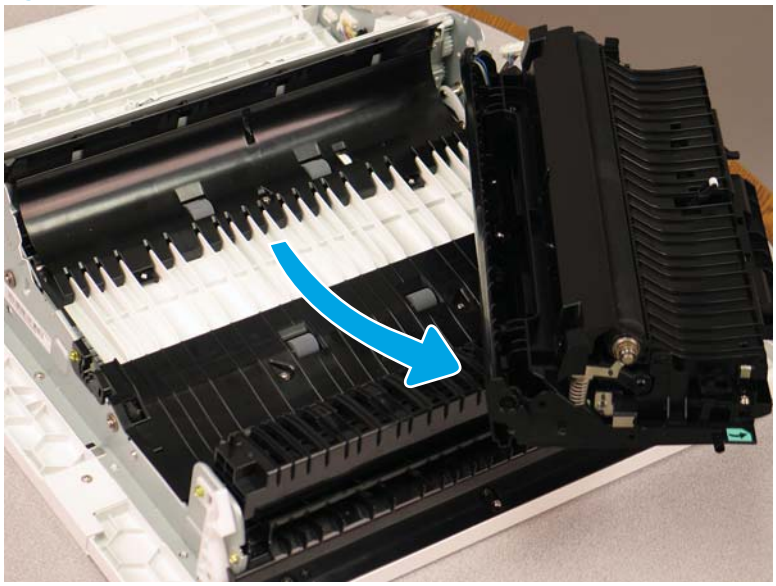
Figure 3-525 Release the feed roller assembly



11. Rotate the feed roller assembly to the side.

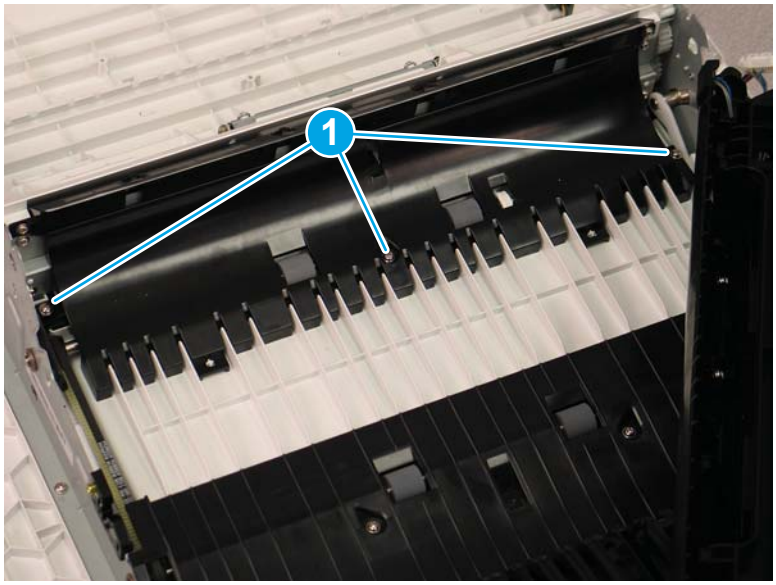
⚠ CAUTION: The feed roller assembly is still attached to the right door. Do not attempt to remove it completely.

Figure 3-526 Rotate the feed roller assembly



12. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-527 Remove three screws



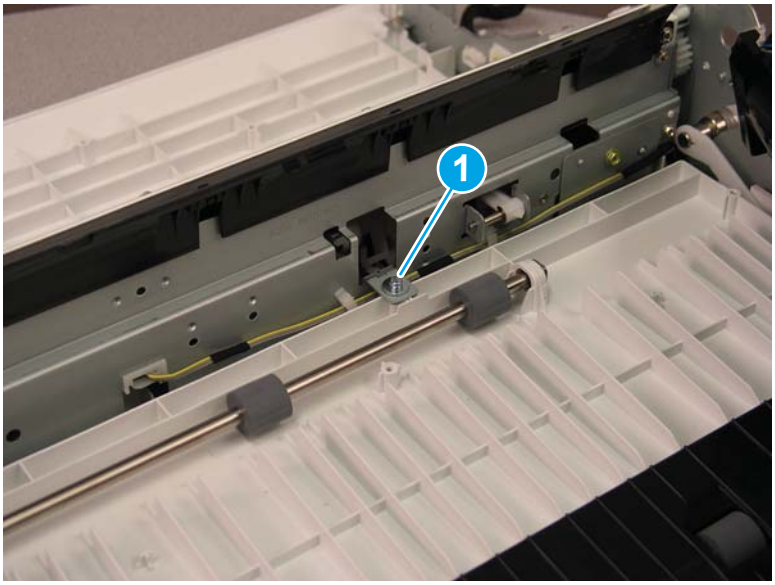
13. Remove the duplex lower guide.

Figure 3-528 Remove the duplex lower guide



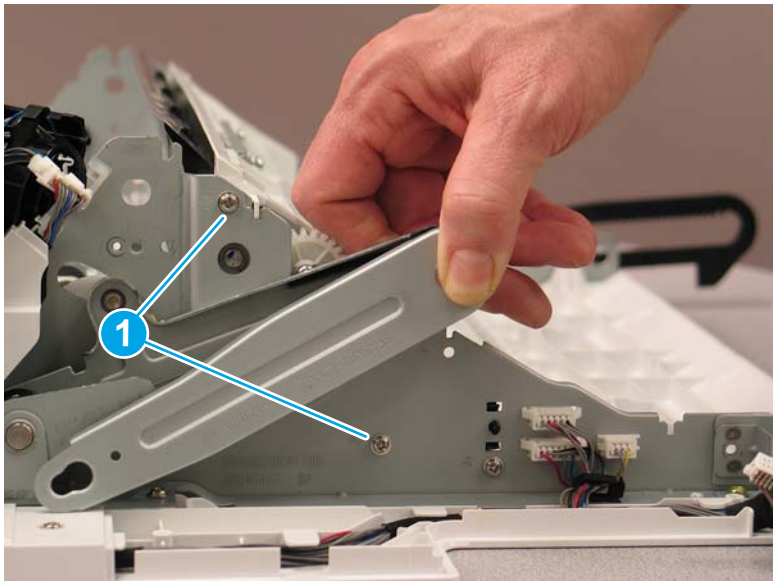
14. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-529 Remove one screw



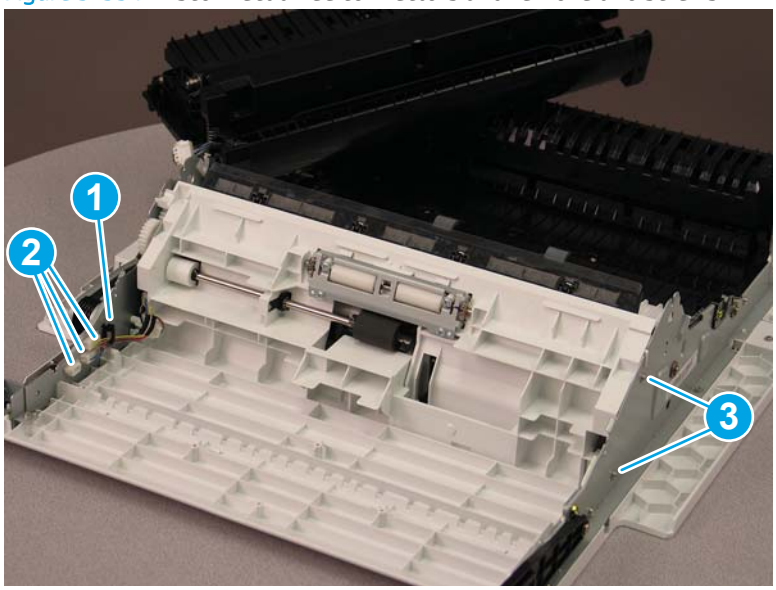
15. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 3-530 Remove two screws



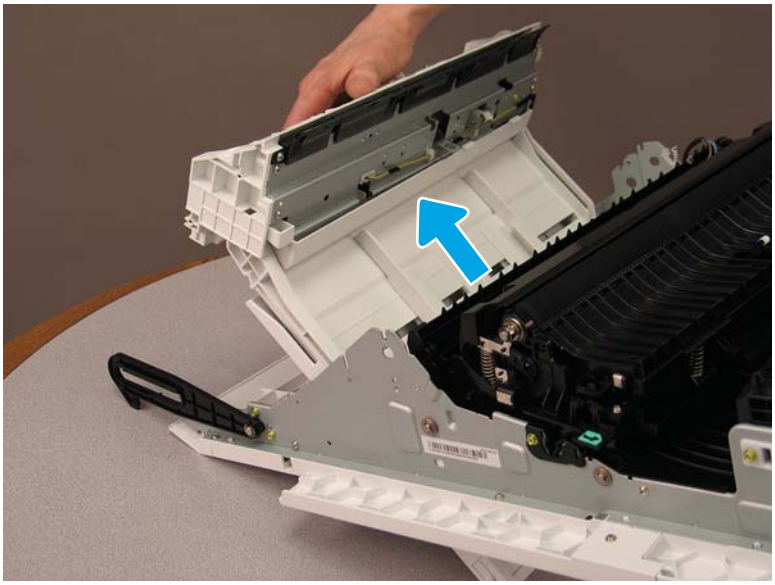
16. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect three connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-531 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



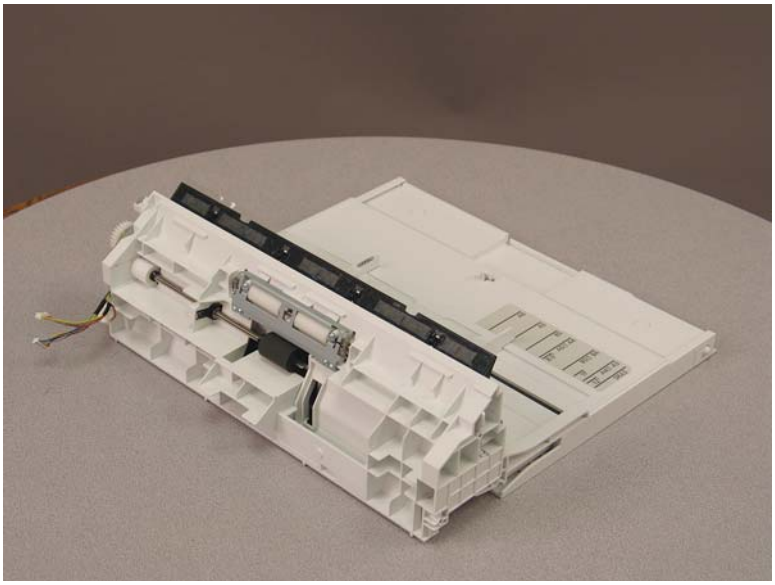
17. Release the MP unit from the right door.

Figure 3-532 Release the MP unit



18. Remove the MP unit.

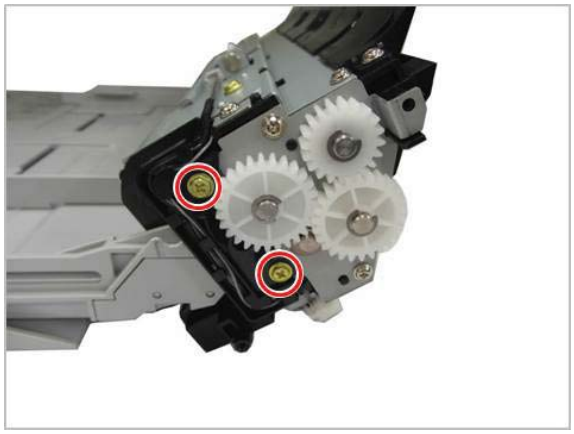
Figure 3-533 Remove the MP unit



Step 5: Remove the MP solenoid

1. Remove two screws, remove three gears, and then release the MP Tray.

Figure 3-534 Remove two screws and three gears



2. Remove two screws, three e-rings, and three bushings. Remove the bracket-rear.

Figure 3-535 Remove the bracket-rear



3. Remove seven screws, and then remove the frame-base.

Figure 3-536 Remove seven screws



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the MP solenoid.

Figure 3-537 Remove two screws



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01369A	Exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

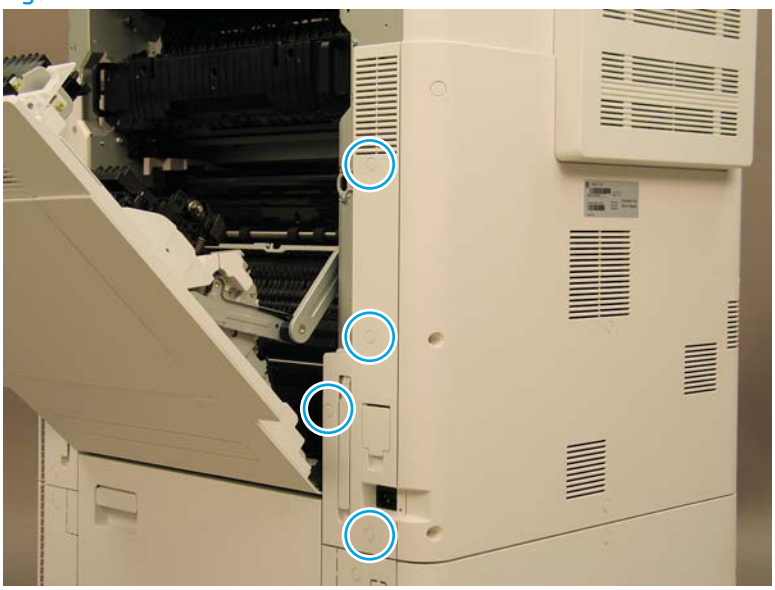
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

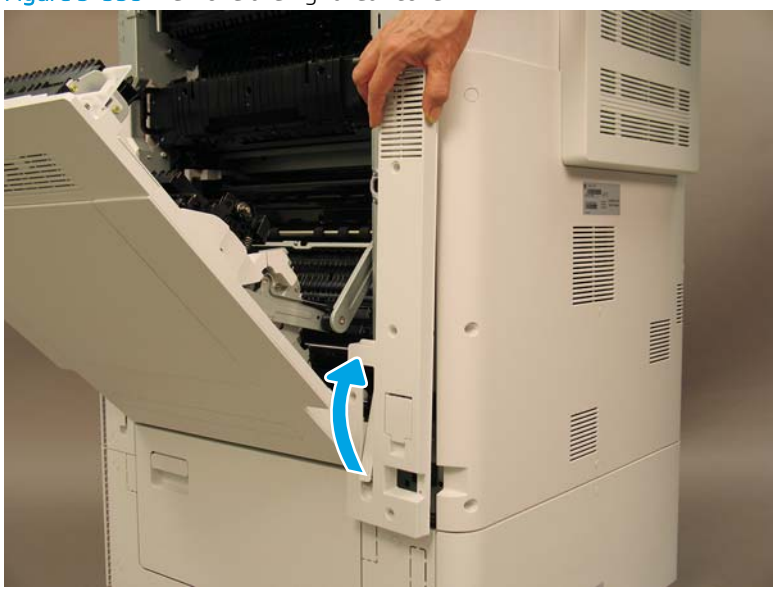
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-538 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

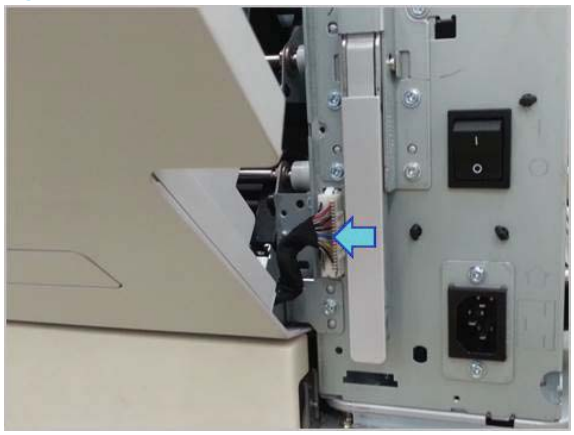
Figure 3-539 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

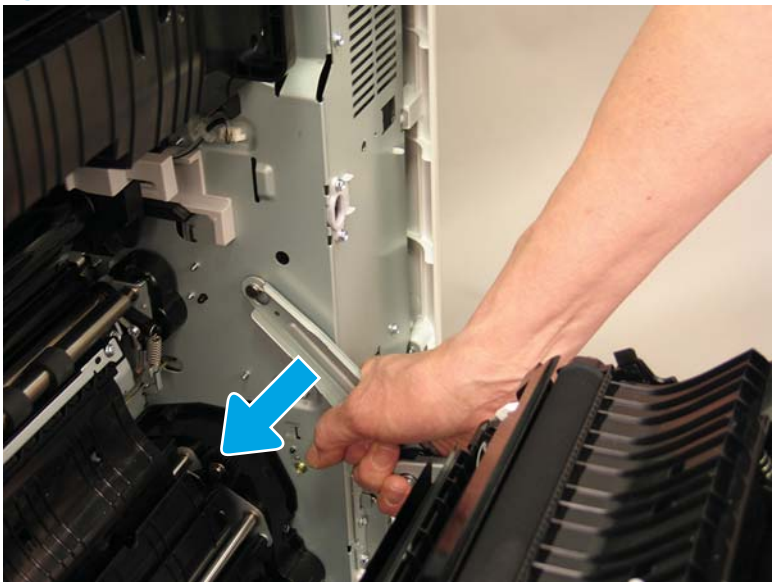
Figure 3-540 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

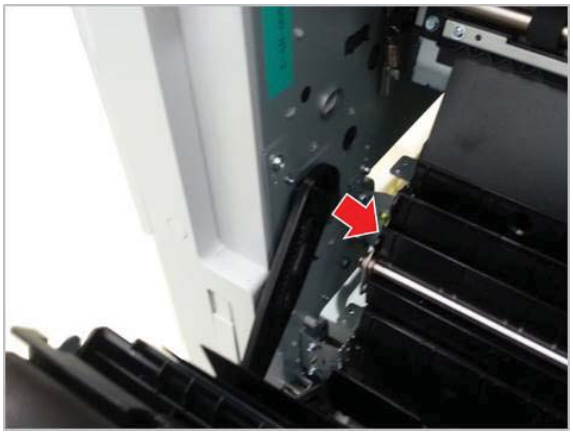
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-541 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

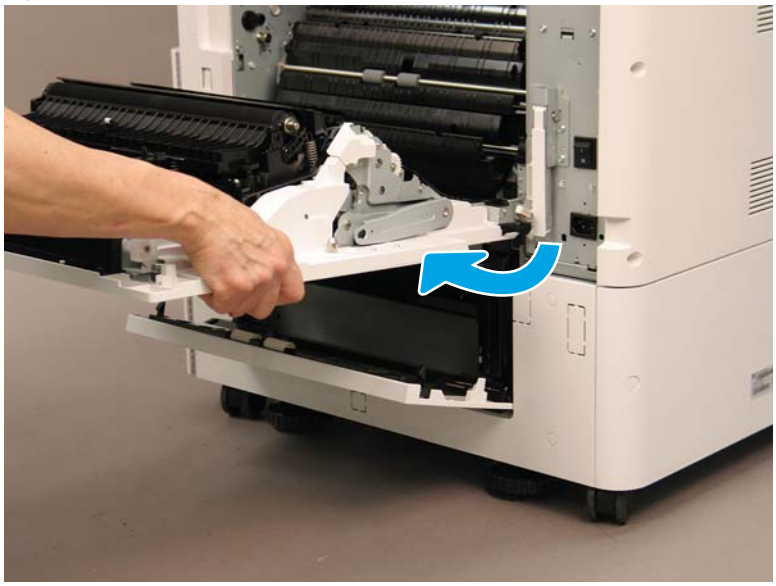
Figure 3-542 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-543 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-544 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

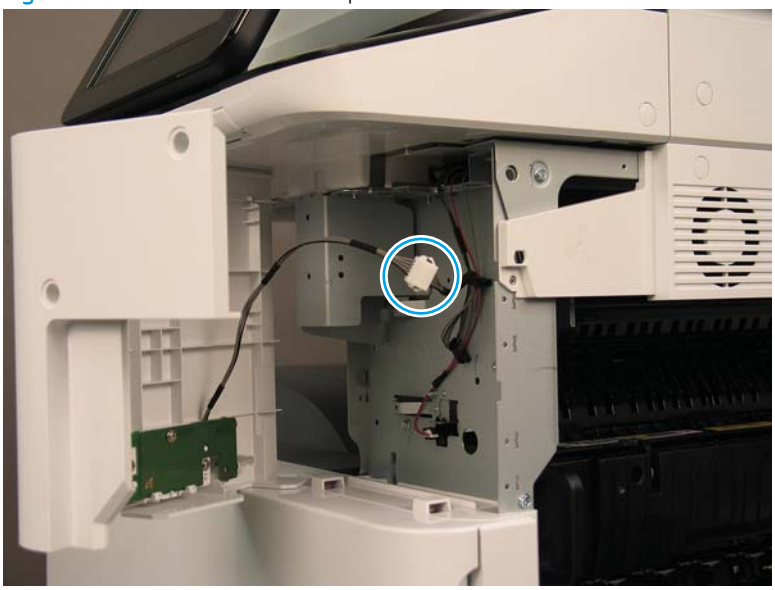
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-545 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

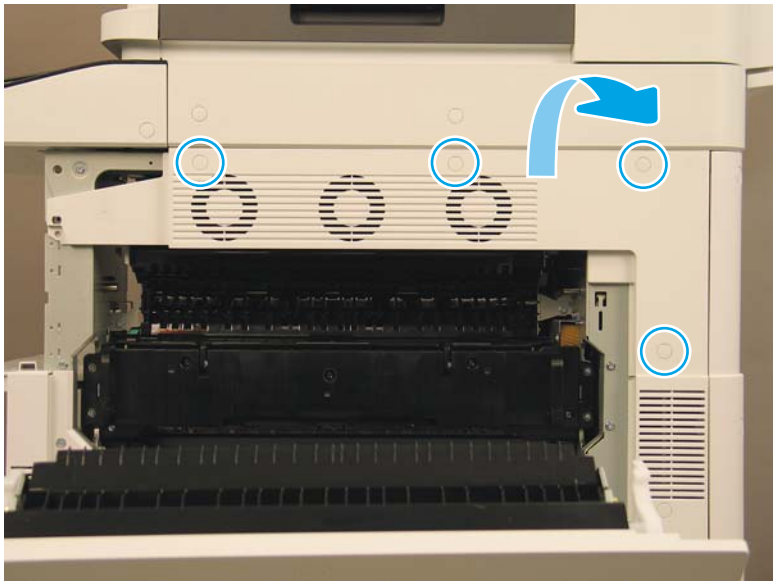
Figure 3-546 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-547 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

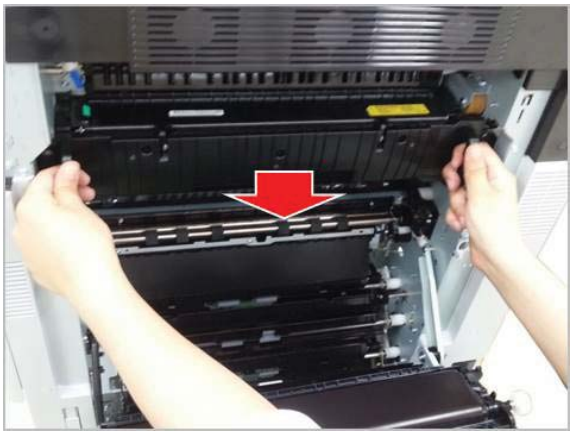
Figure 3-548 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

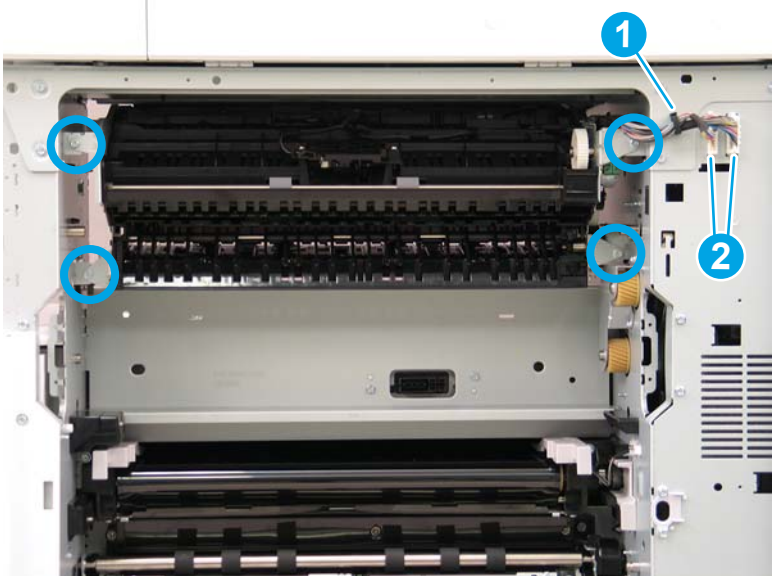
Figure 3-549 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

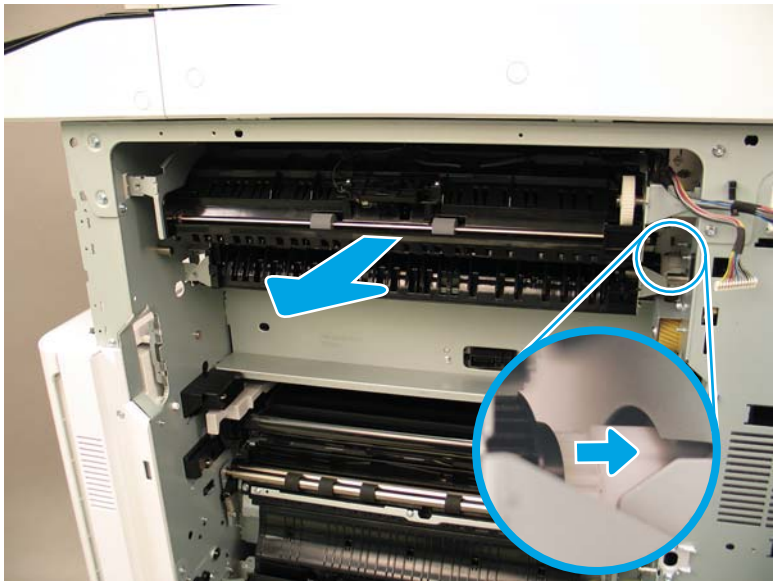
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-550 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

Figure 3-551 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Return sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the return sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the return sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Return sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

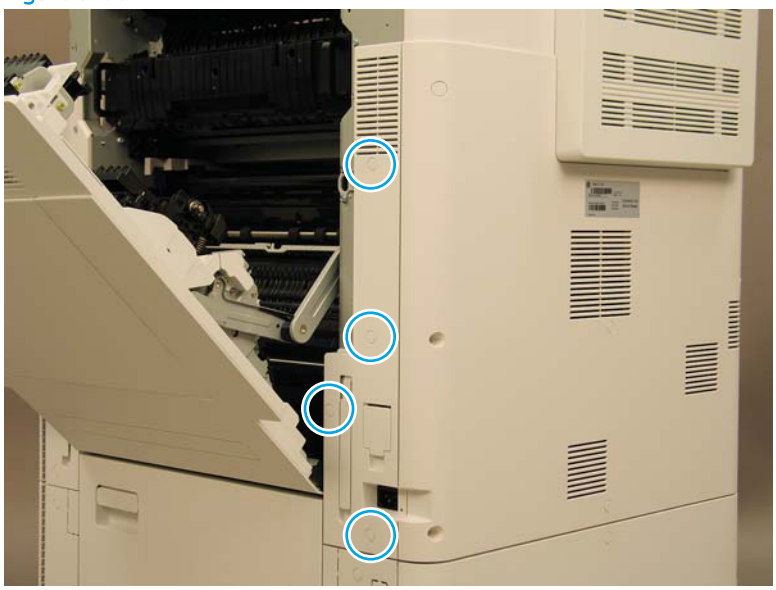
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

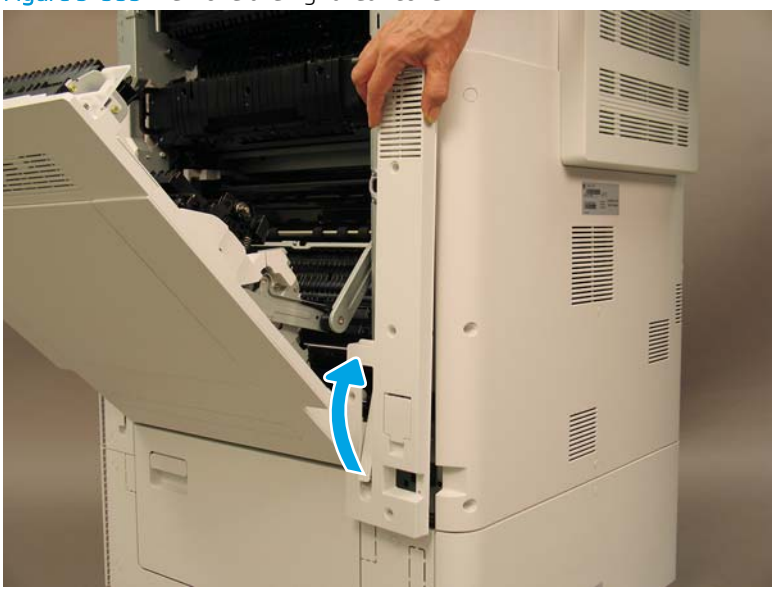
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-552 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

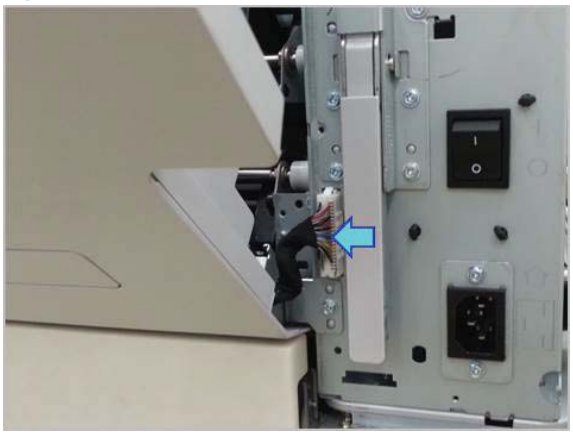
Figure 3-553 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

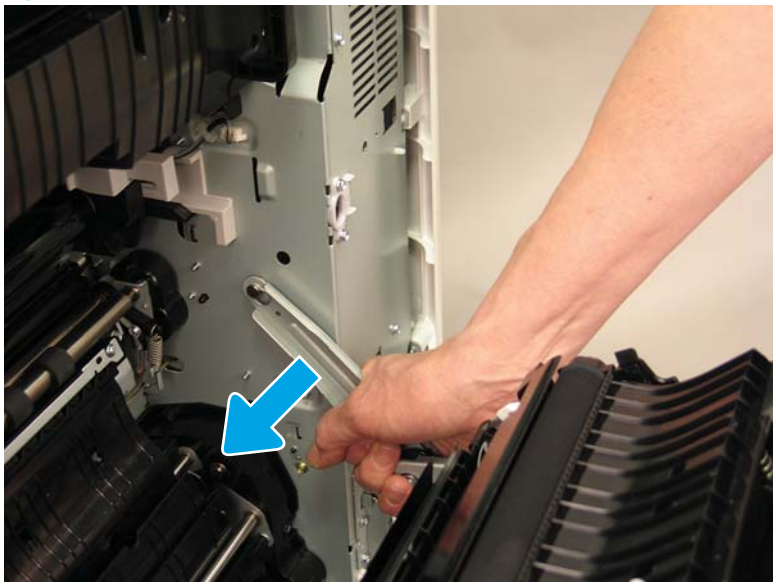
Figure 3-554 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

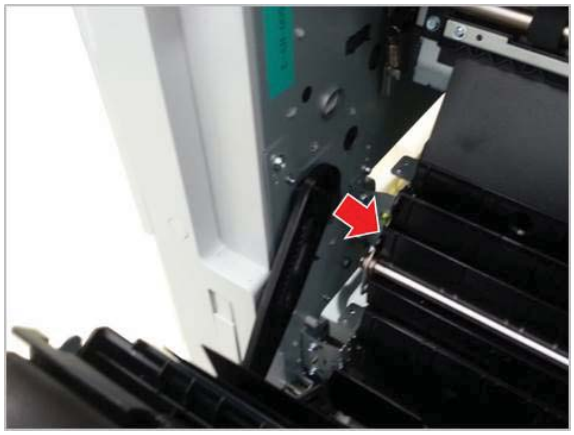
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-555 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

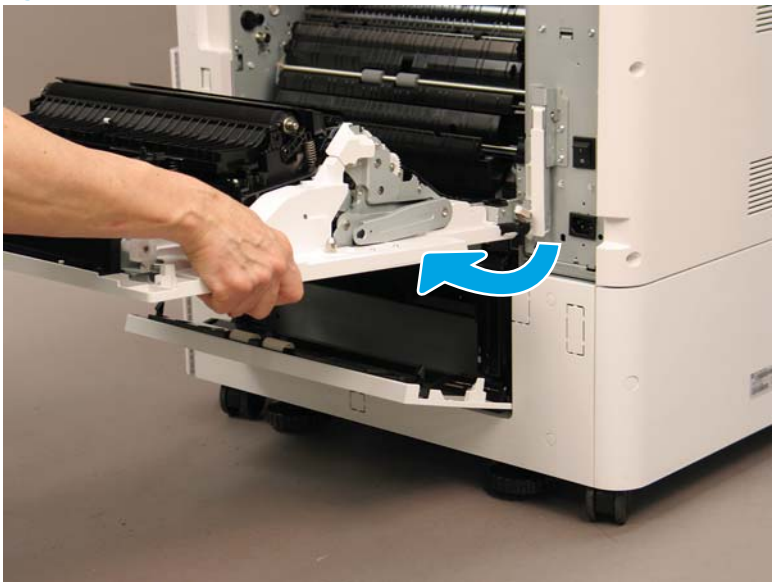
Figure 3-556 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-557 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-558 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

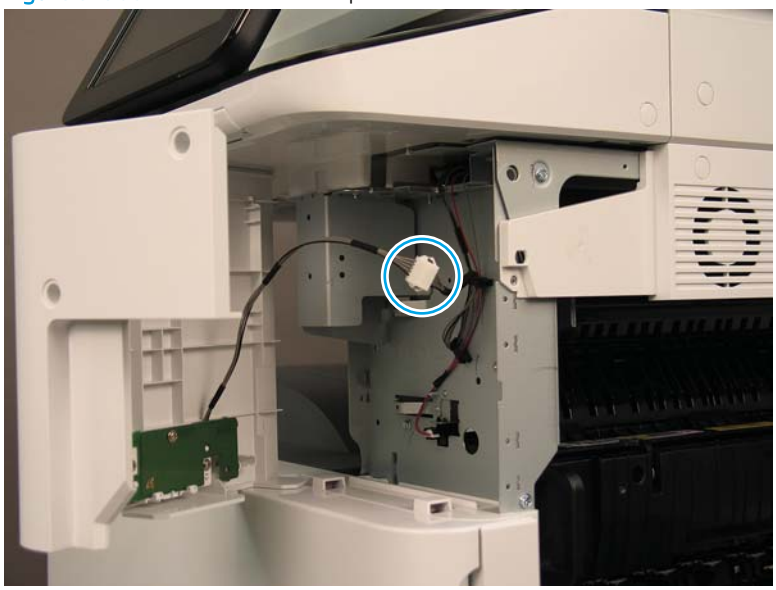
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-559 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

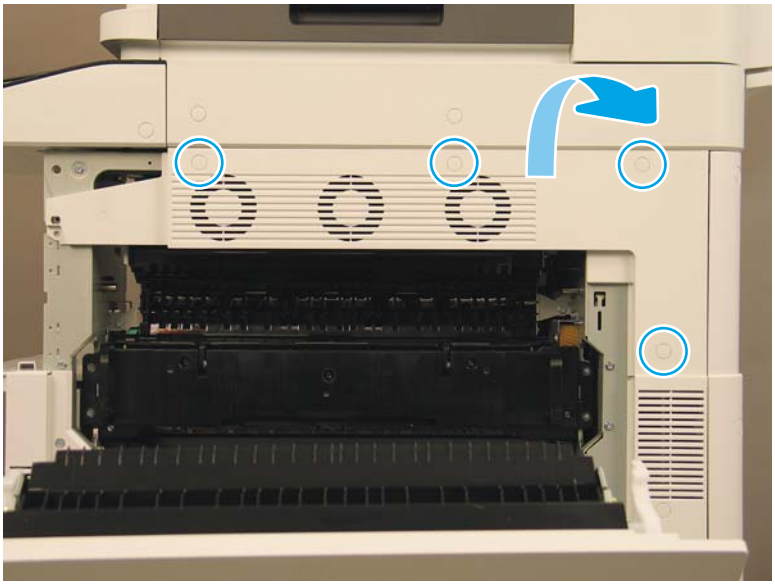
Figure 3-560 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-561 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

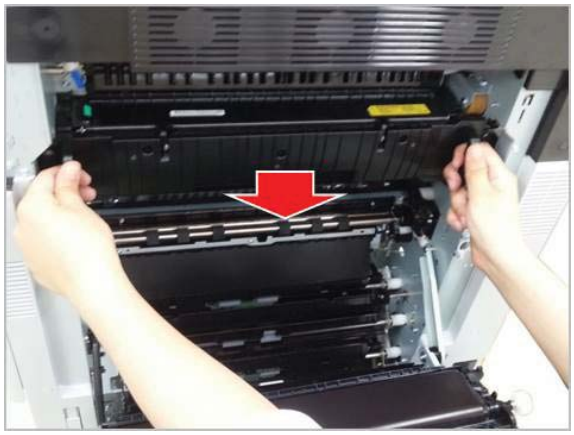
Figure 3-562 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

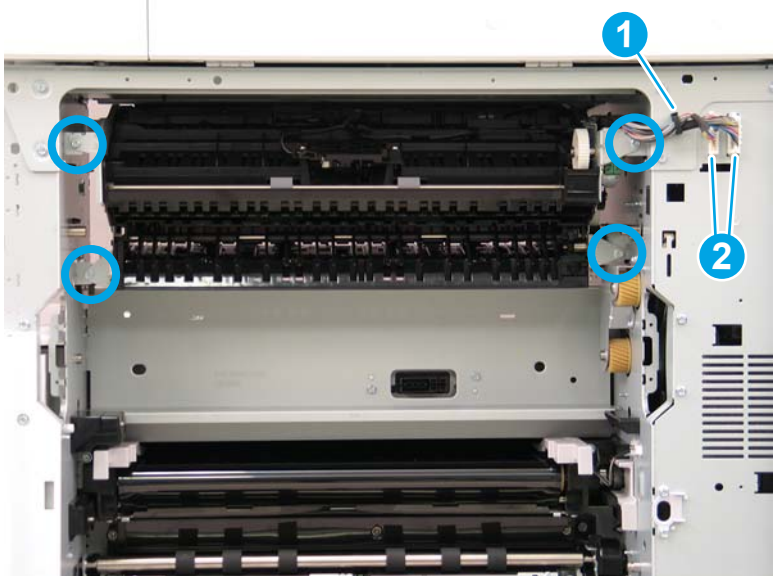
Figure 3-563 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

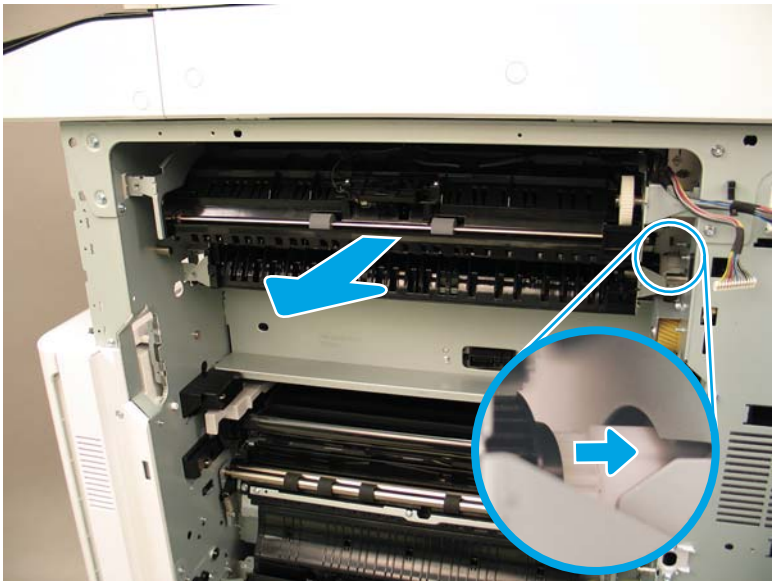
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-564 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

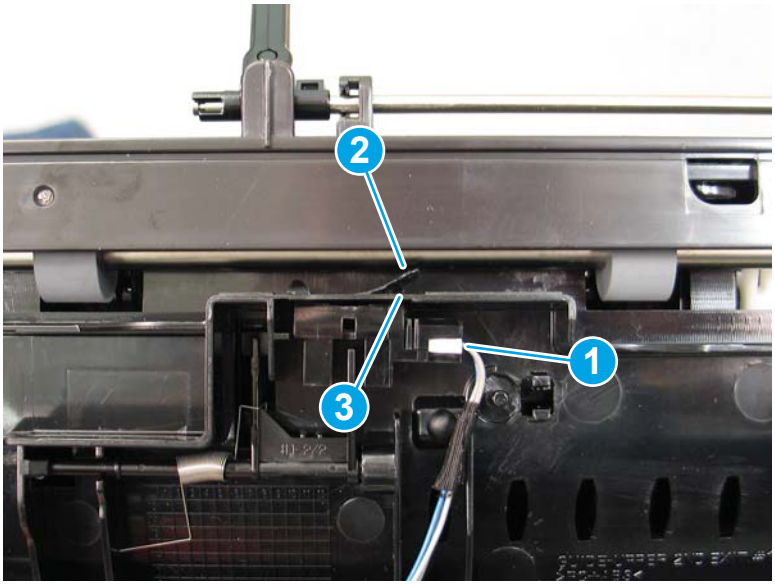
Figure 3-565 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the return sensor

▲ Locate the sensor on the output unit. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then peel the black adhesive strip (callout 2) away from the top of the sensor. Release two small tabs (callout 3), and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-566 Return sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Duplex 1 sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the duplex 1 sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Duplex 1 sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

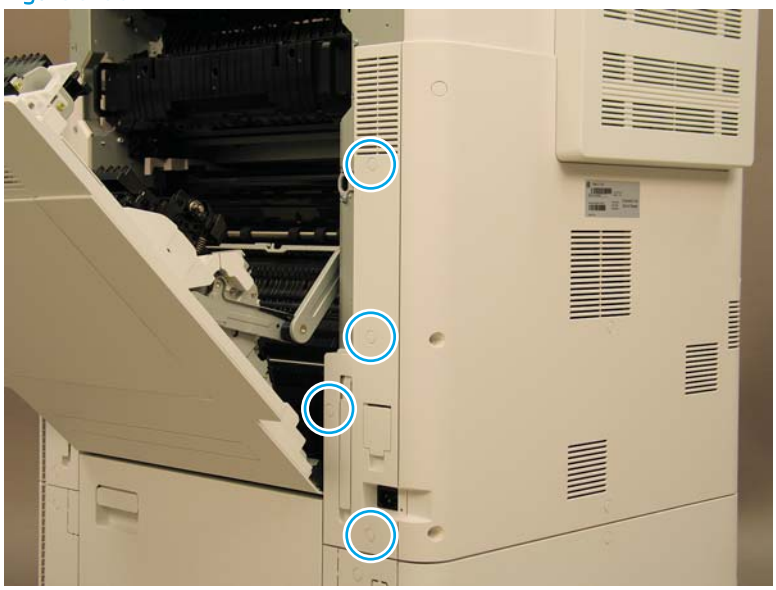
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-567 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

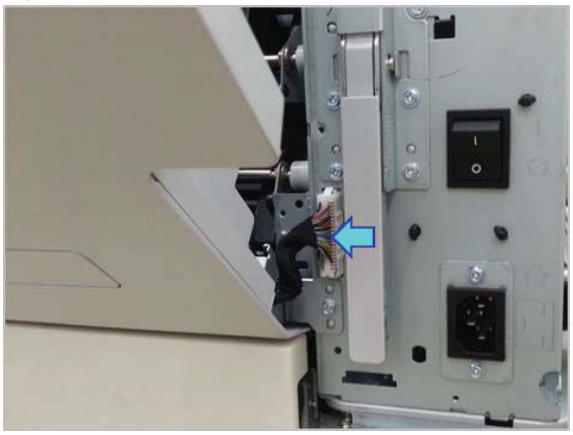
Figure 3-568 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

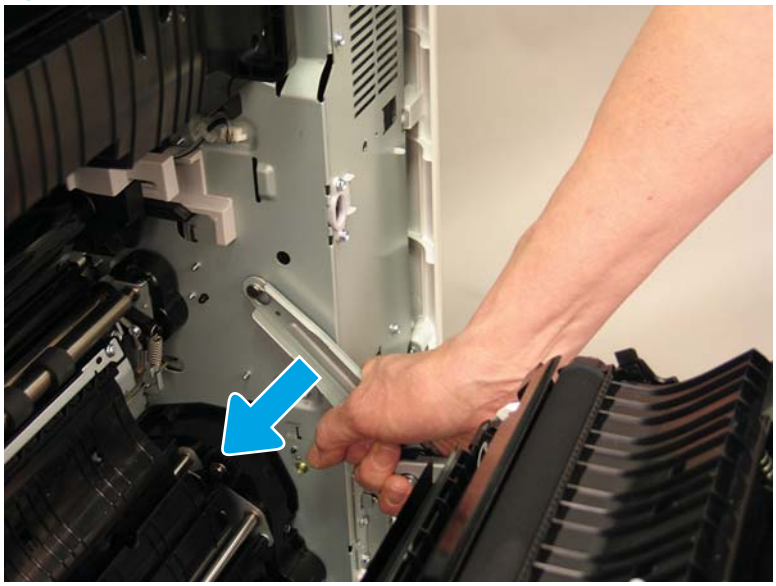
Figure 3-569 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

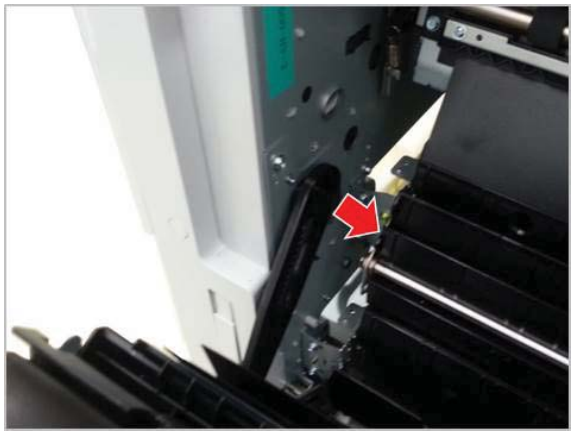
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-570 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

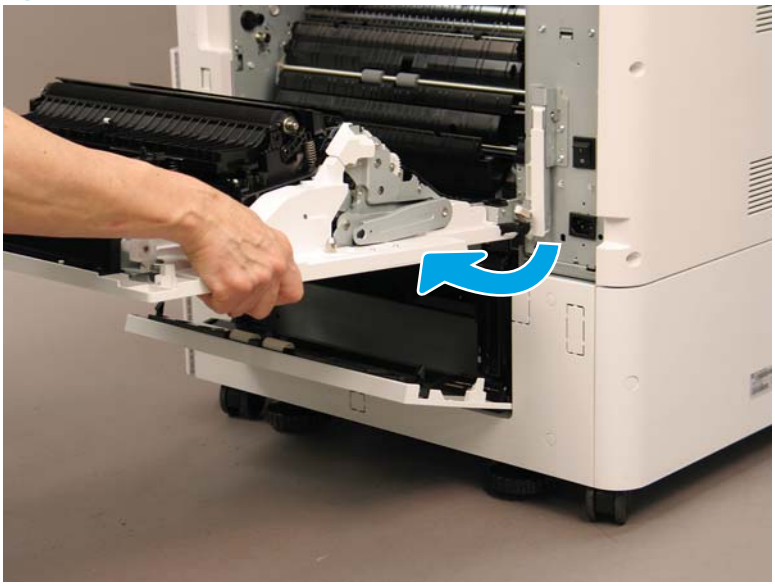
Figure 3-571 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-572 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-573 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

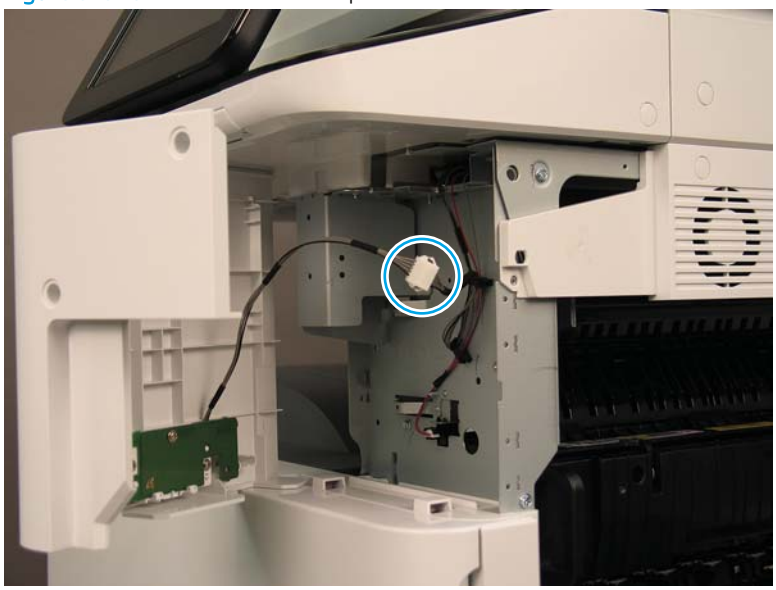
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-574 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

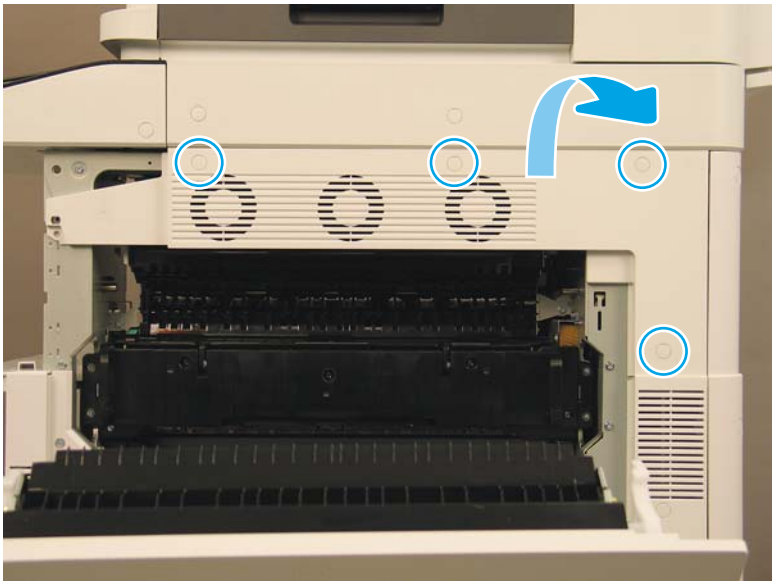
Figure 3-575 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-576 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

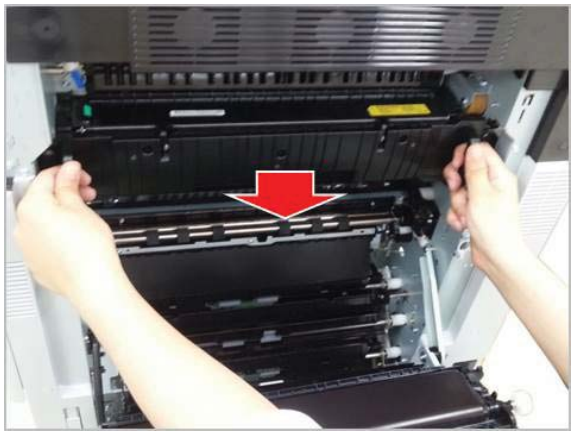
Figure 3-577 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

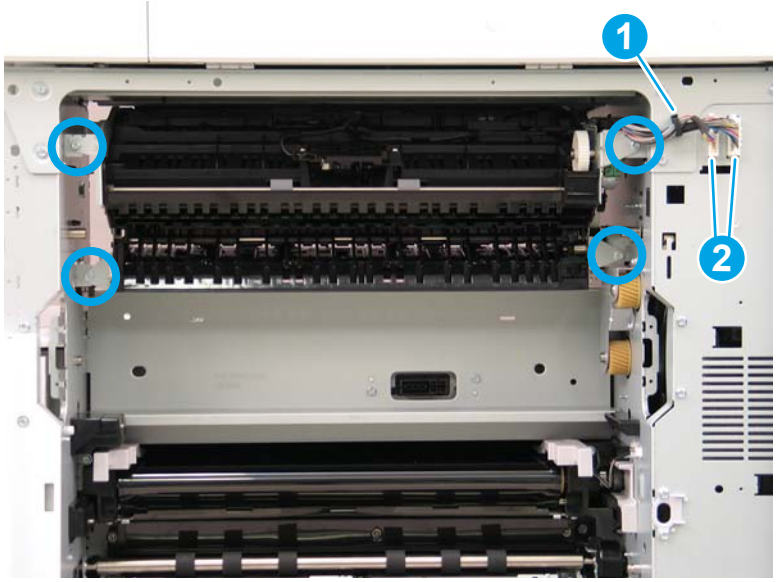
Figure 3-578 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

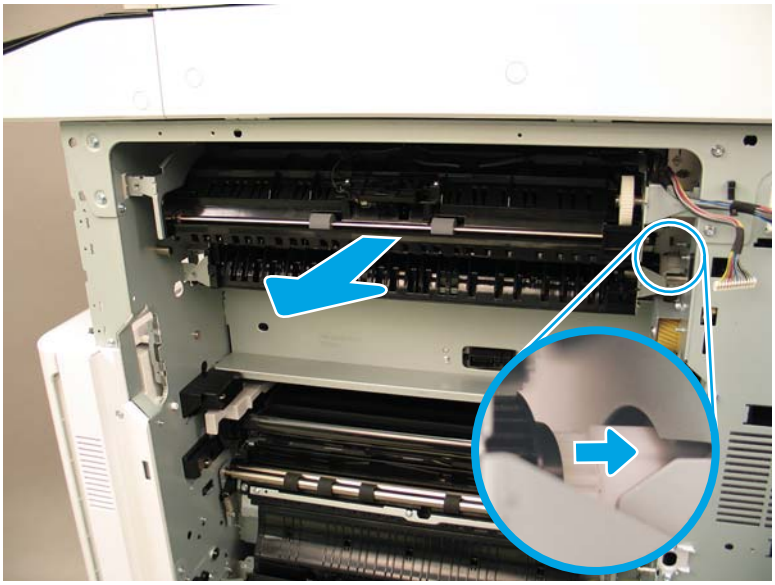
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-579 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

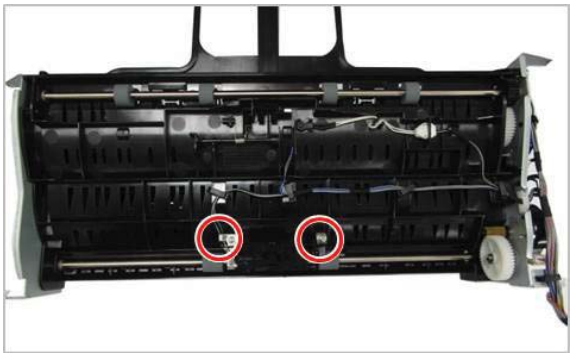
Figure 3-580 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the duplex 1 sensor

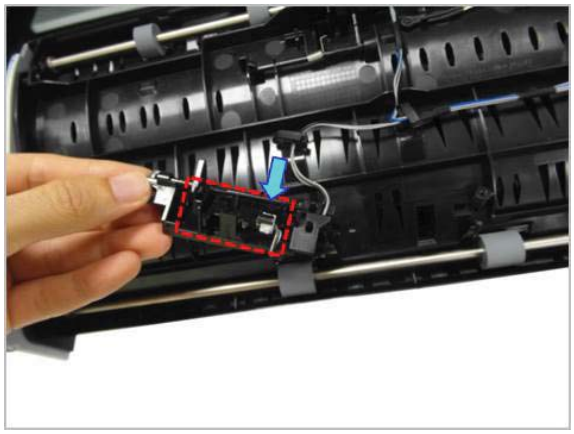
1. Locate the sensor on the output unit. Remove two screws, and then lift the sensor holder up.

Figure 3-581 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the duplex 1 sensor.

Figure 3-582 Remove the duplex 1 sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output 1 bin full sensor (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output 1 bin full sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output 1 bin full sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001393	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

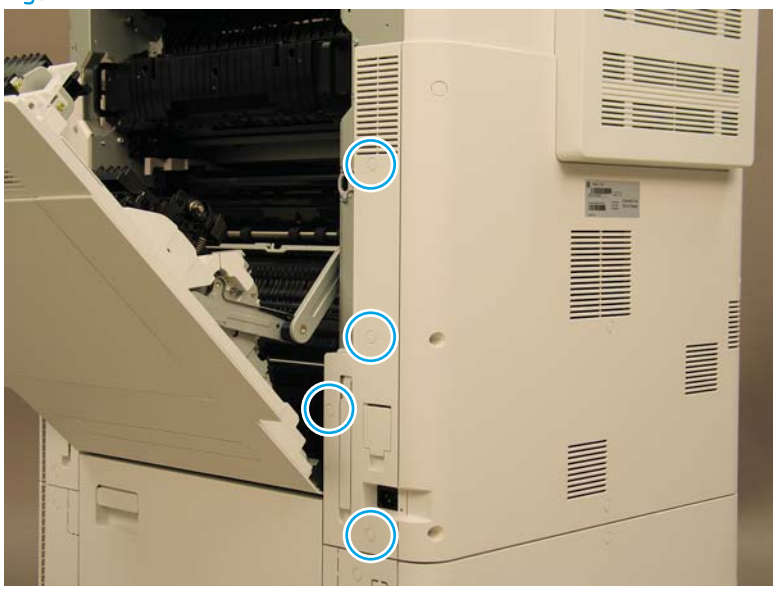
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

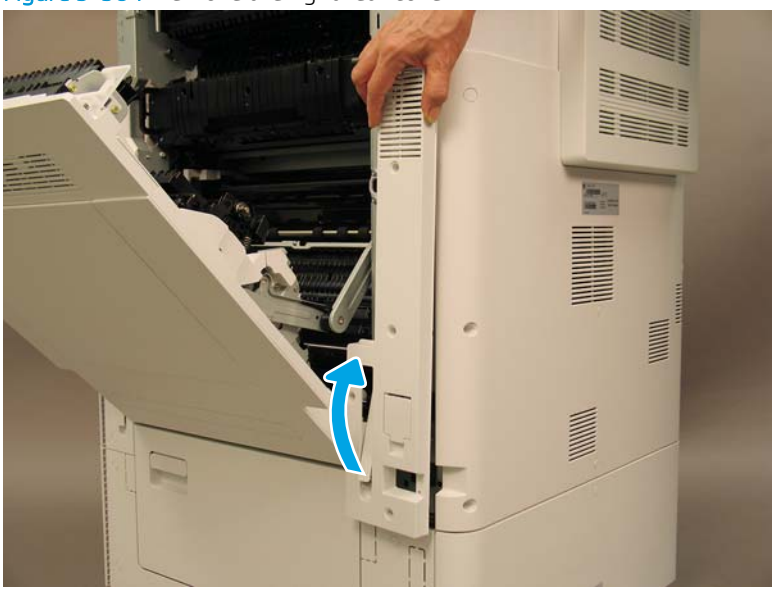
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-583 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

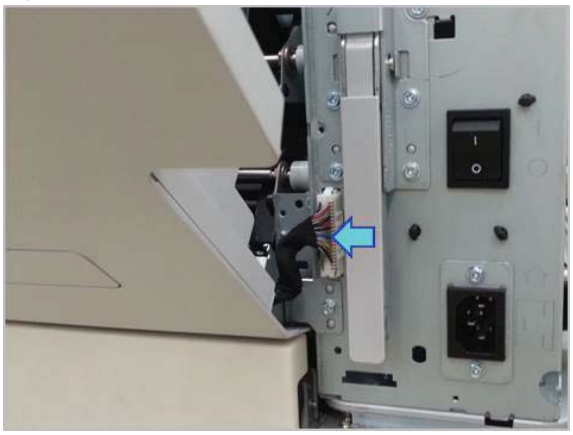
Figure 3-584 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

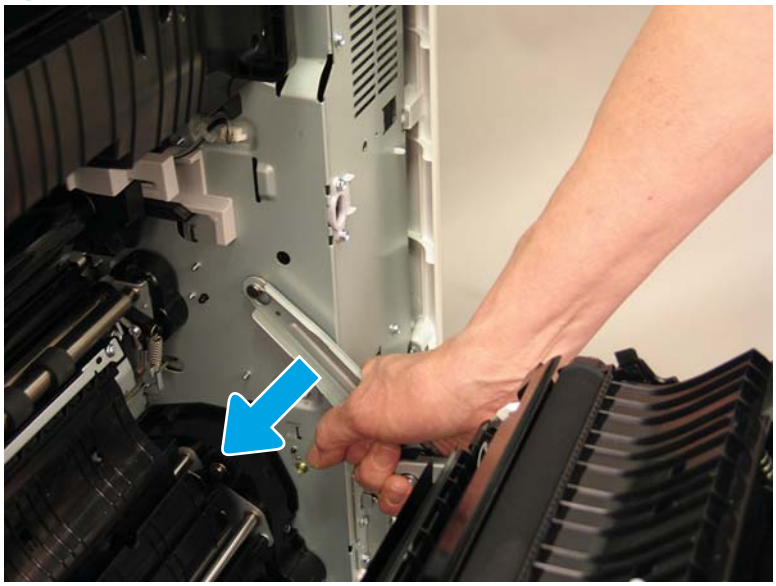
Figure 3-585 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

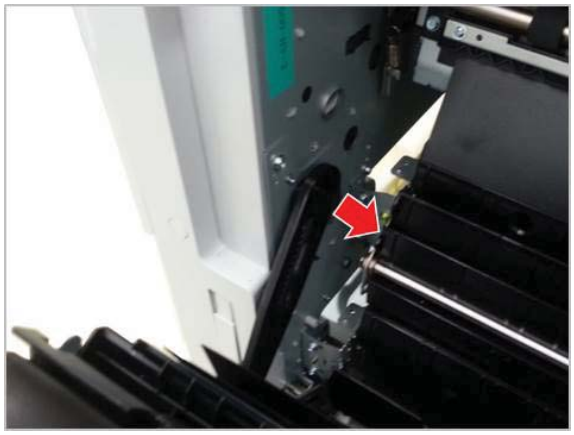
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-586 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

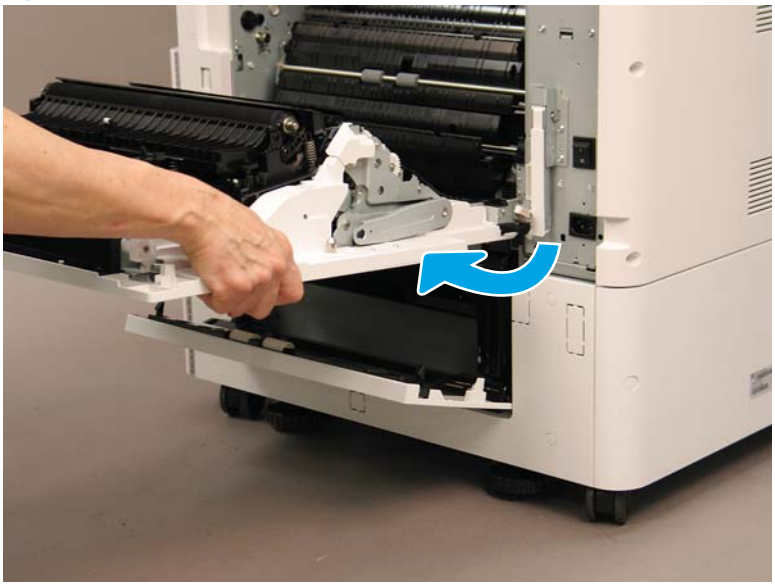
Figure 3-587 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-588 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-589 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

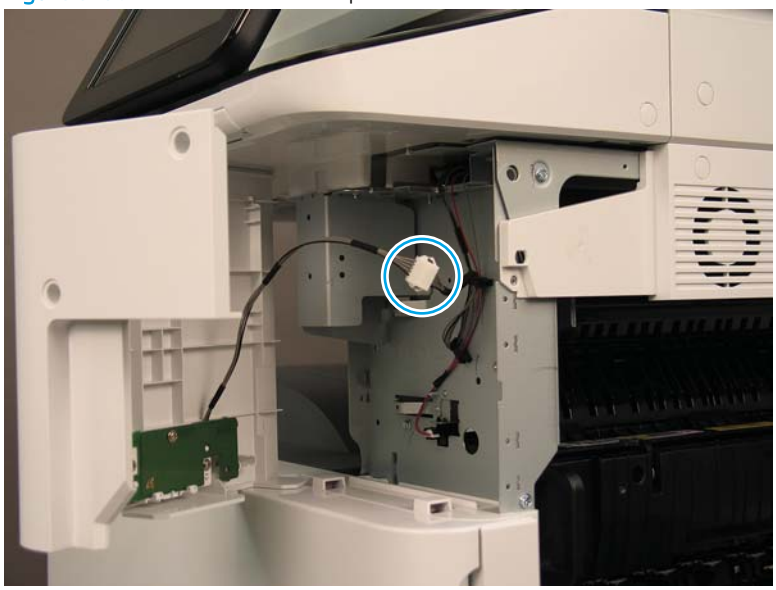
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-590 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

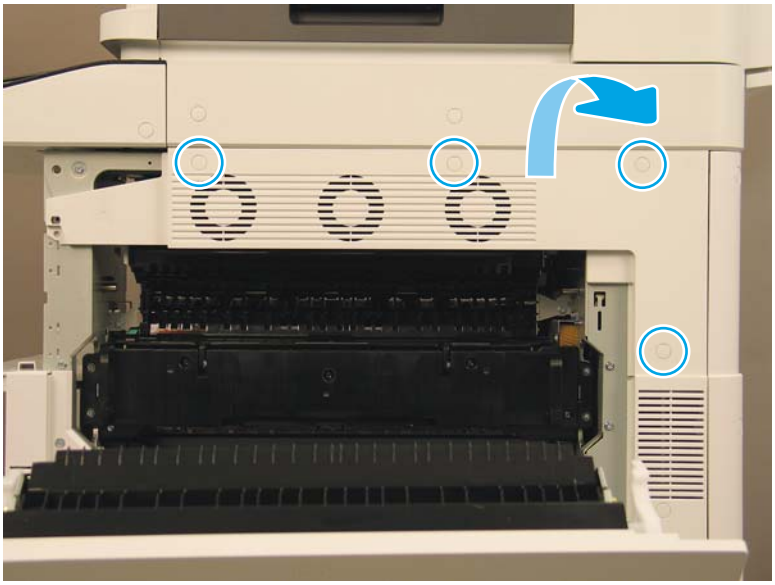
Figure 3-591 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-592 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

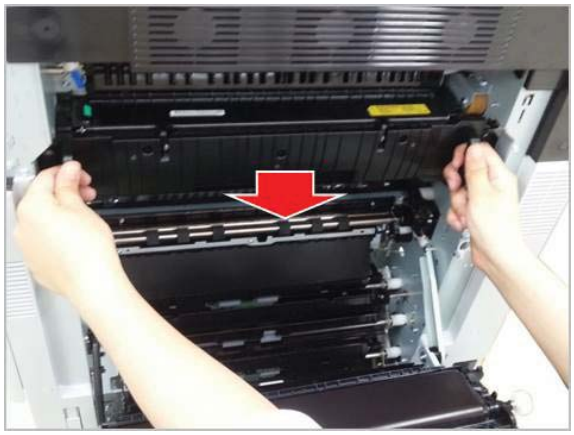
Figure 3-593 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

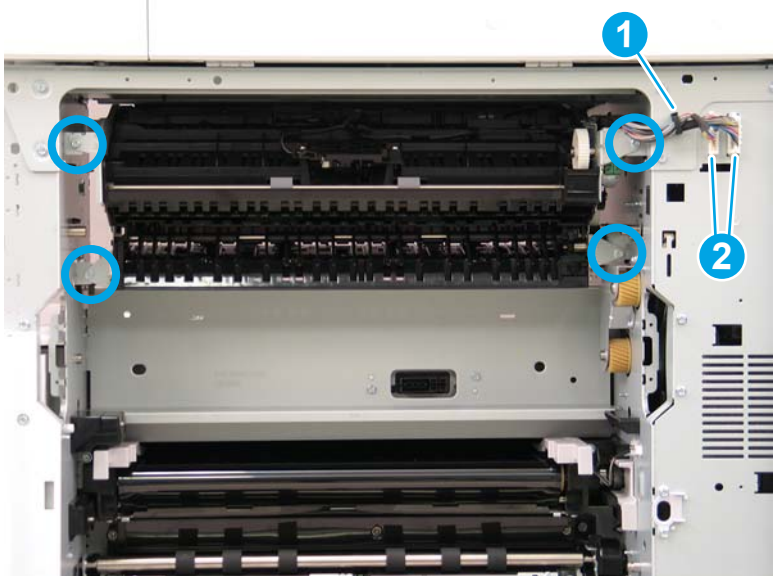
Figure 3-594 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

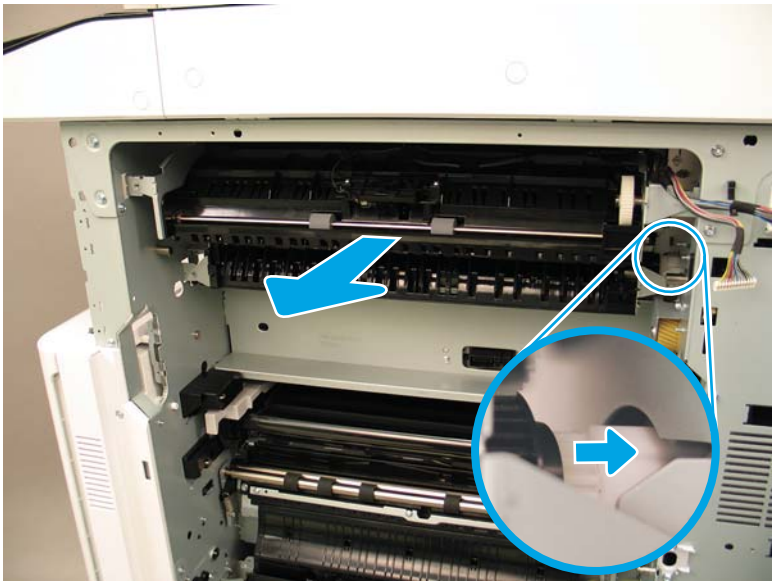
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-595 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

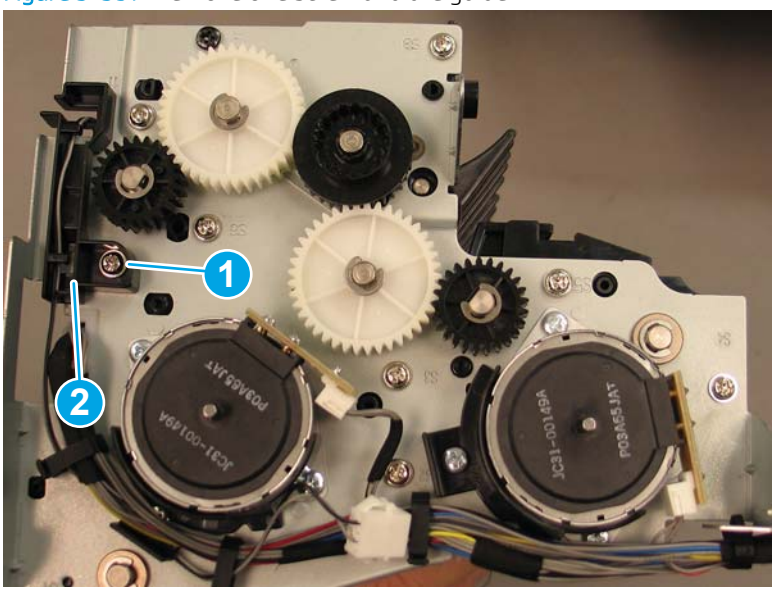
Figure 3-596 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the output 1 bin full sensor

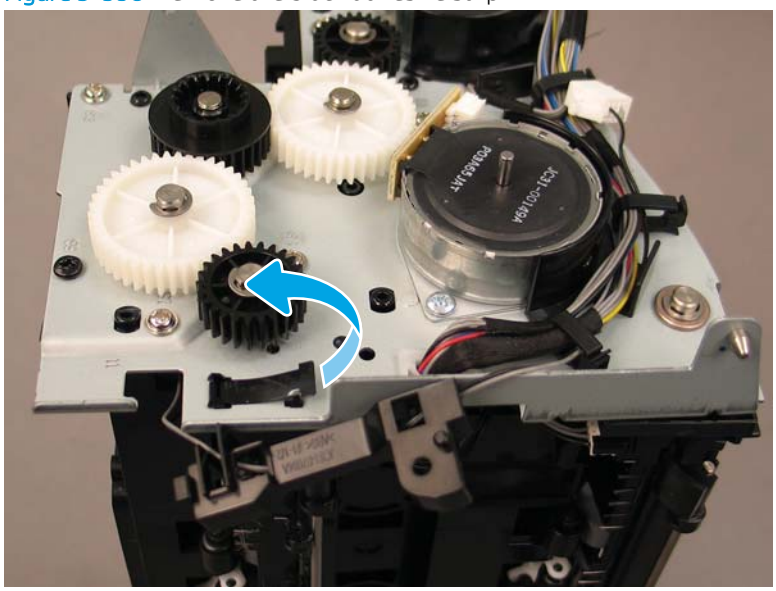
1. On the output unit, remove one self-tapping screw (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

Figure 3-597 Remove one screw and the guide



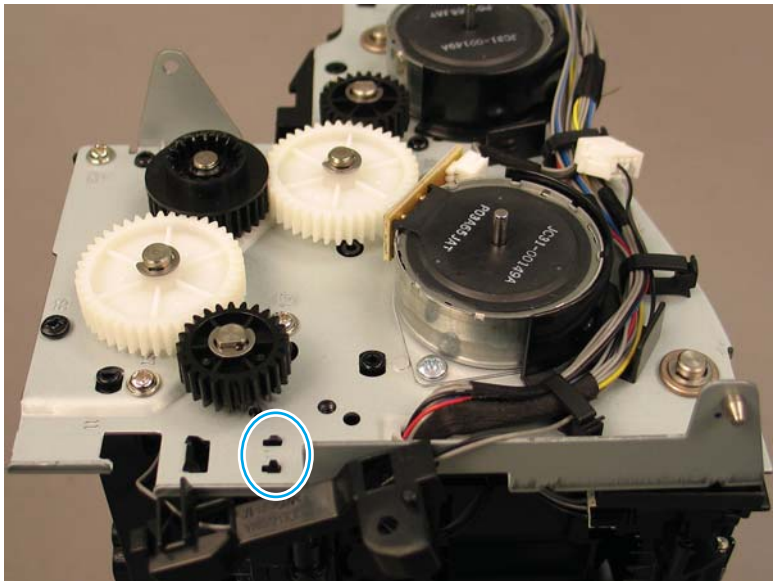
2. Remove the black adhesive strip from the output unit.

Figure 3-598 Remove the black adhesive strip



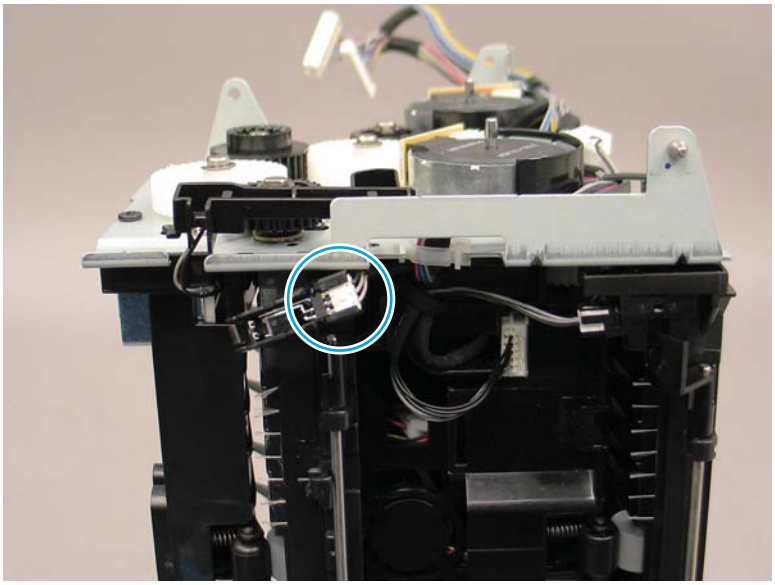
3. Release two tabs, and then unhook the sensor from the sheet metal.

Figure 3-599 Release two tabs



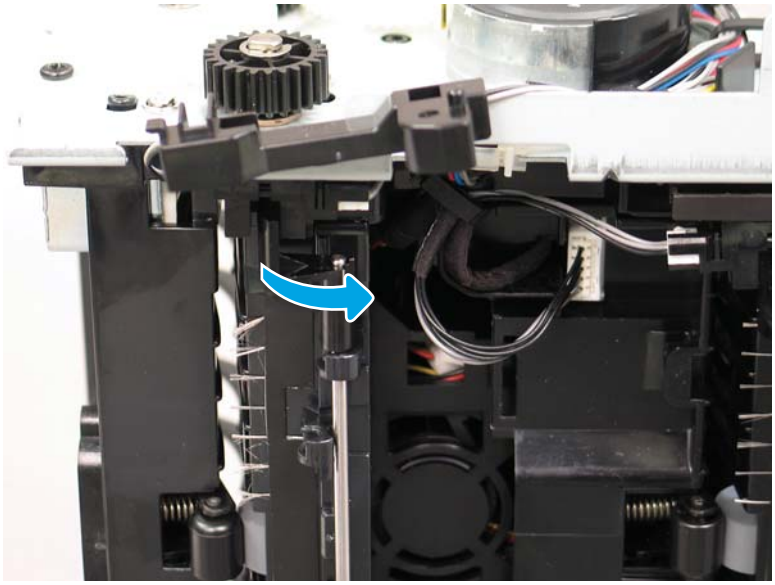
4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-600 Disconnect one connector



5. Rotate the shaft to release the sensor, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 3-601 Remove the output 1 bin full sensor



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output gate solenoid (on the output unit)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 4: Remove the front power cover
- Step 5: Remove the top right cover
- Step 6: Remove the fuser unit
- Step 7: Remove the output unit
- Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output gate solenoid.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Output gate solenoid part number	
SAM-JC33-00031B	Solenoid - Lifting

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

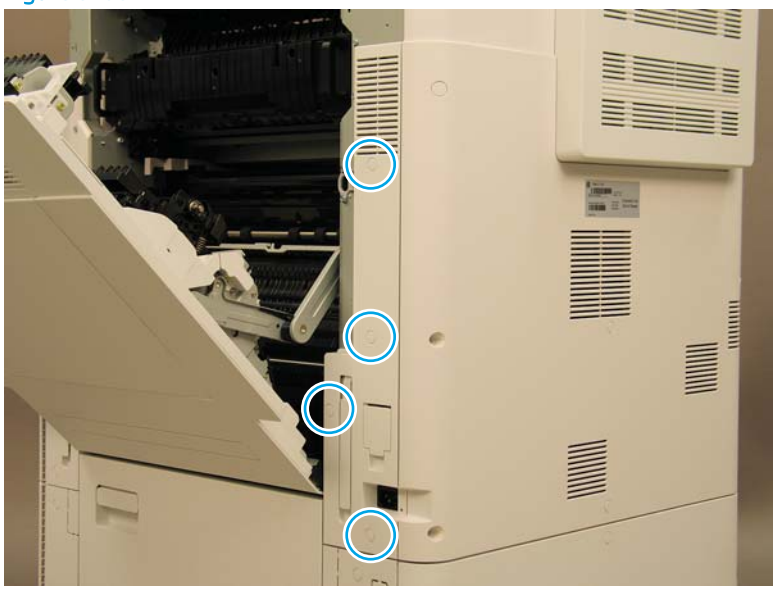
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

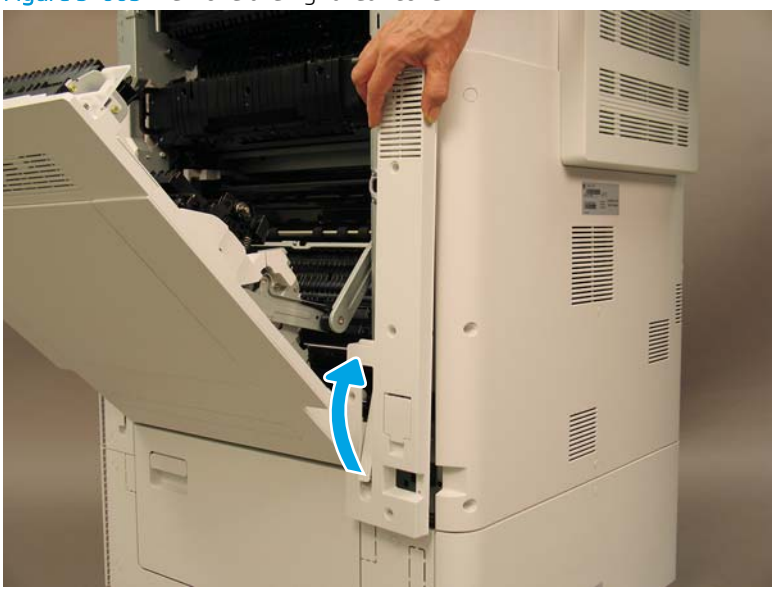
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-602 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

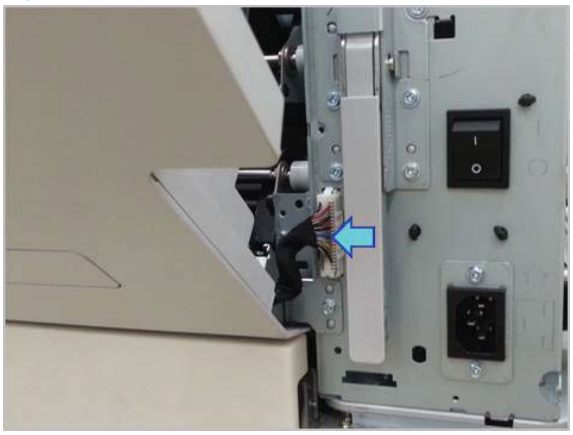
Figure 3-603 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

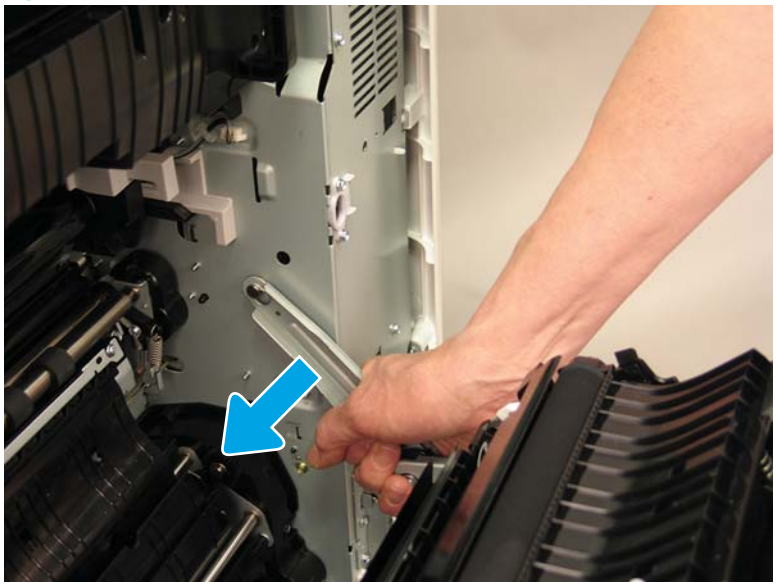
Figure 3-604 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

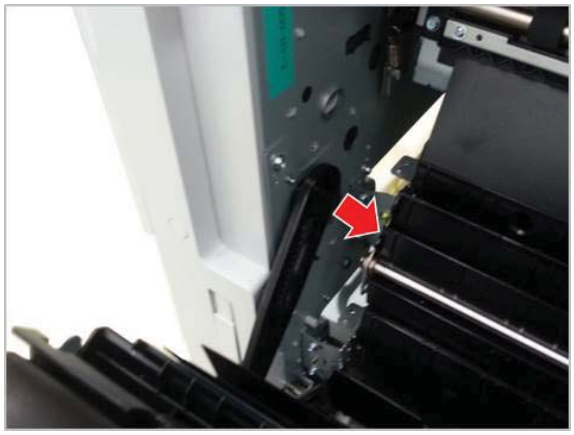
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-605 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

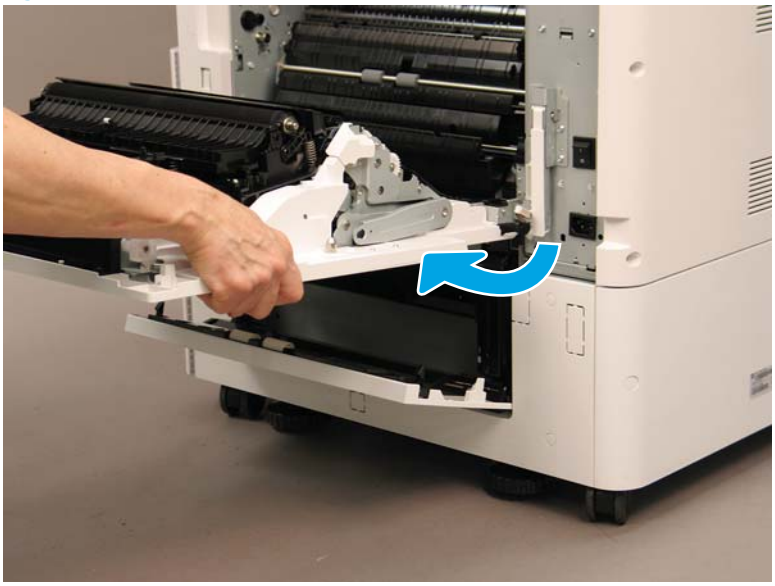
Figure 3-606 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-607 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the front top inner cover

▲ Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-608 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 4: Remove the front power cover

1. Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Release two tabs on the right, and then rotate the cover slightly away from the printer.

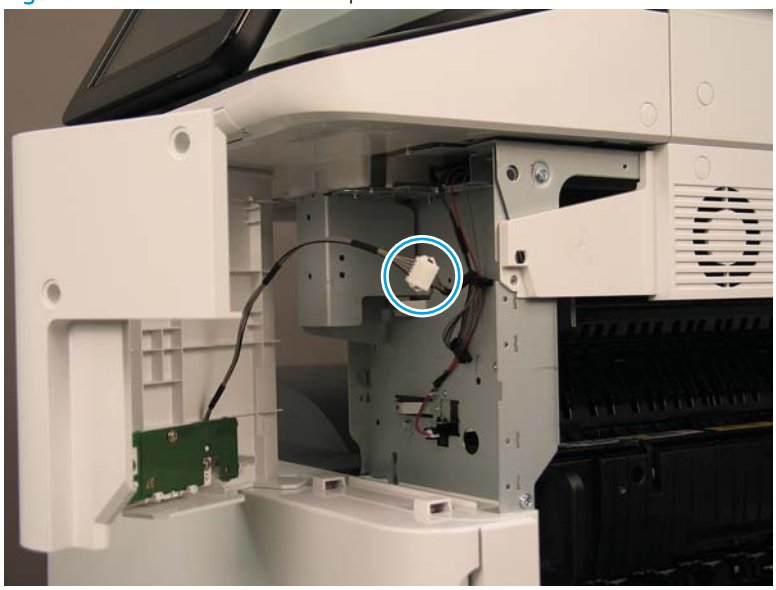
⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the printer by a cable. Do not completely remove the cover.

Figure 3-609 Remove two screws and rotate the cover



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the cover.

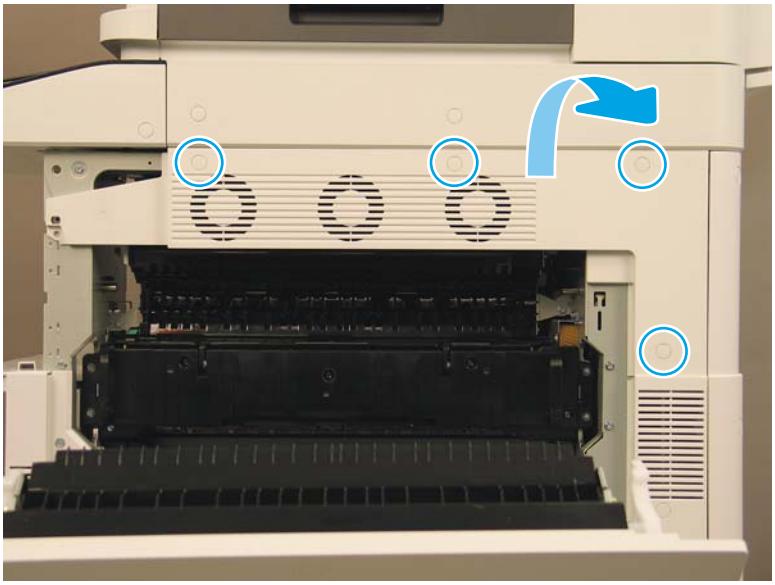
Figure 3-610 Remove the front power cover



Step 5: Remove the top right cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then rotate the top right cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-611 Remove the top right cover



Step 6: Remove the fuser unit

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

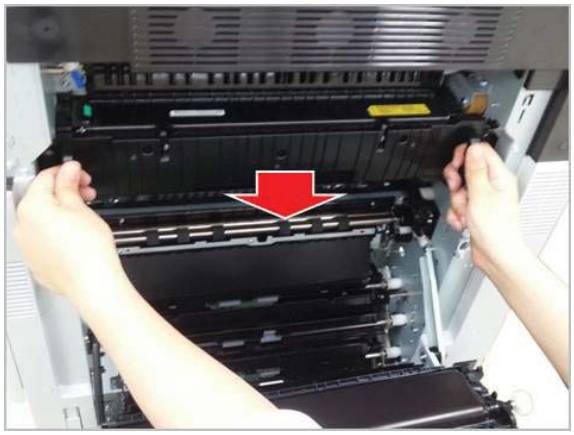
Figure 3-612 Fuser unit screw locations



3. Pull out the fuser unit.

⚠ CAUTION: The temperature in the vicinity of the fuser becomes heated. To prevent the potential of getting burned, make sure the fuser unit has cooled before replacing it.

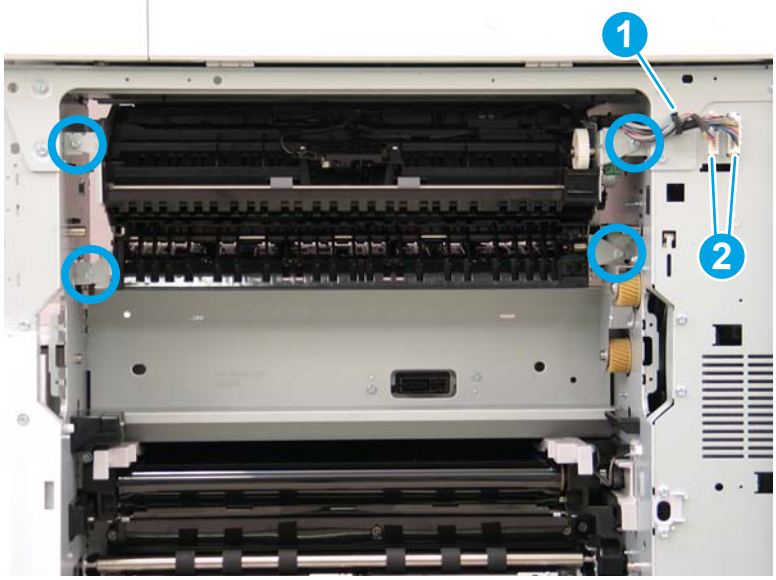
Figure 3-613 Fuser unit removal



Step 7: Remove the output unit

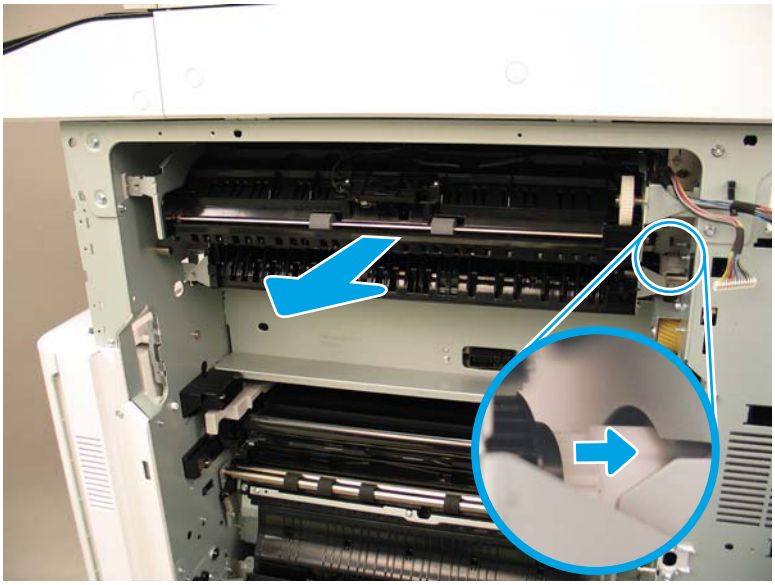
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove four screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-614 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



2. Remove the output unit while pushing the coupler to the right.

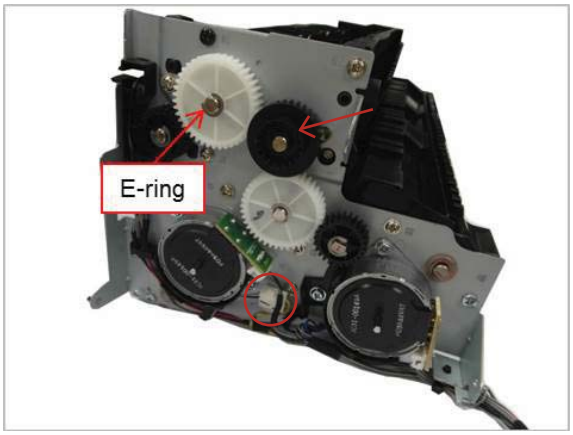
Figure 3-615 Remove the output unit



Step 8: Remove the output gate solenoid

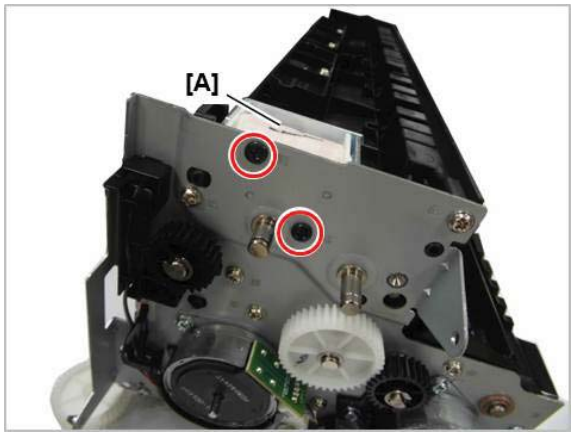
1. Disconnect one connector. Gently pry the black gear from behind to remove it. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the white gear.

Figure 3-616 On the output unit, disconnect one connector and remove two gears



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the output gate solenoid [A].

Figure 3-617 Output gate solenoid



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup unit 2

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup unit 2 part number	
SAM-JC93-01365A	Main Pick Up 2nd

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

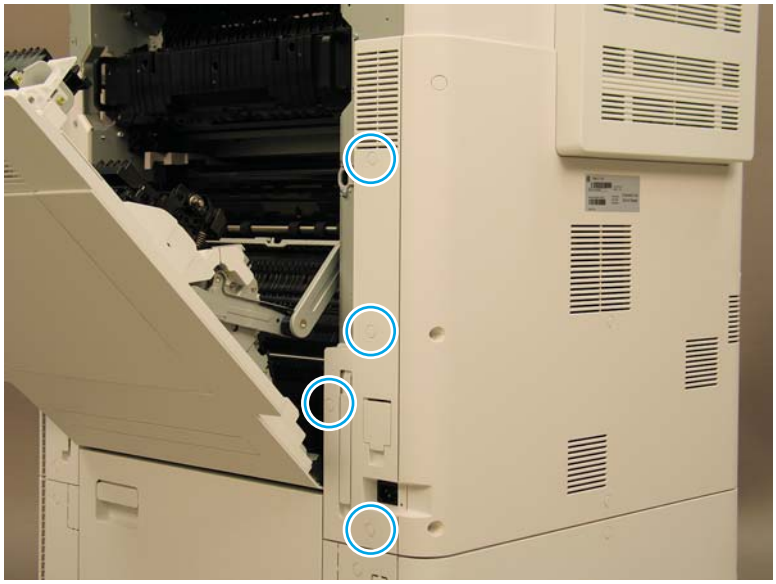
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

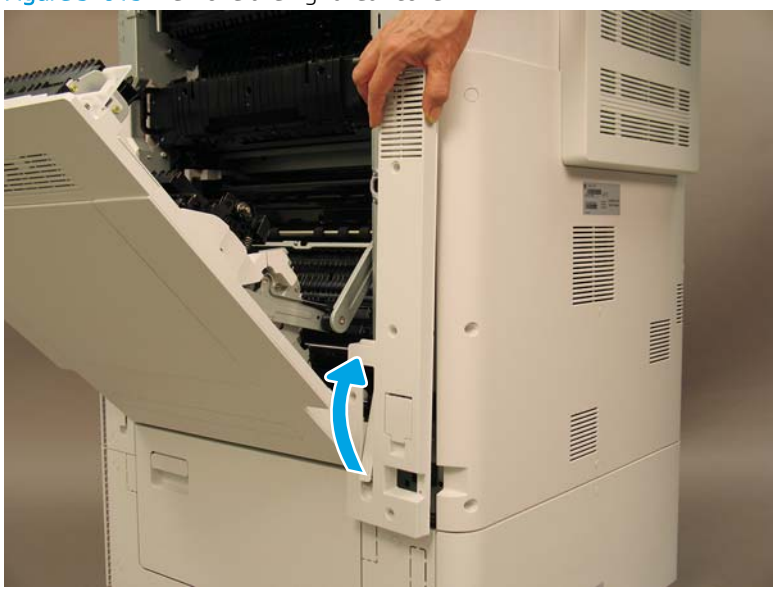
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-618 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

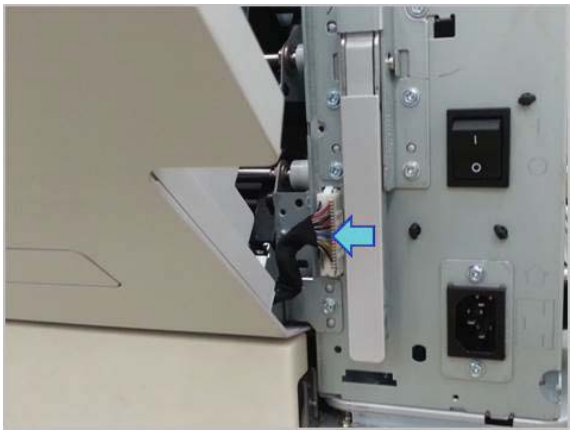
Figure 3-619 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

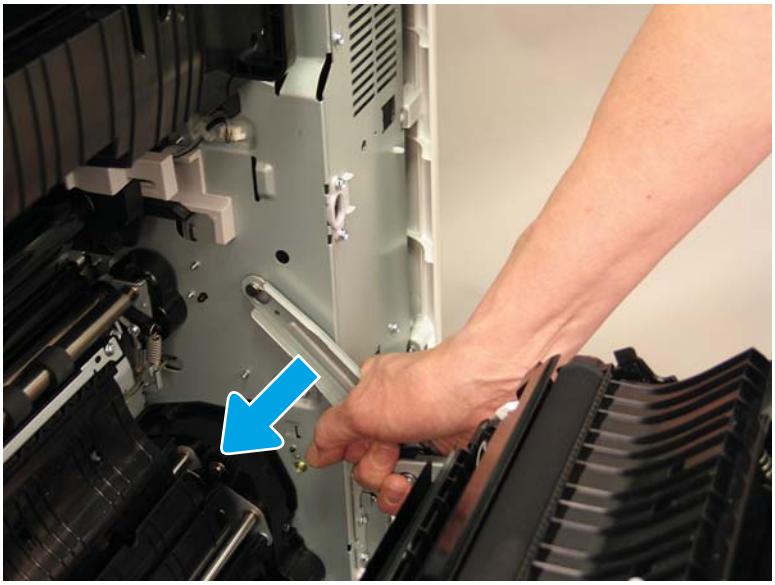
Figure 3-620 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

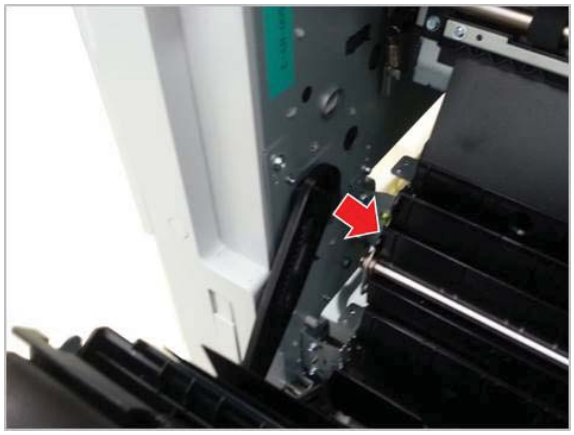
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-621 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

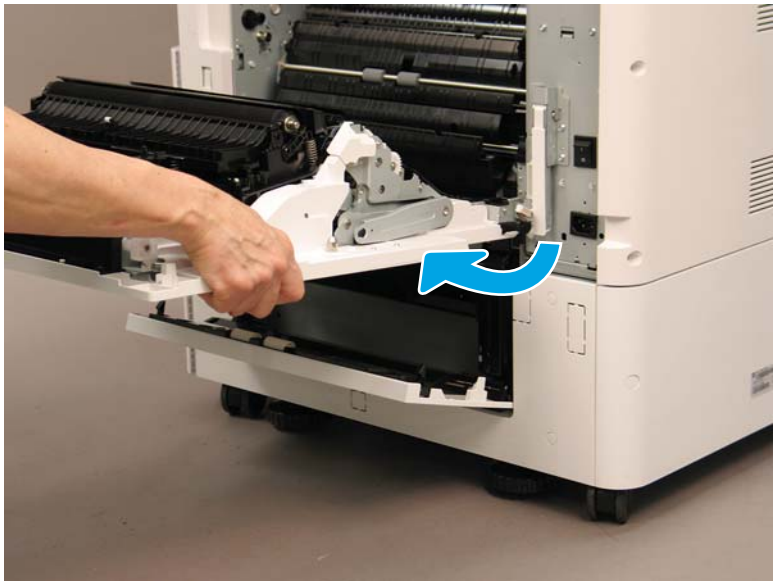
Figure 3-622 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-623 Remove the right door

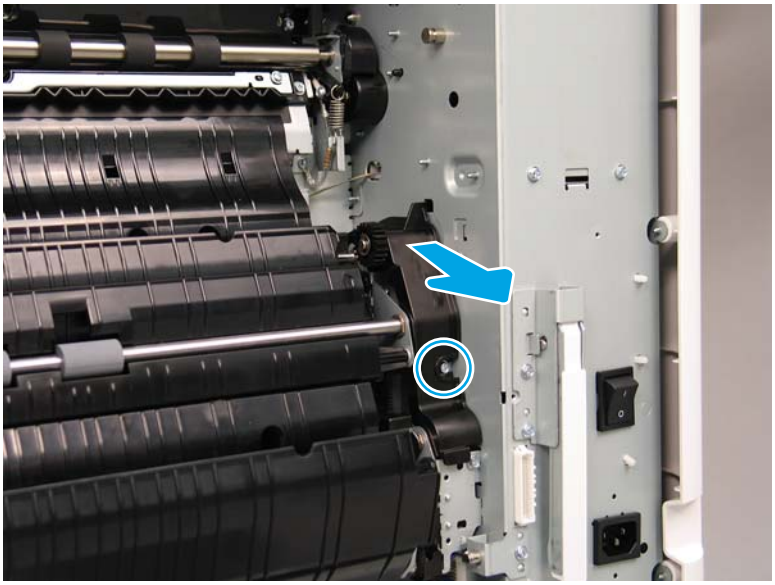


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

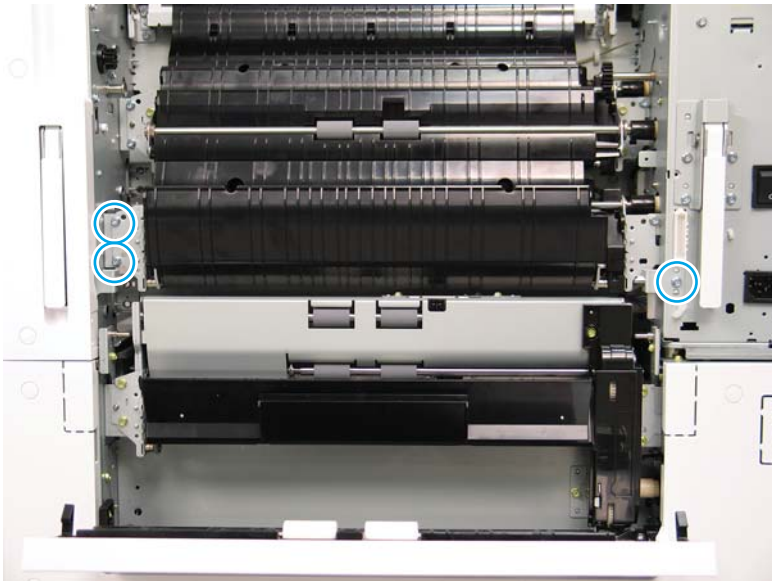
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-624 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

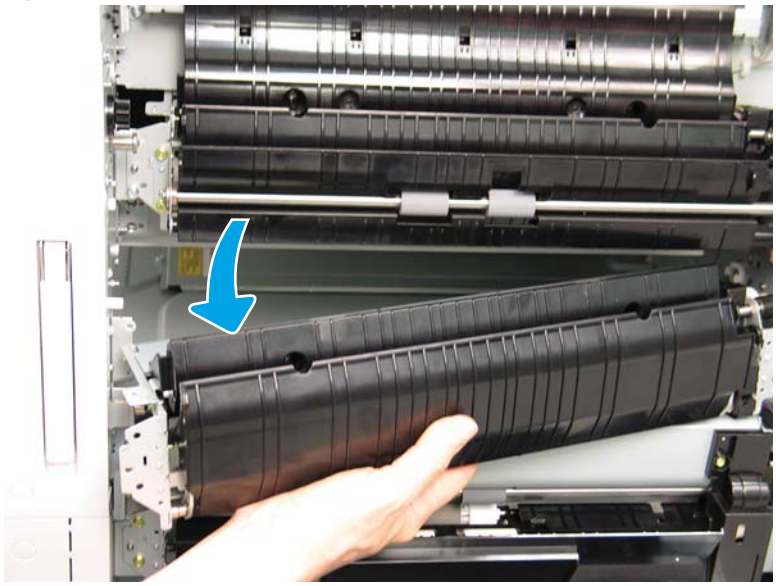
Figure 3-625 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

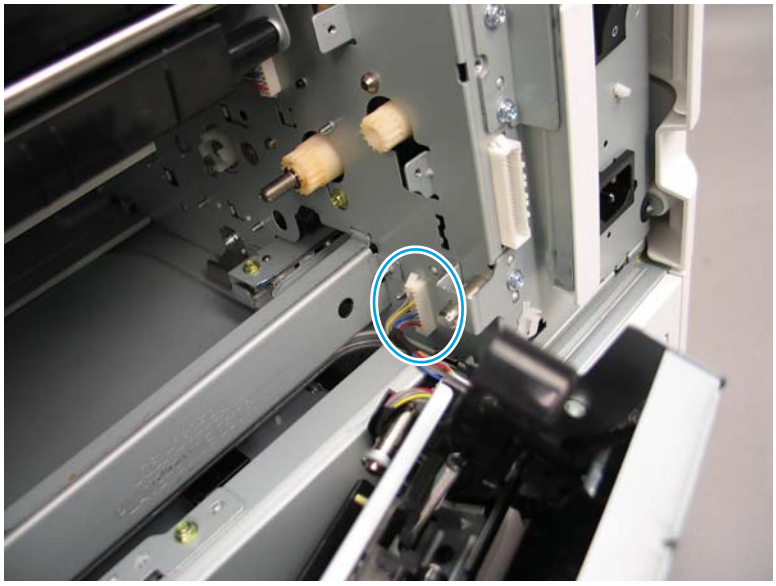
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-626 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-627 Disconnect one connector

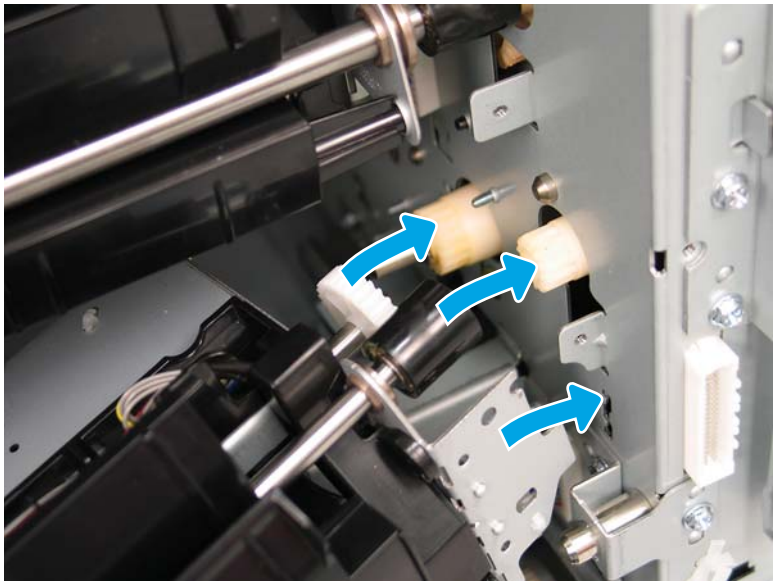


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-628 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup lifting and empty sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001381	Photo Interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

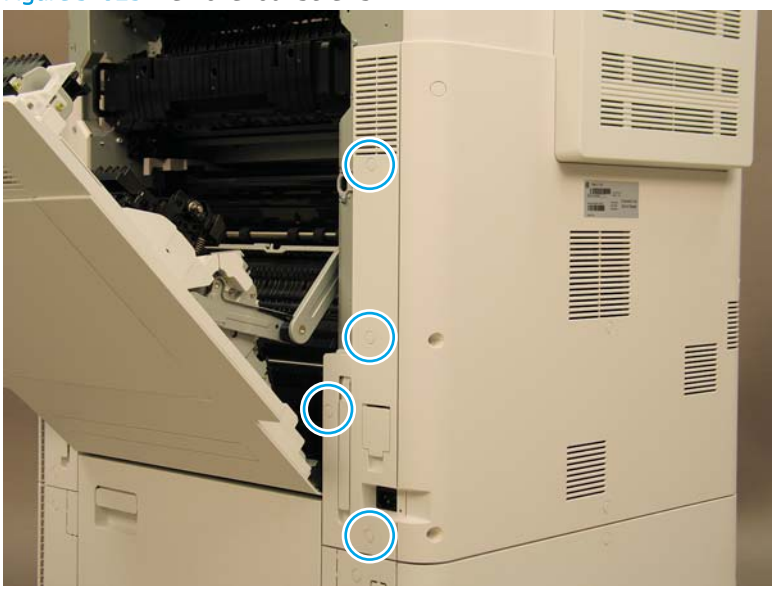
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

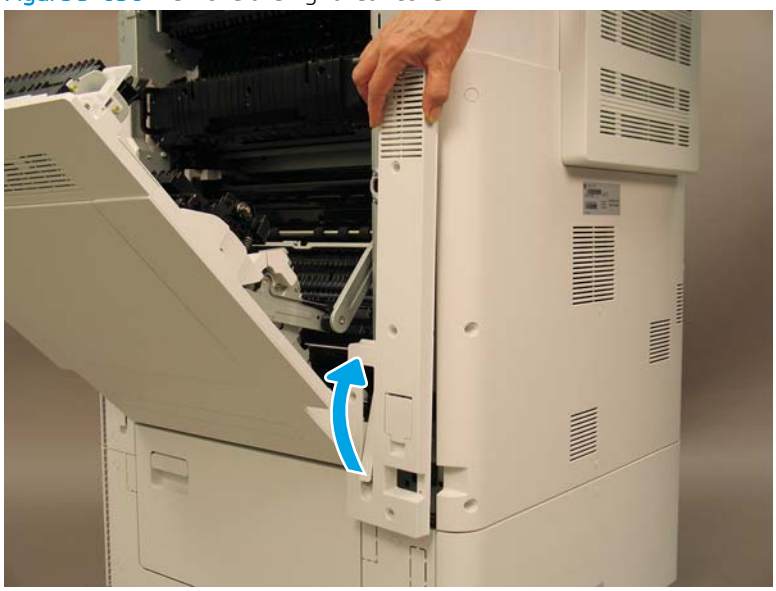
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-629 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

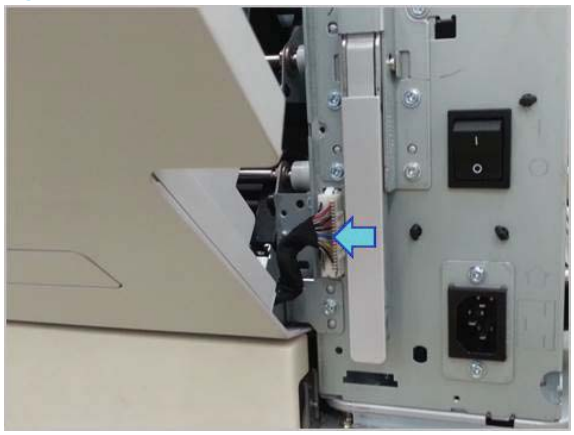
Figure 3-630 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

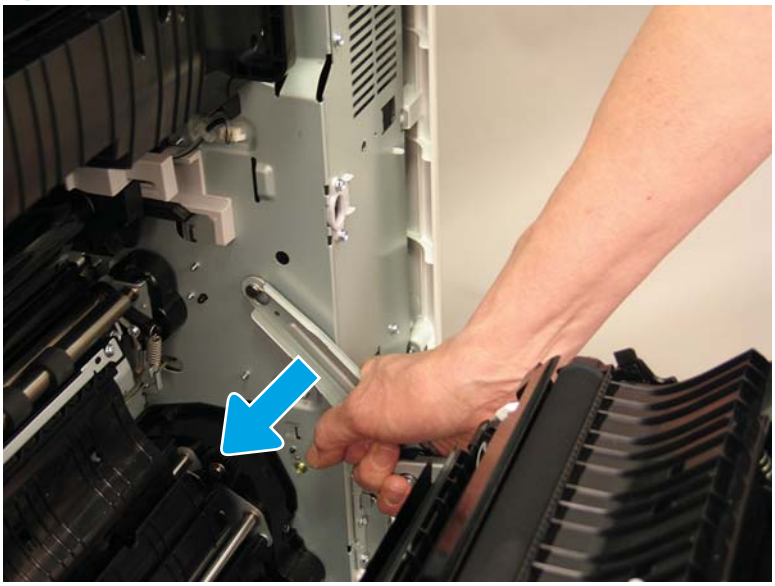
Figure 3-631 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

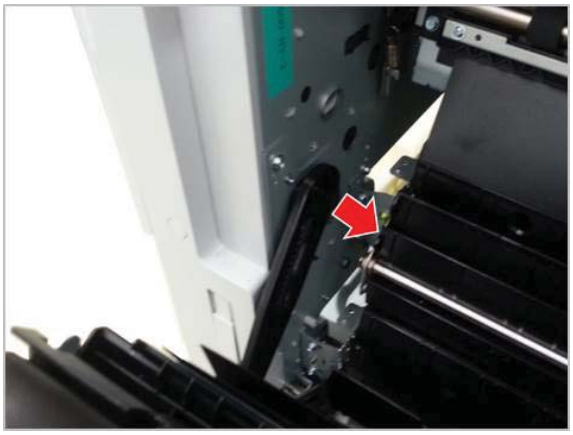
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-632 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

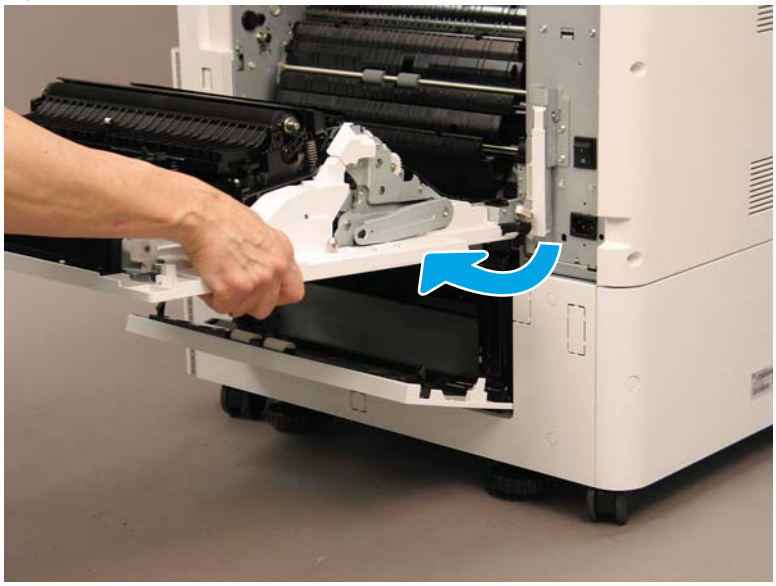
Figure 3-633 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

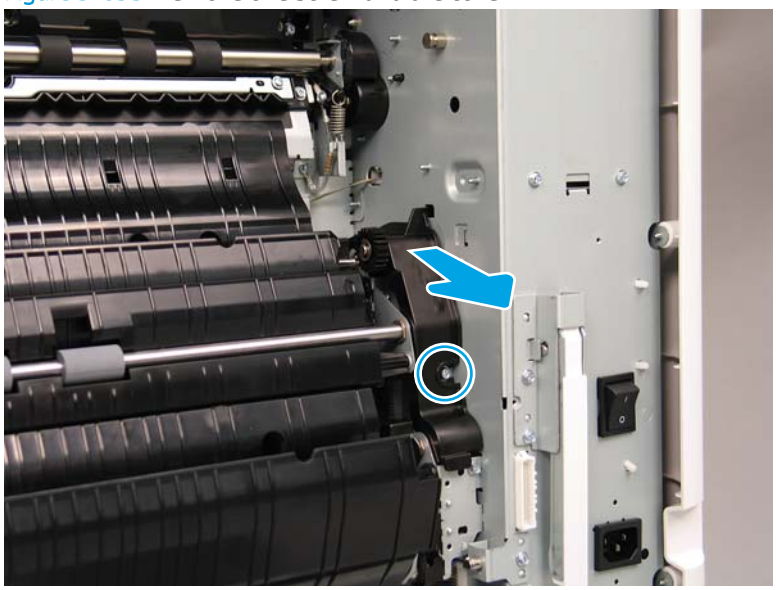
Figure 3-634 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

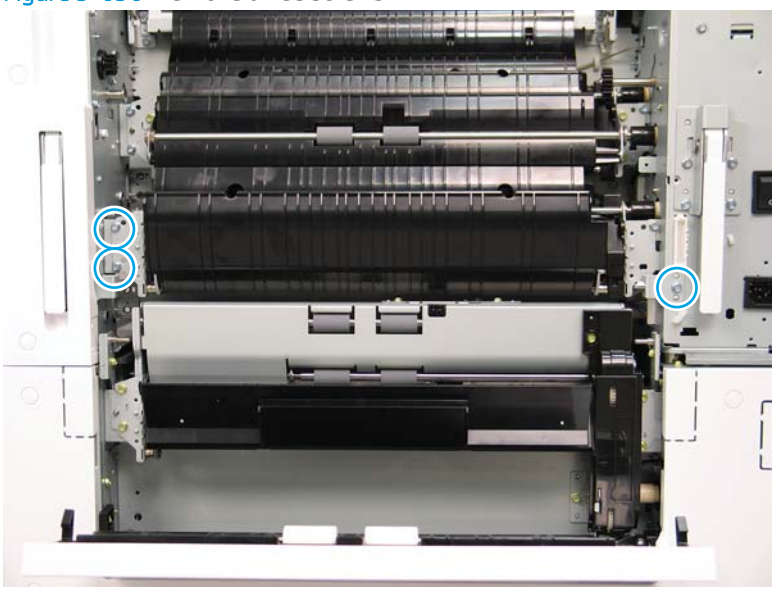
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-635 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

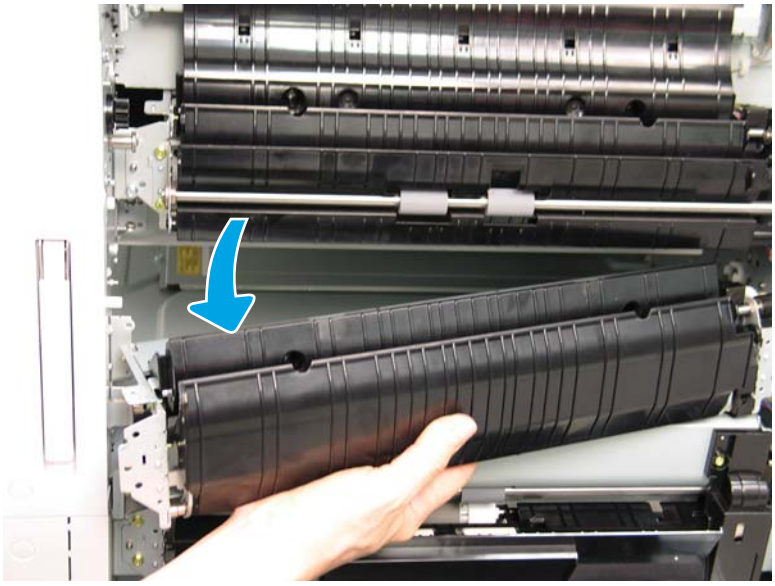
Figure 3-636 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

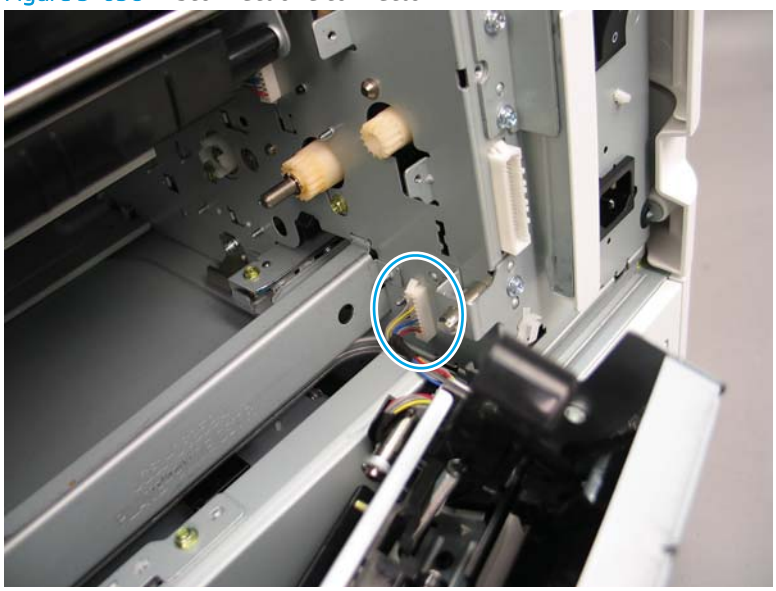
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-637 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-638 Disconnect one connector

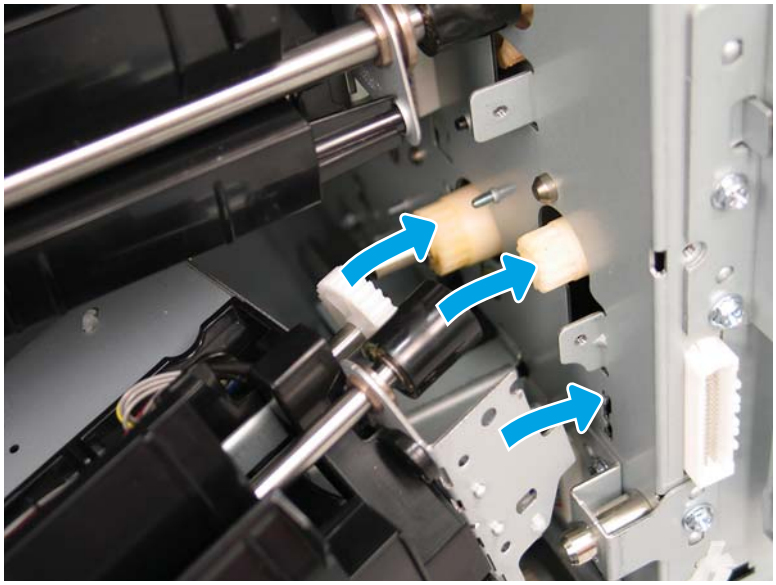


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-639 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

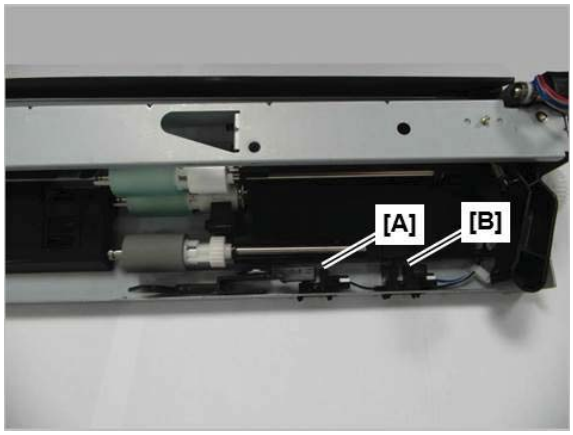
Step 4: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

- Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

a. [A]: Empty sensor.

b. [B]: Pickup lifting sensor.

Figure 3-640 Remove the sensor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Prefeed sensor 2 (pickup unit 2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 2 for pickup unit 2.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Prefeed sensor 2 part number	
SAM-0604-001381	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

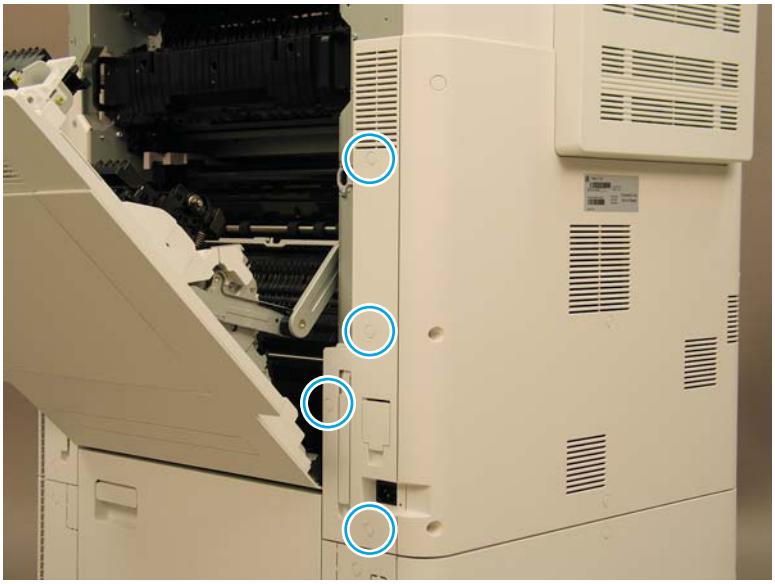
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

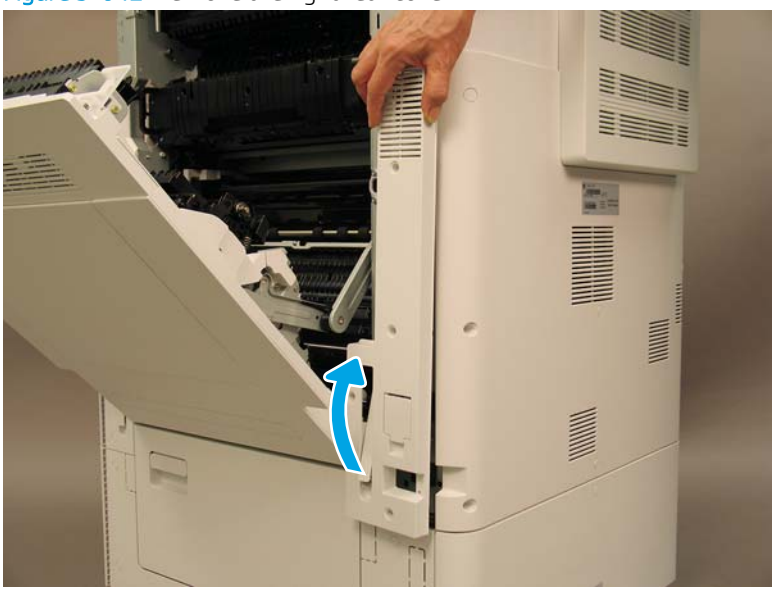
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-641 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

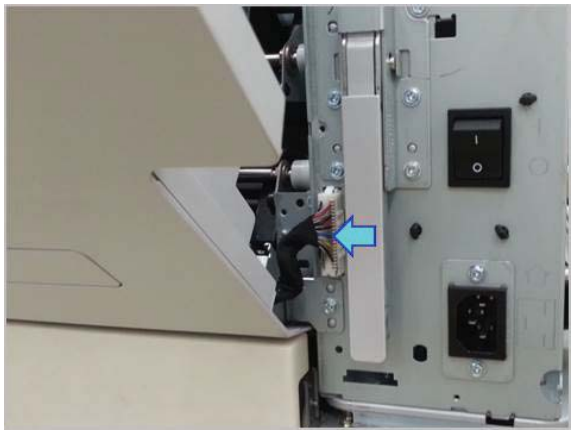
Figure 3-642 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

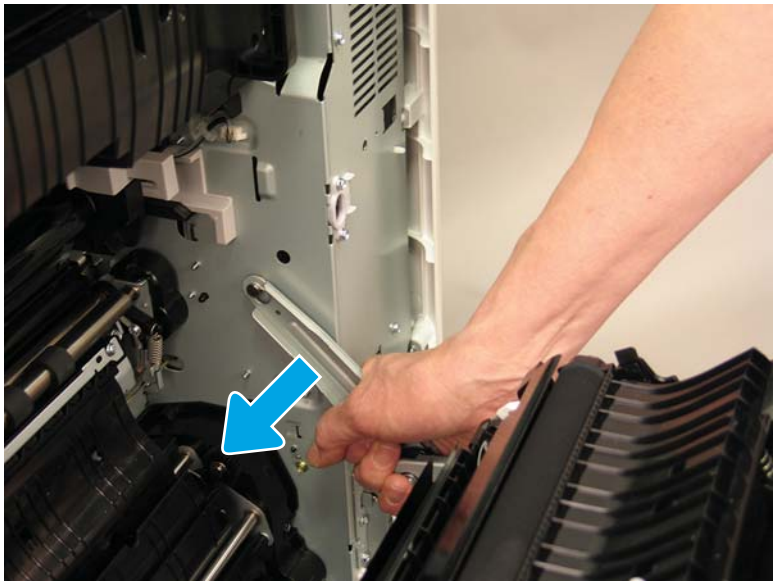
Figure 3-643 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

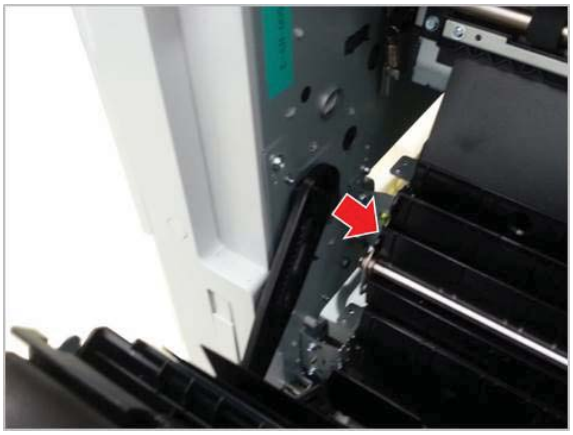
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-644 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

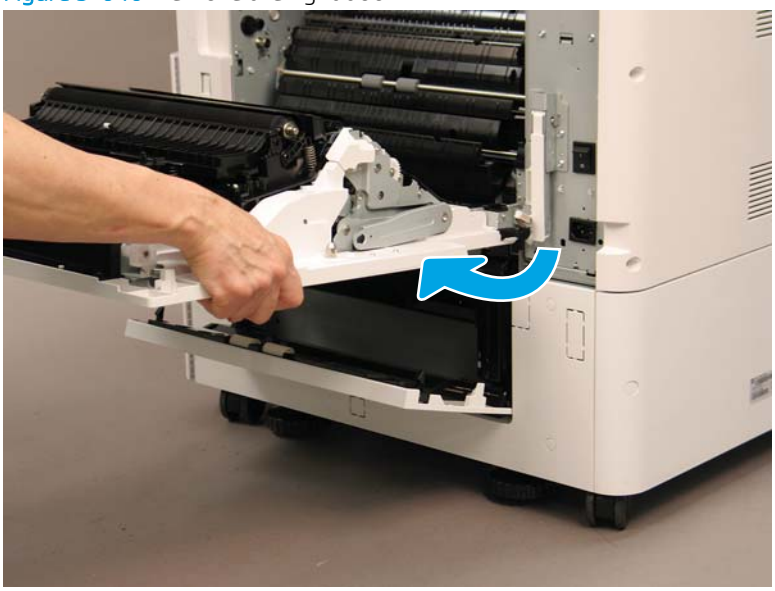
Figure 3-645 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-646 Remove the right door

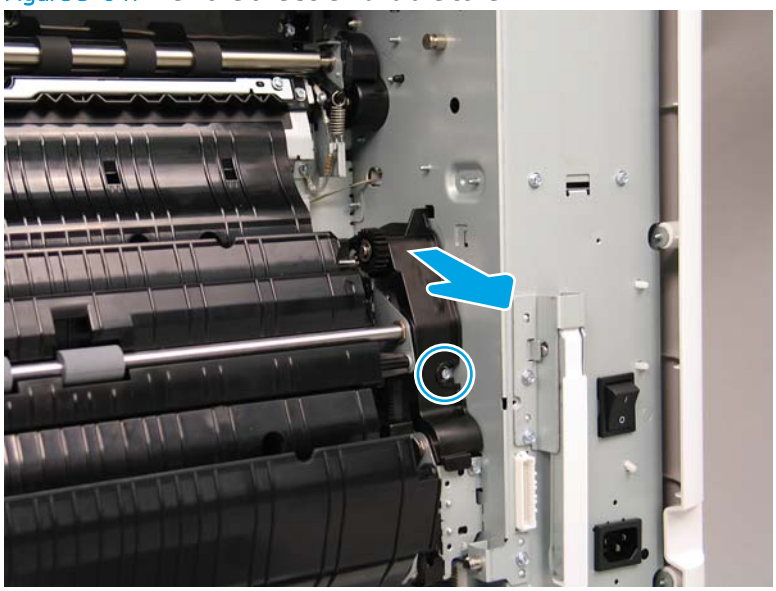


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

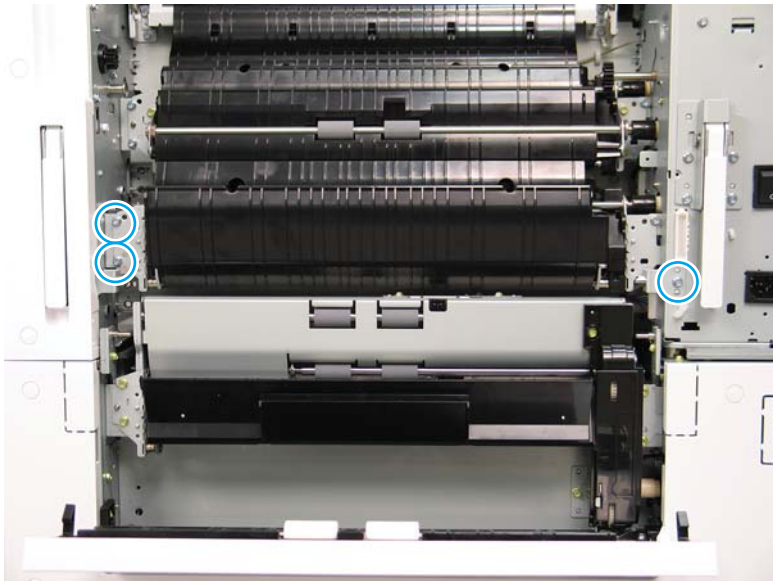
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-647 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

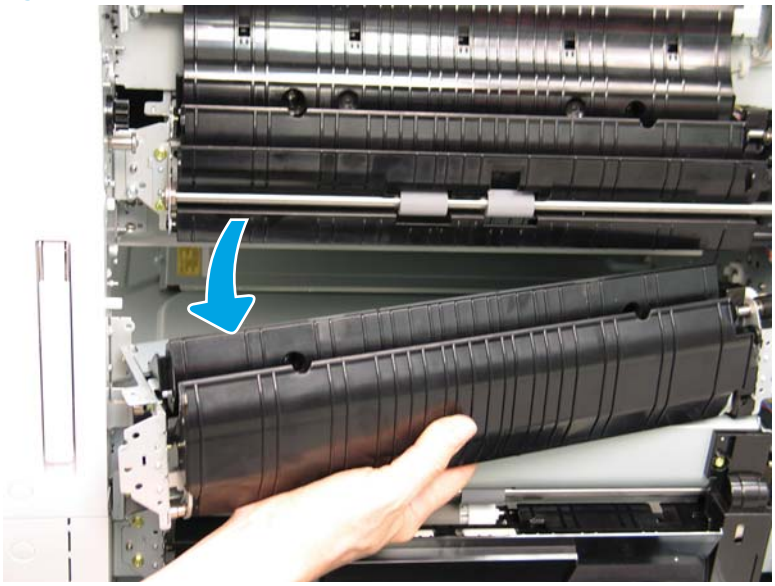
Figure 3-648 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

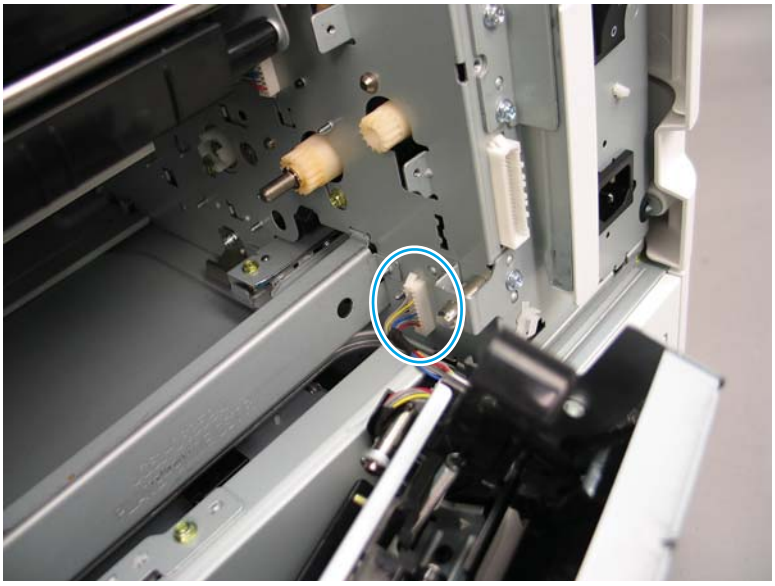
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-649 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-650 Disconnect one connector

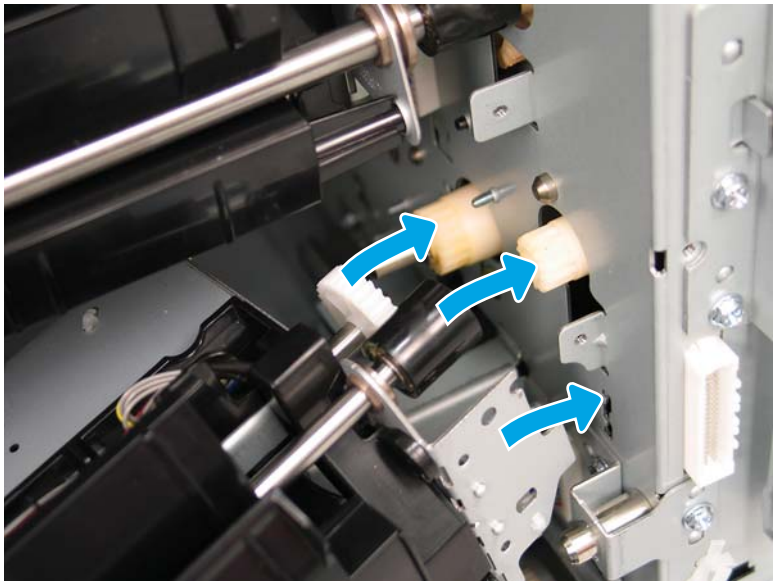


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-651 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove the prefeed sensor 2

- Open the guide-pickup, and then remove the prefeed sensor 2.

Figure 3-652 Remove prefeed sensor 2



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup unit 1

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup unit 1 part number	
SAM-JC93-01364A	Main Pick Up 1st

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

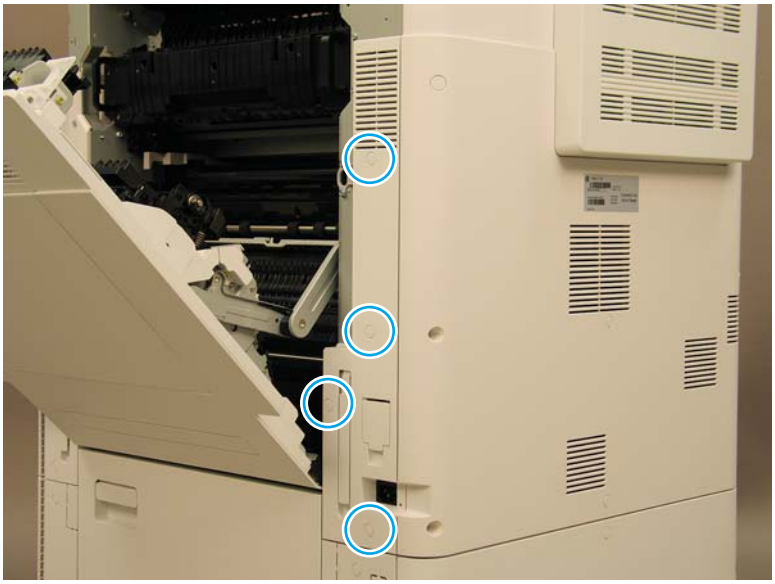
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

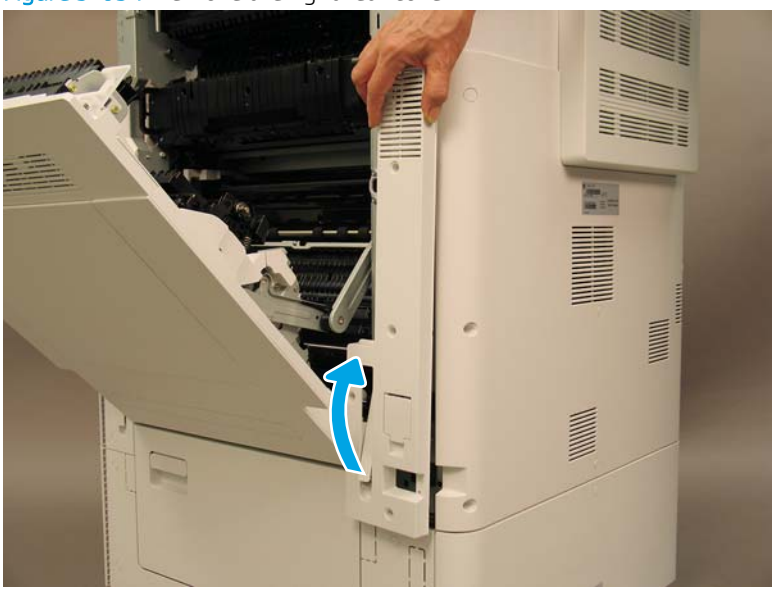
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-653 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

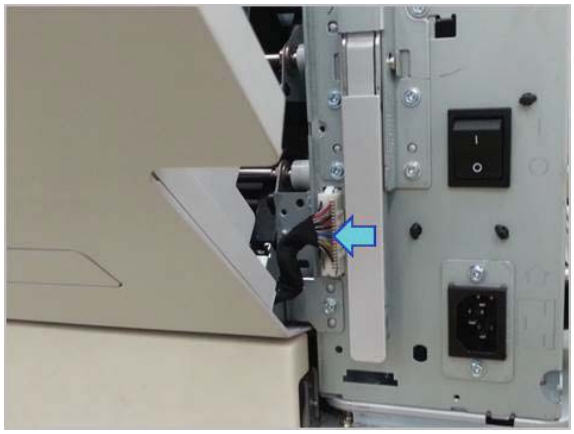
Figure 3-654 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

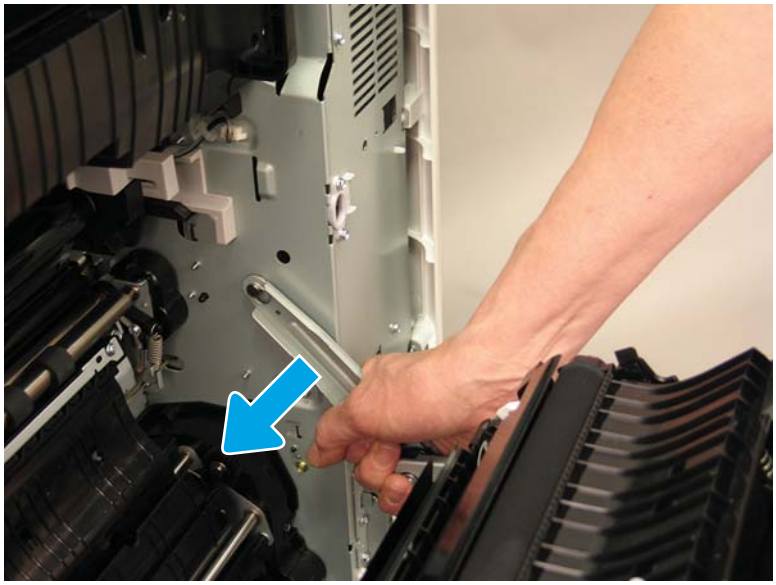
Figure 3-655 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

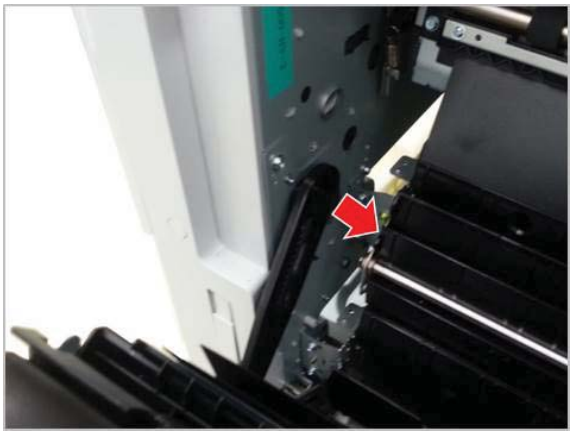
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-656 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

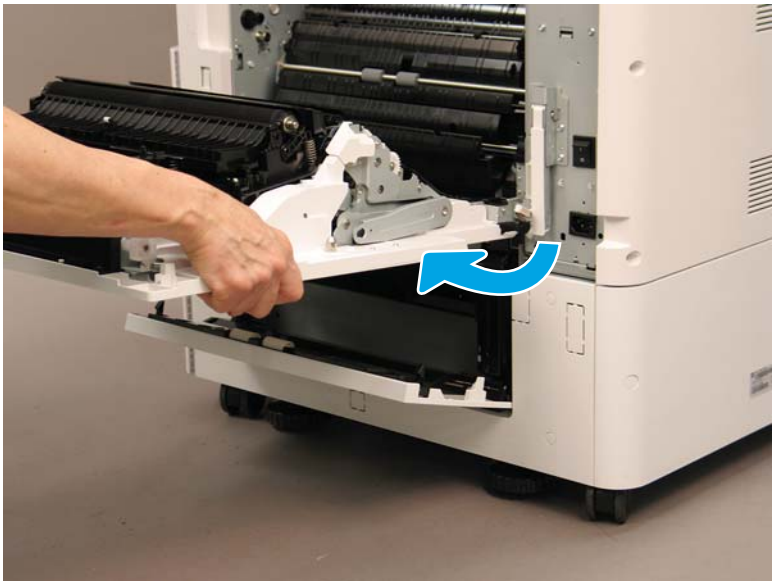
Figure 3-657 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-658 Remove the right door

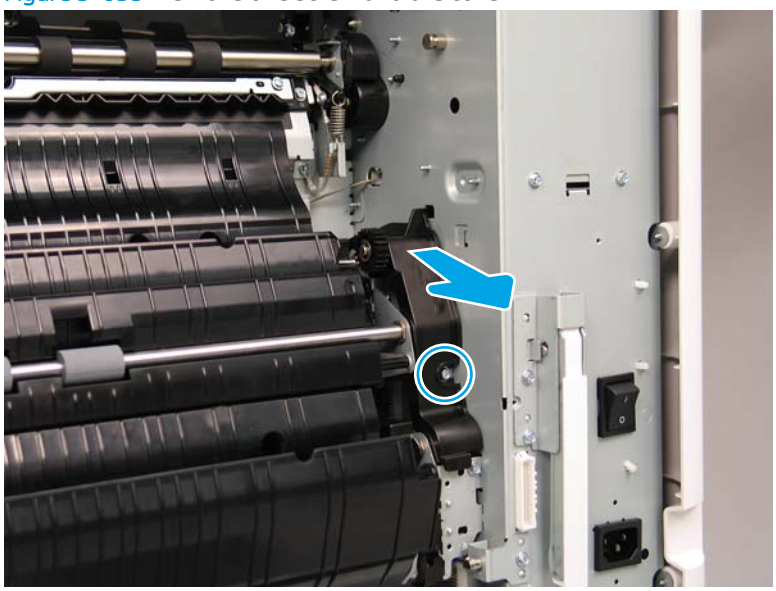


Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

1. Remove the paper trays.

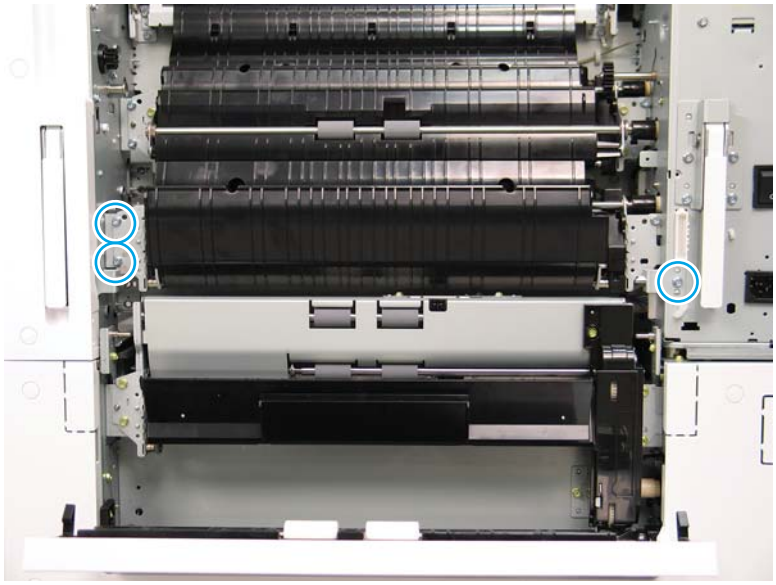
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-659 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

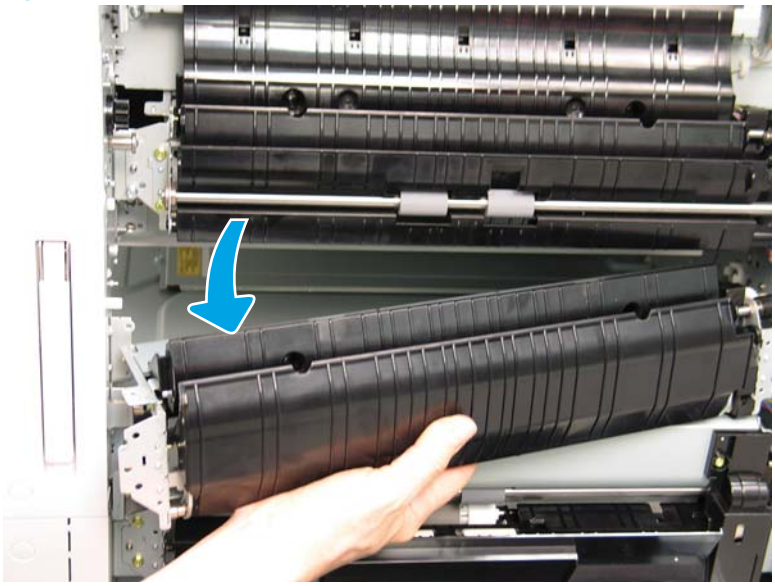
Figure 3-660 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

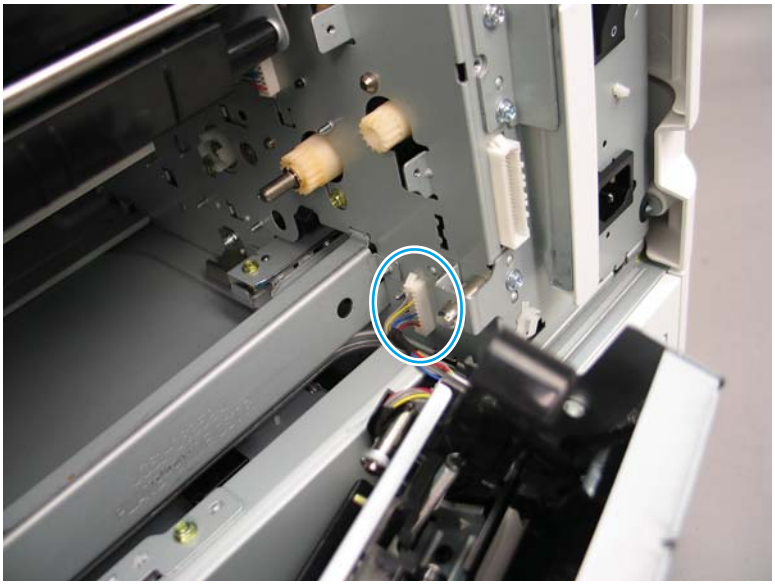
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-661 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-662 Disconnect one connector

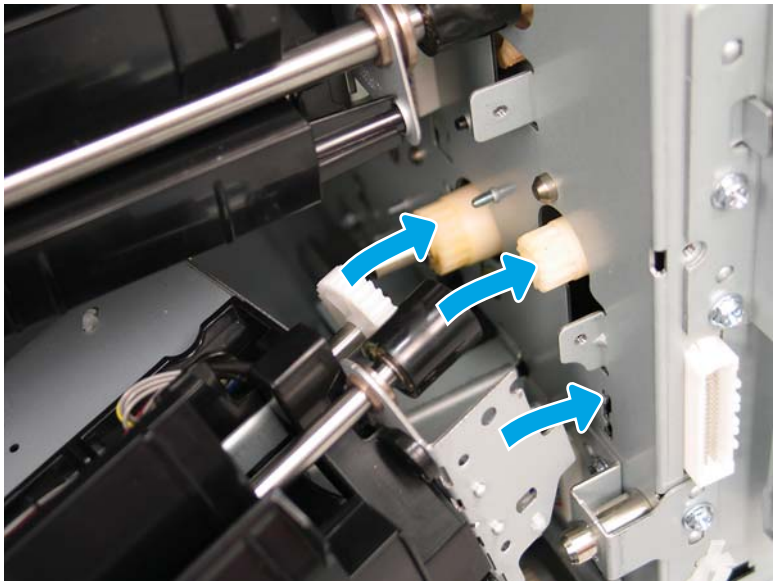


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

- When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-663 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

1. Remove three screws.

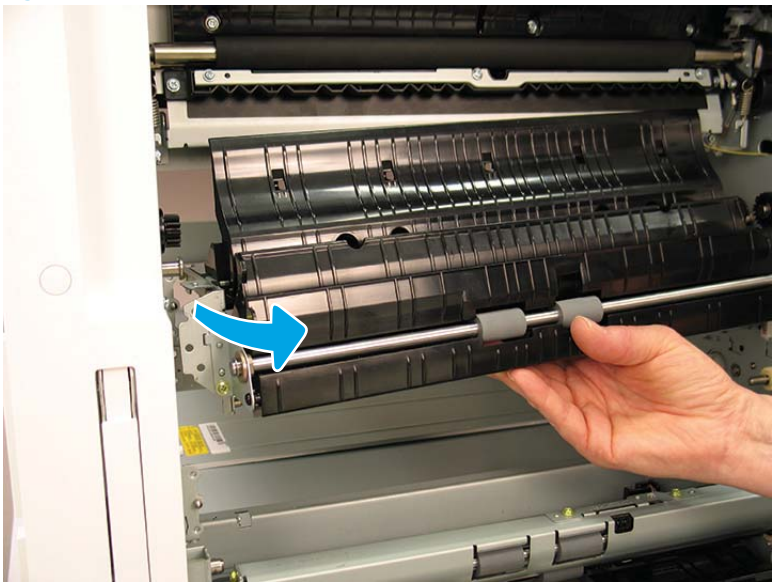
Figure 3-664 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

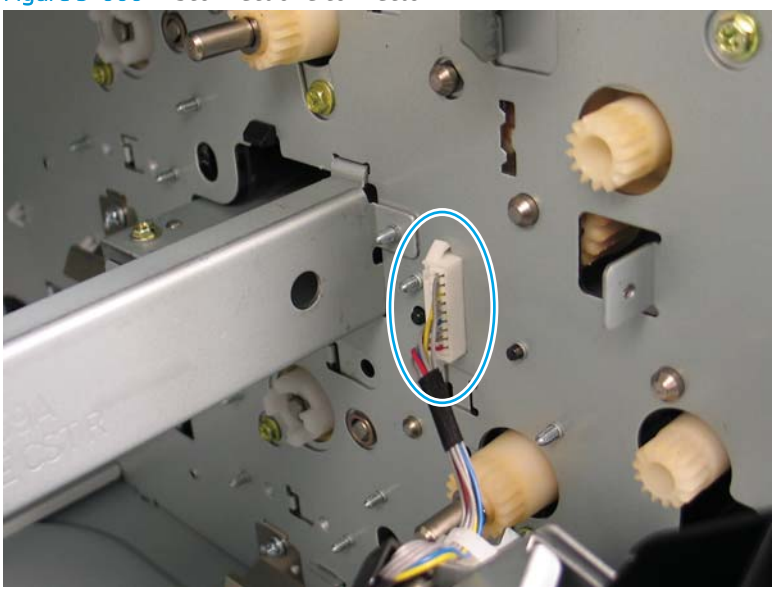
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-665 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-666 Disconnect one connector

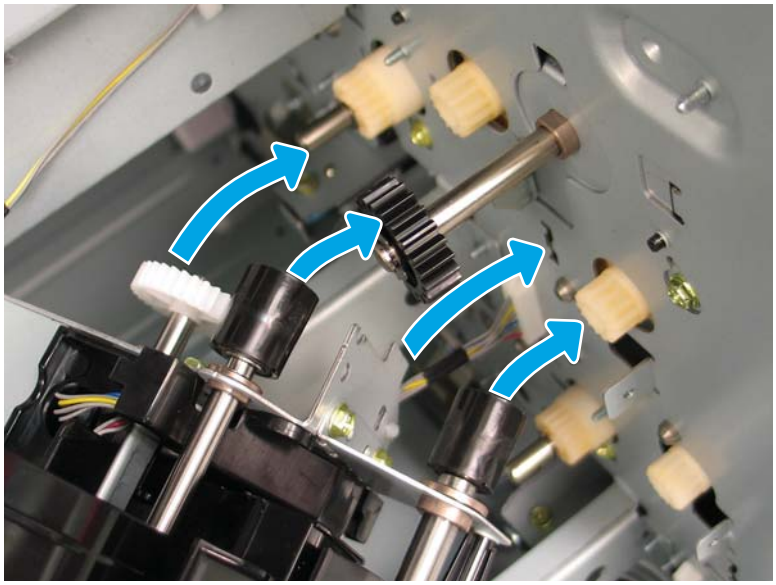


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

- When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-667 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Pickup lifting and empty sensor (pickup unit 1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup lifting and empty sensor for pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Pickup lifting and empty sensor part number	
SAM-0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

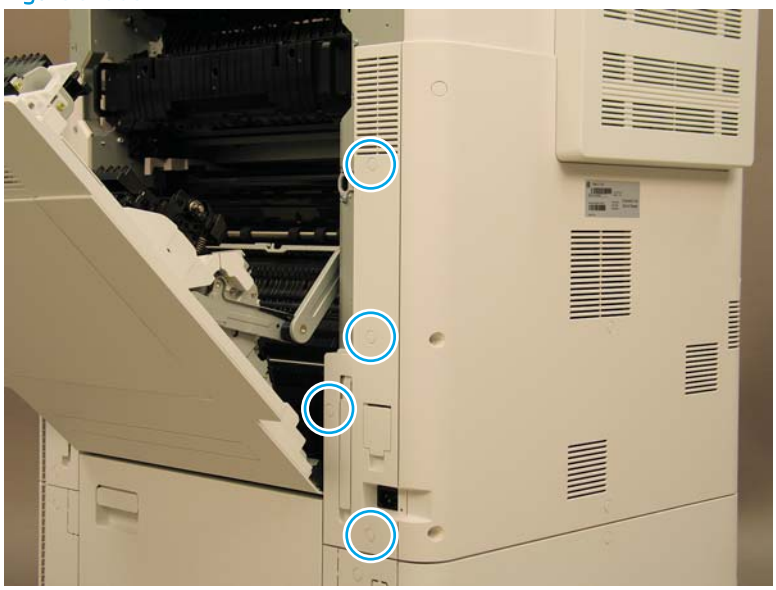
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

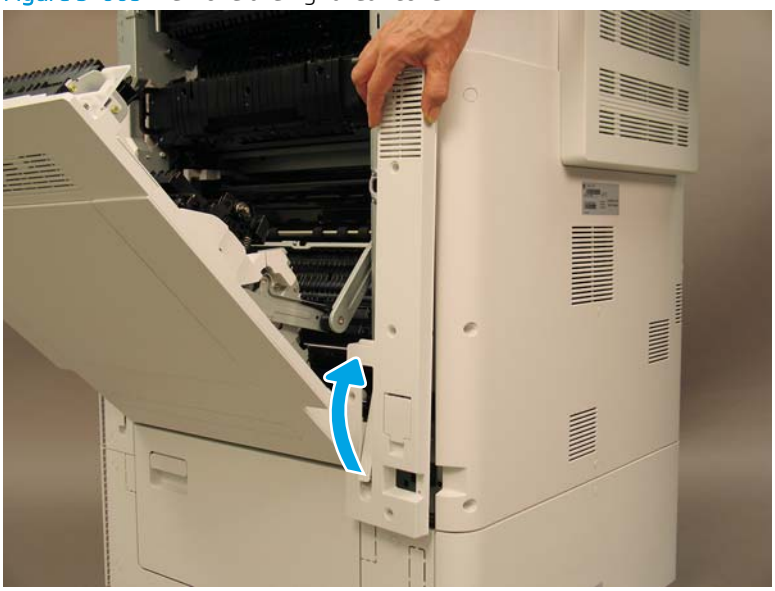
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-668 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

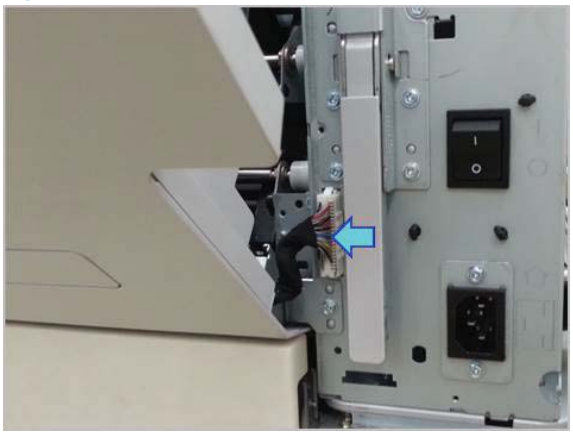
Figure 3-669 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

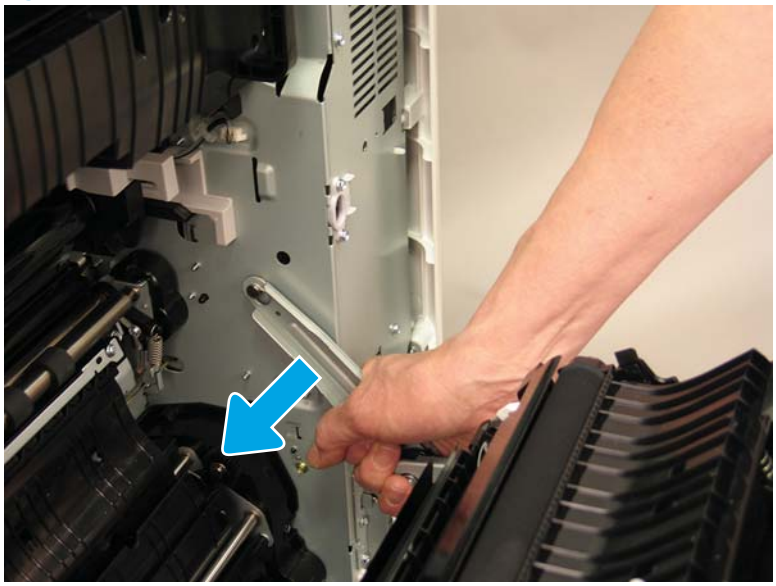
Figure 3-670 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

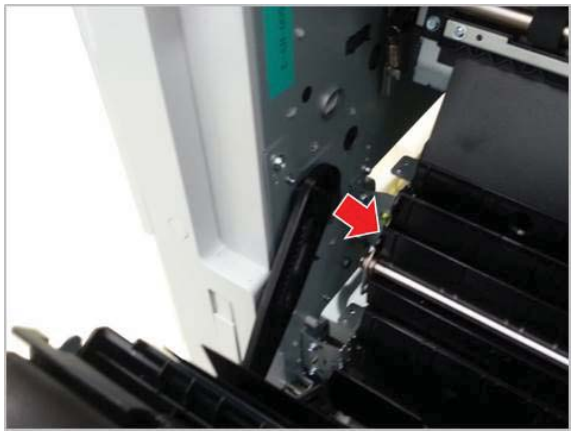
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-671 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

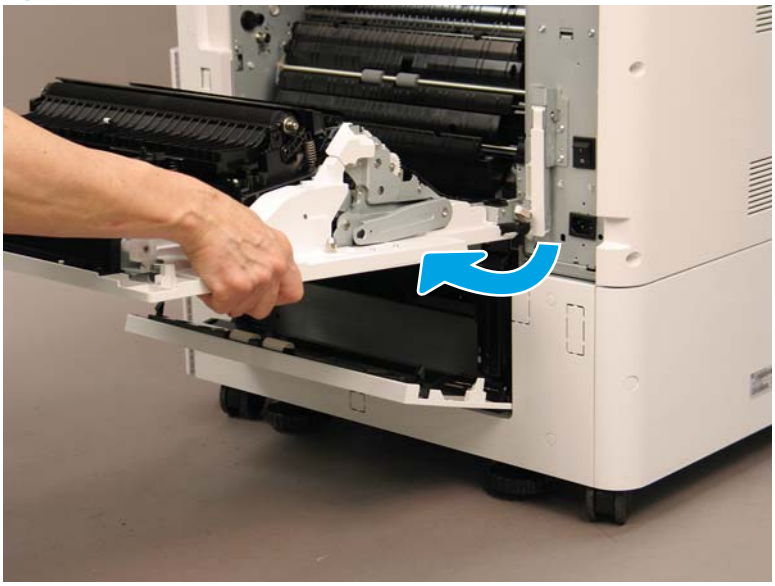
Figure 3-672 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

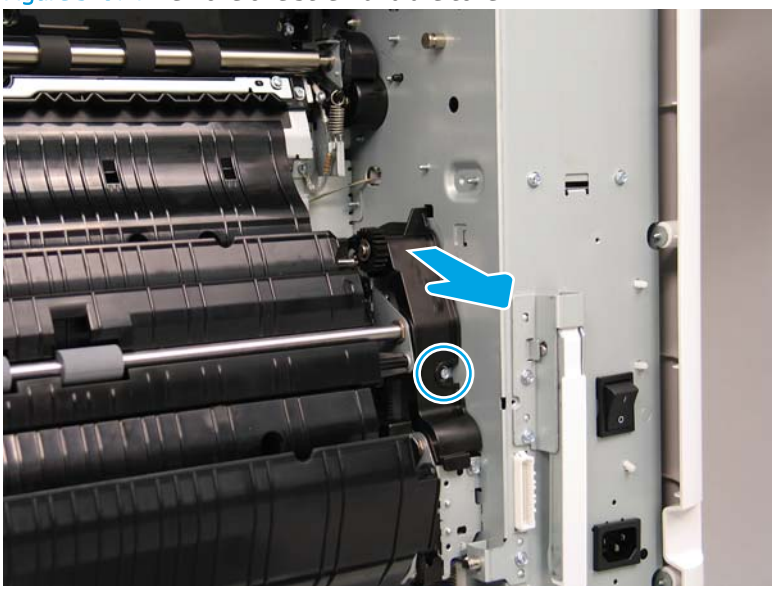
Figure 3-673 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

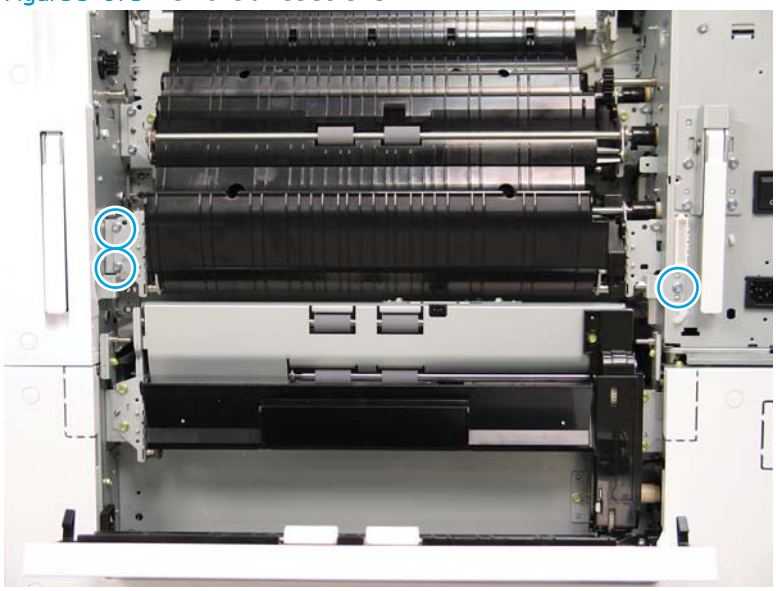
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-674 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

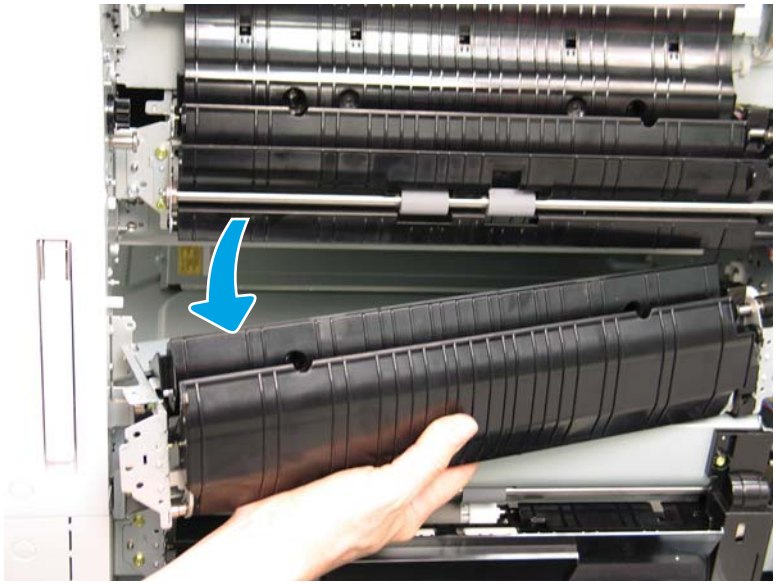
Figure 3-675 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

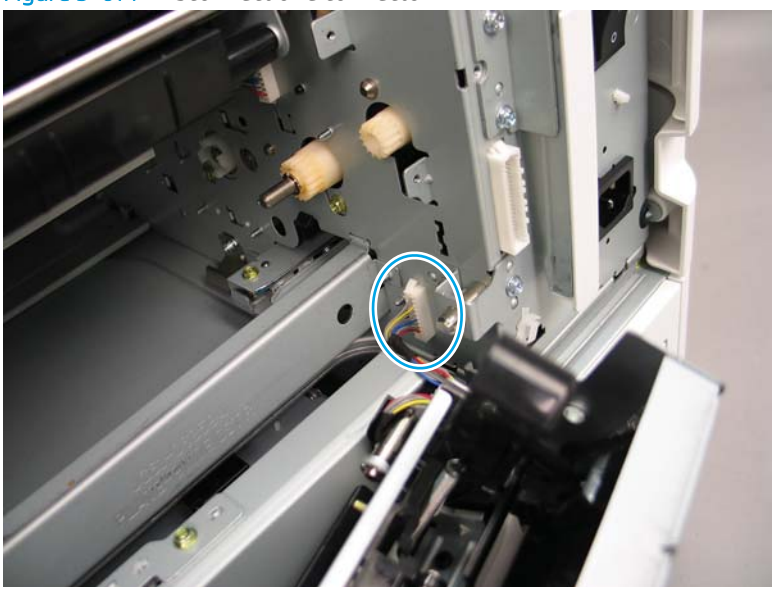
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-676 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-677 Disconnect one connector

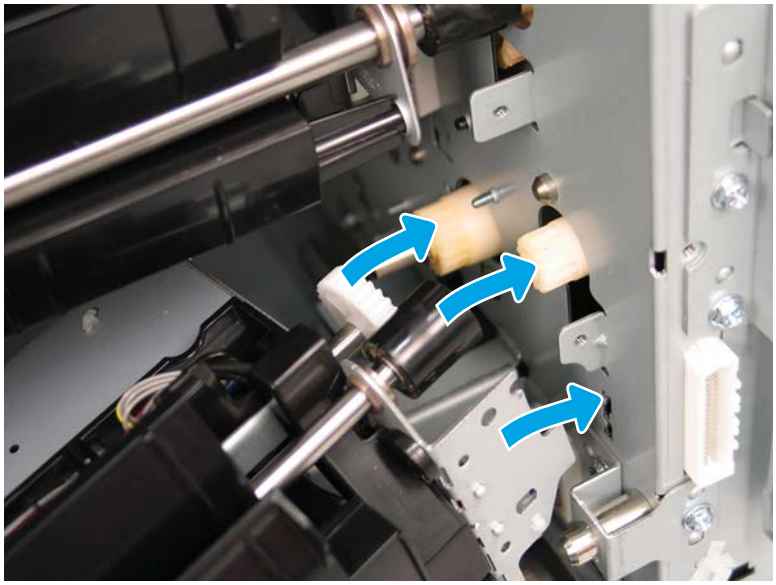


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-678 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

1. Remove three screws.

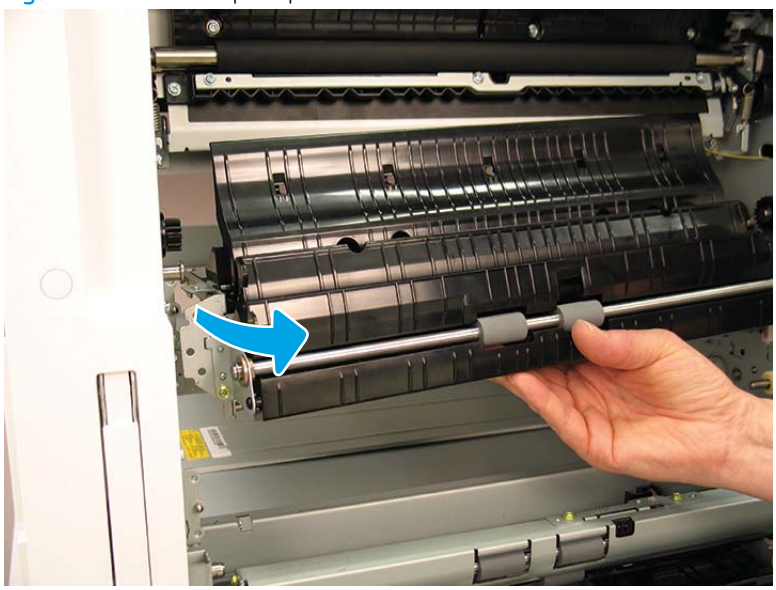
Figure 3-679 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

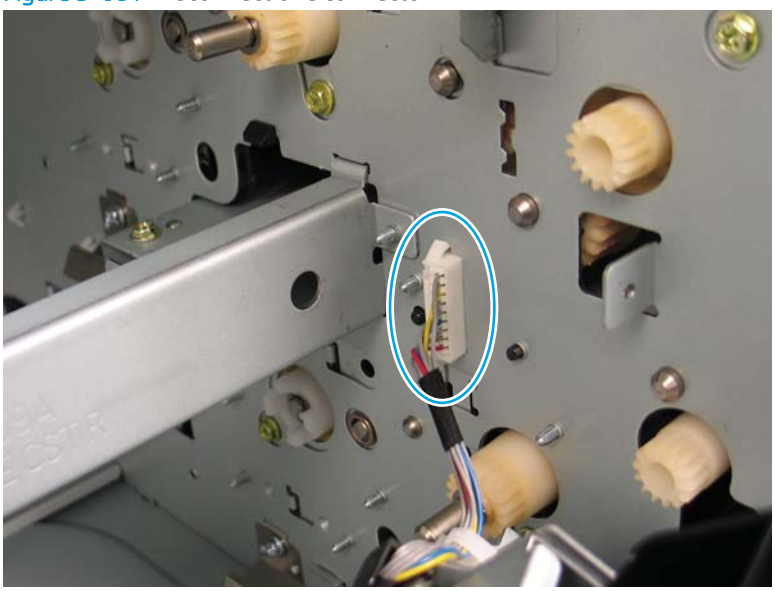
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-680 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-681 Disconnect one connector

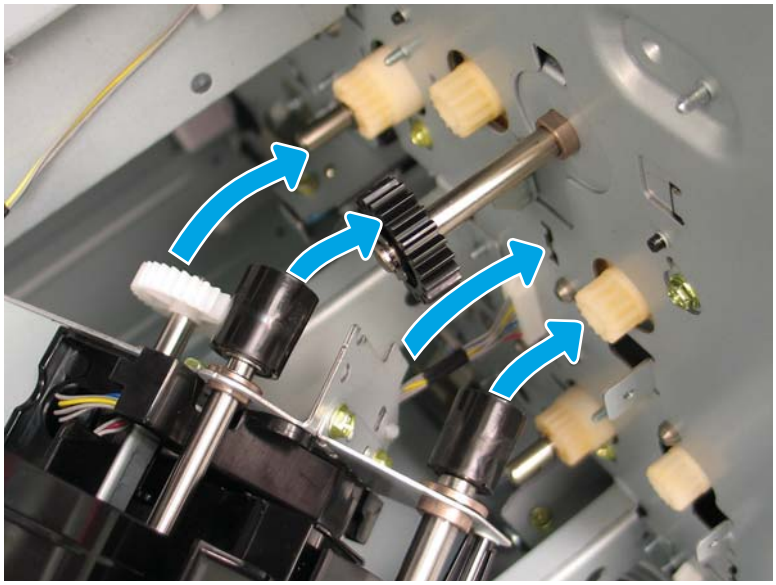


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

- When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-682 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

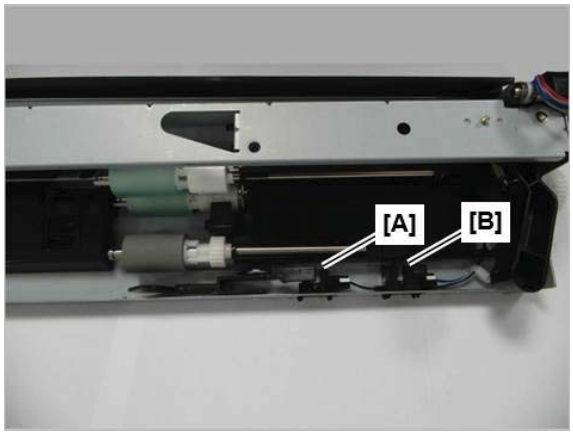
Step 5: Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor

- Disconnect the corresponding sensor connector, and then remove the sensor.

  a. [A]: Empty sensor.

b. [B]: Pickup lifting sensor.

Figure 3-683 Remove the pickup lifting and empty sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Prefeed sensor 1 (pickup unit 1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2
- Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1
- Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the prefeed sensor 1 for pickup unit 1.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Prefeed sensor 1 part number	
SAM-0604-001490	Photo interrupter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

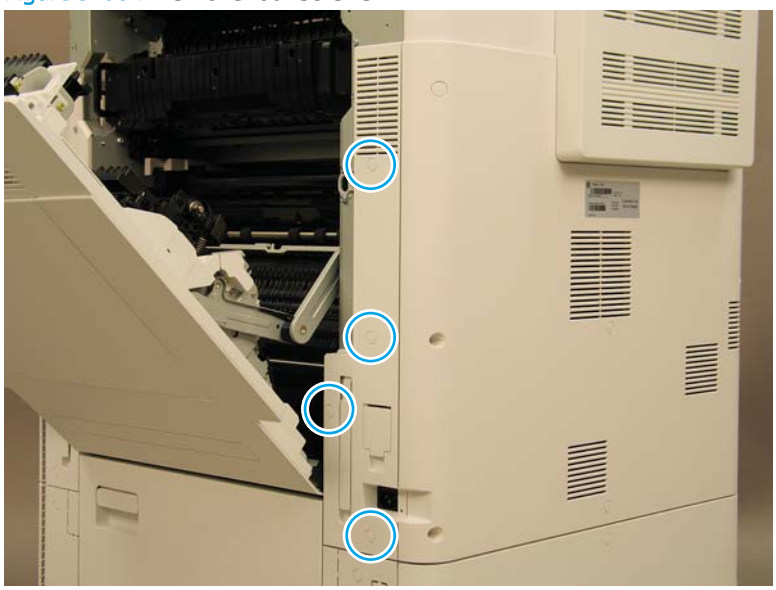
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

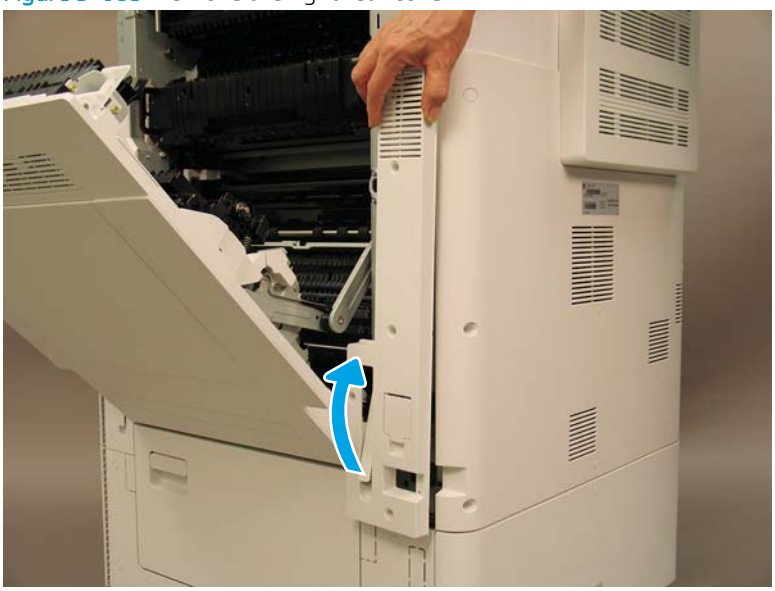
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-684 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

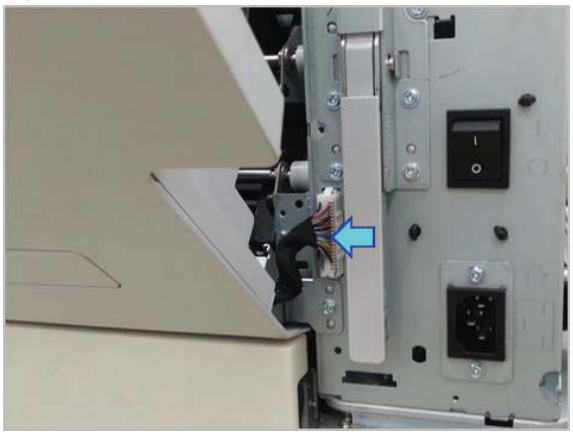
Figure 3-685 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

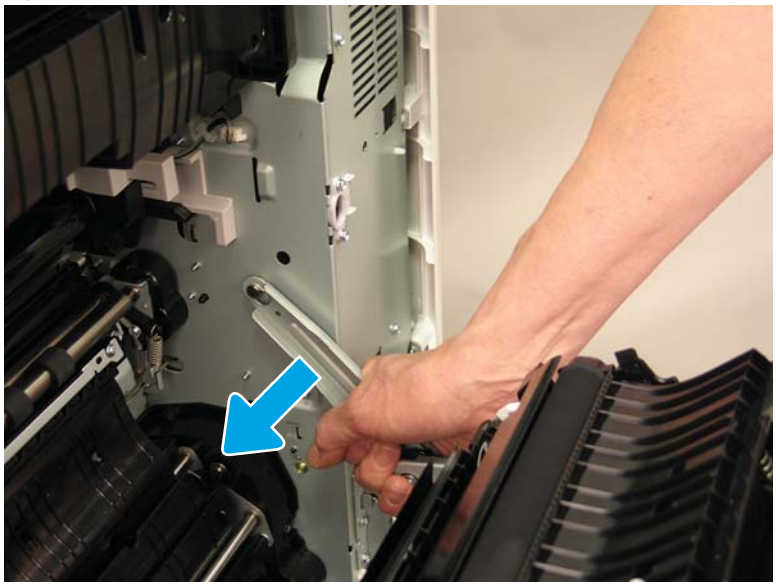
Figure 3-686 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

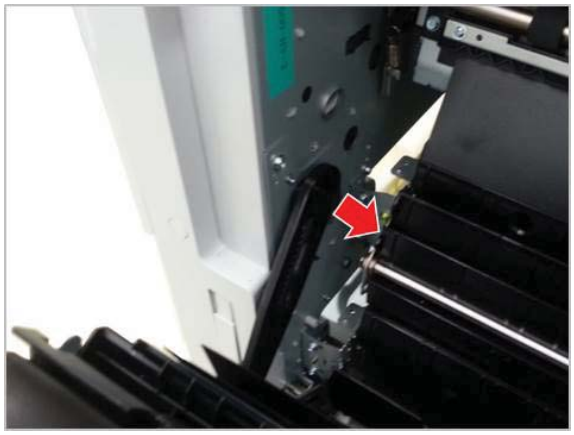
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-687 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

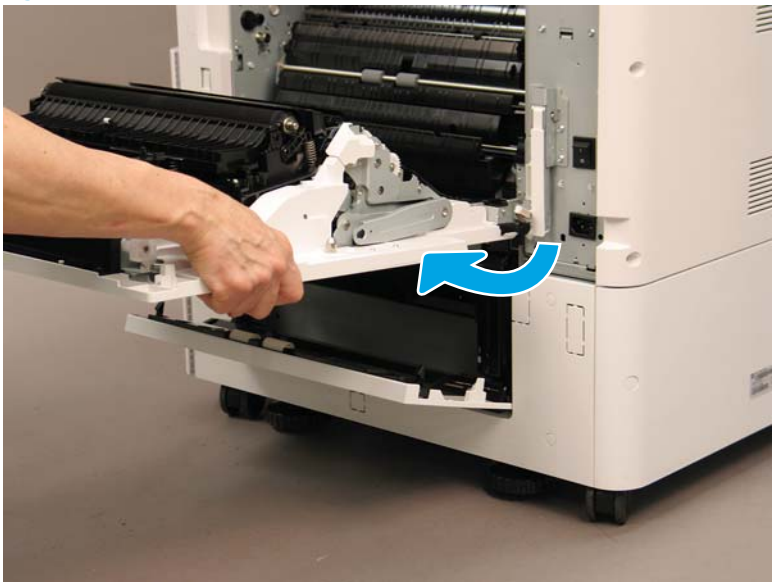
Figure 3-688 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

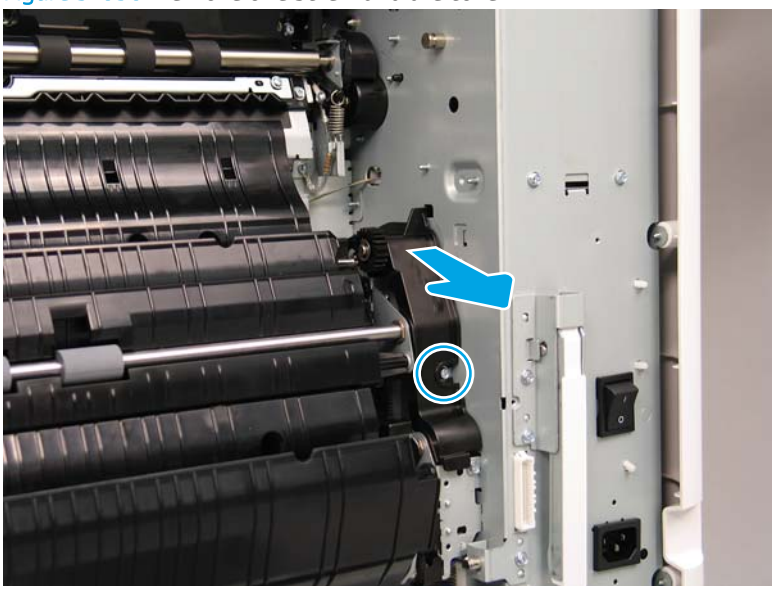
Figure 3-689 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove pickup unit 2

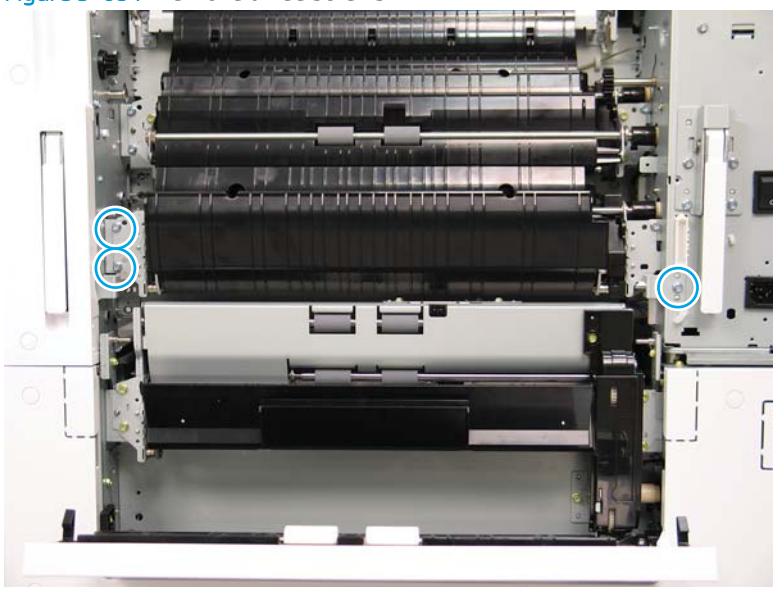
1. Remove the paper trays.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-690 Remove one screw and the cover



3. Remove three screws.

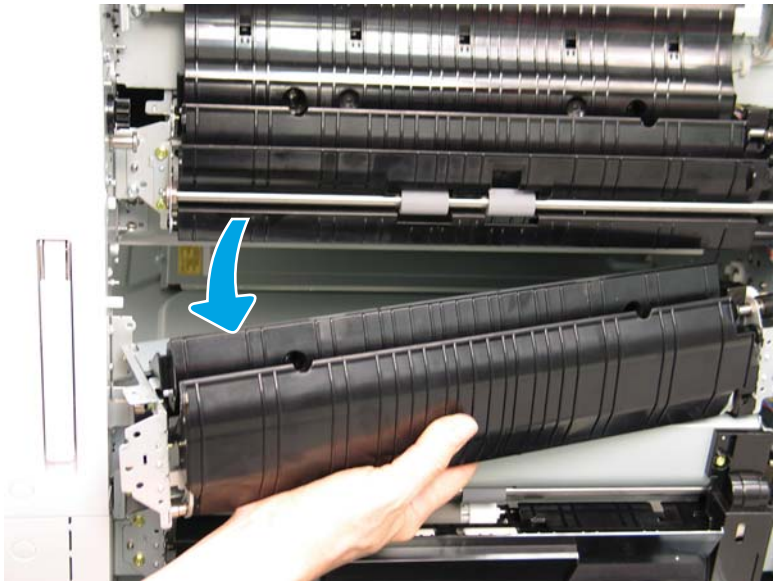
Figure 3-691 Remove three screws



4. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 2 away from the printer.

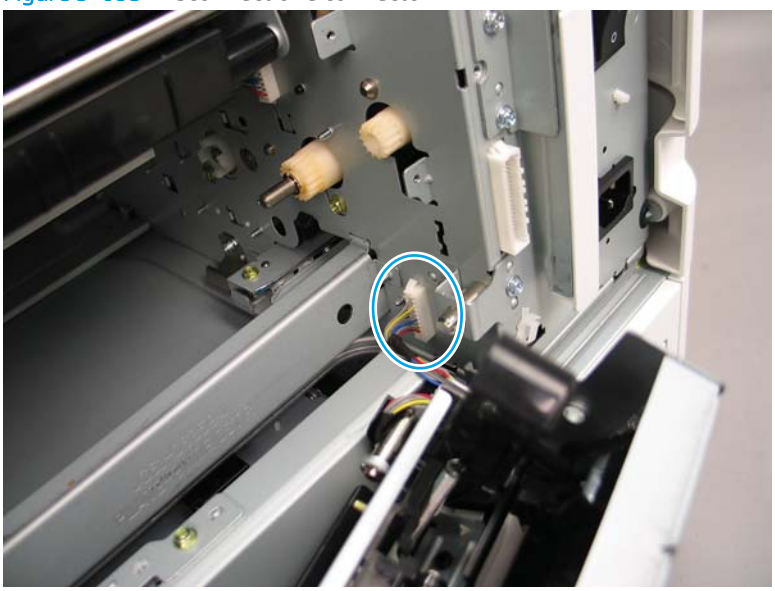
CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-692 Rotate pickup unit 2



5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-693 Disconnect one connector

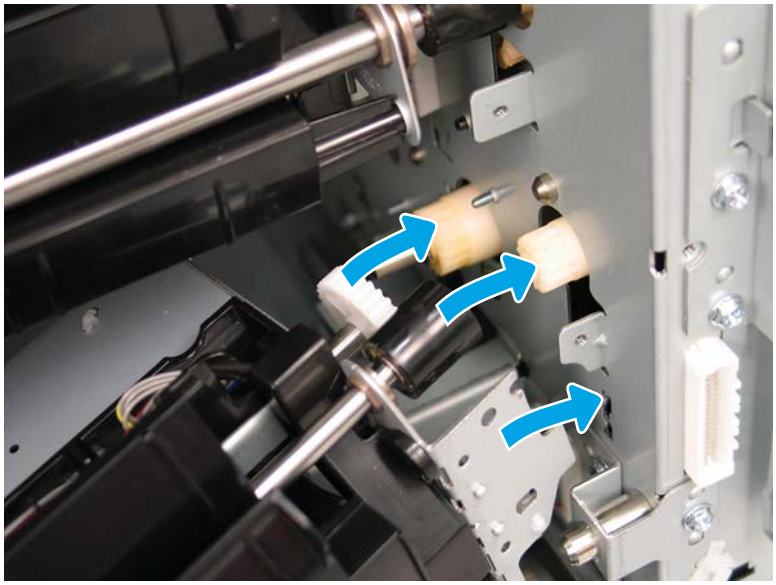


6. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 2

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 2, align the gear, coupler, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-694 Align gear, coupler, and bracket



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 4: Remove pickup unit 1

1. Remove three screws.

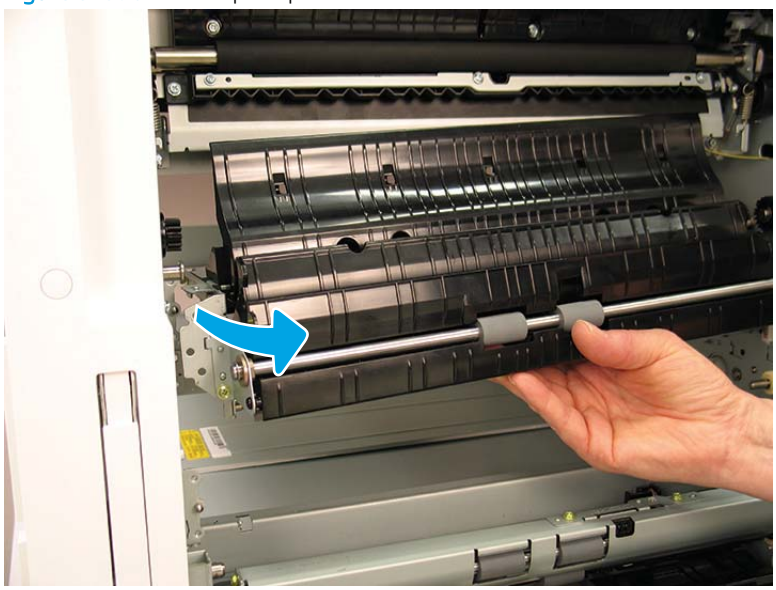
Figure 3-695 Remove three screws



2. Rotate the left side of pickup unit 1 away from the printer.

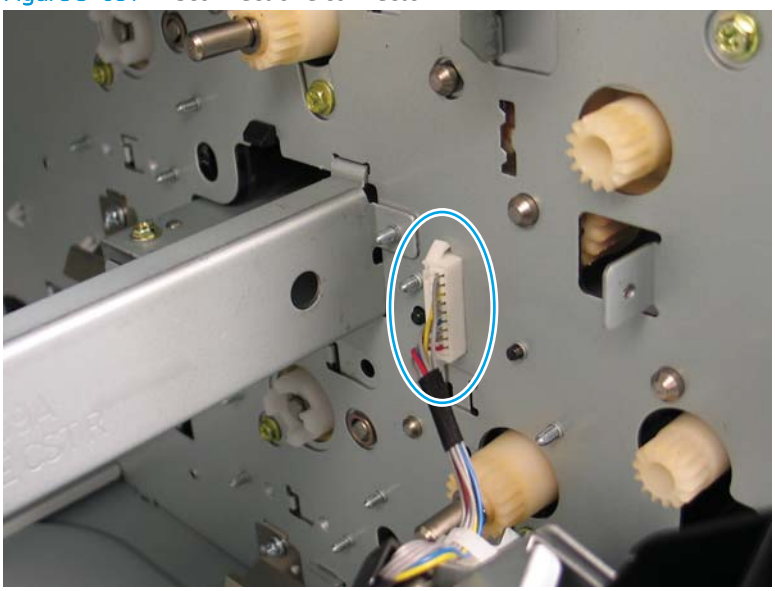
⚠ CAUTION: The pickup unit is still attached to the printer by a connector. Do not remove it completely

Figure 3-696 Rotate pickup unit 1



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 3-697 Disconnect one connector

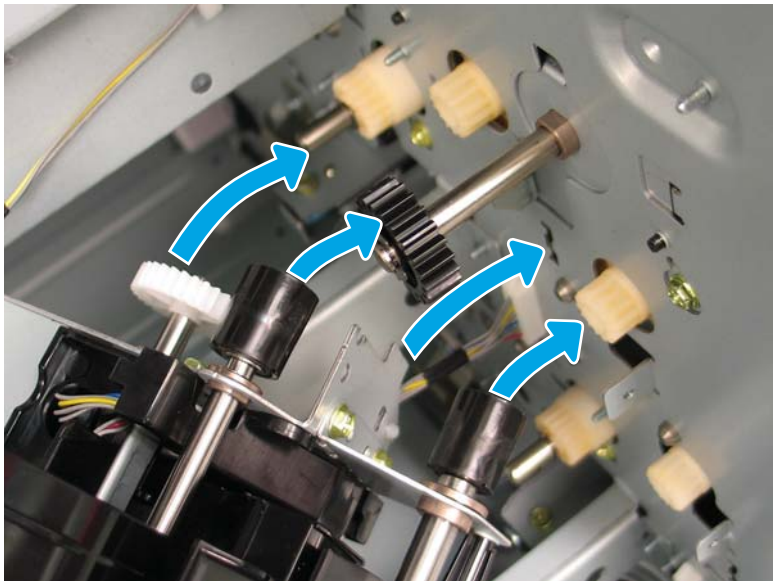


4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Pickup unit 1

▲ When reinstalling pickup unit 1, align the gear, couplers, and bracket on the right side.

Figure 3-698 Align gear, coupler, and bracket

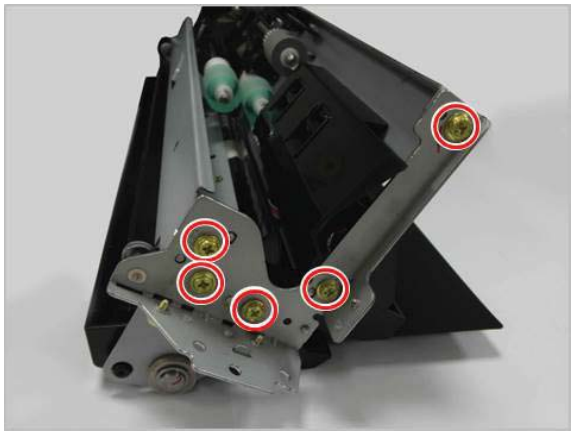


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the prefeed sensor 1

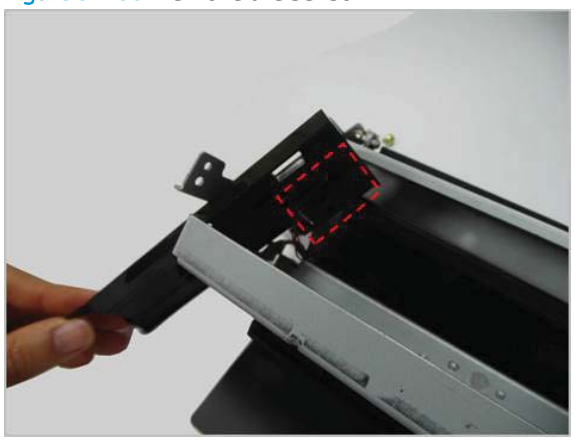
1. Remove five screws, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 3-699 Remove five screws and the bracket.



2. Remove the sensor from its holder.

Figure 3-700 Remove the sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 4: Remove the registration assembly
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration assembly part number	
SAM-JC93-01116A	Registration Assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

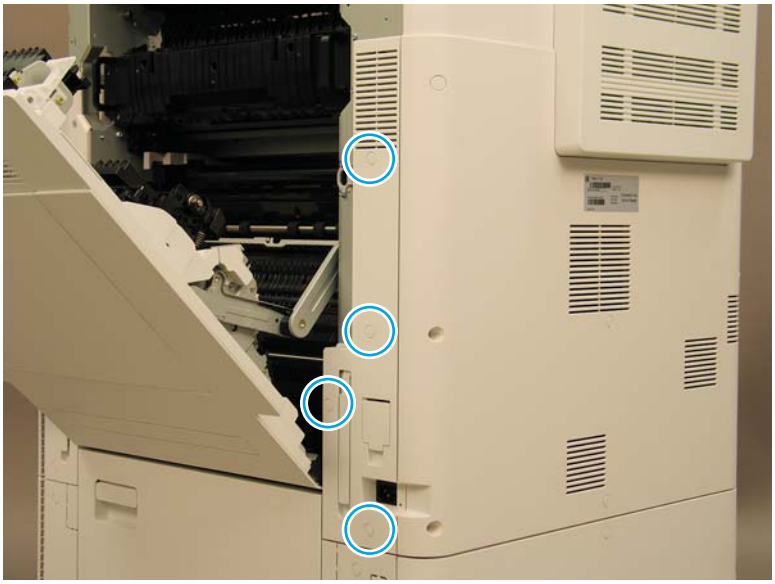
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

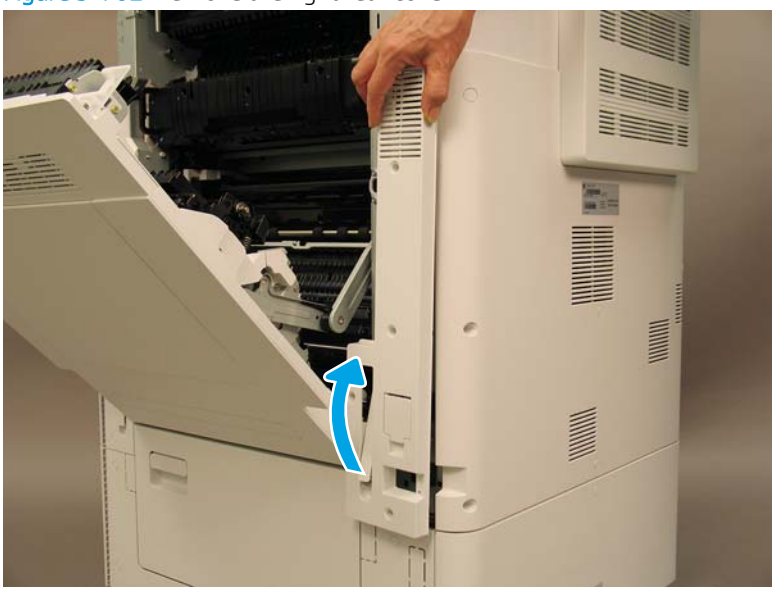
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-701 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

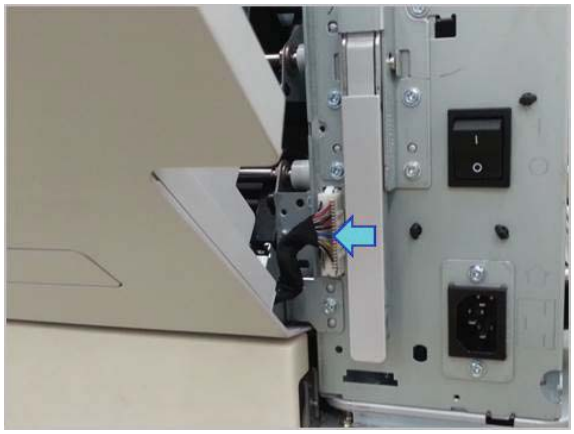
Figure 3-702 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

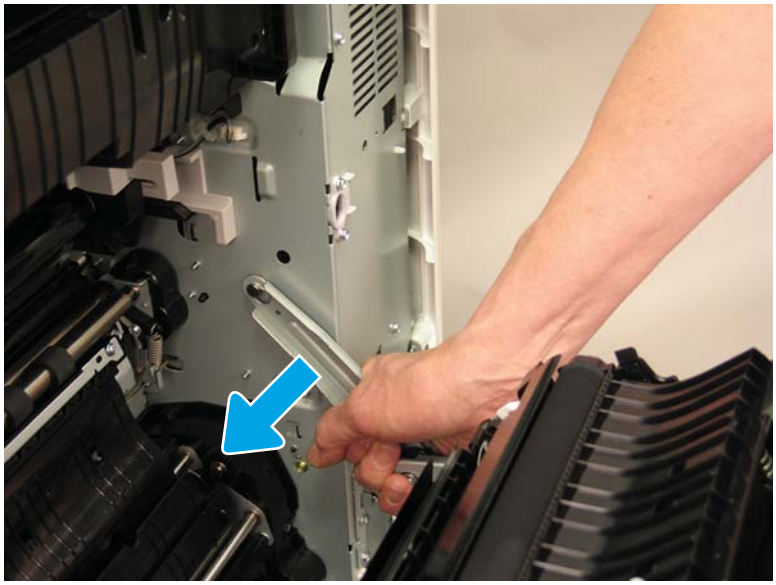
Figure 3-703 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

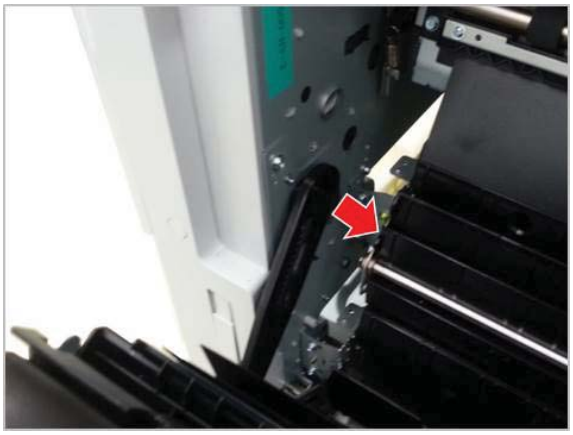
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-704 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

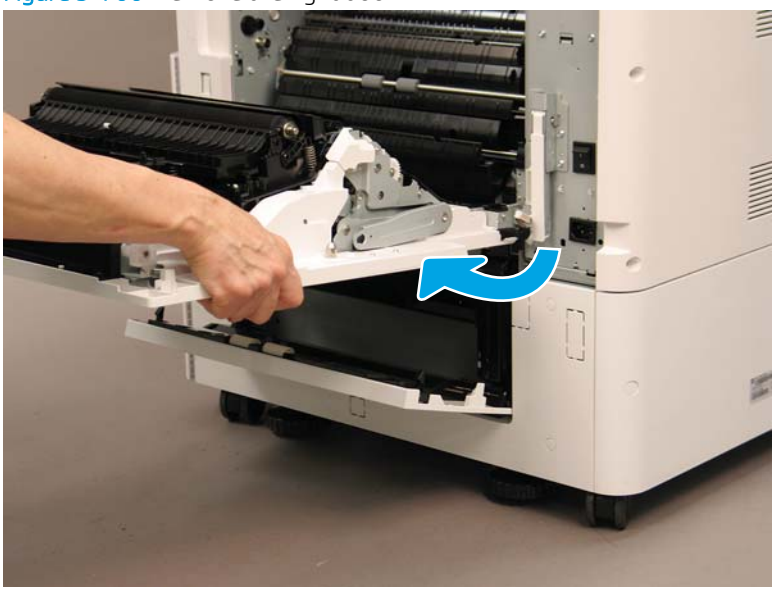
Figure 3-705 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

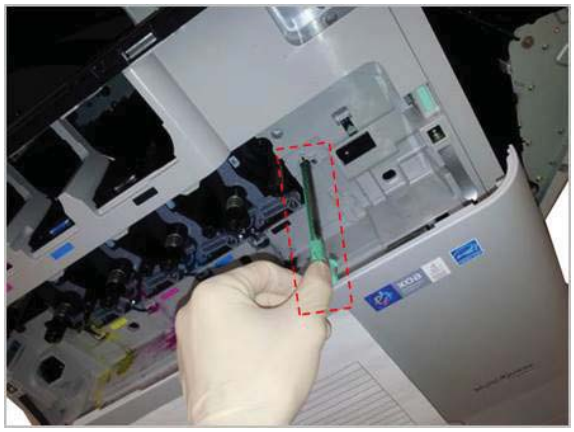
Figure 3-706 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

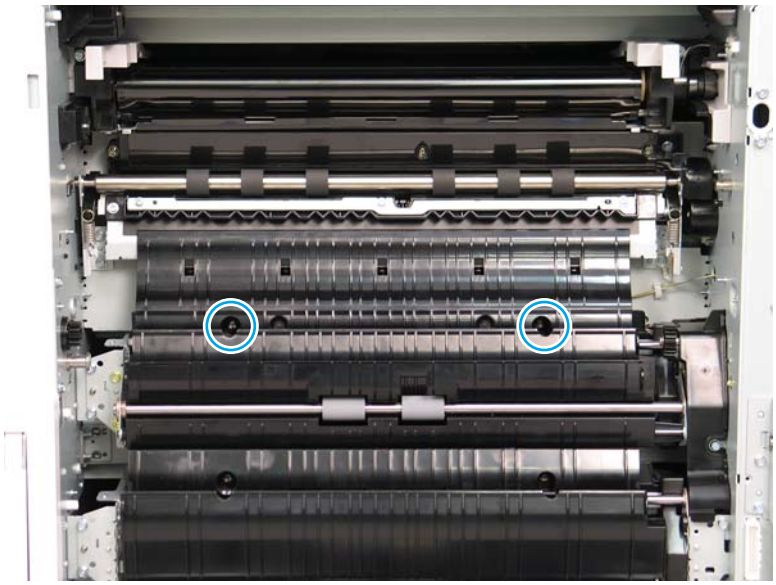
Figure 3-707 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 4: Remove the registration assembly

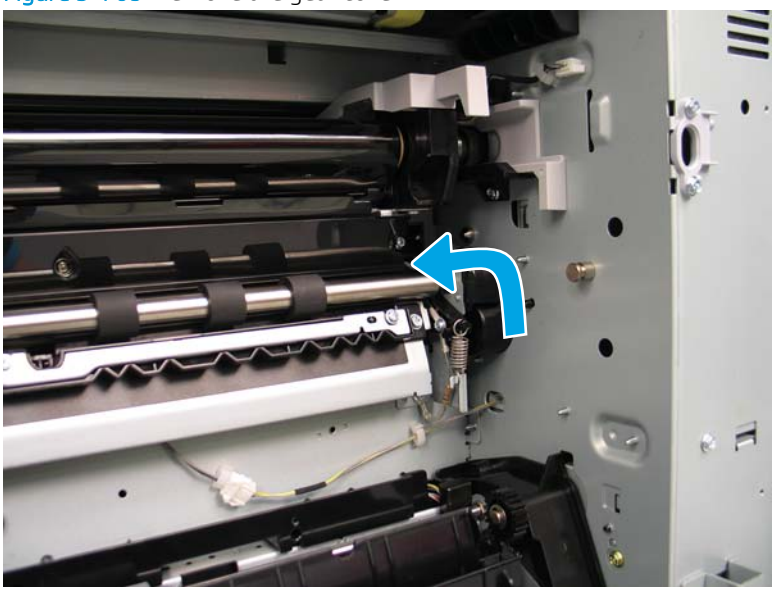
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-708 Remove two screws



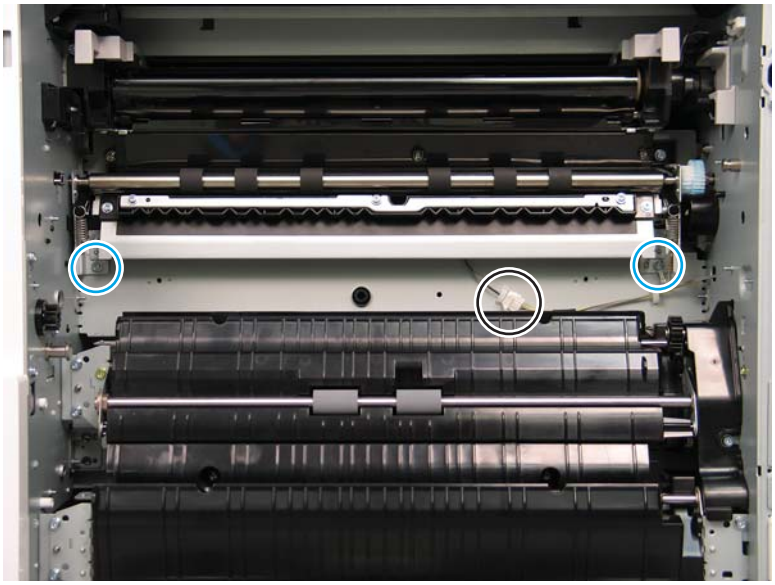
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 3-709 Remove the gear cover



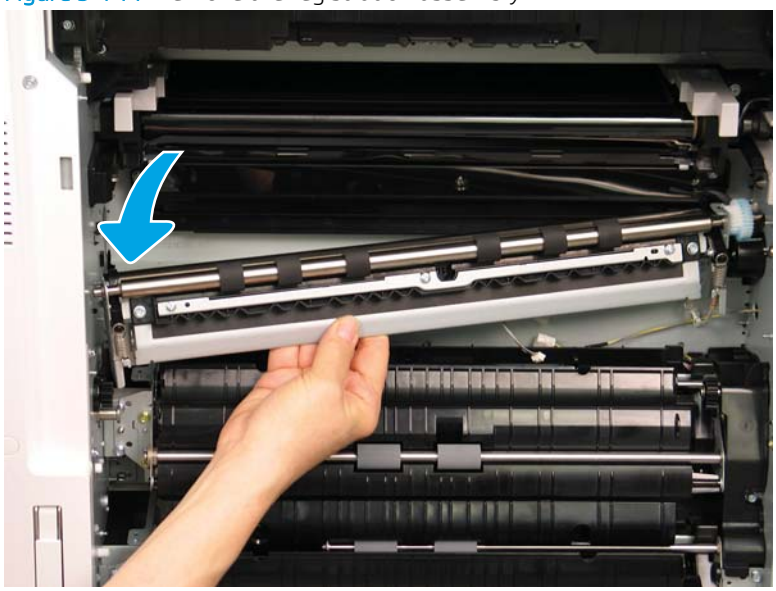
3. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 3-710 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

Figure 3-711 Remove the registration assembly

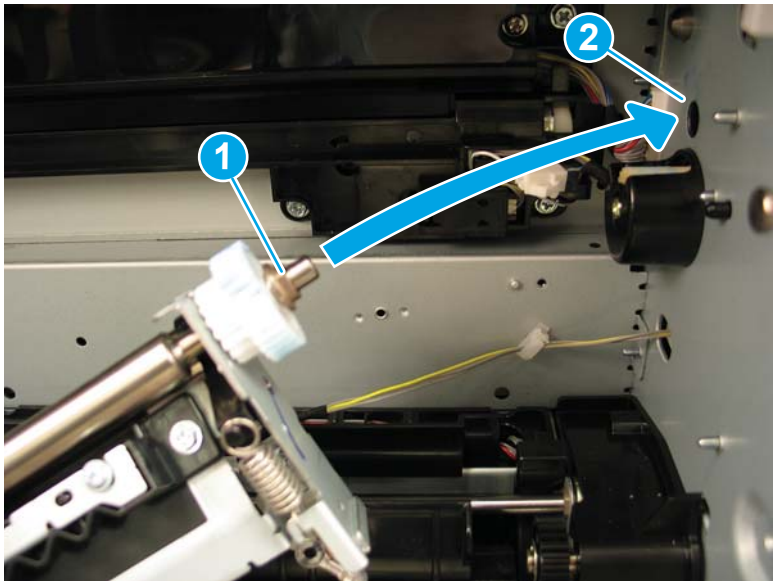


5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Registration assembly

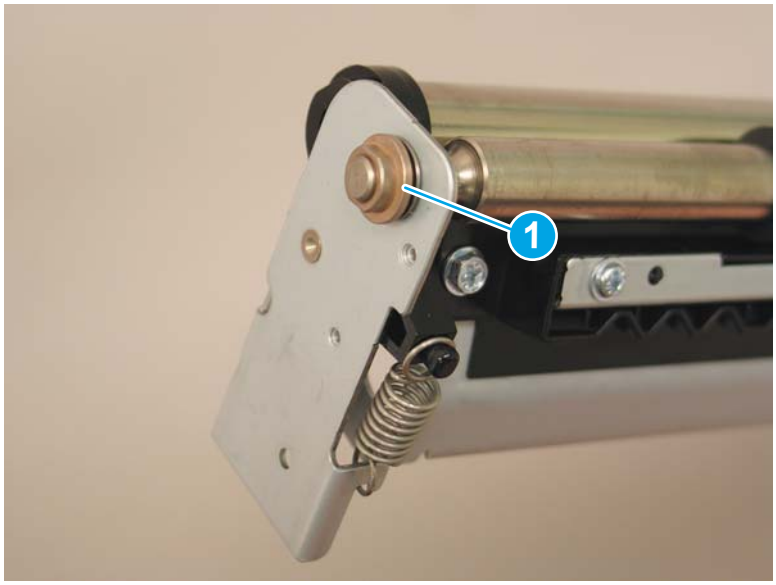
a. Install the back, gear side of the shaft (callout 1) into the opening in the sheet metal (callout 2).

Figure 3-712 Install the gear side of the shaft



b. Remove the bushing (callout 1) from the end of the front of the shaft.

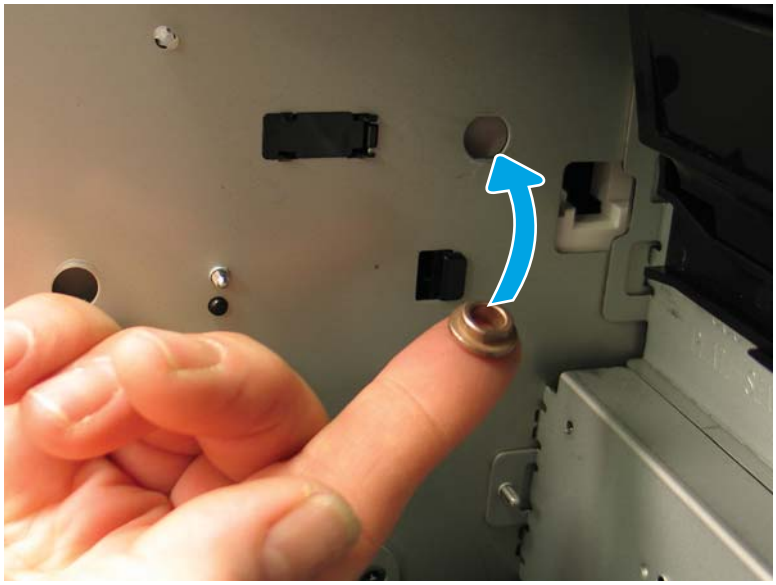
Figure 3-713 Remove the bushing



c. Install the bushing in the opening in the sheet metal.

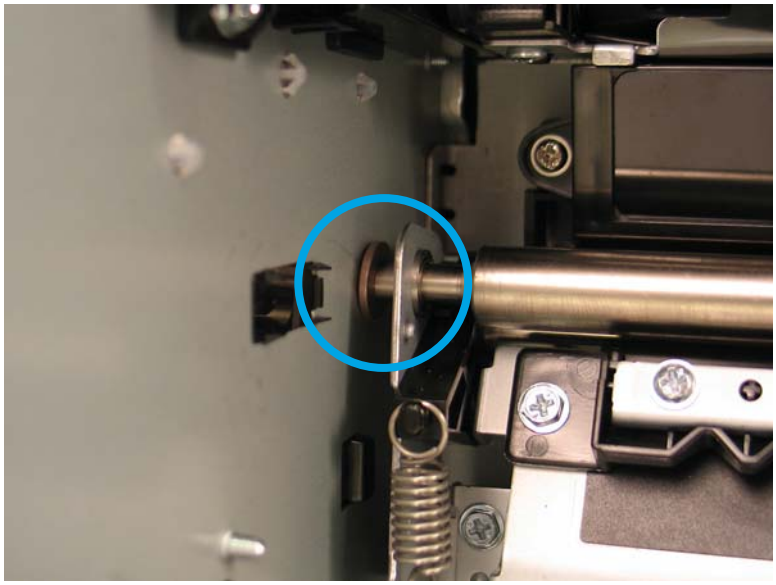
NOTE: The bushing is flat along the top and bottom edges. Install the bushing so the flat edges match the keyed opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 3-714 Install the bushing



d. Install the front of the shaft into the bushing.

Figure 3-715 Install the front of the shaft



NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration sensor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the right door
- Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush
- Step 4: Remove the registration assembly
- Step 5: Remove the registration sensor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the registration sensor.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.
- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Registration sensor part number
Registration sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

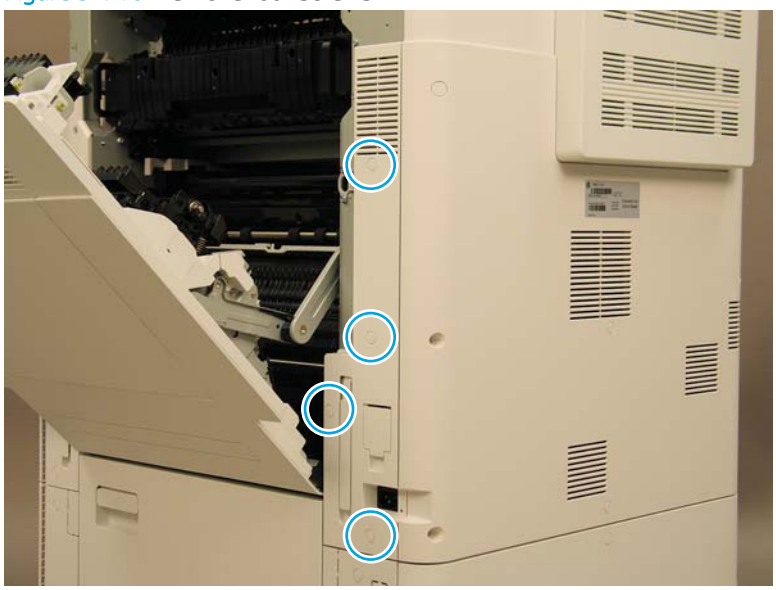
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the right rear cover

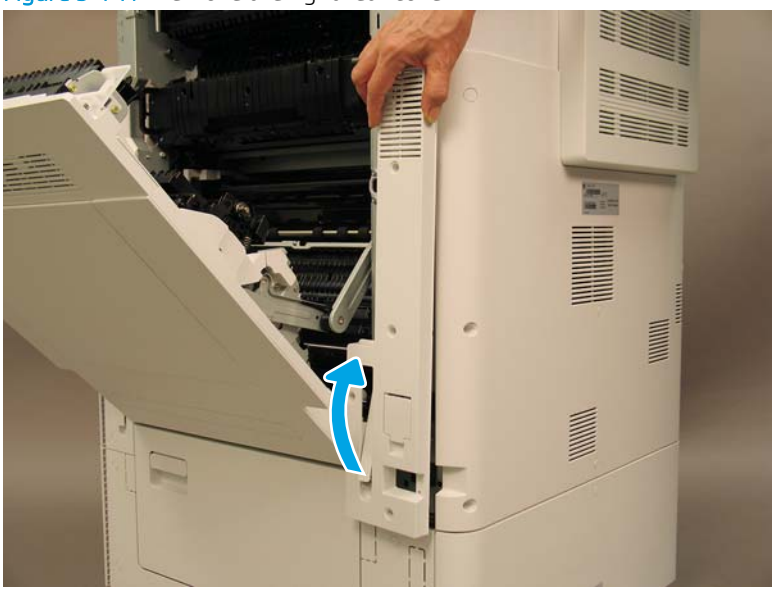
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-716 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

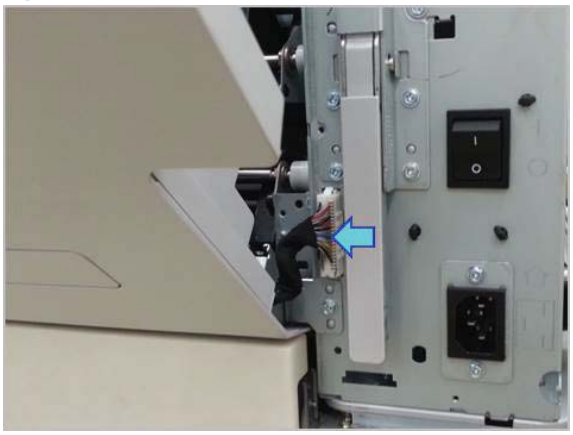
Figure 3-717 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

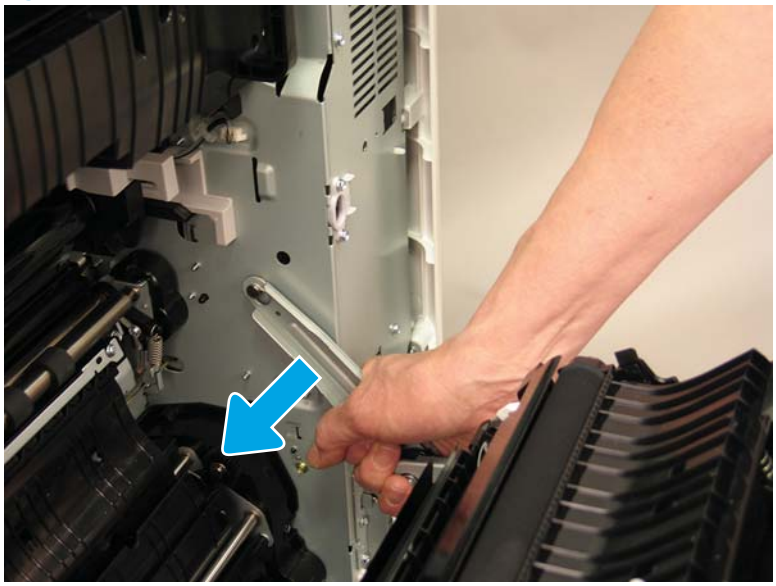
Figure 3-718 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

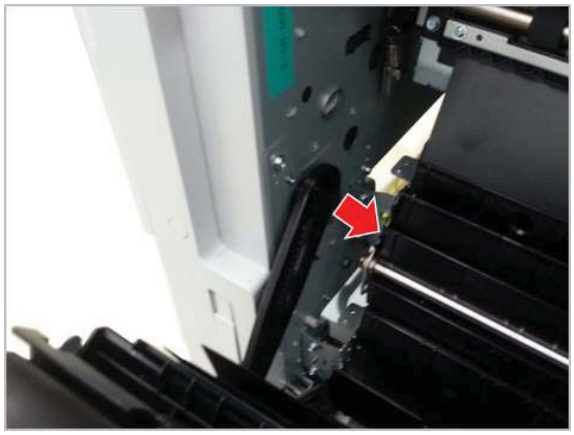
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-719 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

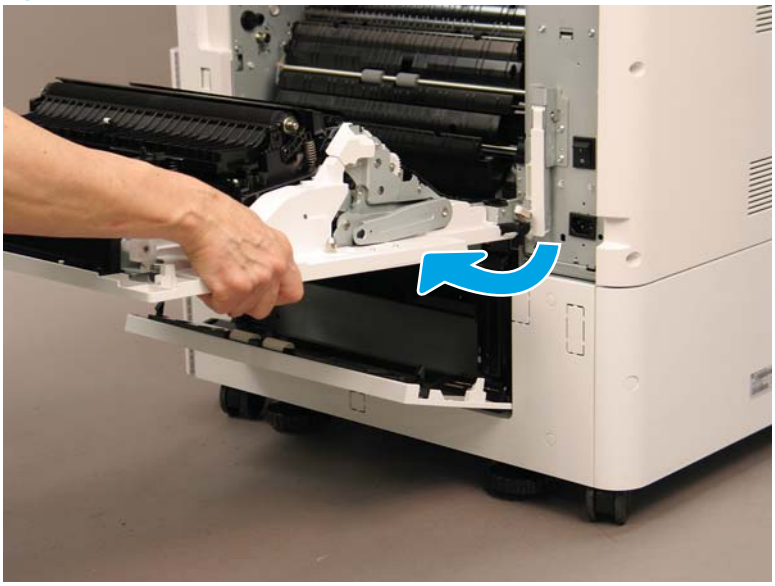
Figure 3-720 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

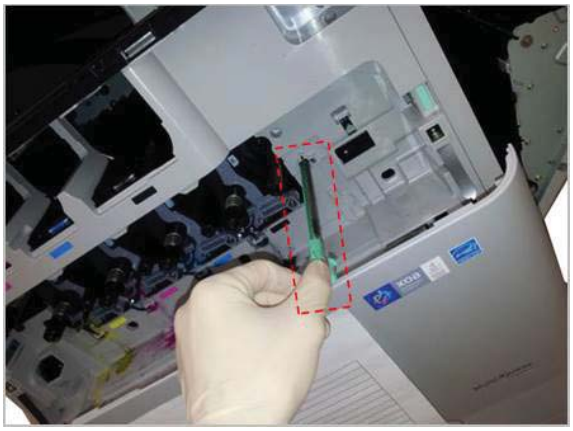
Figure 3-721 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the paper dust brush

▲ Remove the paper dust brush.

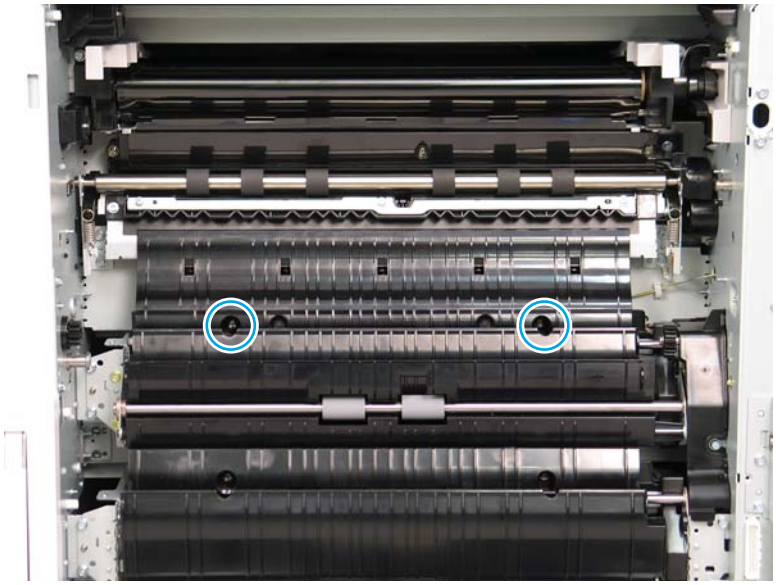
Figure 3-722 Remove the paper dust brush



Step 4: Remove the registration assembly

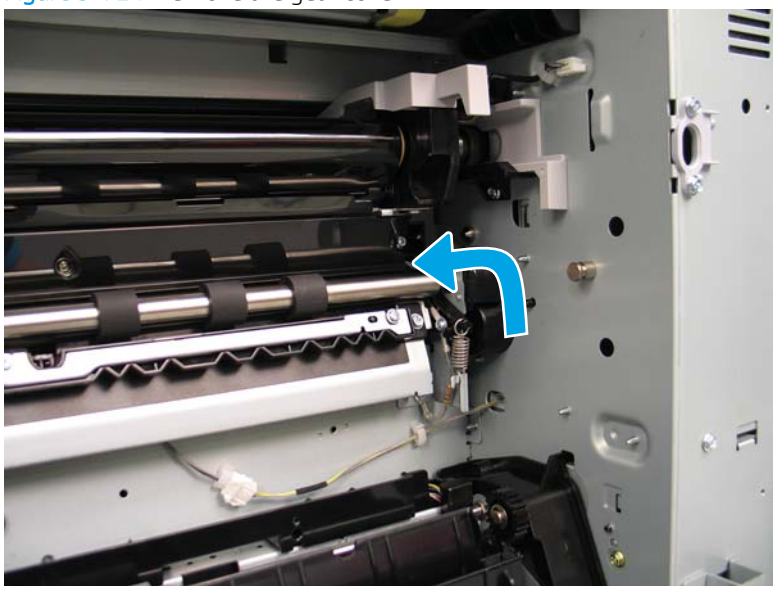
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-723 Remove two screws



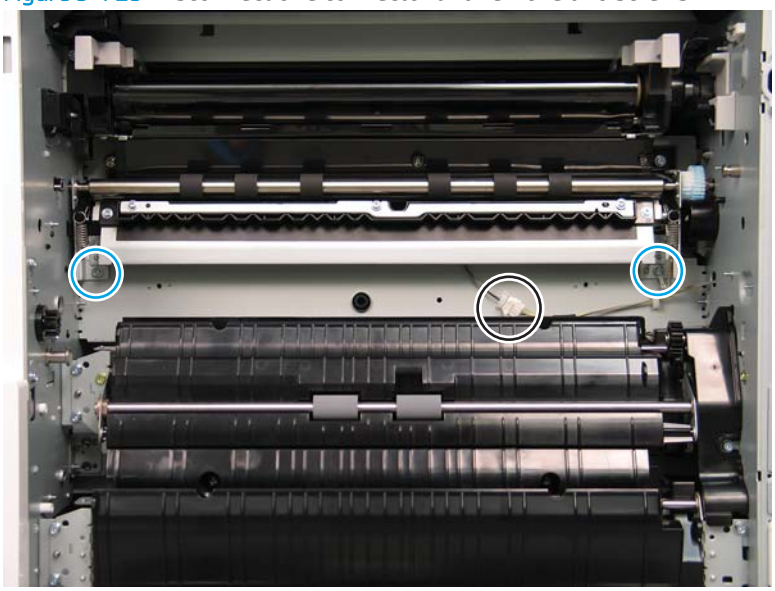
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 3-724 Remove the gear cover



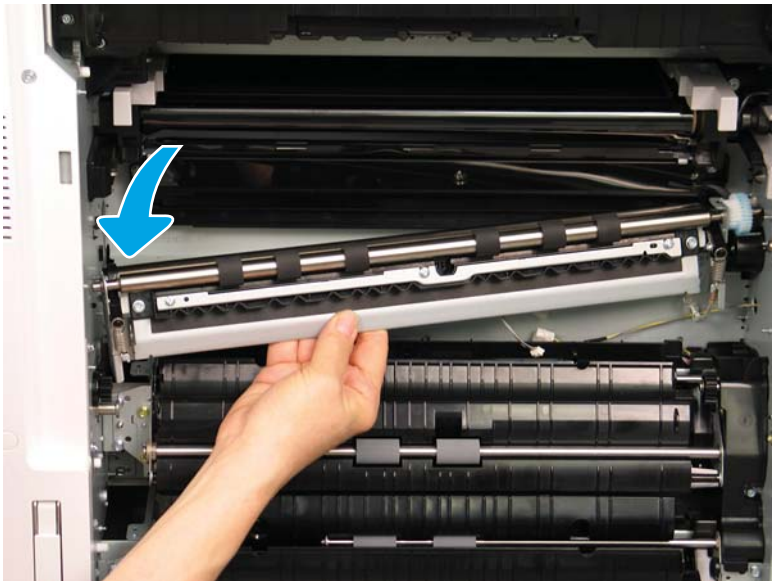
3. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 3-725 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



4. Rotate the left side of the registration assembly away from the printer, and then remove it.

Figure 3-726 Remove the registration assembly

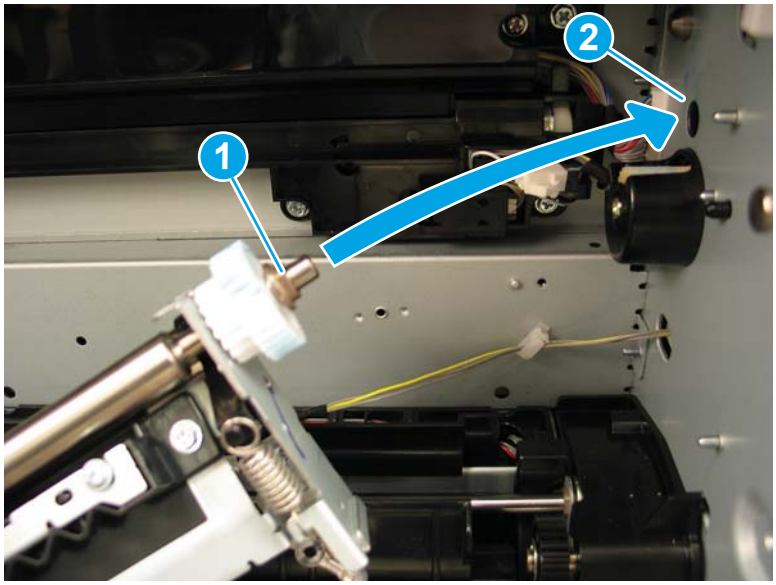


5. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: Registration assembly

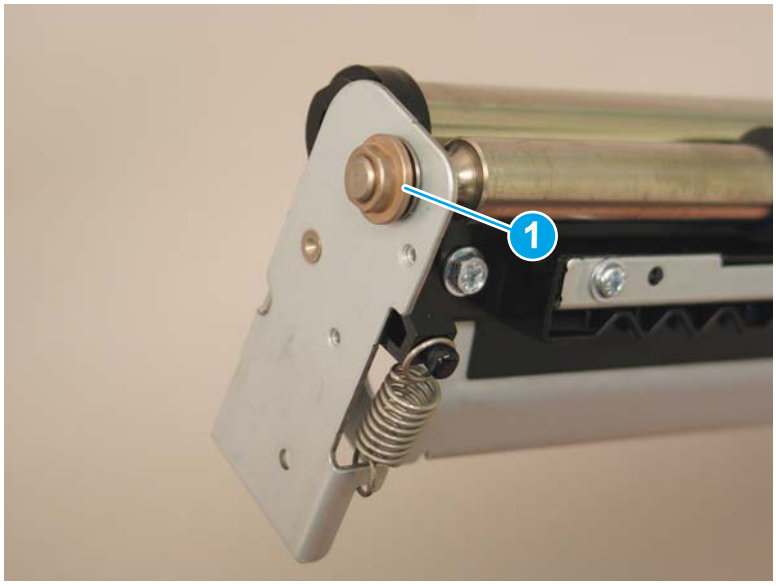
a. Install the back, gear side of the shaft (callout 1) into the opening in the sheet metal (callout 2).

Figure 3-727 Install the gear side of the shaft



b. Remove the bushing (callout 1) from the end of the front of the shaft.

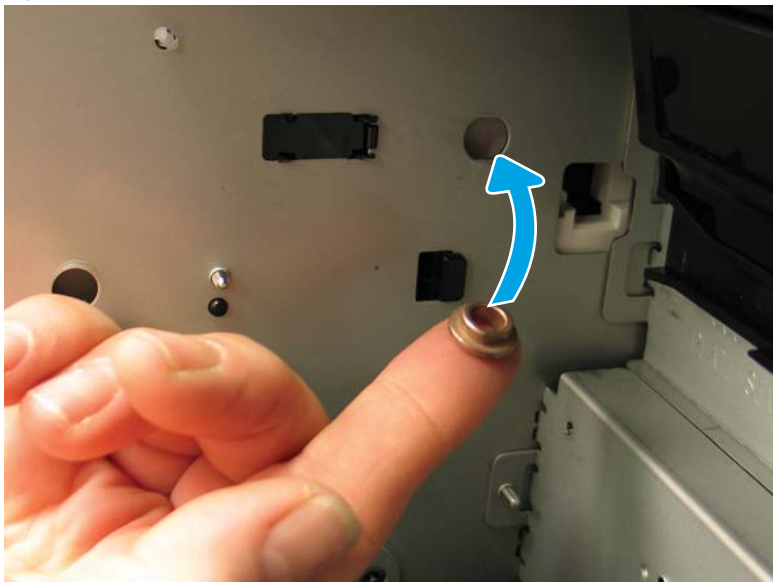
Figure 3-728 Remove the bushing



c. Install the bushing in the opening in the sheet metal.

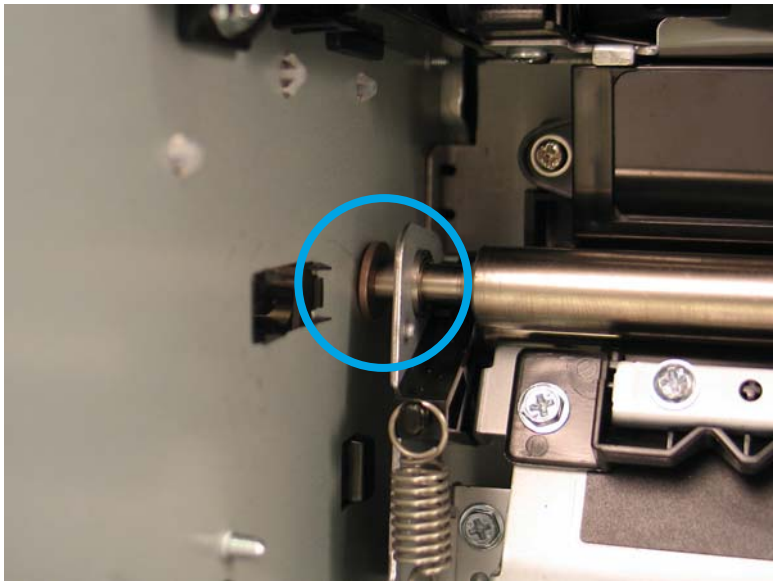
NOTE: The bushing is flat along the top and bottom edges. Install the bushing so the flat edges match the keyed opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 3-729 Install the bushing



d. Install the front of the shaft into the bushing.

Figure 3-730 Install the front of the shaft

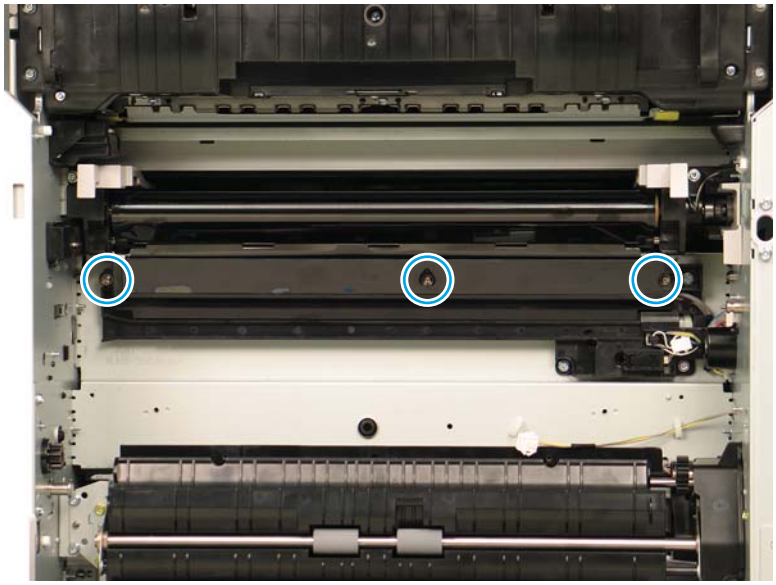


NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Step 5: Remove the registration sensor

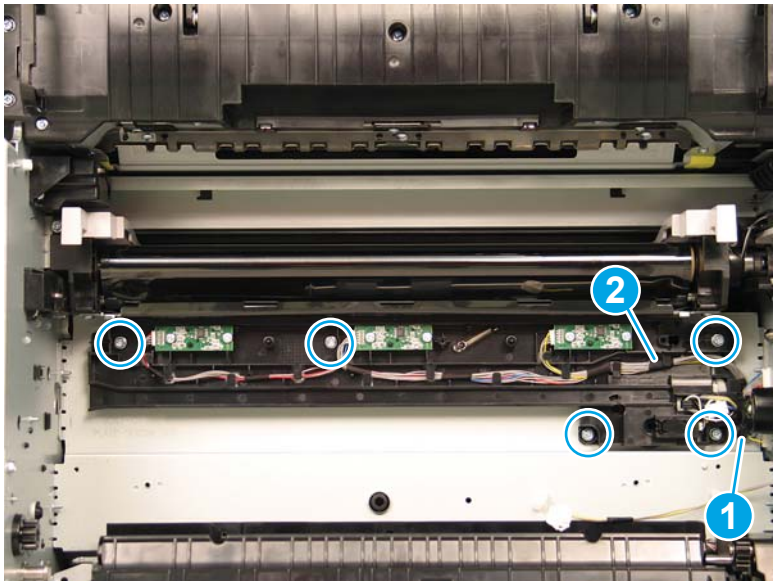
1. Remove three self-tapping screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 3-731 Remove three screws and the cover



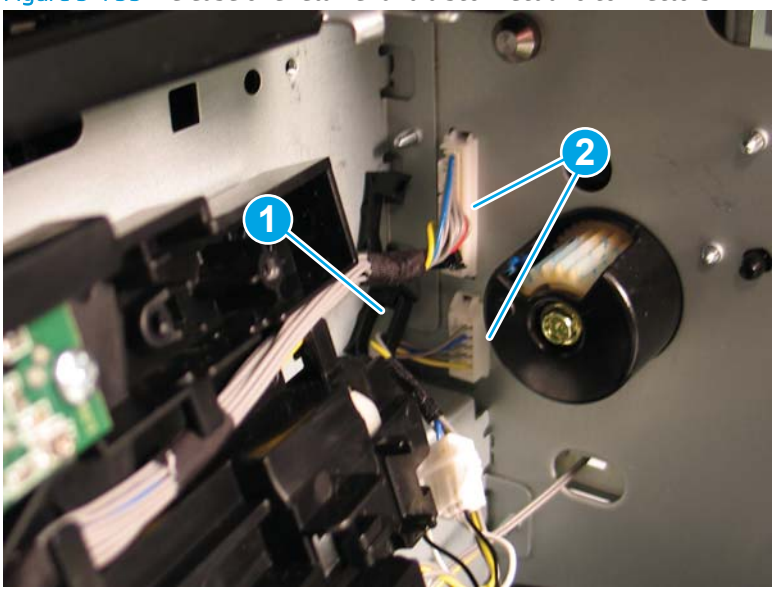
2. Release the cables from one lower retainer (callout 1) and one upper retainer (callout 2). Remove five screws.

Figure 3-732 Release retainers and remove five screws



3. Carefully lift the registration sensor assembly slightly away from the printer. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

Figure 3-733 Release one retainer and disconnect two connectors



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal hard disk drive (HDD)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover
- Step 2: Remove the output bin
- Step 3: Remove the HDD
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures for removing the 320 GB hard-disk drive installed beneath the rear-exit cover.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Internal hard disk drive part number	
691917-011	HDD 320GB

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.

- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

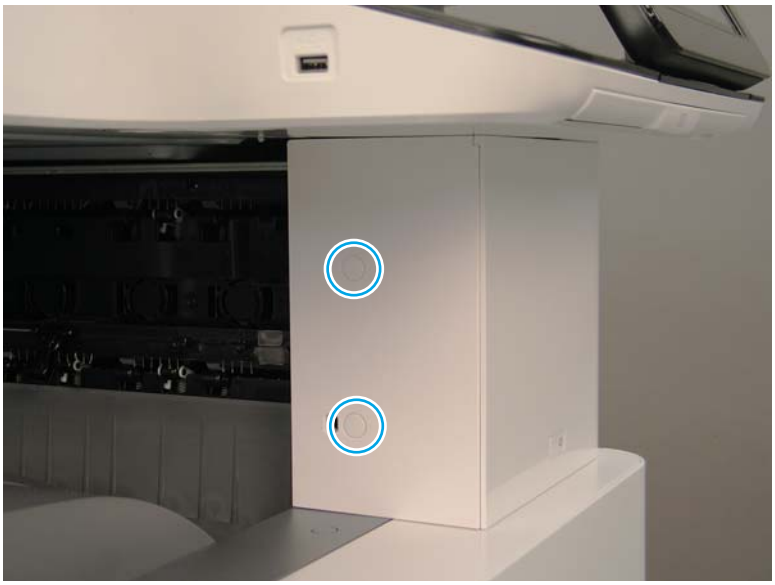
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the front top inner cover

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws. Lift the front top inner cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-734 Remove the front top inner cover



Step 2: Remove the output bin

- Remove two screw-caps and two screws, and then lift the output bin away from the printer to remove it.

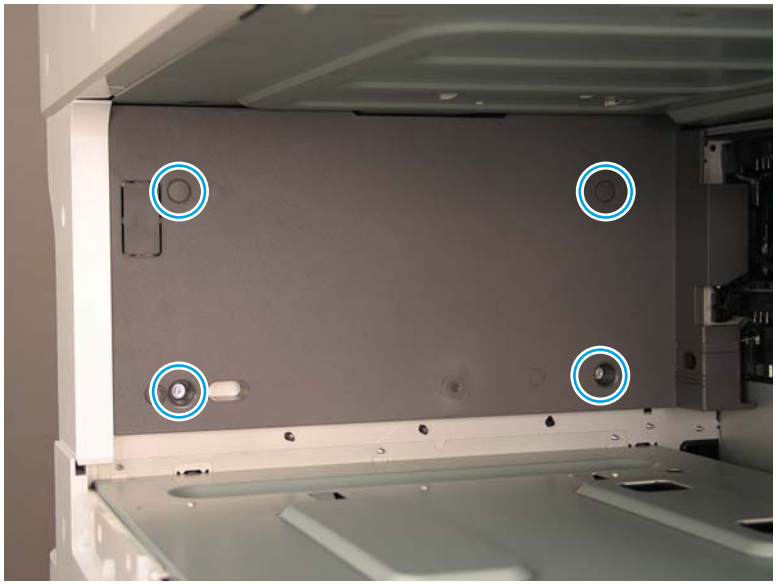
Figure 3-735 Remove the output bin



Step 3: Remove the HDD

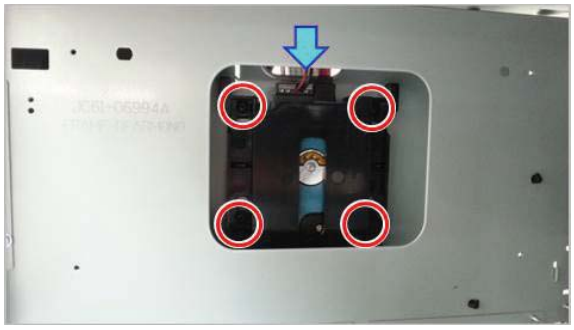
1. Remove four screws, and then release the HDD cover.

   Figure 3-736 Remove the HDD cover

2. Remove four screws, disconnect the HDD cable, and then remove the HDD with its holder.

   Figure 3-737 Remove the HDD

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF

Flow ADF whole unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the flow ADF whole unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Flow ADF whole unit assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04868A	Flow ADF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the ADF whole unit

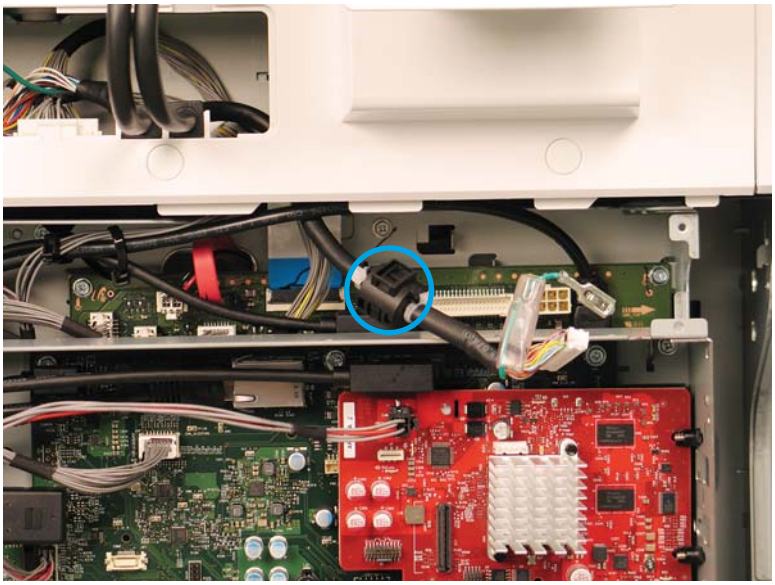
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-738 Remove document feeder connector cover



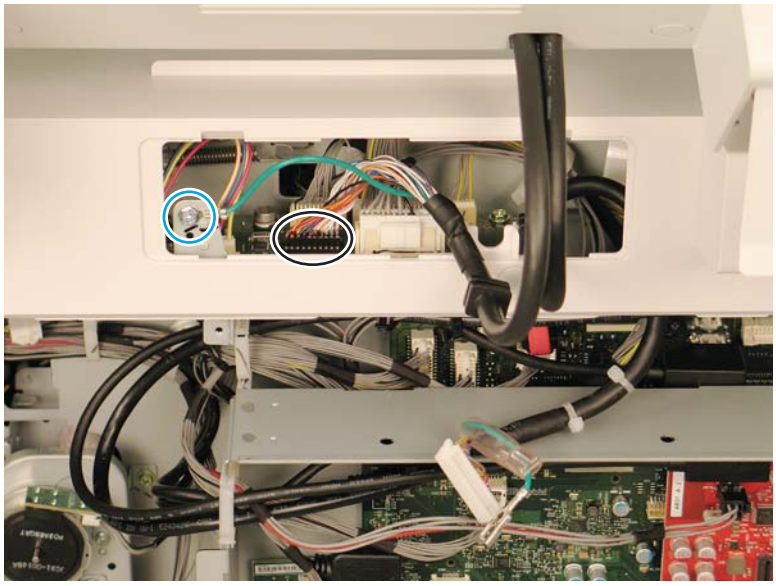
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-739 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

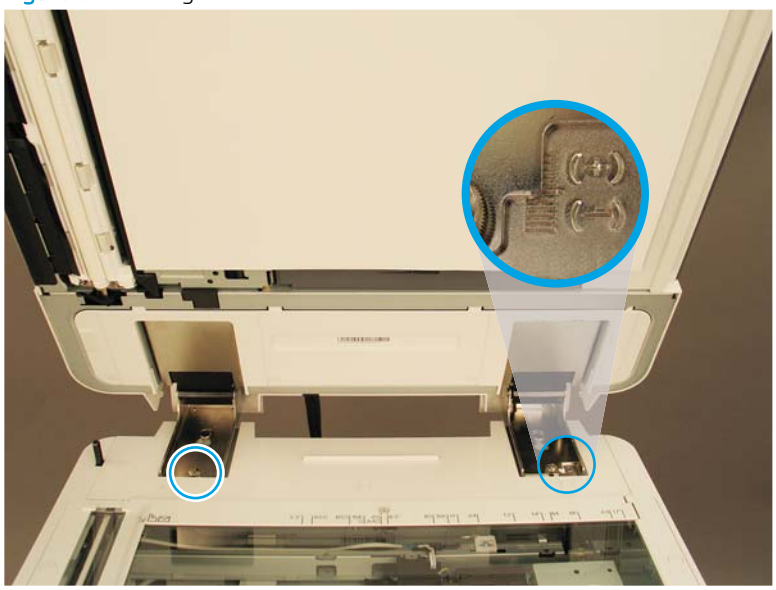
Figure 3-740 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

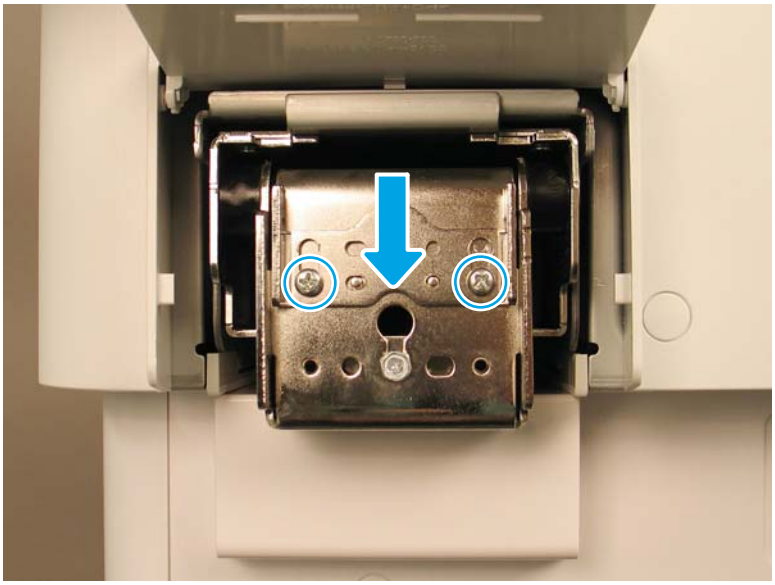
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-741 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-742 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-743 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF jam access cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the jam access cover assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Jam access cover assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF - open cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

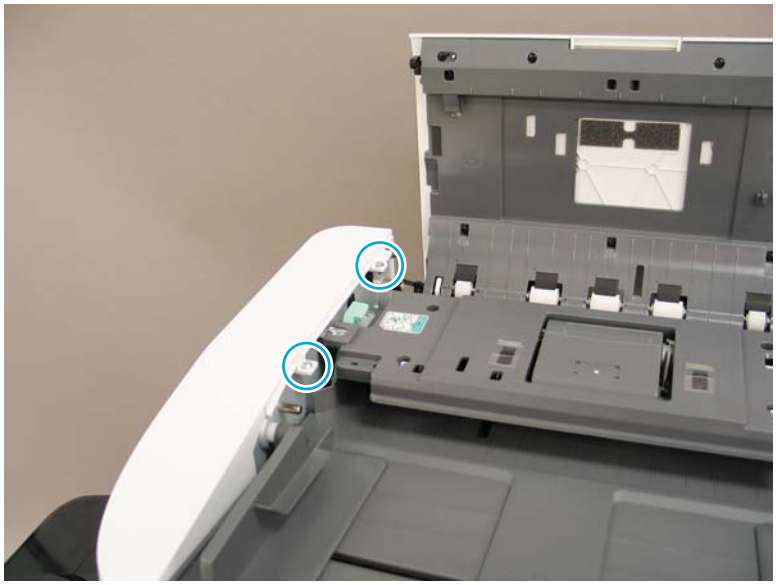
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

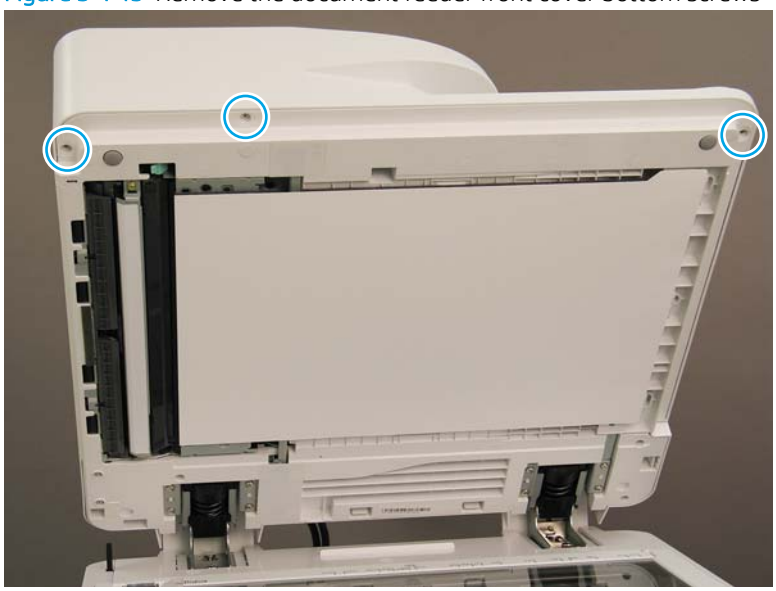
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-744 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

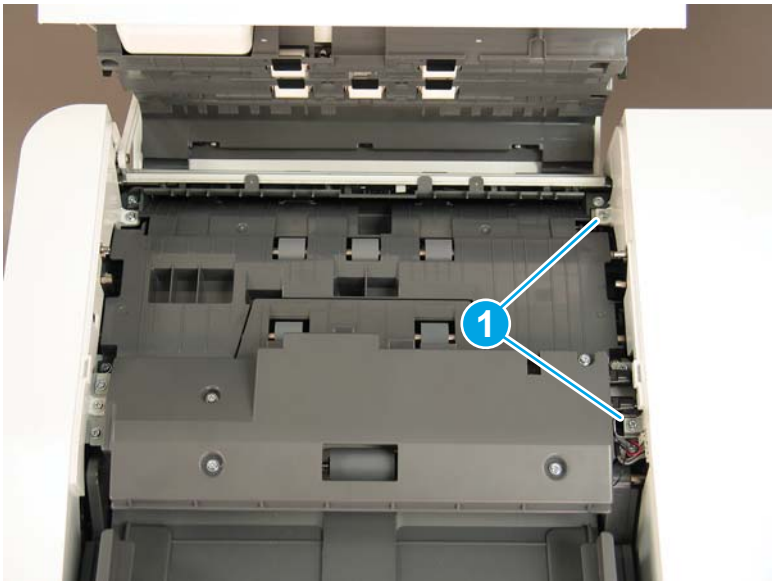
Figure 3-745 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-746 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

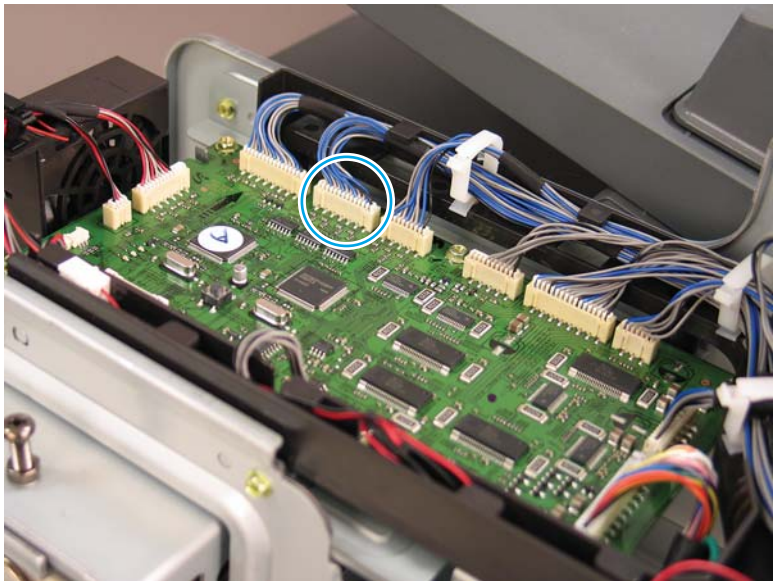
Figure 3-747 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder jam access cover

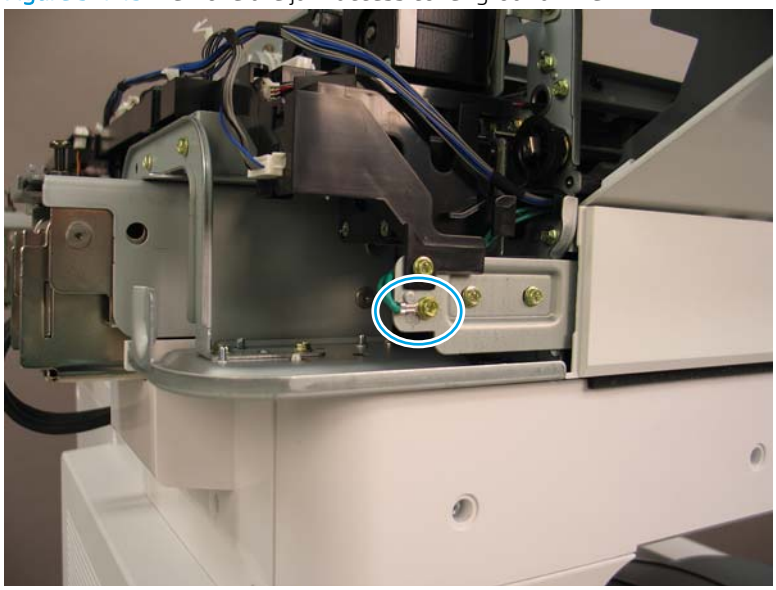
1. Disconnect connector at document feeder PCA and route cable out.

Figure 3-748 Disconnect one connector



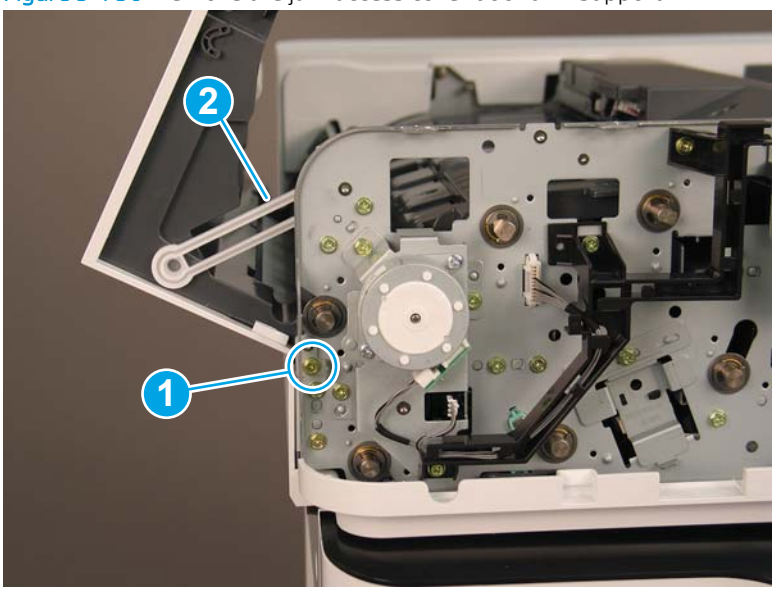
2. Disconnect the ground wire.

Figure 3-749 Remove the jam access cover ground wire



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove hinge (pivot) pin, and then remove door arm support (callout 2)

Figure 3-750 Remove the jam access cover door arm support



4. Remove the jam access cover.

Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF input tray

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the dampening unit
- Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit
- Step 5: Remove the input tray
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the input tray assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Input tray assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04658B	Input tray assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

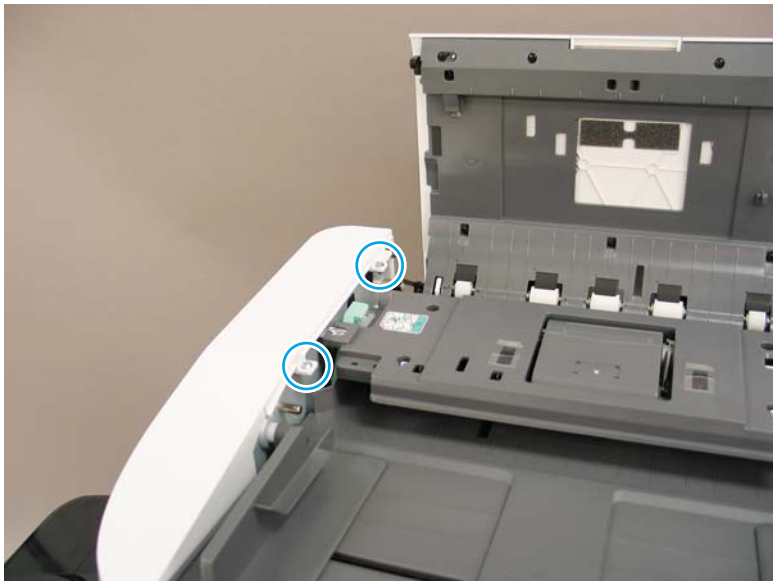
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

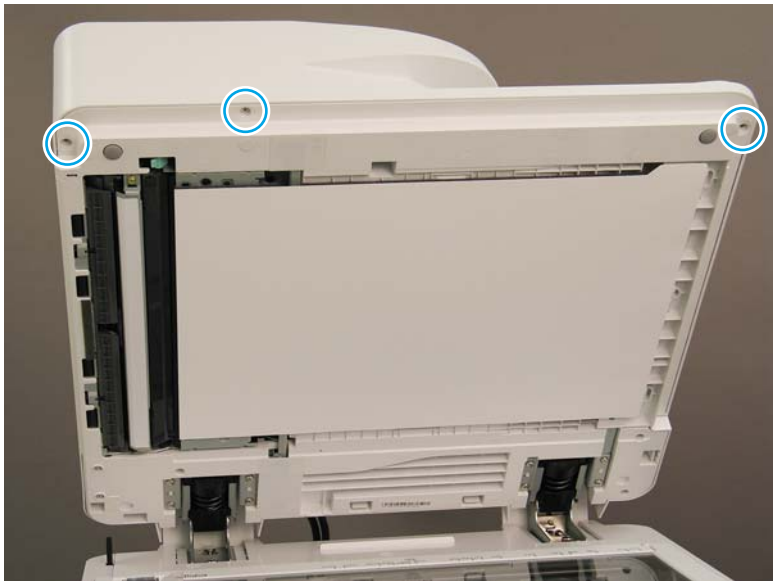
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-751 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

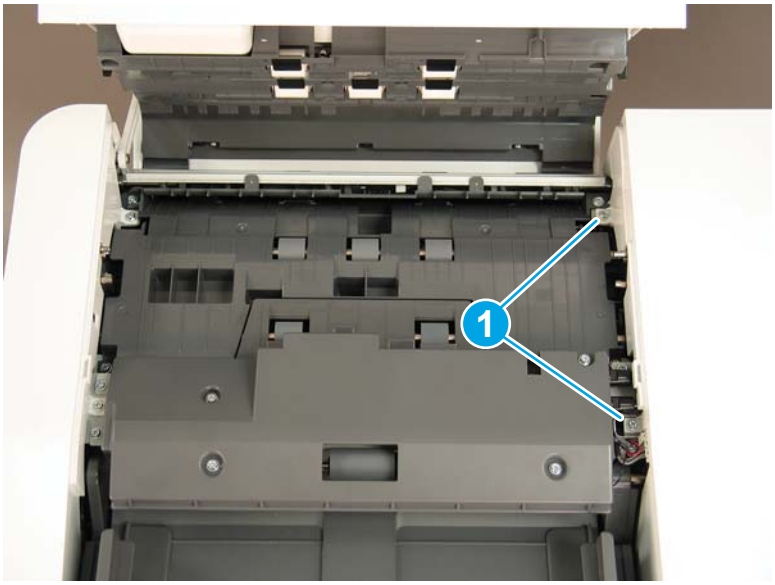
Figure 3-752 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-753 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

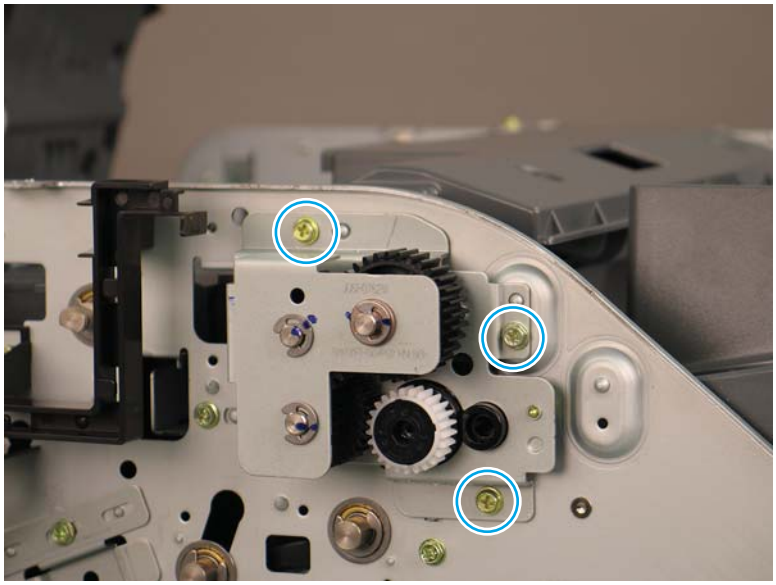
Figure 3-754 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the dampening unit

▲ Remove three screws, and then remove the damping unit.

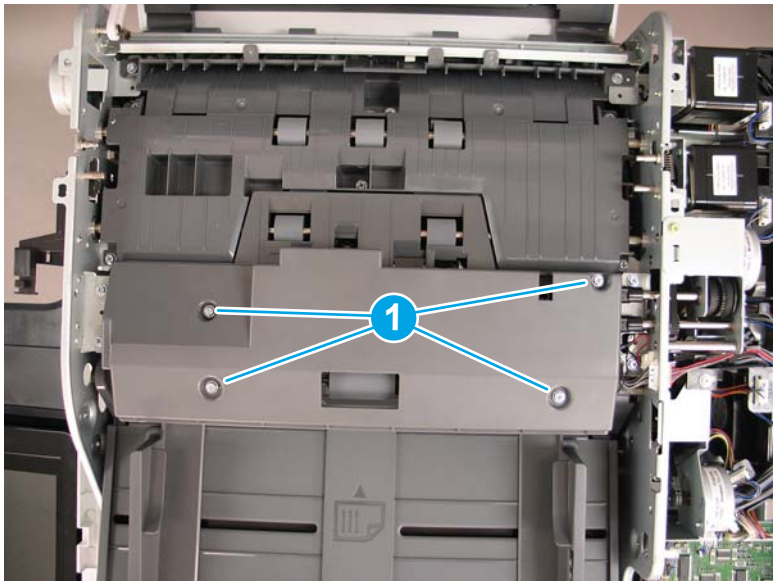
Figure 3-755 Remove the document feeder damping unit



Step 4: Remove the pickup and feed unit

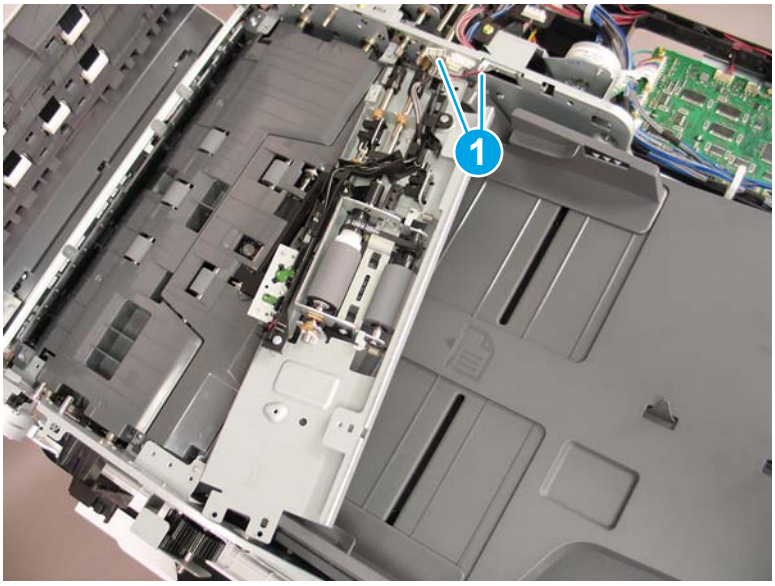
1. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover.

Figure 3-756 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly cover screws



2. Remove four screws in the sheet-metal roller bracket, rotate the roller assembly over, and then disconnect two connectors (callout 1). Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly.

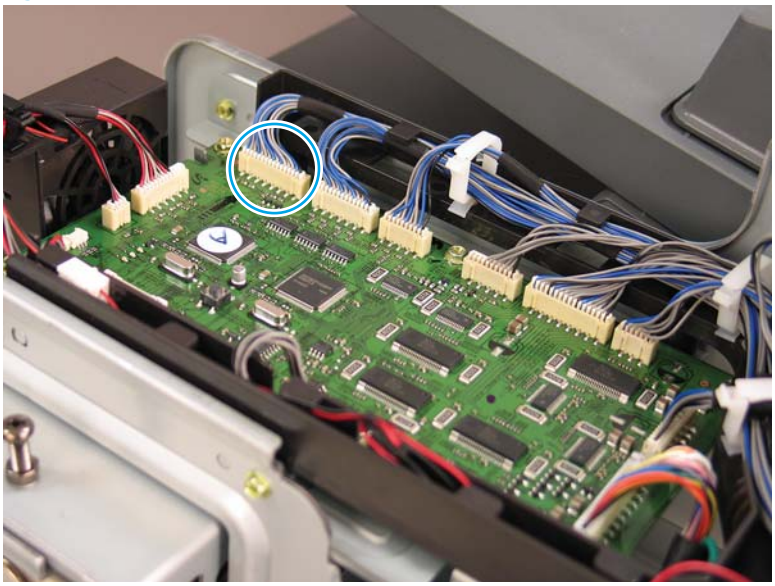
Figure 3-757 Remove the document feeder pickup roller assembly



Step 5: Remove the input tray

1. Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector, and then remove cable from guide.

Figure 3-758 Disconnect the document feeder PCA connector



2. Lift the tray from the front, and pivot the tray outward to remove.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CIS assembly part number	
SAM-0609-001558	CIS assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

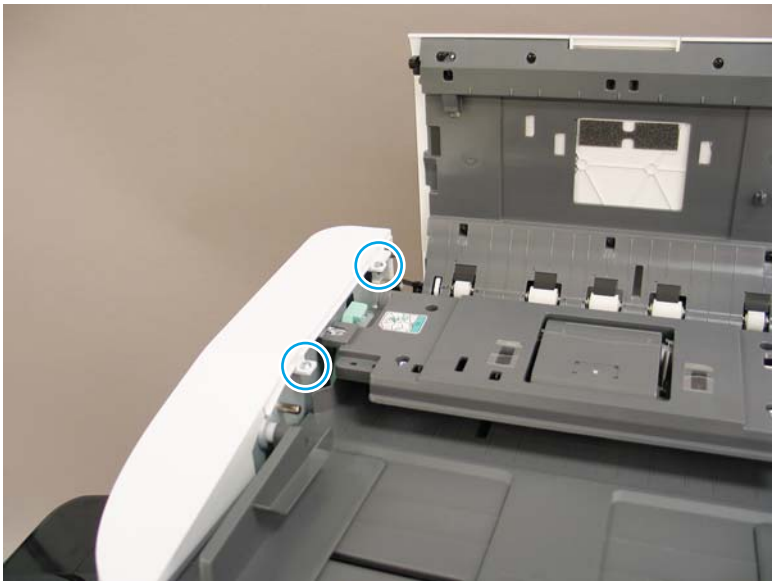
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

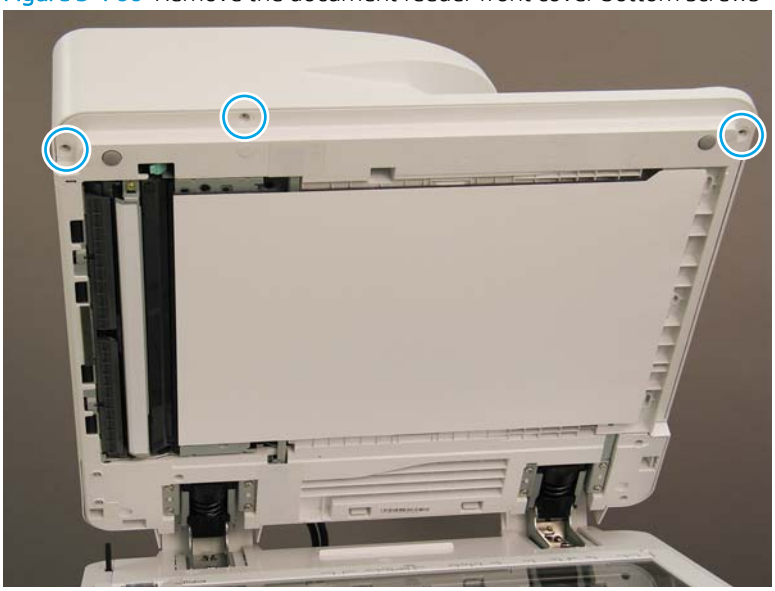
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

Figure 3-759 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

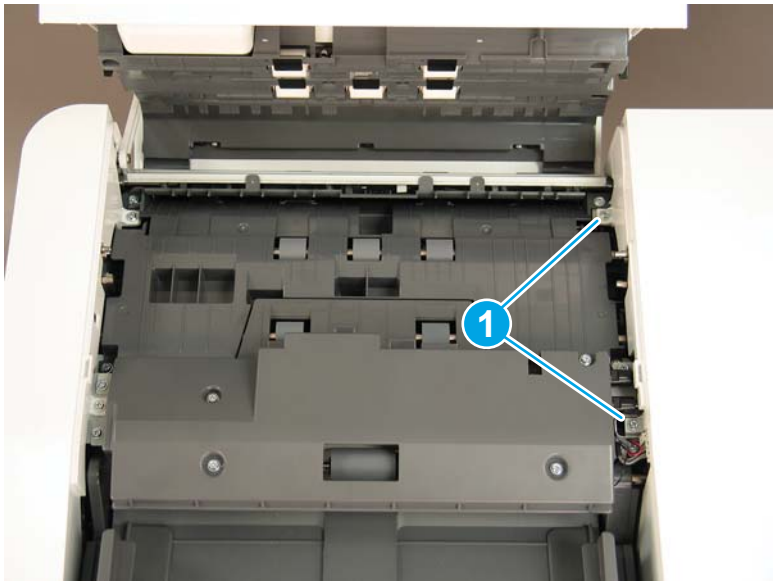
Figure 3-760 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-761 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

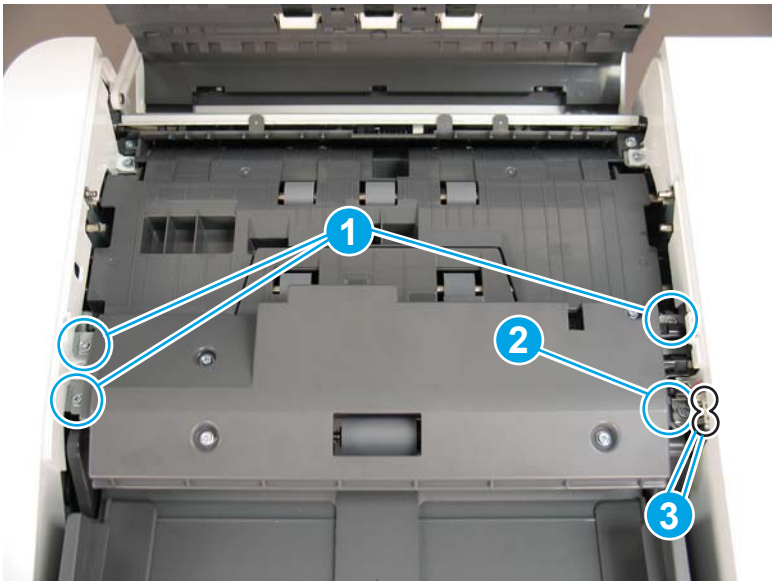
Figure 3-762 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

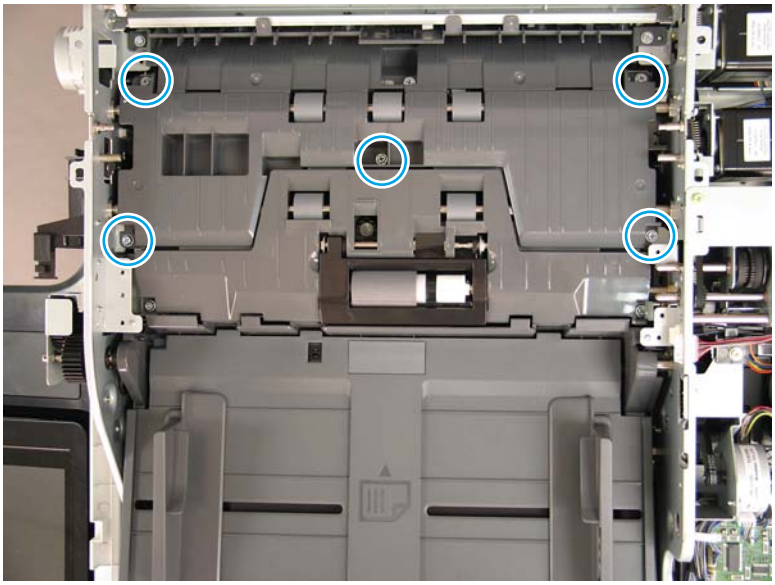
Figure 3-763 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

Figure 3-764 Remove the document feeder paper path cover

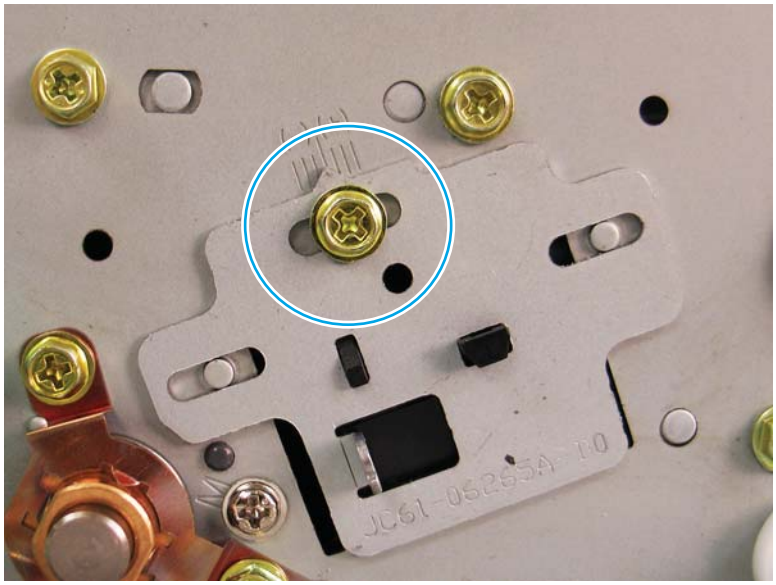


Step 5: Remove the CIS assembly

1. Remove one screw, and then remove the CIS front alignment cover.

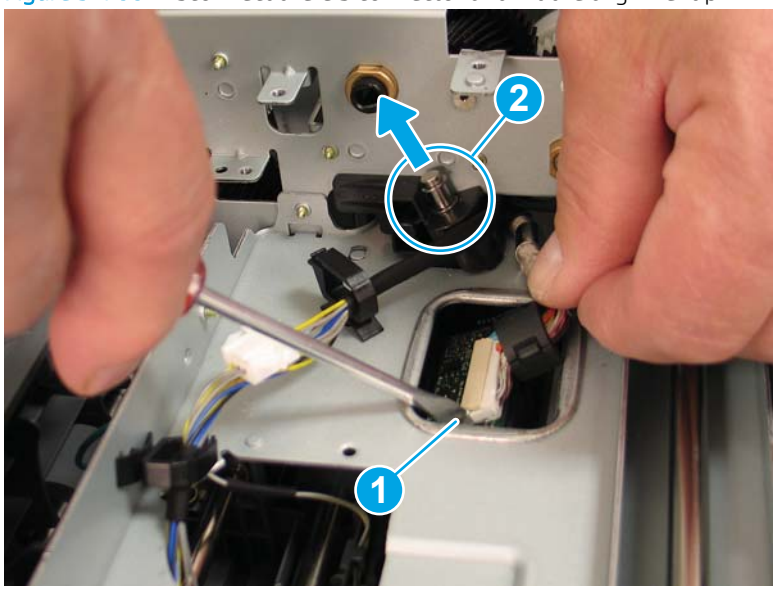
Reinstallation tip: Note the orientation of the CIS front alignment cover for reinstallation; the cover must reinstalled with the same orientation.

Figure 3-765 Remove the CIS front alignment cover screws



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then lift the alignment pin to release the CIS assembly (callout 2).

Figure 3-766 Disconnect the CIS connector and lift the alignment pin



3. Remove the CIS assembly from the chassis.

Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF front motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the front motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the front motor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front motor assembly part number	
SAM-JC31-00177A	Motor, step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

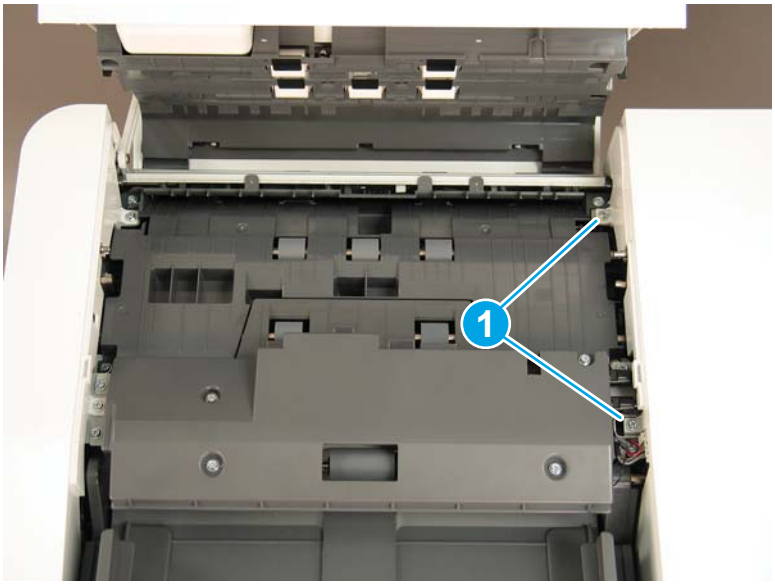
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-767 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

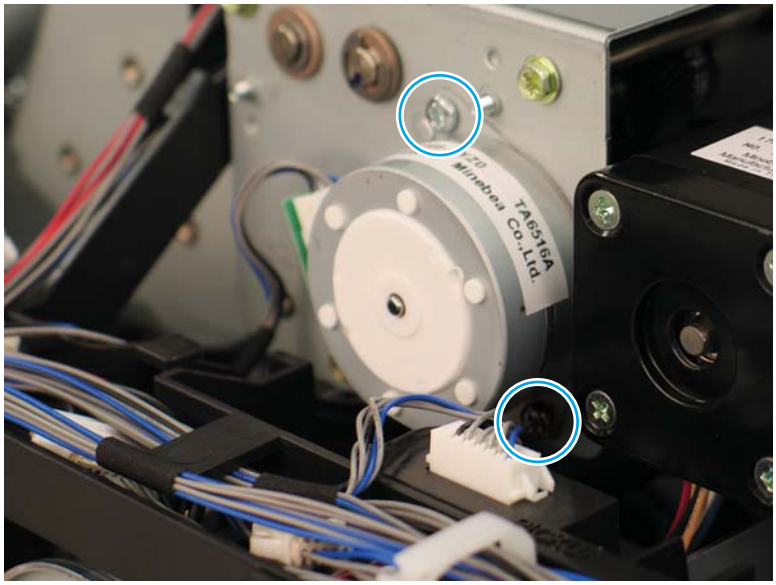
Figure 3-768 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the front motor

- Remove two screws and disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 3-769 Remove the document feeder front motor



Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Loosely install the motor mount screws.

c. Install the tension spring.

d. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF rear motors

- Introduction
- Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2
- Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors
- Step 5: Remove the exit motor
- Step 6: Remove the feed motor
- Step 7: Remove the REGI motor
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the rear motor assemblies.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear motors part numbers	
SAM-JC97-04679A	Motor 1 - Flow ADF - drive
SAM-JC97-04681A	Motor 2 - Flow ADF- drive release pick up
SAM-JC97-04680A	Pickup motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Pre_REGI motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Exit motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	Feed motor
SAM-JC31-00177A	REGI motor
SAM-JC97-04680A	

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Identify the document feeder motors

▲ Use the figure below to locate the motor.

Figure 3-770 Document feeder motors

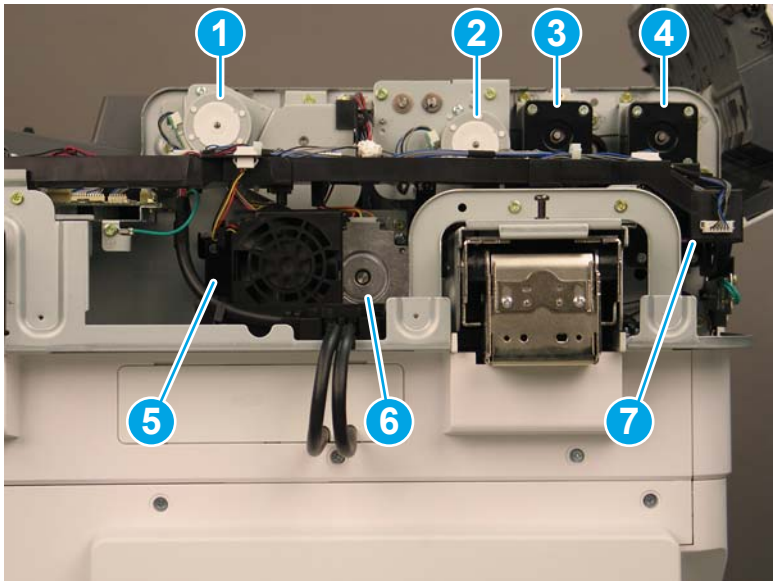


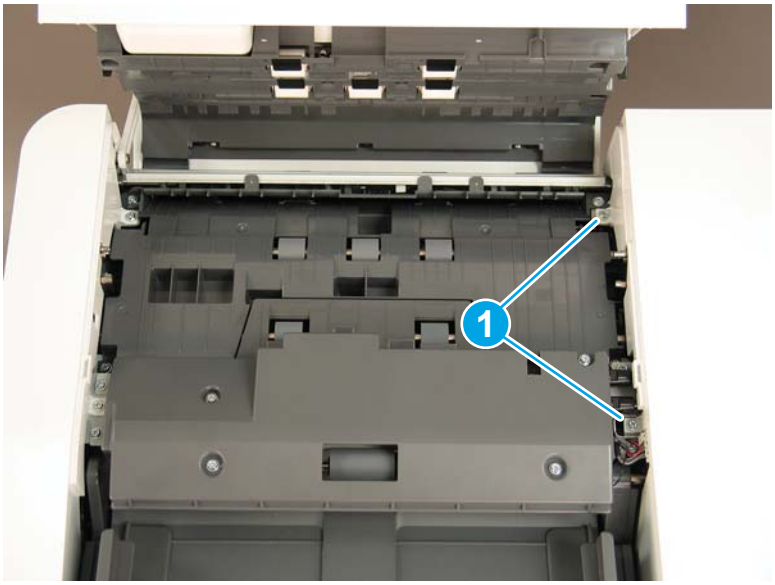
Table 3-1 Document feeder motors

Callout	Description
1	Motor 1
2	Motor 2
3	Pickup motor
4	Pre_REGI motor
5	Exit motor
6	Feed motor
7	REGI motor

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-771 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-772 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

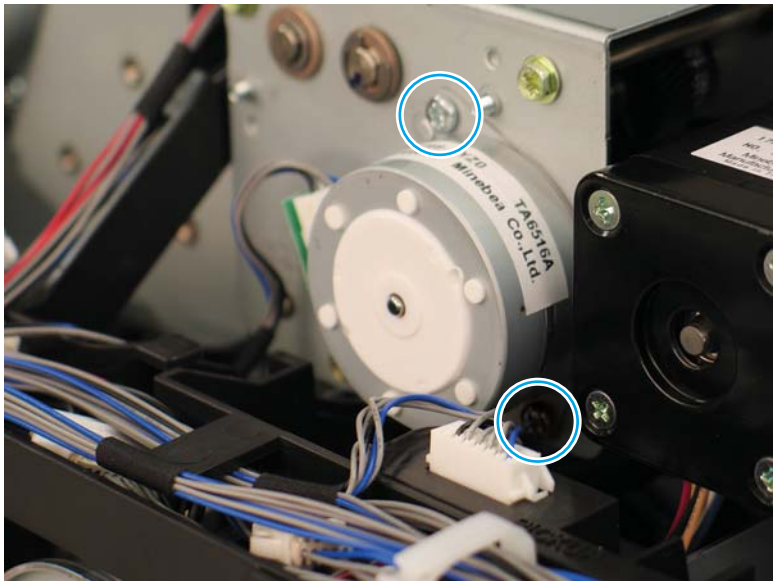


Step 3: Remove motors 1 and 2

▲ Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

Figure 3-773 Remove the motor

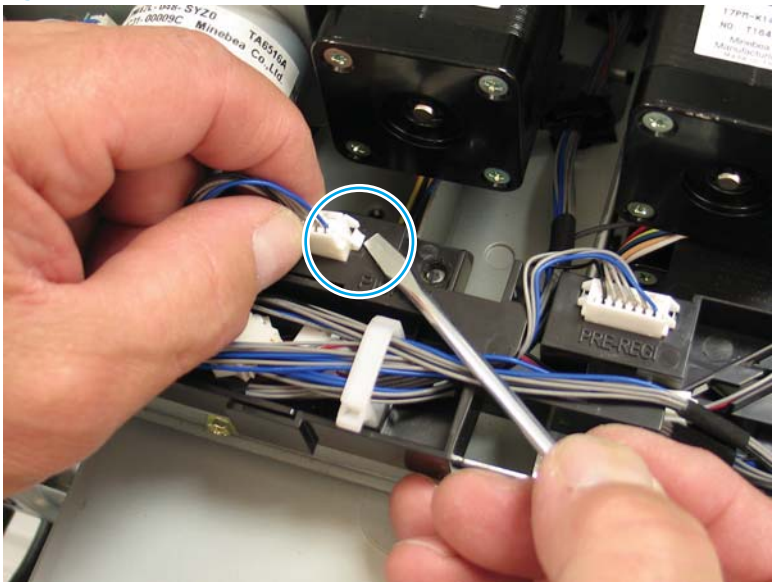


Step 4: Remove the pickup and pre-REGI motors

1. Loosen the cable guide
2. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 3-774 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then loosen (but do not remove) three screws. Slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Figure 3-775 Pickup motor

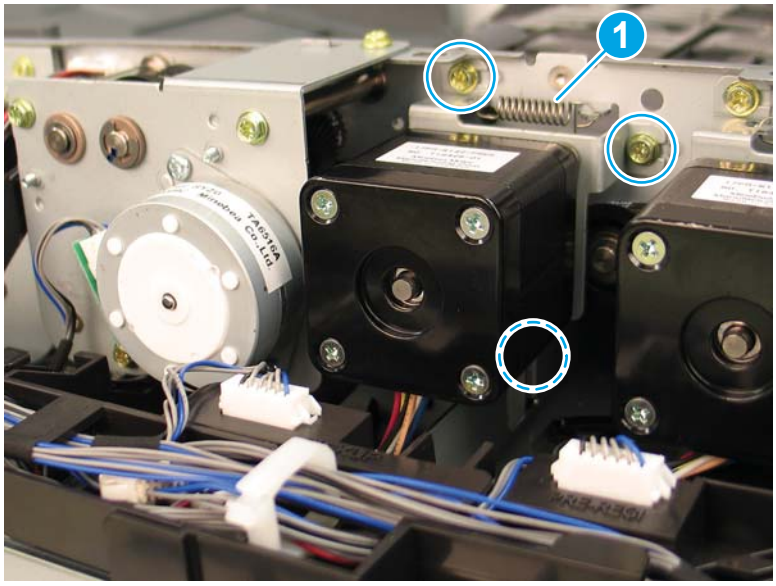
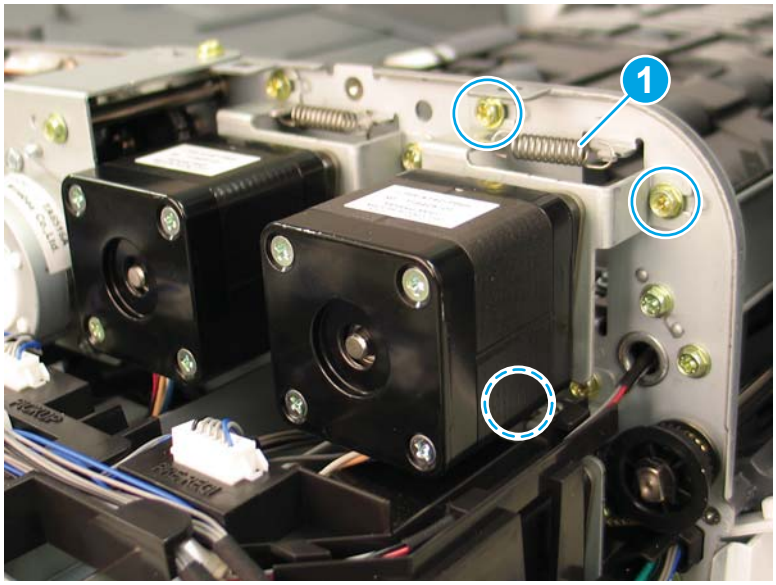


Figure 3-776 Pre-REGI motor



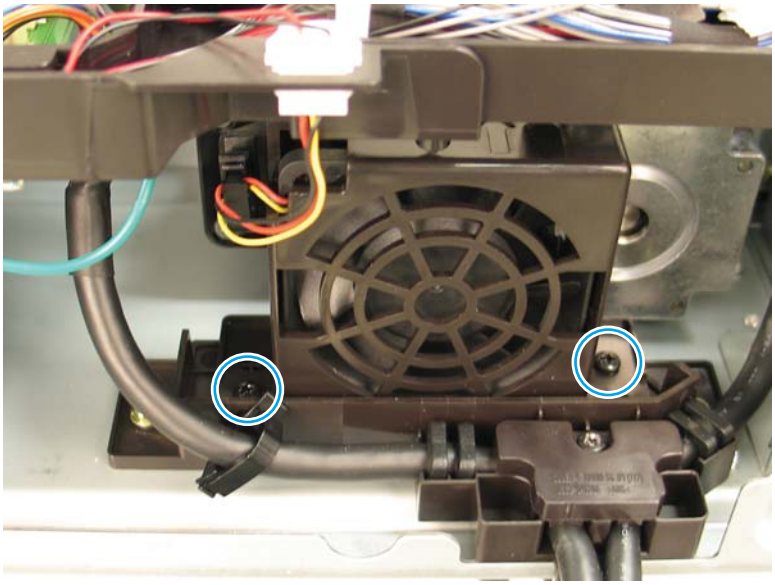
4. To reinstall the motor, do the following:

- Reinstall the motor on the motor mounting screws, and then lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.
- Install the tension spring.
- Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 5: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove two screws and one connector, and then remove the main fan.

Figure 3-777 Remove the main fan



2. Remove the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), loosen three screws, and then remove the exit motor.

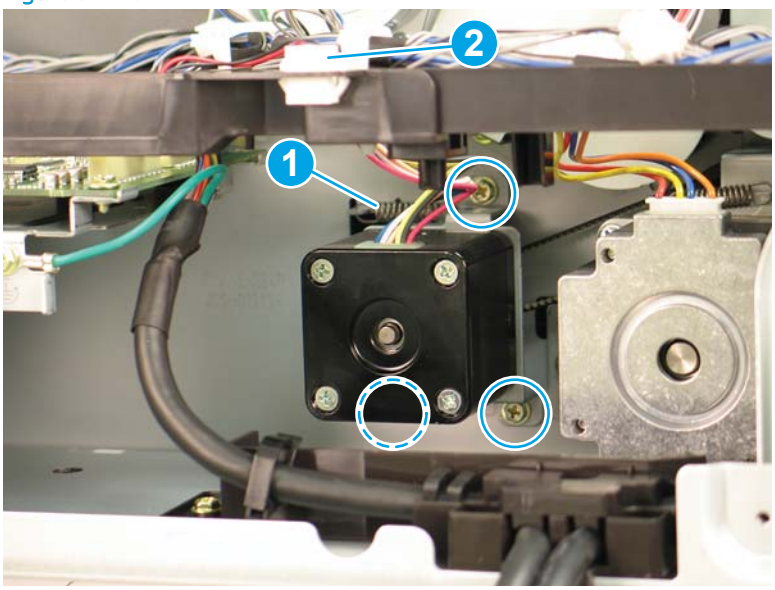
Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

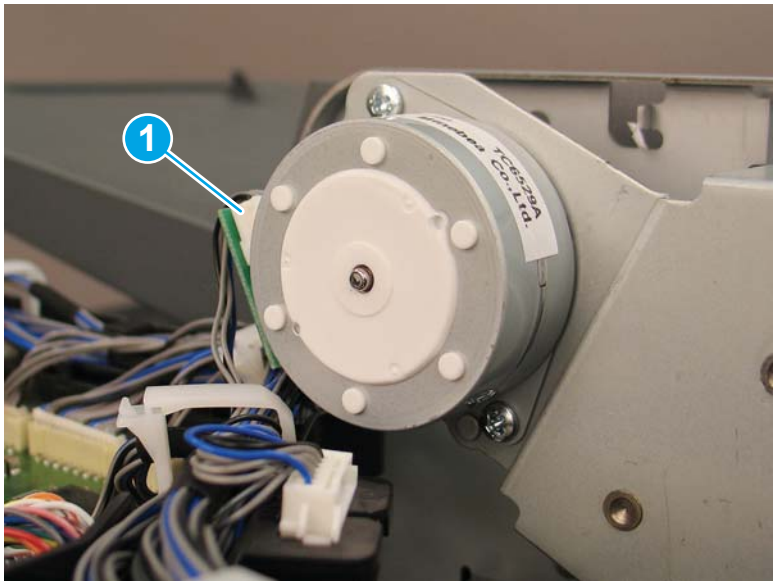
Figure 3-778 Remove the motor



Step 6: Remove the feed motor

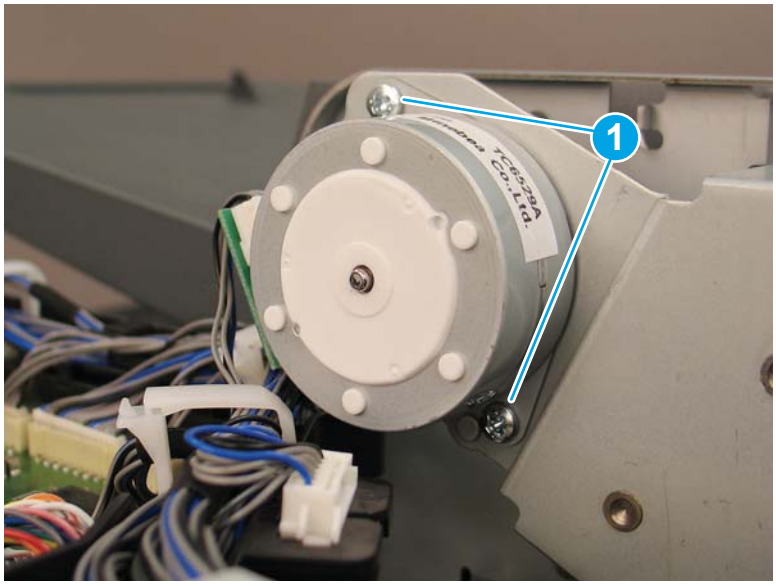
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

   Figure 3-779 Disconnect one connector

2. Remove two screws, and then remove motor.

   Figure 3-780 Remove the motor

Step 7: Remove the REGI motor

1. Remove the rear cover
2. Remove the Pre-REGI motor
3. Disconnect one connector from the motor.

TIP: Remove the connector harness from the cable retainer, and then disconnect the connector.

4. Remove one spring, loosen (do not remove) 3 screws, and then slide the motor off the screws to remove.

Reinstallation tip:

a. Reinstall the motor and lift the gear belt up to engage the motor pulley.

b. Install the tension spring.

c. Tighten the motor mount screws just enough so that the tension spring (not the motor mount screws) is providing the tension to the belt.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF PCA fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the document feeder PCA fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Document feeder PCA fan assembly part number	
SAM-JC31-00146A	Document feeder PCA fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

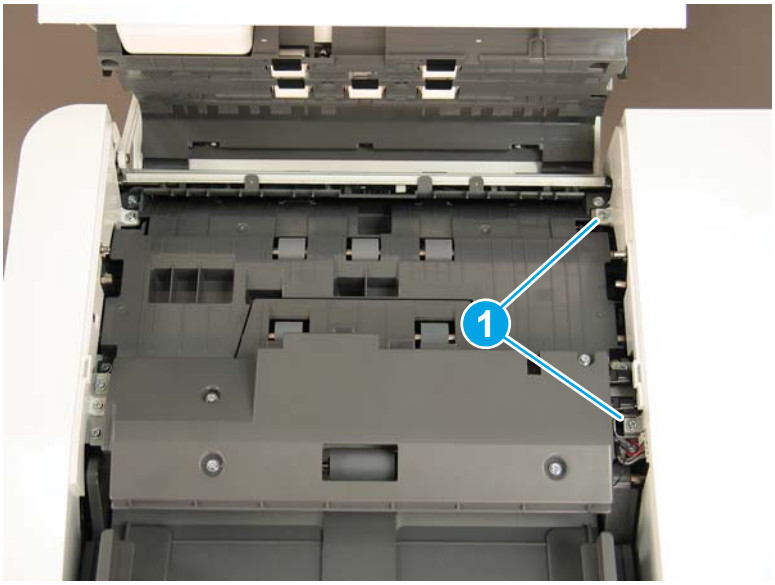
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-781 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

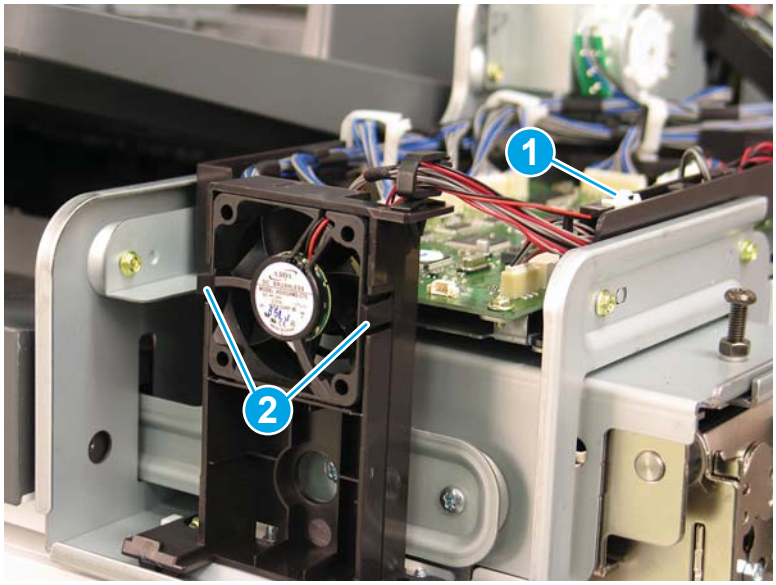
Figure 3-782 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 2: Remove the document feeder PCA fan

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two tabs (callout 2) to remove the fan.

Figure 3-783 Remove the document feeder PCA fan connector



Reinstallation tip: Install the fan with the correct orientation when reinstalling.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF contact image sensor (CIS) fan

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the CIS fan assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

CIS fan part number
CIS fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

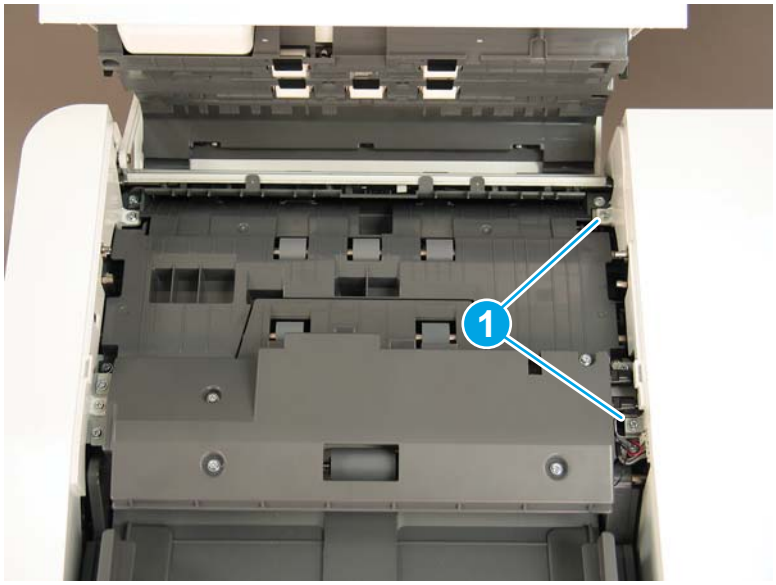
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

   Figure 3-784 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

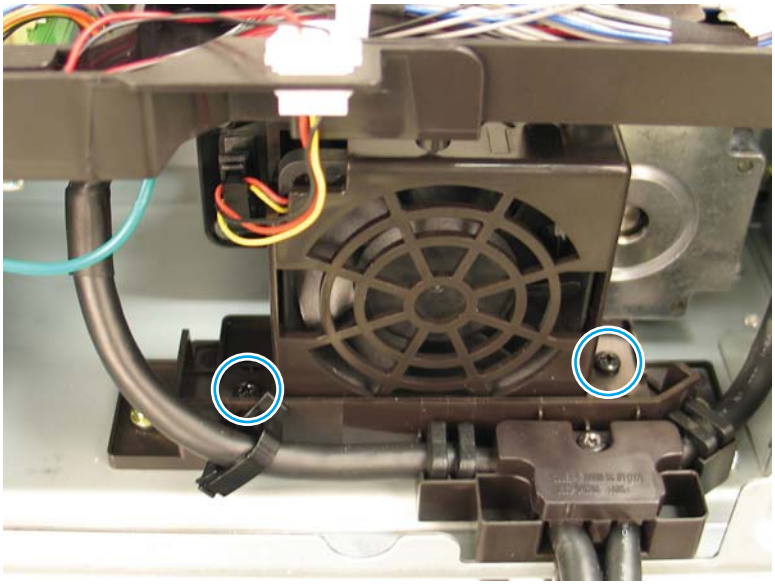
   Figure 3-785 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder CIS fan

- Remove one connector, and then remove two mounting screws to remove the fan.

Figure 3-786 Remove the document feeder PCA fan



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flow ADF ultrasonic sensor with PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover
- Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly
- Step 4: Remove the paper path cover
- Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly part number
Ultrasonic sensor with PCA assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

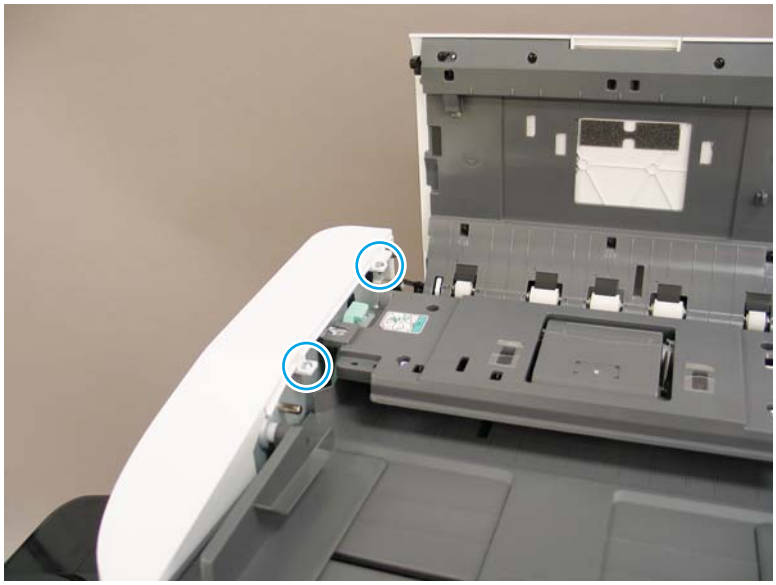
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder front cover

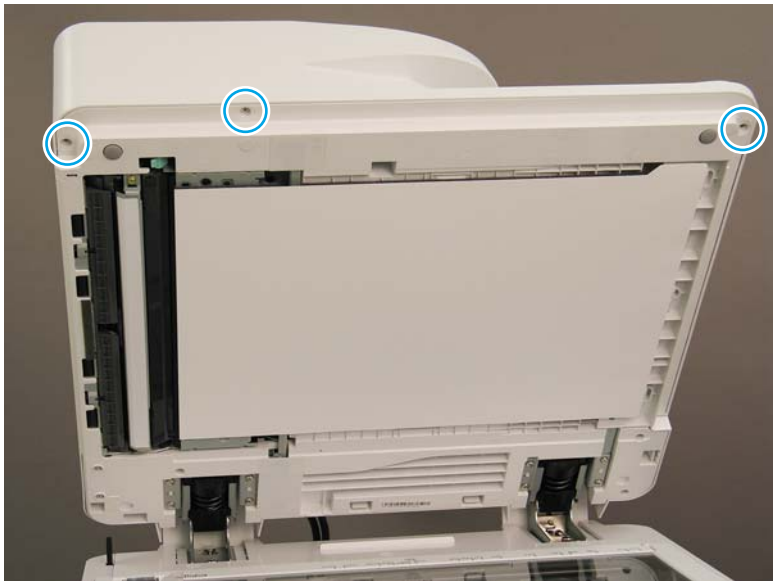
1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder front cover.

   Figure 3-787 Remove the document feeder front cover top screws

2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder front cover, and then remove the document feeder front cover.

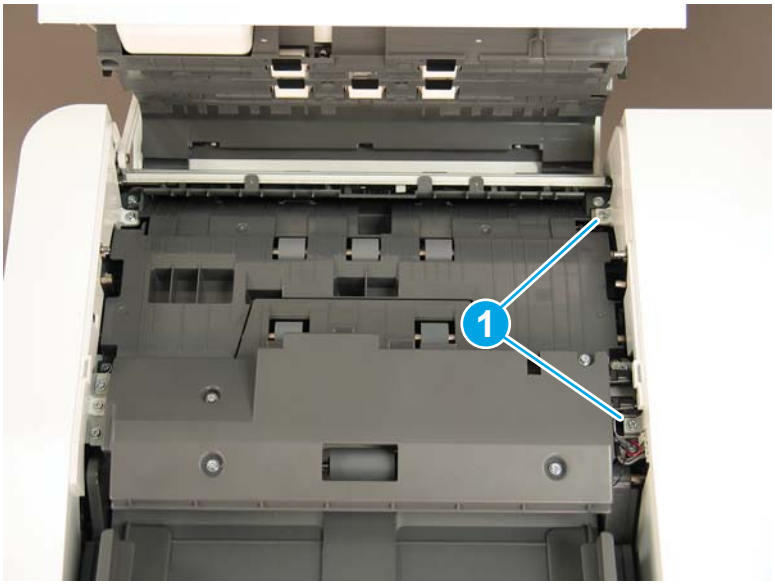
   Figure 3-788 Remove the document feeder front cover bottom screws

Step 2: Remove the document feeder back cover

1. Remove two screws from the top of document feeder back cover.

Figure 3-789 Remove the document feeder back cover top screws



2. Remove three screws from the bottom of the document feeder back cover, and then remove the document feeder back cover.

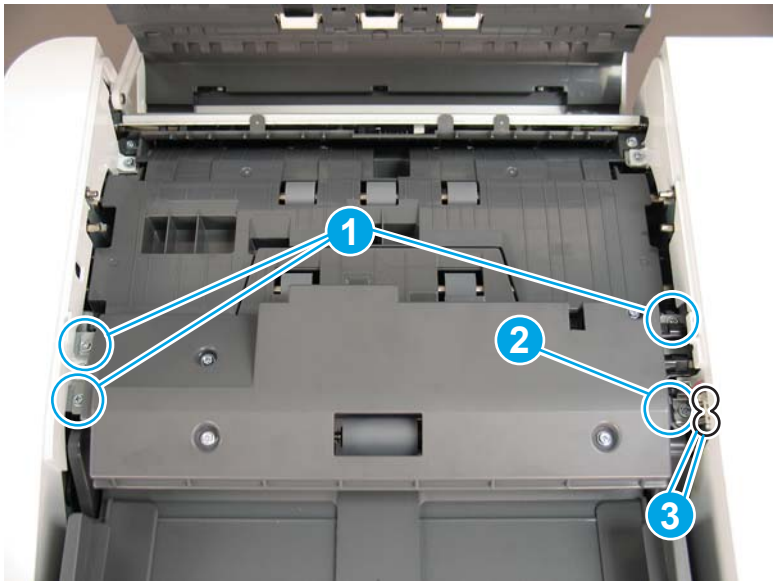
Figure 3-790 Remove the document feeder back cover bottom screws



Step 3: Remove the document feeder pickup and feed assembly

▲ Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2, including one ground wire), and then remove the pickup roller assembly.

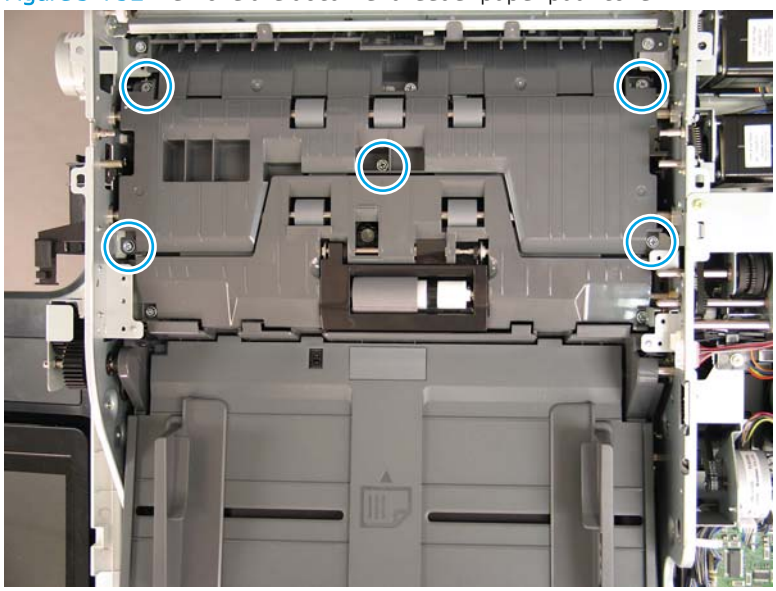
Figure 3-791 Remove the pickup roller assembly



Step 4: Remove the paper path cover

▲ Remove five screws, and then remove the paper path cover.

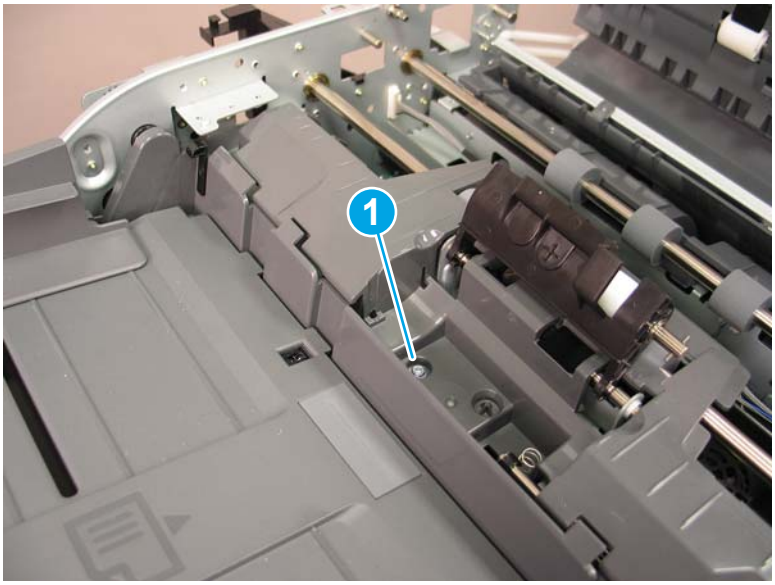
Figure 3-792 Remove the document feeder paper path cover



Step 5: Remove the ultrasonic sensor with PCA

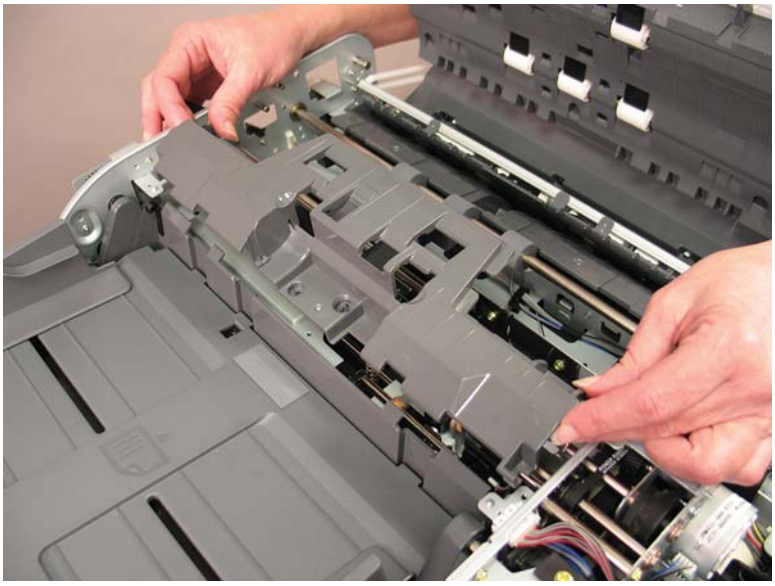
1. Remove the separation roller, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 3-793 Remove one screw



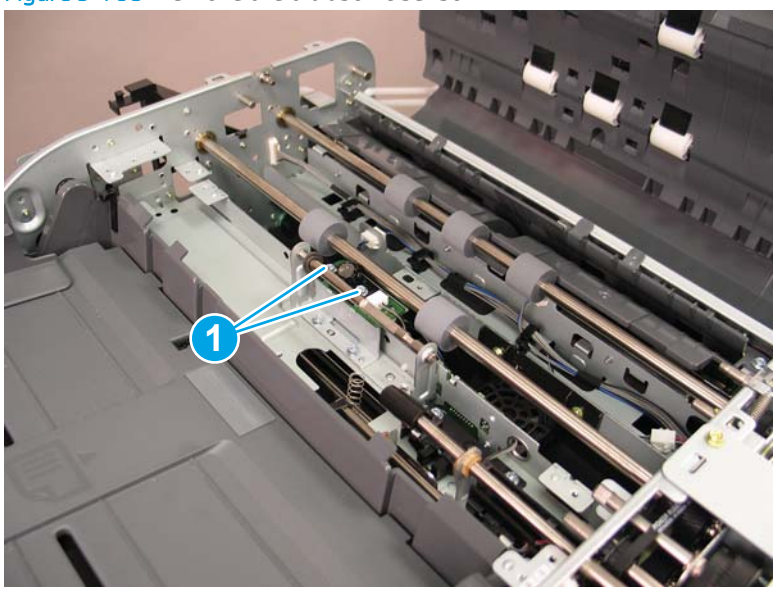
2. Remove the pick/feed cover.

Figure 3-794 Remove the pick/feed cover



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the ultrasonic sensor.

Figure 3-795 Remove the ultrasonic sensor



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

White backing

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the white backing

- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the ADF white backing.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

White backing part number	
SAM-JC63-05238A	ADF, white foam

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

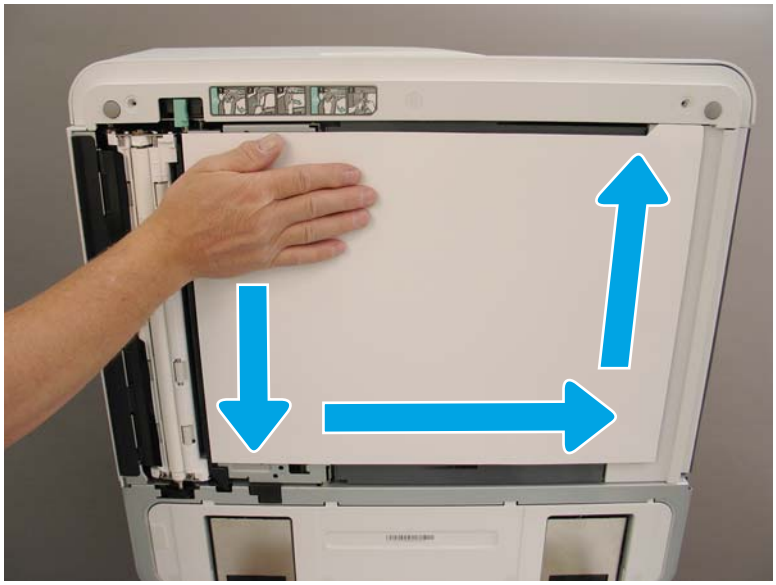
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the white backing

White backing

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Peel the white backing away to remove.
3. Position the new white backing on the scanner glass.
4. Replace any damaged or missing velcro tabs by positioning them on the new white backing.

5. Close the document feeder cover to attach the white backing.
6. Open the cover again and smooth the white backing.



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner unit (image scanner unit)

Scanner whole unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel
- Step 5: Remove the control panel
- Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles)
- Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner whole unit.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner whole unit part number	
SAM-JC97-04520C	Scanner whole unit part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.

- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

▲ Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

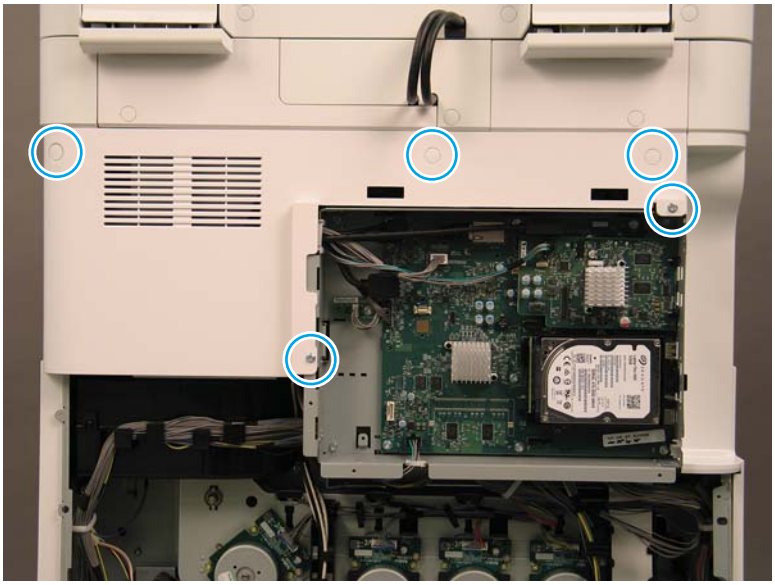
Figure 3-796 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

▲ Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-797 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit

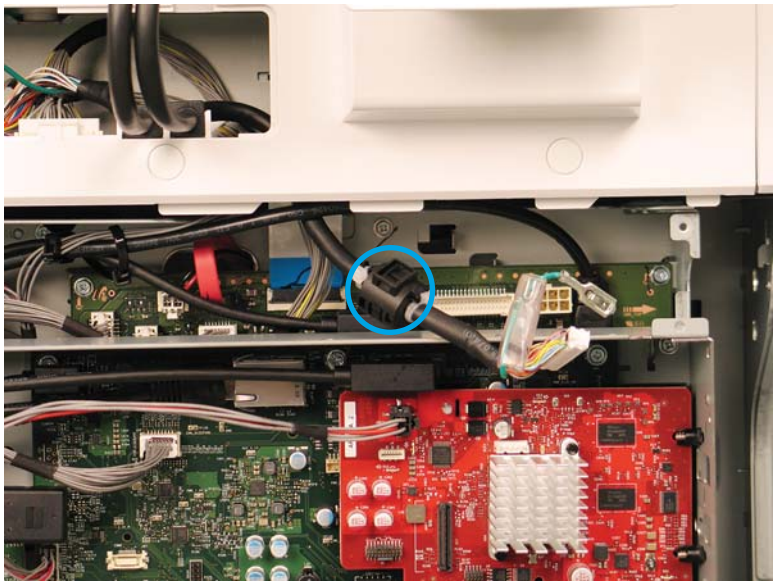
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-798 Remove document feeder connector cover



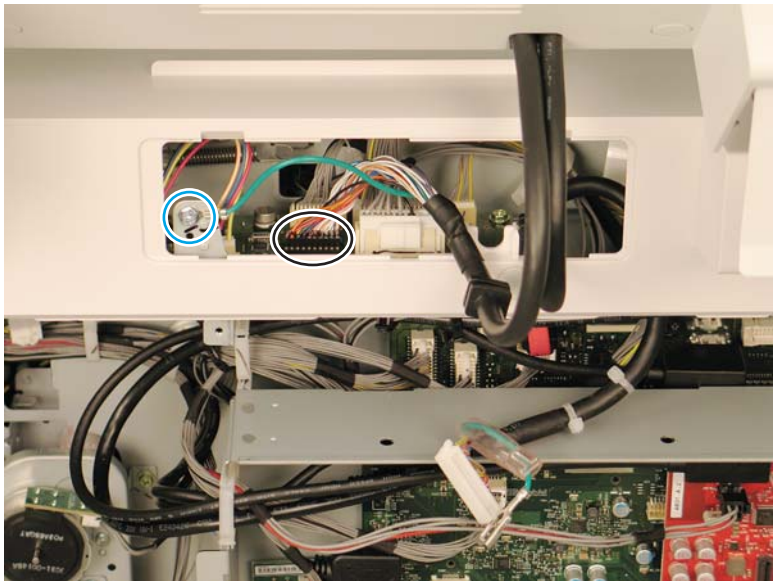
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-799 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

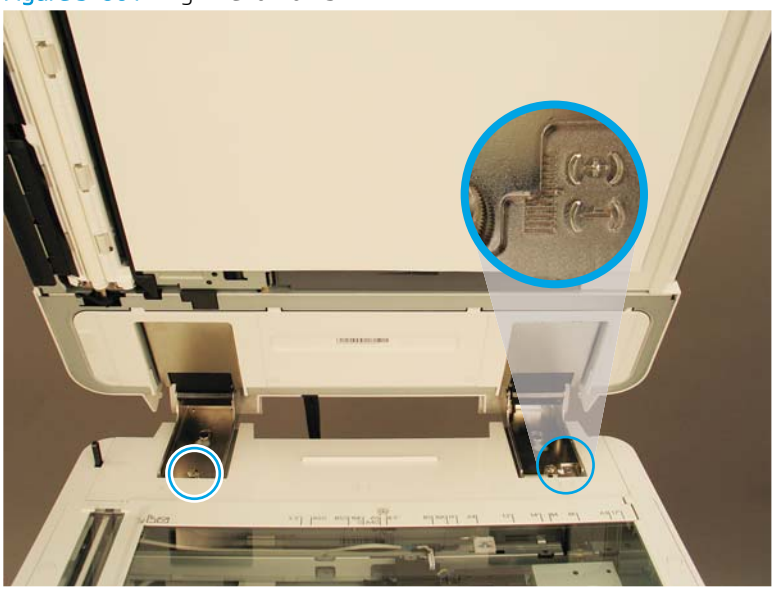
Figure 3-800 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

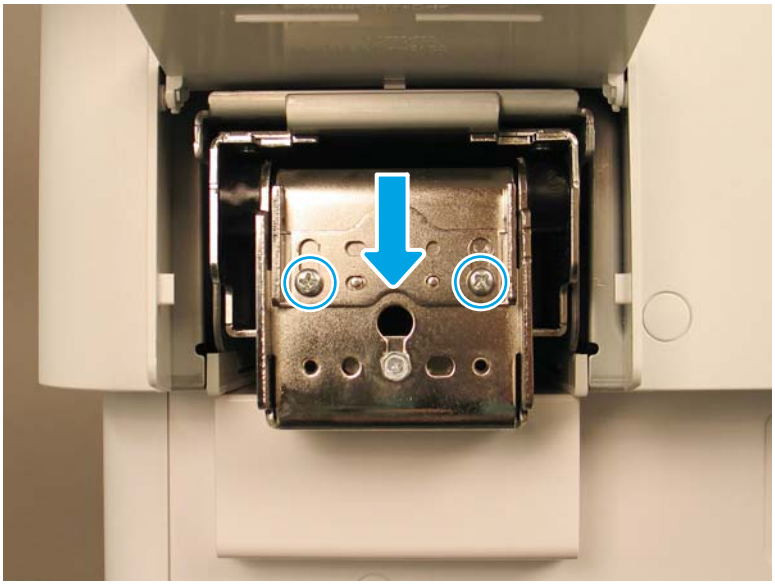
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-801 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-802 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-803 Release the document feeder



NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the control panel bezel

1. Open the document feeder, and then remove three screws.

Figure 3-804 Remove the document feeder bezel



2. Place the control panel in the upright position.
3. Gently pry the control-panel bezel from the center screw hole, and then pry from the center of the control-panel bezel to the edges to release.

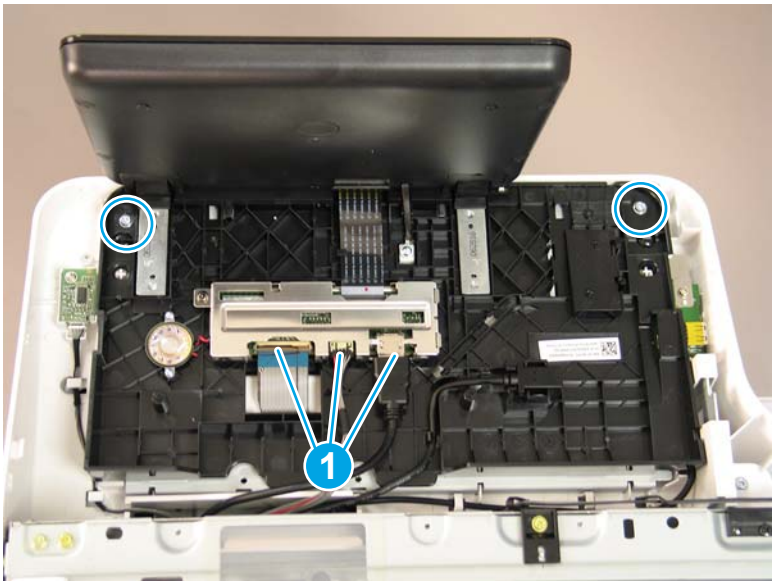
CAUTION: Do not pry against the scanner glass when removing the control-panel bezel.

Step 5: Remove the control panel

1. Place the control panel in the upright position.

2. Disconnect one FFC, one connector, and one HDMI connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws on the control-panel frame.

Figure 3-805 Remove the control panel screws and disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB interconnect cable from its retainer and reroute out of the way.

Figure 3-806 Remove the USB interconnect cable



4. Lift the control panel up from the front to release the tabs at the rear, and then remove the control panel.

Reinstallation tip: Align the four tabs at the rear or control panel, and then snap in the control panel.

Step 6: Remove the keyboard (z bundles)

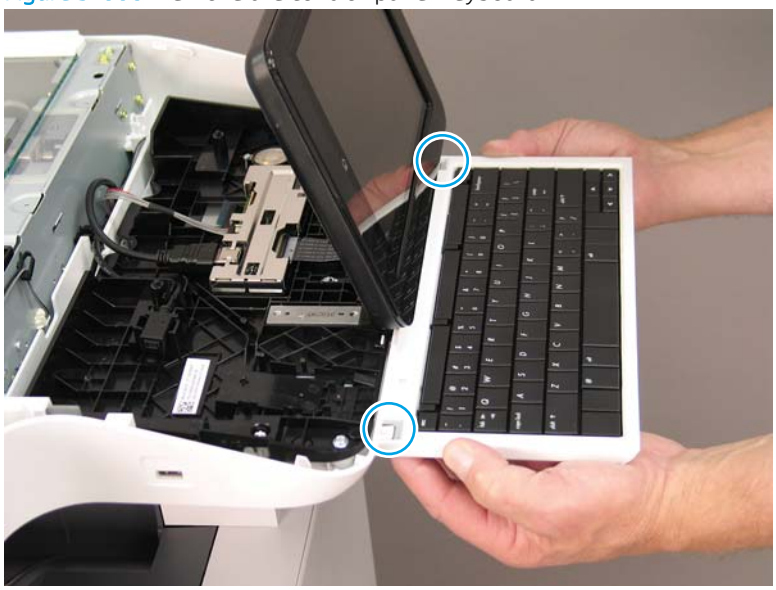
1. Disconnect one FFC.

Figure 3-807 Disconnect one FFC



2. Slide the keyboard out, and then depress two latches to remove the keyboard.

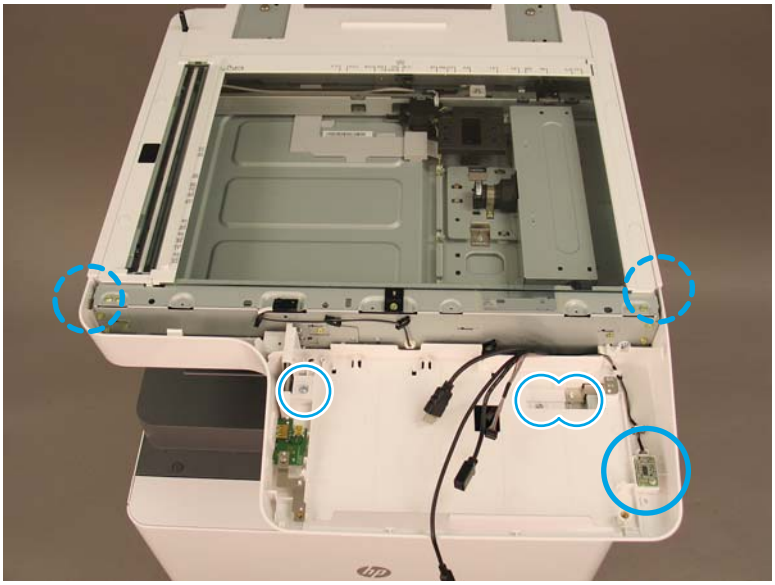
Figure 3-808 Remove the control-panel keyboard



Step 7: Remove the scanner whole unit

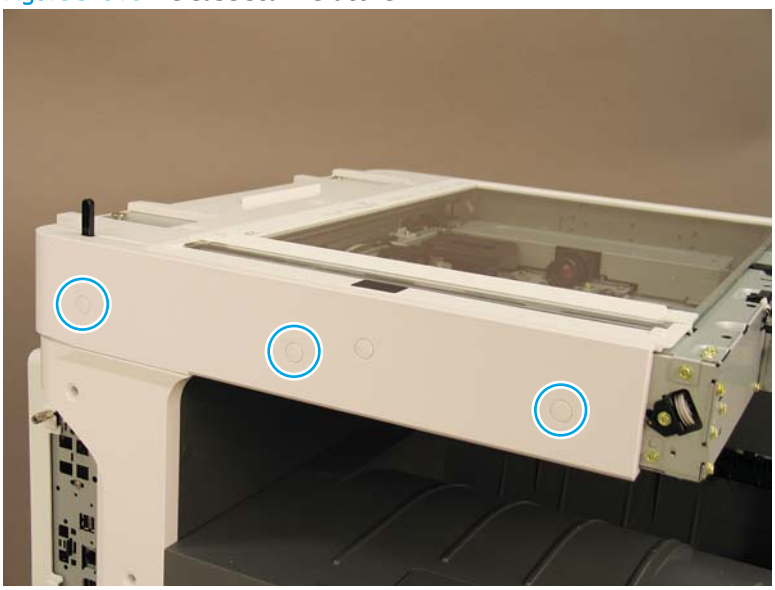
1. Remove six screw-caps and six screws. It might be necessary to use leverage near the left hinge and then pull the cover toward the back.

Figure 3-809 Remove screw-caps and screws and release scan-front cover



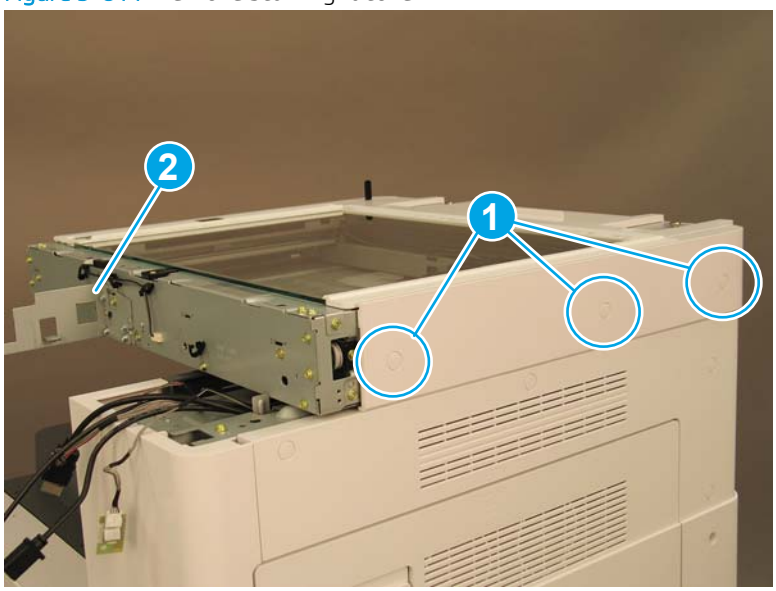
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 3-810 Release scan-left cover



3. Remove three screw-caps and three screws (callout 1). Release the scan-right cover.

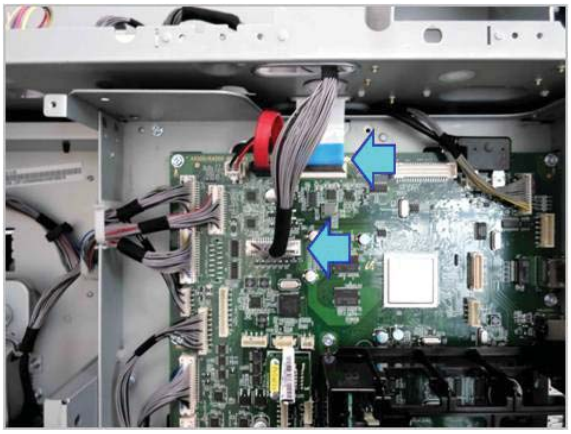
Figure 3-811 Remove scan-right cover



NOTE: At the front of the scanner, remove the bracket (callout 2) and install it on the new scanner whole unit.

4. Disconnect the two scan cables and one FFC at the top of the main board.

Figure 3-812 Disconnect scan cables



5. Remove three screws from the left.

Figure 3-813 Remove screws



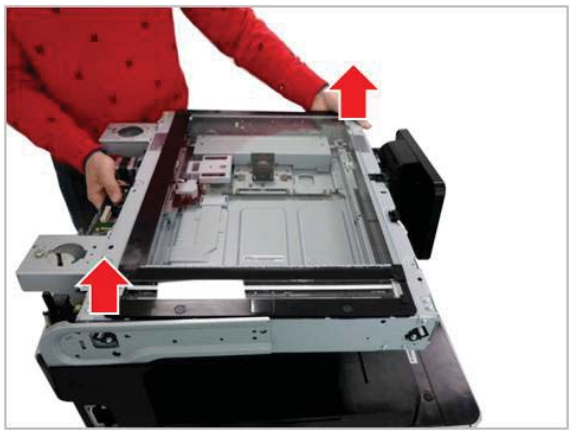
6. Remove two screws from the right.

Figure 3-814 Remove screws



7. Lift up and release the image scanner unit.

Figure 3-815 Lift up and release image scanner unit



NOTE: After reassembly, utilize the target to adjust the scanner location as necessary.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the scan bed by lowering the left side first and then lower the right. Align the screw holes on the right, and then install the screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstall the lower cover and ensure the cables are routed through the opening for the control panel and the bracket is properly aligned in the cover.

Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scan glass

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scan glass
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner glass.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner glass part number	
SAM-JC97-04522B	Scanner glass part number

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

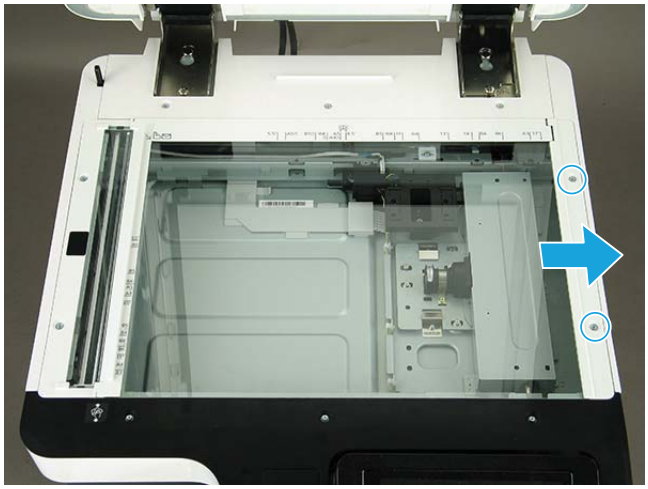
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the scan glass

- Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

Figure 3-816 Remove scan glass



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

LED lamp module

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the LED lamp module assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

LED lamp module assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04521A	LED lamp module assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

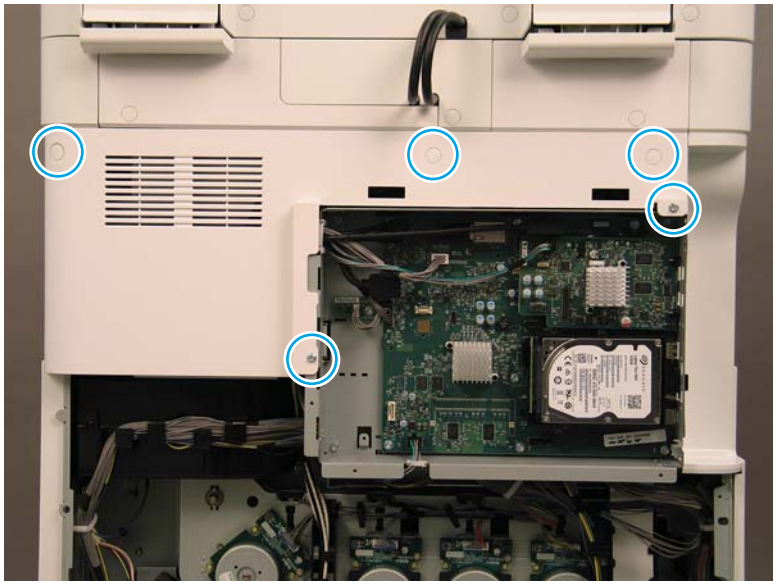
Figure 3-817 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-818 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 3: Remove the flow ADF whole unit

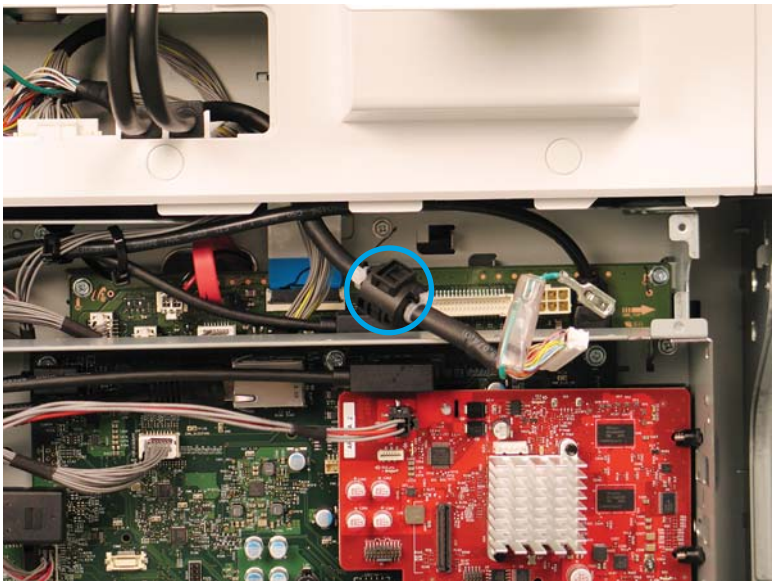
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-819 Remove document feeder connector cover



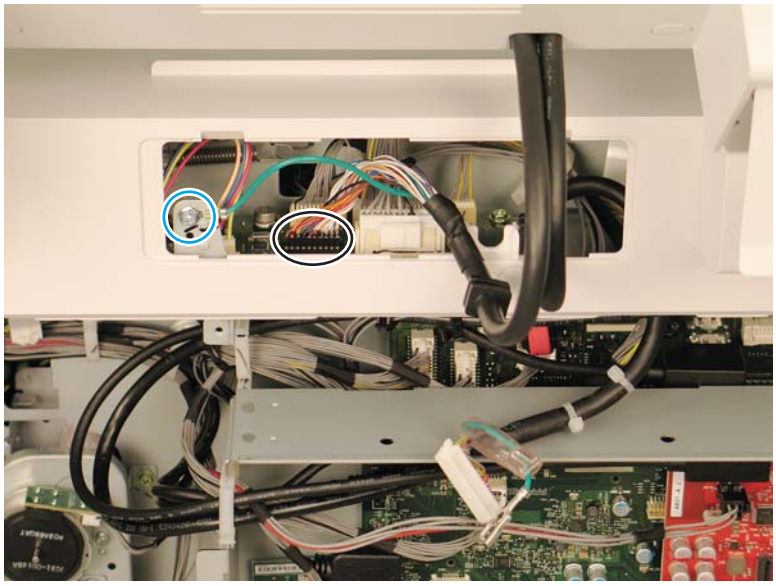
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-820 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

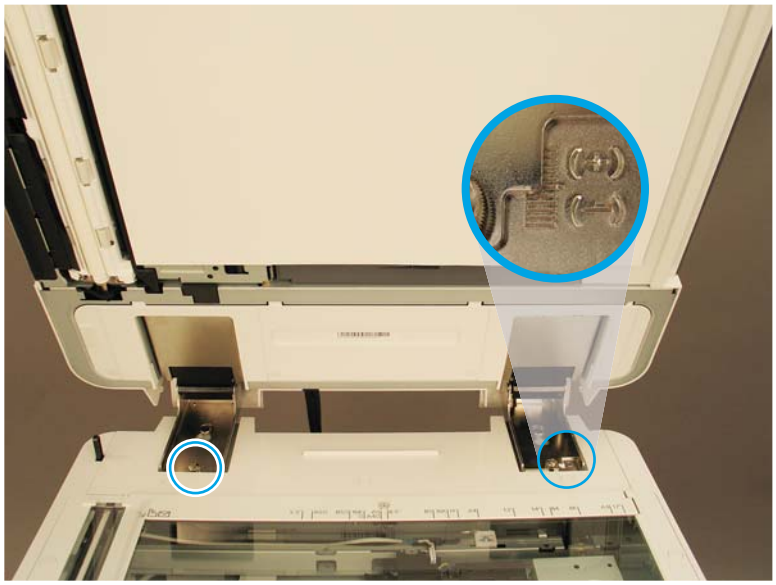
Figure 3-821 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

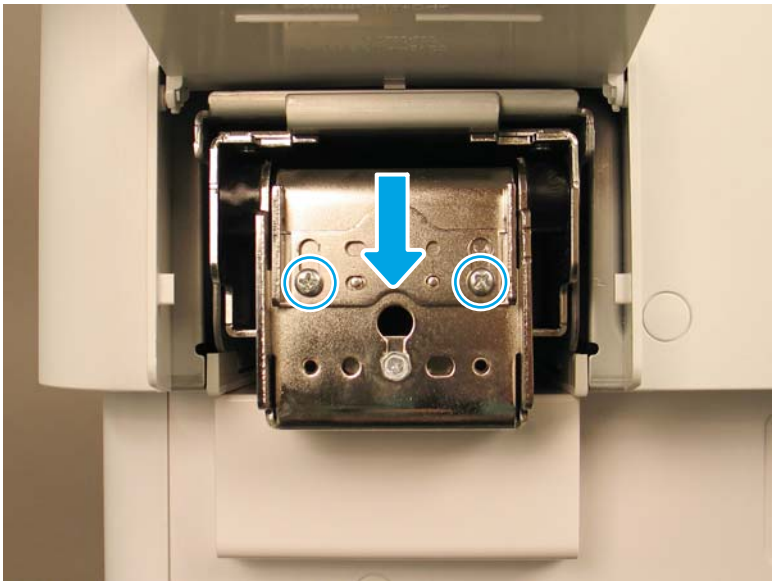
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-822 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-823 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-824 Release the document feeder

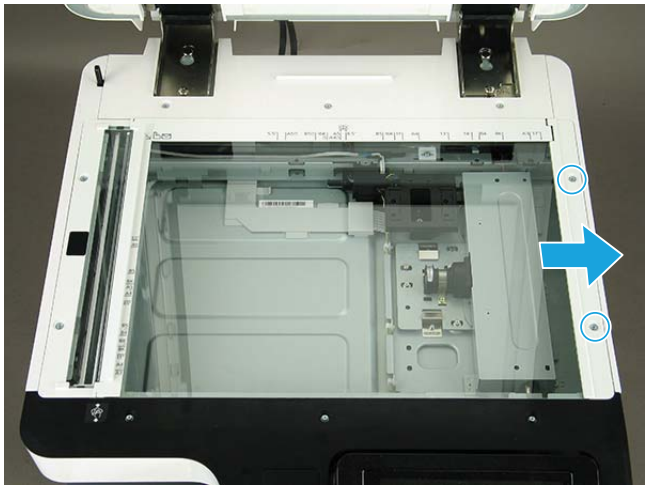


NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

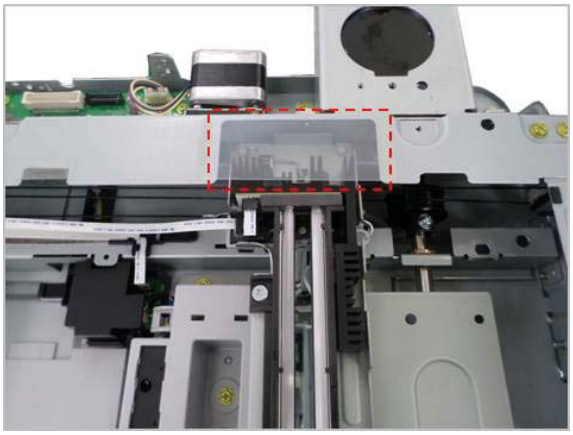
Figure 3-825 Remove scan glass



Step 5: Remove the LED lamp module

1. Remove the transparent tape.

Figure 3-826 Remove transparent tape



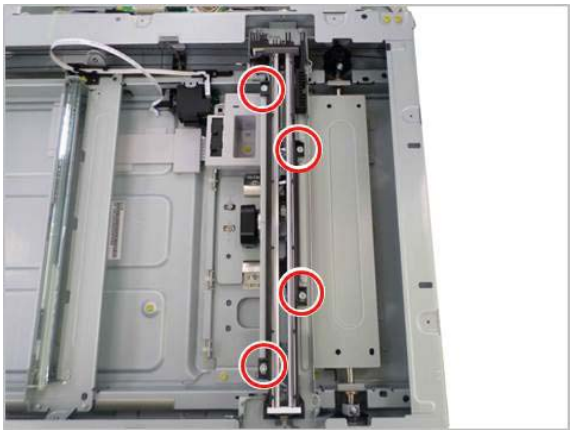
2. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 3-827 Disconnect cable



3. Remove four screws. Release the LED lamp module.

Figure 3-828 Remove screws and release LED lamp module



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scanner imaging unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the scanner imaging unit assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scanner imaging unit assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04523B	Scanner imaging unit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

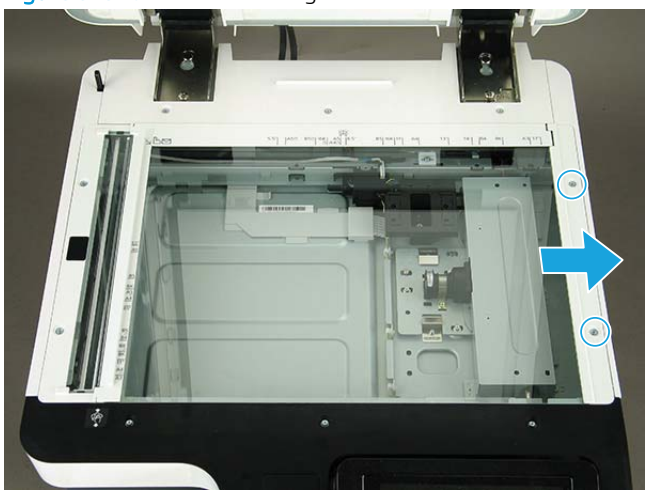
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

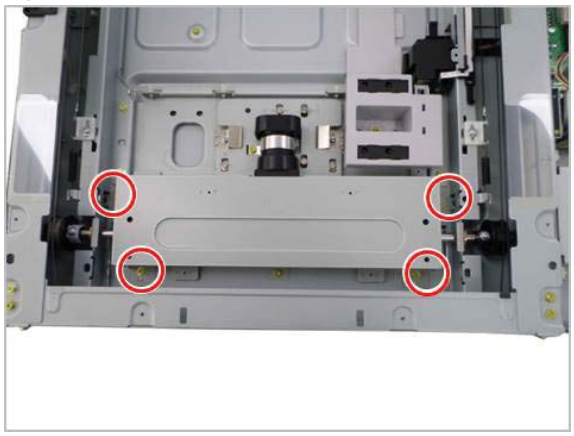
Figure 3-829 Remove scan glass



Step 2: Remove the scanner imaging unit

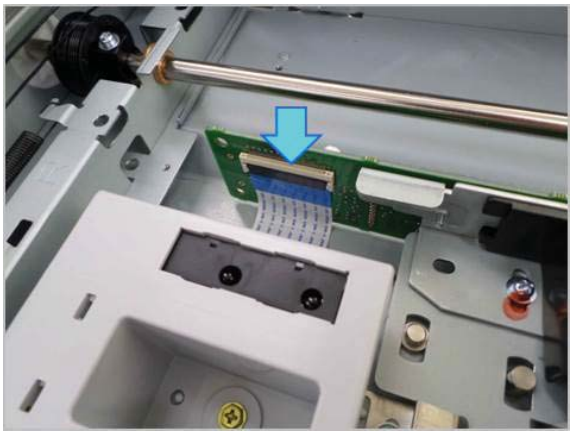
1. Remove four screws, and then release the imaging unit cover.

Figure 3-830 Remove screws and release imaging unit cover



2. Disconnect the flat cable.

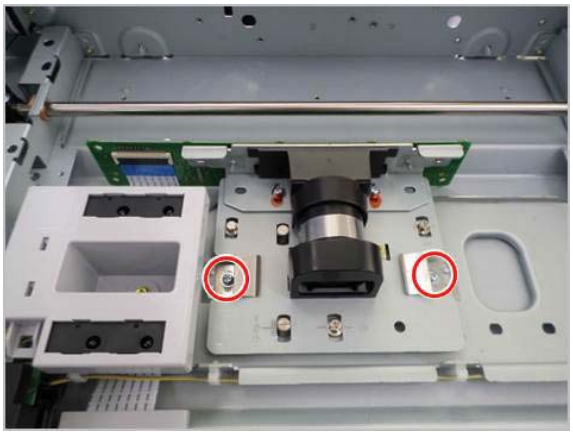
Figure 3-831 Disconnect flat cable



3. Remove two screws and release the scanner imaging unit.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not remove or adjust the other two screws shown as they require factory setting only.

Figure 3-832 Remove screws and release scanner imaging unit



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Scan joint board

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter cover
- Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit
- Step 4: Remove the scan joint board
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Scan joint board assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Scan joint board assembly part number	
SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

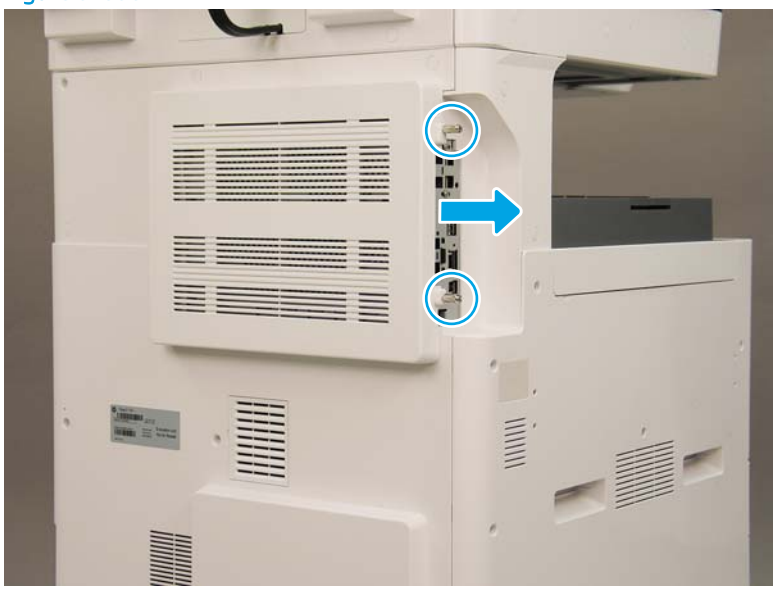
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the formatter cover

- Unscrew two captive thumbscrews on the formatter cover. Slide the formatter cover to the left, and then to the right to remove.

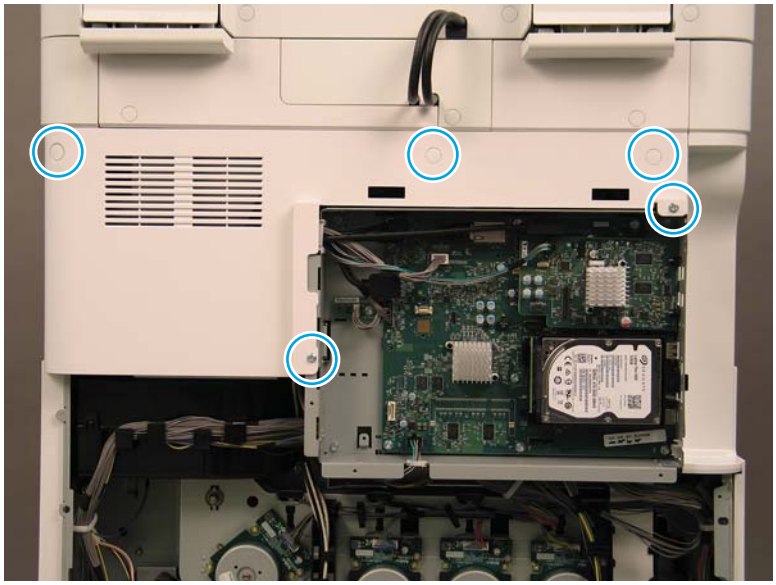
Figure 3-833 Remove the formatter cover



Step 2: Remove the upper rear cover

- Remove three screw-caps and five screws. Lift the upper rear cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-834 Remove the upper rear cover



Step 3: Remove the document feeder whole unit

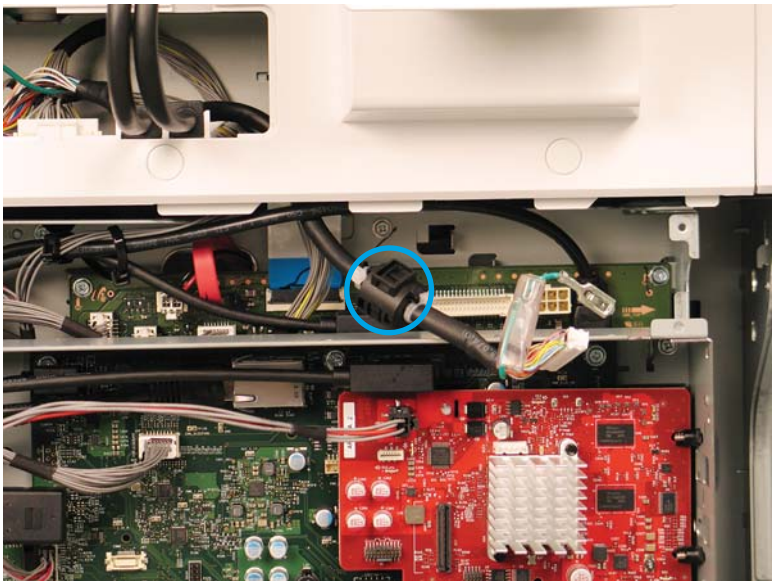
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

Figure 3-835 Remove document feeder connector cover



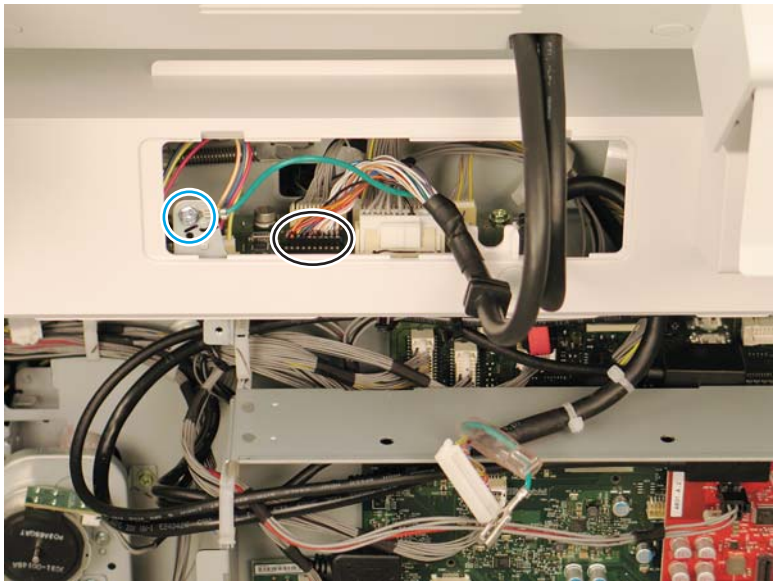
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

Figure 3-836 Remove the cable choke



3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

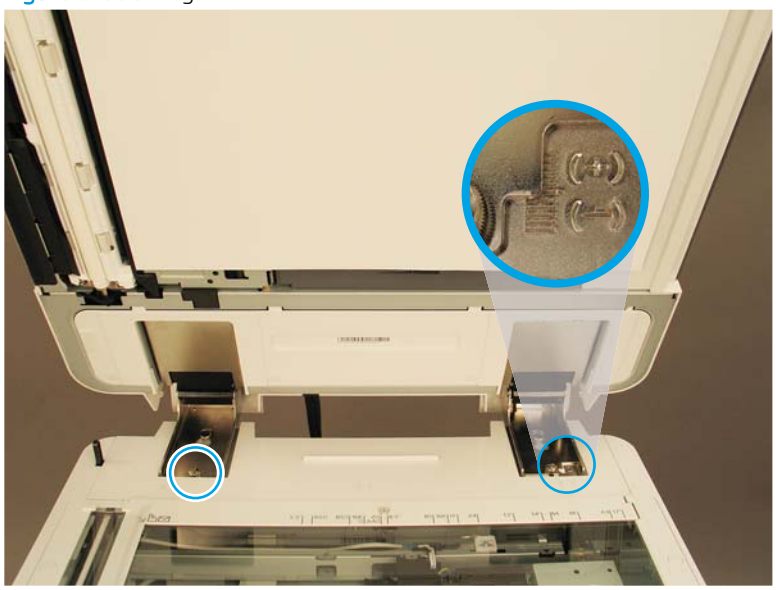
Figure 3-837 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

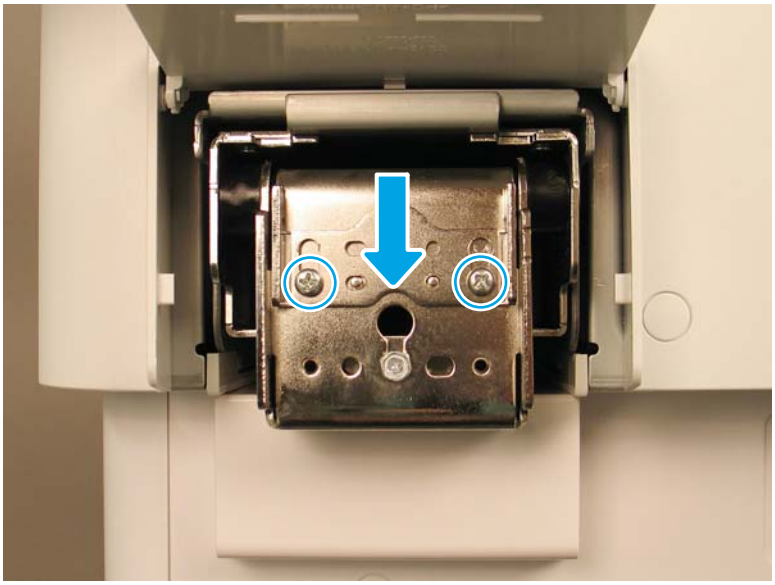
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-838 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-839 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-840 Release the document feeder

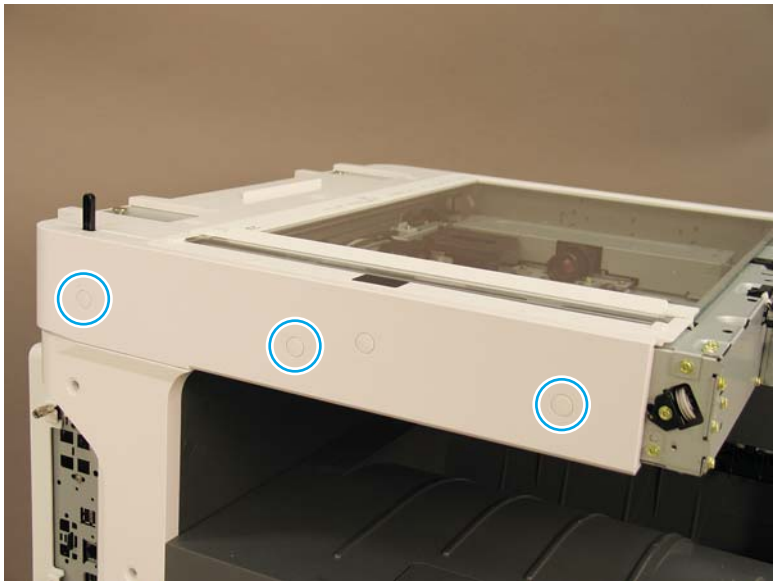


NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 4: Remove the scan joint board

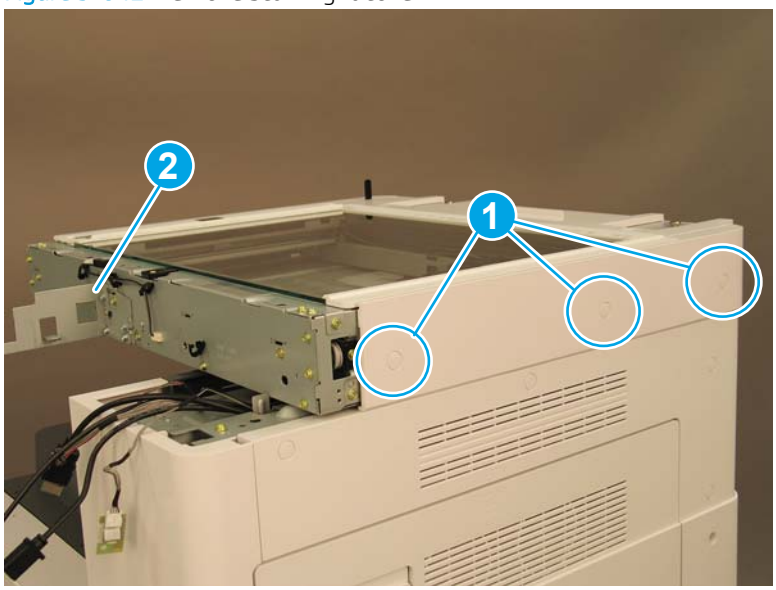
1. Remove three screw-caps and three screws. Release the scan-left cover.

Figure 3-841 Release scan-left cover



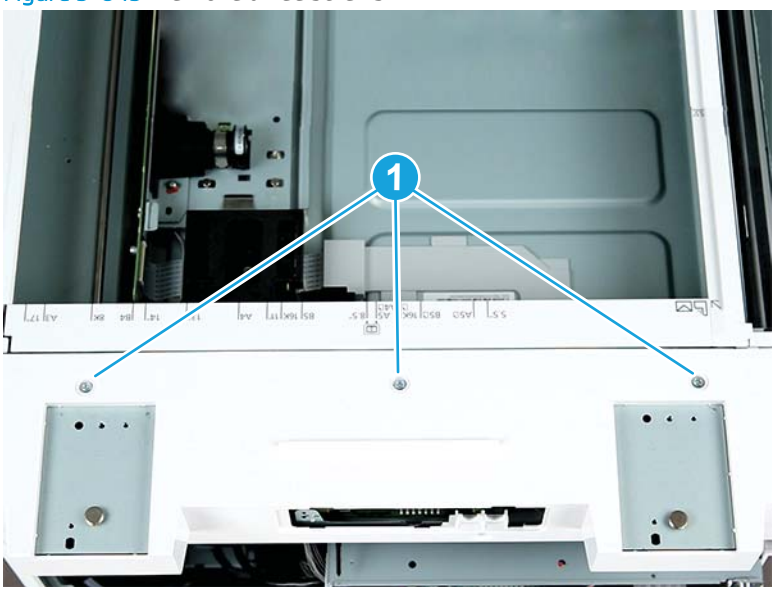
2. Remove three screw-caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-right cover.

Figure 3-842 Remove scan-right cover



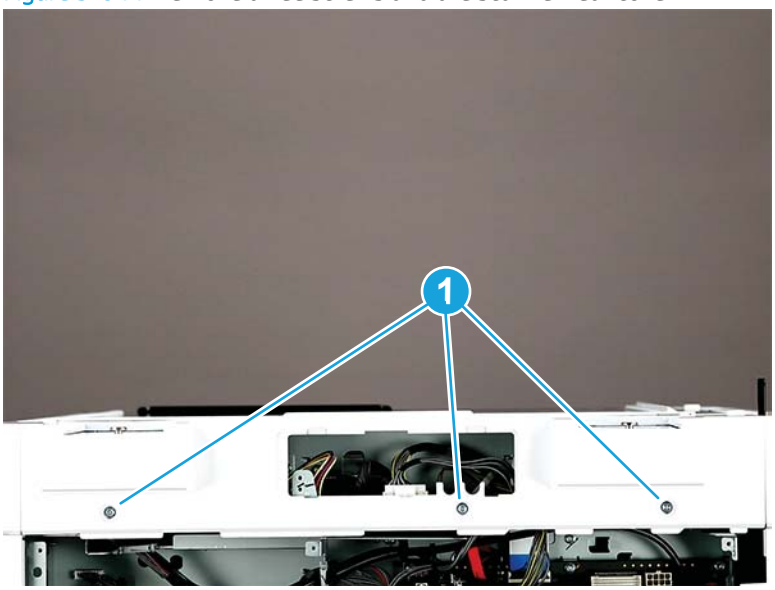
3. At the top of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws.

Figure 3-843 Remove three screws



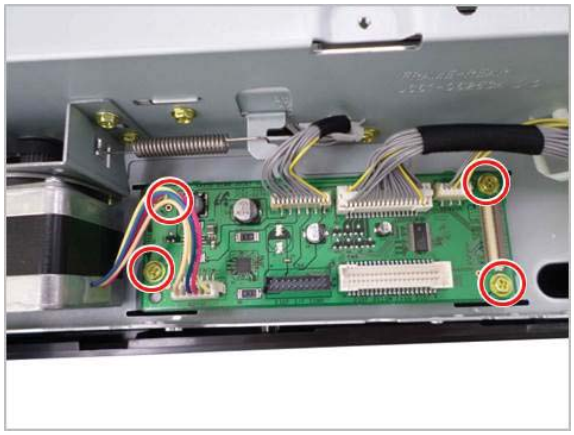
4. At the back of the scanner, remove three screw caps and three screws, and then remove the scan-rear cover.

Figure 3-844 Remove three screws and the scanner rear cover



5. Disconnect all harnesses. Remove four screws, and then release the scan joint board.

Figure 3-845 Remove screws and release scan joint board



NOTE: There are two empty connectors.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

APS sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit
- Step 2: Remove the scanner glass
- Step 3: Remove the APS sensor
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the APS sensor assembly.

Click here to view a video of this procedure.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

APS sensor assembly part number	
SAM-JC97-04507A	APS sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder whole unit

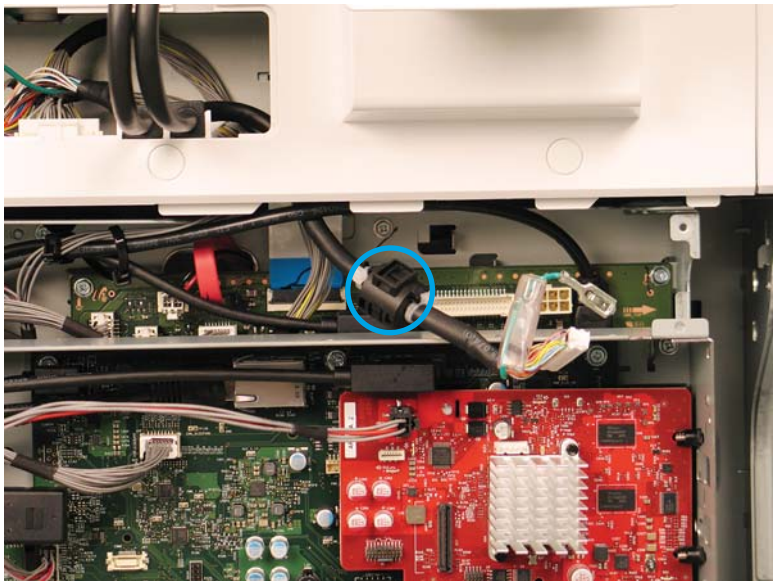
1. Open the document feeder cover, and then remove the document feeder connector cover.

   Figure 3-846 Remove document feeder connector cover

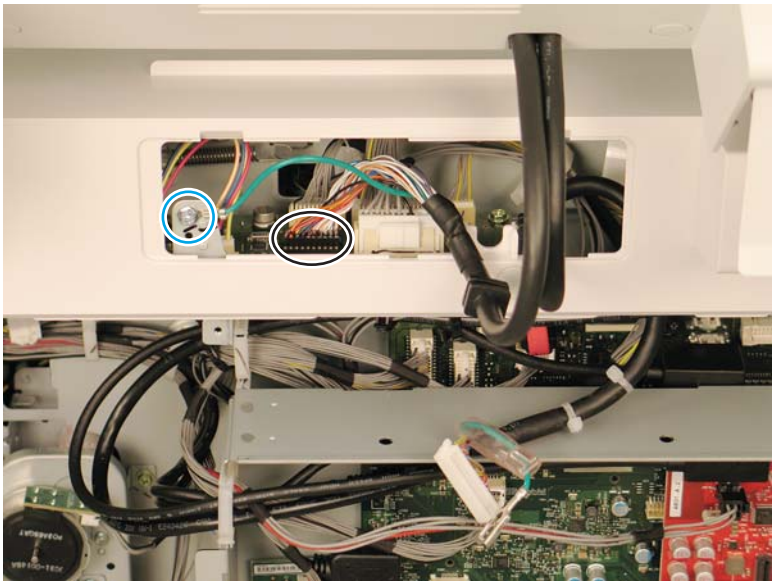
2. Remove the plastic cable choke from the wire harness, and then disconnect the document feeder harness from the main board. Disconnect the insulated ground wire from the chassis.

   Figure 3-847 Remove the cable choke

3. Disconnect the document feeder harness from the scan joint board. Remove one connector and one grounding wire.

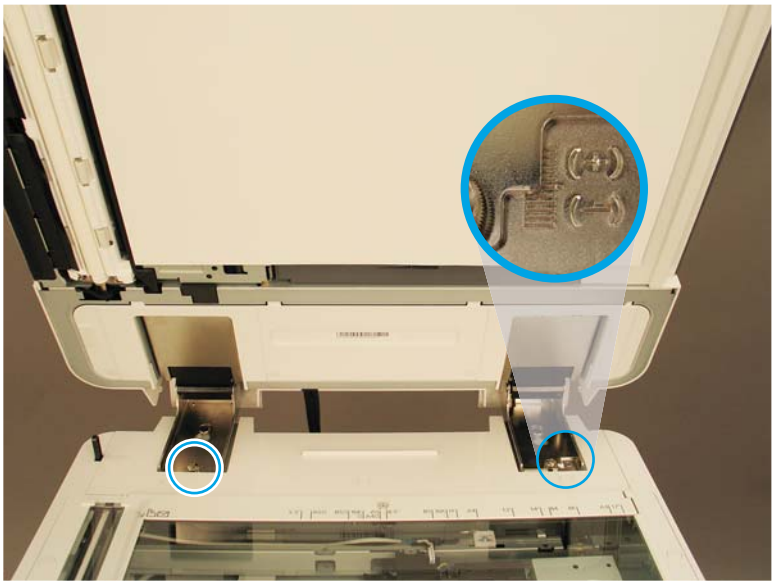
Figure 3-848 Disconnect document feeder harness



4. Release two hinge stops on the back of the document feeder to allow the document feeder to open to a full 90°.

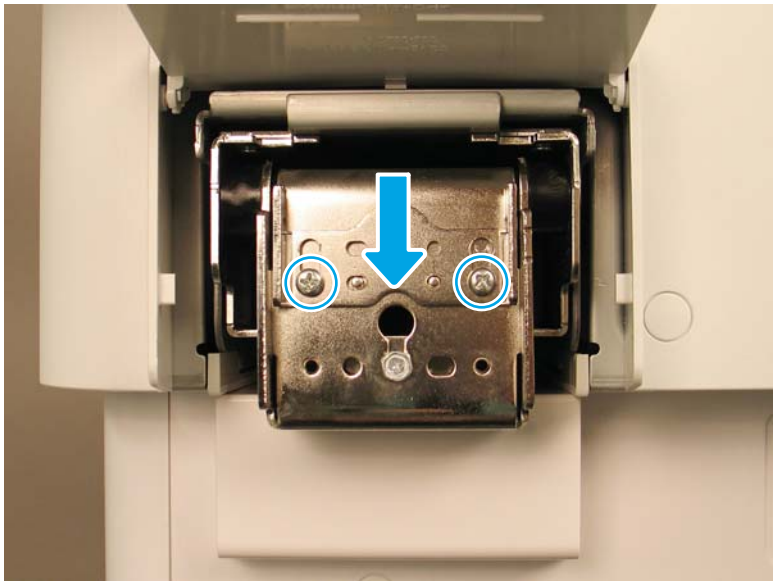
IMPORTANT: Note the alignment marks on the hinge stops. Any new document feeder must be reinstalled with the same alignment.

Figure 3-849 Alignment marks



5. Remove two screws on each hinge stop.

Figure 3-850 Remove screws



6. Pull back and then lift up to release the document feeder unit.

Figure 3-851 Release the document feeder

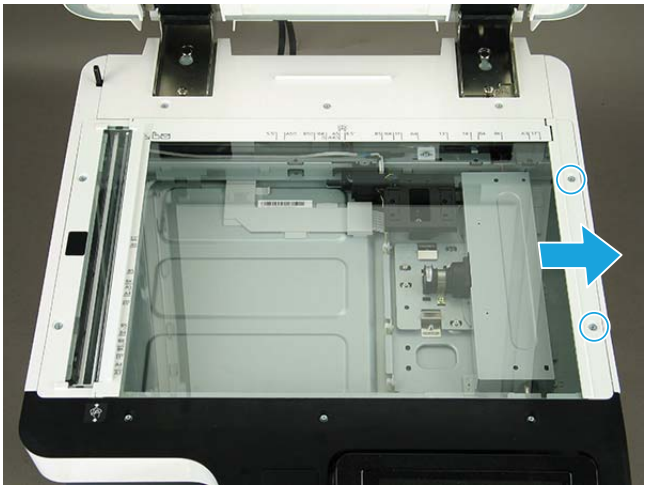


NOTE: Complete a shading test and a skew alignment after replacing the document feeder unit.

Step 2: Remove the scanner glass

▲ Open the document-feeder cover, remove two screws, and then slide the scan glass to the right to remove it.

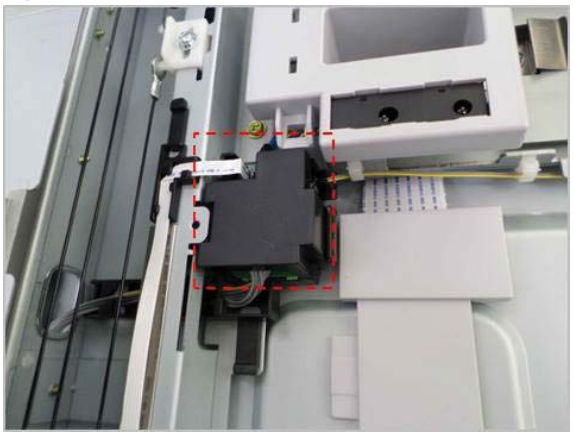
Figure 3-852 Remove scan glass



Step 3: Remove the APS sensor

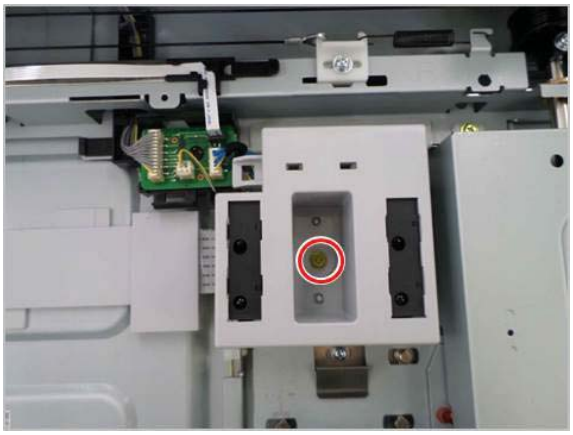
1. Remove the joint board cover.

Figure 3-853 Remove joint board cover



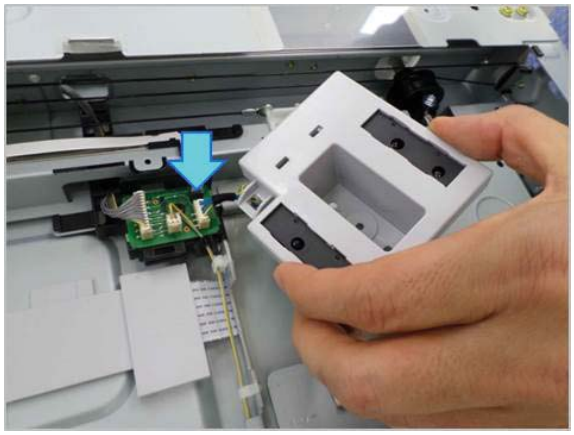
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 3-854 Remove screw



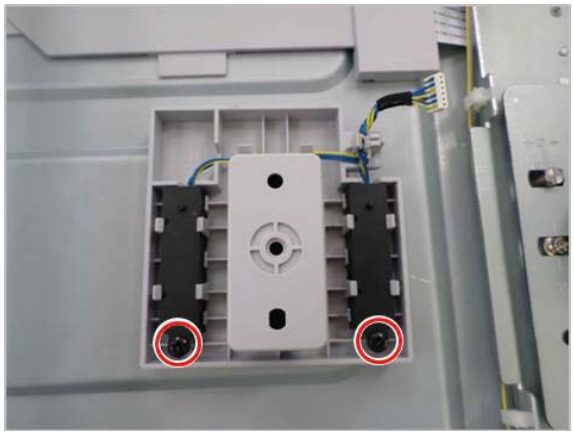
3. Disconnect the harness.

Figure 3-855 Disconnect harness



4. Remove two screws. Release the APS sensor.

Figure 3-856 Remove screws and release APS sensor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the printer right door
- Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF right door.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF right door part number	
SAM-JC90-01387A	DCF right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

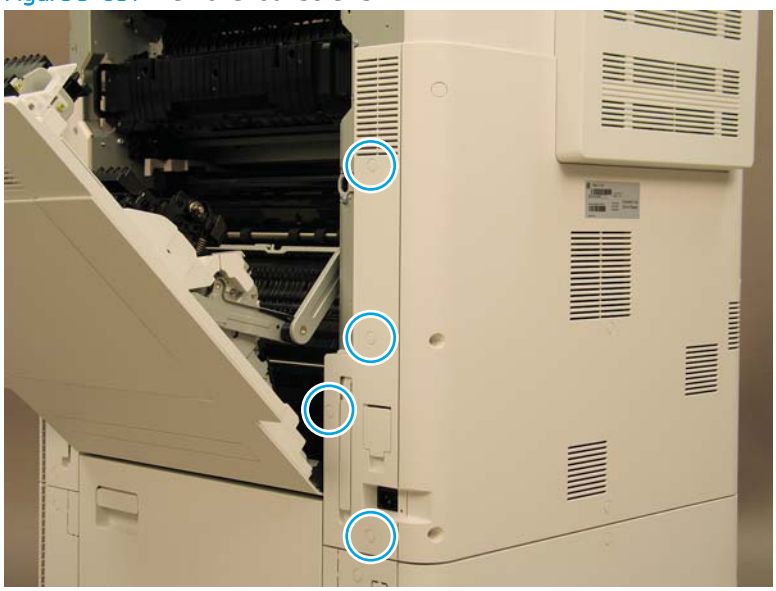
Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover

1. Open the right door.

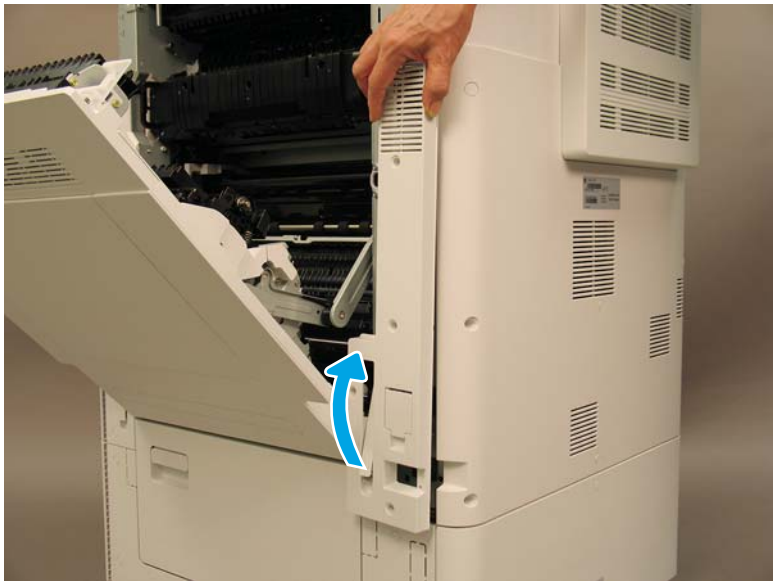
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-857 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

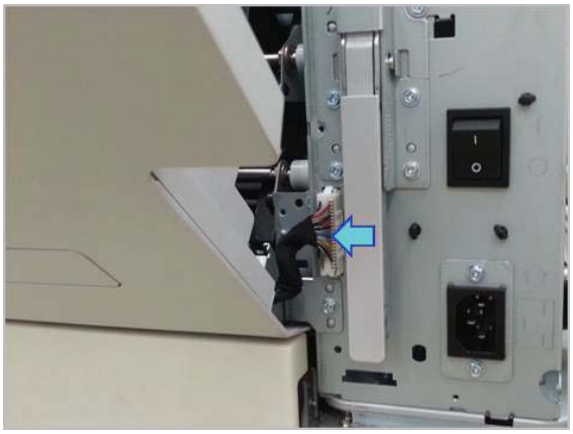
Figure 3-858 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the printer right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

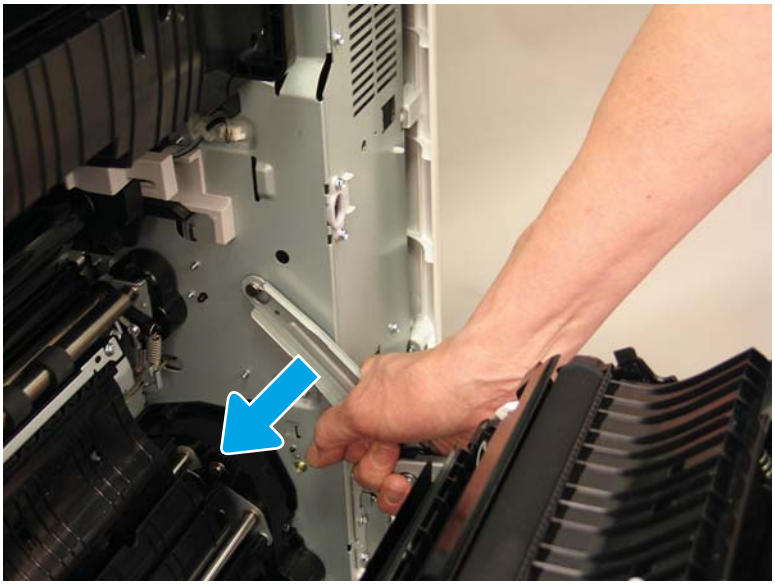
Figure 3-859 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

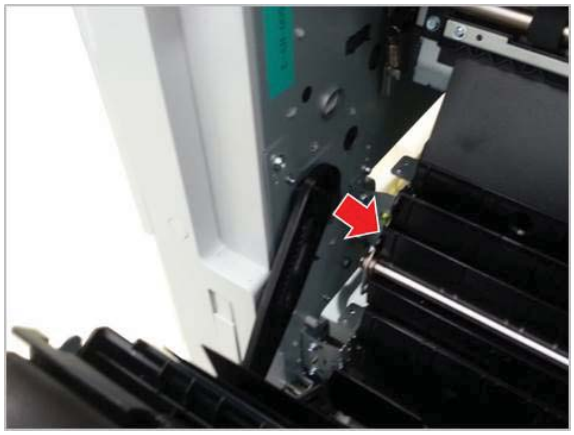
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-860 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

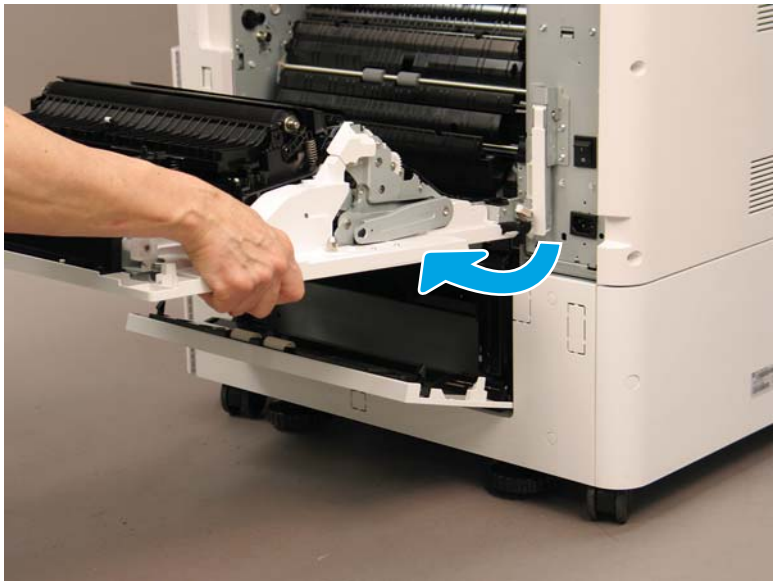
Figure 3-861 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-862 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

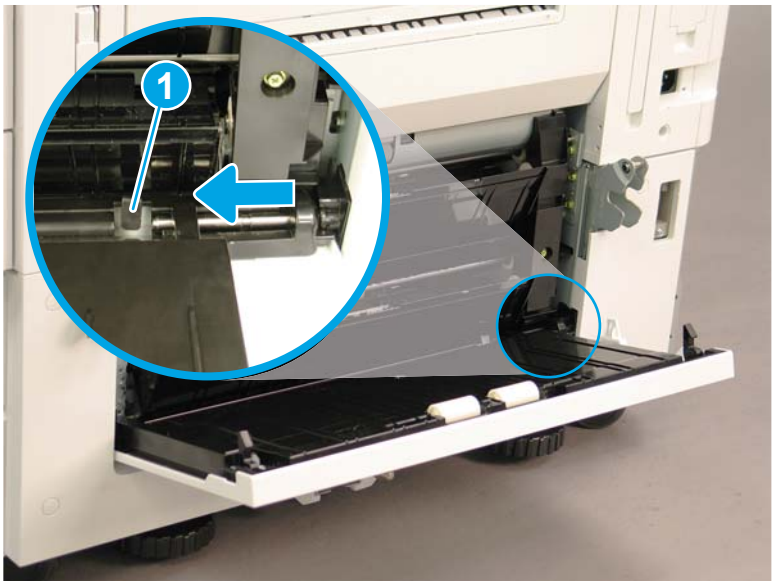
1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 3-863 Remove the lower right cover



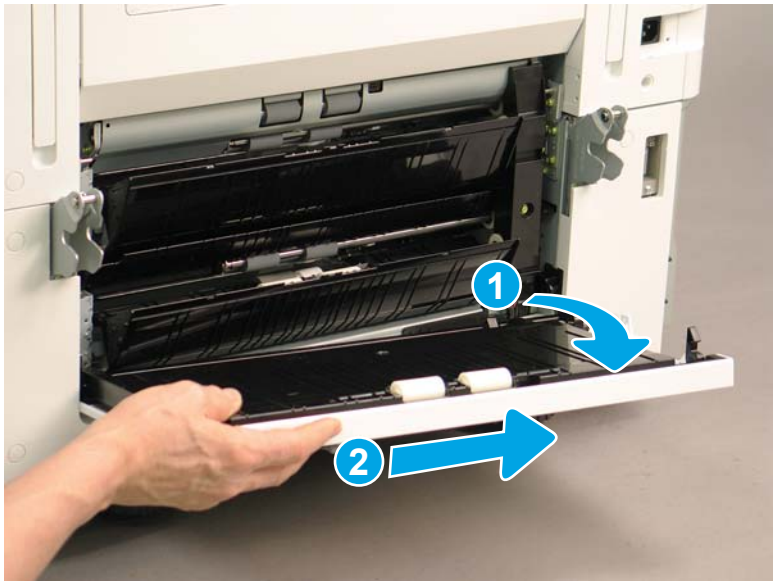
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 3-864 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 3-865 Remove the DCF right door



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01135A	DCF motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

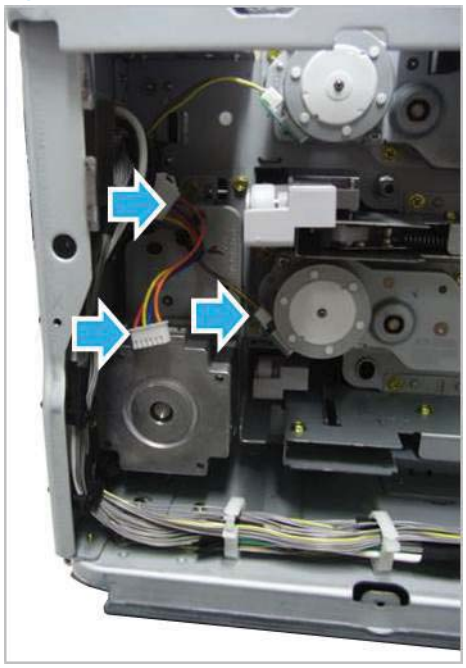
Figure 3-866 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor

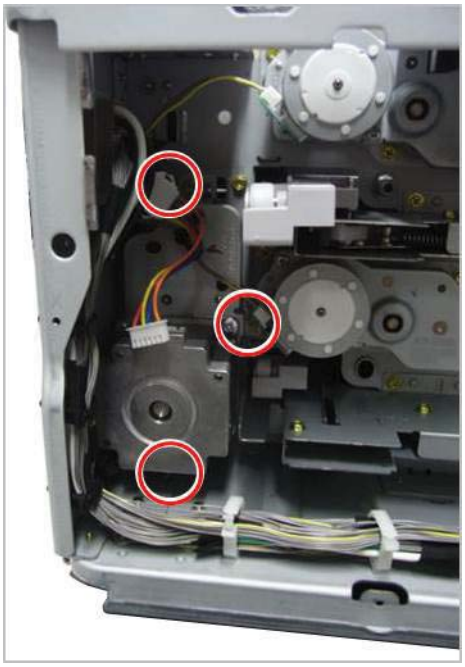
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then open one retainer.

Figure 3-867 Disconnect two connectors and open one retainer



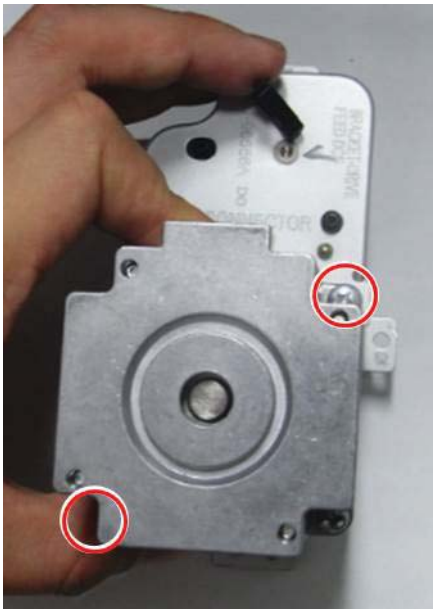
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 3-868 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 3-869 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01063B	DCF pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

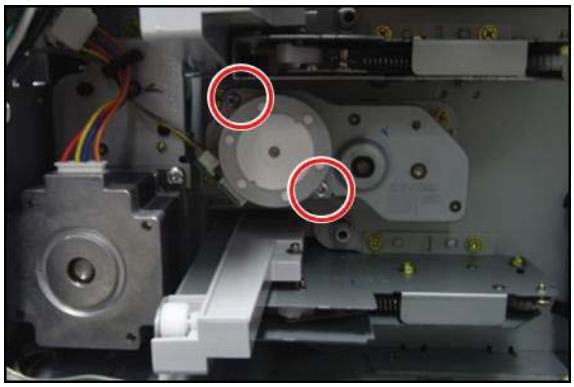
Figure 3-870 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then remove the DCF pickup motor.

Figure 3-871 Remove the DCF pickup motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF PCA part number	
SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the DCF rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

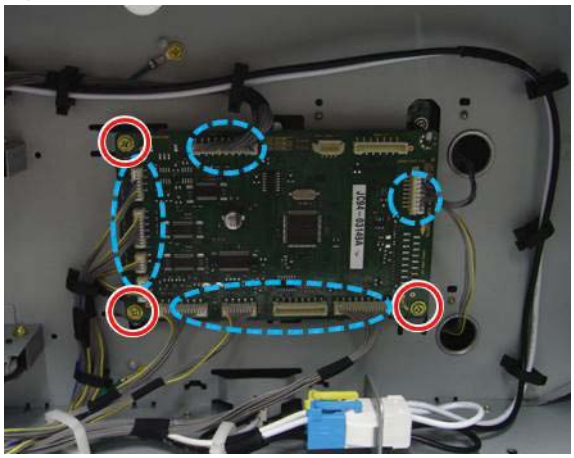
Figure 3-872 Remove the DCF rear cover



Step 2: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA

▲ Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 3-873 Remove the DCF PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the printer right door
- Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door
- Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the DCF pickup units.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

DCF pickup units part numbers	
SAM-JC90-01679A	First pickup assembly
SAM-JC90-01680A	Second pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

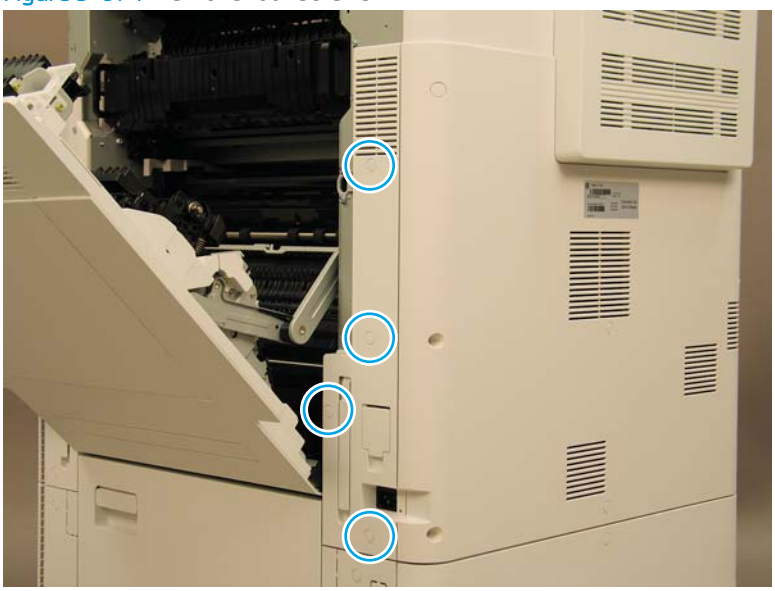
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the printer right rear cover

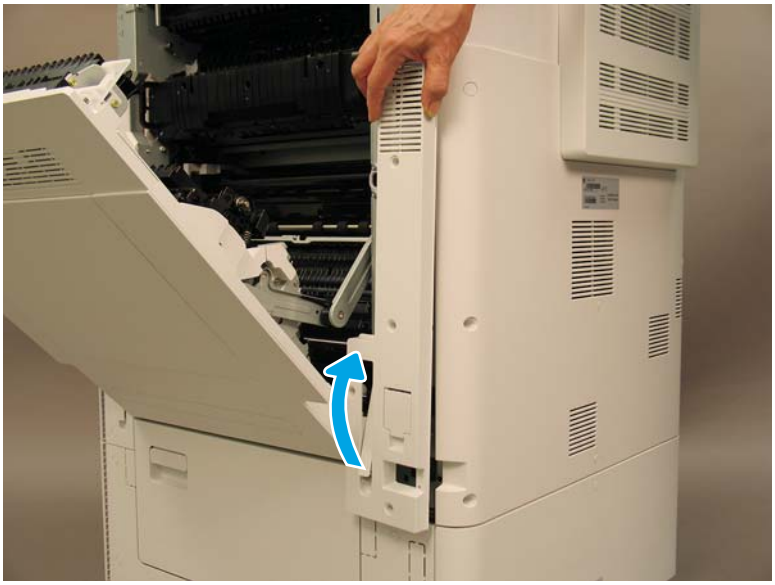
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screw-caps and four screws.

Figure 3-874 Remove four screws



3. Lift the handle and remove the right rear cover.

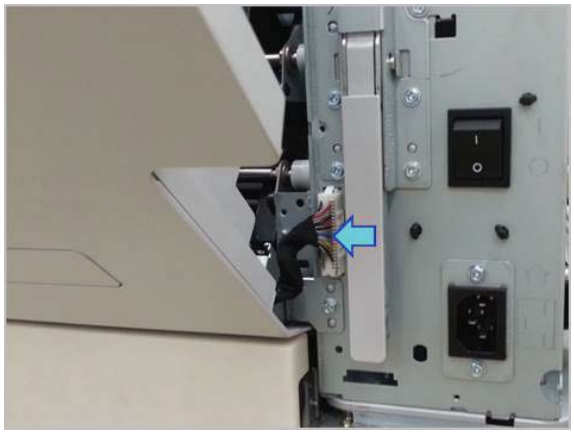
Figure 3-875 Remove the right rear cover



Step 2: Remove the printer right door

1. Disconnect the right door connector by moving it side-to-side until it releases.

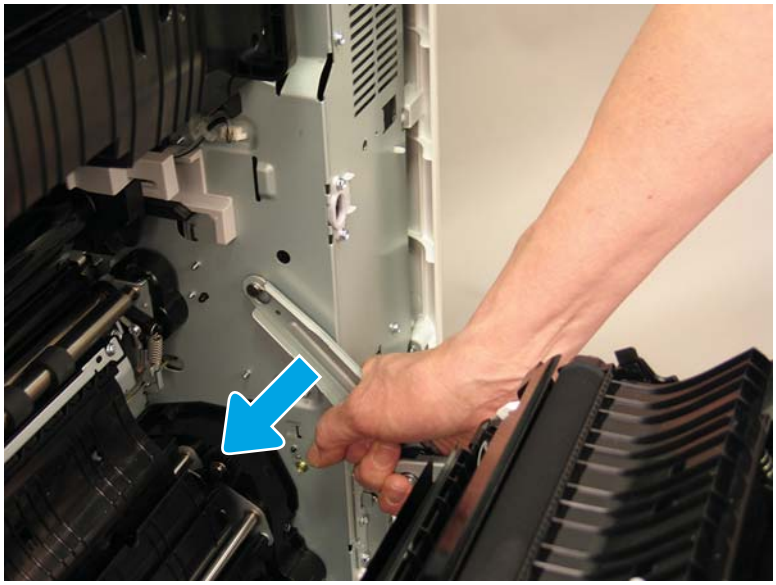
Figure 3-876 Disconnect one connector



2. Slightly raise the right door and carefully release the right hinge from the hinge pin.

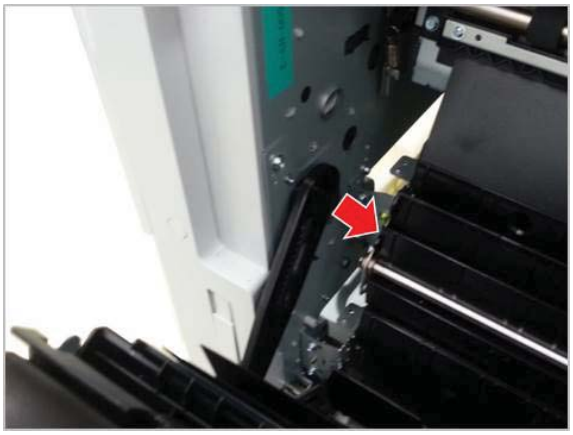
⚠ CAUTION: The hinge is spring-loaded and might snap back forcefully. Raise the door to take the tension off of the spring, and then hold the hinge firmly while releasing it from the hinge pin.

Figure 3-877 Release the right hinge



3. Slightly raise the right door, and then release the left dampener.

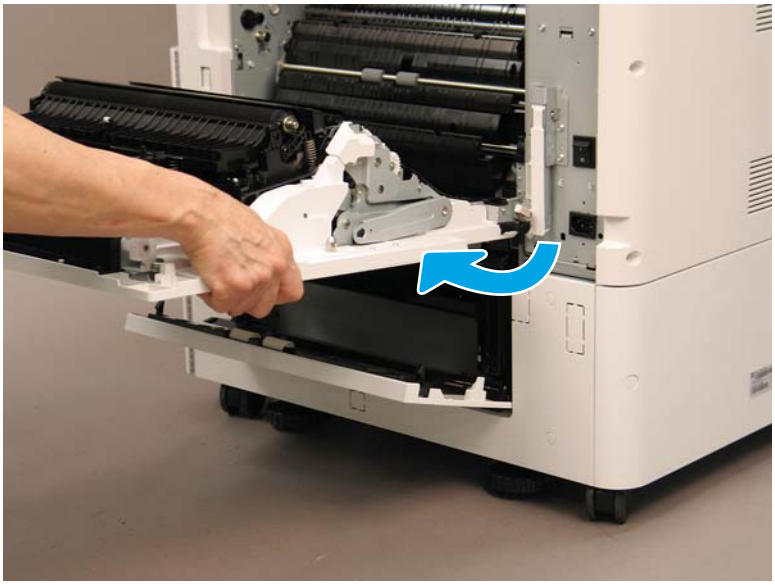
Figure 3-878 Release the left dampener



4. Open the lower paper feeder door. Lower the right door to 90°, and then rotate the rear side of the door away from the printer. Slide the door to the rear of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not lower the door more than 90°. This might result in damage to the door.

Figure 3-879 Remove the right door



Step 3: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door

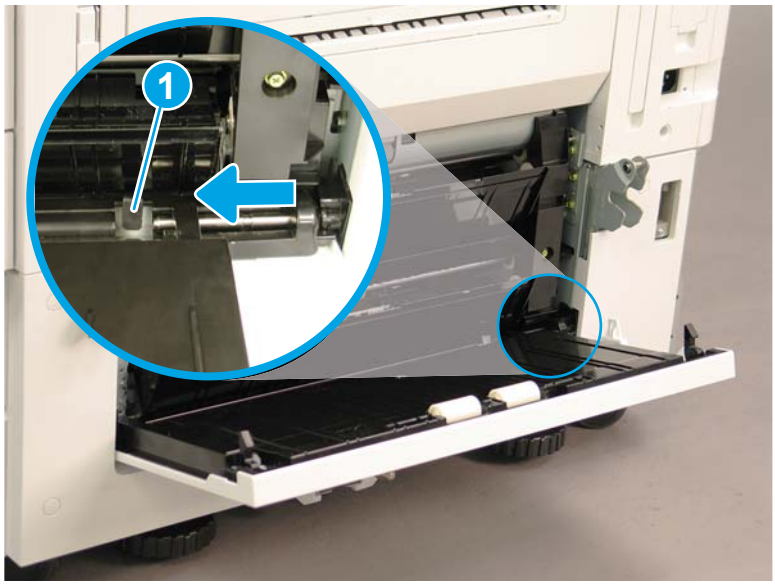
1. Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the lower right cover.

Figure 3-880 Remove the lower right cover



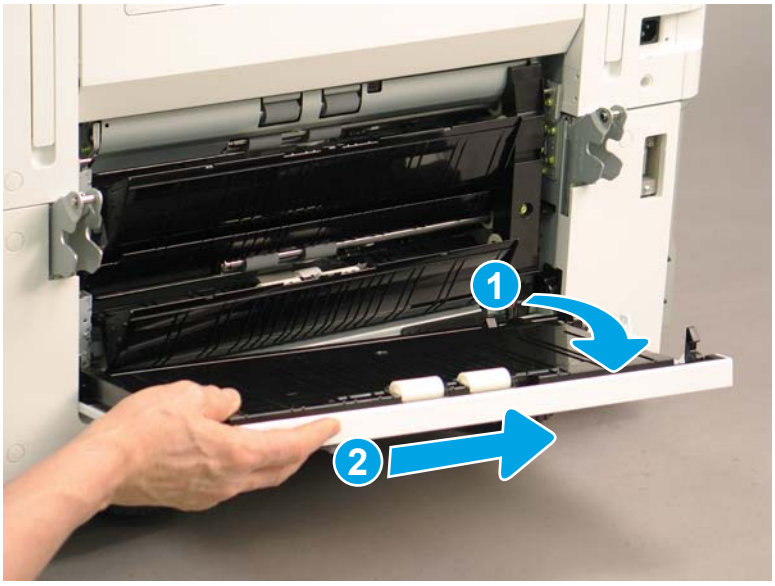
2. Open the DCF right door and slide the hinge pin to the left. Make sure that the pin slides under the tab (callout 1).

Figure 3-881 Slide the hinge pin



3. Rotate the right edge of the door away from the feeder (callout 1), and then slide the door to the right to remove it (callout 2).

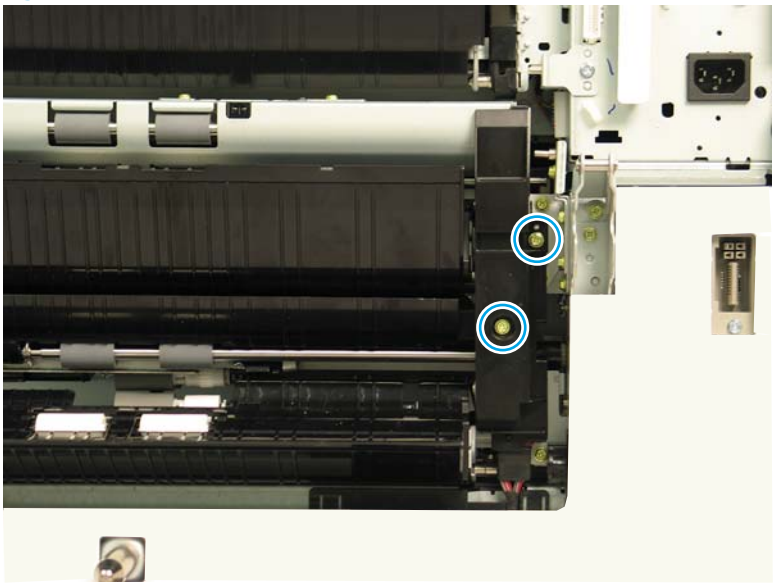
Figure 3-882 Remove the DCF right door



Step 4: Remove the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units

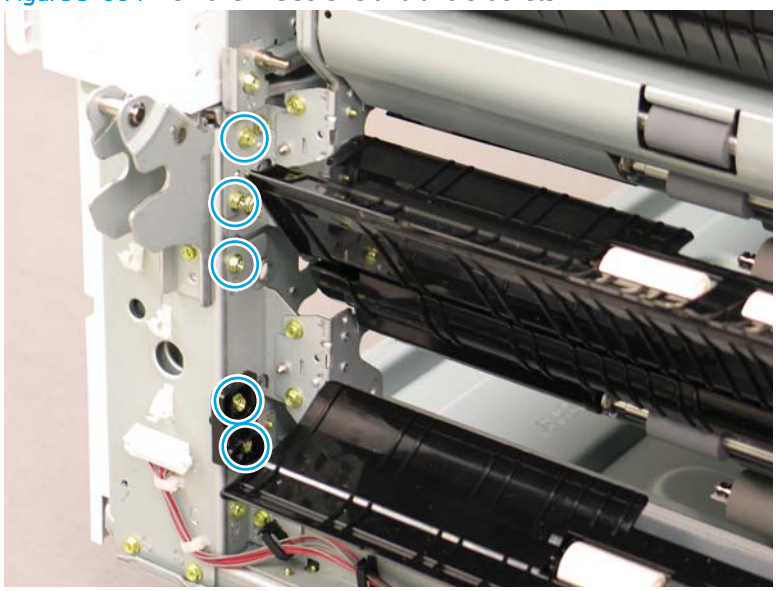
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 3-883 Remove two screws and the cable cover



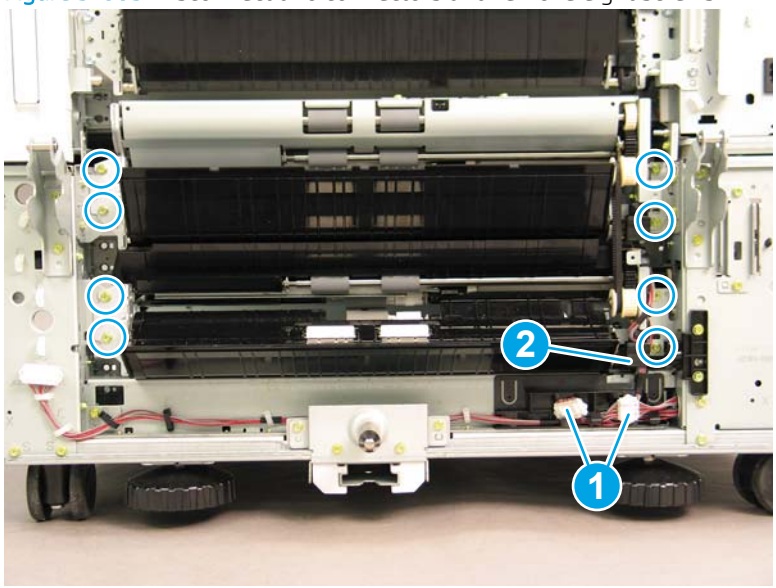
2. Remove five screws, and then remove two brackets.

Figure 3-884 Remove five screws and two brackets



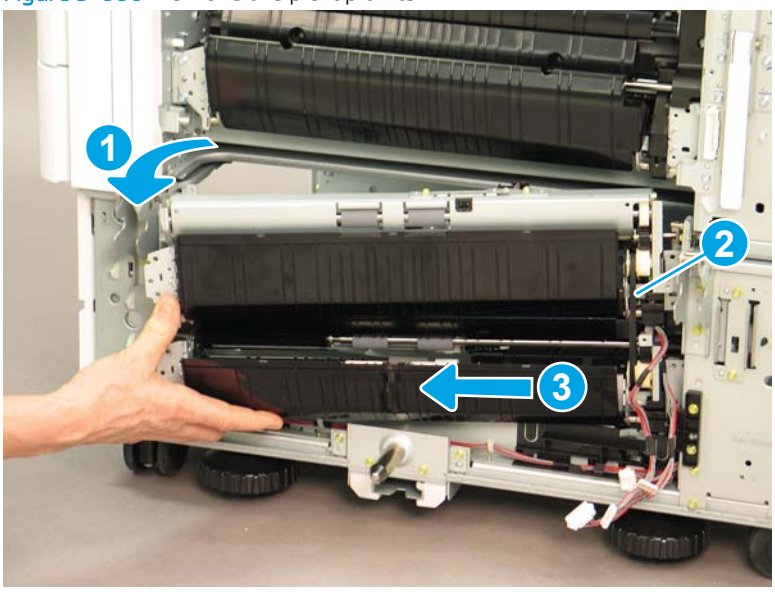
3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the cable guide (callout 2). Remove eight screws (callout 3).

Figure 3-885 Disconnect two connectors and remove eight screws



4. Rotate both pickup units away from the feeder on the left (callout 1). Release the belt (callout 2) that connects the two units. Slide the pickup units to the left (callout 3) to remove them.

Figure 3-886 Remove the pickup units



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray

Bottom HCI tray feed motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray feed motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00177A	Bottom HCI tray feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

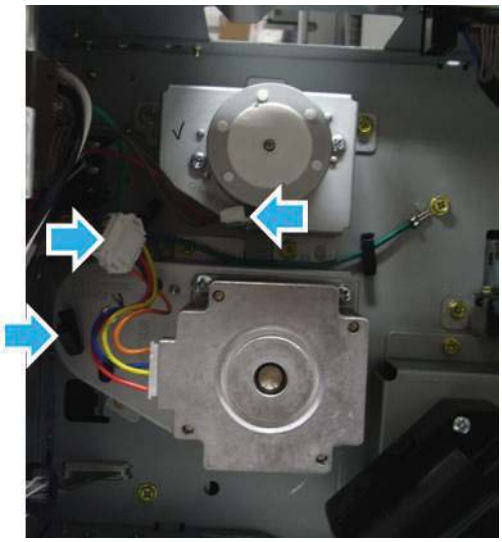
Figure 3-887 Remove the rear cover



Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray feed motor

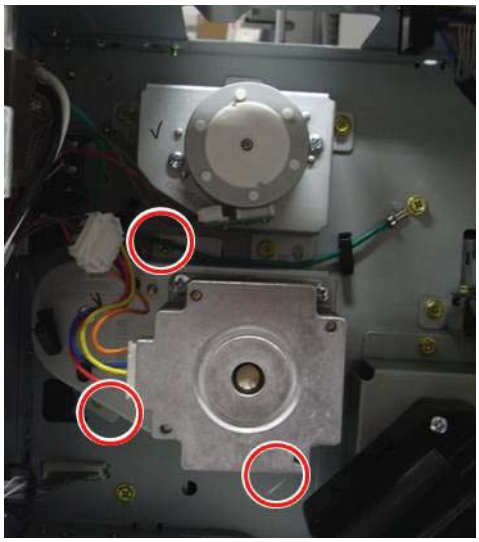
1. Disconnect two motor connectors, and open the harness clamp.

Figure 3-888 Disconnect two connectors and open the clamp



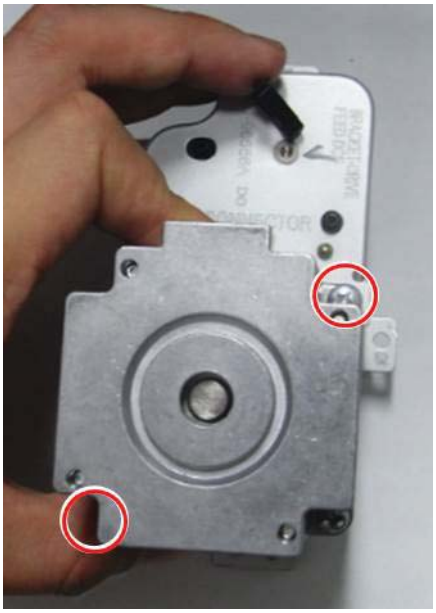
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive unit.

Figure 3-889 Remove the feed drive unit



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor.

Figure 3-890 Remove the feed motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01083A	Bottom HCI tray pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

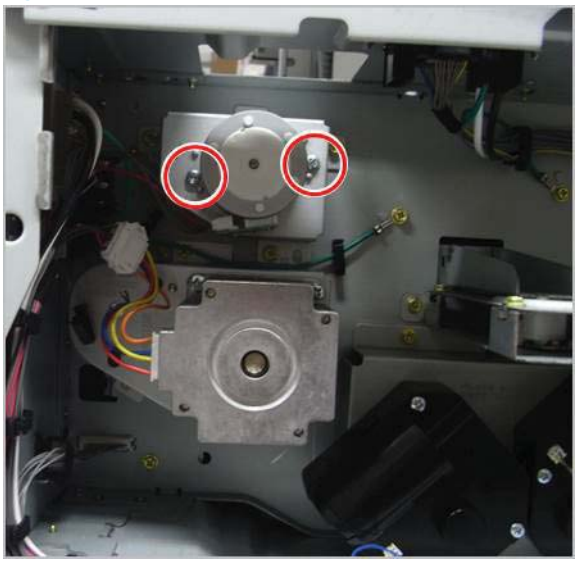
Figure 3-891 Remove the rear cover



Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor.

Figure 3-892 Remove the bottom HCI tray pickup motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray PCA part number	
SAM-JC92-02738B	Bottom HCI tray PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

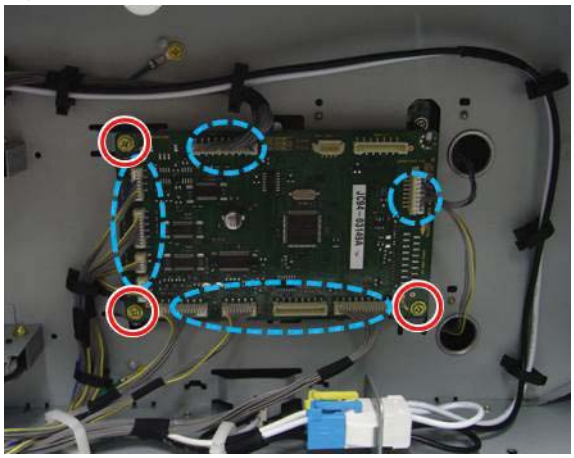
Figure 3-893 Remove the rear cover



Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA

▲ Disconnect eight connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray PCA.

Figure 3-894 Remove the bottom HCI tray PCA



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00109A	Bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

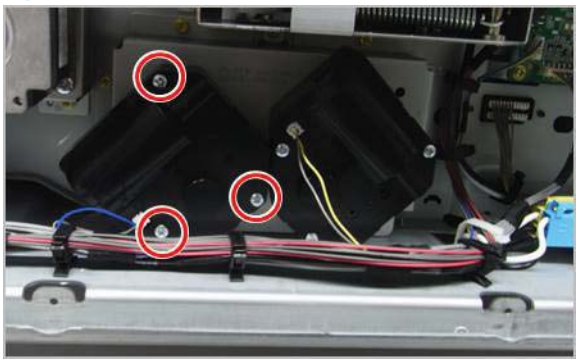
Figure 3-895 Remove the rear cover



Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and the remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor.

Figure 3-896 Remove the bottom HCI tray lift-up motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Bottom HCI tray shaft motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00125A	Bottom HCI tray shaft motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the bottom HCI rear cover

- Remove four screw caps and four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

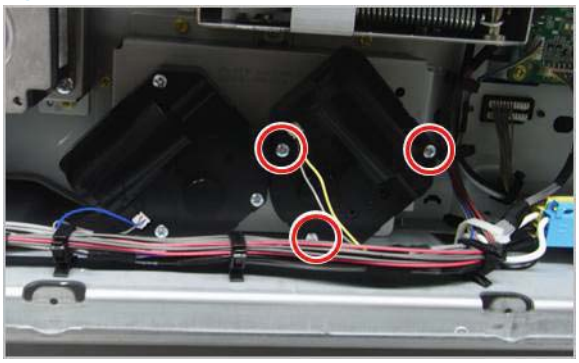
Figure 3-897 Remove the rear cover



Step 2: Remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor

▲ Disconnect the connector. Remove three screws, and then remove the bottom HCI tray shaft motor.

Figure 3-898 Remove the shaft motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side high capacity input (sHCI)

Side HCI rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI rear cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI rear cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01660A	Side HCI rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

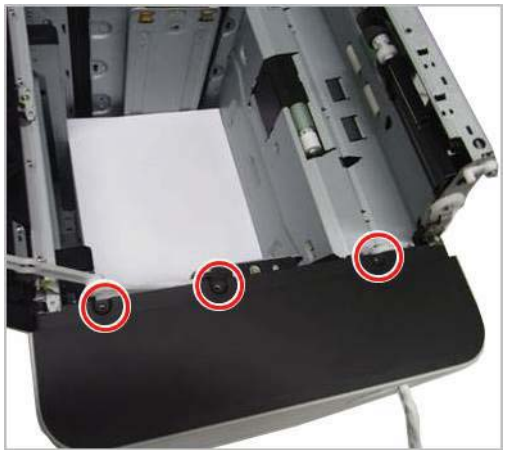
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

Figure 3-899 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI feed motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI feed motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI feed motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00163A	Side HCI feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

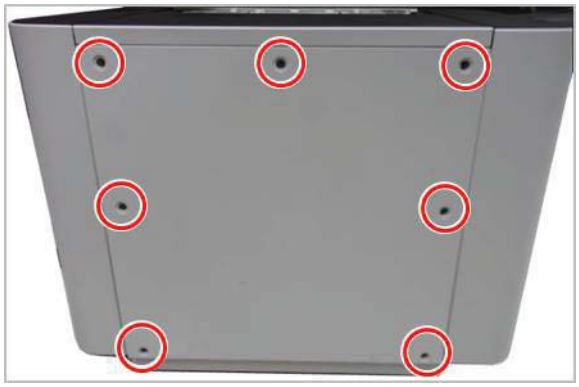
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

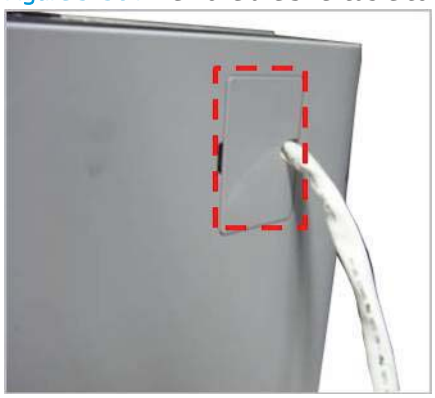
Figure 3-900 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

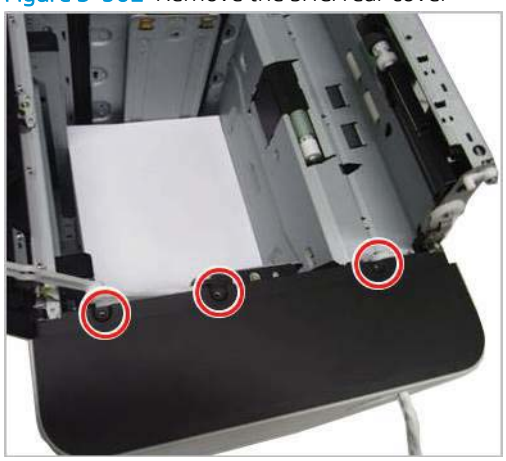
Figure 3-901 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

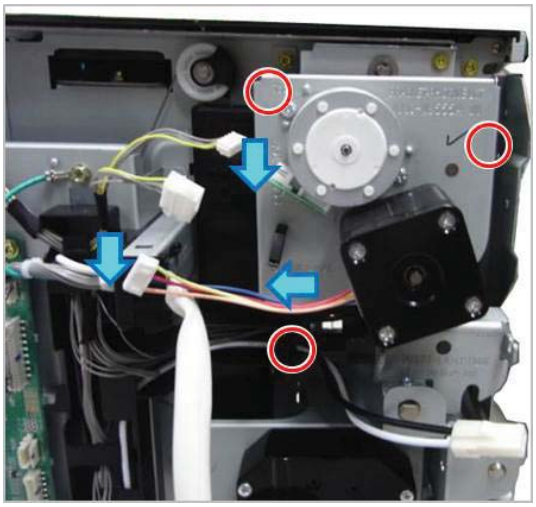
Figure 3-902 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI feed motor

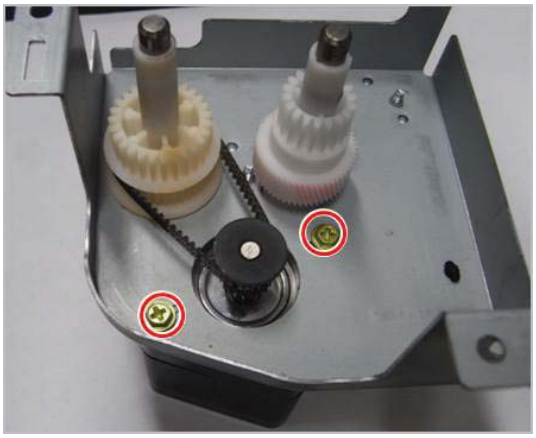
1. Disconnect two connectors. Open the cable clamp. Remove three screws, and then remove the Drive-PH

Figure 3-903 Drive PH



2. Remove two screws, and then replace the feed motor.

Figure 3-904 Feed motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI pickup motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI pickup motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI pickup motor part number	
SAM-JC93-01083A	Side HCI pickup motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

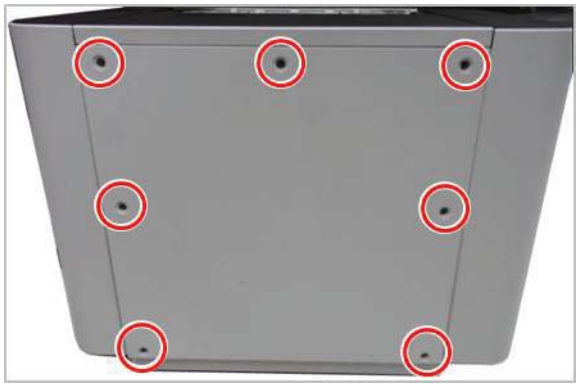
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

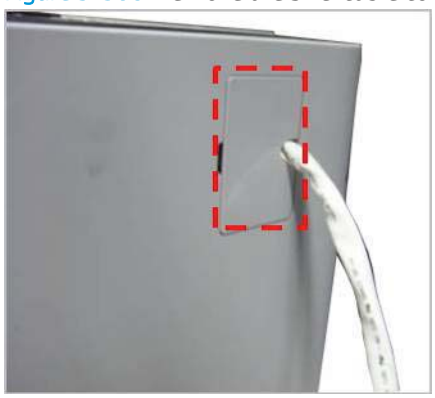
Figure 3-905 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

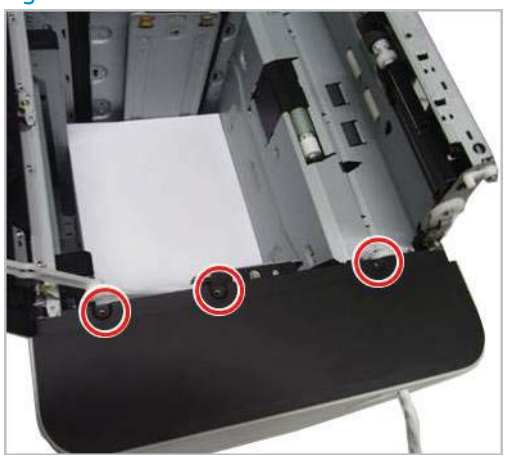
Figure 3-906 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

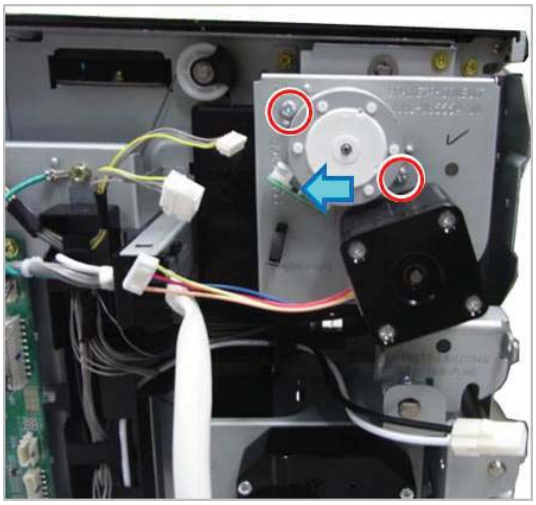
Figure 3-907 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI pickup motor

- ▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove two screws, and then replace the pickup motor.

Figure 3-908 Pickup motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI PCA part number
Side HCI PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

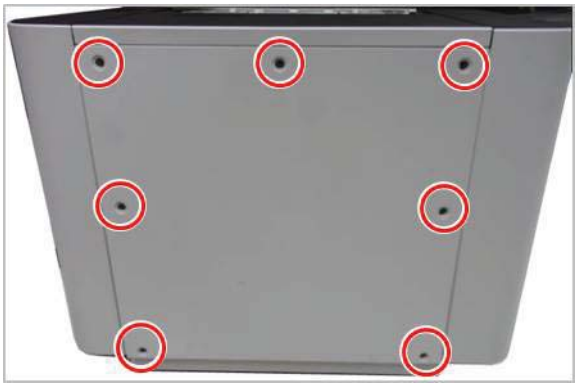
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

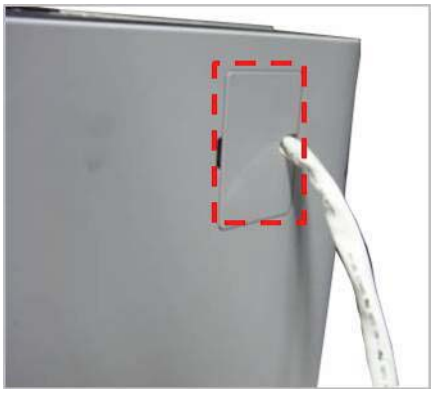
Figure 3-909 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

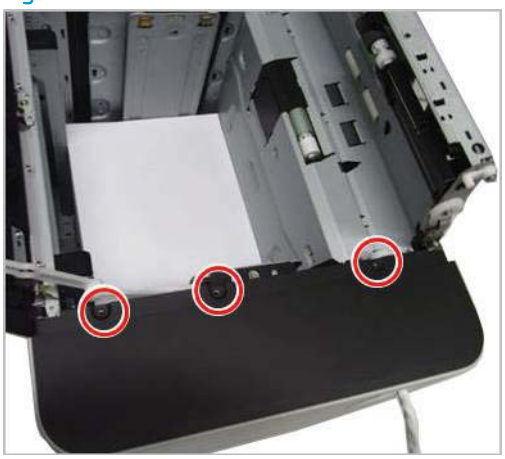
Figure 3-910 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

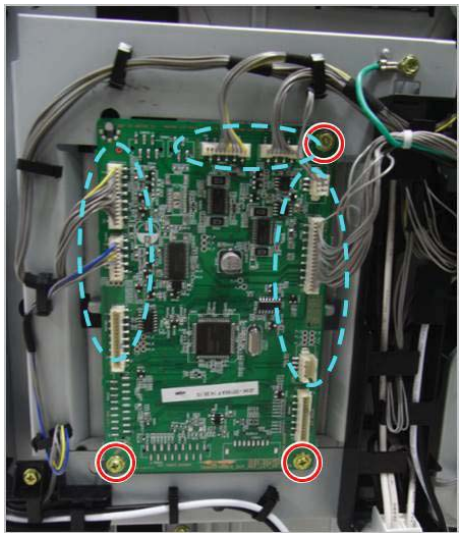
Figure 3-911 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI PCA

▲ Disconnect all connectors. Remove three screws, and replace the sHCI PCA.

Figure 3-912 sHCI PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Side HCI lift-up motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover
- Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover
- Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the side HCI lift-up motor.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Side HCI lift-up motor part number	
SAM-JC31-00109A	Side HCI lift-up motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Turn on the power switch next to the power cable, and then press the power button on the front of the printer.
- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.

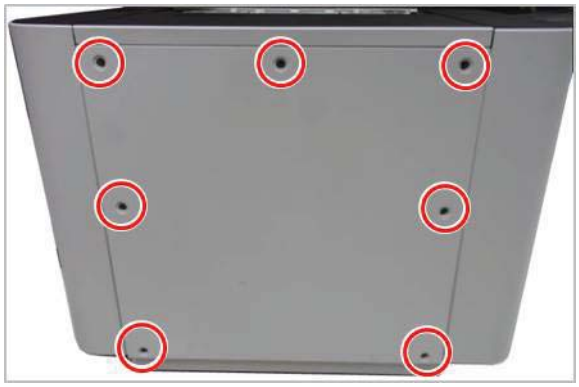
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.

Step 1: Remove the side HCI right cover

- Remove seven screw caps and seven screws, and then remove the sHCI right cover.

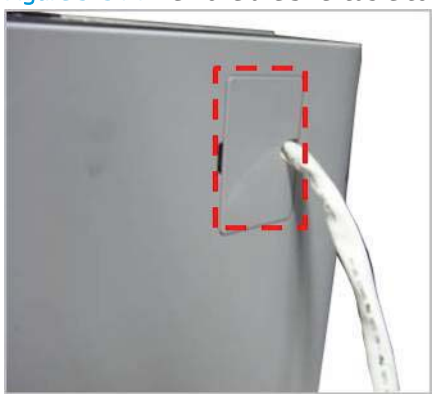
Figure 3-913 Right sHCI cover



Step 2: Remove the side HCI cable cover

- Remove the side HCI cable cover.

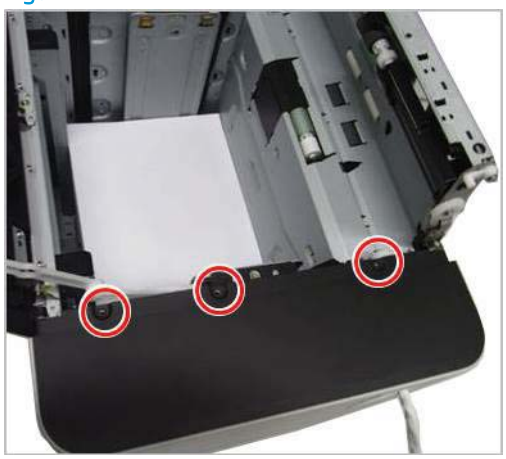
Figure 3-914 Remove the sHCI cable cover



Step 3: Remove the side HCI rear cover

- Remove three screws from the top, and then remove the sHCI rear cover.

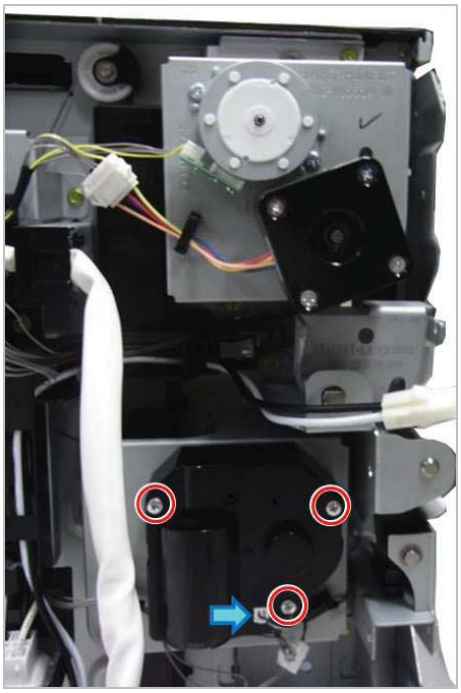
Figure 3-915 Remove the sHCI rear cover



Step 4: Remove the side HCI lift-up motor

▲ Disconnect the motor connector. Remove three screws, and then replace the sHCI lift-up motor.

Figure 3-916 sHCI lift-up motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4 Parts and diagrams

- For additional service and support information
- Order parts, accessories, and supplies
- How to use the parts list and diagrams
- Main parts
- Dual cassette feeder (DCF)
- High capacity input tray (HCI)
- High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI)
- Finishers
- Inner finisher
- Alphabetical parts list
- Numerical parts list

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

- To access HP PartSurfer information from any mobile device, go to http://partsurfermobile.hp.com/ or scan the Quick Response (QR) code below.



- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty and regulatory information

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Related documentation and software

HP service personnel, go to the Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to HP Channel Services Network (CSN) at www.hp.com/partners/csn.

How to use the parts list and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

NOTE: In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

Main parts

Main assembly

Figure 4-1 Main assembly

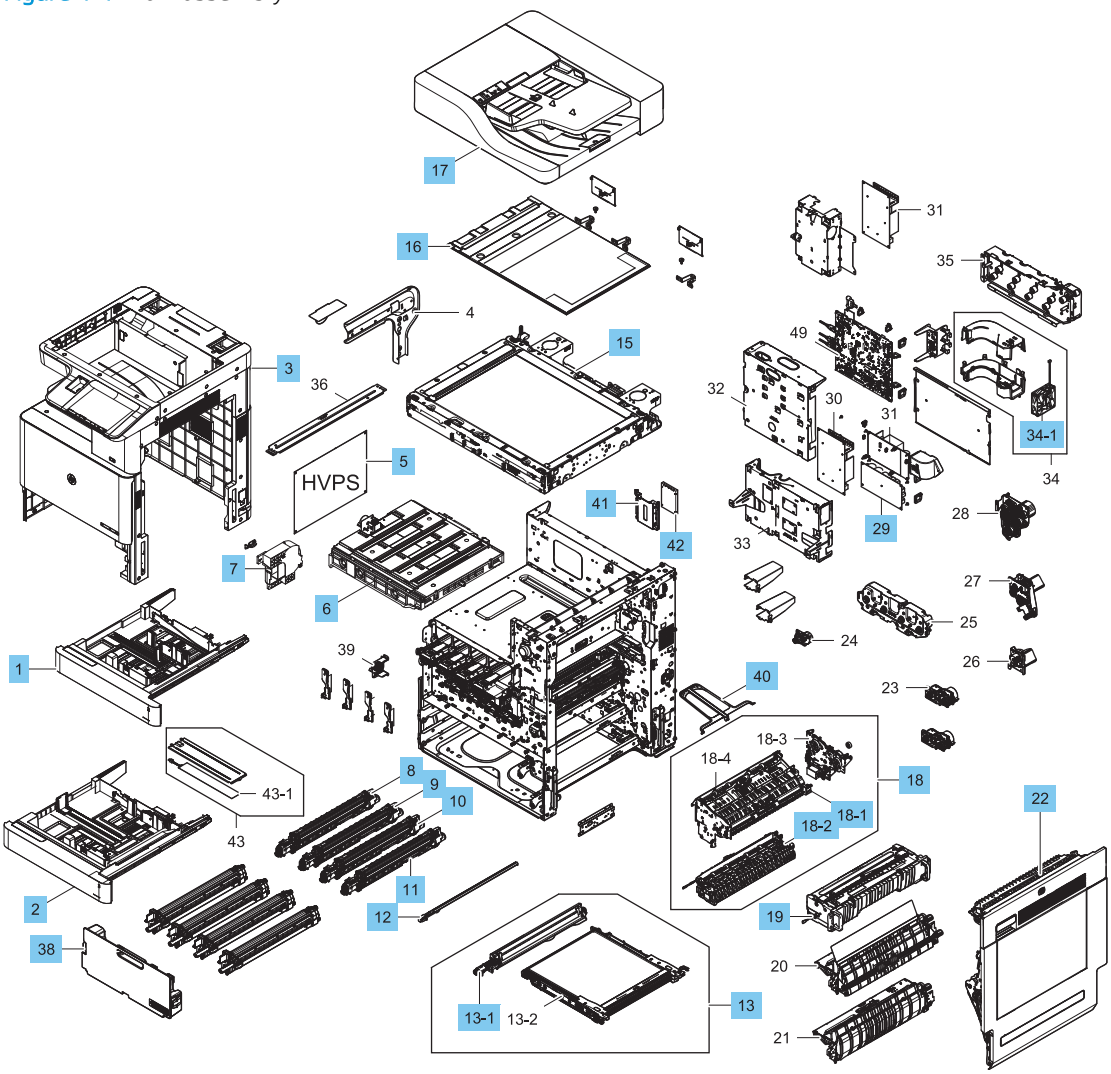


Table 4-1 Main assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette, first	SAM-JC90-01610A	1
2	Cassette, second	SAM-JC90-01611A	1
3	Cover	SAM-JC95-02107A	1
5	HVPS	SAM-JC44-00240A	1
6	Laser scanner assembly	SAM-JC97-04863A	1
7	Laser scanner assembly, fan holder	SAM-JC93-01019A	1
8	Developer cartridge, Y	SAM-JC96-11600A	1
9	Developer cartridge, M	SAM-JC96-11601A	1
10	Developer cartridge, C	SAM-JC96-11602A	1
11	Developer cartridge, K	SAM-JC96-11603A	1
12	Frame holder, dust assembly	SAM-JC93-01026B	1
13	Transfer, ITB	SAM-JC93-01375A	1
13-1	Transfer, ITB cleaner	SAM-JC93-01377A	1
15	Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04520C	1
16	Sponge, white sheet	SAM-JC63-05238A	1
17	Flow ADF	SAM-JC97-04868A	1
18	Output	SAM-JC90-01369A	1
18-1	Second output	SAM-JC90-01373A	1
18-2	First output	SAM-JC90-01370A	1
19	220V fuser assembly	SAM-JC91-01194A	1
19	110V fuser assembly	SAM-JC91-01195A	1
22	Right door	SAM-JC95-02092A	1
29	Fuser drive board, 220V	SAM-JC44-00236B	1
29	Fuser drive board, 110V	SAM-JC44-00235B	1
30	LVPS (SMPS) type 5, 220V	SAM-JC44-00100D	1
30	LVPS (SMPS) type 5H, 110V	SAM-JC44-00249A	1
31	LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 220V	SAM-JC44-00092D	1
31	LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 110V	SAM-JC44-00091D	1
34-1	Fan type 7	SAM-JC31-00161B	1
38	Cartridge, TCU color	SAM-JC96-09590A	1
40	Return guide path	SAM-JC61-07088A	1
41	HDD frame assembly	SAM-JC93-01239B	1
42	Main board hard disk drive (HDD)	SAM-JC59-00037A	1

Output

Figure 4-2 Output

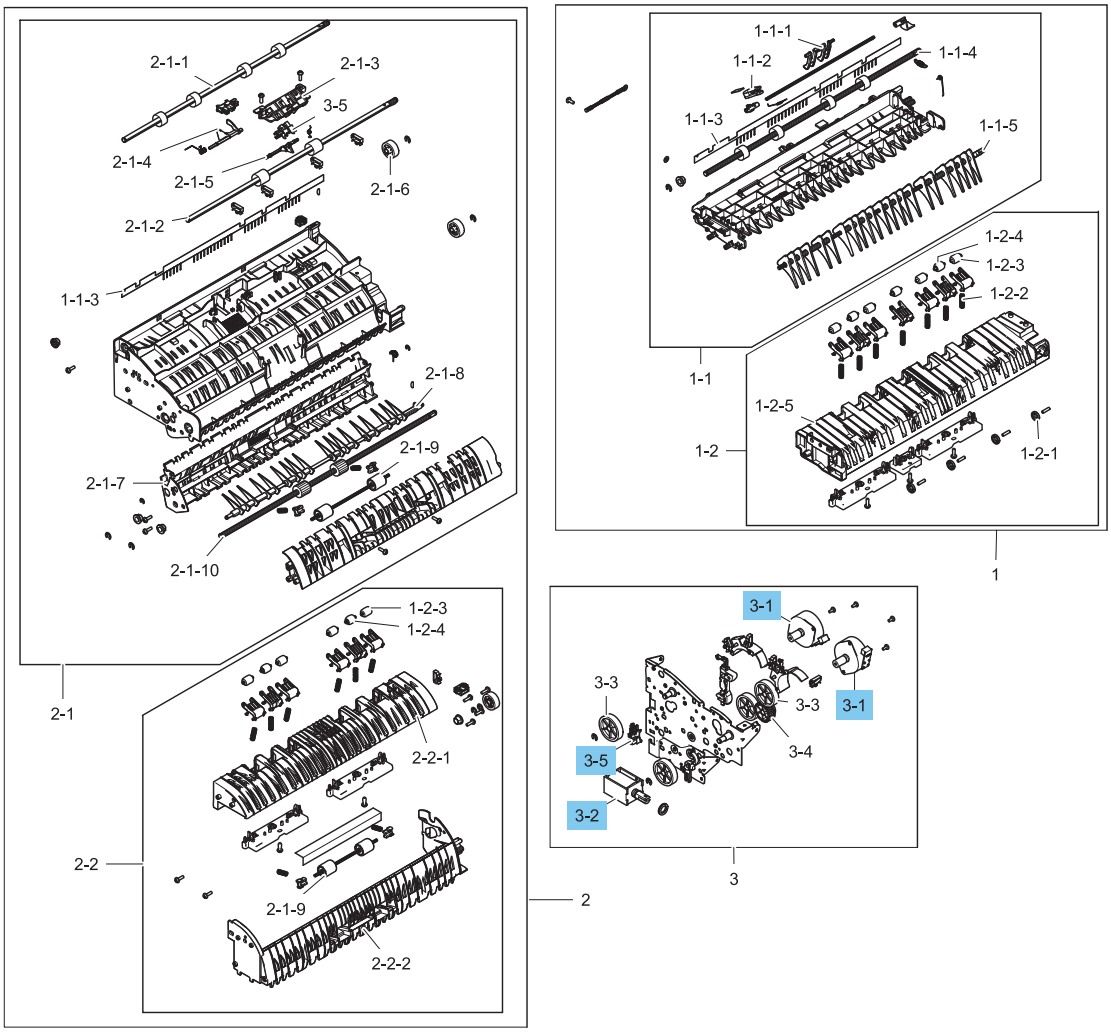


Table 4-2 Output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-00802A	2
3-2	Lifting solenoid	SAM-JC33-00031B	1
3-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1

First cassette

Figure 4-3 First cassette

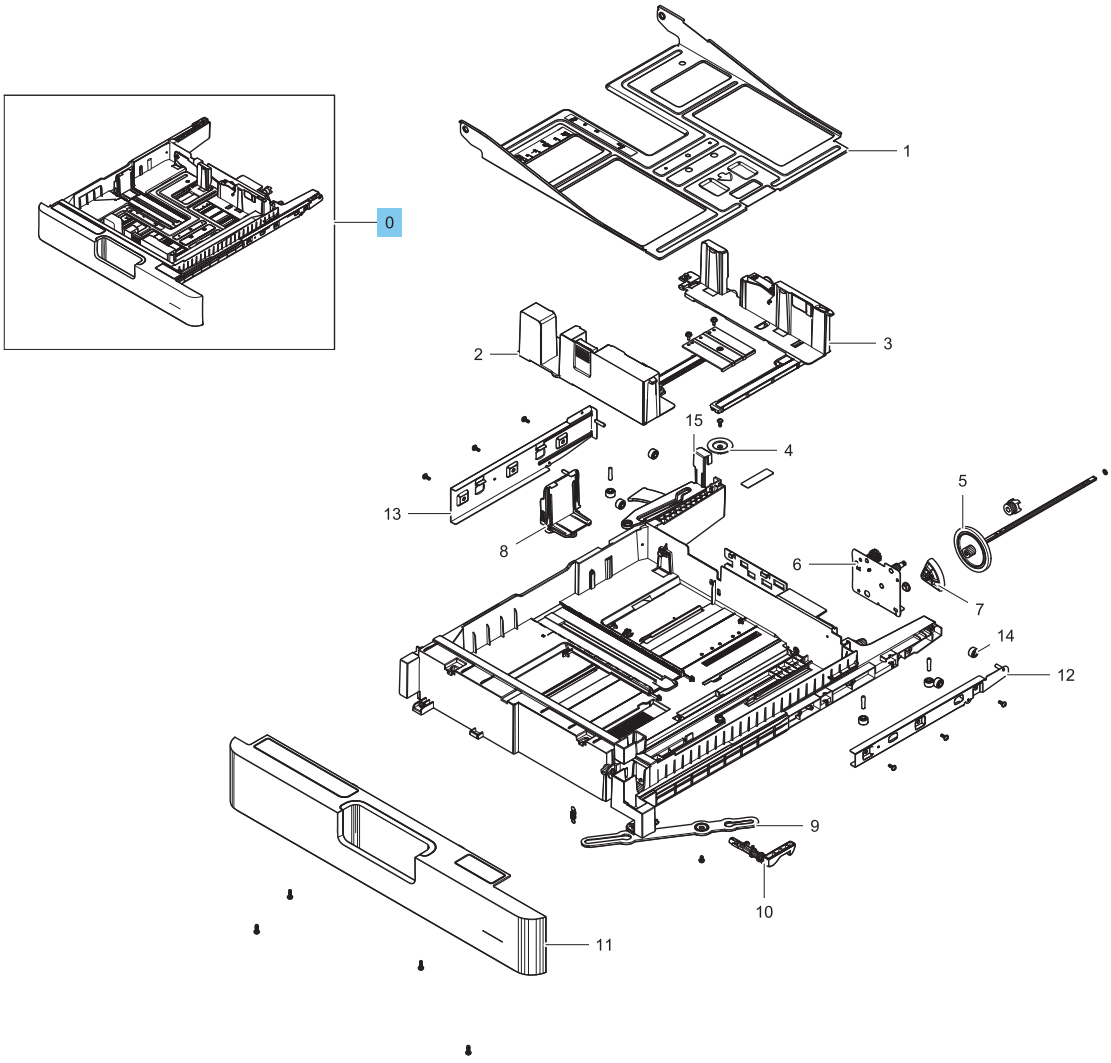


Table 4-3 First cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	1

Second cassette

Figure 4-4 Second cassette

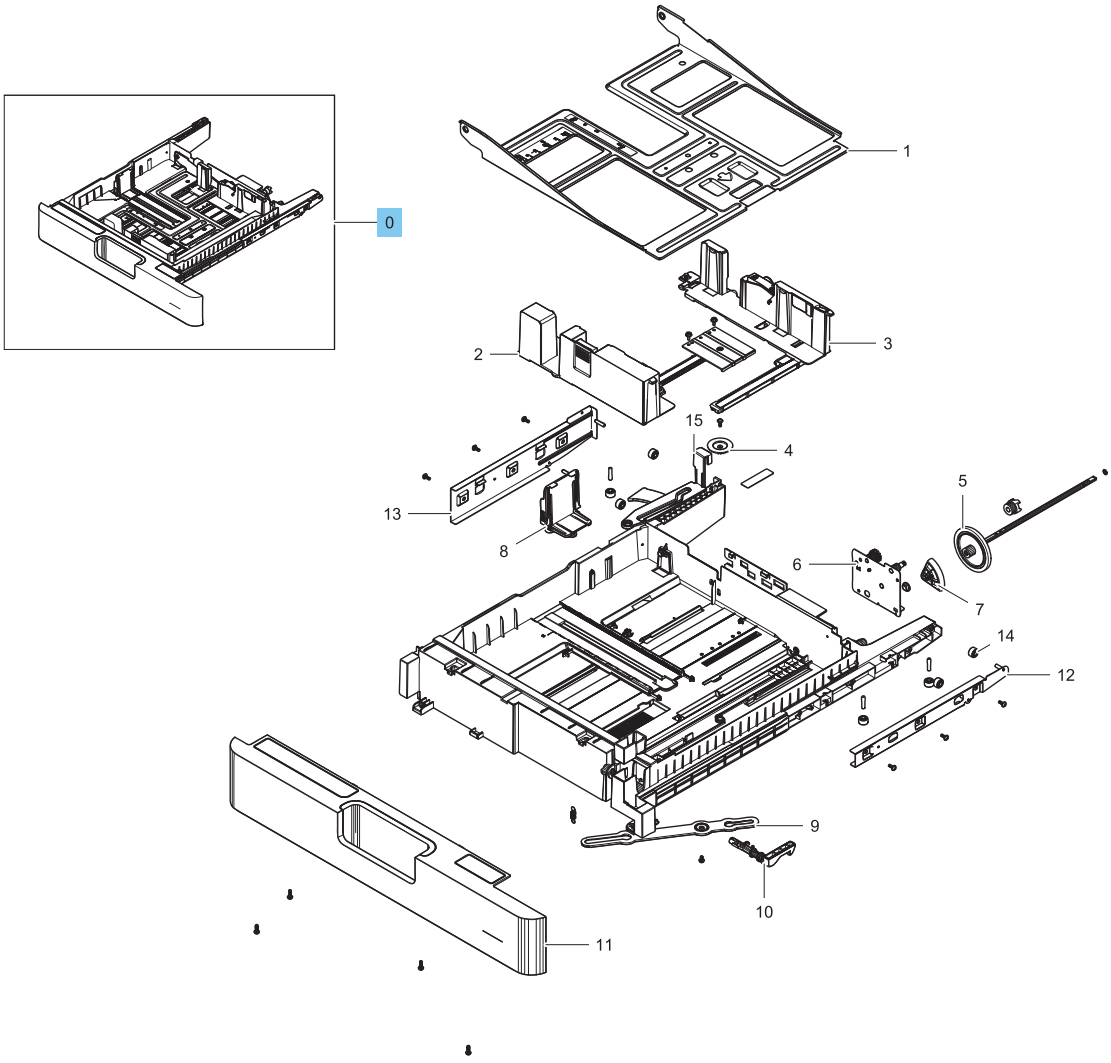


Table 4-4 Second cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	1

Main frame assembly

Figure 4-5 Main frame assembly

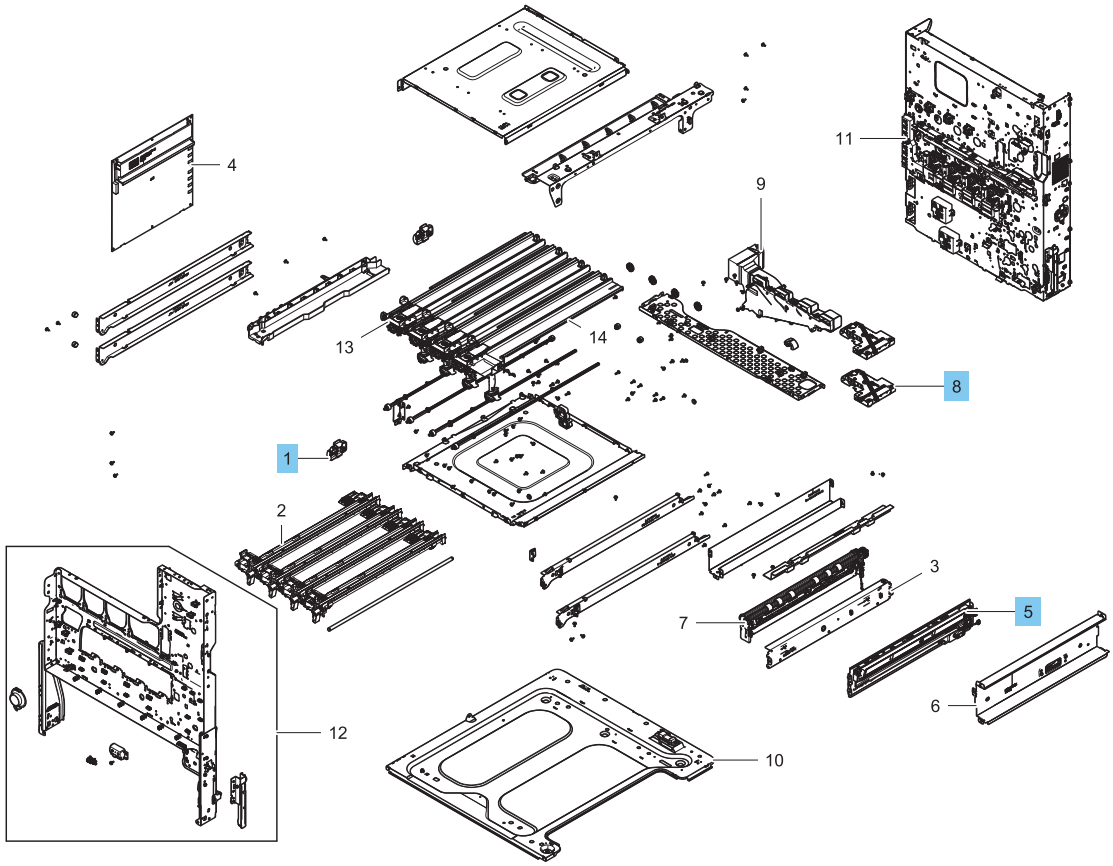


Table 4-5 Main frame assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, main switch open	SAM-JC93-00466A	1
5	Frame, CPR assembly	SAM-JC93-01039A	1
8	Frame, sub-rear bottom	SAM-JC93-01370A	2

Main frame registration

Figure 4-6 Main frame registration

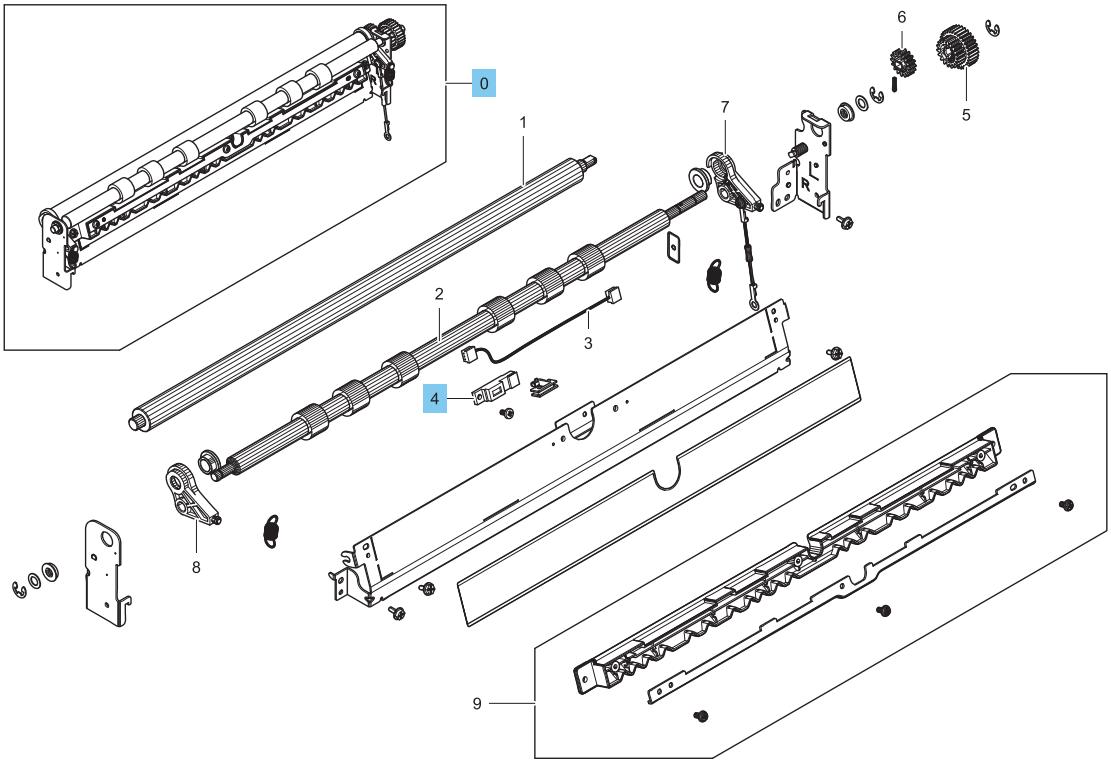


Table 4-6 Main frame registration

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Frame, main registration	SAM-JC93-01116A	1
4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1

CPR frame assembly

Figure 4-7 CPR frame assemlby

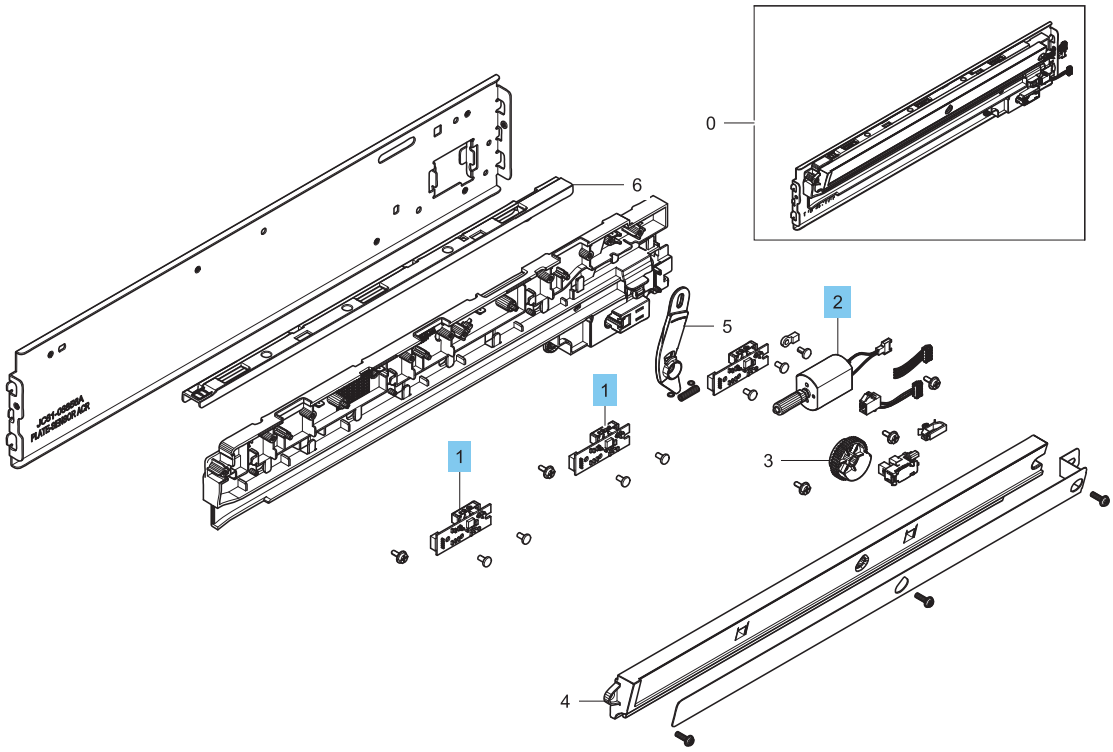


Table 4-7 CPR frame assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	CTD sensor	SAM-JC32-00014A	3
2	Motor, dc	SAM-JC31–00078A	1

Toner frame guide (CMYK)

Figure 4-8 Toner frame guide (CMYK)

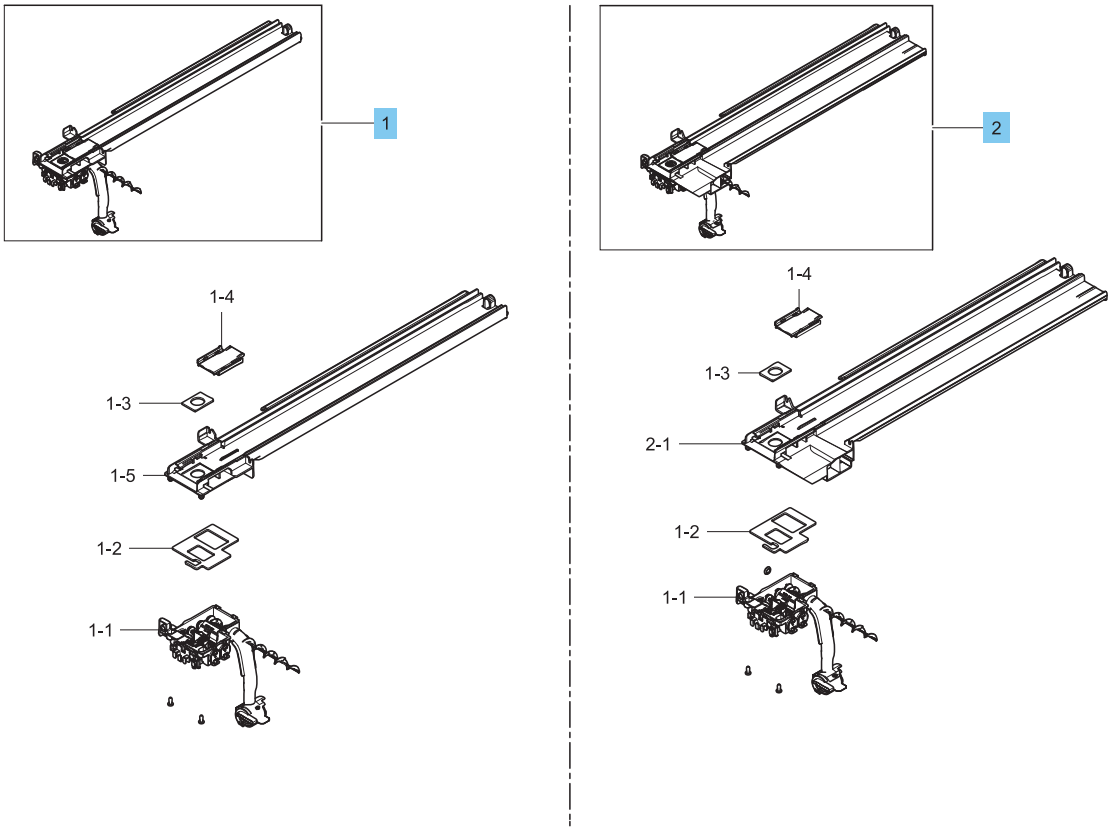


Table 4-8 Toner frame guide (CMYK)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Duct frame (CMY)	SAM-JC93-01089B	3
2	Duct frame (K)	SAM-JC93-01088B	1

Rear frame assembly

Figure 4-9 Rear frame assembly

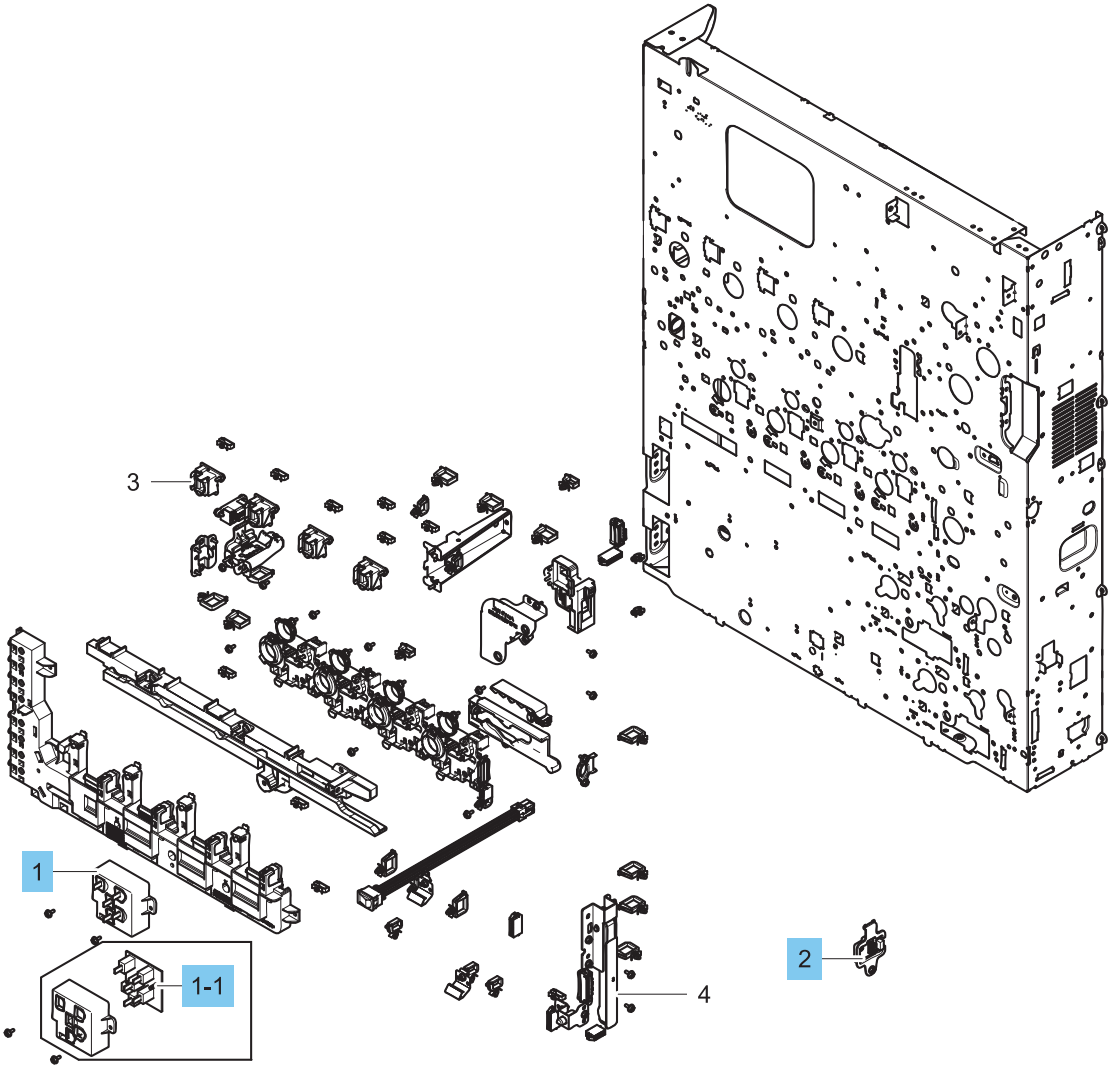


Table 4-9 Rear frame assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, main rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	2
1-1	PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	2
2	Frame, main humidity sensor	SAM-JC93-00486A	1

Drive system

Figure 4-10 Drive system

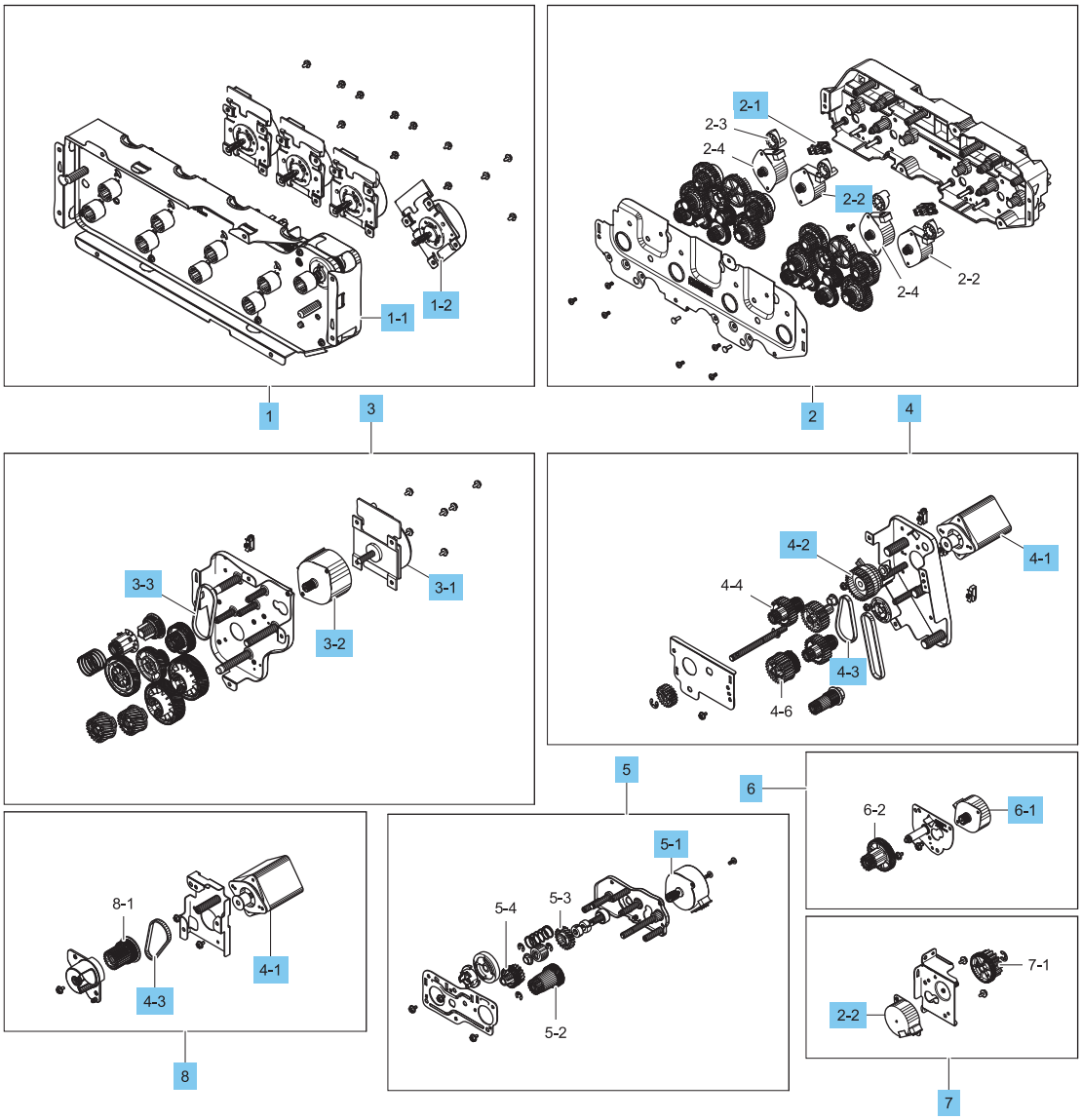


Table 4-10 Drive system

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Main drive	SAM-JC93-01059C	1
1-1	Main sub-drive	SAM-JC93-01048B	1
1-2	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00123D	4
2	Toner drive	SAM-JC93-01065B	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	2
2-2	Step motor, circuit	SAM-JC31-00110A	2
3	Fuser drive output	SAM-JC93-01064A	1
3-1	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00123B	1
3-2	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01084A	1
3-3	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001581	1
4	Feed drive	SAM-JC93-01062A	1
4-1	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00132A	1
4-2	Electric clutch	SAM-JC47-00037A	1
4-3	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	1
5	Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063A	2
5-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	2
6	Engage tranfser drive	SAM-JC93-01068A	1
6-1	Step motor, circuit	SAM-JC31-00110B	1
7	TCU (WTB)	SAM-JC93-01070A	1
8	Registration drive	SAM-JC93-01061A	1

Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Figure 4-11 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

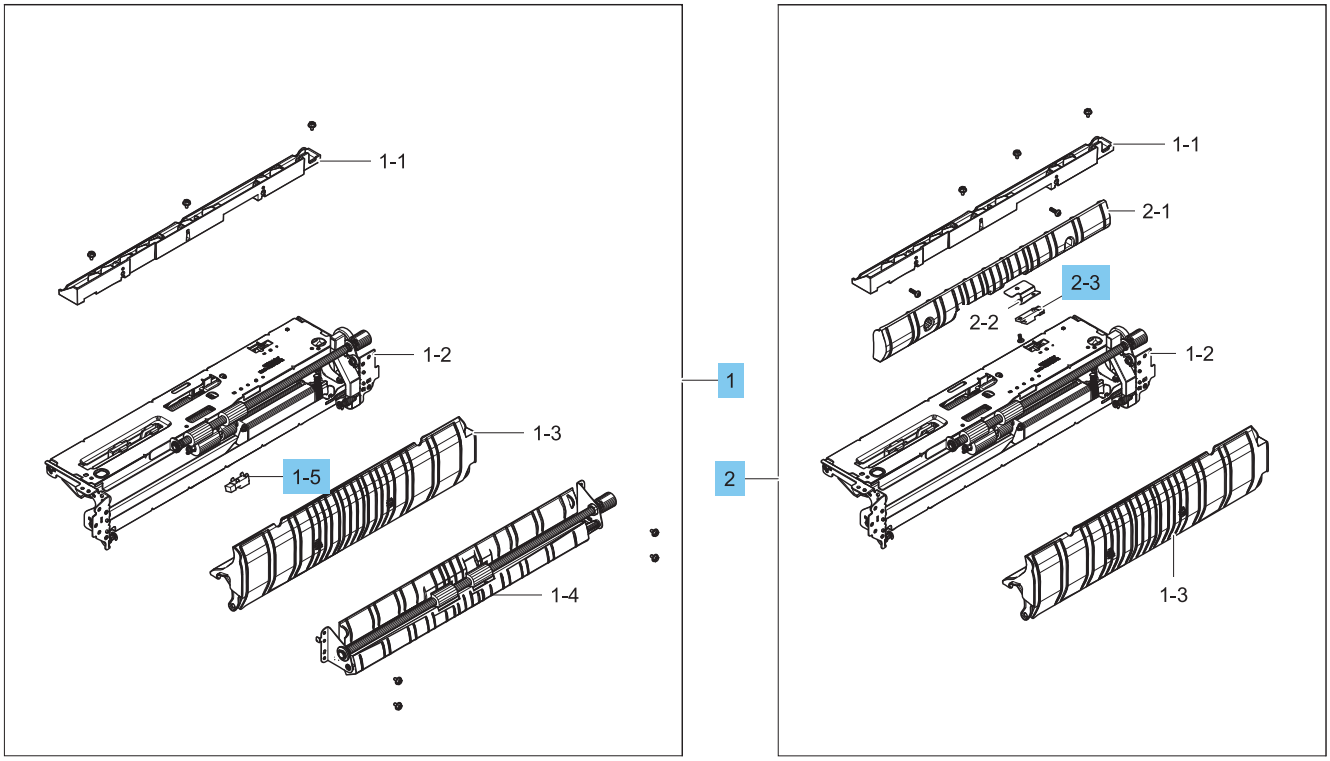


Table 4-11 Main frame pickup 1 and 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01364A	1
1-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1
2	Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01365A	1
2-3	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-01381	1

Main frame pickup

Figure 4-12 Main frame pickup

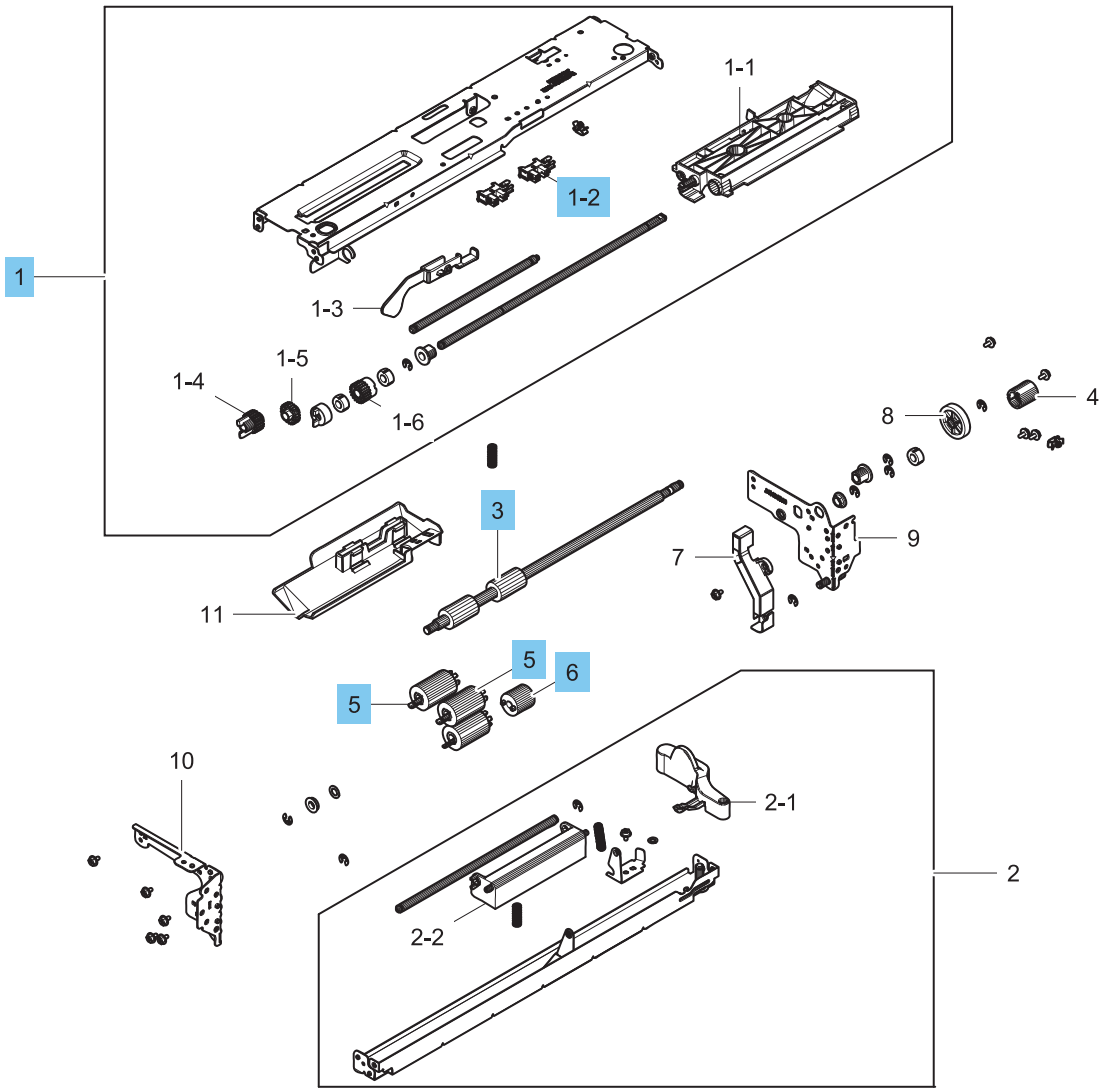


Table 4-12 Main frame pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01421A	1
1-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	2
3	Feed roller, first	SAM-JC66-04625A	1
5	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	3
6	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1

Cover

Figure 4-13 Cover

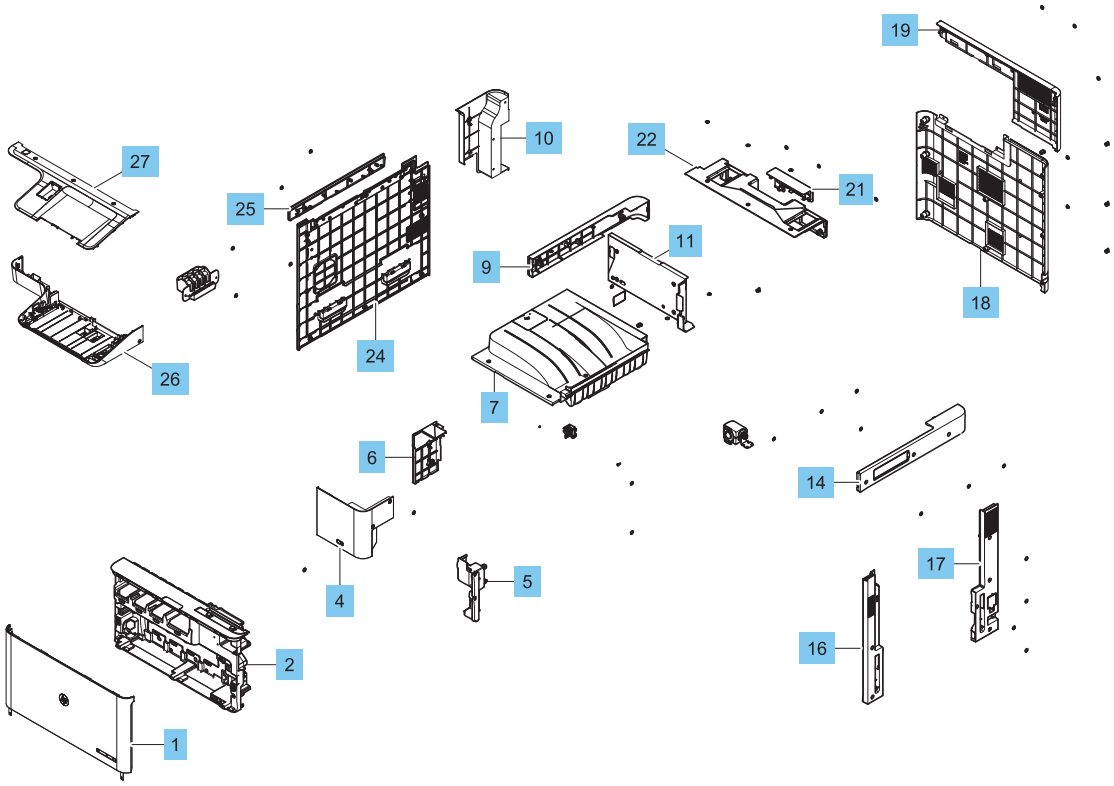


Table 4-13 Cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Front cover	SAM-JC95-02109A	1
2	Inner cover	SAM-JC95-02110A	1
4	Right middle cover	SAM-JC95-02105A	1
5	Front cover, lower	SAM-JC63-04861B	1
6	Middle left cover	SAM-JC63-05635A	1
7	Output cover	SAM-JC95-02101A	1
9	Scan left cover	SAM-JC63-04858A	1
10	Left cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04837A	1
11	Output cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04840A	1
14	Scan right cover	SAM-JC63-05571A	1
16	Right cover, front	SAM-JC63-04847B	1
17	Right cover, rear	SAM-JC95-02102A	1
18	Rear cover	SAM-JC95-02117A	1
19	Rear cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05633A	1
21	Rear cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04863B	1
22	Rear scan cover	SAM-JC63-04859C	1
24	Left cover	SAM-JC95-02100A	1
25	Left cover, top	SAM-JC63-04862B	1
26	OPE cover	SAM-JC95-02106A	1
27	Front scan cover	SAM-JC95-02118A	1

Right door

Figure 4-14 Right door

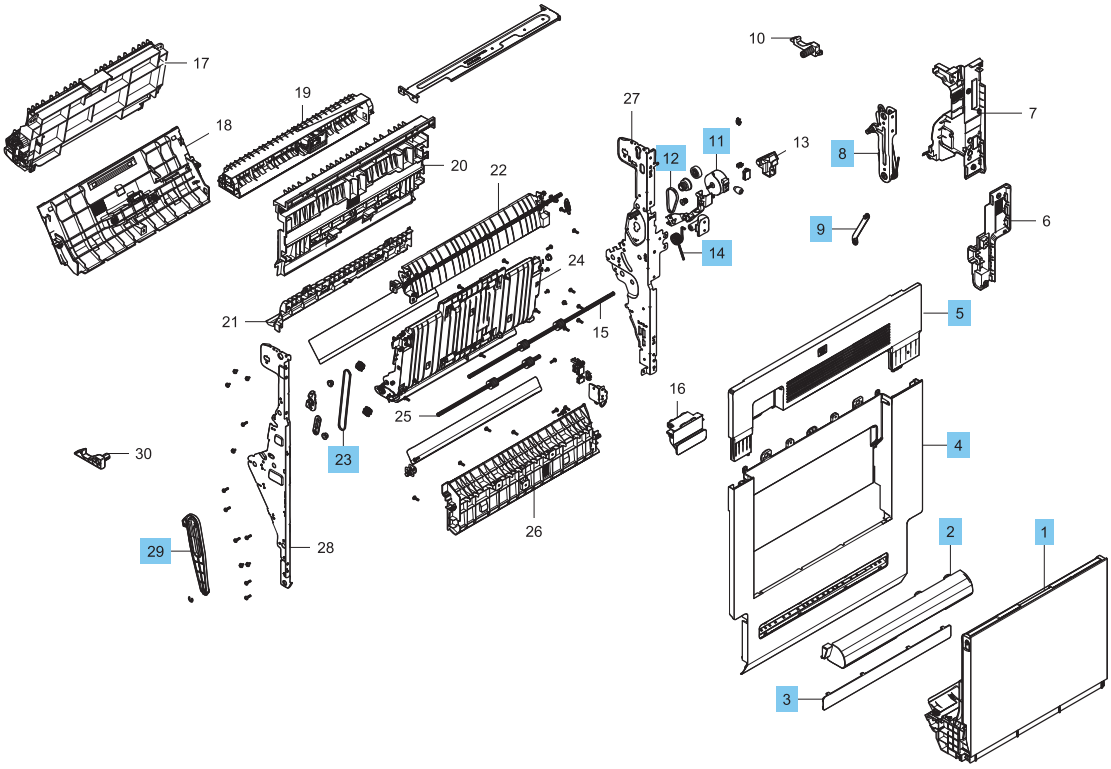


Table 4-14 Right door

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	MP	SAM-JC90-01325B	1
2	MP front cover	SAM-JC63-04910B	1
3	sHCI cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04918B	1
4	Side cover	SAM-JC63-04920B	1
5	Side cover, up	SAM-JC63-04916B	1
8	Side cover, link	SAM-JC95-01970A	1
9	Side link	SAM-JC66-04400A	1
11	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01085A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	3
14	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07372A	1
23	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003183	1
29	Link lever	SAM-JC66-04398A	1

MP tray

Figure 4-15 MP tray

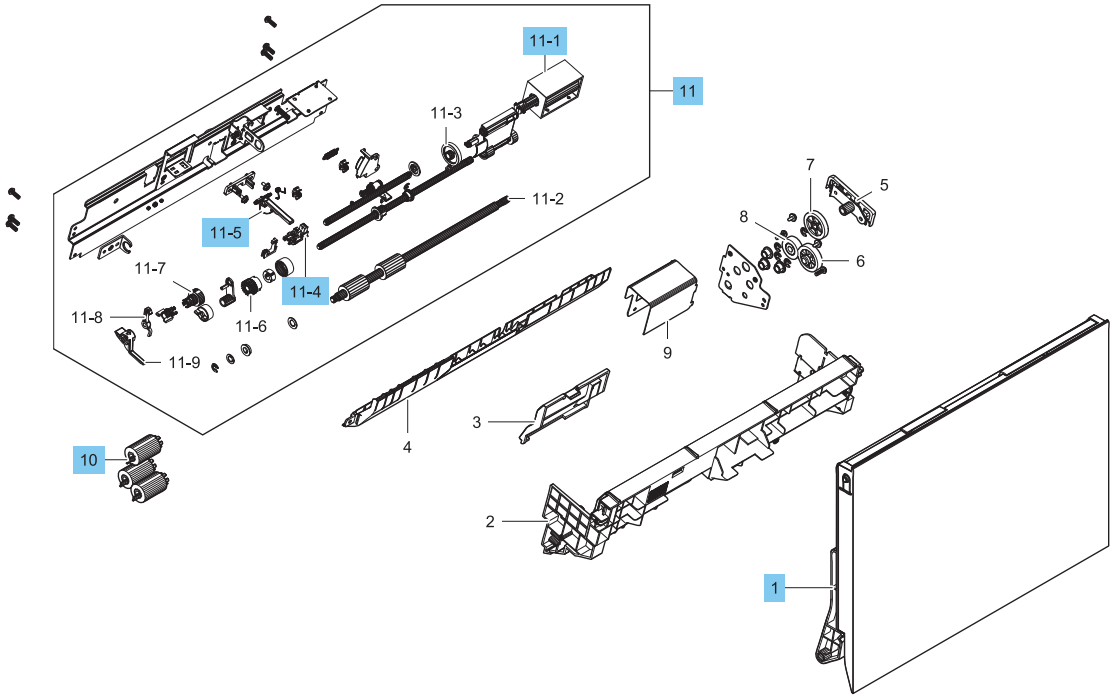


Table 4-15 MP tray

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	MP sub-tray	SAM-JC90-01357B	1
10	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-00540B	3
11	MP, pickup bracket	SAM-JC90-01355A	1
11-1	MP, solenoid	SAM-JC33-00029B	1
11-4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
11-5	Actuator lever, empty	SAM-JC66-04459A	1

Right door guide

Figure 4-16 Right door guide

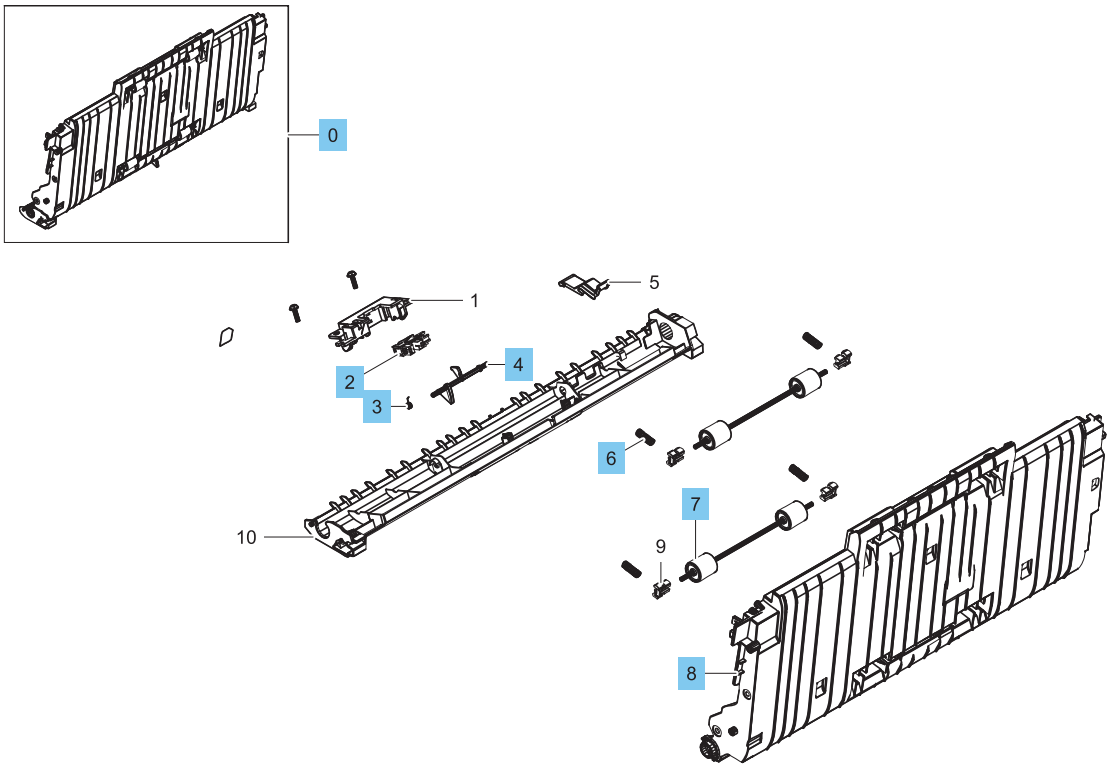


Table 4-16 Right door guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Side cover guide	SAM-JC95-01969A	1
2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
3	Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	1
4	Actuator lever, dup	SAM-JC66-04405A	1
6	Spring, cs	SAM-6107-001731	4
7	Idle roller, rubber	SAM-JC66-02289B	4
8	Feed guide	SAM-JC61-06988A	1

Right door output and takeaway

Figure 4-17 Right door output and takeaway

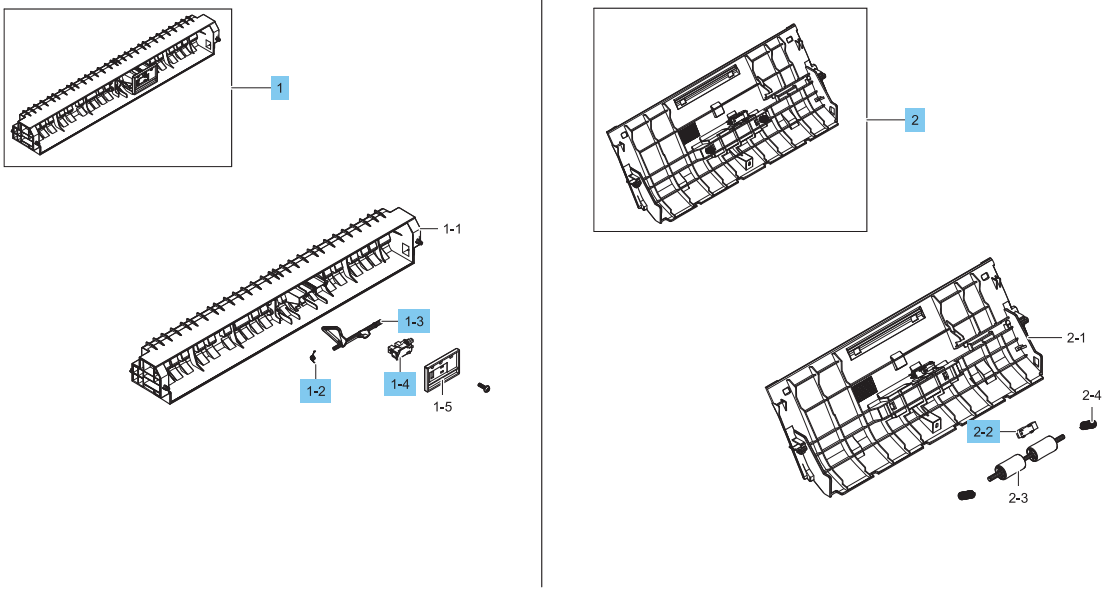


Table 4-17 Right door output and takeaway

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Side cover output	SAM-JC95-01968A	1
1-2	Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	1
1-3	Actuator lever, fuser out	SAM-JC66-04406A	1
1-4	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
2	Side cover takeaway	SAM-JC95-01972A	1
2-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1

T2 transfer

Figure 4-18 T2 transfer

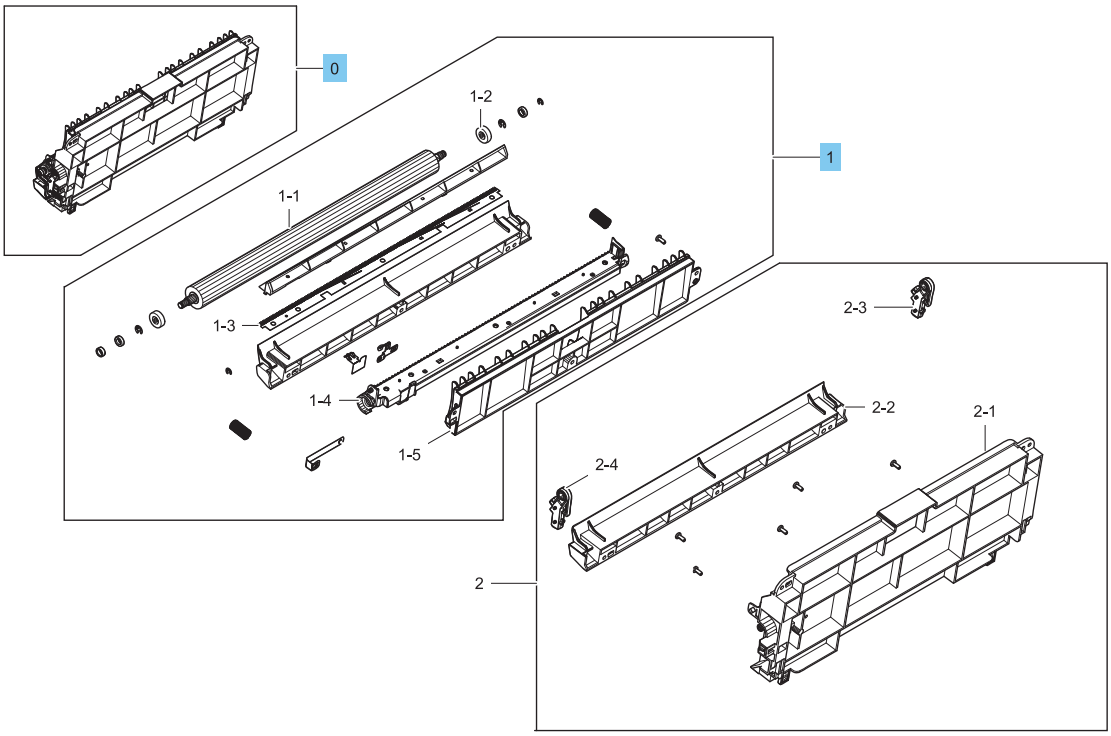


Table 4-18 T2 transfer

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	T2 transfer	SAM-JC93-01078A	1
1	T2 transfer roller	SAM-JC93-01080A	1

Flow ADF

Figure 4-19 Flow ADF

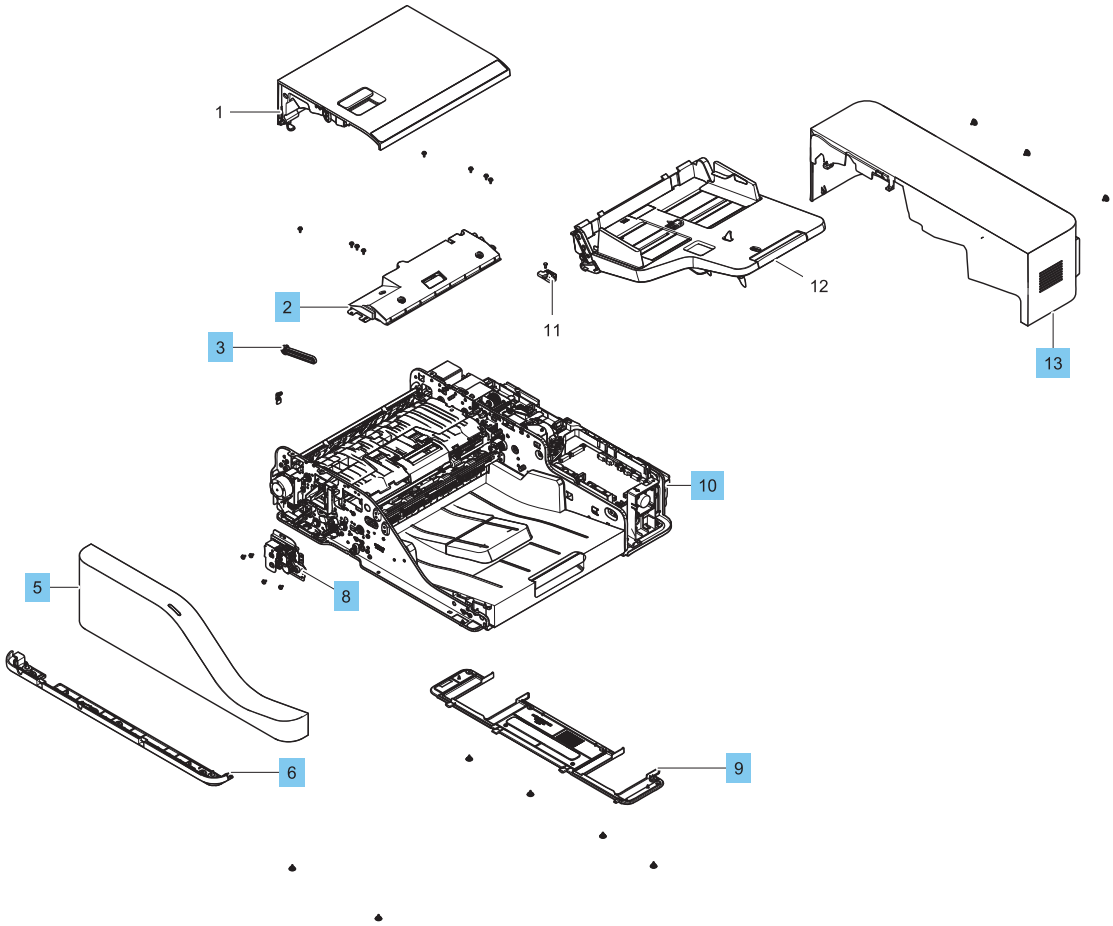


Table 4-19 Flow ADF

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Flow ADF pickup, upper (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC97-04872A	1
2	Flow ADF pickup, upper (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC97-04646B	1
3	Cover link, open	SAM-JC66-02270A	1
5	Flow ADF cover, front	SAM-JC97-04881A	1
6	Flow ADF dummy, front	SAM-JC97-04692A	1
8	Flow ADF damper	SAM-JC97-04692A	1
9	Flow ADF cover, bottom	SAM-JC97-04880A	1
10	Flow ADF, main frame (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC97-04883A	1
10	Flow ADF, main frame (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC97-04882A	1
13	Rear cover	SAM-JC63-05566A	1

Flow ADF open cover

Figure 4-20 Flow ADF open cover

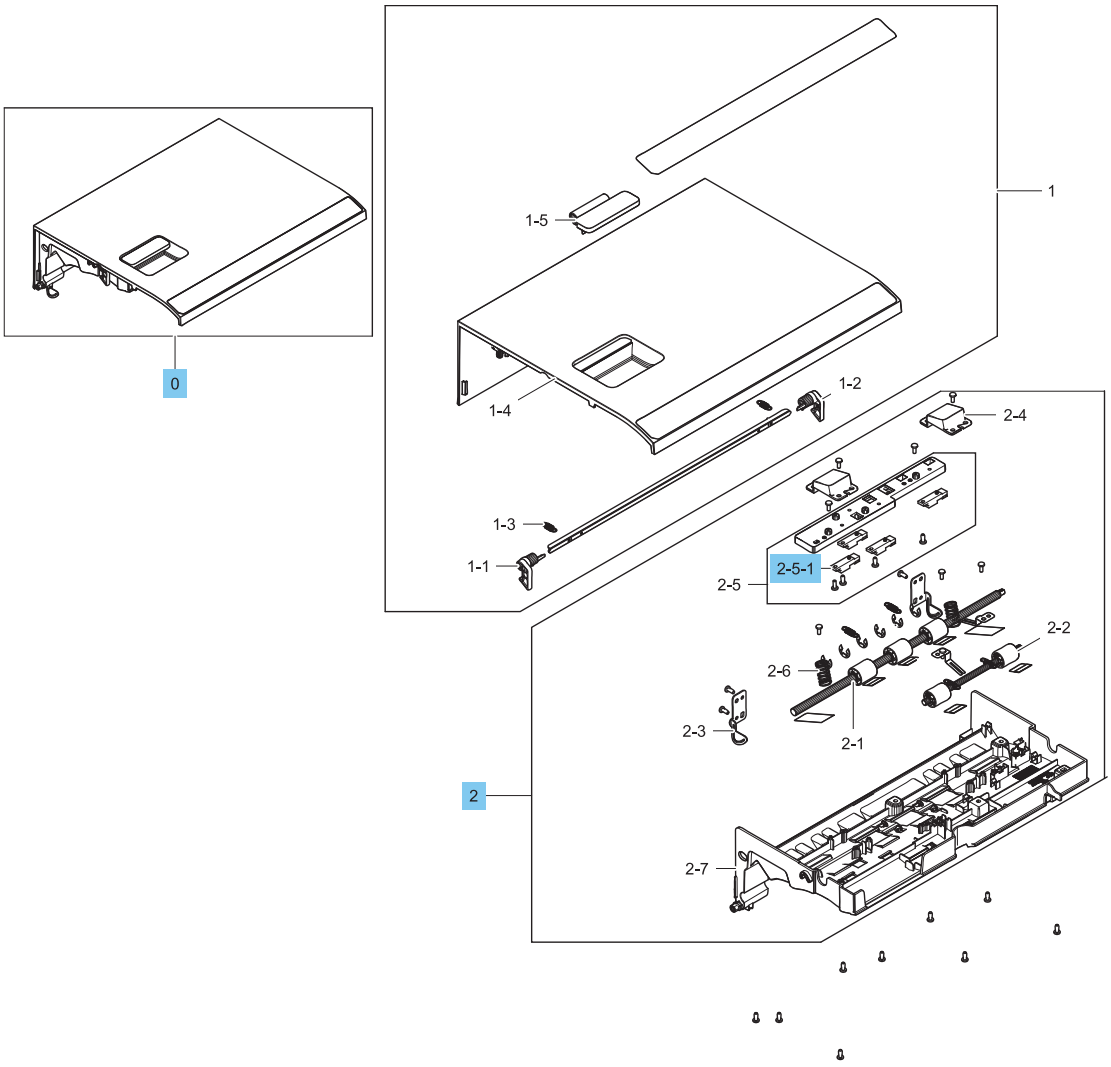


Table 4-20 Flow ADF open cover

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Flow ADF open cover	SAM-JC97-04869A	1
2	Flow ADF open cover, lower	SAM-JC97-04696B	1
2-5-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	4

Flow ADF upper pickup

Figure 4-21 Flow ADF upper pickup

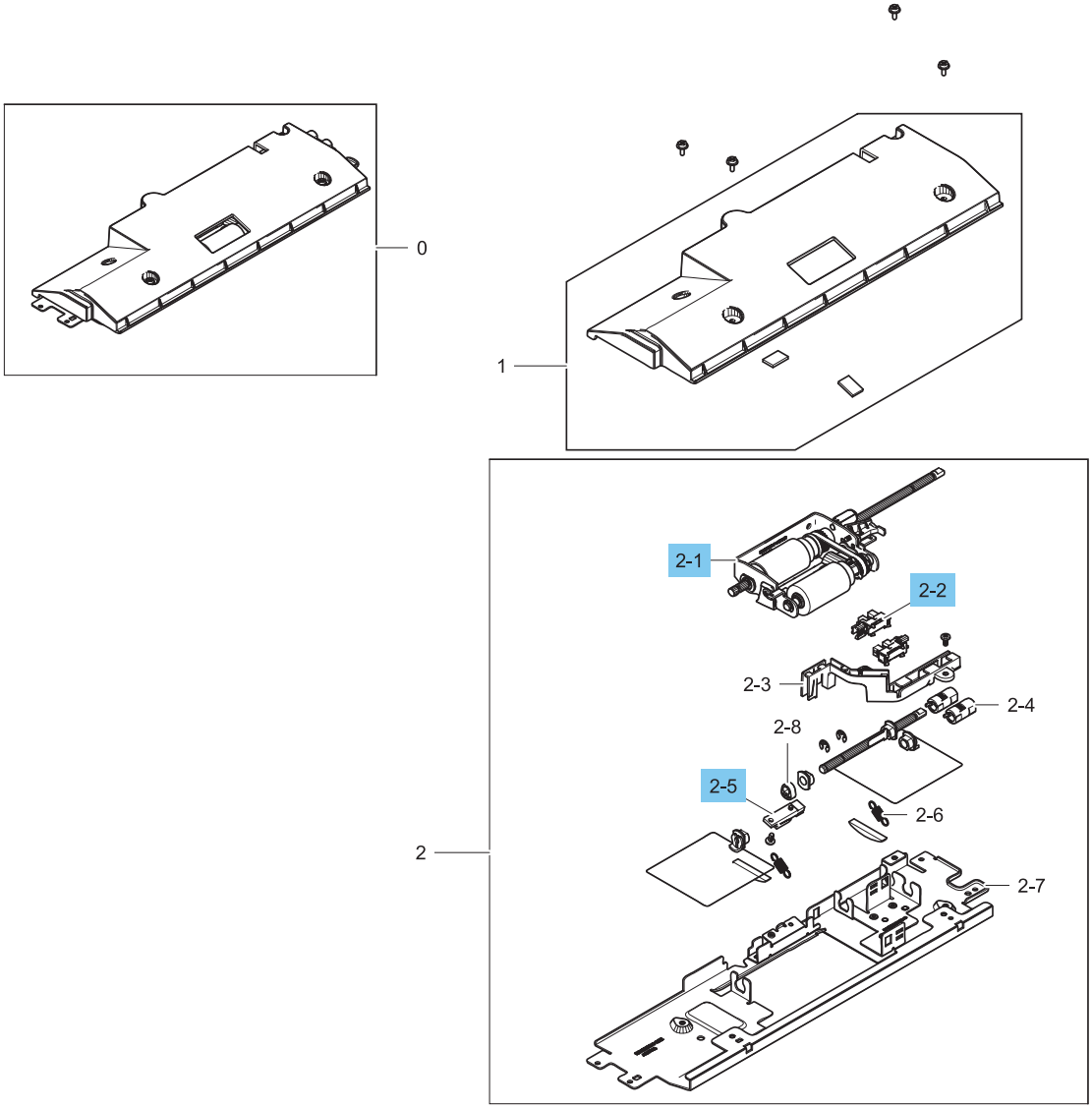


Table 4-21 Flow ADF upper pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2-1	Flow ADF sub-pickup	SAM-JC97-04650A	1
2-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1
2-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001502	1

Flow ADF stacker

Figure 4-22 Flow ADF stacker

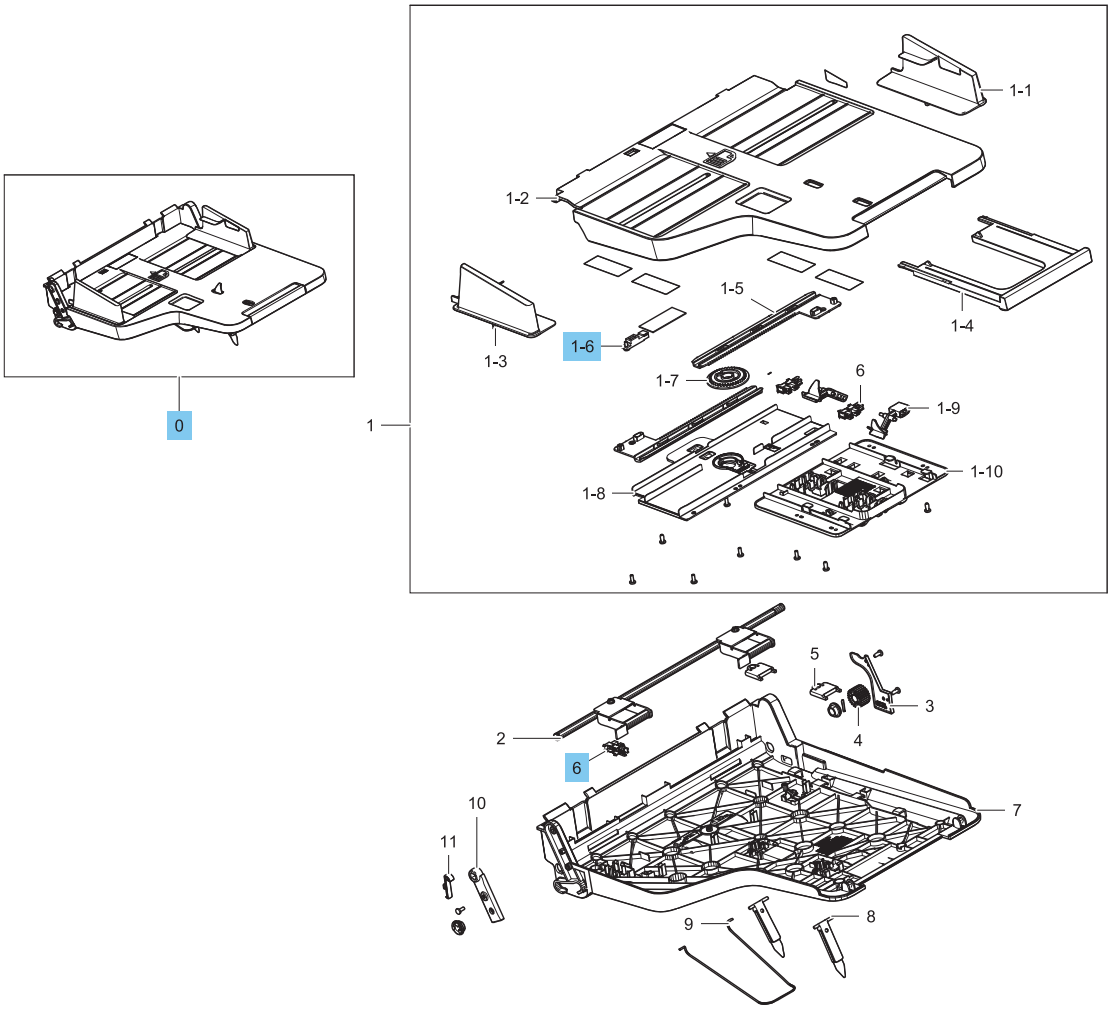


Table 4-22 Flow ADF stacker

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Flow ADF stacker	SAM-JC97-04658B	1
1-6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1
6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	1

Flow ADF main frame

Figure 4-23 Flow ADF main frame

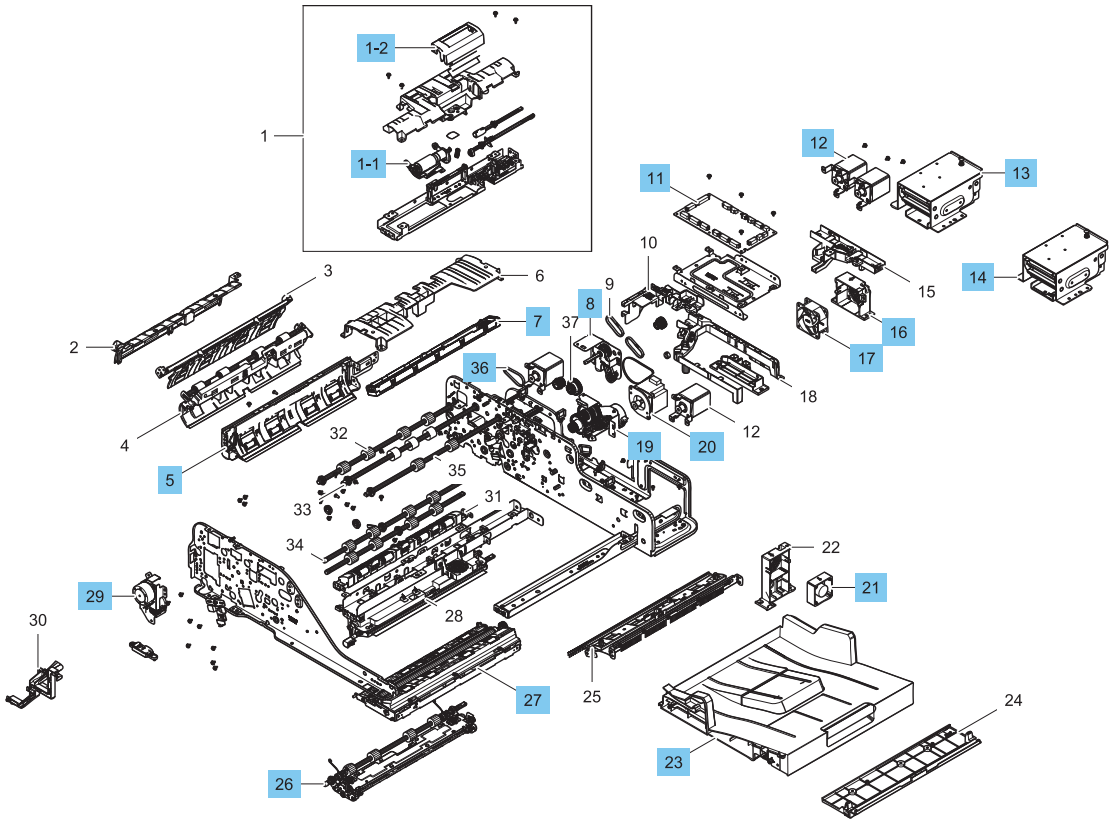


Table 4-23 Flow ADF main frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Flow ADF housing separation roller	SAM-JC97-04661A	1
1-2	Flow ADF separation cover	SAM-JC97-04652A	1
5	Flow ADF, scan in lower	SAM-JC97-04656B	1
7	Contact image sensor	SAM-0609-001558	1
8	Flow ADF pickup release drive	SAM-JC97-04681A	1
11	Flow ADF, PCA (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC92-02964A	1
11	Flow ADF, PCA (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC92-02964B	1
12	Flow ADF, motor feed drive	SAM-JC97-04680A	4
13	Flow ADF, hinge l	SAM-JC97-04640A	1
14	Flow ADF, hinge r	SAM-JC97-04641A	1
16	Fan motor housing	SAM-JC61-07694A	1
17	Fan, dc	SAM-JC31-00168A	1
19	Flow ADF lift drive	SAM-JC97-04679A	1
20	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
21	Fan, type 4	SAM-JC31-00146A	1
23	Flow ADF exterior	SAM-JC97-04668B	1
26	Flow ADF, white simplex roller	SAM-JC97-04687A	1
27	Flow ADF scan out	SAM-JC97-04830A	1
29	Flow ADF scan release drive	SAM-JC97-04682A	1
36	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	3

Flow ADF image scanner

Figure 4-24 Flow ADF image scanner

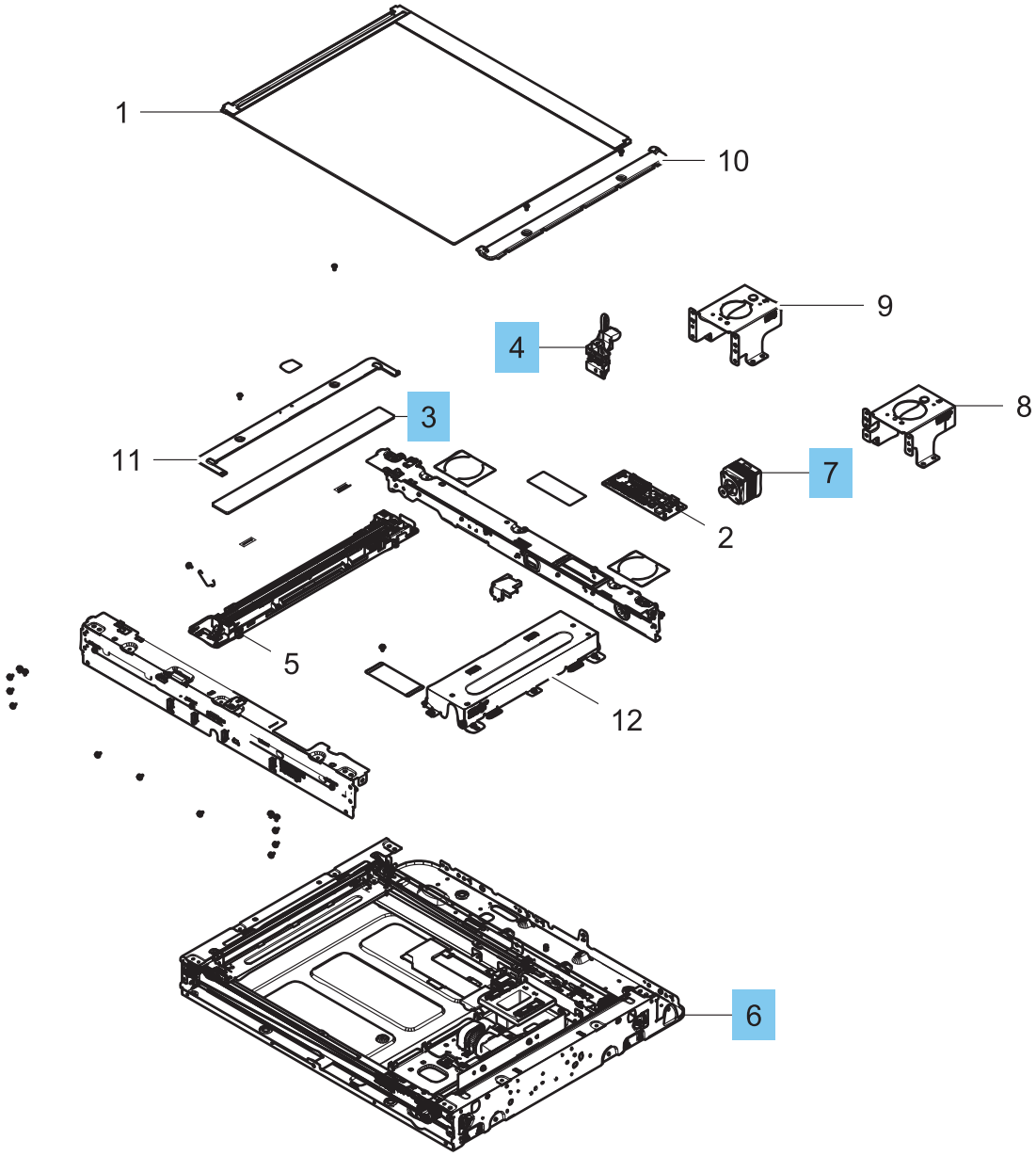


Table 4-24 Flow ADF image scanner

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Tempered scan glass	SAM-JC01-00101A	1
4	Image scanner open sensor	SAM-JC97-04516A	1
6	Image scanner, lower	SAM-JC97-04515A	1
7	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00158A	1

Flow ADF image scanner, lower

Figure 4-25 Flow ADF image scanner, lower

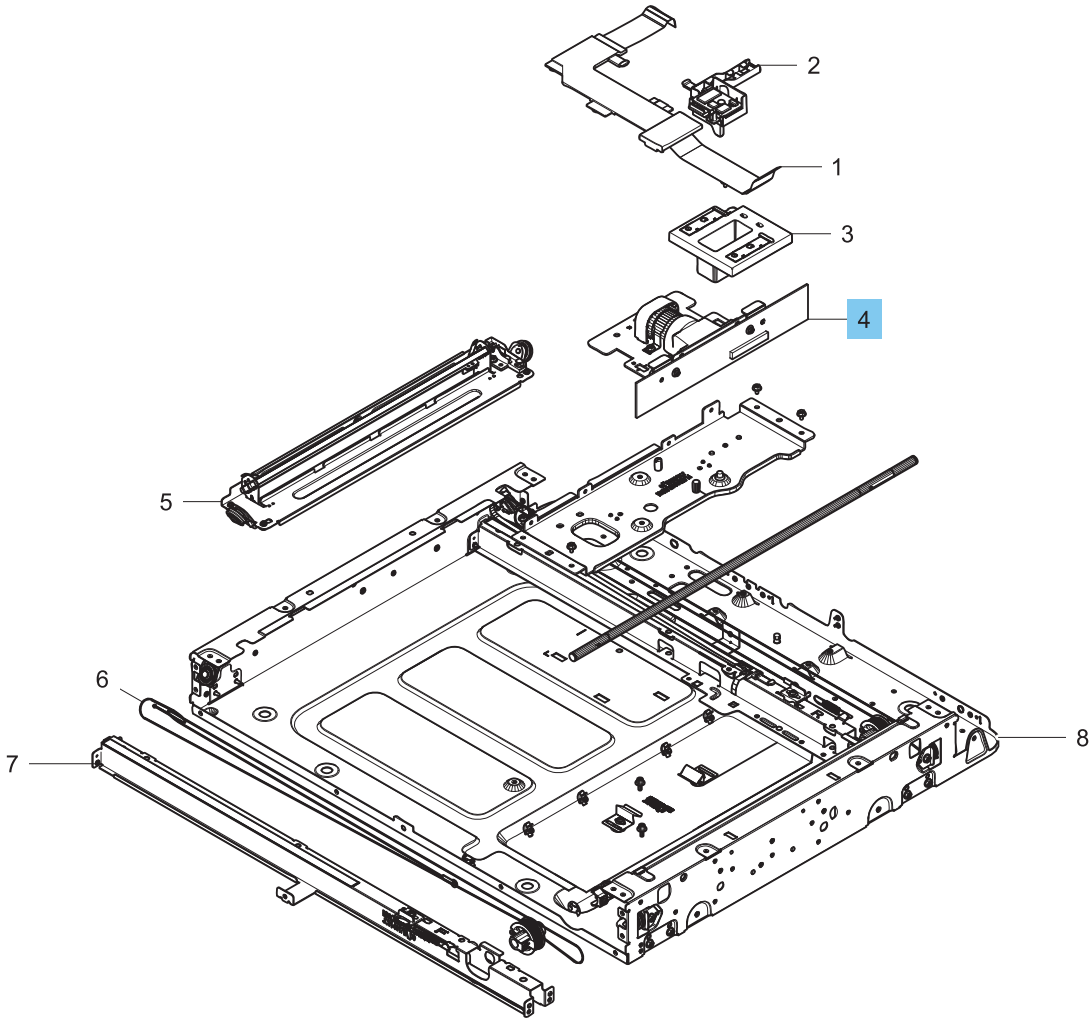


Table 4-25 Flow ADF image scanner, lower

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04523B	1

Dual cassette feeder (DCF)

DCF main

Figure 4-26 DCF main

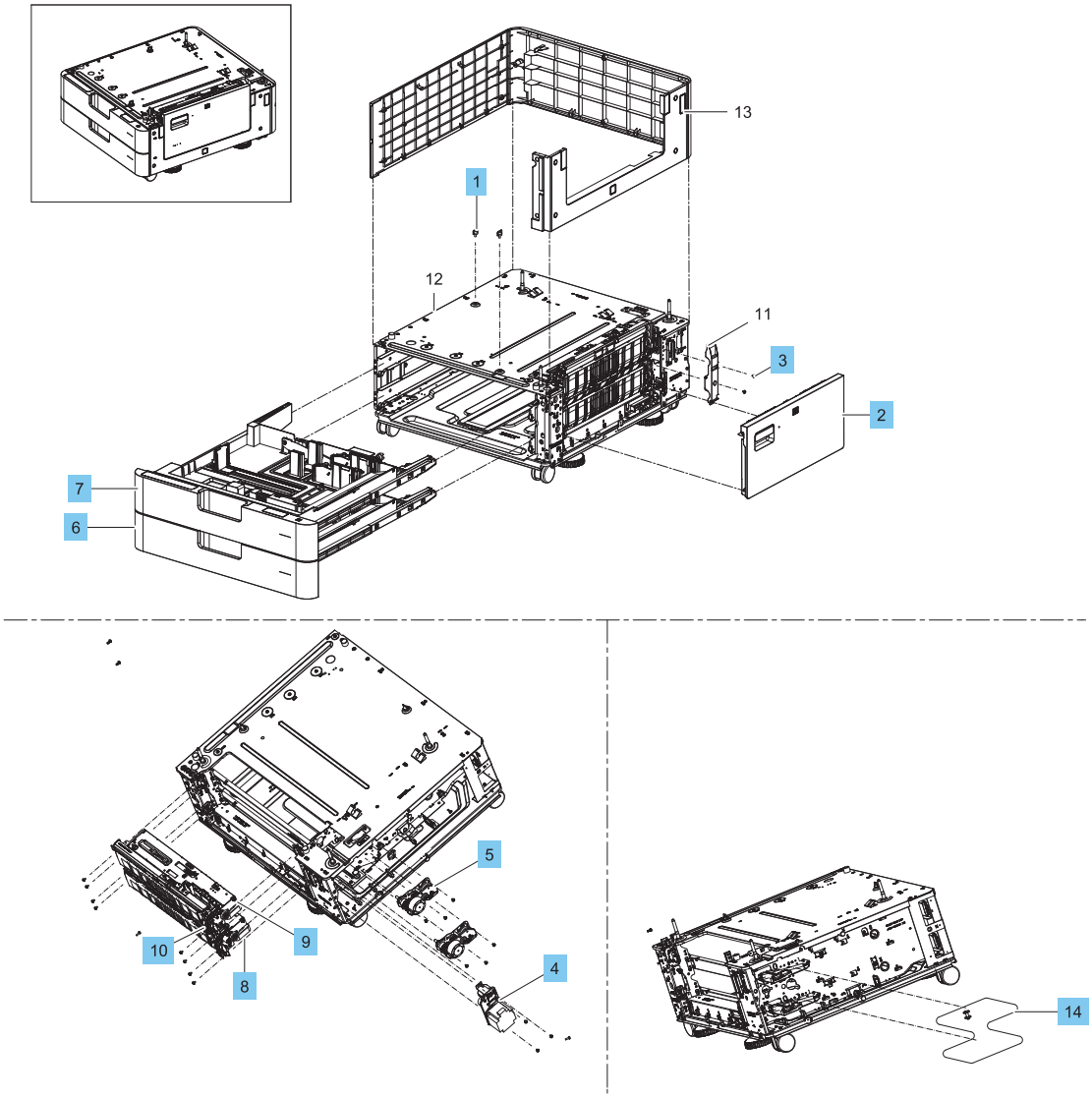


Table 4-26 DCF main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Machinery, fastener screw	SAM-JC60-00078A	2
2	DCF, sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01649A	1
3	Hex screw	6009-001665	19
4	Feed drive opt	SAM-JC93-01135A	1
5	Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063B	2
6	Cassette, fifth	SAM-JC90-01652	1
7	Cassette, fourth	SAM-JC90-01654	1
8	DCF second pickup	SAM-JC90-01680	1
9	DCF first pickup	SAM-JC90-01679	1
10	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003185	1
14	DCF, sub-auto closing	SAM-JC90-01677	1
1-2-2	Pick rollers[1]	SAM-JC93-0192A	3
1-2-3	Photo-interrupter[1]	SAM-0604-001490	1
1-2-21	Feed roller[1]	SAM-JC66-04607A	1
1-2-13	Clutch one way[1]	SAM-JC66-00977A	1
1-2-24	Feed roller opt[1]	SAM-JC66-04670A	1
1-2-15	Coupler[1]	SAM-JC67-00455A	1

[1] These parts do not appear in the exploded diagram, but are available for the dual cassette feeder.

DCF frame

Figure 4-27 DCF frame

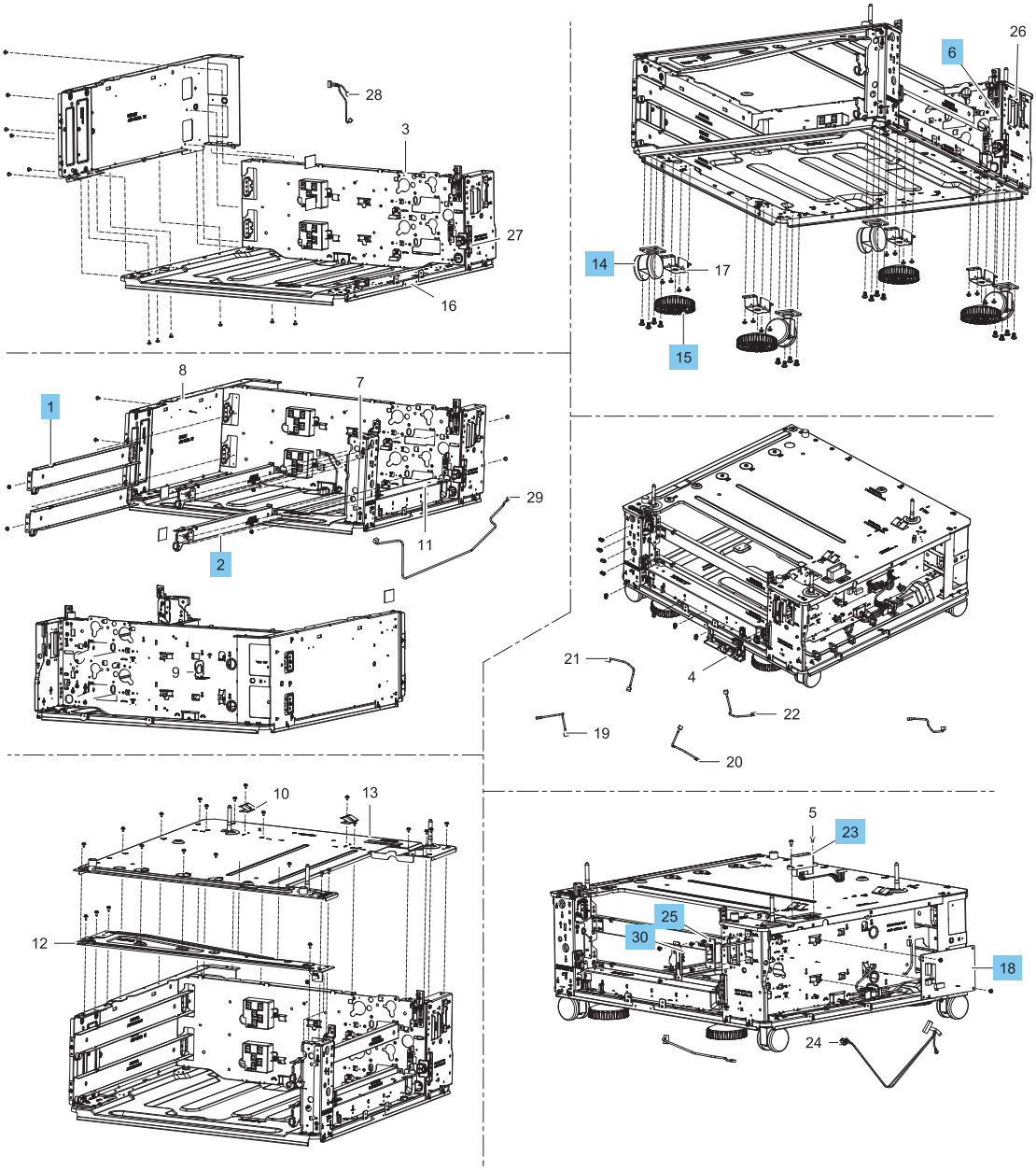


Table 4-27 DCF frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Frame, left cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01044A	2
2	Frame, right cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01045A	2
6	DCF sub-takeaway interlock	SAM-JC90-01385A	1
14	Caster	SAM-6109-001138	4
15	DCF guide adjust	SAM-JC61-04871A	4
18	DCF PCA	SAM-JC92-02738A	1
23	DCF, main harness	SAM-JC39-02276A	1
25	DCF, sub harness	SAM-JC39-02278A	1
30	DCF, t1mot harness	SAM-JC39-02268A	1

DCF rear frame

Figure 4-28 DCF rear frame

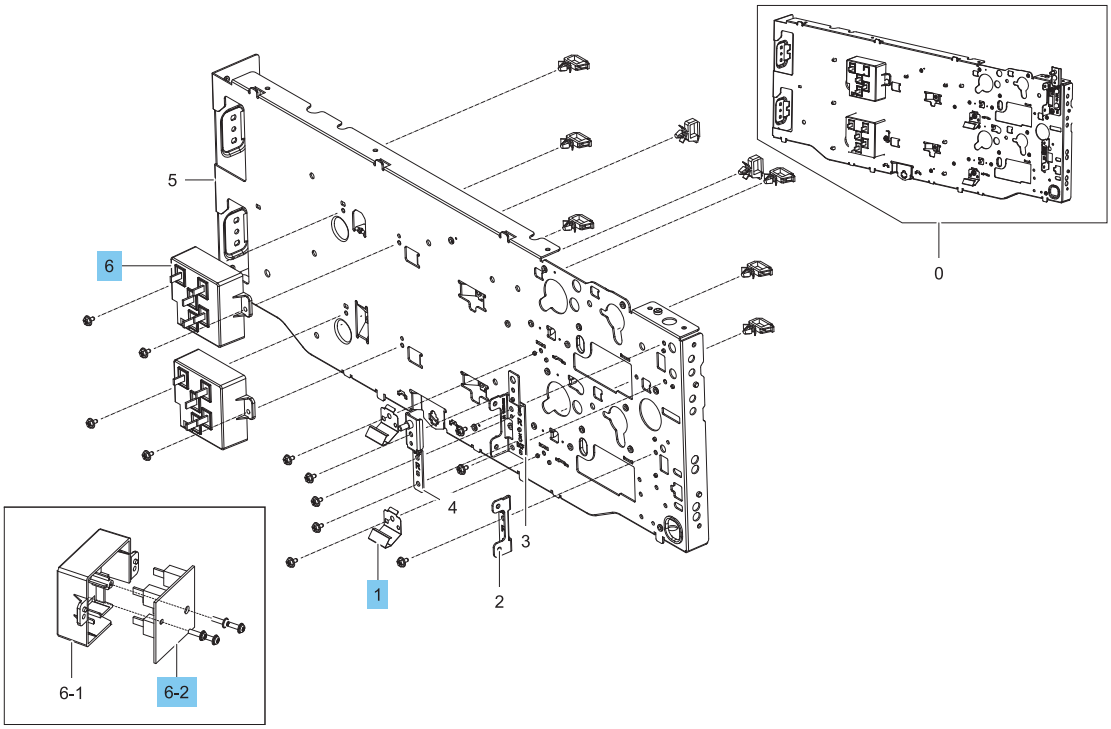


Table 4-28 DCF rear frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Ground plate	SAM-JC61-03002A	2
6	Main frame rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	2
6-2	PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	2

Opt feed drive

Figure 4-29 Opt feed drive

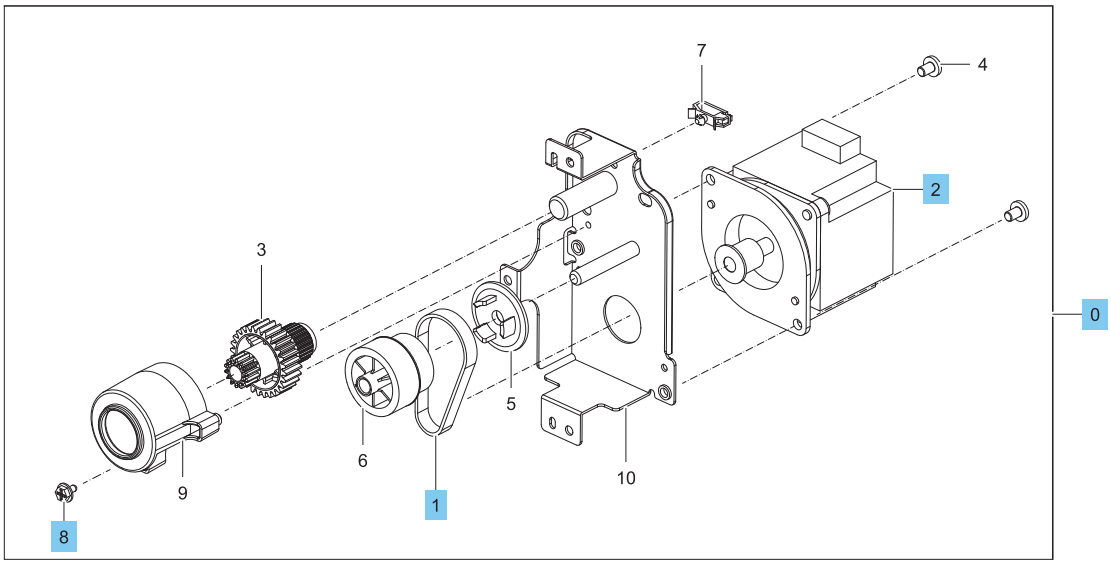


Table 4-29 Opt feed drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Opt feed drive	SAM-JC93-01135A	1
1	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	1
2	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
8	Hex screw	6009-001665	1

DCF second pickup

Figure 4-30 DCF second pickup

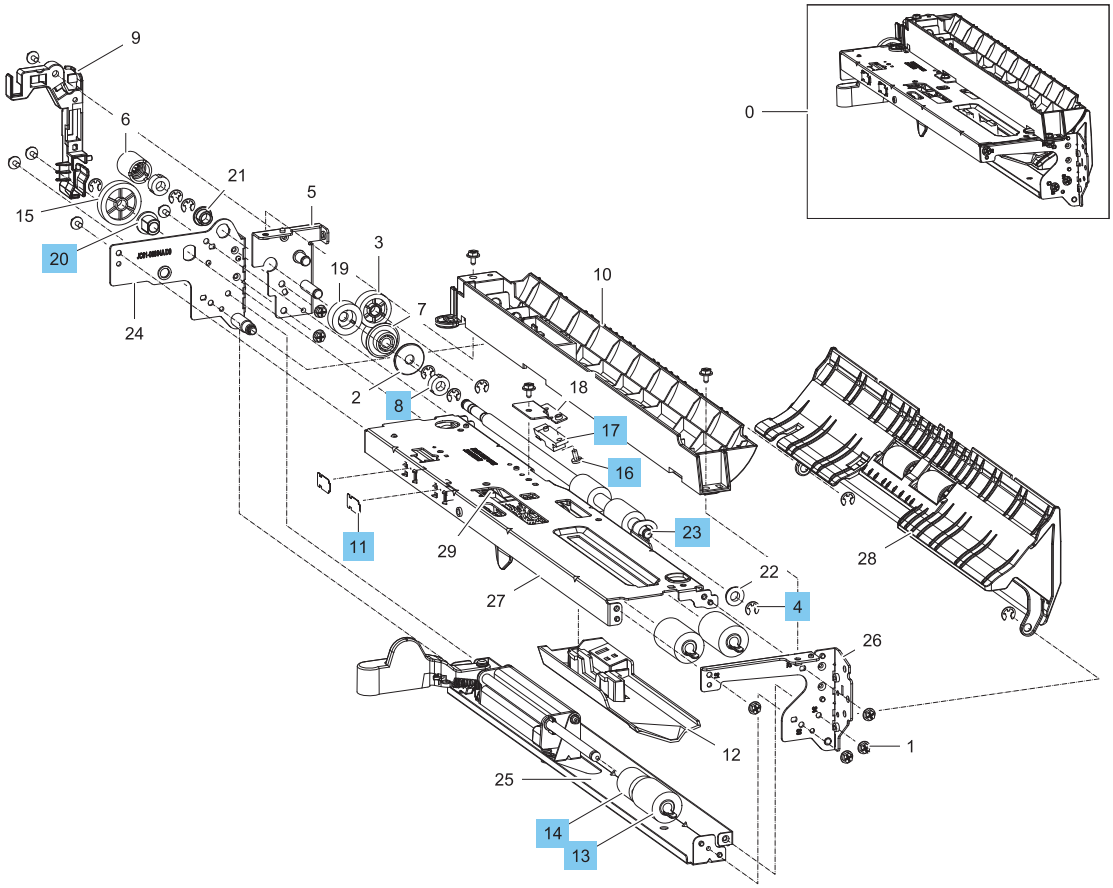


Table 4-30 DCF second pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	6
8	Clutch one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	4
11	Sheet sensor	SAM-JC63-03776A	2
13	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	3
14	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00464A	1
16	Screw, tap type	SAM-6003–00269	4
17	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1
20	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	2
23	Opt feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	1

High capacity input tray (HCI)

HCI main

Figure 4-31 HCI main

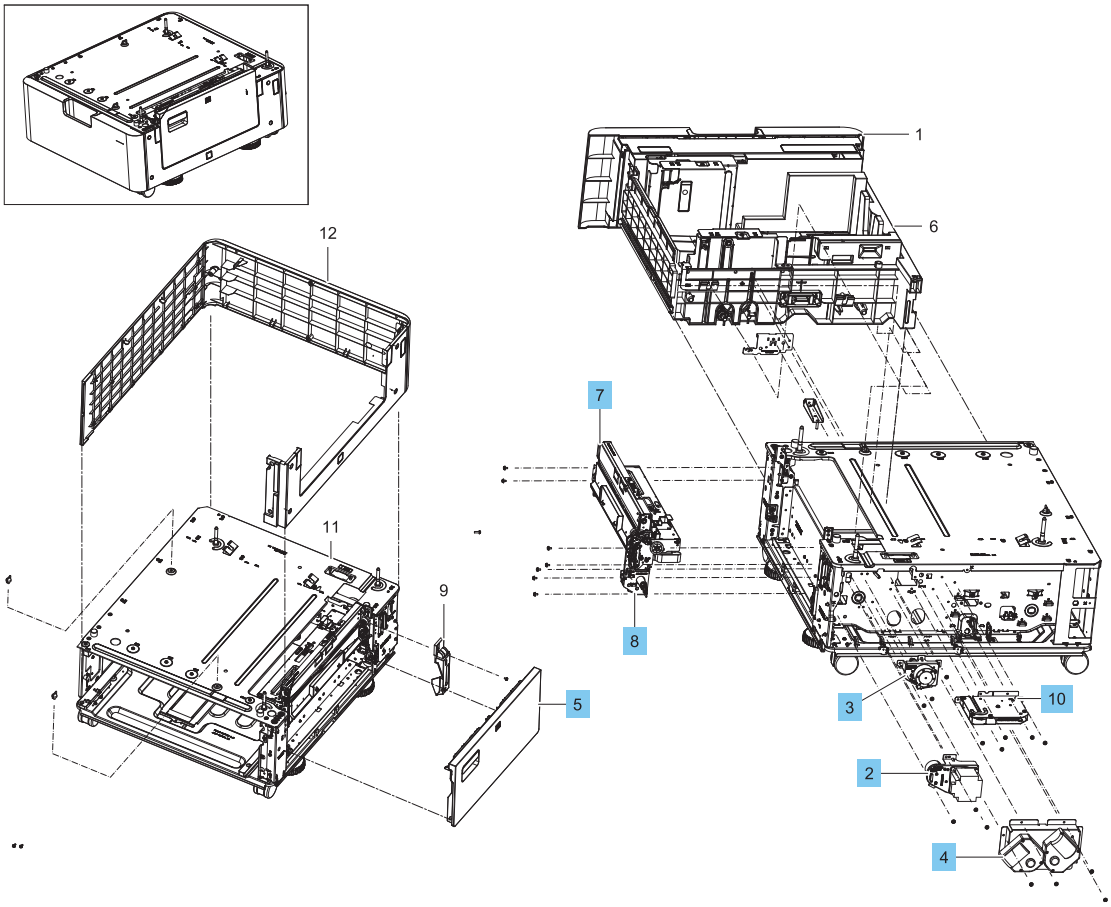


Table 4-31 HCI main

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Tray cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
2	Feed drive, HCI	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
3	Pickup drive	SAM-JC90-01115A	1
4	Lift drive, shift	SAM-JC93-01118A	1
5	HCI sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01646A	1
6	HCI, cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	1
7	HCI, main pickup	SAM-JC93-01322B	1
8	Drive takeaway roller	SAM-JC93-01119A	1
10	HCI, sub-auto closer	SAM-JC90-01382A	1

HCI drive

Figure 4-32 HCI drive

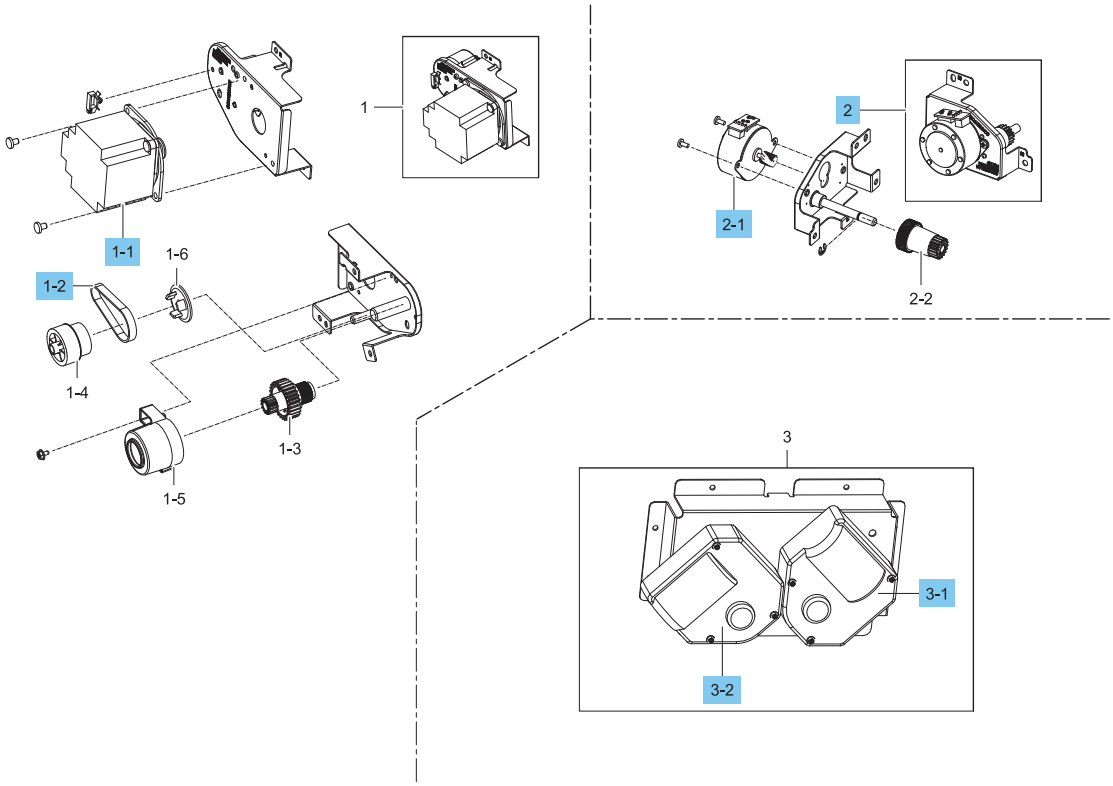


Table 4-32 HCI drive

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	1
1-2	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	1
2	Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01115A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	1
3-1	Motor shift gear	SAM-JC31-00125A	1
3-2	Motor gear	SAM-JC31-00109A	1

HCI cassette

Figure 4-33 HCI cassette

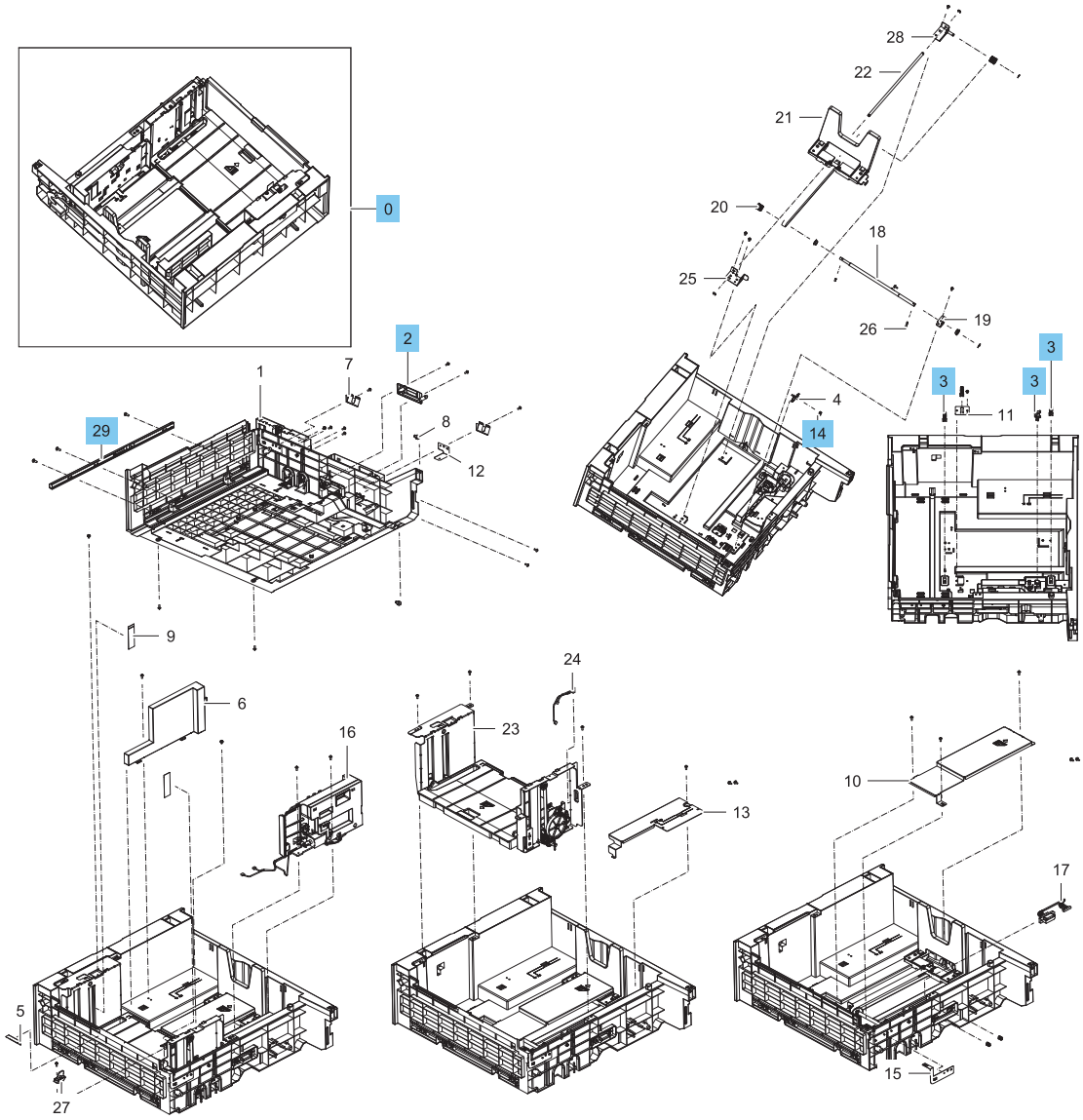


Table 4-33 HCI cassette

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	HCI cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	1
2	Connector holder, scf	SAM-JC61-01742A	1
3	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	4
14	Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	SAM-JC61-00076A	1
29	Cassette guide rail	SAM-JC61-07471A	1

HCI frame

Figure 4-34 HCI frame

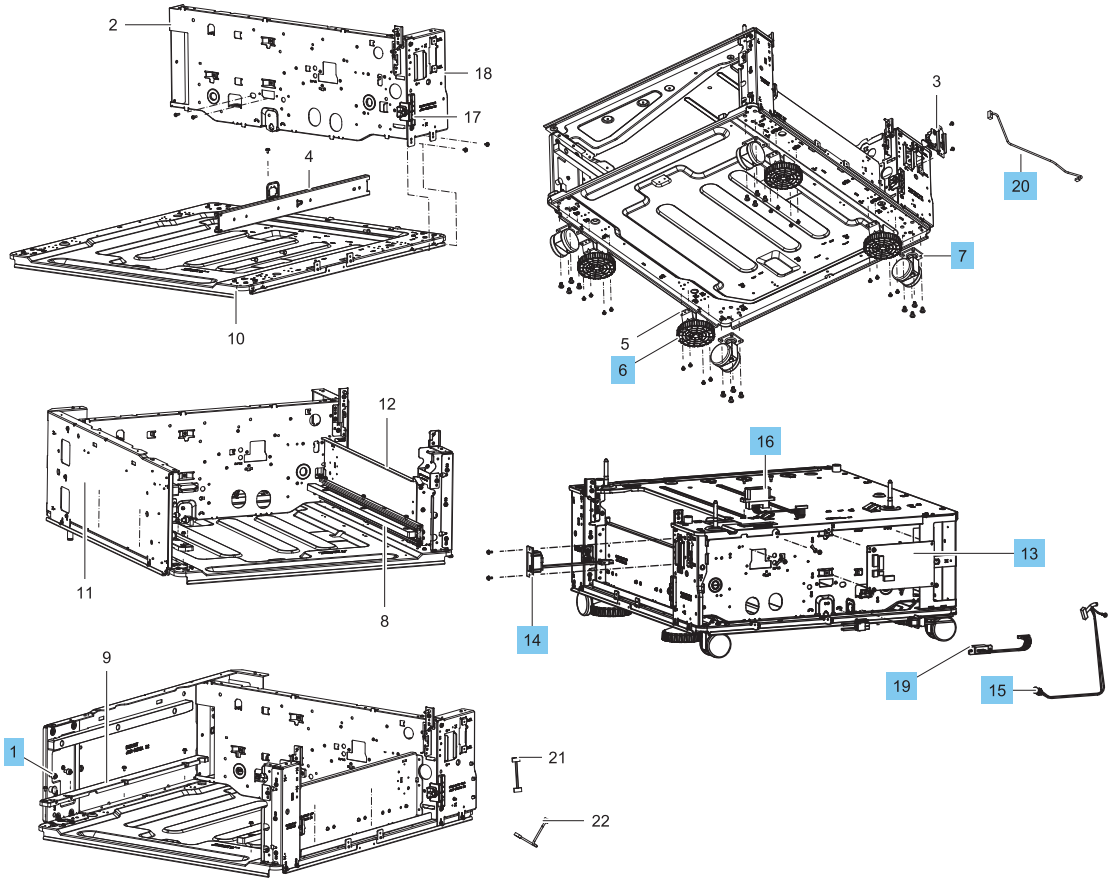


Table 4-34 HCI frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Idle roller, cst	SAM-JC61-03331A	2
6	Adjust guide, DCF	SAM-JC61-04871A	4
7	Caster	SAM-6109-001138	4
13	HCI PCA	SAM-JC92-02738B	1
14	Harness, sub if HCI	SAM-JC39-02285A	1
15	Harness, heater HCI	SAM-JC39-02284A	1
16	Harness, main if HCI	SAM-JC39-02283A	1
19	Harness, inner tray HCI	SAM-JC39-02286A	1
20	Harness, mot HCI	SAM-JC39-02279A	1

HCI main pickup

Figure 4-35 HCI main pickup

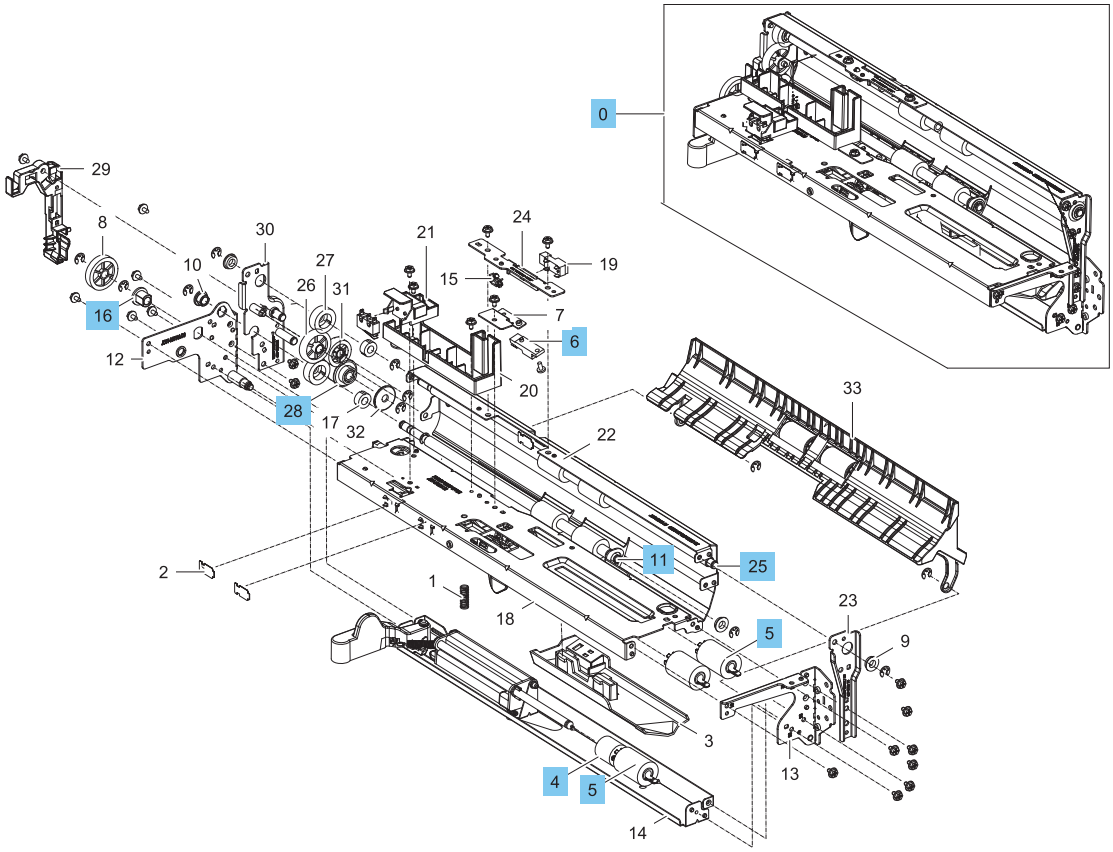


Table 4-35 HCI main pickup

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	HCI main	SAM-JC93-01139A	1
4	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1
5	Pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01091A	3
6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	1
11	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	1
16	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	1
25	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04670A	1
28	Belt	SAM-JC66-04281A	1

High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI)

sHCI main 1

Figure 4-36 sHCI main 1

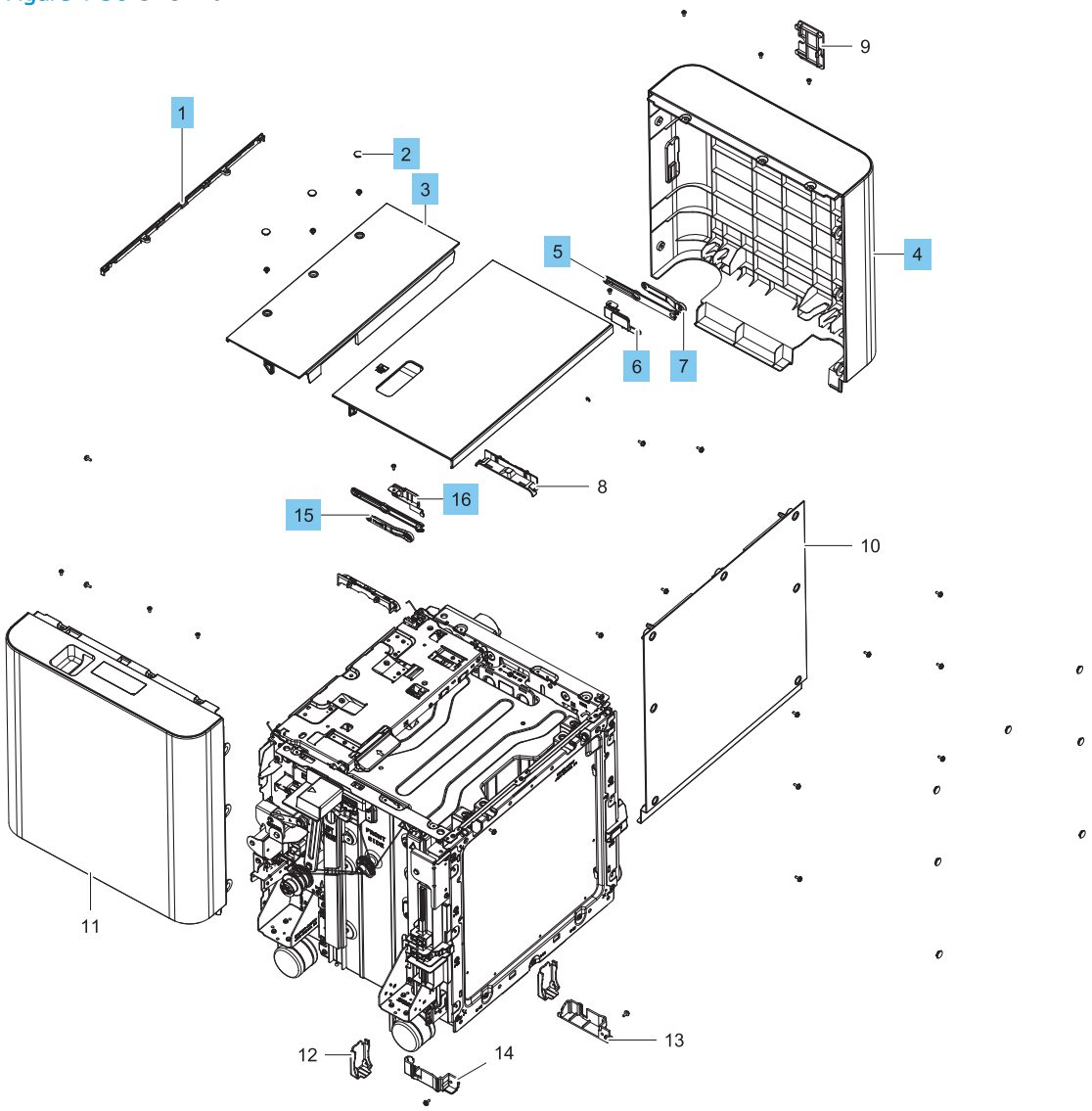


Table 4-36 sHCI main 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Left cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
2	Screw cap	SAM-JC67-00711A	3
3	Pickup cover	SAM-JC63-04798B	1
4	Rear cover, sHCI	SAM-JC90-01660A	1
5	Link door	SAM-JC66–04279A	2
6	Link holder, hinge r	SAM-JC61-06568A	1
7	Link door, rear 2	SAM-JC66-04277A	1
15	Link door, front 2	SAM-JC66-04278A	1
16	Link holder, hinge f	SAM-JC61-06567A	1

sHCI main 3

Figure 4-37 sHCI main 3

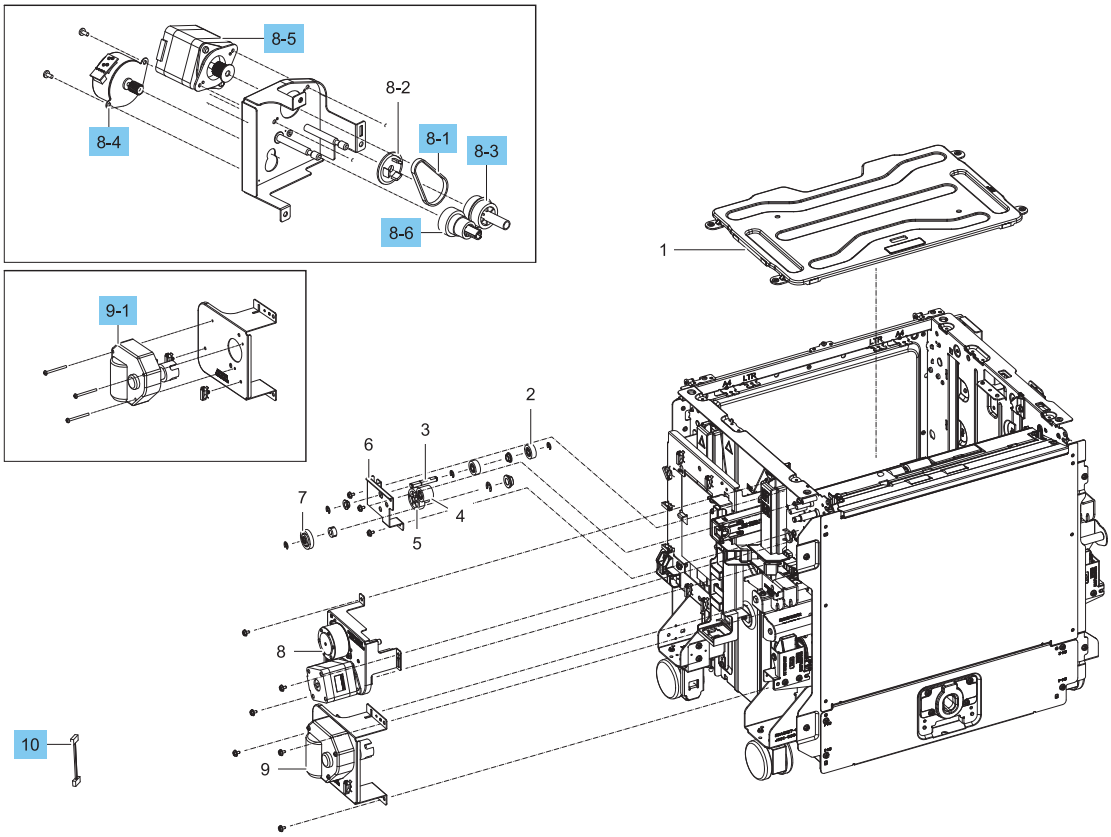


Table 4-37 sHCI main 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8-1	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	1
8-3	sHCI, feed pulley gear	SAM-JC66-04295A	1
8-4	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	1
8-5	Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00163A	1
8-6	sHCI drive gear	SAM-JC66-04294A	1
9-1	Gear motor	SAM-JC31-00109A	1
10	sHCI, mot harness	SAM-JC39-02287A	1

sHCI main 5

Figure 4-38 sHCI main 5

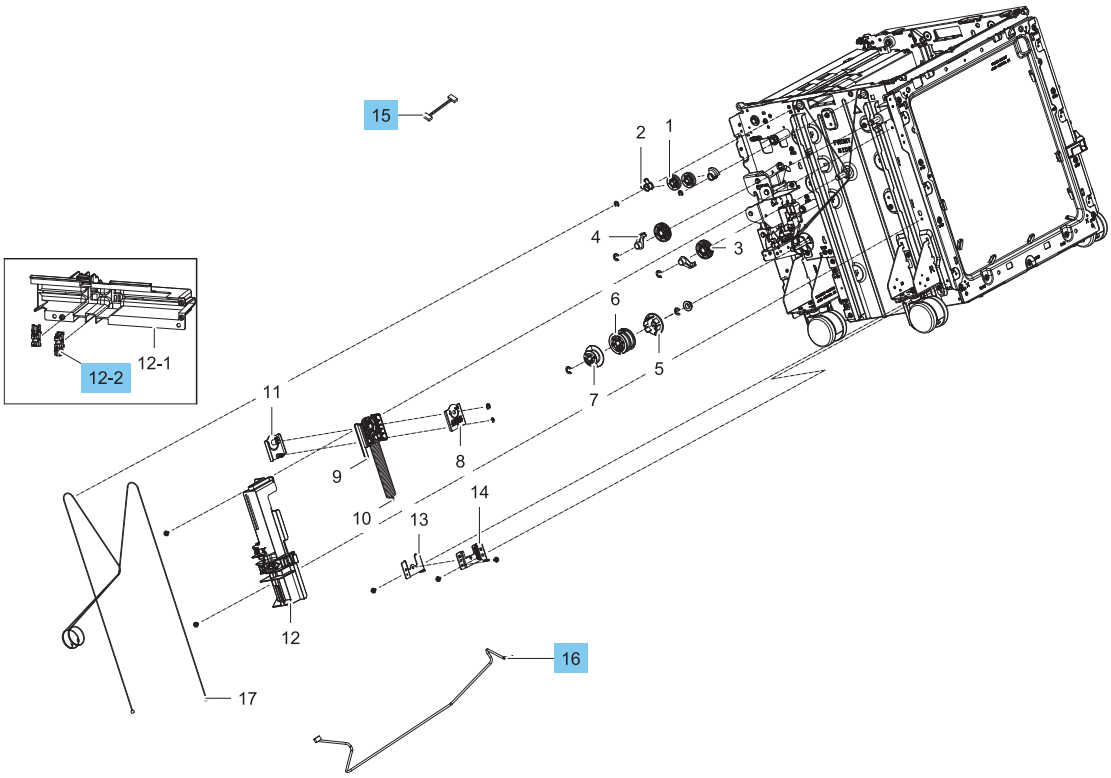


Table 4-38 sHCI main 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
9	Actuator	SAM-JC66-04290A	1
12-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	2
15	sHCI, connect sensor harness	SAM-JC39-02291A	1
16	sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	1

sHCI main 6

Figure 4-39 sHCI main 6

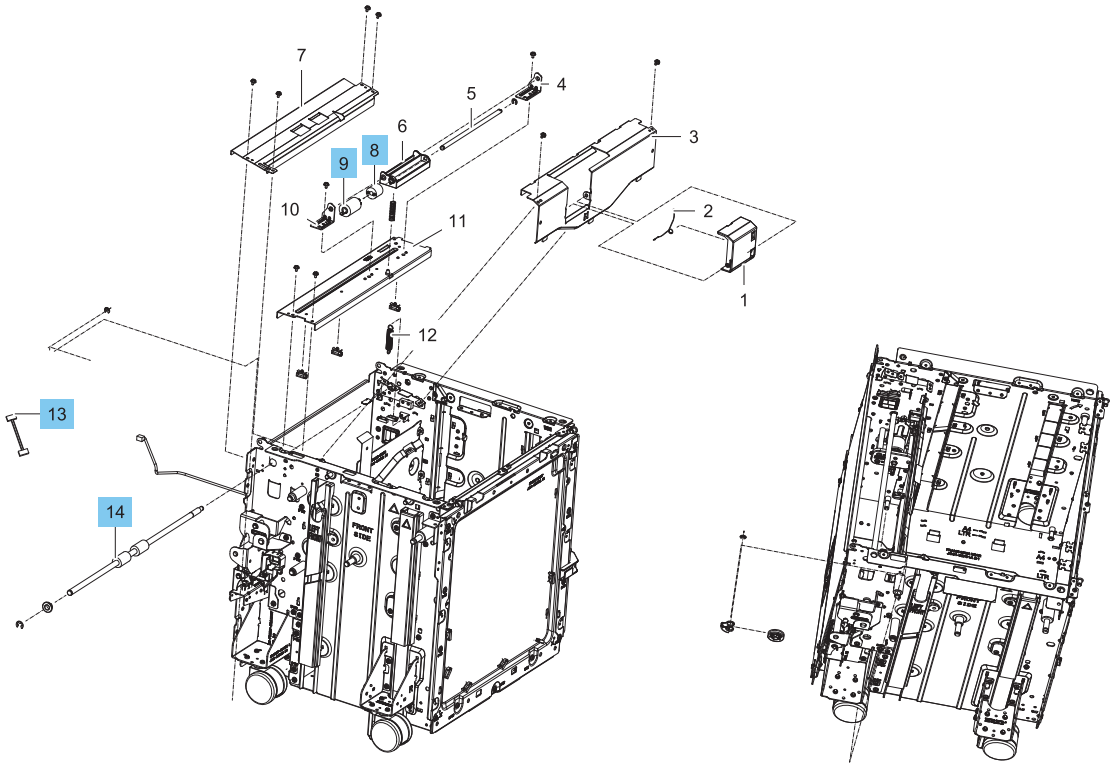


Table 4-39 sHCI main 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
8	Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	1
9	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	1
13	sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	1
14	Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04606A	1

Pickup cover unit

Figure 4-40 Pickup cover unit

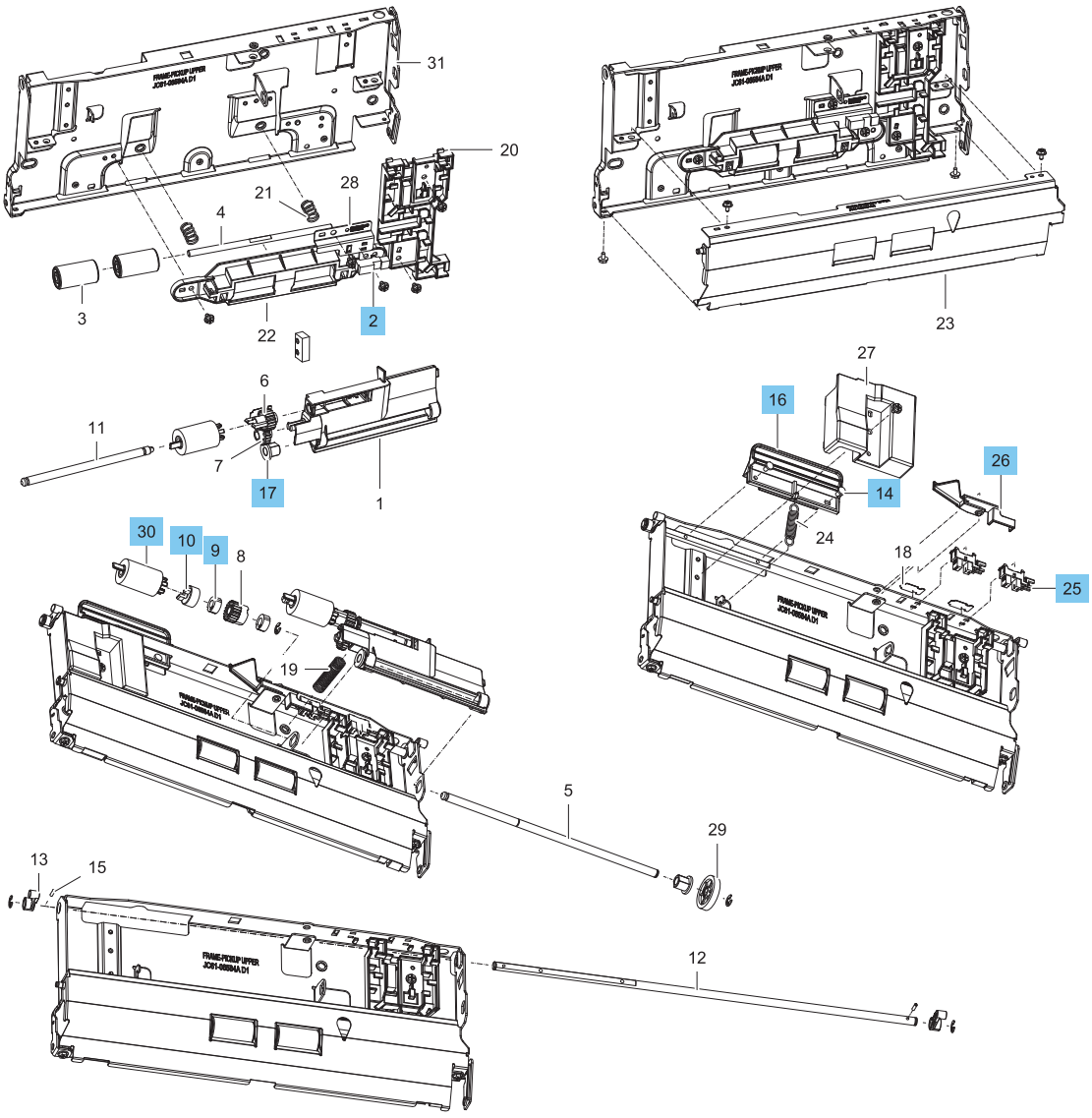


Table 4-40 Pickup cover unit

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	1
9	Clutch, one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	2
10	Idle holder, one way	SAM-JC61-01288A	1
14	Machine screw	SAM-6001-002716	2
16	Pickup cover lever	SAM-JC63-04799A	1
17	Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	2
25	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	2
26	Actuator, empty pickup	SAM-JC66-04276A	1
30	Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	2

sHCI frame

Figure 4-41 sHCI frame

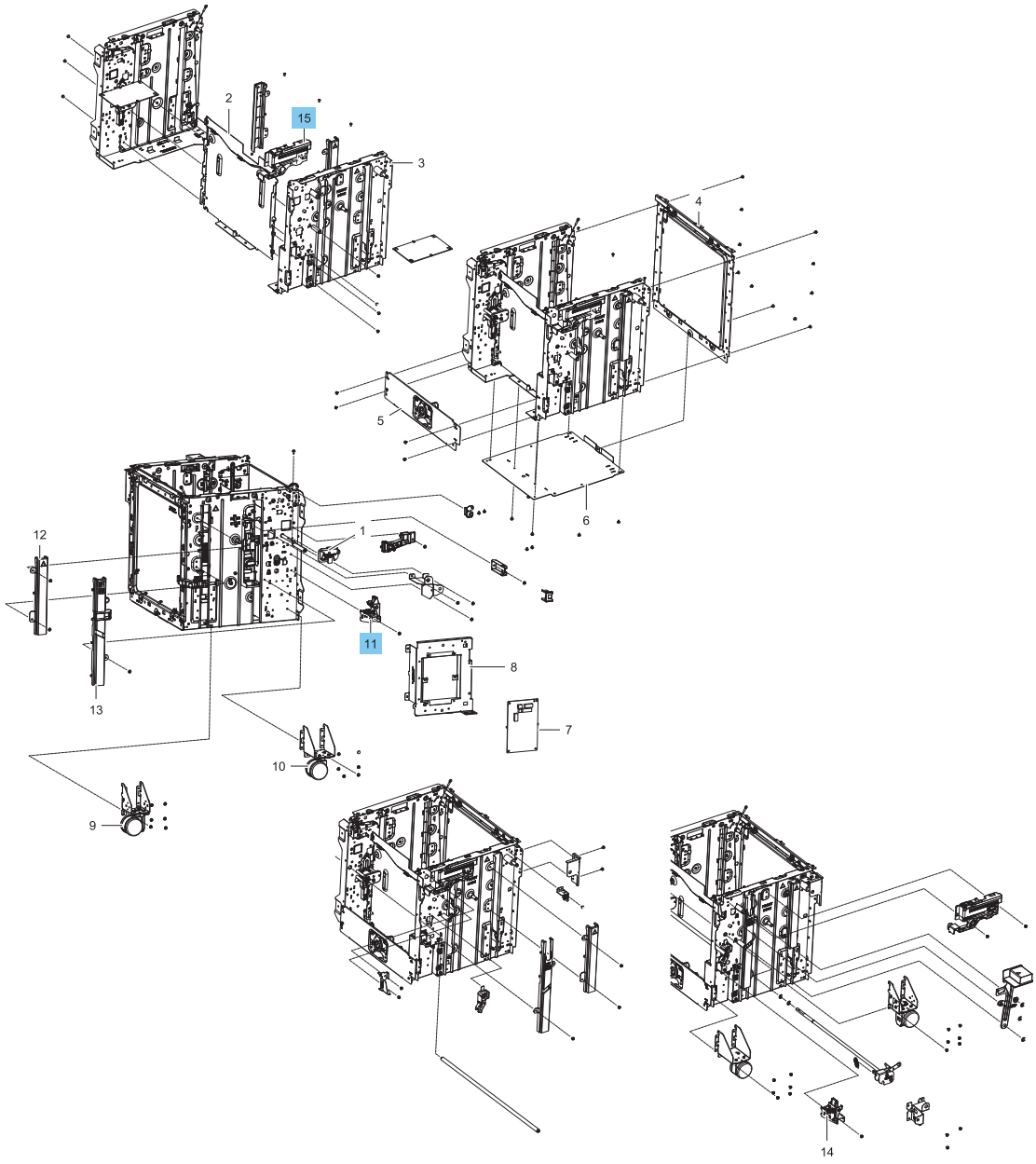


Table 4-41 sHCI frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
11	Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	SAM-JC93-01124A	1
15	Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	SAM-JC93-01123A	1

Finishers

Booklet finisher

Figure 4-42 Booklet finisher

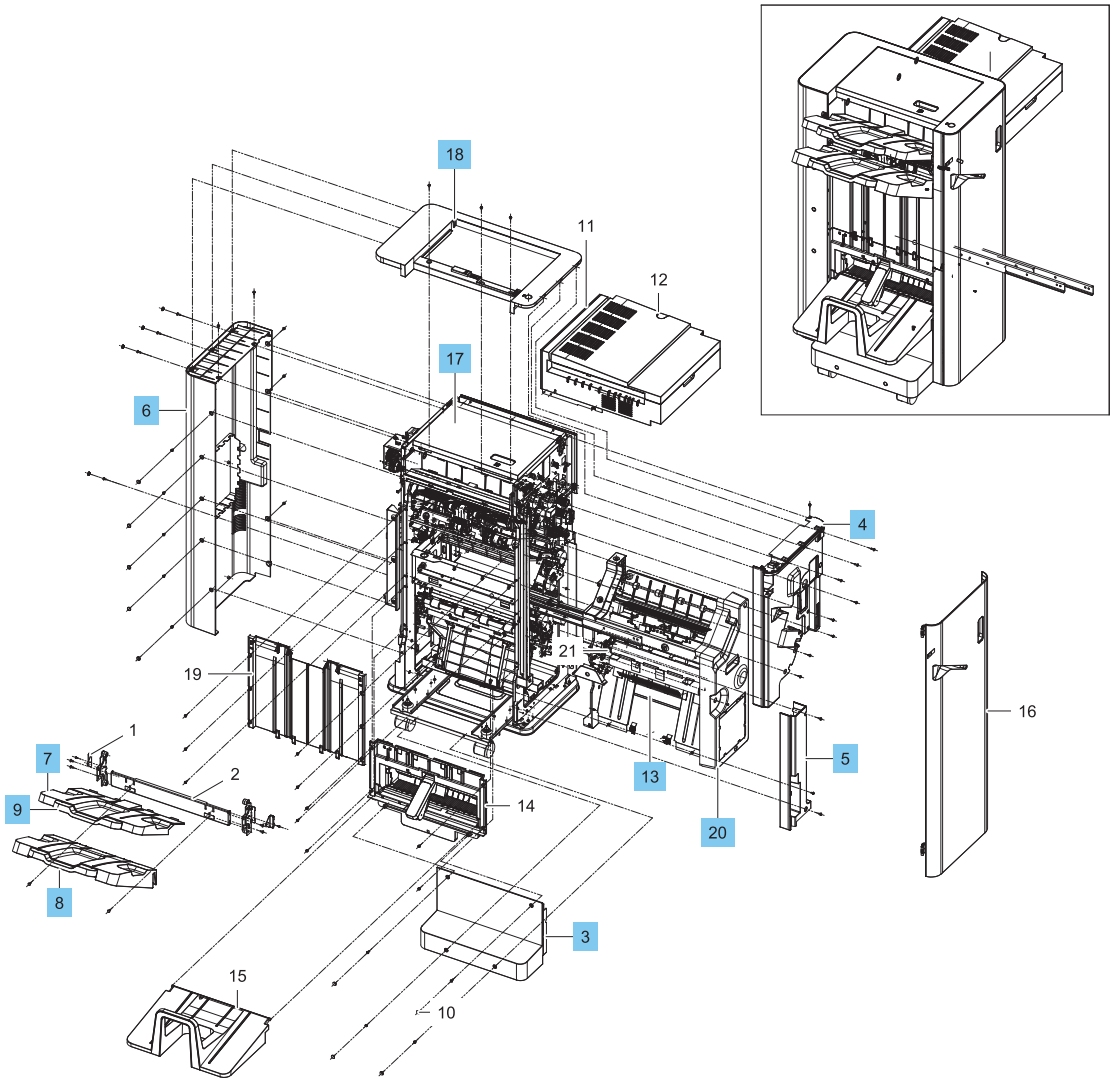


Table 4-42 Booklet finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	1
4	Cover, front	SAM-JC63-04986B	1
5	Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	1
6	Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04988B	1
7	Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	1
8	Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	1
9	Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	2
13	Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	1
17	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1
18	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
20	Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478A	1

Mainline finisher 1

Figure 4-43 Mainline finisher 1

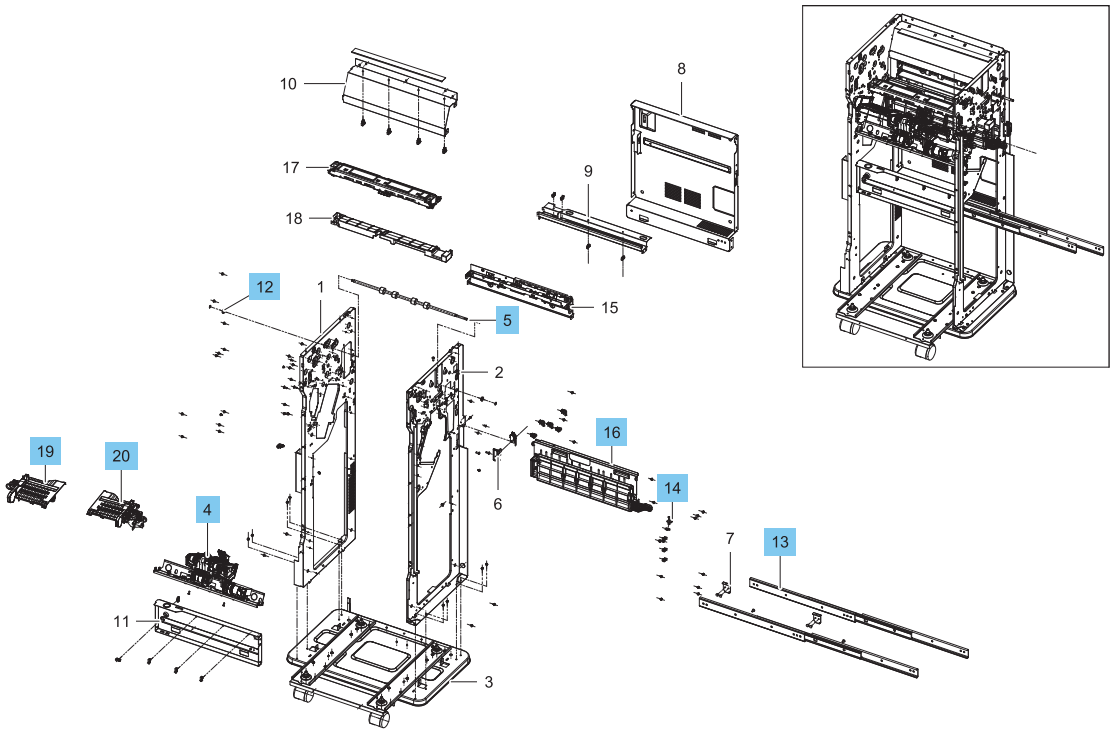


Table 4-43 Mainline finisher 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
4	Finisher sub-ejector unit	SAM-JC90-01409A	1
5	Roller, main-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04722A	1
12	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	6
13	Rail	SAM-6102-003369	2
14	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
16	Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	1
19	Finisher sub-alignment rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	1
20	Finisher sub-alignment front	SAM-JC90-01464A	1

Mainline finisher 2

Figure 4-44 Mainline finisher 2

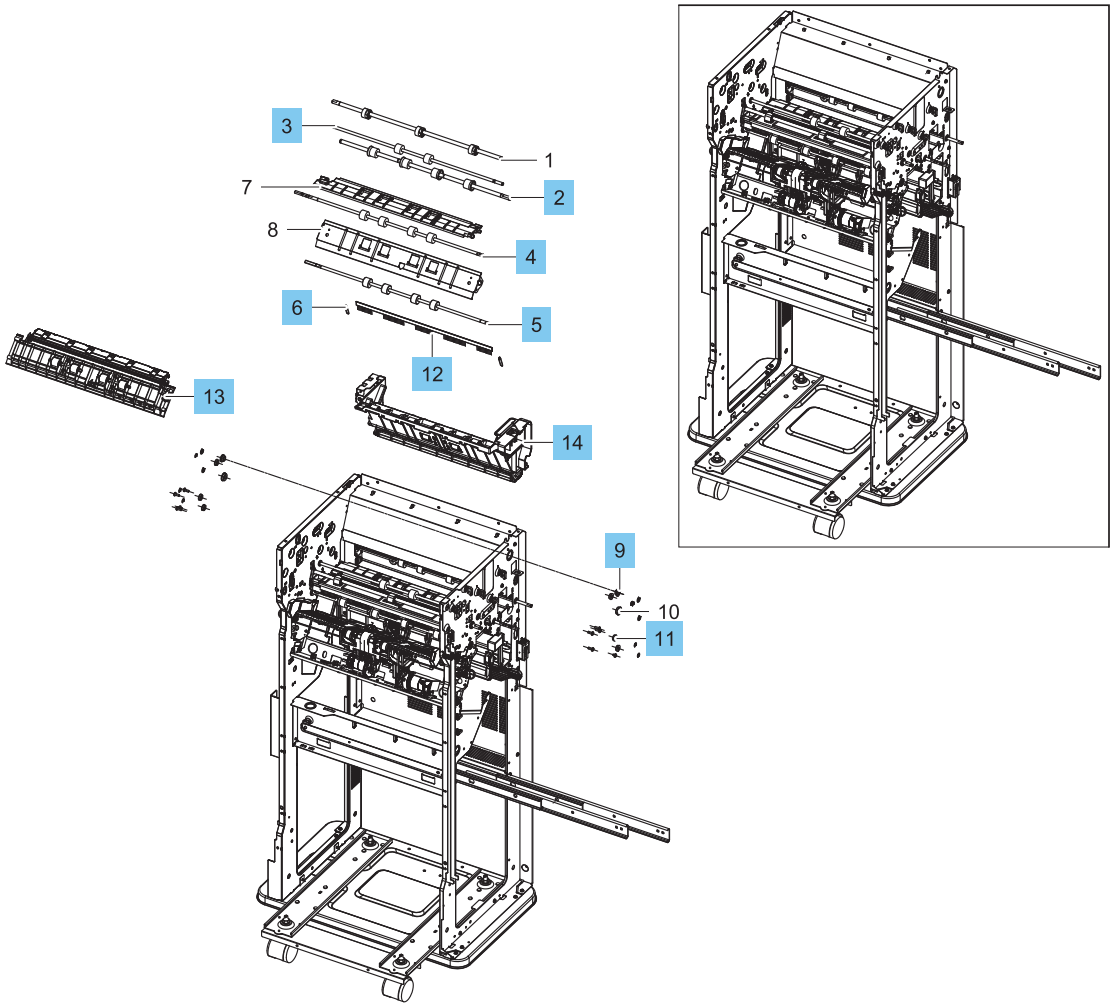


Table 4-44 Mainline finisher 2

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Roller, main-feed output	SAM-JC66-04726A	1
3	Roller, top-feed mid output	SAM-JC66-04725A	1
4	Roller, mid-feed output	SAM-JC66-04724A	1
5	Roller, output-feed bm	SAM-JC66-04723A	1
6	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07414A	2
9	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	2
11	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	6
12	Main-brush, output	SAM-JC67-00817A	1
13	Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	1
14	Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	1

Mainline finisher 3

Figure 4-45 Mainline finisher 3

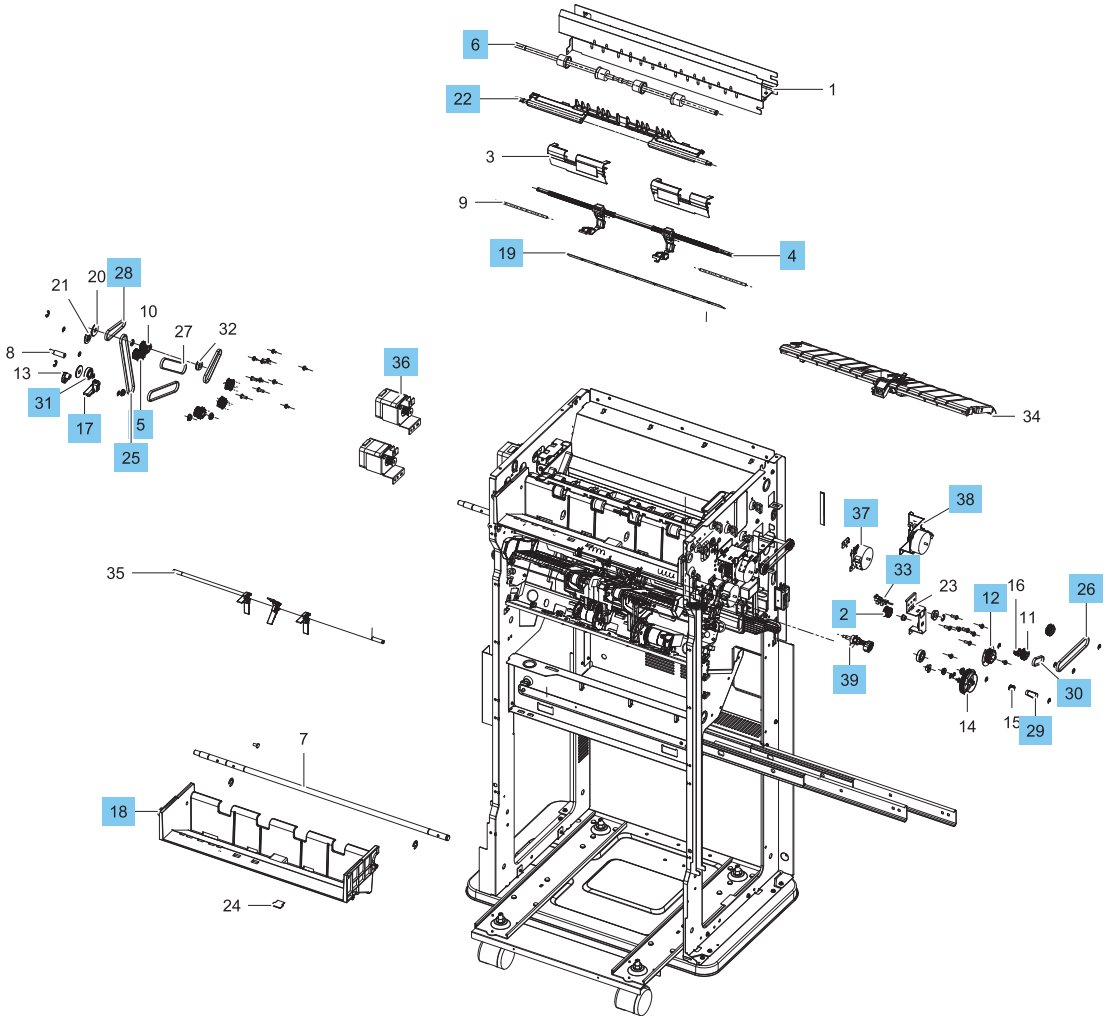


Table 4-45 Mainline finisher 3

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-clutch div	SAM-JC90-01474A	1
4	Finisher sub-end stopper	SAM-JC90-01466A	1
5	Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	1
6	Roller, top-feed output	SAM-JC66-04727A	1
12	Gear, buffer	SAM-JC66-04602A	1
17	Actuator, pusher	SAM-JC66-04526A	1
18	Cover-t, tray	SAM-JC63-04995B	1
19	Top-seal, guide	SAM-JC62-01328A	1
22	Guide, pusher	SAM-JC61-07206A	1
25	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003649	1
26	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003647	2
28	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	2
29	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003640	1
30	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003639	1
31	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-003062	2
33	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
36	Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01459A	2
37	Finisher sub-ef mtr	SAM-JC90-01467A	1
38	Finisher sub-drv buff	SAM-JC90-01453A	1
39	Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	1
43	Solenoid	SAM-JC90-01675A	1
44	Motor	SAM-JC90-01673A	1

Mainline finisher 4

Figure 4-46 Mainline finisher 4

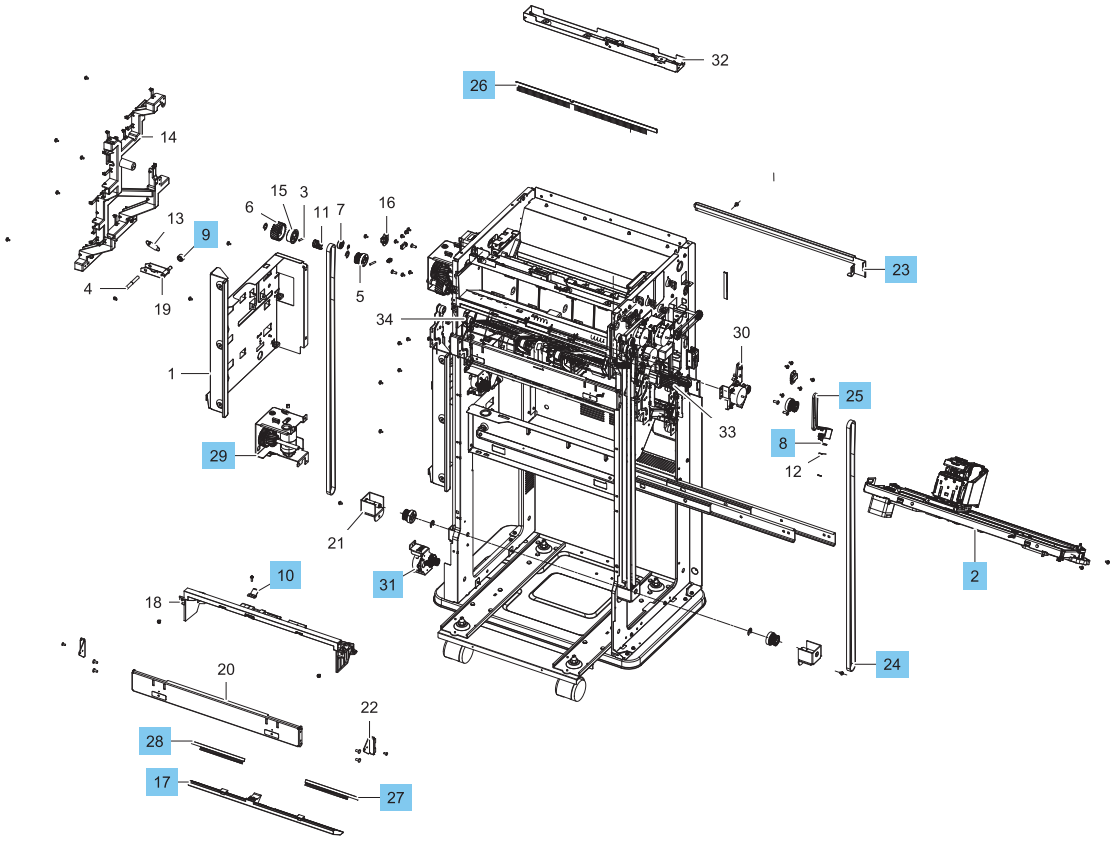


Table 4-46 Mainline finisher 4

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Finisher sub-staple unit	SAM-JC90-01412A	1
8	Actuator-o, staple	SAM-JC66-04528A	1
9	Roller, click-feed	SAM-JC66-04523A	1
10	Ground-c, safety	SAM-JC63-04984A	1
17	Safety guide	SAM-JC61-07192A	1
18	Guide, com ceil	SAM-JC61-07189A	1
23	Frame mount	SAM-JC61-06663A	1
24	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003652	2
25	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003270	1
26	Top-brush output	SAM-JC67-00818A	1
27	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	SAM-JC67-00820A	1
28	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	SAM-JC67-00819A	1
29	Finisher sub-stk mtr	SAM-JC90-01415A	1
31	Finisher sub-scu mtr	SAM-JC90-01414A	1

Mainline finisher 5

Figure 4-47 Mainline finisher 5

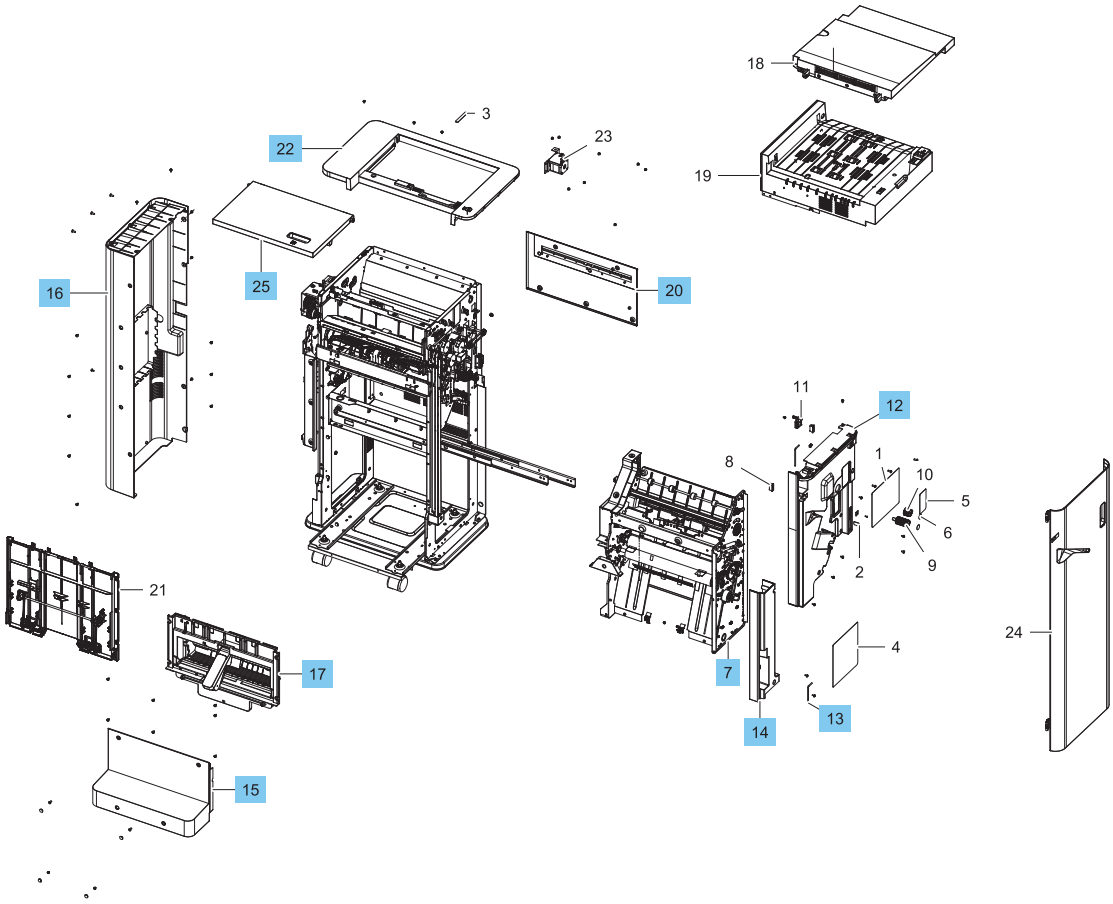


Table 4-47 Mainline finisher 5

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
7	Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	1
12	Front cover	SAM-JC63-04986B	1
13	Shaft, hinge-door	SAM-JC66-04767A	2
14	Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	1
15	Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	1
16	Rear cover	SAM-JC63-04988B	1
17	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	SAM-JC90-01417B	1
20	Finisher sub-regist guide	SAM-JC90-01448B	1
22	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
25	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1

Mainline finisher 6

Figure 4-48 Mainline finisher 6

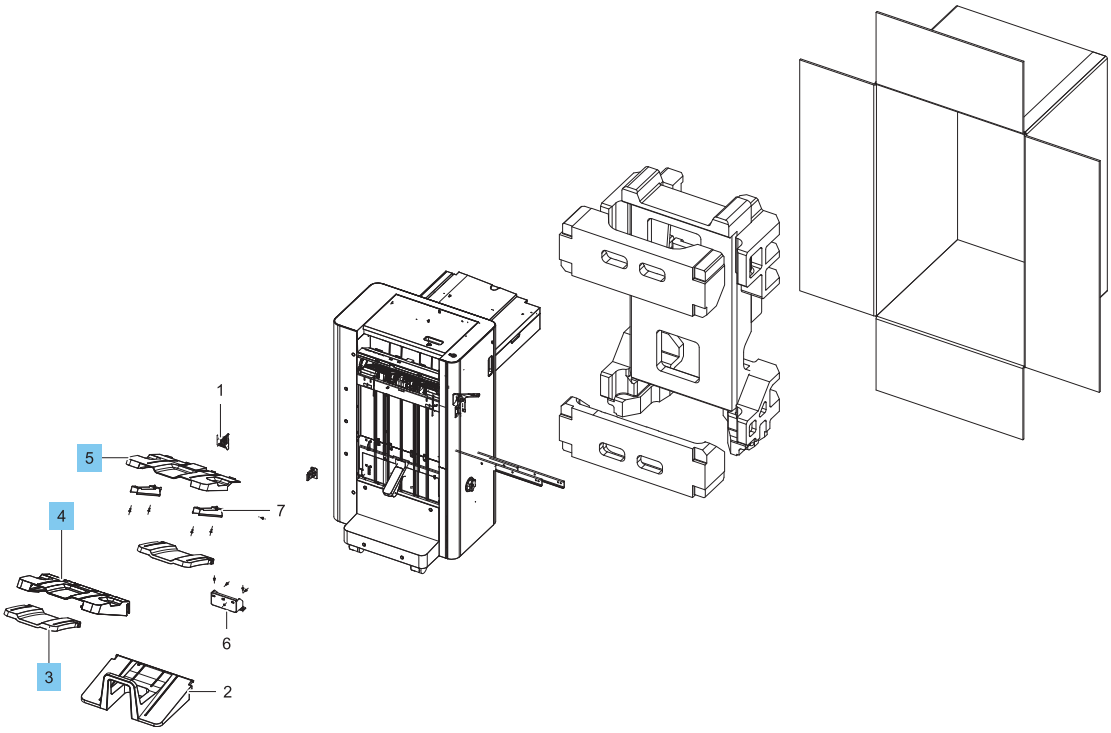


Table 4-48 Mainline finisher 6

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
3	Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	2
4	Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	1
5	Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	1

Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

Figure 4-49 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

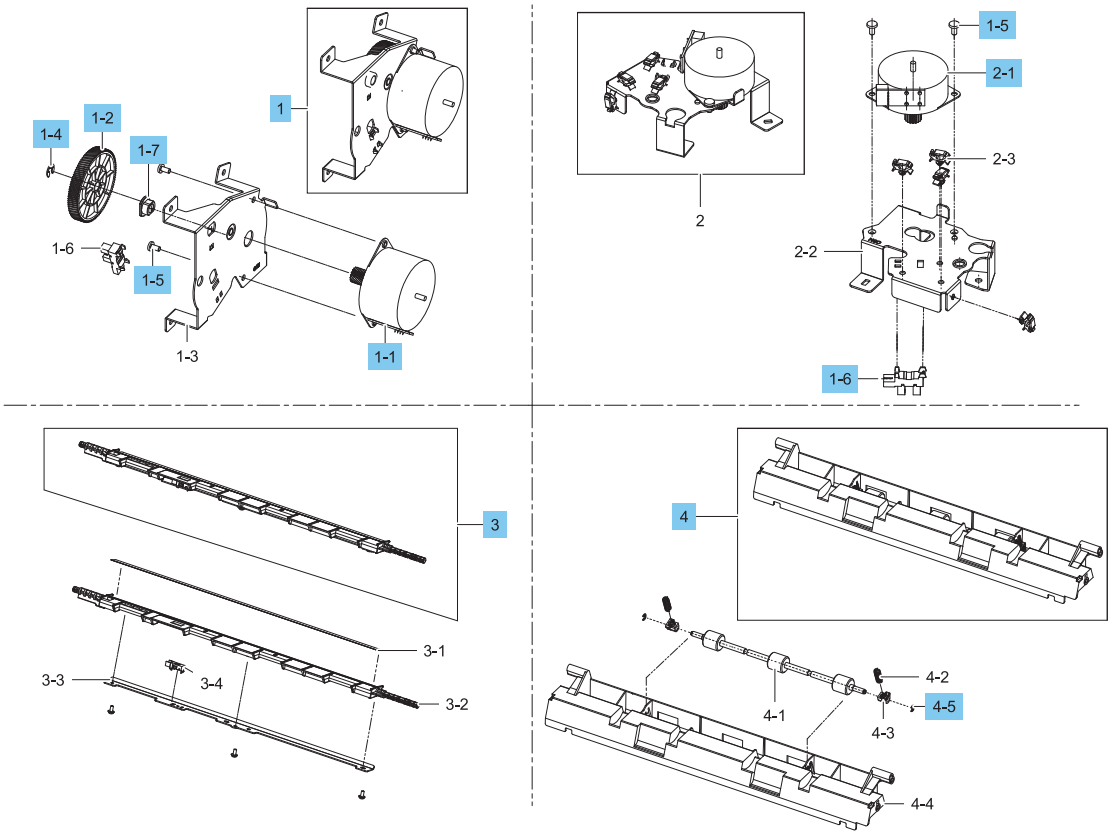


Table 4-49 Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	SAM-JC90-01396A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01154A	1
1-2	Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04579A	1
1-4	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	2
1-5	Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	4
1-6	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
1-7	Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01153A	1
3	Finisher sub-curl pawl	SAM-JC90-01398A	1
4	Finisher sub-3 fold output	SAM-JC90-01399A	1
4-5	C-ring	SAM-6044-000159	1

Low output, hb motor, and top guide

Figure 4-50 Low output, hb motor, and top guide

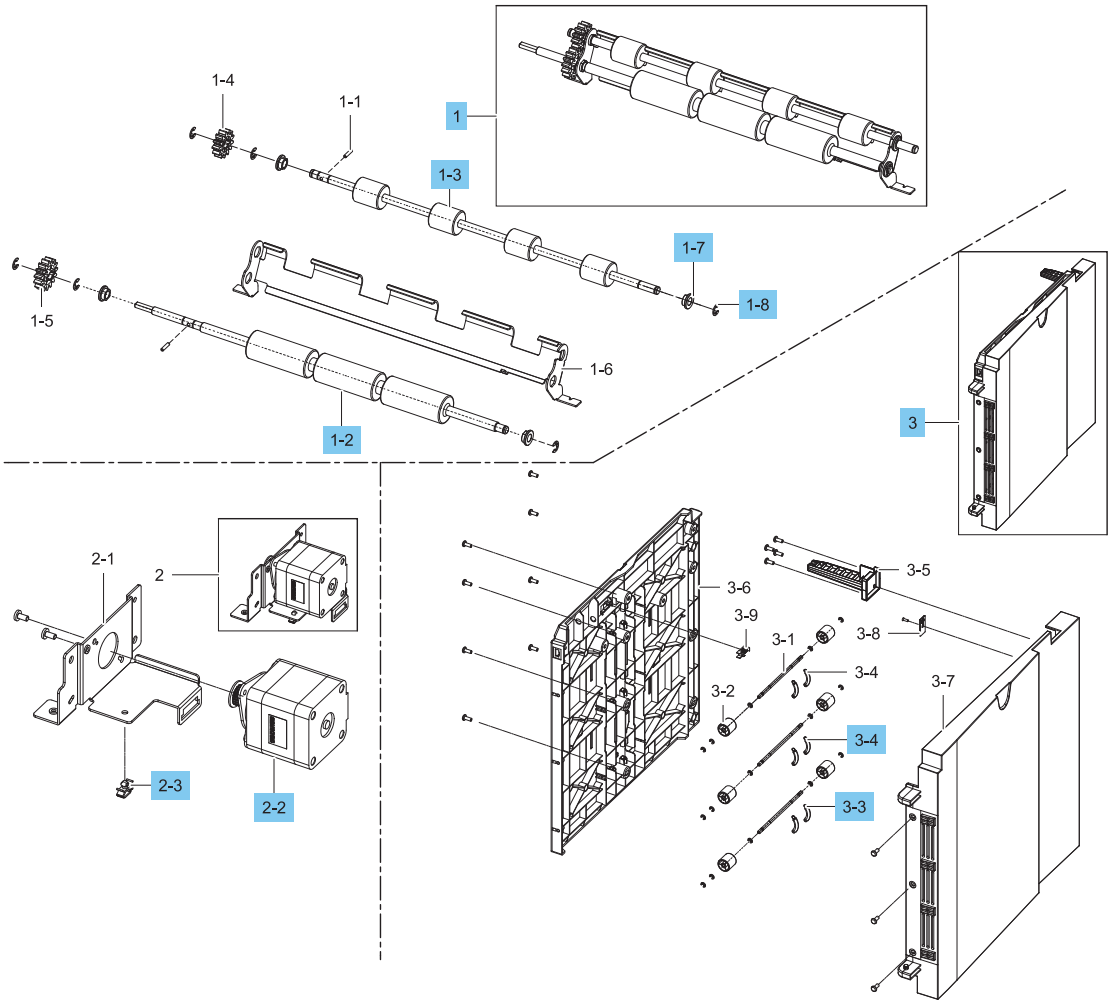


Table 4-50 Low output, hb motor, and top guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-low output	SAM-JC90-01400A	1
1-2	Roller, output-3 fold	SAM-JC66-04744A	1
1-3	Roller, feed-fold output	SAM-JC66-04721A	1
1-7	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	4
1-8	E-ring	SAM-6044-000129	2
2-2	Motor, step ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	2
2-3	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
3	Finisher sub-guide top	SAM-JC90-01406A	1
3-3	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07431A	2
3-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07430A	4

SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Figure 4-51 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

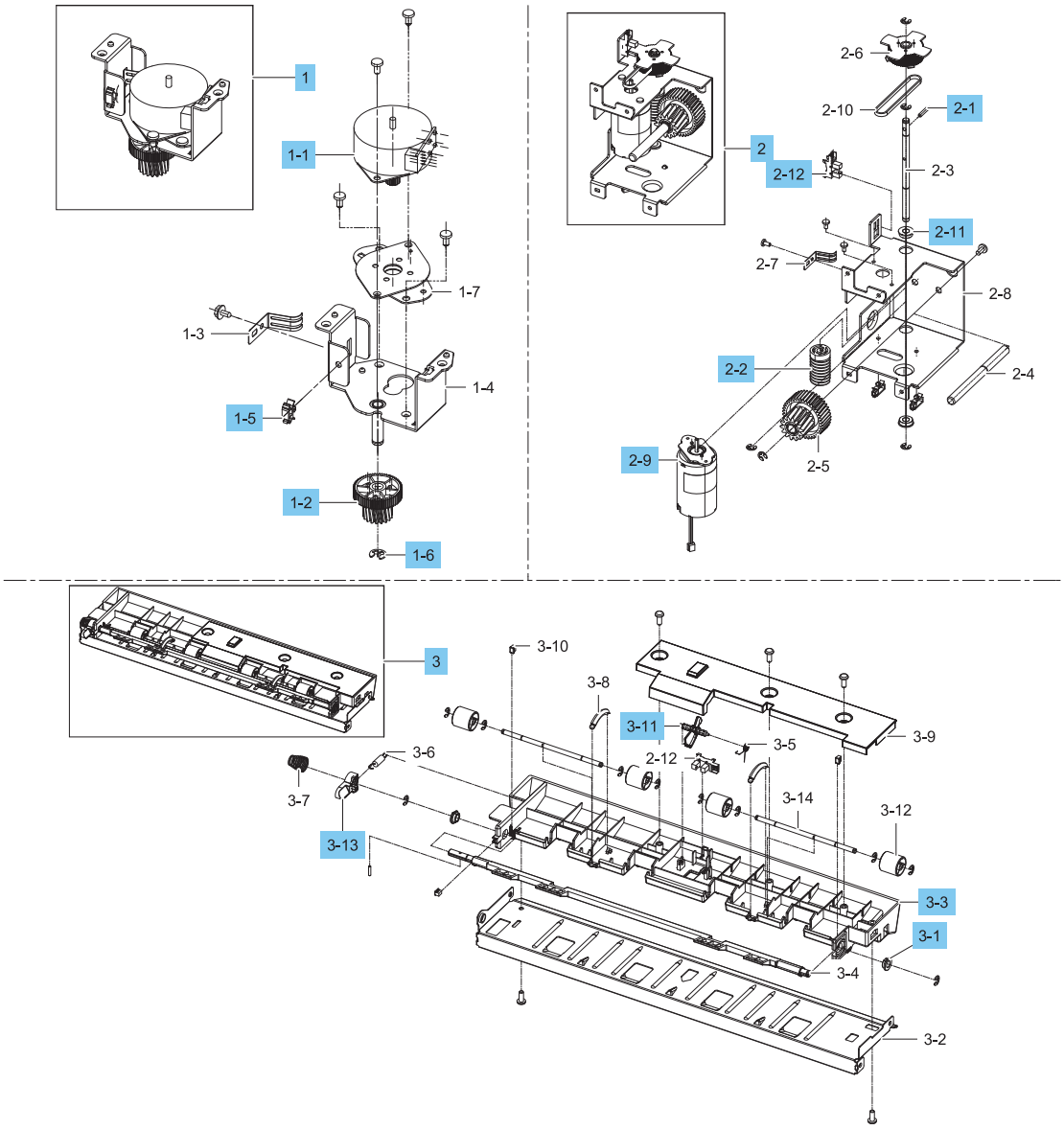


Table 4-51 SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-scu motor	SAM-JC90-01414A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01156A	1
1-2	Gear-db, gear	SAM-JC66-04604A	1
1-5	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
1-6	E-ring	SAM-6044–000125	2
2	Finisher sub-stk motor	SAM-JC90-01415A	1
2-1	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SAM-JC70-40542A	1
2-2	Stacker, CSP-worm	SAM-JC81-07637A	1
2-9	Motor, DC-stacker	SAM-JC31-00178A	1
2-11	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	3
2-12	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
3	Finisher sub-entrance guide	SAM-JC90-01424A	1
3-1	Bush, D6/L4	SAM-JC61-02372A	2
3-3	Guide-l, entrance	SAM-JC61-07247A	1
3-11	Actuator, entrance feed	SAM-JC66-04520A	1
3-13	Actuator, te-press1	SAM-JC66-04644A	1

Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Figure 4-52 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

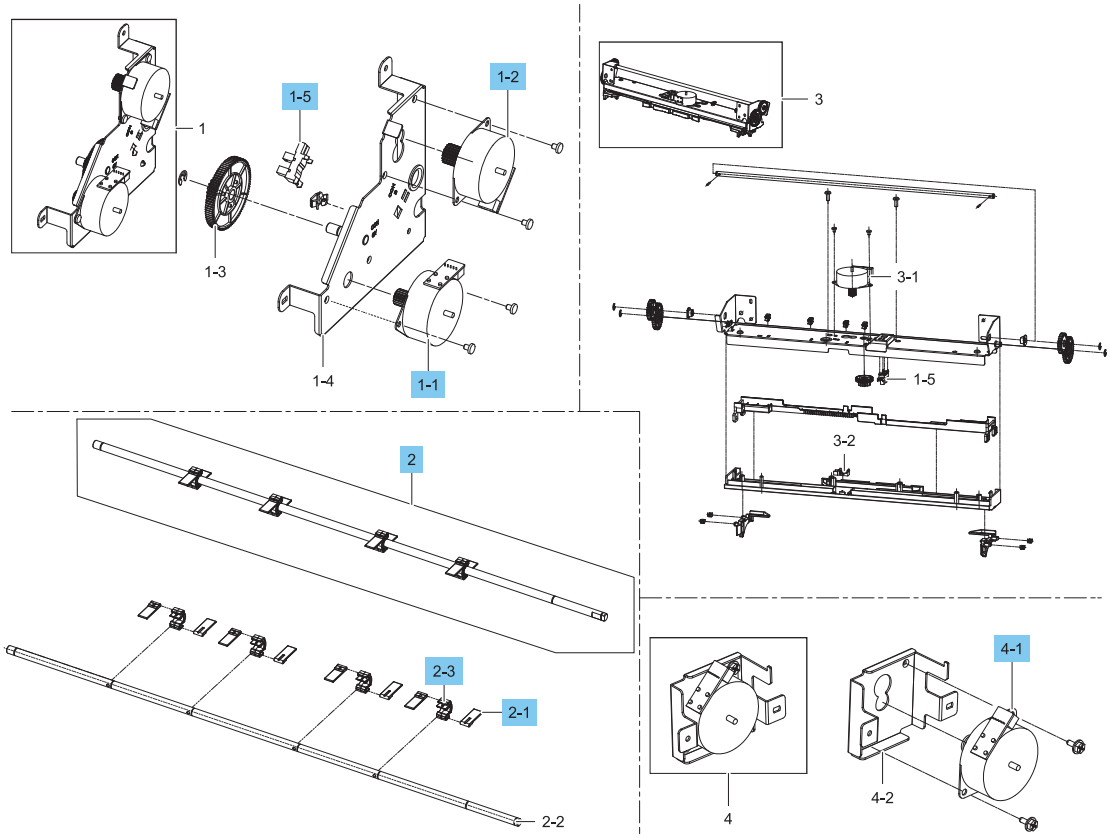


Table 4-52 Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01152A	1
1-5	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-low paddle	SAM-JC90-01429A	1
2-1	Rooler, feed-lower bm	SAM-JC66-04719A	8
2-3	Paddle holder	SAM-JC61-07225A	4
4-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1

Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Figure 4-53 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

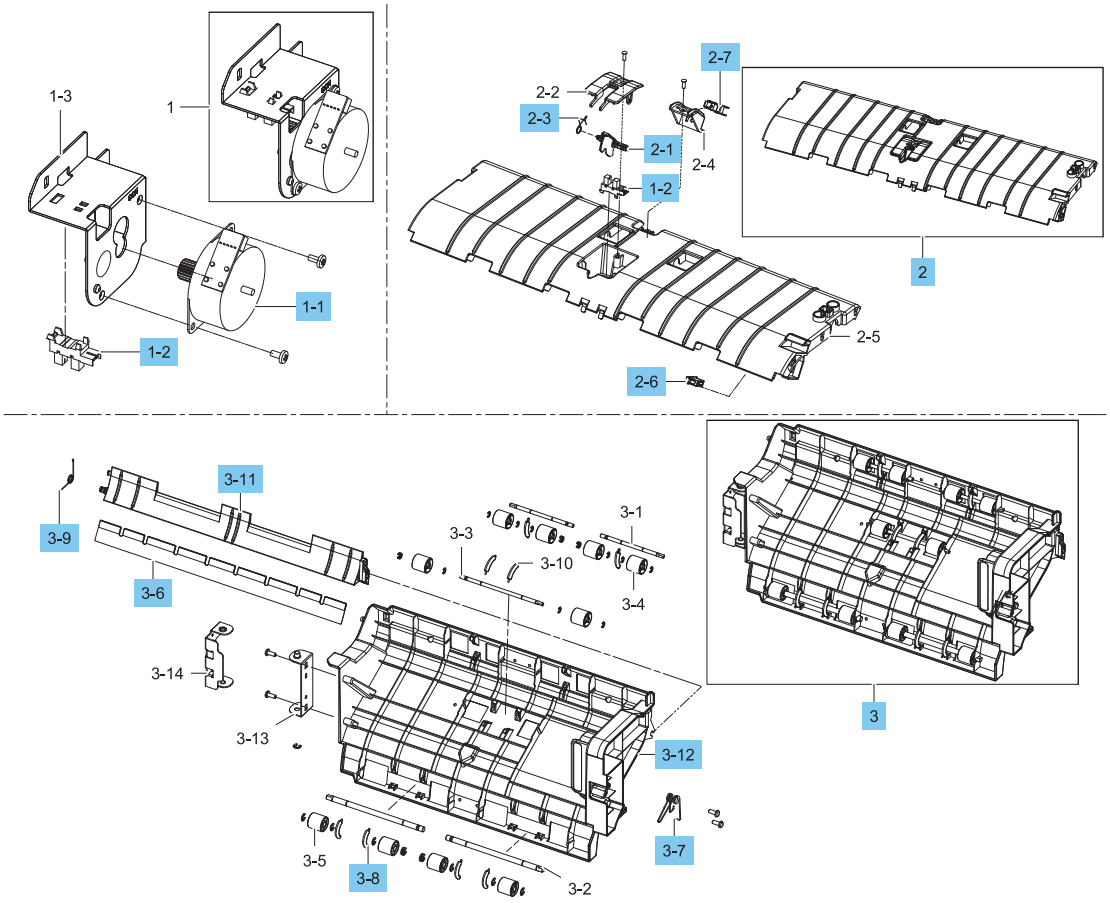


Table 4-53 Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-2	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
2	Finisher sub-top lower	SAM-JC90-01454A	1
2-1	Actuator, top-output	SAM-JC66-04525A	1
2-3	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07411A	1
2-6	Harness, 3k finisher output path	SAM-JC39-02322A	1
2-7	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
3	Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	2
3-6	Guide, seal-top	SAM-JC62-01328A	1
3-7	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07417A	1
3-8	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07415A	4
3-9	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07410A	1
3-10	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07409A	2
3-11	Guide, diverter	SAM-JC61-07205A	1
3-12	Guide, top jam	SAM-JC61-07196A	1

FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Figure 4-54 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

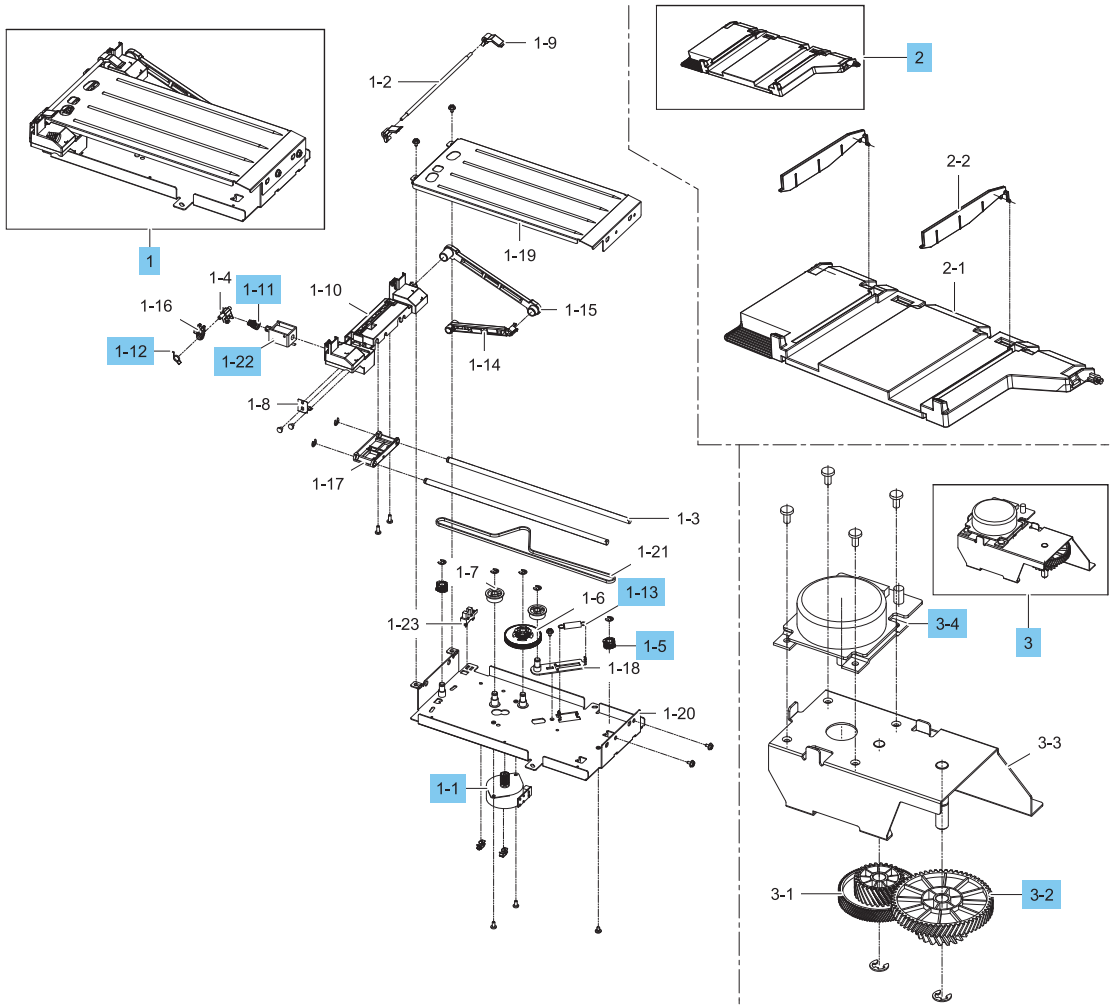


Table 4-54 FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	SAM-JC90-01432A	1
1-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	1
1-5	Timing pulley	SAM-JC66-04583A	2
1-11	Spring, cs	SAM-JC61-07403A	1
1-12	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07401A	1
1-22	Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00038A	1
2	Finisher sub-jam clear	SAM-JC90-01433A	1
3	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	SAM-JC90-01435A	1
3-1	Gear, helical 4	SAM-JC66-04595A	1
3-2	Gear, helical 3	SAM-JC66-04594A	1
3-4	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	1

Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Figure 4-55 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

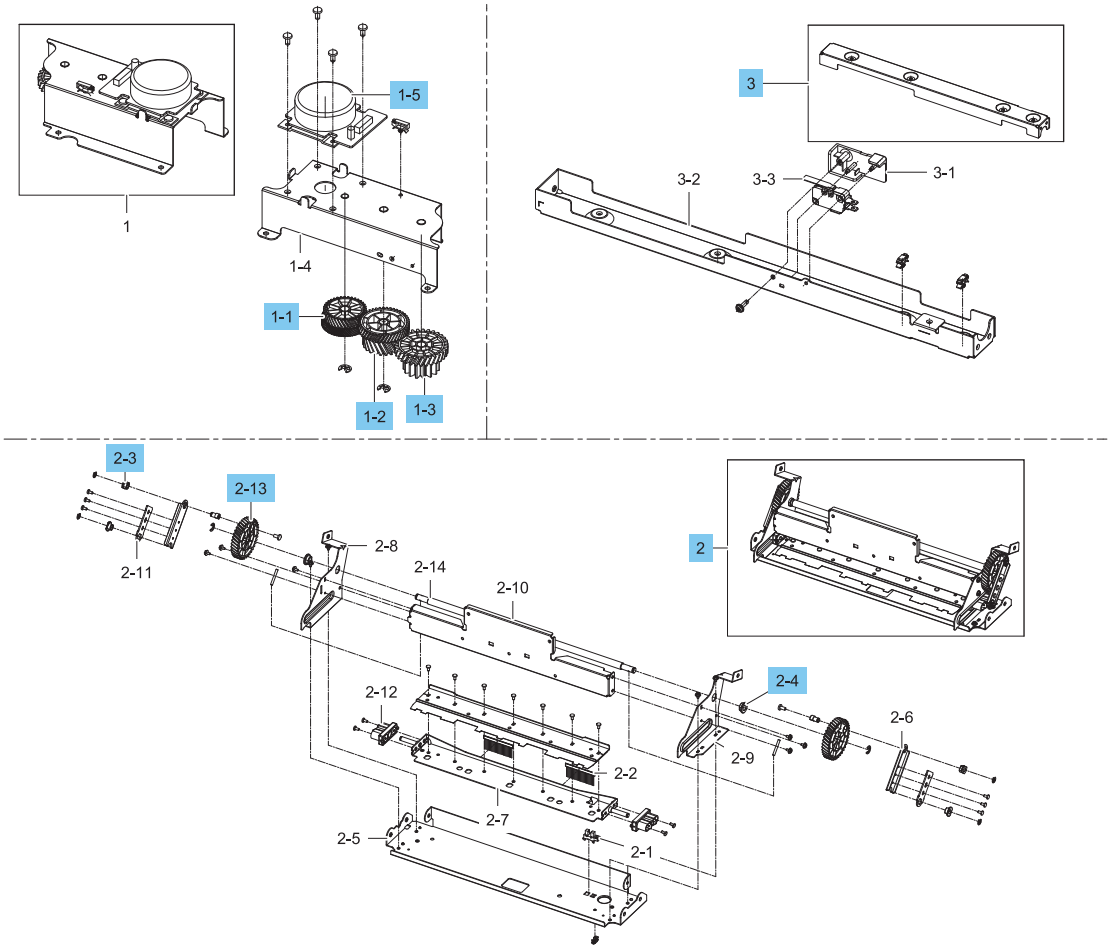


Table 4-55 Fold roller, main blade, and top frame

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Gear, helical 2	SAM-JC66-04593A	1
1-2	Gear, helical 1	SAM-JC66-04592A	1
1-3	Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04573A	1
1-5	Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	1
2	Finisher sub-main blade	SAM-JC90-01437A	1
2-3	Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	1
2-4	Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	2
2-13	Gear, helical	SAM-JC66-04591A	2
3	Finisher sub-top frame	SAM-JC90-01440A	1
3-3	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	SAM-JC39-02310A	1

Three fold blade

Figure 4-56 Three fold blade

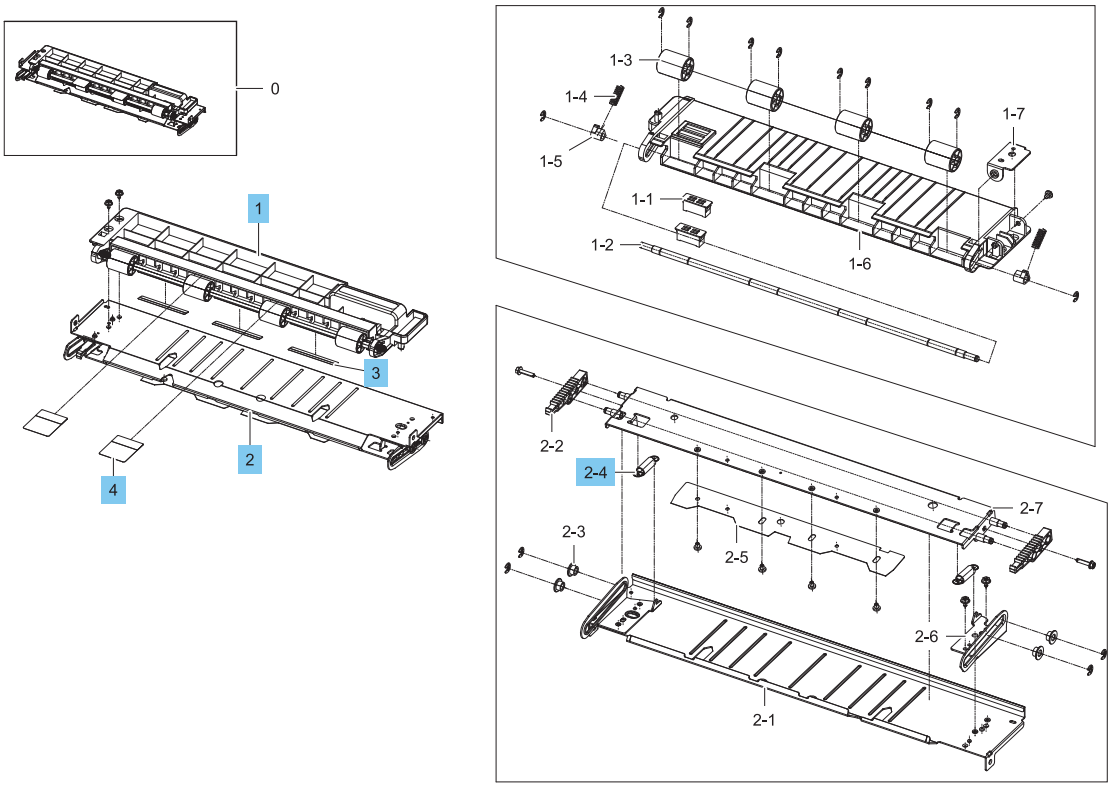


Table 4-56 Three fold blade

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-output roller	SAM-JC90-01395A	1
2	Finisher sub-guide three fold	SAM-JC90-01394A	1
2-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07391A	2
3	Sheet-jam guide	SAM-JC63-05044A	3
4	Sheet-fold output	SAM-JC63-05041A	2

Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Figure 4-57 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

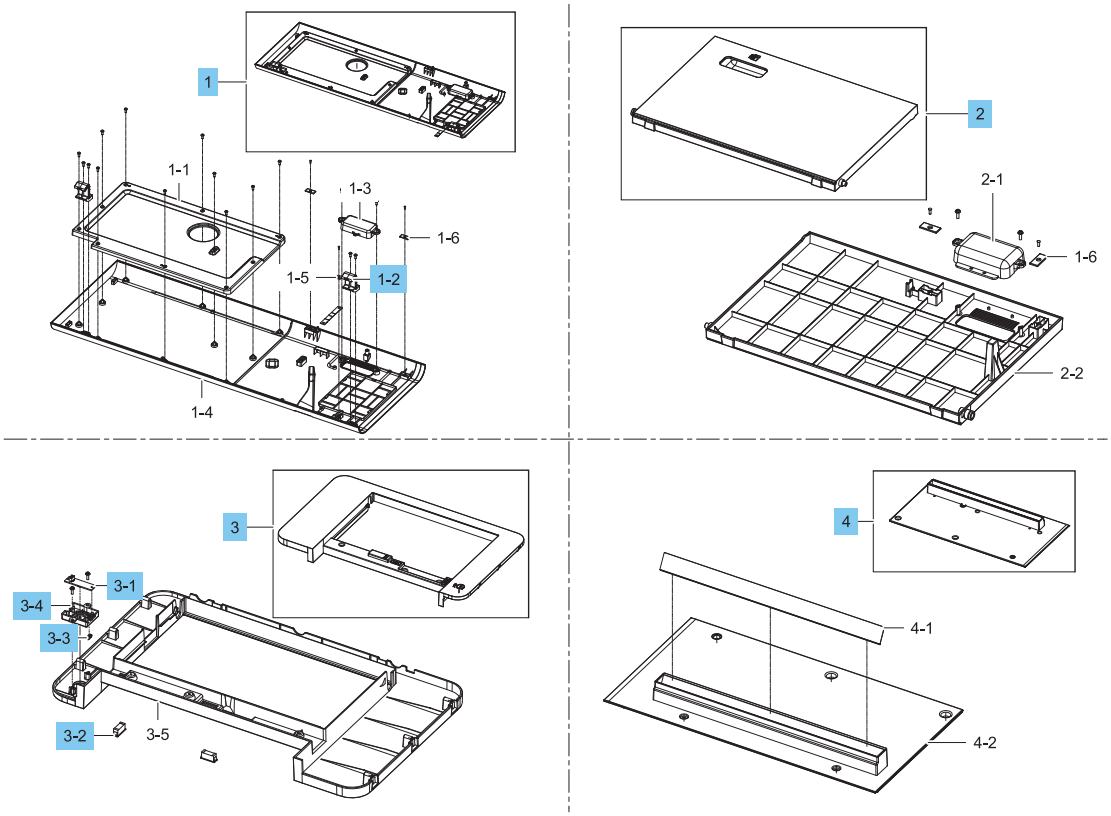


Table 4-57 Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-door	SAM-JC90-01444A	1
1-2	Cover, link	SAM-JC63-05004A	2
2	Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	1
3	Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	1
3-1	PCA, 3k switch	SAM-JC92-02789A	1
3-2	Magnet, as	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
3-3	Button lens	SAM-JC64-00996A	1
3-4	Button, staple	SAM-JC64-00995A	1

Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

Figure 4-58 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

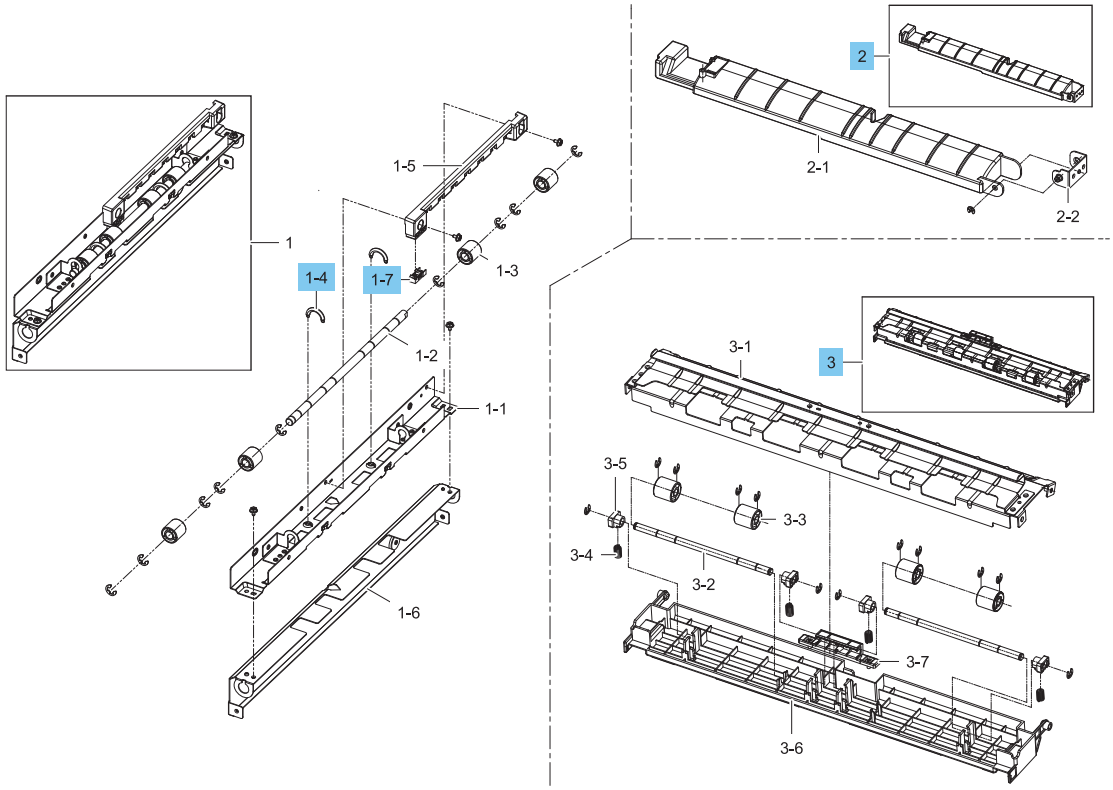


Table 4-58 Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-4	Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07408A	2
1-7	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-mid jam	SAM-JC90-01450A	1
3	Finisher sub-output main	SAM-JC90-01451A	1

Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Figure 4-59 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

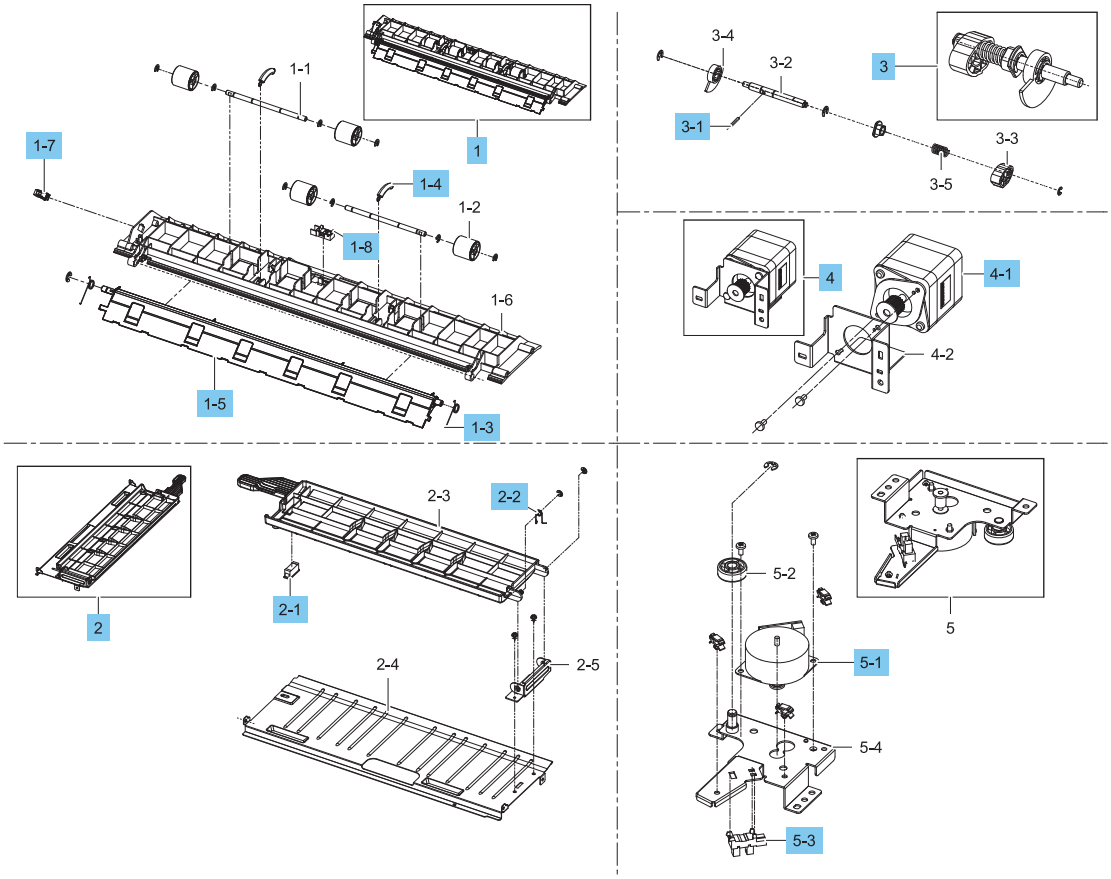


Table 4-59 Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	1
1-3	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07413A	2
1-4	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07409A	2
1-5	Guide, buff div	SAM-JC61-07204A	1
1-7	Harness, 3k finisher bm path	SAM-JC39-02320A	1
1-8	Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	1
2	Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	1
2-1	Magent, as by3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
2-2	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07418A	1
3	Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	1
3-1	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	SAM-JC70-40360A	1
4	Finisher sub-hb motor	SAM-JC90-01459A	2
4-1	Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	2
5-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
5-3	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1

Front alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-60 Front alignment (tamper)

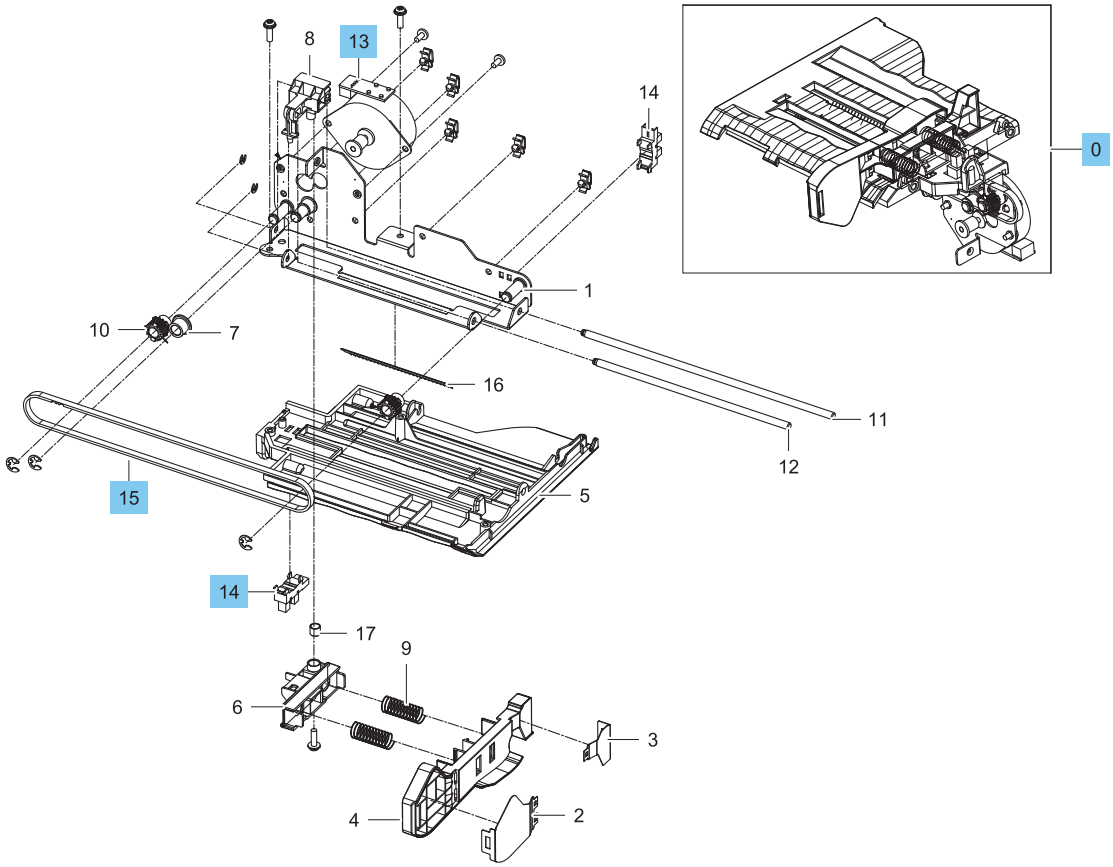


Table 4-60 Front alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01464A	1
13	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
14	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
15	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1

Rear alignment (tamper)

Figure 4-61 Rear alignment (tamper)

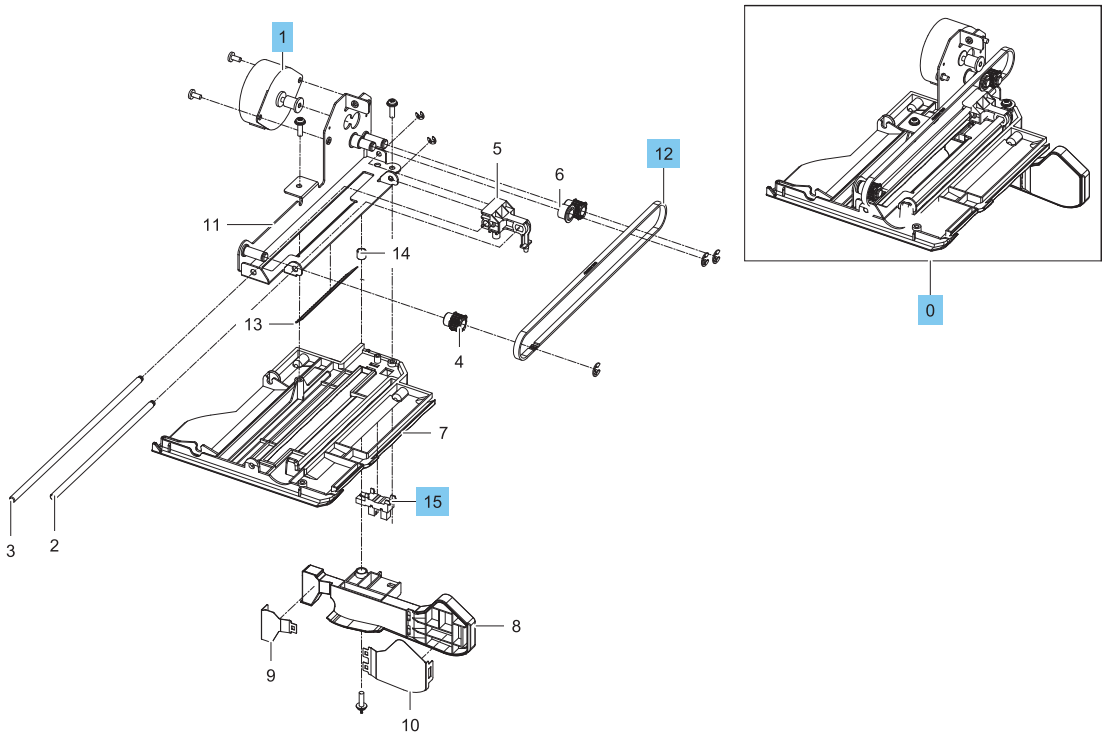


Table 4-61 Rear alignment (tamper)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	1
1	Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
12	Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1
15	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1

Shield

Figure 4-62 Shield

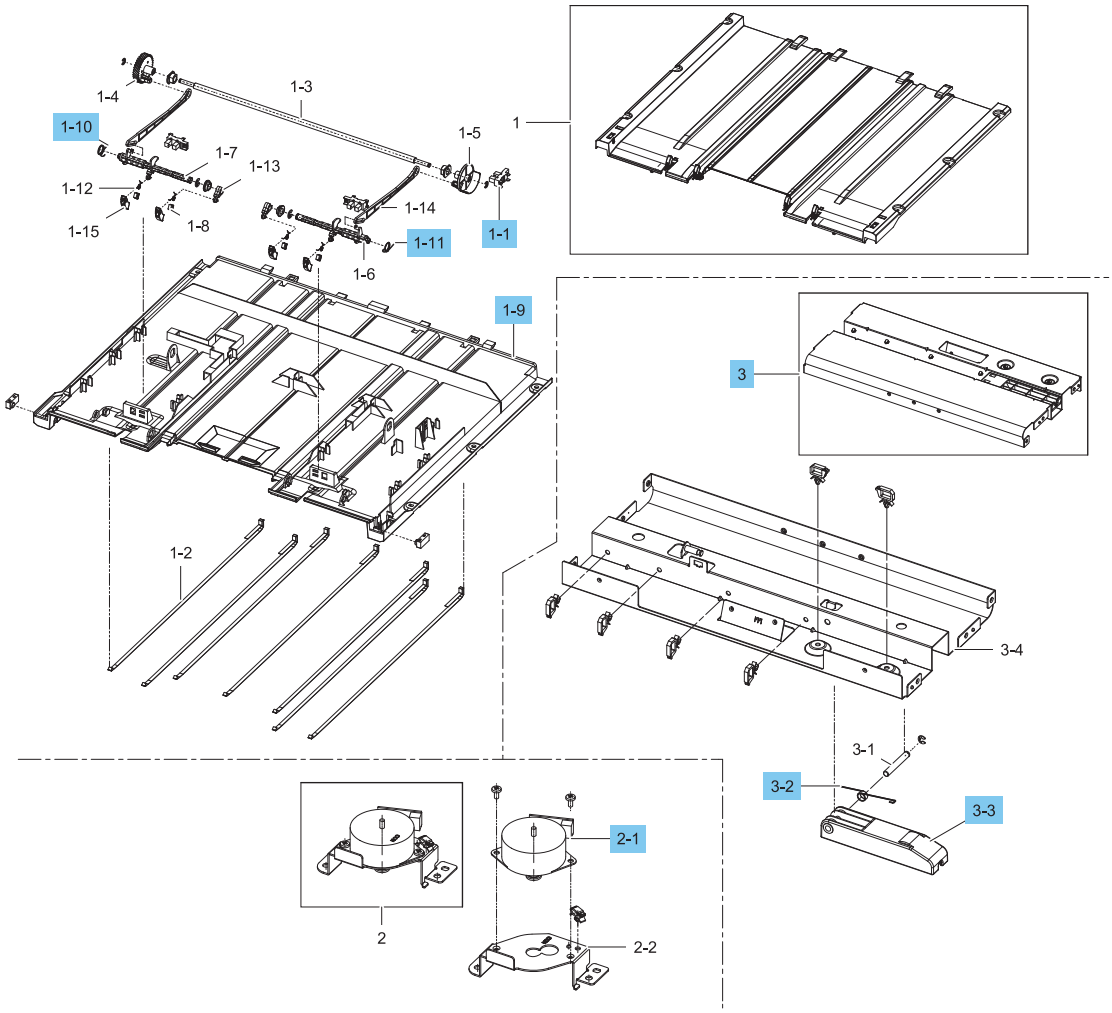


Table 4-62 Shield

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
1-9	Cover, stacker	SAM-JC63-04999B	1
1-10	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07428A	1
1-11	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07427A	1
2-1	Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	1
3	Finisher sub-base low	SAM-JC90-01476A	1
3-2	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07392A	1
3-3	Leg bracket	SAM-JC61-07279A	1

PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Figure 4-63 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

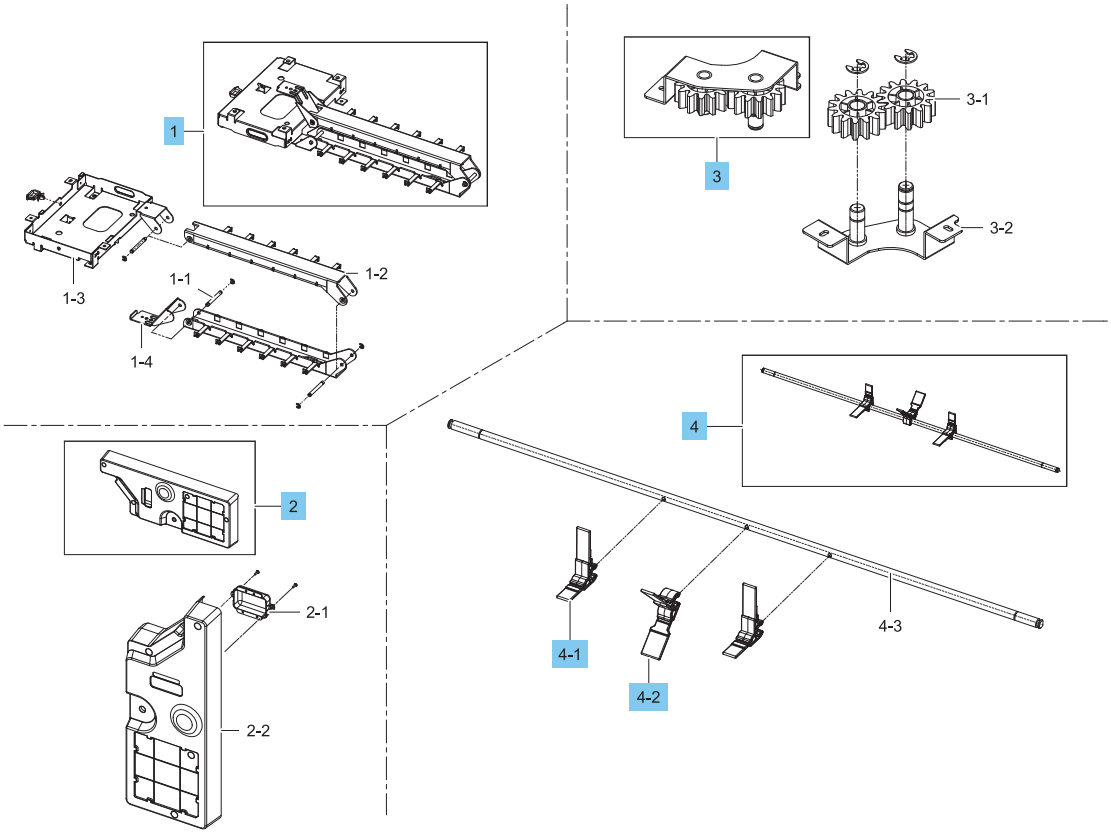


Table 4-63 PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-pcb bm	SAM-JC90-01477A	1
2	Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478B	1
3	Finisher sub-idle fold	SAM-JC90-01479A	1
4	Finisher sub-paddle	SAM-JC90-01480A	1
4-1	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	SAM-JC90-01463A	2
4-2	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	SAM-JC90-01462A	1

Finisher sub booklet

Figure 4-64 Finisher sub booklet

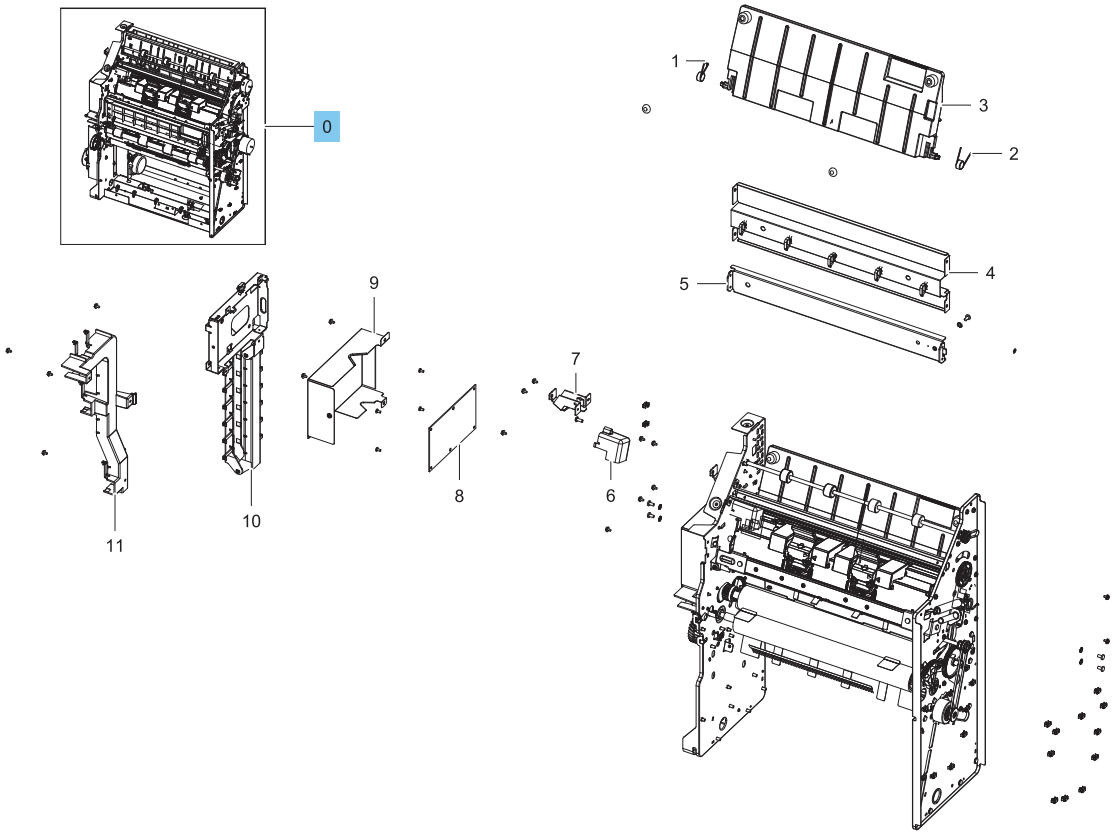


Table 4-64 Finisher sub booklet

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
0	Finisher sub-booklet 4	SAM-JC90-01502A	1

IPTU (bridge)

Figure 4-65 IPTU (bridge)

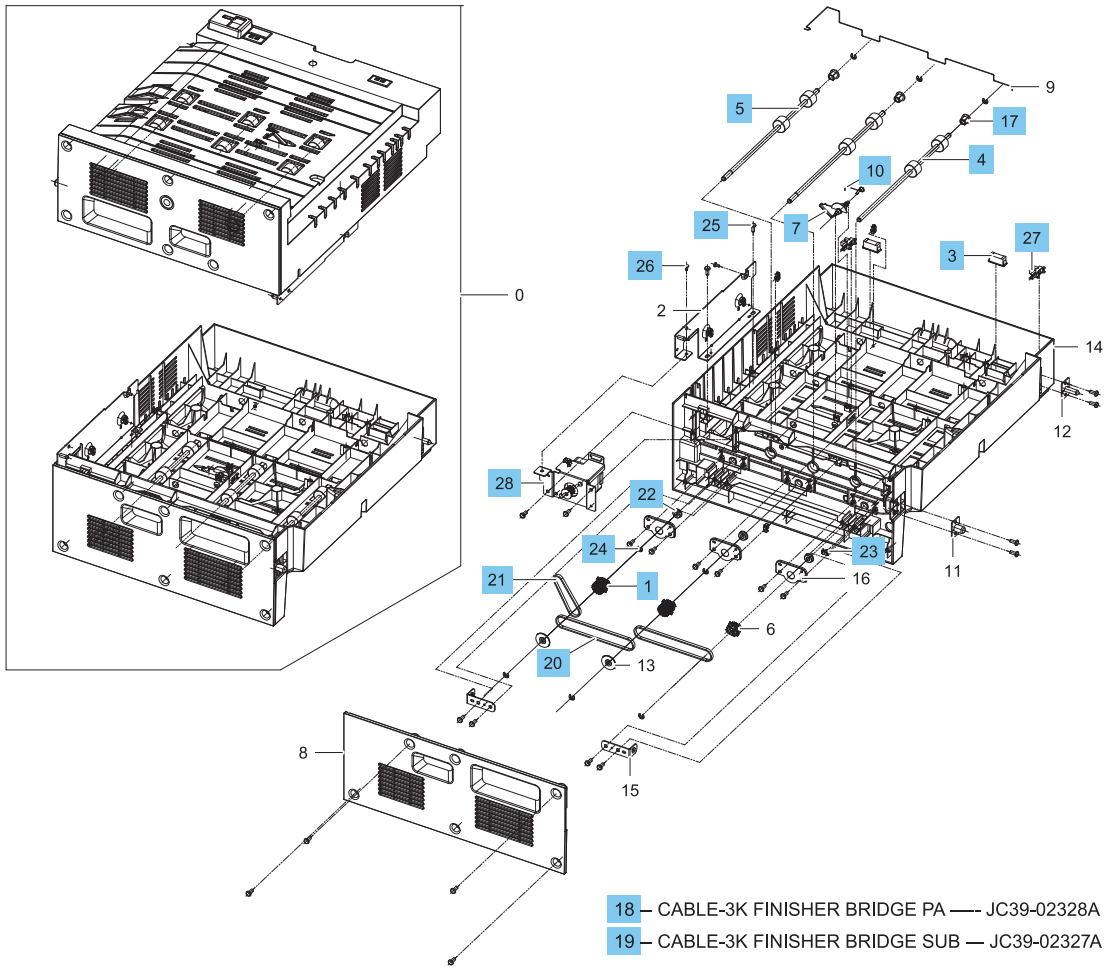


Table 4-65 IPTU (bridge)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	2
3	AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	1
4	Roller, brg-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04733A	1
5	Roller, brg-feed	SAM-JC66-04732A	2
7	Actuator, sensor	SAM-JC66-04569A	1
10	Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07432A	1
17	Bush-6, d(l)	SAM-JC61-00884A	3
18	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	SAM-JC39-02328A	1
19	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	SAM-JC39-02327A	1
20	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003648	2
21	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	1
22	Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	2
23	Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	1
24	E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	2
25	Screw, tap type	SAM-6003-001256	4
26	Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	4
27	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	1
28	Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01402A	1

Inner finisher

Sub-inner finisher

Figure 4-66 Sub-inner finisher

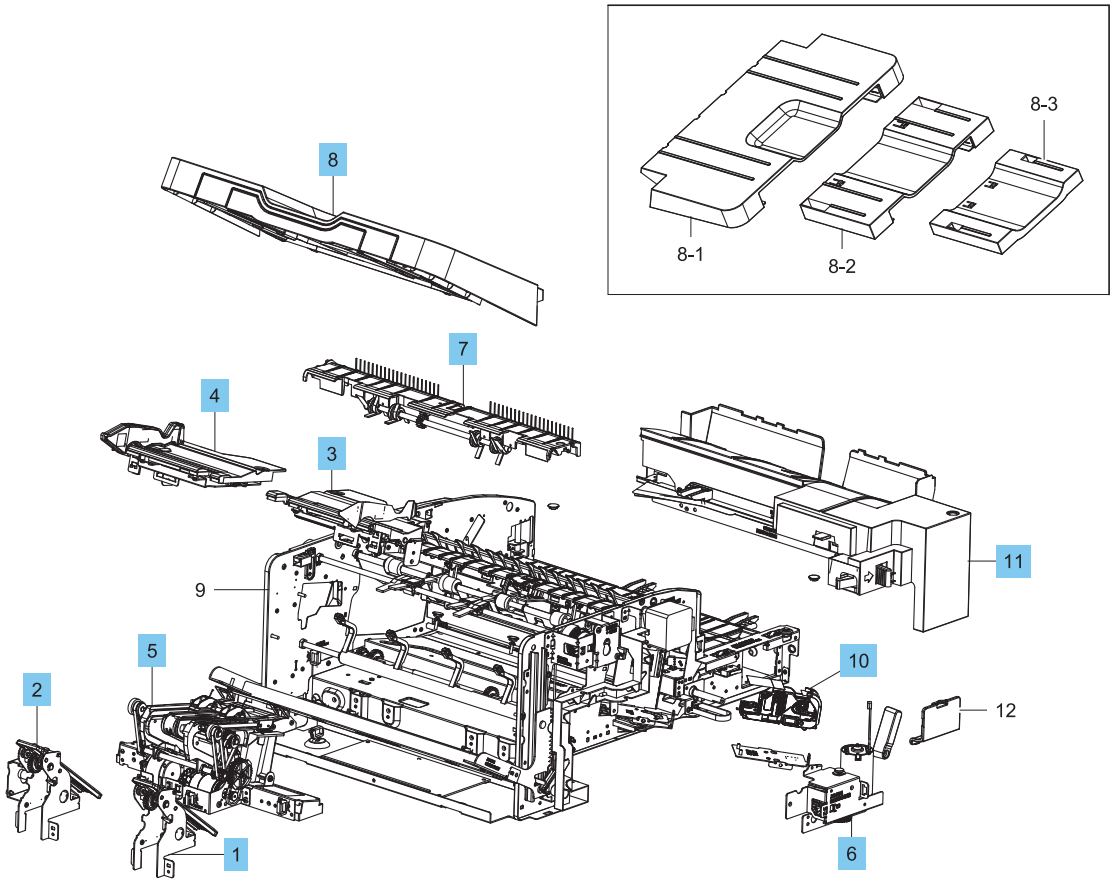


Table 4-66 Sub-inner finisher

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-paper support	SAM-JC90-01310A	1
2	Finisher sub-paper support, rear	SAM-JC90-01311A	1
3	Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01315A	1
4	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01317A	1
5	Finisher sub-ejector	SAM-JC90-01332A	1
6	Finisher sub-motor tray	SAM-JC90-01334A	1
7	Finisher sub-guide output, lower	SAM-JC90-01336A	1
8	Finisher sub-tray	SAM-JC63-04797B	1
10	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	1
11	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01343A	1

Finisher sub 1

Figure 4-67 Finisher sub 1

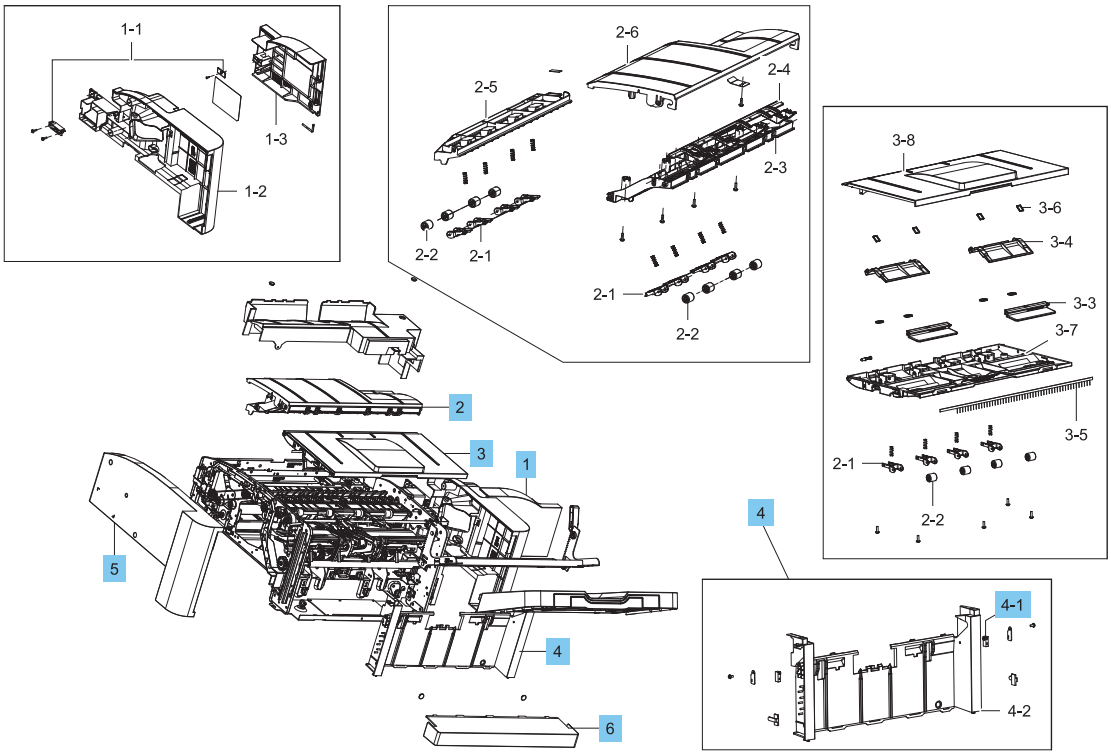


Table 4-67 Finisher sub 1

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-cover, front	SAM-JC90-01321B	1
2	Finisher sub-cover, middle	SAM-JC90-01322B	1
3	Finisher sub-cover, compile	SAM-JC90-01323B	1
4	Finisher sub-stacker plate	SAM-JC90-01324B	1
4-1	Photo, tr	SAM-0603–001309	1
5	Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04750B	1
6	Cover, main	SAM-JC63-04792B	1

Finisher sub 7

Figure 4-68 Finisher sub 7

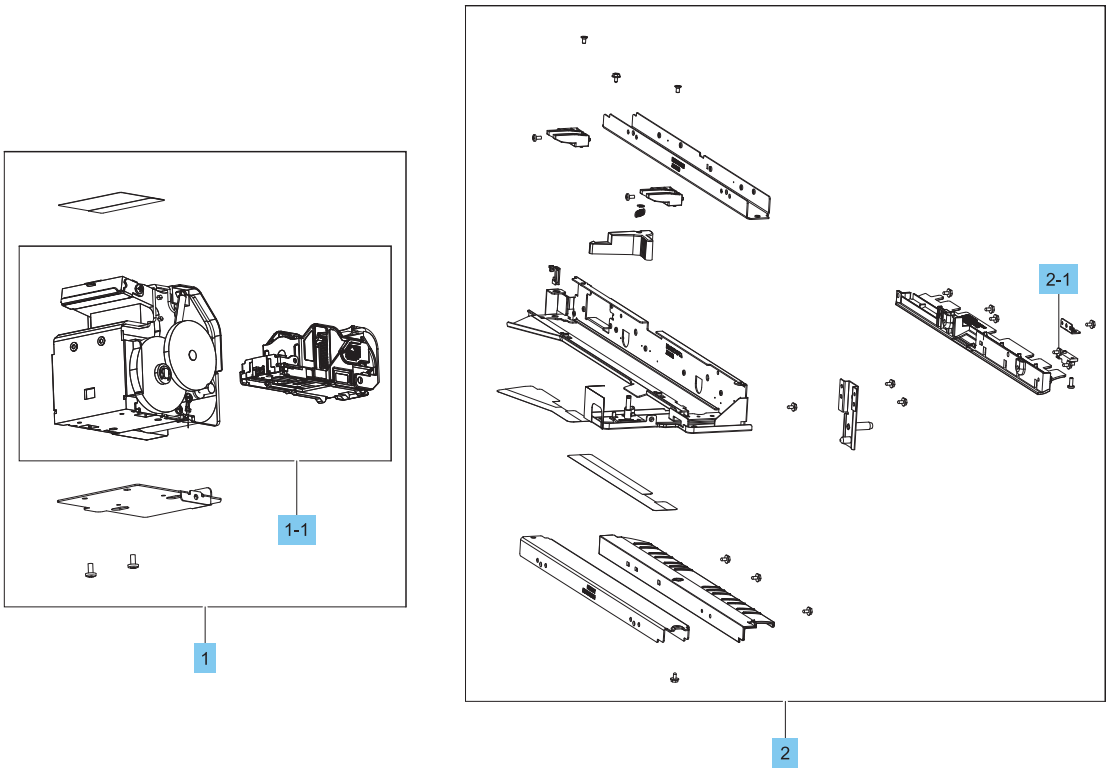


Table 4-68 Finisher sub 7

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	1
1-1	Stapler-etc assembly	SAM-JC98-04473A	1
2	Finisher sub-punch dummy	SAM-JC90-01343A	1
2-1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001381	1

Finisher sub 8

Figure 4-69 Finisher sub 8

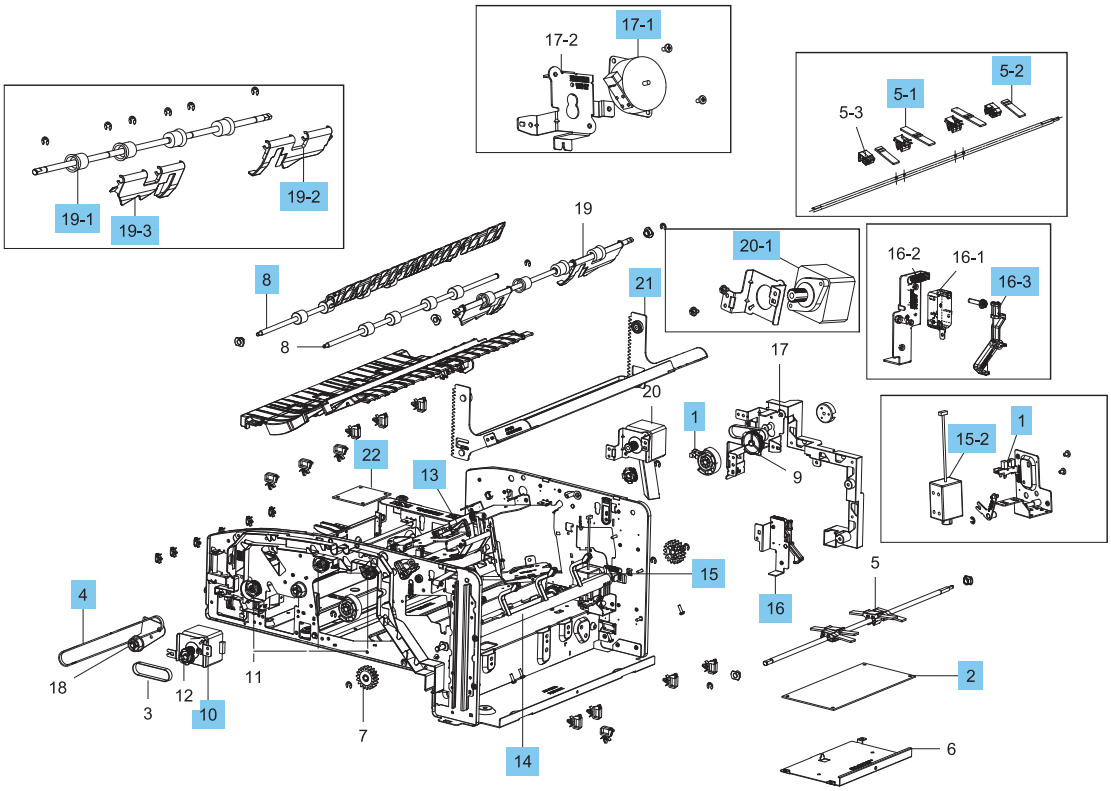


Table 4-69 Finisher sub 8

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	2
2	Inner finisher PCA	SAM-JC92-02774A	1
4	Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	1
5-1	Paddle absorber, rubber a	SAM-JC63-04957A	2
5-2	Paddle absorber, rubber b	SAM-JC63-04958A	2
8	Roller, feed-entrance	SAM-JC66-04243A	2
10	Finisher sub-entrance motor	SAM-JC90-01344A	1
13	Actuator, feed sensor	SAM-JC66-04199A	1
14	Finisher sub-actuator tray	SAM-JC90-01313A	1
15	Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	SAM-JC90-01314A	1
15-2	Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00037A	1
16	Finisher sub-tray lower limit	SAM-JC90-01320A	1
16-3	Actuator tray limit	SAM-JC66-04200A	1
17-1	Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00149A	1
19-1	Roller, feed-output	SAM-JC66-04244A	1
19-2	Compile guide, front	SAM-JC61-07449A	1
19-3	Compile guide, rear	SAM-JC61-07450A	1
20-1	Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00169B	1
21	Finisher sub-tray frame	SAM-JC90-01319A	1
22	Rear join PCA	SAM-JC92-02780A	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
110V fuser assembly	SAM-JC91-01195A	Main assembly on page 855
220V fuser assembly	SAM-JC91-01194A	Main assembly on page 855
Actuator	SAM-JC66-04290A	sHCI main 5 on page 929
Actuator lever, dup	SAM-JC66-04405A	Right door guide on page 885
Actuator lever, empty	SAM-JC66-04459A	MP tray on page 883
Actuator lever, fuser out	SAM-JC66-04406A	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Actuator tray limit	SAM-JC66-04200A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Actuator, empty pickup	SAM-JC66-04276A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Actuator, entrance feed	SAM-JC66-04520A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Actuator, feed sensor	SAM-JC66-04199A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Actuator, pusher	SAM-JC66-04526A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Actuator, sensor	SAM-JC66-04569A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Actuator, te-press1	SAM-JC66-04644A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Actuator, top-output	SAM-JC66-04525A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Actuator-o, staple	SAM-JC66-04528A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Adjust guide, DCF	SAM-JC61-04871A	HCI frame on page 921
AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-003062	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Bearing ball	SAM-6601-001478	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Belt	SAM-JC66-04281A	HCI main pickup on page 923
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Bush, 8/5	SAM-JC61-00426A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Bush, D6/L4	SAM-JC61-02372A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Bush-6, d	SAM-JC61-00423A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Bush-6, d(l)	SAM-JC61-00884A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	DCF second pickup on page 913
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	HCI main pickup on page 923
Bush-6, dl	SAM-JC61-00884A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Button lens	SAM-JC64-00996A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Button, staple	SAM-JC64-00995A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
C-ring	SAM-6044-000159	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Cable clamp	SAM-6502-001131	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	SAM-JC39-02328A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	SAM-JC39-02327A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SAM-JC70-40542A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Cartridge, TCU color	SAM-JC96-09590A	Main assembly on page 855
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01610A	First cassette on page 859
Cassette	SAM-JC90-01611A	Second cassette on page 861
Cassette guide rail	SAM-JC61-07471A	HCI cassette on page 919
Cassette, fifth	SAM-JC90-01652	DCF main on page 905
Cassette, first	SAM-JC90-01610A	Main assembly on page 855
Cassette, fourth	SAM-JC90-01654	DCF main on page 905
Cassette, second	SAM-JC90-01611A	Main assembly on page 855
Caster	SAM-6109-001138	DCF frame on page 907
Caster	SAM-6109-001138	HCI frame on page 921
Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Caster cover	SAM-JC63-04985B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Clutch one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	DCF second pickup on page 913

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Clutch one way[1]	SAM-JC66-00977A	DCF main on page 905
Clutch, one way	SAM-JC66-00977A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Compile guide, front	SAM-JC61-07449A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Compile guide, rear	SAM-JC61-07450A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Compiler-brush, ceiling front	SAM-JC67-00820A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	SAM-JC67-00819A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Connector holder, scf	SAM-JC61-01742A	HCI cassette on page 919
Contact image sensor	SAM-0609-001558	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	Main frame pickup on page 877
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00464A	DCF second pickup on page 913
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	HCI main pickup on page 923
Coupler, torque limiter	SAM-JC67-00455A	sHCI main 6 on page 931
Coupler[1]	SAM-JC67-00455A	DCF main on page 905
Cover	SAM-JC95-02107A	Main assembly on page 855
Cover link, open	SAM-JC66-02270A	Flow ADF on page 891
Cover, front	SAM-JC63-04986B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover, link	SAM-JC63-05004A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Cover, main	SAM-JC63-04792B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04988B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04750B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Cover, stacker	SAM-JC63-04999B	Shield on page 977
Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover-f, lower	SAM-JC63-04987B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover-m, tray	SAM-JC63-05002B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover-s, tray	SAM-JC63-05003B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
Cover-t, tray	SAM-JC63-04995B	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Cover-t, tray 2	SAM-JC63-04996B	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
CTD sensor	SAM-JC32-00014A	CPR frame assembly on page 867
DCF first pickup	SAM-JC90-01679	DCF main on page 905

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
DCF guide adjust	SAM-JC61-04871A	DCF frame on page 907
DCF PCA	SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF frame on page 907
DCF second pickup	SAM-JC90-01680	DCF main on page 905
DCF sub-takeaway interlock	SAM-JC90-01385A	DCF frame on page 907
DCF, main harness	SAM-JC39-02276A	DCF frame on page 907
DCF, sub harness	SAM-JC39-02278A	DCF frame on page 907
DCF, sub-auto closing	SAM-JC90-01677	DCF main on page 905
DCF, sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01649A	DCF main on page 905
DCF, t1mot harness	SAM-JC39-02268A	DCF frame on page 907
Developer cartridge, C	SAM-JC96-11602A	Main assembly on page 855
Developer cartridge, K	SAM-JC96-11603A	Main assembly on page 855
Developer cartridge, M	SAM-JC96-11601A	Main assembly on page 855
Developer cartridge, Y	SAM-JC96-11600A	Main assembly on page 855
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-00802A	Output on page 857
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01084A	Drive system on page 873
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive system on page 873
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01085A	Right door on page 881
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	HCI drive on page 917
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01083A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01154A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01153A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01156A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01155A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Drive motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Shield on page 977
Drive takeaway roller	SAM-JC93-01119A	HCI main on page 915
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01152A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
Driver motor, step	SAM-JC93-01001A	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
Duct frame (CMY)	SAM-JC93-01089B	Toner frame guide (CMYK) on page 869
Duct frame (K)	SAM-JC93-01088B	Toner frame guide (CMYK) on page 869
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	DCF second pickup on page 913
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
E-ring	SAM-6044-000129	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
E-ring	SAM-6044–000125	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
E-ring	SAM-6044-000125	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Electric clutch	SAM-JC47-00037A	Drive system on page 873
Engage tranfser drive	SAM-JC93-01068A	Drive system on page 873
Fan motor housing	SAM-JC61-07694A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Fan type 7	SAM-JC31-00161B	Main assembly on page 855
Fan, dc	SAM-JC31-00168A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Fan, type 4	SAM-JC31-00146A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Feed drive	SAM-JC93-01062A	Drive system on page 873
Feed drive opt	SAM-JC93-01135A	DCF main on page 905
Feed drive, HCI	SAM-JC63-04797B	HCI main on page 915
Feed guide	SAM-JC61-06988A	Right door guide on page 885
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	HCI main pickup on page 923
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04670A	HCI main pickup on page 923

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Feed roller	SAM-JC66-04606A	sHCI main 6 on page 931
Feed roller opt[1]	SAM-JC66-04670A	DCF main on page 905
Feed roller, first	SAM-JC66-04625A	Main frame pickup on page 877
Feed roller[1]	SAM-JC66-04607A	DCF main on page 905
Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	SAM-JC90-01396A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Finisher sub-3 fold output	SAM-JC90-01399A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Finisher sub-actuator tray	SAM-JC90-01313A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	SAM-JC90-01314A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Finisher sub-alignment front	SAM-JC90-01464A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Finisher sub-alignment rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01464A	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
Finisher sub-alignment, front	SAM-JC90-01315A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01465A	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
Finisher sub-alignment, rear	SAM-JC90-01317A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-base low	SAM-JC90-01476A	Shield on page 977
Finisher sub-bkt main blade	SAM-JC90-01435A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Finisher sub-booklet 4	SAM-JC90-01502A	Finisher sub booklet on page 981
Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	Booklet finisher on page 937
Finisher sub-booklet unit	SAM-JC90-01416A	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Finisher sub-clutch div	SAM-JC90-01474A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-clutch drive	SAM-JC90-01404A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478A	Booklet finisher on page 937
Finisher sub-cover f bm	SAM-JC90-01478B	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-cover, compile	SAM-JC90-01323B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Finisher sub-cover, front	SAM-JC90-01321B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Finisher sub-cover, middle	SAM-JC90-01322B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Finisher sub-curl pawl	SAM-JC90-01398A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-div cam	SAM-JC90-01458A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Finisher sub-door	SAM-JC90-01444A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Finisher sub-drv buff	SAM-JC90-01453A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-ef mtr	SAM-JC90-01467A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-ejector	SAM-JC90-01332A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-ejector unit	SAM-JC90-01409A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Finisher sub-end stopper	SAM-JC90-01466A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-entrance guide	SAM-JC90-01424A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Finisher sub-entrance motor	SAM-JC90-01344A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	SAM-JC90-01432A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Finisher sub-guide output, lower	SAM-JC90-01336A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-guide three fold	SAM-JC90-01394A	Three fold blade on page 965
Finisher sub-guide top	SAM-JC90-01406A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Finisher sub-hb motor	SAM-JC90-01459A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01459A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Finisher sub-hb mtr	SAM-JC90-01402A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Finisher sub-idle fold	SAM-JC90-01479A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-jam clear	SAM-JC90-01433A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Finisher sub-low output	SAM-JC90-01400A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Finisher sub-low paddle	SAM-JC90-01429A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Finisher sub-main blade	SAM-JC90-01437A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Finisher sub-mid jam	SAM-JC90-01450A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
Finisher sub-motor tray	SAM-JC90-01334A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-output main	SAM-JC90-01451A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-output roller	SAM-JC90-01395A	Three fold blade on page 965
Finisher sub-paddle	SAM-JC90-01480A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-paddle, mid	SAM-JC90-01462A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-paddle, wing	SAM-JC90-01463A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-paper support	SAM-JC90-01310A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-paper support, rear	SAM-JC90-01311A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-pcb bm	SAM-JC90-01477A	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
Finisher sub-punch dummy	SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
Finisher sub-regist guide	SAM-JC90-01448B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Finisher sub-right jam	SAM-JC90-01457A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Finisher sub-scu motor	SAM-JC90-01414A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Finisher sub-scu mtr	SAM-JC90-01414A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Finisher sub-stacker plate	SAM-JC90-01324B	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01343A	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-staple	SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
Finisher sub-staple unit	SAM-JC90-01412A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Finisher sub-stk motor	SAM-JC90-01415A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Finisher sub-stk mtr	SAM-JC90-01415A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Finisher sub-top cover	SAM-JC90-01446B	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Booklet finisher on page 937
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Finisher sub-top door	SAM-JC90-01445B	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Finisher sub-top frame	SAM-JC90-01440A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Finisher sub-top jam	SAM-JC90-01455A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Finisher sub-top lower	SAM-JC90-01454A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Finisher sub-trans buff	SAM-JC90-01456A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Finisher sub-tray	SAM-JC63-04797B	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
Finisher sub-tray bm unit	SAM-JC90-01417B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Finisher sub-tray frame	SAM-JC90-01319A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Finisher sub-tray lower limit	SAM-JC90-01320A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
First output	SAM-JC90-01370A	Main assembly on page 855
Flow ADF	SAM-JC97-04868A	Main assembly on page 855
Flow ADF cover, bottom	SAM-JC97-04880A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF cover, front	SAM-JC97-04881A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF damper	SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF dummy, front	SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF exterior	SAM-JC97-04668B	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF housing separation roller	SAM-JC97-04661A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF lift drive	SAM-JC97-04679A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF open cover	SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
Flow ADF open cover, lower	SAM-JC97-04696B	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
Flow ADF pickup release drive	SAM-JC97-04681A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF pickup, upper (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC97-04872A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF pickup, upper (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC97-04646B	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF scan out	SAM-JC97-04830A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF scan release drive	SAM-JC97-04682A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF separation cover	SAM-JC97-04652A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF stacker	SAM-JC97-04658B	Flow ADF stacker on page 897

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Flow ADF sub-pickup	SAM-JC97-04650A	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
Flow ADF, hinge l	SAM-JC97-04640A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, hinge r	SAM-JC97-04641A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, main frame (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC97-04883A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF, main frame (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC97-04882A	Flow ADF on page 891
Flow ADF, motor feed drive	SAM-JC97-04680A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, PCA (GX) (z models)	SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, PCA (sGX) (dn models)	SAM-JC92-02964B	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, scan in lower	SAM-JC97-04656B	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Flow ADF, white simplex roller	SAM-JC97-04687A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Frame holder, dust assembly	SAM-JC93-01026B	Main assembly on page 855
Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	SAM-JC93-01123A	sHCI frame on page 935
Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	SAM-JC93-01124A	sHCI frame on page 935
Frame mount	SAM-JC61-06663A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Frame, CPR assembly	SAM-JC93-01039A	Main frame assembly on page 863
Frame, left cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01044A	DCF frame on page 907
Frame, main humidity sensor	SAM-JC93-00486A	Rear frame assembly on page 871
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	Main frame pickup on page 877
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-00540B	MP tray on page 883
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	DCF second pickup on page 913
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	sHCI main 6 on page 931
Frame, main pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01092A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Frame, main rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	Rear frame assembly on page 871
Frame, main registration	SAM-JC93-01116A	Main frame registration on page 865
Frame, main switch open	SAM-JC93-00466A	Main frame assembly on page 863
Frame, right cst rail assembly	SAM-JC93-01045A	DCF frame on page 907

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01364A	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01365A	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
Frame, sub-pickup	SAM-JC93-01421A	Main frame pickup on page 877
Frame, sub-rear bottom	SAM-JC93-01370A	Main frame assembly on page 863
Front cover	SAM-JC95-02109A	Cover on page 879
Front cover	SAM-JC63-04986B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Front cover, lower	SAM-JC63-04861B	Cover on page 879
Front scan cover	SAM-JC95-02118A	Cover on page 879
Fuser drive board, 110V	SAM-JC44-00235B	Main assembly on page 855
Fuser drive board, 220V	SAM-JC44-00236B	Main assembly on page 855
Fuser drive output	SAM-JC93-01064A	Drive system on page 873
Gear motor	SAM-JC31-00109A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
Gear, buffer	SAM-JC66-04602A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04579A	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Gear, double	SAM-JC66-04573A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Gear, helical	SAM-JC66-04591A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Gear, helical 1	SAM-JC66-04592A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Gear, helical 2	SAM-JC66-04593A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Gear, helical 3	SAM-JC66-04594A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Gear, helical 4	SAM-JC66-04595A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Gear-db, gear	SAM-JC66-04604A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Ground plate	SAM-JC61-03002A	DCF rear frame on page 909
Ground-c, safety	SAM-JC63-04984A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Guide, buff div	SAM-JC61-07204A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Guide, com ceil	SAM-JC61-07189A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Guide, diverter	SAM-JC61-07205A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Guide, pusher	SAM-JC61-07206A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Guide, seal-top	SAM-JC62-01328A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Guide, top jam	SAM-JC61-07196A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Guide-l, entrance	SAM-JC61-07247A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Harness, 3k finisher bm path	SAM-JC39-02320A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Harness, 3k finisher output path	SAM-JC39-02322A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Harness, 3k finisher top cover	SAM-JC39-02310A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Harness, heater HCI	SAM-JC39-02284A	HCI frame on page 921
Harness, inner tray HCI	SAM-JC39-02286A	HCI frame on page 921
Harness, main if HCI	SAM-JC39-02283A	HCI frame on page 921
Harness, mot HCI	SAM-JC39-02279A	HCI frame on page 921
Harness, sub if HCI	SAM-JC39-02285A	HCI frame on page 921
HCI cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI cassette on page 919
HCI main	SAM-JC93-01139A	HCI main pickup on page 923
HCI PCA	SAM-JC92-02738B	HCI frame on page 921
HCI sub-takeaway	SAM-JC90-01646A	HCI main on page 915
HCI, cassette	SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI main on page 915
HCI, main pickup	SAM-JC93-01322B	HCI main on page 915
HCI, sub-auto closer	SAM-JC90-01382A	HCI main on page 915
HDD frame assembly	SAM-JC93-01239B	Main assembly on page 855
Hex screw	6009-001665	DCF main on page 905
Hex screw	6009-001665	Opt feed drive on page 911
HVPS	SAM-JC44-00240A	Main assembly on page 855
Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	SAM-JC70-40360A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Idle holder, one way	SAM-JC61-01288A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Idle roller, cst	SAM-JC61-03331A	HCI frame on page 921
Idle roller, rubber	SAM-JC66-02289B	Right door guide on page 885

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04520C	Main assembly on page 855
Image scanner	SAM-JC97-04523B	Flow ADF image scanner, lower on page 903
Image scanner open sensor	SAM-JC97-04516A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
Image scanner, lower	SAM-JC97-04515A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
Inner cover	SAM-JC95-02110A	Cover on page 879
Inner finisher PCA	SAM-JC92-02774A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Laser scanner assembly	SAM-JC97-04863A	Main assembly on page 855
Laser scanner assembly, fan holder	SAM-JC93-01019A	Main assembly on page 855
Left cover	SAM-JC95-02100A	Cover on page 879
Left cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Left cover, top	SAM-JC63-04862B	Cover on page 879
Left cover, upper	SAM-JC63-04837A	Cover on page 879
Leg bracket	SAM-JC61-07279A	Shield on page 977
Lift drive, shift	SAM-JC93-01118A	HCI main on page 915
Lifting solenoid	SAM-JC33-00031B	Output on page 857
Link door	SAM-JC66–04279A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Link door, front 2	SAM-JC66-04278A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Link door, rear 2	SAM-JC66-04277A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Link holder, hinge f	SAM-JC61-06567A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Link holder, hinge r	SAM-JC61-06568A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Link lever	SAM-JC66-04398A	Right door on page 881
LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 110V	SAM-JC44-00091D	Main assembly on page 855
LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 220V	SAM-JC44-00092D	Main assembly on page 855
LVPS (SMPS) type 5, 220V	SAM-JC44-00100D	Main assembly on page 855
LVPS (SMPS) type 5H, 110V	SAM-JC44-00249A	Main assembly on page 855
Machine screw	SAM-6001-002716	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Machinery, fastener screw	SAM-JC60-00078A	DCF main on page 905
Magent, as by3-32-1	SAM-JC81-08263A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Magnet, as	SAM-JC81-08263A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
Main board hard disk drive (HDD)	SAM-JC59-00037A	Main assembly on page 855

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Main drive	SAM-JC93-01059C	Drive system on page 873
Main frame rear auto-size holder	SAM-JC93-00018A	DCF rear frame on page 909
Main sub-drive	SAM-JC93-01048B	Drive system on page 873
Main-brush, output	SAM-JC67-00817A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Middle left cover	SAM-JC63-05635A	Cover on page 879
Motor	SAM-JC90-01673A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Motor gear	SAM-JC31-00109A	HCI drive on page 917
Motor shift gear	SAM-JC31-00125A	HCI drive on page 917
Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	HCI drive on page 917
Motor step, ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00123D	Drive system on page 873
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00123B	Drive system on page 873
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Motor, bldc	SAM-JC31-00144A	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
Motor, dc	SAM-JC31–00078A	CPR frame assembly on page 867
Motor, DC-stacker	SAM-JC31-00178A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Motor, step ip	SAM-JC31-00163B	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
MP	SAM-JC90-01325B	Right door on page 881
MP front cover	SAM-JC63-04910B	Right door on page 881
MP sub-tray	SAM-JC90-01357B	MP tray on page 883
MP, pickup bracket	SAM-JC90-01355A	MP tray on page 883
MP, solenoid	SAM-JC33-00029B	MP tray on page 883
OPE cover	SAM-JC95-02106A	Cover on page 879
Opt feed drive	SAM-JC93-01135A	Opt feed drive on page 911
Opt feed roller	SAM-JC66-04607A	DCF second pickup on page 913
Output	SAM-JC90-01369A	Main assembly on page 855
Output cover	SAM-JC95-02101A	Cover on page 879
Output cover, rear	SAM-JC63-04840A	Cover on page 879
Paddle absorber, rubber a	SAM-JC63-04957A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Paddle absorber, rubber b	SAM-JC63-04958A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Paddle holder	SAM-JC61-07225A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
PCA, 3k switch	SAM-JC92-02789A	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	Rear frame assembly on page 871
PCA, paper size sensor	SAM-JC92-02622A	DCF rear frame on page 909
Photo, tr	SAM-0603–001309	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Output on page 857
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	Main frame registration on page 865
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Drive system on page 873
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-01381	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Main frame pickup on page 877
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	MP tray on page 883
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Right door guide on page 885
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001502	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001502	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Flow ADF stacker on page 897
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	Flow ADF stacker on page 897
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	DCF second pickup on page 913
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	HCI cassette on page 919
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001381	HCI main pickup on page 923
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001393	sHCI main 5 on page 929
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001490	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001393	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Shield on page 977
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604–001381	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
Photo-interrupter	SAM-0604-001415	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Photo-interrupter[1]	SAM-0604-001490	DCF main on page 905
Pick rollers[1]	SAM-JC93-0192A	DCF main on page 905
Pickup cover	SAM-JC63-04798B	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Pickup cover lever	SAM-JC63-04799A	Pickup cover unit on page 933
Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063A	Drive system on page 873
Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01063B	DCF main on page 905
Pickup drive	SAM-JC90-01115A	HCI main on page 915
Pickup drive	SAM-JC93-01115A	HCI drive on page 917
Pickup roller	SAM-JC93-01091A	HCI main pickup on page 923
Rail	SAM-6102-003369	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Rear cover	SAM-JC95-02117A	Cover on page 879
Rear cover	SAM-JC63-05566A	Flow ADF on page 891
Rear cover	SAM-JC63-04988B	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
Rear cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04863B	Cover on page 879
Rear cover, sHCI	SAM-JC90-01660A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Rear cover, upper	SAM-JC63-05633A	Cover on page 879

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Rear join PCA	SAM-JC92-02780A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Rear scan cover	SAM-JC63-04859C	Cover on page 879
Registration drive	SAM-JC93-01061A	Drive system on page 873
Return guide path	SAM-JC61-07088A	Main assembly on page 855
Right cover, front	SAM-JC63-04847B	Cover on page 879
Right cover, rear	SAM-JC95-02102A	Cover on page 879
Right door	SAM-JC95-02092A	Main assembly on page 855
Right middle cover	SAM-JC95-02105A	Cover on page 879
Roller, brg-feed	SAM-JC66-04732A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Roller, brg-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04733A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Roller, click-feed	SAM-JC66-04523A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Roller, feed-entrance	SAM-JC66-04243A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Roller, feed-fold output	SAM-JC66-04721A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Roller, feed-output	SAM-JC66-04244A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Roller, main-feed entrance	SAM-JC66-04722A	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
Roller, main-feed output	SAM-JC66-04726A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Roller, mid-feed output	SAM-JC66-04724A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Roller, output-3 fold	SAM-JC66-04744A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Roller, output-feed bm	SAM-JC66-04723A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Roller, top-feed mid output	SAM-JC66-04725A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
Roller, top-feed output	SAM-JC66-04727A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Rooler, feed-lower bm	SAM-JC66-04719A	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
Safety guide	SAM-JC61-07192A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Scan left cover	SAM-JC63-04858A	Cover on page 879
Scan right cover	SAM-JC63-05571A	Cover on page 879
Screw cap	SAM-JC67-00711A	sHCI main 1 on page 925
Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
Screw, machine	SAM-6001-000130	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Screw, tap type	SAM-6003–00269	DCF second pickup on page 913
Screw, tap type	SAM-6003-001256	IPTU (bridge) on page 983

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Second output	SAM-JC90-01373A	Main assembly on page 855
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
Sensor, rp	SAM-JC32-00020A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Shaft, hinge-door	SAM-JC66-04767A	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
sHCI cover, dummy	SAM-JC63-04918B	Right door on page 881
sHCI drive gear	SAM-JC66-04294A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
sHCI, connect sensor harness	SAM-JC39-02291A	sHCI main 5 on page 929
sHCI, feed pulley gear	SAM-JC66-04295A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
sHCI, mot harness	SAM-JC39-02287A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI main 5 on page 929
sHCI, plow harness	SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI main 6 on page 931
Sheet sensor	SAM-JC63-03776A	DCF second pickup on page 913
Sheet-fold output	SAM-JC63-05041A	Three fold blade on page 965
Sheet-jam guide	SAM-JC63-05044A	Three fold blade on page 965
Side cover	SAM-JC63-04920B	Right door on page 881
Side cover guide	SAM-JC95-01969A	Right door guide on page 885
Side cover output	SAM-JC95-01968A	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Side cover takeaway	SAM-JC95-01972A	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Side cover, link	SAM-JC95-01970A	Right door on page 881
Side cover, up	SAM-JC63-04916B	Right door on page 881
Side link	SAM-JC66-04400A	Right door on page 881
Solenoid	SAM-JC90-01675A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00038A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Solenoid	SAM-JC33-00037A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Sponge, white sheet	SAM-JC63-05238A	Main assembly on page 855
Spring, cs	SAM-6107-001731	Right door guide on page 885
Spring, cs	SAM-JC61-07403A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07414A	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07431A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07430A	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07415A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07409A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07391A	Three fold blade on page 965
Spring, es	SAM-JC61-07408A	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	SAM-JC61-00076A	HCI cassette on page 919
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07372A	Right door on page 881
Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	Right door guide on page 885
Spring, ts	SAM-6107-001737	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07411A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07417A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07410A	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07401A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07413A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07409A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07418A	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07428A	Shield on page 977
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07427A	Shield on page 977
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07392A	Shield on page 977
Spring, ts	SAM-JC61-07432A	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Stacker, CSP-worm	SAM-JC81-07637A	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
Stapler-etc assembly	SAM-JC98-04473A	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00149A	Finisher sub 8 on page 991

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Step motor ip	SAM-JC31-00169B	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Step motor, circuit	SAM-JC31-00110A	Drive system on page 873
Step motor, circuit	SAM-JC31-00110B	Drive system on page 873
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00132A	Drive system on page 873
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00158A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00177A	Opt feed drive on page 911
Step motor, ip	SAM-JC31-00163A	sHCI main 3 on page 927
T2 transfer	SAM-JC93-01078A	T2 transfer on page 889
T2 transfer roller	SAM-JC93-01080A	T2 transfer on page 889
TCU (WTB)	SAM-JC93-01070A	Drive system on page 873
Tempered scan glass	SAM-JC01-00101A	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001581	Drive system on page 873
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	Drive system on page 873
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	Right door on page 881
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003183	Right door on page 881
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003185	DCF main on page 905
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	Opt feed drive on page 911
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003670	HCI drive on page 917
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-001730	sHCI main 3 on page 927
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
Timing belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
Timing pulley	SAM-JC66-04583A	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003649	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003647	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003640	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003639	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003652	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945

Table 4-70 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003270	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003648	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003645	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
Timing-belt, gear	SAM-6602-003644	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
Toner drive	SAM-JC93-01065B	Drive system on page 873
Top-brush output	SAM-JC67-00818A	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
Top-seal, guide	SAM-JC62-01328A	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
Transfer, ITB	SAM-JC93-01375A	Main assembly on page 855
Transfer, ITB cleaner	SAM-JC93-01377A	Main assembly on page 855
Tray cover	SAM-JC63-04797B	HCI main on page 915

Numerical parts list

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
6009-001665	Hex screw	DCF main on page 905
6009-001665	Hex screw	Opt feed drive on page 911
SAM-0603–001309	Photo, tr	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	Main frame registration on page 865
SAM-0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-0604-001381	Photo-interrupter	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Output on page 857
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Drive system on page 873
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Main frame pickup on page 877
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	MP tray on page 883
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF stacker on page 897
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	HCI cassette on page 919
SAM-0604-001393	Photo-interrupter	sHCI main 5 on page 929
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Shield on page 977
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-0604-001415	Photo-interrupter	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF stacker on page 897
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-0604-001490	Photo-interrupter	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-0604-001502	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
SAM-0604-01381	Photo-interrupter	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
SAM-0604–001381	Photo-interrupter	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
SAM-0604–001393	Photo-interrupter	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-0604–001502	Photo-interrupter	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
SAM-0609-001558	Contact image sensor	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-6001-000130	Screw, machine	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-6001-000130	Screw, machine	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6001-002716	Machine screw	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-6003-001256	Screw, tap type	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6003–00269	Screw, tap type	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-6044-000125	E-ring	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6044-000129	E-ring	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-6044-000159	C-ring	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-6044–000125	E-ring	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-6102-003369	Rail	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-6107-001731	Spring, cs	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-6107-001737	Spring, ts	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-6107-001737	Spring, ts	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-6109-001138	Caster	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-6109-001138	Caster	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-6502-001131	Cable clamp	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-6601-001478	Bearing ball	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6601-003062	Bearing ball	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-001581	Timing belt, gear	Drive system on page 873
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	Drive system on page 873
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	Right door on page 881
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-6602-001730	Timing belt, gear	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-6602-003183	Timing belt, gear	Right door on page 881
SAM-6602-003185	Timing belt, gear	DCF main on page 905
SAM-6602-003270	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-6602-003639	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-003640	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-003644	Timing belt, gear	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
SAM-6602-003644	Timing belt, gear	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
SAM-6602-003644	Timing-belt, gear	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-6602-003645	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-003645	Timing-belt, gear	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-6602-003647	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-003648	Timing-belt, gear	IPTU (bridge) on page 983

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-6602-003649	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-6602-003652	Timing-belt, gear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	Opt feed drive on page 911
SAM-6602-003670	Timing belt, gear	HCI drive on page 917
SAM-JC01-00101A	Tempered scan glass	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
SAM-JC31-00109A	Motor gear	HCI drive on page 917
SAM-JC31-00109A	Gear motor	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC31-00110A	Step motor, circuit	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC31-00110B	Step motor, circuit	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC31-00123B	Motor, bldc	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC31-00123D	Motor, bldc	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC31-00125A	Motor shift gear	HCI drive on page 917
SAM-JC31-00132A	Step motor, ip	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC31-00144A	Motor, bldc	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC31-00144A	Motor, bldc	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC31-00146A	Fan, type 4	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC31-00149A	Step motor ip	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC31-00158A	Step motor, ip	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
SAM-JC31-00161B	Fan type 7	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC31-00163A	Step motor, ip	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, step ip	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor step, ip	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC31-00168A	Fan, dc	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC31-00169B	Step motor ip	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC31-00177A	Step motor, ip	Opt feed drive on page 911
SAM-JC31-00177A	Motor step, ip	HCI drive on page 917

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC31-00178A	Motor, DC-stacker	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC31–00078A	Motor, dc	CPR frame assembly on page 867
SAM-JC32-00014A	CTD sensor	CPR frame assembly on page 867
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
SAM-JC32-00020A	Sensor, rp	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC33-00029B	MP, solenoid	MP tray on page 883
SAM-JC33-00031B	Lifting solenoid	Output on page 857
SAM-JC33-00037A	Solenoid	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC33-00038A	Solenoid	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC39-02268A	DCF, t1mot harness	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC39-02276A	DCF, main harness	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC39-02278A	DCF, sub harness	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC39-02279A	Harness, mot HCI	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC39-02283A	Harness, main if HCI	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC39-02284A	Harness, heater HCI	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC39-02285A	Harness, sub if HCI	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC39-02286A	Harness, inner tray HCI	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC39-02287A	sHCI, mot harness	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI, plow harness	sHCI main 5 on page 929
SAM-JC39-02288A	sHCI, plow harness	sHCI main 6 on page 931
SAM-JC39-02291A	sHCI, connect sensor harness	sHCI main 5 on page 929
SAM-JC39-02310A	Harness, 3k finisher top cover	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC39-02320A	Harness, 3k finisher bm path	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC39-02322A	Harness, 3k finisher output path	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC39-02327A	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU sub	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC39-02328A	Cable, 3k finisher IPTU PA	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC44-00091D	LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 110V	Main assembly on page 855

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC44-00092D	LVPS (SMPS) type 4, 220V	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC44-00100D	LVPS (SMPS) type 5, 220V	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC44-00235B	Fuser drive board, 110V	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC44-00236B	Fuser drive board, 220V	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC44-00240A	HVPS	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC44-00249A	LVPS (SMPS) type 5H, 110V	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC47-00037A	Electric clutch	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC59-00037A	Main board hard disk drive (HDD)	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC60-00078A	Machinery, fastener screw	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC61-00076A	Spring, etc torsion doc (cc2-f)	HCI cassette on page 919
SAM-JC61-00423A	Bush-6, d	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC61-00423A	Bush-6, d	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC61-00426A	Bush, 8/5	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, dl	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC61-00884A	Bush-6, d(l)	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC61-01288A	Idle holder, one way	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC61-01742A	Connector holder, scf	HCI cassette on page 919
SAM-JC61-02372A	Bush, D6/L4	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC61-03002A	Ground plate	DCF rear frame on page 909
SAM-JC61-03331A	Idle roller, cst	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC61-04871A	DCF guide adjust	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC61-04871A	Adjust guide, DCF	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC61-06567A	Link holder, hinge f	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC61-06568A	Link holder, hinge r	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC61-06663A	Frame mount	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC61-06988A	Feed guide	Right door guide on page 885

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC61-07088A	Return guide path	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC61-07189A	Guide, com ceil	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC61-07192A	Safety guide	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC61-07196A	Guide, top jam	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07204A	Guide, buff div	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC61-07205A	Guide, diverter	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07206A	Guide, pusher	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC61-07225A	Paddle holder	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC61-07247A	Guide-l, entrance	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC61-07279A	Leg bracket	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC61-07372A	Spring, ts	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC61-07391A	Spring, es	Three fold blade on page 965
SAM-JC61-07392A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC61-07401A	Spring, ts	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC61-07403A	Spring, cs	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC61-07408A	Spring, es	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
SAM-JC61-07409A	Spring, es	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07409A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC61-07410A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07411A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07413A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC61-07414A	Spring, es	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC61-07415A	Spring, es	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC61-07417A	Spring, ts	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC61-07418A	Spring, ts	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC61-07427A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC61-07428A	Spring, ts	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC61-07430A	Spring, es	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC61-07431A	Spring, es	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC61-07432A	Spring, ts	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC61-07449A	Compile guide, front	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC61-07450A	Compile guide, rear	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC61-07471A	Cassette guide rail	HCI cassette on page 919
SAM-JC61-07694A	Fan motor housing	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC62-01328A	Top-seal, guide	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC62-01328A	Guide, seal-top	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC63-03776A	Sheet sensor	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC63-04750B	Cover, rear	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-JC63-04792B	Cover, main	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-JC63-04797B	Tray cover	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC63-04797B	Feed drive, HCI	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC63-04797B	Left cover	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC63-04797B	Finisher sub-tray	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC63-04798B	Pickup cover	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC63-04799A	Pickup cover lever	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC63-04837A	Left cover, upper	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04840A	Output cover, rear	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04847B	Right cover, front	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04858A	Scan left cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04859C	Rear scan cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04861B	Front cover, lower	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04862B	Left cover, top	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-04863B	Rear cover, dummy	Cover on page 879

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC63-04910B	MP front cover	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC63-04916B	Side cover, up	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC63-04918B	sHCI cover, dummy	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC63-04920B	Side cover	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC63-04957A	Paddle absorber, rubber a	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC63-04958A	Paddle absorber, rubber b	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC63-04984A	Ground-c, safety	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC63-04985B	Caster cover	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-04985B	Caster cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC63-04986B	Cover, front	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-04986B	Front cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover-f, lower	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover-f, lower	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC63-04988B	Cover, rear	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-04988B	Rear cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC63-04995B	Cover-t, tray	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC63-04996B	Cover-t, tray 2	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-04996B	Cover-t, tray 2	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
SAM-JC63-04999B	Cover, stacker	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover-m, tray	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover-m, tray	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
SAM-JC63-05003B	Cover-s, tray	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC63-05003B	Cover-s, tray	Mainline finisher 6 on page 949
SAM-JC63-05004A	Cover, link	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC63-05041A	Sheet-fold output	Three fold blade on page 965
SAM-JC63-05044A	Sheet-jam guide	Three fold blade on page 965
SAM-JC63-05238A	Sponge, white sheet	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC63-05566A	Rear cover	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC63-05571A	Scan right cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-05633A	Rear cover, upper	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC63-05635A	Middle left cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC64-00995A	Button, staple	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC64-00996A	Button lens	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch one way[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch one way	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC66-00977A	Clutch, one way	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC66-02270A	Cover link, open	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC66-02289B	Idle roller, rubber	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-JC66-04199A	Actuator, feed sensor	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC66-04200A	Actuator tray limit	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC66-04243A	Roller, feed-entrance	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC66-04244A	Roller, feed-output	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC66-04276A	Actuator, empty pickup	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC66-04277A	Link door, rear 2	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC66-04278A	Link door, front 2	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC66-04281A	Belt	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC66-04290A	Actuator	sHCI main 5 on page 929
SAM-JC66-04294A	sHCI drive gear	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC66-04295A	sHCI, feed pulley gear	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC66-04398A	Link lever	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC66-04400A	Side link	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC66-04405A	Actuator lever, dup	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-JC66-04406A	Actuator lever, fuser out	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-JC66-04459A	Actuator lever, empty	MP tray on page 883
SAM-JC66-04520A	Actuator, entrance feed	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC66-04523A	Roller, click-feed	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC66-04525A	Actuator, top-output	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC66-04526A	Actuator, pusher	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC66-04528A	Actuator-o, staple	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC66-04569A	Actuator, sensor	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC66-04573A	Gear, double	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC66-04579A	Gear, double	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC66-04583A	Timing pulley	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC66-04591A	Gear, helical	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC66-04592A	Gear, helical 1	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC66-04593A	Gear, helical 2	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC66-04594A	Gear, helical 3	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC66-04595A	Gear, helical 4	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC66-04602A	Gear, buffer	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC66-04604A	Gear-db, gear	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC66-04606A	Feed roller	sHCI main 6 on page 931
SAM-JC66-04607A	Feed roller[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC66-04607A	Opt feed roller	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC66-04607A	Feed roller	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC66-04625A	Feed roller, first	Main frame pickup on page 877
SAM-JC66-04644A	Actuator, te-press1	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC66-04670A	Feed roller opt[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC66-04670A	Feed roller	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC66-04719A	Rooler, feed-lower bm	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC66-04721A	Roller, feed-fold output	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC66-04722A	Roller, main-feed entrance	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-JC66-04723A	Roller, output-feed bm	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC66-04724A	Roller, mid-feed output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC66-04725A	Roller, top-feed mid output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC66-04726A	Roller, main-feed output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC66-04727A	Roller, top-feed output	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC66-04732A	Roller, brg-feed	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC66-04733A	Roller, brg-feed entrance	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC66-04744A	Roller, output-3 fold	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC66-04767A	Shaft, hinge-door	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC66–04279A	Link door	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	Main frame pickup on page 877
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC67-00455A	Coupler, torque limiter	sHCI main 6 on page 931
SAM-JC67-00464A	Coupler, torque limiter	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC67-00711A	Screw cap	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC67-00817A	Main-brush, output	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC67-00818A	Top-brush output	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC67-00819A	Compiler-brush, ceiling rear	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC67-00820A	Compiler-brush, ceiling front	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC70-40360A	Ict-pin, paralled, p/u	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC70-40542A	Cartridge, ICT-PIN	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC81-07637A	Stacker, CSP-worm	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC81-08263A	Magnet, as	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC81-08263A	Magent, as by3-32-1	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC81-08263A	AS-Magnet BY3-32-1	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC90-01115A	Pickup drive	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC90-01310A	Finisher sub-paper support	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01311A	Finisher sub-paper support, rear	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01313A	Finisher sub-actuator tray	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC90-01314A	Finisher sub-actuator tray sensor	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC90-01315A	Finisher sub-alignment, front	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01317A	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01319A	Finisher sub-tray frame	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC90-01320A	Finisher sub-tray lower limit	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC90-01321B	Finisher sub-cover, front	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-JC90-01322B	Finisher sub-cover, middle	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-JC90-01323B	Finisher sub-cover, compile	Finisher sub 1 on page 987

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01324B	Finisher sub-stacker plate	Finisher sub 1 on page 987
SAM-JC90-01325B	MP	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC90-01332A	Finisher sub-ejector	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01334A	Finisher sub-motor tray	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01336A	Finisher sub-guide output, lower	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub-staple	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01342A	Finisher sub-staple	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub-staple	Sub-inner finisher on page 985
SAM-JC90-01343A	Finisher sub-punch dummy	Finisher sub 7 on page 989
SAM-JC90-01344A	Finisher sub-entrance motor	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC90-01355A	MP, pickup bracket	MP tray on page 883
SAM-JC90-01357B	MP sub-tray	MP tray on page 883
SAM-JC90-01369A	Output	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC90-01370A	First output	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC90-01373A	Second output	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC90-01382A	HCI, sub-auto closer	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC90-01385A	DCF sub-takeaway interlock	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC90-01394A	Finisher sub-guide three fold	Three fold blade on page 965
SAM-JC90-01395A	Finisher sub-output roller	Three fold blade on page 965
SAM-JC90-01396A	Finisher sub-3 fold mtr	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC90-01398A	Finisher sub-curl pawl	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC90-01399A	Finisher sub-3 fold output	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC90-01400A	Finisher sub-low output	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC90-01402A	Finisher sub-hb mtr	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC90-01404A	Finisher sub-clutch drive	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01404A	Finisher sub-clutch drive	IPTU (bridge) on page 983
SAM-JC90-01406A	Finisher sub-guide top	Low output, hb motor, and top guide on page 953
SAM-JC90-01409A	Finisher sub-ejector unit	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-JC90-01412A	Finisher sub-staple unit	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01414A	Finisher sub-scu mtr	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC90-01414A	Finisher sub-scu motor	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC90-01415A	Finisher sub-stk mtr	Mainline finisher 4 on page 945
SAM-JC90-01415A	Finisher sub-stk motor	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher sub-booklet unit	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher sub-booklet unit	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC90-01417B	Finisher sub-tray bm unit	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC90-01424A	Finisher sub-entrance guide	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC90-01429A	Finisher sub-low paddle	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC90-01432A	Finisher sub-fd stopper unit	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC90-01433A	Finisher sub-jam clear	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC90-01435A	Finisher sub-bkt main blade	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC90-01437A	Finisher sub-main blade	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC90-01440A	Finisher sub-top frame	Fold roller, main blade, and top frame on page 963
SAM-JC90-01444A	Finisher sub-door	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC90-01445B	Finisher sub-top door	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC90-01446B	Finisher sub-top cover	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC90-01448B	Finisher sub-regist guide	Mainline finisher 5 on page 947
SAM-JC90-01450A	Finisher sub-mid jam	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
SAM-JC90-01451A	Finisher sub-output main	Entrance guide, mid jam, and main output on page 969
SAM-JC90-01453A	Finisher sub-drv buff	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01454A	Finisher sub-top lower	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher sub-top jam	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher sub-top jam	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959
SAM-JC90-01456A	Finisher sub-trans buff	Mainline finisher 2 on page 941
SAM-JC90-01456A	Finisher sub-trans buff	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC90-01457A	Finisher sub-right jam	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-JC90-01457A	Finisher sub-right jam	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC90-01458A	Finisher sub-div cam	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01458A	Finisher sub-div cam	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC90-01459A	Finisher sub-hb mtr	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01459A	Finisher sub-hb motor	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC90-01462A	Finisher sub-paddle, mid	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
SAM-JC90-01463A	Finisher sub-paddle, wing	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher sub-alignment front	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher sub-alignment, front	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher sub-alignment rear	Mainline finisher 1 on page 939
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher sub-alignment, rear	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
SAM-JC90-01466A	Finisher sub-end stopper	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01467A	Finisher sub-ef mtr	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01474A	Finisher sub-clutch div	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01476A	Finisher sub-base low	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC90-01477A	Finisher sub-pcb bm	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
SAM-JC90-01478A	Finisher sub-cover f bm	Booklet finisher on page 937
SAM-JC90-01478B	Finisher sub-cover f bm	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC90-01479A	Finisher sub-idle fold	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
SAM-JC90-01480A	Finisher sub-paddle	PCB bm, cover f bm, idle fold, and paddle on page 979
SAM-JC90-01502A	Finisher sub-booklet 4	Finisher sub booklet on page 981
SAM-JC90-01610A	Cassette, first	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC90-01610A	Cassette	First cassette on page 859
SAM-JC90-01611A	Cassette, second	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC90-01611A	Cassette	Second cassette on page 861
SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI, cassette	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC90-01642A	HCI cassette	HCI cassette on page 919
SAM-JC90-01646A	HCI sub-takeaway	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC90-01649A	DCF, sub-takeaway	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC90-01652	Cassette, fifth	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC90-01654	Cassette, fourth	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC90-01660A	Rear cover, sHCI	sHCI main 1 on page 925
SAM-JC90-01673A	Motor	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01675A	Solenoid	Mainline finisher 3 on page 943
SAM-JC90-01677	DCF, sub-auto closing	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC90-01679	DCF first pickup	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC90-01680	DCF second pickup	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC91-01194A	220V fuser assembly	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC91-01195A	110V fuser assembly	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC92-02622A	PCA, paper size sensor	Rear frame assembly on page 871
SAM-JC92-02622A	PCA, paper size sensor	DCF rear frame on page 909
SAM-JC92-02738A	DCF PCA	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC92-02738B	HCI PCA	HCI frame on page 921
SAM-JC92-02774A	Inner finisher PCA	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC92-02780A	Rear join PCA	Finisher sub 8 on page 991
SAM-JC92-02789A	PCA, 3k switch	Door, top door, top cover, and registration guide on page 967
SAM-JC92-02964A	Flow ADF, PCA (GX) (z models)	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC92-02964B	Flow ADF, PCA (sGX) (dn models)	Flow ADF main frame on page 899

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC93-00018A	Frame, main rear auto-size holder	Rear frame assembly on page 871
SAM-JC93-00018A	Main frame rear auto-size holder	DCF rear frame on page 909
SAM-JC93-00466A	Frame, main switch open	Main frame assembly on page 863
SAM-JC93-00486A	Frame, main humidity sensor	Rear frame assembly on page 871
SAM-JC93-00540B	Frame, main pickup roller	MP tray on page 883
SAM-JC93-00802A	Drive motor, step	Output on page 857
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Transfer buffer, right jam, div cam, hb motor, and paddle motor on page 971
SAM-JC93-01001A	Driver motor, step	Front alignment (tamper) on page 973
SAM-JC93-01001A	Driver motor, step	Rear alignment (tamper) on page 975
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive motor, step	Shield on page 977
SAM-JC93-01019A	Laser scanner assembly, fan holder	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC93-01026B	Frame holder, dust assembly	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC93-01039A	Frame, CPR assembly	Main frame assembly on page 863
SAM-JC93-01044A	Frame, left cst rail assembly	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC93-01045A	Frame, right cst rail assembly	DCF frame on page 907
SAM-JC93-01048B	Main sub-drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01059C	Main drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01061A	Registration drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01062A	Feed drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01063A	Pickup drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01063B	Pickup drive	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC93-01064A	Fuser drive output	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01065B	Toner drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01068A	Engage tranfser drive	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01070A	TCU (WTB)	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01078A	T2 transfer	T2 transfer on page 889
SAM-JC93-01080A	T2 transfer roller	T2 transfer on page 889

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	HCI drive on page 917
SAM-JC93-01083A	Drive motor, step	sHCI main 3 on page 927
SAM-JC93-01084A	Drive motor, step	Drive system on page 873
SAM-JC93-01085A	Drive motor, step	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC93-01088B	Duct frame (K)	Toner frame guide (CMYK) on page 869
SAM-JC93-01089B	Duct frame (CMY)	Toner frame guide (CMYK) on page 869
SAM-JC93-01091A	Pickup roller	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	Main frame pickup on page 877
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	DCF second pickup on page 913
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	sHCI main 6 on page 931
SAM-JC93-01092A	Frame, main pickup roller	Pickup cover unit on page 933
SAM-JC93-01115A	Pickup drive	HCI drive on page 917
SAM-JC93-01116A	Frame, main registration	Main frame registration on page 865
SAM-JC93-01118A	Lift drive, shift	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC93-01119A	Drive takeaway roller	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC93-01123A	Frame interlock sHCI assemlby	sHCI frame on page 935
SAM-JC93-01124A	Frame latch, rear sensor assembly	sHCI frame on page 935
SAM-JC93-01135A	Feed drive opt	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC93-01135A	Opt feed drive	Opt feed drive on page 911
SAM-JC93-01139A	HCI main	HCI main pickup on page 923
SAM-JC93-01152A	Driver motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC93-01153A	Drive motor, step	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC93-01154A	Drive motor, step	Three fold motor, curl pawl motor, curl pawl, and three fold output on page 951
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	Entrance motor, low paddle, alignment, and paddle motor on page 957
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	Drive buffer, top lower, and top jam on page 959

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive motor, step	FD stopper unit, jam clear, and BKT main blade on page 961
SAM-JC93-01156A	Drive motor, step	SCU motor, STK motor, and entrance guide on page 955
SAM-JC93-01239B	HDD frame assembly	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC93-01322B	HCI, main pickup	HCI main on page 915
SAM-JC93-01364A	Frame, sub-pickup	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
SAM-JC93-01365A	Frame, sub-pickup	Main frame pickup 1 and 2 on page 875
SAM-JC93-01370A	Frame, sub-rear bottom	Main frame assembly on page 863
SAM-JC93-01375A	Transfer, ITB	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC93-01377A	Transfer, ITB cleaner	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC93-01421A	Frame, sub-pickup	Main frame pickup on page 877
SAM-JC93-0192A	Pick rollers[1]	DCF main on page 905
SAM-JC95-01968A	Side cover output	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-JC95-01969A	Side cover guide	Right door guide on page 885
SAM-JC95-01970A	Side cover, link	Right door on page 881
SAM-JC95-01972A	Side cover takeaway	Right door output and takeaway on page 887
SAM-JC95-02092A	Right door	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC95-02100A	Left cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02101A	Output cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02102A	Right cover, rear	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02105A	Right middle cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02106A	OPE cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02107A	Cover	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC95-02109A	Front cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02110A	Inner cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02117A	Rear cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC95-02118A	Front scan cover	Cover on page 879
SAM-JC96-09590A	Cartridge, TCU color	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC96-11600A	Developer cartridge, Y	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC96-11601A	Developer cartridge, M	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC96-11602A	Developer cartridge, C	Main assembly on page 855

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC96-11603A	Developer cartridge, K	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC97-04515A	Image scanner, lower	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
SAM-JC97-04516A	Image scanner open sensor	Flow ADF image scanner on page 901
SAM-JC97-04520C	Image scanner	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC97-04523B	Image scanner	Flow ADF image scanner, lower on page 903
SAM-JC97-04640A	Flow ADF, hinge l	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04641A	Flow ADF, hinge r	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04646B	Flow ADF pickup, upper (sGX) (dn models)	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04650A	Flow ADF sub-pickup	Flow ADF upper pickup on page 895
SAM-JC97-04652A	Flow ADF separation cover	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04656B	Flow ADF, scan in lower	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04658B	Flow ADF stacker	Flow ADF stacker on page 897
SAM-JC97-04661A	Flow ADF housing separation roller	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04668B	Flow ADF exterior	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04679A	Flow ADF lift drive	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04680A	Flow ADF, motor feed drive	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04681A	Flow ADF pickup release drive	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04682A	Flow ADF scan release drive	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04687A	Flow ADF, white simplex roller	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF dummy, front	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04692A	Flow ADF damper	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04696B	Flow ADF open cover, lower	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
SAM-JC97-04830A	Flow ADF scan out	Flow ADF main frame on page 899
SAM-JC97-04863A	Laser scanner assembly	Main assembly on page 855
SAM-JC97-04868A	Flow ADF	Main assembly on page 855

Table 4-71 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
SAM-JC97-04869A	Flow ADF open cover	Flow ADF open cover on page 893
SAM-JC97-04872A	Flow ADF pickup, upper (GX) (z models)	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04880A	Flow ADF cover, bottom	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04881A	Flow ADF cover, front	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04882A	Flow ADF, main frame (sGX) (dn models)	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC97-04883A	Flow ADF, main frame (GX) (z models)	Flow ADF on page 891
SAM-JC98-04473A	Stapler-etc assembly	Finisher sub 7 on page 989

5 Problem solving

- Troubleshooting process
- Tools for troubleshooting
- Clear paper jams
- Service mode (tech mode)
- Print quality troubleshooting guide
- Adjusting the Flow ADF skew

Troubleshooting process

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the on the rear of the scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.

4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control Panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control Panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:

- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
  - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.
  - Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
  - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
  - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
  - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
  - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
  - Is the control-panel display back light on?
  - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions

If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.

   TIP: Try using a different power cable if possible.

2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
4. Turn the printer power off.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

   NOTE: If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.

9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

   NOTE: For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).

    - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

      IMPORTANT: This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.

    Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.

12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

⚠ CAUTION: Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

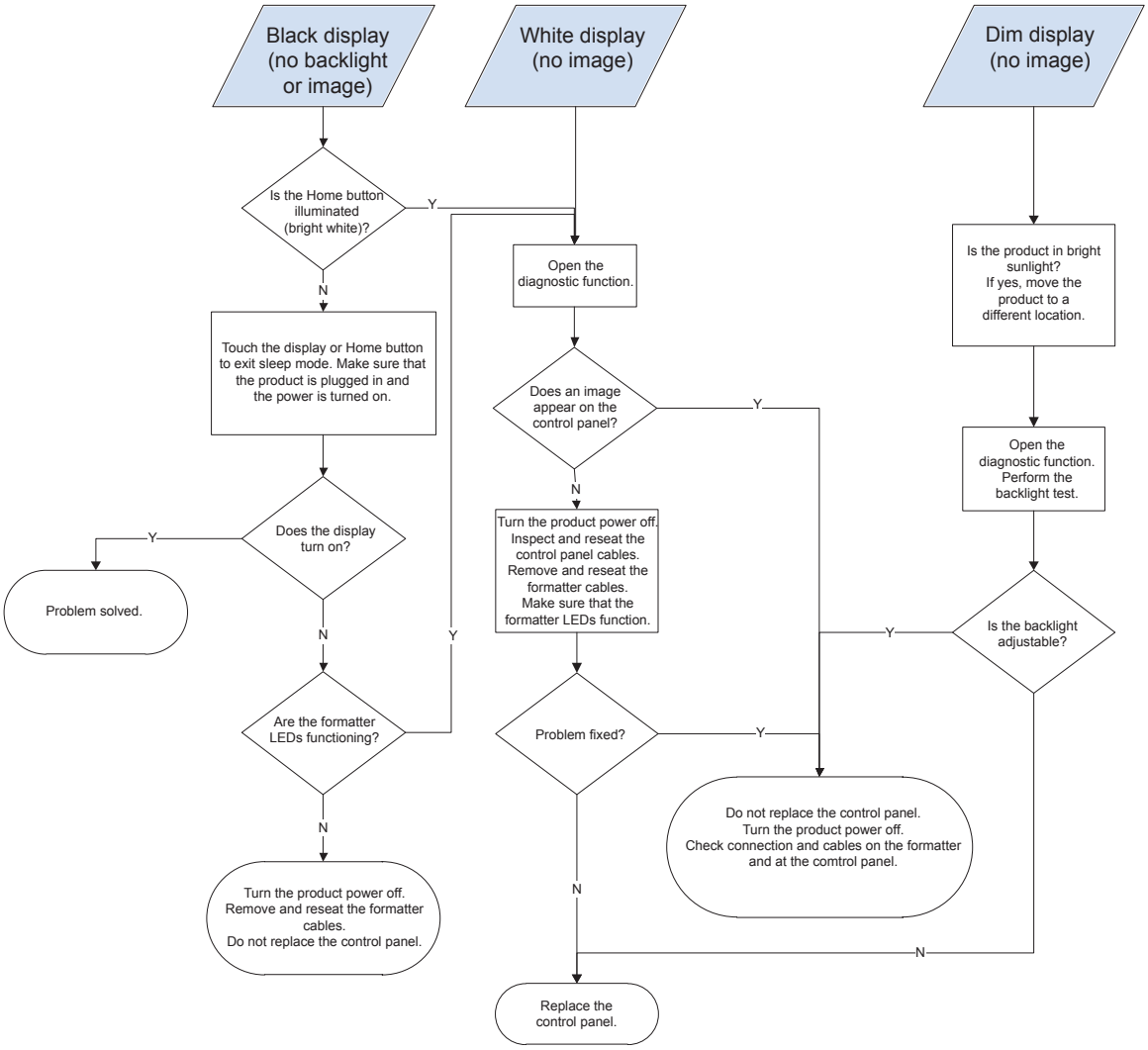
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

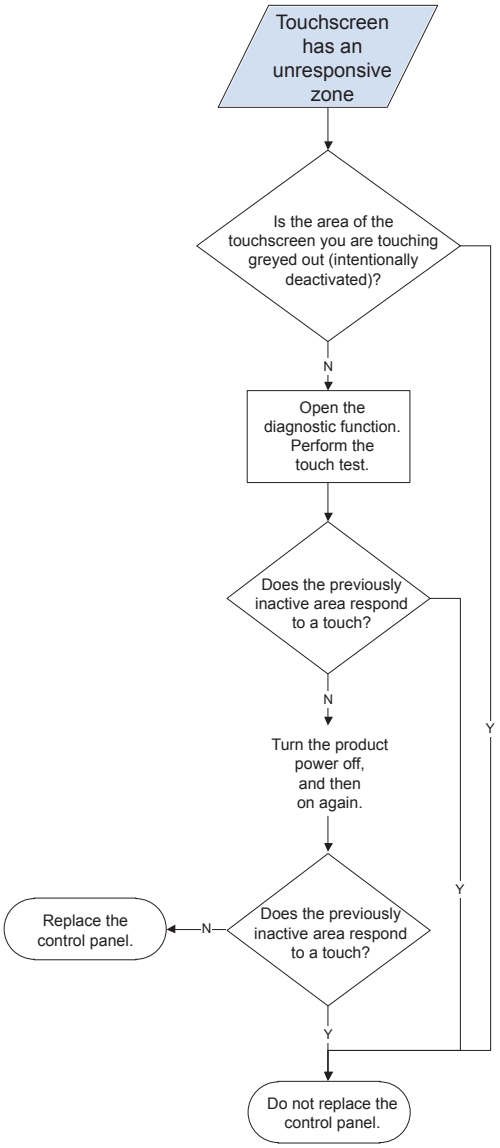
Figure 5-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)



Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

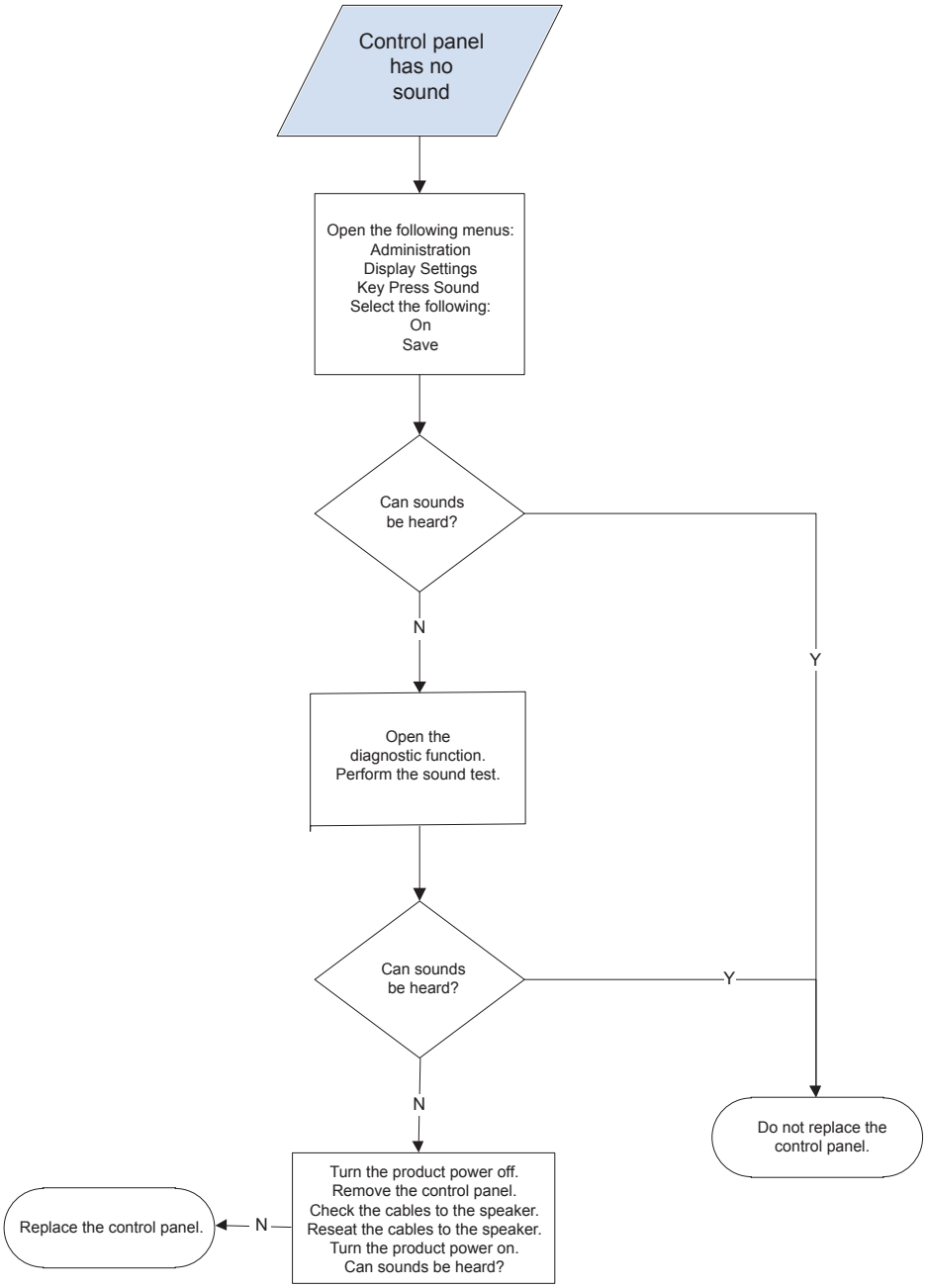
Figure 5-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

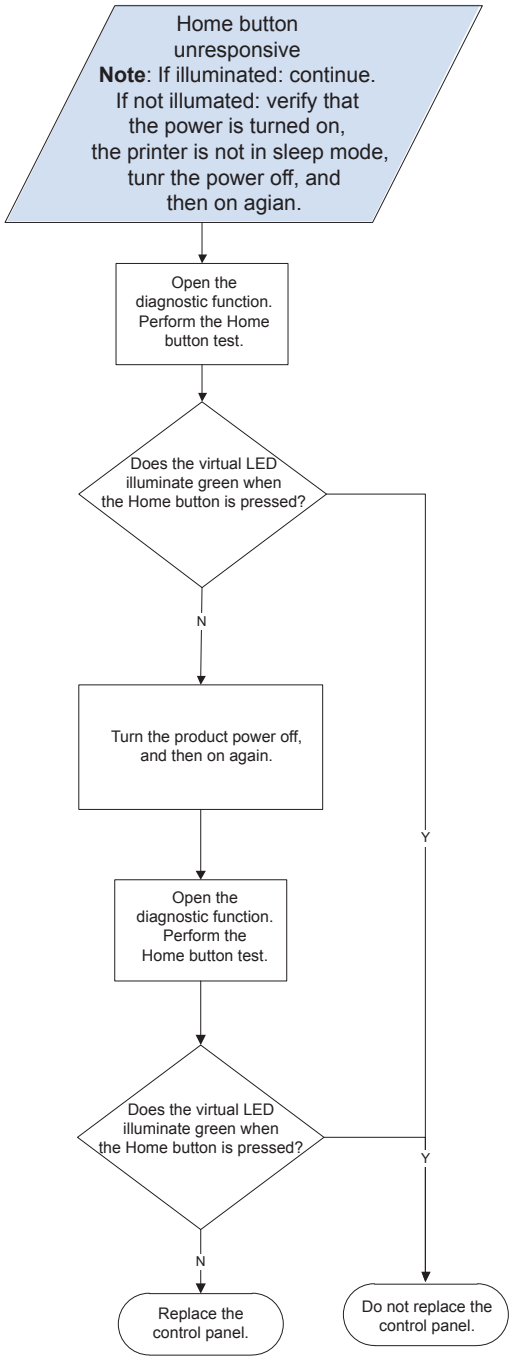
Figure 5-3 No control panel sound



Home button is unresponsive

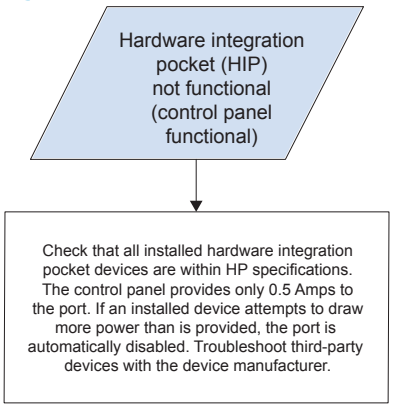
NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 5-4 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Figure 5-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

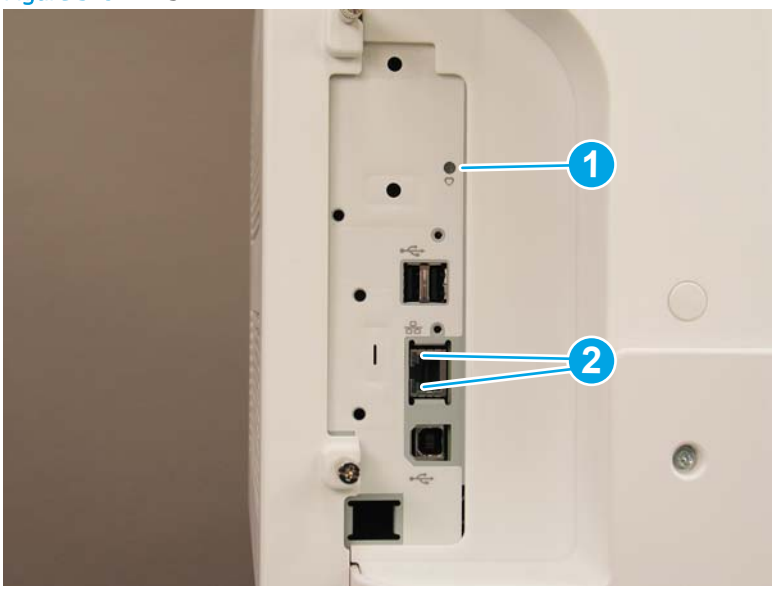
Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 5-6 LEDs



1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
   - **Networking**
   - **Ethernet**
   - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.

Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

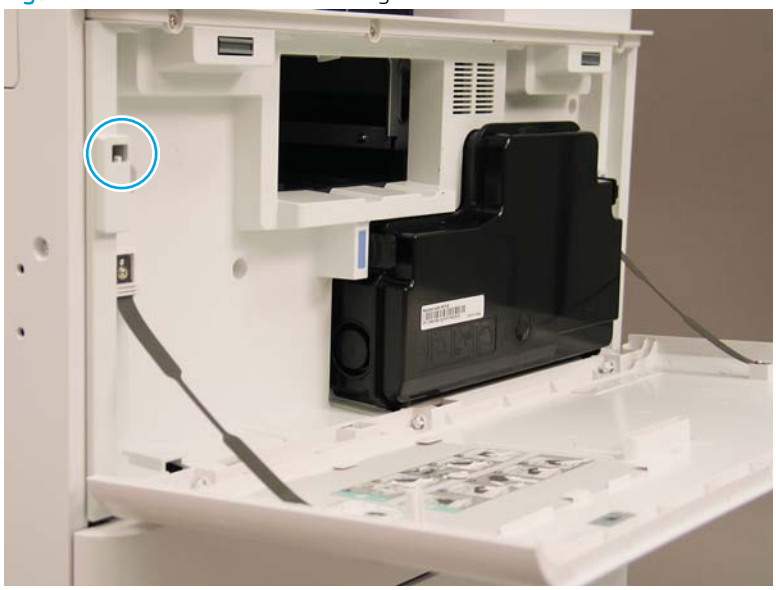
⚠ **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 5-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



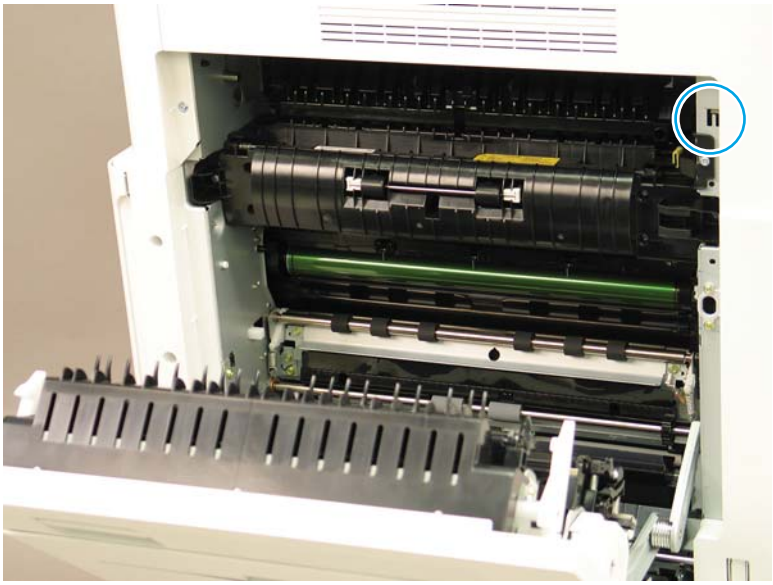
Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.

2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 5-8 Defeat the front door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

Access the individual component diagnostics from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
   - Continuous Scan
   - Run Fax Test
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

- Step 1: Check that the printer power is on
- Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages
- Step 3: Test print functionality
- Step 4: Test copy functionality
- Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality
- Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality
- Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer
- Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality
- Factors that affect printer performance

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
   - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
   - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Reports menu, touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu, select the Configuration Page item, and then touch the Print button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.

NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tools menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the Fax on the printer control panel, and then touch the Start Fax button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the Support Tools button.
2. Touch the Troubleshooting menu, and then open the Diagnostics Tests menu. Touch the Run Fax Test button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The USB Flash Drive menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:

- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics

- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete Reports menu.

Print the menu map from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Settings Menu Map option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

Print the current settings page from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select the Current Settings Page option.
4. Touch the Print button to print the report.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print event log

Printing the event log might be helpful in the troubleshooting process. For more information, see the Interpret control-panel messages and event log entries section in the printer troubleshooting manual.

Print the event log from the Reports menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Event Log
3. The event log displays on the screen. To print it, touch the Print button.

Print the event log from the Service menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. Enter the following service access code for the printer:

- Access code: 04087617

4. Touch the Event Log item.

Clear the event log from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the Service menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for the printer:
   - Access code: 04087617
5. Select the trash icon to clear the event log.

Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

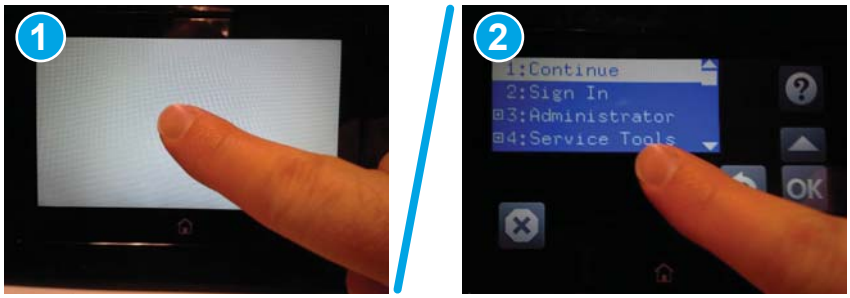
⚠ CAUTION: The Format Disk option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See Remote Admin on page 1064.

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 5-9 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 5-10 Pre-boot menu



	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

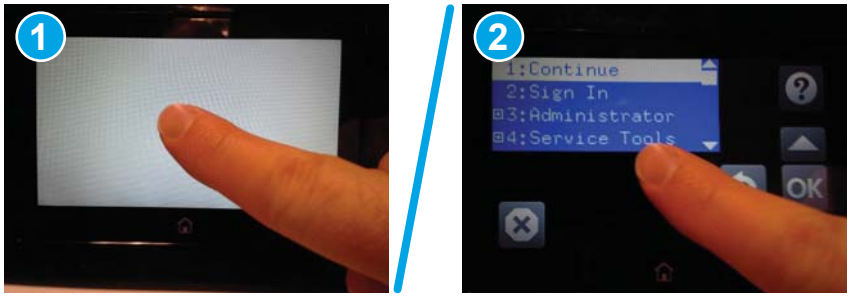
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
4. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 5-11 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 5-1 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process. If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue). If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus. If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.

Table 5-1 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions. **CAUTION:** Selecting the Format Disk item removes **all** data. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. The system is **not** bootable after this action and a **99.09.67** error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved). **CAUTION:** Selecting the Partial Clean item removes **all** data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is **not** provided. **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost). This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action. When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the **99.09.68** error is displayed.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk (continued)	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-4 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the **Ready** state.
		Show Revision		**Not currently functional**: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the **Ready** state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) **NOTE:** Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		**CAUTION:** Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options (continued)	First Power		**Not currently functional**: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on. For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings. Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on. When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect. By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.
		WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
		Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about four minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test. **NOTE:** This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. **NOTE:** This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. **NOTE:** This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 1064.
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the **Ready** state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

- Required software and network connection
- Connect a remote connection
- Disconnect a remote connection

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

Telnet client

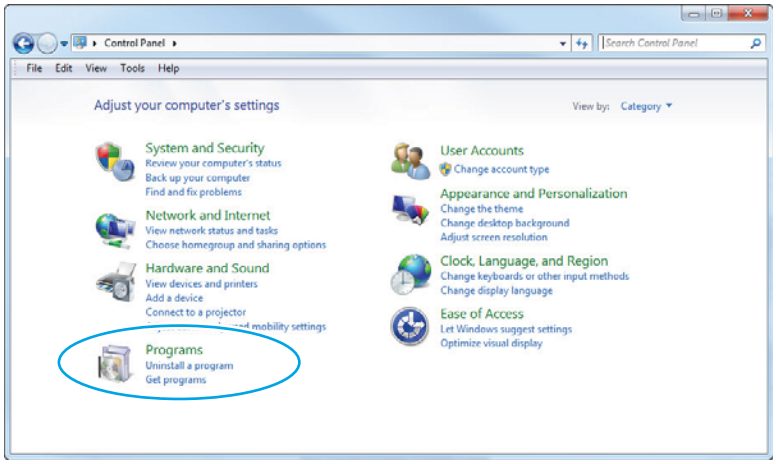
Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

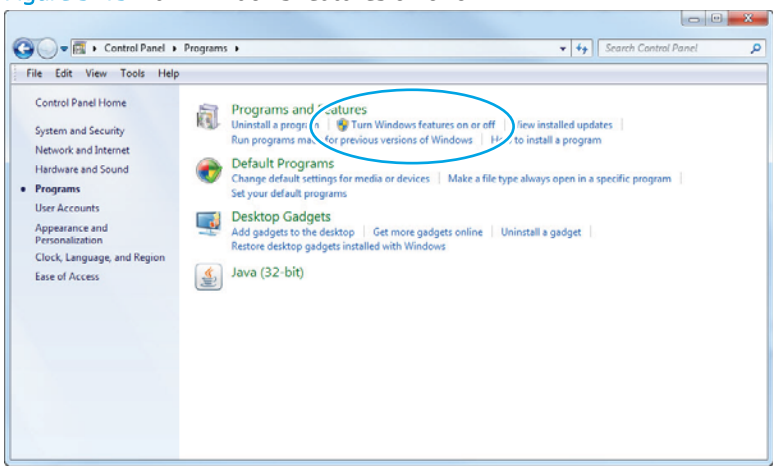
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 5-12 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

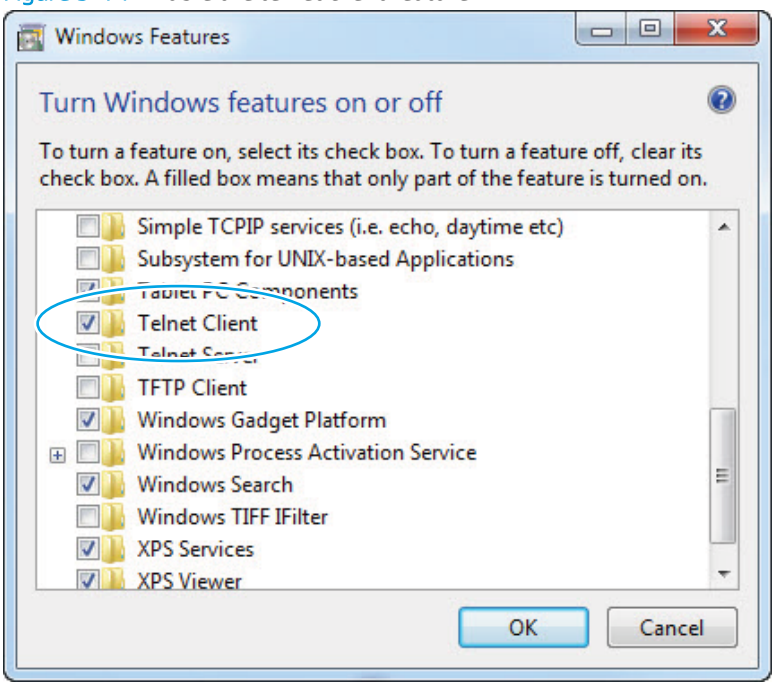
Figure 5-13 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 5-14 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Start the telnet server function at the printer

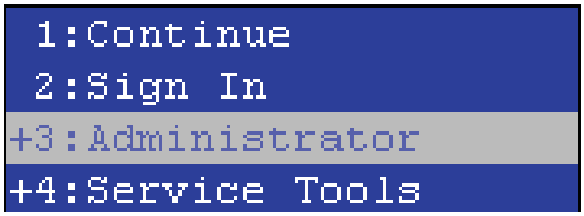
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.

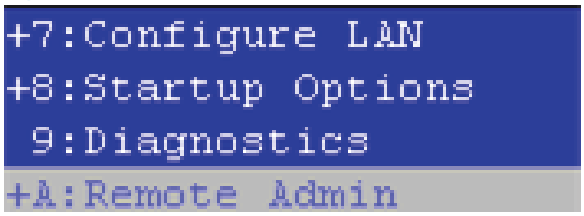
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 5-15 Select the +3:Administrator item



4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 5-16 Select the +A:Remote Admin item



5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

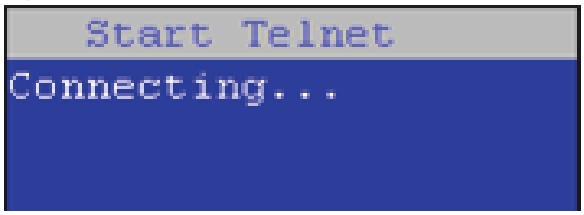
Figure 5-17 Select the 1:Start Telnet item



6. Do one of the following

- If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step 7.

  Figure 5-18 Telnet connecting message

- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 5-19 Telnet error message



a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.

b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.

   - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
   - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.

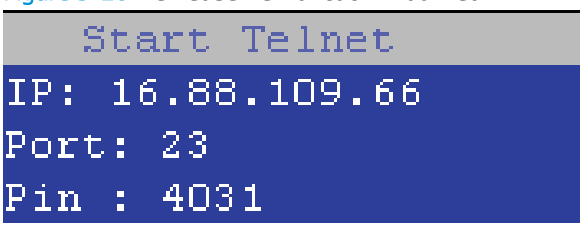
c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.

7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP**: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 5-20 Telnet server function initialized

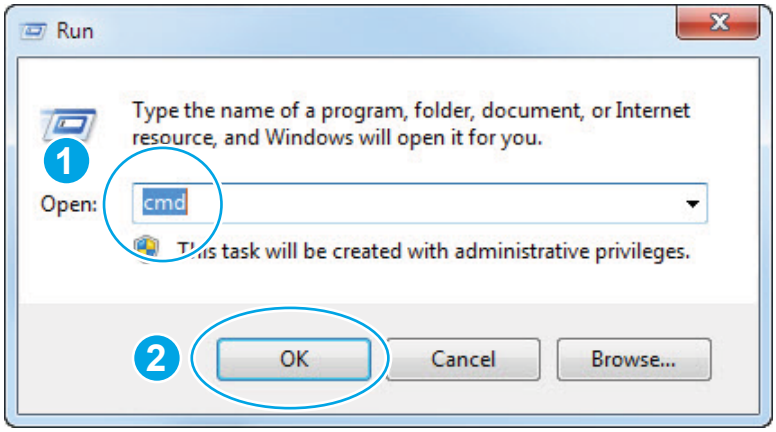


Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

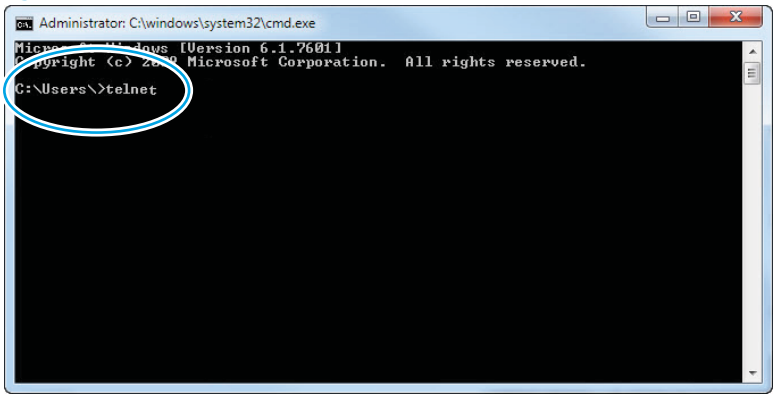
1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 5-21 Open a command window



2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-22 Start a telnet session

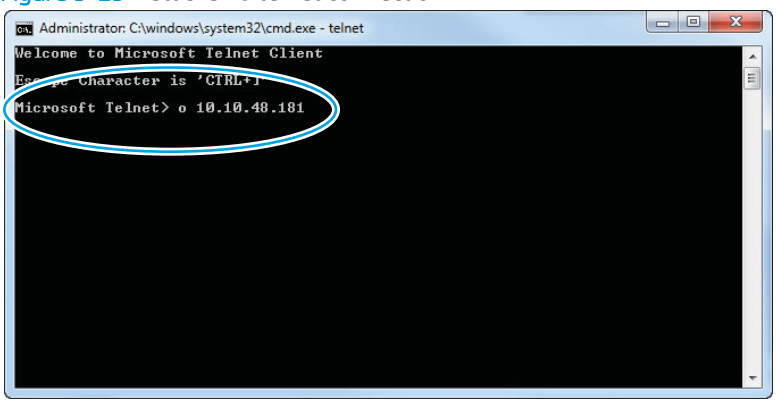


3. Type `o <IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1066.

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer. See Network connection on page 1066.

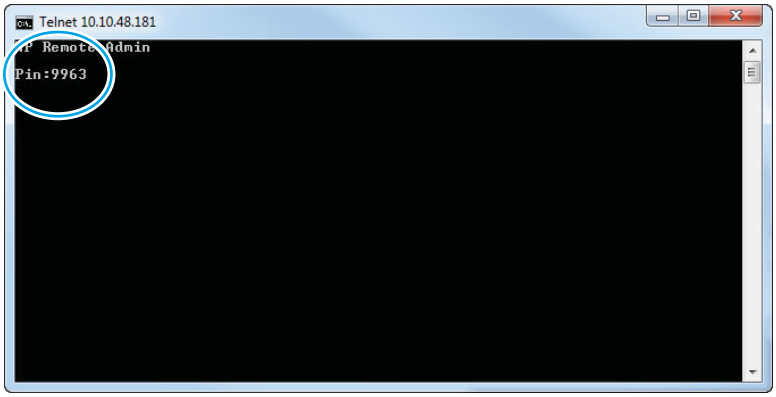
Figure 5-23 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 in Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1066 at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

IMPORTANT: Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 1066.

Figure 5-24 Enter the PIN

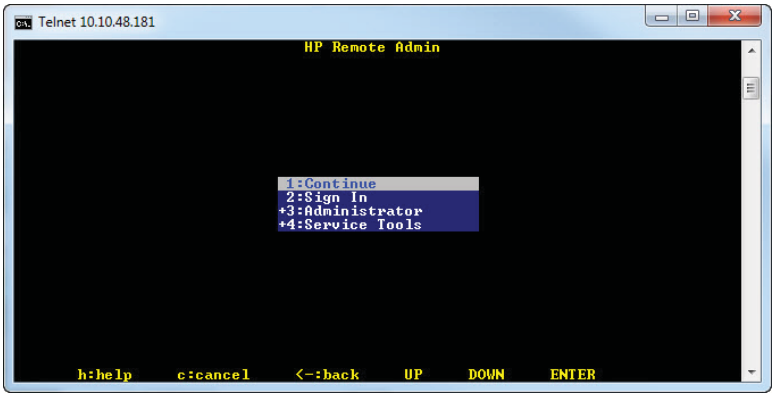


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see Pre-boot menu options on page 1055.

NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 5-25 Remote Admin window



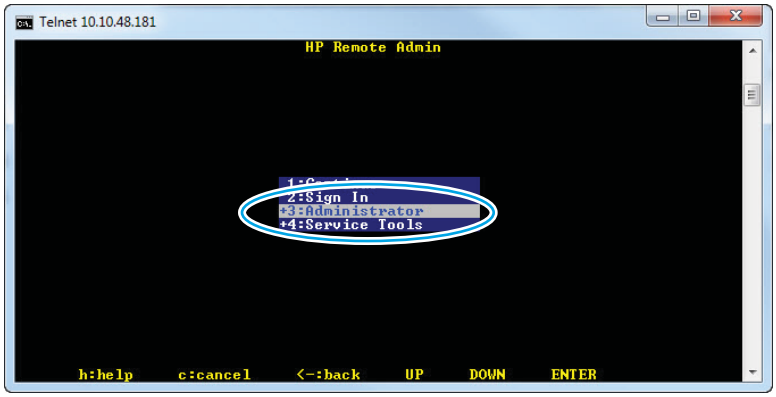
Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

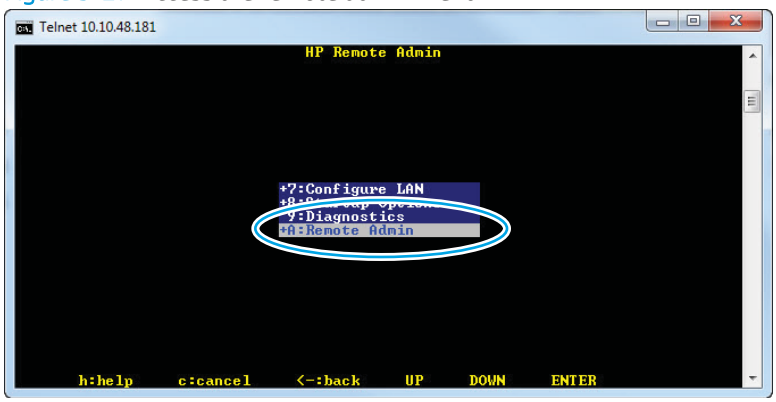
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-26 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-27 Access the remote admin menu

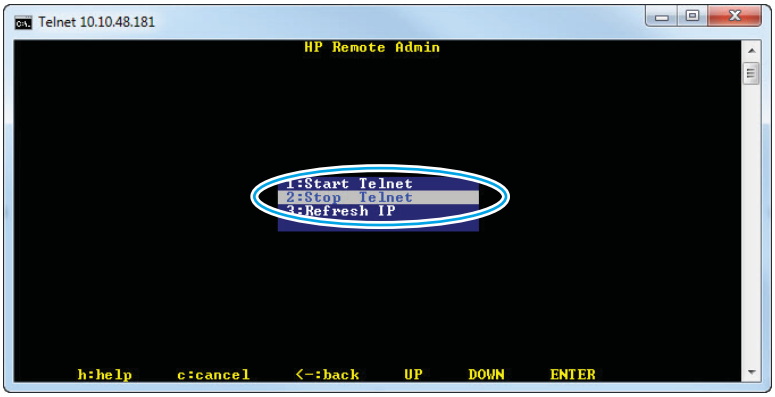


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 5-28 Terminate the telnet connection



Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

- Reports menu
- Settings menu
- Copy menu (MFP only)
- Scan menu (MFP only)
- Fax menu (fax models only)
- Print menu
- Supplies menu
- Trays menu
- Troubleshooting menu
- Maintenance menu

Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select Reports.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-8 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.

Table 5-8 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	Color Usage Job Log	Print View	Shows color jobs completed by the printer.
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Speed Dial List	Print View	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Print	Prints a demonstration page.

Table 5-8 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	RGB samples	Print	Prints color samples for different RGB values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	CMYK samples	Print	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. Use the samples as a guide for matching printed colors.
	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-9 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. **NOTE:** You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Auto Off After Sleep Sleep After Inactivity HP Auto Off/Auto On Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
			Wake/Auto On to These Events		All Events* Network port Power button only	
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Automatic* Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout M681z/M682z only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		DisplayDate and Time M681/M682 only			Show Date and Time* Hide Date and Time	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options: Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting. Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal. NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost. On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
	Restore Factory Settings				Restore Cancel	Use to restore all printer settings to their factory defaults.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Output Sides		1-sided*	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original, 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.	
				2-sided		
		Staple			None	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
					Top left	
					Top right	
					Top left or right	
		Output Bin			Automatically select	
					Standard bin	
					Upper bin	
					Middle bin	
		Resolution			FastRes1200	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
					1200x1200dpi	

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Wide A4			Enabled Disabled*	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
				Suppress Blank Pages	No* Yes	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the Yes option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range	Highlights		
				Midtones		
				Shadows		
			Cyan			
			Magenta			
			Yellow			
			Black			
		Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1		Specify tray to be adjusted
				Tray 2		
				Tray 3		
				Tray 4		
				Tray 5		
				Depends upon number of trays installed		

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizizontal Shift Back-side Vertical Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page. The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page. Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Print Test Page		Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
		Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page	
					Sense first page	
					Sense transparency ony	
			All Other Trays		Sense first page	
					Sense transparency only	
		Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types	
					Reset Paper Types	
		Optimize			Normal Paper	
					Heavy paper	
					Envelope control	
					Tray 1	
					Background	
					Background 1	
					Uniformity Control	
					Tracking Control	
					Registration	
					Transfer Control	
					Moisture Control	
					Reset Optimize	
		Edge Control			Off	
					Light	
					Normal	
					Maximum	

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty. First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available: Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray. Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available: Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message. Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
		Use Another Tray			Enabled* Disabled	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available: Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Auto* Yes	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
Scan/Digital Send	E-mail Settings Network Folder Settings SharePoint Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings **NOTE:** The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup **NOTE:** Email Settings only				Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser. Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default File Name				The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage printer and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example, [Untitled]001.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Document File Type			Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality. JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. TIFF is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. This file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XML file that preserves the original formatting of the document and supports color graphics and embedded fonts. **NOTE:** OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/ Picture			Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Output Quality			High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Original Sides			1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
			Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			2-Sided Format		Book-style Flip-style	Book-style: The back side of the original is printed right-side-up, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are bound along the left edge. Flip-style: The back side of the original is printed upside-down, and the back side of the copy is printed the same way. Use this option for originals and copies that are to be bound along the top edge.
		Resolution			400 dpi 300 dpi 200 dpi 150 dpi* 75 dpi	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
			2-Sided Format		Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Notification			Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Include Thumbnail			NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E-mail address			E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
		Image Adjustment		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
				Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
				Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
				Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
				Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Job Build			Job Build off* Job Build on	Use to combine several original documents into one job. Also use to scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate at one time. The printer temporarily saves all the scanned images. After you have scanned all the pages for the job, touch Finish to finish the job.
		Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Erase Edges			Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection			Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page Suppression			Disabled* Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Create Multiple Files			Disabled* Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup					
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			JBIG Compression		Enabled* Disabled	The JBIG compression reduces fax-transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.
			Error Correction Mode		Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.
			Fax Number Speed Dial Matching		Enabled Disabled*	Use this item to match the fax number that you type to numbers that are saved as a speed dial.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked. You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms Default = 600 ms	
			Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200 Default = 68hz	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information. Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list. To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list. To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list. You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		Enabled Disabled*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		Enabled* Disabled	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge	1-100% Default = 5%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Color Cartridges Transfer Kit Fuser Kit Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Restrict Color Use				Enable Disable Color Color if allowed*	Use this feature to enable, restrict, or disable color printing or copying.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black Mix				Auto Mostly Color Pages Mostly Black Pages	Instructs the printer when to switch between color and monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance. Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary, the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished. Mostly Color Pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages. Mostly Black Pages: The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of several monochrome pages.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Cartridge Protection				Off* Protect Cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.
Manage Stapler/ Stacker	Operation Mode				Mailbox Stacker Function Separator	
	Job Offset				On Off	
Networking	Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPIXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.
			IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp DHCP* Auto IP Manual	Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server. Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options. Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically. If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). **NOTE:** This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
			IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **xxx.xxx.xx.xx**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = **0.0.0.0**	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-9 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets. For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
			Proxy Port		Default = **00080**	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
			Idle Timeout		Default = **0270**	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

Copy menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Copy menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.
Color/Black			Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided	
	Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Select how the copy should be printed. Automatically detect: Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the printer will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color: Prints documents in color. Black: Prints documents in black and white or grayscale.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Staple		None Top left angled Top right angled	Sets the position of the staple on the page.
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2–sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2–sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.
	Reduce/Enlarge		Automatic* Manual	Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray. NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation		Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Edge-to-Edge		Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
	Erase Edges	Front Side	Use inches Apply same width to all edges Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Back Side	Use inches Mirror front side Top edge Bottom edge Left edge Right edge	

Table 5-10 Copy menu (MFP only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Collate		Collate on (Sets in page order)* Collate off (Pages grouped)	If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies. Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.
	Multi-feed Detection		Enabled* Disabled	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
	Output Bin		Automatically select Standard bin Upper bin Middle bin	

Scan menu (MFP only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Scan menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email					
Scan to Network Folder	Folder Paths				
	File Name				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture			
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	Job Name				
	Options	File Type and Resolution			

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray Black	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect: Automatically scans documents in color if at least one page has color. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten			
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Create Multiple Files		Disabled Enabled	Enable this item to scan pages into separate files based on a specified page limit. A page is one side of an original document. JPEG and TIFF have a limit of one page per file.
		Notification		Do not notify Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails Print E-mail	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification to an email account.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.
			Notification Email		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.

Table 5-11 Scan menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage				Folder	
				Job Name	
Scan to SharePoint					

Fax menu (fax models only)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Fax menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
		Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
		Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
		Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust*	Optimize For: Text Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
			Print E-mail	Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.

Table 5-12 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
		Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
		Notification E-mail address		Provide the email address that will receive notifications.
		2-Sided Format	Book-style* Flip-style	Use to configure the default style for 2-sided print jobs. If the Book-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed the right way up. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the left edge. If the Flip-style option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Print menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-13 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	Stored Job to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Supplies menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-14 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		
Black Cartridge	Status	
Cyan Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Magenta Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Yellow Cartridge	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Toner Collection Unit	Status	
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		
Document Feeder Kit		
Stapler 1		

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Trays menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-15 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2–x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Troubleshooting menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	• Settings Menu Map • Current Settings Page • Configuration Page • How to Connect Page • Supplies Status Page • sage Page • File Directory Page • Web Services Status Page • Color Usage Job Log				Select the configuration/Status reports to review, and then touch the Print or View button.
Reports					
Other Pages	• Demonstration Page • RGB Samples • CMYK Samples • PCL Font List • PS Font List				
Event Log				Print	Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				View Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax (Fax is optional)	Fax T.30 Trace	Print T.30 Report		Print	Use to print or configure the fax T.30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.
		When to Print Report		Never automatically print* Print after every fax Print only after fax send jobs Print after any fax error Print only after fax send errors Print only after fax receive errors	Configure the T.30 report to print after certain events. You can choose to print the report after every fax job, every fax job sent, every fax job received, every send error, or every receive error.
	Fax V.34			Normal* Off	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require it.
	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal* Diagnostic	Used by a technician to evaluate and diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
	Fax Log Entries			On Off*	The standard fax log includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax was successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate results of the redial process not shown in the standard fax log.
Print Quality Pages	Print Fuser Test Page			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Diagnostic Tests					
	Continuous Scan			2-sided	

Table 5-16 Troubleshooting (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Run Fax Test			Start	Use this menu to perform a test on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Insert a US drive into the USB port. The exported data might contain personally identifiable information.	Create files that contain information about the product that can help identify the cause of problems.
Generate Debug Data				Start	

Maintenance menu

Backup/Restore menu

To display: At the product control panel, select Support Tools and then Maintenance, and then select the Backup/Restore menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-17 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Backup Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time	
		Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days	
	Backup Now			
	Export Last Backup			
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.	

Calibration/Cleaning menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **Calibrate/Cleaning** menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-18 Calibrate/Cleaning menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration/Cleaning Page		Print	Use to process the cleaning page that was created by using the Create Cleaning Page menu. The process takes up to 1.5 minutes.
Color Calibrations (color models)		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a partial calibration. Use this calibration if color density or tone seems incorrect. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.

Table 5-18 Calibrate/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Calibration		Start	The product automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, you can calibrate the product immediately if you see problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page. Before calibrating the product, make sure that the **Ready** indicator displays on the control-panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Delay Calibration at Wake/Power On		No Delay Delay 15 minutes	Controls the timing of power-on calibration when the product wakes up or is turned on. Wake: Select if you are not using the feature and want to print jobs immediately when the product wakes up or is turned on, before calibration begins. No: The product will calibrate immediately when it wakes up or is turned on. The product will not print any jobs until it finishes calibrating. Yes: Enables the product that is asleep to accept print jobs before it calibrates. It might start calibrating before it has printed all the jobs it has received. This option allows quicker printing when coming out of sleep mode or when you turn the product on, but print quality might be reduced. **NOTE:** For the best results, allow the product to calibrate before printing. Print jobs performed before calibration might not be of the highest quality.

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

To display: At the product control panel, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the **USB Firmware Upgrade** menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Clear paper jams

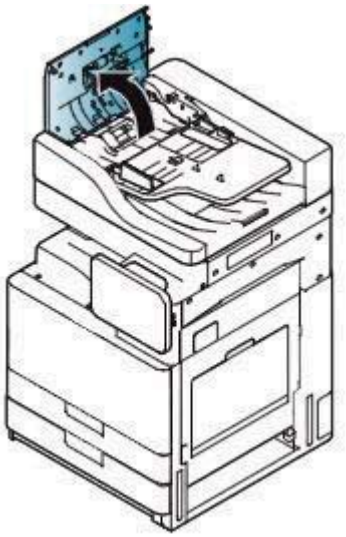
Clearing original document jams

When an original becomes jammed while passing through the Flow ADF, an error message displays on the control panel.

Original jam in front of scanner

1. Remove any remaining paper from the Flow ADF.
2. Open the Flow ADF cover.

Figure 5-29 Open the Flow ADF cover

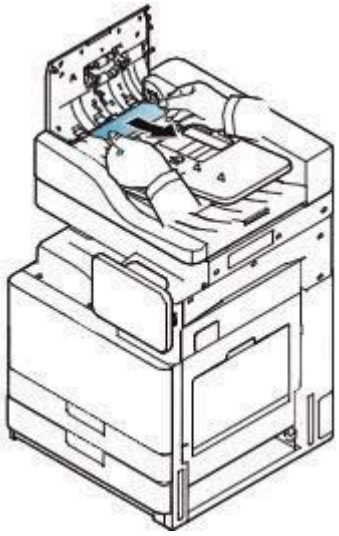


CAUTION: To avoid tearing the document, remove the jammed original slowly and gently.

NOTE: To prevent document jams, use the scanner glass for thick, thin, or mixed paper-type originals.

3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the Flow ADF.

Figure 5-30 Remove jam from the Flow ADF

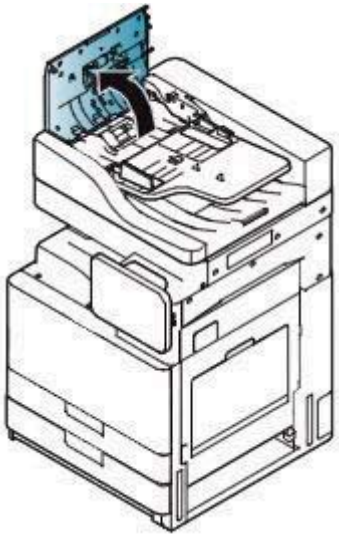


4. Close the Flow ADF cover.

Original jam inside of scanner

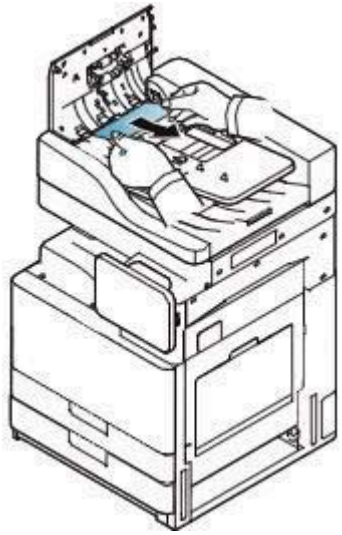
1. Remove any remaining paper from the Flow ADF.
2. Open the Flow ADF cover.

Figure 5-31 Open the Flow ADF cover



3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the Flow ADF.

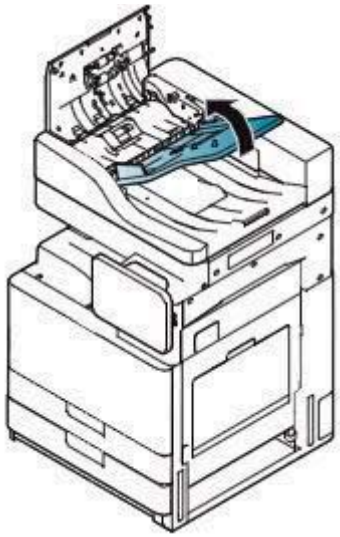
Figure 5-32 Remove jam from the Flow ADF



If there is no paper in this area, go to step 4.

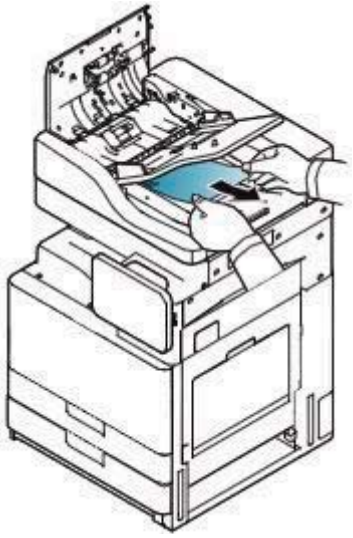
4. Open the input tray.

Figure 5-33 Open input tray



5. Pull the jammed paper gently out of the Flow ADF.

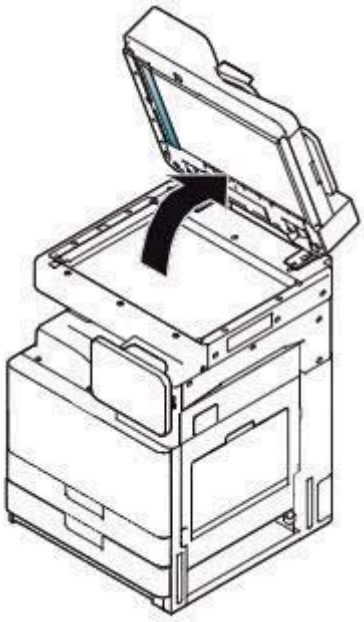
Figure 5-34 Remove jam from the Flow ADF



If there is no paper in this area, go to step 6.

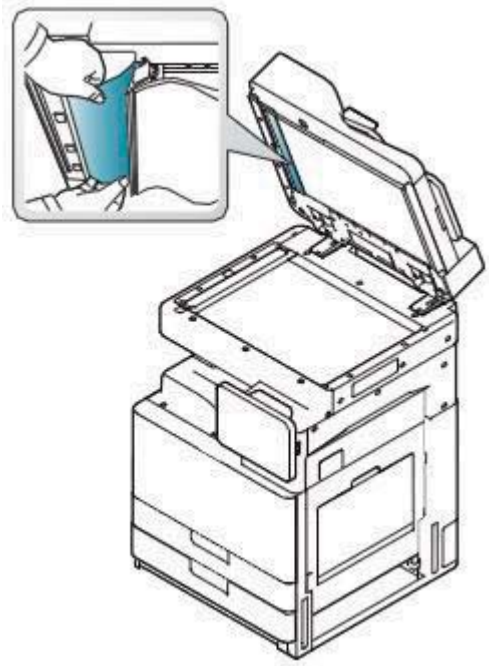
6. Close the Flow ADF cover and the Flow ADF input tray.
7. Open the Flow ADF.

Figure 5-35 Open the Flow ADF



8. Grasp the jammed paper and remove it from the feed area by pulling it with both hands.

Figure 5-36 Remove jam from the feed area



9. Close the Flow ADF.

Clearing paper jams

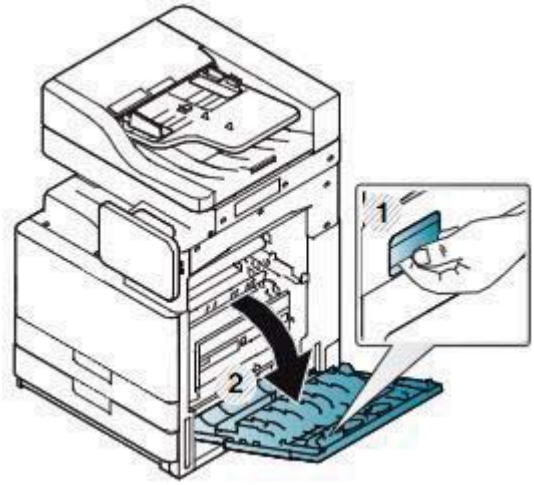
When a paper jam occurs, an error message displays on the control panel.

Paper jam in Tray 2 or 3

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the printer.

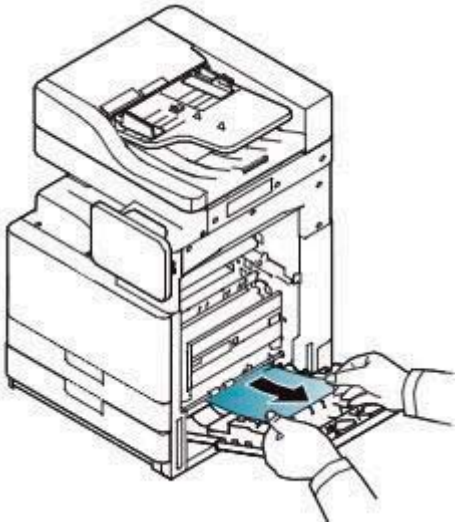
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-37 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-38 Remove jam

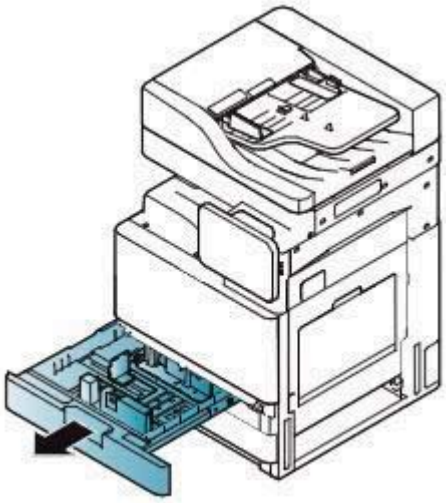


Close the right door. If there is no paper in this area, go to step 3.

NOTE: To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently. The following steps describe how to clear the jam.

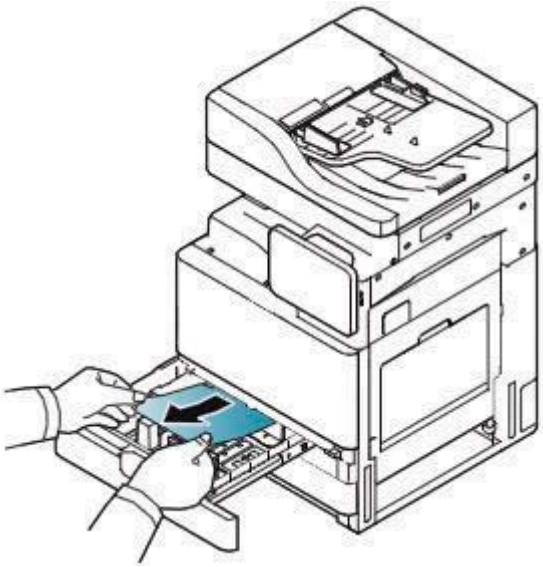
3. Remove Tray 2 or 3.

Figure 5-39 Remove tray



4. Remove the jammed paper from the printer.

Figure 5-40 Remove jam

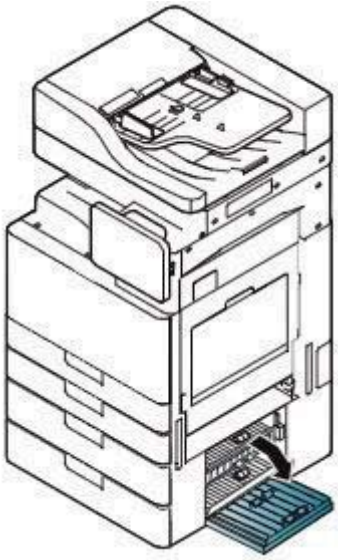


5. Insert Tray 2 or 3 back into the machine until it is firmly seated. Printing automatically resumes.

Paper jam in Tray 4 or 5

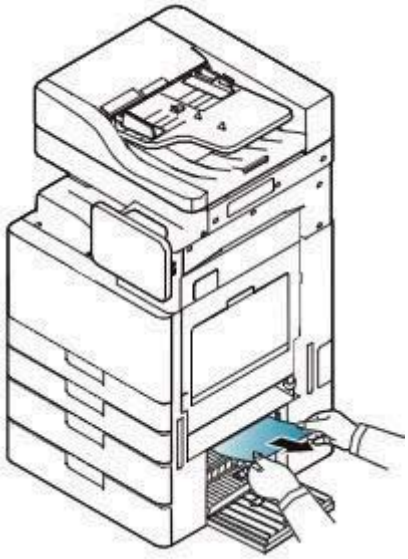
1. Open the right bottom door of the dual cassette feeder.

Figure 5-41 Open bottom right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-42 Remove jam



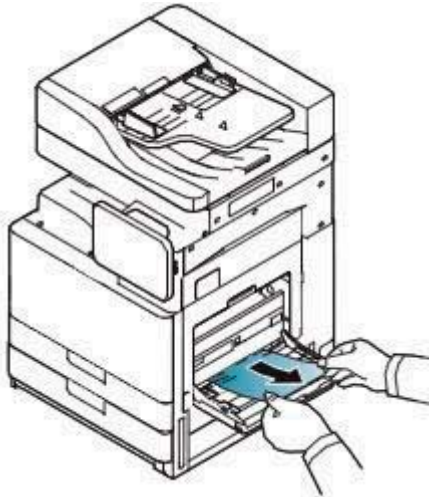
Close the dual cassette feeder right bottom door. If there is no paper in this area, go to step 3.

3. Remove Tray 4 or 5.
4. Remove the jammed paper from the printer.
5. Insert Tray 4 or 5 back into the machine until it is firmly seated. Printing automatically resumes.

Paper jam in the Tray 1

1. If the paper is not feeding properly, pull the paper out of the machine.

Figure 5-43 Remove paper



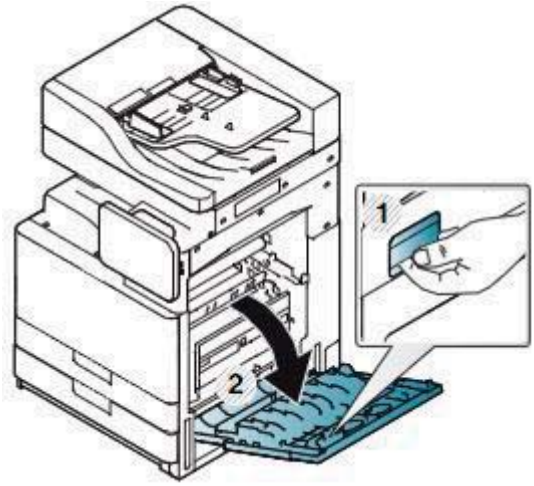
2. Open and close the front door to resume printing.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam feed 1, jam feed 2)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

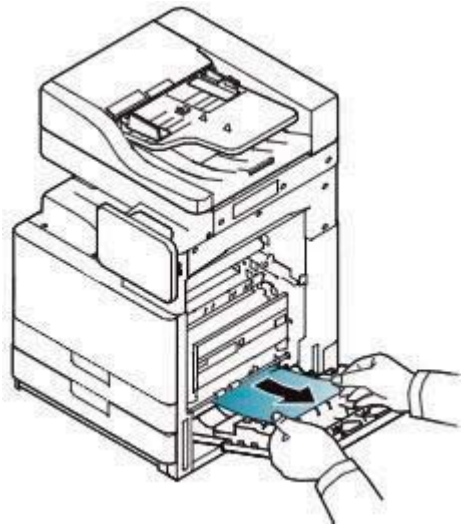
1. Open the right door.

   Figure 5-44 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

   Figure 5-45 Remove jam

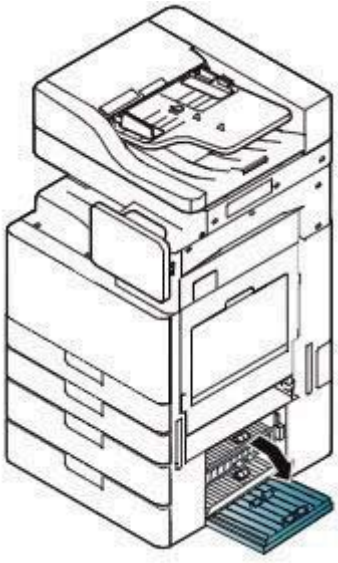


3. Close the right door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam feed 3, jam feed 4)

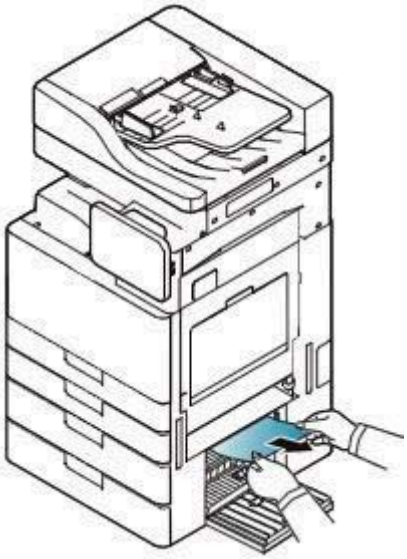
1. Open the bottom right door of the dual cassette feeder.

Figure 5-46 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-47 Remove jam



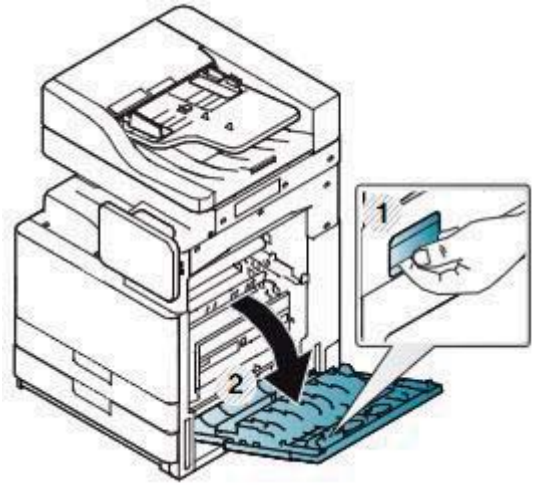
3. Close the dual cassette feeder right bottom door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam registration)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

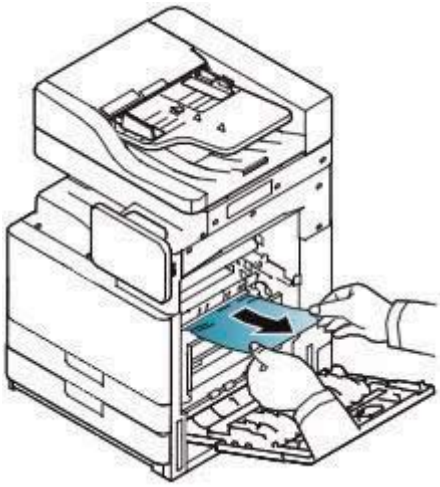
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-48 Open right door



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-49 Remove jam



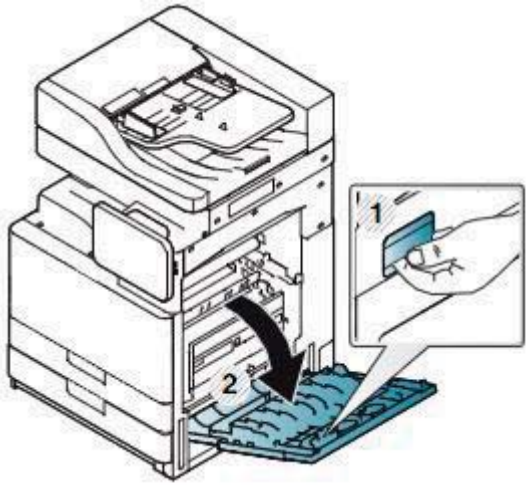
3. Close the right door.

Paper jam inside the printer (jam at fuser out)

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser area is hot. Use caution when removing paper from the machine.

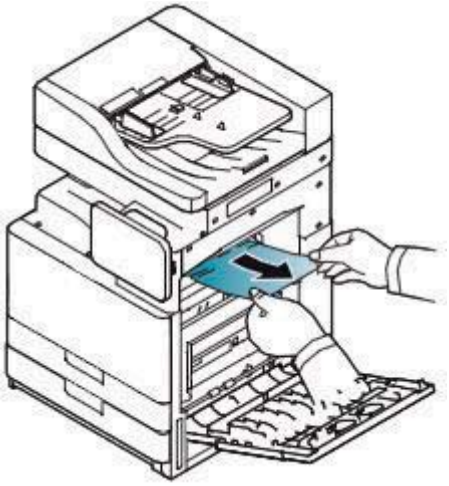
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-50 Open right door



2. Open the fuser cover. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

Figure 5-51 Remove jam

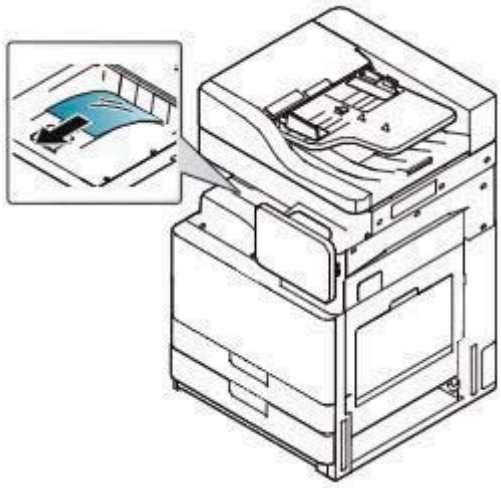


3. Close the fuser cover and the right door.

Paper jam in output area (jam output face down)

1. Gently pull the paper out of the output tray.

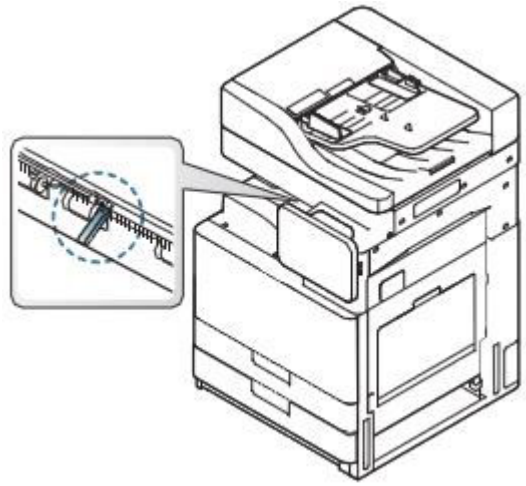
Figure 5-52 Remove paper



2. Open and close the front door. Printing automatically resumes.

   If the paper jam persists, make sure the bin full sensor is unfolded. The bin full sensor is located in front of the output tray.

   Figure 5-53 Bin full sensor



Service mode (tech mode)

Entering service mode

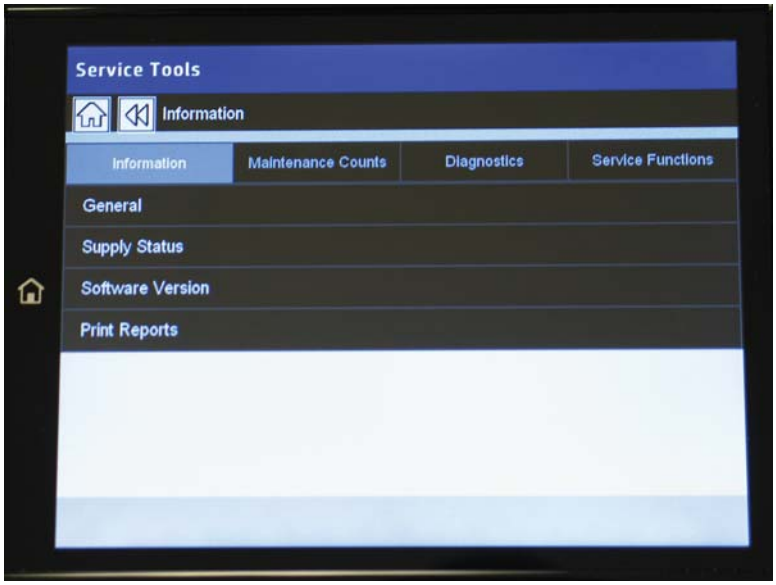
To enter service mode

1. From the control panel, select **Support tools** and then **Service**.
2. Enter the Service PIN ID.

   ▲ ID: 04087617

3. Select **Service tools**.

   Figure 5-54 Service tools view



Service mode menu tree

Figure 5-55 Information

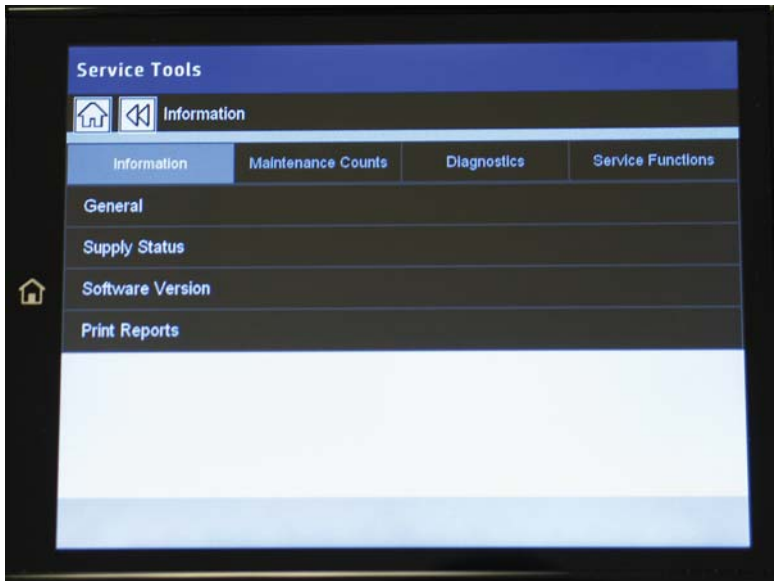


Table 5-19 Information

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Information	General	Engine Board Serial Number	
	Supply Status	Customer Replacement Unit	Toner (CMYK)
		Field Replacement Unit	Imaging Unit (CMYK)
			Development Unit (CMYK)
			TCU
			ITB
			ITB cleaner
			Transfer roller/T2 roller
			Fuser
			Tray x rollers
			Flow ADF Roller
	Software Version	System Firmware Version	
		Main Firmware Version	
		Engine Firmware Version	
		Boot ROM Version	
		File System Version	
		Flow ADF Firmware Version	

Table 5-19 Information (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	
		Finisher Version		
		Scanner Version		
		Scan Control Version		
		Tray 2 Version		
		Tray 3 Version		
		Tray 4 Version		
		Tray 5 Version		
		Tray 6 Version		
		EP Version		
		Fuser Version		
		TR Version		
		Toner Version		
		Print CMS Version		
		Copy CMS Version		
		Scan CMS Version		
	Print Reports	Supplies Information		
		Full Color Plane Registration		
		Color Plane Registration		

Figure 5-56 Maintenance counts

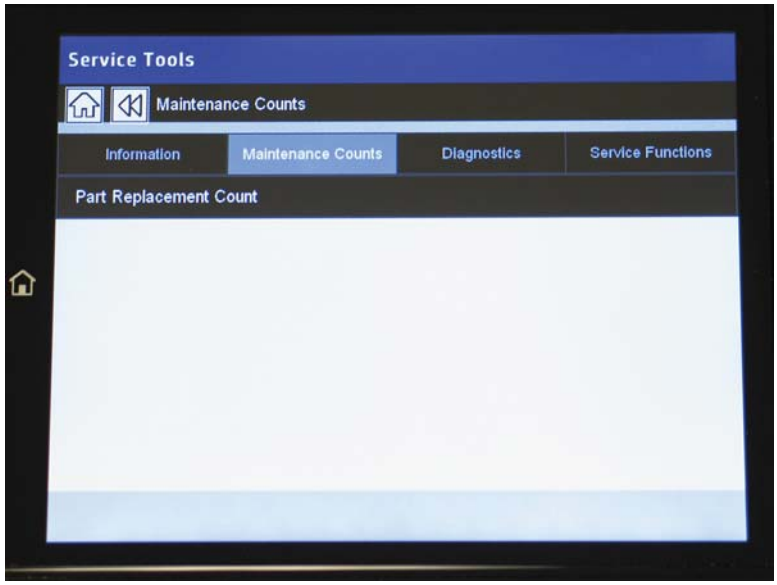


Table 5-20 Maintenance counts

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Maintenance counts	Part Replacement Count	Toner Cartridge (CMKY)	
		Imaging Unit (CMKY)	
		Development Unit (CMKY)	
		Transfer roller/T2 roller	
		Image Transfer Belt (ITB)	
		ITB cleaner	
		Fuser	
		Tray x rollers	
		Flow ADF Pickup Roller	

Figure 5-57 Diagnostics

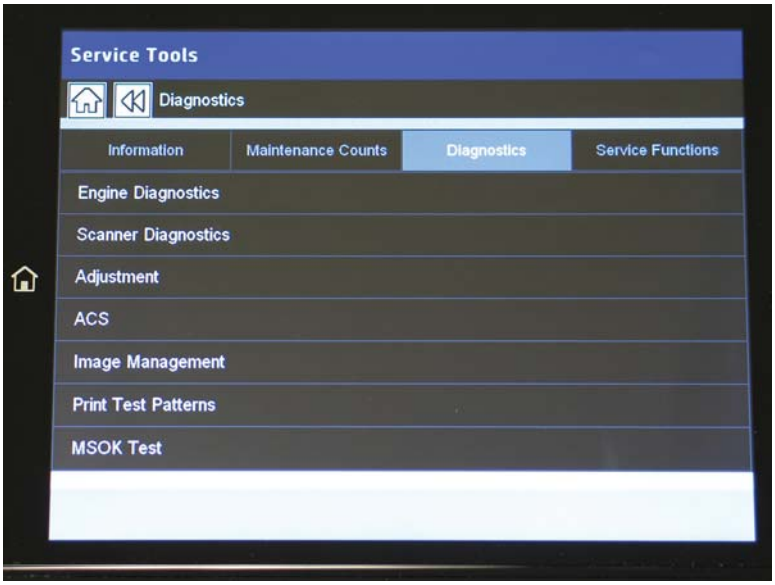


Table 5-21 Diagnostics

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Diagnostics	Engine Diagnostics	Engine NVM Initialization	
		Engine NVM Read/Write	
		Engine Test Routines	
	Scanner Diagnostics	Shading Test	Shade and Print Report
			Print Last Shade Report
			Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF)
			Print Last Shade Report (Flow ADF)
		Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write	
		Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines	
	Adjustment	Print Adjustment	Image Position
			Print Test Patterns
		Copy Adjustment	Image Position
		Scan Area Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
		Flow ADF Adjustment	Automatic Adjustment
			Manual Adjustment
	ACS	ACS Level Adjustment	[1–5]: 3*
		ACS Page Adjustment	[1–5]: 5*

Table 5-21 Diagnostics (continued)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
	Image Management	Auto Tone Adjustment Activation	Normal
			Full
		Auto Tone Adjustment	Normal
			Full
	Print Test Patterns		

Figure 5-58 Service functions



Table 5-22 Service functions

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Service Functions	Main Memory Clear		
	Debug Log	Job Status	
		Details	
	Capture Log	All	
		Period	Start Date/End Date
	Transfer Assembly Control Mode	Transfer Assembly Control Mode	Process Speed/Paper for Driver/T1 PWM
		T2 Control Mode	Paper Group/Paper Side/ Paper Direction/T2 PWM
	Envelope Rotate	Off	
		90 degrees	
		180 degrees	

Information

General

Information > General

This menu displays the following information:

- Machine serial number

Supply status

Customer replacement unit (CRU)

Information > Supply Status > Customer Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's customer replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

Field replacement unit (FRU)

Information > Supply Status > Field Replacement Unit

- This menu displays the printer's field replacement unit status. Users can select one item in the list to check the information of the selected unit.

In this menu, there are five columns: Item, Threshold, Status, Count, and Maximum Life.

- Status: This column shows the current status of the selected item.
  - OK: The current count is smaller than the default warning value.
  - Check: The current count is bigger than the default warning value.
  - OFF: The current count exceeds the maximum life.
- Count: This column shows the current count of the selected item.
- Maximum Life: This column shows the maximum capacity of the selected item.

The technician can edit the default warning value within the given threshold.

Selecting some items will enable the reset button to reset the current count to zero after replacing the unit.

Software version

Information > Software Version

- This menu displays the version of the software installed on the printer.

Print reports

Information > Print Reports

This menu displays reports that can be printed from the system. The following reports are available to print:

- Supplies Information
- Auto Toning History
- Full Color Plane Registration

Information > Print Reports > Auto Toning History

NOTE: TRC means Tone Reproduction Curve.

This report shows a history of execution of the TRC control. The TRC control preserves color consistency against changes in supplies resulting from long-time use and environmental change. The purpose of the history report is to check if the TRC control is working normally.

- If the TRC control performs normally, **Pass** count must be a non-zero value and **Fail** count must be zero.
- If **Fail** count is not zero, check the image density sensor.

Maintenance counts

Part replacement count

Maintenance Counts > Part Replacement Count

- This menu displays the replacement counts for the system parts. Users can select one group and press **OK** to see the exact name of the part and the occurrence of the replacement.

  The following table shows replaceable parts groups of the system:

Unit	Item	Sensing Method
Toner Cartridge	Toner (C)	Auto Sensing
	Toner (M)	Auto Sensing
	Toner (Y)	Auto Sensing
	Toner (K)	Auto Sensing
Imaging Unit	Imaging Unit (C)	Auto Sensing
	Imaging Unit (M)	Auto Sensing
	Imaging Unit (Y)	Auto Sensing
	Imaging Unit (K)	Auto Sensing
Fuser	Fuser	Auto Sensing
Transfer	Transfer Roller	Count Clear
Roller	Tray 2 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 3 Roller	Count Clear
	Tray 4 Roller	Count Clear

Unit	Item	Sensing Method
	Tray 5 Roller	Count Clear
Flow ADF Roller	Flow ADF Roller	Count Clear

Diagnostics

Engine diagnostics

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Initialization

- This menu initializes all engine NVM values to the default.

Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To change a configuration value for the engine firmware.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also input a code through the text box to find a configuration value directly. After selecting one value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
112–0120	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Yellow	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for yellow	100	200/0
112–0130	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Magenta	Distant from hsync to lsync (multi-hsync) for magenta	100	200/0
112–0140	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Cyan	Distant from hysnc to lysync (multi-hysync) for cyan	100	200/0
112–0150	Manual Color Registration X-Offset Black	Distant from hysnc to lysync (multi-hysync) for black	100	200/0
112–0160	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Yellow	Distant from psync to image area for yellow	200	400/0
112–0170	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Magenta	Distant from psync to image area for magenta	200	400/0
112–0180	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Cyan	Distant from psync to image area for cyan	200	400/0
112–0190	Manual Color Registration Y-Offset Black	Distant from psync to image area for black	200	400/0
112–0240	Manual Color Registration Left Width Yellow	Image area left width for yellow	500	1000/0
112–0250	Manual Color Registration Right Width Yellow	Image area right width for yellow	500	1000/0
112–0260	Manual Color Registration Left Width Magenta	Image area left width for magenta	500	1000/0

Code	Display	Meaning	Default	Max/Min
112–0270	Manual Color Registration Right Width Magenta	Image area right width for magenta	500	1000/0
112–0280	Manual Color Registration Left Width Cyan	Image area left width for cyan	500	1000/0
112–0290	Manual Color Registration Right Width Cyan	Image area right width for cyan	500	1000/0
112–0300	Manual Color Registration Left Width Black	Image area left width for black	500	1000/0
112–0310	Manual Color Registration Right Width Black	Image area right width for black	500	1000/0
112–0320	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Yellow	Laser scanner assembly skew for yellow	200	400/0
112–0330	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Magenta	Laser scanner assembly skew for magenta	200	400/0
112–0340	Color Registration Laser Scanner Assembly Skew Cyan	Laser scanner assembly skew for cyan	200	400/0

Engine test routines

- Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the engine
Operation procedure	When the main Engine Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can directly input an EDC code through the text box to search for a routine. A maximum of three routines can be selected at the same time. After selecting one or more routines, press the **OK** button to open the test window. The selected routines will display and users can start/start the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Display	Meaning
100–0041	OPC Motor Y	Yellow OPC BLDC motor is on/off
100-0042	OPC Motor M	Magenta OPC BLDC motor is on/off
100-0043	OPC Motor C	Cyan OPC BLDC motor is on/off
100-0044	OPC Motor K	Black OPC BLDC motor is on/off
100-0046	Y OPC Motor Ready	Detect if yellow OPC BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0047	M OPC Motor Ready	Detect if magenta OPC BLDC motor runs at normal speed

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0048	C OPC Motor Ready	Detect if cyan OPC BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0049	K OPC Motor Ready	Detect if black OPC BLDC motor runs at normal speed
100-0080	Transfer Assembly Engage Motor	Transfer assembly engage motor on/off
100-0090	Transfer Assembly Engage Sensor	Detects if the transfer assembly engage is on or off
100-0140	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex motor forward on/off
100-0141	Duplex Motor Forward Slow	Duplex motor forward slow on/off
100-0142	Duplex Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex motor forward slowest on/off
100-0160	Duplex Fan 1 Run	Start/stop duplex fan 1 run
100-0180	Duplex Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if duplex fan 1 runs at normal speed.
100-0200	Transfer Assembly Elevating Motor	Transfer assembly elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0210	Tray 3 Elevating Motor	Tray 3 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0220	Tray 4 Elevating Motor	Tray 4 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0230	Tray 5 Elevating Motor	Tray 5 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0231	Tray 6 Elevating Motor	Tray 6 elevate motor on/off (optional)
100-0240	TCU Motor	TCU motor on/off
100-0241	TCU LED	TCU LED on/off
100-0250	TCU Full Sensor	Detects if the TCU is full
100-0260	LVPS Fan Run	Start/stop LVPS fan run
100-0270	LVPS Fan Run Ready	Detects if LVPS fan runs at normal speed
100-0340	Feed Motor	Feed motor is on/off
100-0341	Feed Motor Slow	Feed motor slow is on/off
100-0342	Feed Motor Slowest	Feed motor slowest is on/off
100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor	Tray 2 motor is on/off
100-0371	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 2 motor slow is on/off
100-0372	Tray 2 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 2 motor slowest is on/off
100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor	Tray 3 motor is on/off
100-0381	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 3 motor slow is on/off
100-0382	Tray 3 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 3 motor slowest is on/off
100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor	Tray 4 motor is on/off
100-0391	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 4 motor slow is on/off
100-0392	Tray 4 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 4 motor slowest is on/off
100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor	Tray 5 motor is on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
100-0401	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 5 motor slow is on/off
100-0402	Tray 5 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 5 motor slowest is on/off
100-0410	Registration Motor	Registration motor is on/off
100-0411	Registration Motor Slow	Registration motor slow is on/off
100-0412	Registration Motor Slowest	Registration motor slowest is on/off
100-0420	Tray 1 Motor	Tray 1 Motor is on/off
100-0421	Tray 1 Motor Slow	Tray 1 motor slow is on/off
100-0422	Tray 1 Motor Slowest	Tray 1 motor slowest is on/off
100-0430	Output 2 Motor Forward	Output 2 motor is on/off
100-0431	Output 2 Motor Forward Slow	Output 2 motor slow is on/off
100-0432	Output 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Output 2 motor slowest is on/off
100-0490	Duplex 2 Motor Forward	Duplex 2 motor forward is on/off
100-0491	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slow	Duplex 2 motor forward slow is on/off
100-0492	Duplex 2 Motor Forward Slowest	Duplex 2 motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0600	Return Motor Forward	Return motor forward is on/off
100-0601	Return Motor Forward Slow	Return motor forward slow is on/off
100-0602	Return Motor Forward Slowest	Return motor forward slowest is on/off
100-0603	Return Motor Reverse	Return motor reverse is on/off
100-0604	Return Motor Reverse Slow	Return motor reverse slow is on/off
100-0605	Return Motor Reverse Slowest	Return motor reverse slowest is on/off
100-0700	Tray 6 Pickup Motor	Tray 6 motor is on/off
100-0701	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slow	Tray 6 motor slow is on/off
100-0702	Tray 6 Pickup Motor Slowest	Tray 6 motor slowest is on/off
101-0101	Tray 4 Shift Gate Solenoid	Tray 4 shift gate solenoid on/off
101-0140	Tray 4 Feed Motor	Tray 4 feed motor on/off
101-0150	Tray 5 Feed Motor	Tray 5 feed motor on/off
101-0151	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 5 feed motor slow on/off
101-0152	Tray 5 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 5 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0160	Tray 6 Feed Motor	Tray 6 feed motor slow on/off
101-0161	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slow	Tray 6 feed motor slow on/off
101-0162	Tray 6 Feed Motor Slowest	Tray 6 feed motor slowest on/off
101-0190	Output Bin Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin full sensor
101-0191	Output Bin 2 Full Sensor	Detects when paper is at output bin 2 full sensor
101-0206	Developer Suction Fan Run	Start/stop developer fan run

Code	Display	Meaning
101-0207	Developer Suction Fan Run Ready	Detects if developer suction fan runs at normal speed
101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Tray 1 clutch is on/off
101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Tray 1 solenoid is on/off
101-0280	Reverse Solenoid	Reverse solenoid is on/off
102-0000	Tray 2 Home Position	Detects when Tray 2 is closed
102-0001	Tray 2 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 2 lock unit
102-0002	Tray 2 Lock Position	Check Tray 2 lock position
102-0010	Transfer Assembly Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 2
102-0041	Transfer Assembly Paper Size Read	Detects paper size in Tray 2
102-0050	Transfer Assembly Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 2 is elevated to the sensor
102-0070	Tray 3 Home Position	Detects when Tray 3 is closed
102-0071	Tray 3 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 3 lock unit
102-0072	Tray 3 Lock Position	Check Tray 3 lock position
102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 3
102-0111	Tray 3 Size 3 sensor	Detects paper size in Tray 3
102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 3 is elevated to the sensor
102-0140	Tray 4 Home Position	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0141	Tray 4 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 4 lock unit
102-0142	Tray 4 Lock Position	Check Tray 4 lock position
102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4
102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Read	Detects paper size in Tray 4
102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 4 is elevated to the sensor
102-0201	Tray 4 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 is elevated to sensor 1
102-0202	Tray 4 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 is elevated to sensor 2
102-0210	Tray 5 Home Position	Detect when Tray 5 is closed.
102-0211	Tray 5 Lock Detect	Detect Tray 5 lock unit
102-0212	Tray 5 Lock Position	Check Tray 5 lock position
102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 5
102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Read	Detects paper size in Tray 5
102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 5 is elevated to the sensor
102-0271	Tray 5 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 is elevated to sensor 1

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0272	Tray 5 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 5 is elevated to sensor 2
102-0273	Tray 5 Install Sensor 1	Detects when Tray 5 install sensor 1
102-0274	Tray 5 Install Sensor 2	Detects when Tray 5 install sensor 2
102-0280	Bypass Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Bypass Tray (Tray 1)
102-0281	Bypass Paper Size Read	Detects paper Tray 1 size
102-0292	Prefeed 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the prefeed 2 sensor
102-0300	Tray 3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 3 feed sensor (optional)
102-0301	Prefeed 3 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the prefeed 3 sensor
102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detects when paper is at Tray 4 feed sensor (optional)
102-0321	Prefeed 4 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the prefeed 4 sensor
102-0330	Tray 4 Door Open Sensor	Detects when Tray 4 is closed
102-0343	Prefeed 5 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the prefeed 5 sensor
102-0350	Tray 5 Door Open Sensor	Detects when Tray 5 is closed
102-0351	Tray 6 Door Open Sensor	Detects when Tray 6 is closed
102-0353	Prefeed 6 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the prefeed 6 sensor (optional)
102-0360	Registration Sensor	Detects when paper is at the registration sensor
102-0361	Fuser Out Sensor	Detects when paper is at the fuser out sensor
102-0371	Output 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at the output 2 sensor.
102-0380	Duplex Jam 1 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 1 sensor.
102-0390	Duplex Jam 2 Sensor	Detects when paper is at duplex jam 2 sensor.
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Detects status of front cover
102-0436	Right Door Sensor	Detects status of right door
102-0480	Tray 6 Paper Empty Sensor	Detects when paper is in Tray 6
102-0520	Tray 6 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in Tray 6 is elevated to the sensor
102-0531	Tray 6 Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 is elevated to sensor 1
102-0532	Tray 6 Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 6 is elevated to sensor 2
102-0533	Tray 6 Install Sensor 1	Detects when Tray 6 install sensor 1
102-0534	Tray 6 Install Sensor 2	Detects when Tray 6 install sensor 2
102-0730	Tray 4 Knock Up Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 knock up home sensor
102-0731	Tray 4 Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray 4 shift tray

Code	Display	Meaning
102-0732	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 1	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 1
102-0733	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor 2	Detects when the stack height of Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 2
102-0734	Tray 4 Shift Plate Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate home sensor
102-0735	Tray 4 Shift Plate End Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 shift plate end sensor
102-0736	Tray 4 Gate Solenoid Home Sensor	Detect when Tray 4 gate solenoid home sensor
104-0000	Waste Install Sensor	Detects if waste is installed
105-0000	Yellow MHV Bias	Yellow MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0010	Magenta MHV Bias	Magenta MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0020	Cyan MHV Bias	Cyan MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0030	Black MHV Bias	Black MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level
105-0070	Black MHV Bias Read	Detects what the black MHV value is on the MHV roller
106-0000	Yellow Developer Bias	Yellow developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0010	Magenta Developer Bias	Magenta developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0020	Cyan Developer Bias	Cyan developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0030	Black Developer Bias	Black developer bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0031	Black Developer AC Bias	Black developer AC bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0032	Cyan Developer AC Bias	Cyan developer AC bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0033	Magenta Developer AC Bias	Magenta developer AC bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0034	Yellow Developer AC Bias	Yellow developer AC bias voltage on at normal drive level
106-0200	HVPS Installed	Detect HVPS unit
107-0033	THV(-) Bias	THV minus bias voltage on at normal drive level
107-0034	THV CC Bias	THV constant current plus bias voltage
107-0035	THV CV Bias	THV constant voltage plus bias voltage
107-0162	Y Eraser On	Y eraser lamp on/off
107-0163	M Eraser On	M eraser lamp on/off
107-0164	C Eraser On	C eraser lamp on/off
107-0165	K Eraser On	K eraser lamp on/off
107-0166	Y Eraser Detect	Detect Y eraser status

Code	Display	Meaning
107-0167	M Eraser Detect	Detect M eraser status
107-0168	C Eraser Detect	Detect C eraser status
107-0169	K Eraser Detect	Detect K eraser status
107-0201	ITHV Yellow Bias	Transfer assembly yellow bias on/off
107-0202	ITHV Magenta Bias	Transfer assembly magenta bias on/off
107-0203	ITHV Cyan Bias	Transfer assembly cyan bias on/off
107-0204	ITHV Black Bias	Transfer assembly black bias on/off
109-0000	Fuser Temperature A	Detects what the temperature A is on the fuser
109-0010	Fuser Temperature B	Detects what the temperature B is on the fuser
109-0011	Laser Scanner Assembly Temperature	Laser scanner assembly temperature
109-0012	Inner Temperature	Inner temperature
109-0013	Outer Temperature	Outer temperature
109-0014	Humidity	Humidity
109-0020	Fuser Fan Run Ready	Detects if fuser fan motor runs at normal speed
109-0021	Output 2 Fan Run	Start/stop output 2 fan run
109-0022	Output 2 Fan Run Ready	Detects if output 2 fan runs at normal speed
109-0023	Output 3 Fan Run	Start/stop output 3 fan run
109-0024	Output 3 Fan Run Ready	Detects if output 3 fan runs at normal speed
109-0030	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser motor forward on/off
109-0034	Fuser Motor Ready	Detects if fuser fan runs at normal speed
109-0040	Fuser Fan Run	Fuser fan motor on/off
109-0046	Output Fan Run	Output fan motor on/off
109-0047	Output Fan Run Ready	Detects if output fan runs at normal speed
109-0130	Fuser Gap Motor	Fuser press control motor on/off
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Detects if the fuser press is located in the home position
109-0200	Detect Fuser Relay	Detect fuser relay status
109-0210	Detect Zero Cross Period	Detect zero cross period
109-0300	Fuser Installed	Detect fuser unit
110-0000	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor 1 Run Ready	Detects if laser scanner assembly motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0020	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor Fan 1 Run Ready	Detects if laser scanner assembly fan motor 1 runs at normal speed
110-0060	Laser Scanner Assembly Motor 1 Run	Laser scanner assembly motor 1 on/off
110-0080	Laser Scanner Assembly LD Power 1	Laser scanner assembly LD 1 power on/off (yellow)

Code	Display	Meaning
110-0090	Laser Scanner Assembly LD Power 2	Laser scanner assembly LD 2 power on/off (magenta)
110-0100	Laser Scanner Assembly LD Power 3	Laser scanner assembly LD 3 power on/off (cyan)
110-0110	Laser Scanner Assembly LD Power 4	Laser scanner assembly LD 4 power on/off (black)
110-0120	Laser Scanner Assembly Fan 1 Run	Start/stop laser scanner assembly fan run
110-0140	Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 1	Detect laser scanner assembly HSync 1 (yellow)
110-0150	Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 2	Detect laser scanner assembly HSync 2 (magenta)
110-0160	Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 3	Detect laser scanner assembly HSync 3 (cyan)
110-0170	Laser Scanner Assembly HSync 4	Detect laser scanner assembly HSync 4 (black)
110-0200	Laser Scanner Assembly Installed	Detect laser scanner assembly
111-0000	Toner Dispense Motor Yellow	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0010	Toner Dispense Motor Magenta	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0020	Toner Dispense Motor Cyan	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0030	Toner Dispense Motor Black	Toner dispense (supply) motor on/off
111-0040	Toner Sensor Yellow	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0050	Toner Sensor Magenta	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0060	Toner Sensor Cyan	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0070	Toner Sensor Black	TC sensor in developer tank
111-0110	Toner Control Voltage Y	Y toner voltage on/off
111-0120	Toner Control Voltage M	M toner voltage on/off
111-0130	Toner Control Voltage C	C toner voltage on/off
111-0140	Toner Control Voltage K	K toner voltage on/off
111-0200	Toner Supply Lock Sensor Y	Y supply motor lock sensor
111-0210	Toner Supply Lock Sensor M	M supply motor lock sensor
111-0220	Toner Supply Lock Sensor C	C supply motor lock sensor
111-0230	Toner Supply Lock Sensor K	K supply motor lock sensor
111-0300	Toner Reservoir Motor Y	Y reservoir motor on/off
111-0310	Toner Reservoir Motor M	M reservoir motor on/off
111-0320	Toner Reservoir Motor C	C reservoir motor on/off
111-0330	Toner Reservoir Motor K	K reservoir motor on/off
111-0340	Toner Reservoir Level Y	Y reservoir motor on/off
111-0350	Toner Reservoir Level M	M reservoir motor on/off
111-0360	Toner Reservoir Level C	C reservoir level display
111-0370	Toner Reservoir Level K	K reservoir level display
112-0010	Clear Manual Offset Value of Color Registration	Clear manual offset value of color registration

Code	Display	Meaning
112-0101	Y OPC Home Sensor Status	Y OPC home sensor status display
112-0111	M OPC Home Sensor Status	M OPC home sensor status display
112-0121	C OPC Home Sensor Status	C OPC home sensor status display
112-0131	K OPC Home Sensor Status	K OPC home sensor status display
112-0200	CPR Shutter Motor Run	CPR shutter motor on/off
112-0210	CPR Shutter Detect	Detect CPR shutter
112-0220	CPR Shutter Open	CPR shutter open
112-0230	CPR Shutter Close	CPR shutter close
112-0300	Front ID Sensor P Read	Front ID sensor P value display
112-0310	Front ID Sensor S Read	Front ID sensor S value display
112-0320	Rear ID Sensor P Read	Rear ID sensor P value display
112-0330	Rear ID Sensor S Read	Rear ID sensor S value display
112-0340	Center ID Sensor P Read	Center ID sensor P value display
112-0350	Center ID Sensor S Read	Center ID sensor S value display
113-0000	Finisher Present Sensor	Detect if the finisher is in place
113-0350	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detect when a paper is at entrance sensor
113-0360	Finisher Output Sensor	Detect when a paper is at output sensor
113-0361	Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect when a paper is at compile sensor
113-0370	Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detect paddle home position
113-0380	Finisher Left Tamper Home Sensor	Detect lift tamper home position
113-0390	Finisher Right Tamper Home Sensor	Detect right tamper home position
113-0410	Finisher Stapler Door Sensor	Detect stapler door cover is closed
113-0420	Finisher Jam Cover Sensor	Detect jam door cover is closed
113-0430	Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detect stapler home position
113-0440	Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detect stapler level
113-0451	Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect stapler ready sensor
113-0461	Finisher Ejector 1 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 1 home position
113-0462	Finisher Ejector 2 Home Sensor	Detect ejector 2 home position
113-0463	Finisher Ejector 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect ejector 2 encoder Sensor
113-0470	Finisher Main Tray Home Sensor	Detect main tray home position
113-0471	Finisher Main Tray Beam Sensor	Detect main tray beam sensor
113-0472	Finisher Main Tray Low Limit Sensor	Detect main tray low limit sensor
113-0473	Finisher Main Tray Encoder Sensor	Detect main tray encoder sensor
113-0481	Finisher Paper Support Sensor	Detect paper support home sensor

Code	Display	Meaning
113-0491	Finisher Traverse Front Sensor	Detect traverse front home sensor
113-0492	Finisher Traverse Rear Sensor	Detect traverse tear home sensor
113-0501	Finisher Entrance Motor	Finisher entrance motor on/off
113-0501	Finisher Output Motor	Finisher output motor on/off
113-0510	Finisher Paddle Motor	Finisher paddle motor on/off
113-0520	Finisher Left Tamper Motor	Finisher left tamper motor on/off
113-0530	Finisher Right Tamper Motor	Finisher right tamper motor on/off
113-0550	Finisher Staple Unit Motor	Finisher staple unit motor on/off
113-0561	Finisher Ejector 1 Motor	Finisher ejector 1 motor on/off
113-0562	Finisher Ejector 2 Motor	Finisher ejector 2 motor on/off
113-0563	Finisher Ejector 2 Reverse Motor	Finisher ejector 2 reverse direction on/off
113-0570	Finisher Main Tray Motor	Finisher main tray motor on/off
113-0571	Finisher Paper Support Motor	Finisher paper support motor on/off
113-0581	Finisher Traverse Motor	Finisher staple unit traverse motor on/off
113-0591	Finisher Stack Solenoid	Finisher stack solenoid on/off
113-0600	Finisher Punch Motor	Finisher punch motor on/off
113-0610	Finisher Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect finisher punch encoder sensor
113-0611	Finisher Punch Position Sensor	Detect finisher punch position sensor
113-0612	Finisher Punch Home Sensor	Detect finisher punch home sensor
113-0620	Finisher Output Bin Install Sensor	Detect finisher punch output bin Install sensor
113-0621	Finisher Output Bin Full Sensor	Detect finisher punch output bin full sensor
113-2000	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer lift sensor
113-2010	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher clamp home sensor
113-2020	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher diverter home sensor
113-2030	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Away Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 away sensor
113-2031	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 home sensor
113-2032	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 1 encoder sensor
113-2040	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 home sensor
113-2041	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher eject 2 encoder sensor
113-2050	2 Bin Finisher End Stopper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher end stopper sensor
113-2060	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher Paddle home sensor
113-2070	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU entrance sensor
113-2071	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Middle Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU middle sensor
113-2080	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher entrance sensor

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2090	2 Bin Finisher Main Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main output sensor
113-2091	2 Bin Finisher Sub Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub output sensor
113-2100	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Output Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher buffer output sensor
113-2110	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Home Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler home sensor
113-2111	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Rear Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler rear sensor
113-2112	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Font Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler front sensor
113-2113	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Manual Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler manual sensor
113-2114	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Head Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler head sensor
113-2115	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Low Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler low sensor
113-2116	2 Bin Finisher Stapler Ready Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stapler ready sensor
113-2120	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front tamper sensor
113-2130	2 Bin Finisher Rear tamper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher rear tamper sensor
113-2140	2 Bin Finisher Main beam Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main beam sensor
113-2141	2 Bin Finisher Main Front Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main Front level sensor
113-2142	2 Bin Finisher Main Rear Level Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main rear level sensor
113-2143	2 Bin Finisher Main Encoder Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main encoder sensor
113-2144	2 Bin Finisher Main Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher main full sensor
113-2145	2 Bin Finisher Sub Full Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher sub full sensor
113-2150	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet paper sensor
113-2160	2 Bin Finisher Staple Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple paper sensor
113-2161	2 Bin Finisher Staple Button Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher staple button sensor
113-2170	2 Bin Finisher Compile Paper Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher compile paper sensor
113-2180	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU cover sensor
113-2181	2 Bin Finisher Top Cover Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher top cover sensor
113-2182	2 Bin Finisher Front Door Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher front door sensor
113-2190	2 Bin Finisher Stack Top Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher stack top sensor
113-2200	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher IPTU detect sensor
113-2201	2 Bin Finisher Punch Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher punch detect sensor
113-2202	2 Bin Finisher Booklet Detect Sensor	Detect 2 bin finisher booklet detect sensor
113-2500	2 Bin Finisher Buffer Lift Motor	2 bin finisher buffer lift motor on/off
113-2510	2 Bin Finisher Clamp Motor	2 bin finisher clamp motor on/off
113-2520	2 Bin Finisher Diverter Motor	2 bin finisher diverter motor on/off
113-2530	2 Bin Finisher Eject 1 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 1 motor on/off
113-2540	2 Bin Finisher Eject 2 Motor	2 bin finisher eject 2 motor on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
113-2560	2 Bin Finisher IPTU Feed Motor	2 bin finisher IPTU feed motor on/off
113-2570	2 Bin Finisher Entrance Motor	2 bin finisher entrance motor on/off
113-2580	2 Bin Finisher Output Feed Motor	2 bin finisher output feed motor on/off
113-2590	2 Bin Finisher End Stopper motor	2 bin finisher End stopper motor on/off
113-2600	2 Bin Finisher Paddle Motor	2 bin finisher paddle motor on/off
113-2610	2 Bin Finisher Main Tray Motor	2 bin finisher main tray motor on/off
113-2620	2 Bin Finisher Staple Move Motor	2 bin finisher staple move motor on/off
113-2621	2 Bin Finisher Staple Head Motor	2 bin finisher staple head motor on/off
113-2630	2 Bin Finisher Front Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher front tamper motor on/off
113-2640	2 Bin Finisher Rear Tamper Motor	2 bin finisher Rear tamper motor on/off
113-2650	2 Bin Finisher Manual Blue LED	2 bin finisher Manual blue LED On/Off
113-2651	2 Bin Finisher Manual Red LED	2 bin finisher Manual red LED On/Off
113-3000	Booklet Stopper home Sensor	Detect booklet stopper home sensor
113-3010	Booklet Staple home Sensor	Detect booklet staple home sensor
113-3020	Booklet Front Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet front staple empty sensor
113-3030	Booklet Rear Staple Empty Sensor	Detect booklet rear staple empty sensor
113-3040	Booklet Knife Home Sensor	Detect booklet knife home sensor
113-3050	Booklet Guide Home Sensor	Detect booklet guide home sensor
113-3060	Booklet Diverter Home Sensor	Detect booklet diverter home sensor
113-3080	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	Detect booklet tamper home sensor
113-3090	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	Detect booklet paddle home sensor
113-3100	Booklet Entrance Paper Sensor	Detect booklet entrance paper sensor
113-3110	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor	Detect booklet tray paper sensor
113-3120	Booklet Fold Output Paper Sensor	Detect booklet fold output paper sensor
113-3130	Booklet Press home Sensor	Detect booklet press home sensor
113-3500	Booklet Feed Motor	Booklet feed motor on/off
113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Booklet fold motor on/off
113-3520	Booklet Stopper Solenoid	Booklet stopper solenoid on/off
113-3530	Booklet Stopper Motor	Booklet stopper motor on/off
113-3540	Booklet Tamper Motor	Booklet tamper motor on/off
113-3550	Booklet Knife Motor	Booklet knife motor on/off
113-3560	Booklet Diverter Motor	Booklet diverter motor on/off
113-3570	Booklet Press Motor	Booklet press motor on/off
113-3580	Booklet Paddle Motor	Booklet paddle motor on/off

Code	Display	Meaning
113-3590	Booklet Guide Motor	Booklet guide motor on/off
113-3600	Booklet Staple Motor	Booklet staple motor on/off
113-4000	Punch Scan Home Sensor	Detect punch scan home sensor
113-4010	Punch Scan Edge 1 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 1 sensor
113-4011	Punch Scan Edge 2 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 2 sensor
113-4012	Punch Scan Edge 3 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 3 sensor
113-4013	Punch Scan Edge 4 Sensor	Detect punch scan edge 4 sensor
113-4020	Punch Home Sensor	Detect punch home sensor
113-4030	Punch Position A Sensor	Detect punch position A sensor
113-4031	Punch Position B Sensor	Detect punch position B sensor
113-4040	Punch Encoder Sensor	Detect punch encoder sensor
113-4050	Punch Output Bin Full Sensor	Detect punch output bin full sensor
113-4060	Punch Type 1 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 1 detect sensor
113-4061	Punch Type 2 Detect Sensor	Detect punch type 2 detect sensor
113-4500	Punch Scan Motor	Punch scan motor on/off
113-4510	Punch Motor	Punch motor on/off

Fax diagnostics

Fax NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics Fax NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To change a configuration value for fax firmware.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of configuration values and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a configuration value. After selecting a value, press the **Edit** button to open an interface for user input.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-200	Pause dial time	Pause time (value * 1000 ms)	Country value	0-200

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-210	Dial pulse M/B ratio	33/66 40/60	Country value	0 = OPTION_DP_33 1 = OPTION_DP_40 2 = OPTION_DP_37 3 = OPTION_DP_50
20-220	Auto dial start pause time	Pause time before auto-dialing (second)	1	0-10
20-300	Ring on time	Ring on time (ms)	170	90-800
20-310	Ring off time	Ring off time (ms)	560	90-800
20-320	Ring detection frequency	Sets the call indication frequency range that will be detected by LIU.	1	1 = 12-80 hz 2 = 16-55 hz 3 = 20-55 hz 4 = 22-55 hz
20-330	Ring on max time	Ring on max time (ms)	5100	3000-12000
20-340	Ring off max time	Ring off max time (ms)	11100	9000-22000
20-400	DTMF high-frequency level	DTMF high-frequency level (dBm)	Country value	0-15
20-410	DTMF low-frequency level	DTMF low-frequency level (dBm)	Country value	0-15
20-420	DTMF timing	DTMF duration of on/off output (ms)	8	1 = 80/80 2 = 70/70 3 = 70/150 4 = 60/60 5 = 80/100 6 = 150/50 7 = 150/240 8 = 100/100 9 = 100/80
20-500	Dial mode	Select tone/pulse	Country value	0 = OPTION_TONE_MODE 1 = OPTION_PULSE_MODE

Code	Name	Description	Default	Range
20-520	Error rate	Adjust error rate (Off/5%/10%/20%)	2	0 = OPTION_RATE_OFF 1 = OPTION_RATE_5 2 = OPTION_RATE_10 3 = OPTION_RATE_20
20-530	Dial tone detect	Detect dial tone prior to sending	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-540	Loop current detect	Detect if loop current is present prior to sending	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-550	Busy signal detect	Detect busy signal to allow redials	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-560	TCF duration	Adjust TCF duration (ms)	1500	1000-3000
20-800	Modem speed	Select modem start speed	24	
20-810	Fax transmission level	Adjust fax transmission level (dBm)	Country value	Country value
20-830	Auto dial timeout	Adjust auto dial timeout (second)	Country value	30-150
20-920	CNG detection count	CNG tone detection check count during ANS/FAX mode	2	1-15
20-930	Caller ID	This option is needed to guide Caller ID off for user environment	Country value	0 = OPTION_OFF 1 = OPTION_ON
20-940	Ext. phone	Ext. phone detection enable/disable (default: enable 1)	1	0 = Disable 1 = Enable
21-999	Fax line setting	Fax test line setting (dual fax)	0	0 = Line 1 1 = Line 2
21-800	Modem speed line 2	Select modem start speed for line 2. This item will display only when a dual line fax kit is installed	24	

Fax test routines

- Diagnostics > Fax Diagnostics > Fax Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the fax machine.
Operation procedure	When the main Fax Test Routines window displays, users can navigate through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln1	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 1	On/Off
20-020	DTMF # Line1	Emits DTMF # on line 1	On/Off
20-021	DTMF * Line1	Emits DTMF * on line 1	On/Off
20-022	DTMF 0 Line1	Emits DTMF 0 on line 1	On/Off
20-023	DTMF 1 Line1	Emits DTMF 1 on line 1	On/Off
20-024	DTMF 2 Line1	Emits DTMF 2 on line 1	On/Off
20-025	DTMF 3 Line1	Emits DTMF 3 on line 1	On/Off
20-026	DTMF 4 Line1	Emits DTMF 4 on line 1	On/Off
20-027	DTMF 5 Line1	Emits DTMF 5 on line 1	On/Off
20-028	DTMF 6 Line1	Emits DTMF 6 on line 1	On/Off
20-029	DTMF 7 Line1	Emits DTMF 7 on line 1	On/Off
20-030	DTMF 8 Line1	Emits DTMF 8 on line 1	On/Off
20-031	DTMF 9 Line1	Emits DTMF 9 on line 1	On/Off
20-040	V.21 300 bps Line1	Emits V.21 300 bps Line 1	On/Off
20-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-043	V.29 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-044	V.29 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-045	V.17 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-046	V.17 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-047	V.17 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-048	V.17 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-049	V.34 2400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-050	V.34 4800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-051	V.34 7200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line1	On/Off

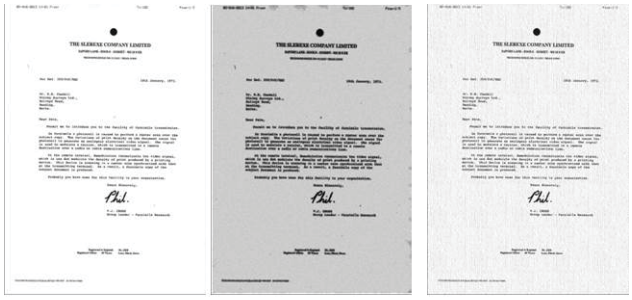
Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
20-052	V.34 9600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-053	V.34 12000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-054	V.34 14400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-055	V.34 16800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-056	V.34 19200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-057	V.34 21600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line1	On/Off
20-058	V.34 24000 bps Line1	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line1	On/Off
20-059	V.34 26400 bps Line1	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line1	On/Off
20-060	V.34 28800 bps Line1	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line1	On/Off
20-061	V.34 31200 bps Line1	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line1	On/Off
20-062	V.34 33600 bps Line1	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line1	On/Off
21-012	Single tone 1100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-014	Single tone 1650Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1650Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-015	Single tone 1850Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 1850Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-016	Single tone 2100Hz Ln2	Emits single tone 2100Hz on line 2	On/Off
21-020	DTMF # Line2	Emits DTMF # on line 2	On/Off
21-021	DTMF * Line2	Emits DTMF * on line 2	On/Off
21-022	DTMF 0 Line2	Emits DTMF 0 on line 2	On/Off
21-023	DTMF 1 Line2	Emits DTMF 1 on line 2	On/Off
21-024	DTMF 2 Line2	Emits DTMF 2 on line 2	On/Off
21-025	DTMF 3 Line2	Emits DTMF 3 on line 2	On/Off
21-026	DTMF 4 Line2	Emits DTMF 4 on line 2	On/Off
21-027	DTMF 5 Line2	Emits DTMF 5 on line 2	On/Off
21-028	DTMF 6 Line2	Emits DTMF 6 on line 2	On/Off
21-029	DTMF 7 Line2	Emits DTMF 7 on line 2	On/Off
21-030	DTMF 8 Line2	Emits DTMF 8 on line 2	On/Off
21-031	DTMF 9 Line2	Emits DTMF 9 on line 2	On/Off
21-040	V.21 300 bps Line2	Emits V.21 300 bps Line2	On/Off
21-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 2400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.27ter 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-043	V.29 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.29 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-044	V.29 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.29 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-045	V.17 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.17 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-046	V.17 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.17 9600 bps Line2	On/Off

Code	Name	Description	State Displayed
21-047	V.17 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.17 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-048	V.17 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.17 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-049	V.34 2400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 2400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-050	V.34 4800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 4800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-051	V.34 7200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 7200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-052	V.34 9600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 9600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-053	V.34 12000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 12000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-054	V.34 14400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 14400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-055	V.34 16800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 16800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-056	V.34 19200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 19200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-057	V.34 21600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 21600 bps Line2	On/Off
21-058	V.34 24000 bps Line2	Emits V.34 24000 bps Line2	On/Off
21-059	V.34 26400 bps Line2	Emits V.34 26400 bps Line2	On/Off
21-060	V.34 28800 bps Line2	Emits V.34 28800 bps Line2	On/Off
21-061	V.34 31200 bps Line2	Emits V.34 31200 bps Line2	On/Off
21-062	V.34 33600 bps Line2	Emits V.34 33600 bps Line2	On/Off

Scanner diagnostics

Shading test

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test

Purpose	– To check the quality of scanned images, especially if there might be defects in optical devices such as the lens, mirror, or lamp. – Check the quality problem as shown below:  Normal Image Defected Image Defected Image

Operation procedure

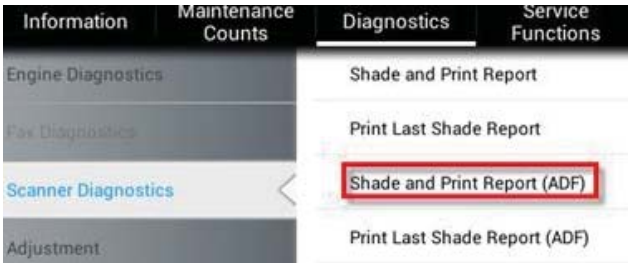
For the Image Scanner Unit

Press **Shade and Print report** to see if the current shading value is correct. Mono, red, green, and blue gray shading values will be shown on the printed report. When the previous shading value is needed, press “Print Last Shade Report”.

For the Flow ADF unit

1. Load the shading sheet on the Flow ADF tray.
2. Enter SCV mode. Select the following menu items:

   Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Shading Test > Shade and Print Report (Flow ADF)



   Press **Print Last Shade Report (ADF)** for the previous shading value report.

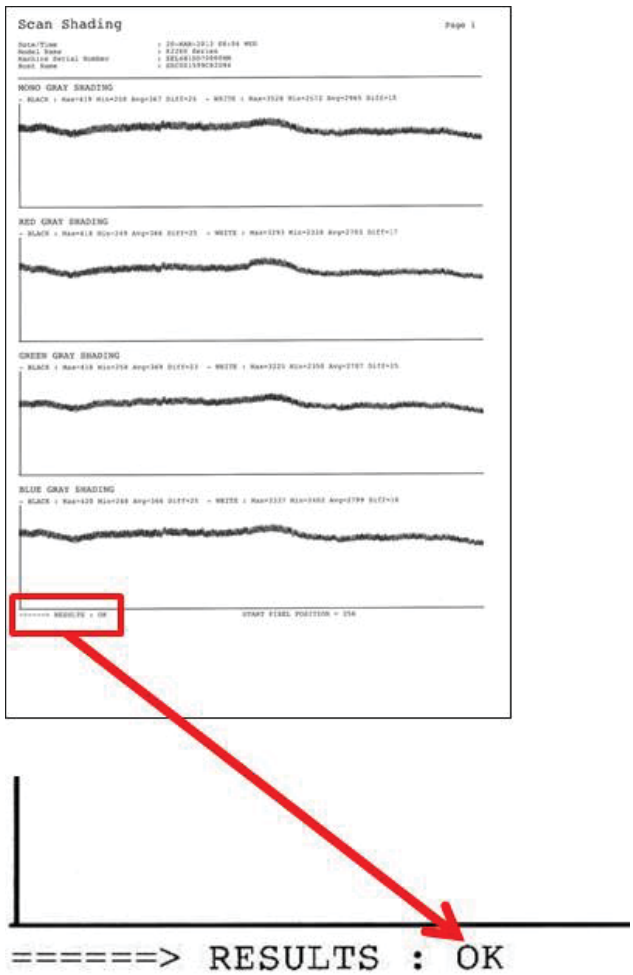
3. Check if the printed results are correct.

NOTE:

– When executing Flow ADF shading, use only the shading sheet (JC63–05055A).

– A Shading Test for the Flow ADF unit must be completed after replacing the Flow ADF unit or main board.

Verification



Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF NVM Read/Write

Purpose	To read and/or write values in the scanner and Flow ADF memory.
Operation procedure	When the main **NVM Read/Write** window displays, users can navigate through the list of codes with descriptions and saved values. Users can also directly input a code through the text box to search for an NVM. After selecting a code, the **Edit** button will be enabled only if the code is writable. If the selected code is writable and the **Edit** button is enabled, press the button to configure the desired value for the code.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Code	NVM description	Default	GX model
05-0000	Pick Up Count	0	0
05-0001	Separation Roller Count	0	0
05-0010	Document Duplex Reverse Point	0	0
05-0030	Simplex Registration Value (Registration 1)	0	0
05-0040	Duplex Registration Value (Registration 2)	0	0
05-0050	Width Guide Max Value	0	0
05-0060	Width Guide Min Value	0	0

Scanner/Flow ADF test routines

- Diagnostics > Scanner Diagnostics > Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines

Purpose	To perform test routines for the scanner and Flow ADF.
Operation procedure	When the main **Scanner/Flow ADF Test Routines** window displays, users can navigation through the list of routines and descriptions that display. Users can input a code through the text box to search for a routine. After selecting a routine, press **OK** to open the test window that lists the selected routine. Users can start/stop the selected test routine.
Verification	N/A
Specification	N/A
Reference	Table below

Code	Name	Value	GX model
06-0000	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 1	High/Low	0

Code	Name	Value	GX model
06-0001	Scanner Original Size Detecting Sensor 2	High/Low	0
06-0010	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 1	High/Low	0
06-0011	Scanner Cover Open/Close Sensor 2	High/Low	0
06-0020	Scanner Image Scanner Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
06-0030	Scanner Image Scanner Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
06-0040	Scanner Image Scanner Home Position Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0000	Document Length .1 Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0001	Document Length .2 Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0020	Document Cover Open Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0040	Document Detect Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0050	Document Feed Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0060	Document Simplex Registration Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0070	Document Scan Read Sensor 1	High/Low	0
05-0071	Document Scan Read Sensor 2	High/Low	0
05-0080	Document Output Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0090	Document Pickup Clutch	Start/Stop	X
05-0110	Document Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0111	Document Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0123	Document width 1 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0124	Document width 2 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0125	Document width 3 MSO Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0130	Document Pickup Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0131	Document Pickup Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0140	Document Pickup Roller Detect Sensor	High/Low	X
05-0150	Document Stacker Lift Upper Sensor	High/Low	0
05-0151	Document Stacker Lift Lower Sensor	High/Low	0

Code	Name	Value	GX model
05-0160	Document Registration 1 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0162	Document Registration 1 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0170	Document Registration 2 Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0171	Document Registration 2 Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0180	Document Stacker Lift Motor Forward	Start/Stop	0
05-0181	Document Stacker Lift Motor Backward	Start/Stop	0
05-0190	Document Width Guide ADC Sensor	10Bit (0~1023)	0
05-0210	Document Jig Test Low Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0
05-0230	Document Jig Test High Speed Simplex	Start/Stop	0

Adjustment

Print adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the printed image on the paper in the print engine.
Operation procedure	1. Select a tray to adjust. 2. Change the adjustment value using the **+** or **-** buttons, then press the **OK** button to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge NOTE: ○ Adjustment must be done for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). ○ Do not choose **ALL** for the tray selection. ○ Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image is adjusted. If not, repeat Step 2.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Print Adjustment > Print Test Patterns

  This menu is used to print out the test pattern manually.

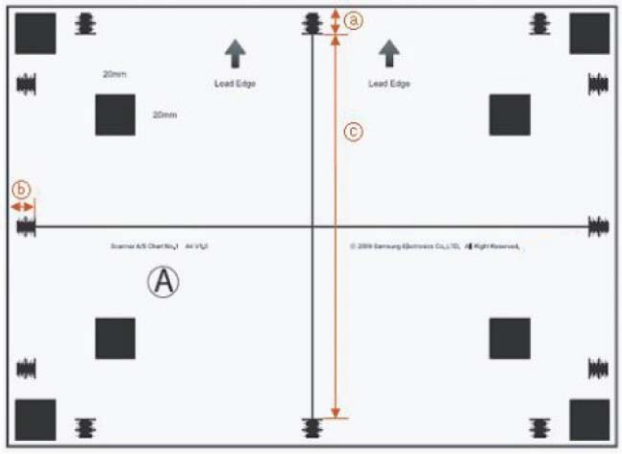
Copy adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Copy Adjustment > Image Position

Purpose	Manually adjust the position of the copied image on the paper in the copy engine.
Operation procedure	NOTE: Before copy adjustment: – Make sure that the initial values of margin adjustment are the same as the values of the print adjustment. – Perform an adjustment for each tray. Do not choose **All** for tray selection, as this can confuse the adjustment. NOTE: – Complete adjustment for each tray (Tray 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5). – Do not choose **All** for tray selection. – Adjust for the tray with each new tray selection. 1. Locate the Scanner A/S Chart at the scanner glass. 2. Change the adjustment value using the **+** or **-** button, and then press **OK** to save the changes. ○ Simplex Leading Edge ○ Simplex Side Edge ○ Duplex Leading Edge ○ Duplex Side Edge 3. Print out the test pattern and check if the image has moved. It not, repeat Step 2.

Scan area adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of scanned images automatically.
Operation procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  A4 Scanner A/S Chart

Note that the **Lead Edge** arrows point to the left side of the scanner glass and are placed face down. The Scanner A/S Chart comes in two sizes, A4 and Letter.

2. Press **OK**. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart.
3. The new value saves to the system.
4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass.
5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image.

   NOTE: Specifications:

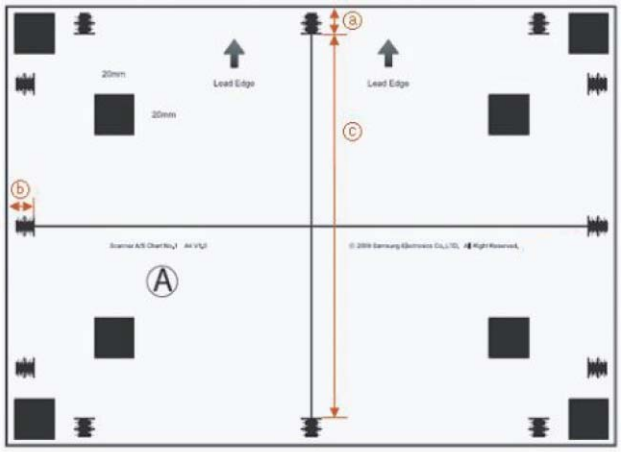
   - a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
   - c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Scan Area Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from: ○ Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6) ○ Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5) 2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button. 3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button. 4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**. 5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**. 6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system. 7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the scanner glass. 8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

Flow ADF adjustment

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Automatic Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the image position and magnification of images scanned with the Flow ADF automatically.
Operation procedure	1. Locate the Scanner A/S chart at the scanner glass.  **A4 Scanner A/S Chart** 2. Press **OK**. A scan begins and the system will automatically calculate the proper value based on the scanning result of the chart. 3. The new value saves to the system. 4. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF. 5. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image. 6. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image. NOTE: Specifications: ○ a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm ○ c: 190, ± 1.5 mm NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

- Diagnostics > Adjustment > Flow ADF Adjustment > Manual Adjustment

Purpose	To correct the position and magnification of scanned images manually.
Operation procedure	1. Choose one item from the table. There are three items to choose from:

- Image Position — Leading Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6)
- Image Position — Side Edge (Unit: mm, Scale: 0.1, Min/Max: -6/+6)
- Magnification — Vertical Direction (Unit: %, Min/Max: 98.5/101.5)

2. Select one item and press the **Edit** button.
3. Change the adjustment value using the arrow button.
4. Image position (a, b): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **+**, otherwise press **-**.
5. Magnification (c): If the current value is smaller than the specification, press **-**, otherwise, press **+**.

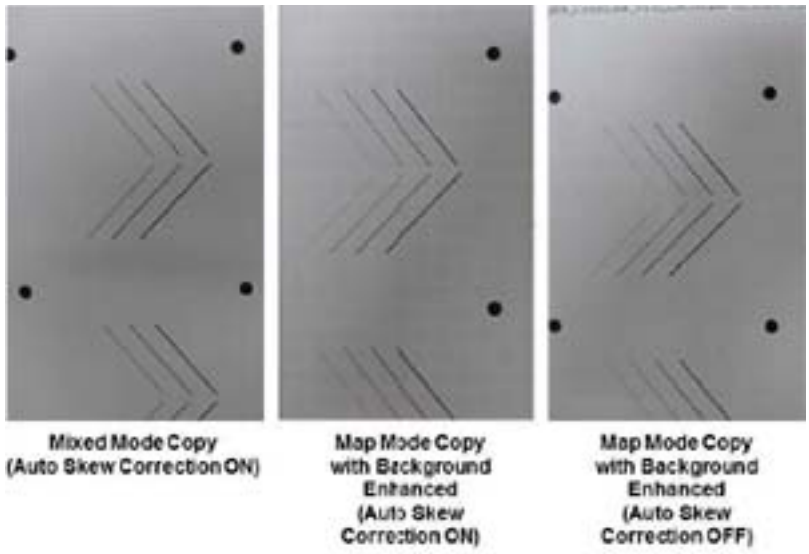
NOTE: Specifications:

- a, b: 10, ± 1.5 mm
- c: 190, ± 1.5 mm

6. Press the **OK** button to apply the new value to the system.
7. Scan the Scanner A/S Chart and send it to a PC. The chart must be scanned from the Flow ADF.
8. To check the image position, compare the position of the scale marks (a, b) from the chart to the scanned image.
9. To check the magnification, compare the length of line **c** from the chart to the scanned image.
10. If **Auto Skew Correction during job** box is checked, skewed image is corrected by digitally rotating the scanned images.



NOTE: When this function is enabled, visual artifact (like checkerboard patterns) might appear on the image depending on the original contents or copy option settings.



NOTE: After executing the Flow ADF adjustment, perform a shading test. Refer to Scanner Diagnostics.

Auto color sensing (ACS)

- Diagnostics > ACS

Purpose	To set the color coverage ratio of auto color mode in the copy function. – Color Coverage Ratio: The ratio of color contents in the original document.
Operation procedure	Change the level from 1 to 5. – Classifies a document as color, if color coverage of the document is higher than a predefined level. – Level 1 has a higher probability of classifying documents to color, while level 5 has lower probability.
Verification	Copy the **mono copied** original with auto color mode and check if the print out is monochrome.
Specification	Color coverage – Level 1: 0.01% – Level 2: 0.05%. – Level 3: 0.1% – Level 4: 0.25% – Level 5: 0.5%

Image management

Auto tone adjustment activation

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when density of the image is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as a toner cartridge, imaging unit, and ITB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Normal TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Normal TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Normal TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Normal TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Normal TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Normal TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment Activation > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is replaced, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the density of the image is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.

Operation procedure	1. Select **On** or **Off** for Full TRC Control execution. ○ Off: Full TRC Control will not execute. ○ On: Full TRC Control will execute during the determined conditions, 2. Change the execution condition(s) of Full TRC Control. ○ Page Count: The system executes Full TRC Control based on the count of printed pages since the last execution. ○ Time Left Alone: The system executes Full TRC Control when the system returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceeds the configured value.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

Auto tone adjustment

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Normal

Purpose	To correct image quality when image density is poor. Normal TRC Control is recommended after changing a unit, such as toner cartridge, imaging unit, and ITB, or after restarting the printer.
Operation procedure	Select **OK** to execute Normal TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > Full

Purpose	To correct image quality when any OPC drum is changed, the life of the OPC drum is changed, the image density is poor, or the temperature and/or humidity in the room changes suddenly.
Operation procedure	Select **OK** to execute Full TRC.
Verification	Print out a test job and make sure the image quality has recovered.

- Diagnostics > Image Management > Auto Tone Adjustment > CTD Sensor Cleaning

Purpose	To solve the **CTD Sensor Failure** error.
Operation procedure	After cleaning the CTD/CPR sensor, execute this menu.

Print test patterns

Diagnostics > Print Test Patterns >

- EP Calibration Pattern1 Contone

Service functions

Main memory clear

Service Functions > Main Memory Clear

- This function resets the main memory of the system to the factory default setting. This function can be used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. User configured values return to the default values.

  To clear the main memory, select the country/region where the system is located, and restart the printer.

Debug log

Service Functions > Debug Log

- This function sets the system log message level. Users can select three options:
  - Off: This option disables the logging option.
  - Job Status: This option only enables the logging of user created jobs.
  - Details: This option enables all the logging options of the running tasks of the system. This option might effect the performance of certain system operations. Use this option when the system performs abnormally and engineers need to investigate the problem.

Capture log

Service Functions > Capture Log

- This function copies all the saved logs in the system to a USB flash drive as a .zip file. The size of the system log could reach up to 1 GB. If the system log size becomes very large, it will take a longer time to copy to the USB flash drive.

  1. Connect the USB flash drive to the printer.
  2. Tap the **Service Mode** app. When the pop-up displays, press the area below the pop-up until the password window appears. Enter **1934** and press the **OK** button.
  3. Go to **Service Functions > Debug Log** and change the debug log level to **DETAILS**.
  4. Go to **Service Functions > Capture Log**.
  5. Select **All** or **Period**. If selecting **Period**, enter the start and end date.
  6. Press the **Capture Log** button.
  7. Once the log is completed, a completion message will display. Restore the debug log level to **JOB STATUS**.

     NOTE: If the system log size becomes very large, it will take longer to copy to the USB flash drive.

  8. Check that the Log File has been saved to the USB flash drive.

Transfer assembly control mode

Service Functions > Transfer Assembly Control Mode

Purpose	To correct transfer related problems. This function can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality to a certain type of paper.
Operation procedure	– Transfer Assembly Control Problems ○ Choose the process speed (Full, Half, Lower) based on the type of paper being used. ○ Adjust T1 PWM value based on the problem type. ● Gray Spot: Increase T1 PWM value of the issued color ● Non Cyclic White Line: Decrease T1 PWM value of the issued color ● OPC Cyclic Ghost: Decrease T1 PWM value of the issued color – T2 Control Problems ○ Choose the paper group, paper side, and paper direction. ○ Adjust T1 PWM value based on the problem type. ● Blur: Increase T1 PWM value ● Poor Transfer: Increase T1 PWM value ● Re-transfer: Decrease T1 PWM value ● White Spot: Decrease T1 PWM value
Verification	Print a test job and make sure the transfer problem has been resolved.
Specification	N/A
Reference	N/A

Envelope rotate

Service Functions > Envelope Rotate

- This menu enables rotation when printing on an envelope. The machine usually guides loaded envelopes with SEF direction. If this function is enabled, the user can load an envelope with LEF direction and the machine will rotate the image for printing on the envelope.

  This function provides the following setting options:

  – Off (default): Load envelope SEF direction

  – 90 degrees: Load envelope LEF direction.

– 180 degrees: Load envelope SEF direction with flap on bottom side.



Off 90 degrees 180 degrees

NOTE: If the paper source is **Auto**, the device will feed from the Tray 1 because the LEF envelope can only be loaded in the Tray 1 according to paper specification.

If the length of envelope is over the maximum size of the custom width, the device will not rotate the image and determine that the direction of the envelope is SEF. For example, the A4 model supports custom sizes like W 98–216 ~ L148–356. This model does not support C5 Env (162x229) DL Env (110x220), No 9 Env (98x225), No 10 Env (105x241) rotation.

Drain

Service Functions > Drain

- This menu recovers toner density. The printer prints grayed images after operating over 500 low coverage images. This menu supports ten levels.

  This function provides the following setting options:

  – Off (default)

  – On

Print quality troubleshooting guide

Image quality problems and solutions

Print quality defects can be caused by printer components, consumables, media, internal software, external software applications, and environmental conditions.

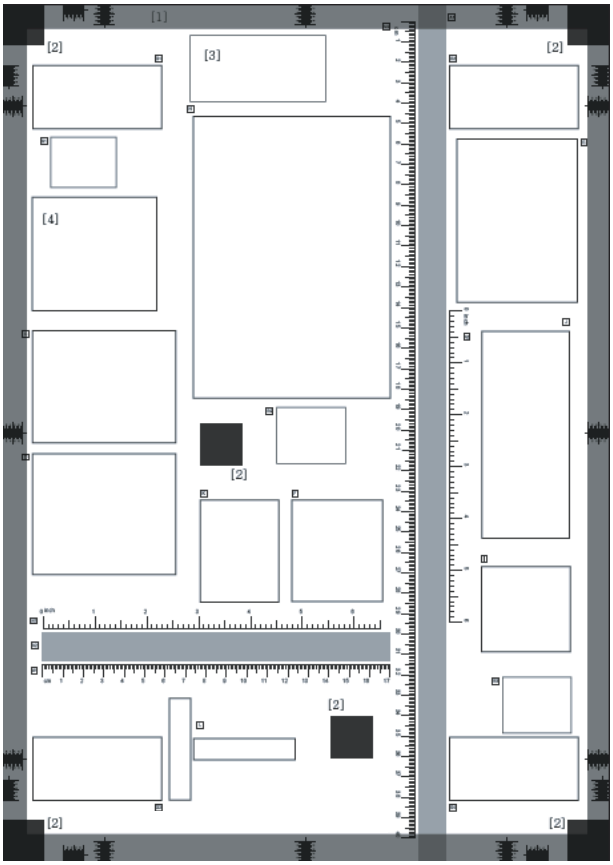
To successfully troubleshoot print quality problems, eliminate as many variables as possible.

First, generate prints using printable pages using laser paper. Use paper from an unopened ream that has been acclimated to room temperature. Make sure that genuine HP toner is installed in the printer.

Figure 5-59 A/S chart (A3)



Figure 5-60 A/S chart



[1]	Grid pattern	For adjusting margin and magnification
[2]	Black patches	For adjusting skew error
[3]	Barcode	For checking the reproduction of the barcode
[4]	Note area	For recording the date, conditions, and so on
[A]	Halftone band	For checking banding and jitter (K 50%)
[B, L]	Resolution patterns	For checking resolution
[C, D, E]	Images	For checking color reproduction
[F]	Map image	For checking fine line reproduction
[G]	Color patches	For checking color reproduction and uniformity
[H]	Gradation pattern	For checking tone reproduction of seven colors (C, M, Y, K, R, G, B/ 10~100%)
[I]	Color/Mono text	For checking the reproduction of color, mono text
[J]	Multilingual feature	For checking the reproduction of small text
[K]	White gap pattern	For checking color to color, color to mono white gap
[M]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: cm)
[N]	Rulers	For checking the magnification error (unit: inch)

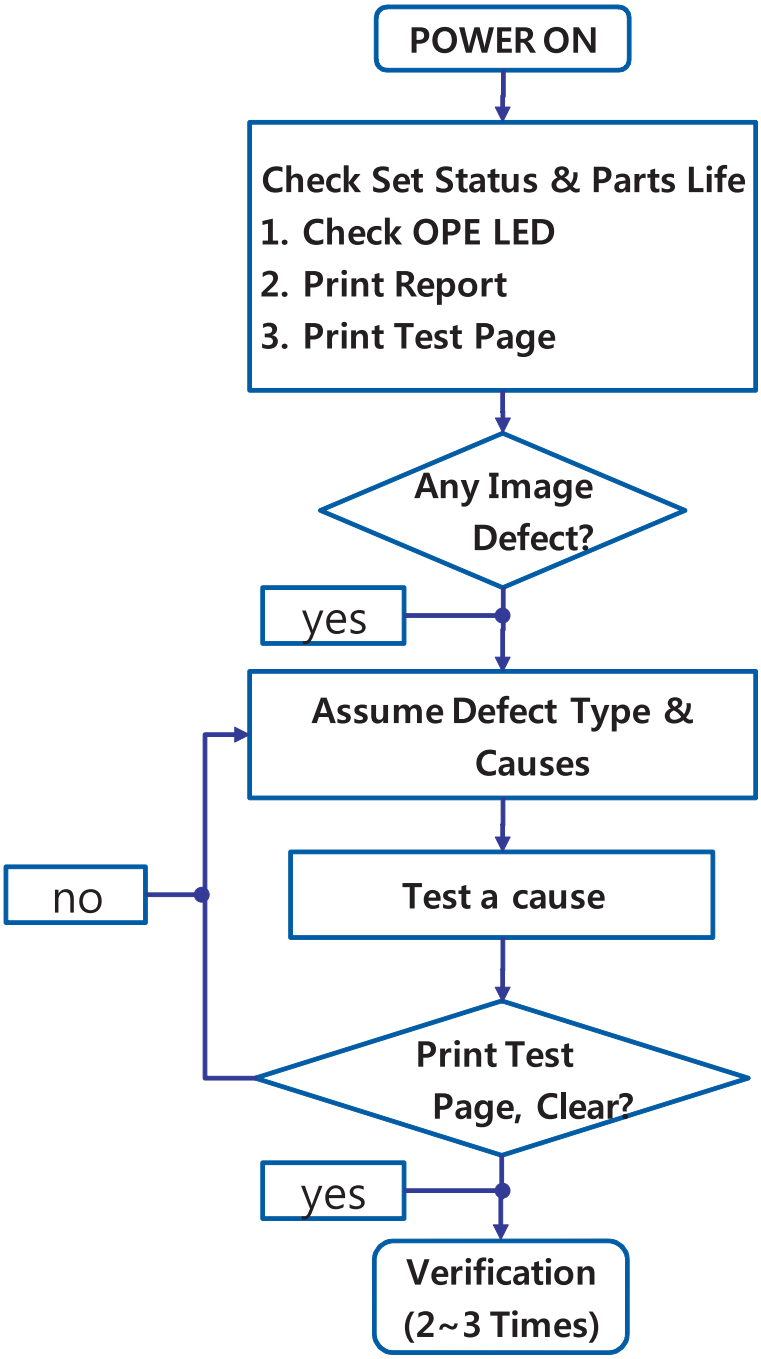
How to analyze image defects

See the following flowchart.

TIP: Depending on the remaining life of the part, the cause of the defect can vary. Check the remaining life of the part.

Check for defects even if the defect is not repeated.

Figure 5-61 Defect analysis flowchart



Vertical black band

Figure 5-62 Typical faulty images



Table 5-23 Troubleshooting procedure

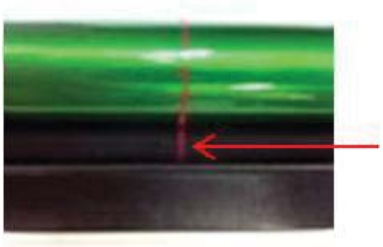
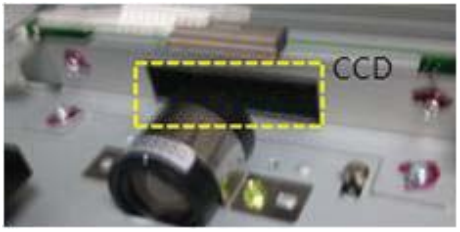
Step	Cause	Action
1	Charge roller (CR) is contaminated. 	Check if the CR is contaminated.  Replace the Drum unit if there are additional problems.

Table 5-23 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

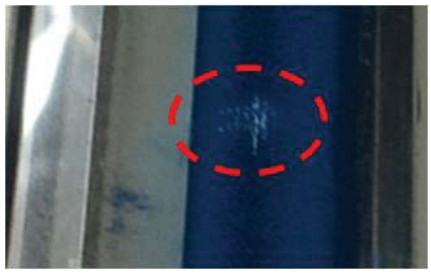
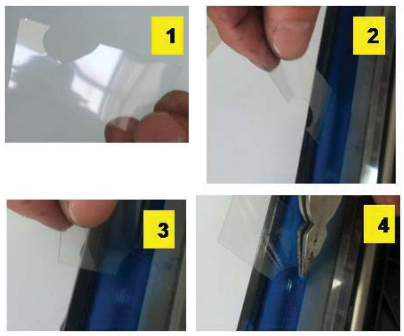
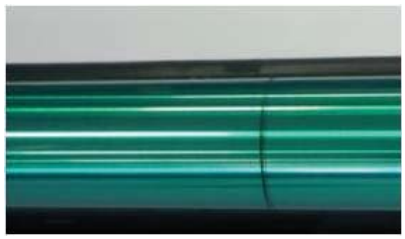
Step	Cause	Action
2	ITB is contaminated. • The ITB cleaning is poor. • The ITB clean-blade is partially broken.	Check if the ITB is contaminated.  Replace the ITB Cleaner if there are additional problems.
3	The scanner unit is contaminated. • Scan glass contamination • Mirror contamination • CCD sensor contamination 	Wipe the contaminated part of the surface with a soft cloth. CAUTION: The scanner unit contains fragile parts. Use caution while cleaning.

Vertical white band, light band

Figure 5-63 Typical faulty images



Table 5-24 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	A foreign substance is between the magnetic roller and blade. • The toner on the magnetic roller is partially empty. 	Remove the foreign substance. • Make a hook shape using a sheet (transparency sheet is recommended). • Place the hook into the gap between the magnetic roller and the blade. • Pull out the foreign substance. 
2	The developer unit carrier is insufficient or the life of the developer unit has expired.	• Print the supplies information report. Check the remaining life of the developer unit. If it is expired, replace the developer unit. • Check the developer layer on the magnetic roller. If it is short, replace the developer unit.
3	The laser beam path is blocked. A foreign substance is on the laser scanner assembly window.	Clean the laser scanner assembly window.
4	OPC motor is scratched. 	Replace the drum unit.

Horizontal periodic black band or dot

Figure 5-64 Typical faulty images



Table 5-25 Troubleshooting procedure

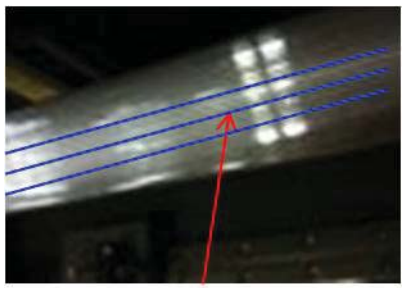
Step	Cause	Action
1	Horizontal periodic band or dot (CR, 38 mm) • The surface of the charge roller (CR) is contaminated. • CR is scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the charge roller with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic band or dot (OPC, 94 mm) • The surface of the OPC drum is contaminated or scratched.	Clean the contaminated surface on the OPC drum with a soft cloth. If the surface is scratched, replace the drum unit.
3	The charge roller contact plate has debris or is contaminated.	Clean the charge roller contact plate. If the problem persists, replace the drum unit. If the problem persists after replacing the drum unit, replace the HVPS board.

Horizontal periodic light/dark band or dot

Figure 5-65 Typical faulty images



Table 5-26 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Horizontal periodic band (OPC, 94.2 mm) • OPC was left exposed for too long. • OPC is damaged by a high voltage in a short amount of time.	This problem will resolve itself over time. If the problem is not resolved, replace the drum unit.
2	Horizontal periodic light/dark band (magnetic roller, 37 mm) • The magnetic roller is in poor condition. • V-groove of the magnetic roller surface is not uniform.  V-groove in Roller-Magnetic	Replace the developer unit.

Foggy image

Figure 5-66 Typical faulty images



Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Voltage of OPC motor is abnormally low.	Replace the drum unit.
2	HVPS operates abnormally. • HVPS is damaged or broken.	Replace the HVPS board.

Table 5-27 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
3	Toner is over supplied. • TC sensor operates abnormally.	Replace the developer unit.
4	Voltage of OPC motor is abnormally low. • Transfer assembly voltage is abnormally high.	Check the transfer assembly connection in the HVPS. Check if the transfer assembly roller spring in the ITB is connected correctly. Replace the HVPS board.

Light image

Figure 5-67 Typical faulty images



Table 5-28 Troubleshooting procedure

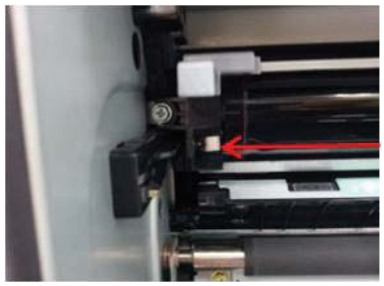
Step	Cause	Action
1	TRC operates abnormally.	Perform TRC three to four times.
2	Poor transfer has occurred.	Force a jam during the print job. Check the image on the transfer belt. If the image on the transfer belt is normal, refer to the **Blurred image** section.
3	Output voltage of the HVPS is abnormally low. • Color density decreases.	Replace the HVPS board.
4	TC down and toner spills.	Replace the developer unit.
5	Toner spills by eraser.	Check if the eraser is contaminated. Replace the drum unit.

Blurred image

Figure 5-68 Typical faulty images



Table 5-29 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	High humidity and/or the quality of the paper.	Use new, higher quality paper.
2	T2 transfer voltage is low.	Turn up the T2 transfer voltage.
3	Connection between HVPS and THV is incorrect.	Check if the connection between T2 high voltage terminal and HVPS THV terminal is correct. Check if the connection between the HVPS and ITB is correct.  
4	HVPS operates abnormally.	Replace the HVPS.

Incorrect color registration

Figure 5-69 Typical faulty images

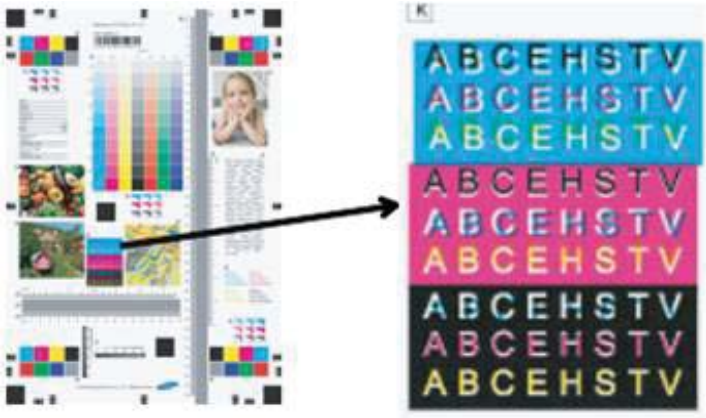


Table 5-30 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	CPR sensor is contaminated.	Execute CPR manually.
2	Environment has changed.	To recognize the environment change, execute CPR after a certain amount of time.
3	Belt surface is contaminated.	Remove the ITB. If the surface of the belt is contaminated, clean it with soft cloth.

Uneven pitch and jitter image

Figure 5-70 Typical faulty images

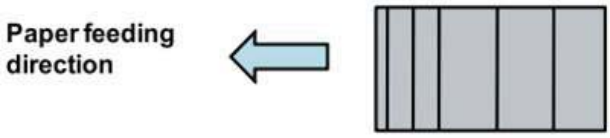


Table 5-31 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Under 3 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check for foreign substance in the drive gears. Grease the drive gears. • Developer unit gears • Drum unit gears • Main drive unit gears If the problem persists, replace the abnormal units. • Developer unit • Drum unit • Main drive unit
2	Under 1 mm periodic jitters or horizontal bands have occurred.	Check if the laser scanner assembly is assembled correctly. If not, remove and tighten the screws. If the problem persists, replace the laser scanner assembly.

Skewed image

Figure 5-71 Typical faulty images

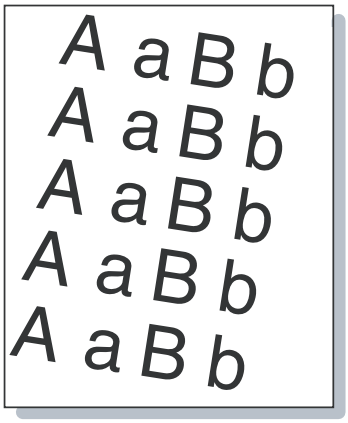
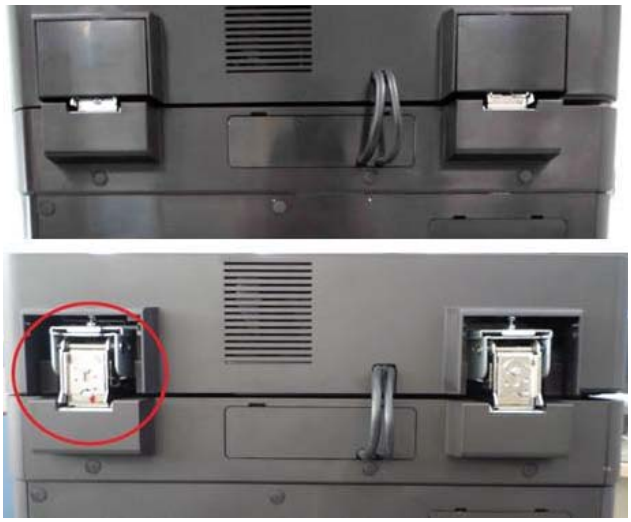


Table 5-32 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	• Tray is not installed properly. • Too much paper is loaded in the tray. • The tray guide is not set properly.	Reinstall the tray properly.

Table 5-32 Troubleshooting procedure (continued)

Step	Cause	Action
2	The surface of the pickup/reverse/ feed roller is contaminated or worn out.	Clean or replace the contaminated roller.
3	If the skewed image occurs during a copy job, check the Flow ADF installation.	Reinstall the Flow ADF unit. Adjust the Flow ADF skew. 

Blank copy

Figure 5-72 Typical faulty images

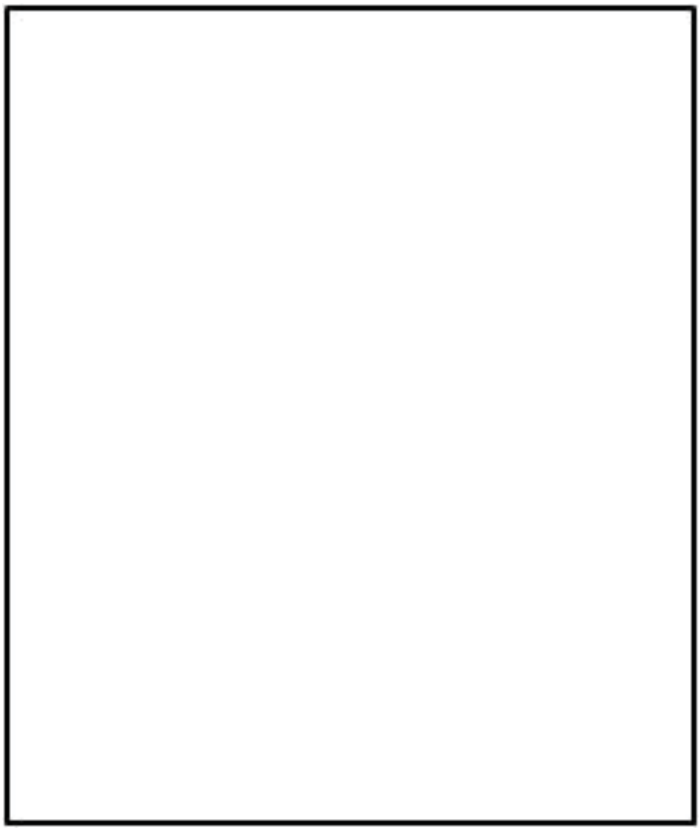


Table 5-33 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Laser scanner assembly operation error	Check laser scanner assembly connections
2	All connections on the HVPS board are connected correctly	Reconnect all connections
3	Check if the related parts are damaged or broken	Replace the HVPS board, main board, or laser scanner assembly
4	Check the connection between the scan joint board and the main board	Reconnect the harness If the connection is correct, replace the main board

Poor fusing performance

Figure 5-73 Typical faulty images

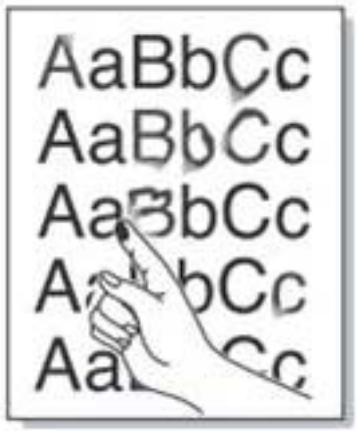
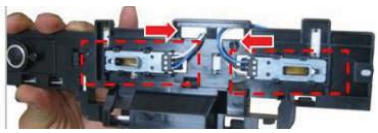


Table 5-34 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Cause	Action
1	Check the paper type. Depending on what type of paper is used, print speed varies. • Plain (71~90g/), Thick (91~105g/): Full Speed • Heavy weight (106~175g/): Half Speed • Envelope (75~90 g/), Label (120~150 g/): Half Speed	Make sure the paper type displayed on the control panel is the same type of paper being used for the print job.
2	The fuser unit is worn out.	Replace the fuser unit.
3	Check the surface of the fuser belt and pressure roller for scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.
4	Check the temperature control system for problems. • Thermistor is broken or operates abnormally • Halogen lamp is broken or operates abnormally	Check the non-contact thermistor sensor  Check the halogen lamp. If parts are broken, replace the broken parts or the fuser unit.
5	Check if the pressure control system operates properly.	Check the pressure control system. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.
6	Paper is wrapped on the heating roller.	Remove the wrapped paper and print a test page. If the problem persists, replace the fuser unit.

Stain on back of paper

Figure 5-74 Typical faulty images



Table 5-35 Troubleshooting procedure

Step	Check item	Action
1	Is the transfer roller dirty or worn out?	Clean or replace the transfer roller assembly. 
2	Is there any stain caused by poor cleaning on the transfer belt?	Clean the transfer belt. If the problem persists, replace the ITB unit.
3	Is the fuser belt and pressure roller dirty?	Clean the fuser belt and pressure roller.
4	Check the pressure roller surface for damage or scratches.	Replace the fuser unit.

Setting standard tone

Setting standard tone

Purpose

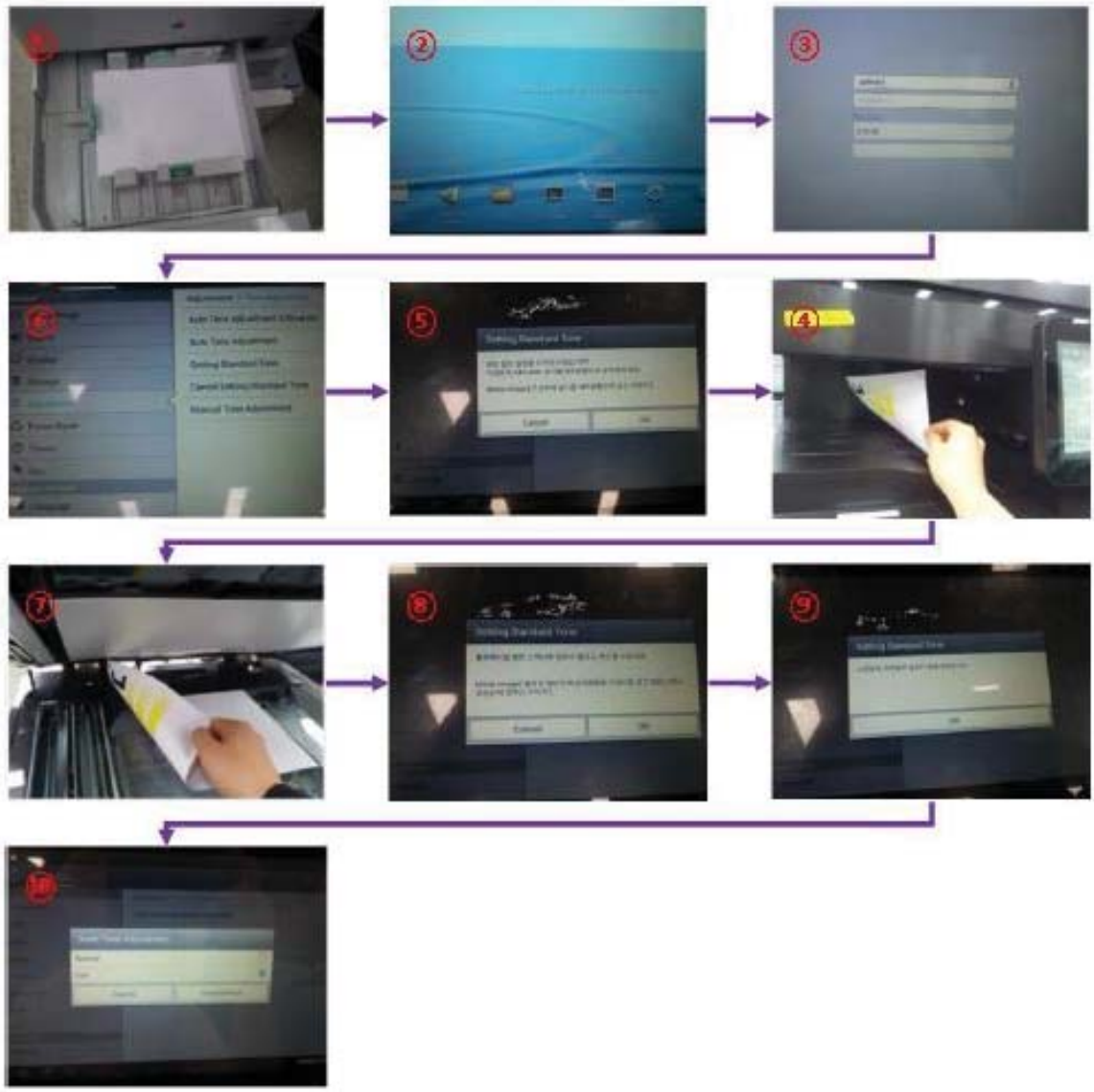
- To adjust the color tone to the standard set by the manufacturer.

NOTE: Complete this procedure after replacing the ITB unit or cleaning the CTD sensor.

Procedure

1. Load A4 or Letter with Short Edge Feeding (SEF) direction on tray.
2. Select **Setting** on the control panel.

3. Log in as Admin.
4. Select **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Setting Standard Tone**.
5. Select **OK** on confirmation window.
6. The scan ID chart prints.
7. Load the chart on the scanner glass in a horizontal direction.
8. Start the scan.
9. When the scan complete window appears, select **OK**.



Cancel setting standard tone

NOTE: When the machine is installed for the first time, **Cancel Setting Standard Tone** does not need to be executed.

Purpose

- Cancel the setting standard tone
- Return to the customized tone set by the user after setting the standard tone

Procedure

1. Select **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Cancel Setting Standard Tone**.
2. When the cancellation is complete, select **OK**.
3. Select **Full TRC** : **Adjustment > Tone Adjustment > Auto Tone Adjustment > *Full + Execute Now**



Error message

Scan image fail

- When a problem occurs on the scanned ID chart, an error message will display.



Check items

- Check the scanned ID chart for correct placement.
- Make sure the chart direction is horizontal.
- Retry the setting standard tone procedure.

When to perform Setting Standard Tone procedure

- When installing the machine for the first time.

- When the brightness has changed in comparison to the previous image.



Normal Image Dark Image Light Image

- When there is a difference in the color between the same models.

NOTE: If the problem persists after executing the setting standard tone procedure, look for other causes.

Duplex blur, white spot blur on color print-out

Figure 5-75 Typical faulty images



Duplex Blur Duplex W/Spot

Troubleshooting procedure

1. Enter **SVC Mode** → **Service Functions** → **TR Control Mode**.
2. Select **T2 Control Mode**.
3. Select the paper setting based on the site. (Paper Group, Paper Side, Paper Direction)
4. Increase value for T2 PWM and check if the blur problem is resolved.
5. When the problem persists after changing the **T2 Control Mode** values, change the **T1 Control Mode** values.
6. Decrease the value for each color and see whether the symptom disappears.

   In this case, [-4] was applied and solved the blur.
7. As there can be variation for each device, change T1, T2 and observe the results.

Other errors

Image system problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Toner cartridge detection error	
2	Image registration problem occurs after color plane registration (CPR)	
3	How to handle TRC error and CPR	
4	Light shadow (halo) problem	
5	Image contamination (pressure roller contamination)	

Toner cartridge detection error

Symptom

- Toner cartridge is installed, but **Not Installed** message displays.

Cause

- Toner cartridge is not properly installed.
- Toner cartridge e-label harness is defective.
- E-label PCA or e-label Chip is defective.
- E-label connection (modular connector) is defective.
- E-label Joint PCA is defective.
- Bad connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA.

Troubleshooting

- Toner cartridge installation problem:
  - Check if the toner cartridge is properly installed.
  - If the cartridge comes out automatically, check the cartridge fixing hook.
  - If the cartridge fixing hook is damaged, replace the cartridge cap or cartridge.
- E-label harness problem:
  - Make sure the e-label harness is correctly connected.

    Check the modular jack for damage or abnormal assembly.
  - If the modular jack harness is defective, replace it with a new one.

    If the modular jack has moved into the toner cartridge, remove it.
- E-label PCA problem or e-label data problem:
  - Replace the toner cartridge.

- E-label connection (modular connector) installation problem:
  - Open the front cover. Remove the toner cartridge.
  - Make sure that the e-label connection (modular connector) is correctly installed.
  - If the modular connector is not installed correctly, open the rear cover and reinstall.
- E-label Joint PCA problem:
  - If the e-label Joint PCA, modular jack pin, or main board interface connector are damaged, replace the PCA (see the previous step).
- Bad connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA:
  - Check the connection between the main board and the e-label Joint PCA. If the connection is bad, replace the harness, the e-label Joint PCA, or the main board.

Image registration problem occurs after color plane registration (CPR)

Symptom

- Image registration problem occurs after CPR.

Cause

- Laser scanner assembly

Troubleshooting

1. Perform CPR

   Home > Machine Setup > General Settings > Image Management > Color Plane Registration

2. Print CPR Report

   Service Mode > Information > Print Reports > Color Plane Registration

   Succeed or Failed for CPR: [1152] → Registration cannot be adjusted by CPR.

   - Check if the skew data from the CPR Report is changed.
   - Check if OPC surface of Y/M/C is damaged, scratched, or torn.
   - Print and check separated Y/M/C color for damage.
   - Find **Succeeded or Failed for CPR** from the CPR report.
     - If the value is 1152 like the above report, CPR cannot be performed. Replace the laser scanner assembly.
     - Succeeded or Failed for CPR: [0] → CPR was performed OK [OK]
     - Succeeded or Failed for CPR: [1] → CPR was not performed OK [Fail]

How to handle TRC error and CPR

Symptom

- Abnormal color density (thick, thin) and/or color registration is wrong.

- If the color density is wrong, perform TRC and print a TRC report.
- Check for a TRC error from the TRC report.
  - Mode column format:
    - F = Full TRC
    - S = Normal TRC
  - Error column format: 1X0 where the last digit indicates the color that is out of range.
    - 1X0: Sensed value from Y is abnormal.
    - 1X1: Sensed value from M is abnormal.
    - 1X2: Sensed value from C is abnormal.
    - 1X3: Sensed value from K is abnormal.
- Check the following for the corresponding color:
  - Make sure that the toner motor is working normally.
    - Enter Tech Mode (press 1, 2, 3 simultaneously, and then type in **1934**.)

      Diagnostics > Engine > Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Toner Dispense Motor On/Off

      111–0000 (Y), 111–0010 (M), 111–0020 (C), 111–0030 (K)
  - Check if the toner supply is blocked.
  - Check if the toner seal has been removed.
  - Check if the transfer roller is correctly installed.
  - Print the CPR report. Check if the CPR was successful.

Succeeded or Failed for CPR	CPR Result ○ 0 = Success ○ 256 = LED calibration failed. LED calibration is performed before the CPR for pattern sensing. CPR sensor is contaminated or CPR sensor is defective.
PWM of sensor LED	LED calibration result (LED value, maximum 255, minimum 0). If the CPR result is 256 and PWM value is 179, there is a sensor fault or a control board fault.

Light shadow (halo) problem

Symptom

- Halo is observed in the background color around dark color text.

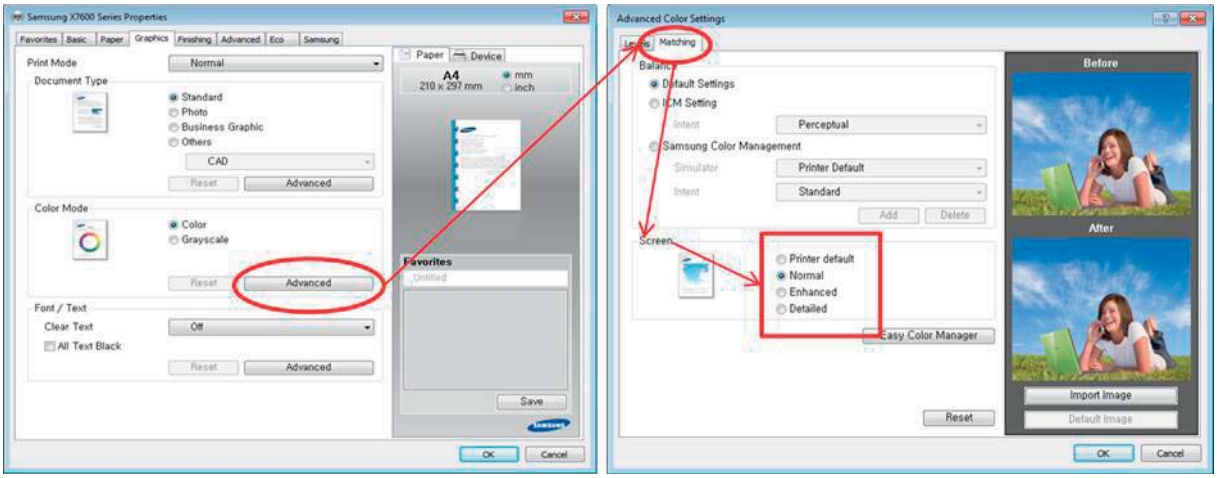


Troubleshooting

1. Change the screen option in Driver UI.

   Select **Graphic tap** → **Advanced in Color Mode** → **Matching** → **Screen**

   Change the screen option from **Enhanced** to **Normal**



2. If halo is not reduced enough after applying Step 1, it can be further reduced by using the patch ROM which include lower screen LPI set. (90% improvement observed)



(a) Enhanced **(b) Normal** **(c) Normal (Patch ROM)**

NOTE: When the screen LPI is lowered, screen pattern can be visible on the graphic/images and jagging become more apparent in the edges.

Image contamination (pressure roller contamination)

Symptom

- Image (front/back side of paper) is contaminated with toner

Cause

- Toner is contaminated on the surface of pressure roller with low coverage, mainly simplex, and low duty jobs.

Troubleshooting

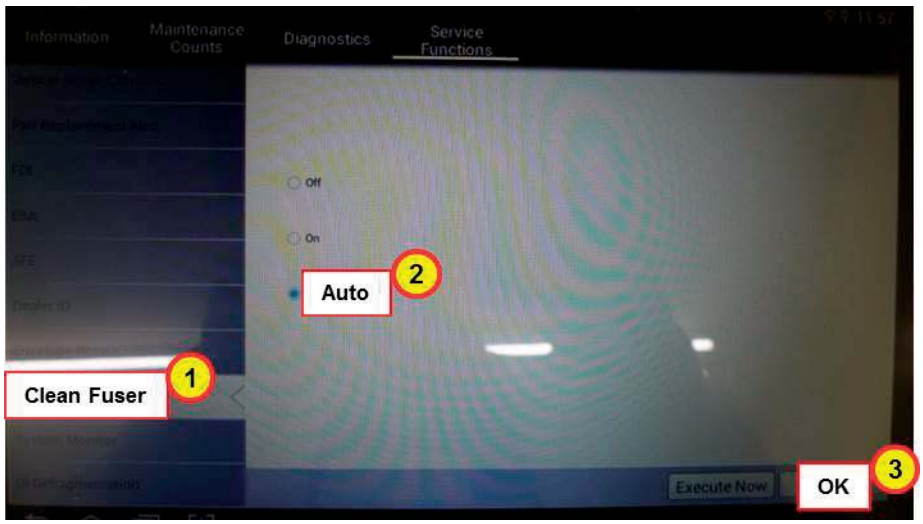
1. Install Vx.D6.08 or latest version.
2. Make sure **Clean Fuser** function is set to **Auto**.

   Vx.D6.08 or later version has **Clean Fuser: Auto** function as default.

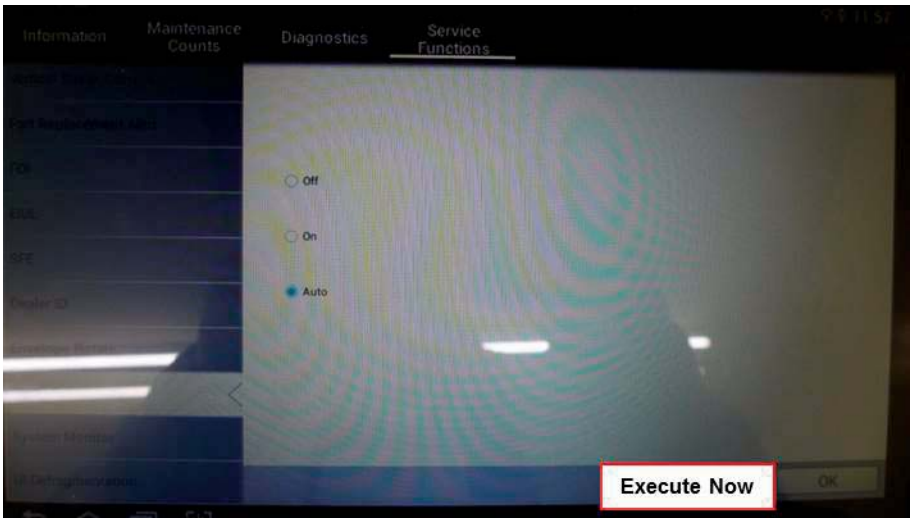
   If the previous setting used is **On** mode, that pre-existing setting value will be kept as before. Otherwise, it will be changed to **Auto**.

   On mode can be set at desired intervals as required.

   SVC mode → Service Functions → Clean Fuser → Auto



3. To execute fuser cleaning function manually, press **Execute Now**.



4. Repeat step 3 up to six times until you cannot find any contamination on the fuser cleaning sheet.

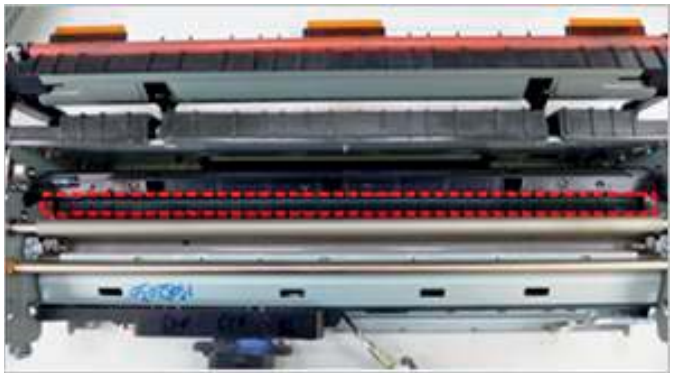
   If the contamination on the fuser cleaning sheet still exists, clean the pressure-roller with soft brush or scraper with care.

   – Open the fuser jam cover. Remove three screws, and then remove the brush.



   – Check the surface of pressure roller and remove the toner contamination while carefully rotating the pressure roller one cycle.

     Open the fuser jam cover. Remove three screws, and then remove the brush.



Fuser problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Acoustic noise in fuser unit	
2	Image hot offset problem	
3	Error **fusing unit not compatible** problem	

Acoustic noise in fuser unit

- **Symptom:** Acoustic noise from the fuser assembly in the early stages of printing.
- **Cause:** Fuser belt edges are damaged.

Troubleshooting

▲ Replace the fuser unit.

Image hot offset problem

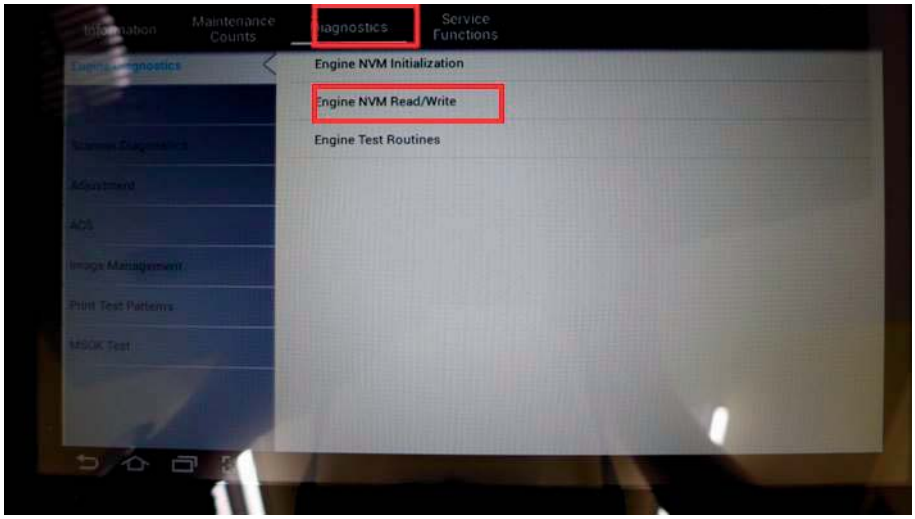
- **Symptom:** Image at the leading edge of the paper is duplicated after 110 mm.
- **Cause:** The fusing temperature is high.

Troubleshooting

▲ Lower the fusing temperature in SVC mode until the problem disappears. The default value is 10, and it is recommended to change the value up to 8.

How to change the plain temperature offset

a. Enter SVC mode, and select **Engine NVM Rear/Write**.



b. Select the **Plain Temperature offset** menu.



c. Press the **OK** button after adjusting the value. (1 = 2℃)

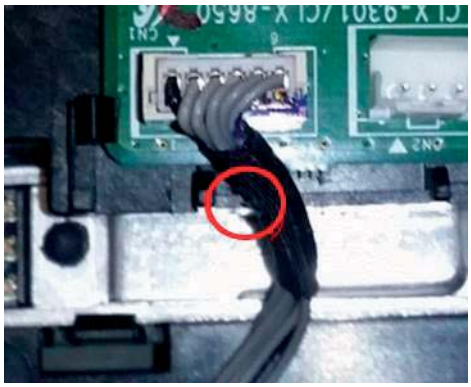
d. Press the **Home** button to exit SVC mode.

Error “fusing unit not compatible” problem

- **Symptom:** Error **Fusing unit not compatible** message appears.
- **Cause:** Harness for EEPROM signal is damaged by the sharp edge of the fuser frame.

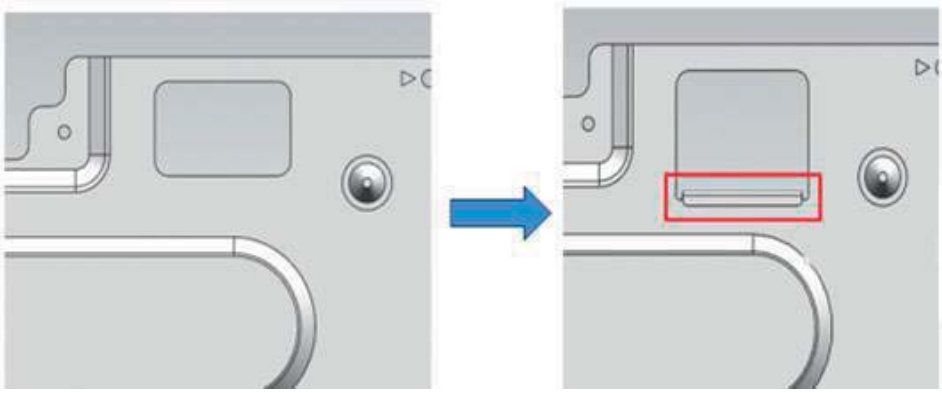
▲ Check if the EEPROM signal harness is damaged.

If so, replace the fuser unit (from 2015.08.11 the new part was applied) or insulate the damaged spot of harness by wrapping each harness up.



NOTE: The pre-existing AT tape might need to be removed, and then re-apply the insulation for each damaged harness.

NOTE: New design was applied from 2015.08.11 which doesn't have the sharp edge on the harness path



Scanner and Flow ADF problems

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Noise of Flow ADF hinge/Crack of Flow ADF hinge/Flow ADF will not stay open	
2	Flow ADF is not recognized	
3	During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occur.	

Noise of Flow ADF hinge/crack of Flow ADF/Flow ADF does not stay open

Symptom

- A noise comes from the Flow ADF hinges when it is opened or closed.
- The Flow ADF hinge is cracked.
- When the Flow ADF is opened to access the scanner glass, the unit should remain at a 50° angle (±10°). The Flow ADF does not remain open as expected.

Troubleshooting

1. Remove the Flow ADF connector cover.
2. Remove the connector and one screw.
3. Lift and remove the Flow ADF unit.
4. Remove four screws from the hinge unit. Remove and replace the hinge unit.
5. Reassemble the Flow ADF.

Flow ADF is not recognized.

Symptom

- The Flow ADF installation is not recognized.

Cause

- The Flow ADF power cable fails.

Troubleshooting

1. Reassemble the Flow ADF power cable. If the problem is not resolved, replace the power cable.
2. Adjust the harness and fix it with a cable tie.

During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occurs.

Symptom

- During copy or scan job, the original paper JAM and U3–3213 error occurs.

Troubleshooting

1. Check if the **Sponge-Damper Separation** has changed position.



2. If yes, refer to following guide.

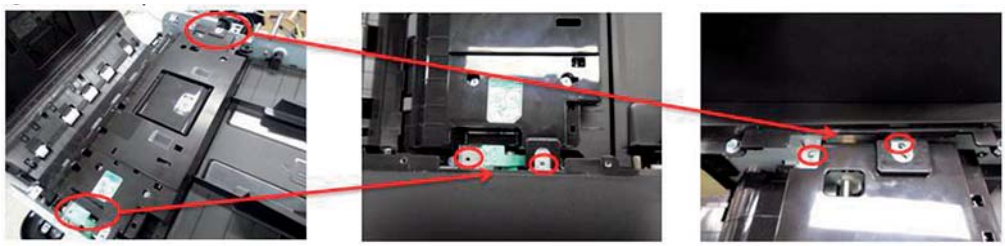
   a. Remove three screws.



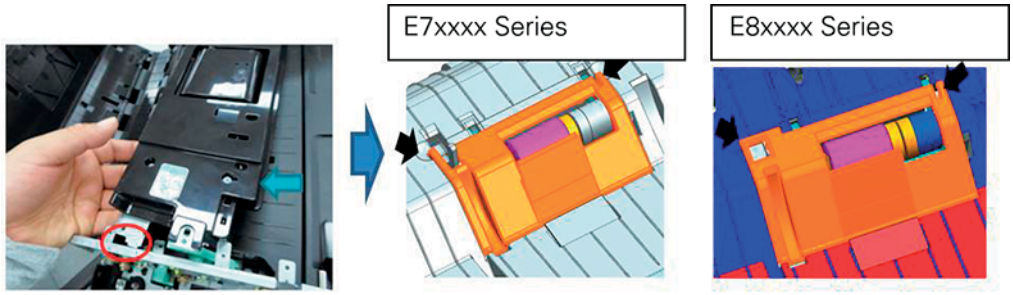
   b. Remove the linker by pressing its upper side from an inner direction. Then remove the front cover.



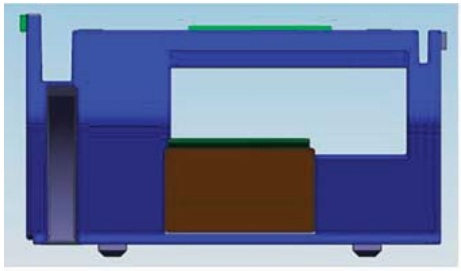
   c. Remove four screws.



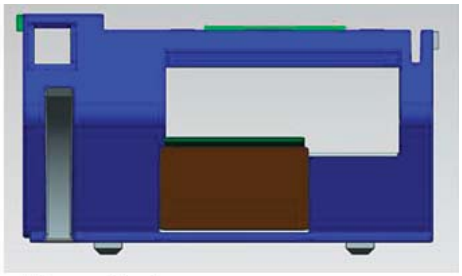
   d. Remove the pickup assembly.



e. Replace the Flow ADF housing separation.



E7xxxx Series
JC97-04586A_Flow ADF



E8xxxx Series
JC97-04621A_Flow ADF

Drive unit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Machine makes noise during print job	

Machine makes noise during print job

Symptom

- Machine makes noise during a print job.

Cause

- The gear train needs to be greased.
- An old type gear is assembled.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode.
2. Execute a fuser motor test.

   Service Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routines > Fuser Motor Forward
3. Remove the fuser unit and execute the fuser motor test again.
4. If the printer still makes a noise during a print job, replace the fuser drive output assembly.
5. If the problem is not resolved, replace the fuser unit.

Feeding system problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper	
2	Printer cannot feed paper	
3	Envelope wrinkle	

Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper

Symptom

- Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 cannot pick up paper.

Cause

- Bad harness connection on the main board.
- Connector defect of the main board.

Troubleshooting

1. Check the harness connection. Reconnect the harness if it is not connected correctly.
2. Check the pickup connector on the main board.

   If the connector has a problem with the soldering, replace the main board.

Printer cannot feed paper

Symptom

- The printer cannot feed paper from Tray 2 or Tray 3.

Cause

- Feed motor problem
- Feed motor connection problem
- Main board defect

Troubleshooting

- Check the feed motor operation.
  - Open the right door and push the cover switch forcibly.
  - Enter service mode.
  - Select the following menu items:

    EDC Mode > Diagnostics > Engine Diagnostics > Engine Test Routine > Feed motor > On/Off

    Check the operating status of the two feed rollers.
  - If the feed rollers cannot rotate, open the rear cover and check the motor and gears.
- Check the connection between the main board and the feed motor.
- If the problem persists, replace the main board.

Envelope wrinkle

Symptom

- Envelope is wrinkled when printed from the MP Tray.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode.
2. Select **Envelope Rotate**. (**Service Functions > Envelope Rotate**)
3. Select a menu item: **Off**, **90 degrees**, or **180 degrees**.

Laser scanner assembly problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	CPR failure	
2	Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise	

CPR failure

Symptom

- The control panel indicates an CPR failure message.

Cause

- The reflection mirror is broken or damaged.

Troubleshooting

1. Check the condition of the assembly inside of the laser scanner assembly.
2. If the reflection mirror is deviated, replace the laser scanner assembly.

Laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise

Symptom

- The laser scanner assembly motor makes a loud noise while in printing mode.

Cause

- The laser scanner assembly motor is defective.

Troubleshooting

1. Enter service mode and execute the laser scanner assembly motor test.
2. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is loud, replace the laser scanner assembly.
3. If the laser scanner assembly motor running sound is not loud, check the other unit.

Electrical circuit problem

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
1	LVPS output voltage drop error	
2	SMPS output voltage drop error	

No	Problem Description	Troubleshooting Page
3	HDD makes a loud noise	
4	Control panel malfunction: networking not functioning	
5	Home screen icon not visible or control panel is broken	

LVPS output voltage drop error

Symptom

- An error message occurs on the control panel (C3–1312, S3–3121, M1–4111, M1–4211).

Cause

- 24V channel output voltage drops to under 21.6V and 5V channel output is normal.

Troubleshooting

1. Check all 24V output channels (24VS1, 24VS2, 24VS3, 24VS4) to determine if 24V voltage comes out.
2. If 24V voltage does not come out, check **24V on/off signal pin** on the main board.
   a. The voltage at **24V on/off signal pin** is 0V. → Main board and signal is normal.
   b. The voltage at signal pin is **4~5.3V** → Main board and signal is abnormal
3. If Main board and signal is normal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, check other parts (such as the fuser, motor, scanner harness, and so on) driven by 24V voltage before replacing the LVPS.
4. If Main board and signal is normal and just one or two or three 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect some harness from abnormal 24V output channel before replacing the LVPS.
5. If Main board and signal is abnormal and all 24V output channels are nearly 0V, inspect the harness, connector and main board.

Hard disk drive (HDD) makes a loud noise

Symptom

- The Hard disk drive (HDD) makes a loud noise.

Cause

- The HDD has defects.

Troubleshooting

- Replace the HDD.

Networking not function

Symptom

- Network is not functioning.

Cause

- Network line itself is not working properly.
- Network configuration is wrong.
- Some related electronic components in the main board have defects.

Troubleshooting

1. Connect a network line to the PC and complete a ping test.
2. Complete a ping test after connecting the network line to the SET. If the connection is working, check the network configuration which might have been set incorrectly.
3. If the ping test does not have a result, open the rear cover and check the main board for visible defects on the network related components such as the connector (CN16), capacitor (C192), and other close components. Surge voltage from the outside can cause defects.
4. If any of the components have visible defects, then replace the main board.

Control panel malfunction

Symptom

- When touching a button, another button is pressed.

※ **For example,**



When touching home button, another menu is executed.

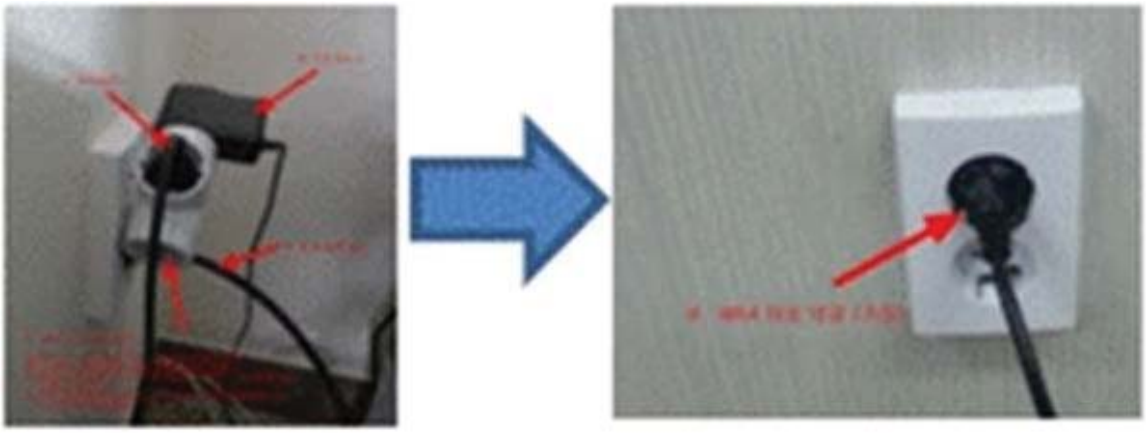


When touching "5" button, "4", "6", "cos" are entered.

Cause

- Touch IC is influenced by the interference between TX frequency and power noise frequency.

1. If the power cable is connected to the multi-tap, unplug and plug it into an independent outlet.



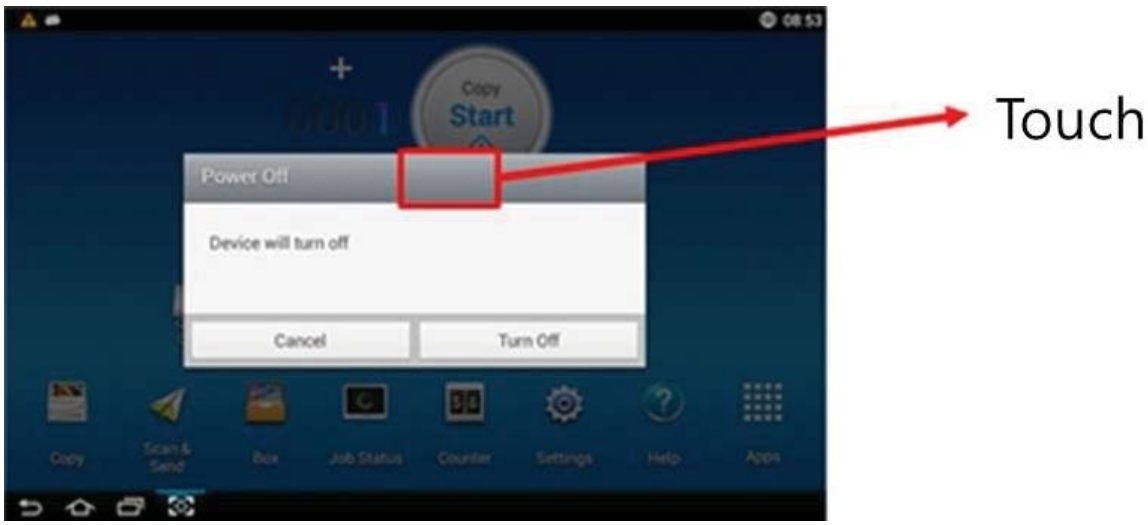
[X] [O]

2. If the touch malfunction persists, check the following:

   – Press the power button until a pop-up window displays.



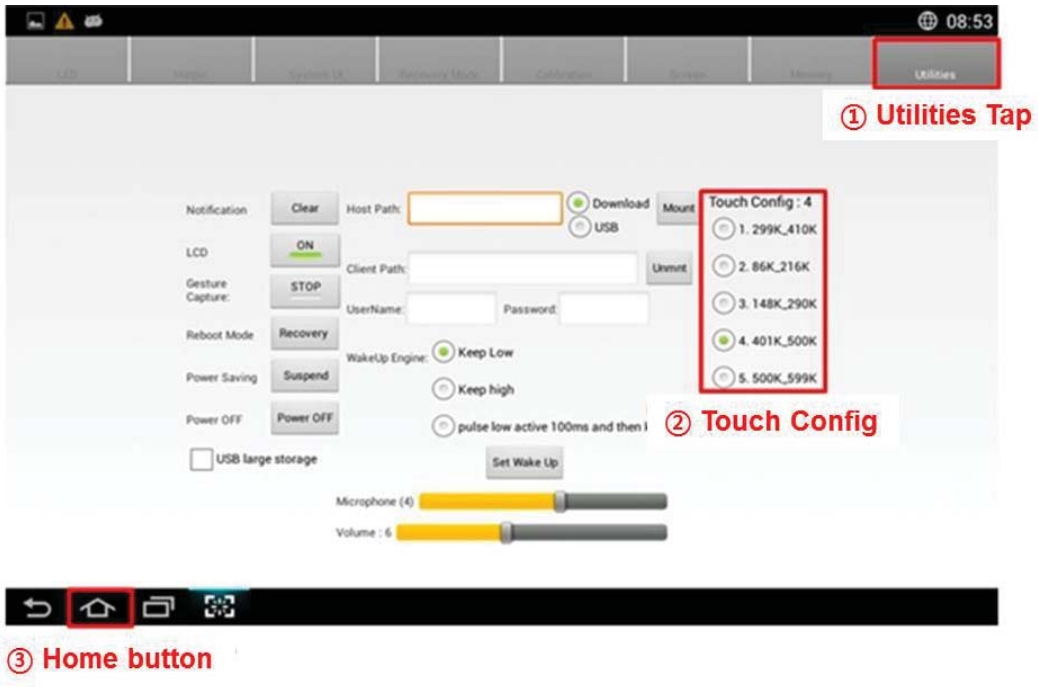
– Press and hold inside of the window area, avoiding the **Cancel** and **Turn Off** buttons, until the password window displays.



– Enter **8378** and press **Done**.



– Select **Utilities**.



– Change the **Touch Config** value:

  - After changing **Touch Config** value, select **Home**.
  - Priority: 1.(default) → 4. 401K_500K → 5. 500K_599K → 3. 148K_290K → 2. 86K_216K

– Check the touch operation.

  - If the touch malfunction persists, change **Touch Config** to another value and test the touch operation again.

Home screen icon is missing or control panel is broken

Symptom

- Home screen icon is missing or the control panel screen is broken.

Cause

- UI software error.

Troubleshooting

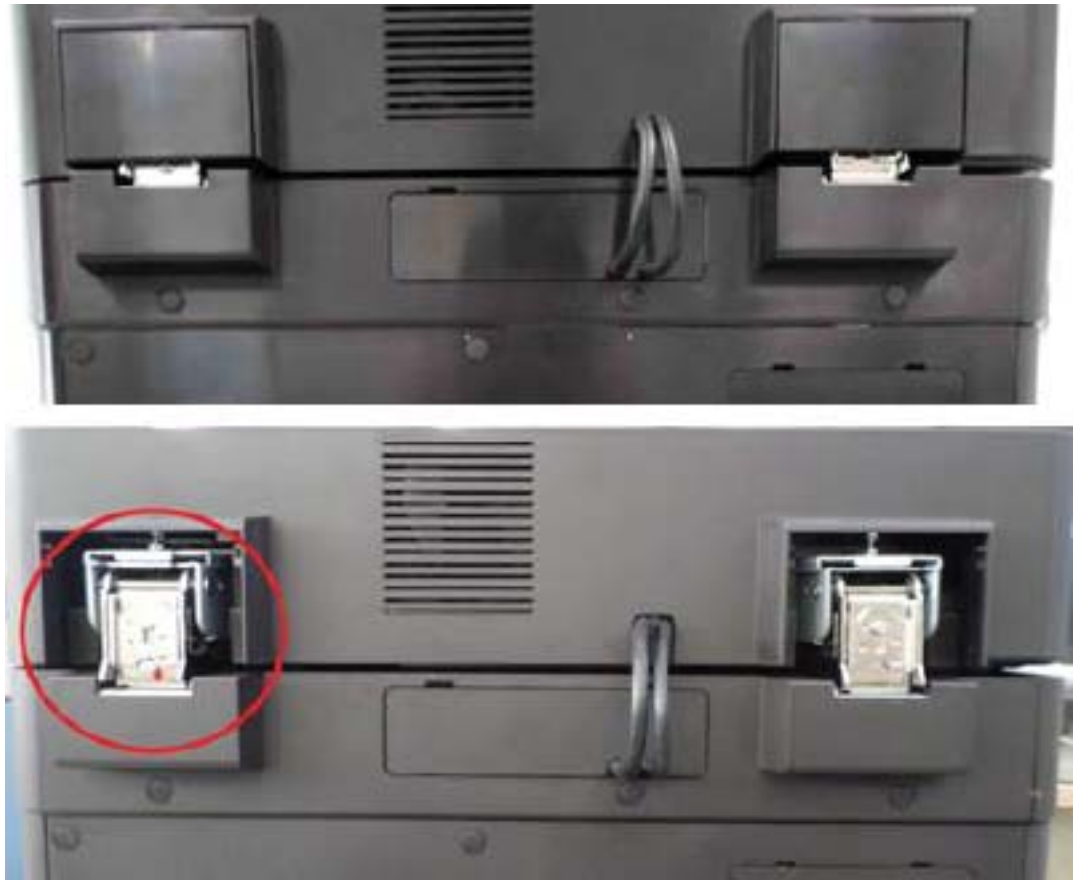
- Enter service mode.
- Execute **Main Memory Clear** (**Service Functions > Main Memory Clear**)

Adjusting the Flow ADF skew

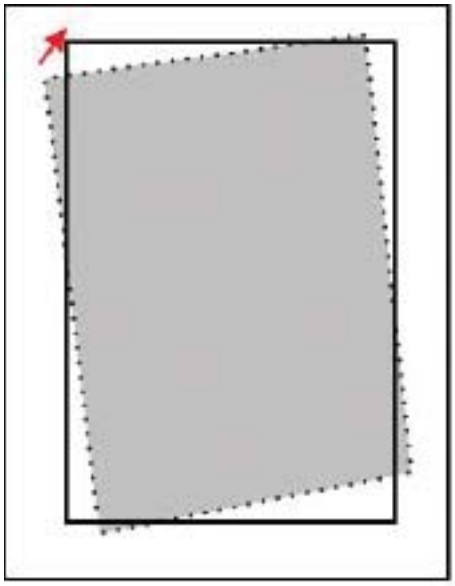
1. Open the Flow ADF. Loosen the two screws securing both hinges.



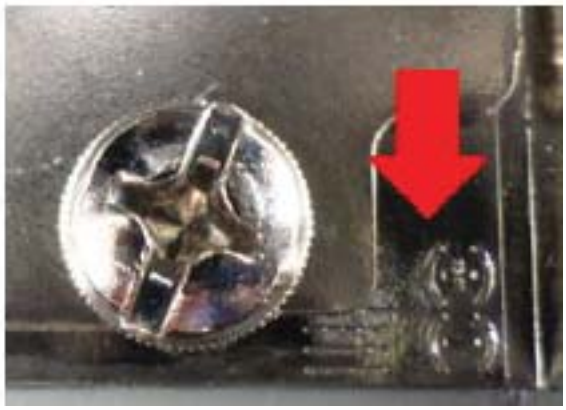
2. Adjust the position of the Flow ADF hinge according to the skew status.



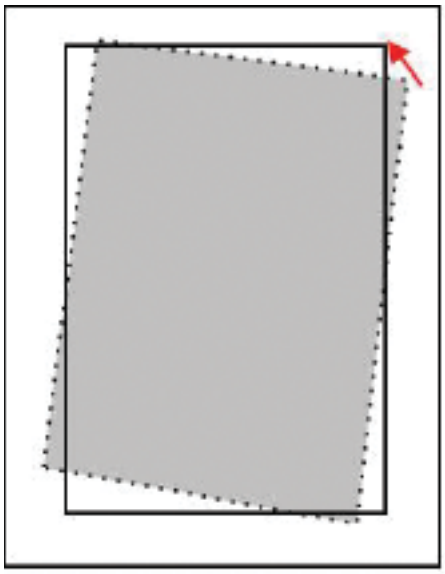
a. If the skew image is similar to the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)



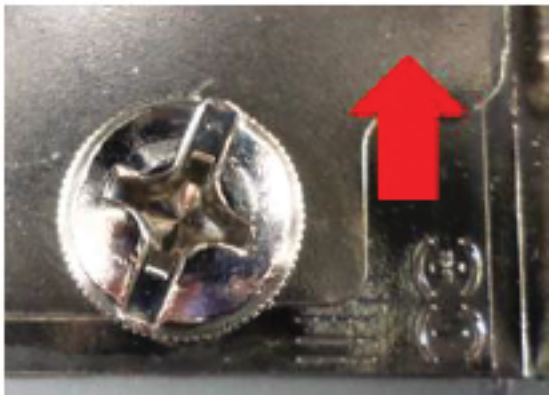




b. If the skew image is like the following example, adjust the hinge unit in the direction of the arrow. (1 scale = >1.0 mm skew adjustment)







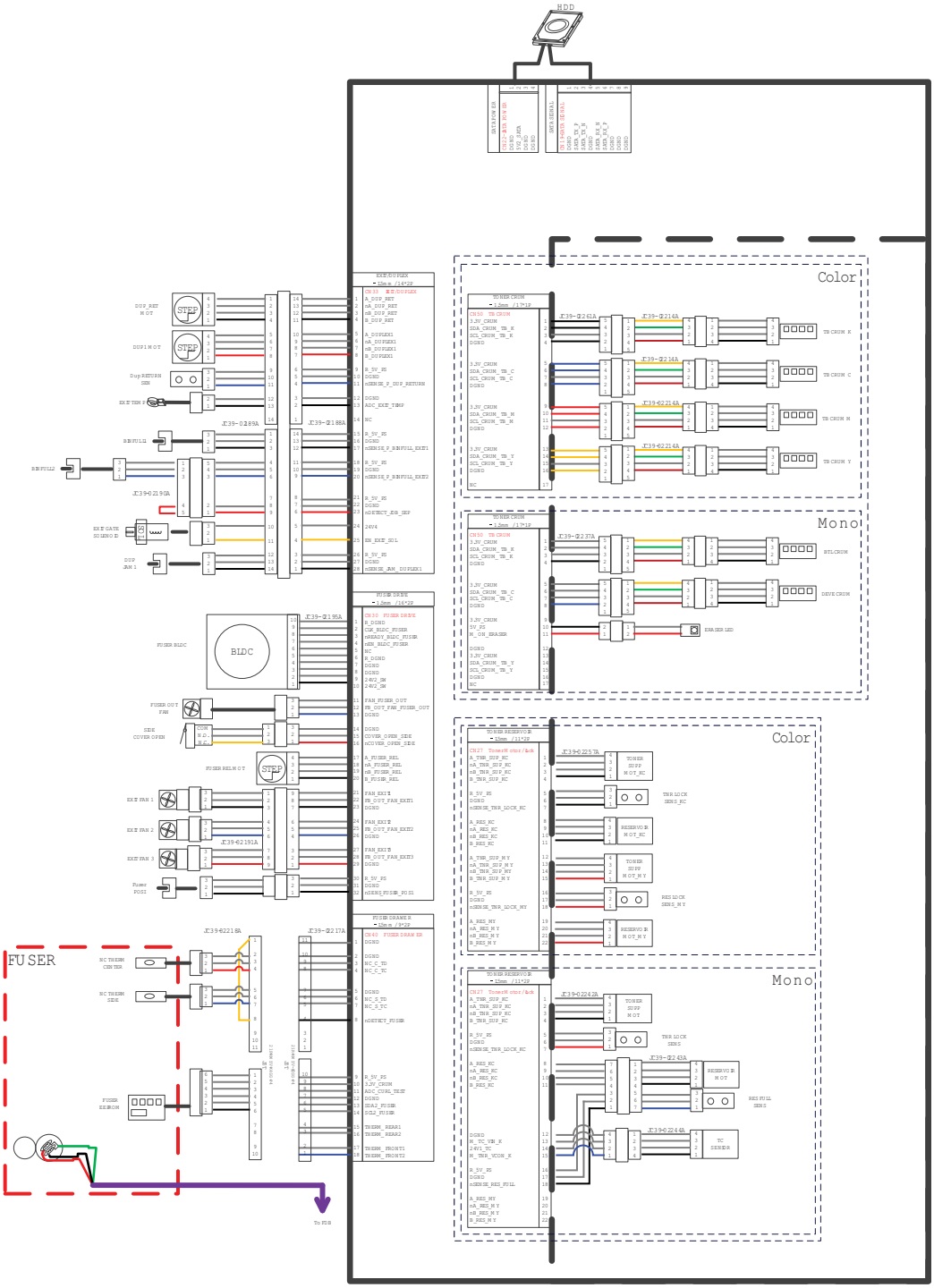
3. Detach the Flow ADF sponge after adjusting the skew. Place the Flow ADF sponge on the scanner glass. Close the Flow ADF unit to attach the sponge.



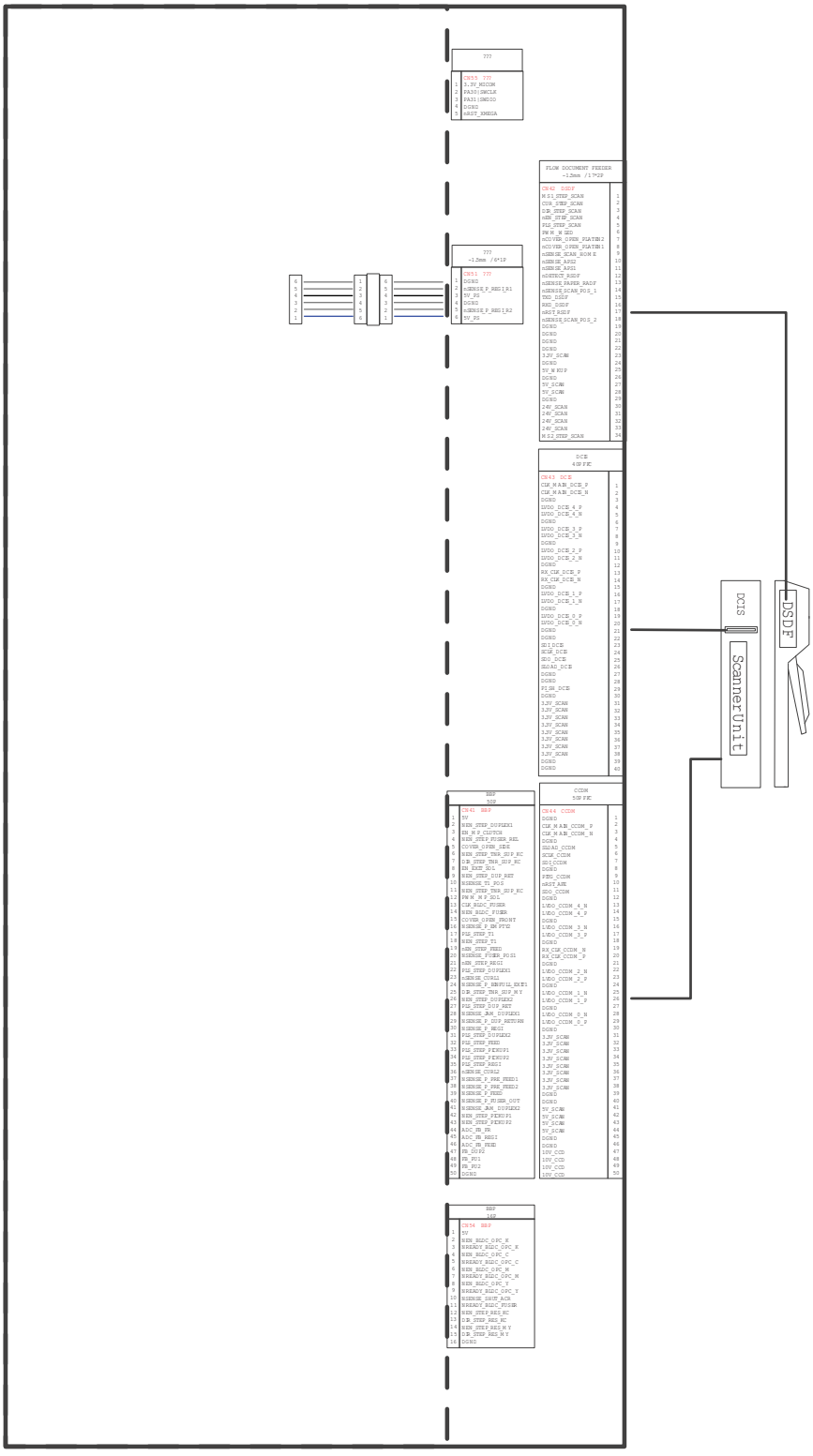
6 Diagrams

- Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER)
- Connection Diagram (Scanner)
- Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB)
- Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup)
- Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock)
- Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB)

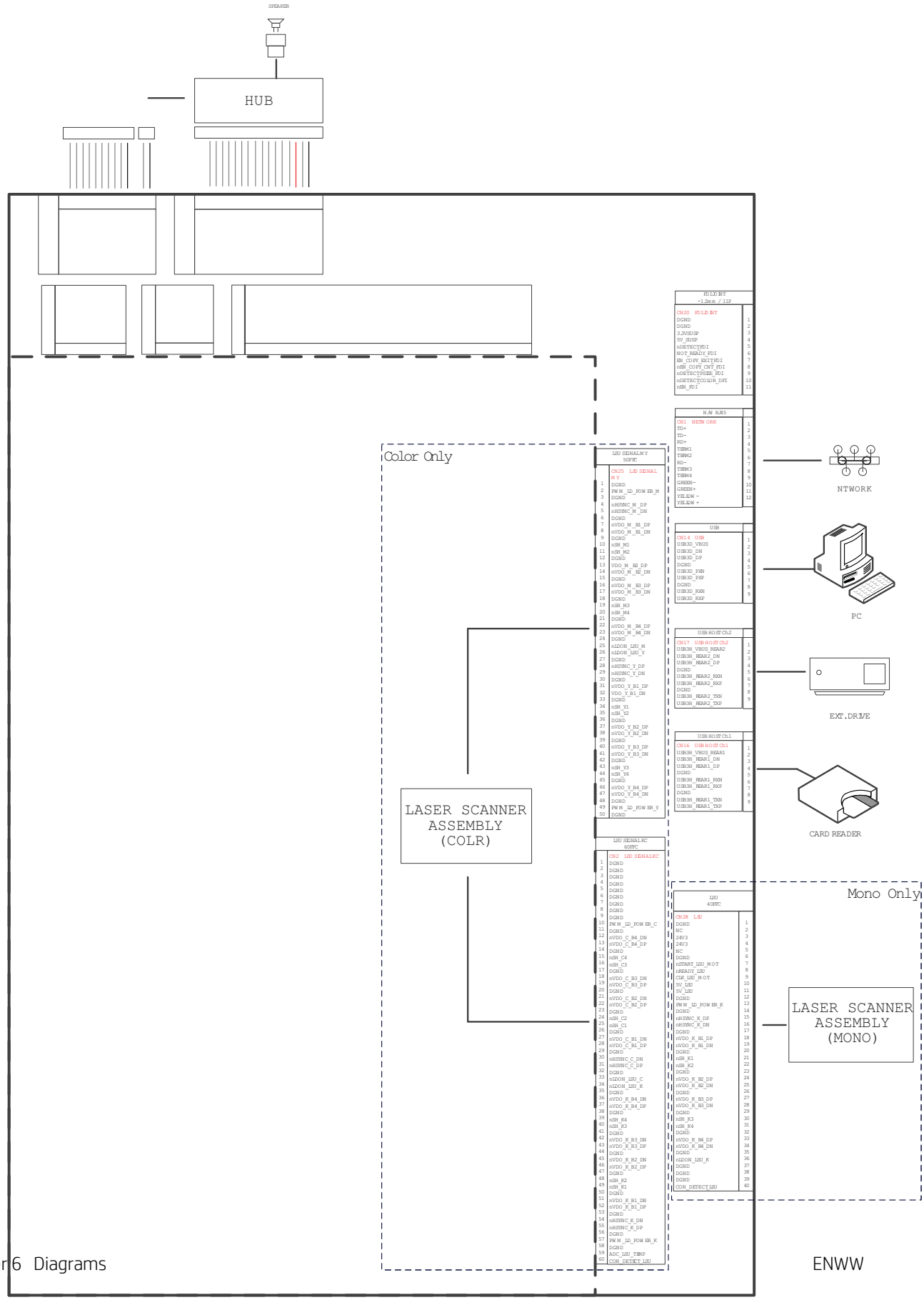
Connection Diagram (FUSER/EXIT/DUPLEX/TONER)



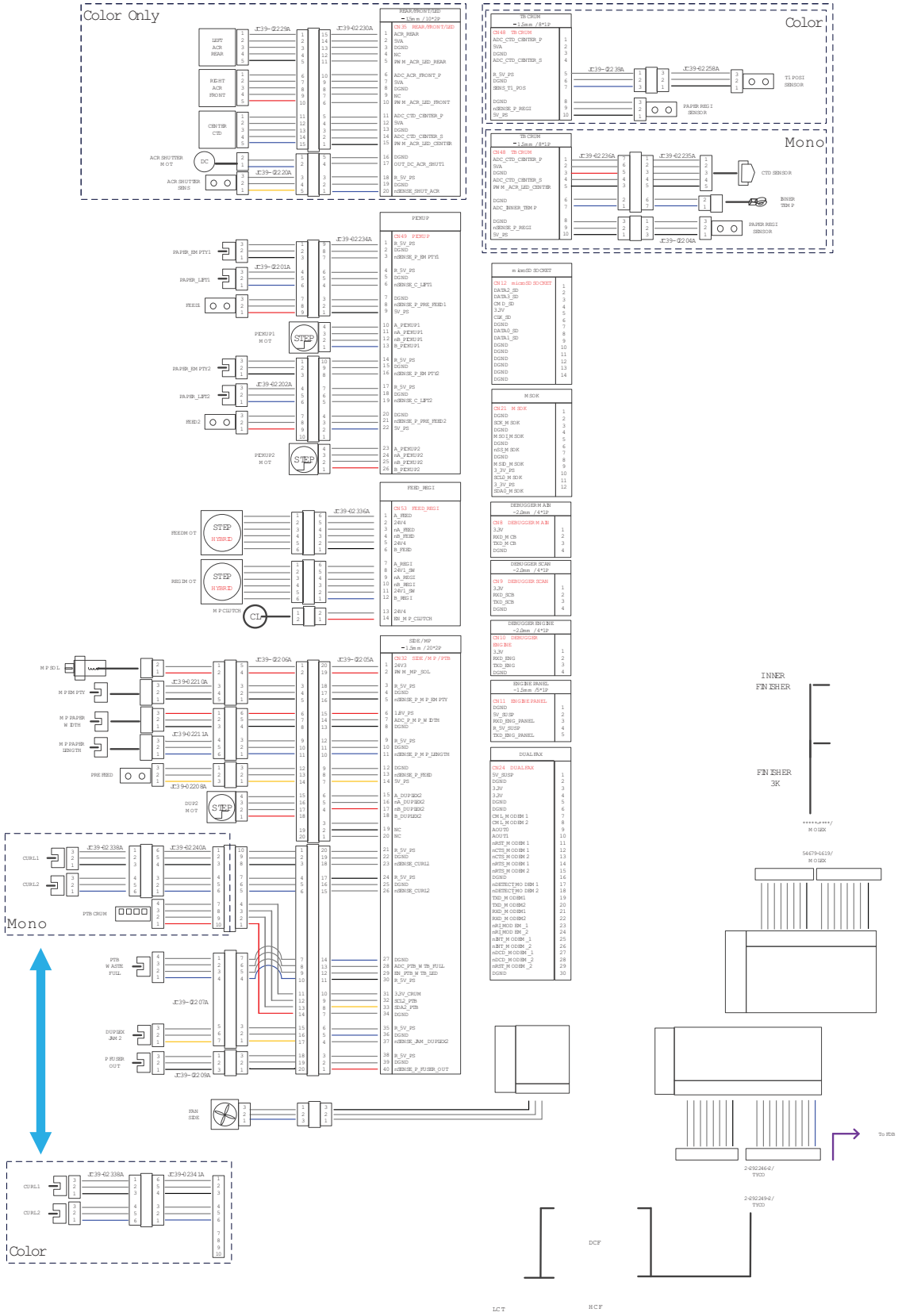
Connection Diagram (Scanner)



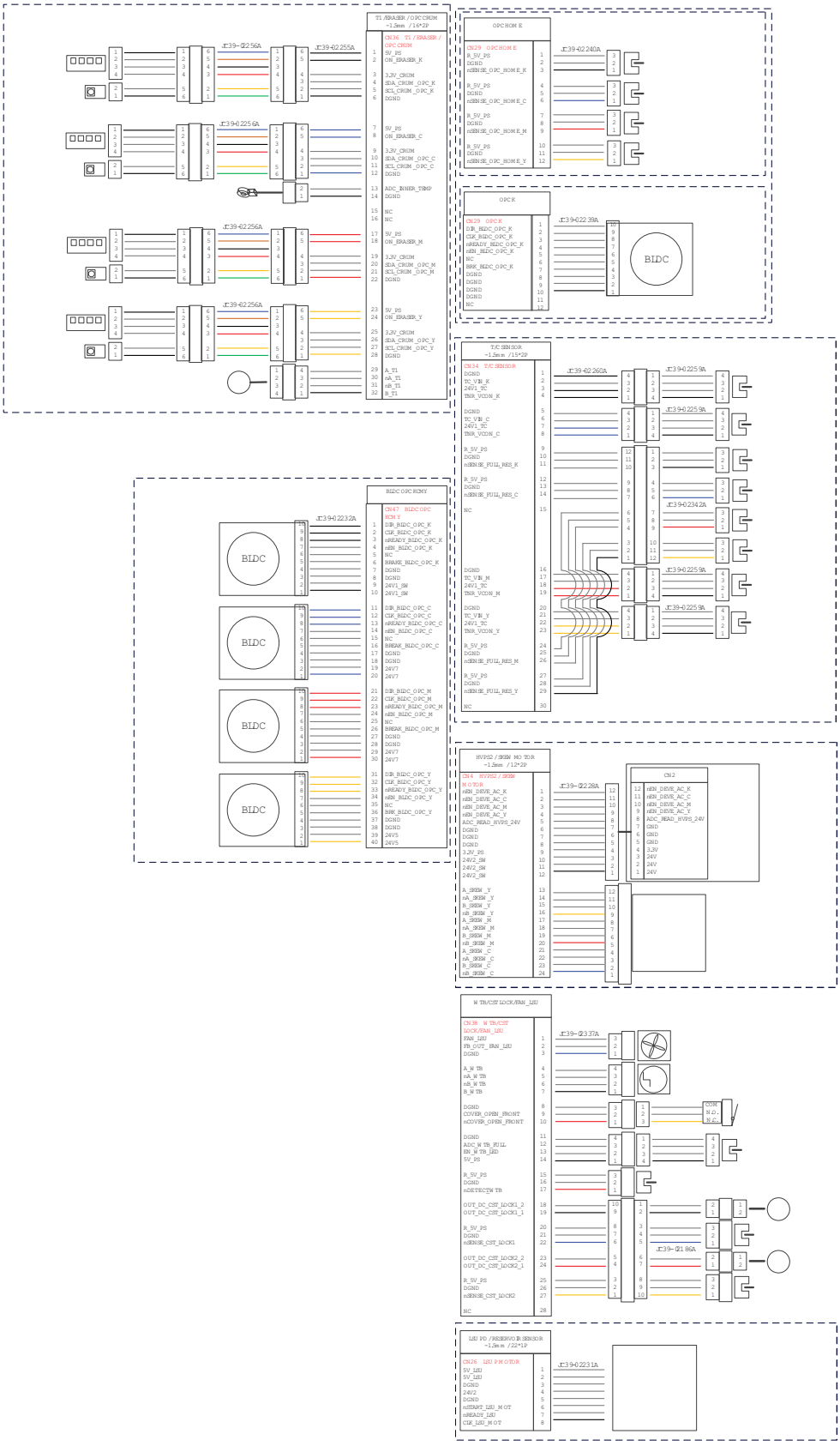
Connection Diagram (Laser Scanner Assembly/OPE/USB)



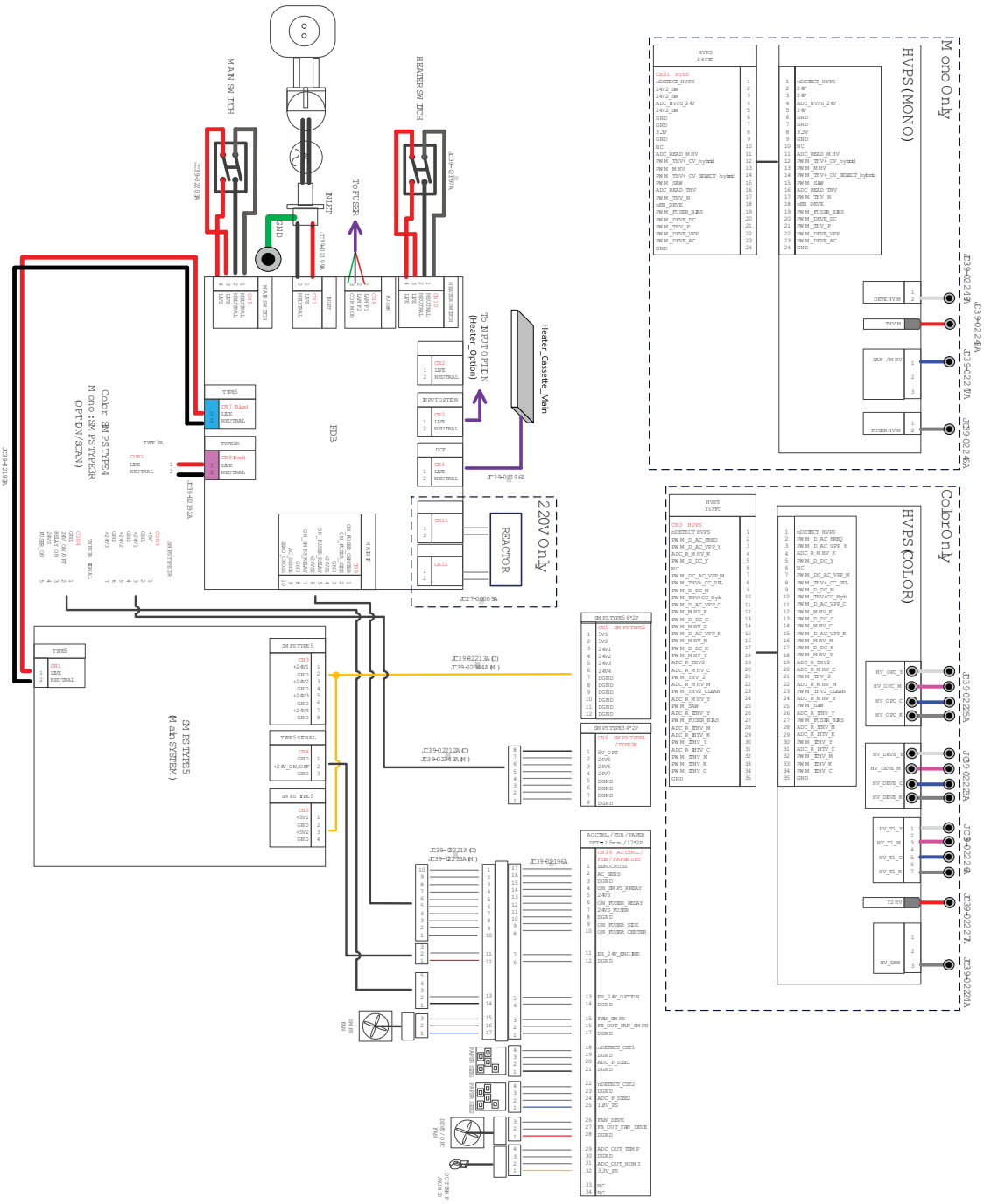
Connection Diagram (Side/MP/Feed/Registration/Pickup)



Connection Diagram (OPC/WTB/CST Lock)



Connection Diagram (HVPS/LVPS/FDB)



7 3,250-sheet Stapling Finisher/2,250-sheet Booklet Finisher

- Precautions
- Product specification and description
- Service approach
- Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)
- Problem solving
- Finisher system diagram

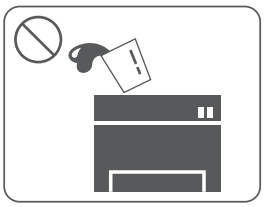
Precautions

Caution for safety

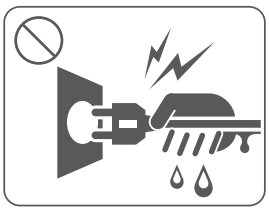
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

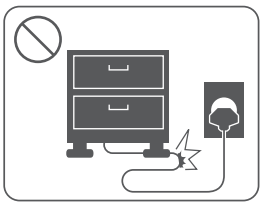
1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.



5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.

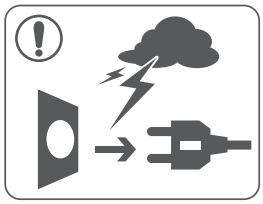


6. Use caution when connecting or disconnecting the power cable.
7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

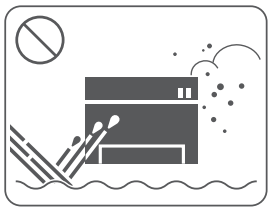


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the printer or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

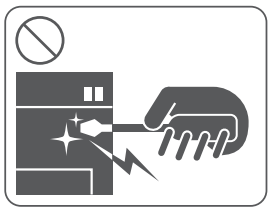


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the printer near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the LVPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.

2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.

3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.

4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.

5. Do not place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

   The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.



2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.



4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Product specification and description

Finisher system

Finisher sectional view

Sensor location

Figure 7-1 Sensor locations

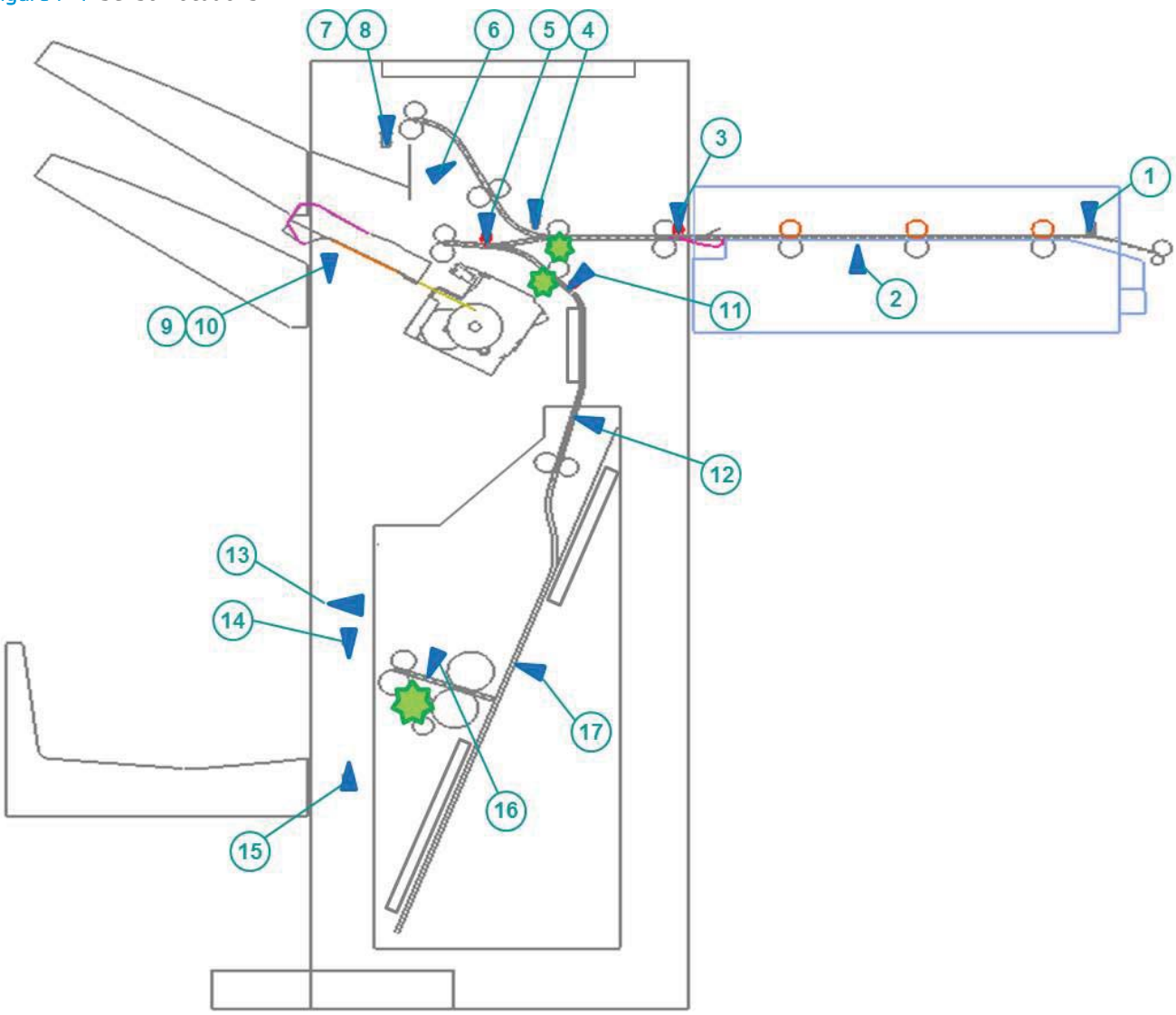


Table 7-1 Sensor locations

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	IPTU Entrance Sensor	10	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
2	IPTU Output Sensor	11	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
3	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor	12	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
4	Diverter Home Sensor	13	Stacker Full Sensor

Table 7-1 Sensor locations (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
5	Feed Main Output Sensor	14	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
6	Feed Top Output Sensor	15	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
7	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)	16	Fold Output Paper Sensor
8	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)	17	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
9	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)		

Roller location

Figure 7-2 Roller location

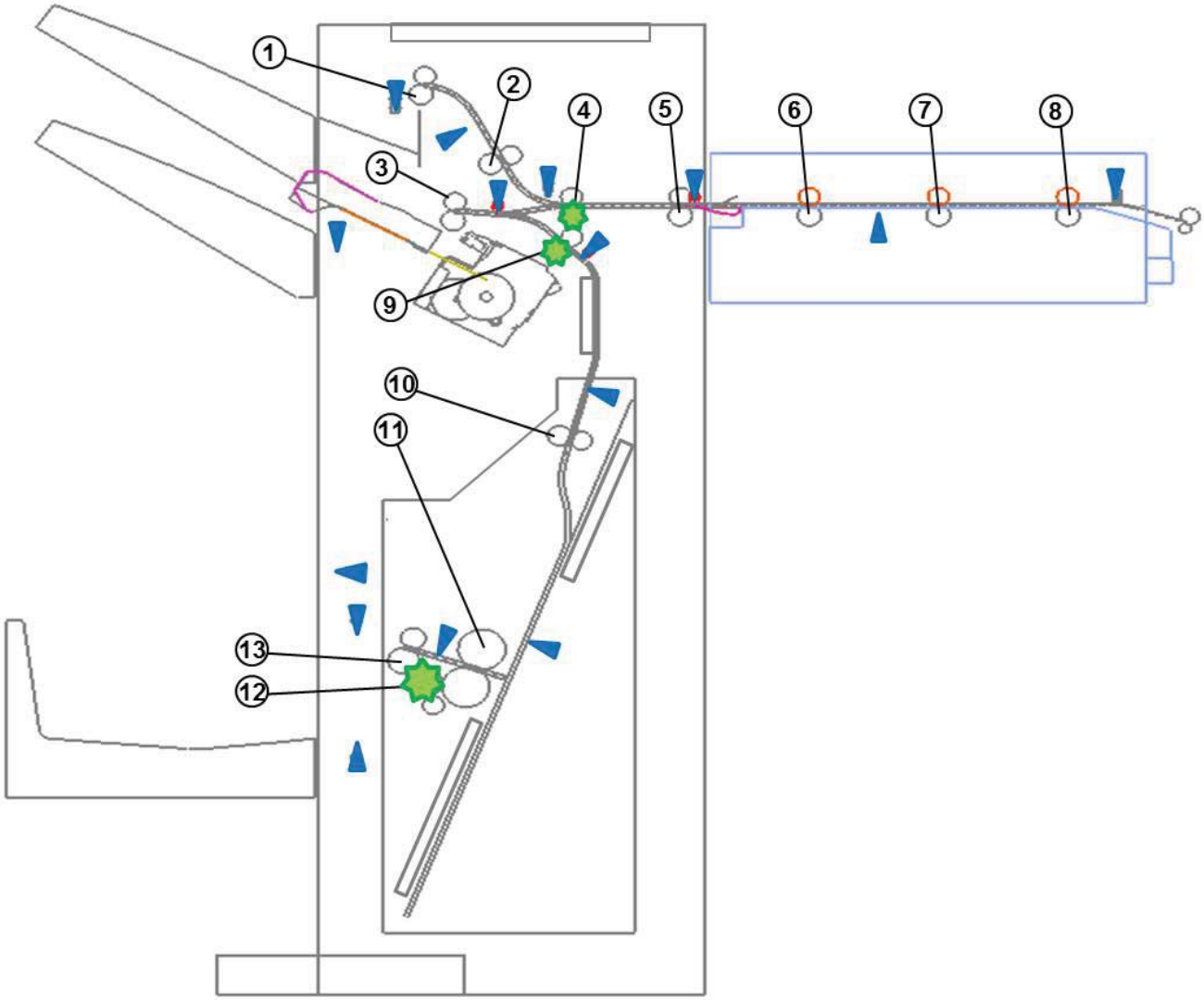


Table 7-2 Roller location

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Output Roller	8	TB Entrance Roller

Table 7-2 Roller location (continued)

Item	Name	Item	Name
2	Top Middle Roller	9	Feed Buffer Output Roller
3	Finisher Compile Output Roller	10	BM Compile Output Roller
4	Middle Roller	11	BM Folding Roller
5	Entrance Roller	12	BM C-Folding Roller
6	TB Output Roller	13	BM Folding Output Roller
7	TB Middle Roller		

Jam removal guide

Figure 7-3 Jam removal guide

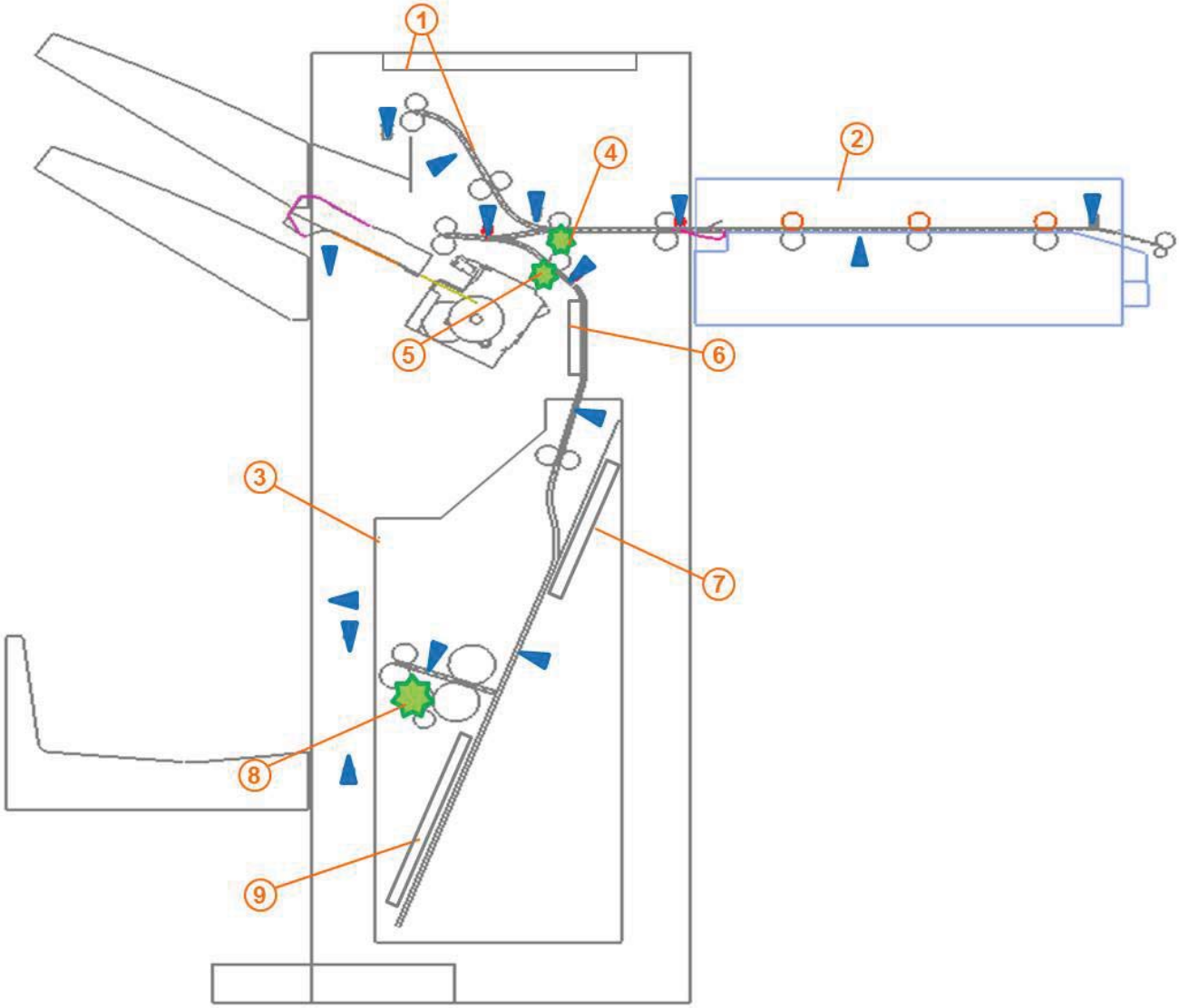


Table 7-3 Jam removal guide

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Top Door Guide	6	SD Jam Clear Cover
2	IPTU Door	7	Booklet Feed Jam Clear Cover
3	Booklet Module	8	BM C-Folding Roller Knob
4	Middle Roller Knob	9	Booklet Lower Feed Jam Clear Cover
5	Feed Buffer Output Roller Knob		

Paper path

Figure 7-4 Paper path

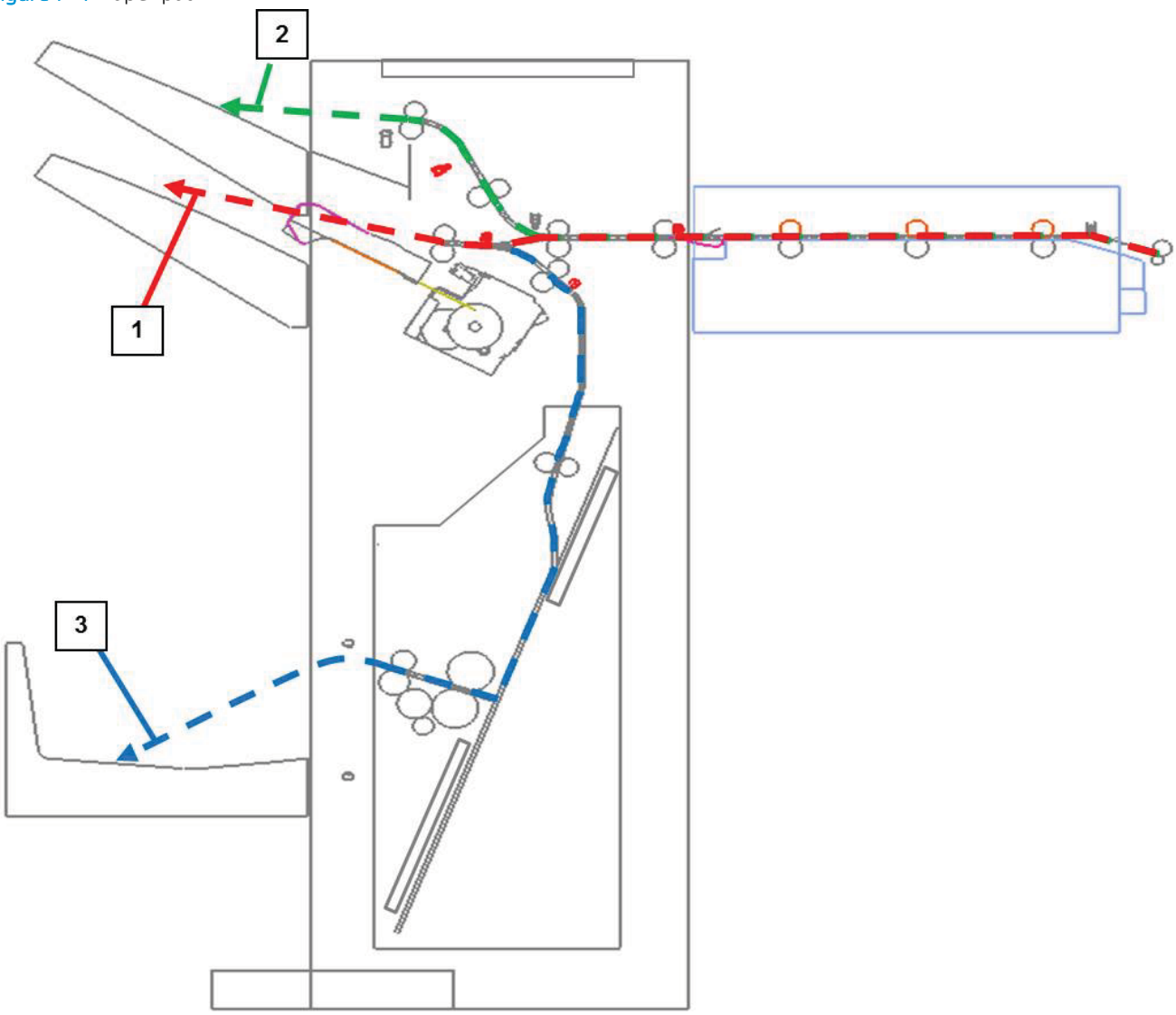


Table 7-4 Paper path

Item	Name
1	Finisher Main Tray - Staple & Punch (Optional)
2	Finisher Top Tray - Punch (Optional)
3	Booklet Tray – Folding & Staple

Electrical parts layout

Finisher and booklet module

Figure 7-5 Electrical parts layout (1 of 2)

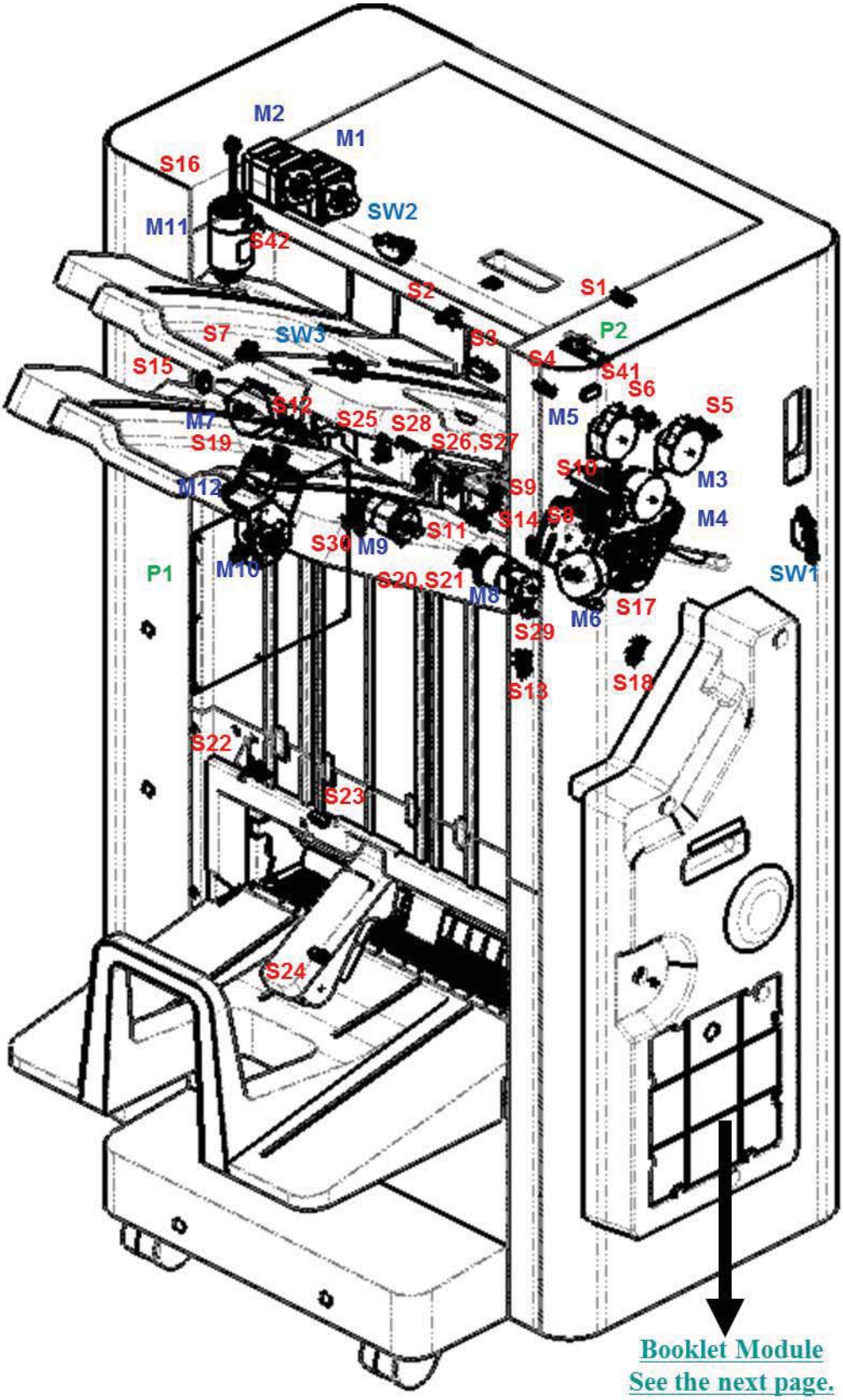


Figure 7-6 Electrical parts layout (2 of 2)

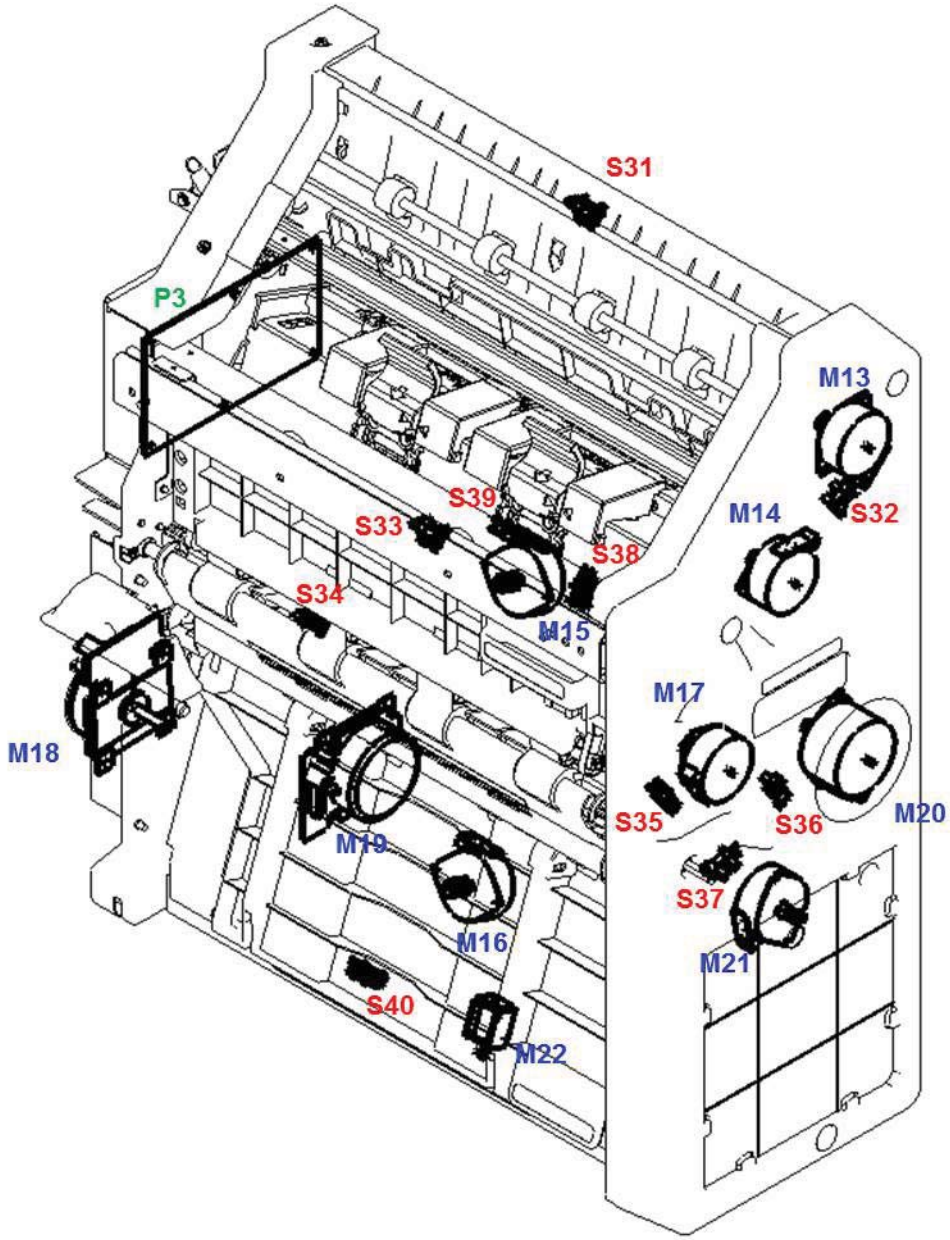


Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S1		Sensor-RP A	Feed Entrance Paper Sensor
S2		Photo Sensor	Feed Top Output Sensor
S3		Sensor-RP A	Feed Main Output Sensor
S4		Sensor-RP A	Feed Buffer Output Sensor
S5		Photo Sensor	Diverter Home Sensor
S6		Photo Sensor	Buffer Home Sensor
S7		Photo Sensor	Rear Tamper Home Sensor

Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S8		Photo Sensor	Front Tamper Home Sensor
S9		AS-Sensor	EF Home Sensor
S10		Photo Sensor	Main Paddle Home Sensor
S11		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Front Level Sensor
S12		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Rear Level Sensor
S13		Photo Sensor	SCU Home Sensor
S14		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Detector)
S15		AS-Sensor	Main Tray Upper Level Sensor (Emitter)
S16		Photo Sensor	Main Tray Encoder Sensor
S17		Photo Sensor	Offline Staple Position Sensor
S18		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Offline Sensor
S19		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Home Sensor
S20		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Rear Sensor
S21		Photo Sensor	Stapler Move Mid-Front Sensor
S22		Photo Sensor	Stacker Full Sensor
S23		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Detector)
S24		AS-Sensor	Booklet Tray Paper Sensor (Emitter)
S25		Photo Sensor	Grip Home Sensor
S26		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Home Sensor
S27		Photo Sensor	PE EJT Away Sensor
S28		Sensor-RP A	Compile Paper Sensor
S29		Photo Sensor	GE Encoder Sensor
S30		Photo Sensor	PE Encoder Sensor
S31		Photo Sensor	Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
S32		Photo Sensor	TE Presser Home Sensor
S33		Photo Sensor	Blade Home Sensor
S34		Sensor-RP A	Fold Output Paper Sensor
S35		Photo Sensor	Separate Pawl Home Sensor
S36		Photo Sensor	Guide Home Sensor
S37		Photo Sensor	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor
S38		Photo Sensor	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor
S39		Sensor-RP A	Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
S40		Photo Sensor	Stopper Home Sensor

Table 7-5 Electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S41		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Detector)
S42		AS-Sensor	Sub Tray Full Sensor (Emitter)
SW1		Micro Switch	Front Door I/L Switch
SW2		Micro Switch	Top Door I/L Switch
SW3		Micro Switch	Stacker Upper Limit Switch
P1		3K Main PCA	Finisher Main PCA
P2		Switch PCA	Offline Staple OP PCA
P3		Booklet PCA	Booklet Main PCA
M1		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Entrance Motor
M2		Assembly, HB Motor	Feed Output Motor
M3		Assembly, PM Motor	Buffer Motor
M4		Assembly, PM Motor	End Fence Motor
M5		Assembly, PM Motor	Main Paddle Motor
M6		Assembly, PM Motor	Front Tamper Motor
M7		Assembly, PM Motor	Rear Tamper Motor
M8		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Grip-Eject Motor
M9		AS-Motor DC Ejector	Pre-Eject Motor
M10		Assembly, PM Motor	SCU Motor
M11		Assembly, 3657 DC Motor	Main Tray Moving Motor
M12		Assembly, HB Motor	Stapler Move Motor
M13		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor
M14		Assembly, PM Motor	TE Presser Motor
M15		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Tamper Motor
M16		Assembly, PM Motor	Stopper Moving Motor
M17		Assembly, PM Motor	Separate Pawl Motor
M18		Motor BLDC-Main	Folding Roller Motor
M19		Motor BLDC-Main	Blade Motor
M20		Assembly, PM Motor	C Fold Motor
M21		Assembly, PM Motor	Booklet Paddle Motor
M22		Solenoid	Stopper Solenoid

IPTU

Figure 7-7 IPTU

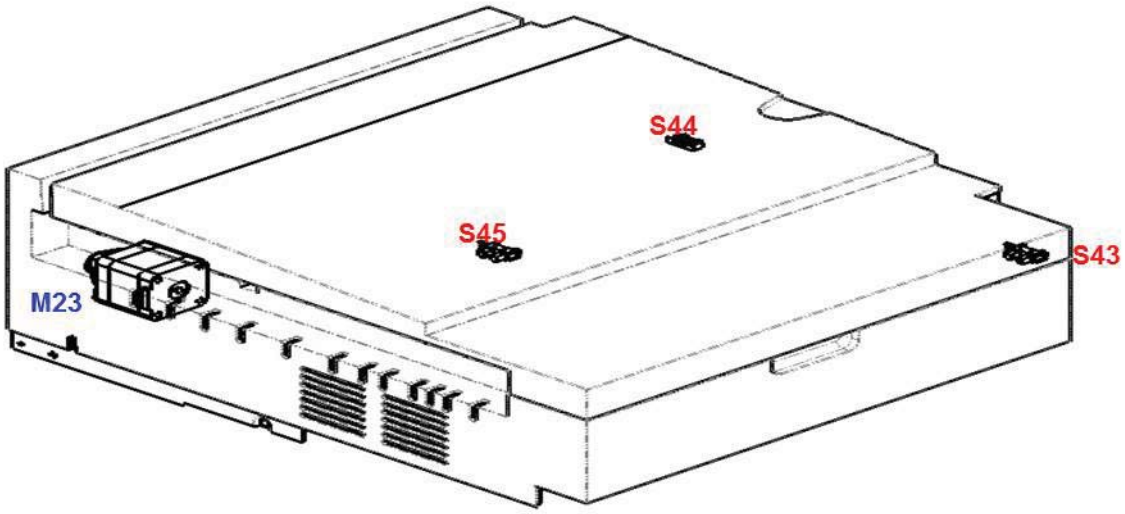


Table 7-6 IPTU

Item	Part code	Description	Function
M23		Assembly, HB Motor	IPTU Feed Motor
S43		Photo Sensor	IPTU Door Sensor
S44		Sensor-RP A	IPTU Entrance Sensor
S45		Photo Sensor	IPTU Output Sensor

Punch unit

Figure 7-8 Punch unit

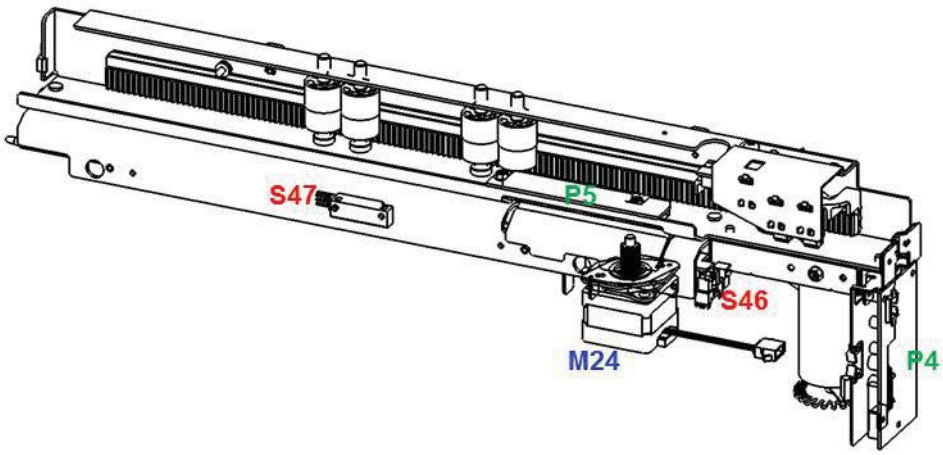


Table 7-7 Punch unit

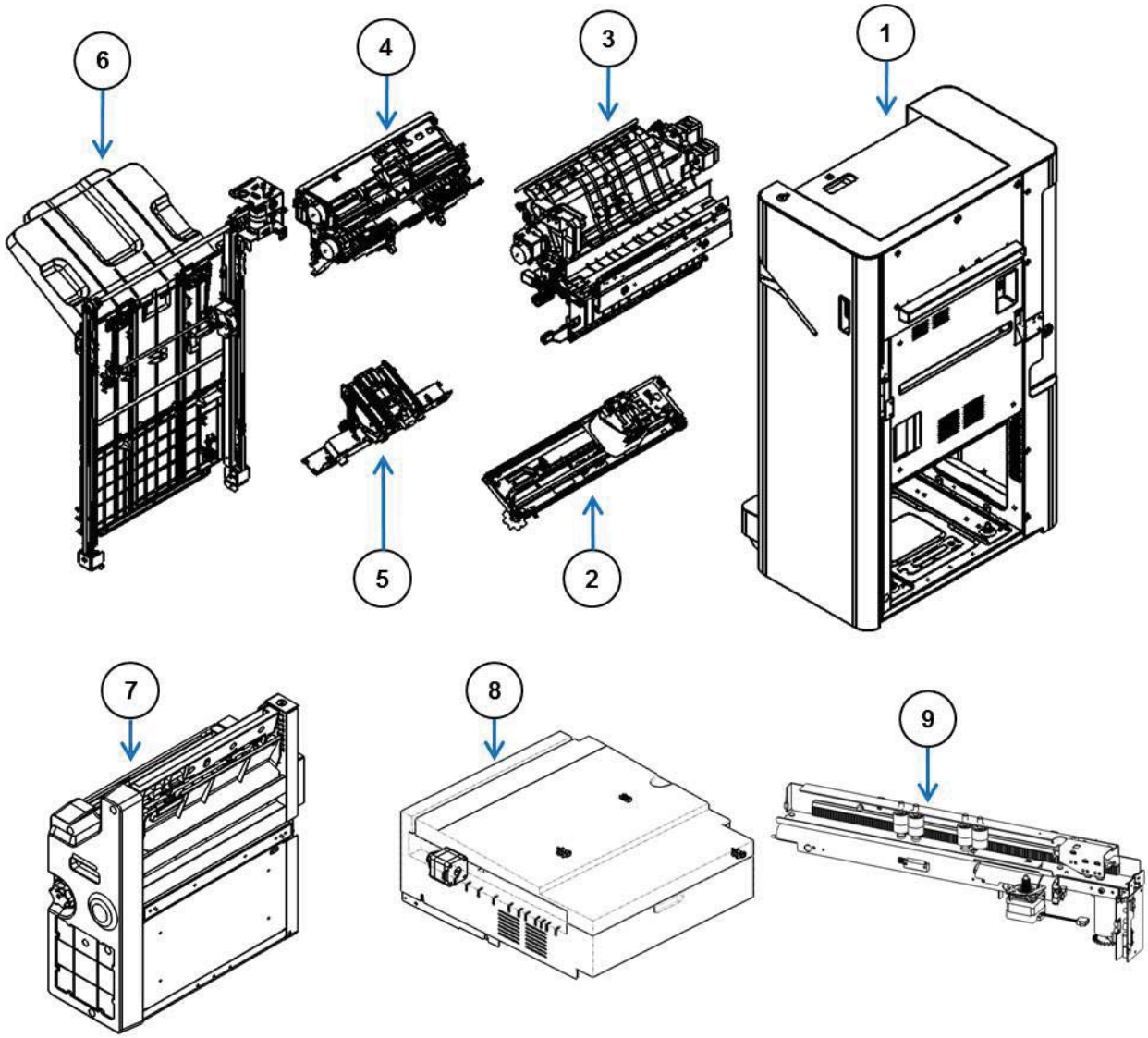
Item	Part code	Description	Function
M24		AS-HB Motor	Punch Scan Motor

Table 7-7 Punch unit (continued)

Item	Part code	Description	Function
S46		AS-Sensor	Punch Scan Home Motor
S47		AS-Sensor	Hole Punch Hopper Sensor
P4		AS-PCB Punch	Punch PCA
P5		AS-PCB Punch Sensor	Punch Scan Sensor PCA

Each unit functions

Figure 7-9



Item	Unit	Function
1	Frame unit	Finisher main frame and exterior.
2	Stapler unit	Device used for putting staples in to sheets of paper.

(continued)

Item	Unit	Function
3	Feed unit	Transports the paper to the compile and eject unit.
4	Compile unit	Compiles the paper.
5	Eject unit	Transports the stacked paper to the tray.
6	Stacker unit	Stacks the stapled papers on the tray.
7	Booklet unit	Folds paper, completes stapling jobs, and transports paper to the tray.
8	IPTU	Transports the paper from the main machine to the finisher entrance.
9	Punch unit	Device used for punching on the paper.

PCA connection information

Finisher PCA

Figure 7-10 Finisher PCA

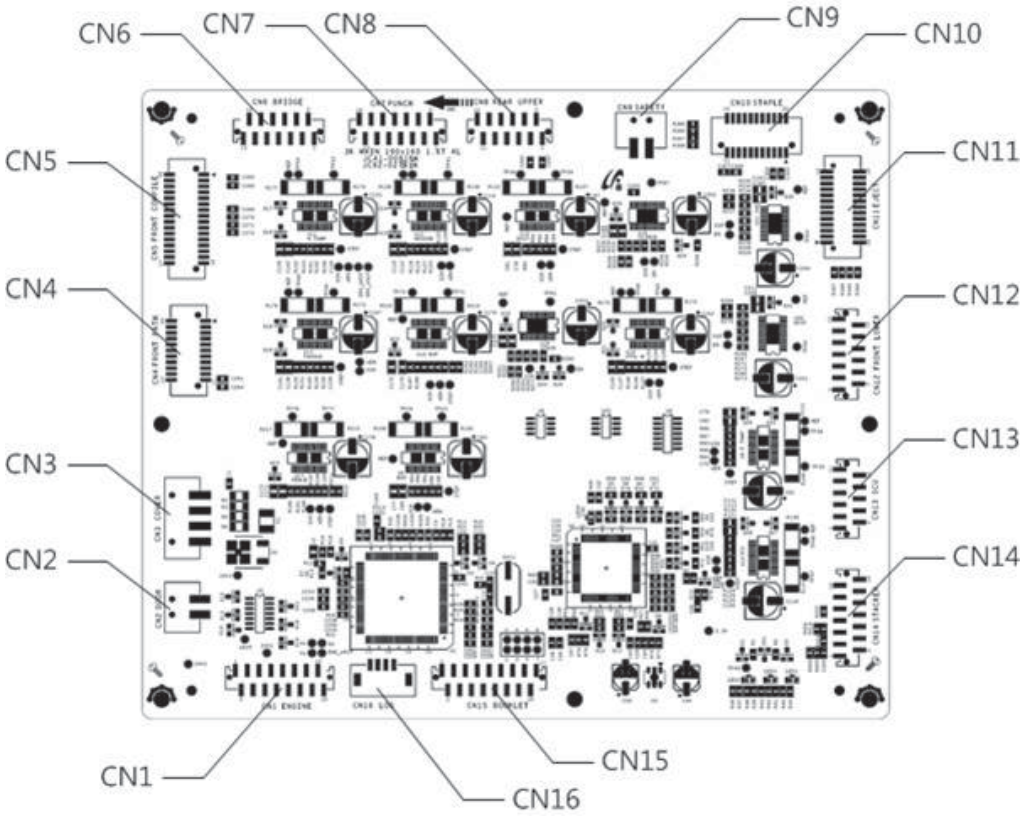


Table 7-9 Finisher PCA

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN1	PSU, ENGINE INTERFACE	CN9	SAFETY SWITCH
CN2	FRONT DOOR SWITCH	CN10	STAPLER

Table 7-9 Finisher PCA (continued)

CN No.	Connection	CN No.	Connection
CN3	TOP DOOR SWITCH	CN11	EJECTOR
CN4	FRONT PATH	CN12	FRONT LOWER
CN5	FRONT COMPILE	CN13	SCU
CN6	IPTU	CN14	STACKER
CN7	PUNCH	CN15	BOOKLET
CN8	REAR UPPER	CN16	LOG

Switch PCA

Figure 7-11 Switch PCA



Table 7-10 Switch PCA

CN No.	Connection
CN1	Offline Staple LED and Button

Booklet maker PCA

Figure 7-12 Booklet maker PCA



CN No.	Connection
CN1	Finisher interface
CN3	Log

CN No.	Connection
CN4	Stapler/Feed Booklet Entrance Sensor
CN5	Booklet Feed Entrance Motor/TE Presser Motor
CN6	Blade Home Sensor/Booklet Tamper Home Sensor/ Booklet Compile Paper Sensor
CN7	Booklet Paddle Motor/Separate Pawl Motor
CN8	Fold Output Paper Sensor/Guide Home Sensor/C Fold Motor
CN9	Stopper Solenoid/Stopper Moving Motor
CN10	Folding Roller Motor/Blade Motor

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA

- Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.

- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
  - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
  - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Removal and replacement procedures (stapler/stacker and booklet finishers)

- Top output bin
- Right top cover
- Top cover
- Front door
- Rear cover
- Front cover
- Front lower cover
- Booklet tray
- Caster cover
- Lower shield assembly
- Upper shield assembly
- Controller PCA
- Stapler unit
- Dummy feed guide
- Top jam access cover
- Top lower feed assembly
- Ejector unit
- Front tamper unit
- Rear tamper unit
- Feed entrance motor (M1)
- Feed exit motor (M2)
- Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
- Front tamper motor (M6)
- Rear tamper motor (M7)
- SCU motor (M10)
- Main tray moving motor (M11)
- Booklet finisher front cover
- Booklet finisher
- Booklet finisher PCA

- Booklet finisher fold stopper unit
- Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- TE presser motor (M14)
- Stopper moving motor (M16)
- Separate pawl motor (M17)
- Folding roller motor (M18)
- Blade motor (M19)
- C fold motor (M20)

Top output bin

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the top output bin
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top output bin on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top output bin part number	
SAM-JC63-05002B	Cover, M Tray

Required tools

- No special tools are needed to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

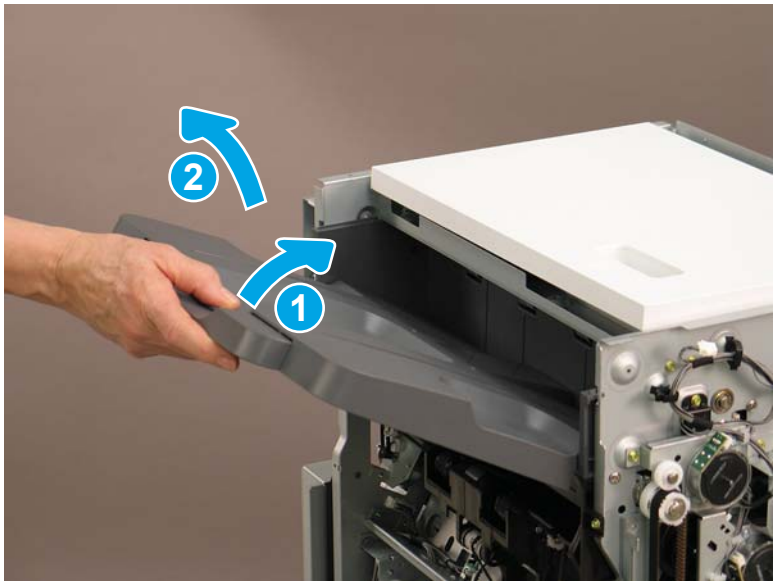
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the top output bin

▲ Raise the end of the top output bin (callout 1), and then lift it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-13 Remove the top output bin



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Right top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Right top cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01448B	Finisher sub - regist guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

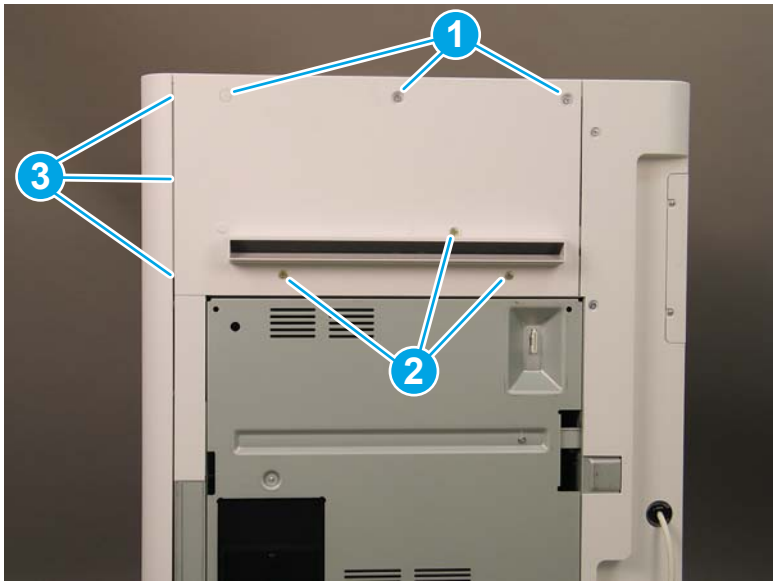
Step 1: Remove the right top cover

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-14 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top cover of the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01446B	Cover, top

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

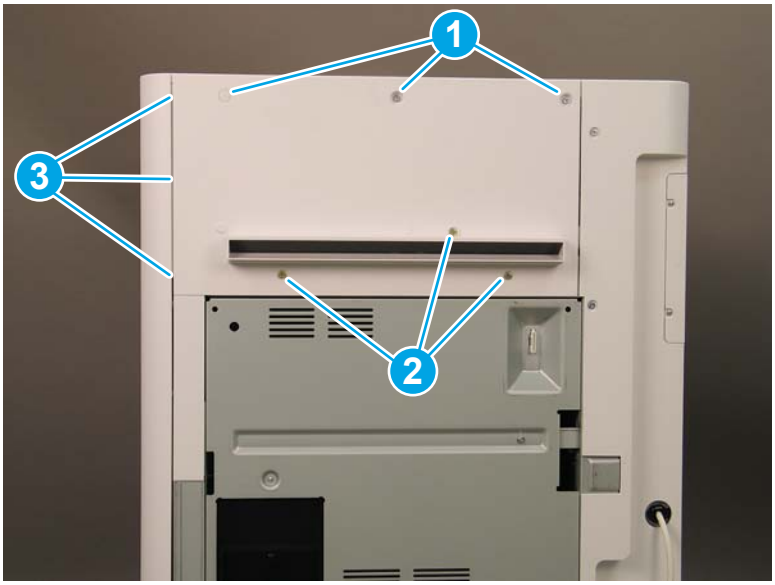
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

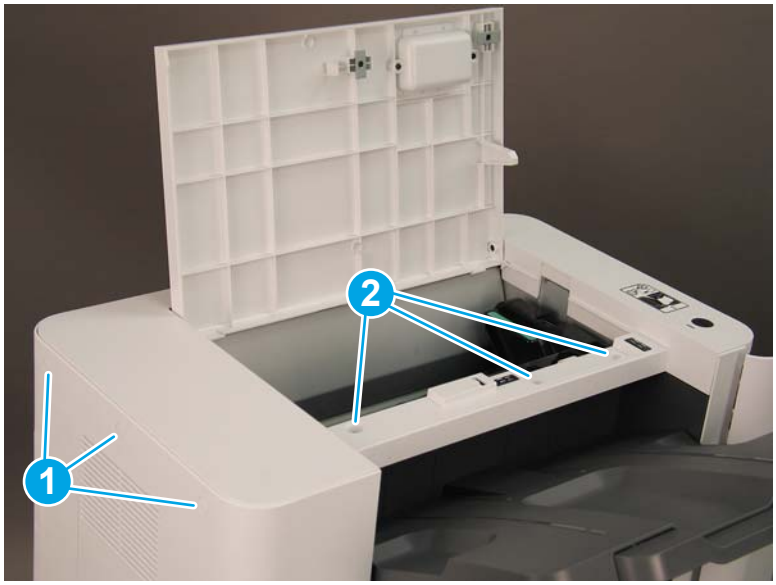
Figure 7-15 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

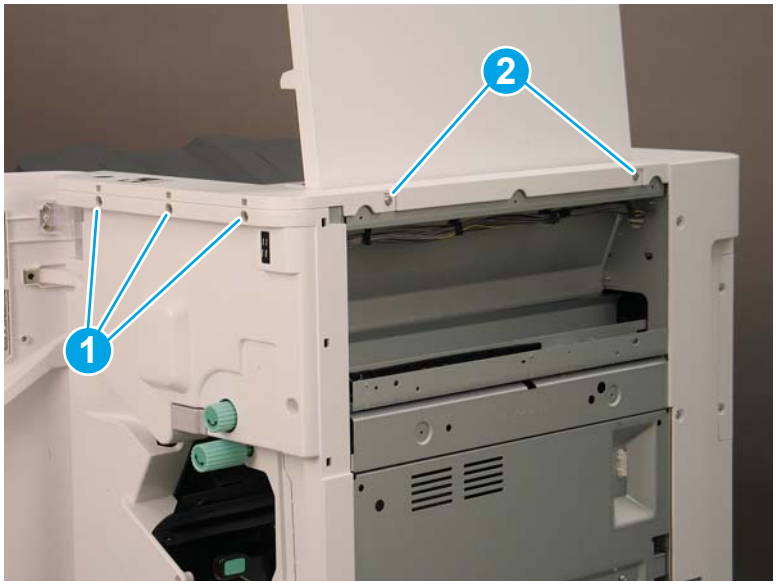
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-16 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

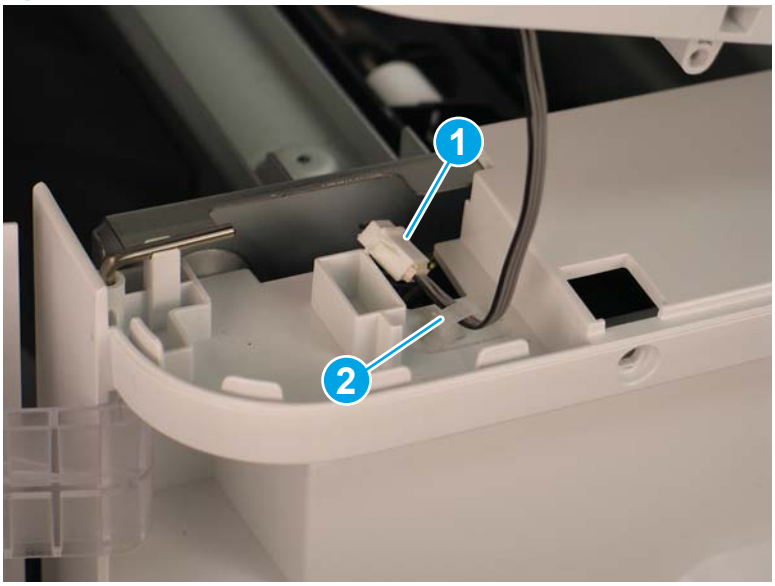
Figure 7-17 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-18 Disconnect one connector and release retainer



Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: ESD Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front door for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front door (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01444A	Finisher sub - door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

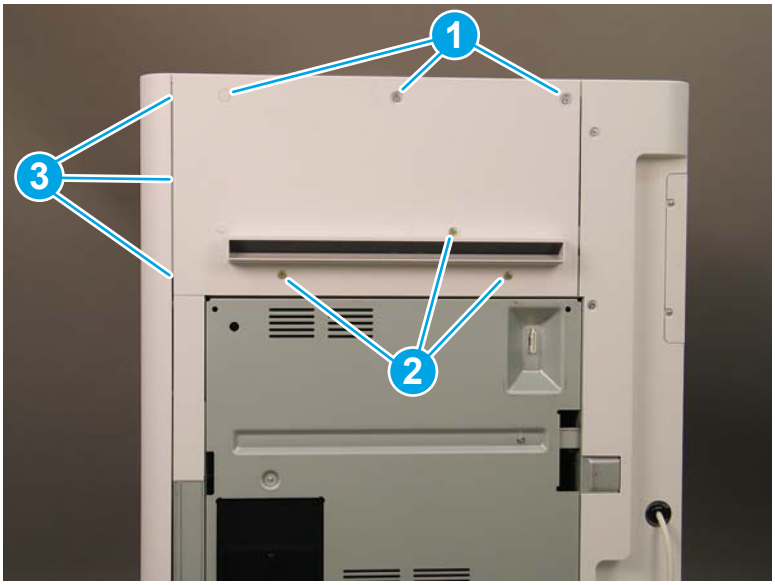
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

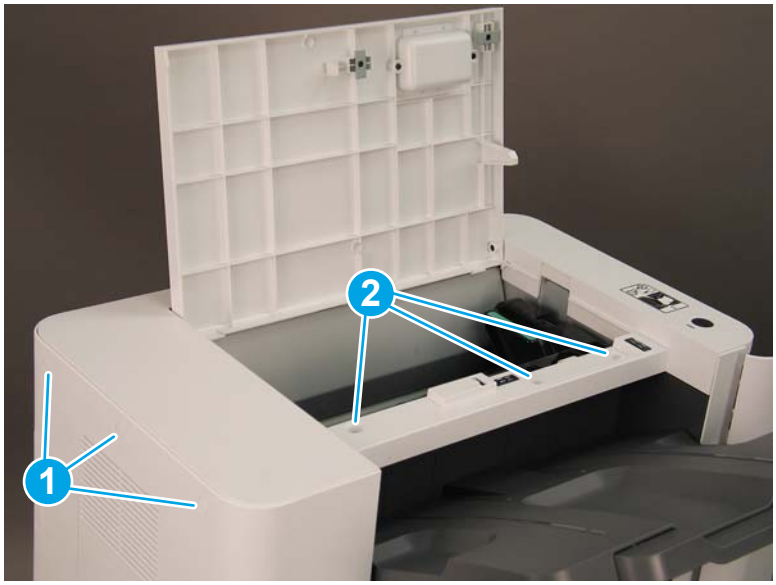
Figure 7-19 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

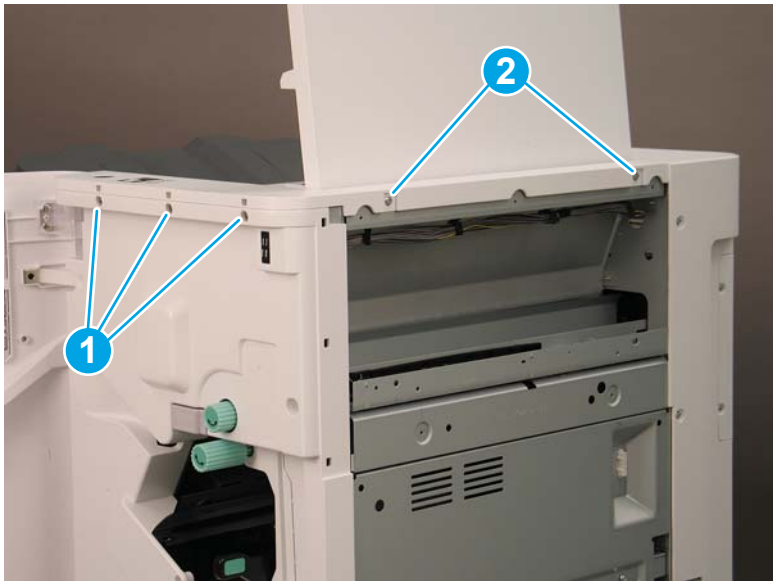
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-20 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

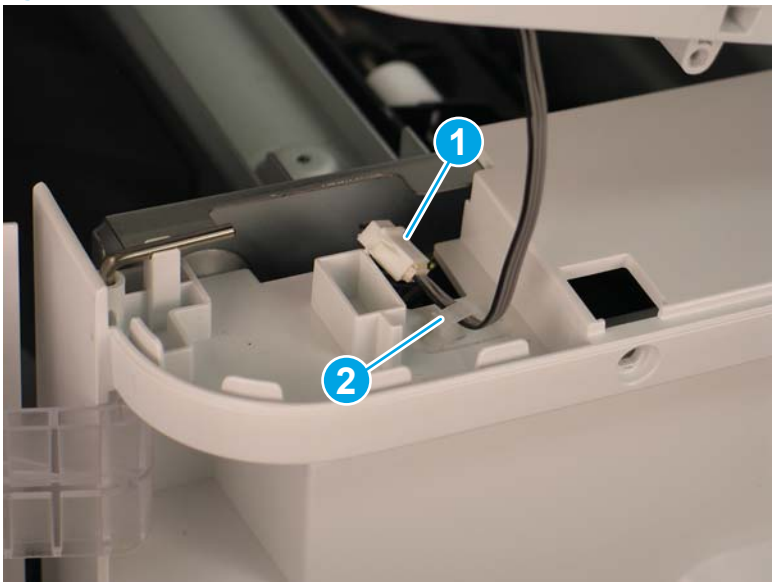
Figure 7-21 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-22 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

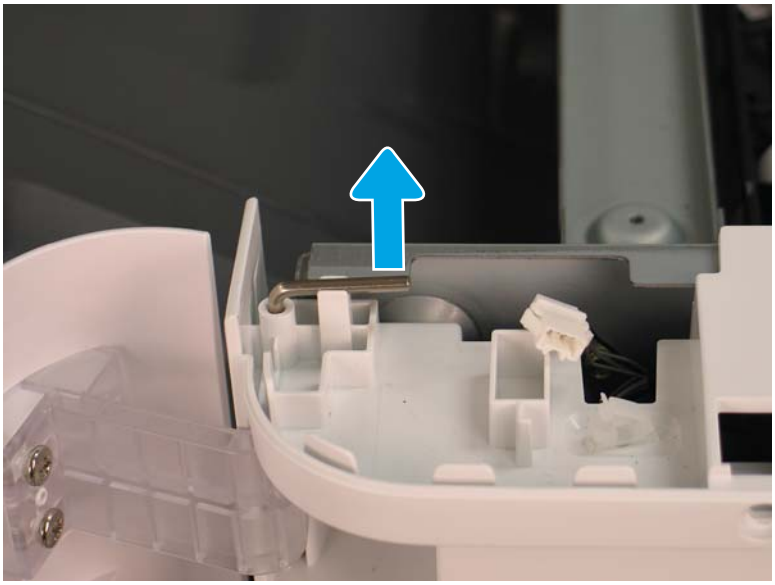


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

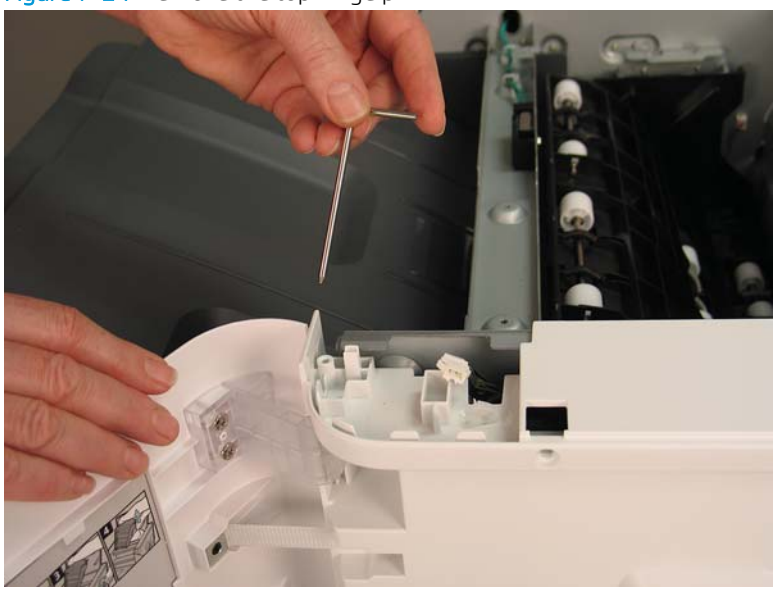
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-23 Lift the top hinge pin



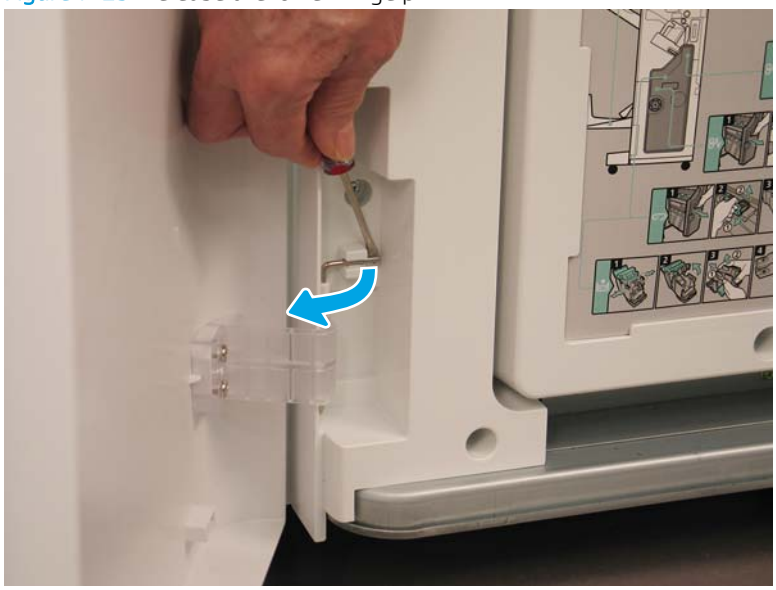
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-24 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-25 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

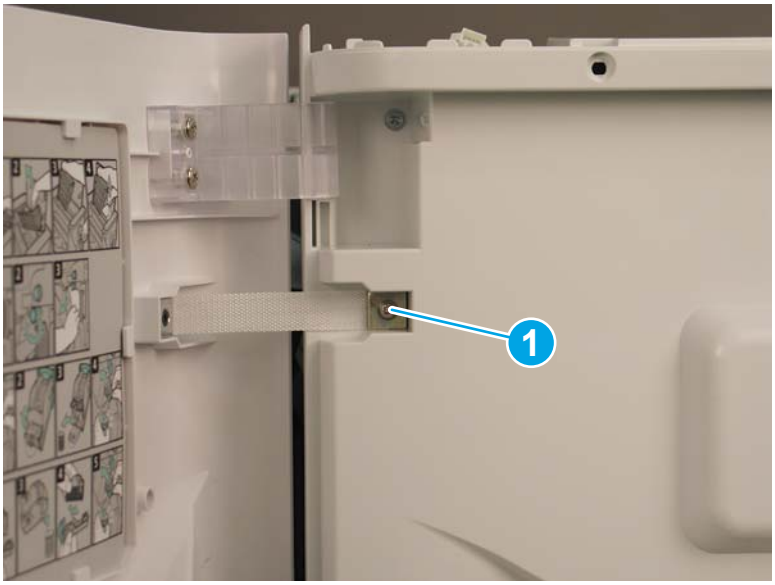
Figure 7-26 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-27 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04988B	Cover, rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

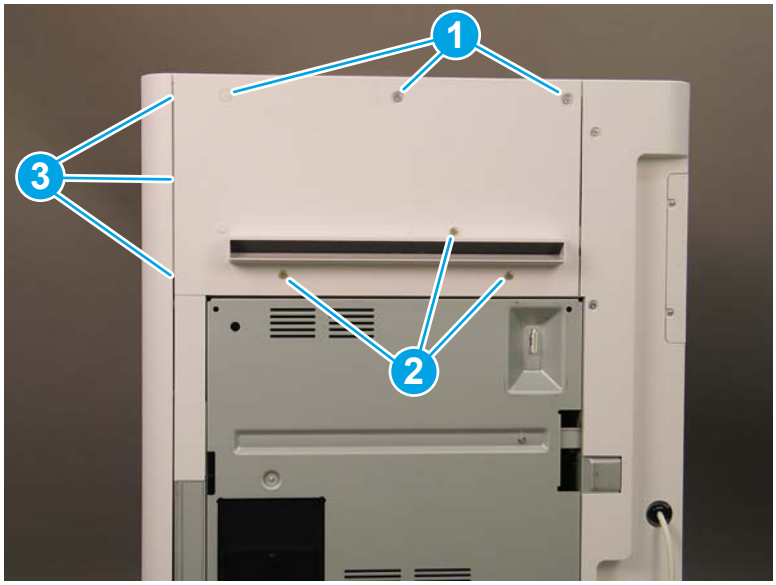
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

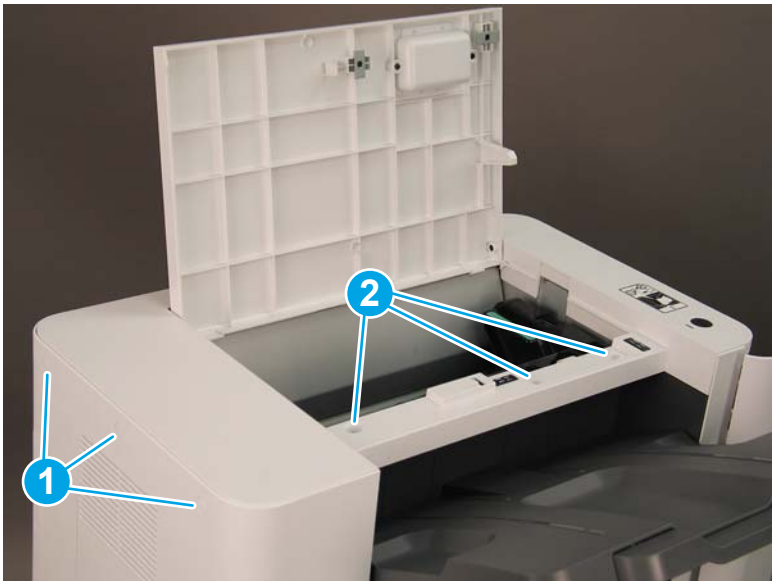
Figure 7-28 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

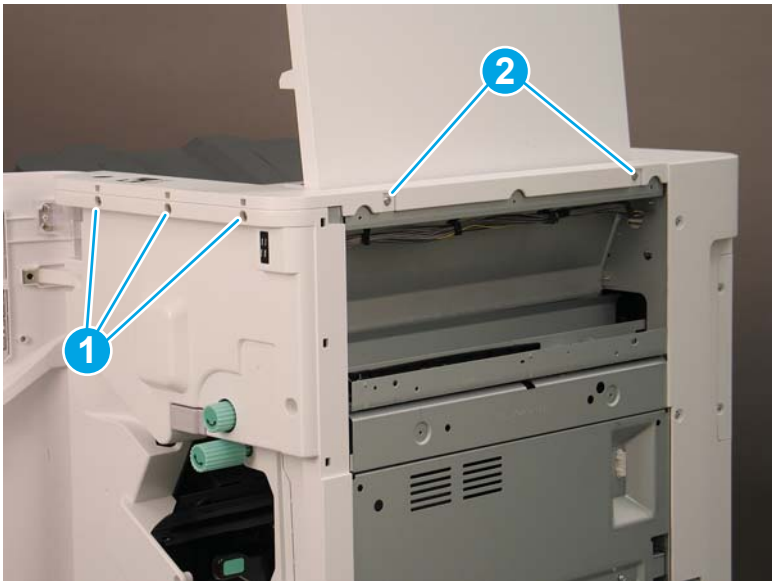
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-29 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

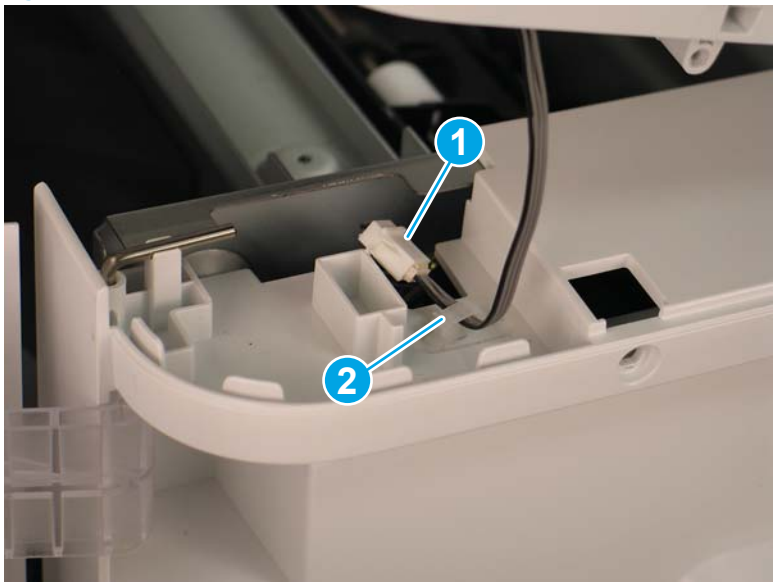
Figure 7-30 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-31 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

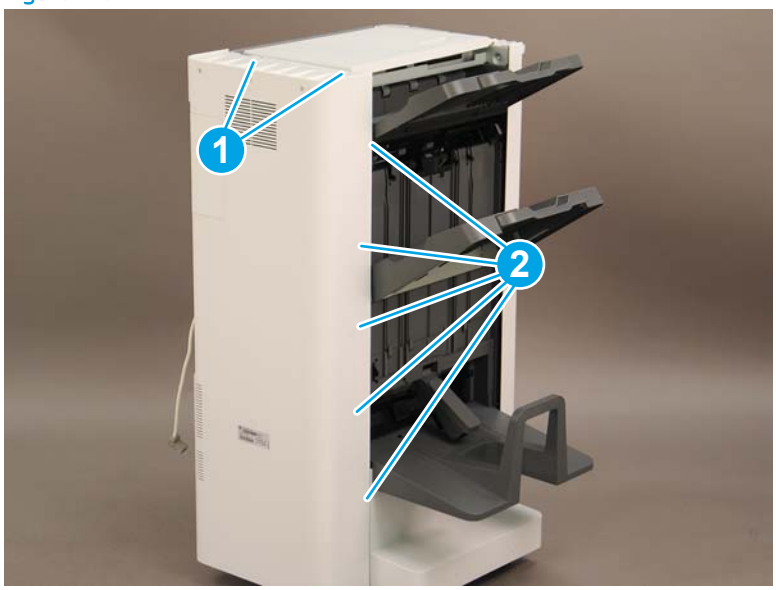


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-32 Remove seven screws

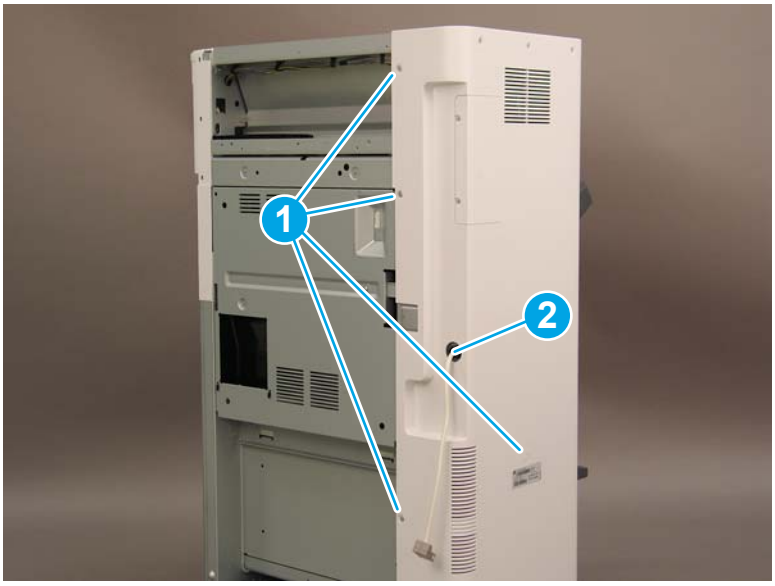


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-33 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04986B	Cover, front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

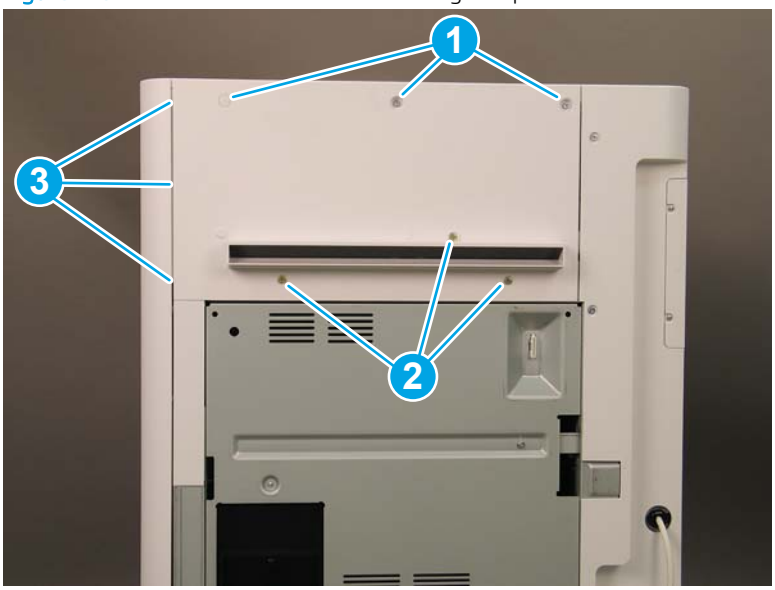
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

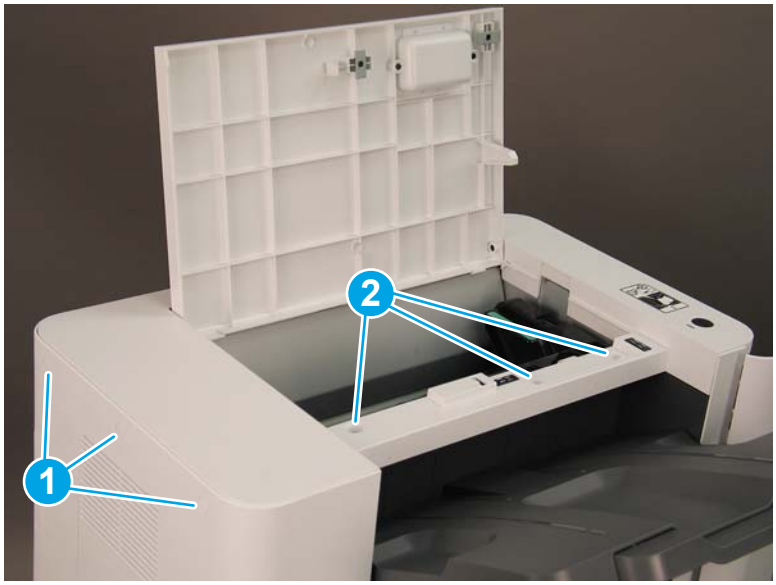
Figure 7-34 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

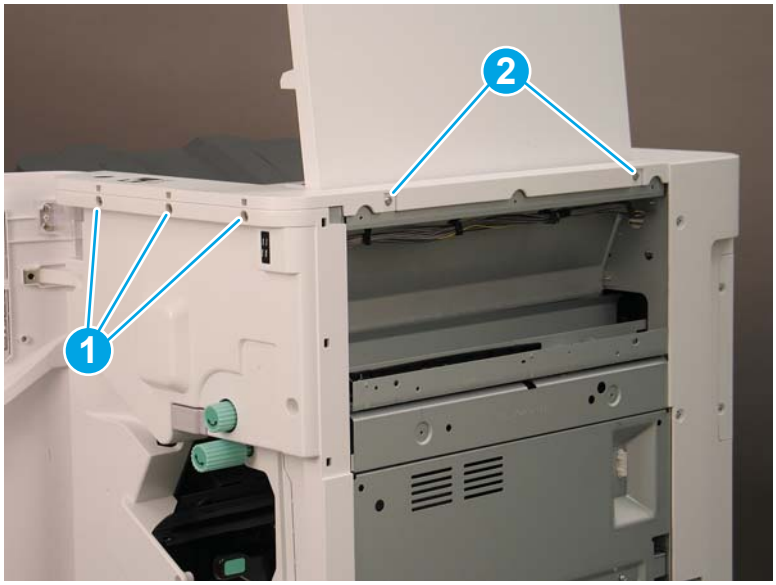
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-35 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

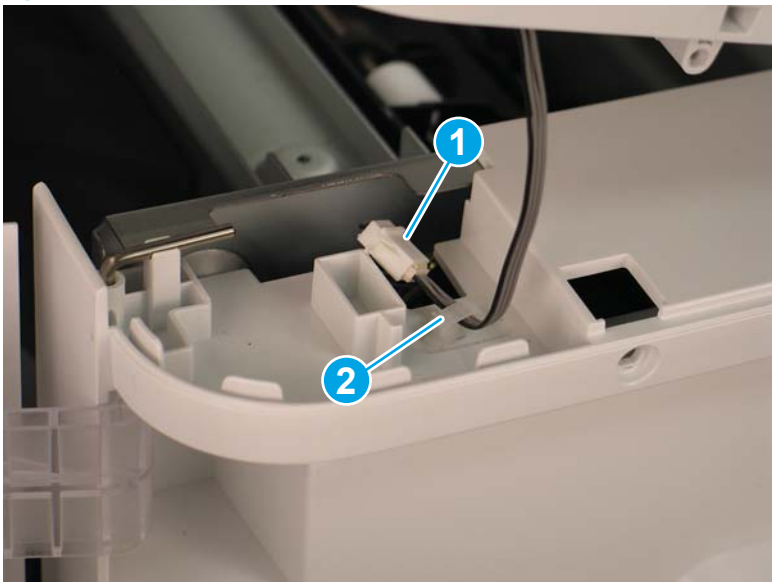
Figure 7-36 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-37 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

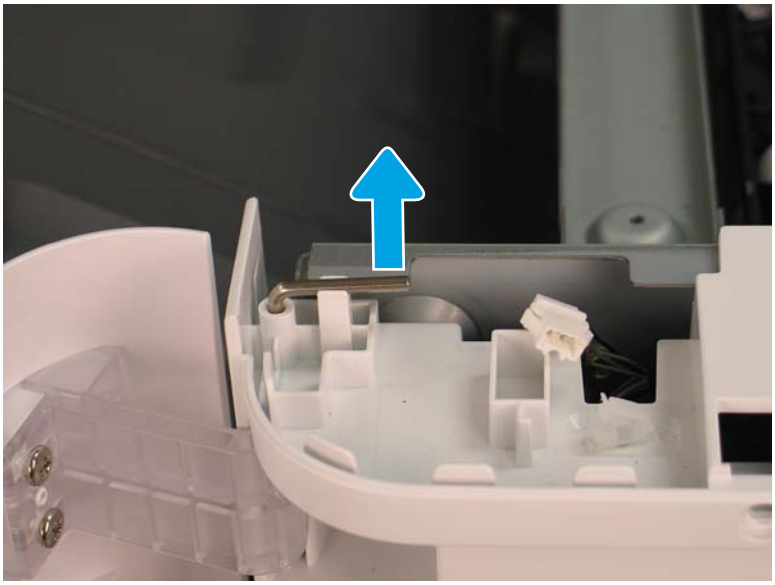


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

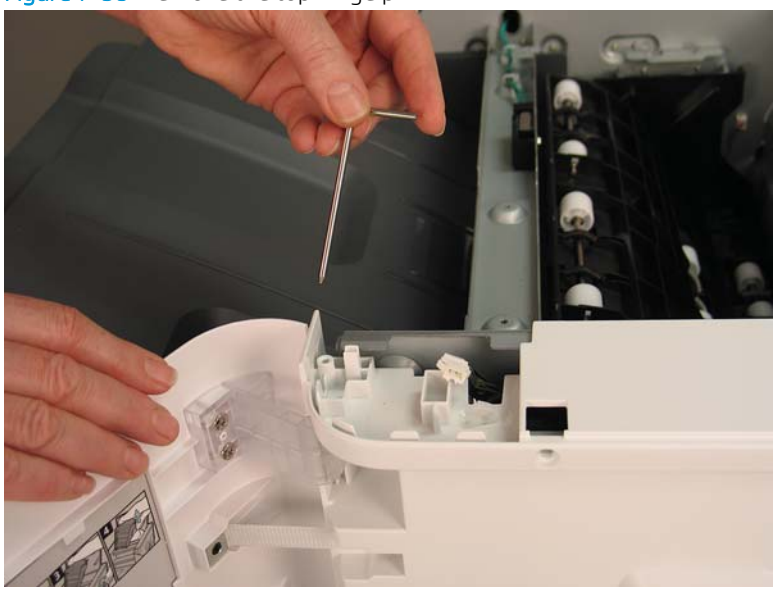
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-38 Lift the top hinge pin



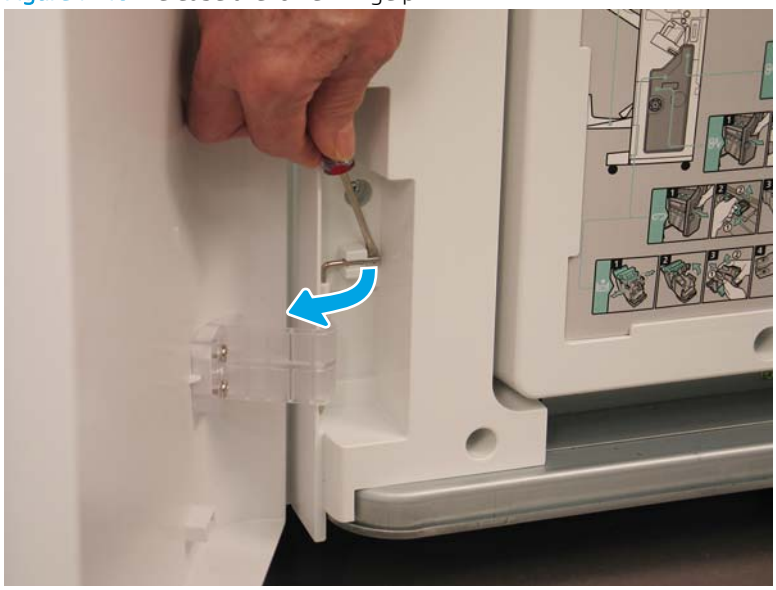
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-39 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-40 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

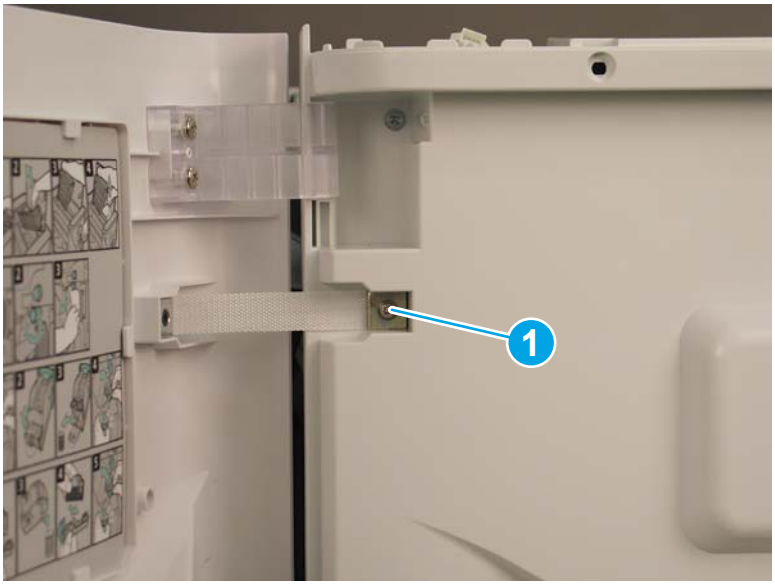
Figure 7-41 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

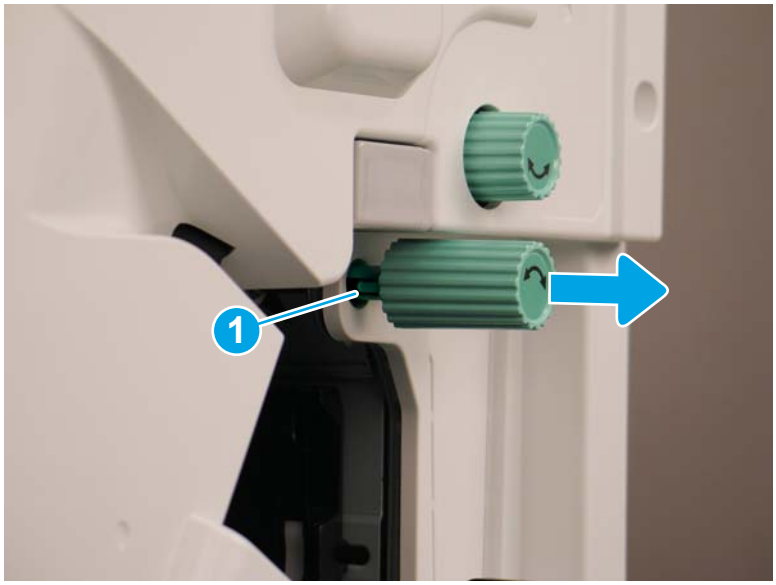
Figure 7-42 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

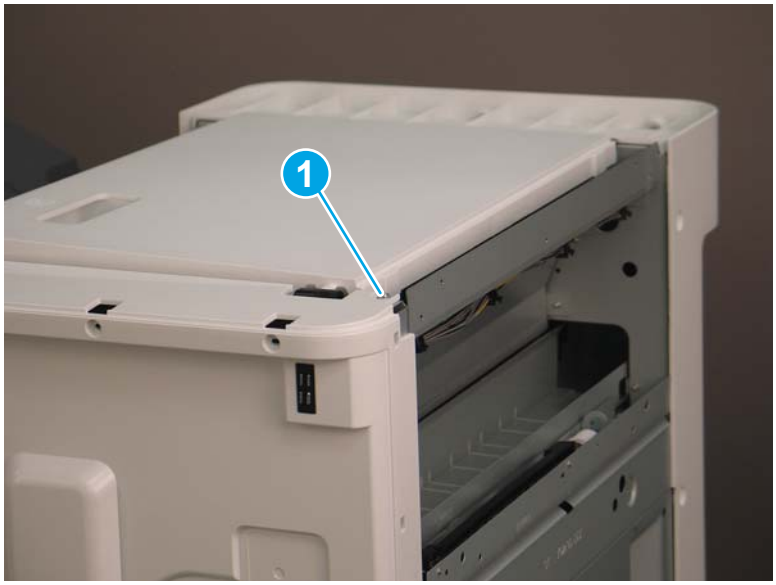
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-43 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

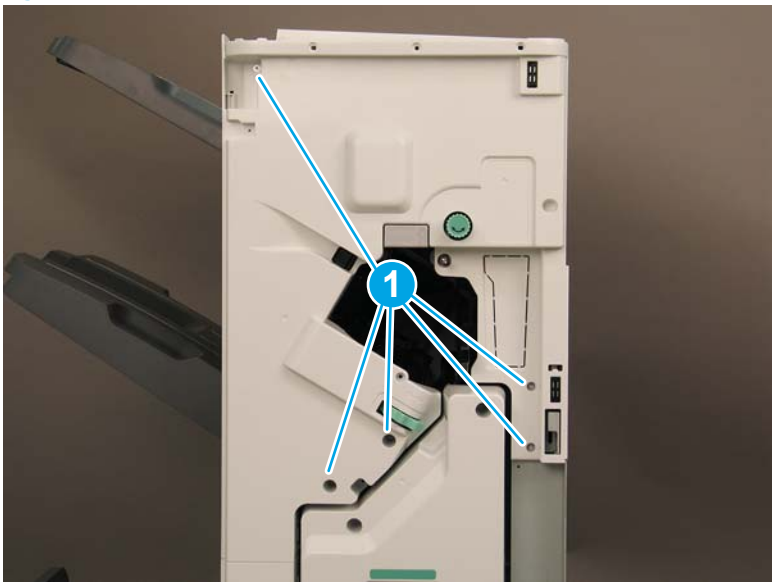
Figure 7-44 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-45 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front lower cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front lower cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front lower cover (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC63-04987B	Cover, front lower

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

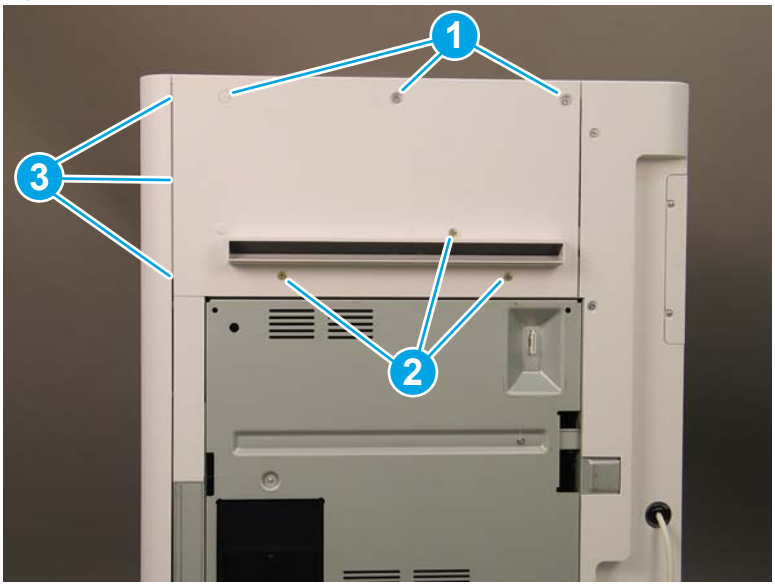
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

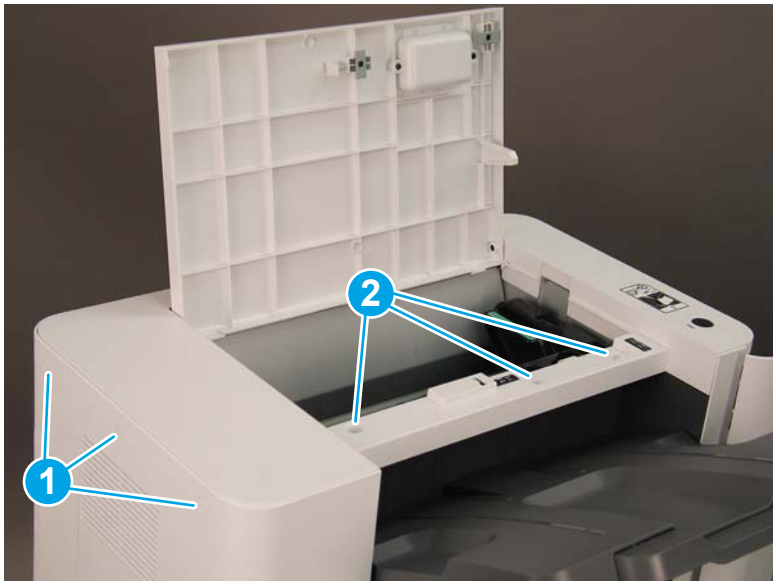
Figure 7-46 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

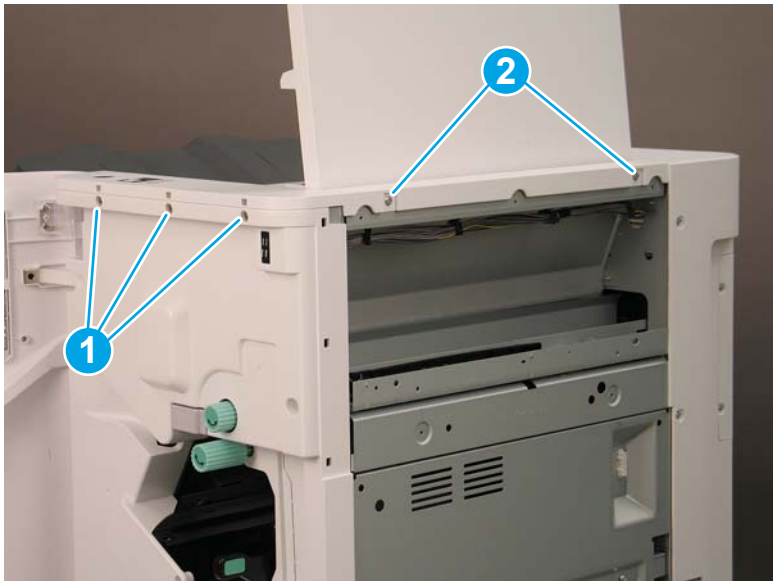
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-47 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

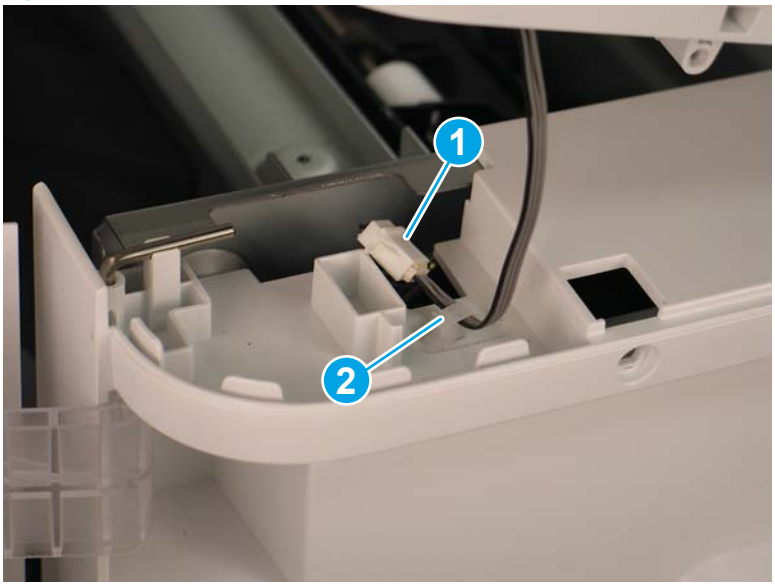
Figure 7-48 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-49 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

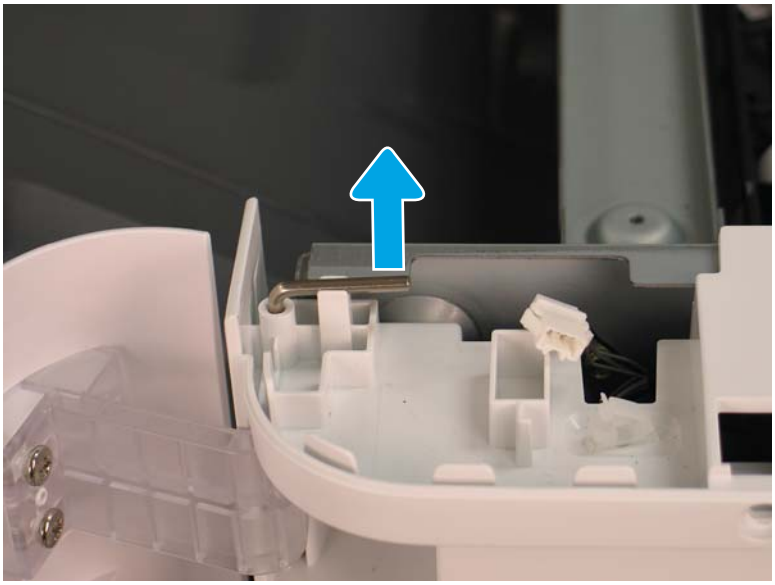


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

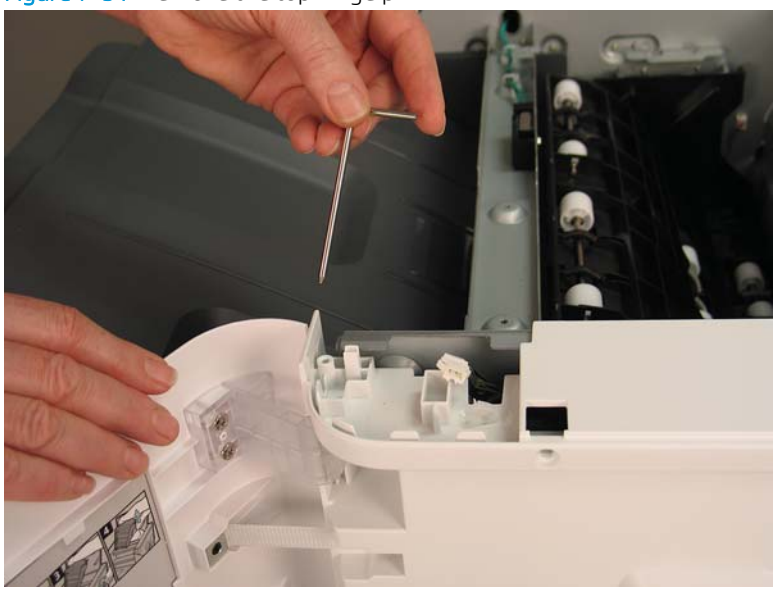
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-50 Lift the top hinge pin



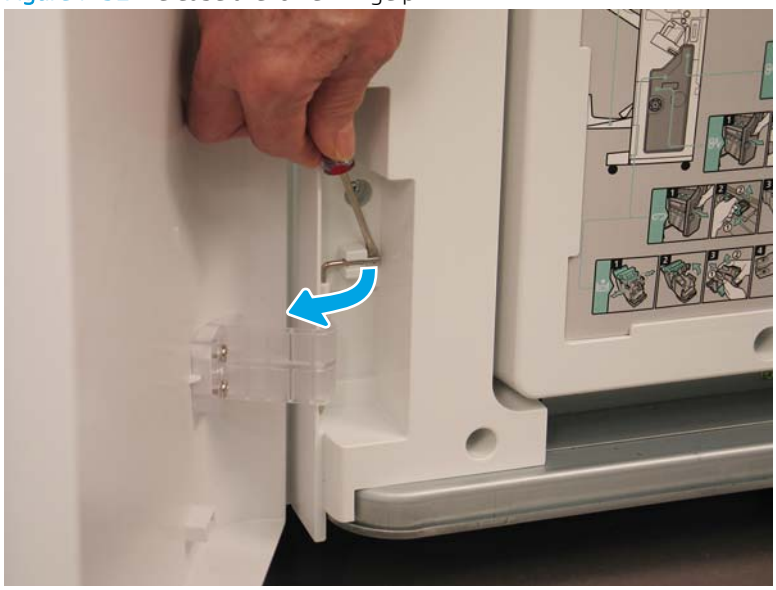
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-51 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-52 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

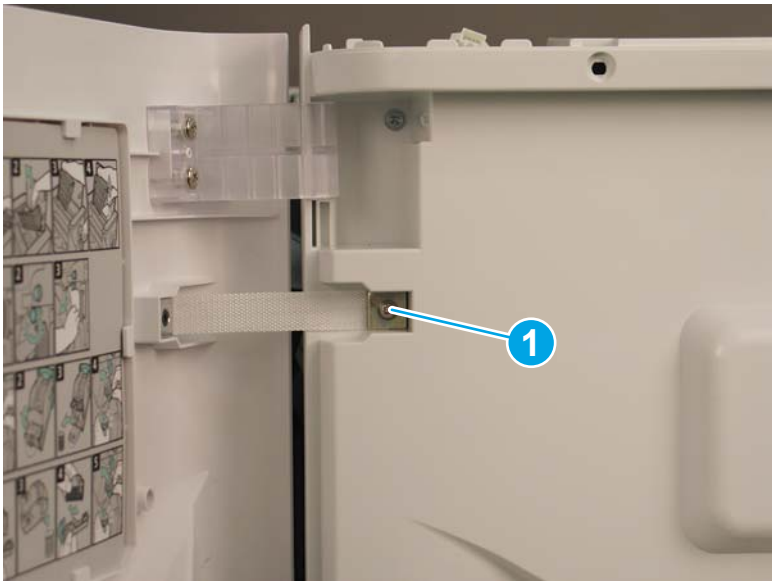
Figure 7-53 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

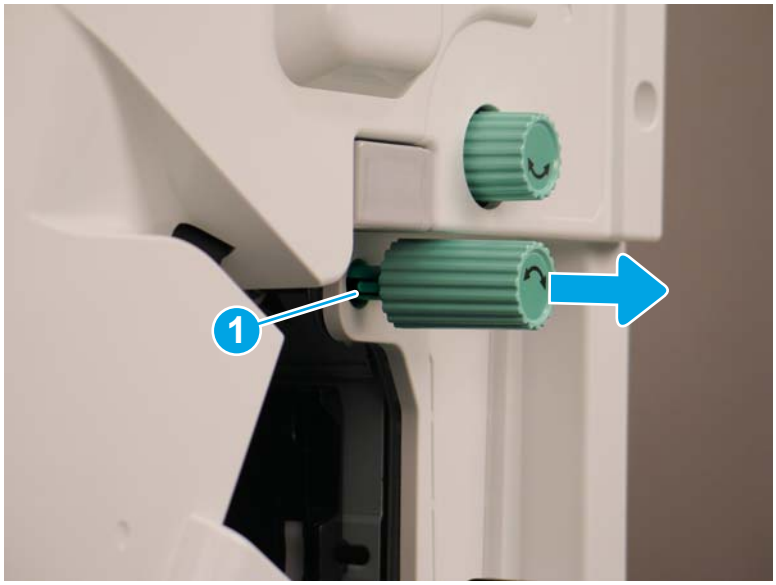
Figure 7-54 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

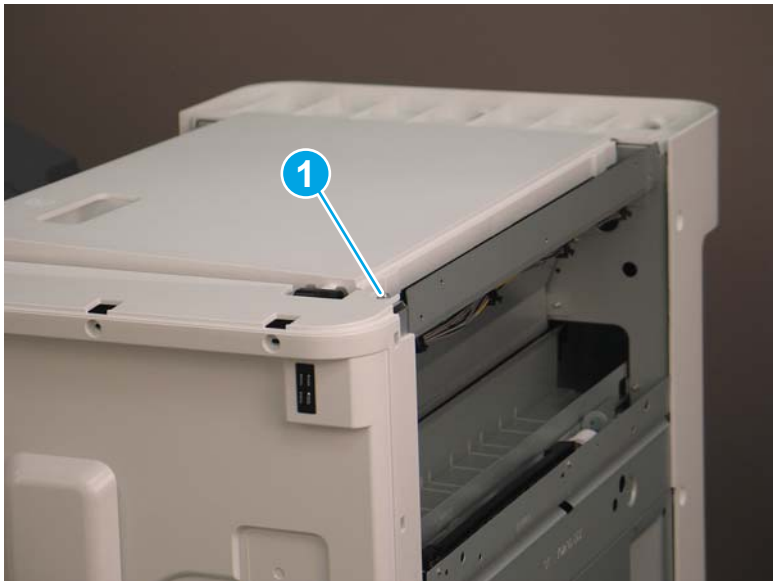
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-55 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

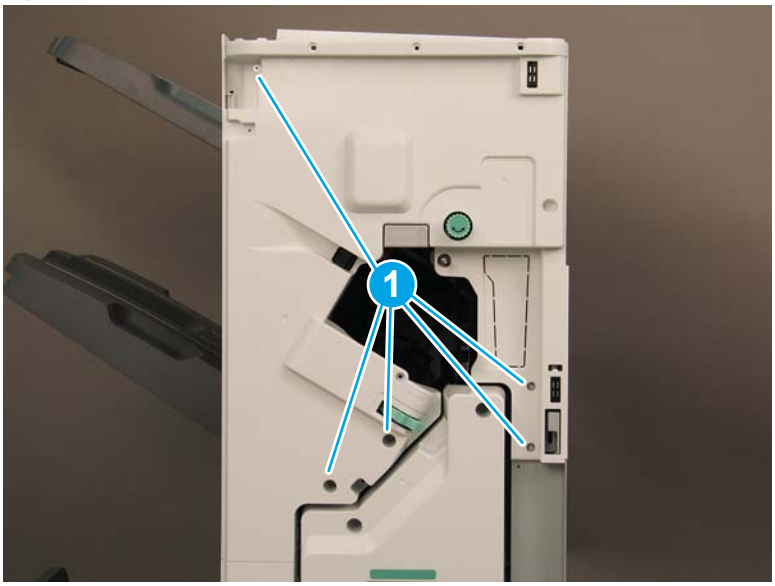
Figure 7-56 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-57 Remove five screws and the front cover

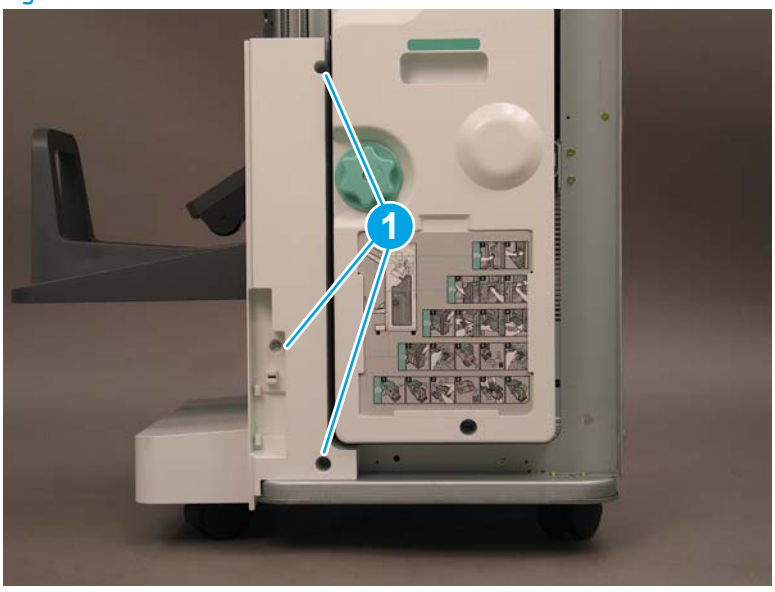


Step 5: Remove the front lower cover (finisher)

▲ Remove three machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front lower cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-58 Remove three screws and the front lower cover



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet tray

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet tray on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet tray part number	
SAM-JC90-01419A	Booklet tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

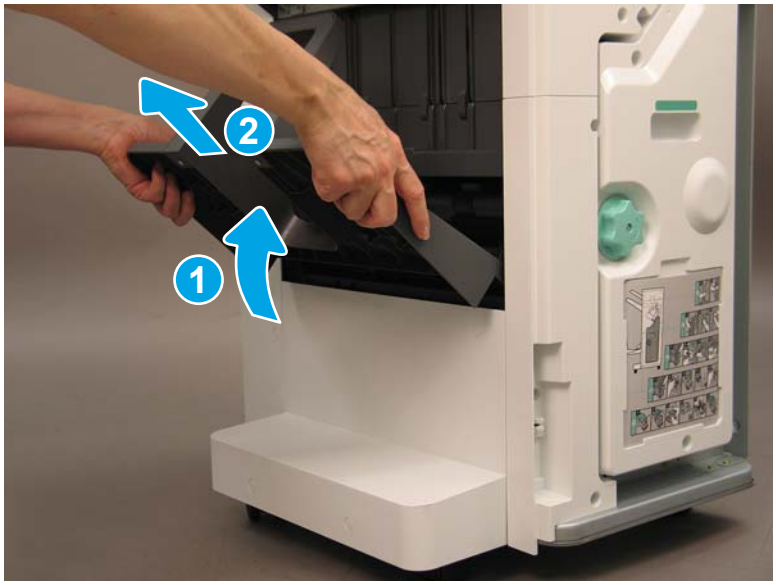
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-59 Remove the booklet tray



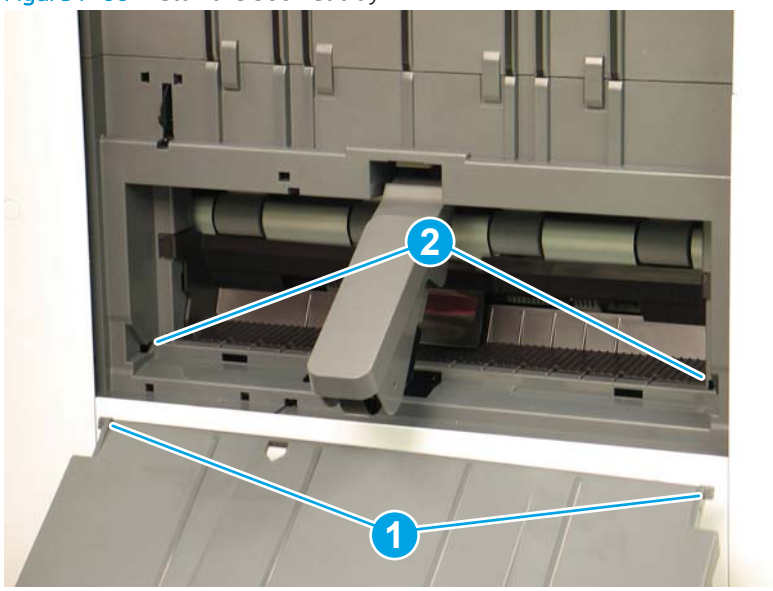
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

Figure 7-60 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Caster cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)
- Step 2: Remove the caster cover
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the caster cover on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Caster cover part number	
SAM-JC63-04985A	Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

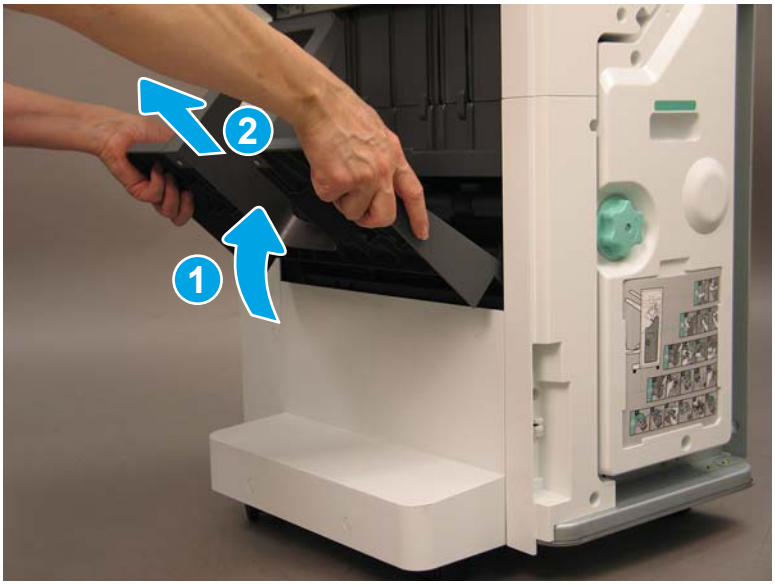
Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet tray (booklet finishers only)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-61 Remove the booklet tray



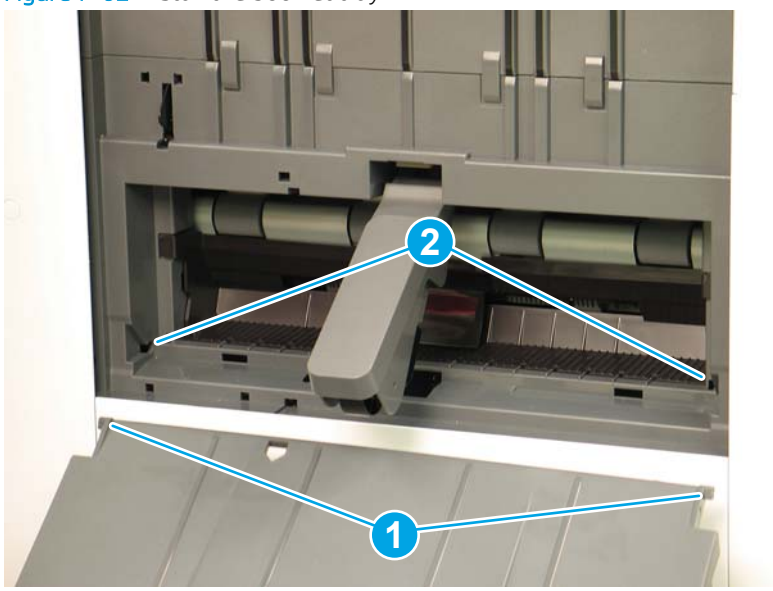
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

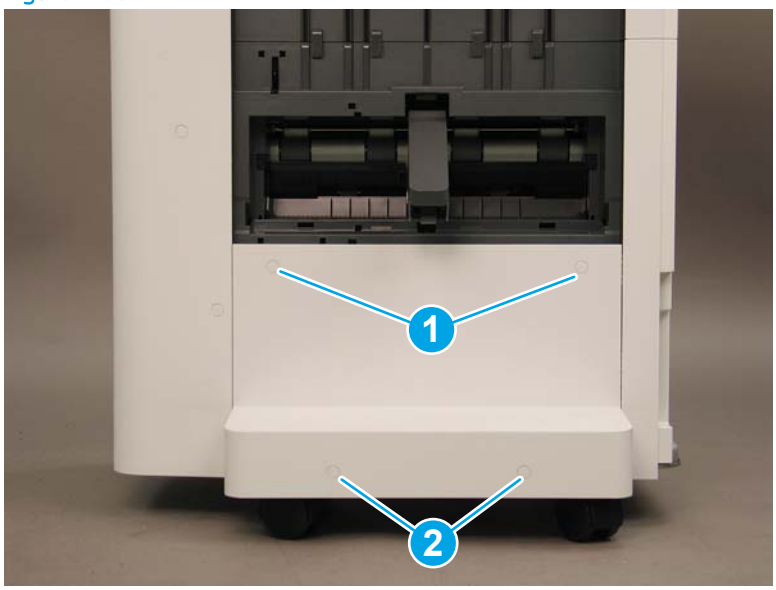
Figure 7-62 Install the booklet tray



Step 2: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-63 Remove four screws

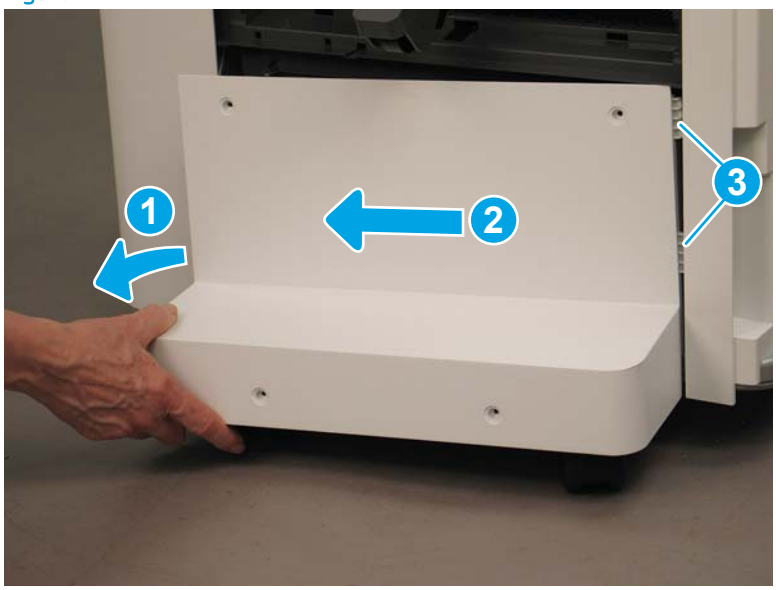


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-64 Remove the caster cover



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Lower shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the lower shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Lower shield assembly (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01417A	Lower shield assembly (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

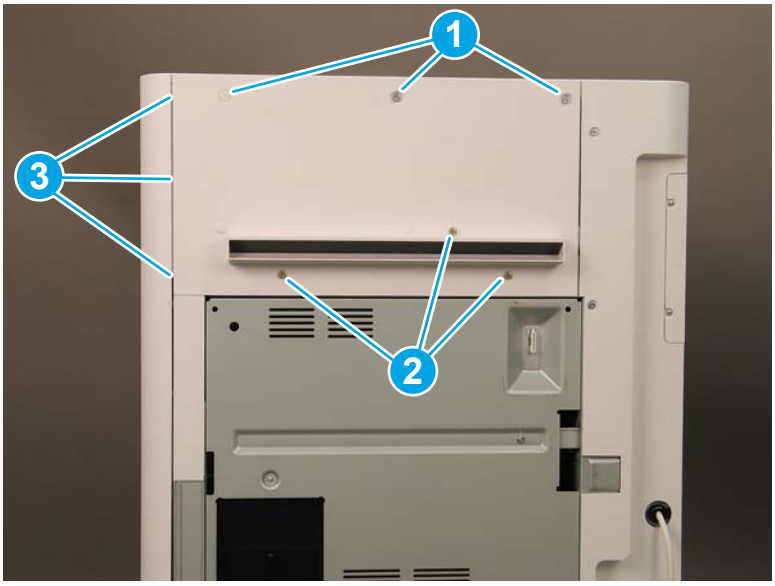
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

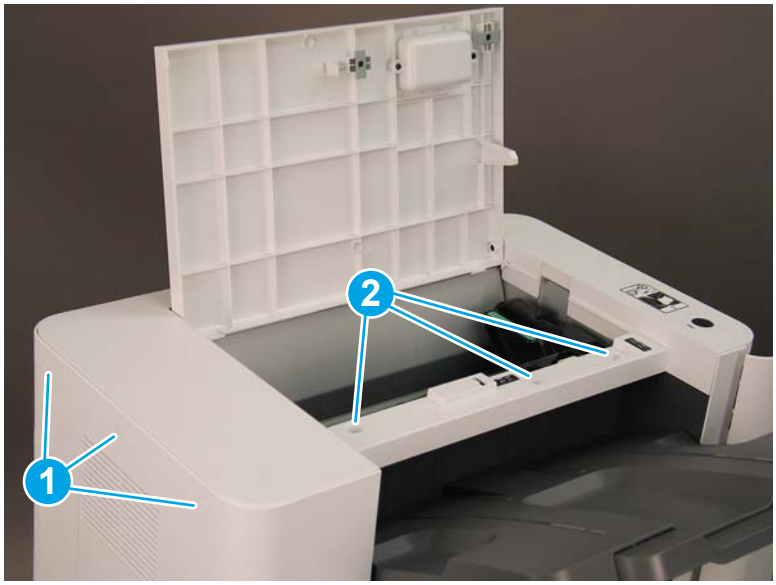
Figure 7-65 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

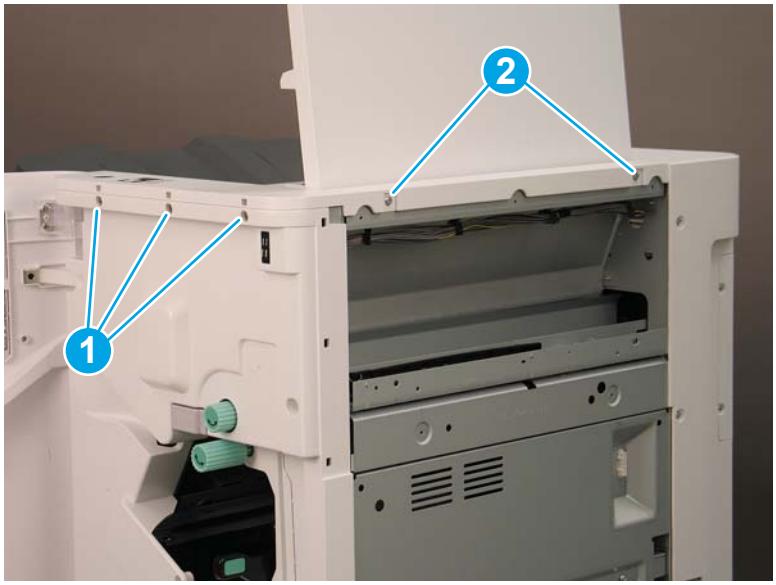
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-66 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

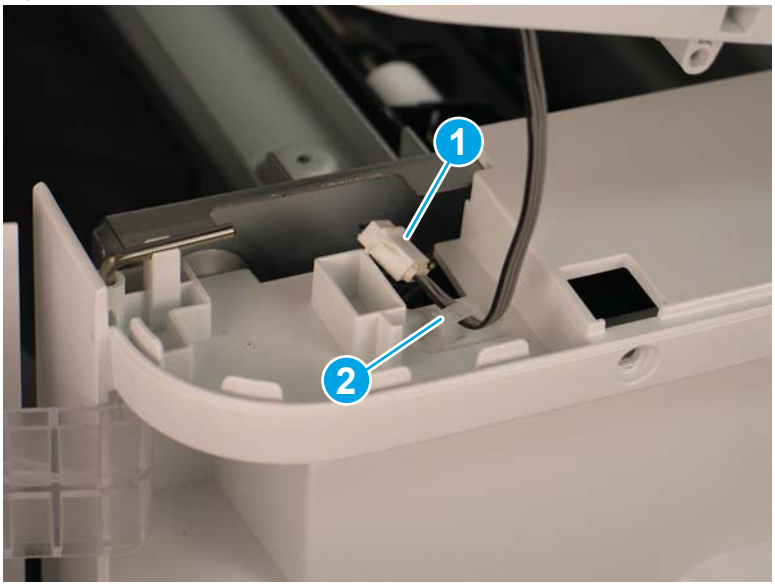
Figure 7-67 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-68 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

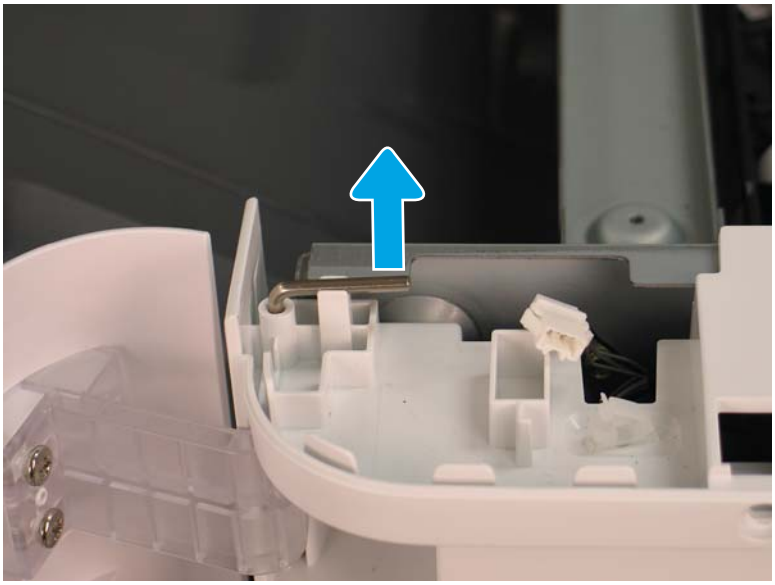


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

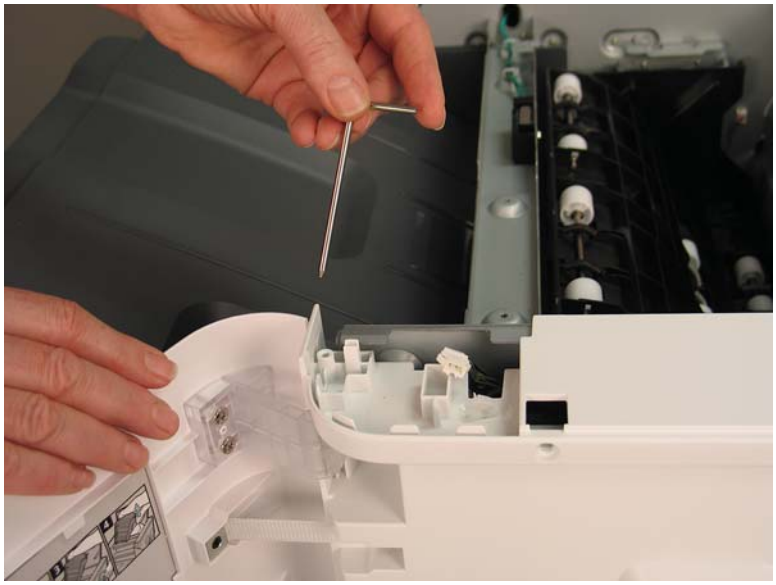
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-69 Lift the top hinge pin



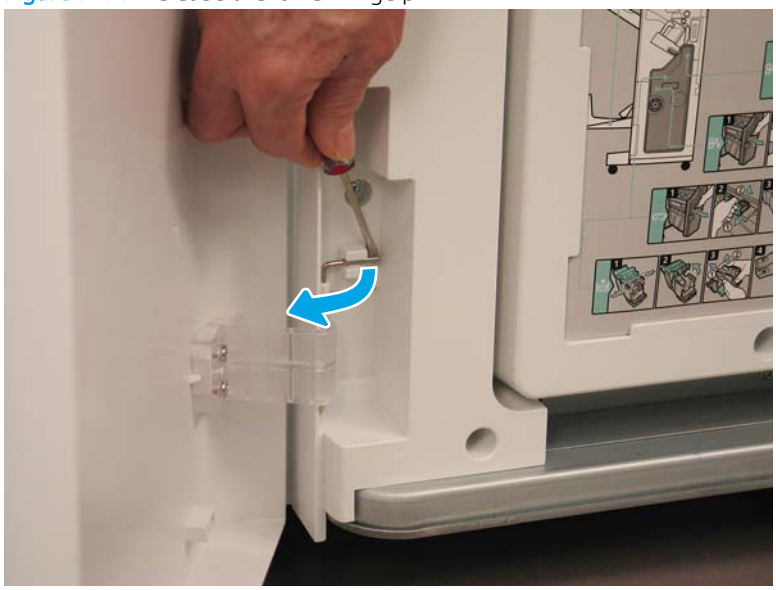
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-70 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-71 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

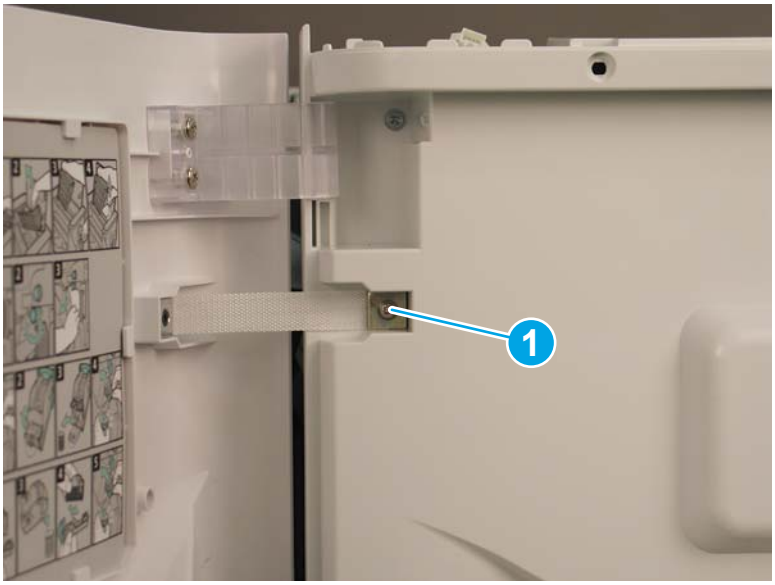
Figure 7-72 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

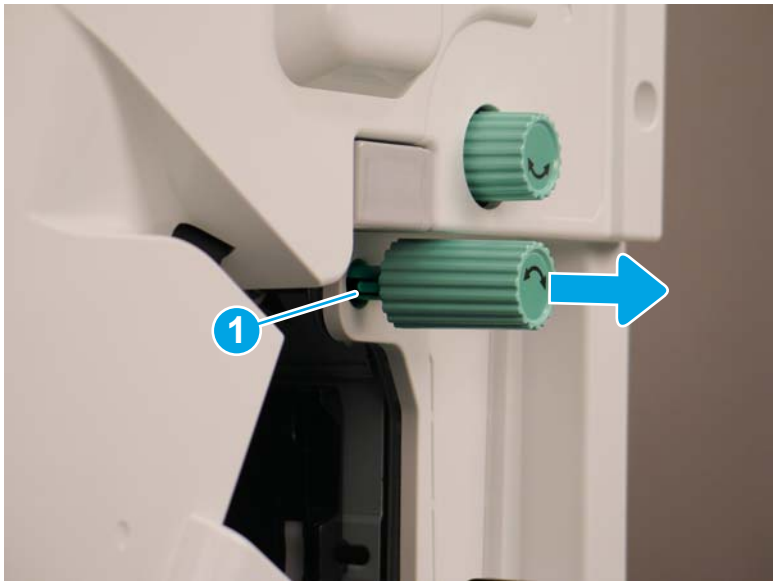
Figure 7-73 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

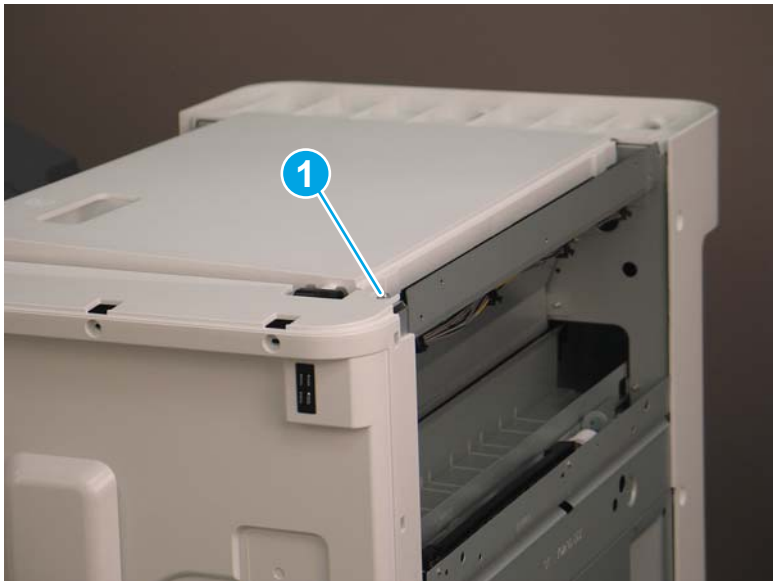
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-74 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

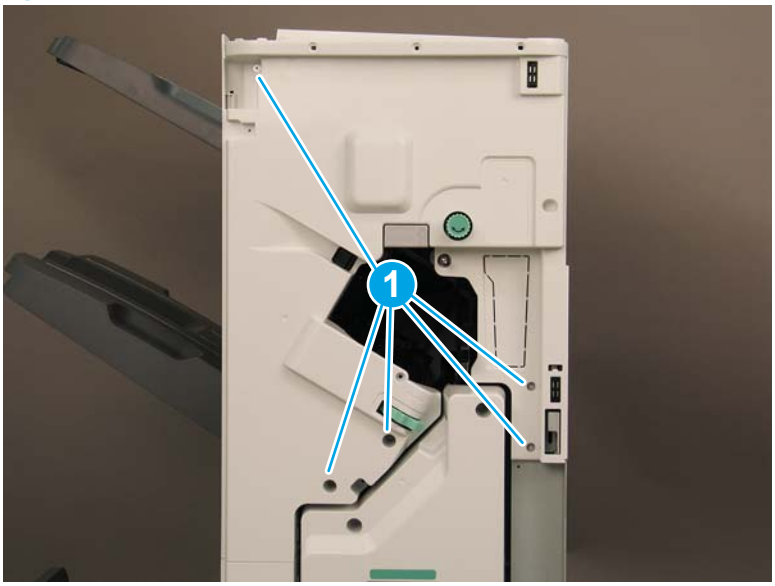
Figure 7-75 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

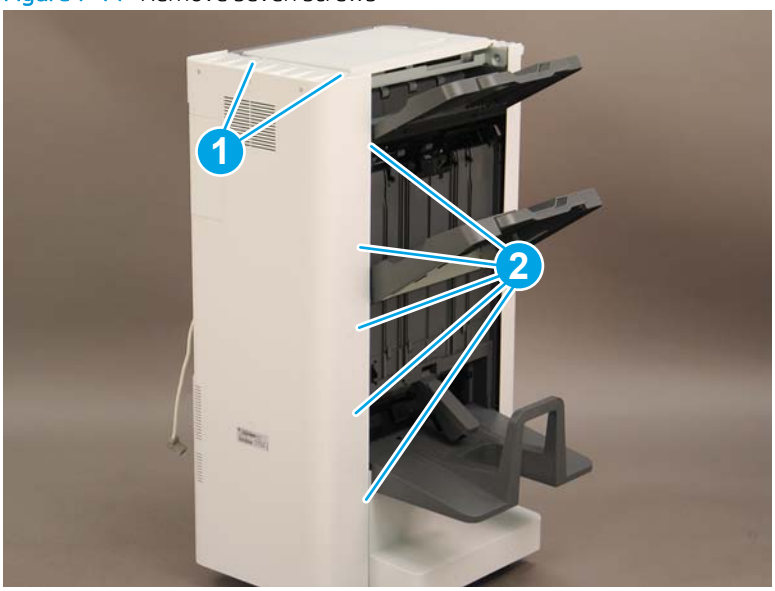
Figure 7-76 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-77 Remove seven screws

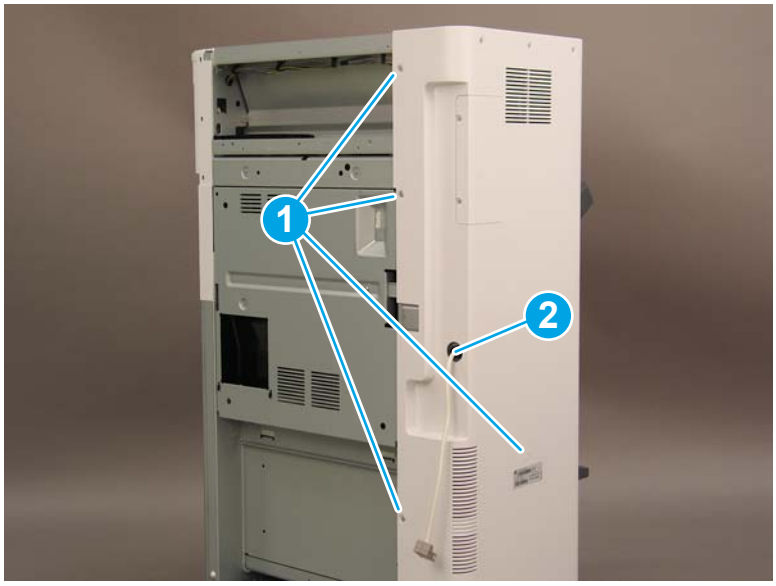


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

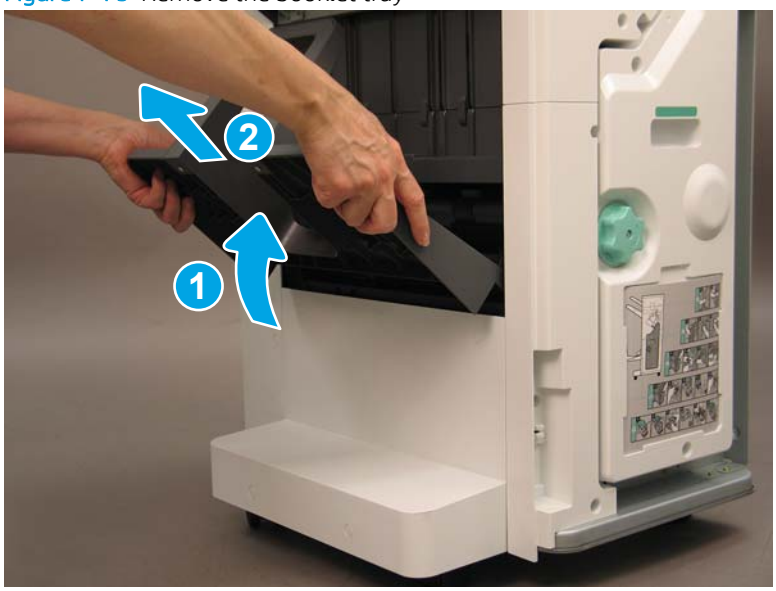
Figure 7-78 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-79 Remove the booklet tray



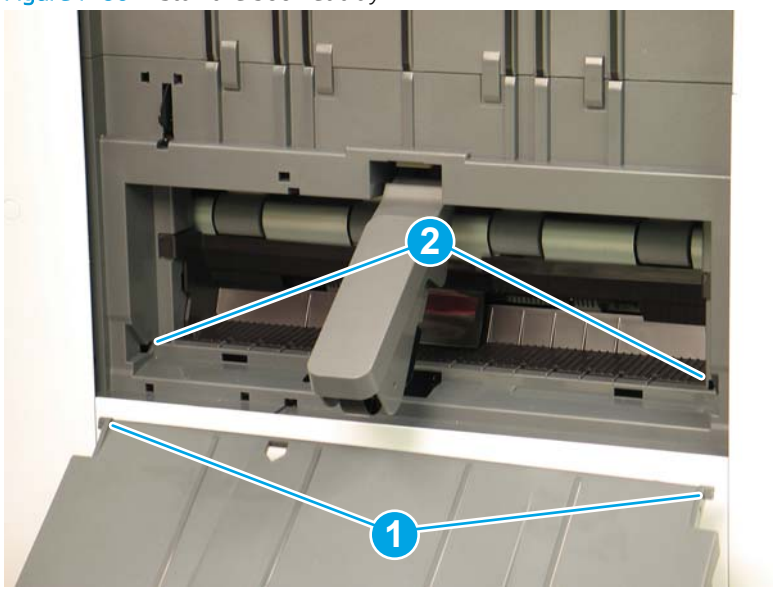
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

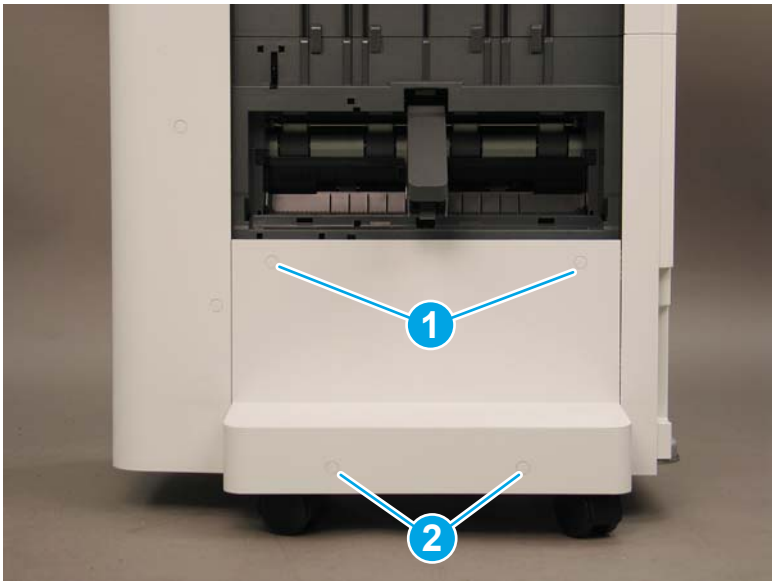
Figure 7-80 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-81 Remove four screws

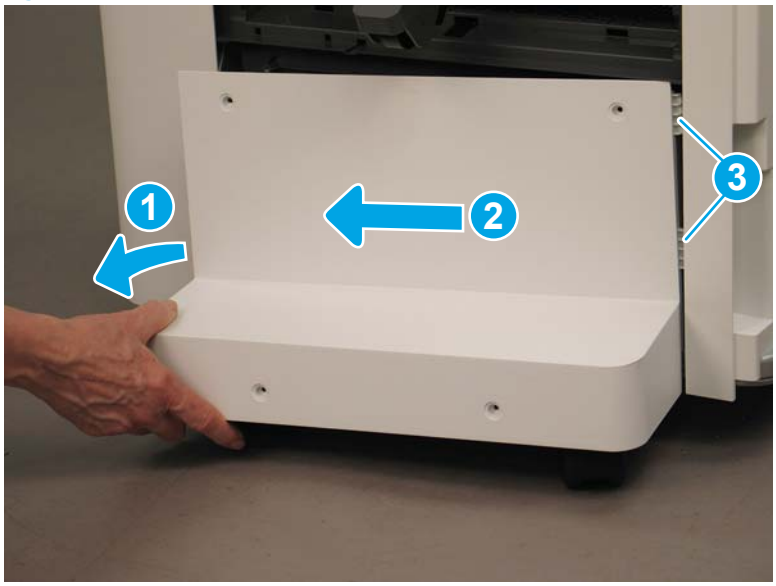


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-82 Remove the caster cover

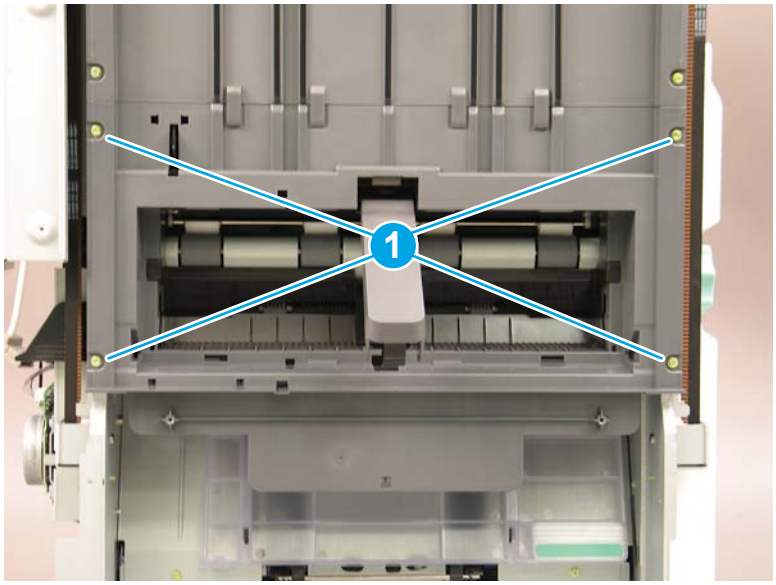


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-83 Remove four screws

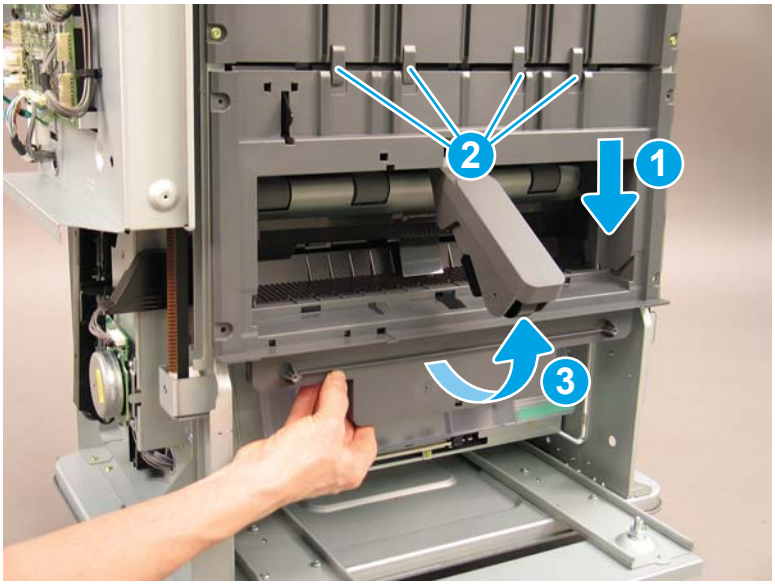


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

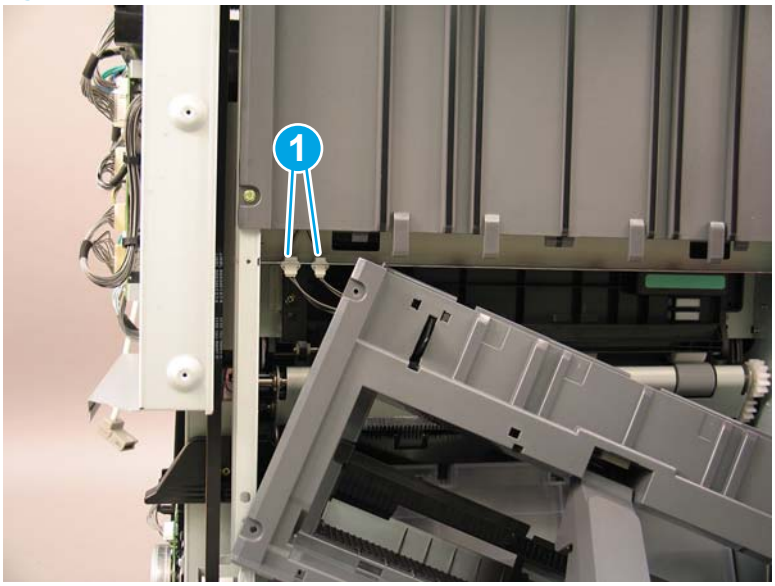
Figure 7-84 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

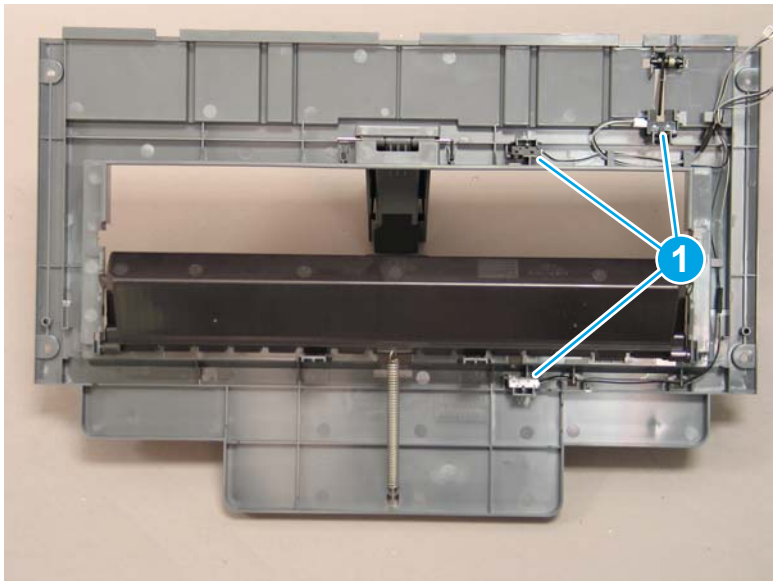
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-85 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 7-86 Locate sensors



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Upper shield assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the upper shield assembly on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Upper shield assembly (finisher) part number	
SAM-JC90-01475A	Finisher sub - shield

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Small, flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

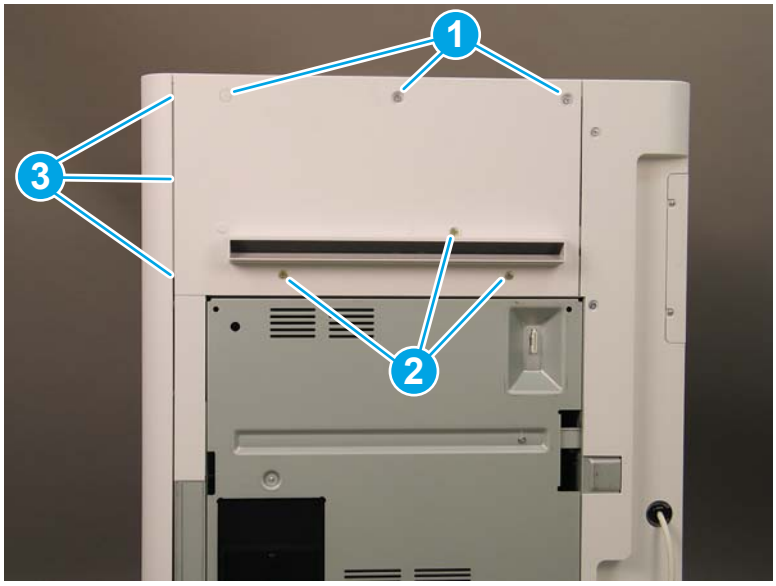
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

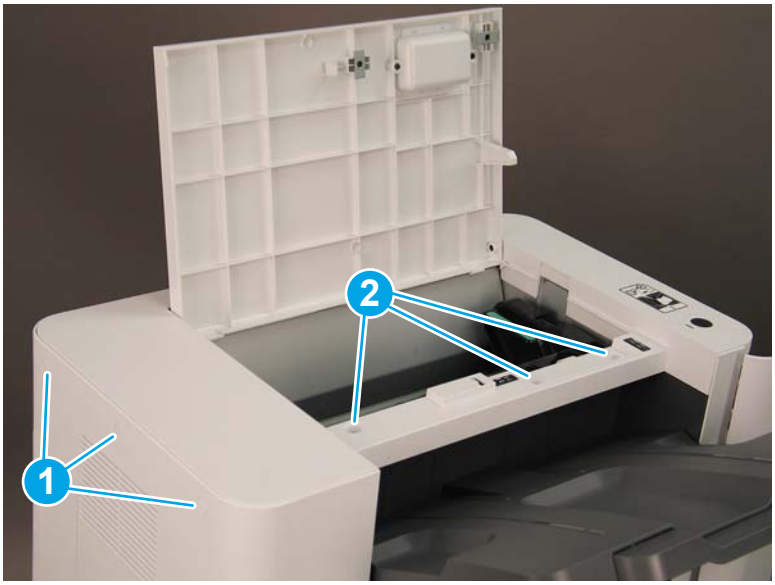
Figure 7-87 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

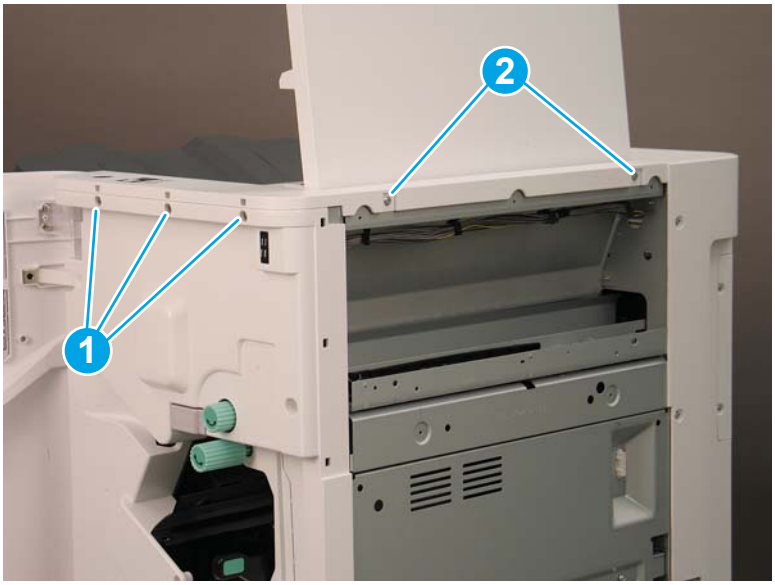
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-88 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

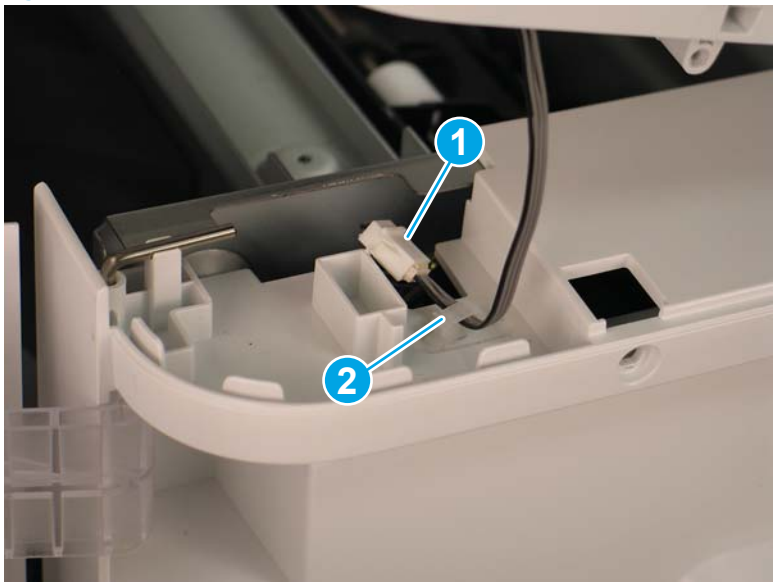
Figure 7-89 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-90 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

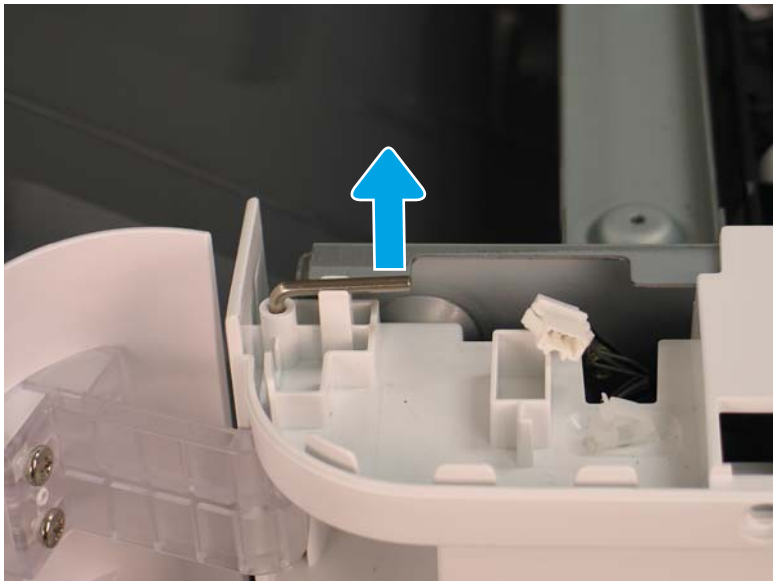


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

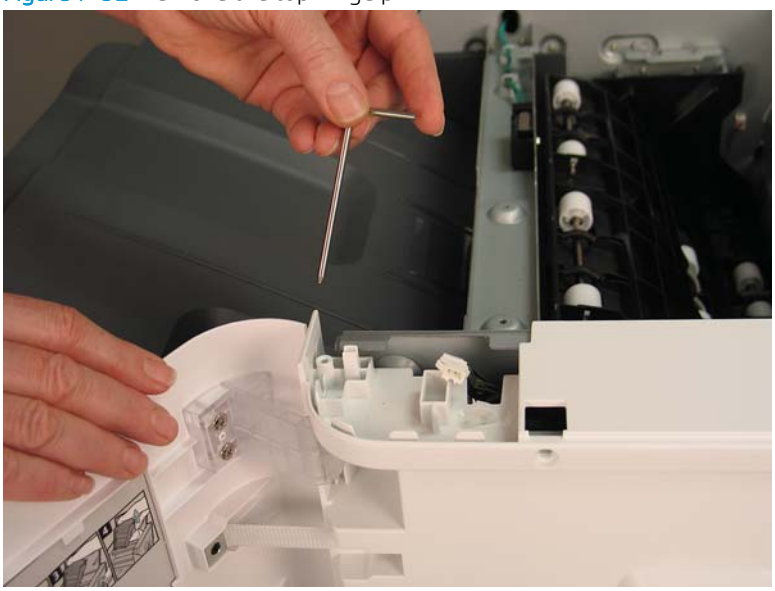
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-91 Lift the top hinge pin



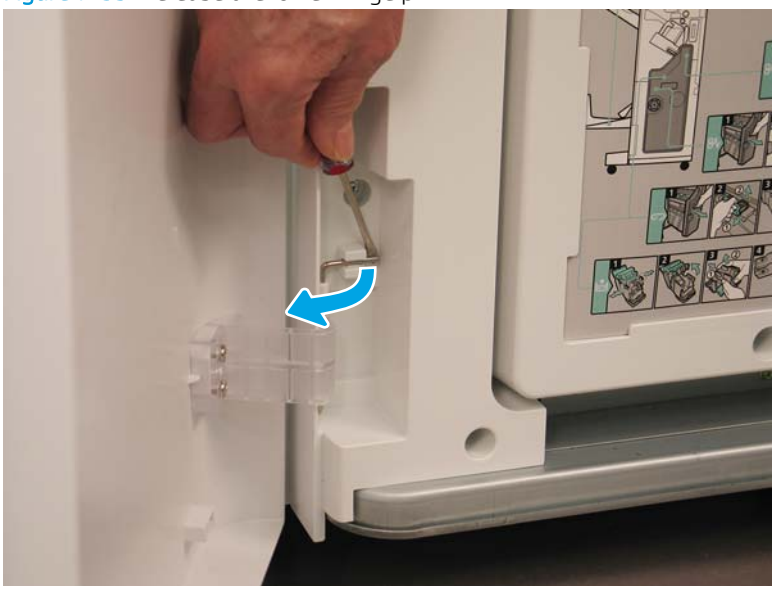
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-92 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-93 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

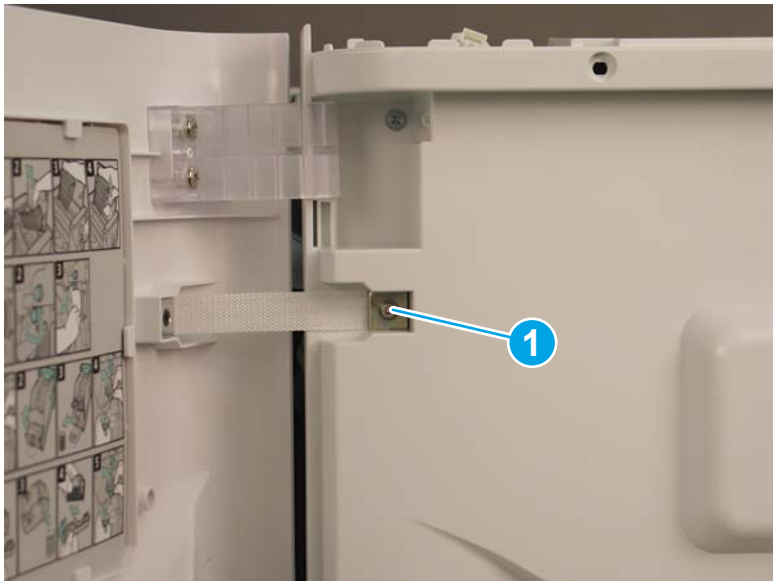
Figure 7-94 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

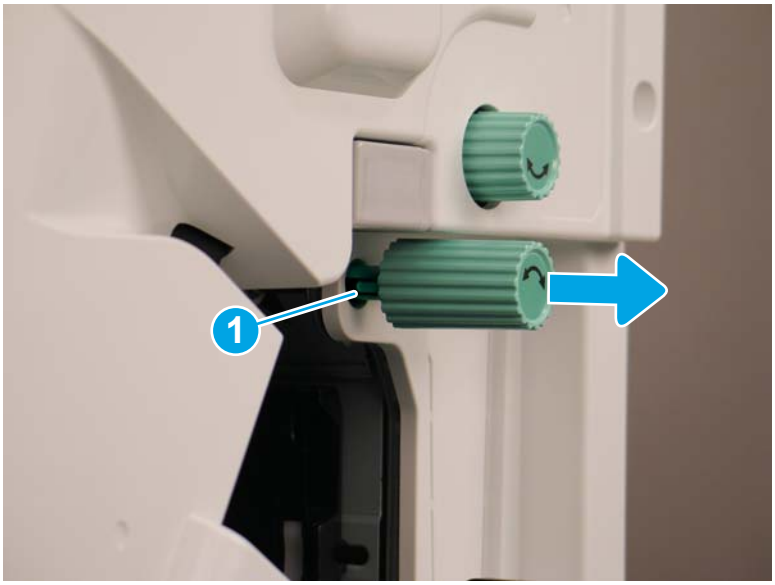
Figure 7-95 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

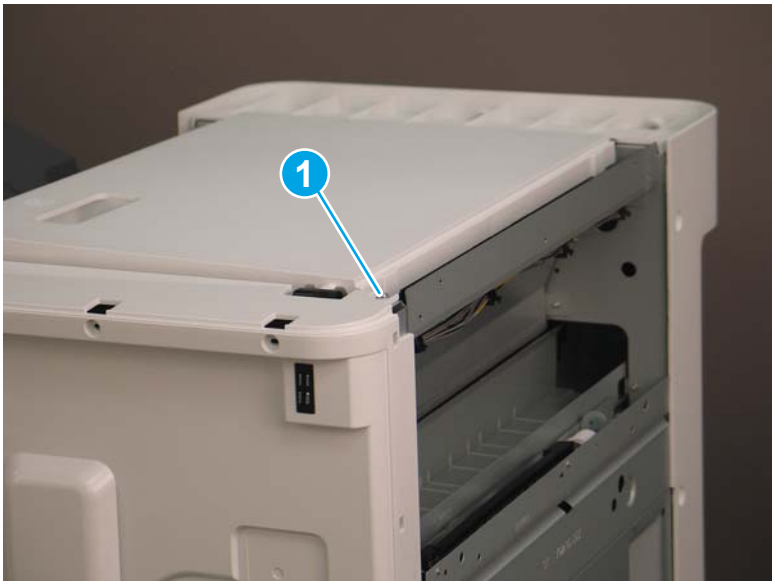
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-96 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

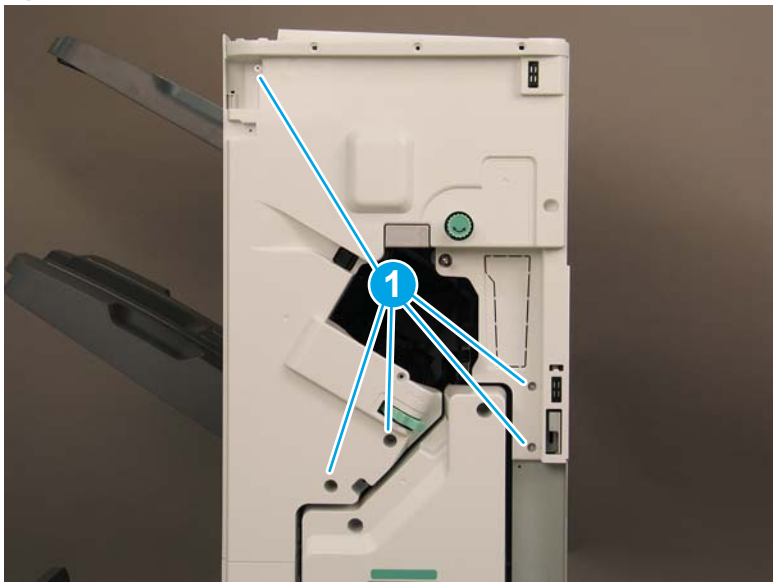
Figure 7-97 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

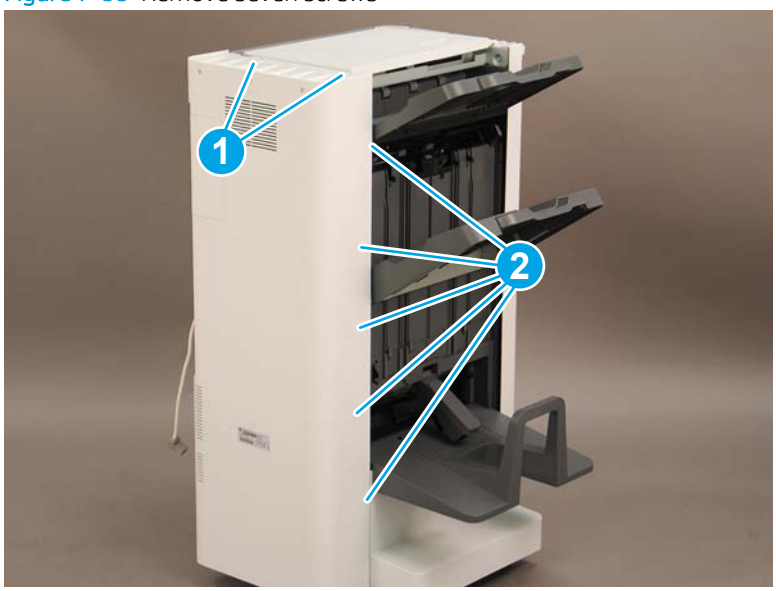
Figure 7-98 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-99 Remove seven screws

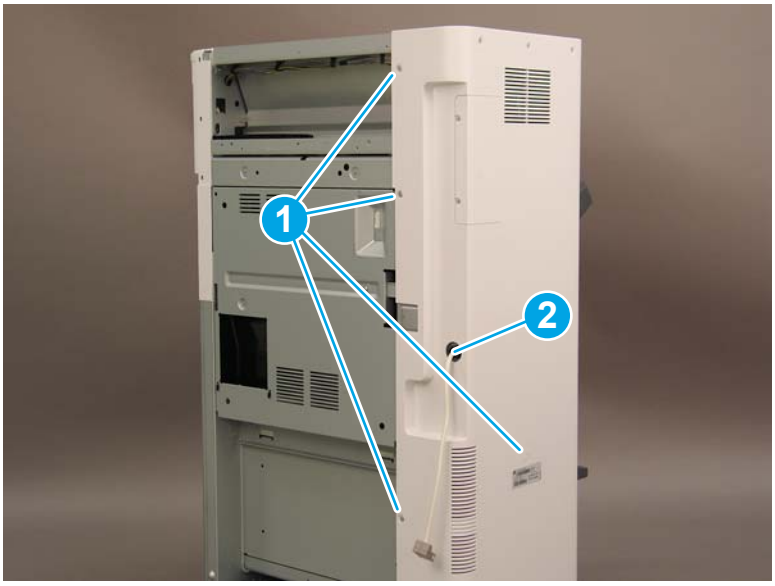


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

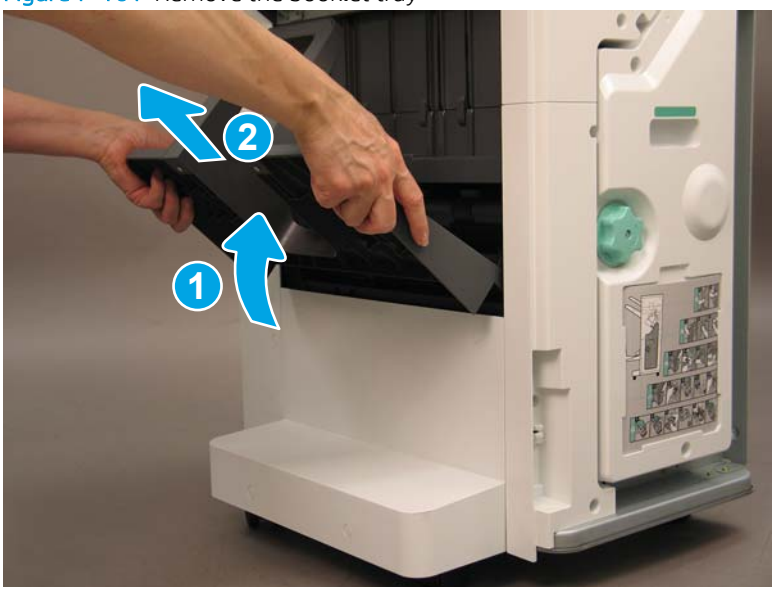
Figure 7-100 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-101 Remove the booklet tray



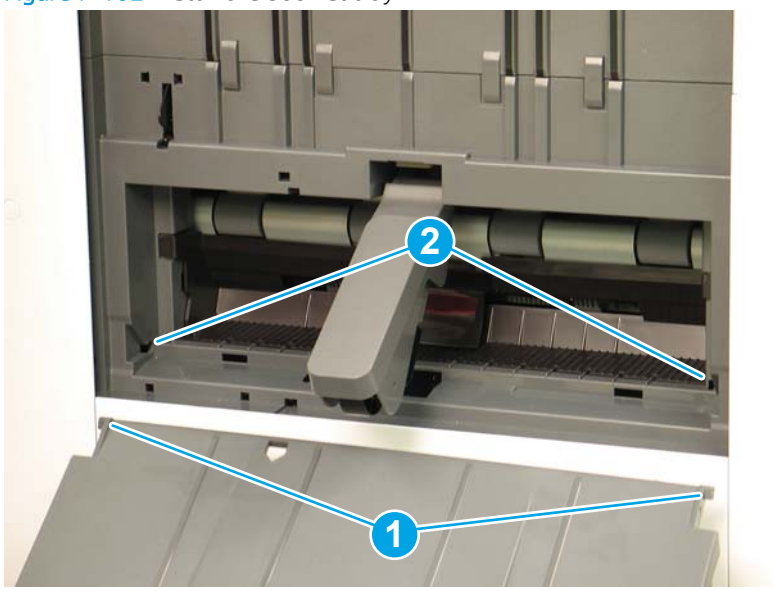
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

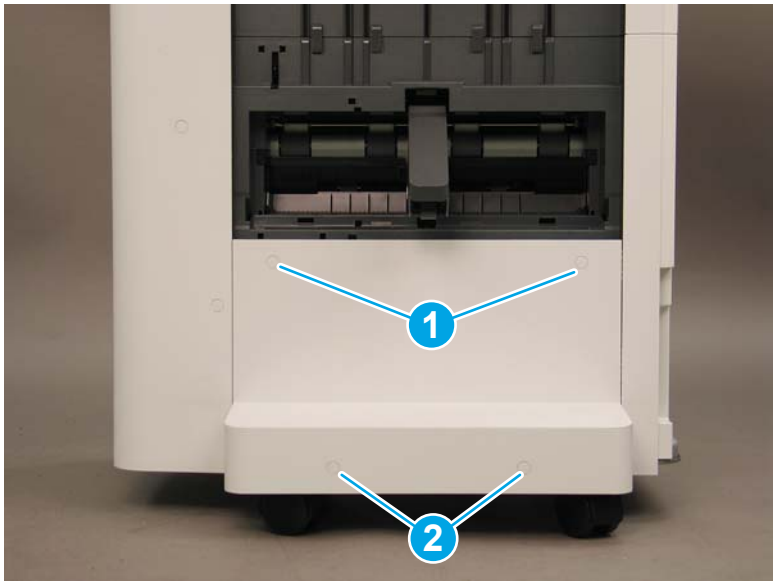
Figure 7-102 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-103 Remove four screws

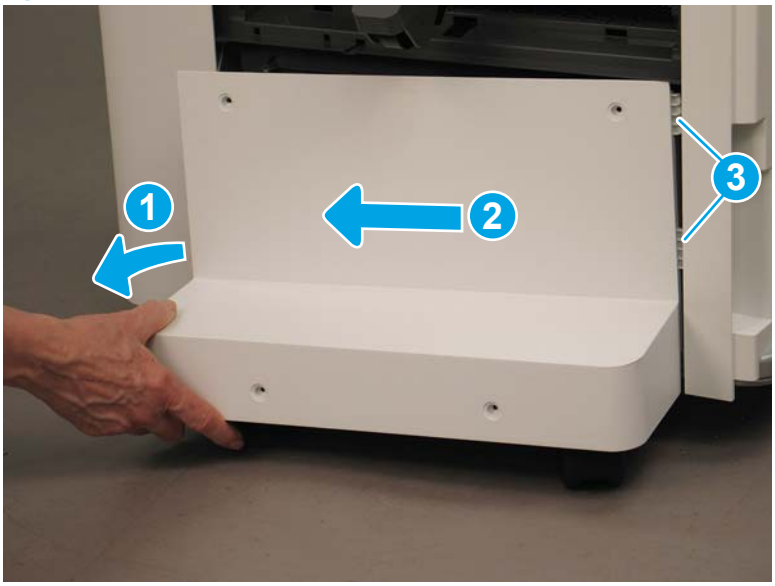


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-104 Remove the caster cover

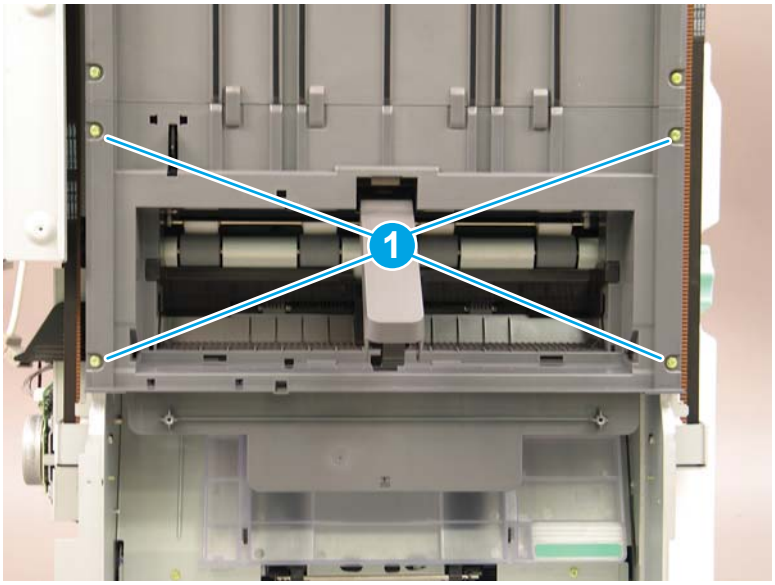


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-105 Remove four screws

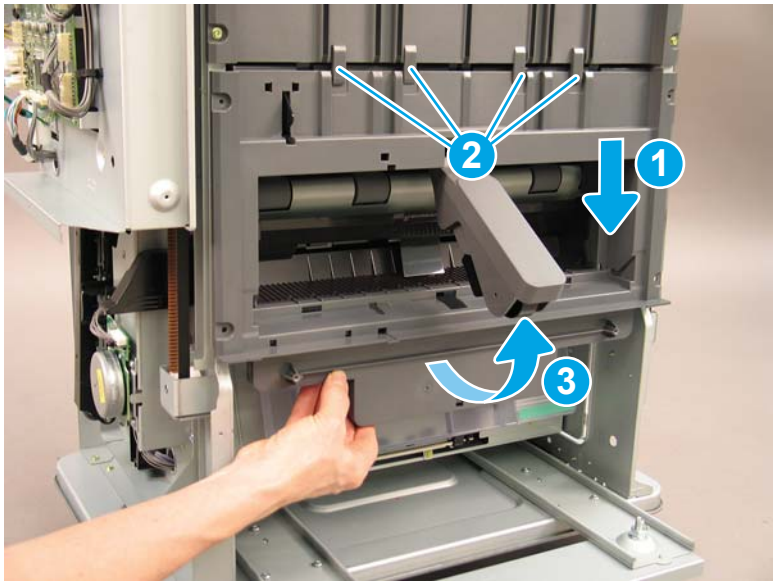


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

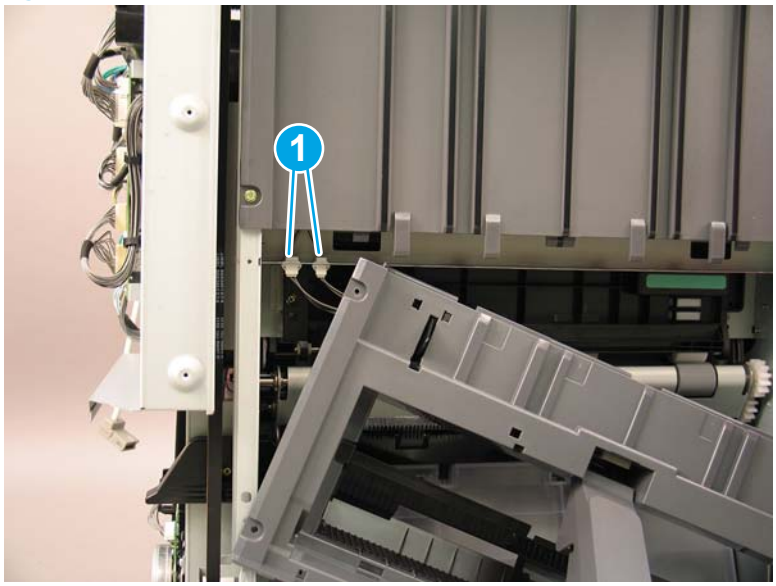
Figure 7-106 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

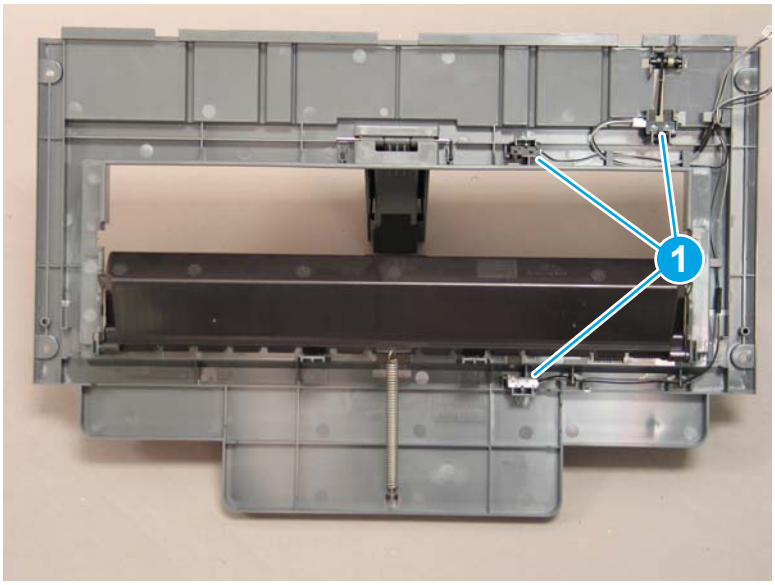
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-107 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

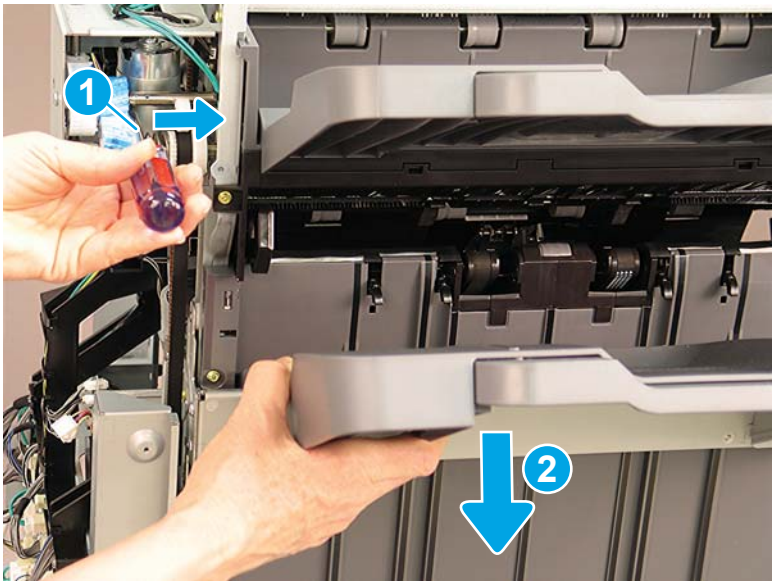
Figure 7-108 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

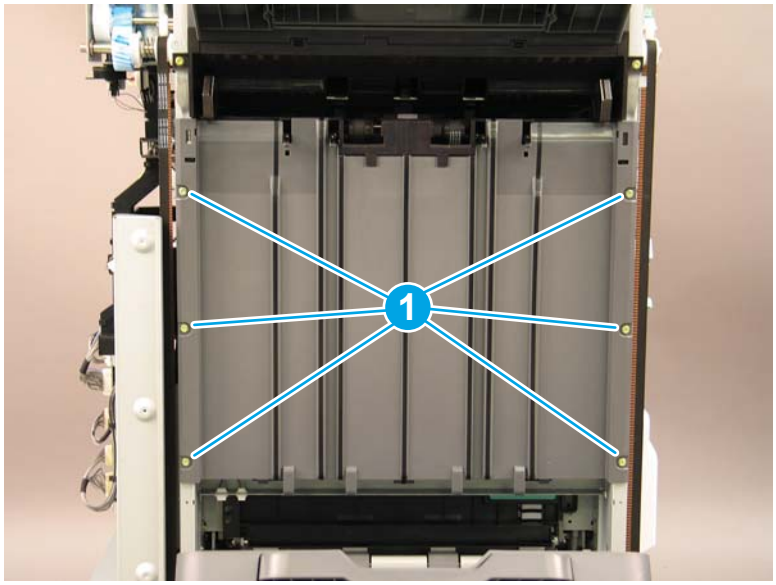
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-109 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-110 Remove six screws

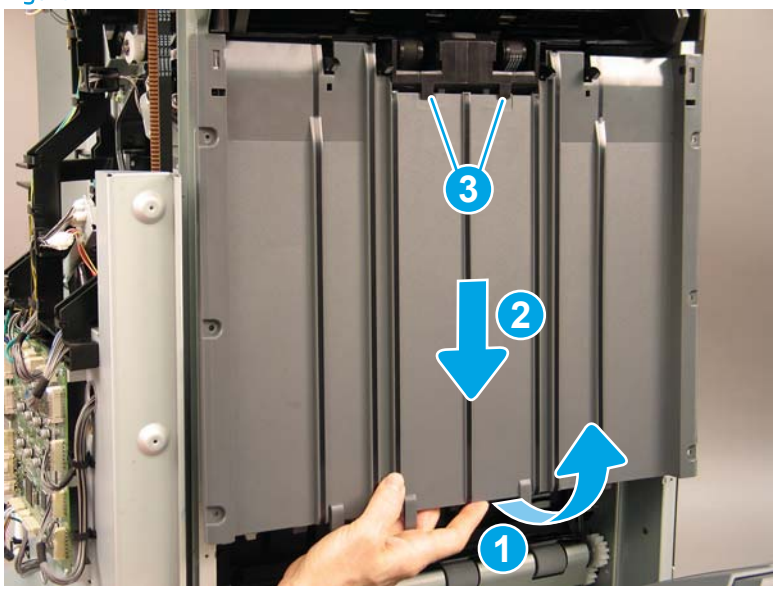


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

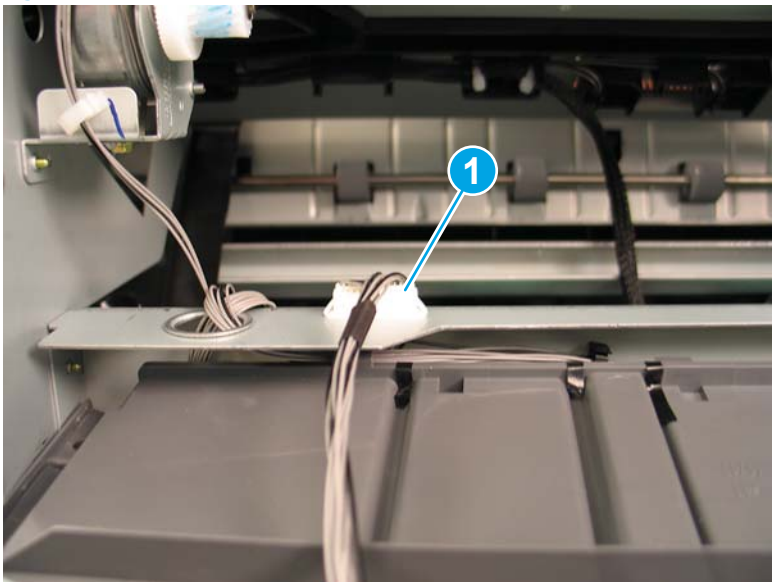
Figure 7-111 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

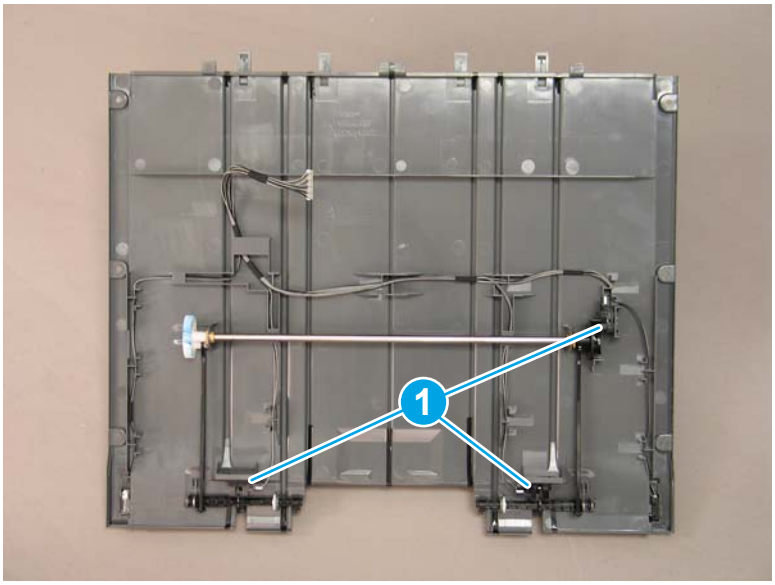
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-112 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

Figure 7-113 Locate sensors



Step 10: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Controller PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the controller PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the controller PCA on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Controller PCA (finisher) part number	
XXXXX	Controller PCA (finisher)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

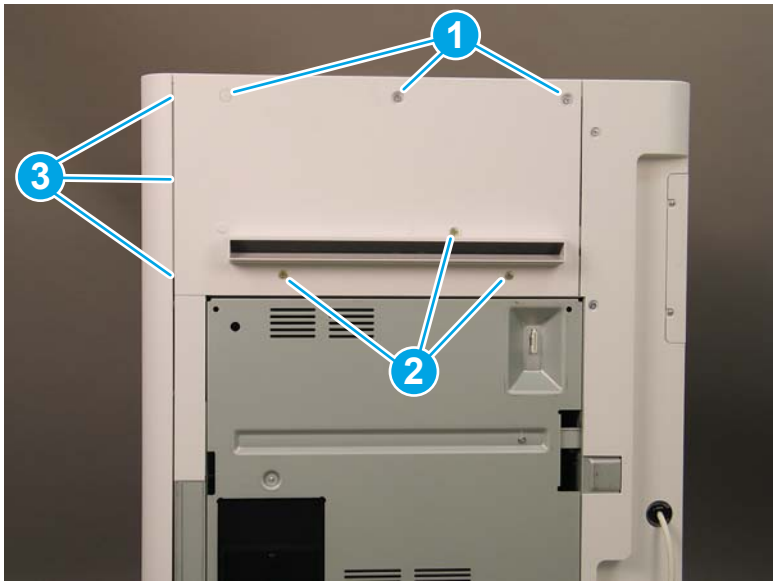
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

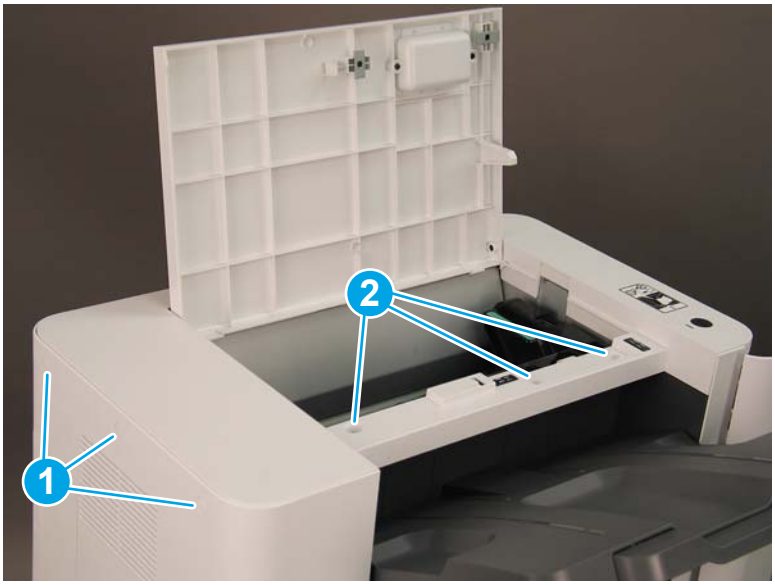
Figure 7-114 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

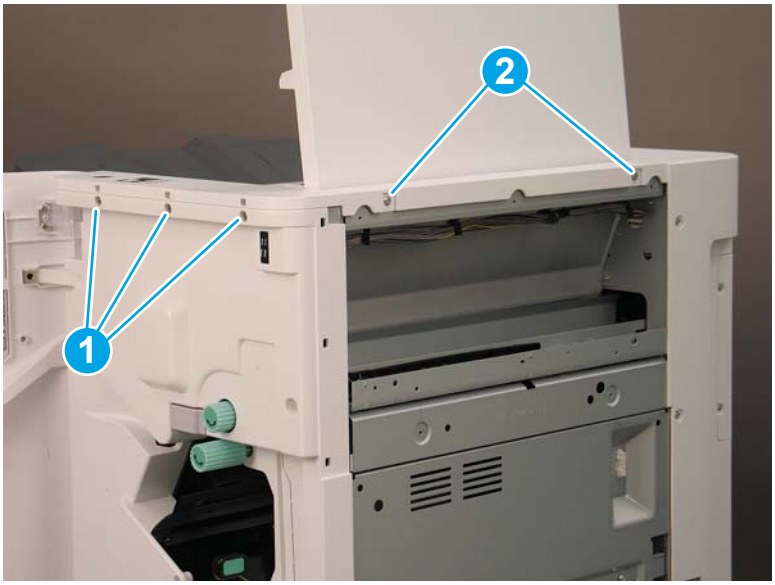
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-115 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

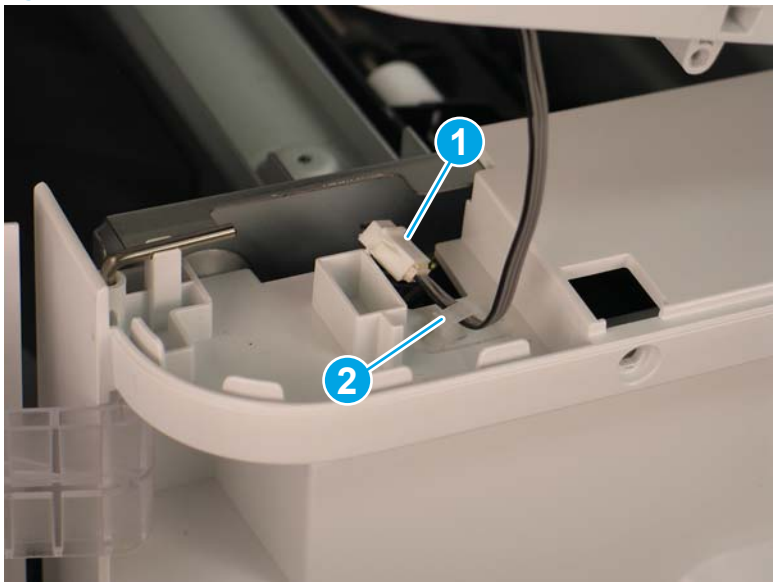
Figure 7-116 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-117 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

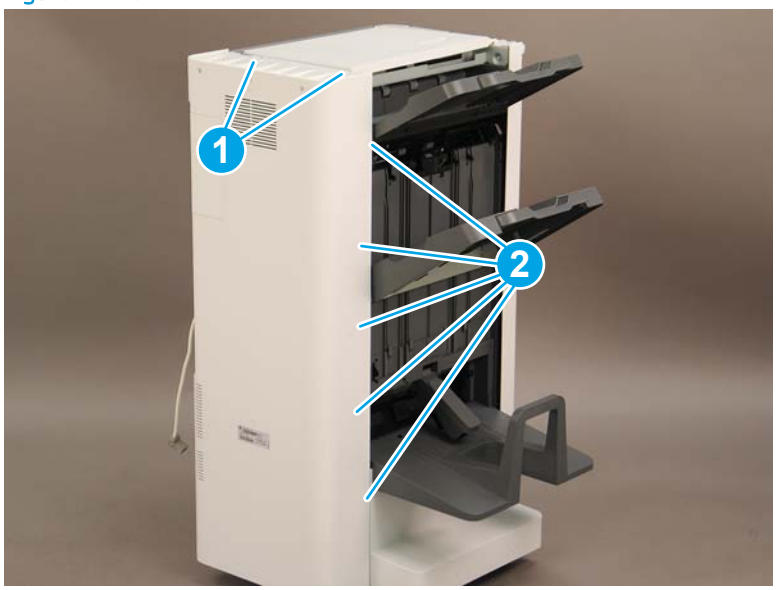


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-118 Remove seven screws

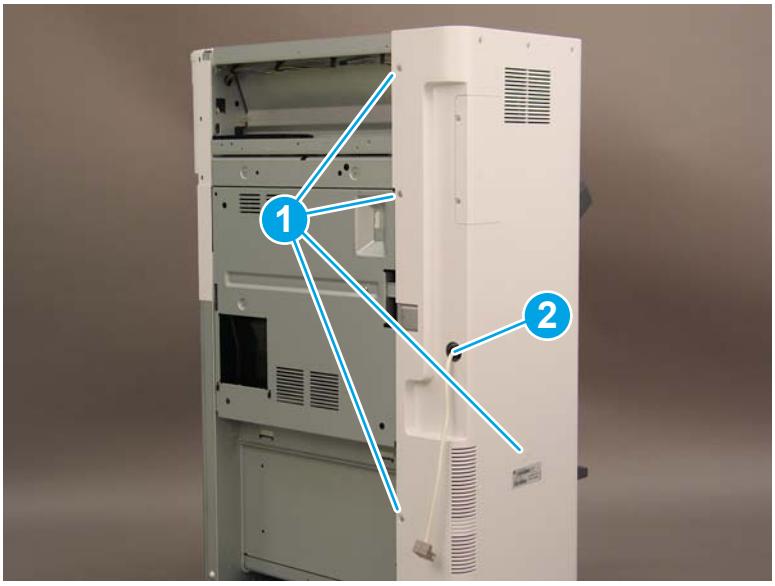


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-119 Remove four screws and the rear cover



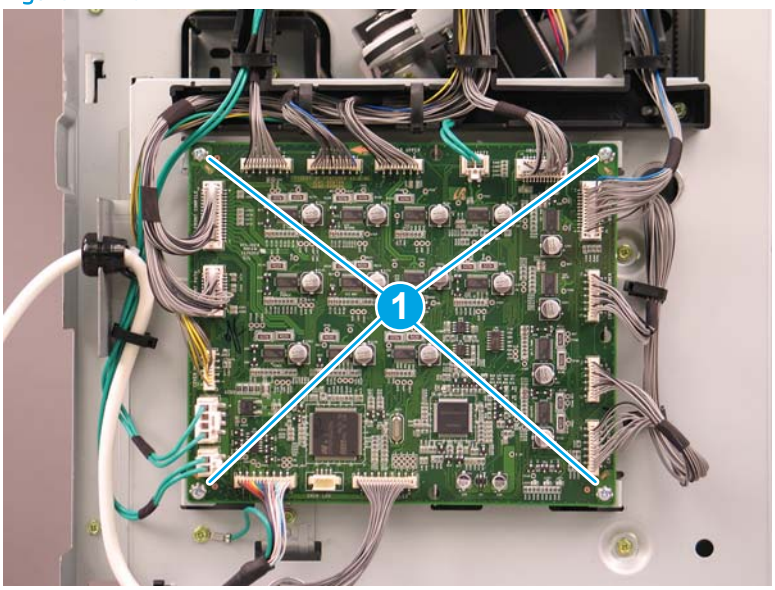
Step 4: Remove the controller PCA

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the controller PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Refer to the figure below for correct positioning and connection of the cables.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-120 Remove the controller PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the staple unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the staple unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01412A	Finisher Sub - Staple Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Staple a document and verify that the stapler functions correctly.

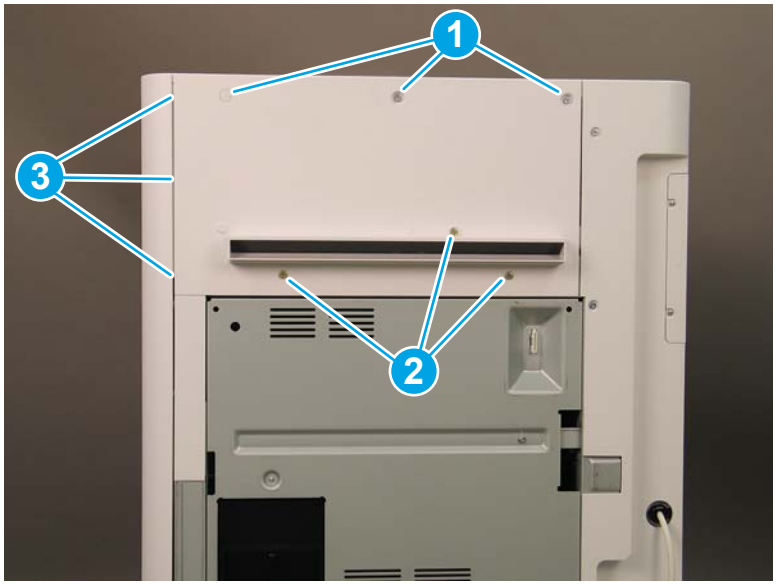
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

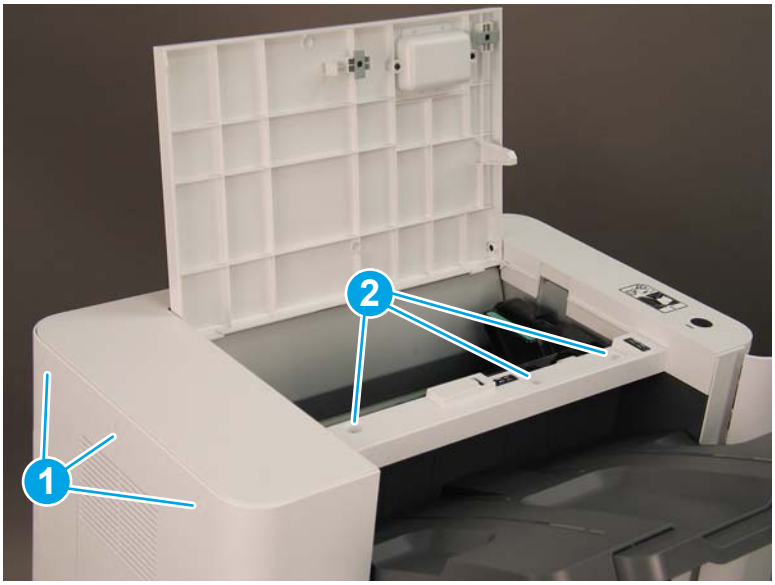
Figure 7-121 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

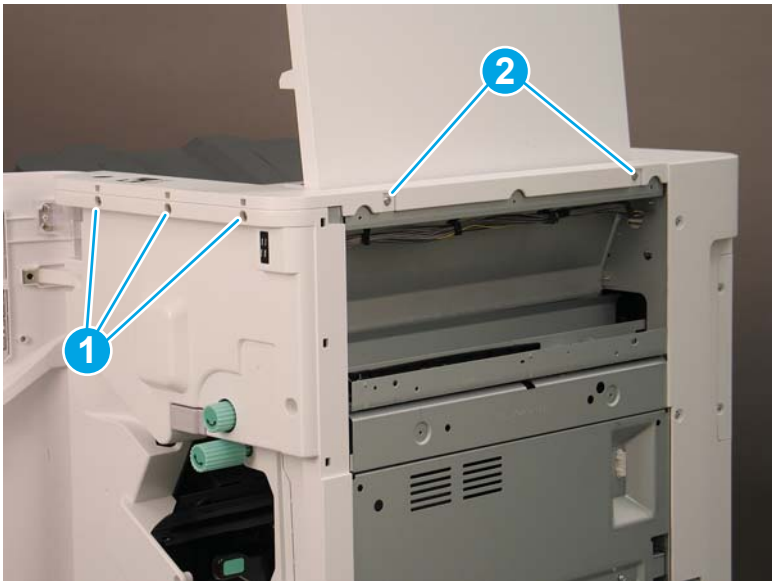
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-122 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

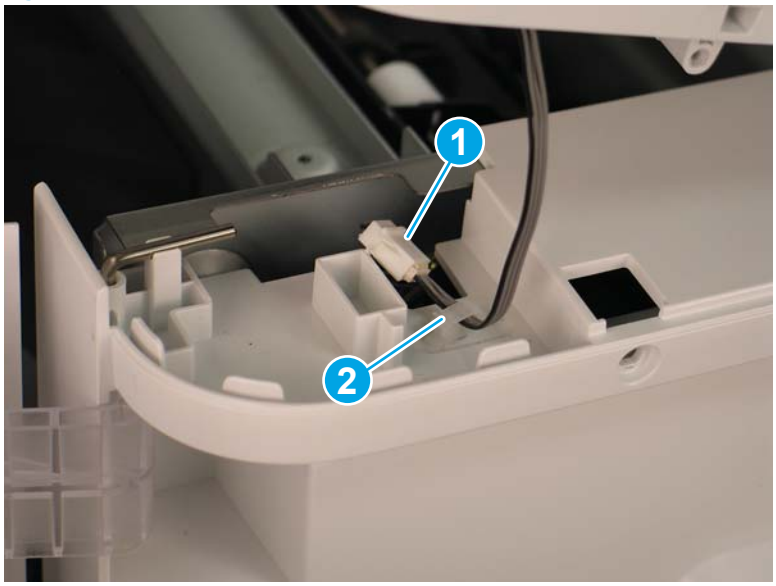
Figure 7-123 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-124 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

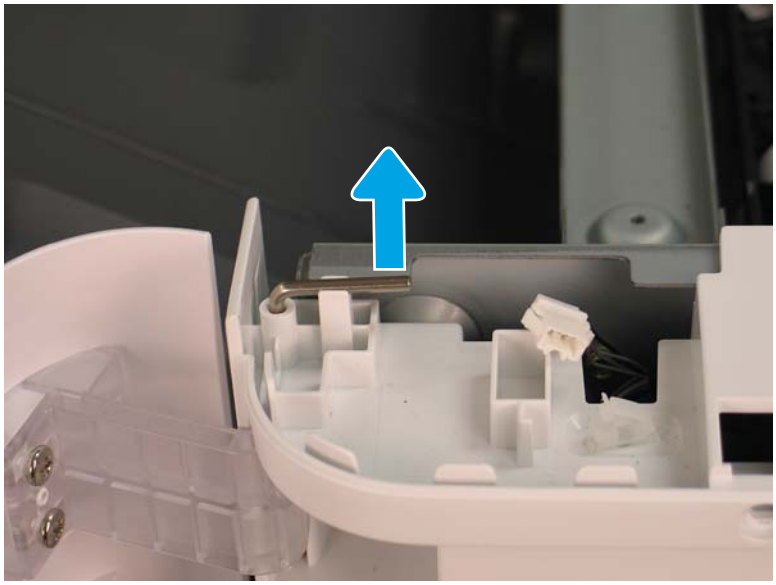


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

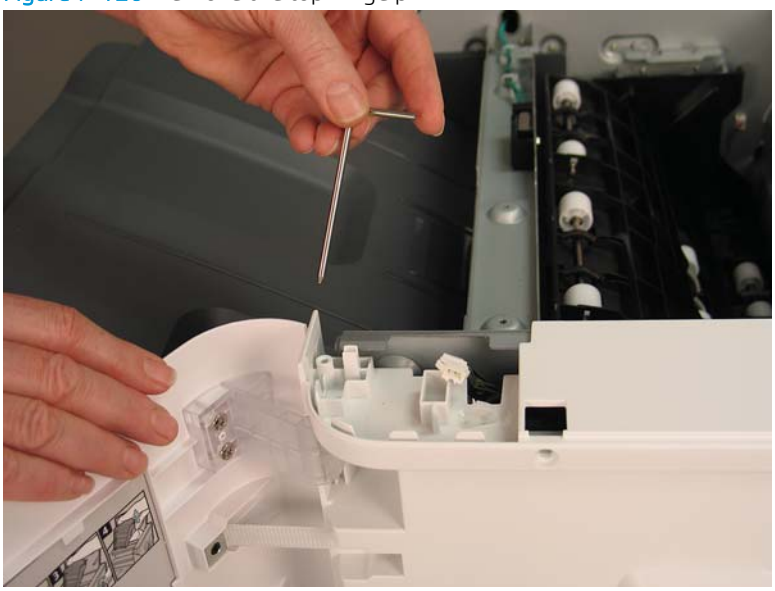
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-125 Lift the top hinge pin



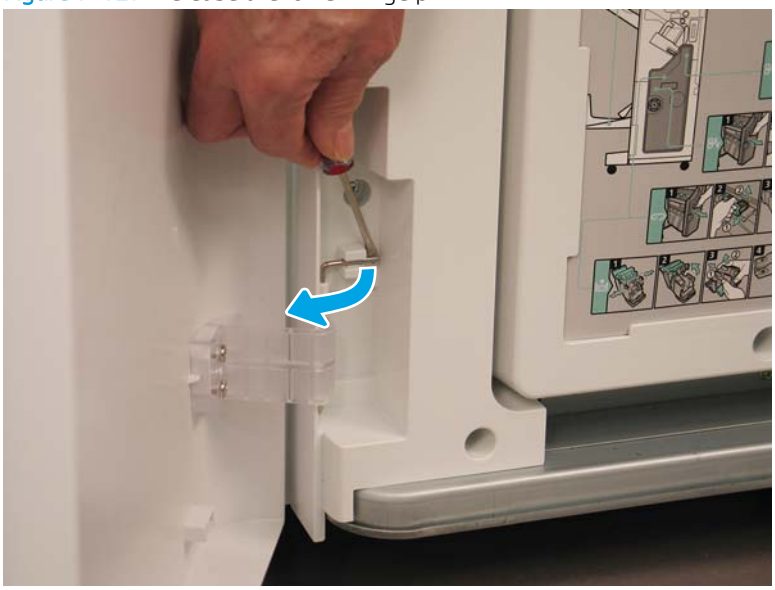
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-126 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-127 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

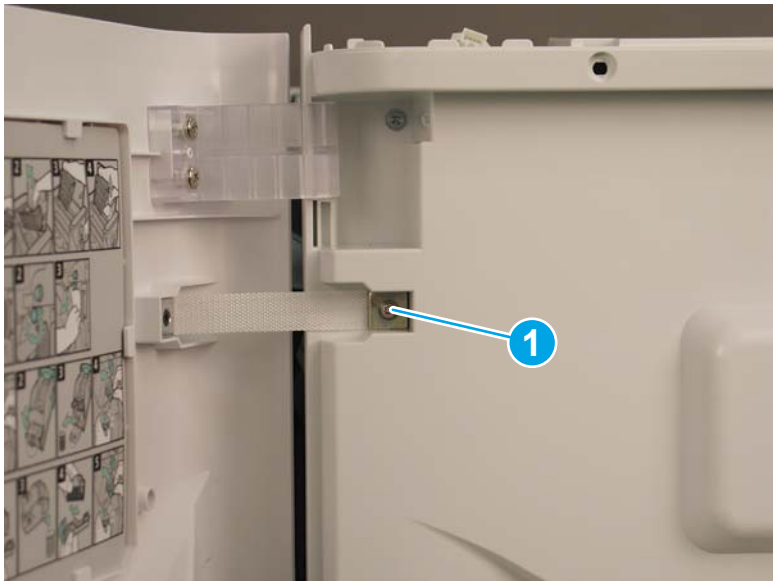
Figure 7-128 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

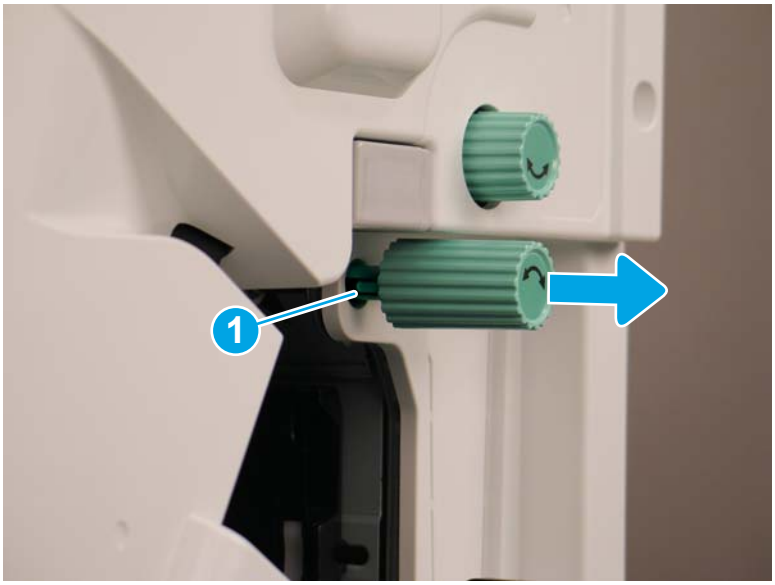
Figure 7-129 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

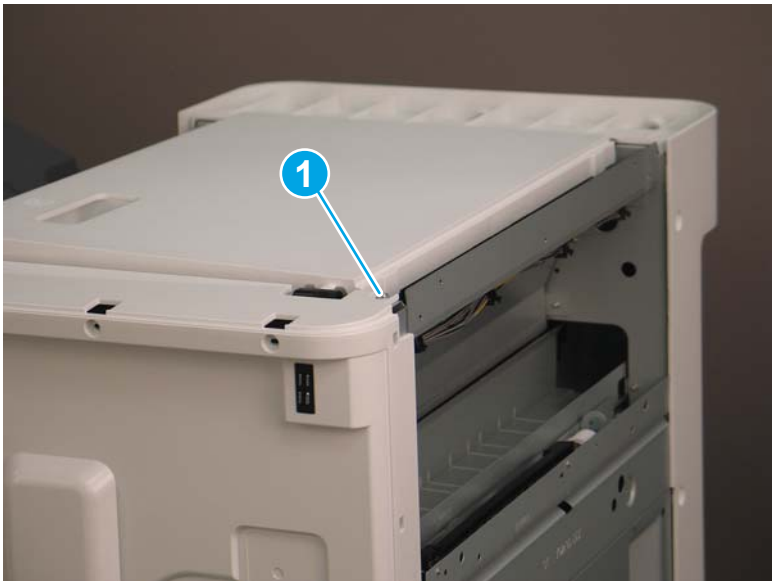
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-130 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

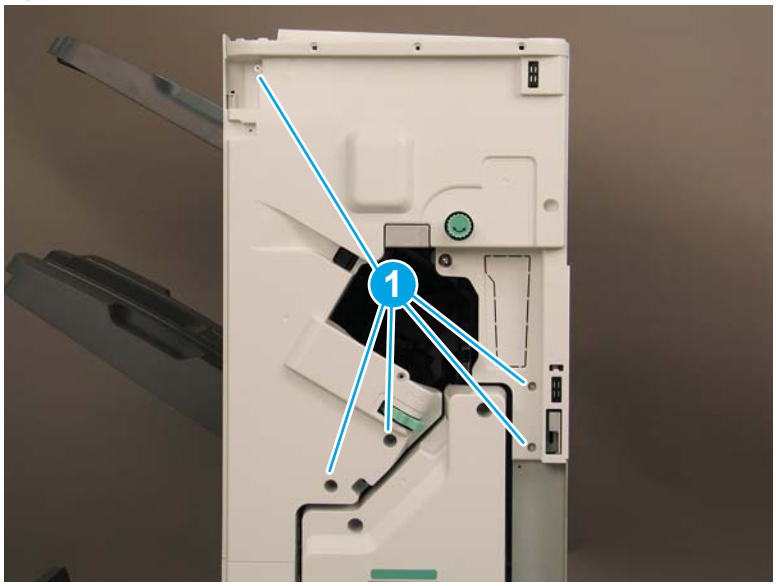
Figure 7-131 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

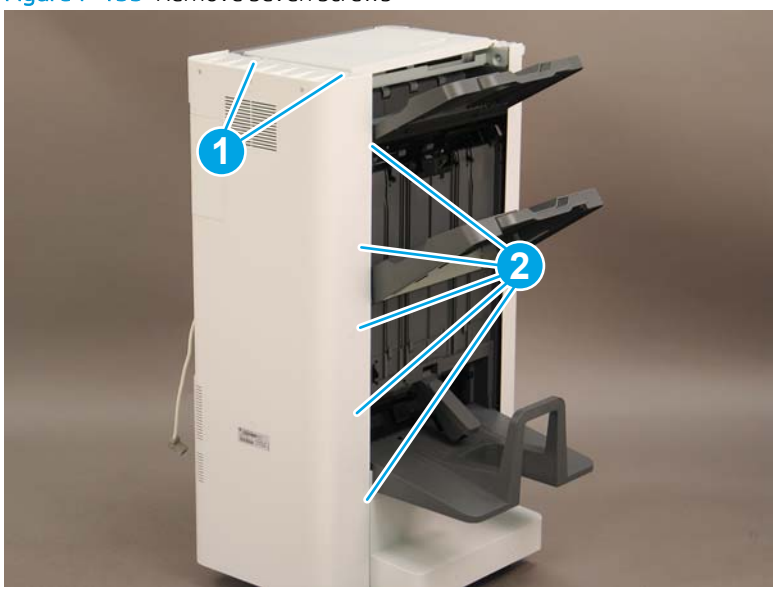
Figure 7-132 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-133 Remove seven screws

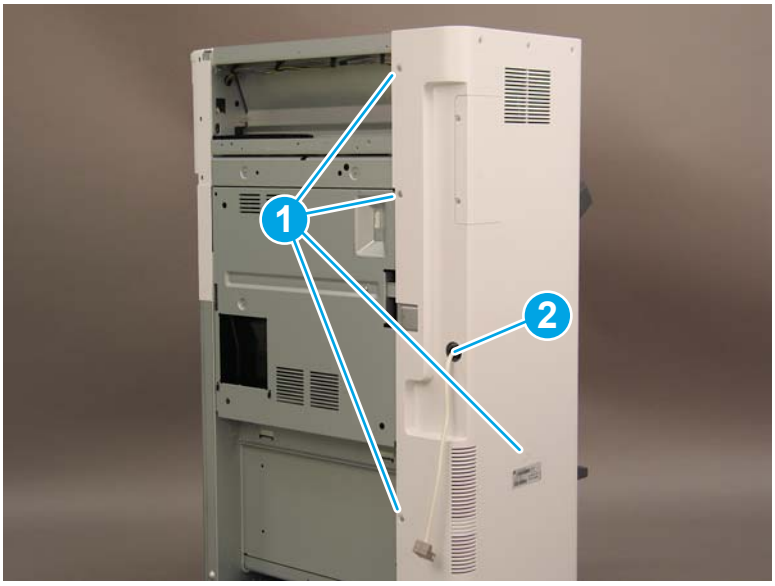


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

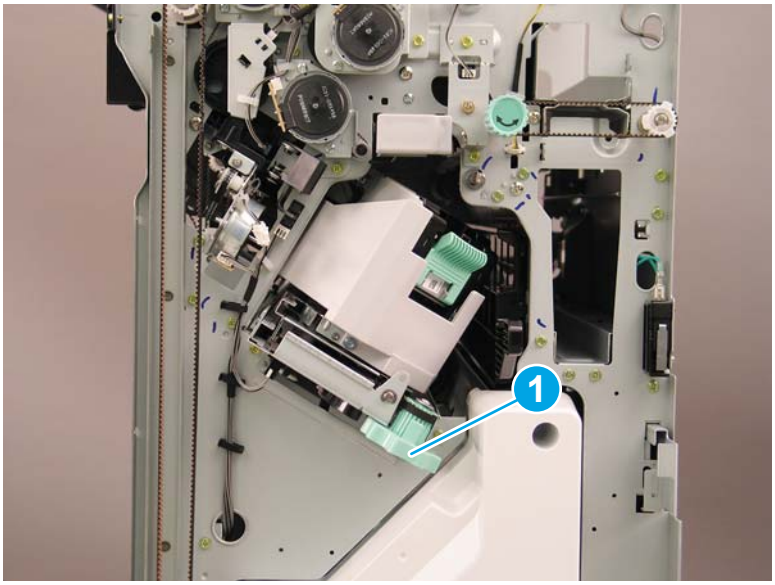
Figure 7-134 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the staple unit

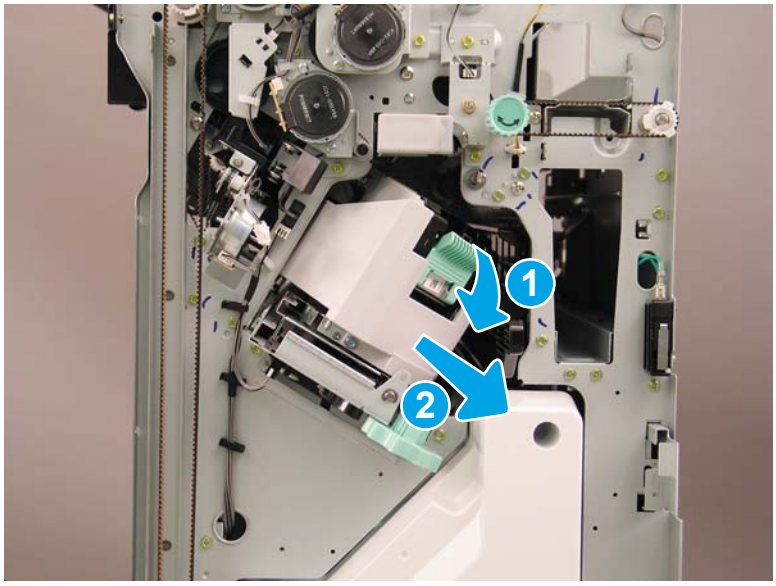
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the front until it stops.

Figure 7-135 Move the staple unit to the front



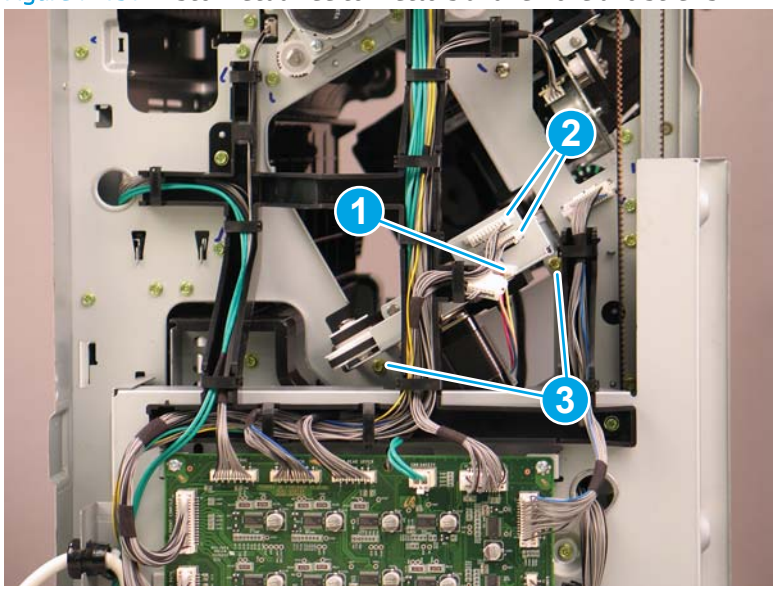
2. Lower the green latch (callout 1), and then slide the staple cartridge away from the finisher to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 7-136 Remove the staple cartridge



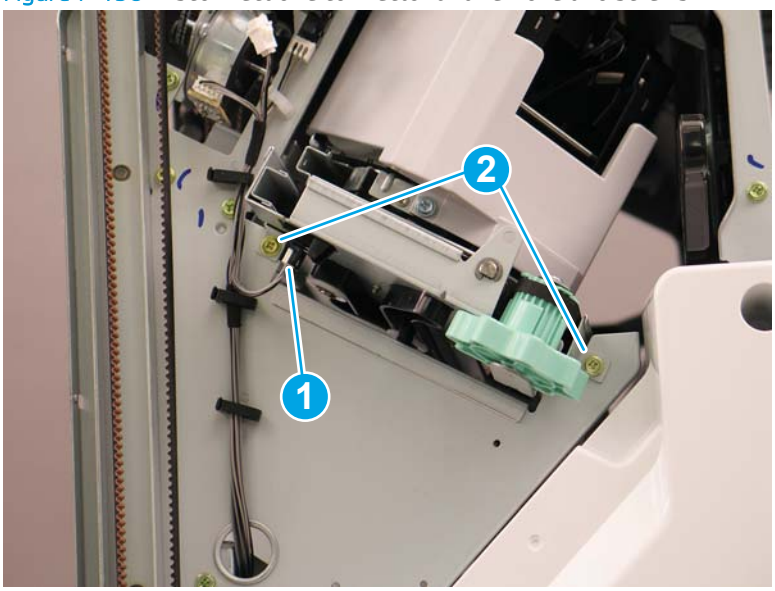
3. At the back of the finisher, release one retainer (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

Figure 7-137 Disconnect three connectors and remove two screws



4. At the front of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

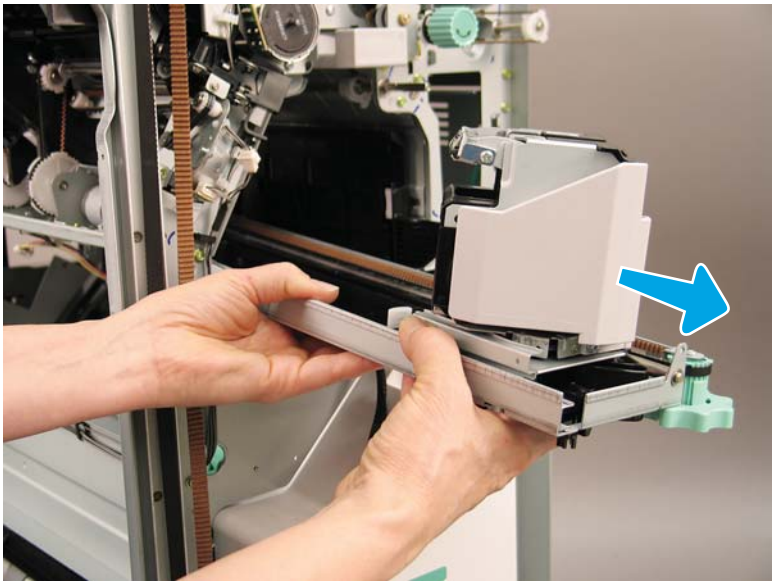
Figure 7-138 Disconnect one connector and remove two screws



5. Lift up, and then slide the staple unit to the front of the finisher to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-139 Remove the staple unit



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Dummy feed guide

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the dummy feed guide on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Dummy feed guide part number	
SAM-JC93-01161A	Assy-Guide Dummy-Feed

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

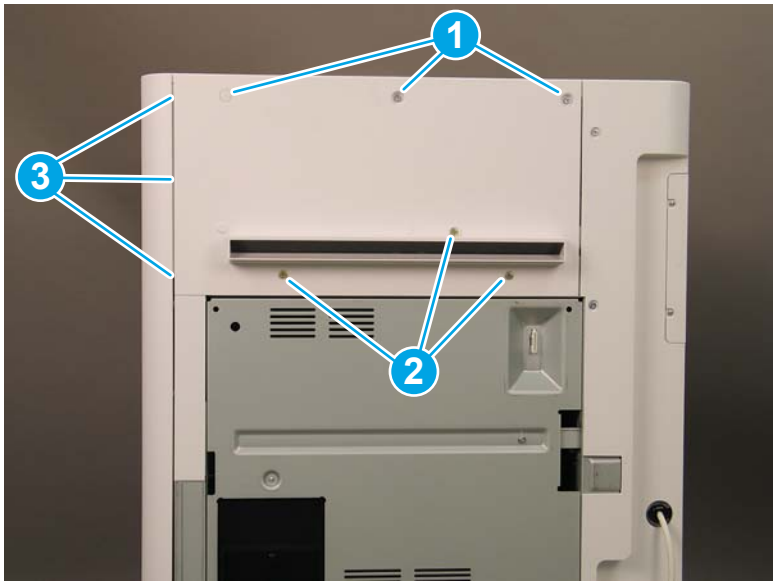
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

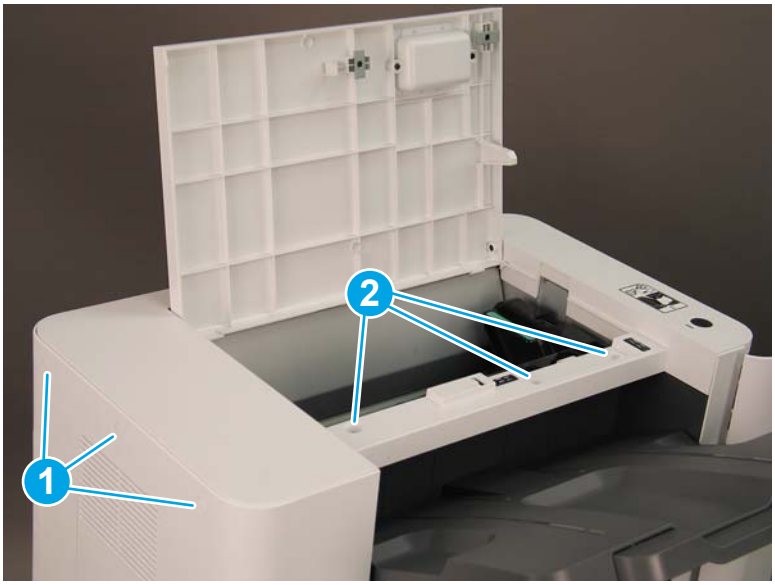
Figure 7-140 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

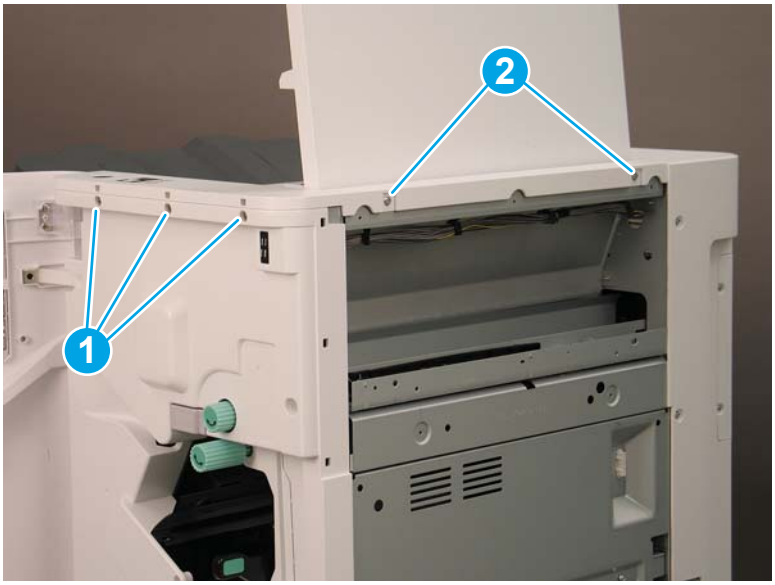
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-141 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

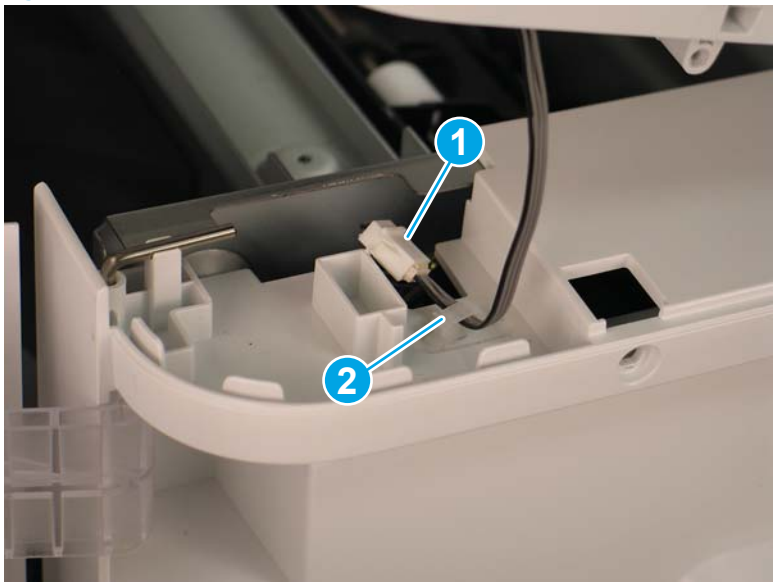
Figure 7-142 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-143 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

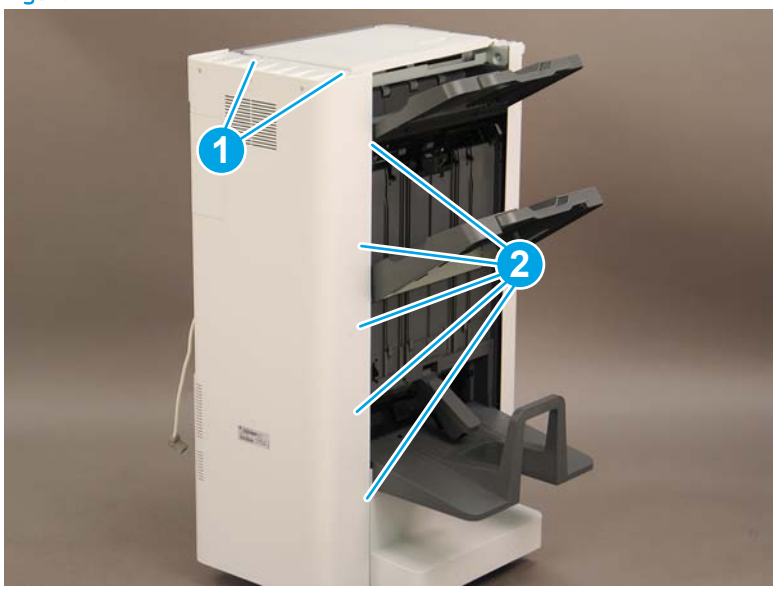


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-144 Remove seven screws

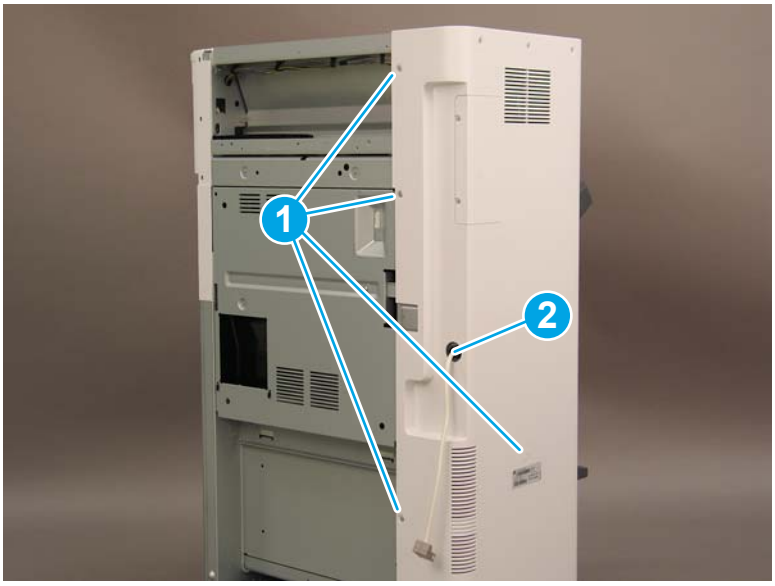


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-145 Remove four screws and the rear cover

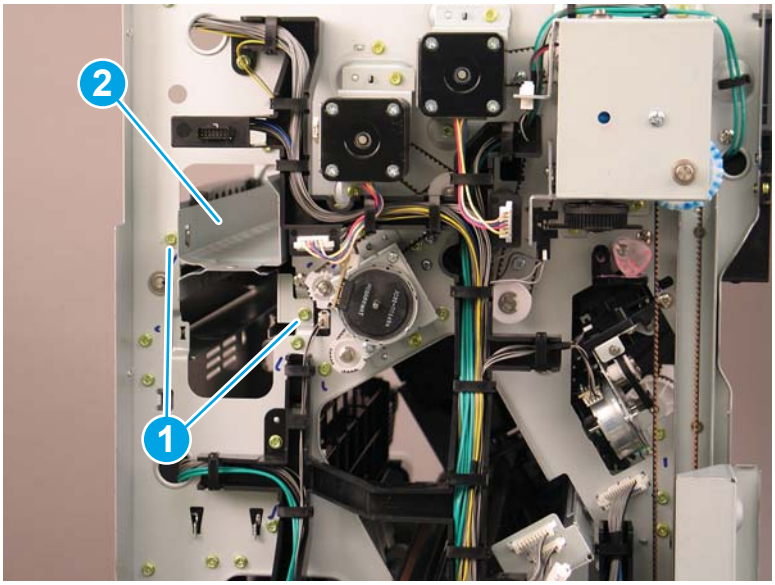


Step 4: Remove the dummy feed guide (finisher)

▲ At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the dummy feed guide (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-146 Remove two screws and the feed guide



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top jam access cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top jam access cover for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top jam access cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01455A	Finisher Sub - Top Jam

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

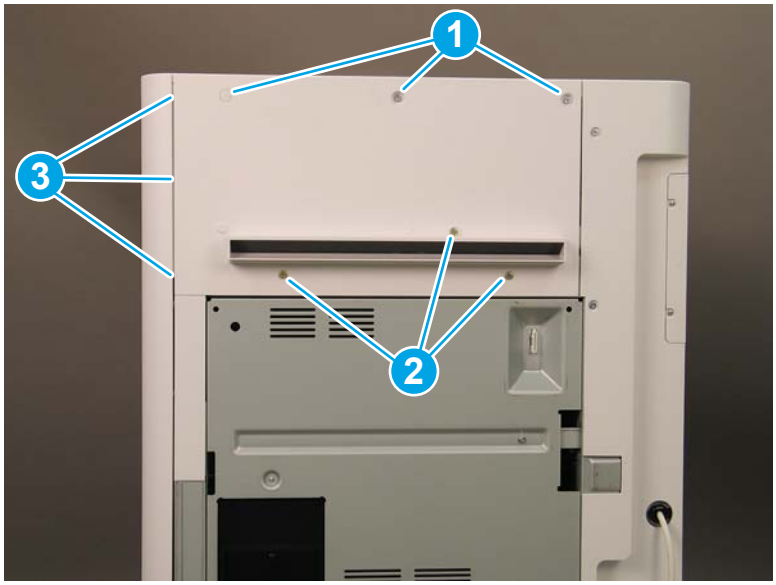
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

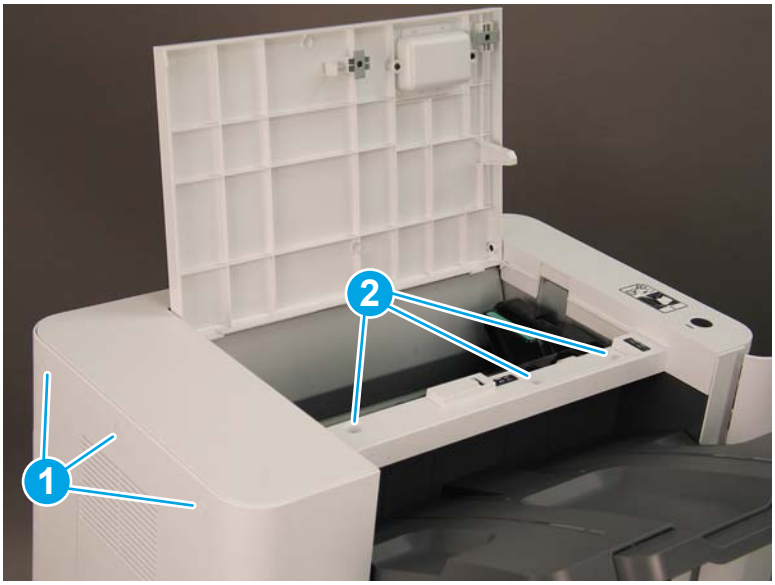
Figure 7-147 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

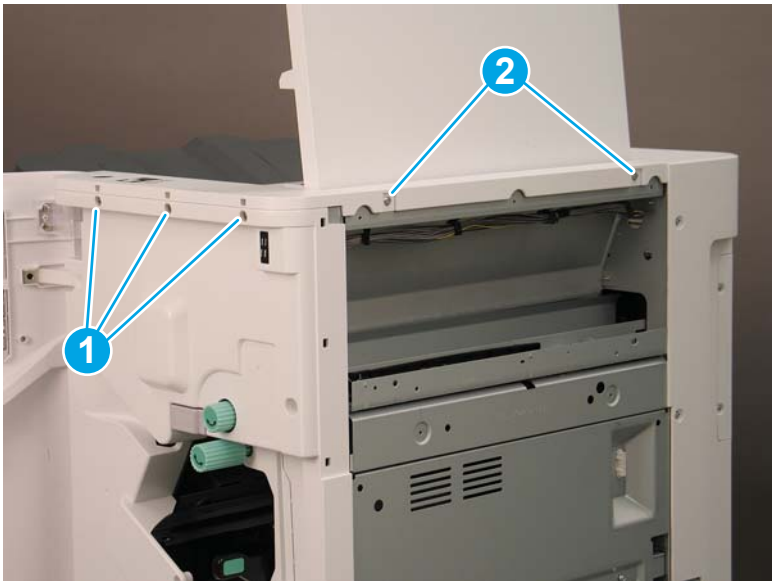
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-148 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

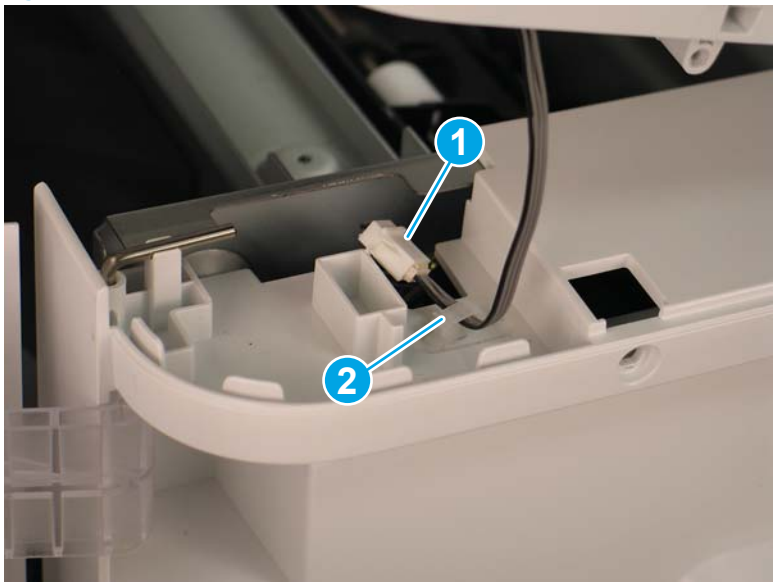
Figure 7-149 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-150 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

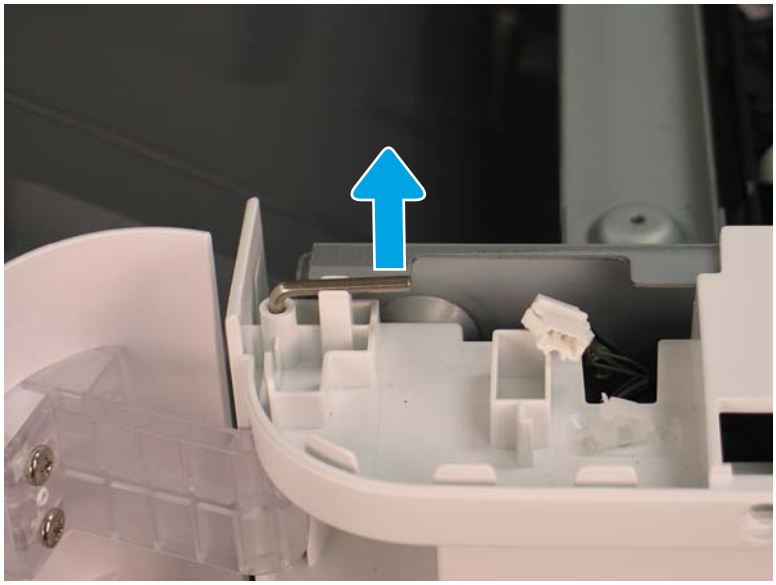


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

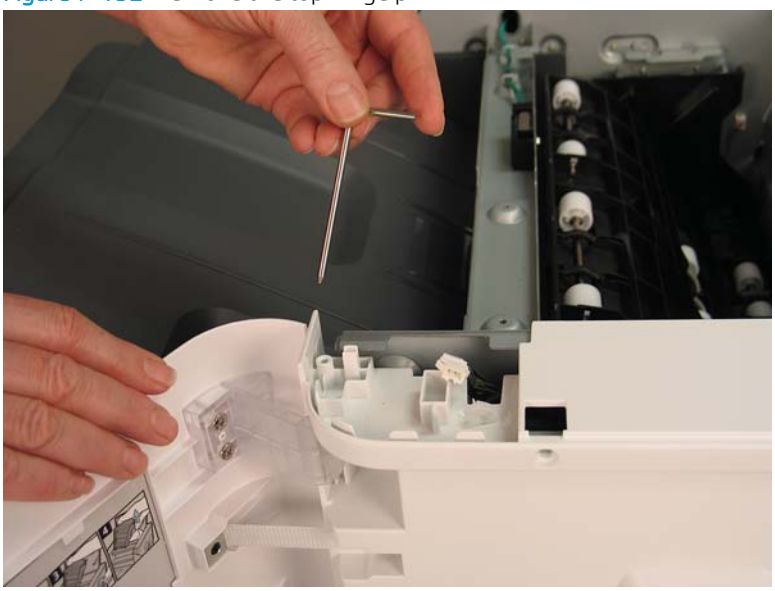
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-151 Lift the top hinge pin



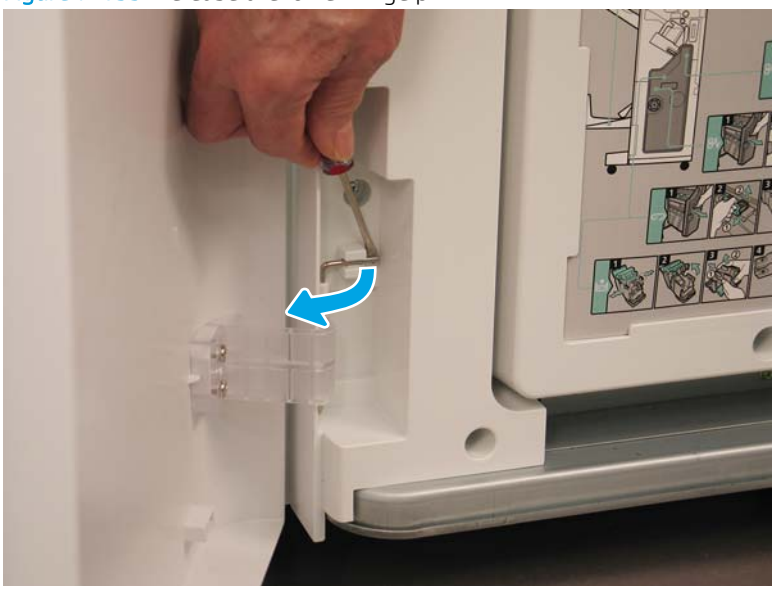
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-152 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-153 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

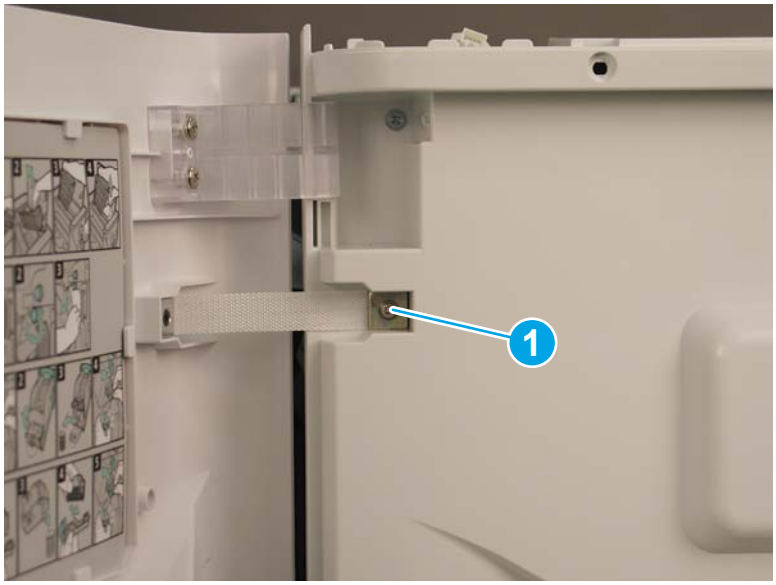
Figure 7-154 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

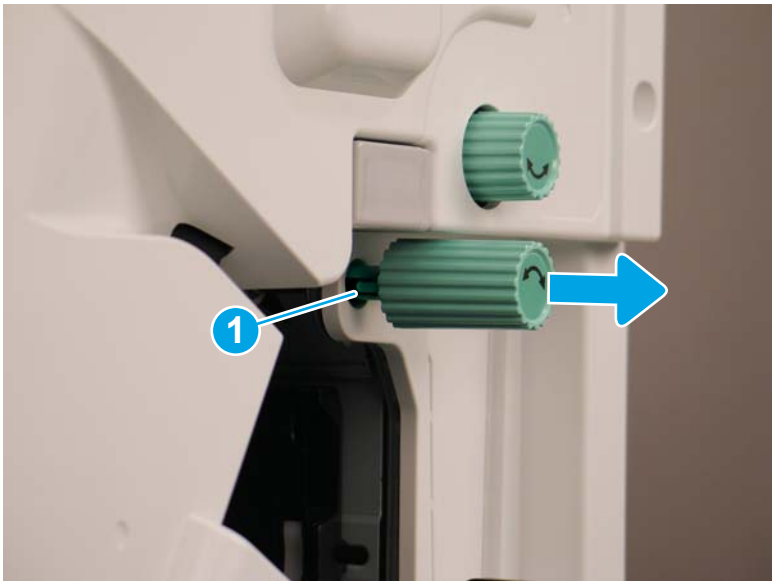
Figure 7-155 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

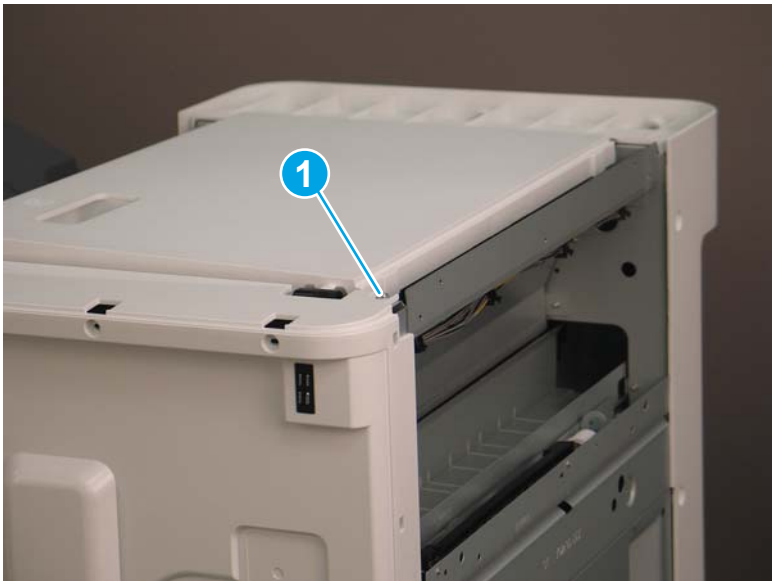
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-156 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

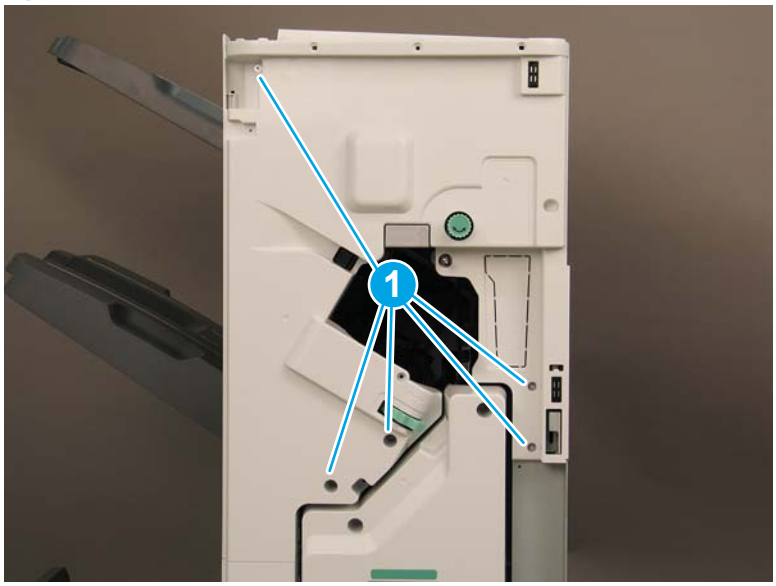
Figure 7-157 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

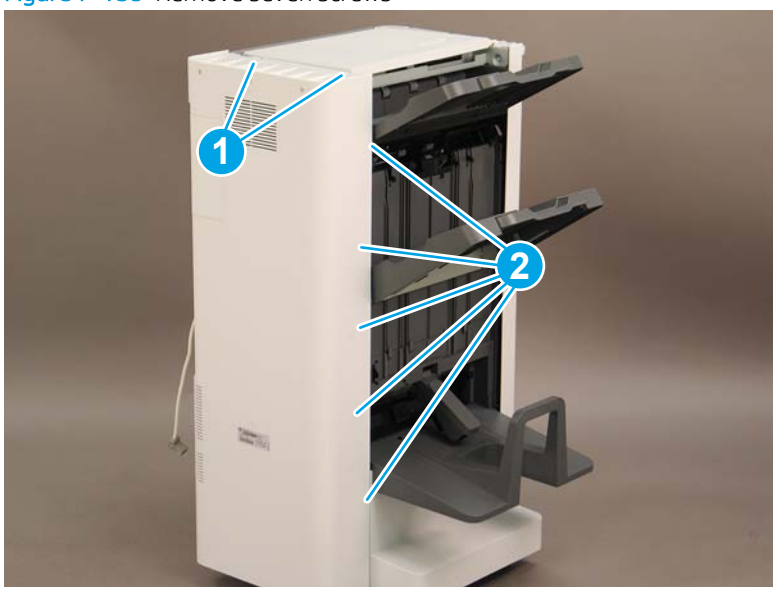
Figure 7-158 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-159 Remove seven screws

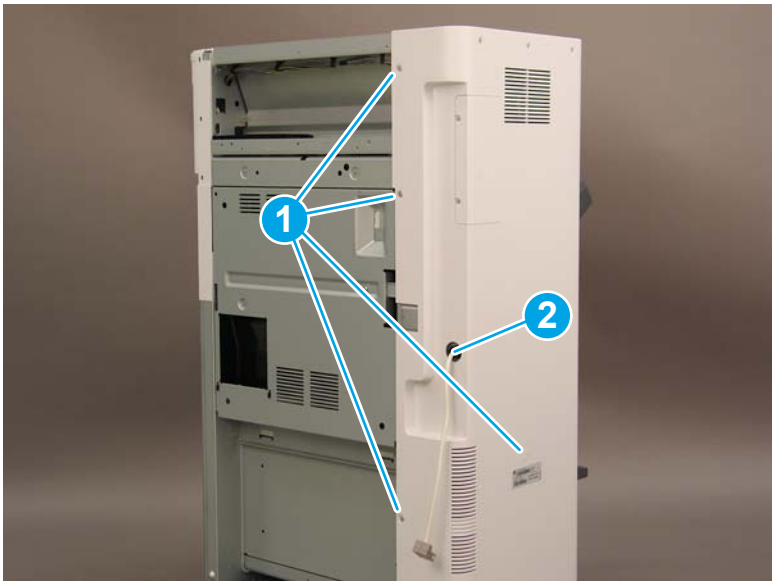


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-160 Remove four screws and the rear cover



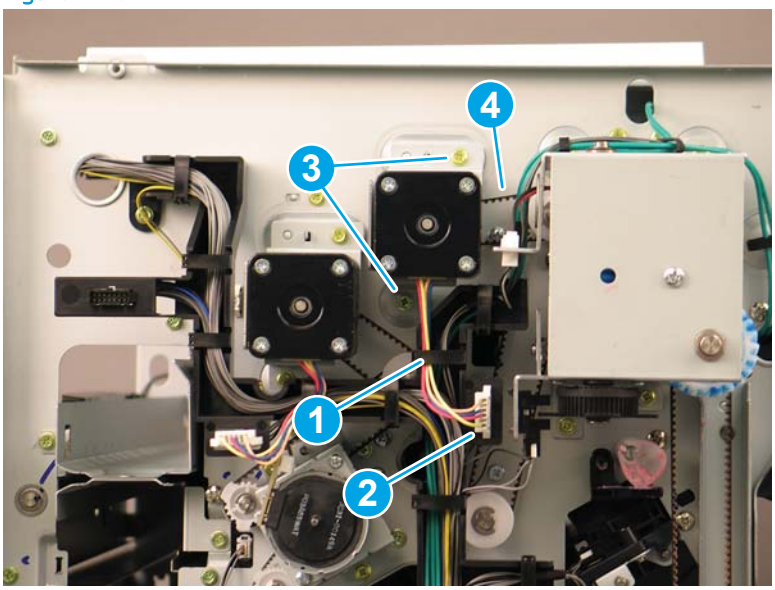
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

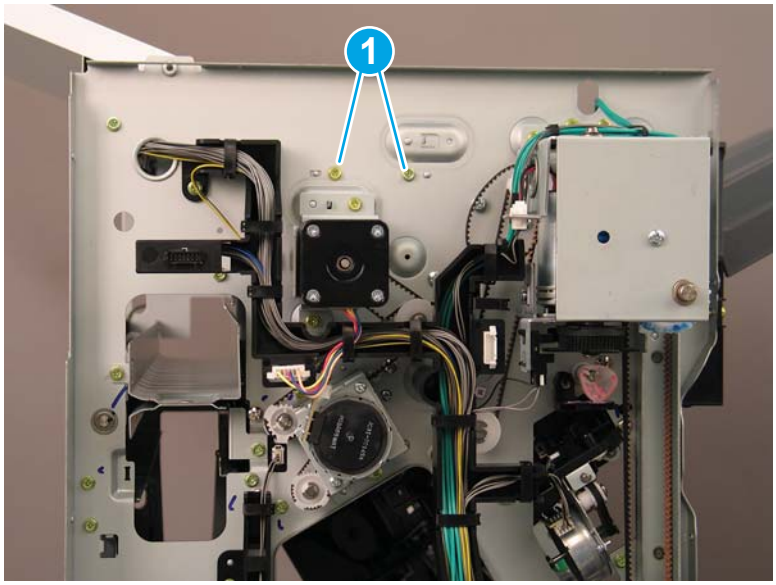
Figure 7-161 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-162 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-163 Remove the top jam access cover



Step 8: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top lower feed assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover
- Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the top lower feed assembly for the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top lower feed assembly part number	
SAM-JC90-01454A	Finisher Sub-Top Lower

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

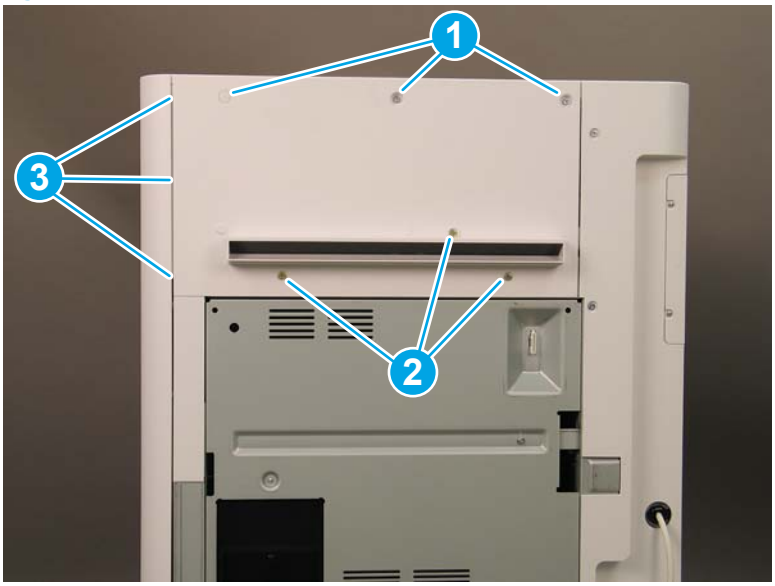
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

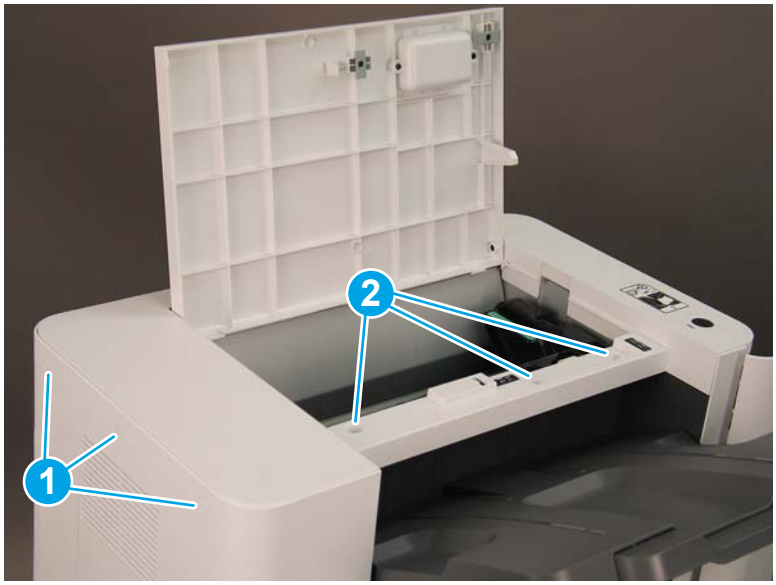
Figure 7-164 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

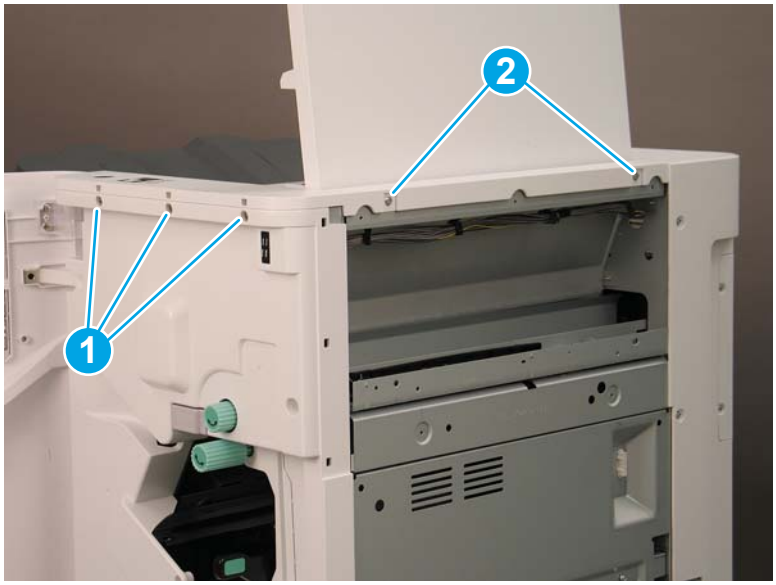
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-165 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

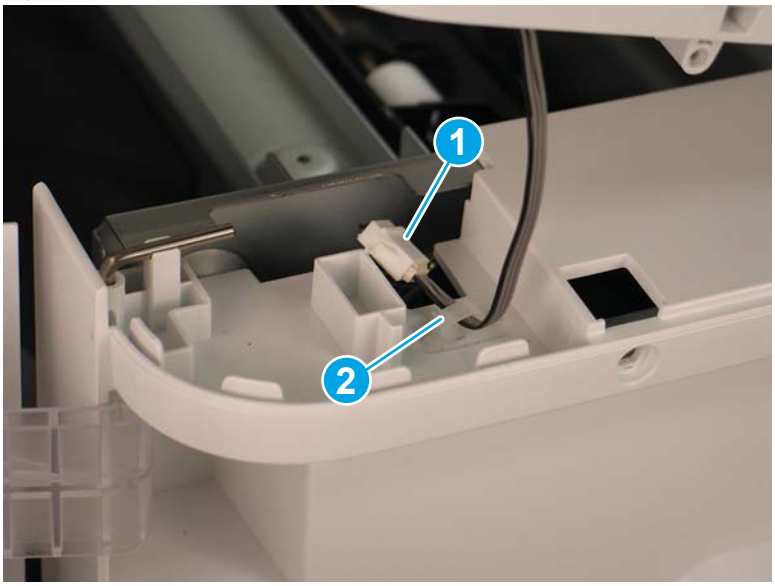
Figure 7-166 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-167 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

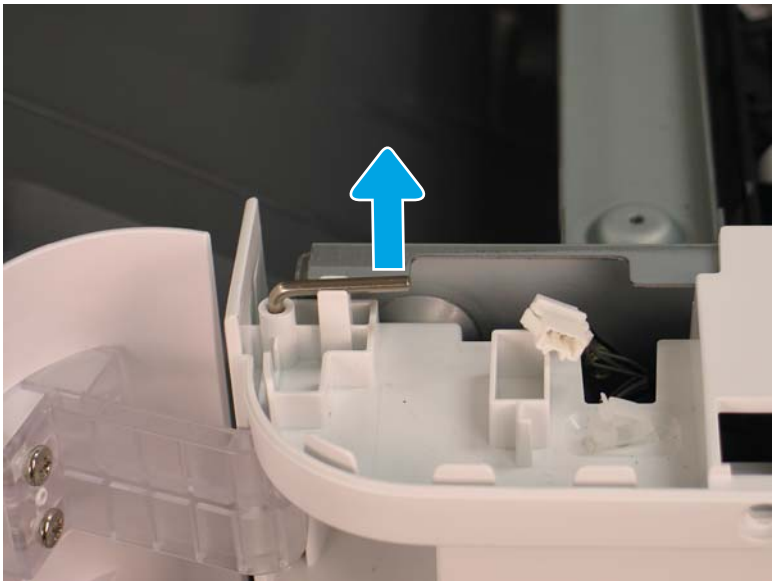


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

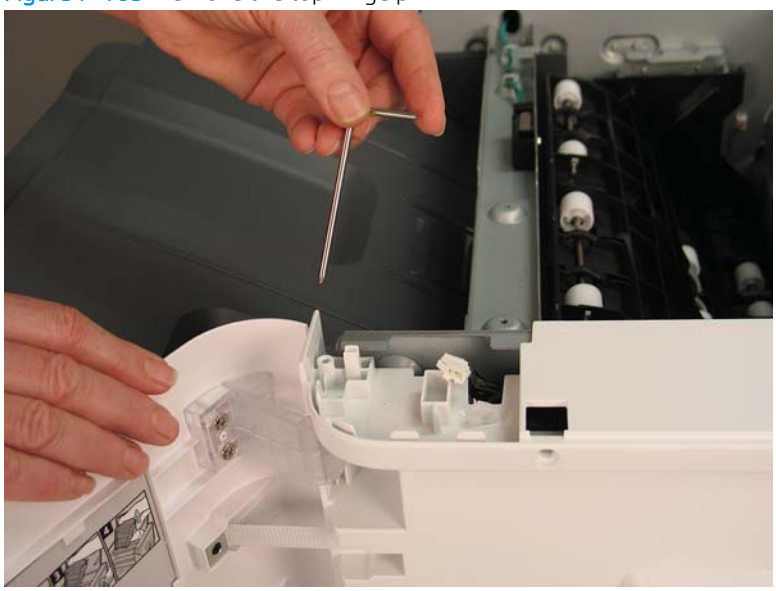
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-168 Lift the top hinge pin



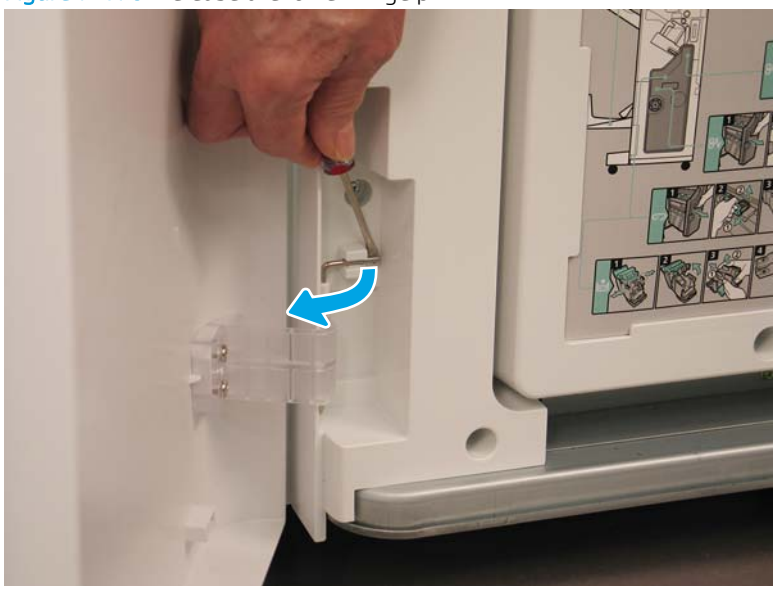
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-169 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-170 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

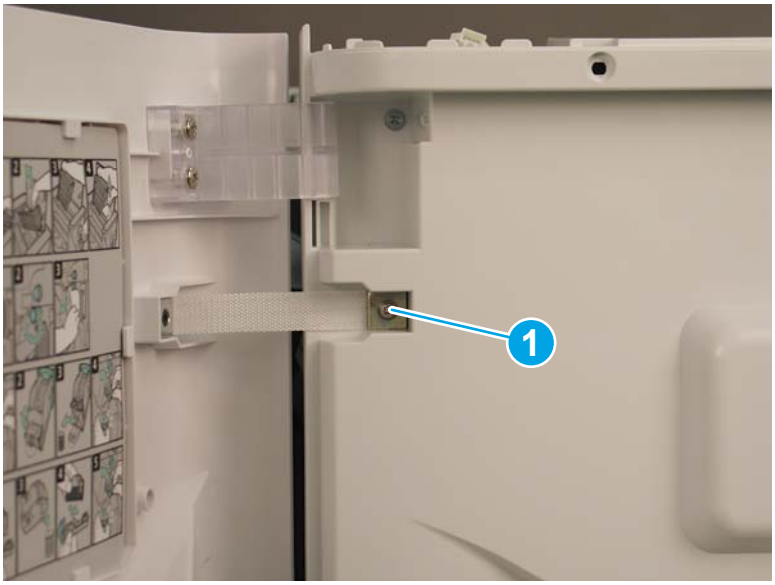
Figure 7-171 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

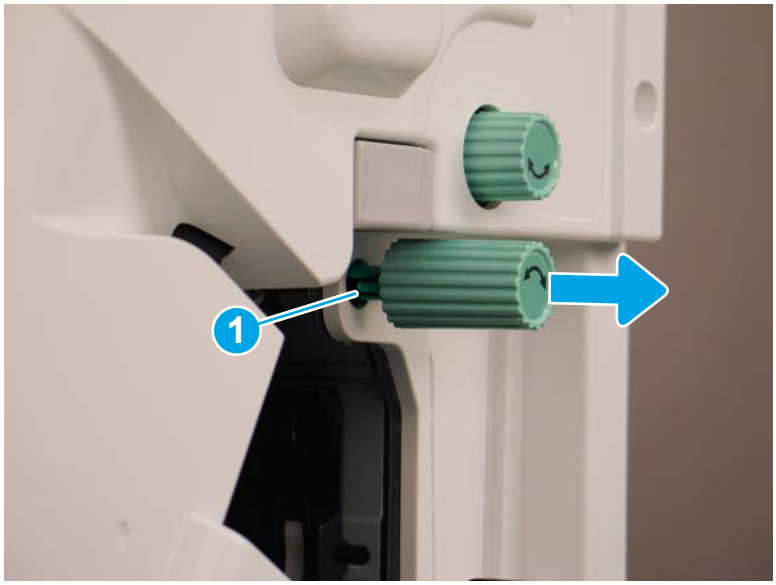
Figure 7-172 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

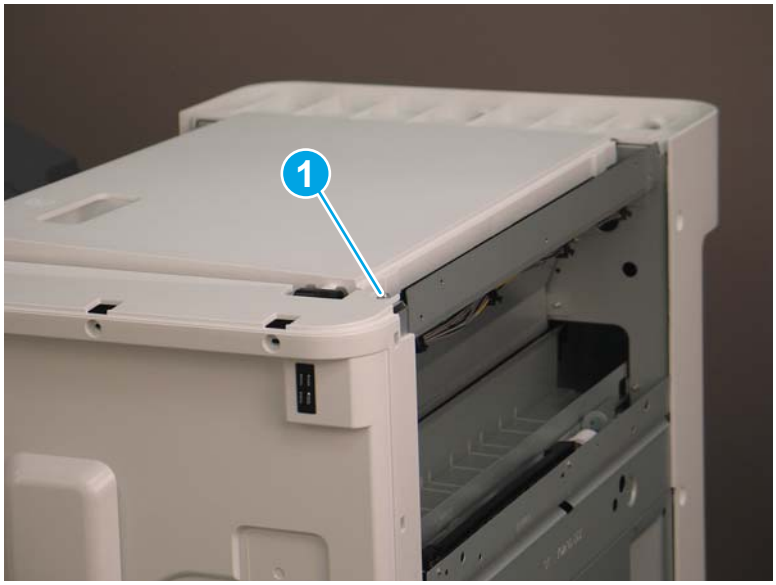
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-173 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

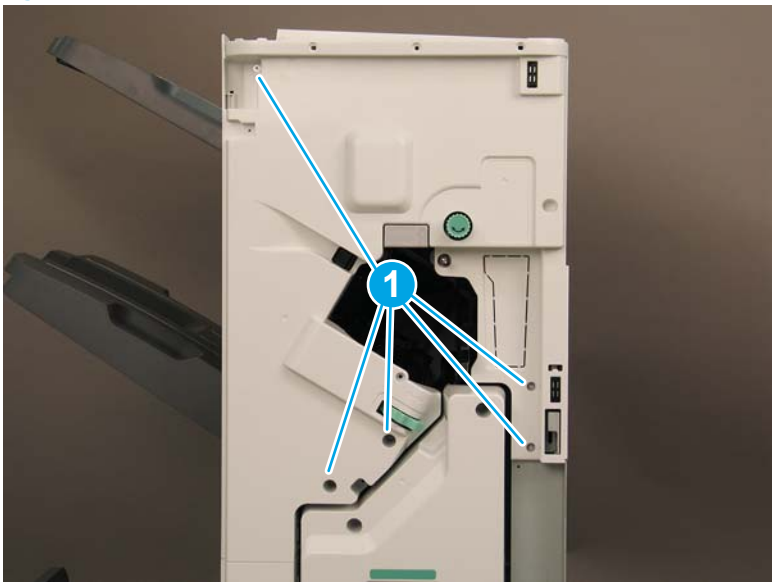
Figure 7-174 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

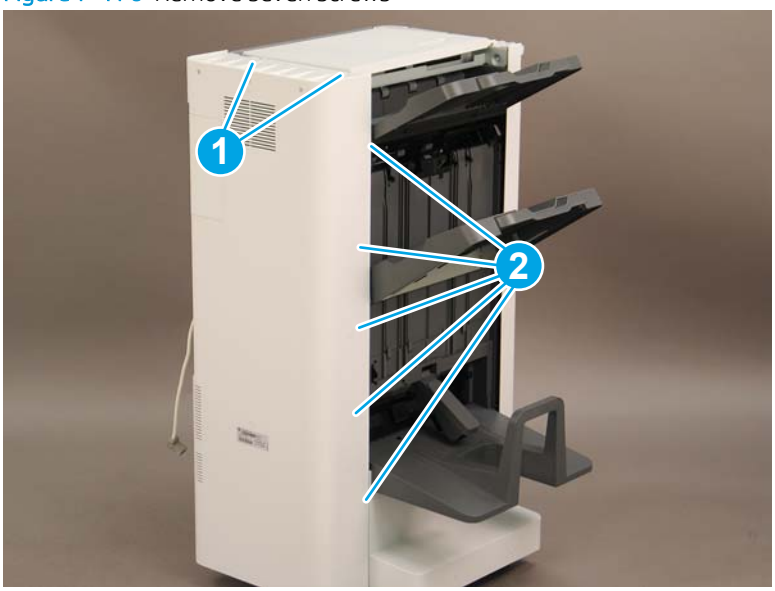
Figure 7-175 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-176 Remove seven screws

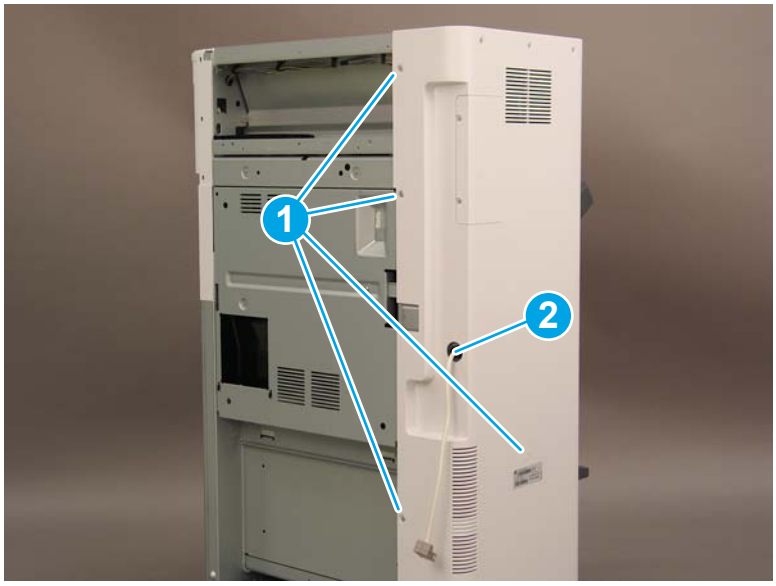


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-177 Remove four screws and the rear cover



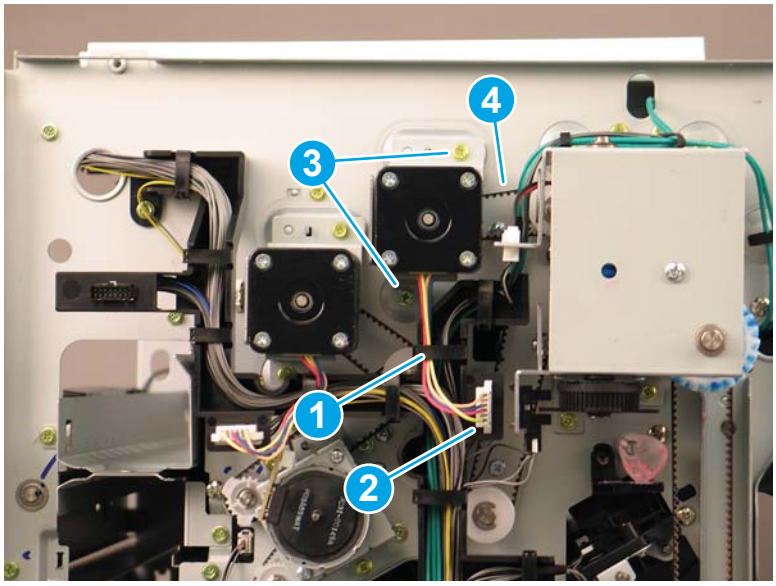
Step 6: Remove the feed exit motor (finisher)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

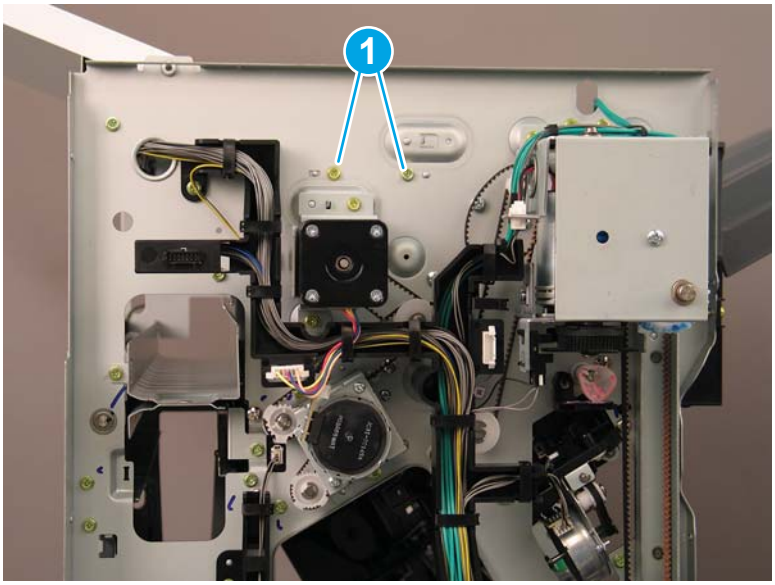
Figure 7-178 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 7: Remove the top jam access cover

1. At the rear of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-179 Remove two screws



2. Remove the top jam access cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

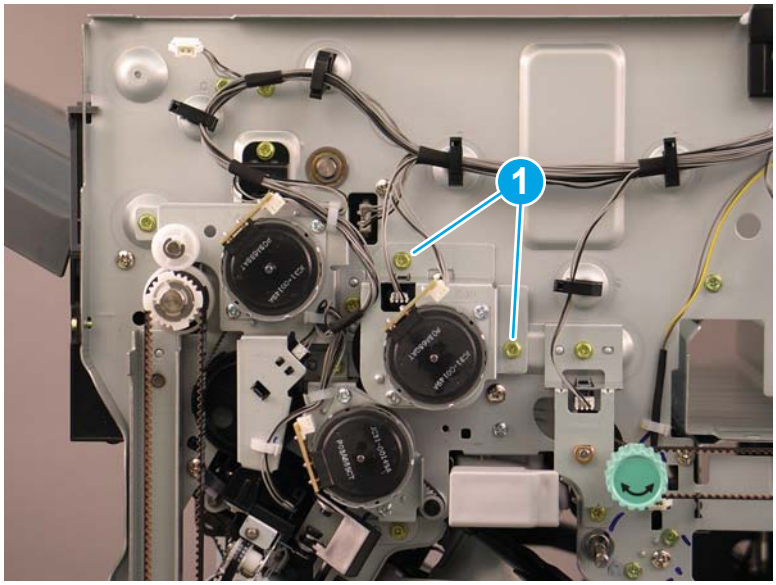
Figure 7-180 Remove the top jam access cover



Step 8: Remove the top lower feed assembly (finisher)

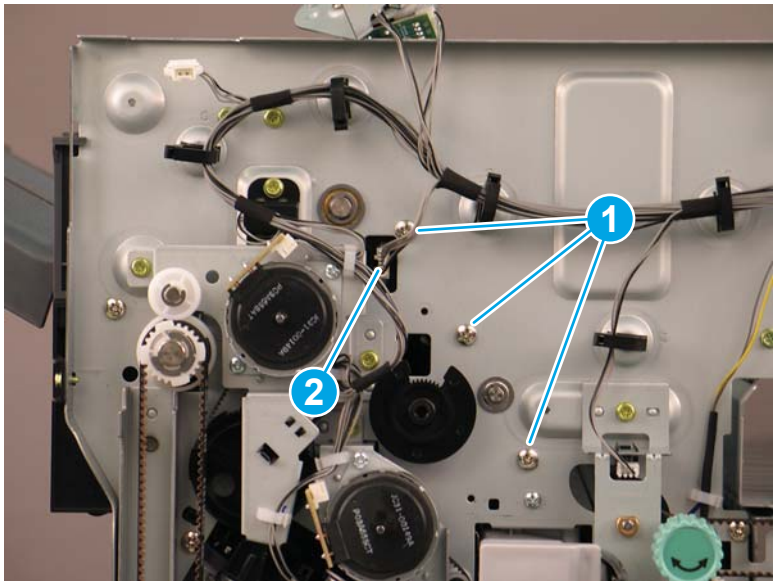
1. At the front of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1) on the buffer motor housing, and then tilt the motor aside to access the screws under it.

Figure 7-181 Remove two screws



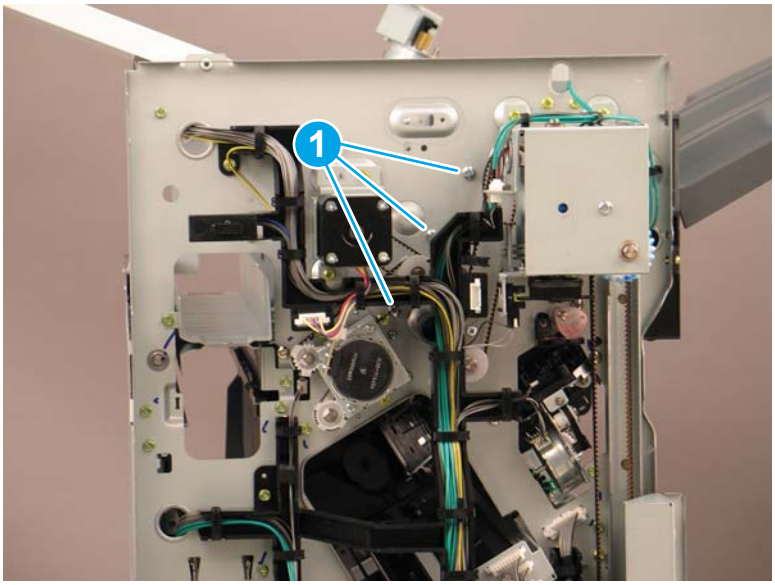
2. At the front of the finisher, remove three self-tapping screws (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 7-182 Remove three screws and disconnect one connector



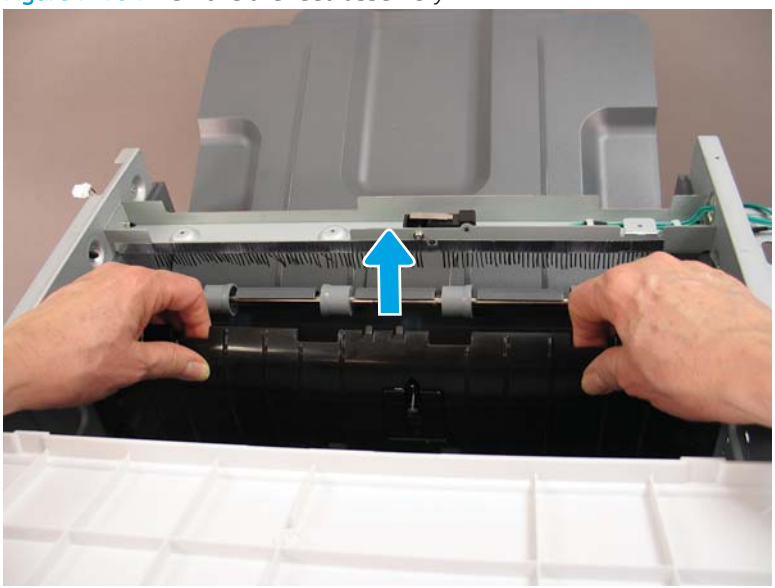
3. At the rear of the finisher, remove three machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-183 Remove three screws



4. At the top of the finisher, lift the feed assembly straight up to disengage two tabs on the bottom and remove the assembly.

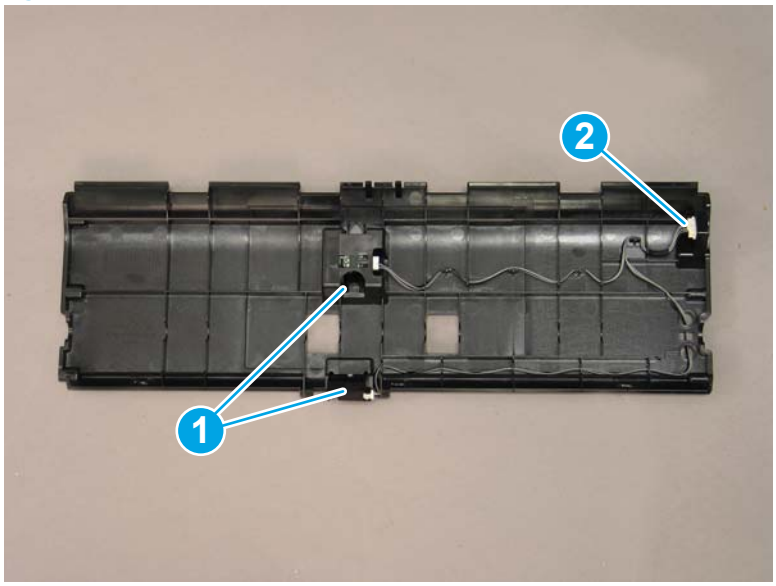
Figure 7-184 Remove the feed assembly



5. If you are replacing the top lower feed assembly, locate two sensors (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2) on the back of the assembly. Remove these items and transfer them to the replacement part.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-185 Locate sensors and connector



Step 9: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the ejector unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01409A	Finisher Sub - Ejector Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

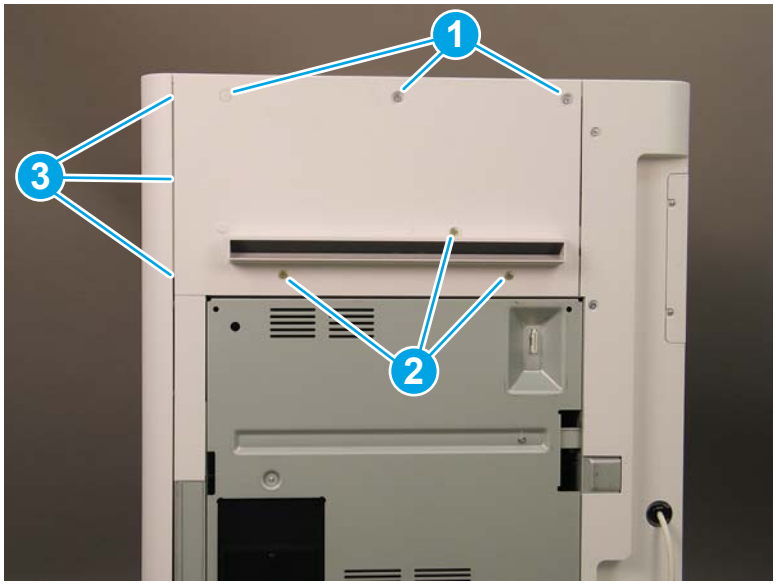
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

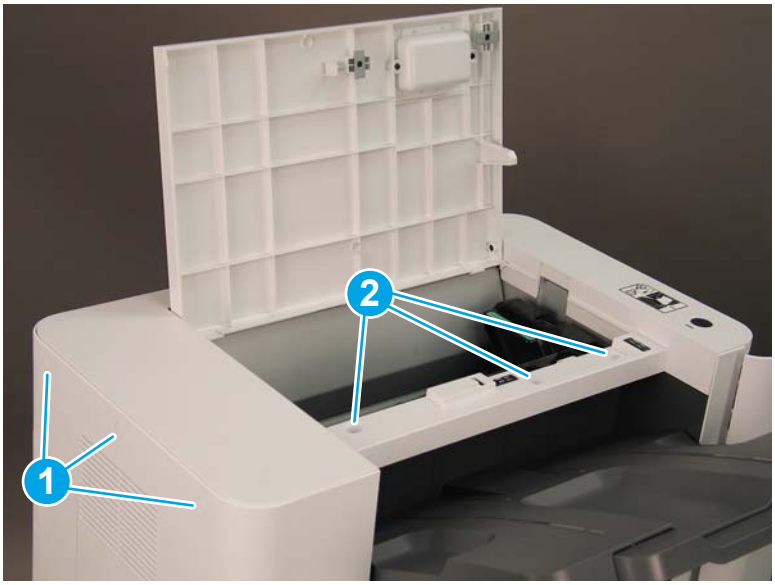
Figure 7-186 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

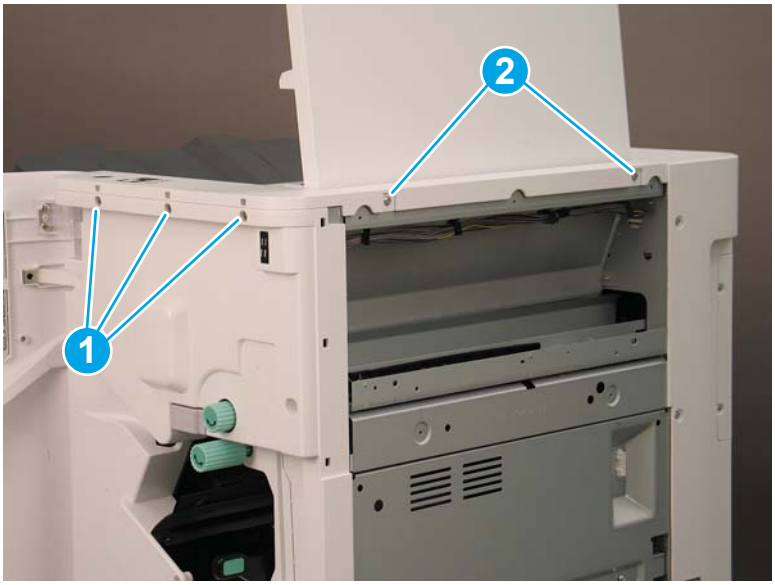
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-187 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

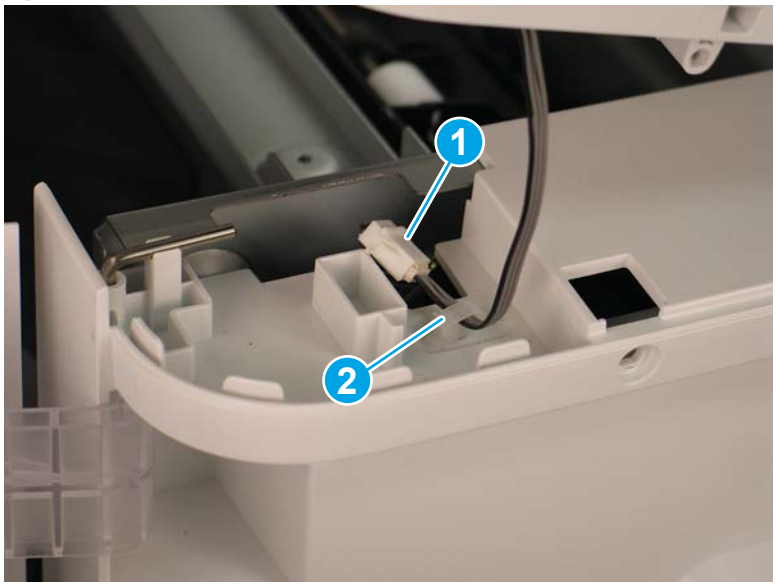
Figure 7-188 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-189 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

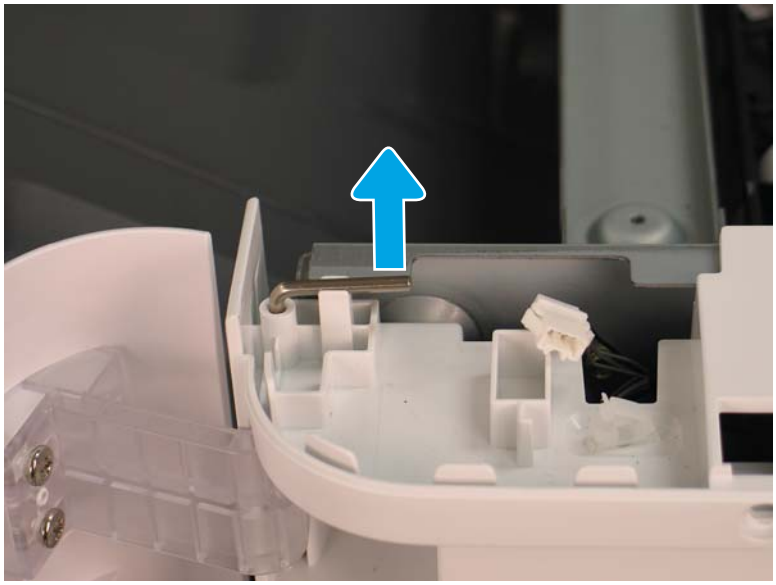


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

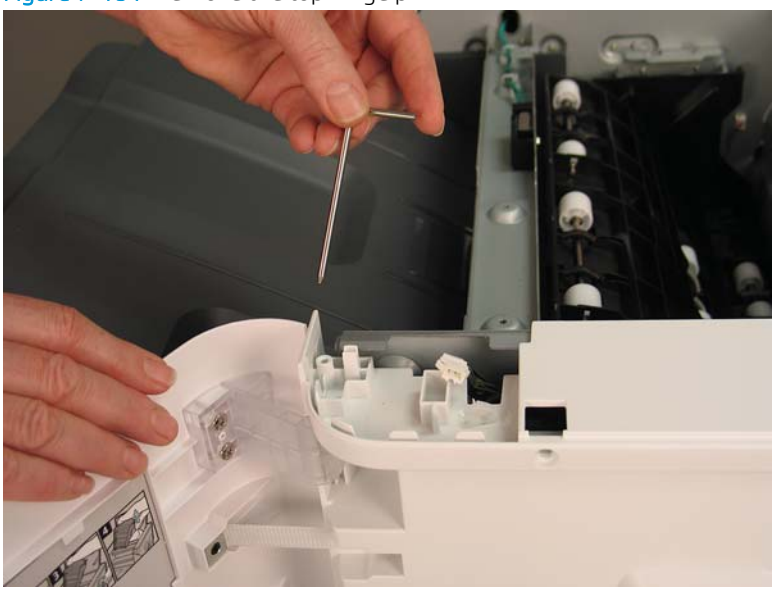
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-190 Lift the top hinge pin



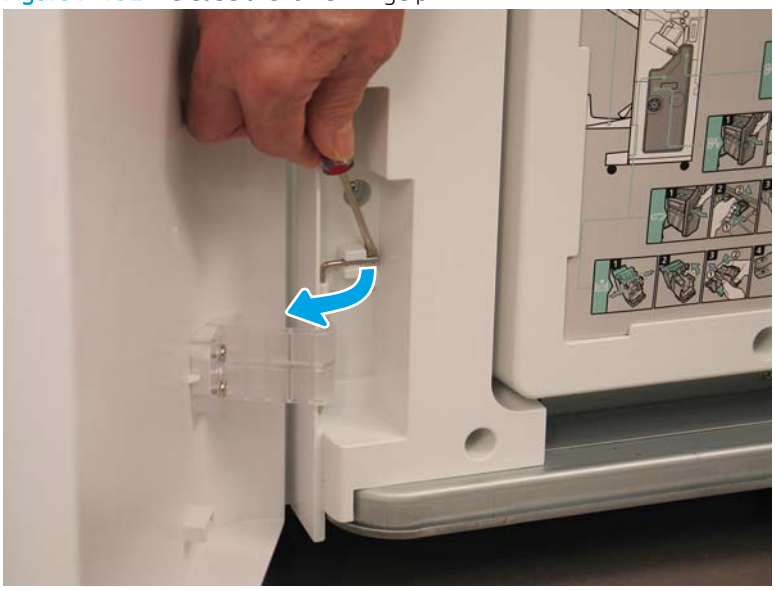
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-191 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-192 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

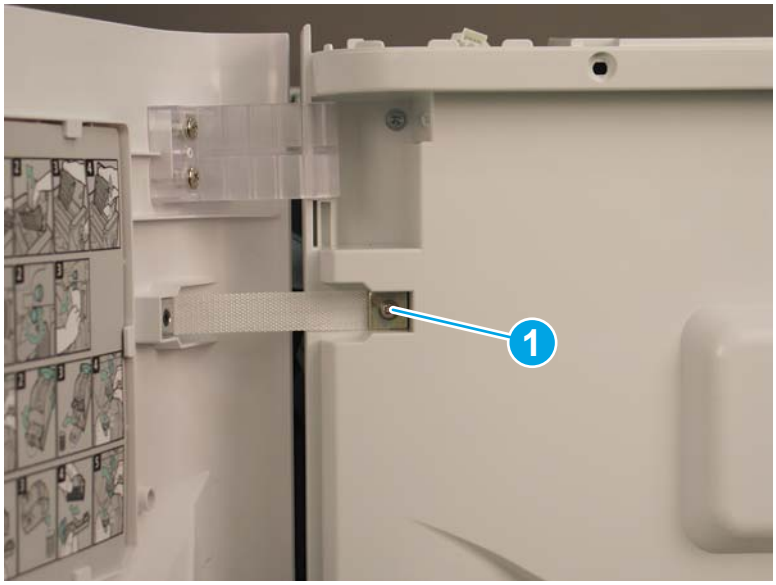
Figure 7-193 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

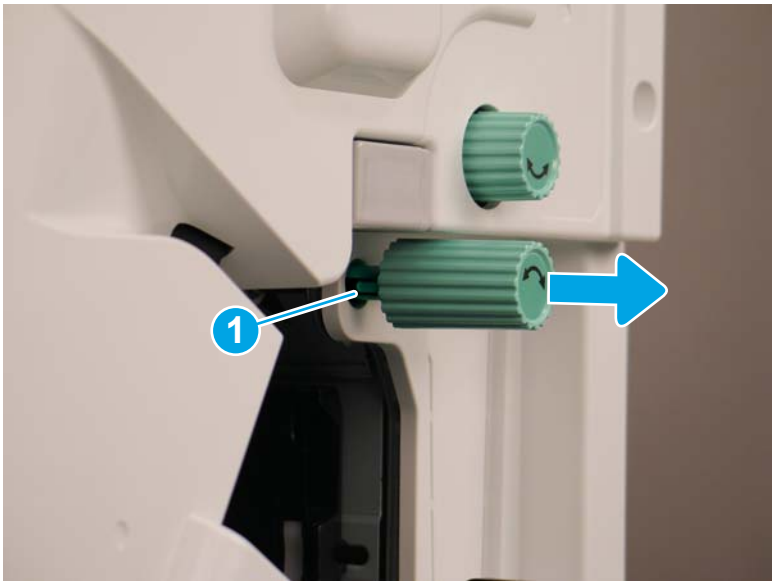
Figure 7-194 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

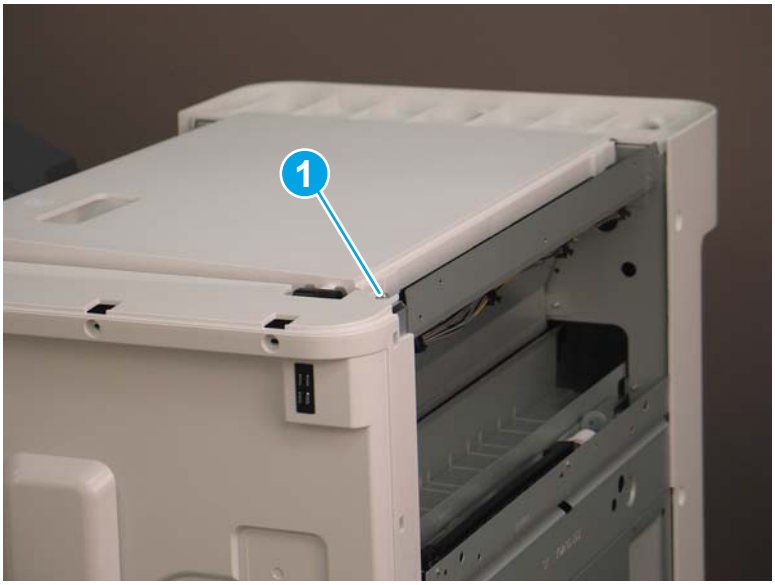
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-195 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

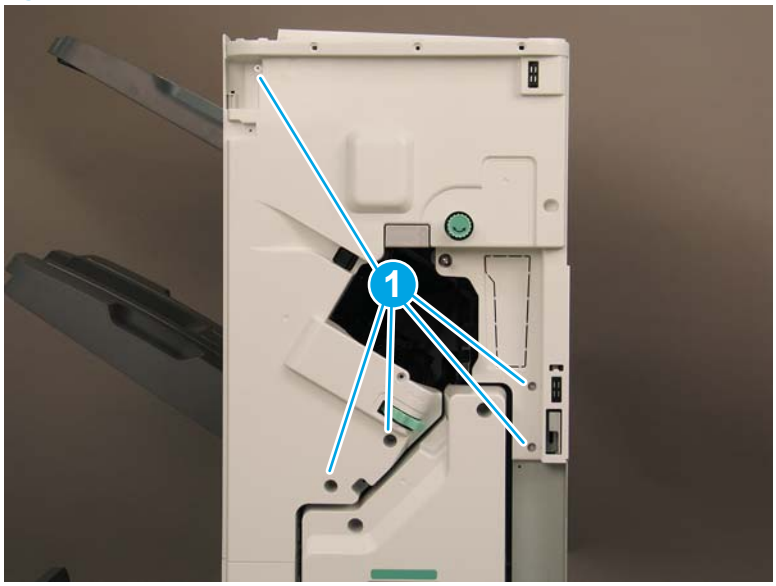
Figure 7-196 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

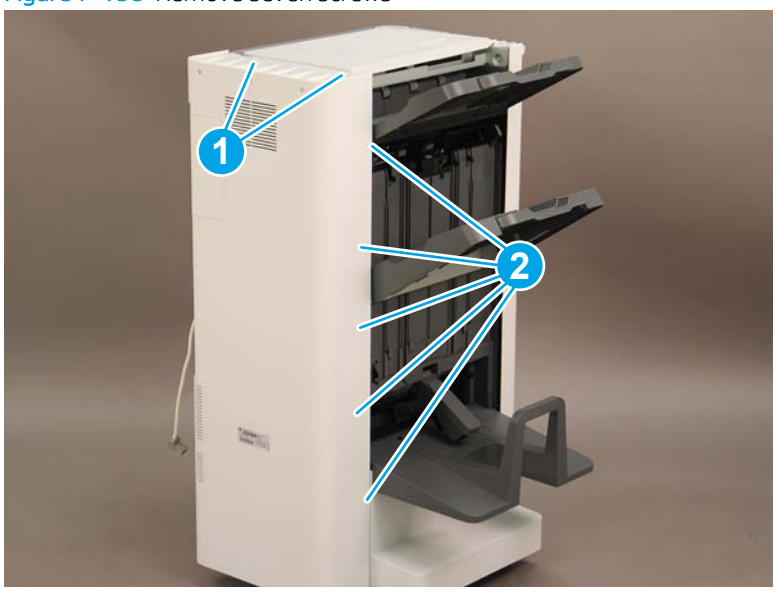
Figure 7-197 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-198 Remove seven screws

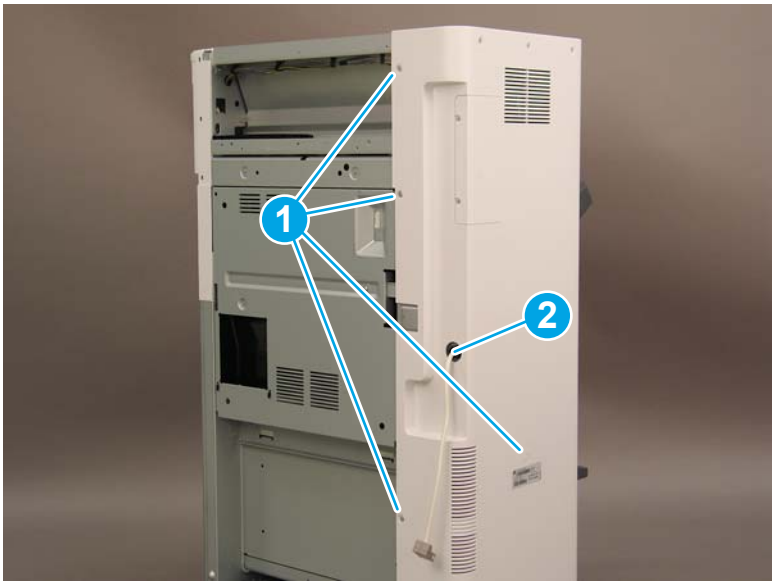


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

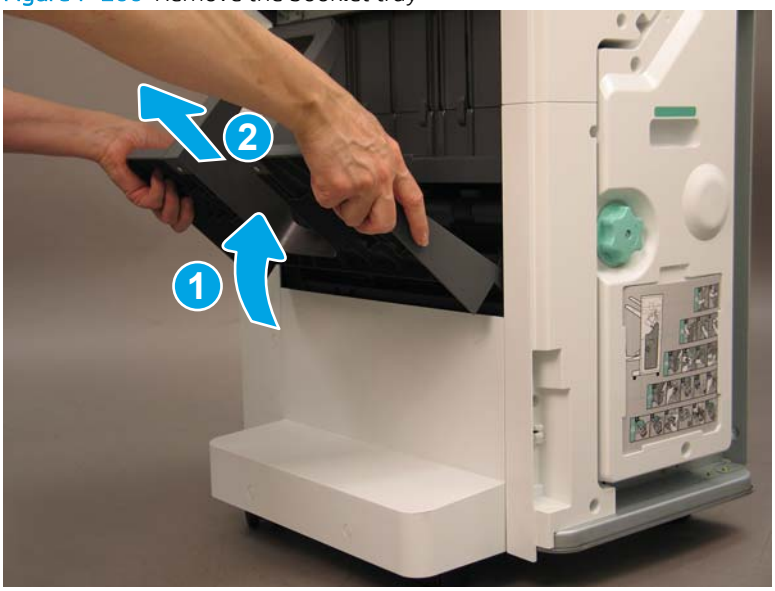
Figure 7-199 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-200 Remove the booklet tray



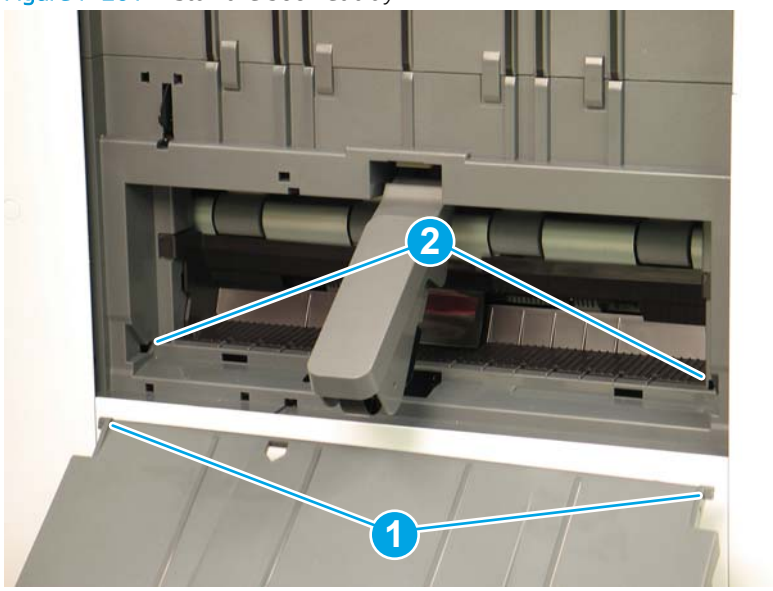
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

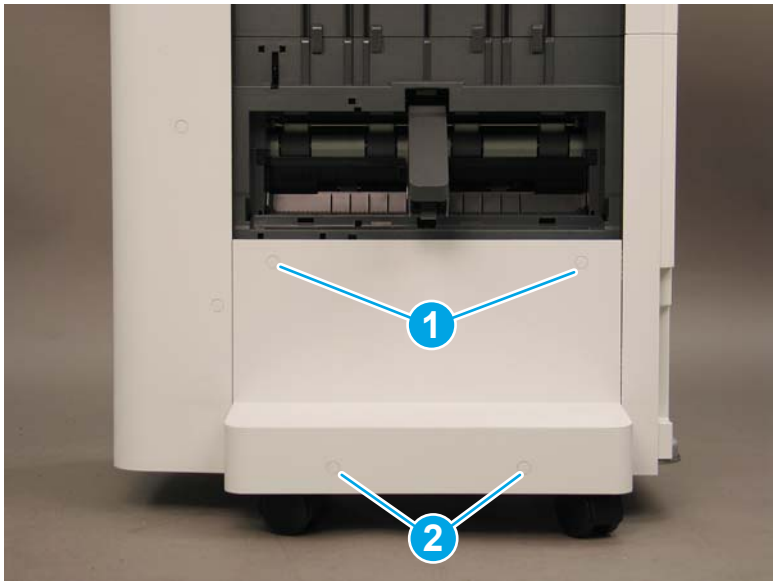
Figure 7-201 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-202 Remove four screws

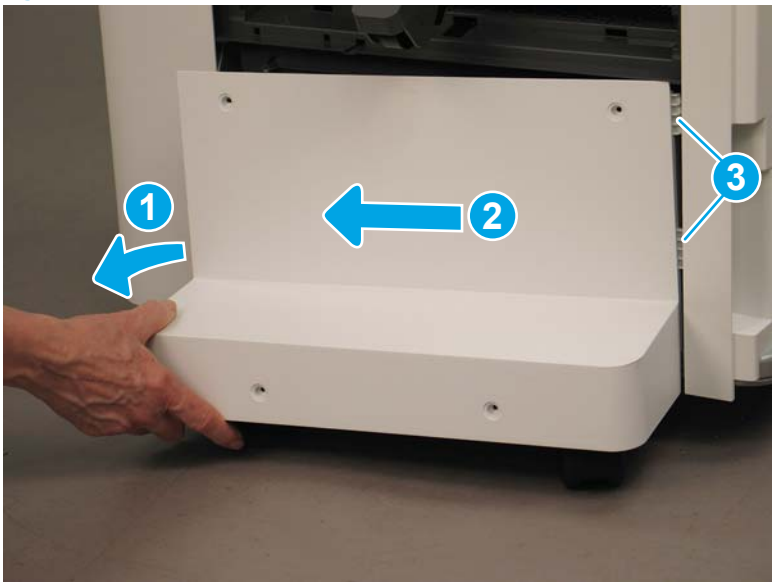


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-203 Remove the caster cover

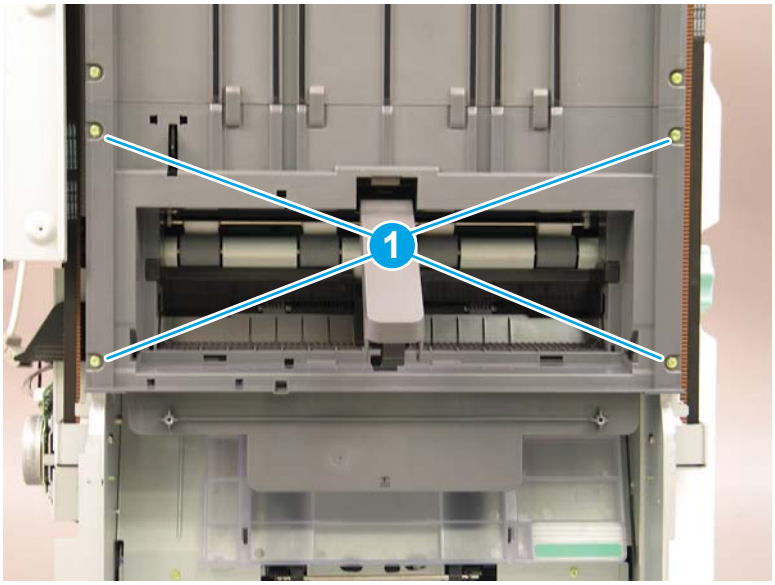


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-204 Remove four screws

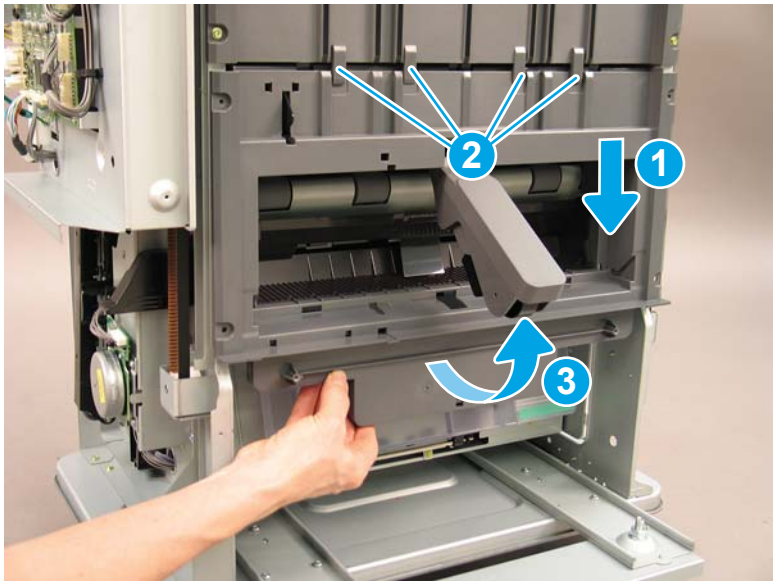


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

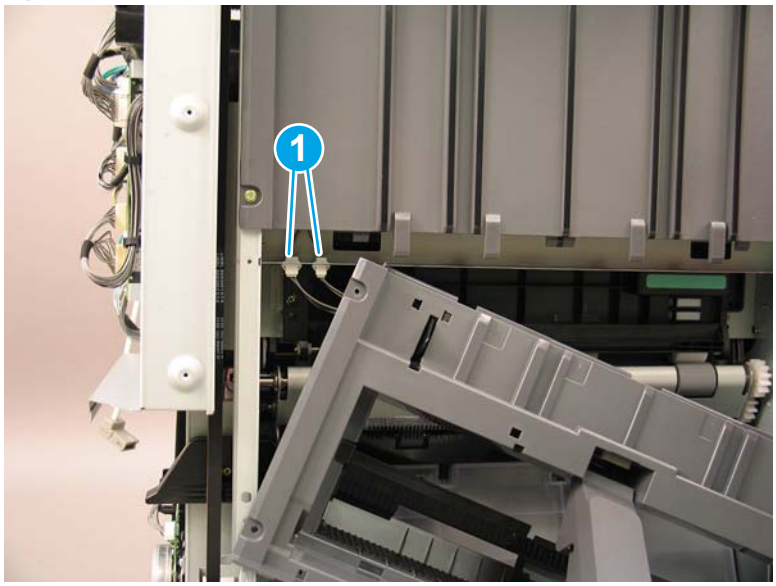
Figure 7-205 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

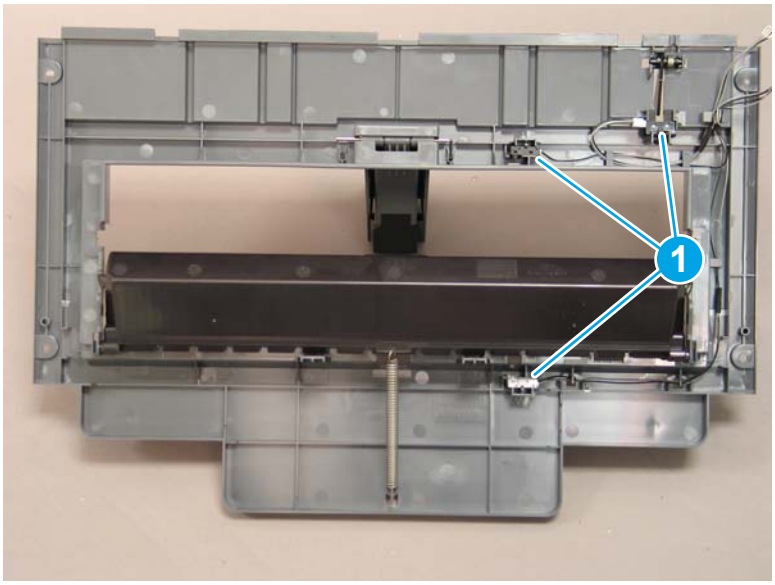
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-206 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

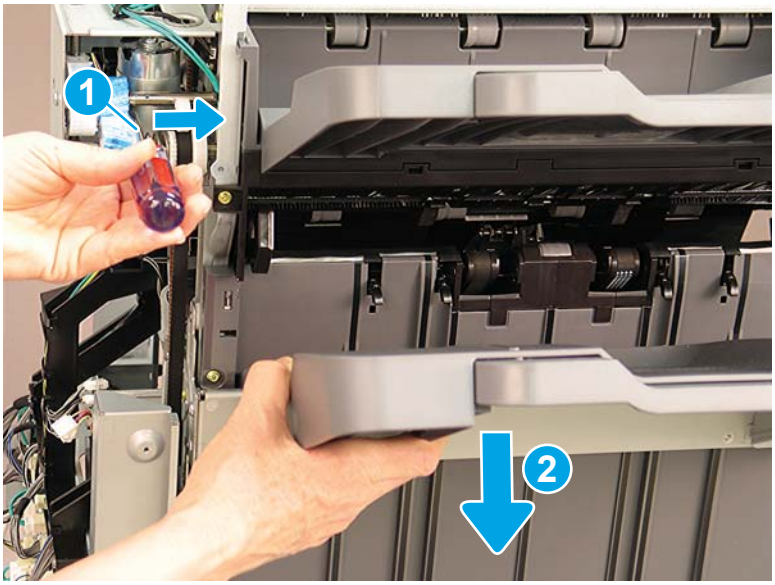
Figure 7-207 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

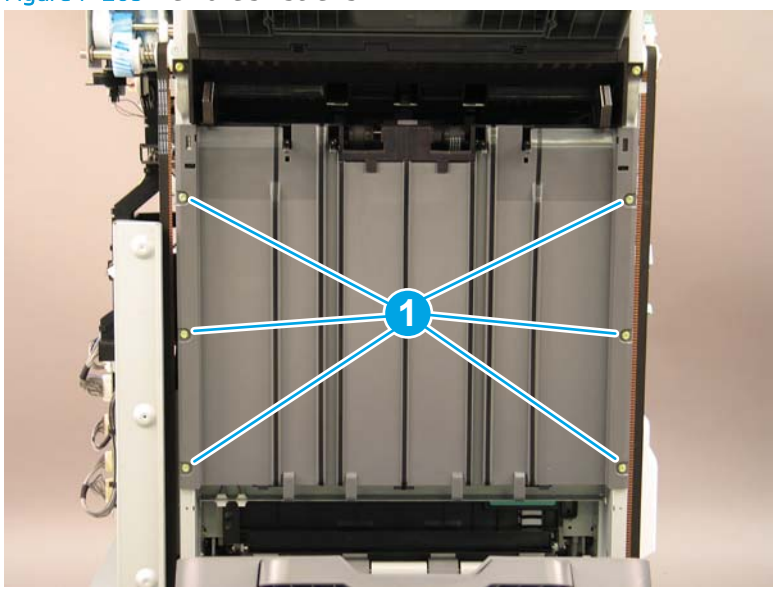
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-208 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-209 Remove six screws

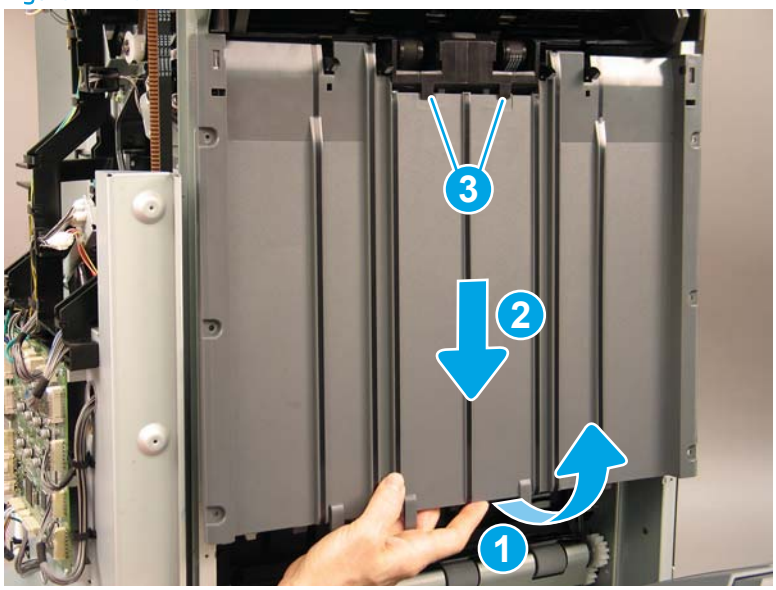


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

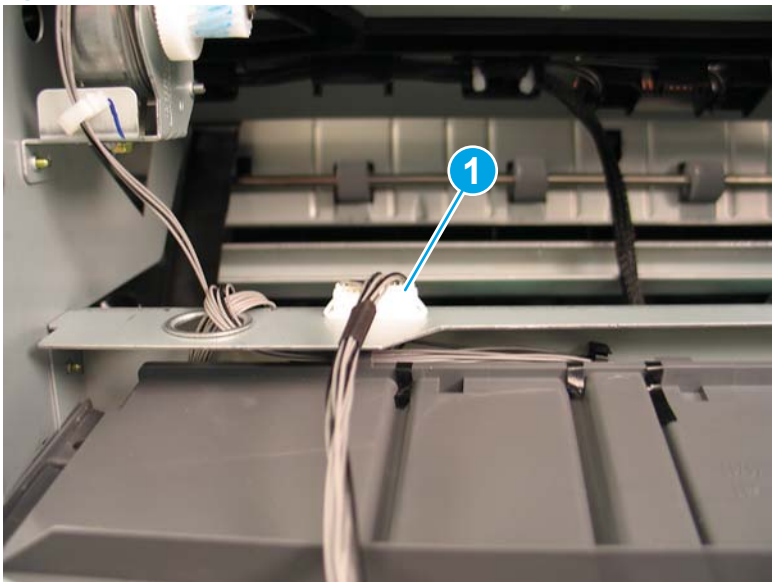
Figure 7-210 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

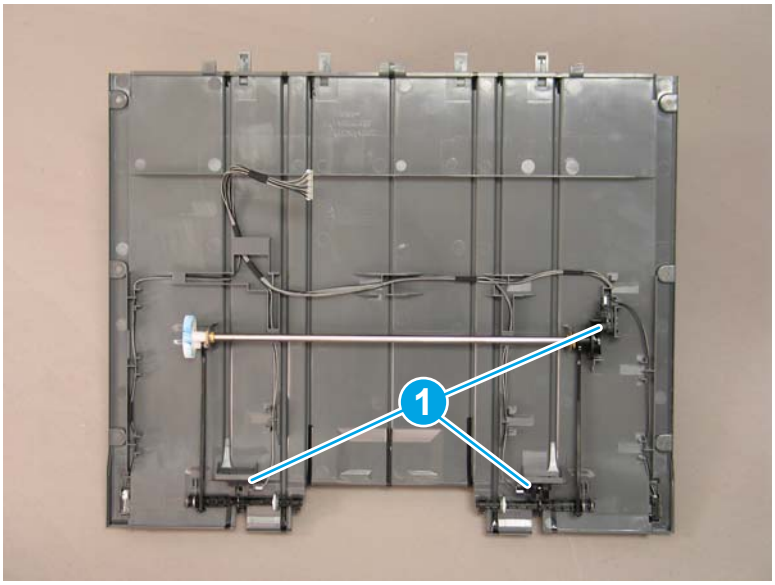
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-211 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

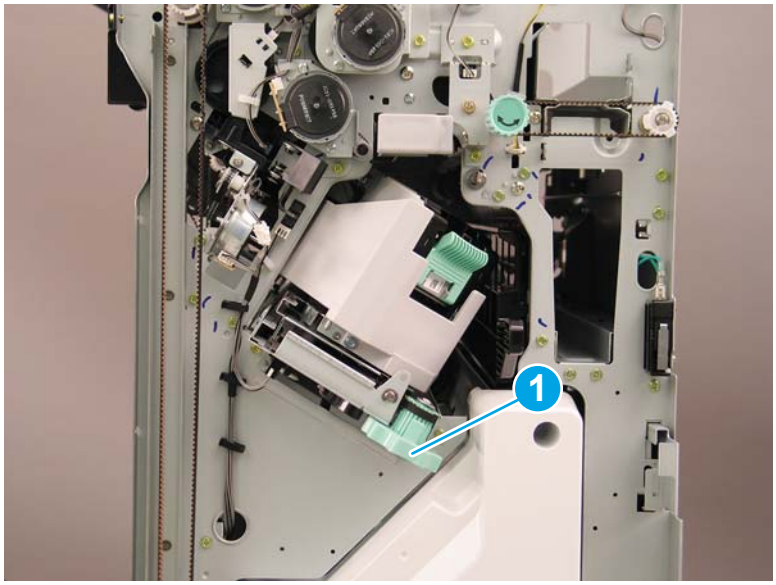
Figure 7-212 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

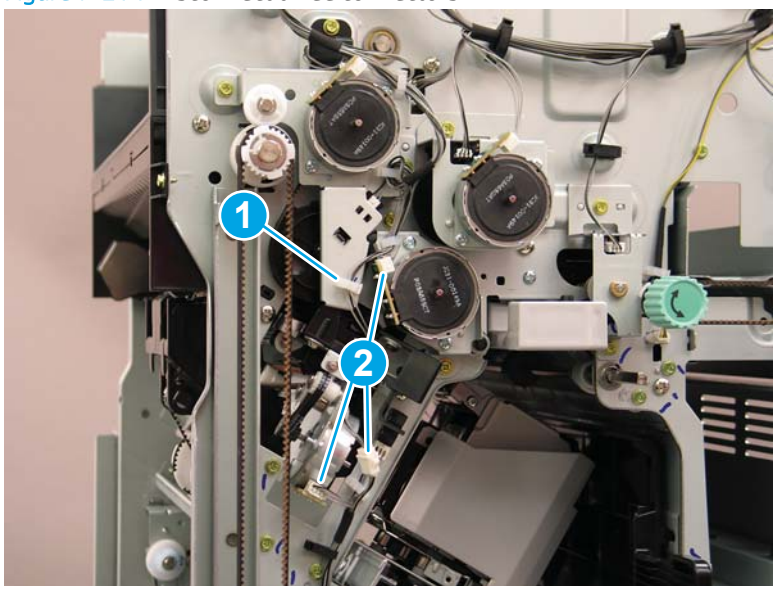
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-213 Move the staple unit to the center



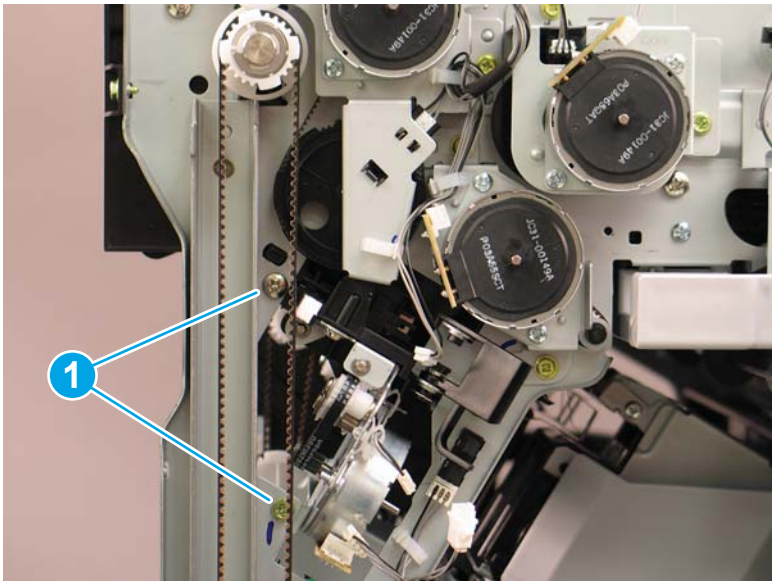
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-214 Disconnect three connectors



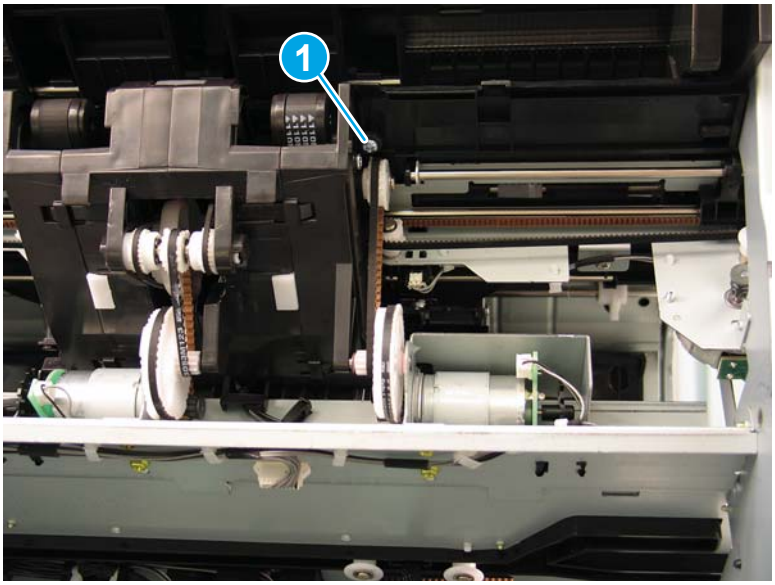
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-215 Remove two screws



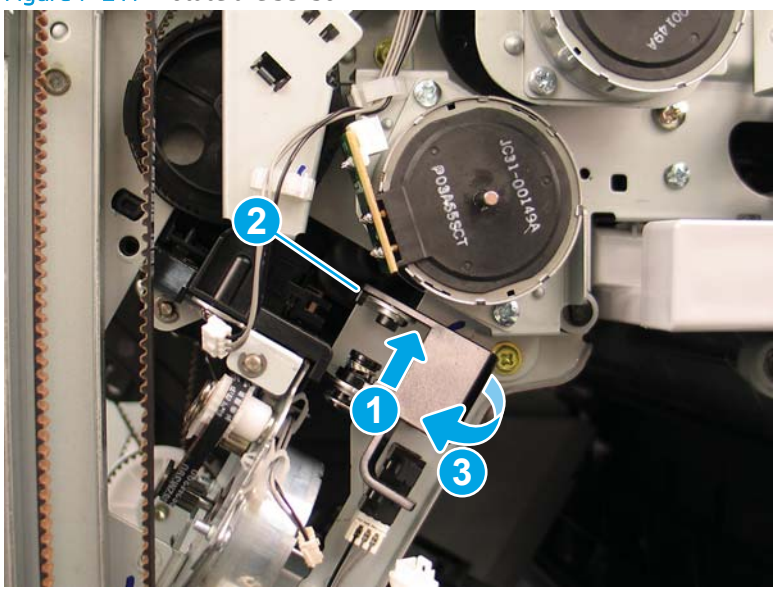
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-216 Remove one screw



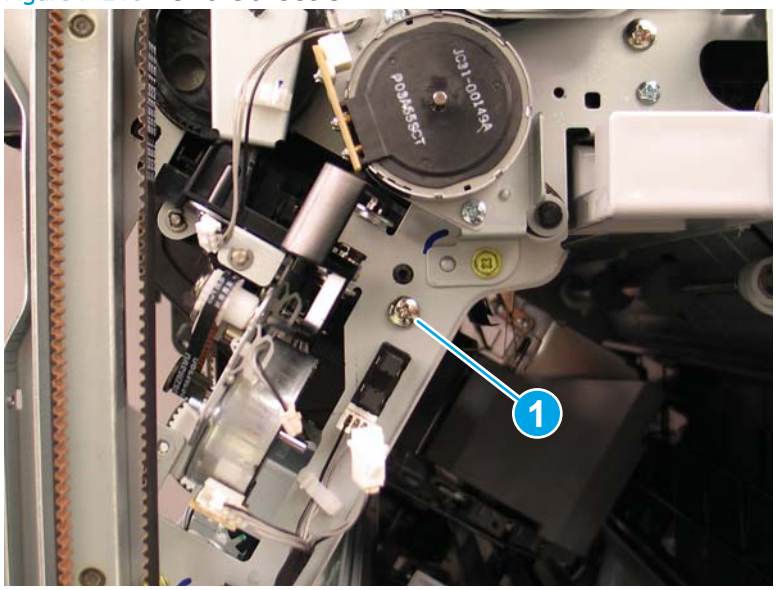
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-217 Rotate the sensor



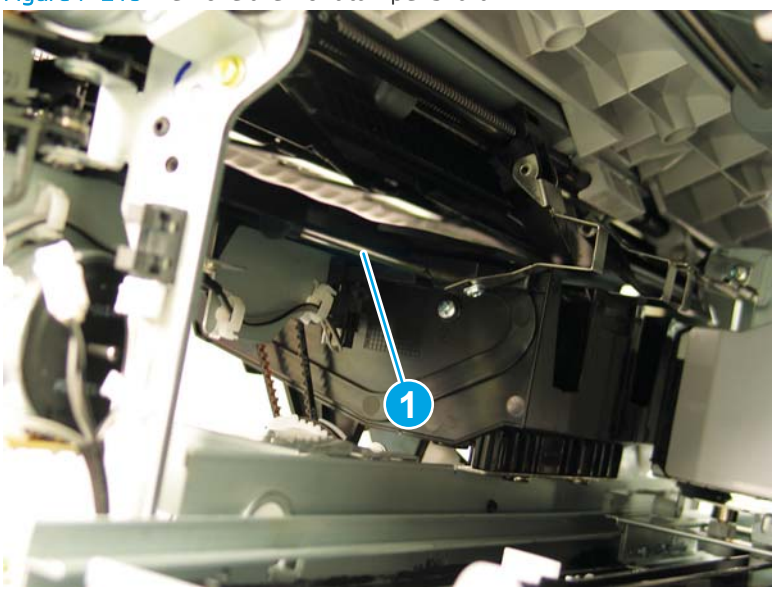
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-218 Remove one screw



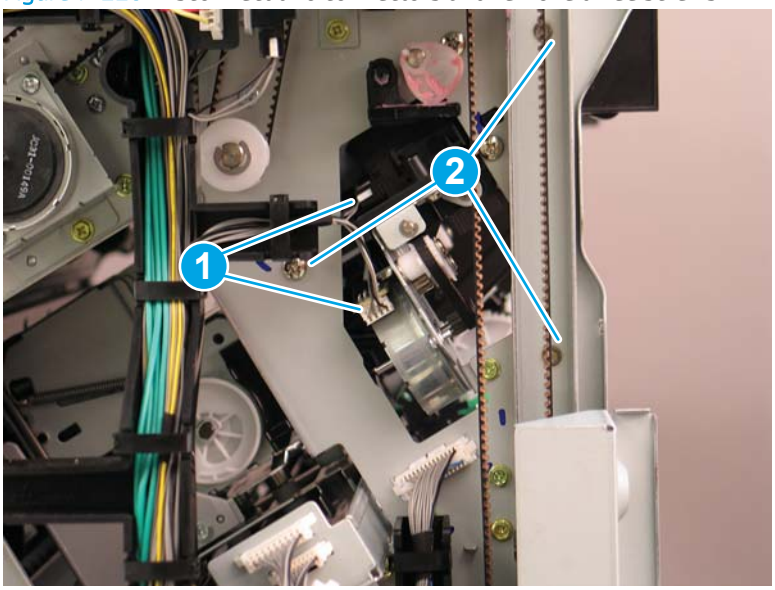
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-219 Remove the front tamper shaft



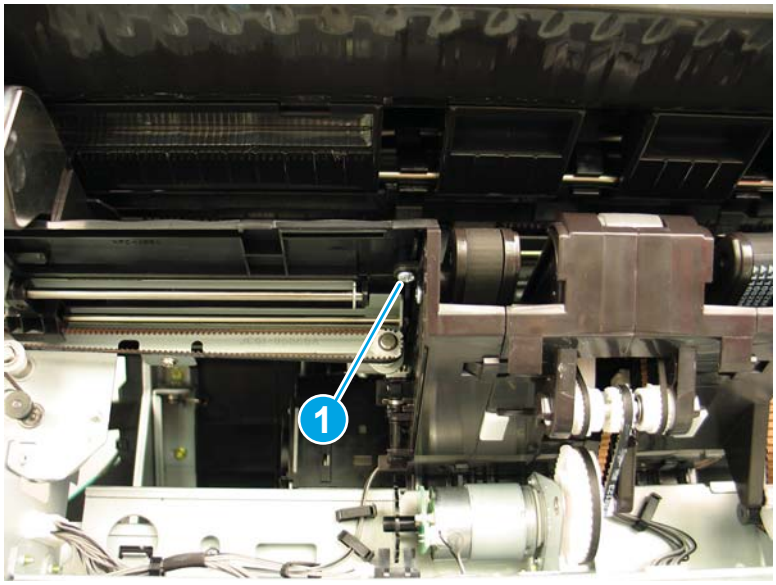
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-220 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



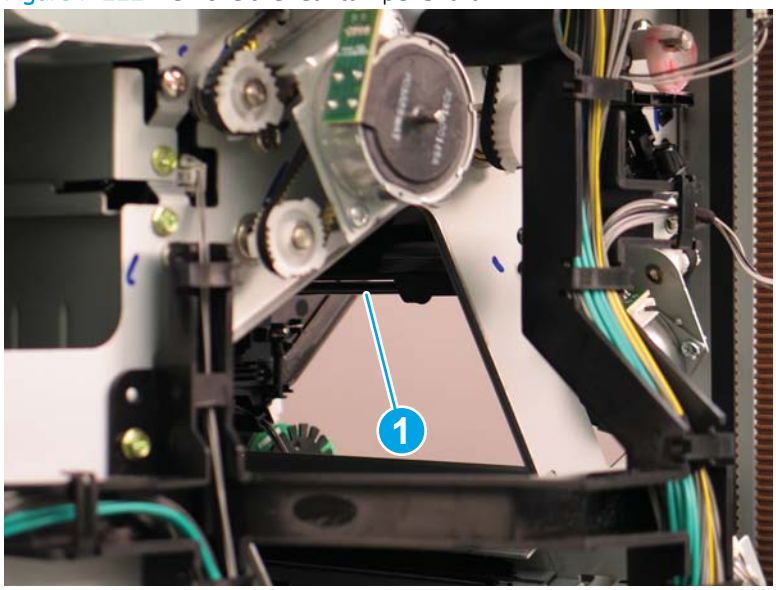
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-221 Remove one screw



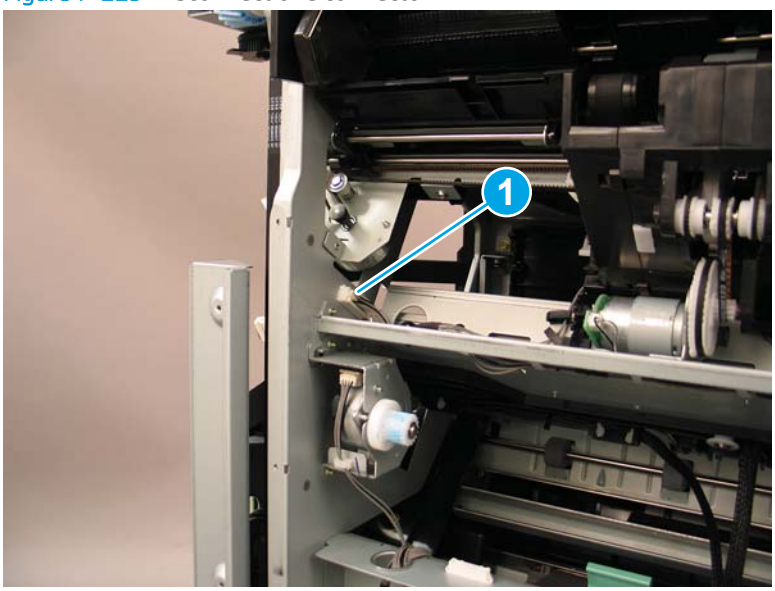
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-222 Remove the rear tamper shaft



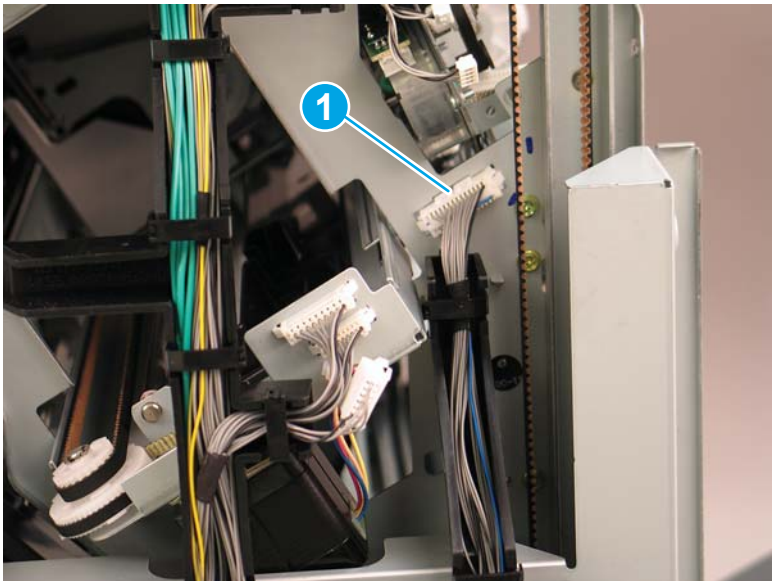
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-223 Disconnect one connector



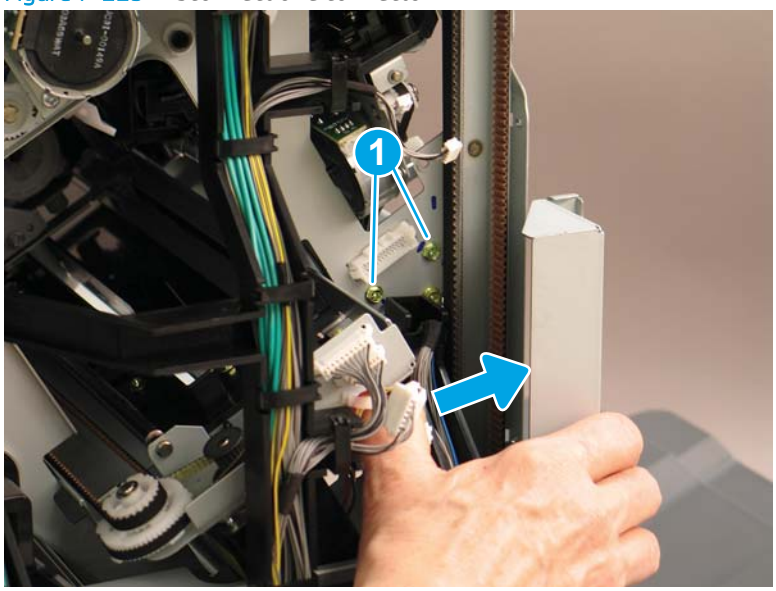
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-224 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-225 Disconnect one connector



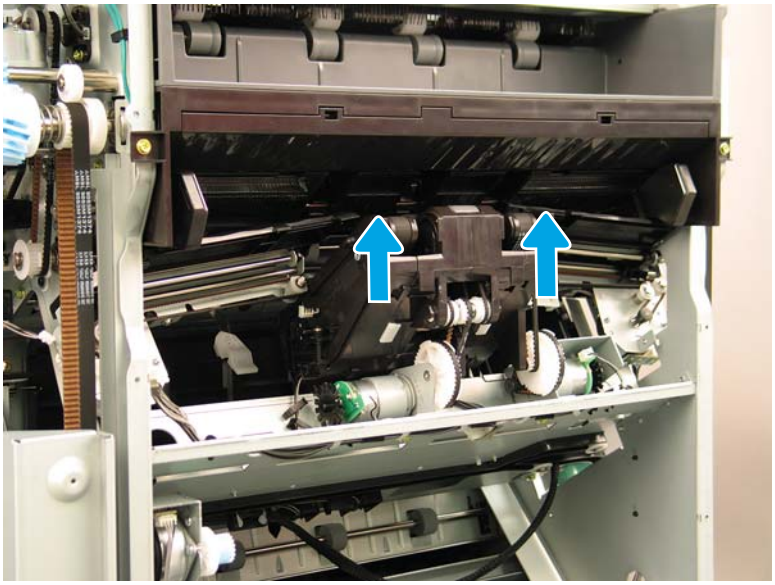
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-226 Remove two screws



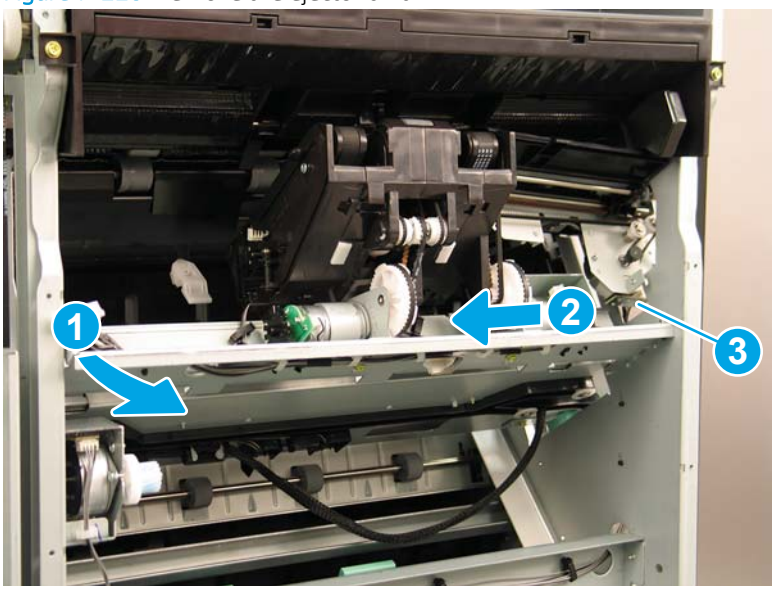
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-227 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-228 Remove the ejector unit



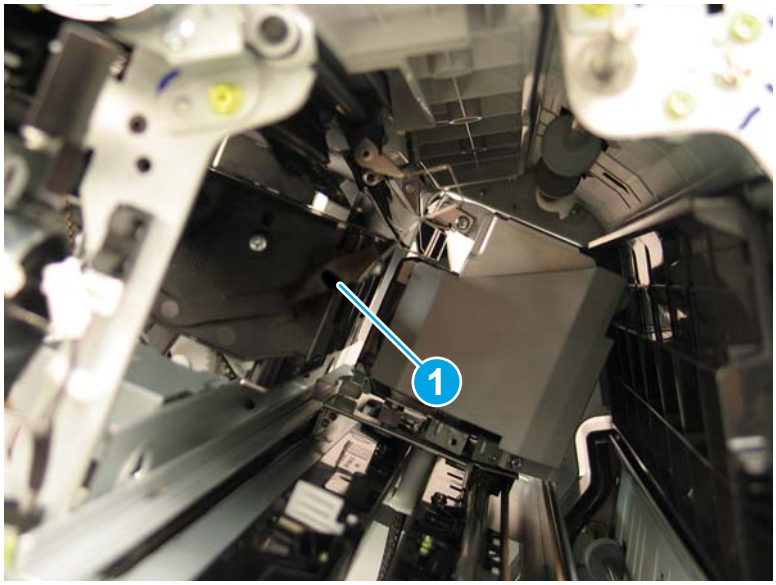
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

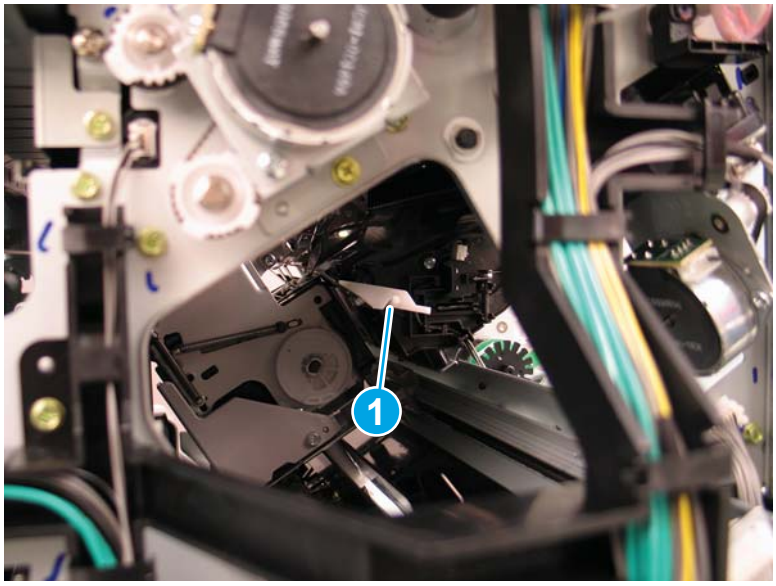
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-229 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-230 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front tamper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01464A	Finisher Sub - Tamper Front

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

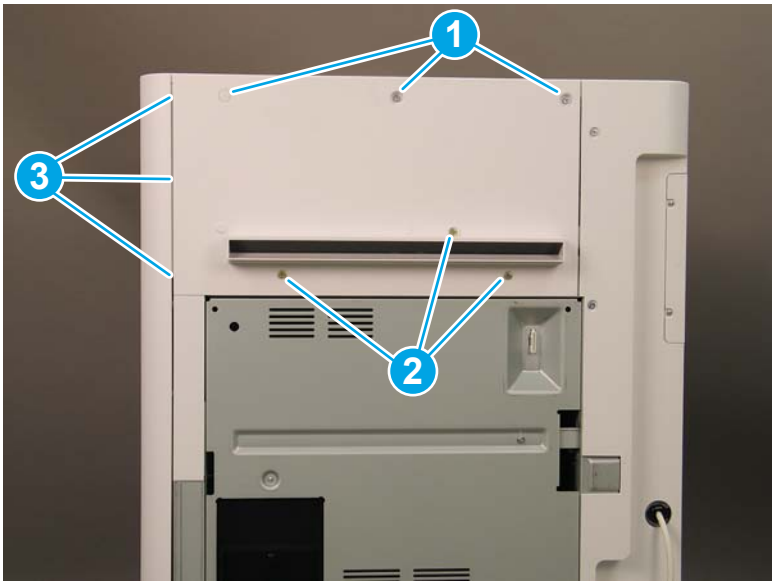
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

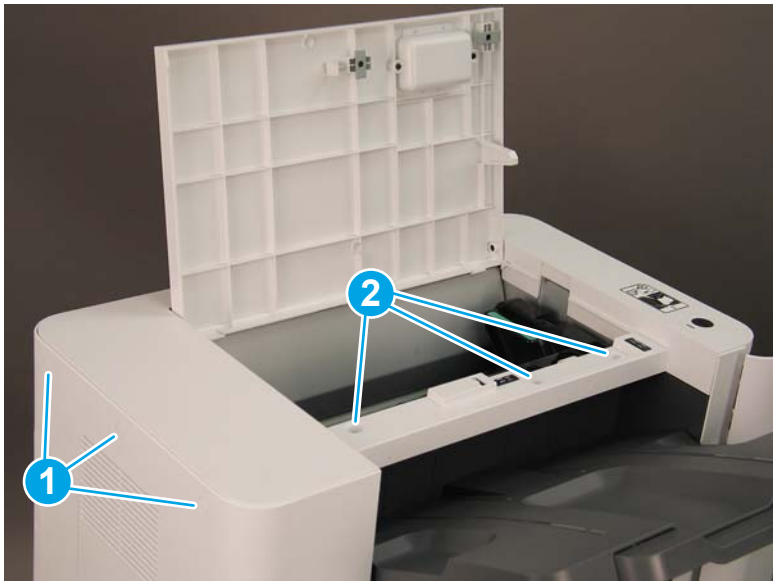
Figure 7-231 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

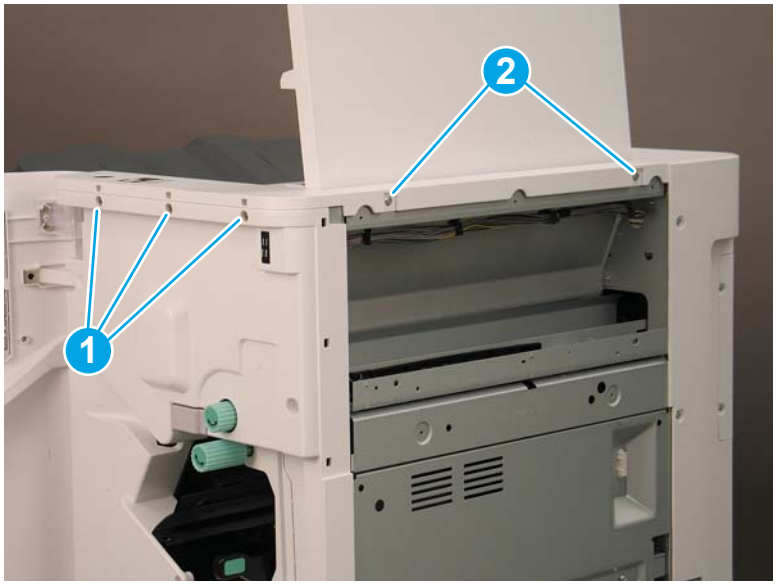
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-232 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

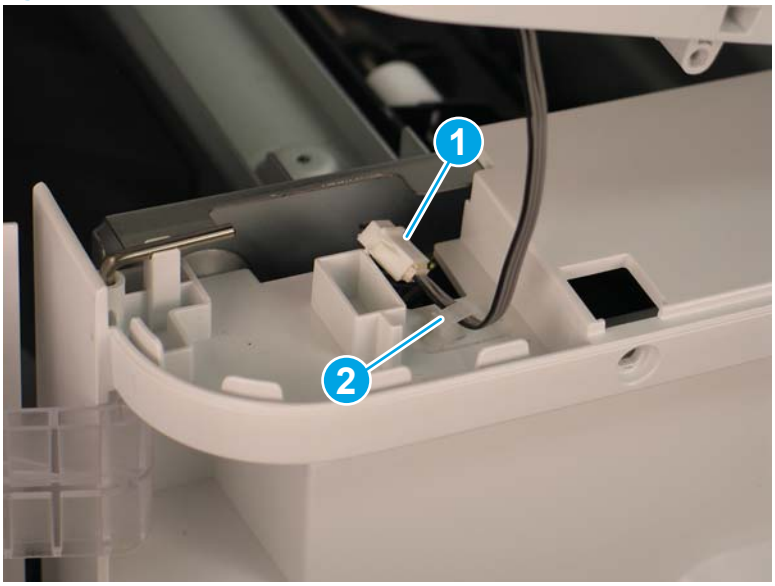
Figure 7-233 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-234 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

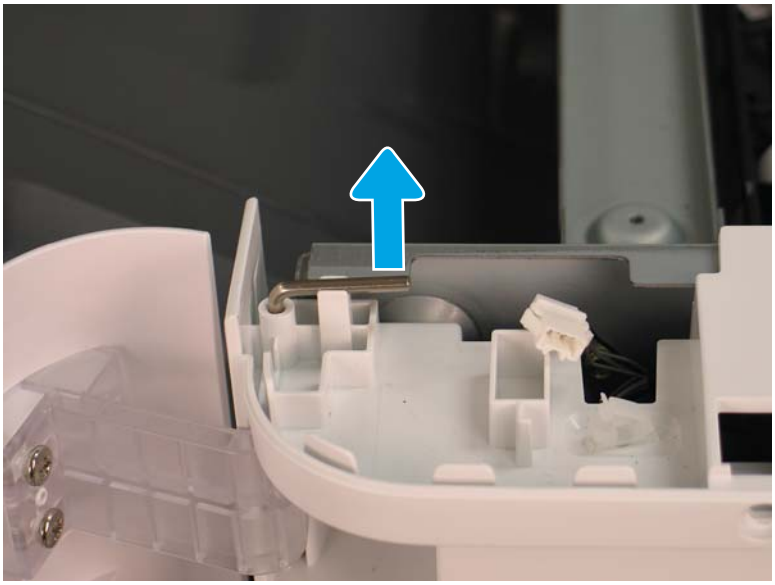


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

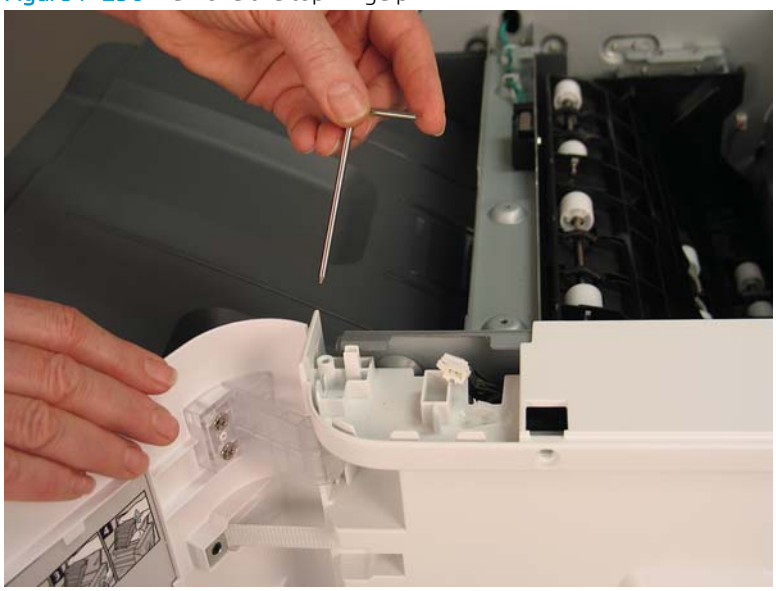
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-235 Lift the top hinge pin



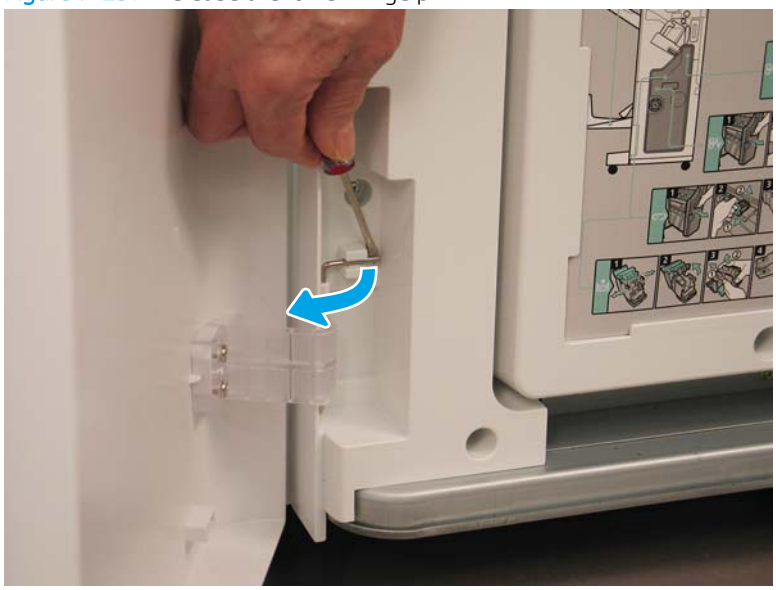
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-236 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-237 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

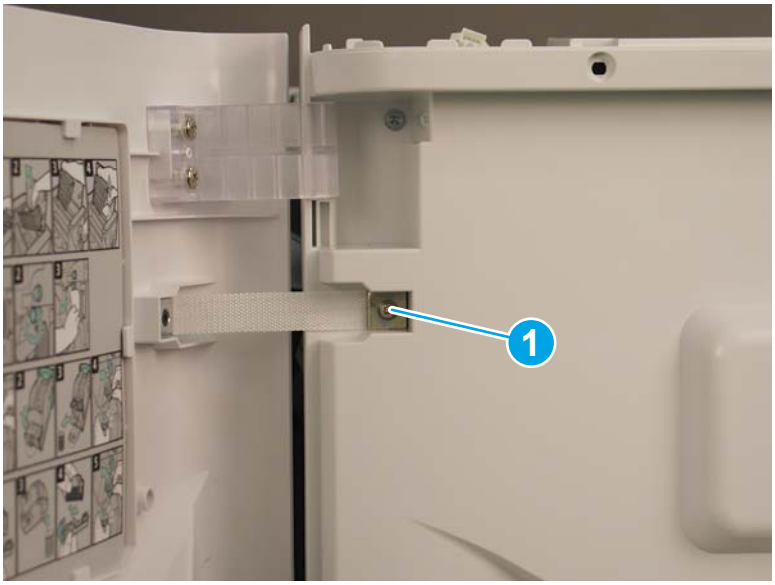
Figure 7-238 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

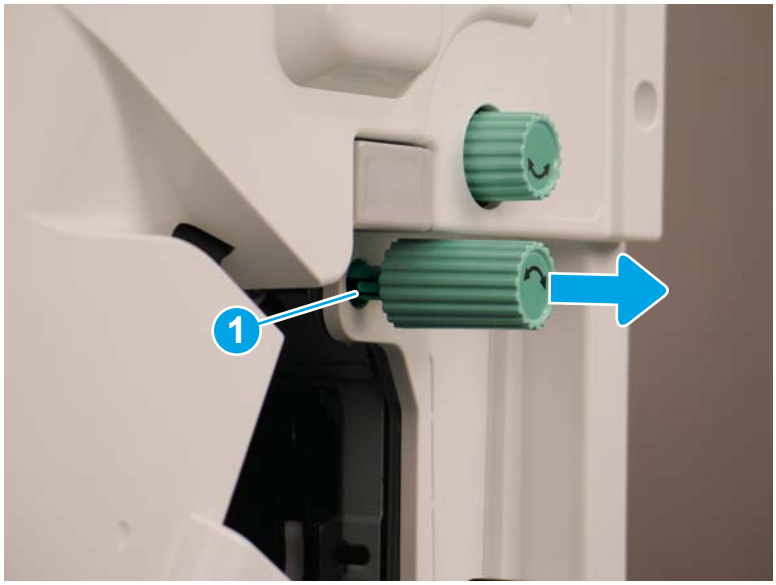
Figure 7-239 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

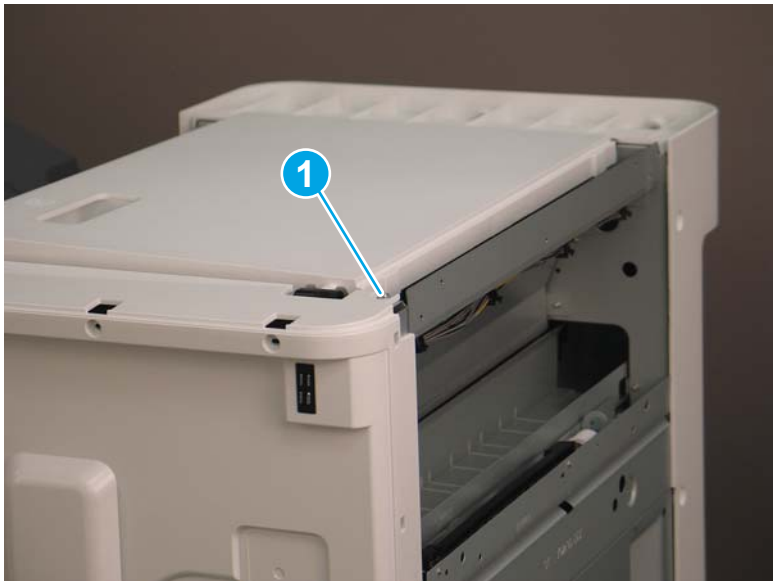
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-240 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

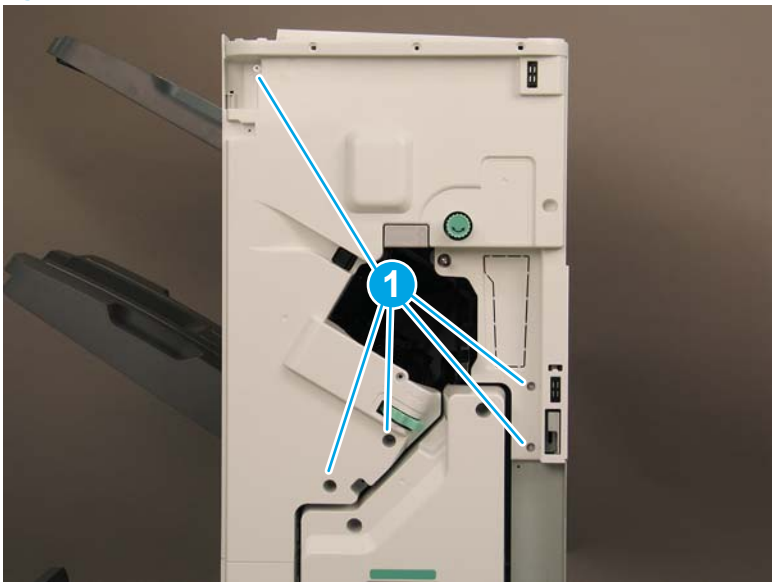
Figure 7-241 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

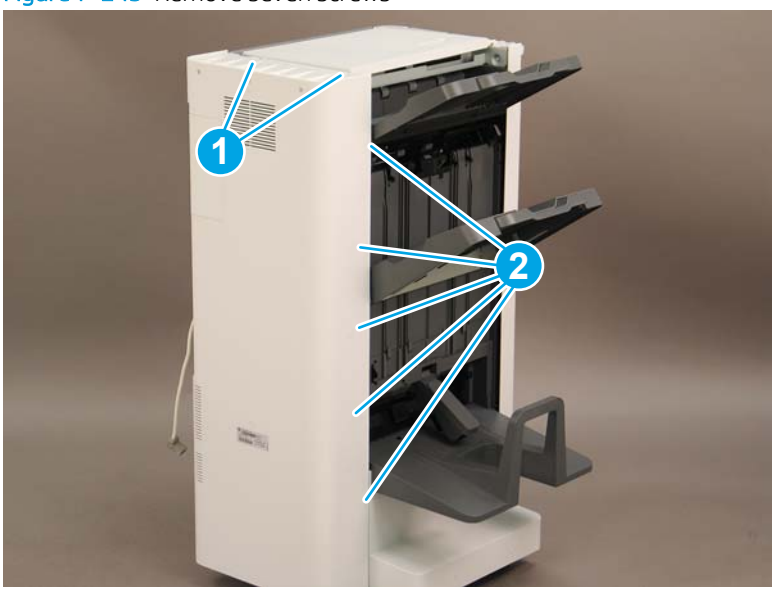
Figure 7-242 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-243 Remove seven screws

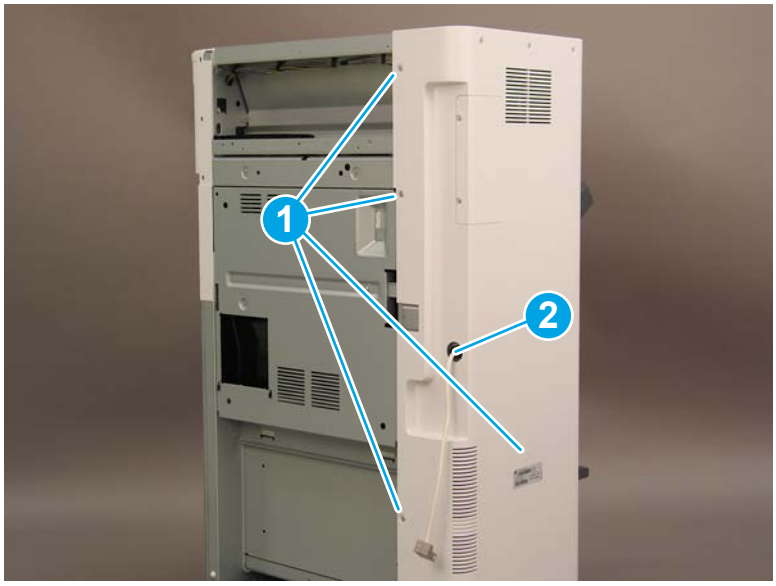


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

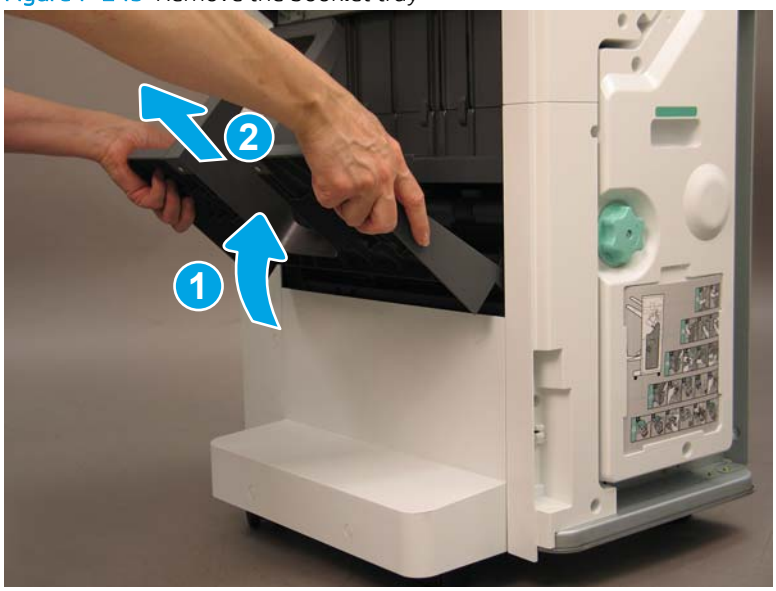
Figure 7-244 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-245 Remove the booklet tray



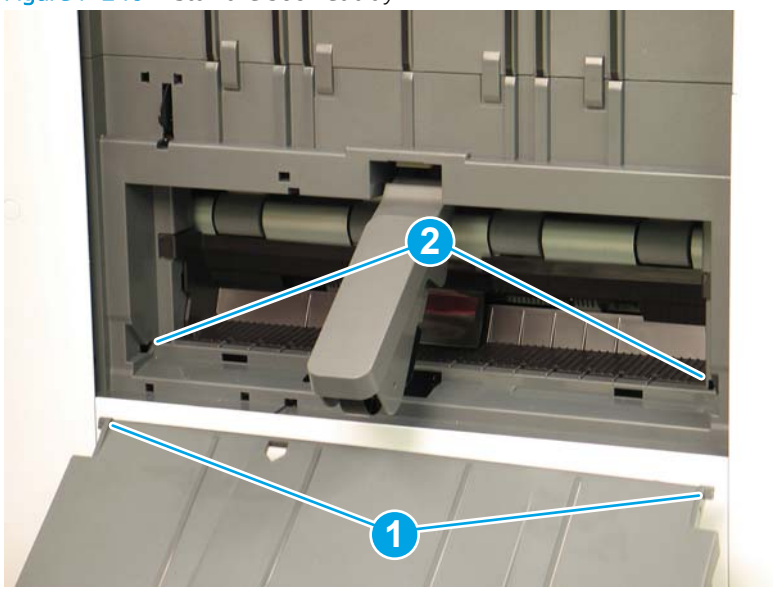
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

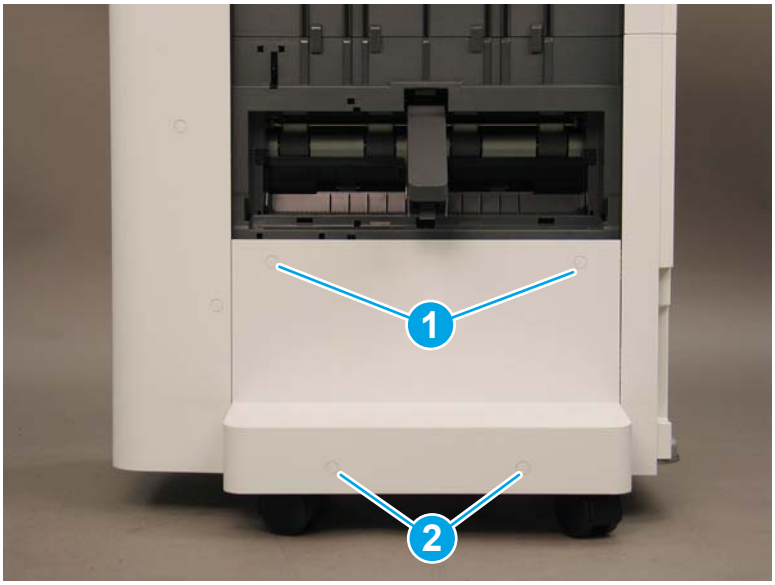
Figure 7-246 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-247 Remove four screws

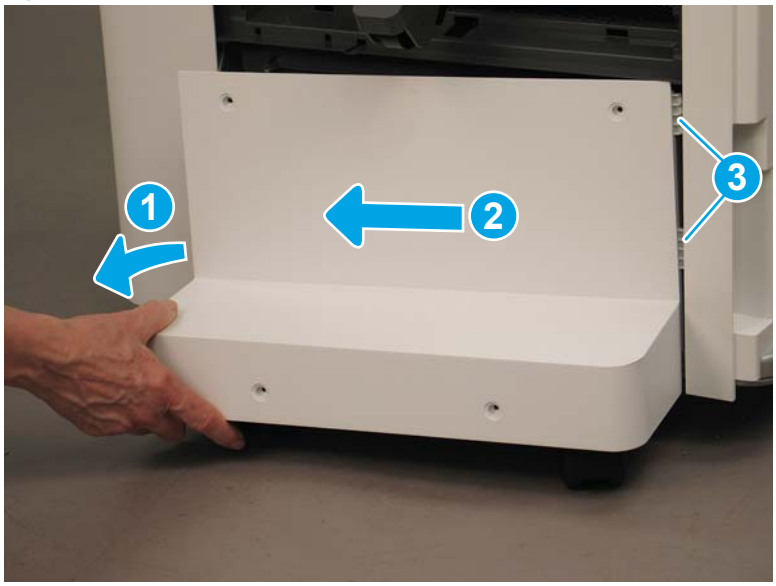


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-248 Remove the caster cover

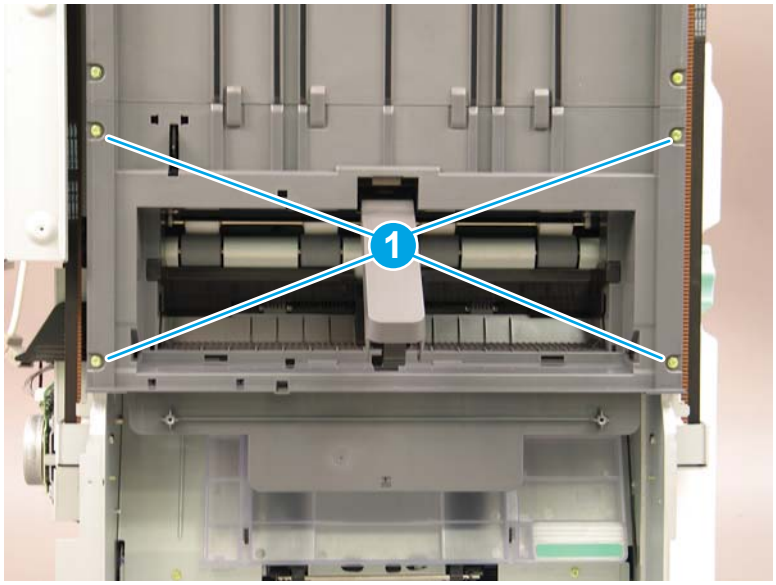


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-249 Remove four screws

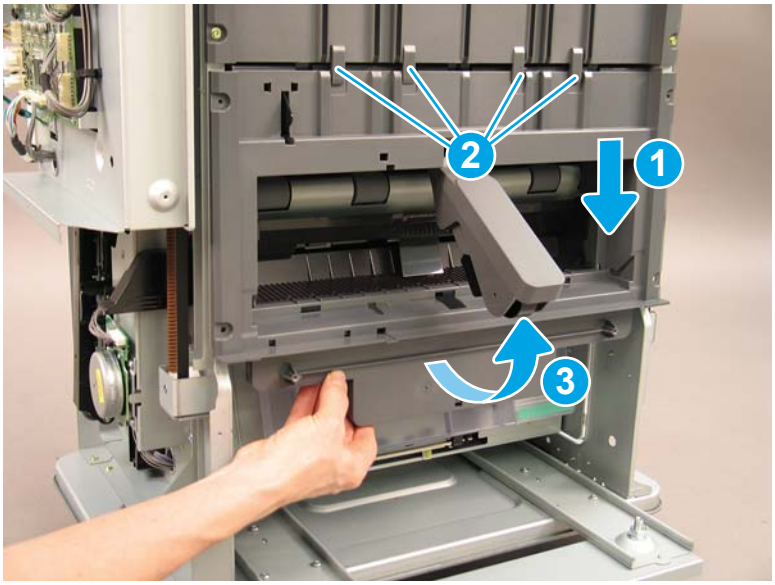


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

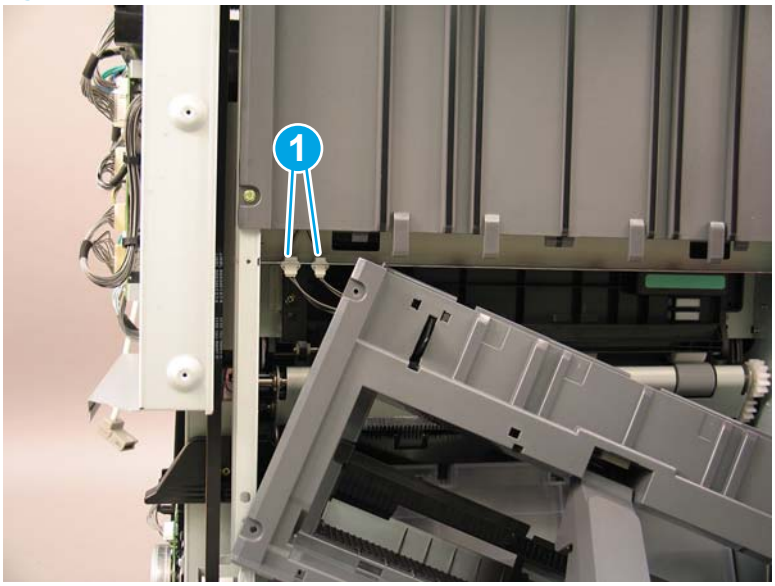
Figure 7-250 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

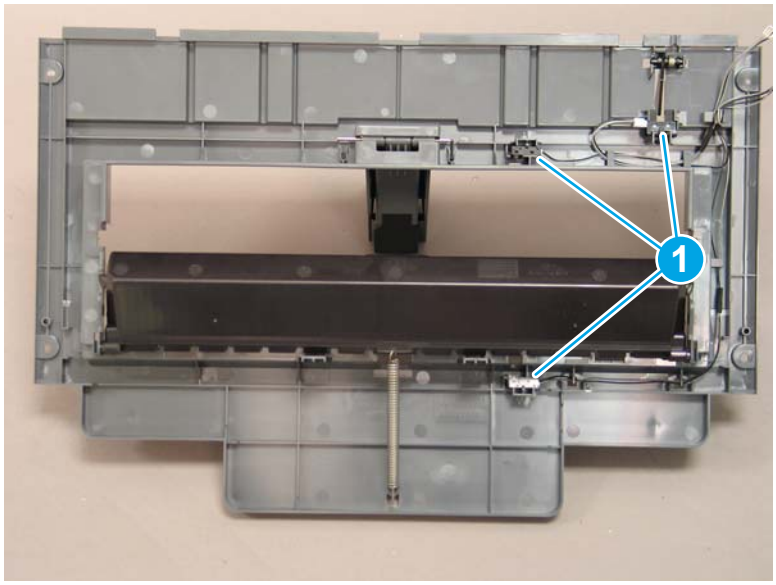
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-251 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

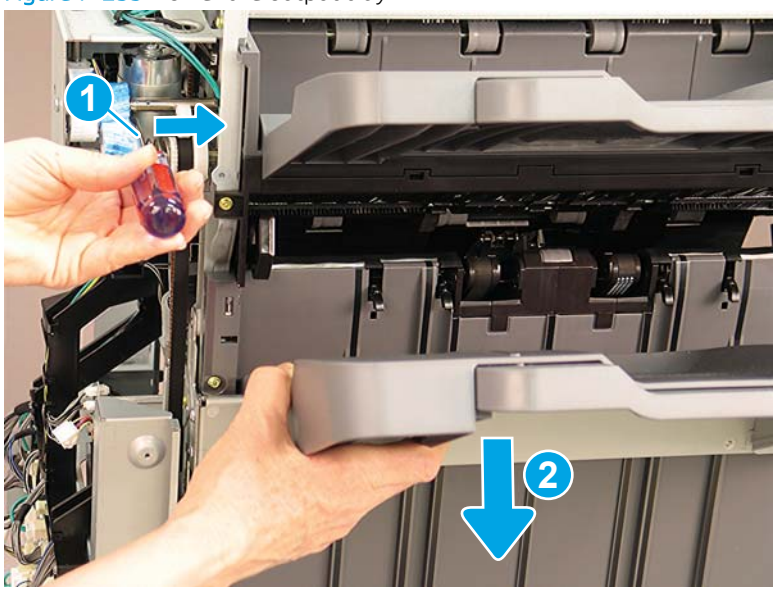
Figure 7-252 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

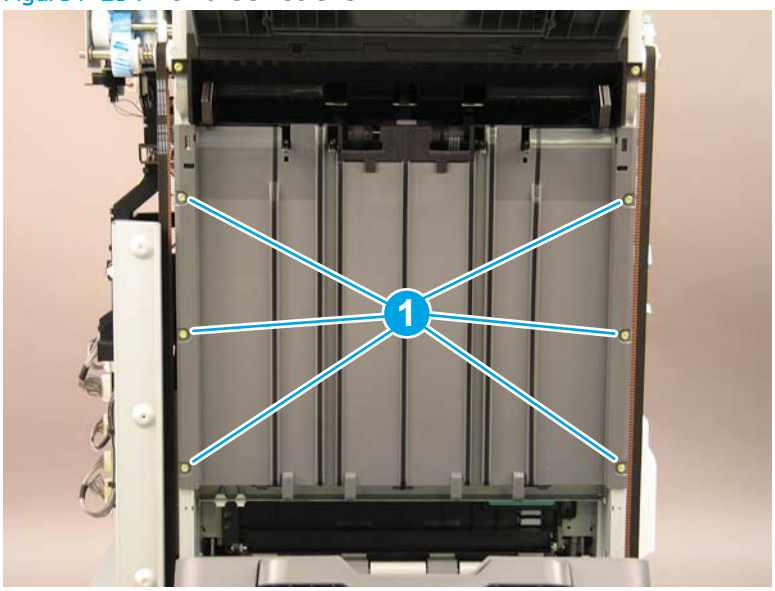
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-253 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-254 Remove six screws

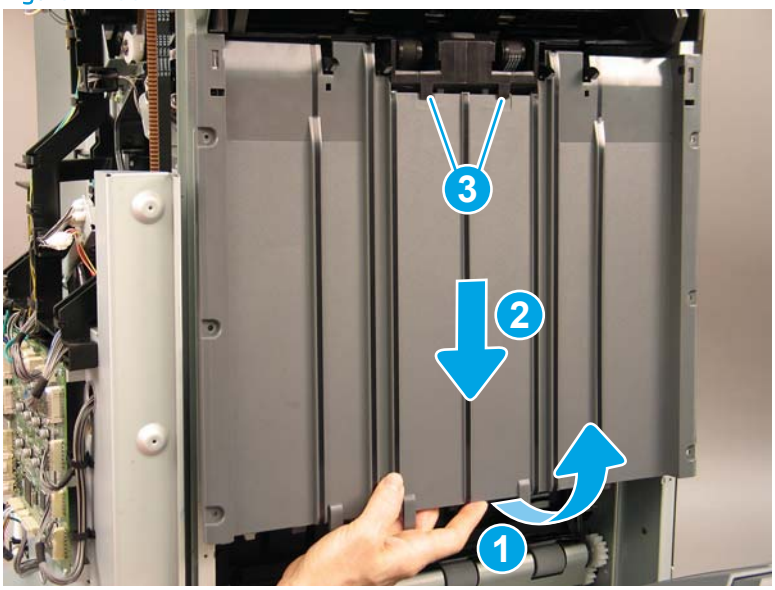


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

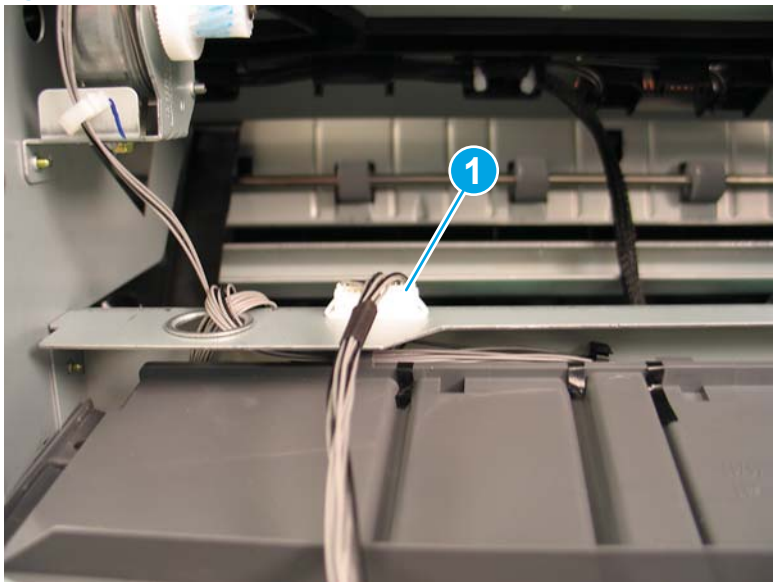
Figure 7-255 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

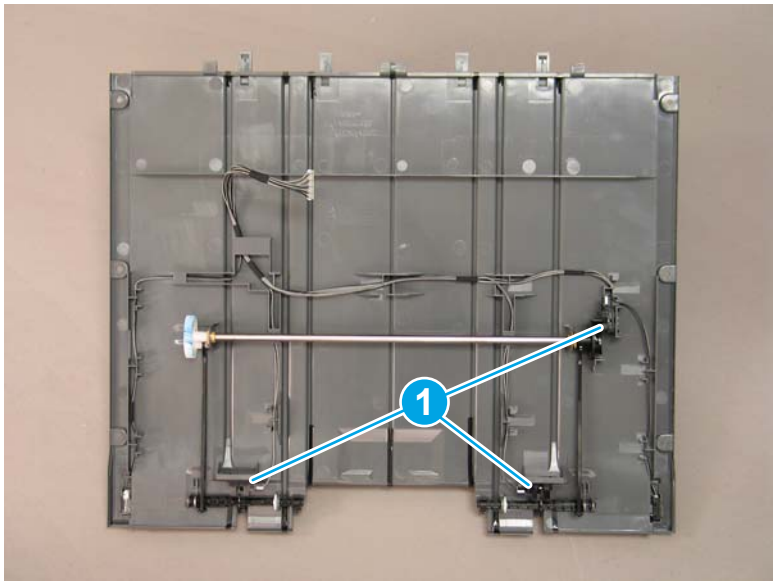
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-256 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

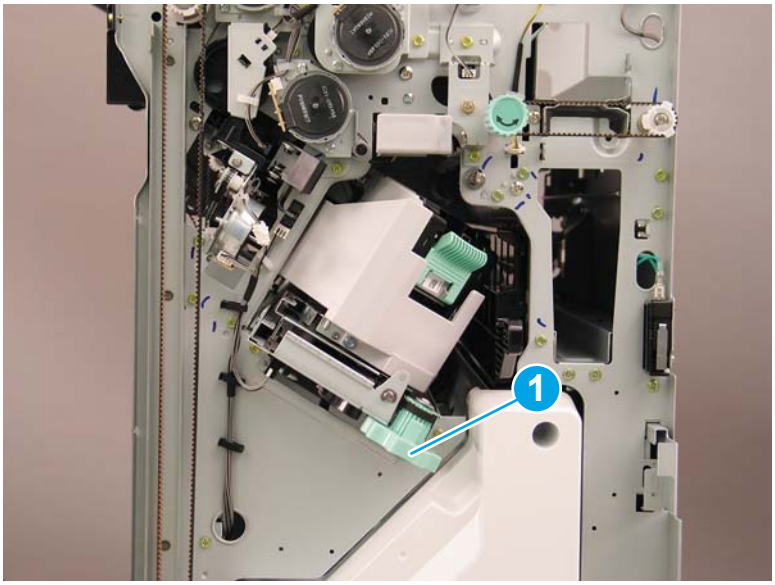
Figure 7-257 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

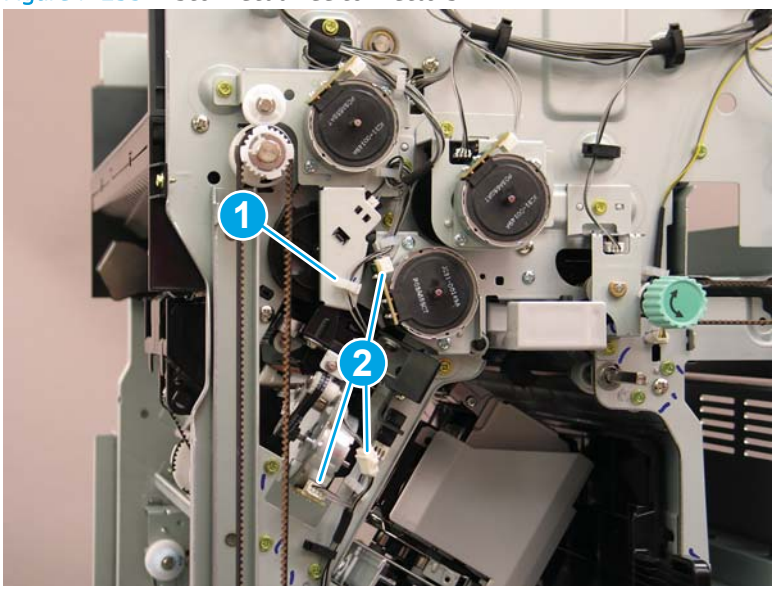
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-258 Move the staple unit to the center



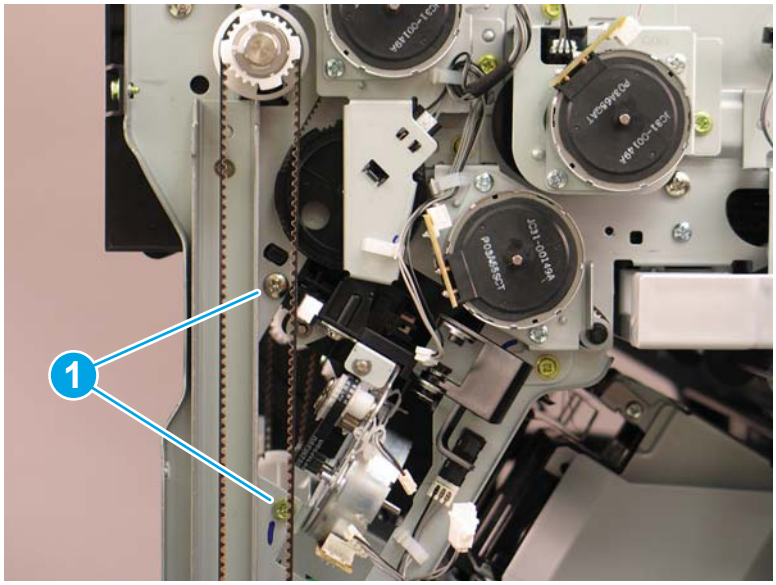
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-259 Disconnect three connectors



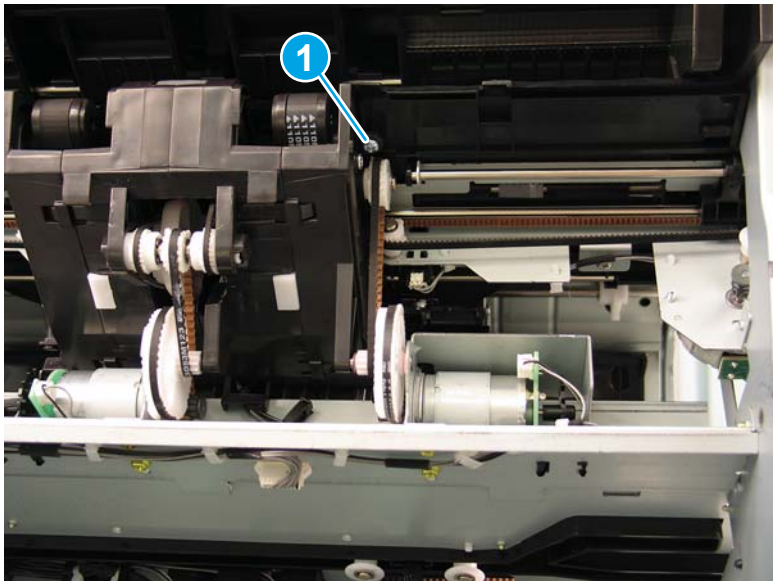
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-260 Remove two screws



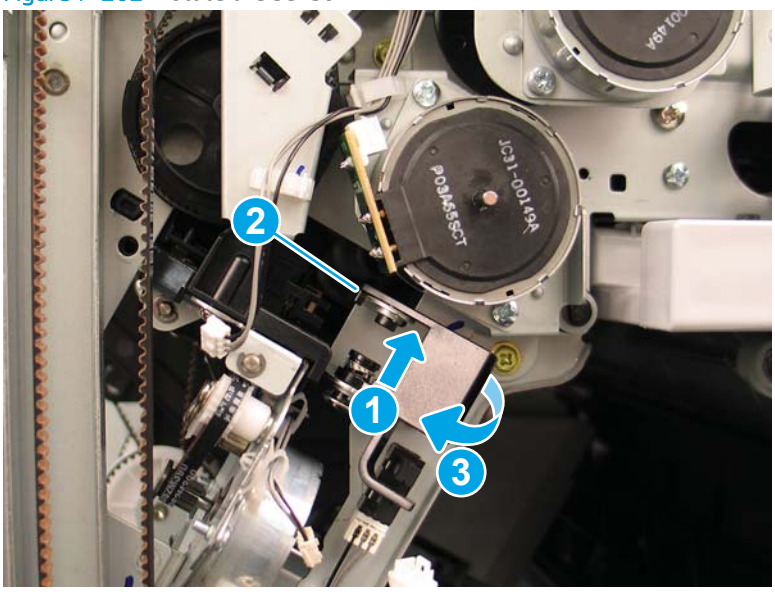
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-261 Remove one screw



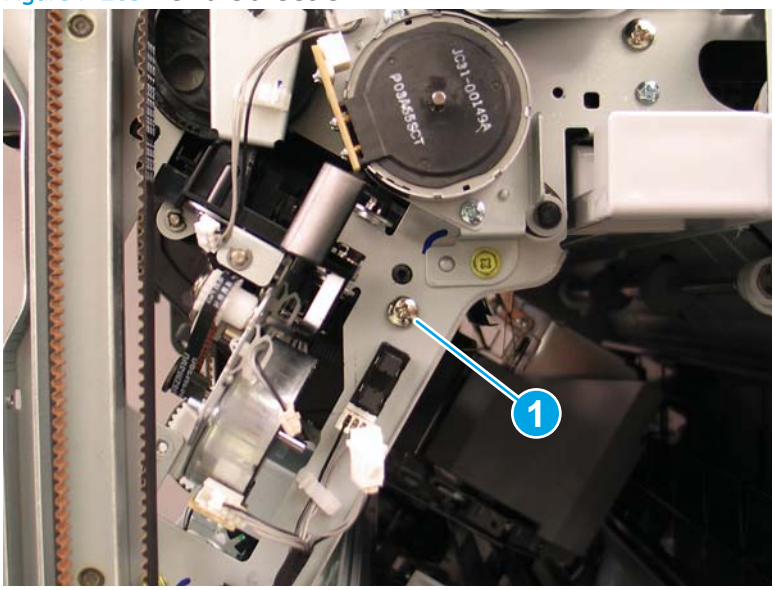
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-262 Rotate the sensor



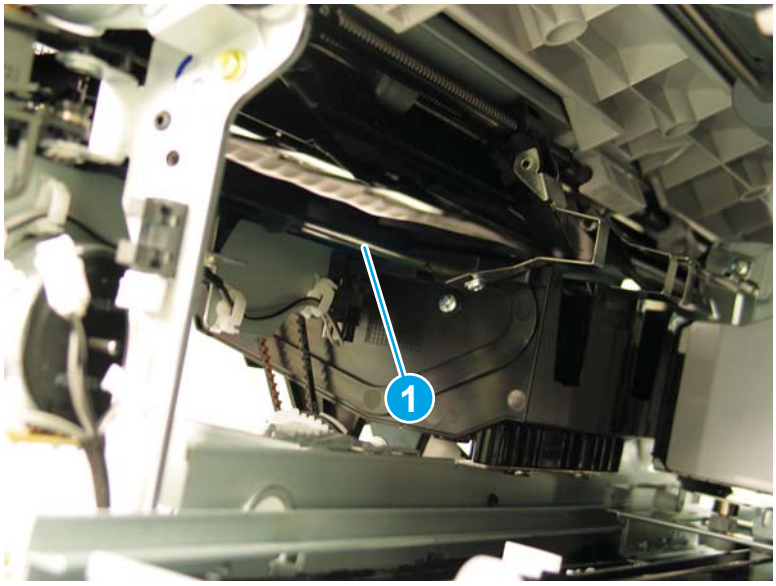
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-263 Remove one screw



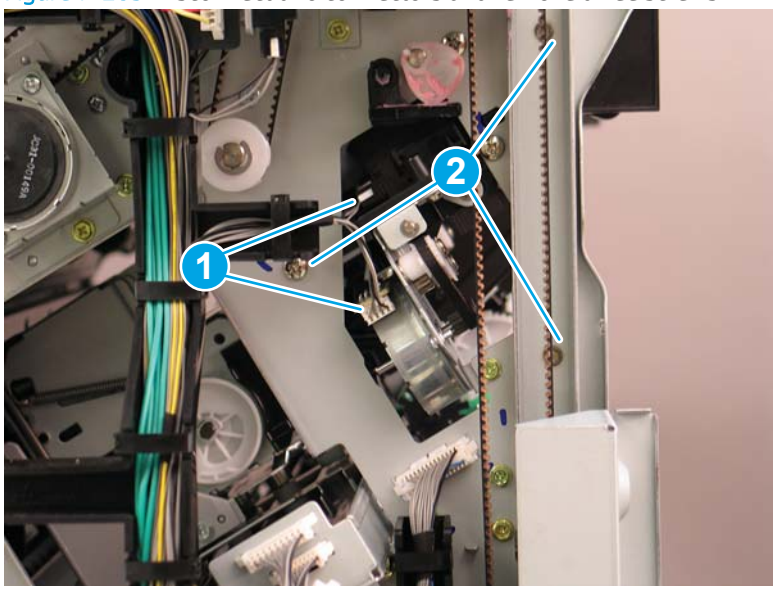
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-264 Remove the front tamper shaft



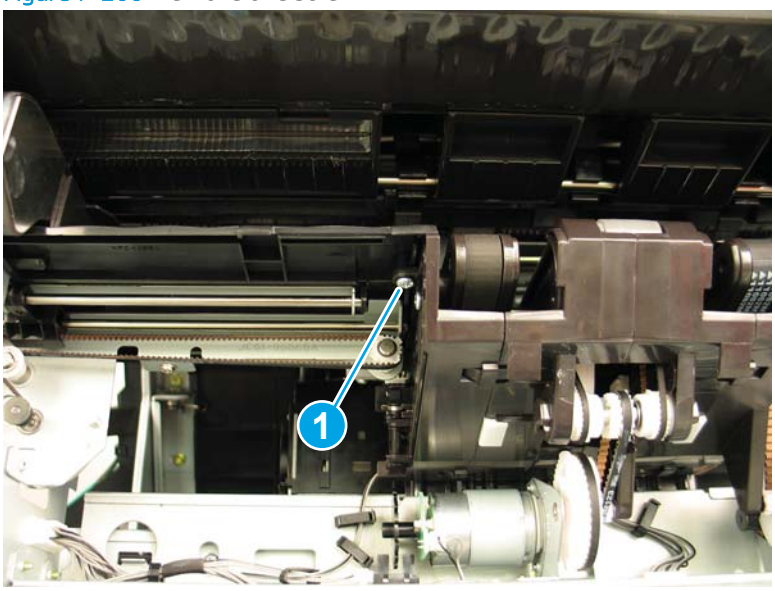
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-265 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



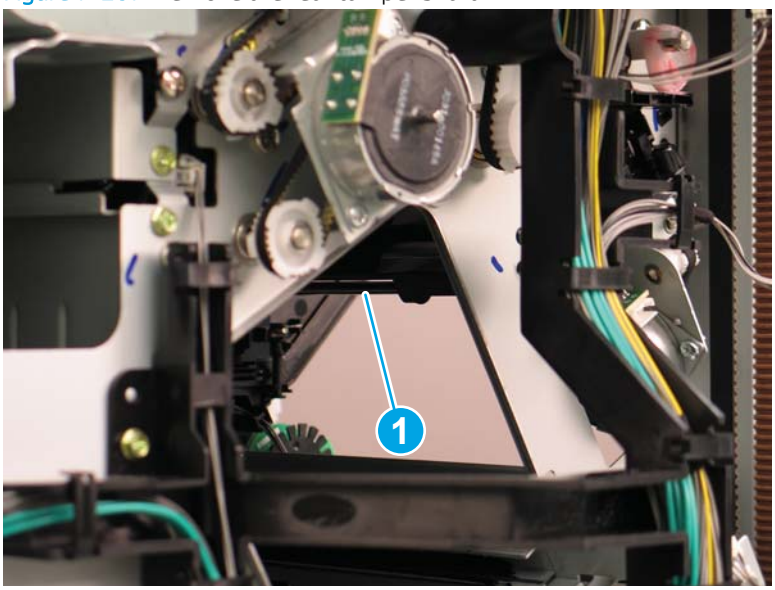
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-266 Remove one screw



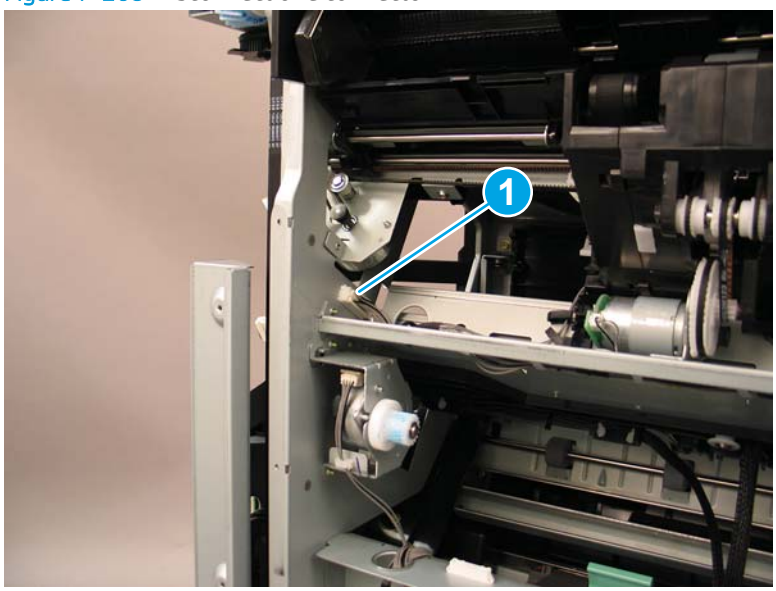
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-267 Remove the rear tamper shaft



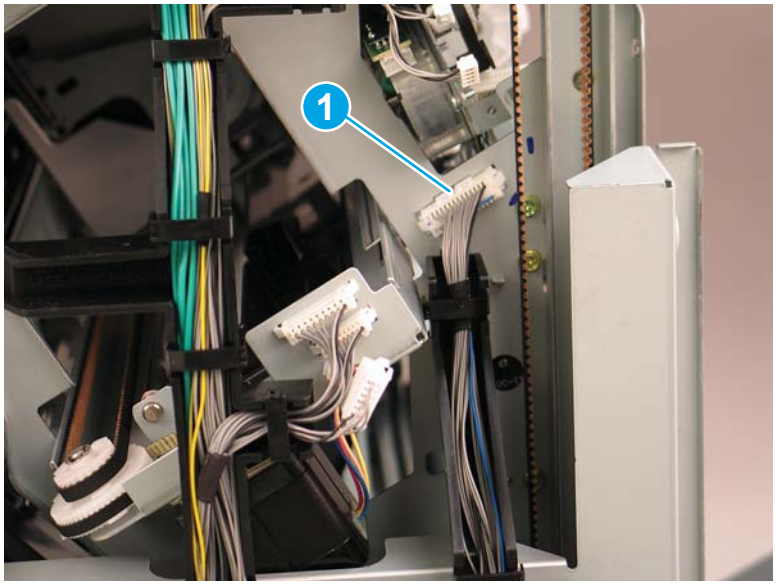
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-268 Disconnect one connector



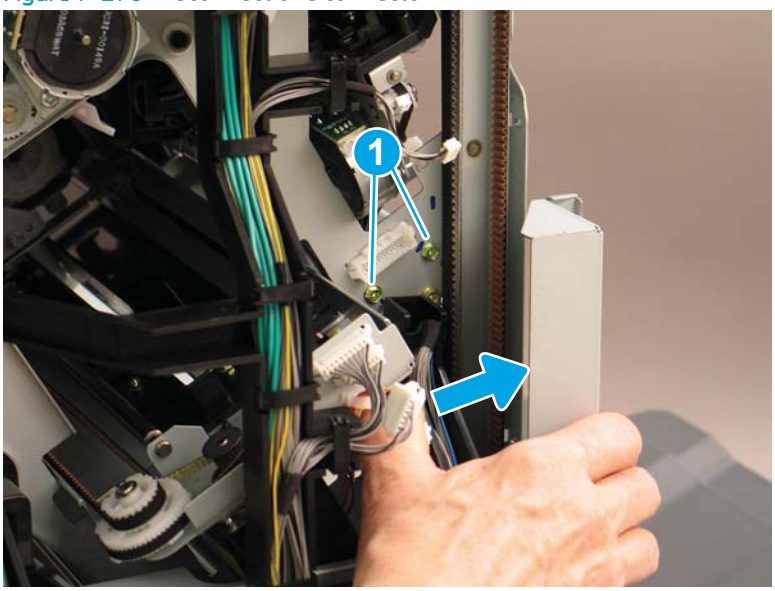
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-269 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-270 Disconnect one connector



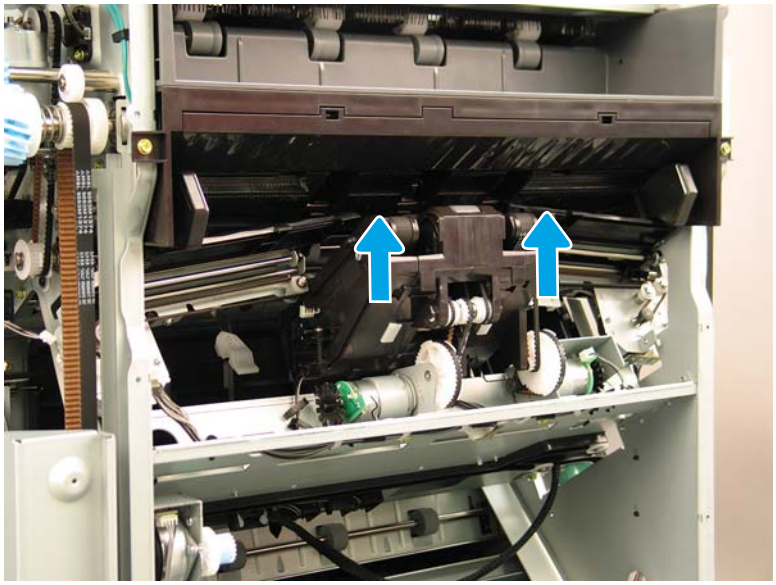
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-271 Remove two screws



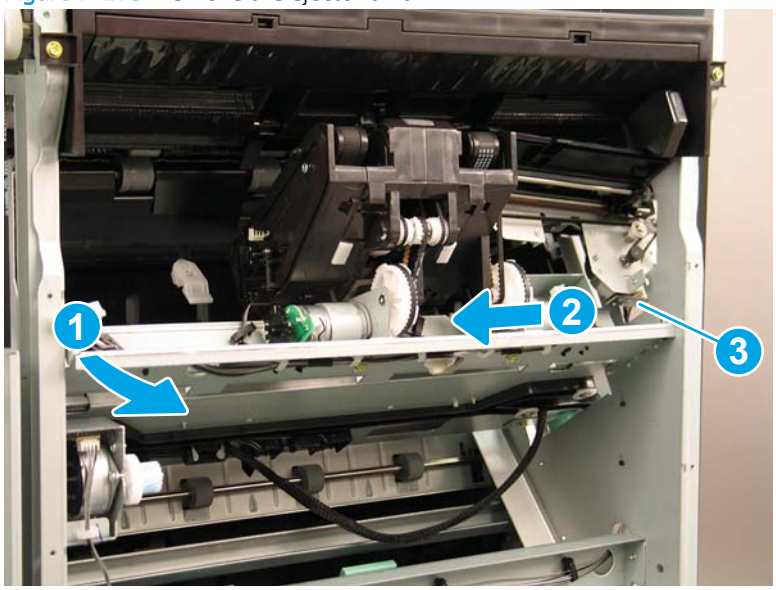
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-272 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-273 Remove the ejector unit



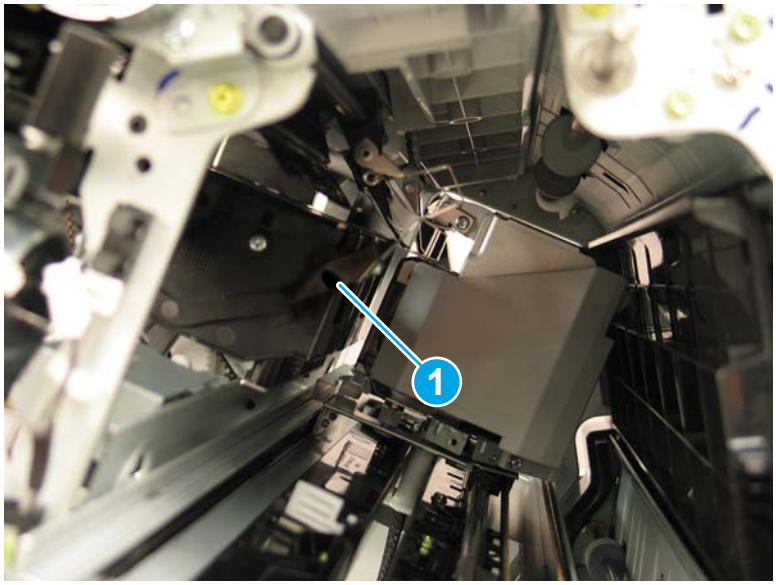
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

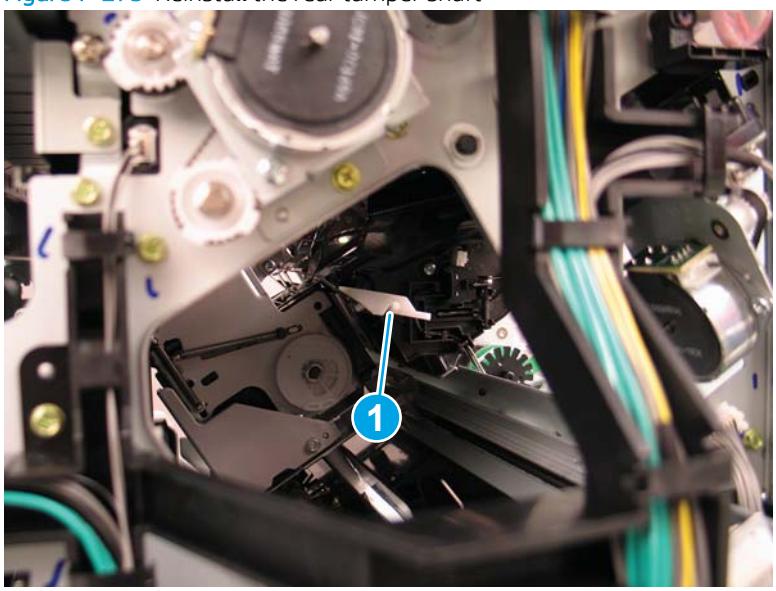
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-274 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-275 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

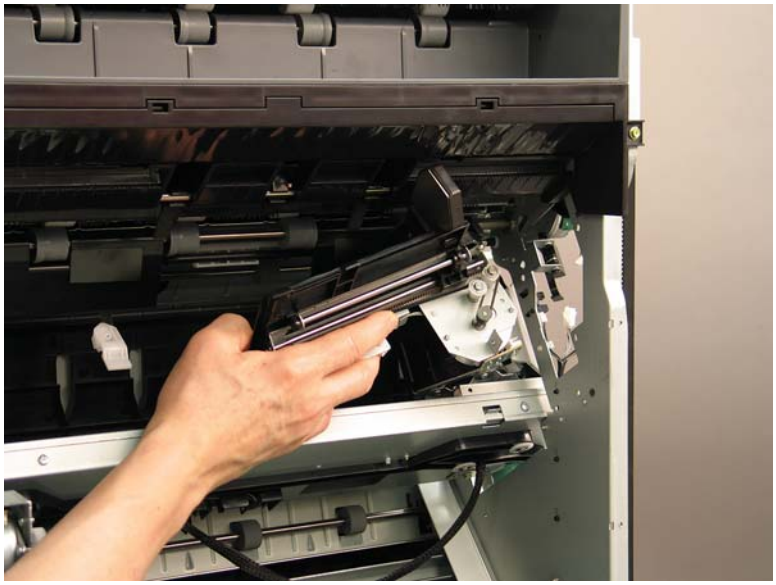


Step 11: Remove the front tamper unit

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-276 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper unit on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear tamper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01465A	Finisher Sub - Tamper Rear

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

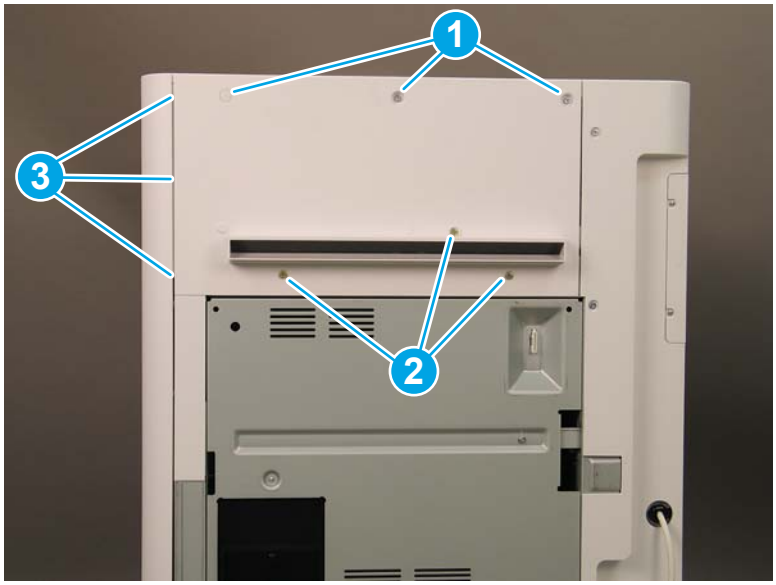
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

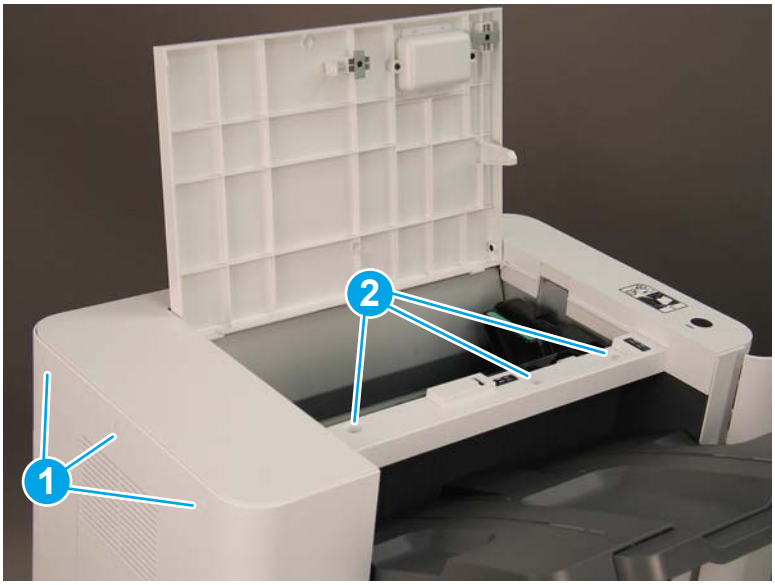
Figure 7-277 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

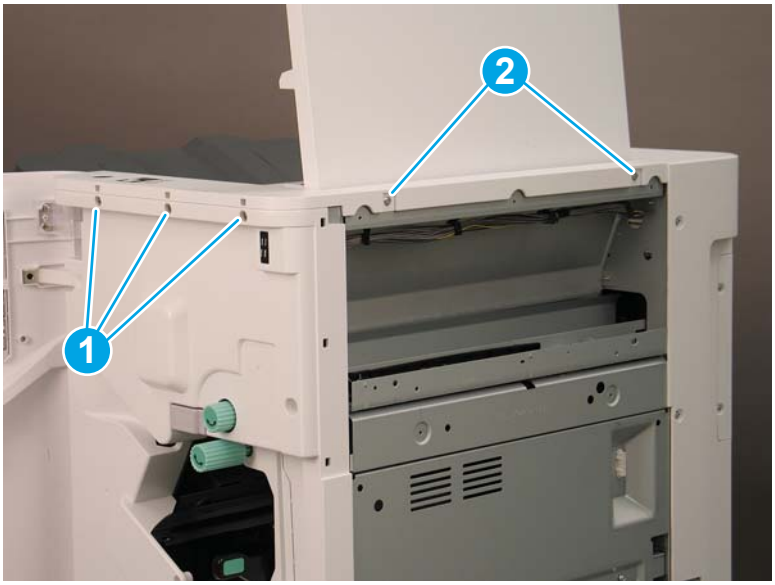
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-278 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

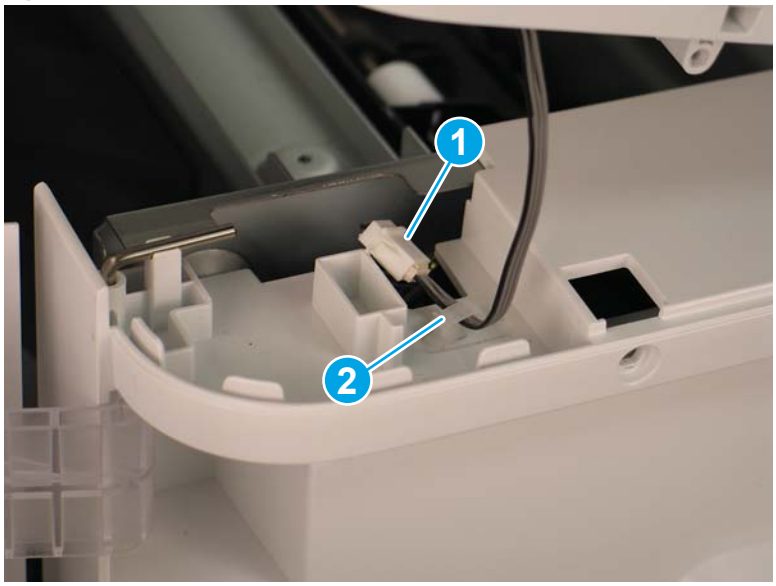
Figure 7-279 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-280 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

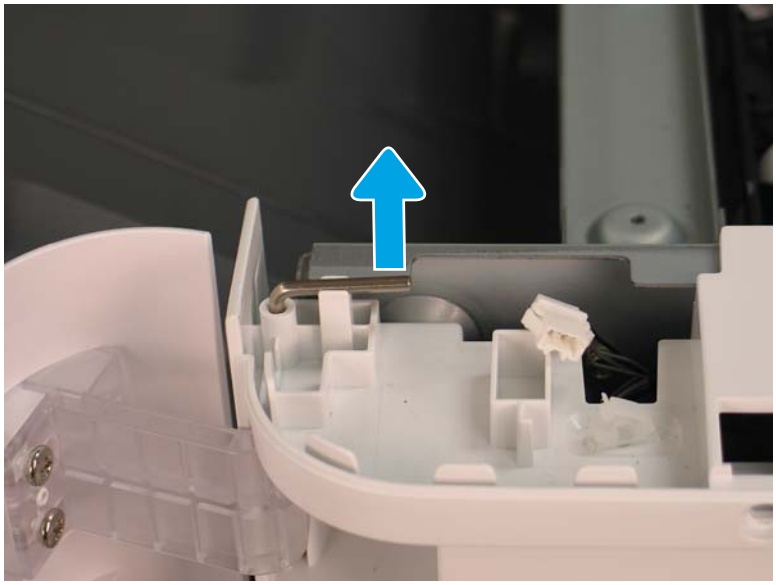


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

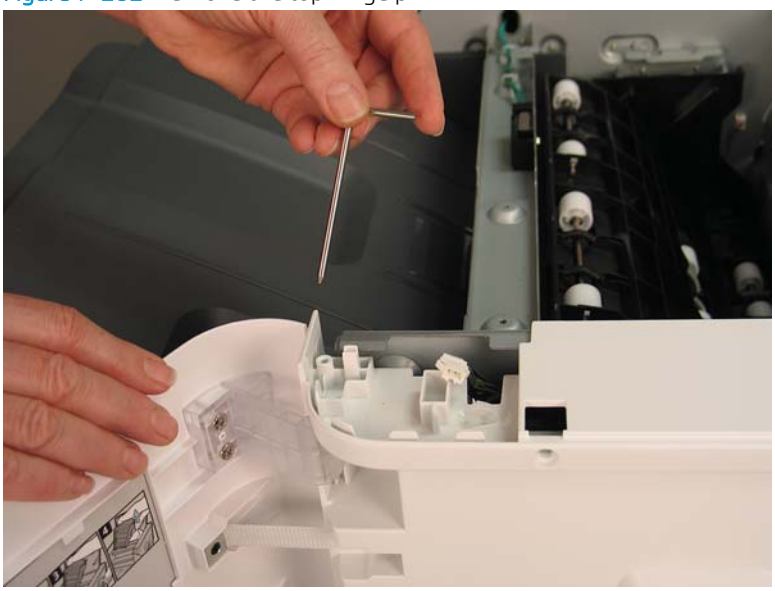
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-281 Lift the top hinge pin



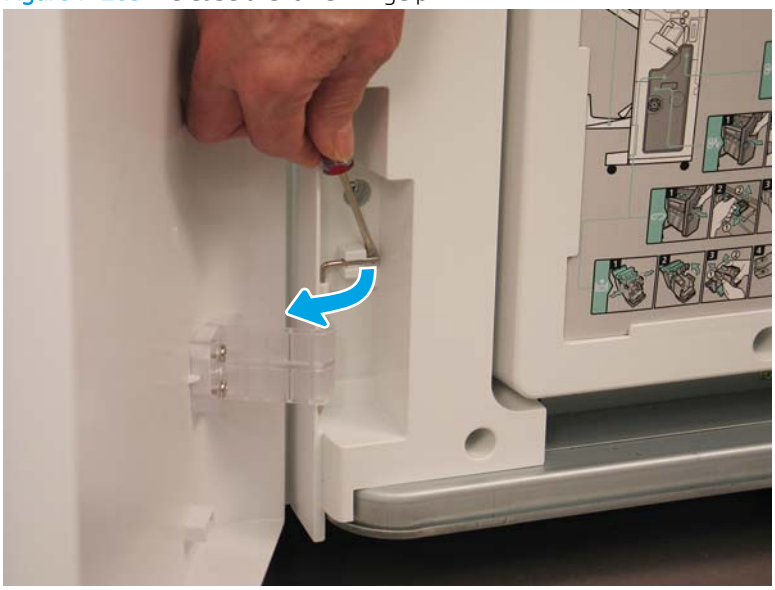
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-282 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-283 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

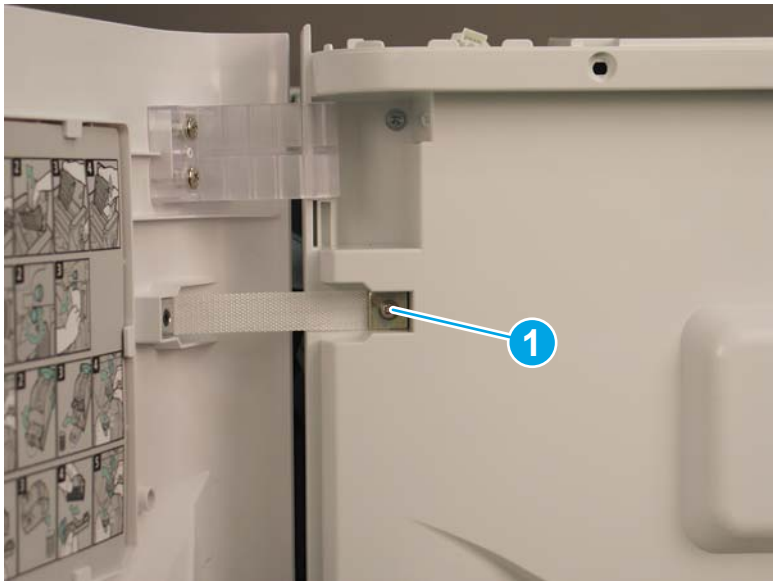
Figure 7-284 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

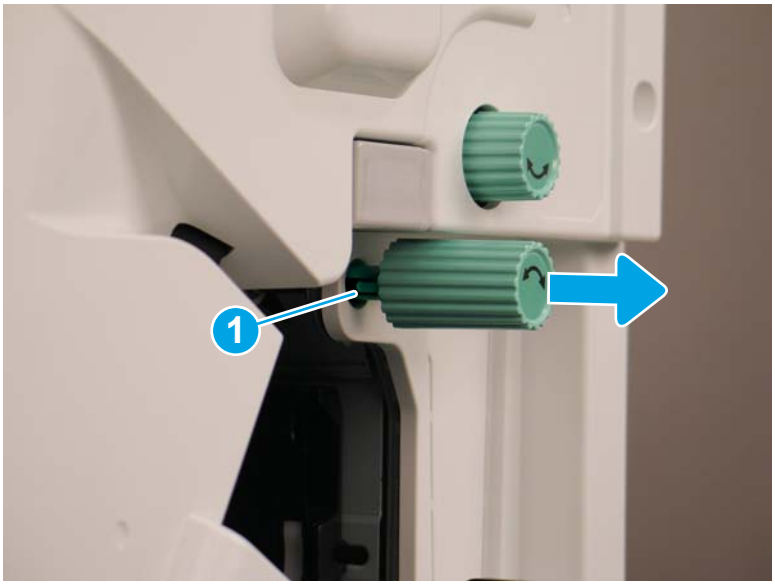
Figure 7-285 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

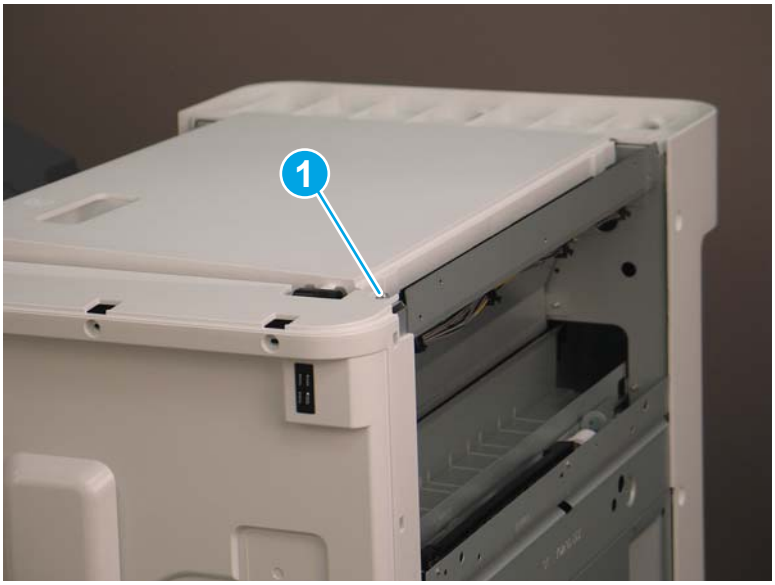
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-286 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

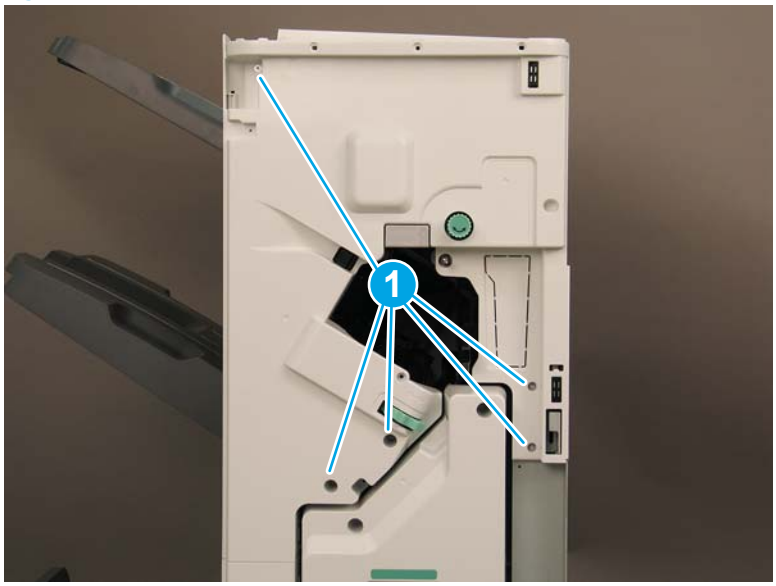
Figure 7-287 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

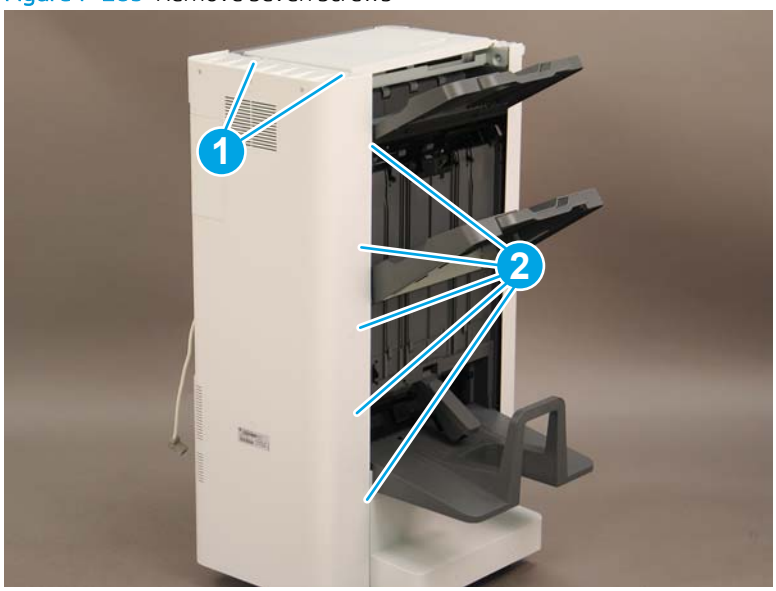
Figure 7-288 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-289 Remove seven screws

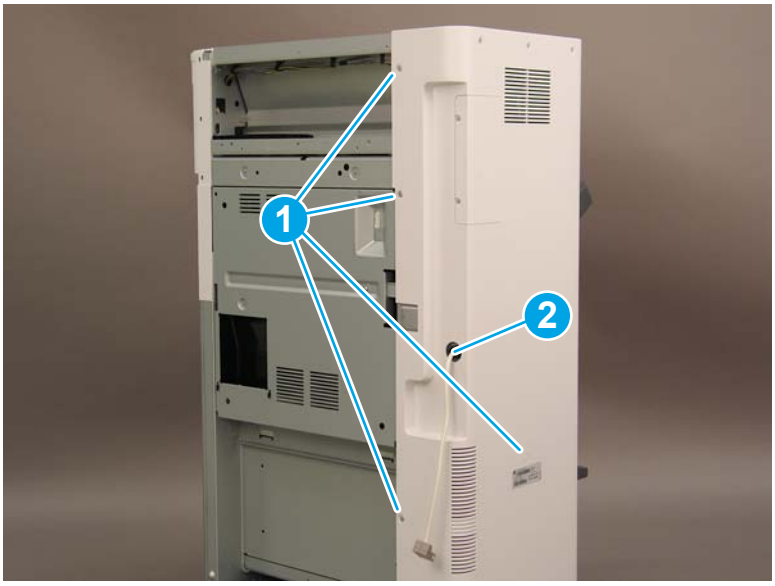


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

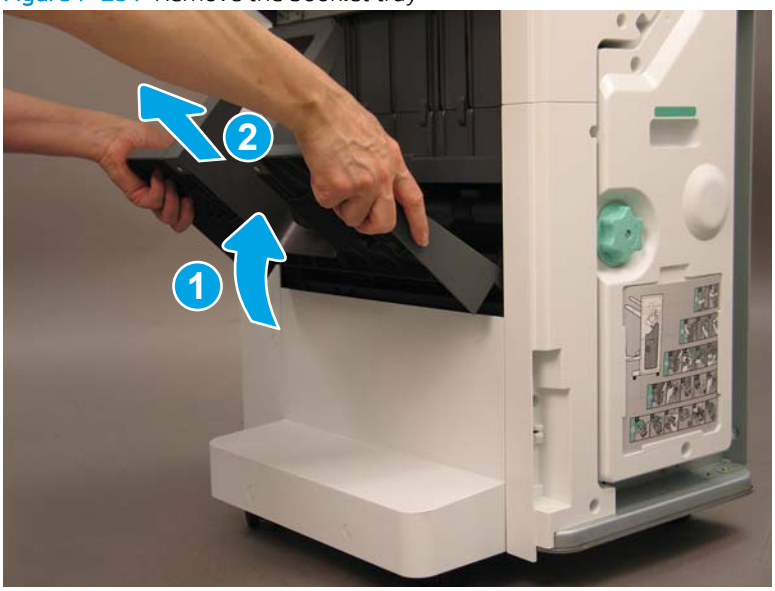
Figure 7-290 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-291 Remove the booklet tray



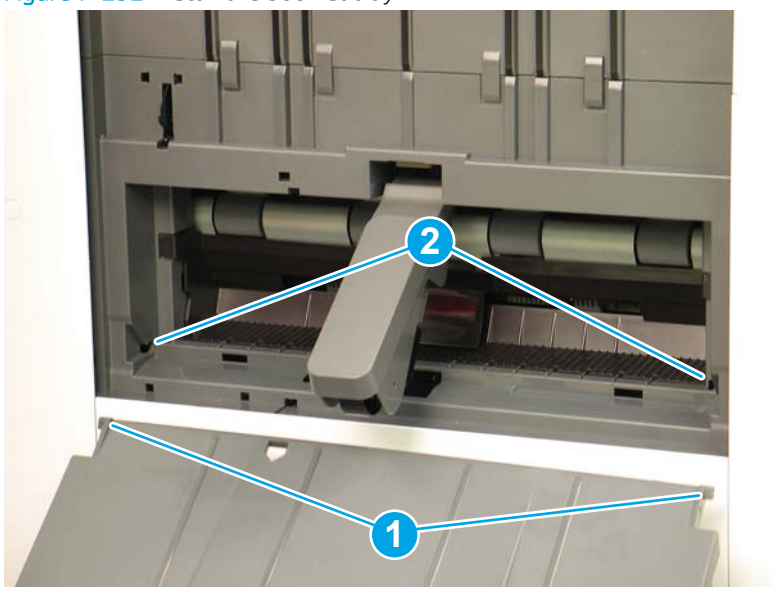
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

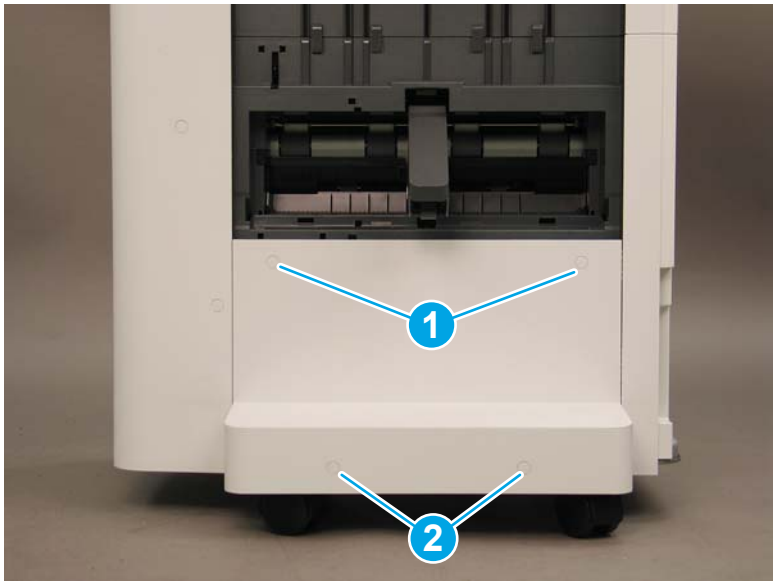
Figure 7-292 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-293 Remove four screws

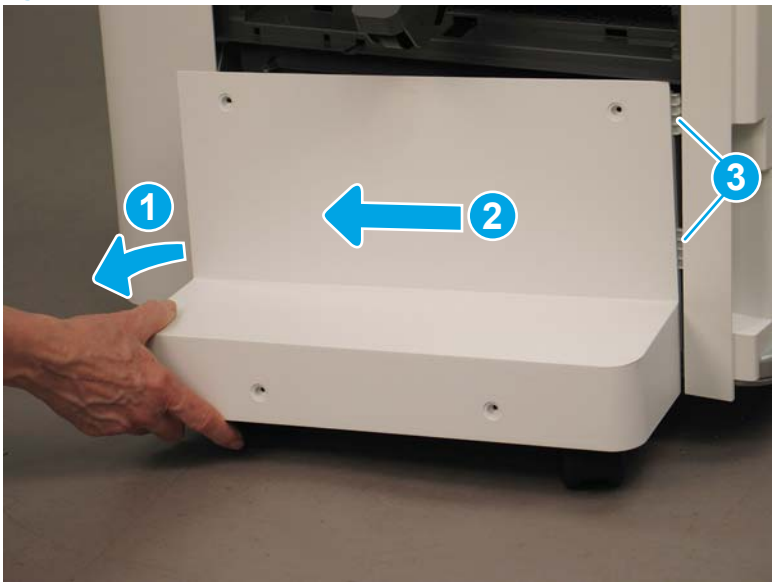


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-294 Remove the caster cover

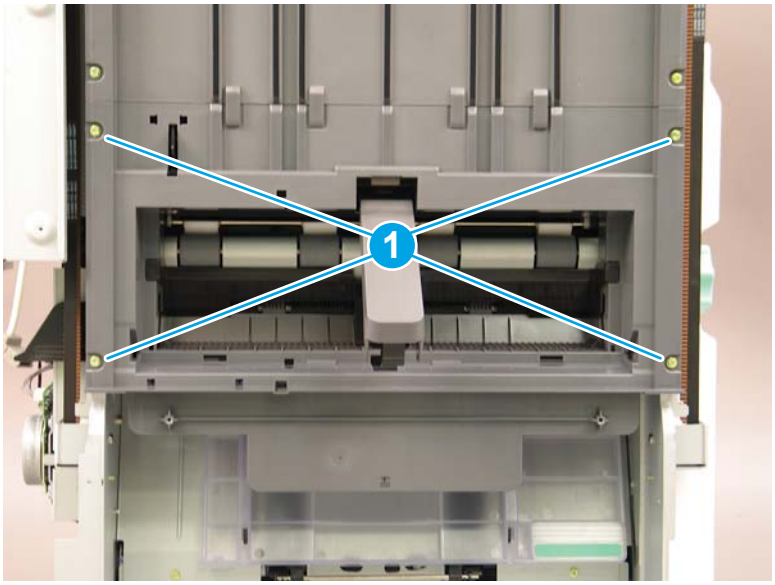


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-295 Remove four screws

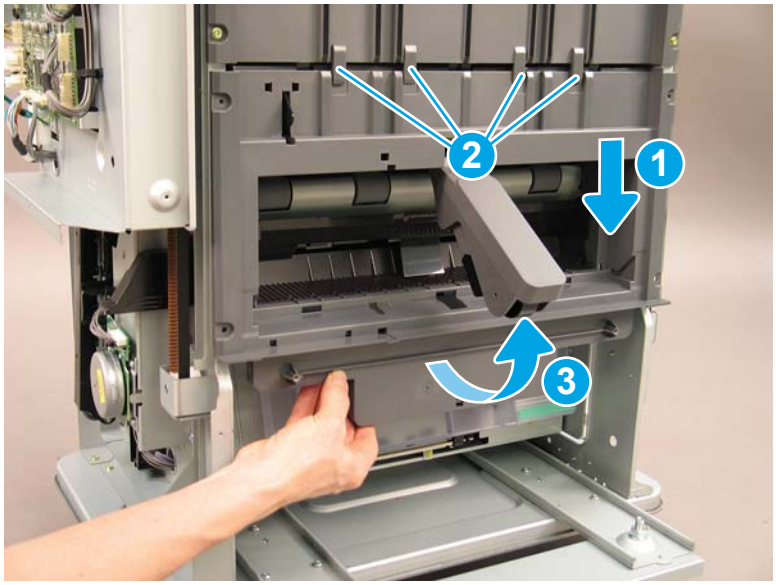


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

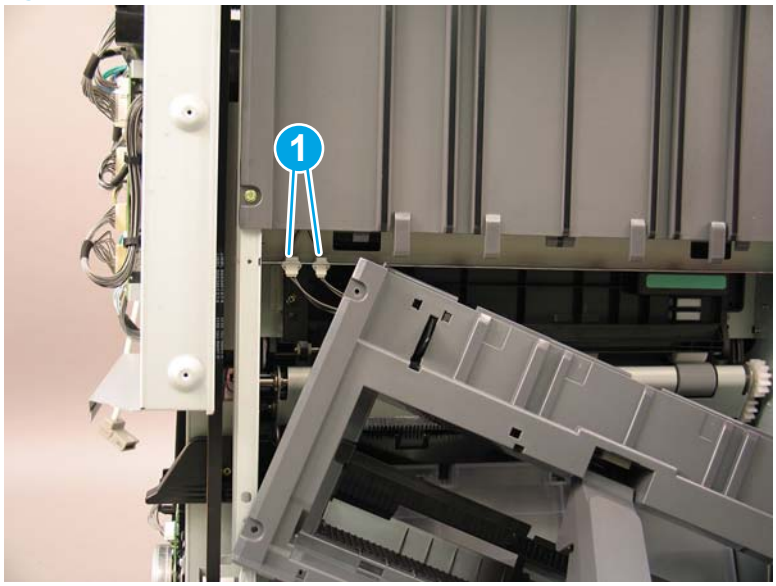
Figure 7-296 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

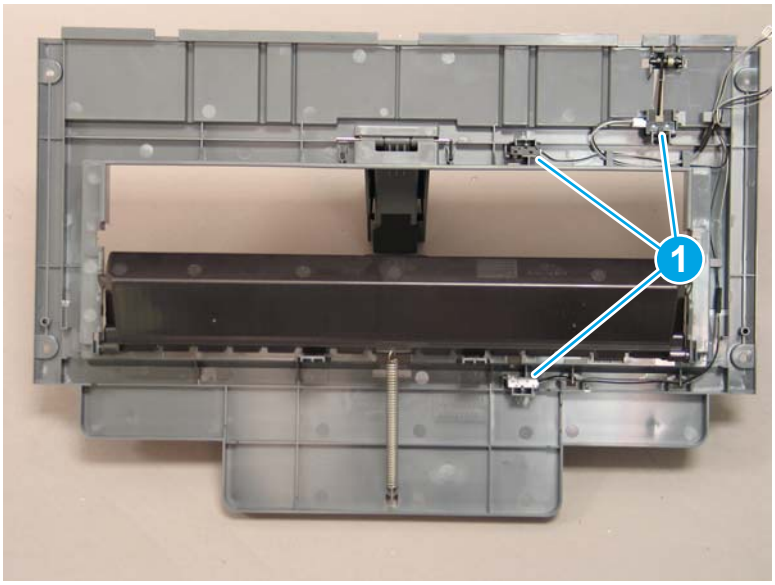
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-297 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

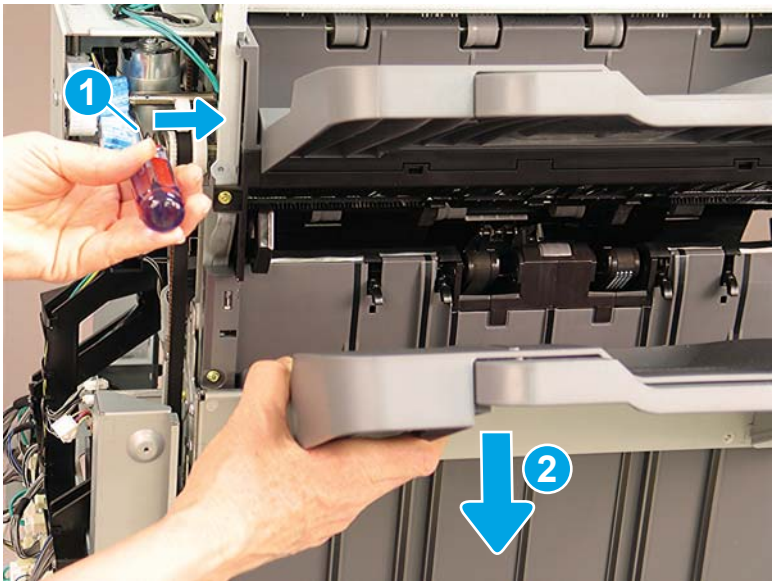
Figure 7-298 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

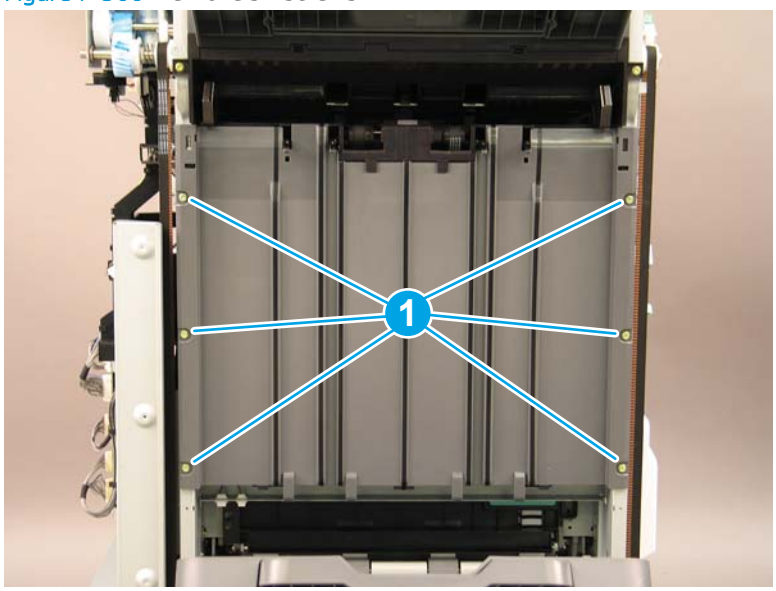
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-299 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-300 Remove six screws

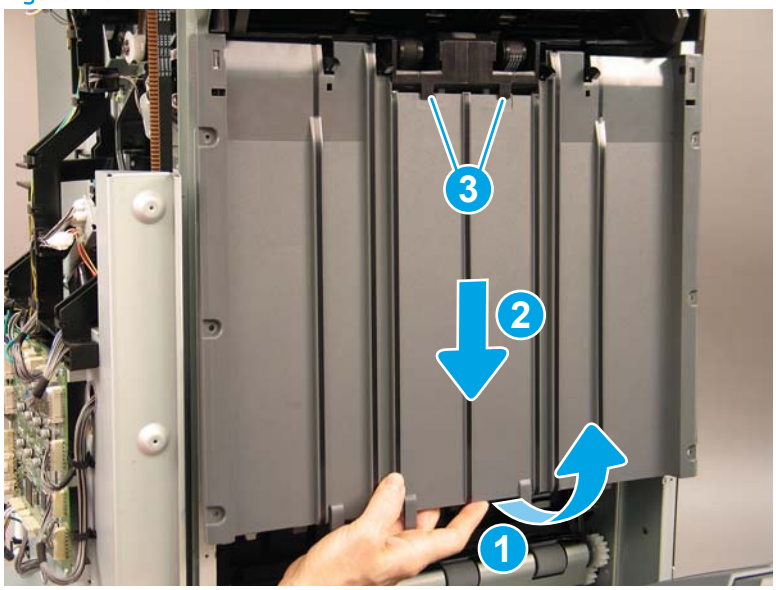


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

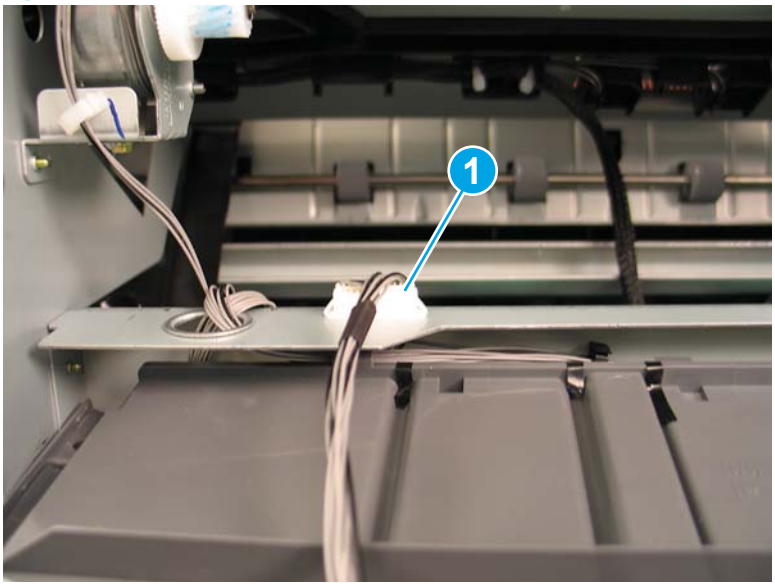
Figure 7-301 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

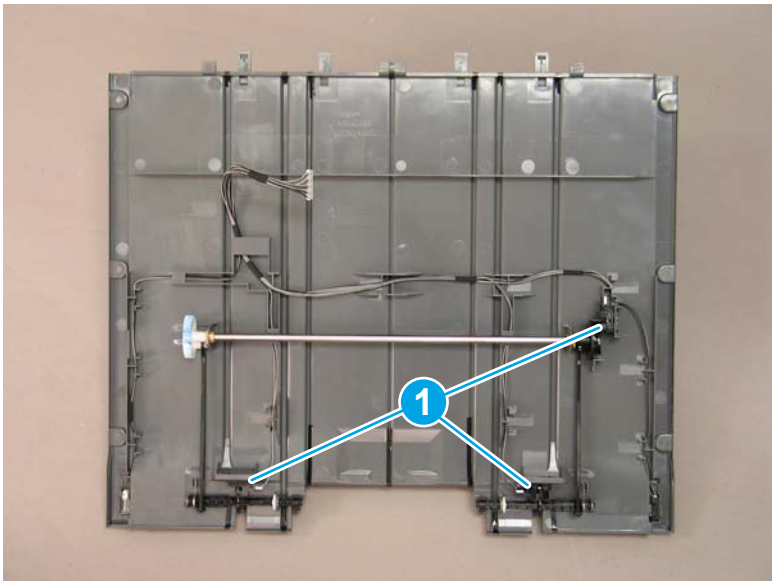
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-302 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

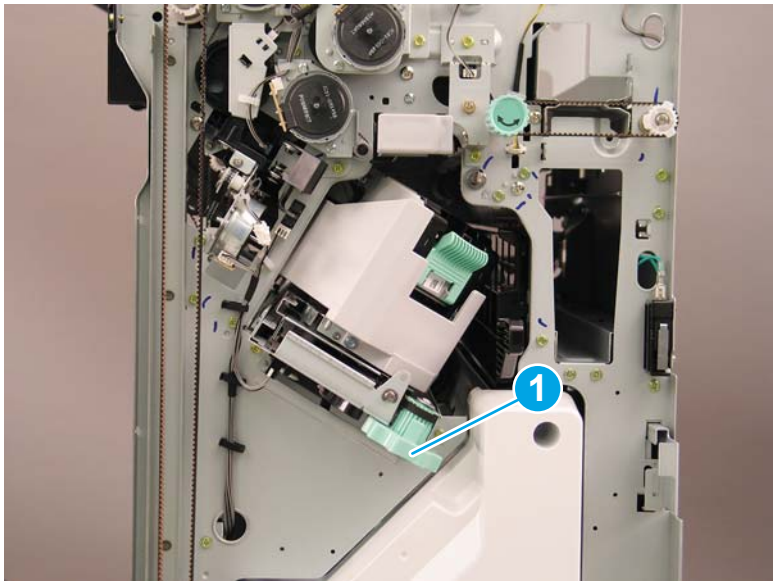
Figure 7-303 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

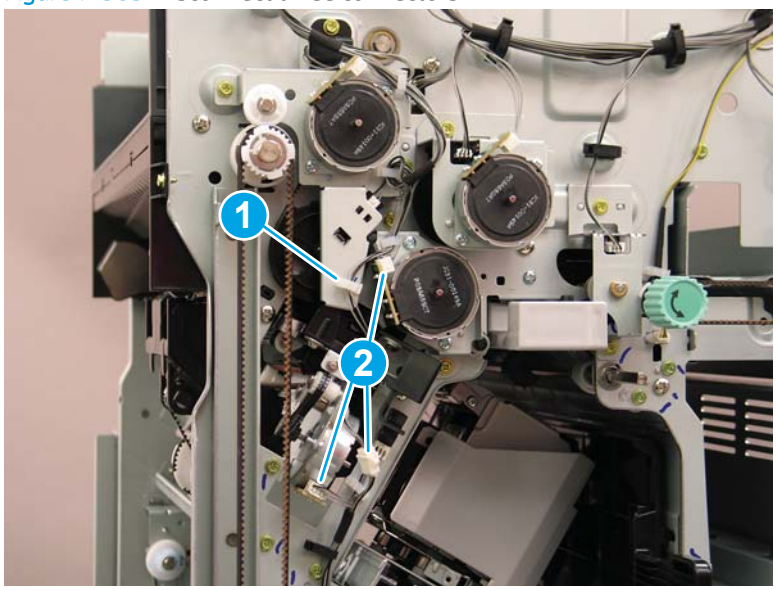
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-304 Move the staple unit to the center



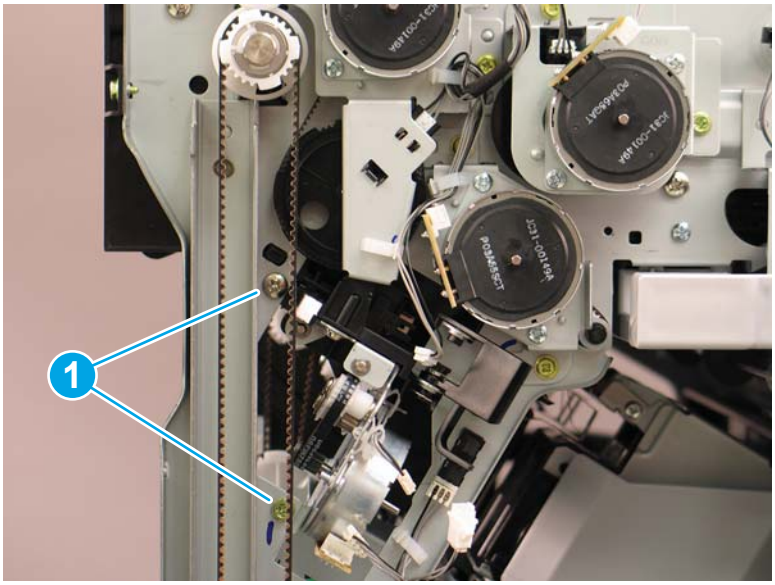
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-305 Disconnect three connectors



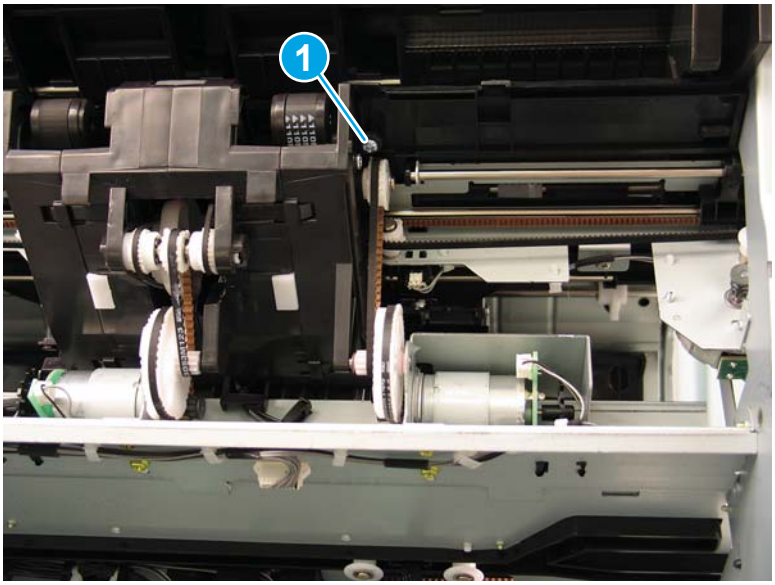
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-306 Remove two screws



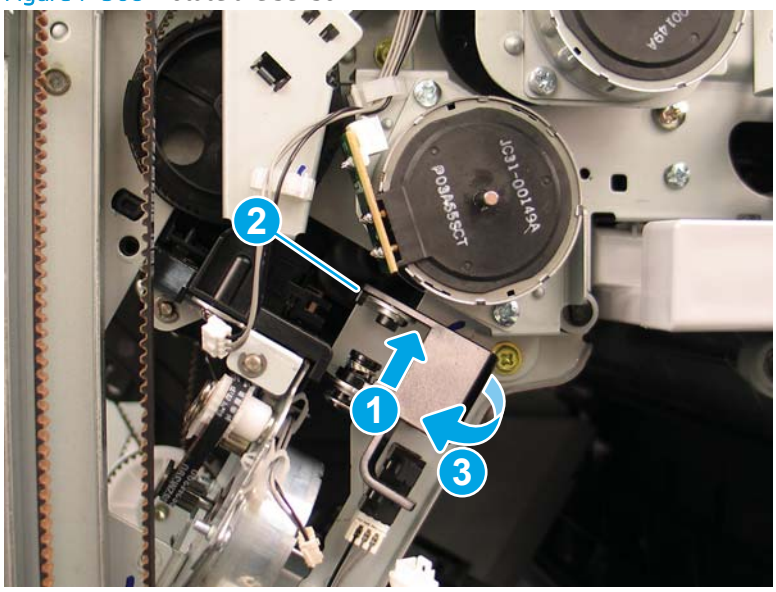
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-307 Remove one screw



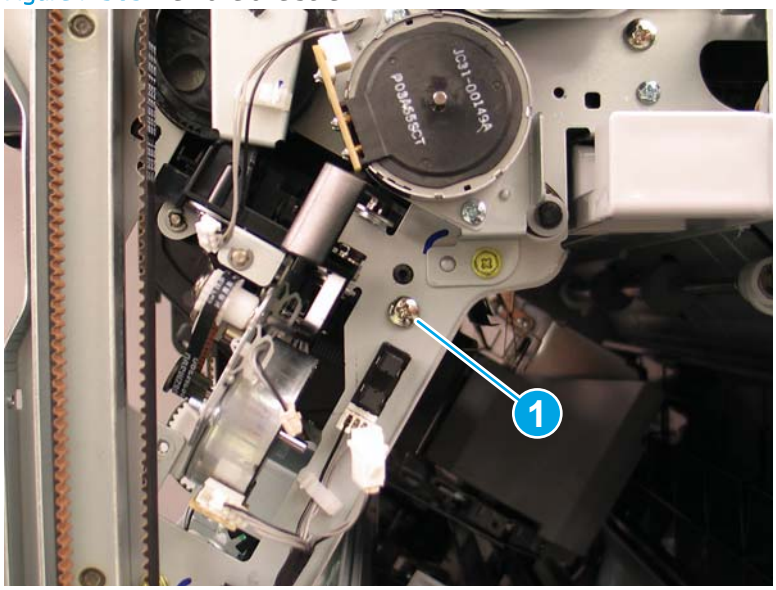
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-308 Rotate the sensor



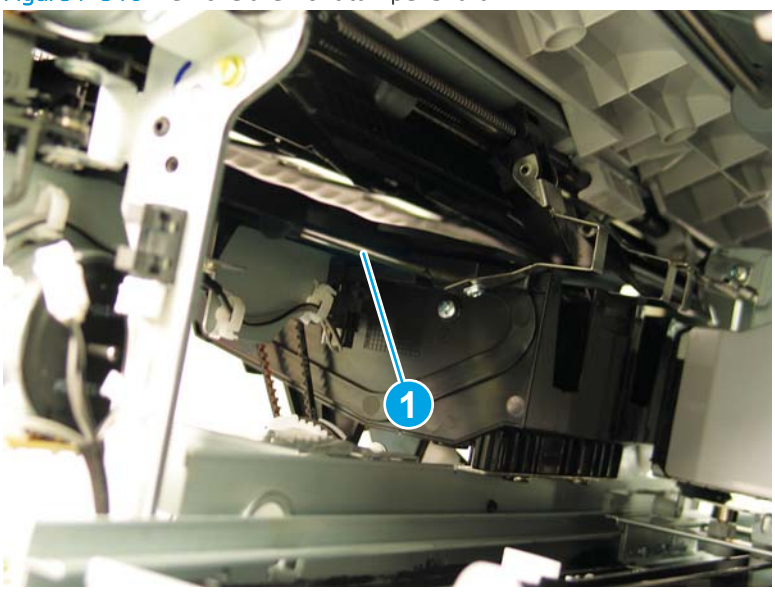
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-309 Remove one screw



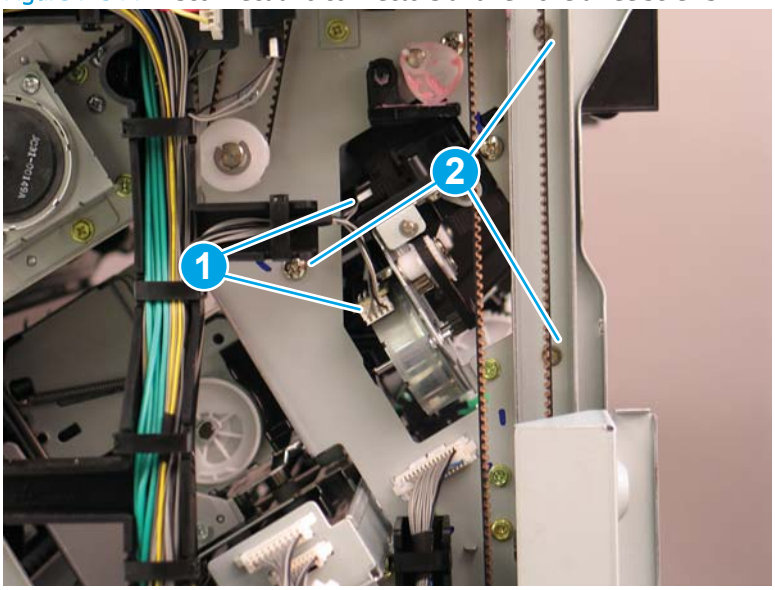
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-310 Remove the front tamper shaft



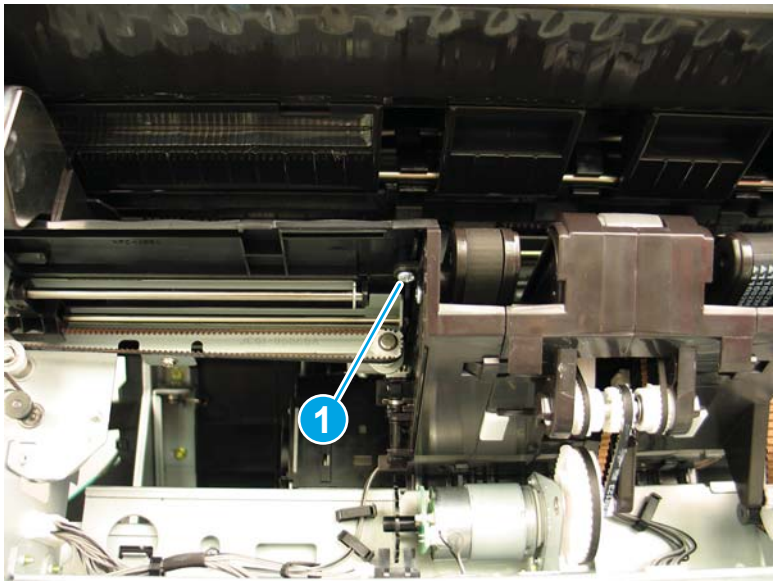
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-311 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



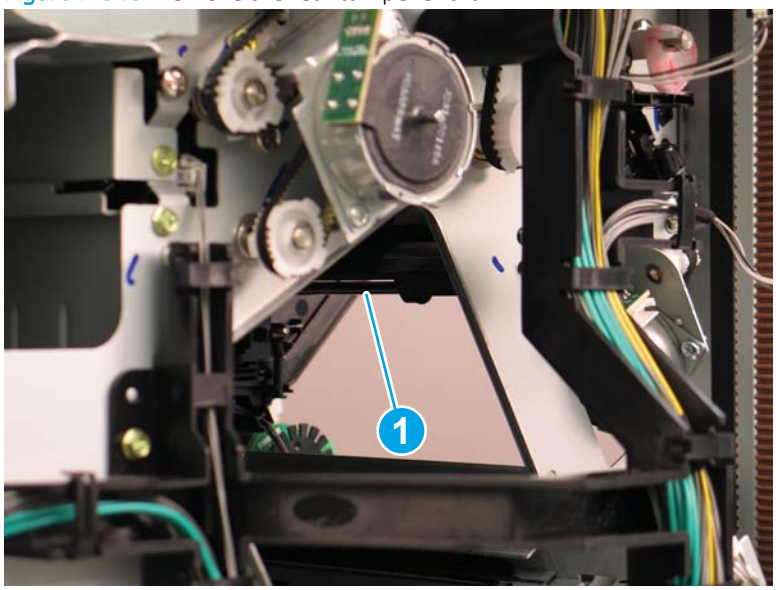
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-312 Remove one screw



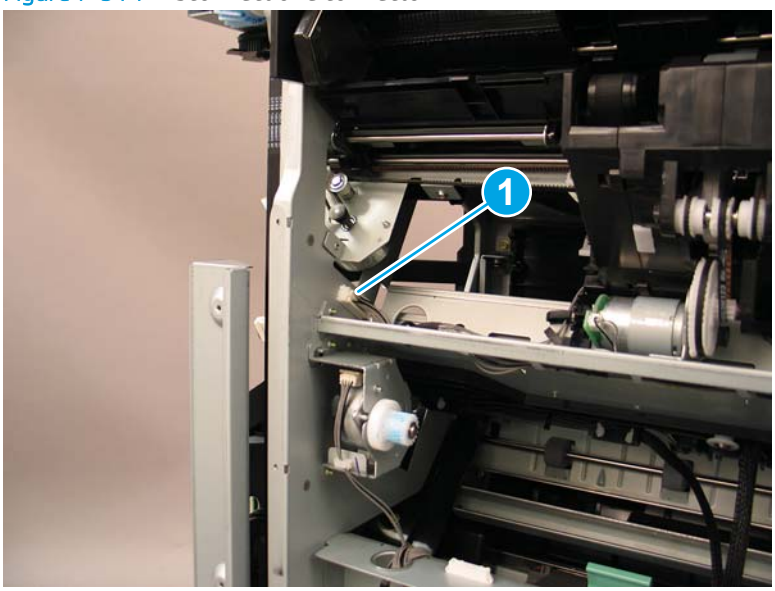
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-313 Remove the rear tamper shaft



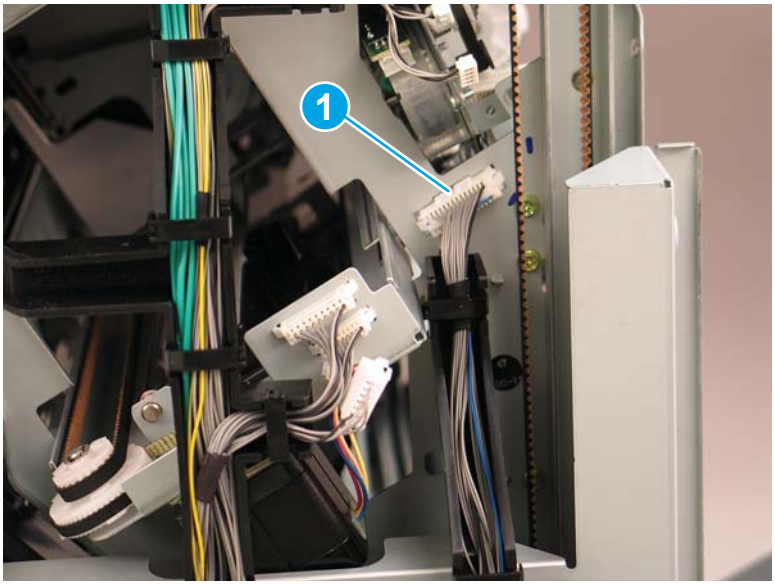
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-314 Disconnect one connector



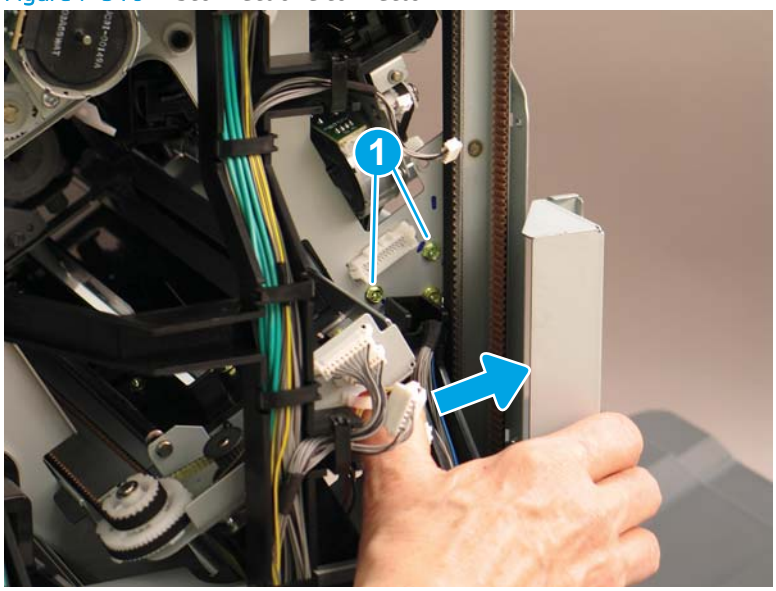
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-315 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-316 Disconnect one connector



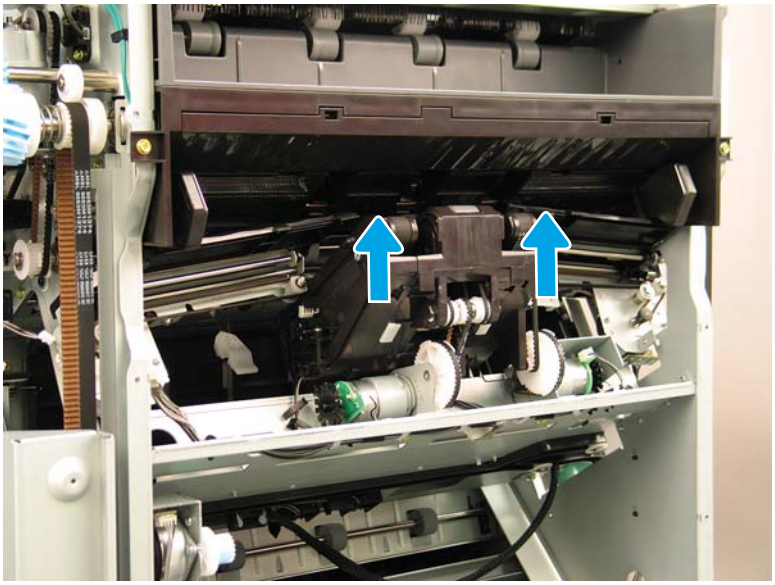
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-317 Remove two screws



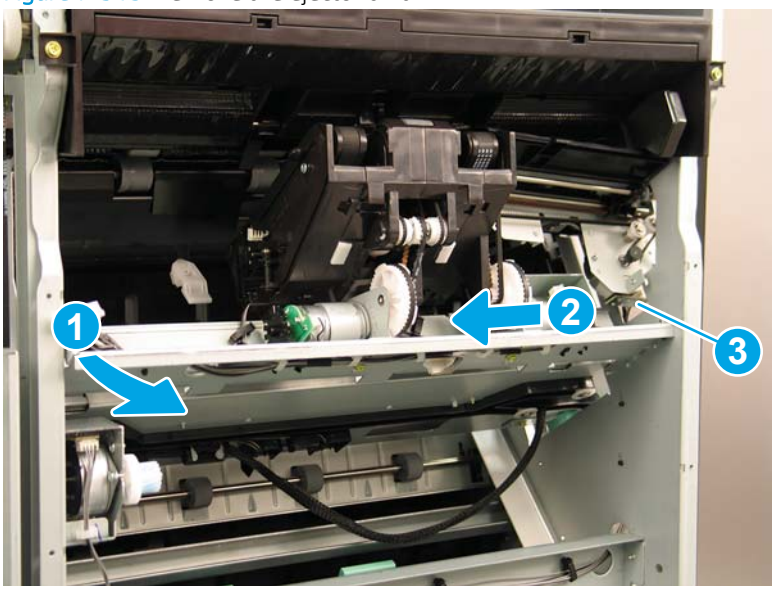
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-318 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-319 Remove the ejector unit



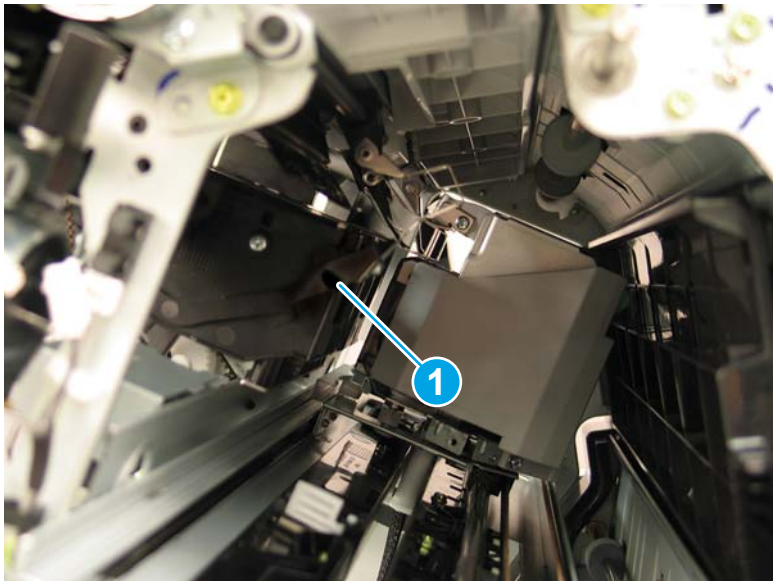
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

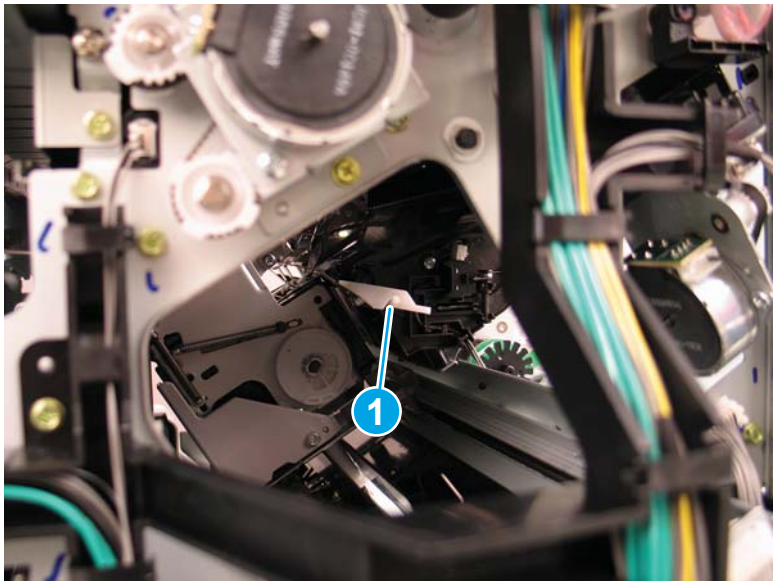
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-320 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-321 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

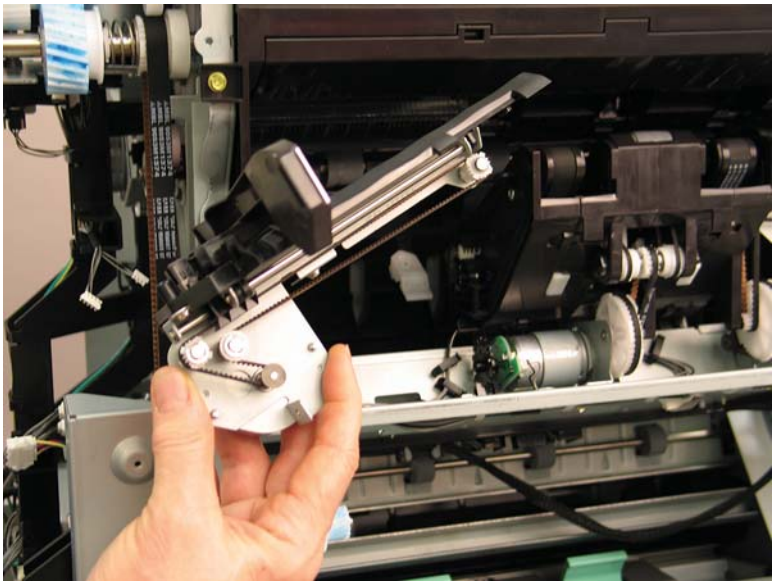


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper unit

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-322 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed entrance motor (M1)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed entrance motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed entrance motor (M1) part number	
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

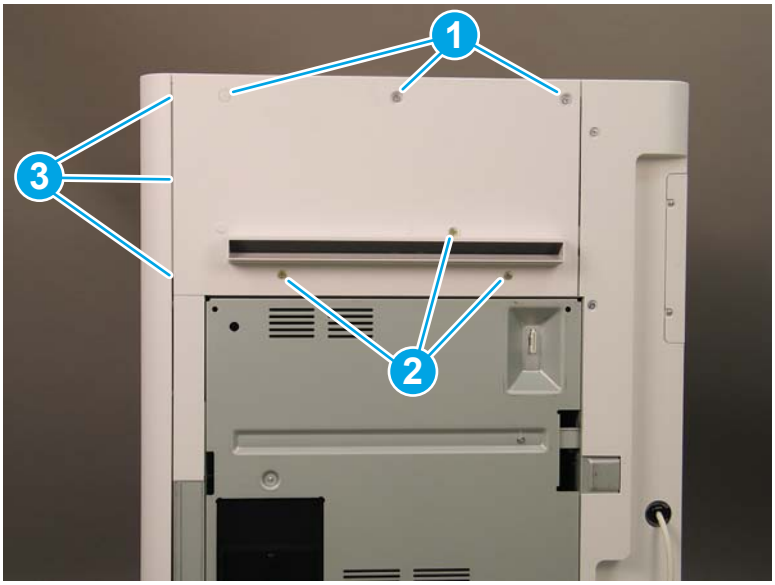
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

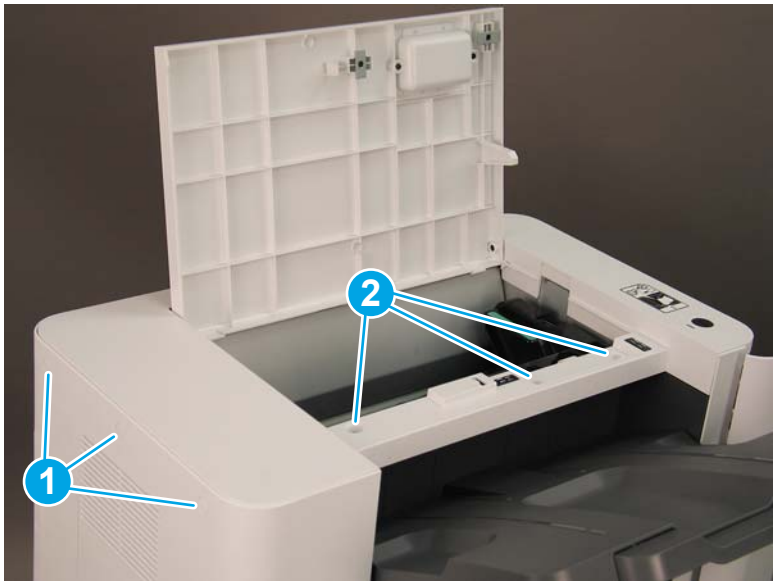
Figure 7-323 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

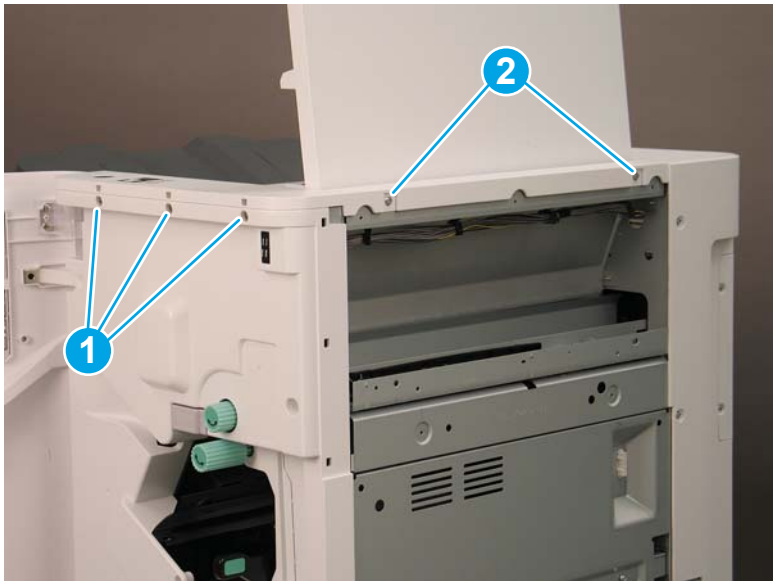
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-324 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

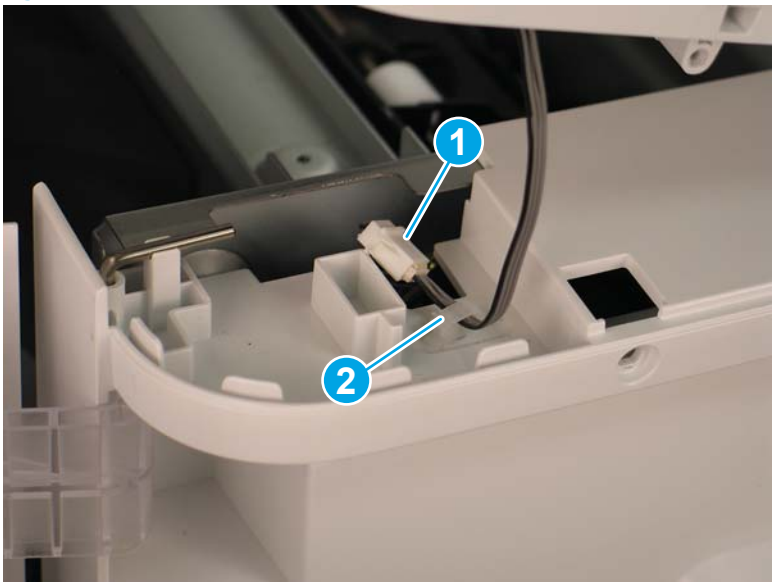
Figure 7-325 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-326 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

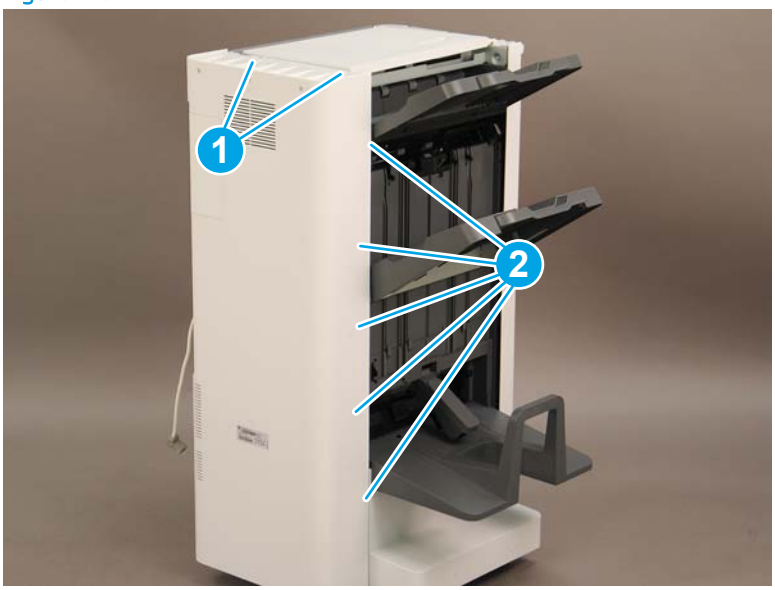


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-327 Remove seven screws

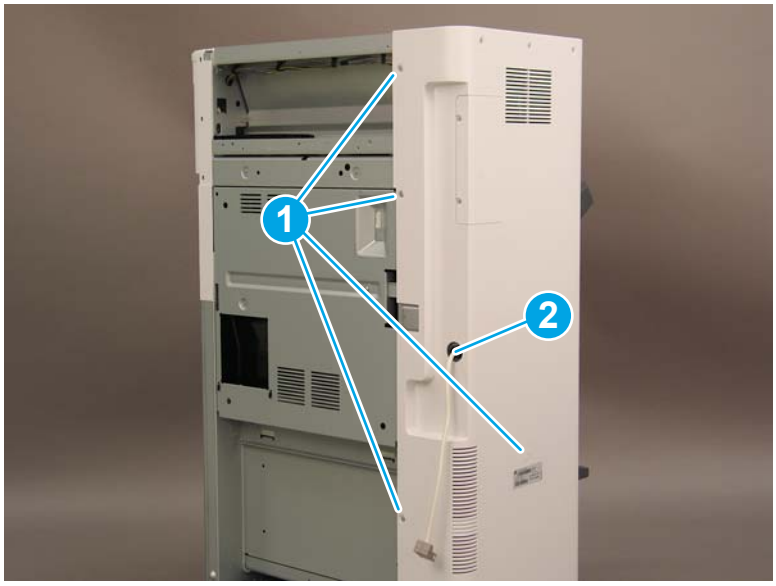


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-328 Remove four screws and the rear cover



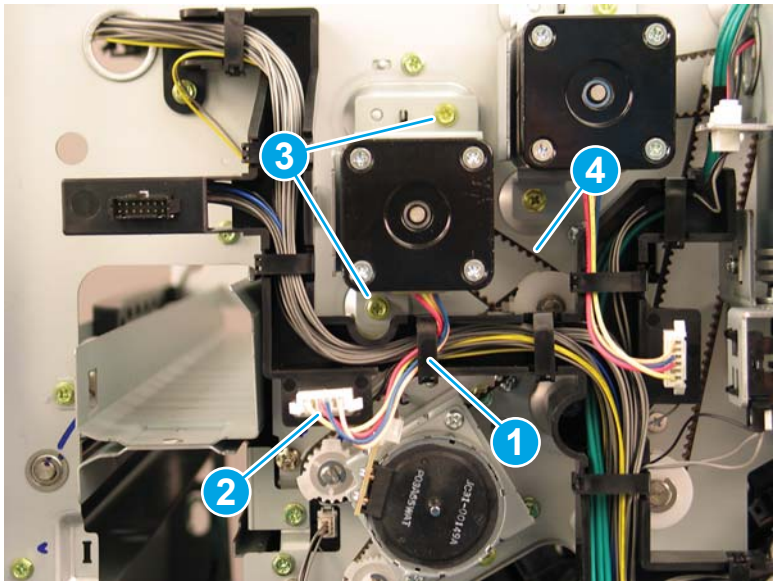
Step 4: Remove the feed entrance motor (M1)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed entrance motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-329 Remove the feed entrance motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feed exit motor (M2)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed exit motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Feed exit motor (M2) part number	
SAM-JC31-00163B	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

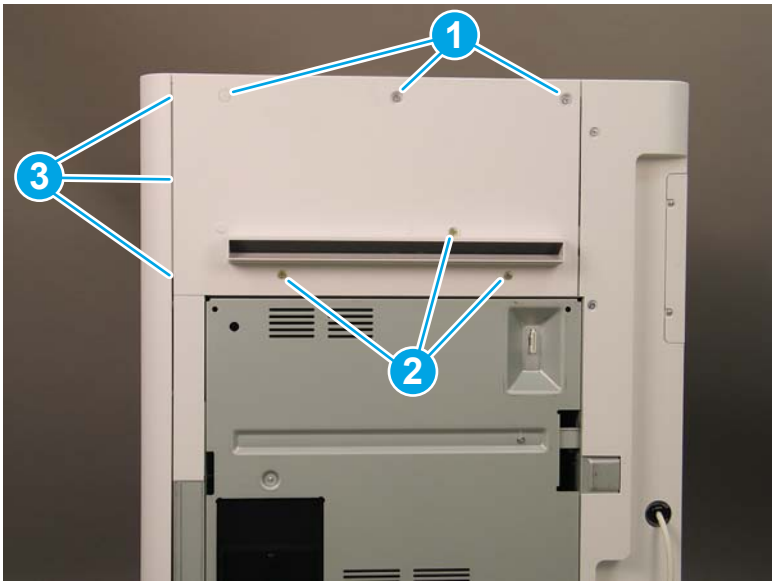
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

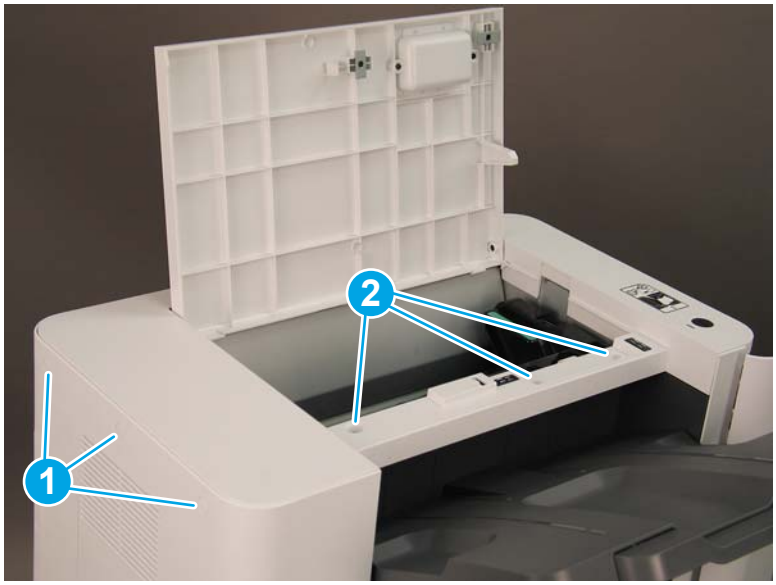
Figure 7-330 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

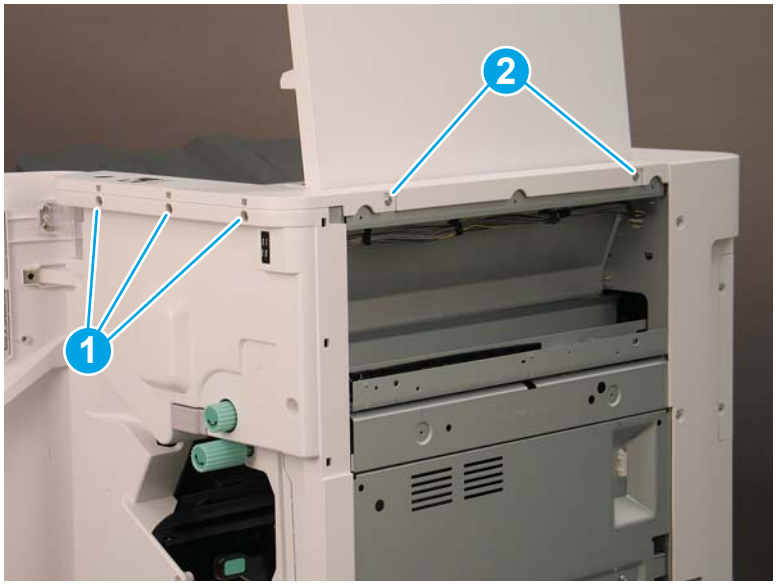
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-331 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

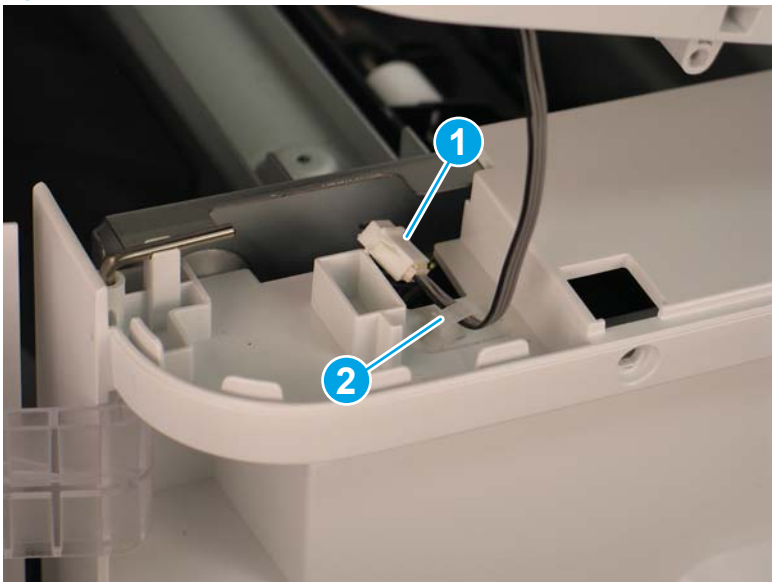
Figure 7-332 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-333 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

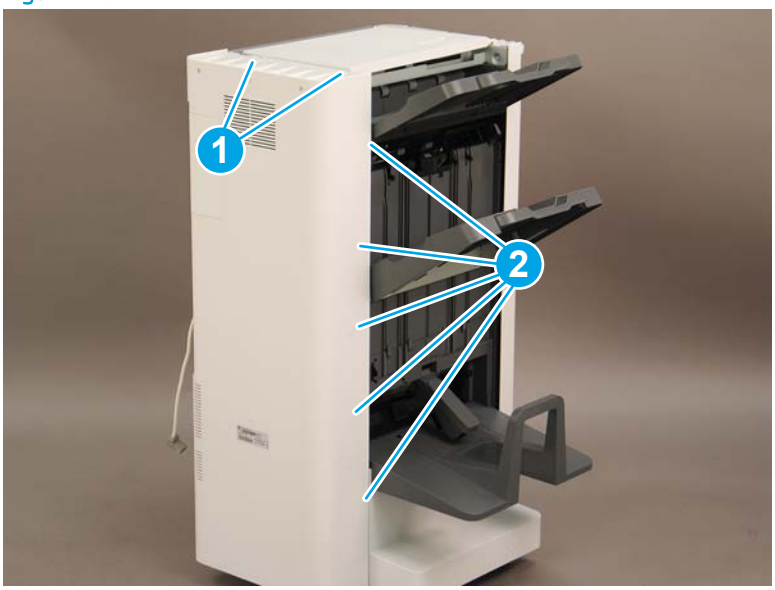


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-334 Remove seven screws

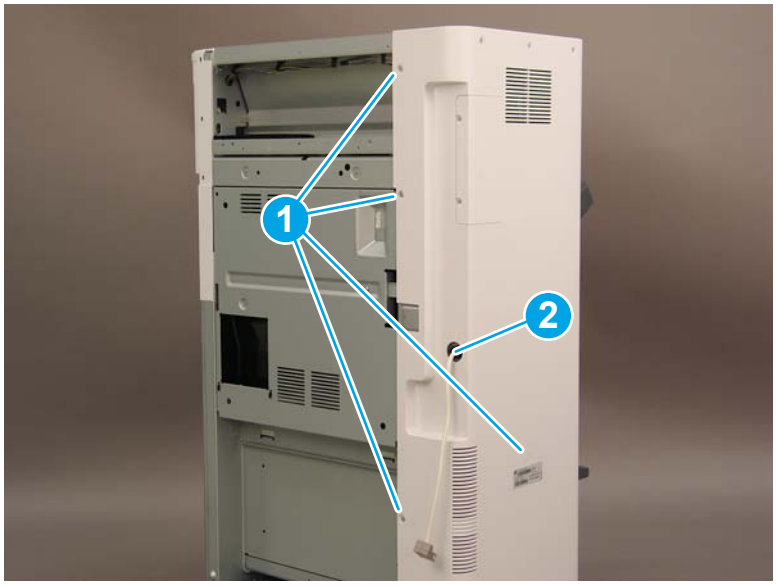


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-335 Remove four screws and the rear cover



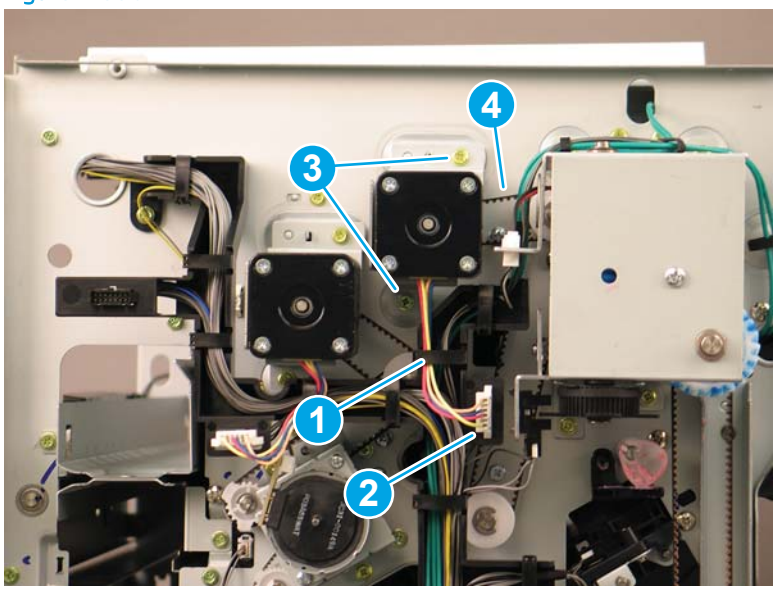
Step 4: Remove the feed exit motor (M2)

▲ Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2). Remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the feed exit motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt (callout 4) is positioned on the gear behind the motor when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-336 Remove the feed exit motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the buffer motor, gear, and sensor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Finisher sub - drive buffer part number	
SAM-JC90-01453A	Finisher sub - drive buffer

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

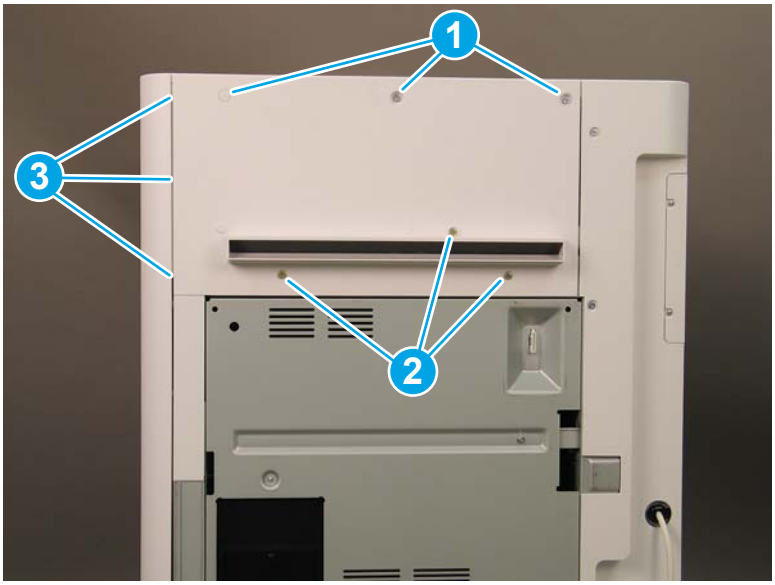
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

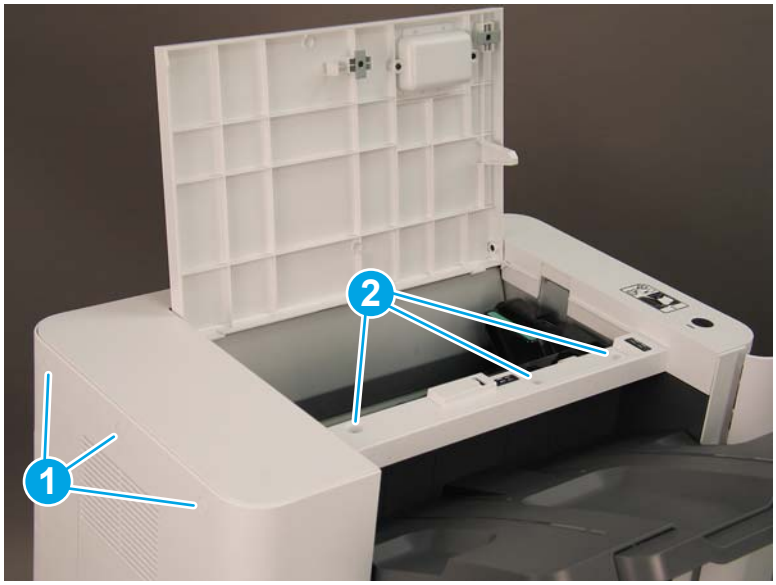
Figure 7-337 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

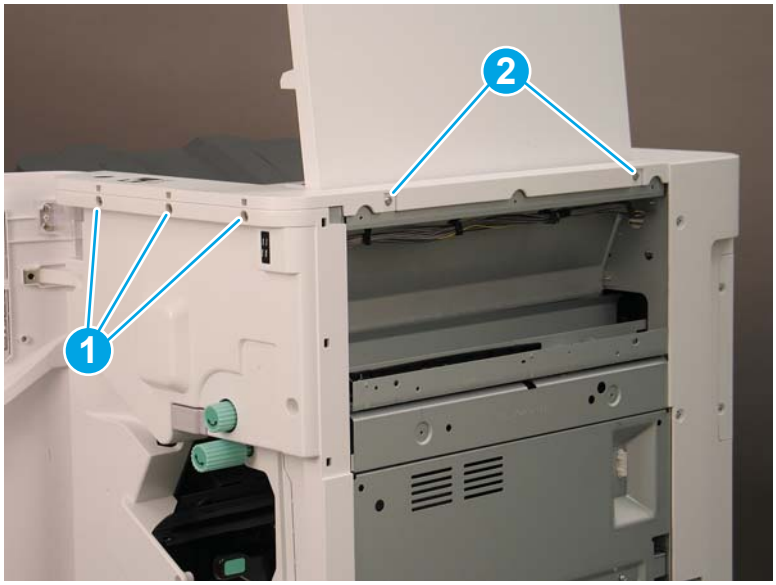
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-338 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

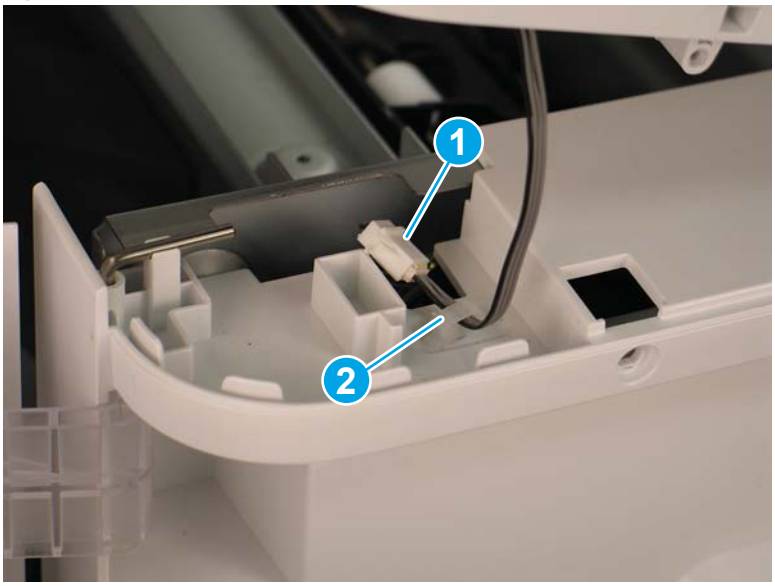
Figure 7-339 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-340 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

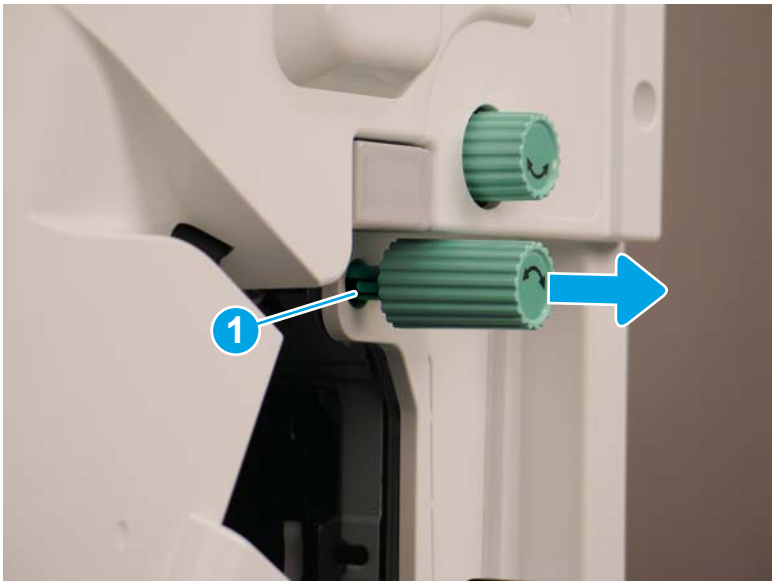


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front cover (finisher)

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-341 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).

3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

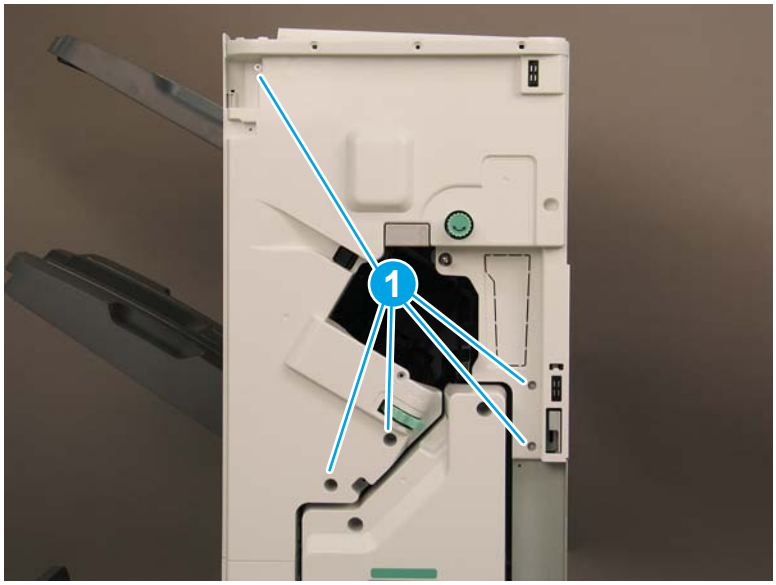
Figure 7-342 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

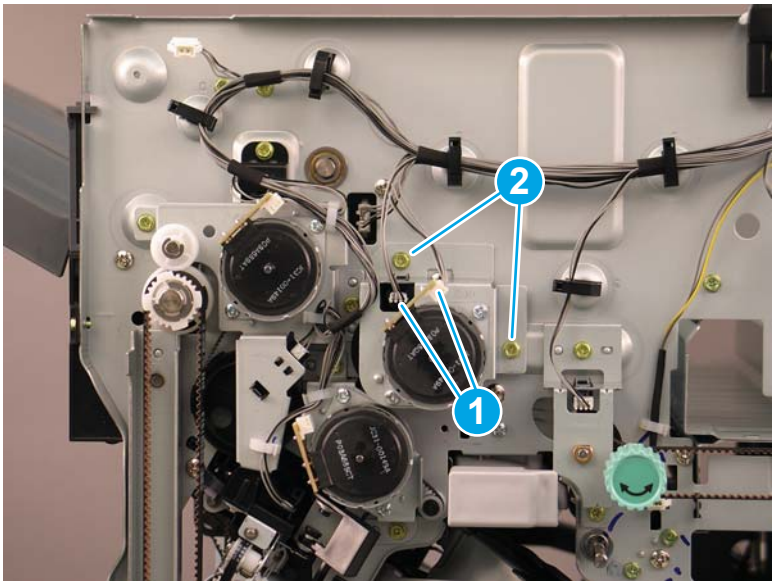
Figure 7-343 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 4: Remove the buffer motor, gear, and sensor

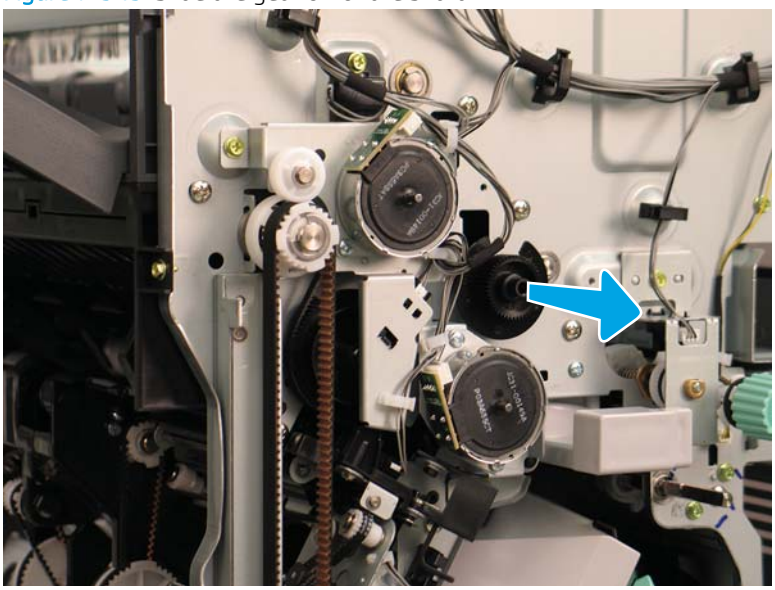
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-344 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws



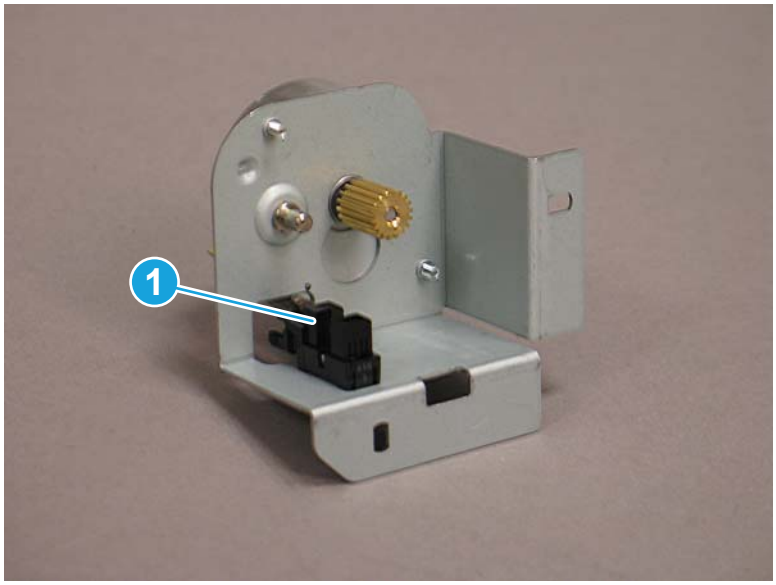
2. If you are replacing the gear, slide it off of the shaft.

Figure 7-345 Slide the gear off of the shaft



3. If you are replacing the sensor (callout 1), remove it from the motor housing.

Figure 7-346 Remove the sensor

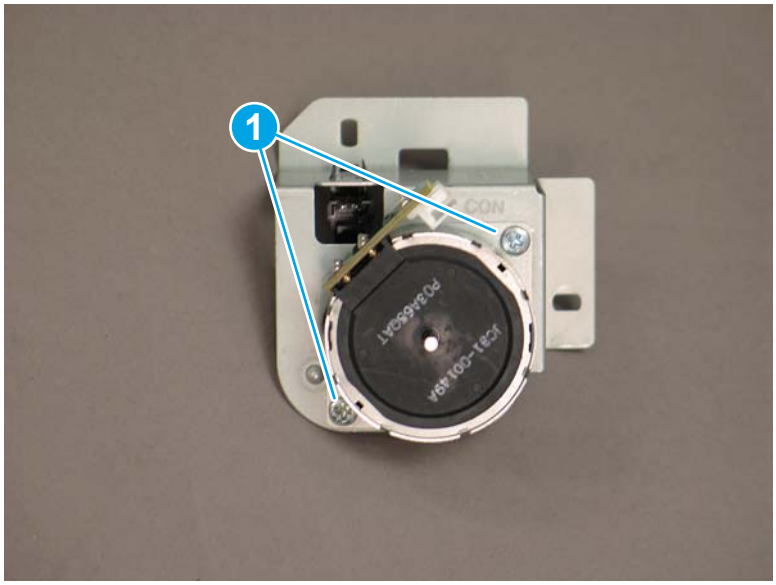


4. If you are replacing the motor, do the following:).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

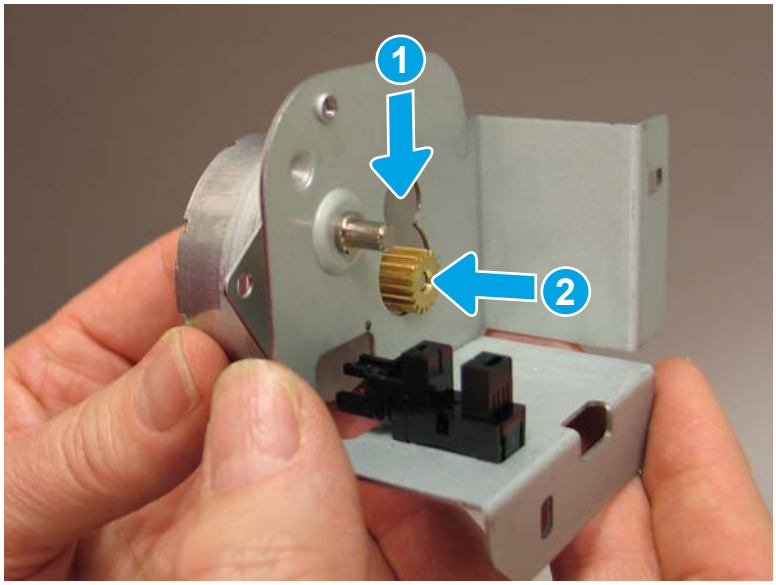
a. Remove two screws (callout 1)

Figure 7-347 Remove two screws



b. Lower the motor (callout 1) and then pull it away from the housing (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-348 Remove the buffer motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Front tamper motor (M6)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front tamper motor (M6) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

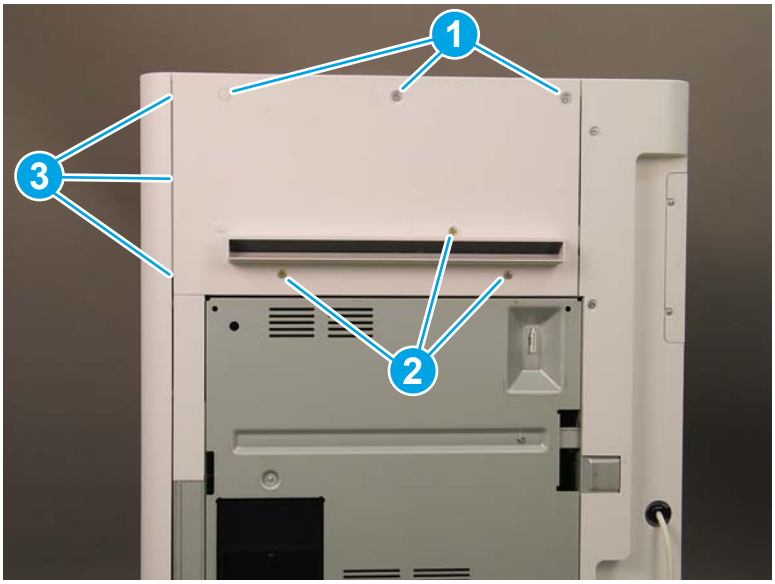
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

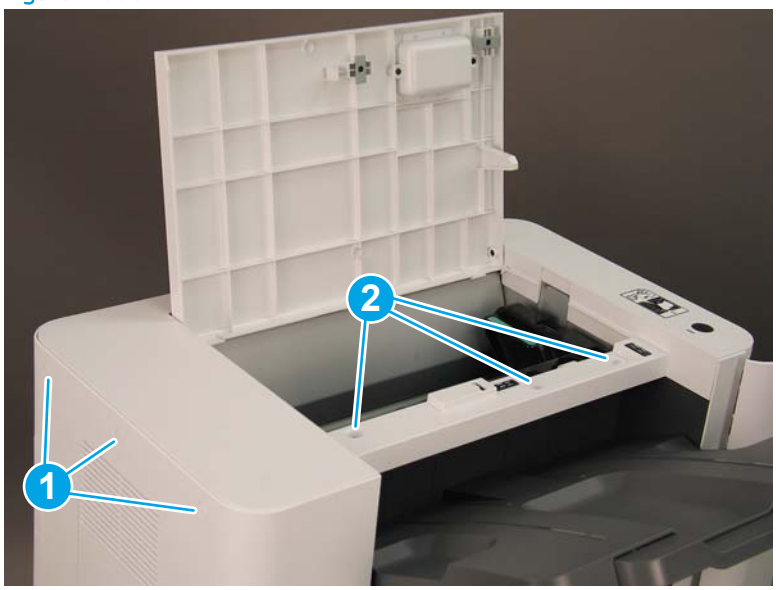
Figure 7-349 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

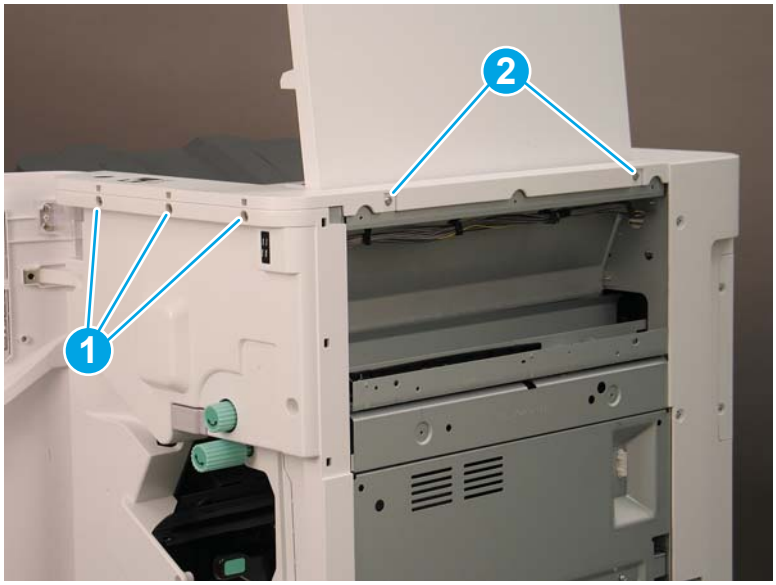
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-350 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

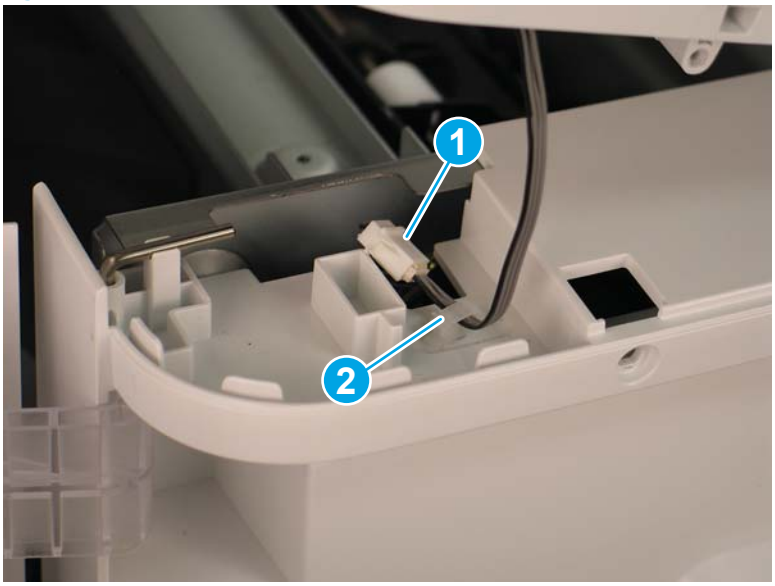
Figure 7-351 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-352 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

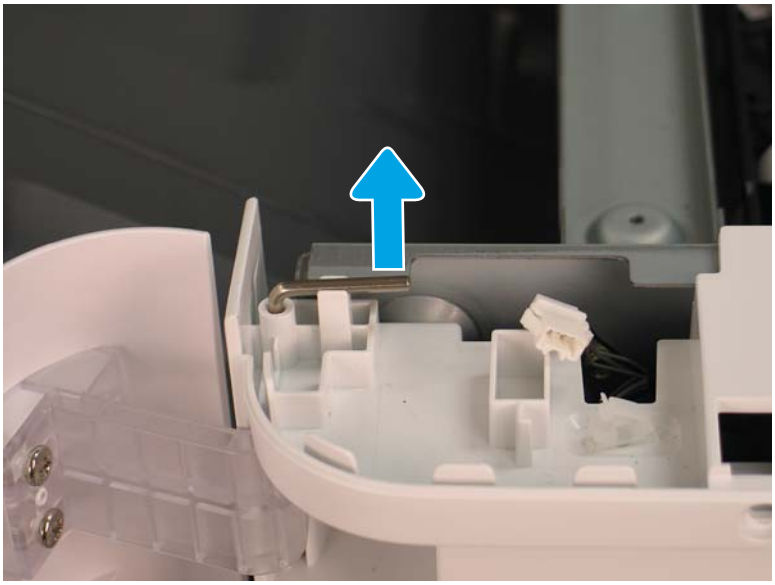


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

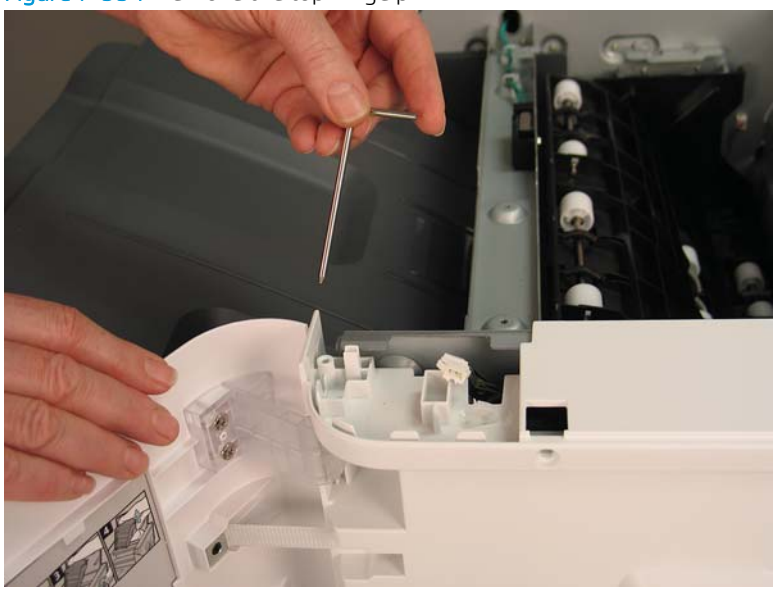
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-353 Lift the top hinge pin



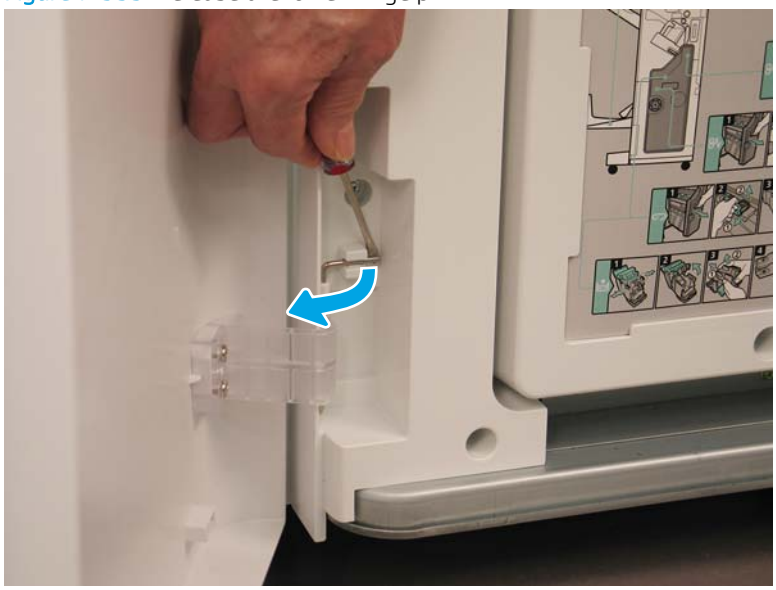
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-354 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-355 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

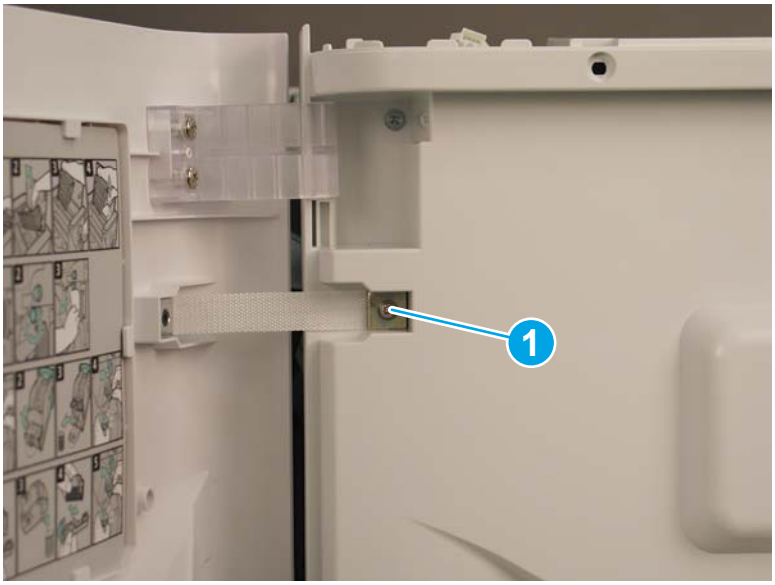
Figure 7-356 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

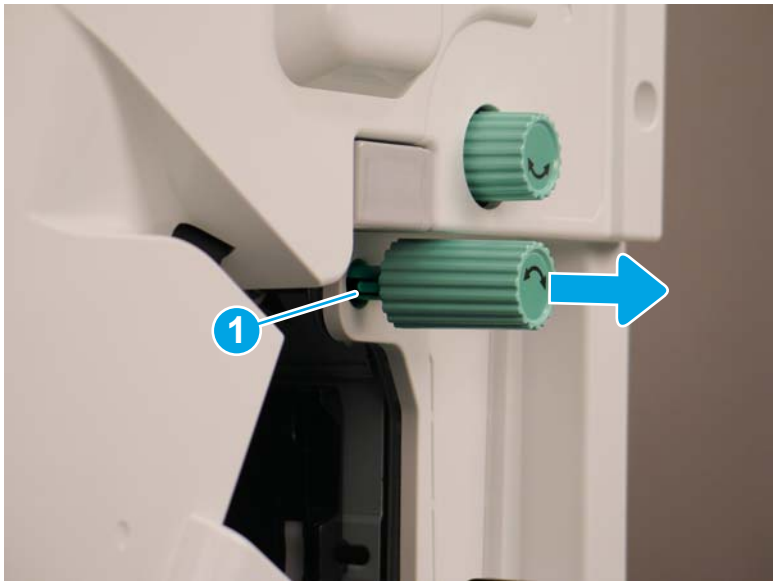
Figure 7-357 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

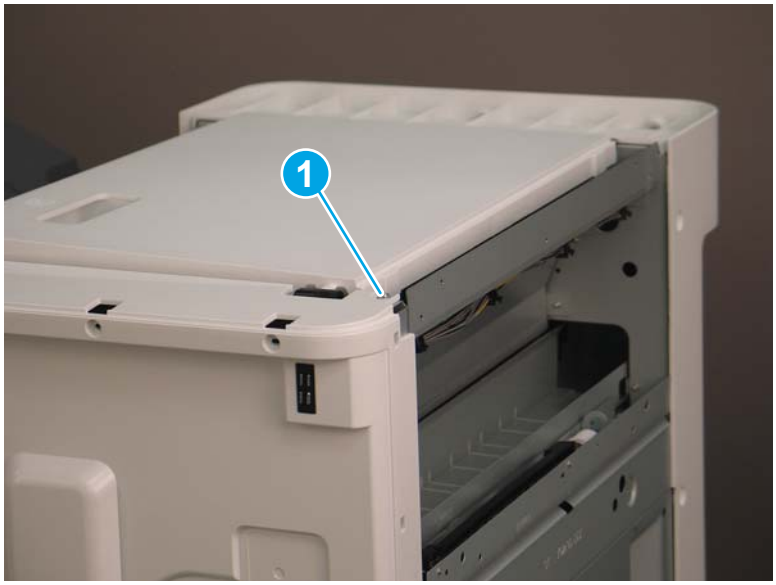
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-358 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

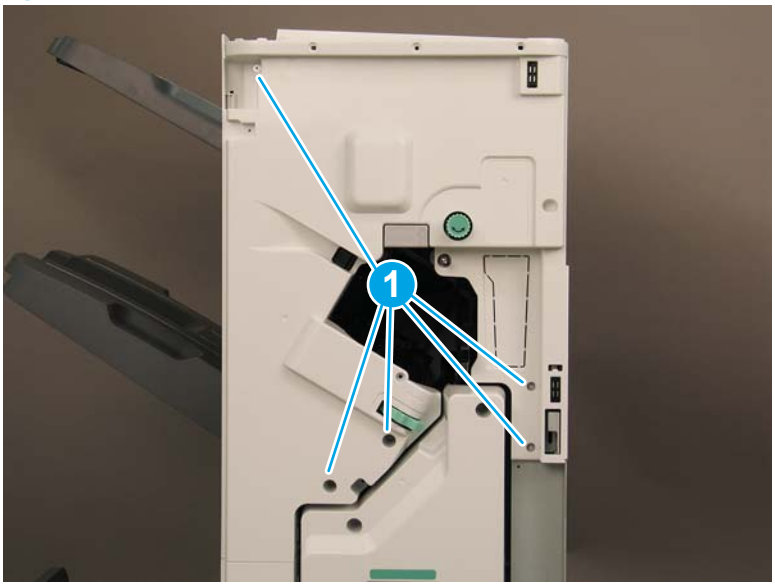
Figure 7-359 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

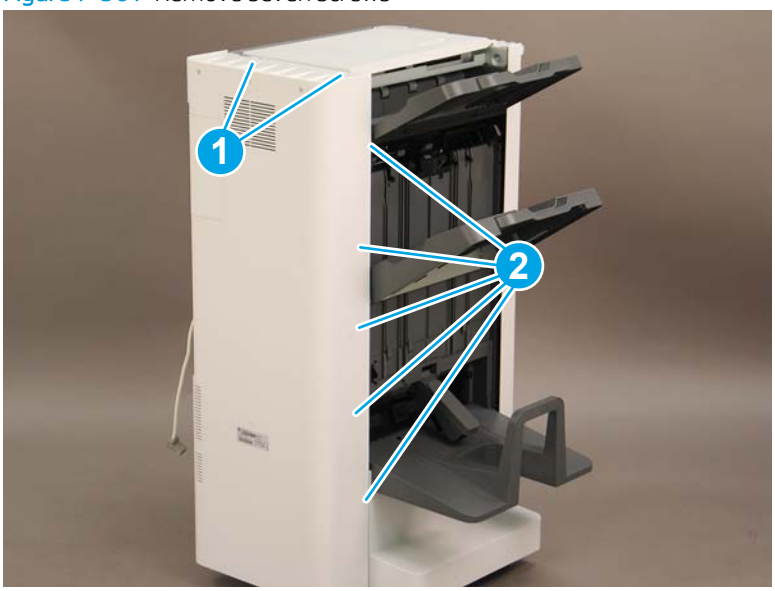
Figure 7-360 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-361 Remove seven screws

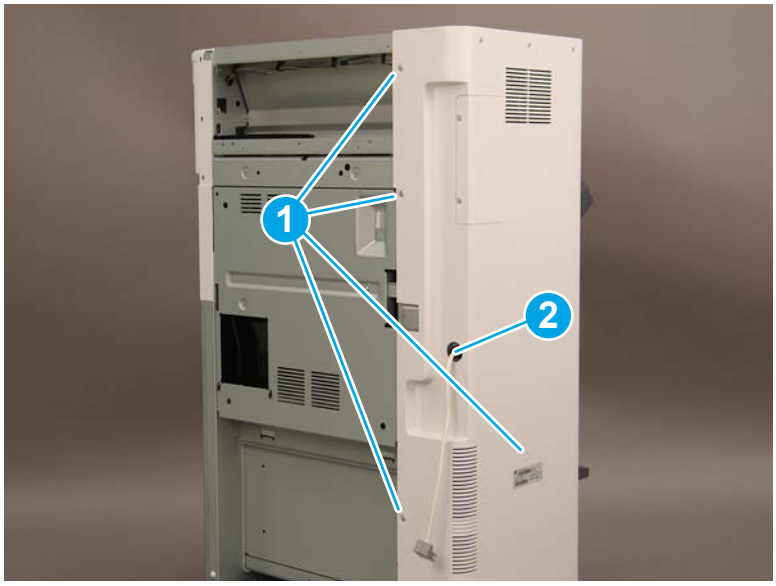


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

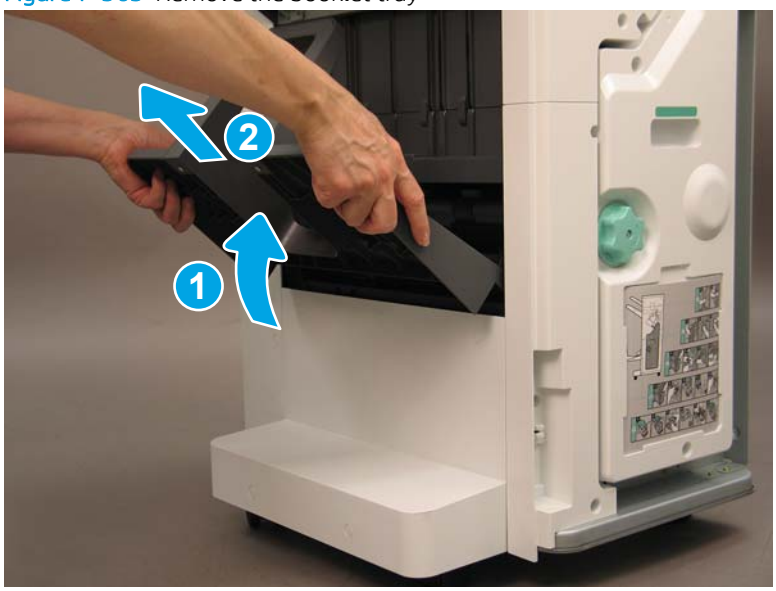
Figure 7-362 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-363 Remove the booklet tray



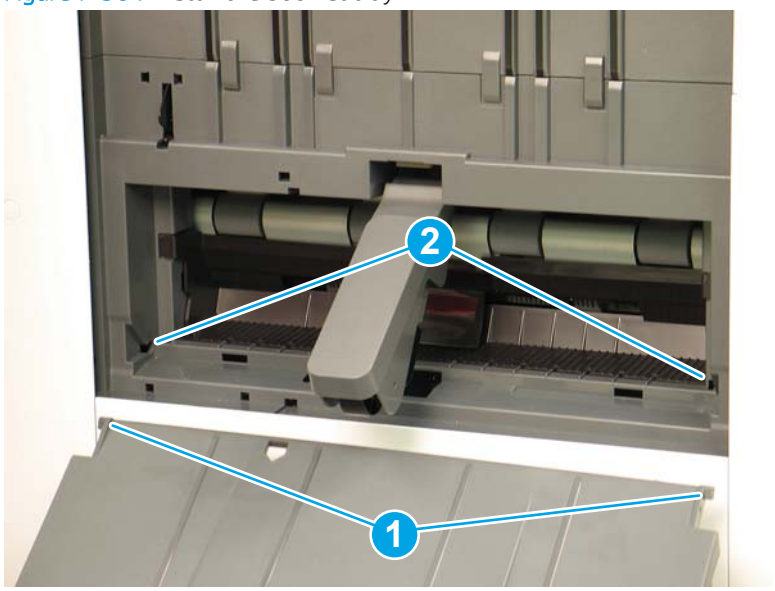
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

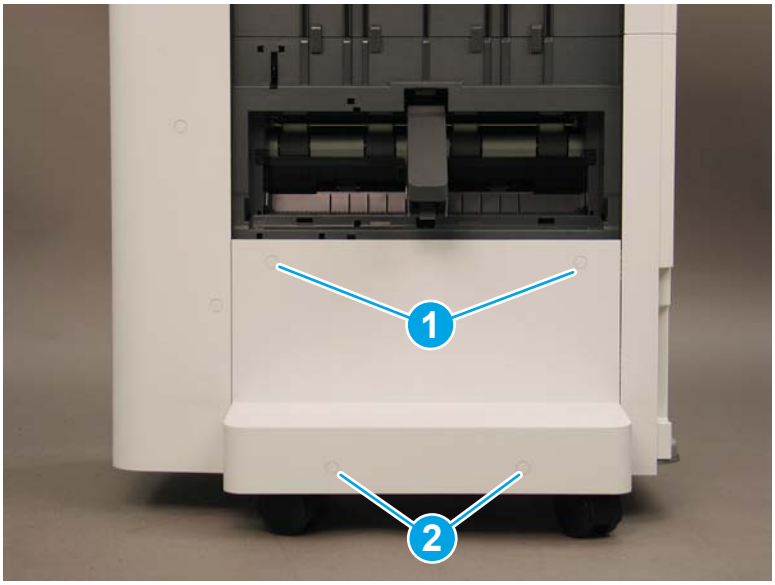
Figure 7-364 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-365 Remove four screws

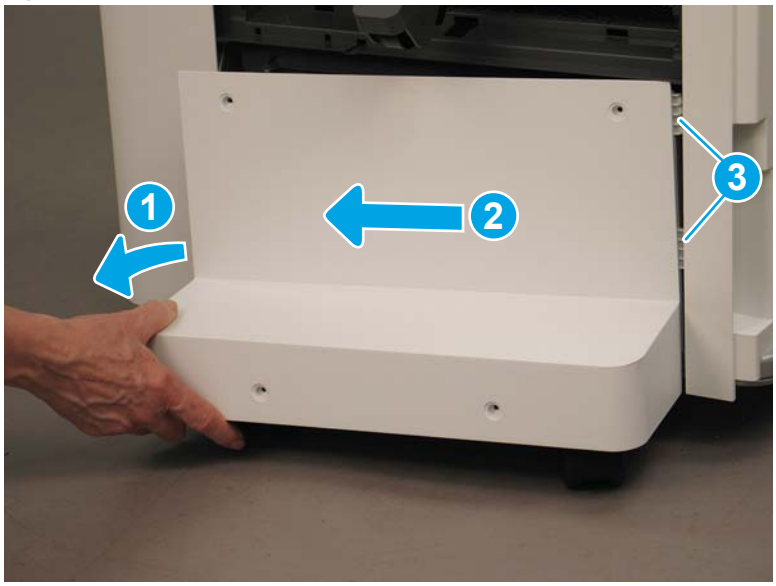


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-366 Remove the caster cover

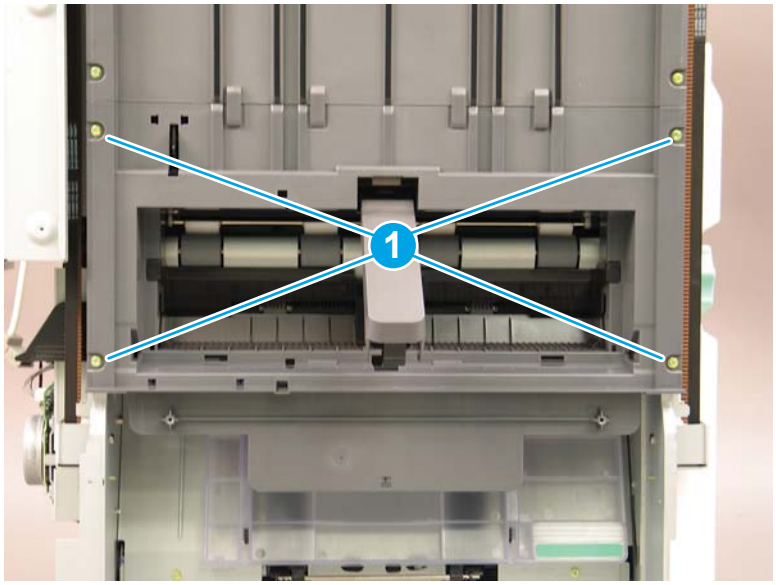


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-367 Remove four screws

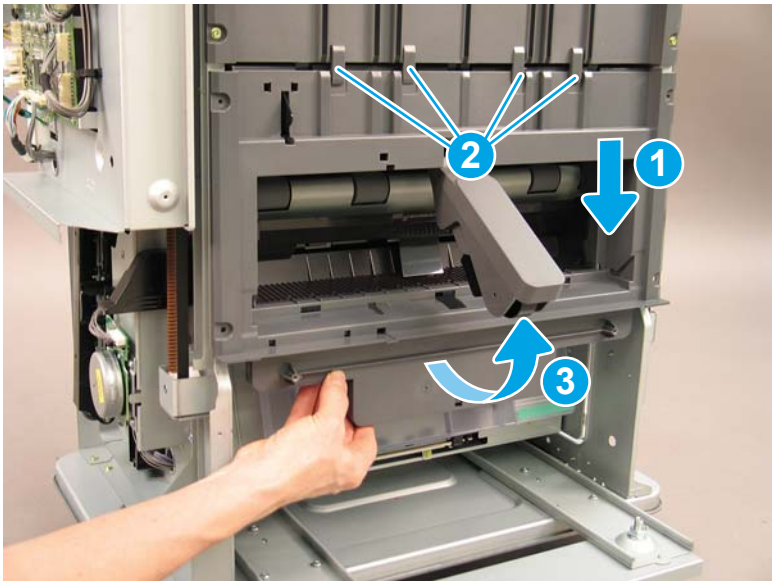


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

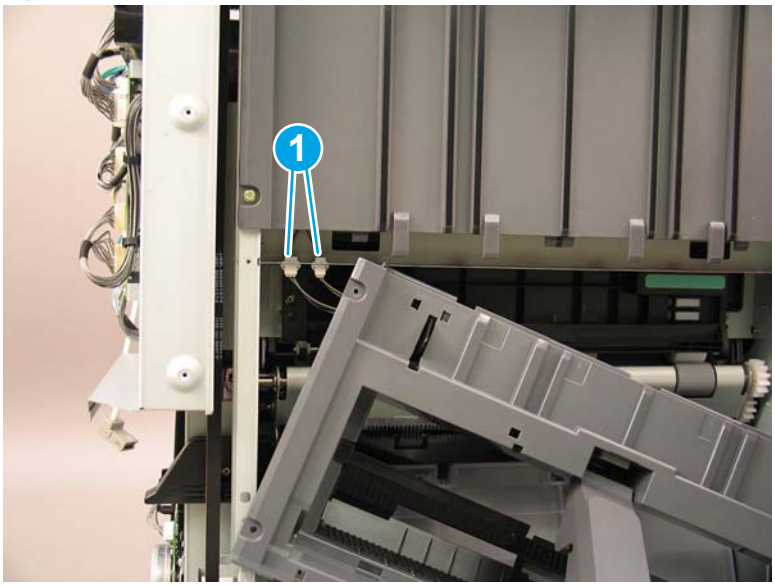
Figure 7-368 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

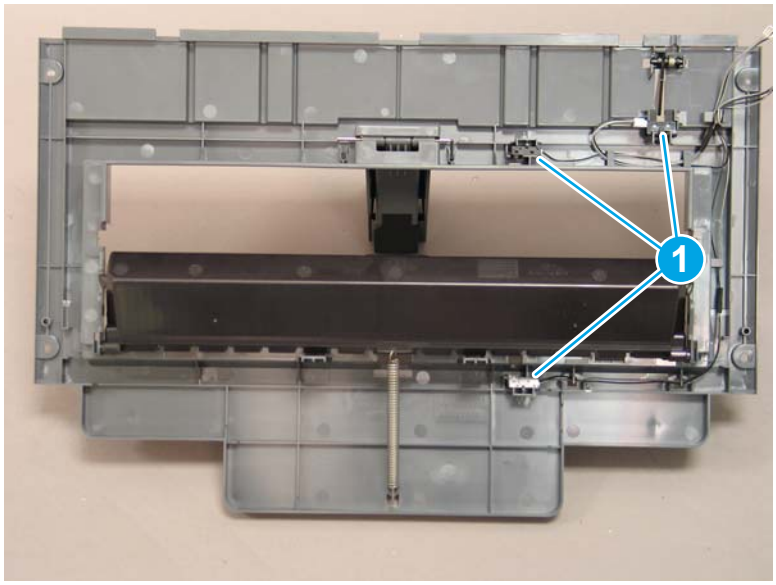
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-369 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

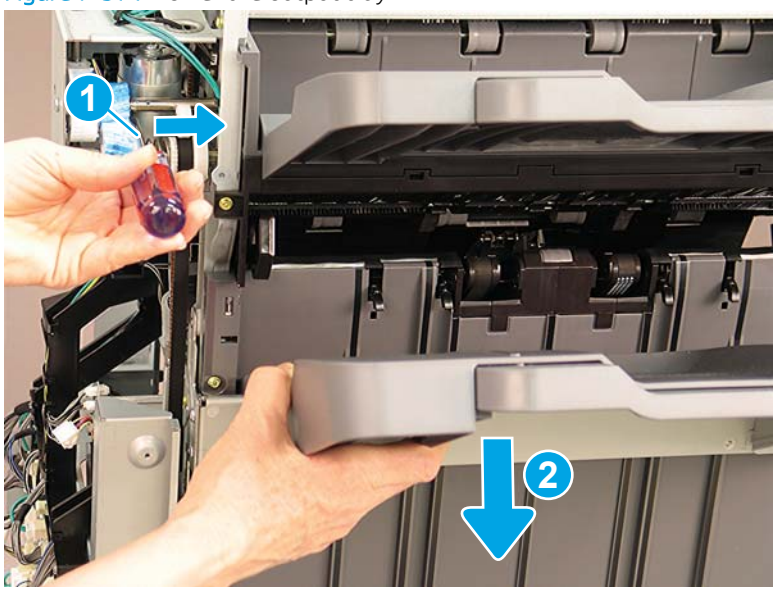
Figure 7-370 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

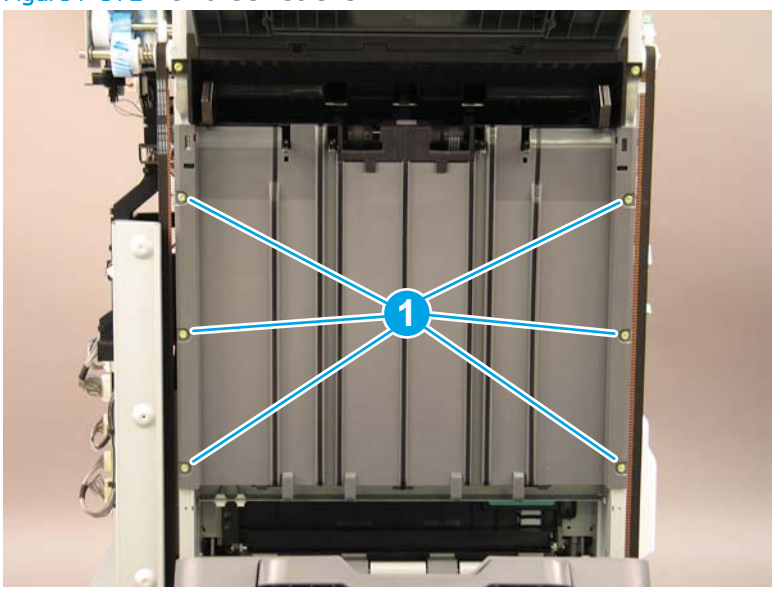
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-371 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-372 Remove six screws

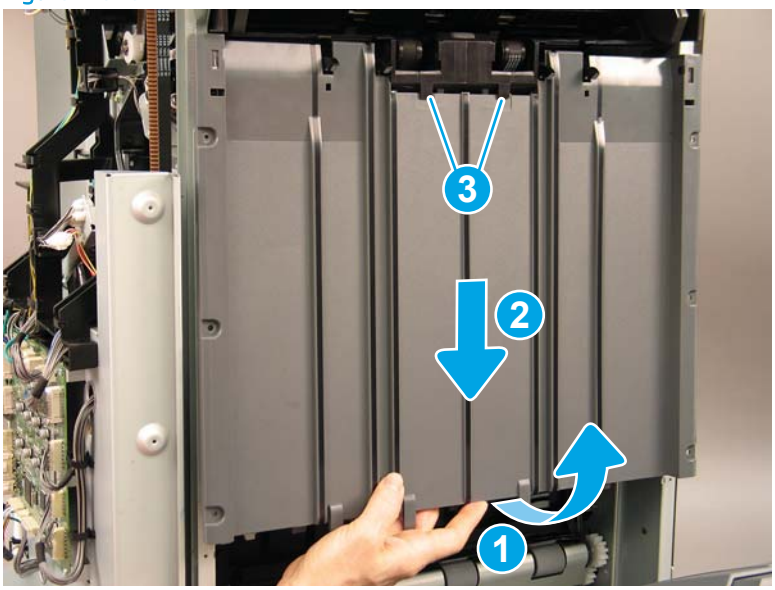


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

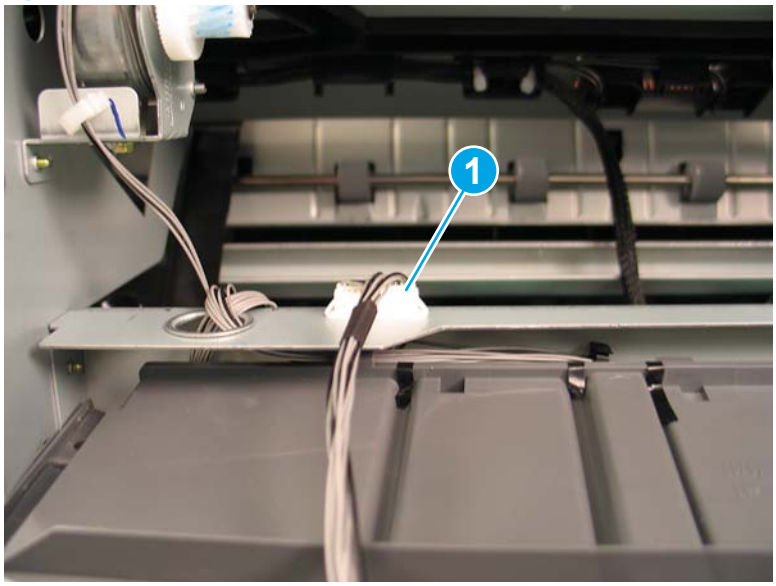
Figure 7-373 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

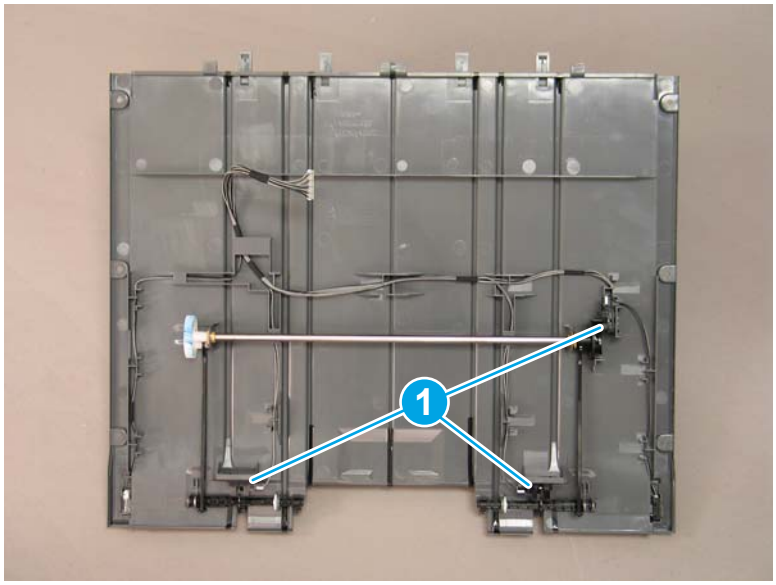
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-374 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

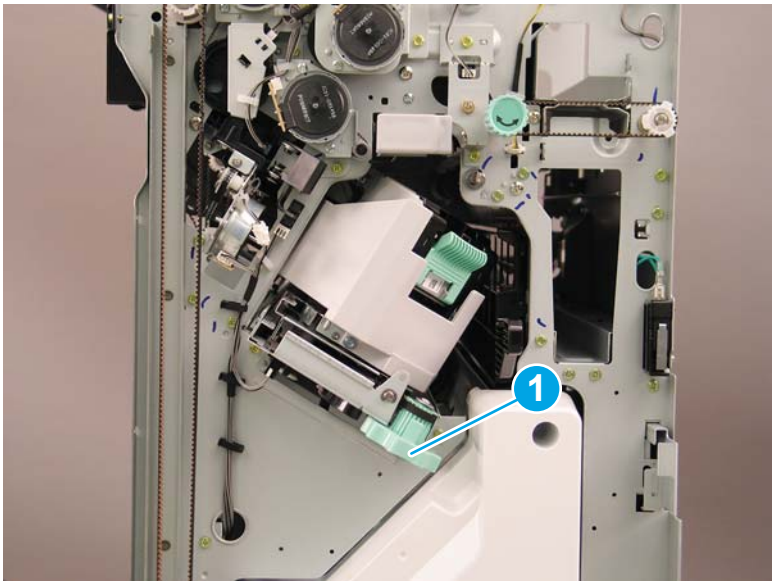
Figure 7-375 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

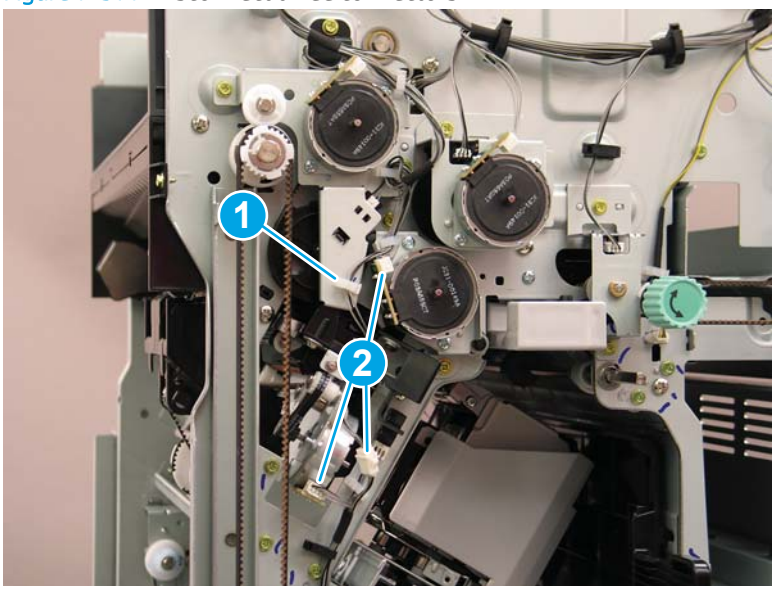
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-376 Move the staple unit to the center



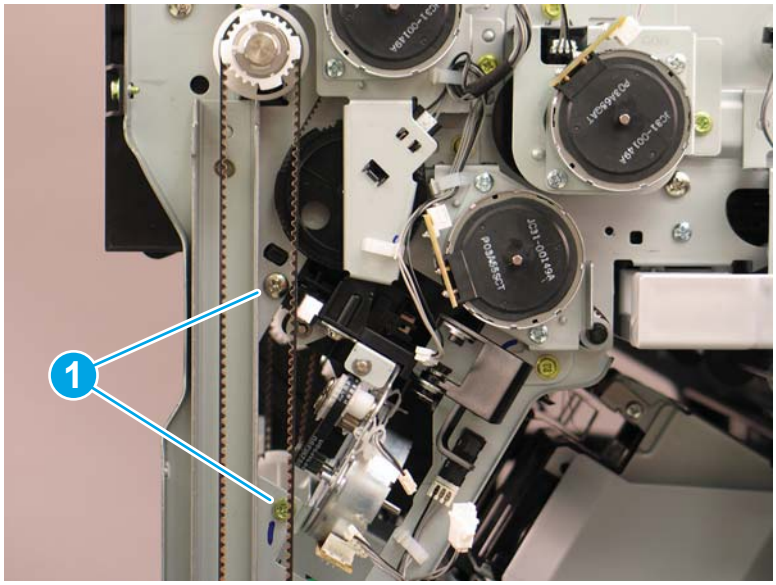
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-377 Disconnect three connectors



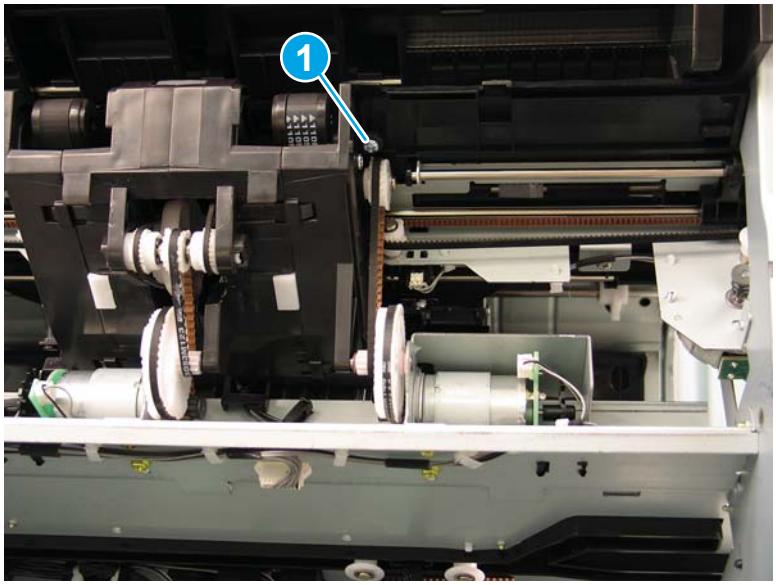
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-378 Remove two screws



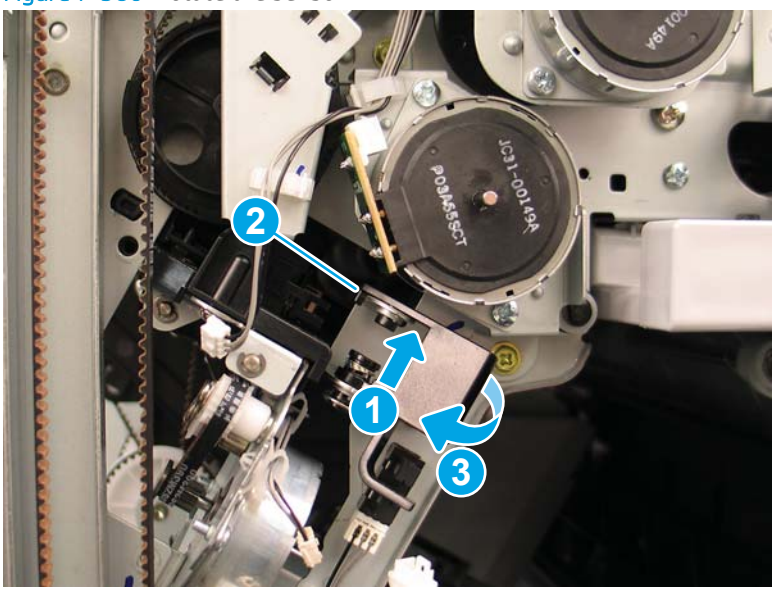
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-379 Remove one screw



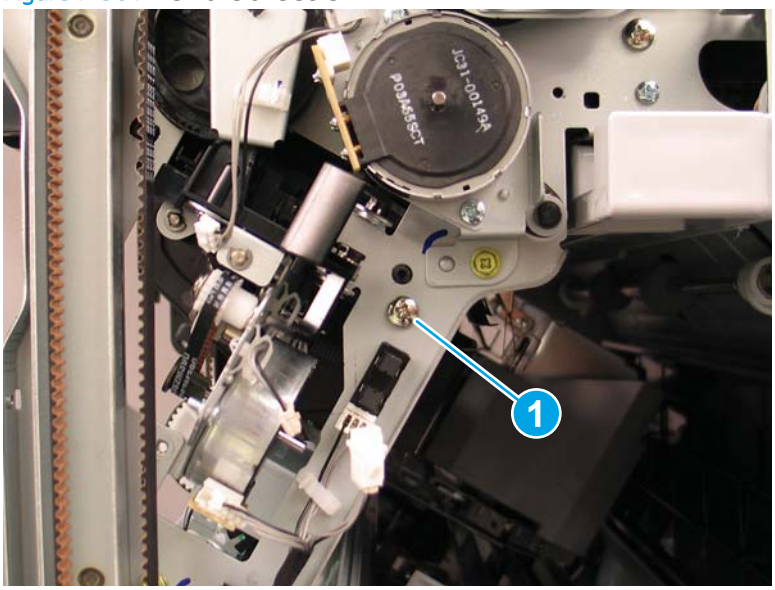
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-380 Rotate the sensor



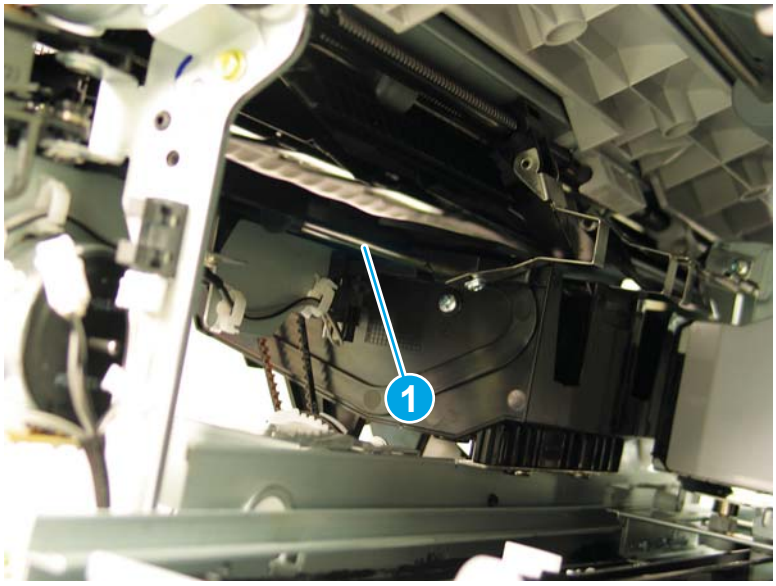
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-381 Remove one screw



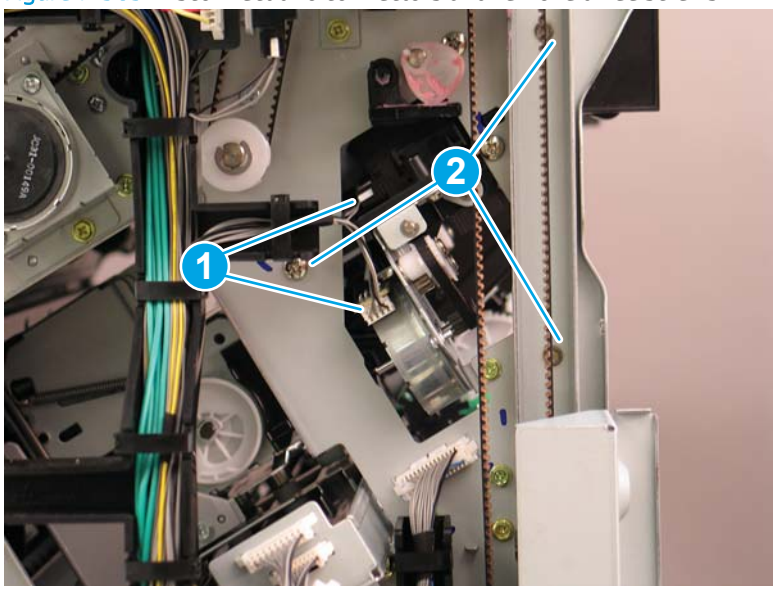
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-382 Remove the front tamper shaft



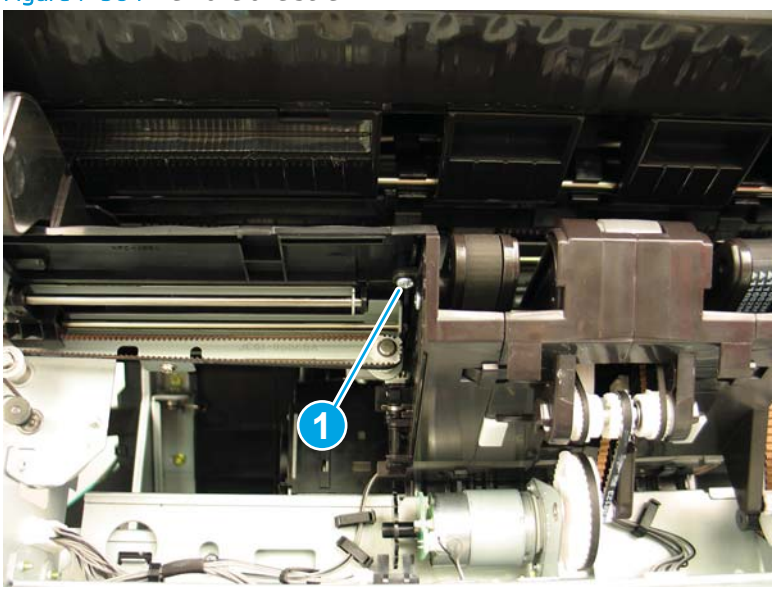
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-383 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



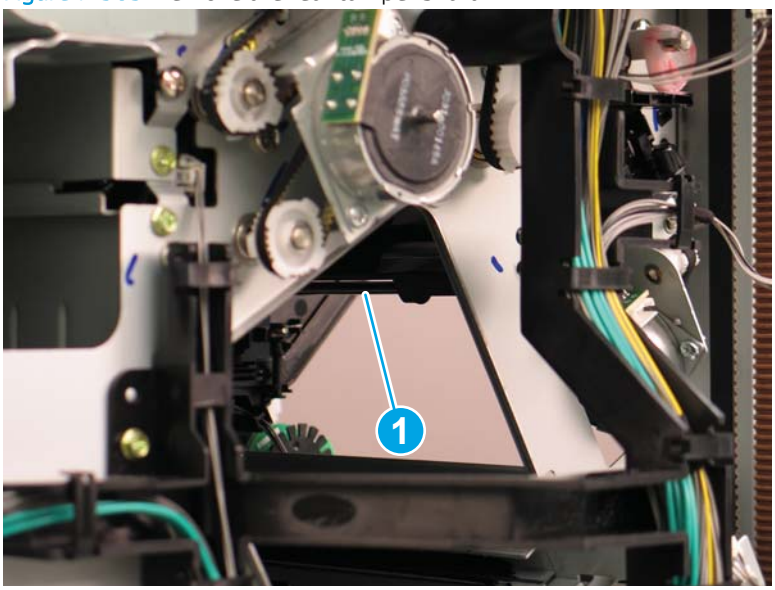
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-384 Remove one screw



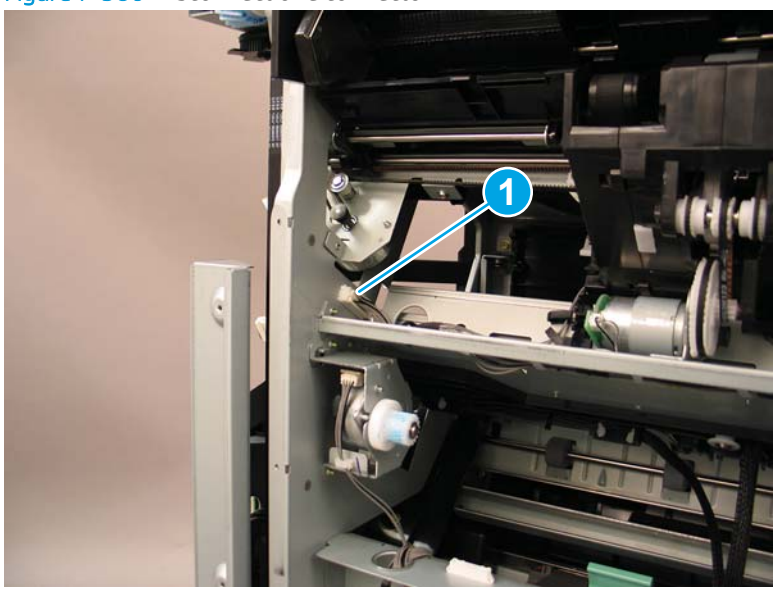
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-385 Remove the rear tamper shaft



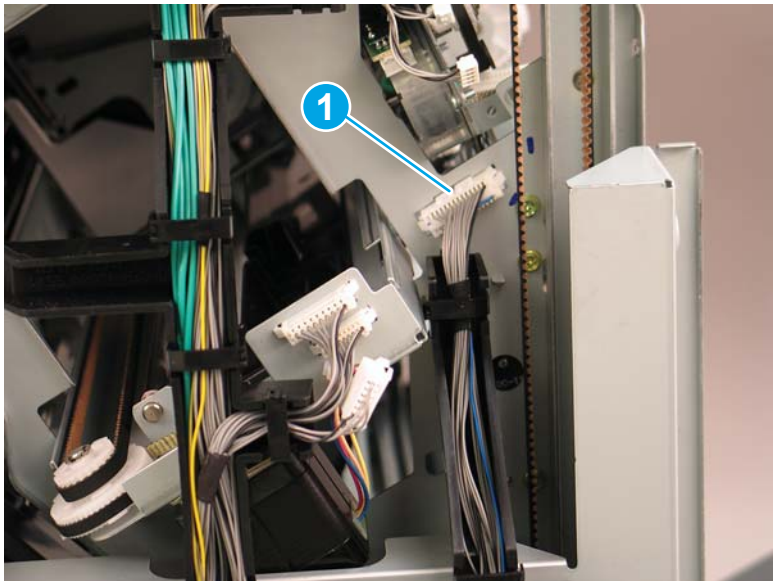
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-386 Disconnect one connector



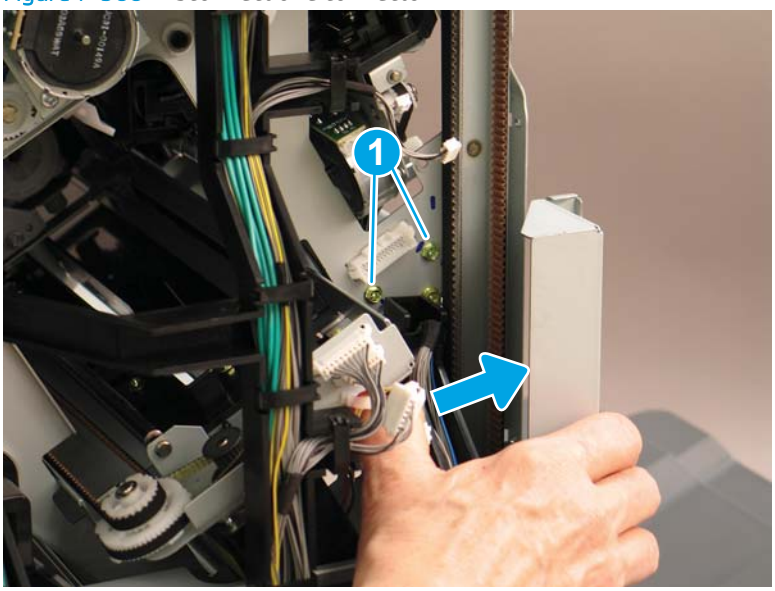
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-387 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-388 Disconnect one connector



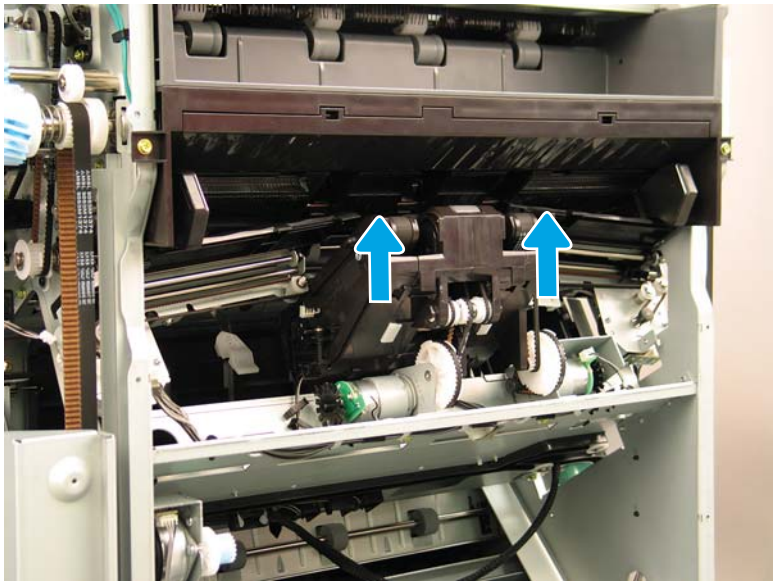
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-389 Remove two screws



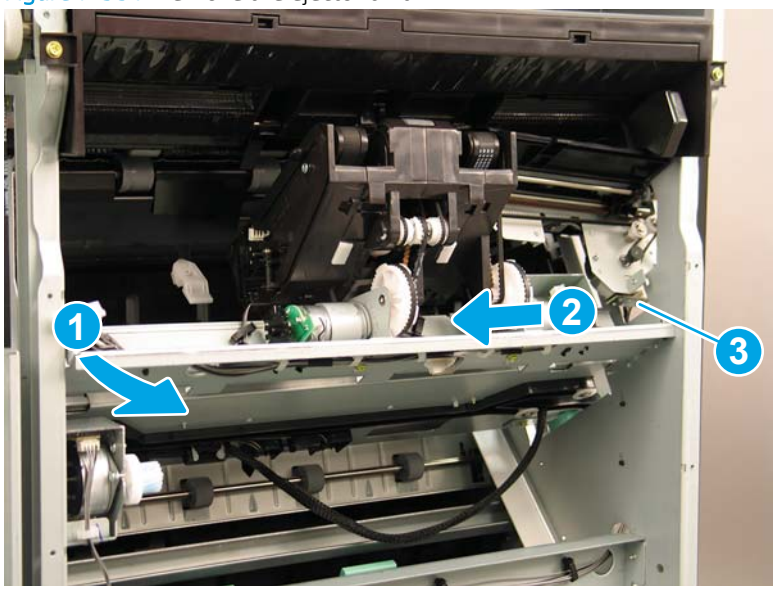
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-390 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-391 Remove the ejector unit



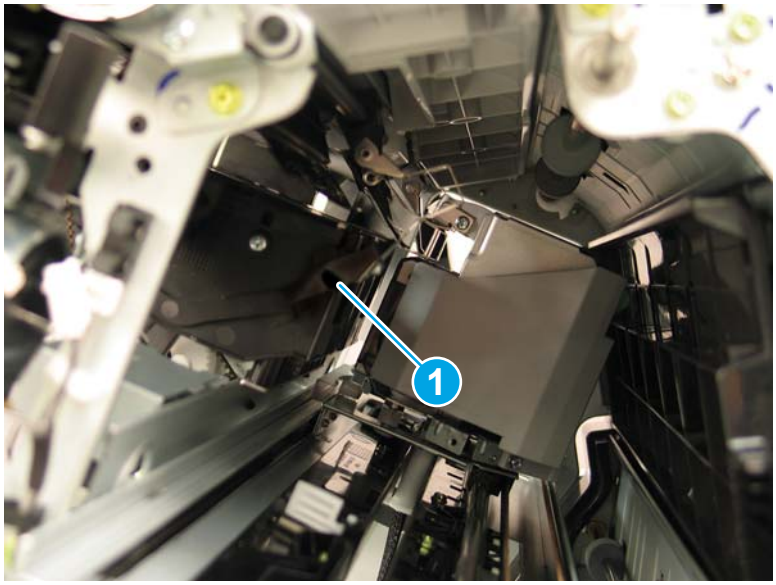
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

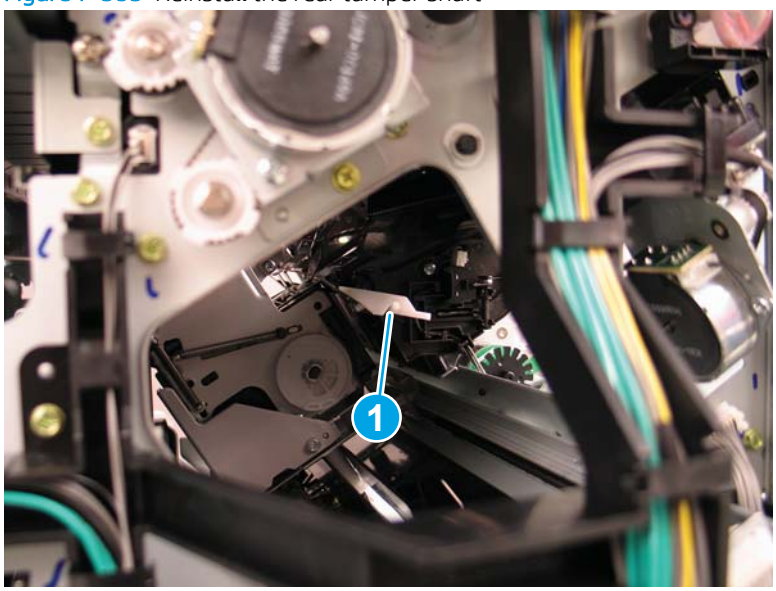
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-392 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-393 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

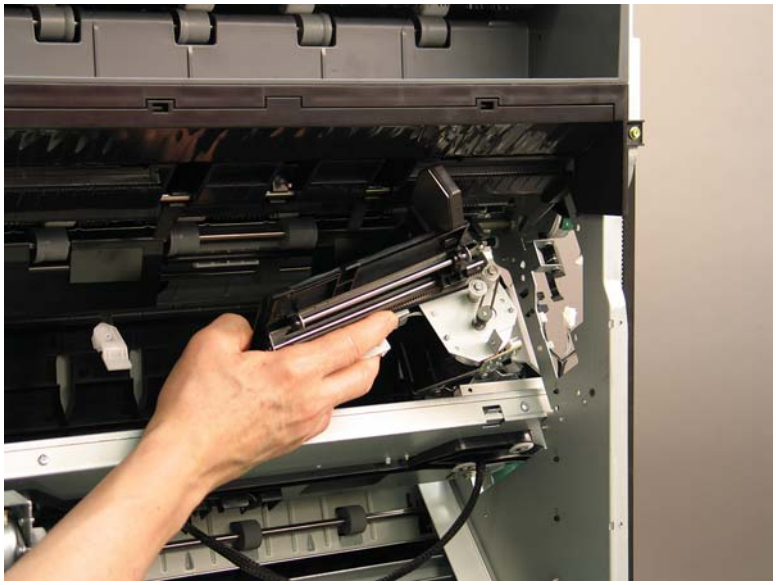


Step 11: Remove the front tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the front tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

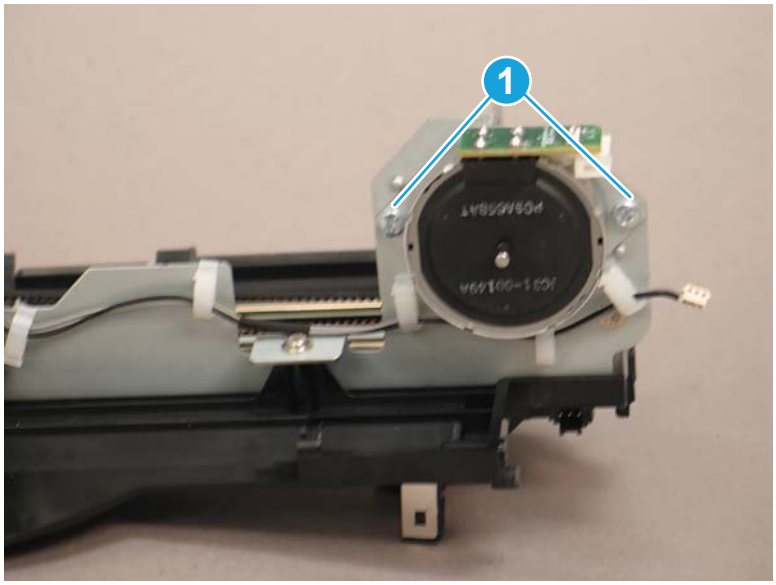
Figure 7-394 Remove the front tamper



Step 12: Remove the front tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-395 Remove two screws

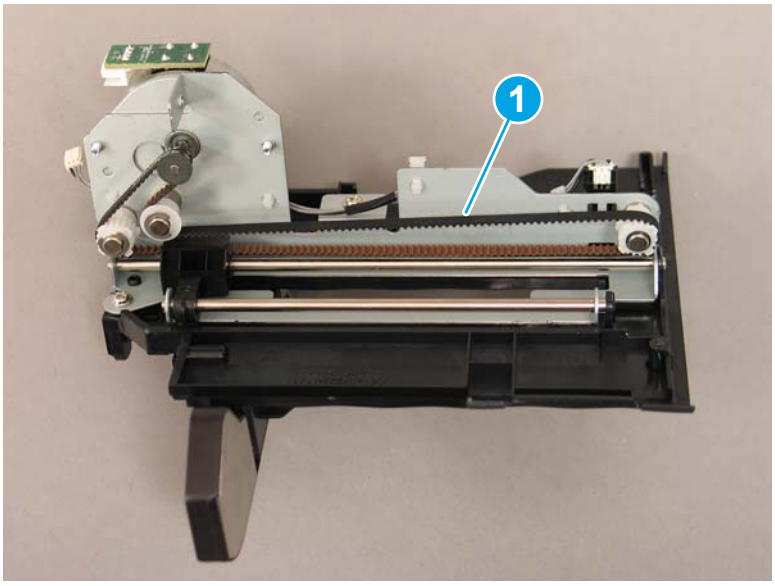


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the front tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-396 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Rear tamper motor (M7)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)
- Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)
- Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)
- Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear tamper motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear tamper motor (M7) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

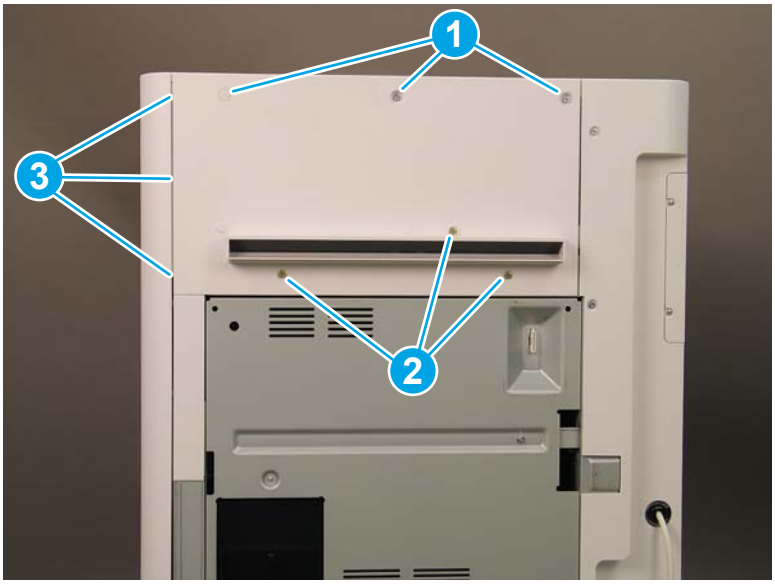
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

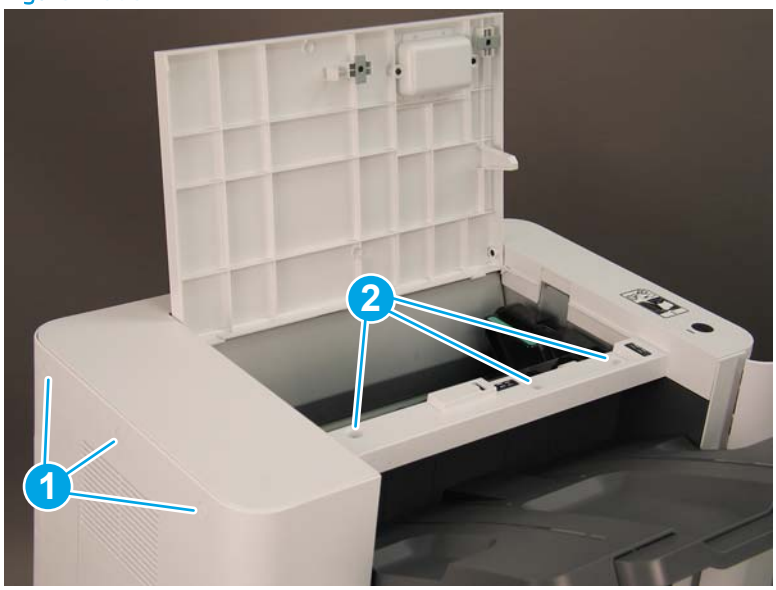
Figure 7-397 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

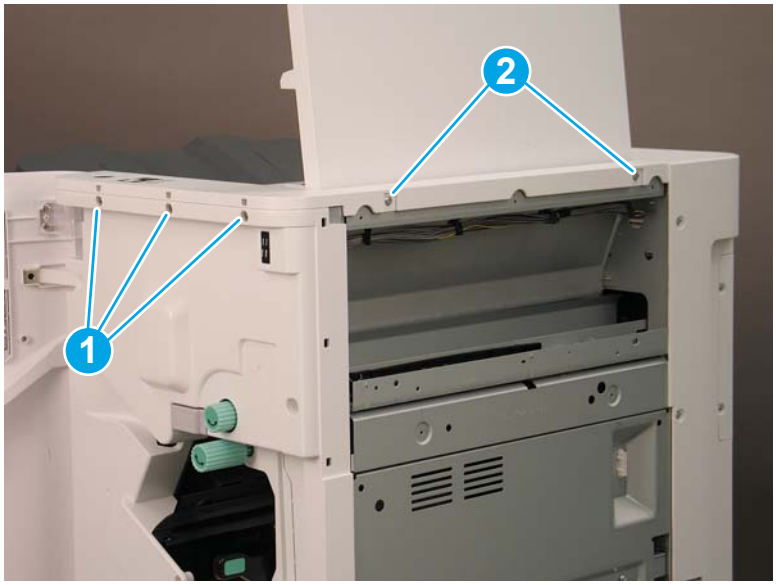
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-398 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

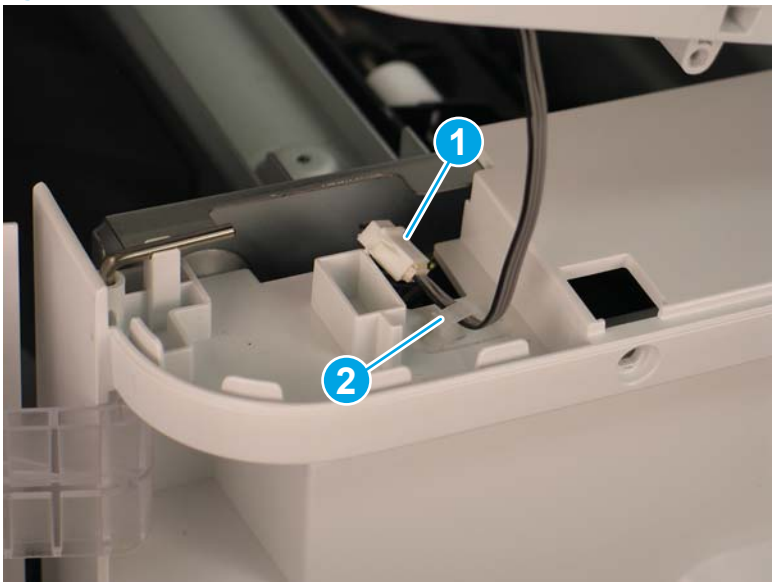
Figure 7-399 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-400 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

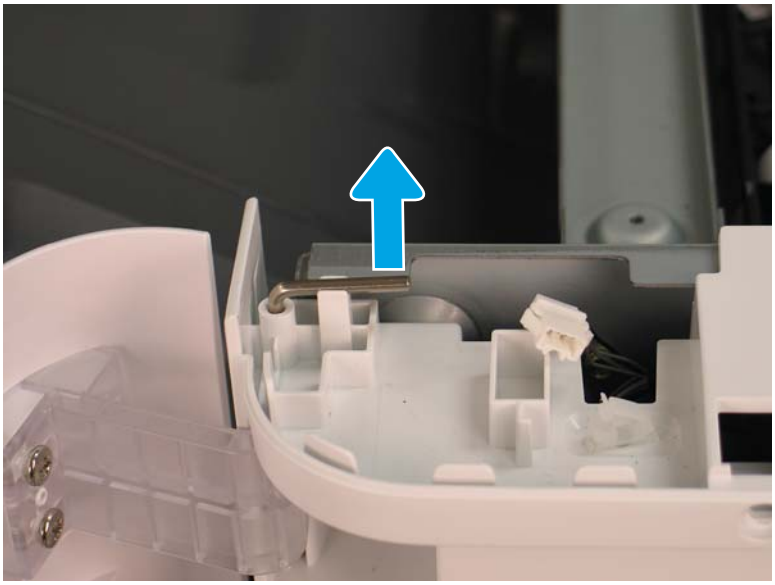


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

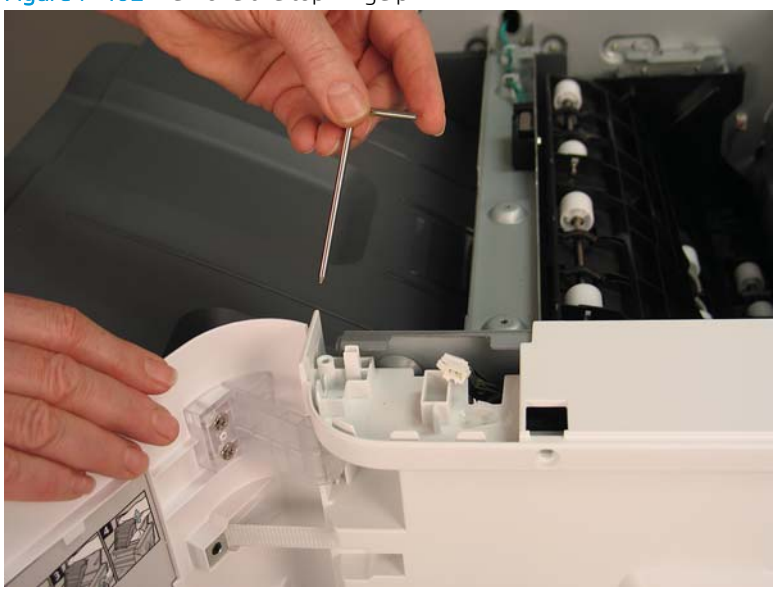
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-401 Lift the top hinge pin



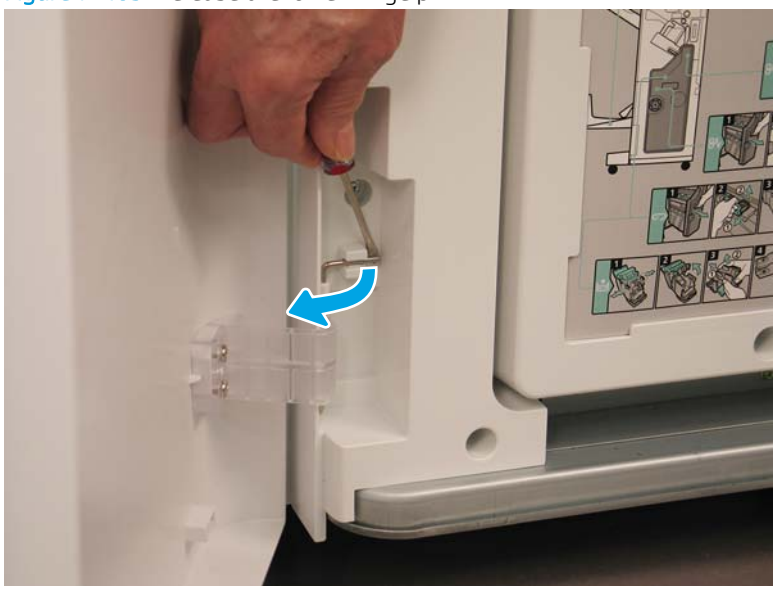
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-402 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-403 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

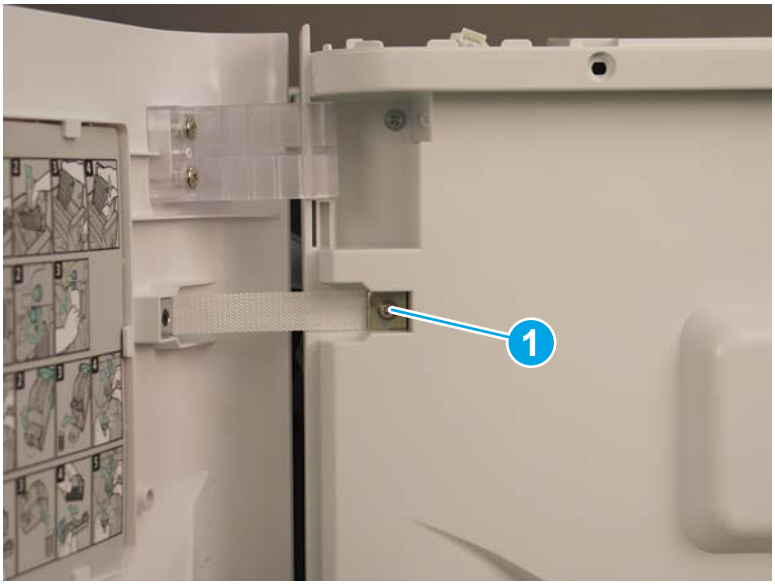
Figure 7-404 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

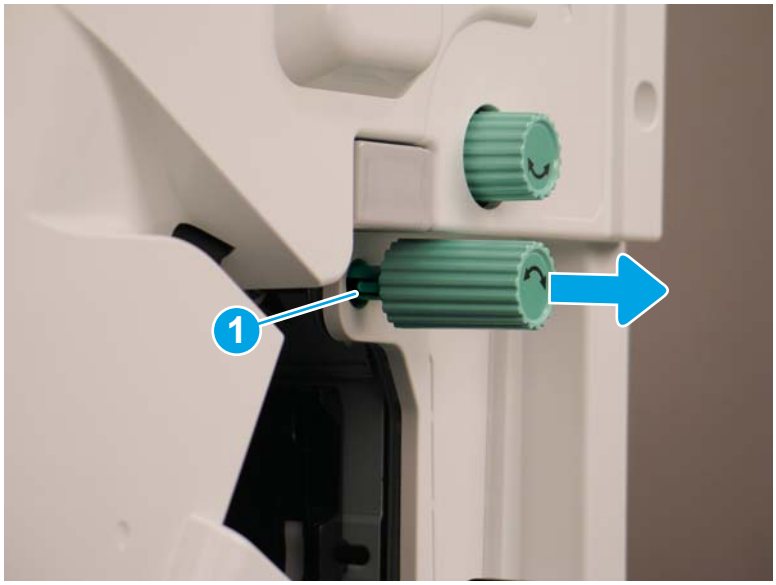
Figure 7-405 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

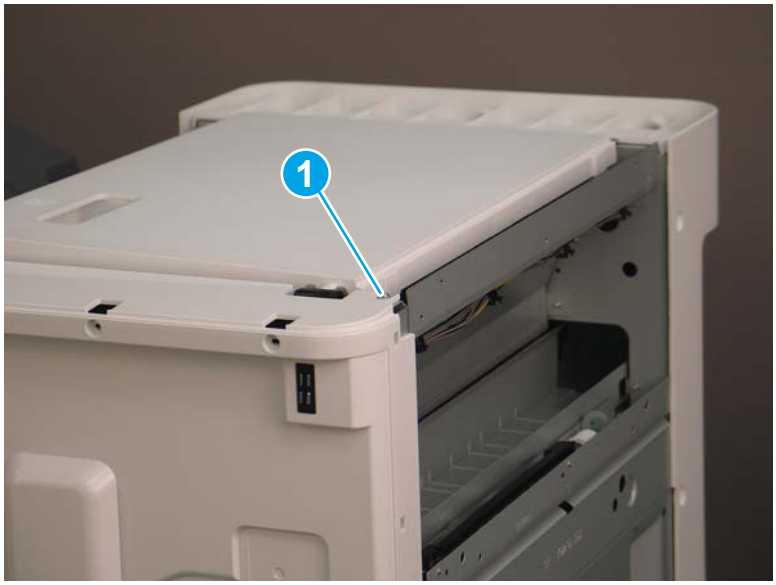
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-406 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

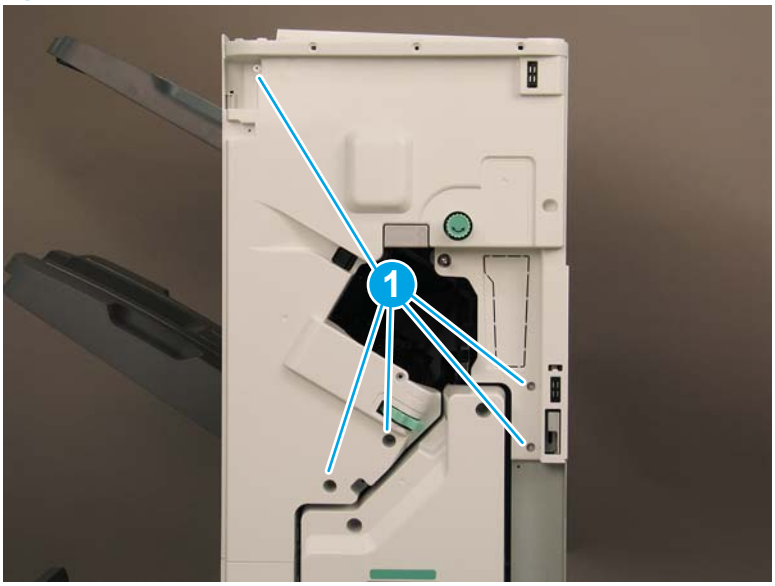
Figure 7-407 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

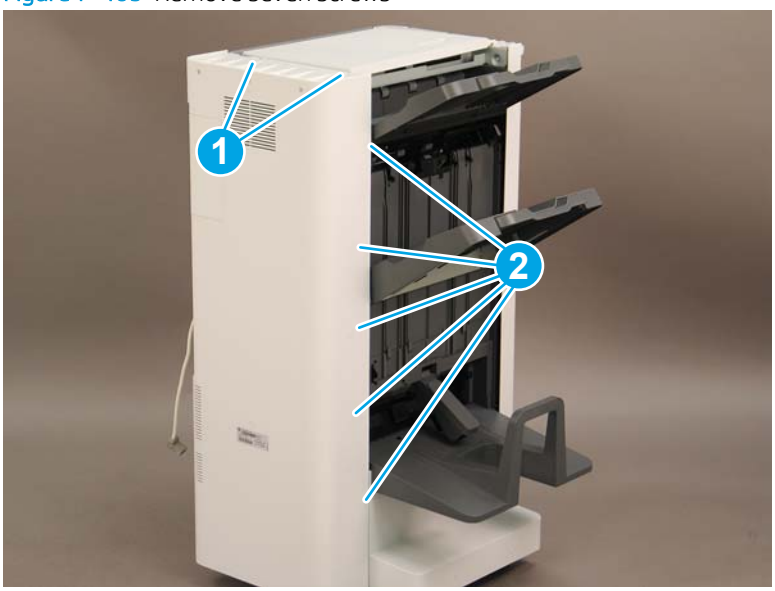
Figure 7-408 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-409 Remove seven screws

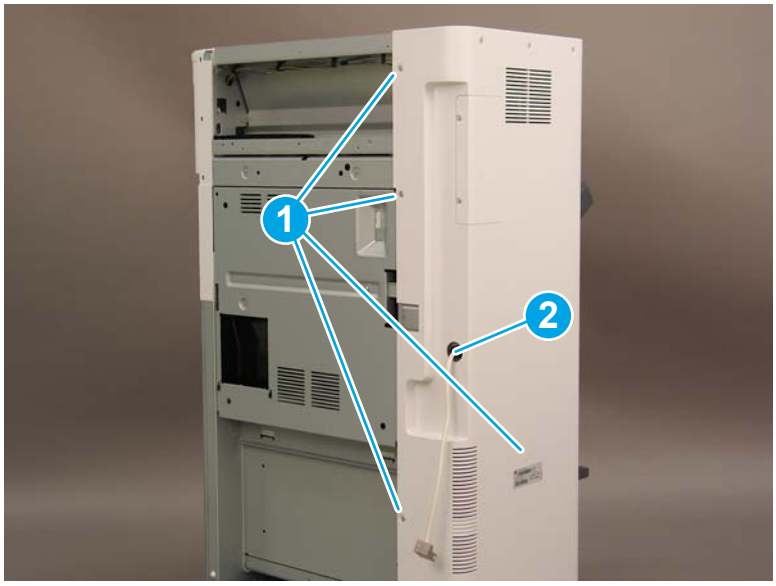


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

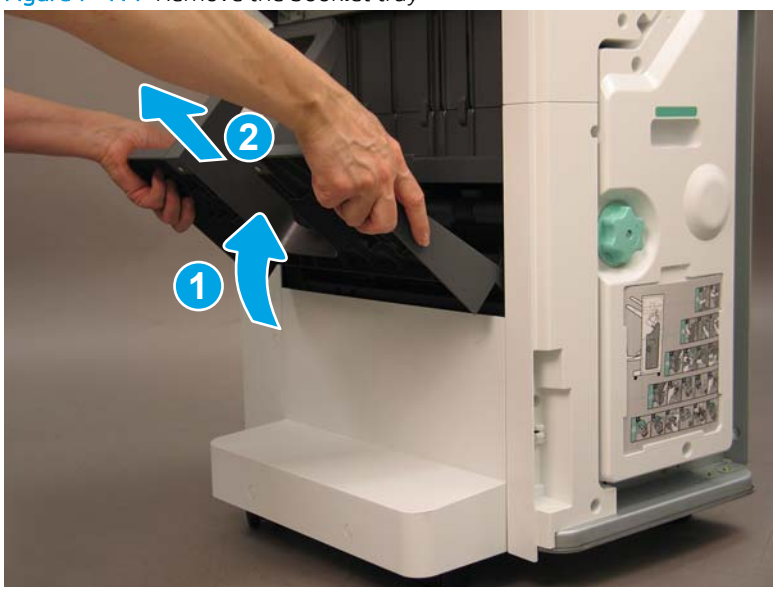
Figure 7-410 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-411 Remove the booklet tray



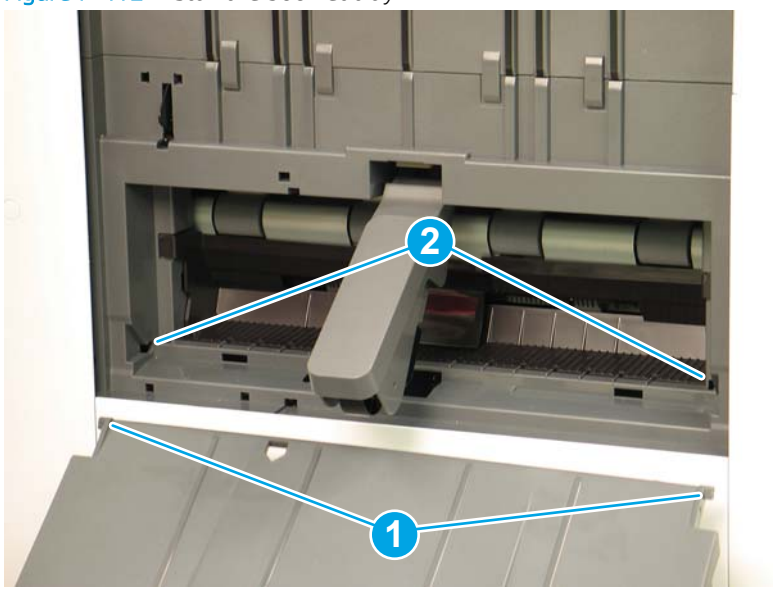
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

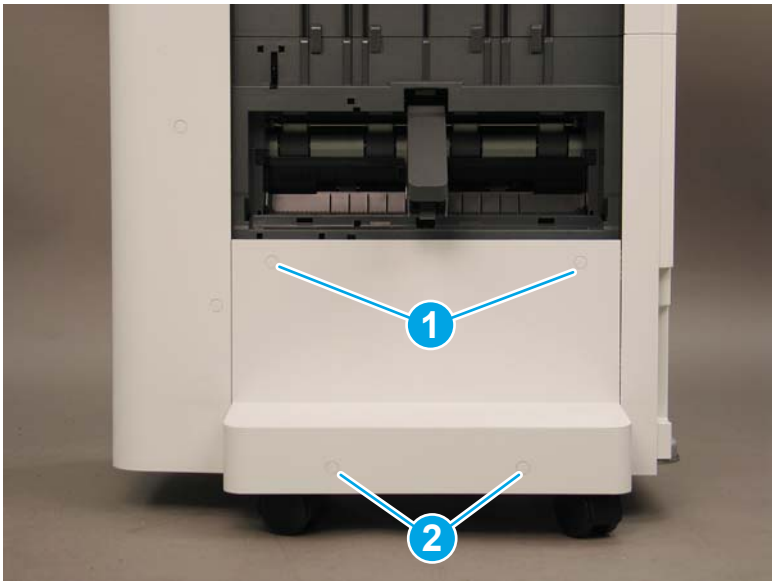
Figure 7-412 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-413 Remove four screws

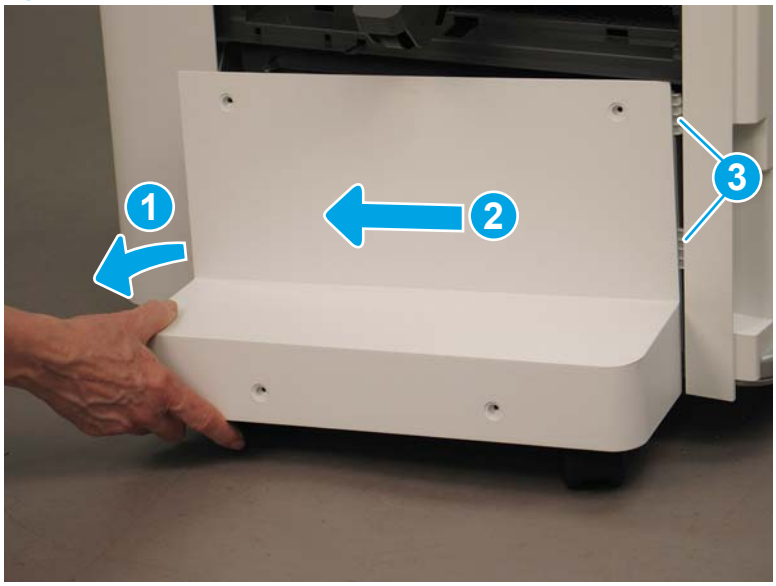


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-414 Remove the caster cover

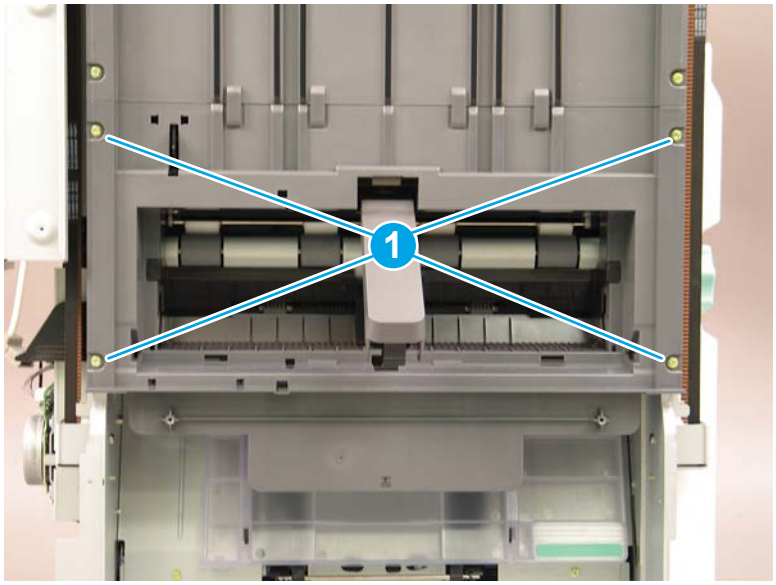


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-415 Remove four screws

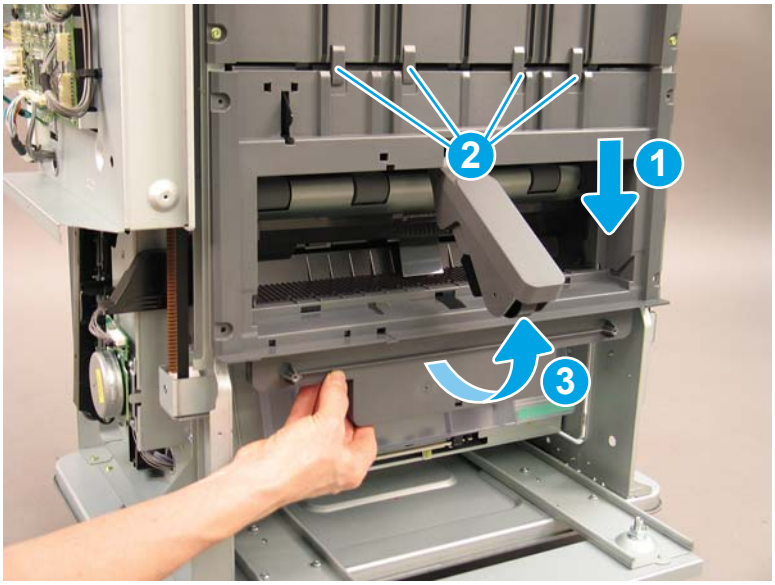


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

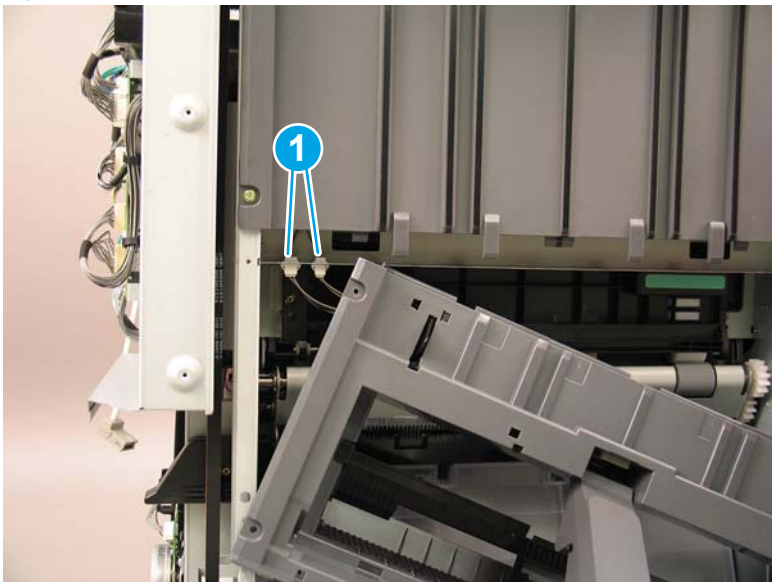
Figure 7-416 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

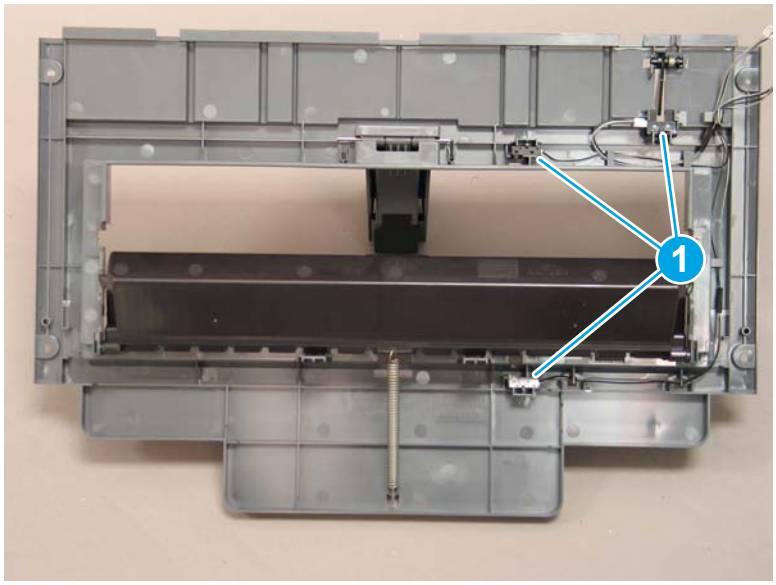
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-417 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

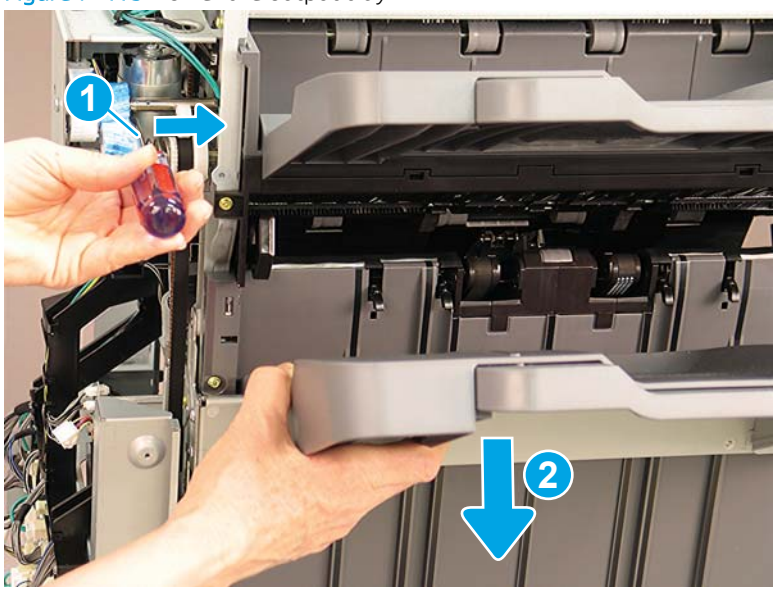
Figure 7-418 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

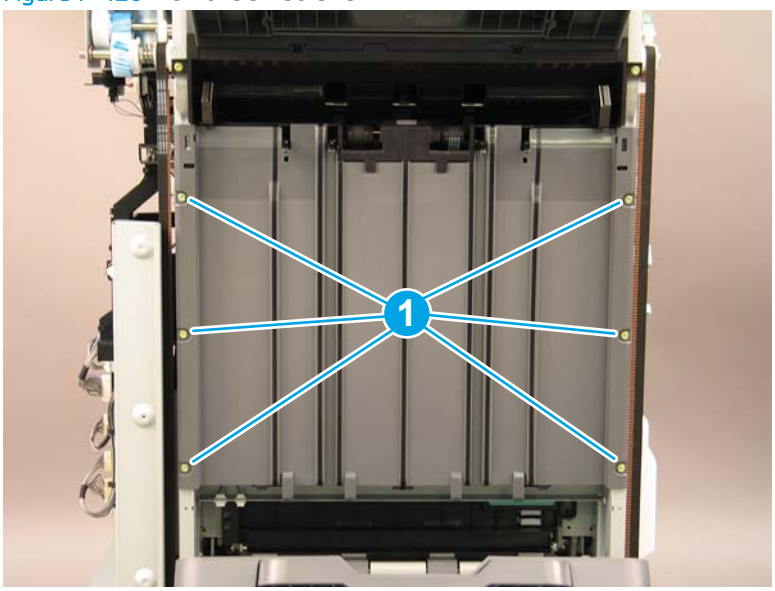
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-419 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-420 Remove six screws

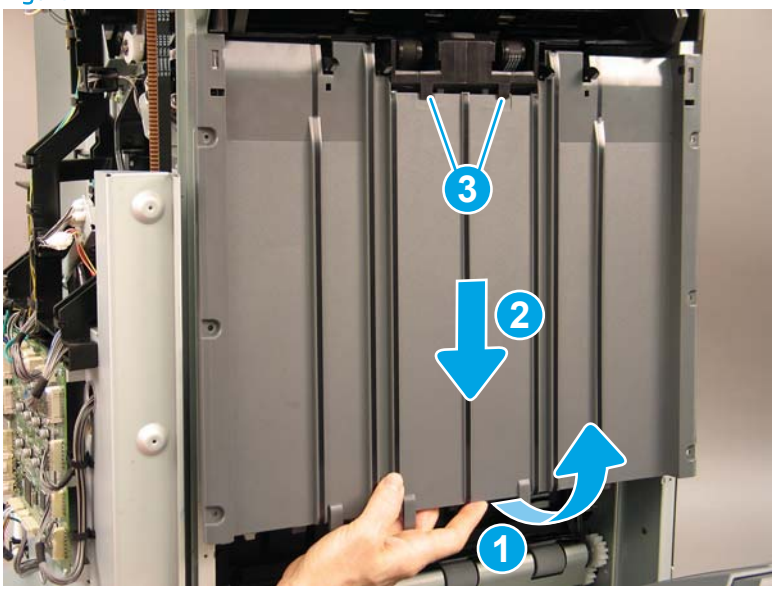


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

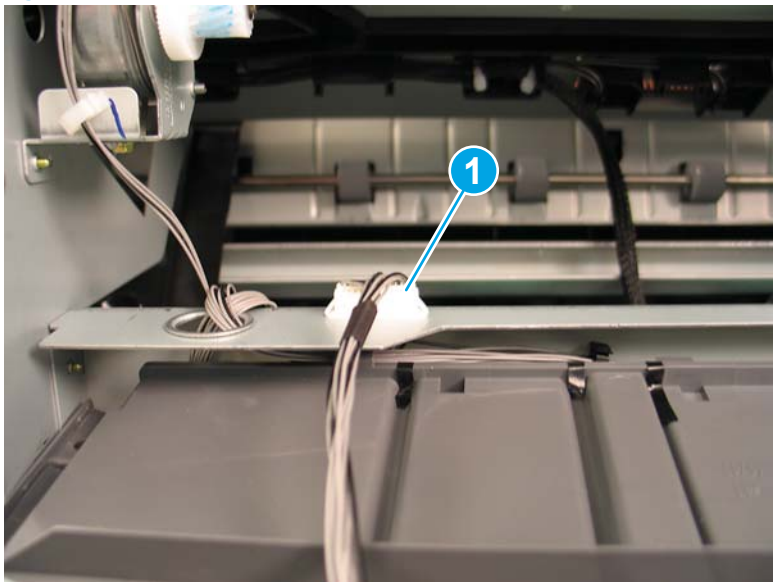
Figure 7-421 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

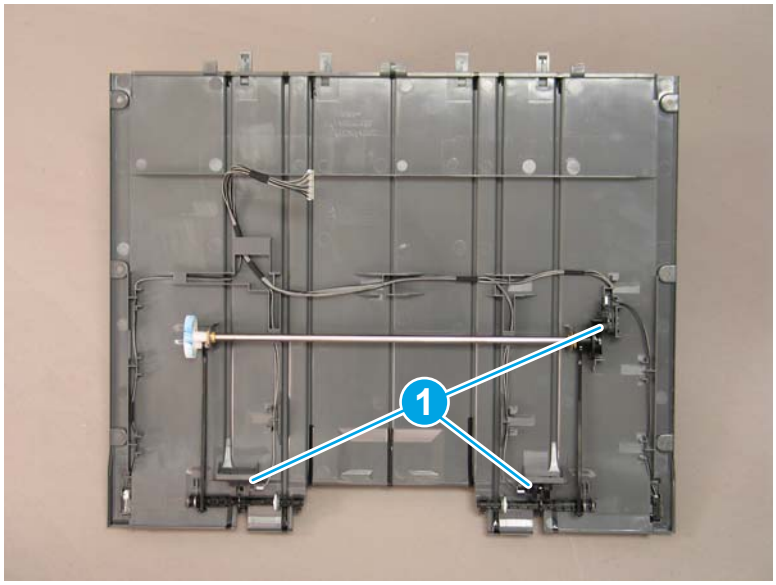
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-422 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

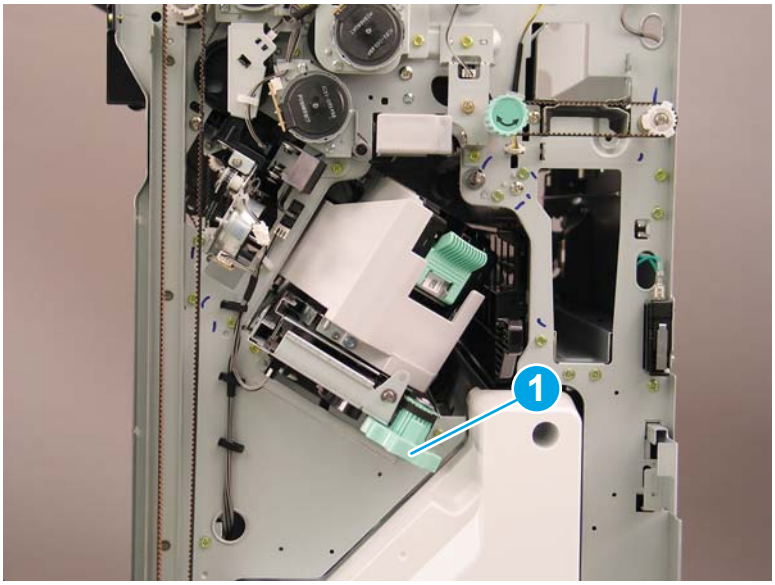
Figure 7-423 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the ejector unit (finisher)

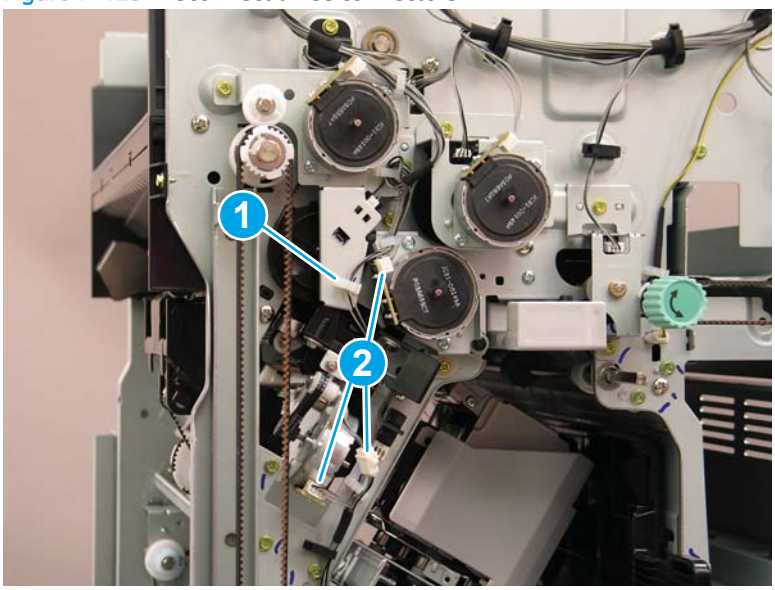
1. Rotate the green wheel to move the staple unit to the center of the finisher.

Figure 7-424 Move the staple unit to the center



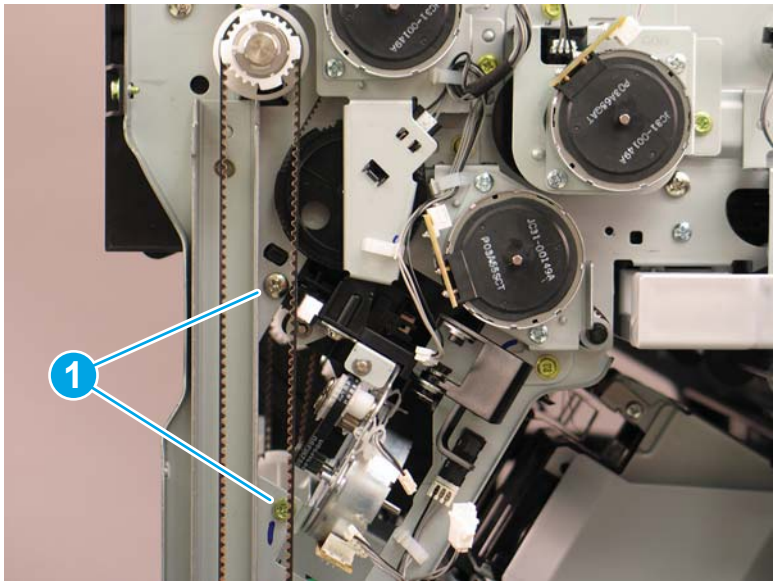
2. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-425 Disconnect three connectors



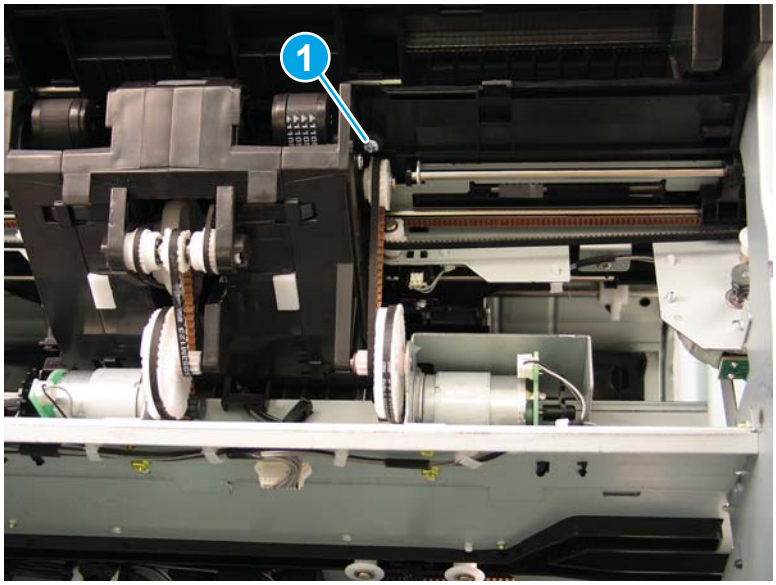
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-426 Remove two screws



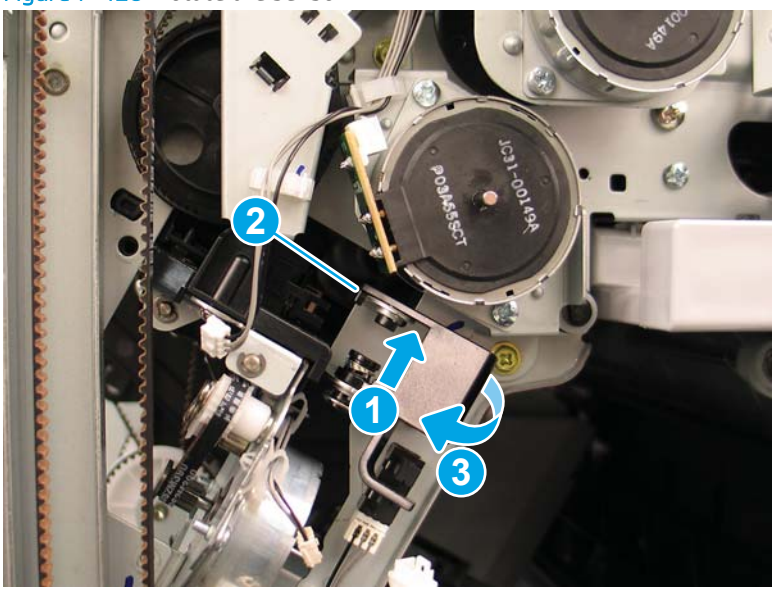
4. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-427 Remove one screw



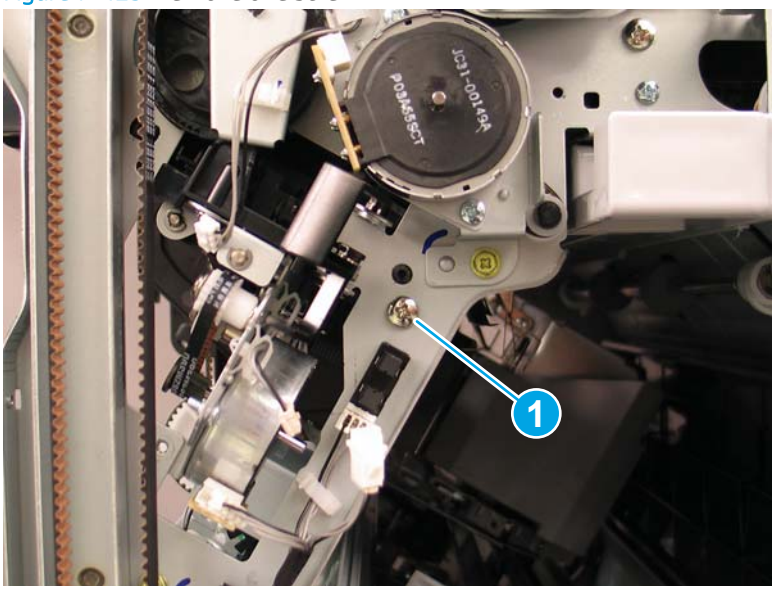
5. Press up on the hinge (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then rotate the sensor away from the finisher (callout 3).

Figure 7-428 Rotate the sensor



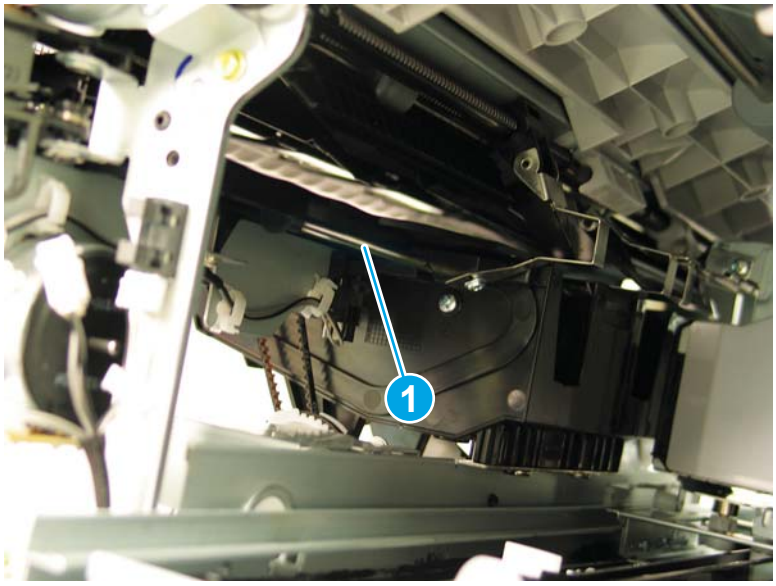
6. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-429 Remove one screw



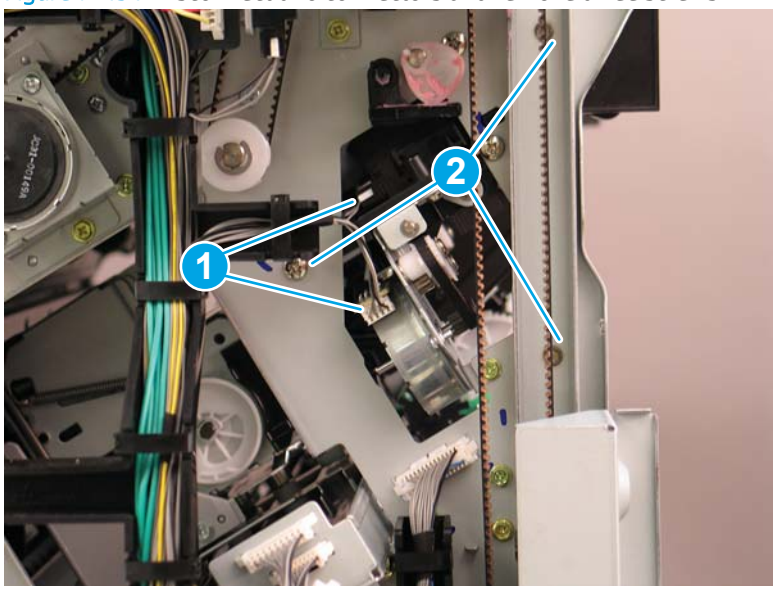
7. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the front and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the front tamper unit.

Figure 7-430 Remove the front tamper shaft



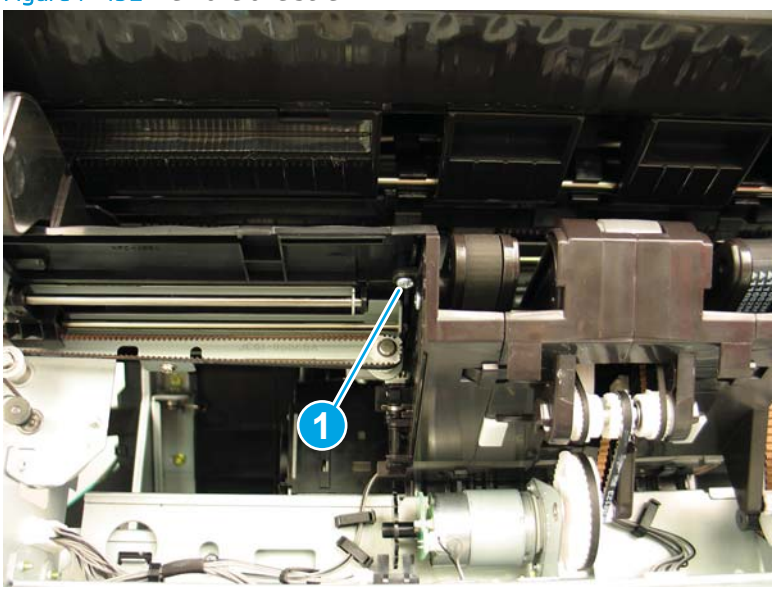
8. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-431 Disconnect two connectors and remove three screws



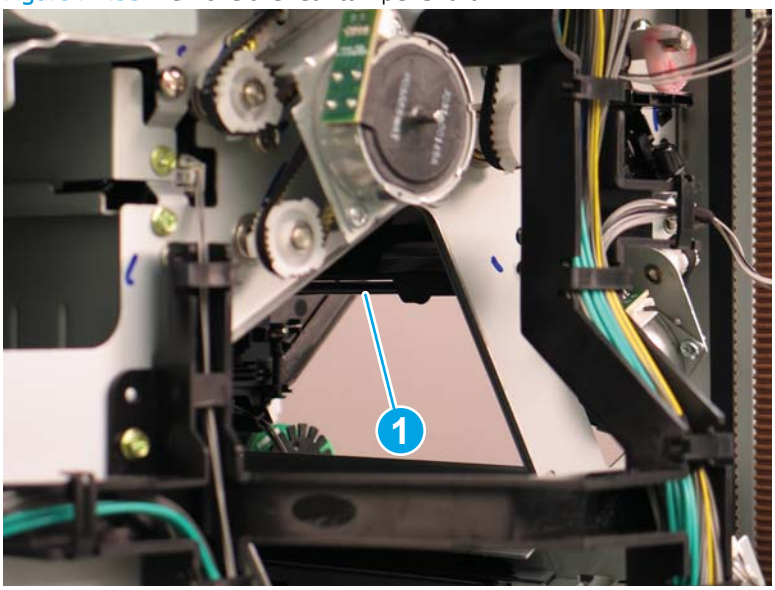
9. At the left side of the finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-432 Remove one screw



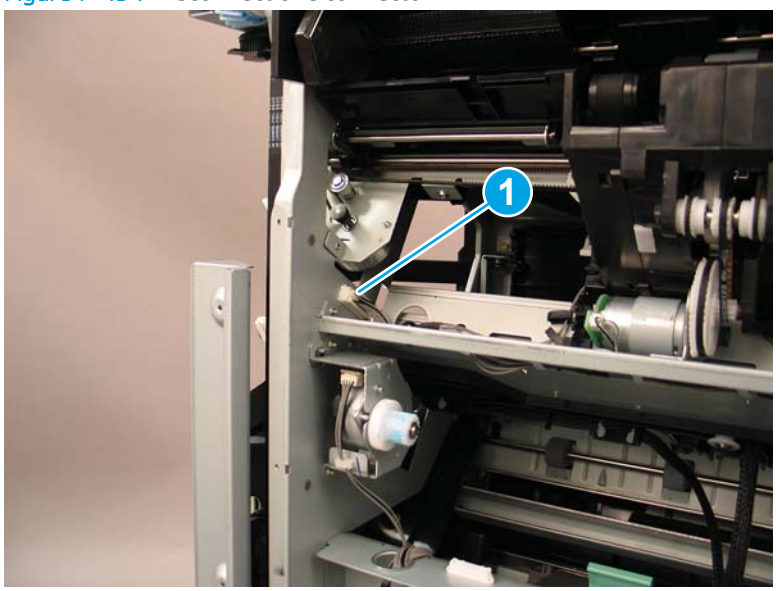
10. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening in the rear and pull down to release and remove one shaft (callout 1) on the rear tamper unit.

Figure 7-433 Remove the rear tamper shaft



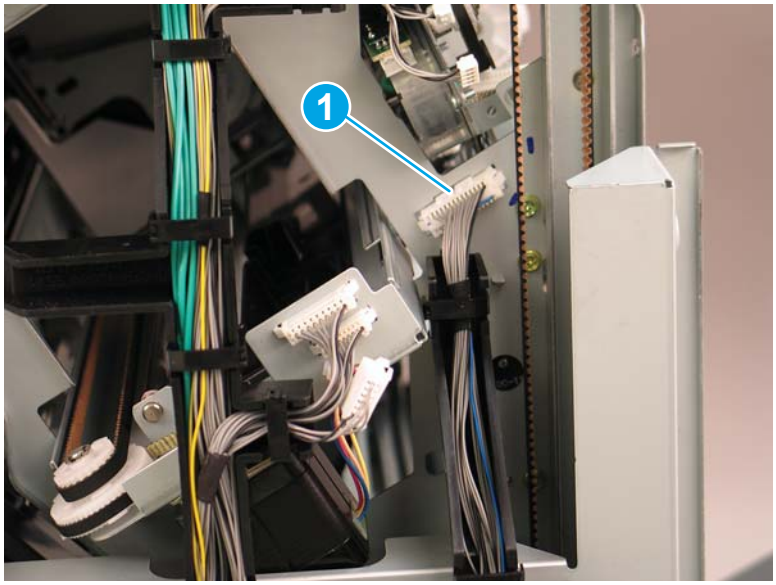
11. At the left side of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-434 Disconnect one connector



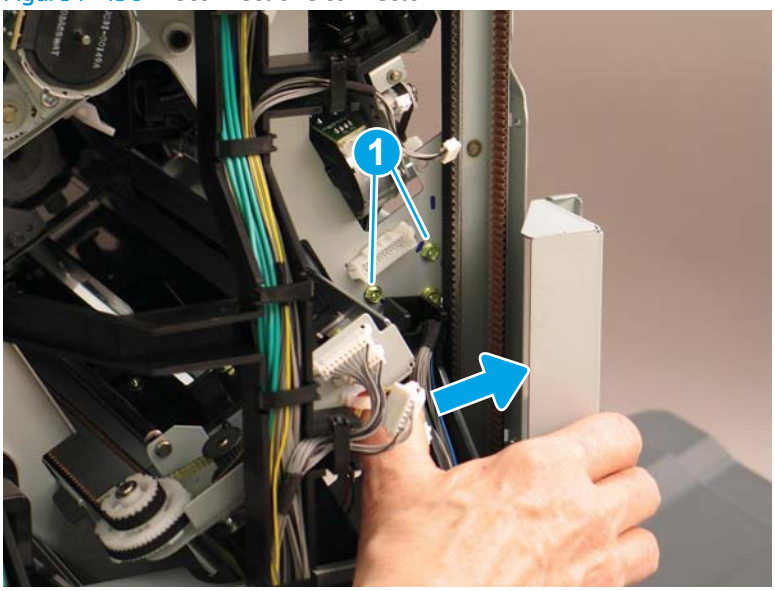
12. At the rear of the finisher, disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 7-435 Disconnect one connector



13. At the rear of the finisher, press the wire retainer to the right to access and remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-436 Disconnect one connector



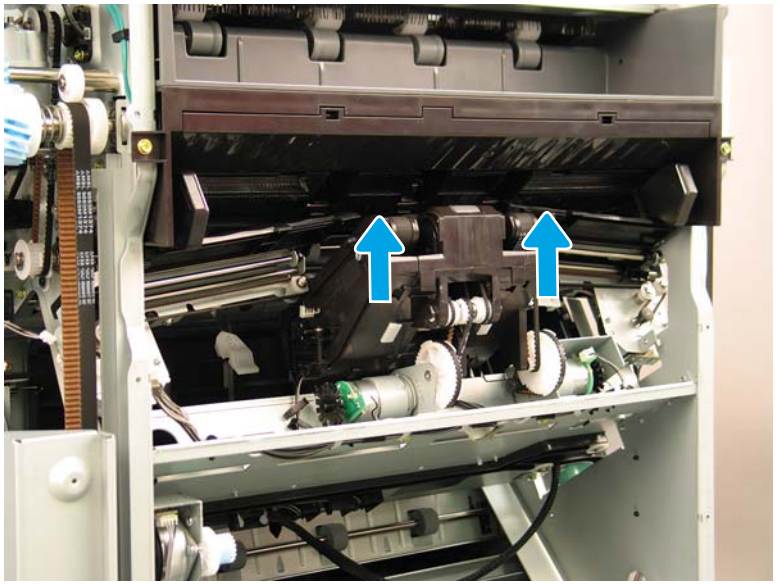
14. At the front of the finisher, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-437 Remove two screws



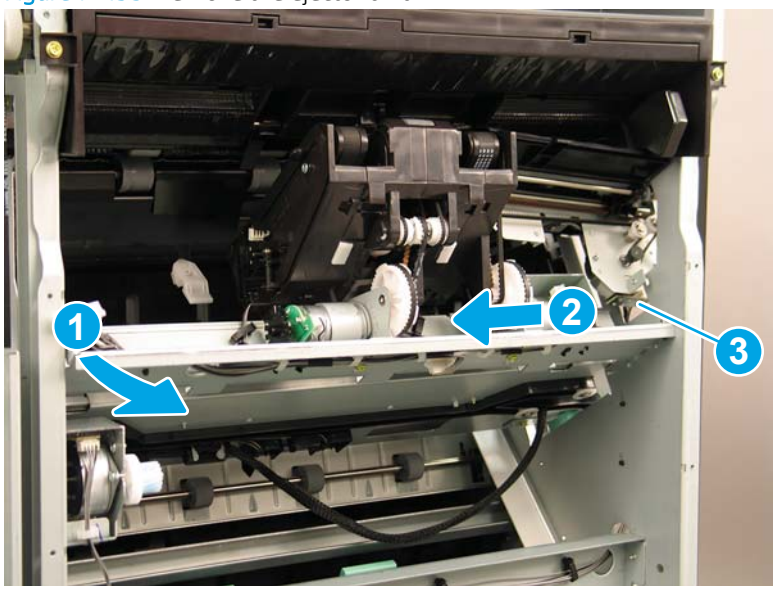
15. Lift the inside edges of the front and rear tampers up.

Figure 7-438 Lift the edges of the tampers



16. Rotate the rear edge of the ejector unit away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide it toward the rear of the finisher (callout 2) to remove it. Make sure that the PCA (callout 3) stays clear of the sheet metal frame.

Figure 7-439 Remove the ejector unit



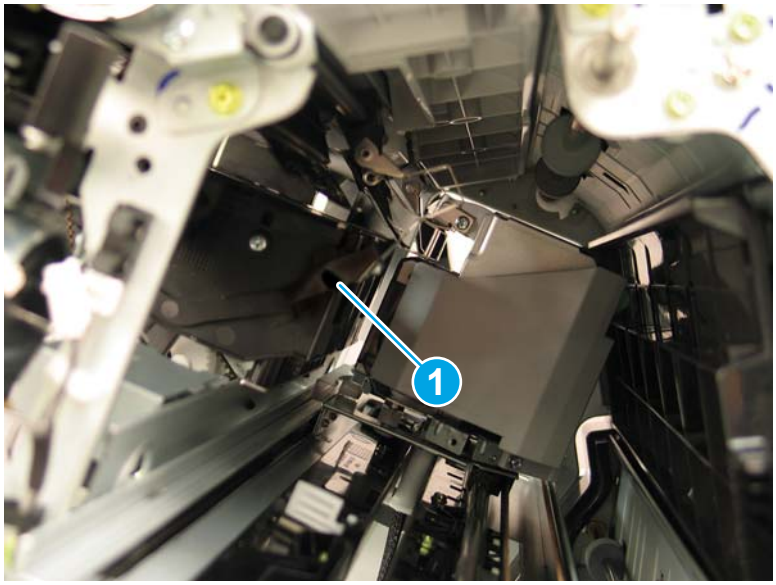
17. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Ejector unit

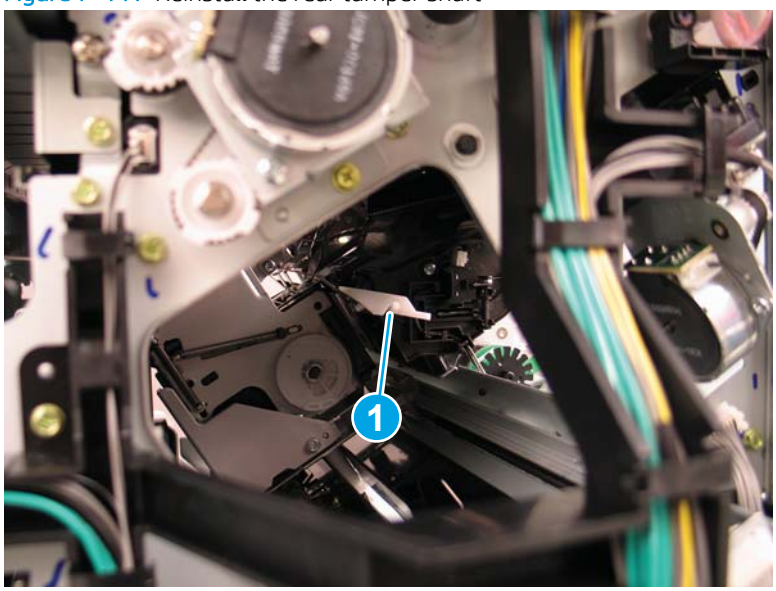
a. When the front tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-440 Reinstall the front tamper shaft



b. When the rear tamper shaft is removed, the retainer arm that held the one end of the shaft will drop down. When reinstalling the shaft, raise the retainer arm and position the end of the shaft in the notch (callout 1).

Figure 7-441 Reinstall the rear tamper shaft

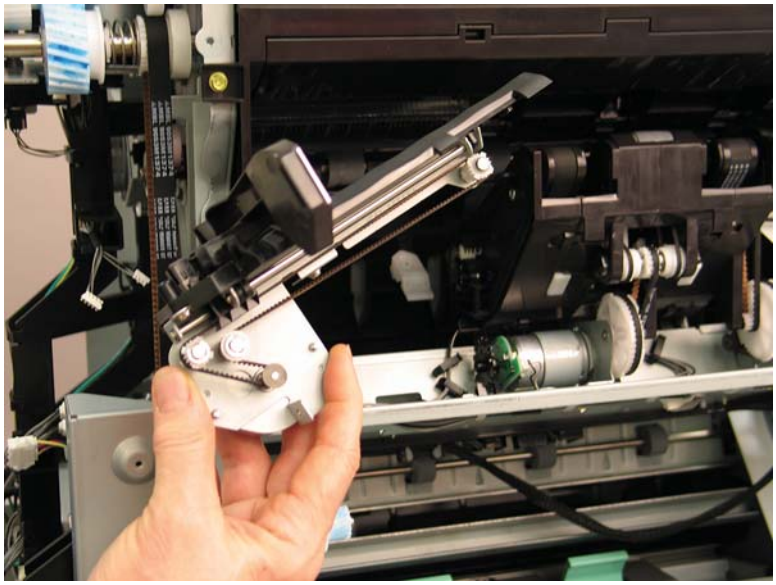


Step 11: Remove the rear tamper (finisher)

▲ Lift the rear tamper away from the finisher to remove it

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

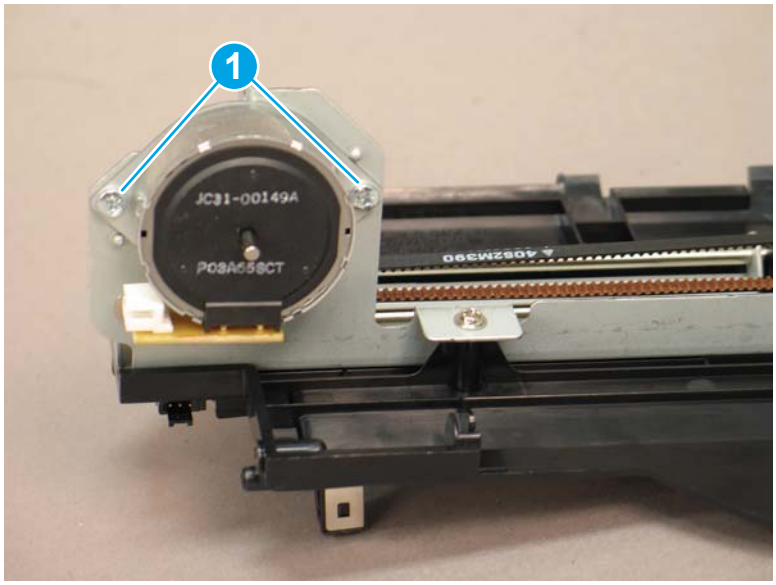
Figure 7-442 Remove the rear tamper



Step 12: Remove the rear tamper motor (M7)

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-443 Remove two screws

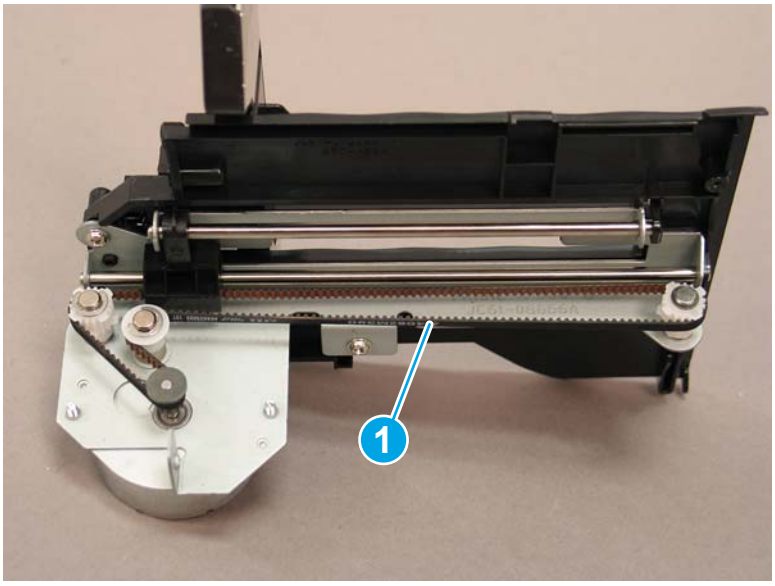


2. Release the belt (callout 1), and then remove the rear tamper motor.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that the belt is routed correctly when reinstalling the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-444 Release the belt and remove the motor



Step 13: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

SCU motor (M10)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)
- Step 5: Remove the rear cover
- Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)
- Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)
- Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)
- Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)
- Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SCU motor on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

SCU motor (M10) part number	
SAM-JC93-01156A	Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

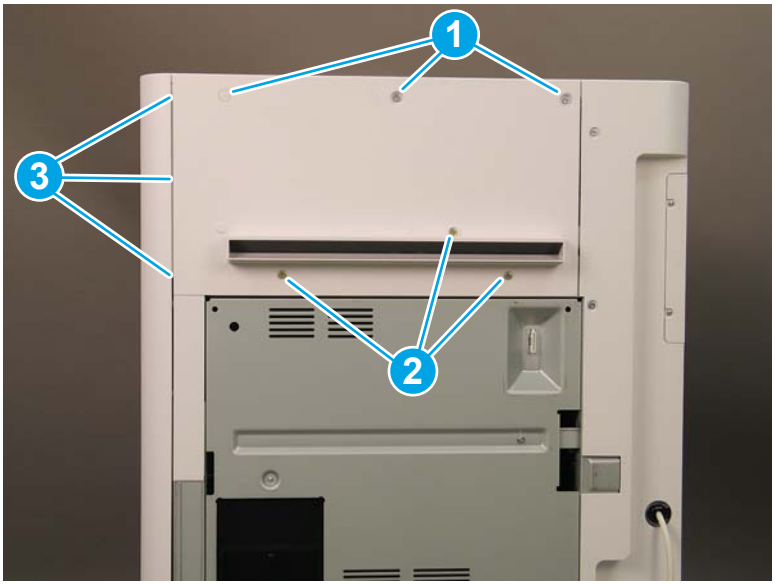
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

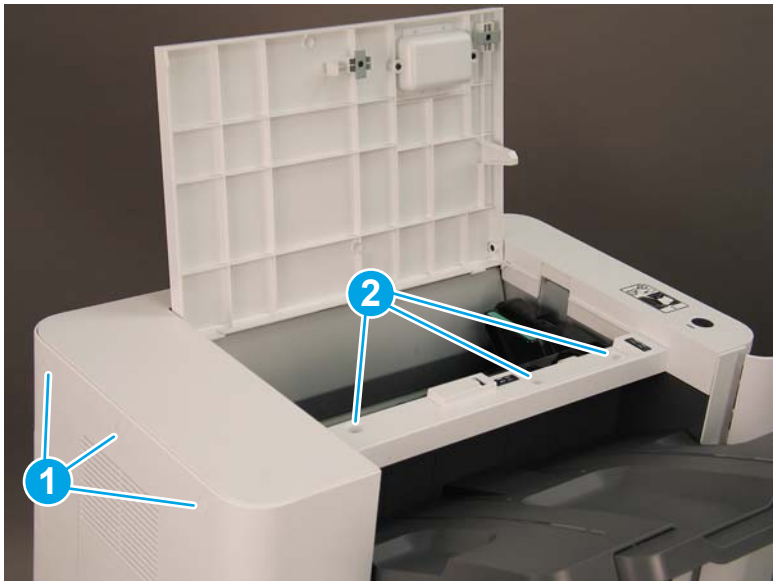
Figure 7-445 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

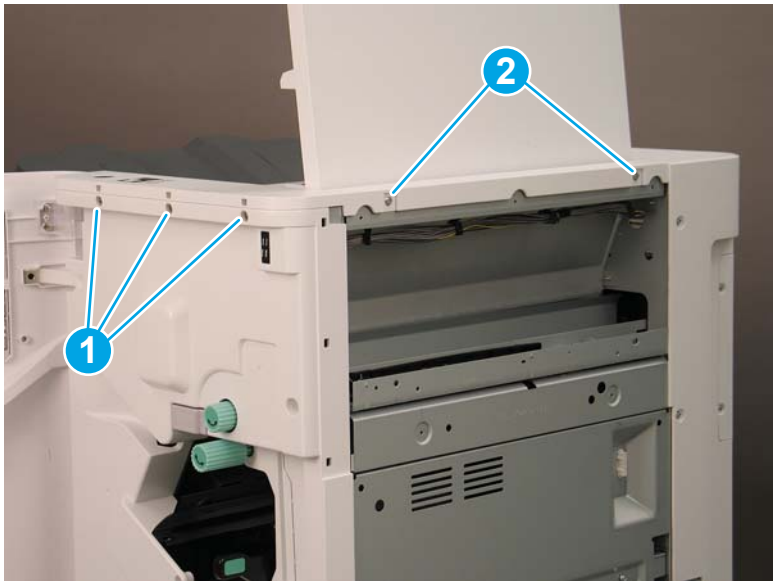
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-446 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

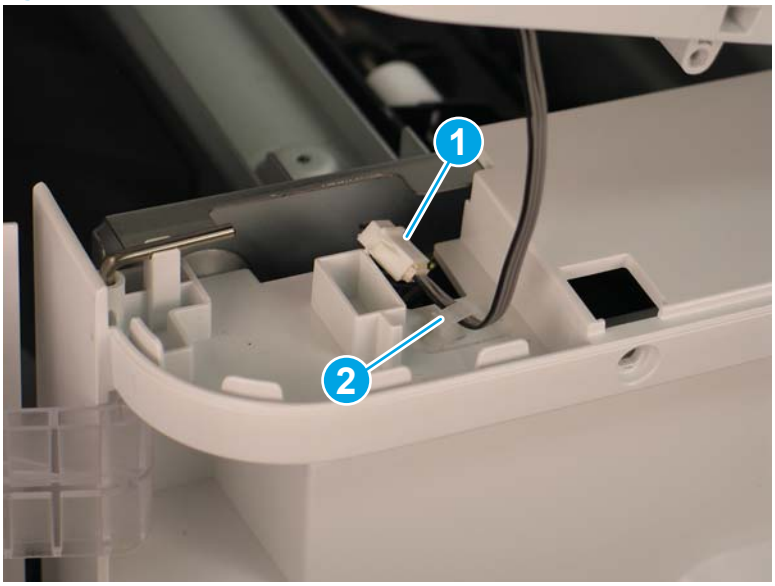
Figure 7-447 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-448 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

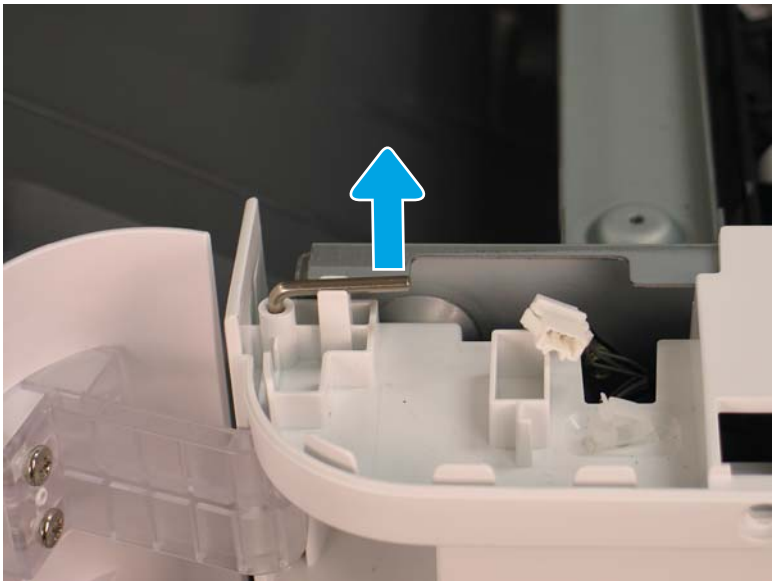


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the front door (finisher)

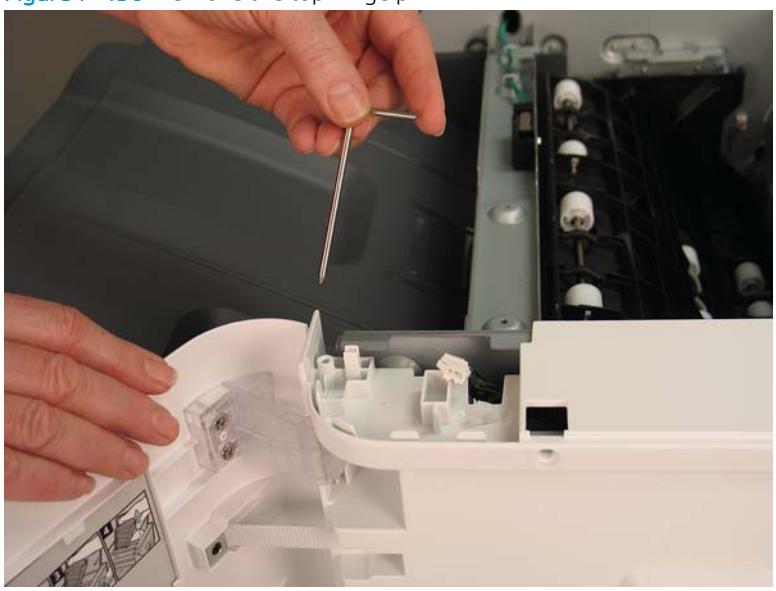
1. Lift the top hinge pin up to release it from the retainer.

Figure 7-449 Lift the top hinge pin



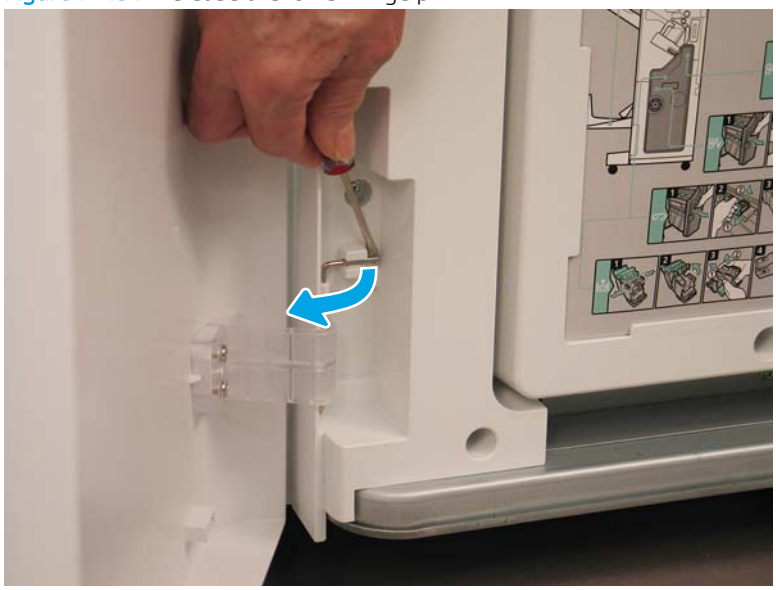
2. Pull the top hinge pin up to remove it.

Figure 7-450 Remove the top hinge pin



3. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the lower hinge pin from the retainer, and then rotate it away from the finisher.

Figure 7-451 Release the lower hinge pin



4. Support the door with one hand, and then pull the lower hinge pin straight up to remove it.

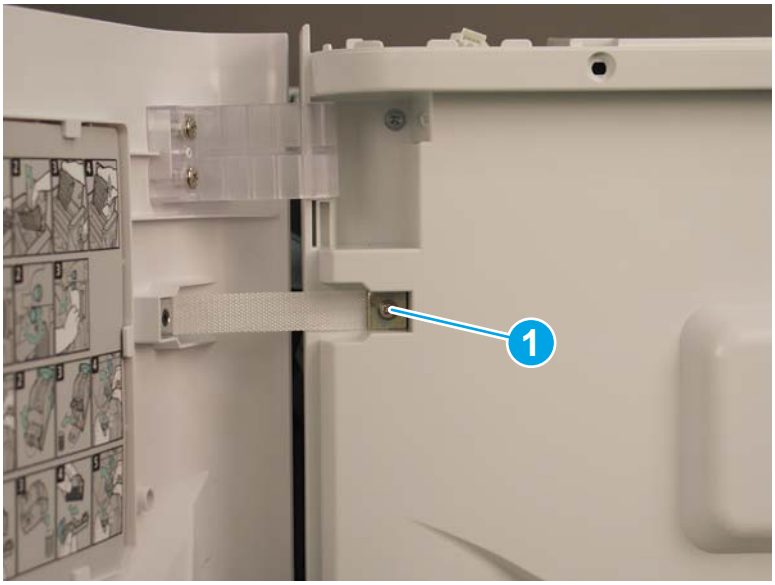
Figure 7-452 Remove the lower hinge pin



5. Support the door with one hand, and then remove one screw (callout 1) to release the strap. Remove the front door

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

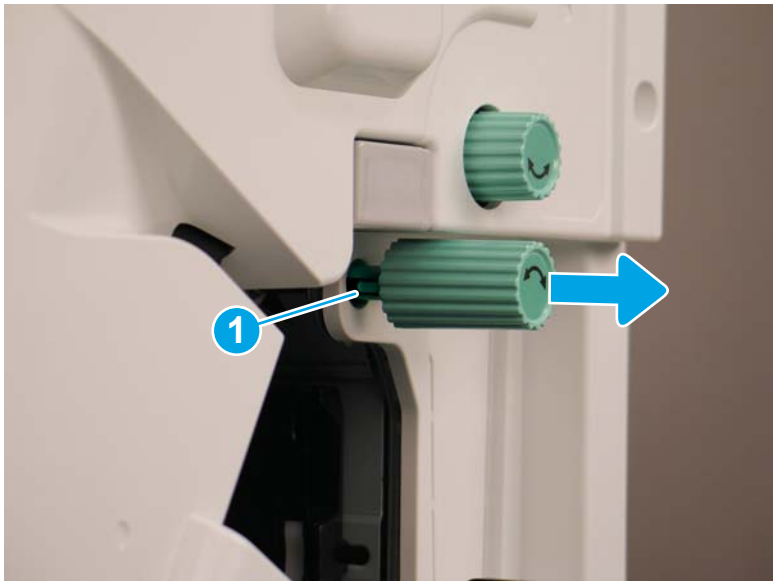
Figure 7-453 Remove one screw and the front door



Step 4: Remove the front cover (finisher)

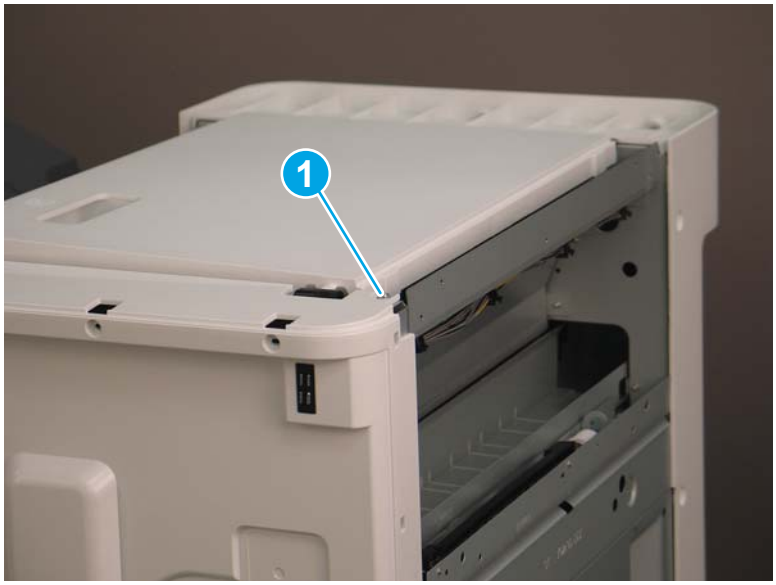
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-454 Remove the jam-access knob



2. If the punch unit is installed, remove the punch waste bin (callout 1).
3. Remove one screw (callout 1) on top of the front cover.

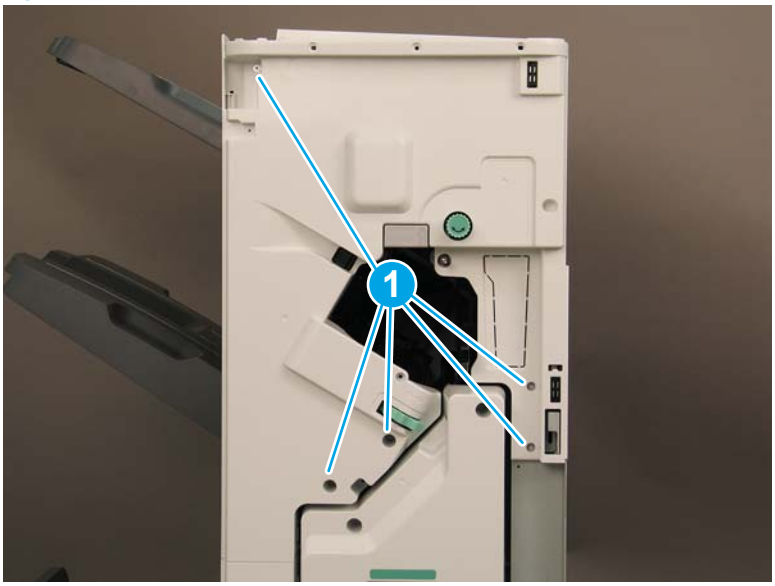
Figure 7-455 Remove one screw



4. Remove five machine screws (callout 1), and then remove the front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

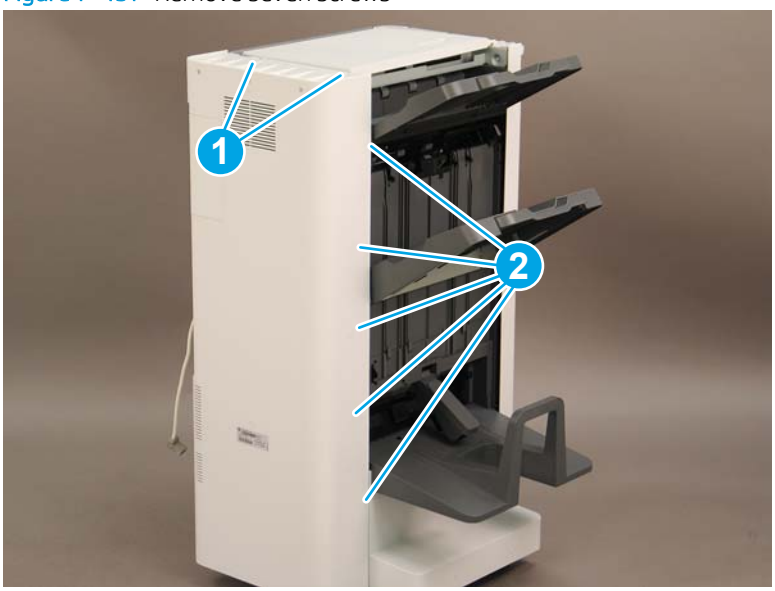
Figure 7-456 Remove five screws and the front cover



Step 5: Remove the rear cover

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-457 Remove seven screws

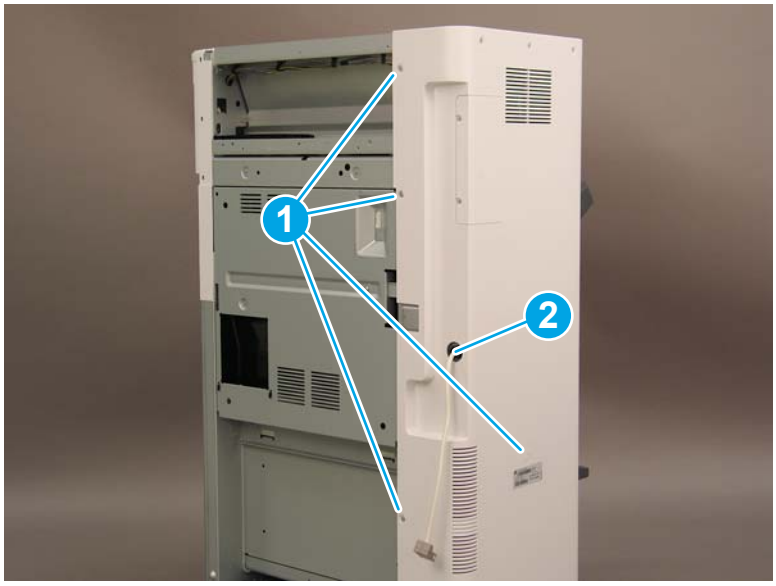


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

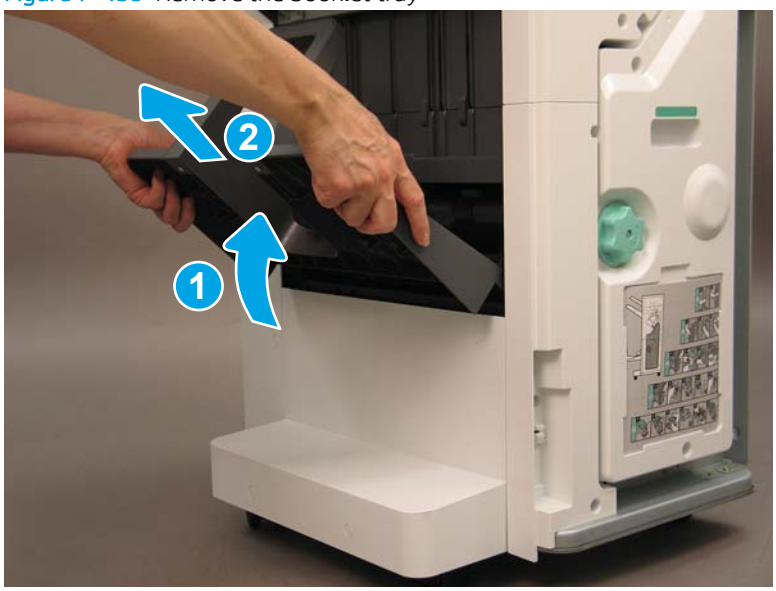
Figure 7-458 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 6: Remove the booklet tray (finisher)

1. Raise the booklet tray up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the finisher (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-459 Remove the booklet tray



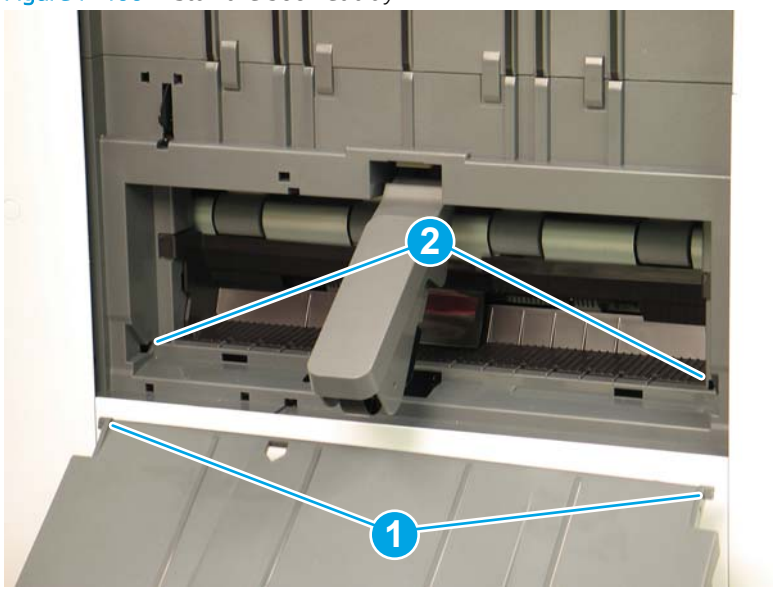
2. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet tray

▲ Position the tabs (callout 1) on the tray into the slots (callout 2) on the finisher.

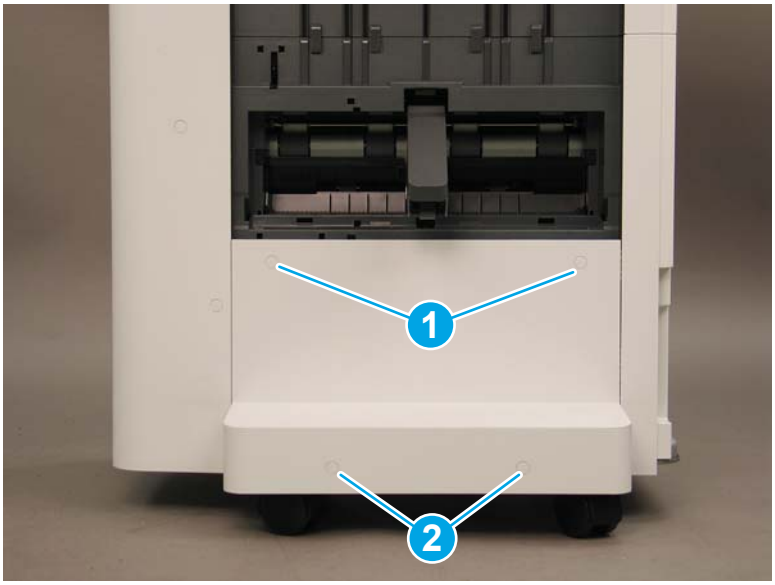
Figure 7-460 Install the booklet tray



Step 7: Remove the caster cover (finisher)

1. Remove two screw caps and two self-tapping screws (callout 1). Remove two screw caps and two machine screws (callout 2).

Figure 7-461 Remove four screws

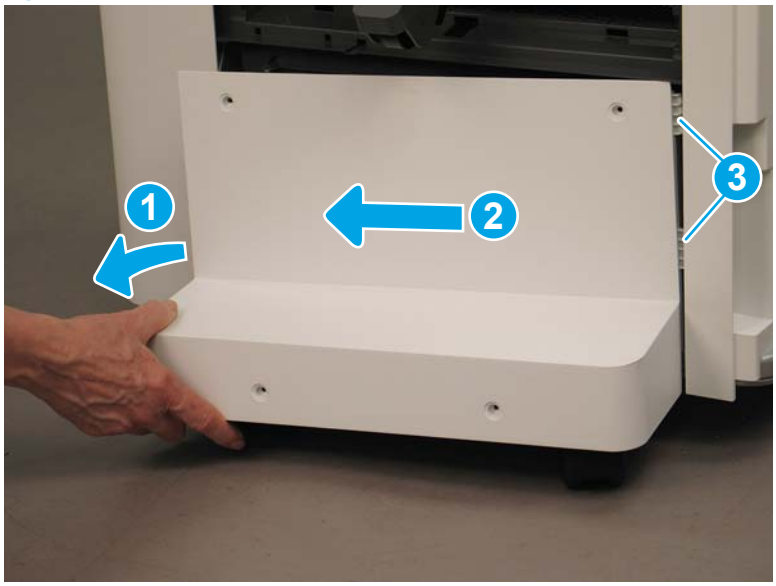


2. Rotate the left edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover to the left (callout 2) to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Make sure that two tabs (callout 3) are positioned under the front lower cover when reinstalling the caster cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-462 Remove the caster cover

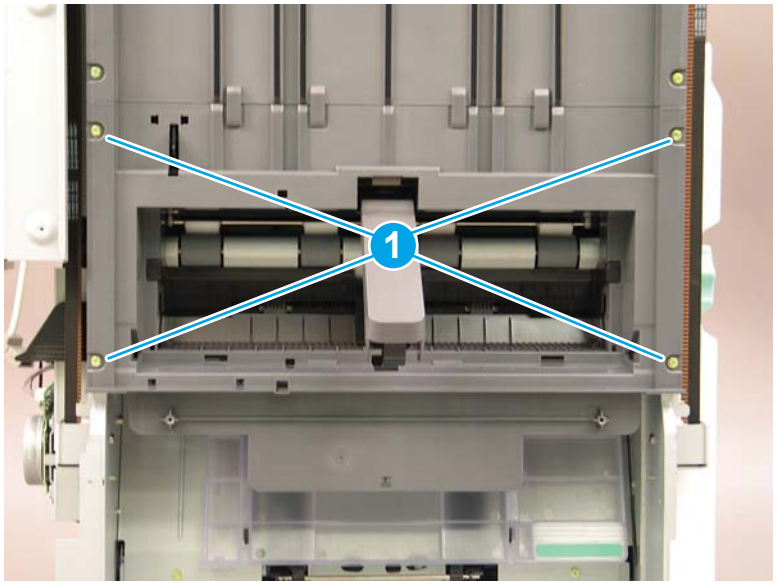


Step 8: Remove the lower shield assembly (finisher)

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Raise the lower output tray as needed to access the screws.

Figure 7-463 Remove four screws

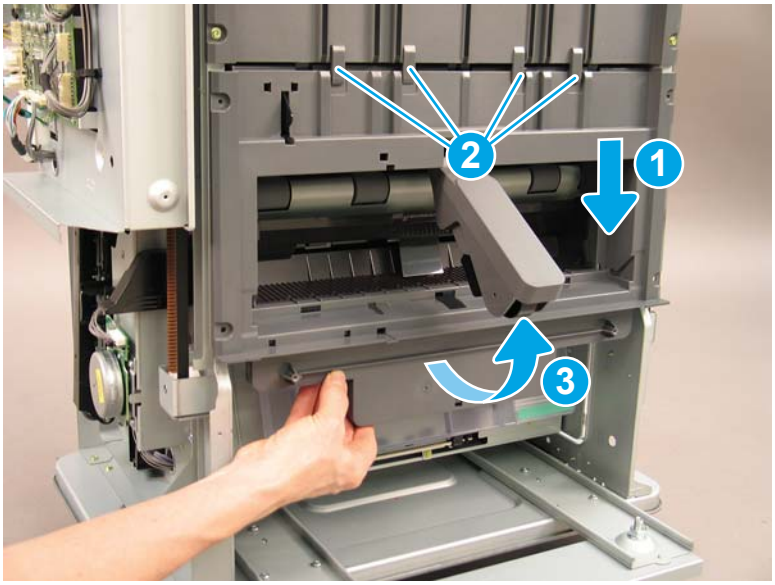


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

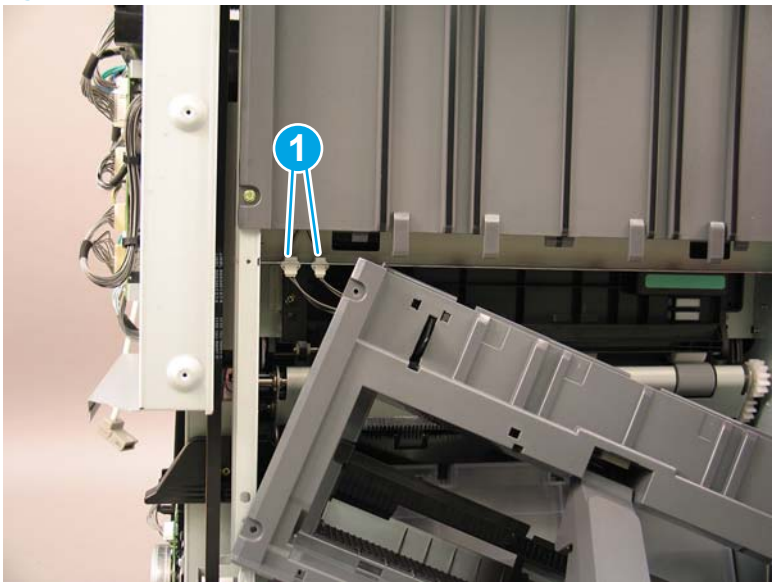
Figure 7-464 Release the lower shield



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the shield.

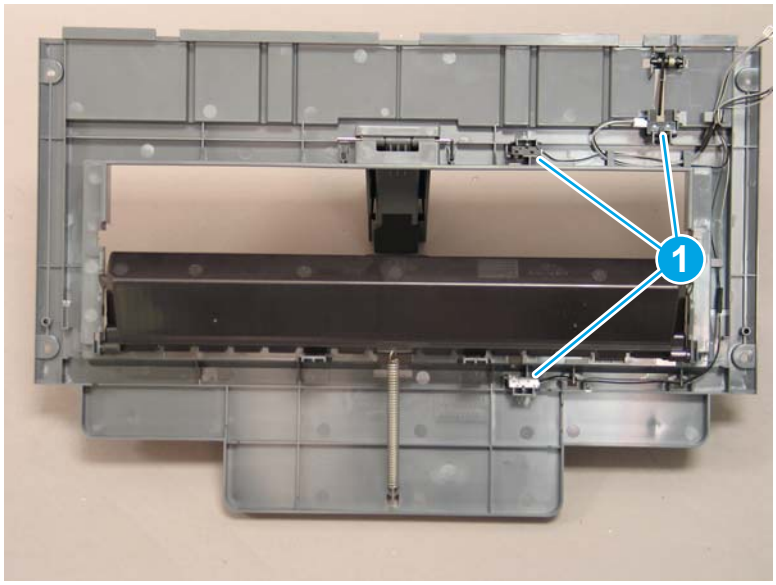
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-465 Disconnect two connectors



4. If you are replacing the lower shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the lower shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

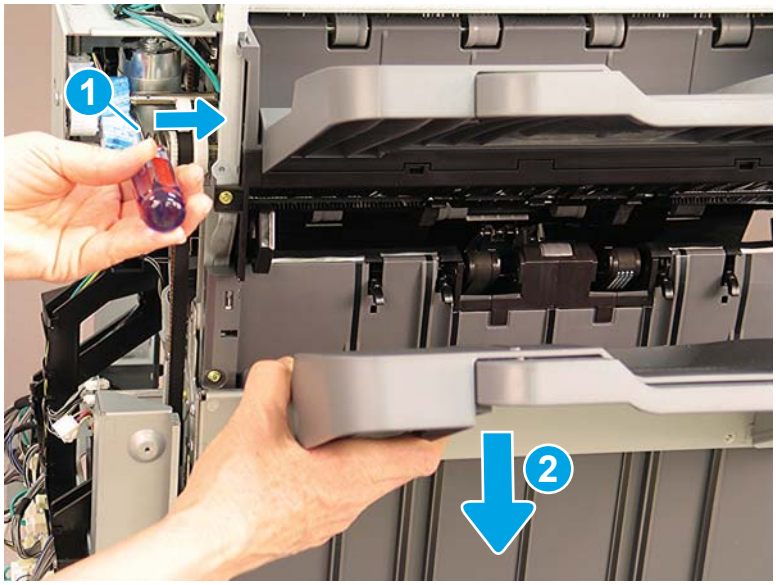
Figure 7-466 Locate sensors



Step 9: Remove the upper shield assembly (finisher)

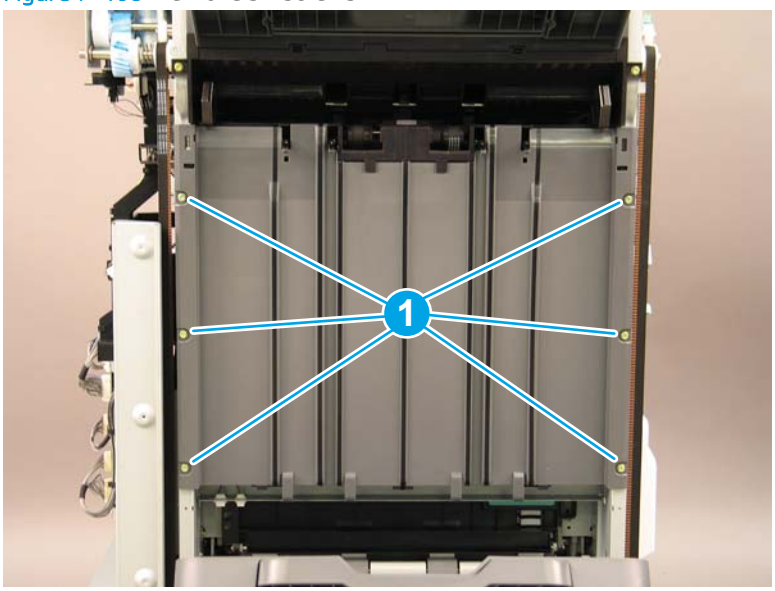
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-467 Lower the output tray



2. Remove six machine screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-468 Remove six screws

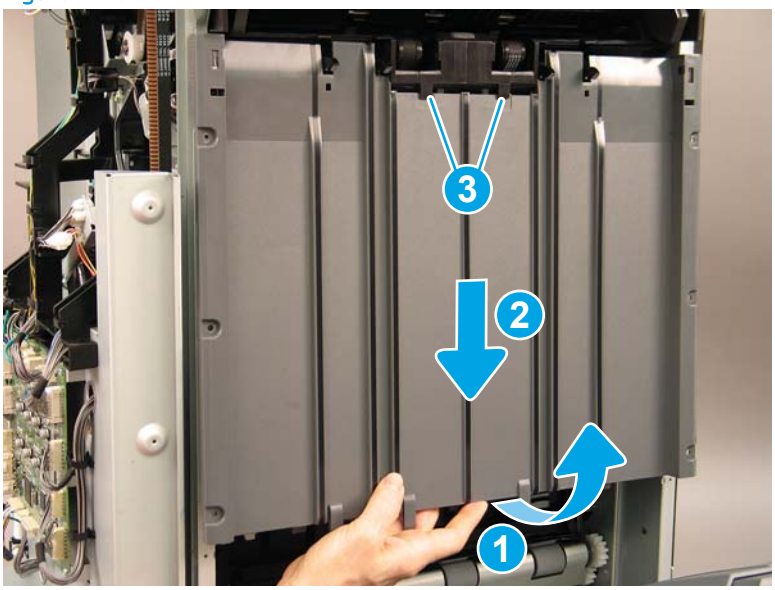


3. Rotate the lower edge of the shield away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the shield down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The shield is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the shield.

Reinstallation tip: Position the shield under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

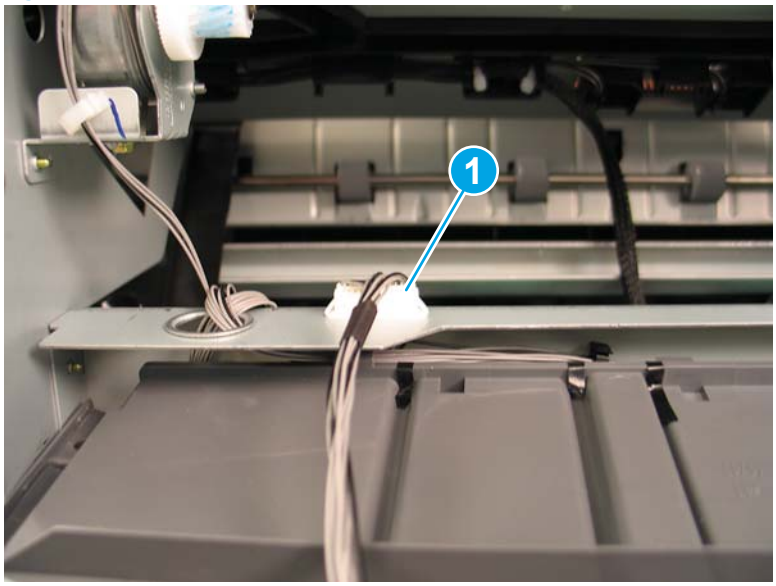
Figure 7-469 Release the shield



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the upper shield assembly.

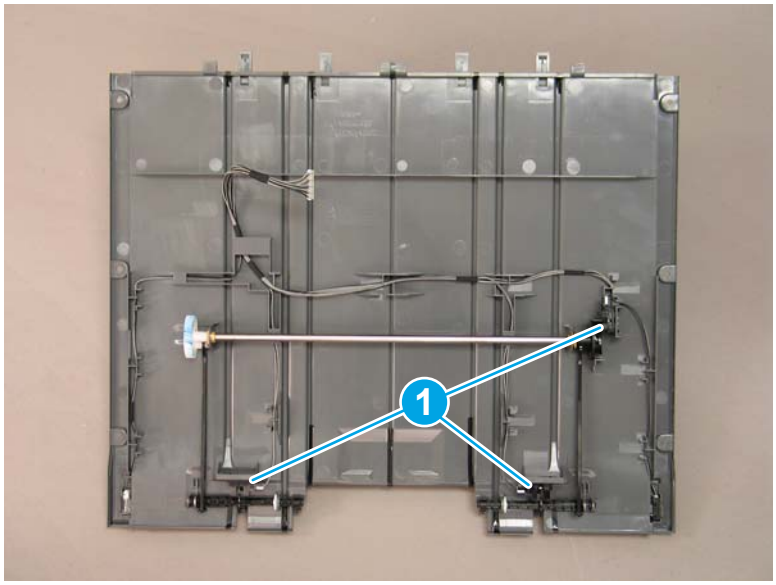
Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-470 Disconnect one connector



5. If you are replacing the upper shield assembly, locate three sensors (callout 1) on the back of the upper shield. Remove these sensors and transfer them to the replacement part.

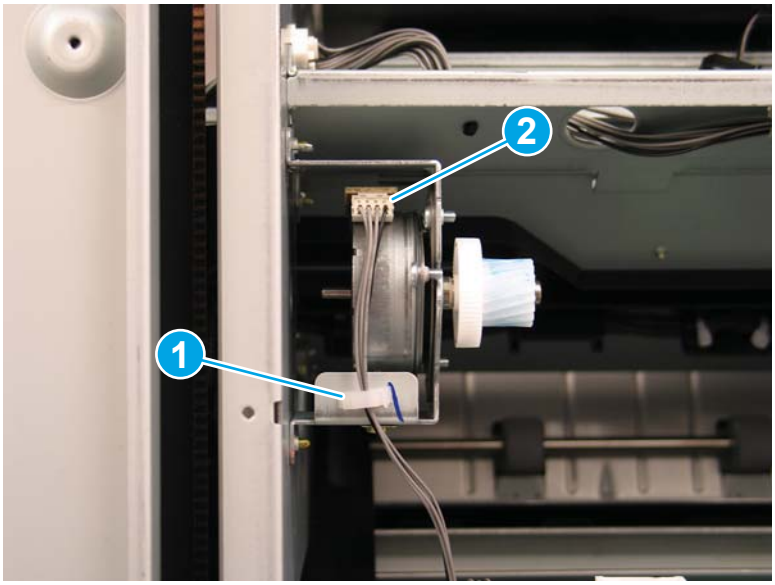
Figure 7-471 Locate sensors



Step 10: Remove the SCU motor (M10)

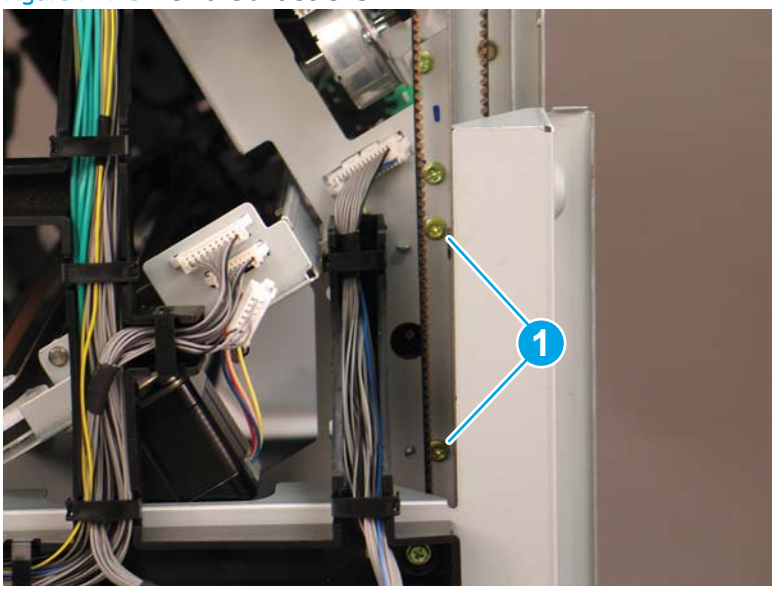
1. Release one retainer (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 7-472 Disconnect one connector



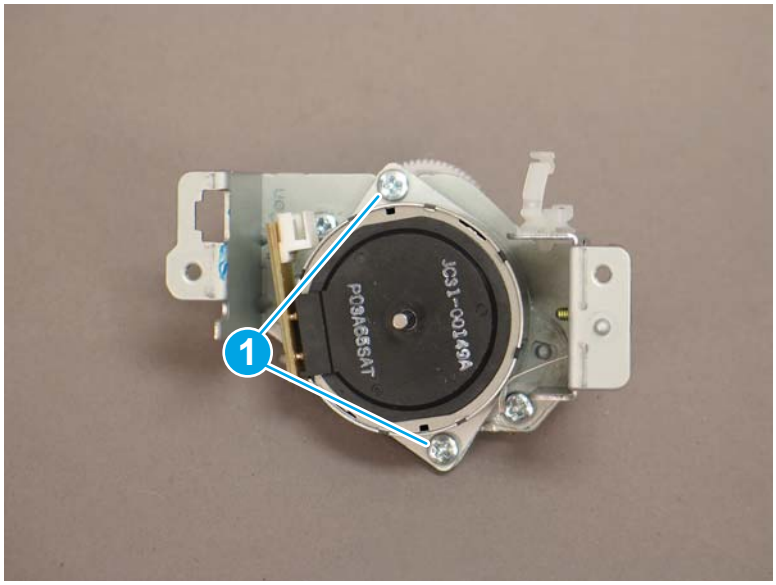
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor and bracket.

Figure 7-473 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor.

Figure 7-474 Remove two screws and the motor



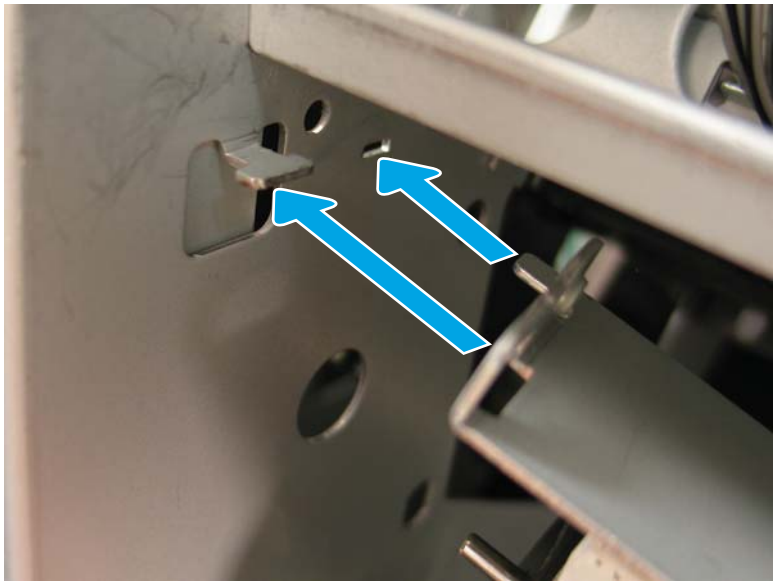
4. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: SCU motor (M10)

- When installing the motor and bracket, align the tab and slot on the motor bracket with the tab and slot in the printer.

Figure 7-475 Install the motor and bracket



Step 11: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main tray moving motor (M11)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the main tray moving motor (M11) on the finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main tray moving motor (M11) part number	
SAM-JC90-01415A	Motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

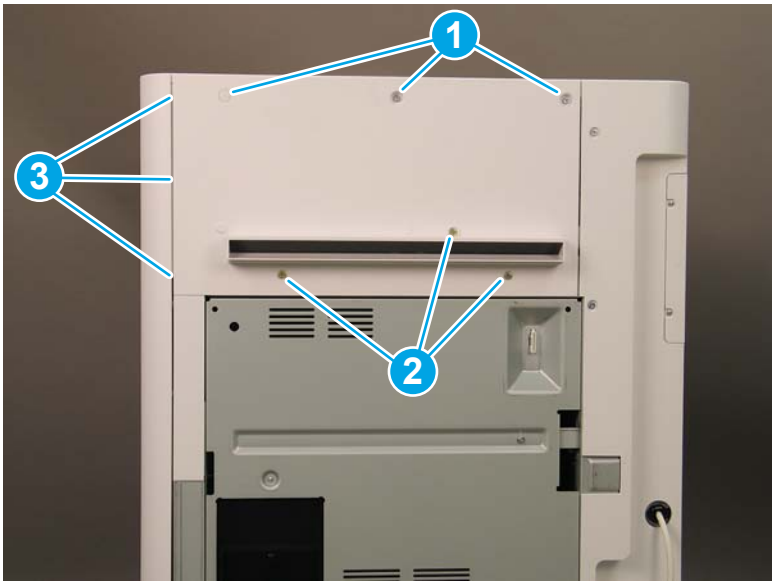
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

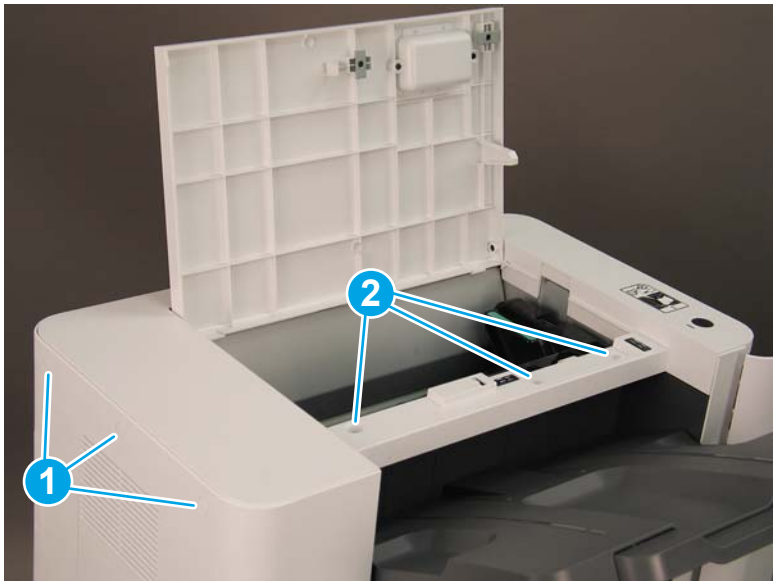
Figure 7-476 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

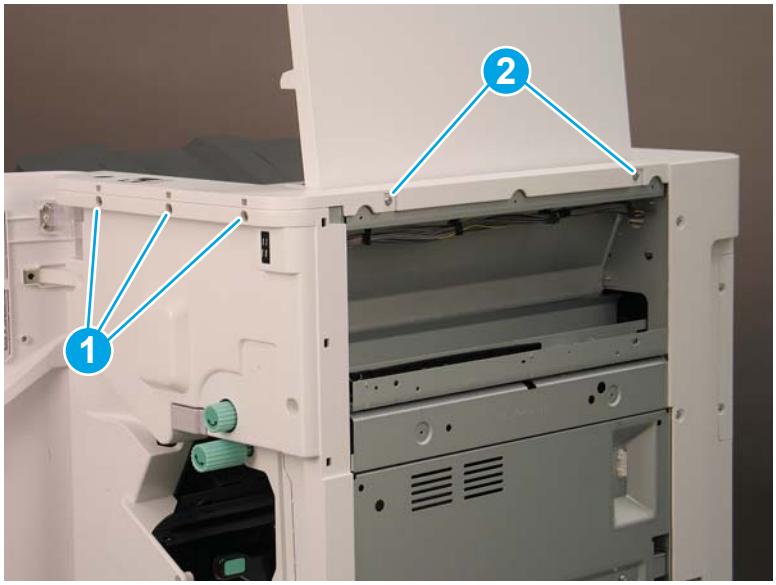
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-477 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

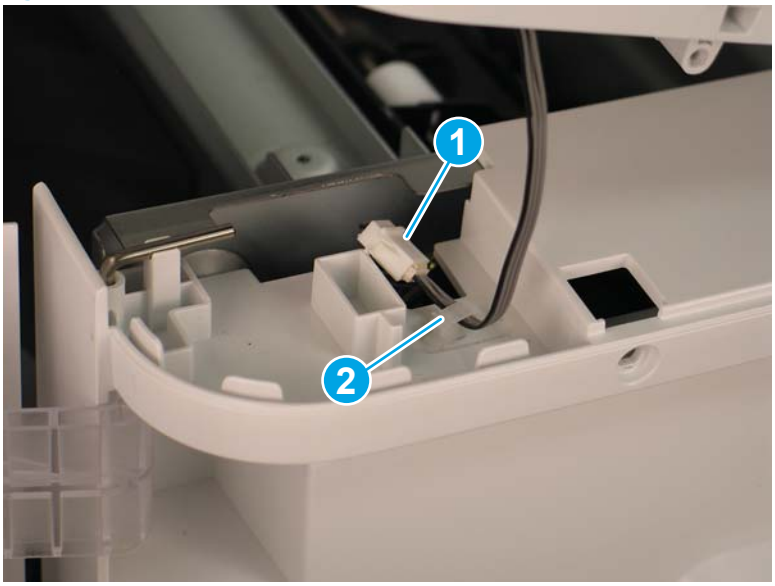
Figure 7-478 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-479 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

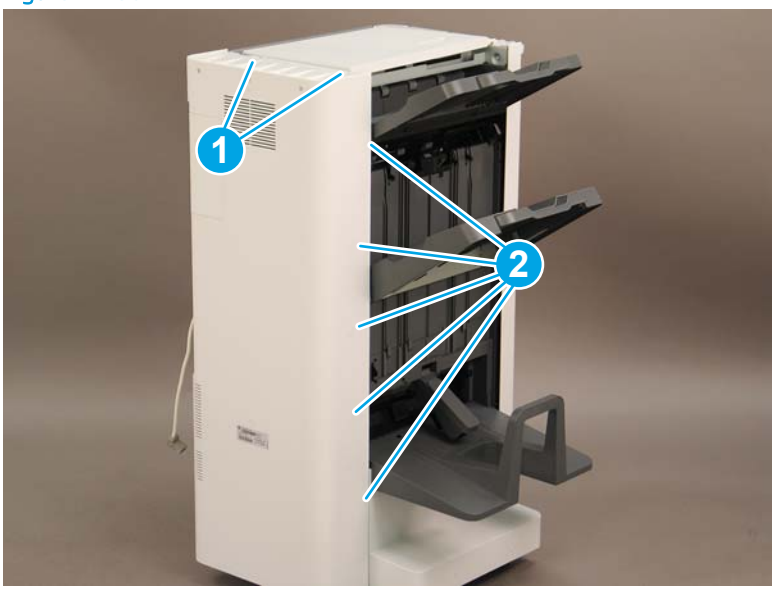


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-480 Remove seven screws

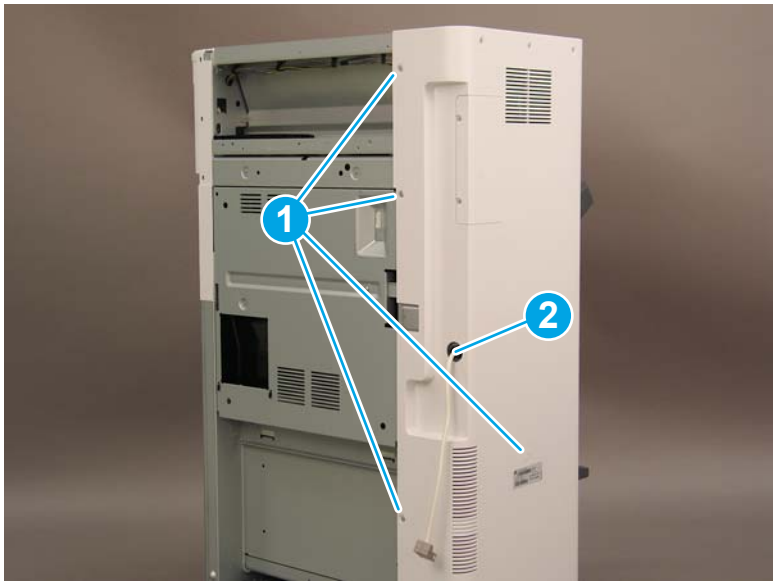


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

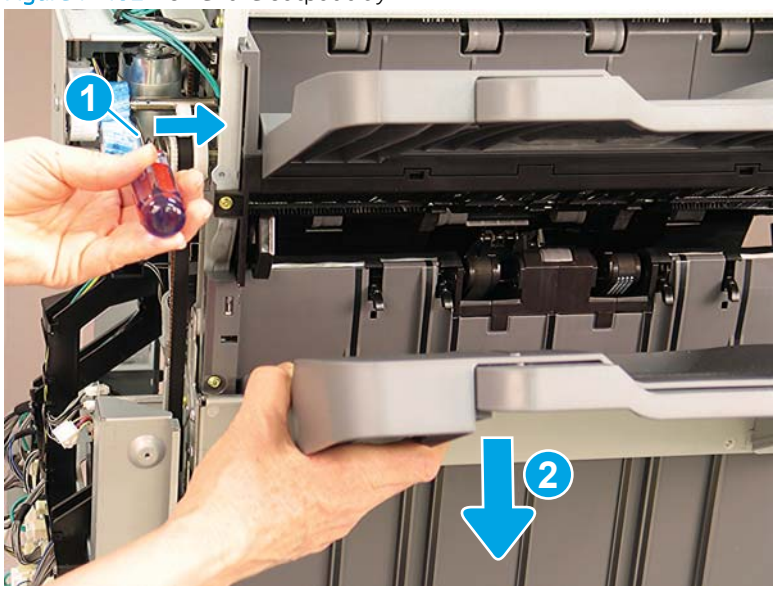
Figure 7-481 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the main tray moving motor (M11)

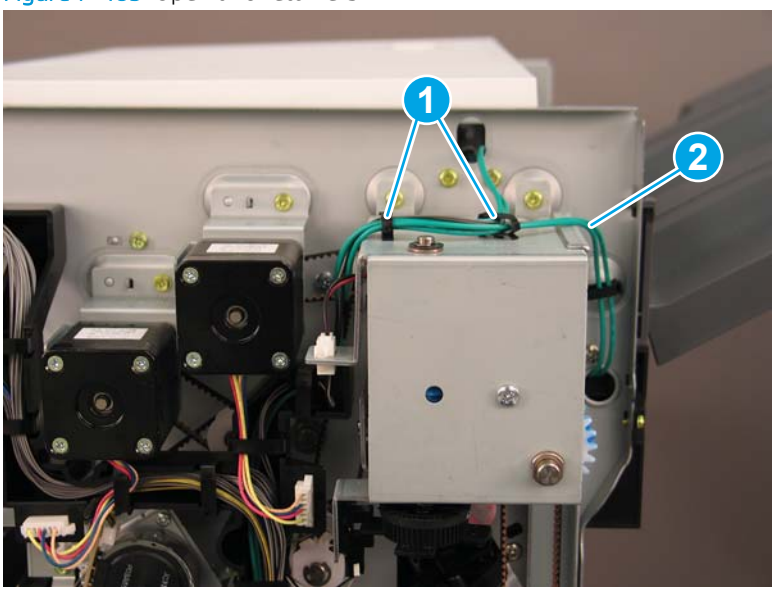
1. Bring the lower output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 7-482 Lower the output tray



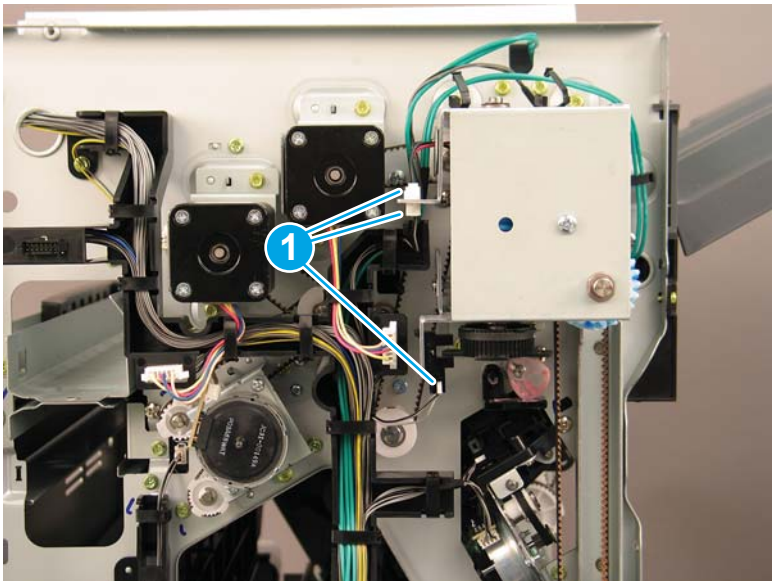
2. Open two retainers (callout 1), and then release the green wires (callout 2).

Figure 7-483 Open two retainers



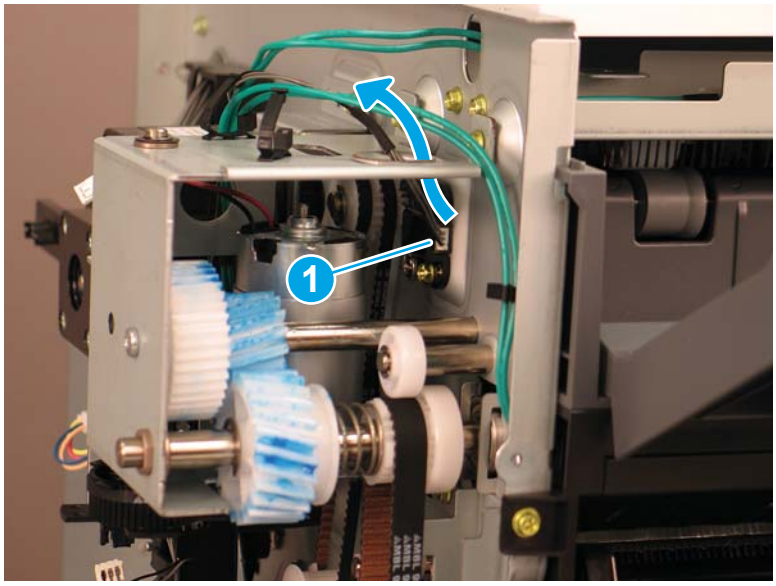
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 7-484 Disconnect three connectors



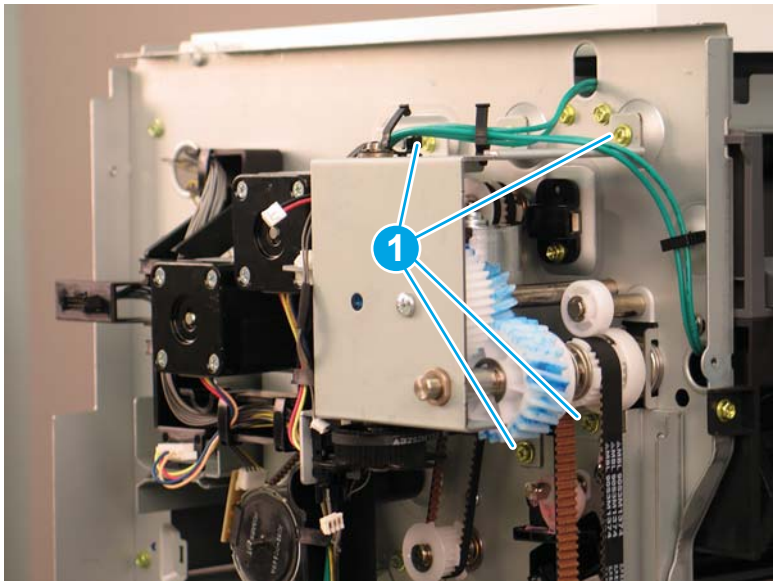
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then thread the cable up through the opening in the top of the bracket.

Figure 7-485 Disconnect one connector



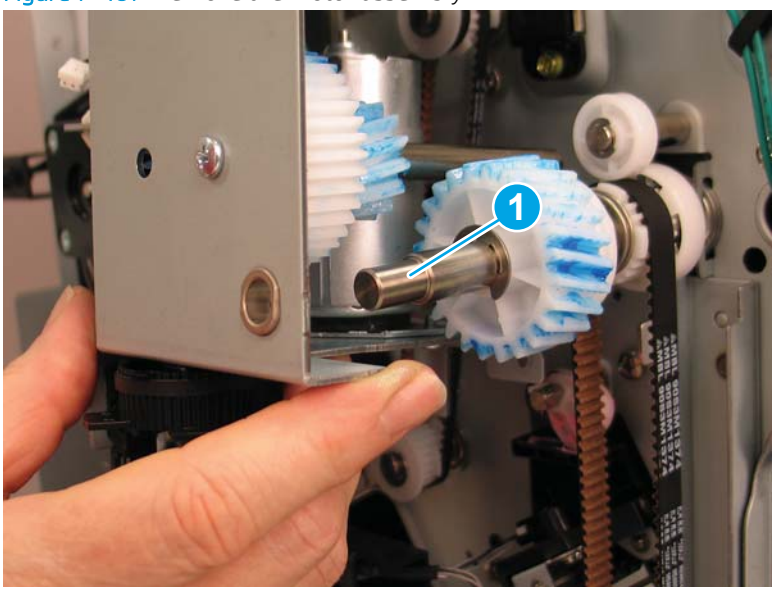
5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the motor assembly.

Figure 7-486 Remove four screws and the motor assembly



6. Carefully pull the motor assembly away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 7-487 Remove the motor assembly



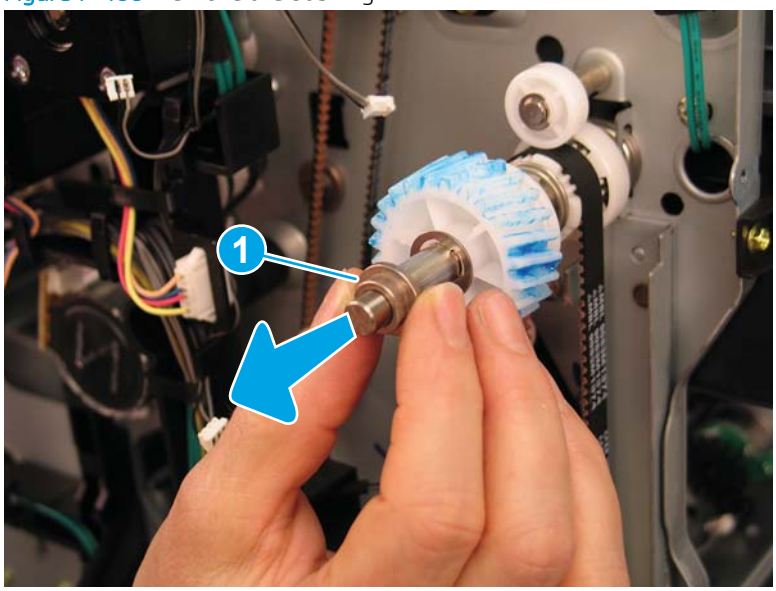
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Main tray moving motor (M11)

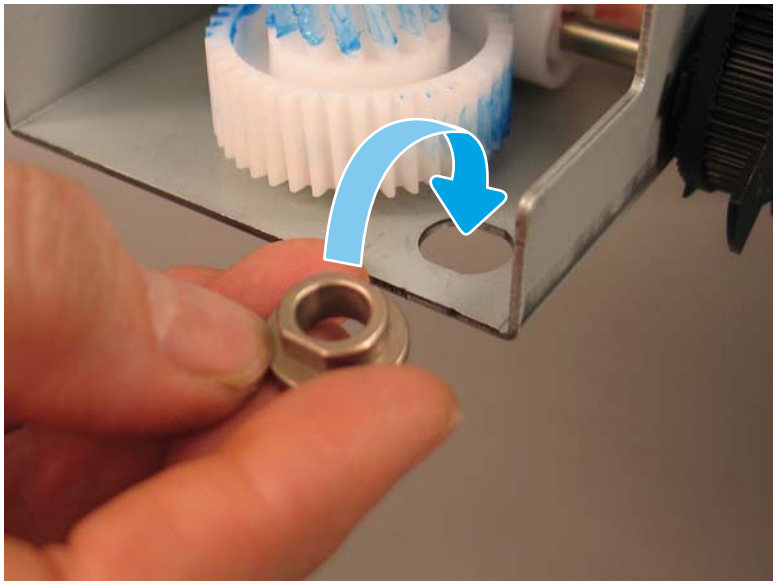
a. Before installing the motor assembly, slide the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.

Figure 7-488 Remove the bushing



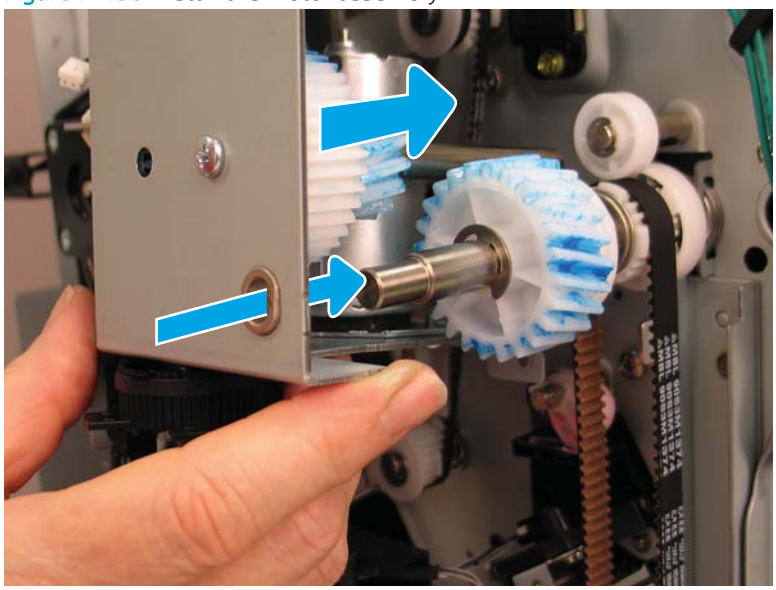
b. Align the flat edges on the bushing with the flat edges on the opening in the motor assembly bracket, and then install the bushing.

Figure 7-489 Install the bushing



c. Position the bushing over the shaft, and then install the motor assembly.

Figure 7-490 Install the motor assembly



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher front cover.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher front cover part number	
SAM-JC90-01478B	Finisher Sub - Cover F Bm

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

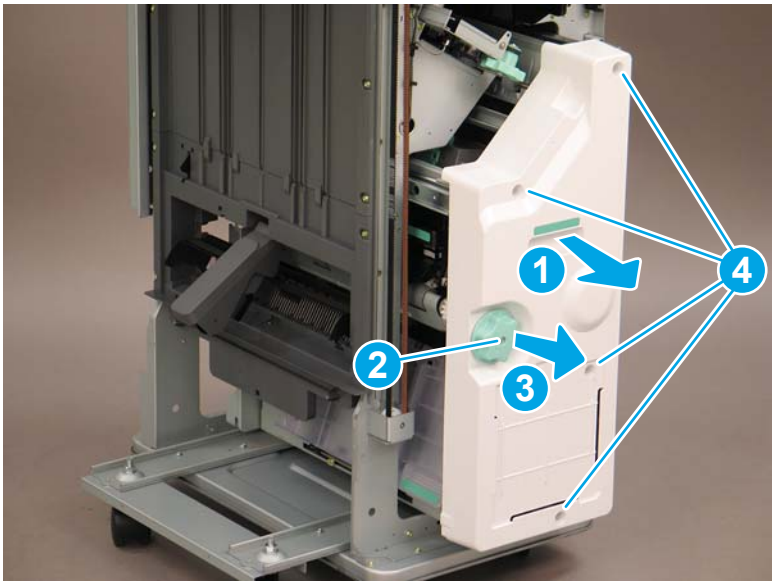
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-491 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher part number	
SAM-JC90-01416A	Finisher Sub - Booklet Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

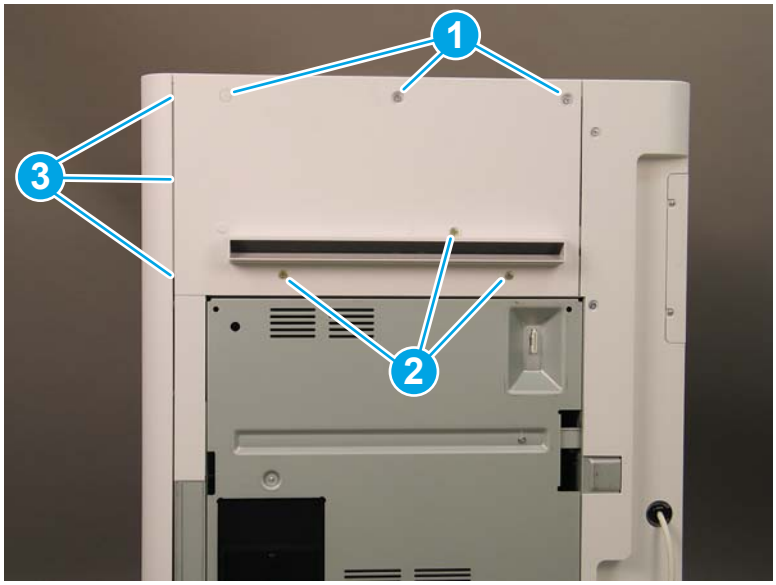
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

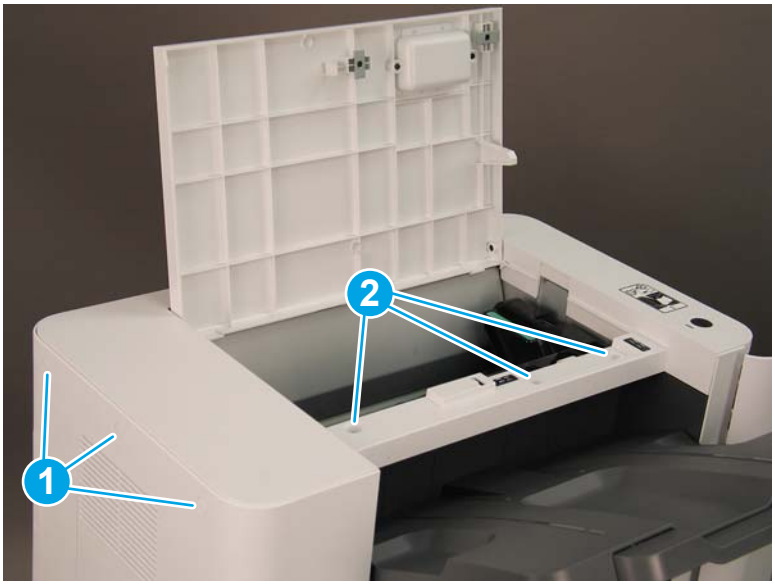
Figure 7-492 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

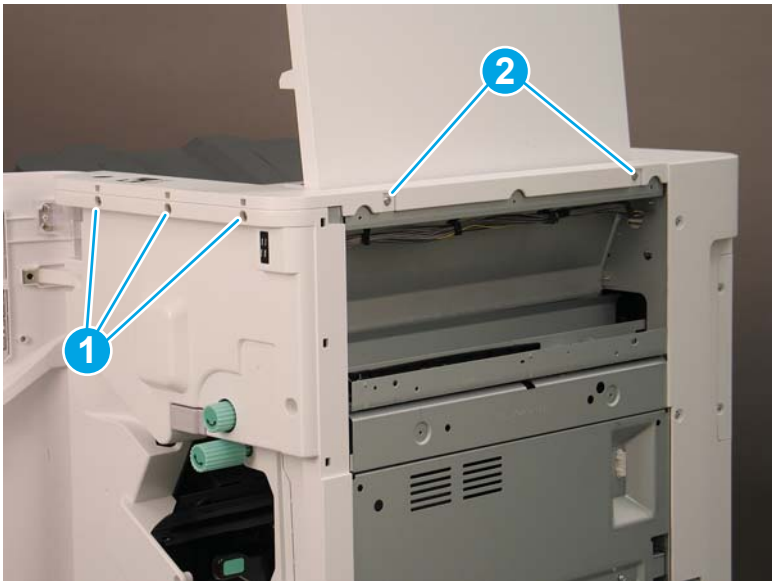
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-493 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

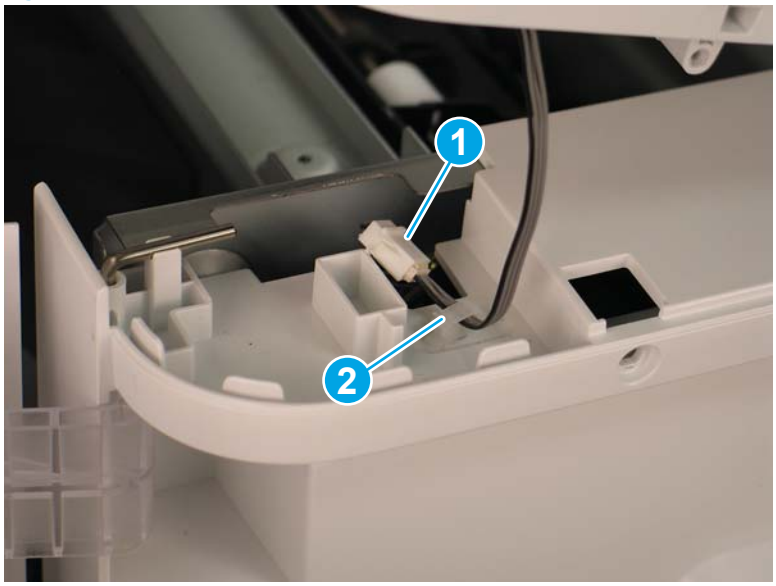
Figure 7-494 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-495 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

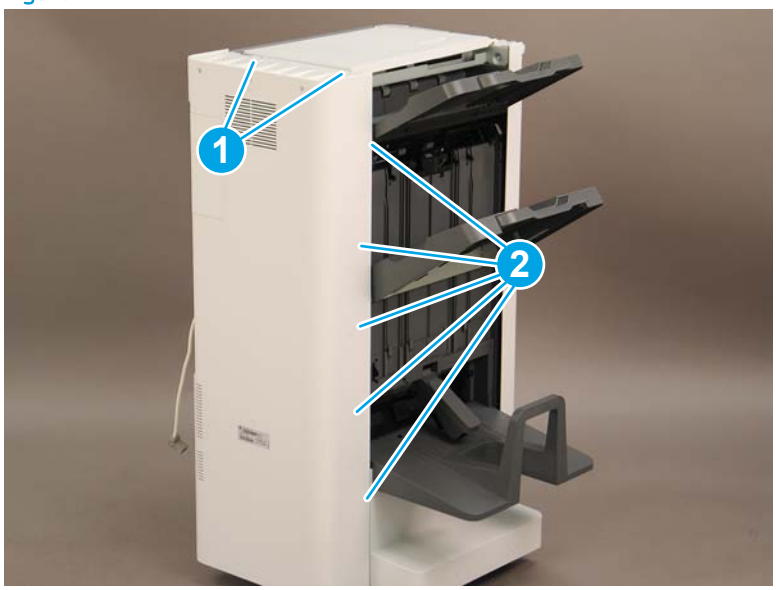


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-496 Remove seven screws

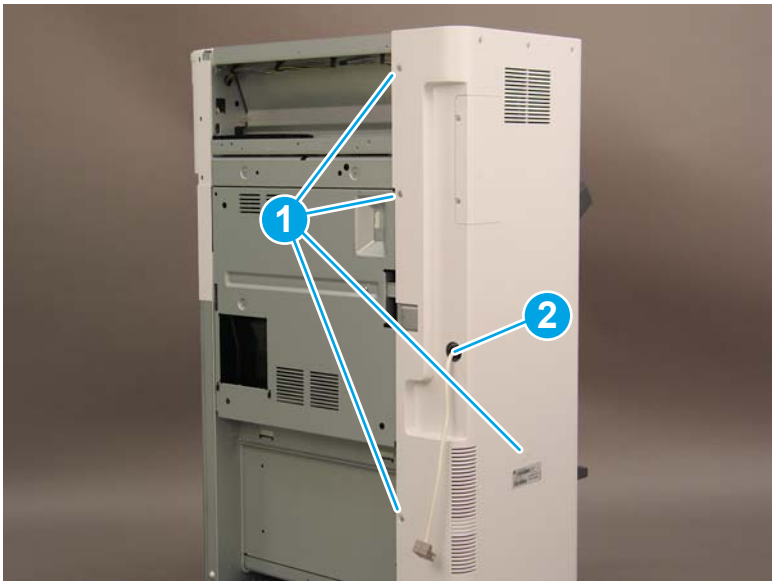


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-497 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

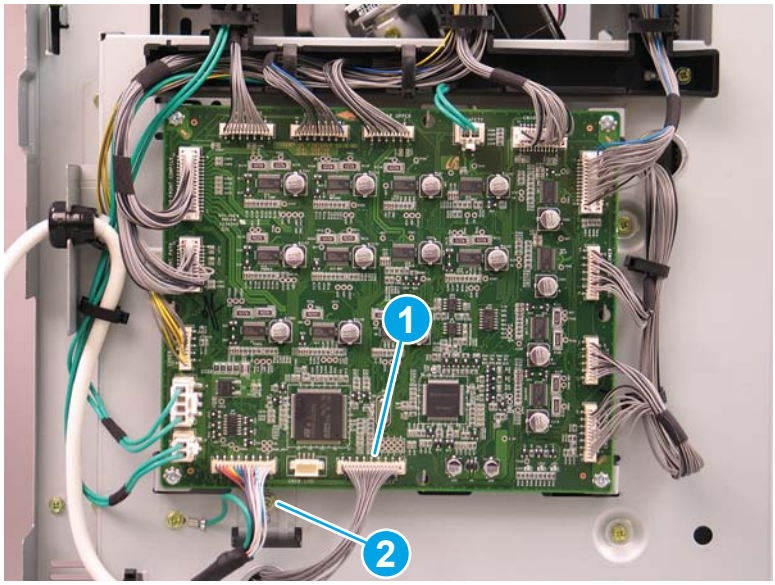
1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 7-498 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



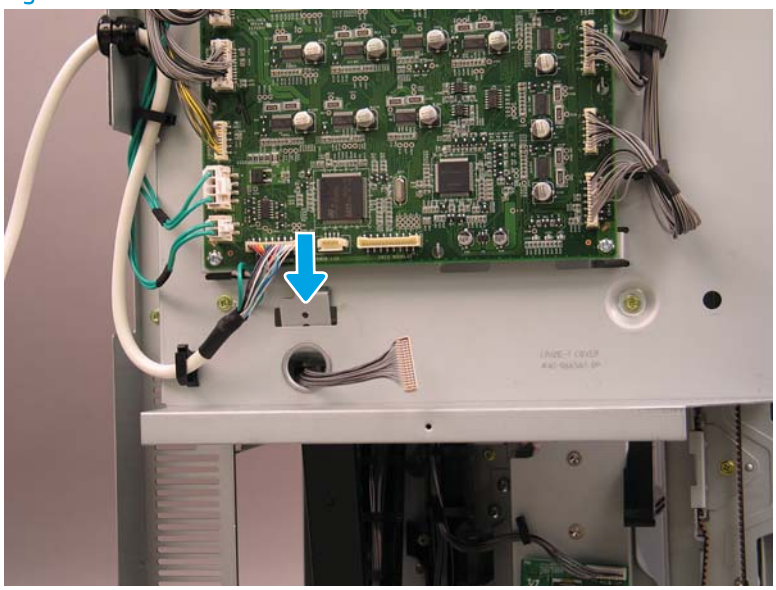
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 7-499 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



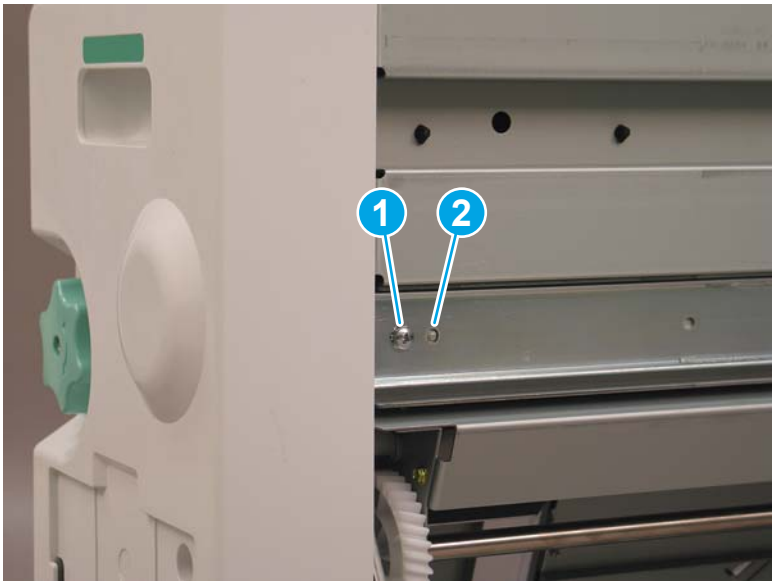
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 7-500 Release the metal bracket



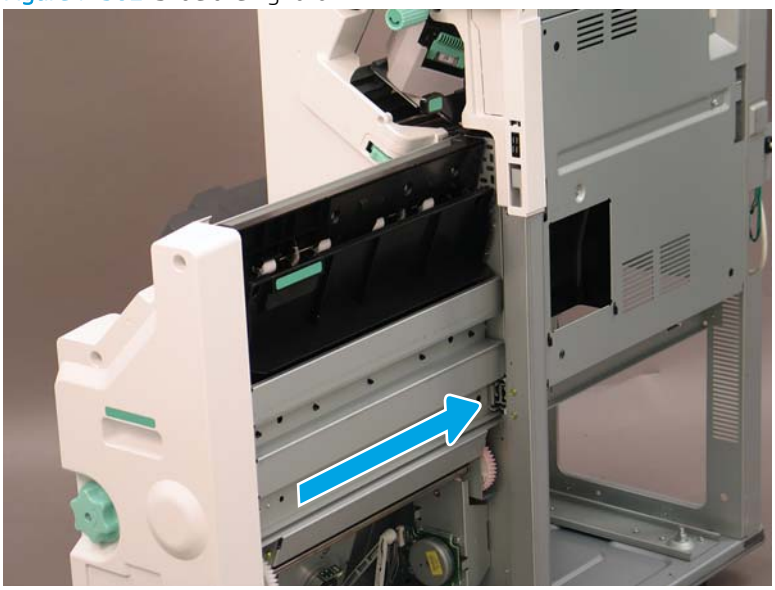
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-501 Remove one screw



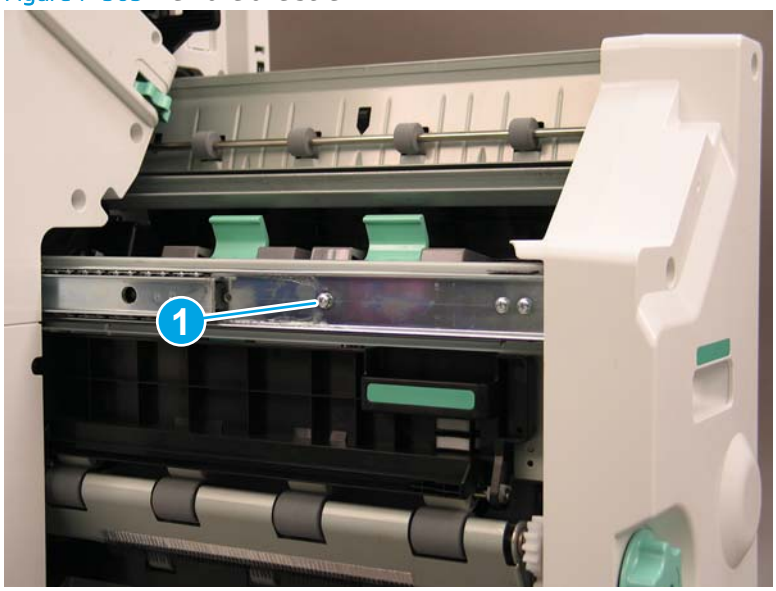
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 7-502 Slide the right rail



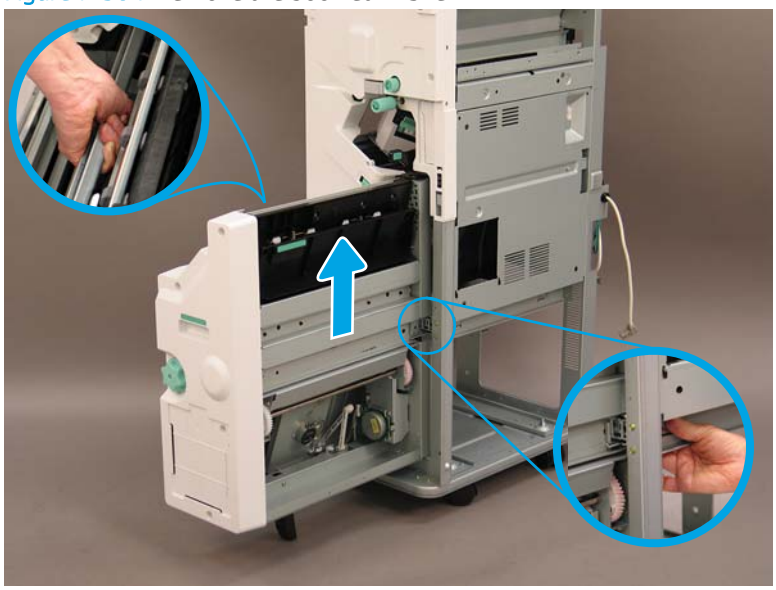
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-503 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-504 Remove the booklet finisher



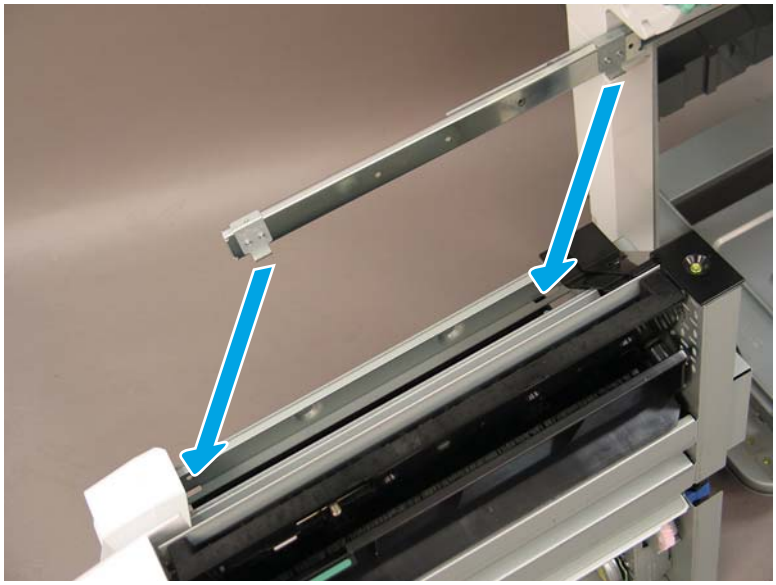
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

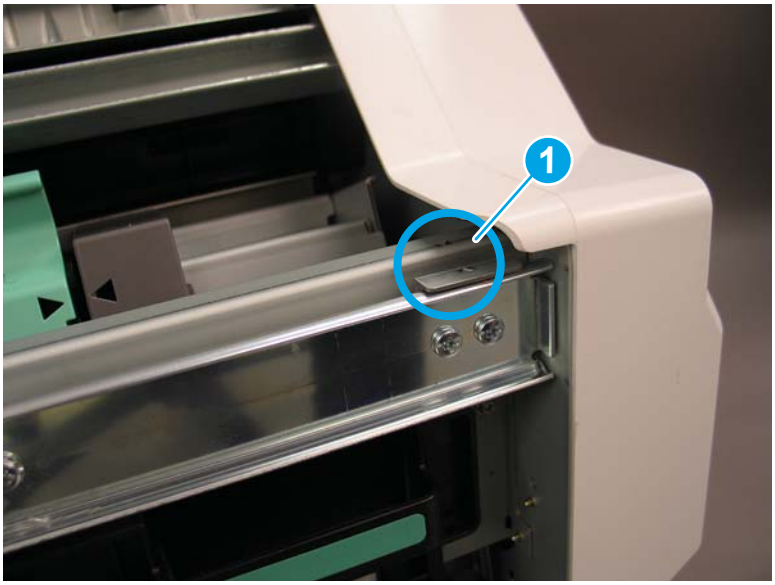
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-505 Position the hooks



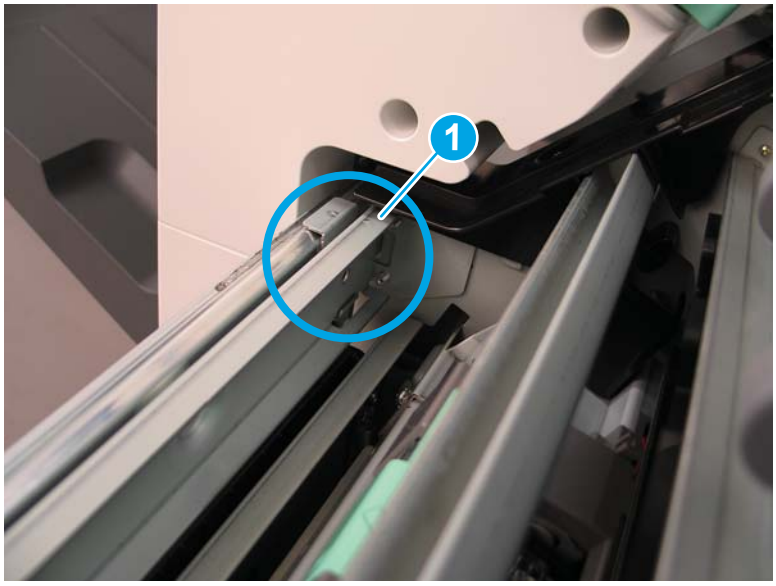
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-506 Align arrows



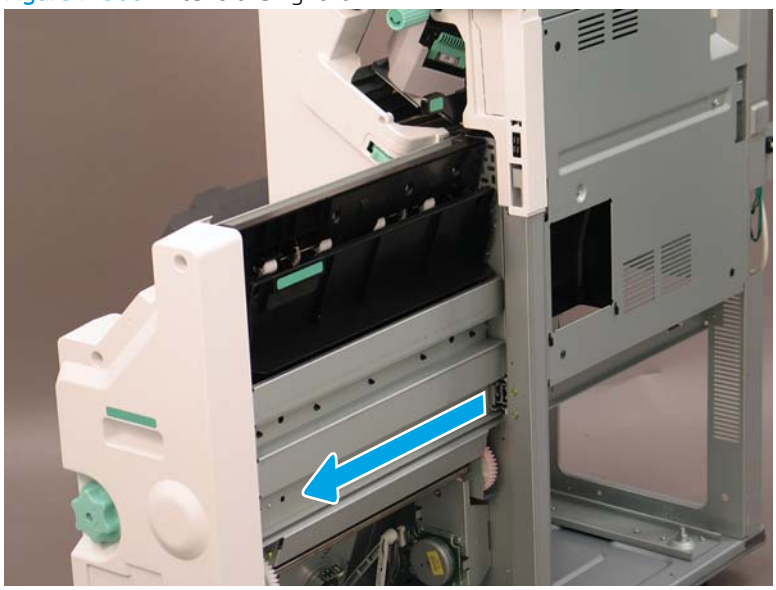
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-507 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

Figure 7-508 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher PCA

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher PCA part number	
XXXXX	Booklet finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.

- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

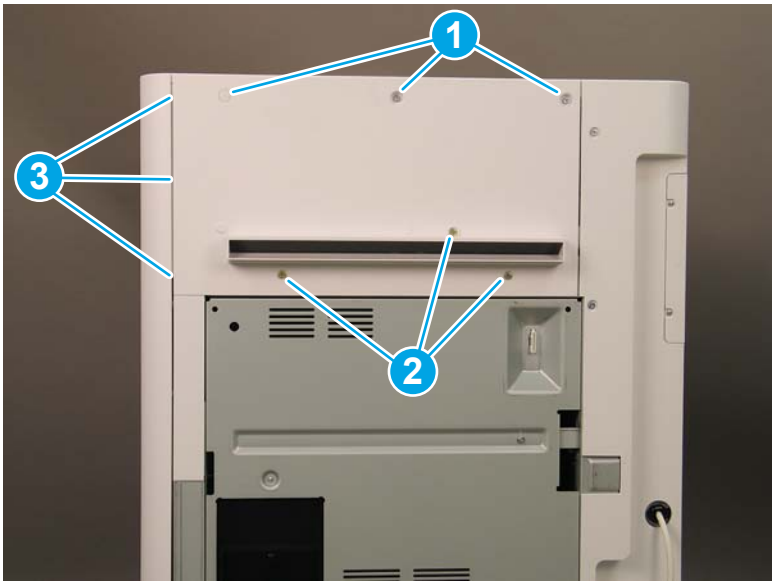
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

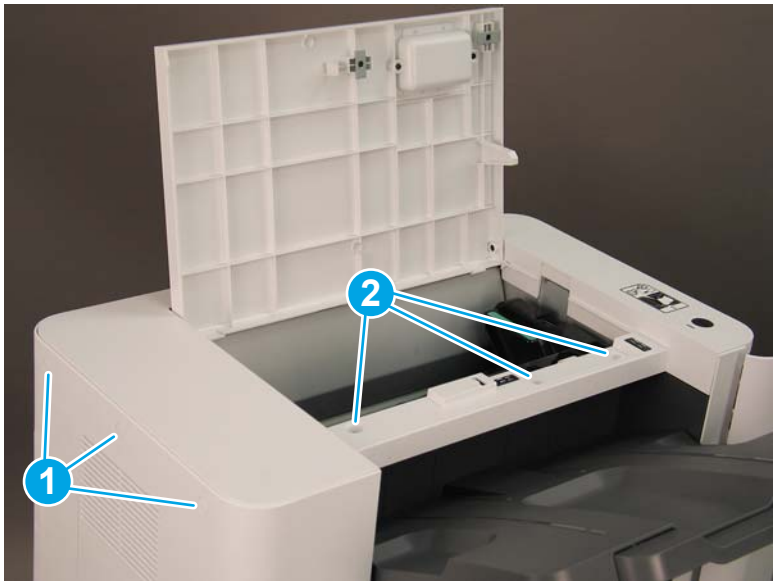
Figure 7-509 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

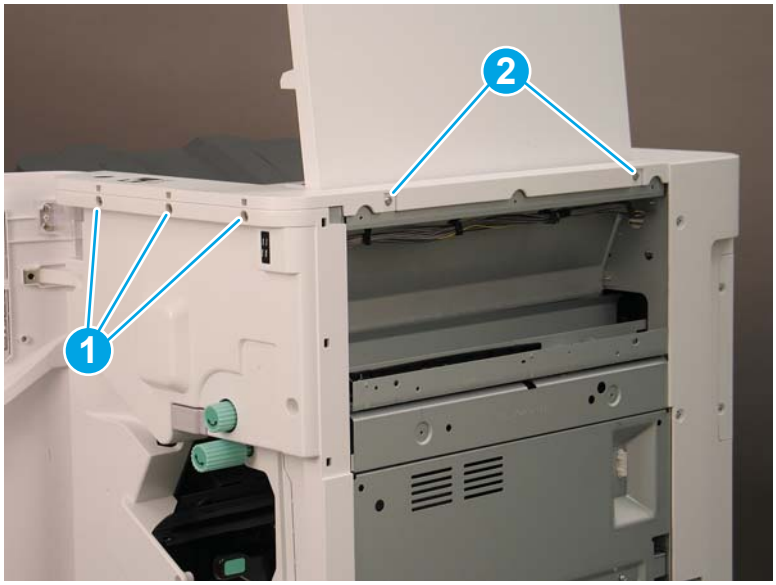
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-510 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

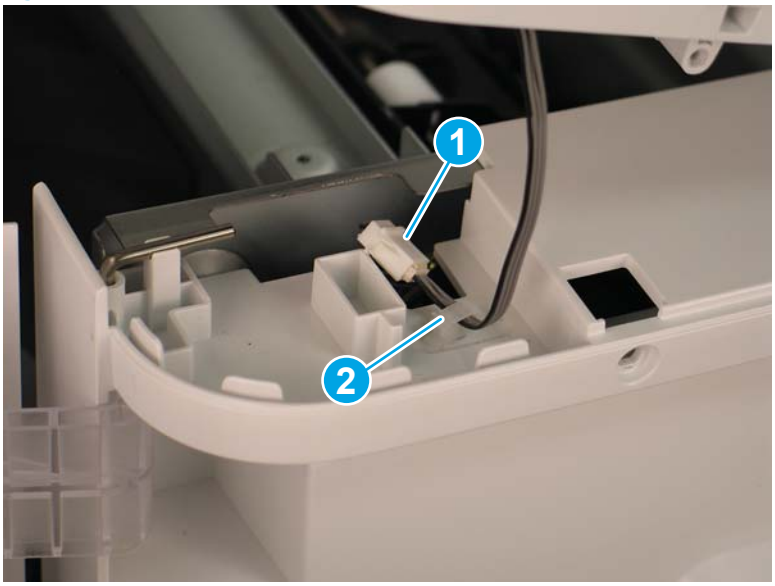
Figure 7-511 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-512 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

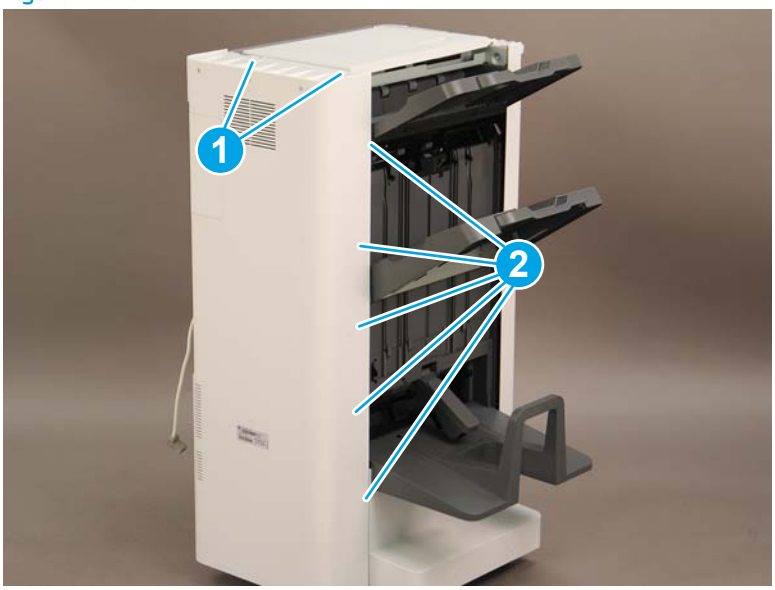


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-513 Remove seven screws

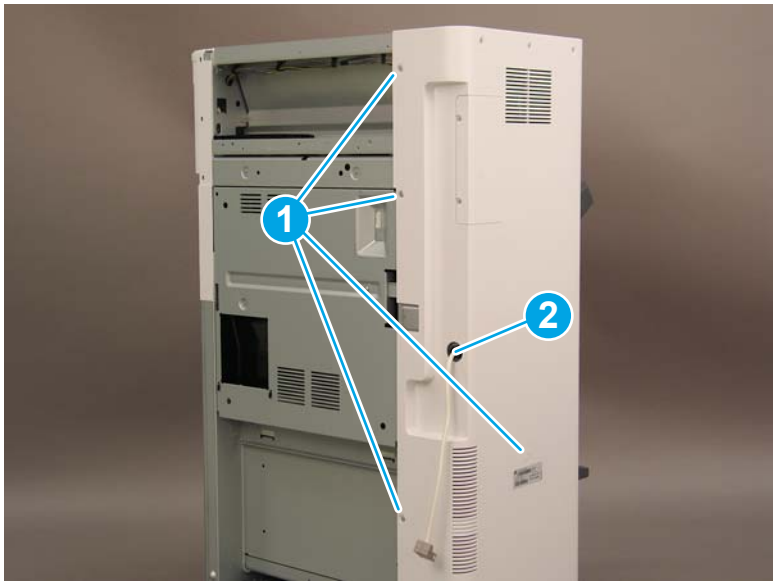


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-514 Remove four screws and the rear cover



Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher

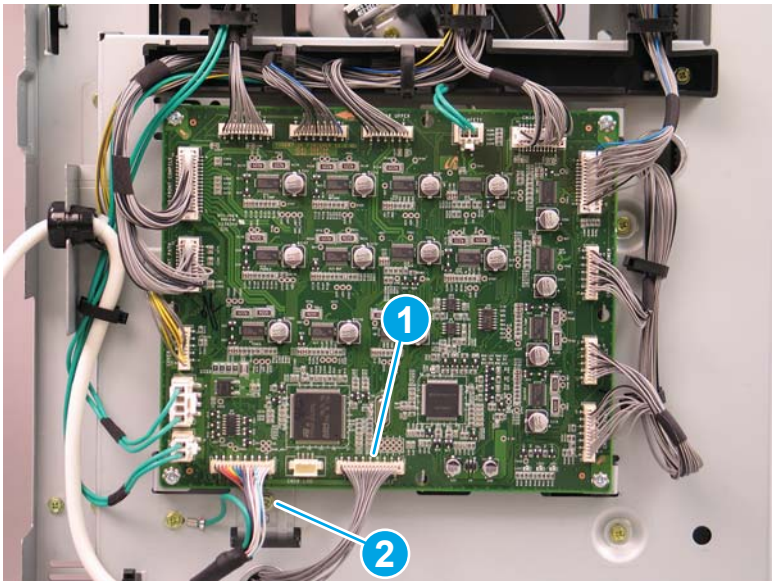
1. Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher.

Figure 7-515 Slide the booklet finisher away from the finisher



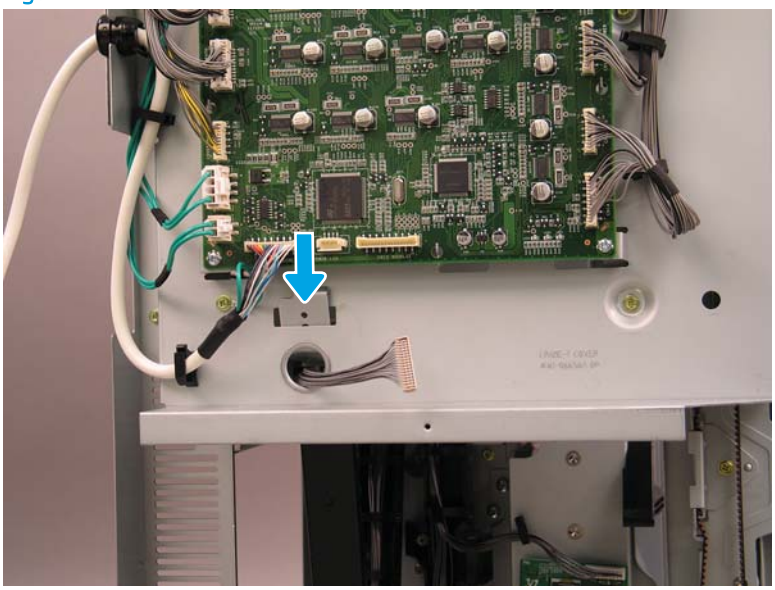
2. At the Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 7-516 Disconnect one connector and remove one screw



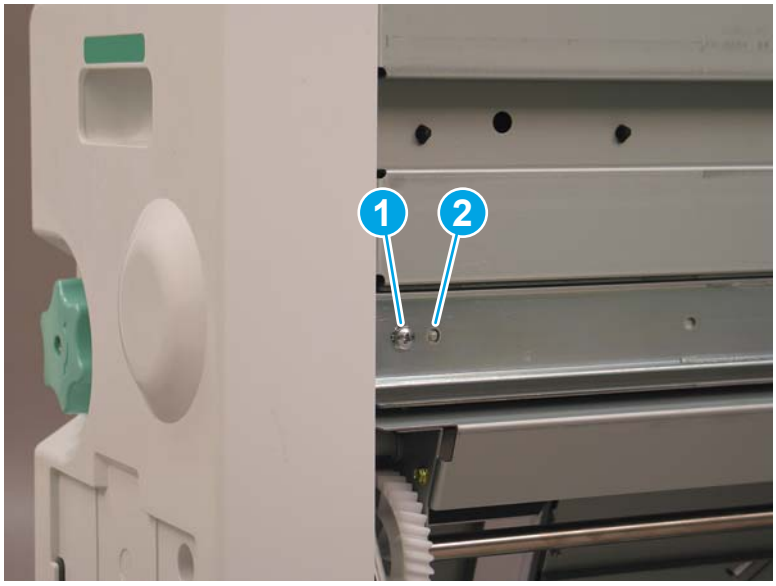
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet metal.

Figure 7-517 Release the metal bracket



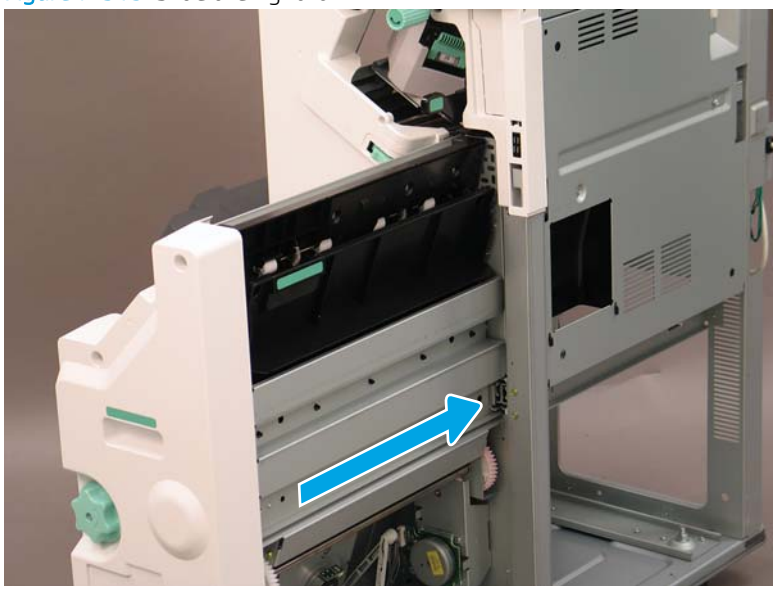
4. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2) on the right side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-518 Remove one screw



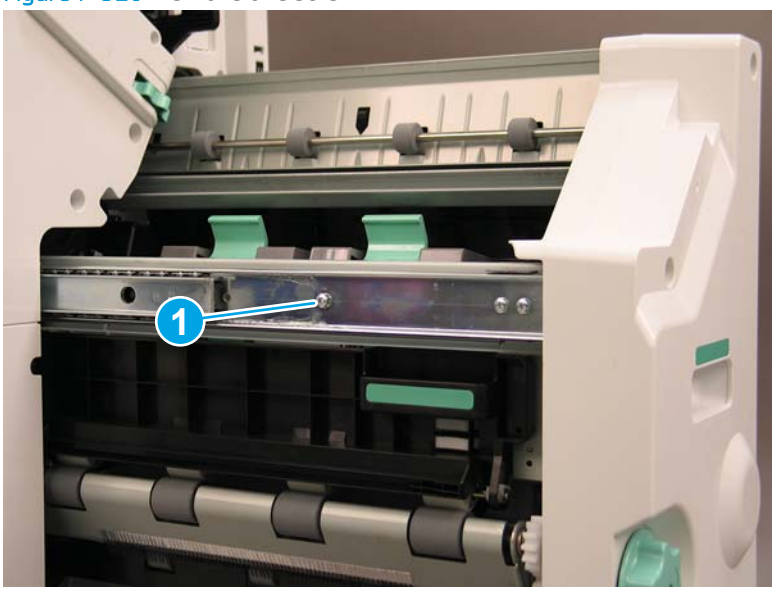
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 7-519 Slide the right rail



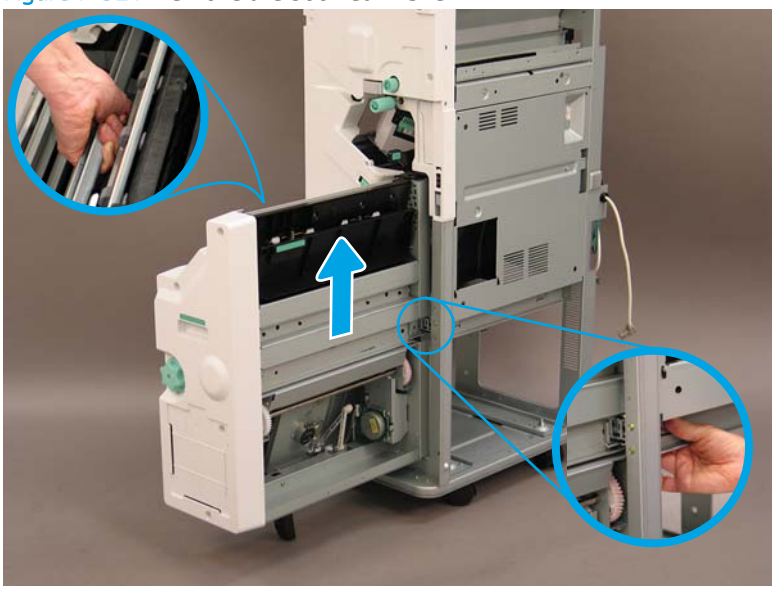
6. Remove one star-washer screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-520 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet finisher up on the left side while squeezing the right rail away from the finisher slightly to clear the sheet metal. Remove the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-521 Remove the booklet finisher



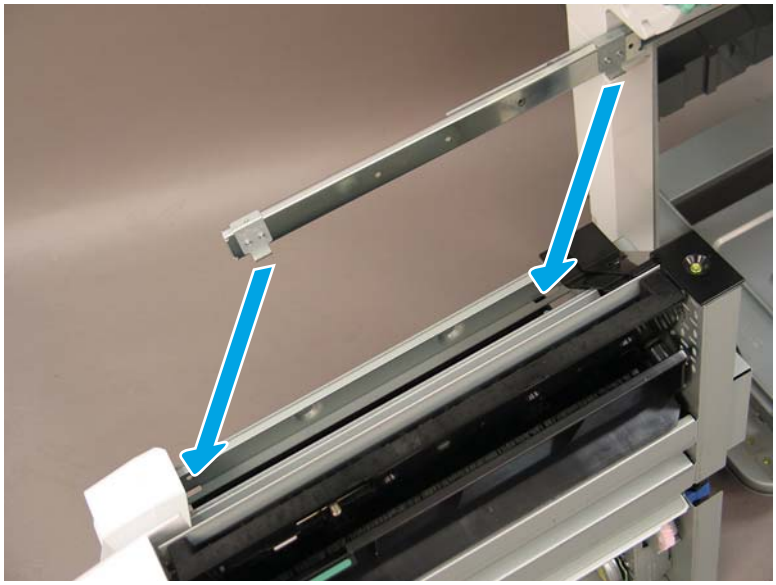
8. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Booklet finisher

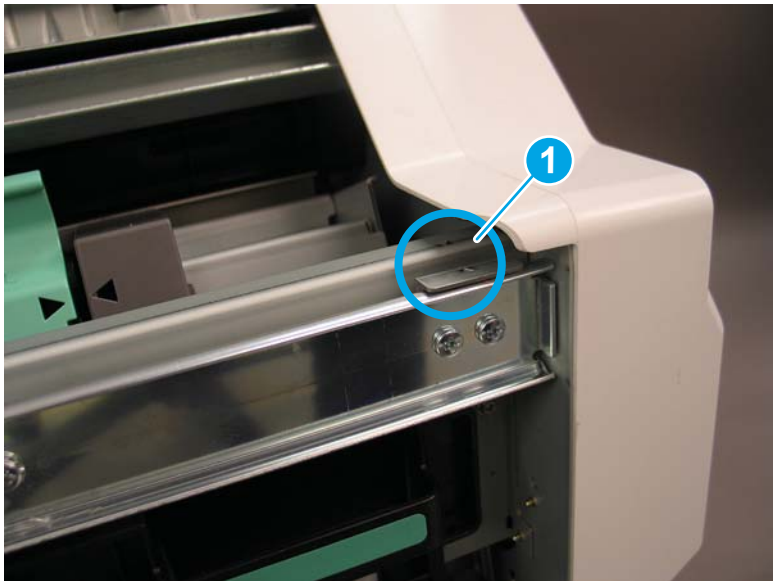
- When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet finisher.

Figure 7-522 Position the hooks



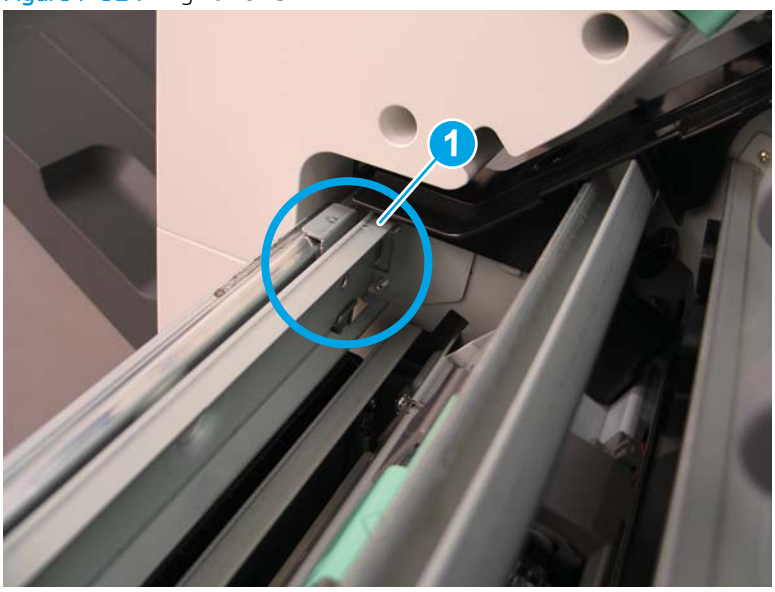
9. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-523 Align arrows



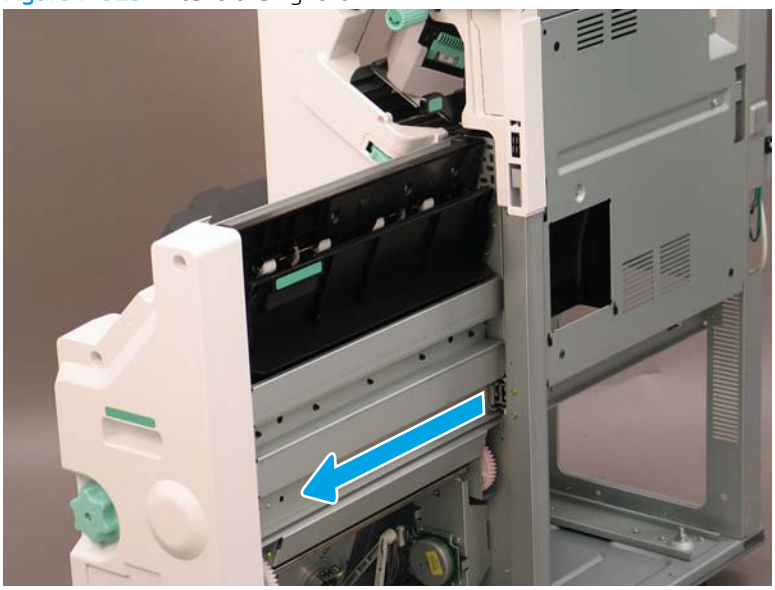
10. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet finisher aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail.

Figure 7-524 Align arrows



11. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet finisher slot.

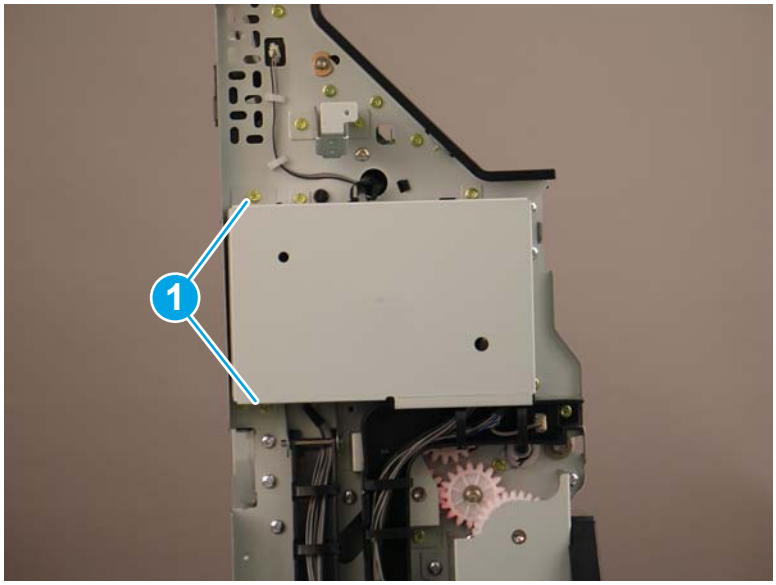
Figure 7-525 Extend the right rail



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher PCA

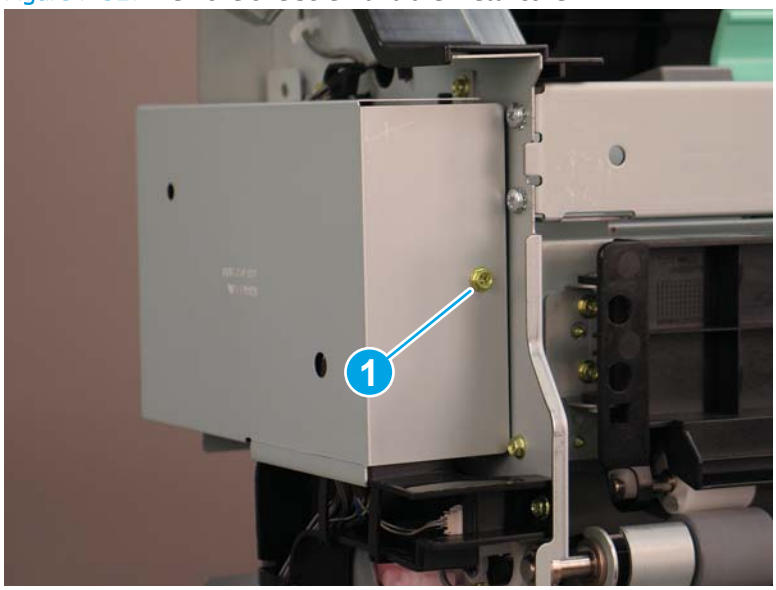
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-526 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the metal cover.

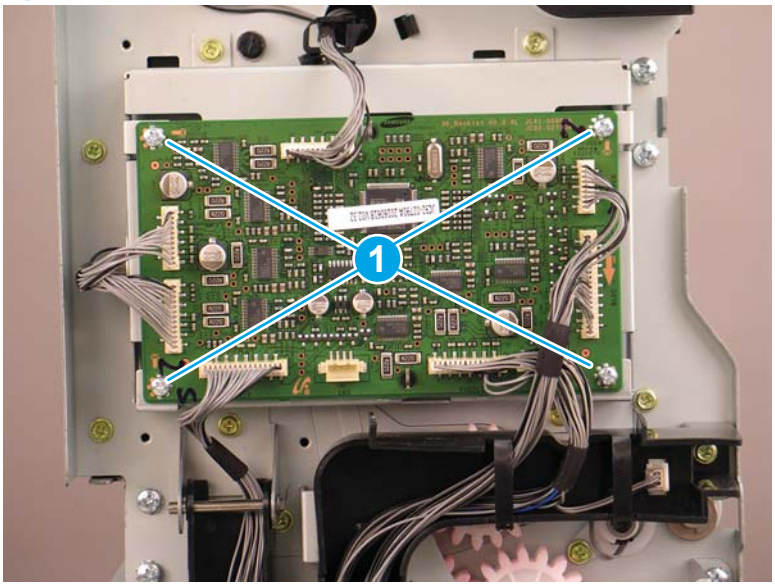
Figure 7-527 Remove one screw and the metal cover



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-528 Remove four screws and the PCA



Step 6: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold stopper unit.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet finisher fold stopper unit part number	
SAM-JC90-01432A	Finisher Sub - Face Down Stopper Unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

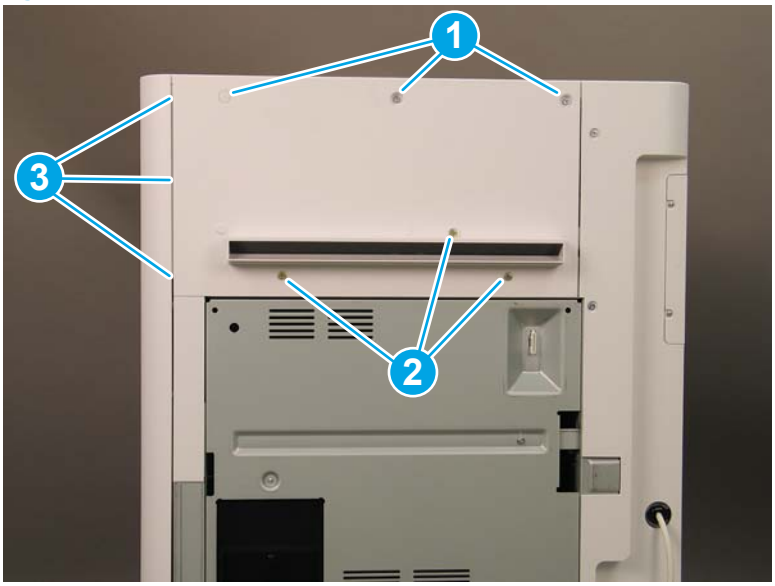
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

▲ Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

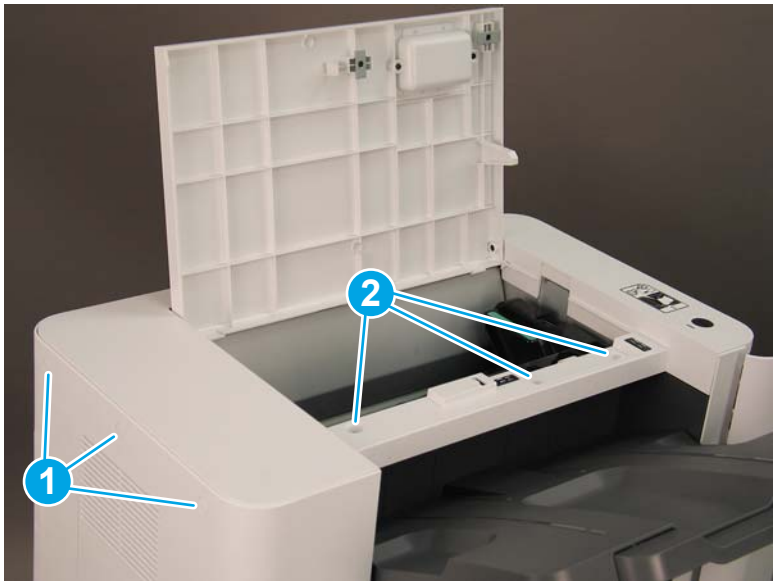
Figure 7-529 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

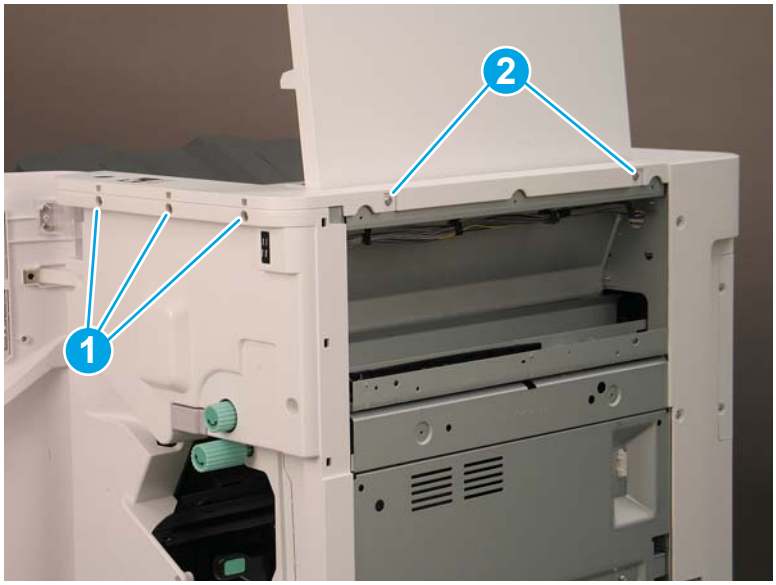
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-530 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

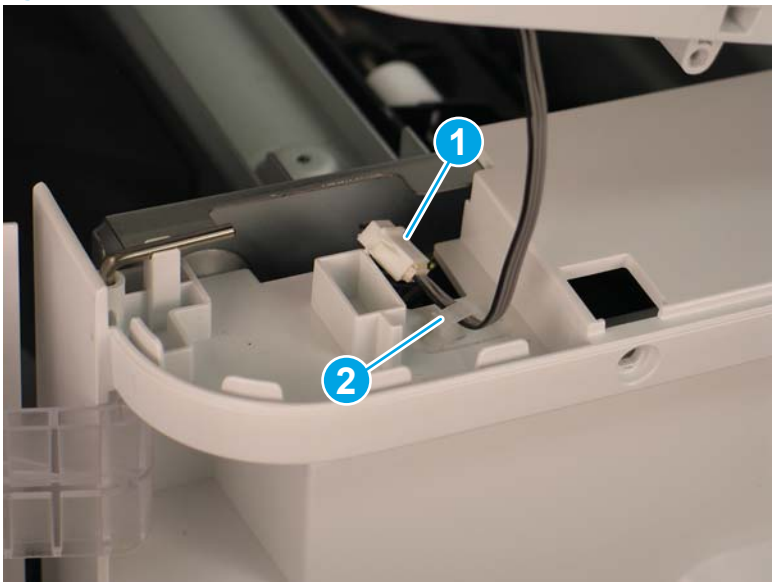
Figure 7-531 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-532 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

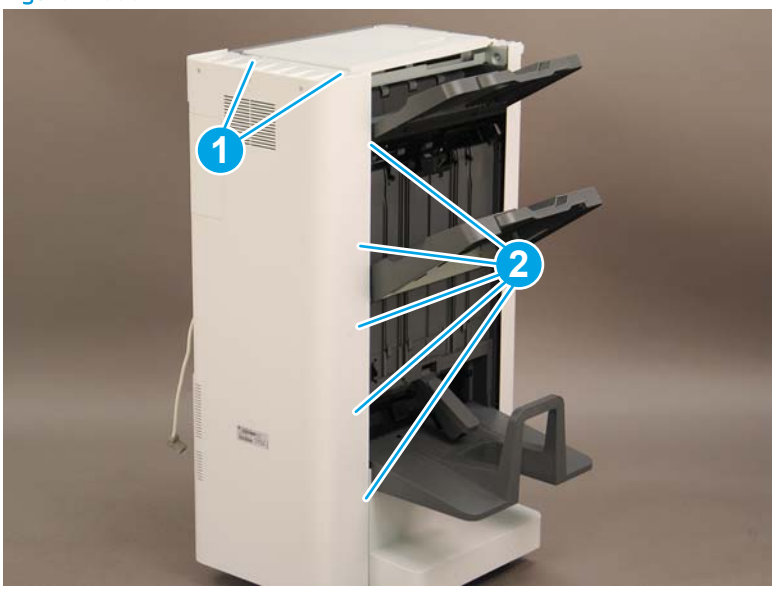


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-533 Remove seven screws

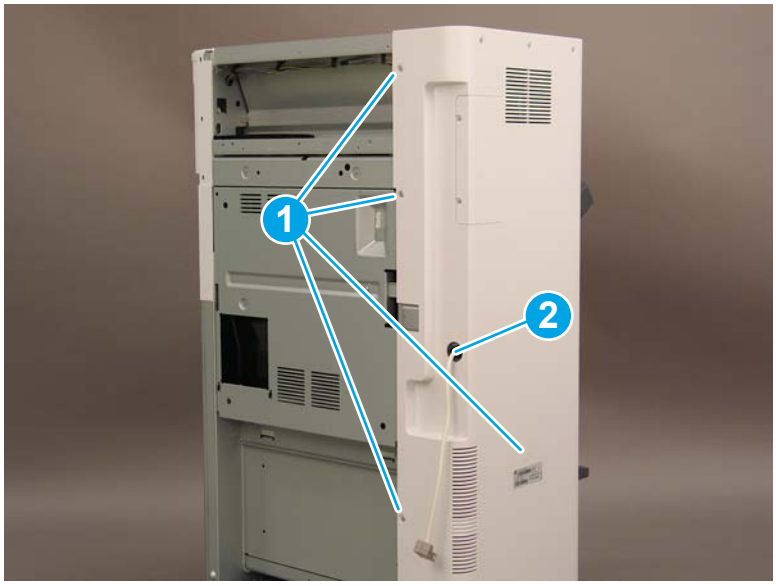


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-534 Remove four screws and the rear cover

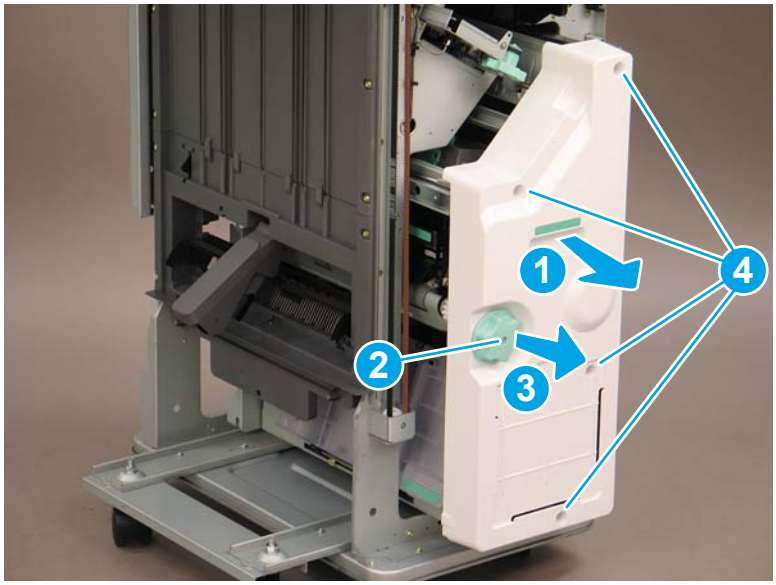


Step 4: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

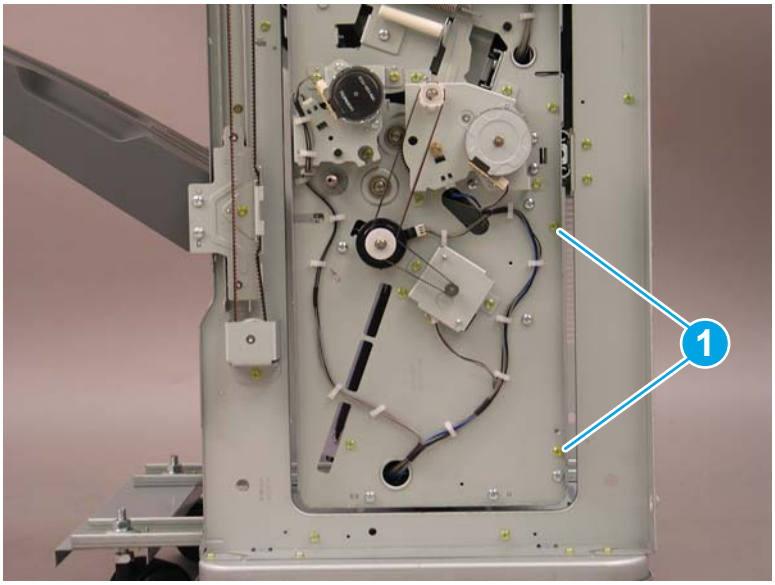
Figure 7-535 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 5: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

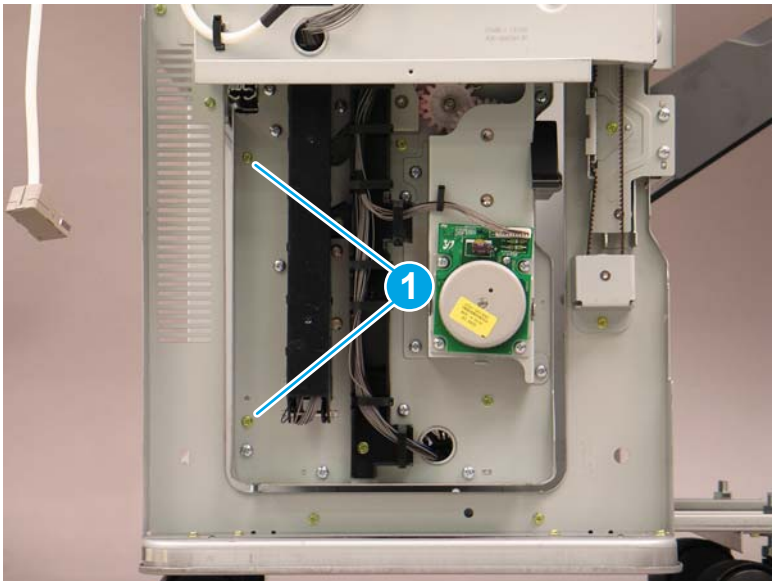
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-536 Remove two screws



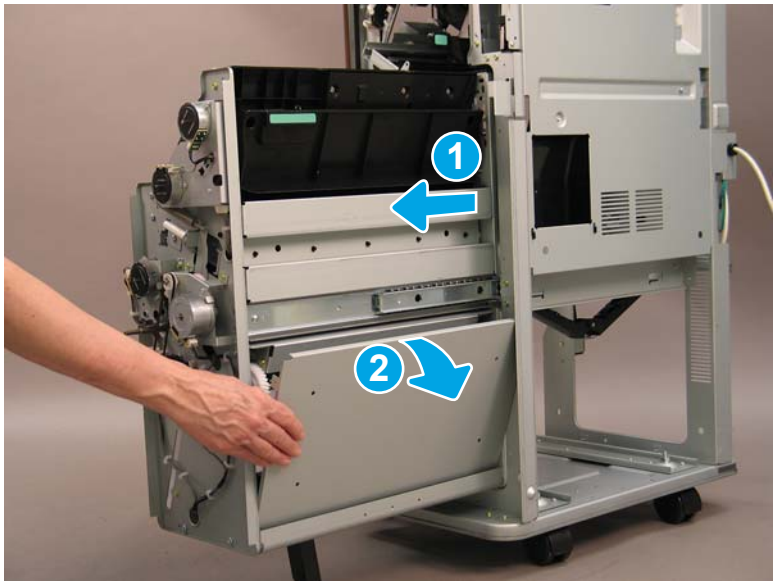
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-537 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

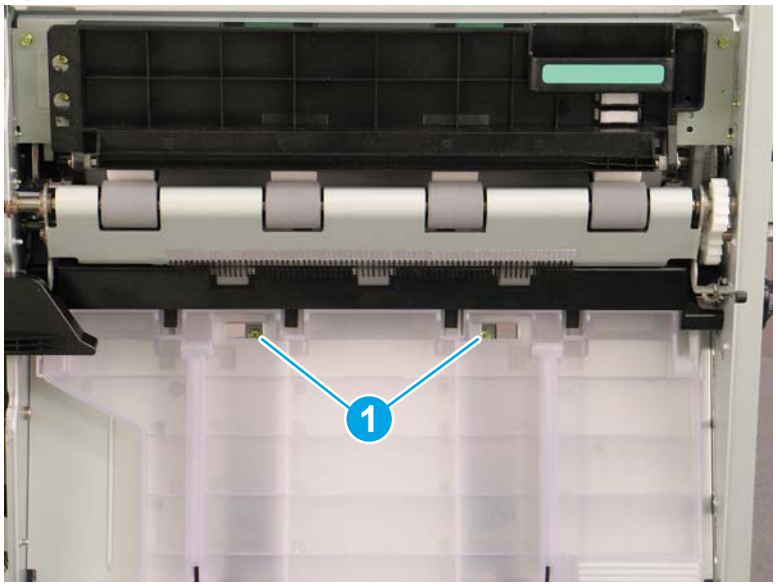
Figure 7-538 Remove the lower right shield



Step 6: Remove the fold stopper unit

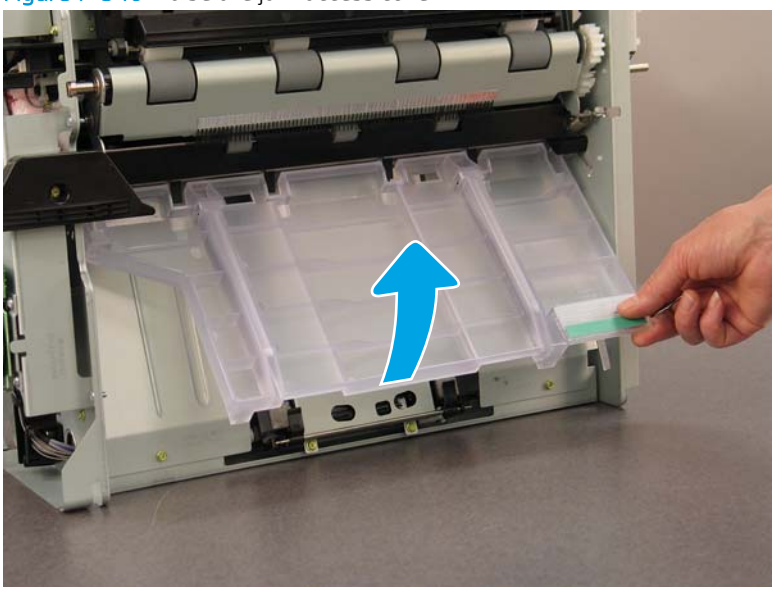
1. On the left side of the booklet finisher, remove two screws through access openings in the jam access cover (callout 1).

Figure 7-539 Remove two screws



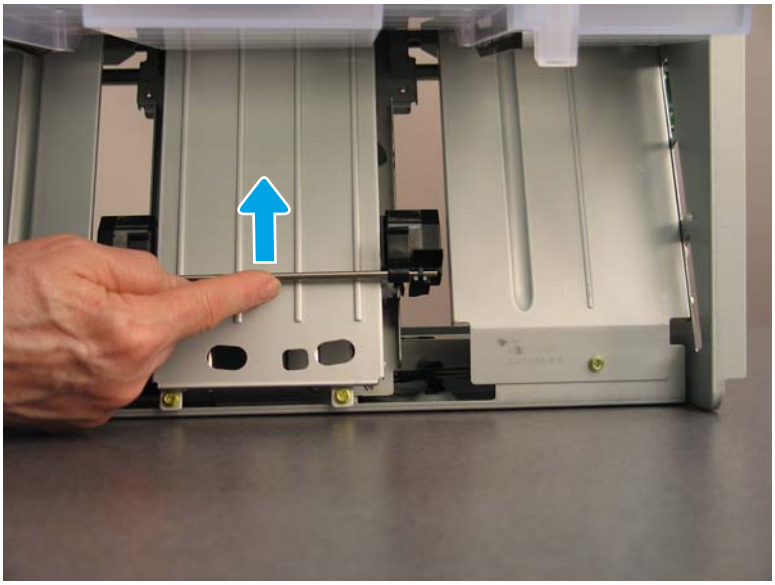
2. Raise the jam access cover.

Figure 7-540 Raise the jam access cover



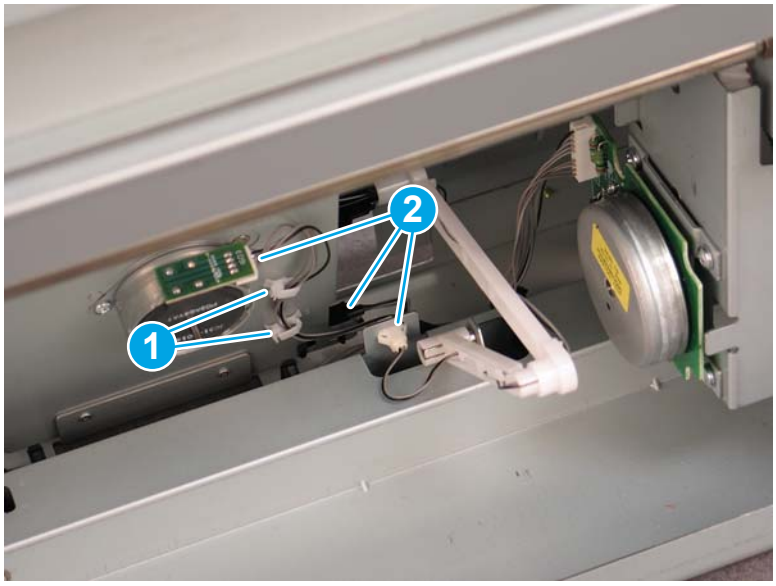
3. Raise the booklet width guide.

Figure 7-541 Raise the booklet width guide



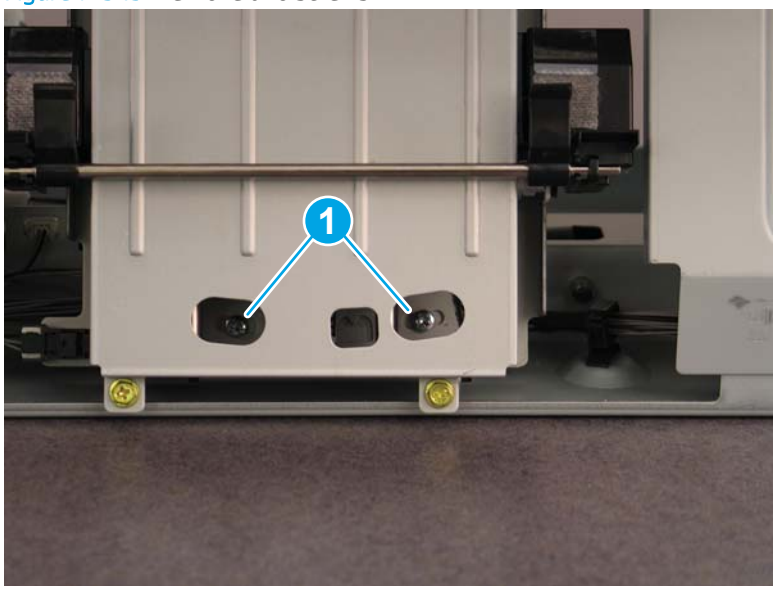
4. On the right side of the booklet finisher, open two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 7-542 Disconnect three connectors



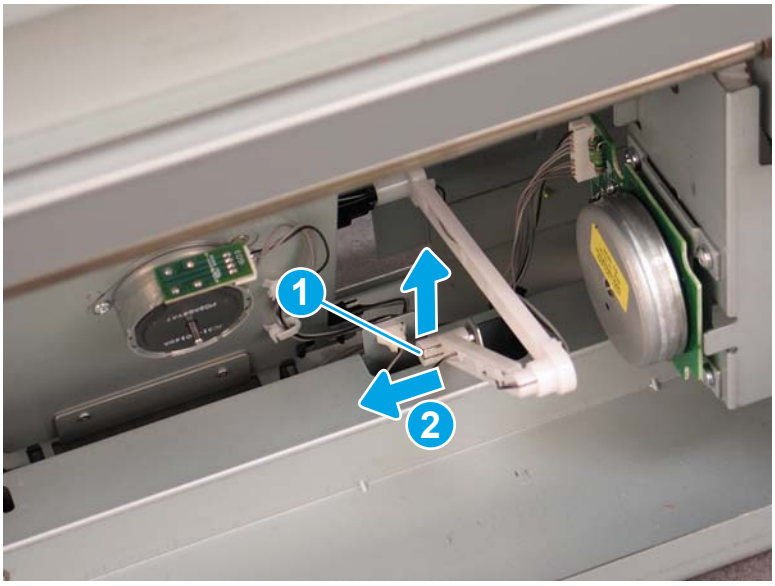
5. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-543 Remove two screws



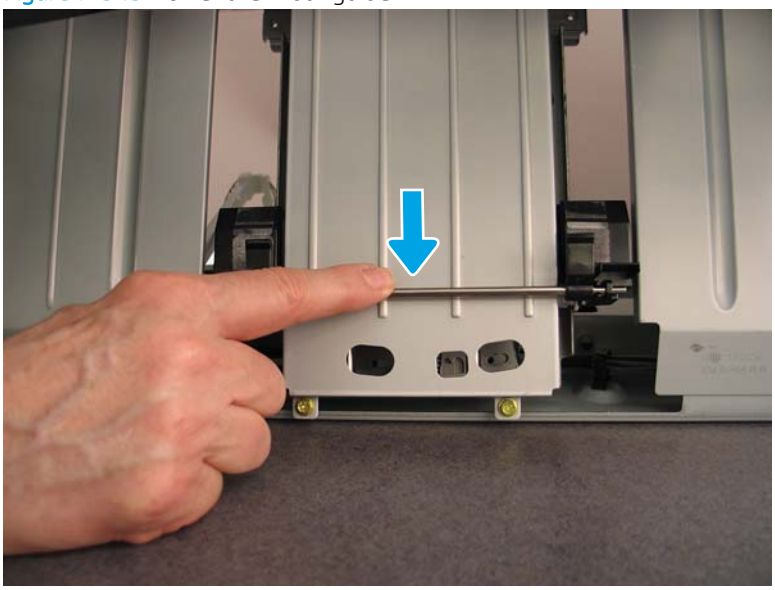
6. Release the tab (callout 1) on the guide arm, and then slide the guide off of the shaft (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-544 Release the guide arm



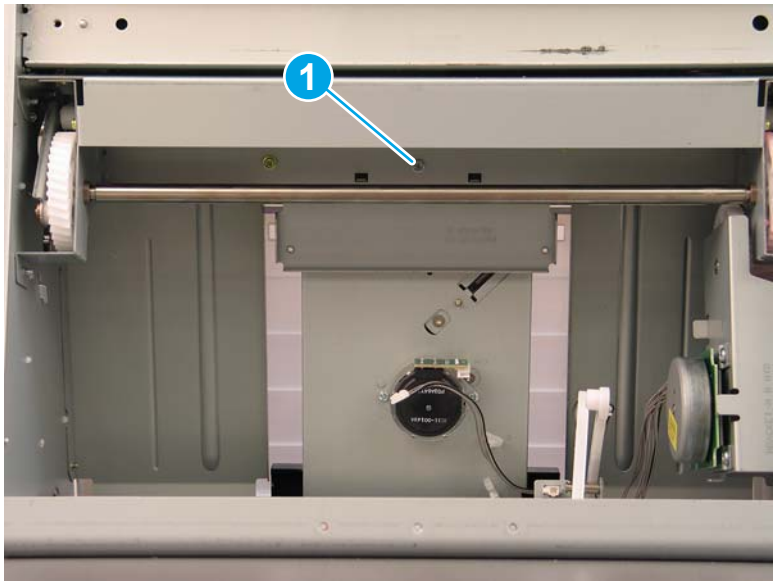
7. Lower the width guide to the lowest position.

Figure 7-545 Lower the width guide



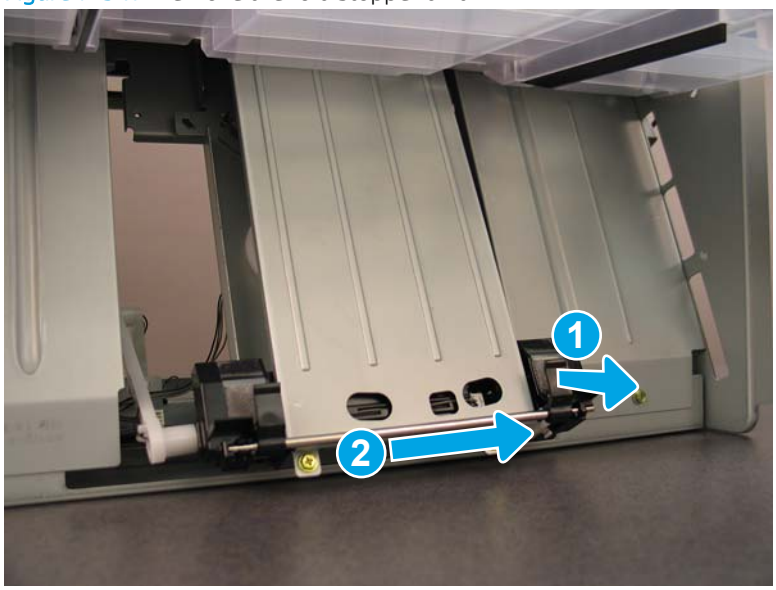
8. On the right side of the booklet finisher, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 7-546 Remove one screw



9. Lift the right lower corner (callout 1) to clear the cable guide, and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 7-547 Remove the fold stopper unit



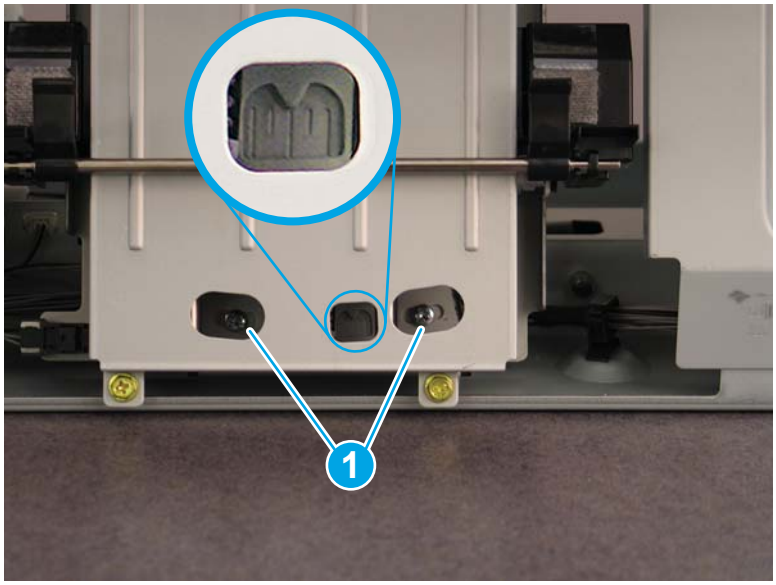
10. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: Fold stopper unit

- Loosen the two alignment screws (callout 1) and move the fold unit side to side to until the alignment gauge is positioned on the center line. Tighten the screws and run a folded job through the finisher and verify that the fold is correct. If the fold is not correct, loosen the screws, adjust the alignment, and run another fold job. Continue this process until the fold is correct.

Figure 7-548 Adjust the alignment gauge



Step 7: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the booklet feed entrance motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Booklet feed entrance motor (M13) part number	
SAM-JC93-01152A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

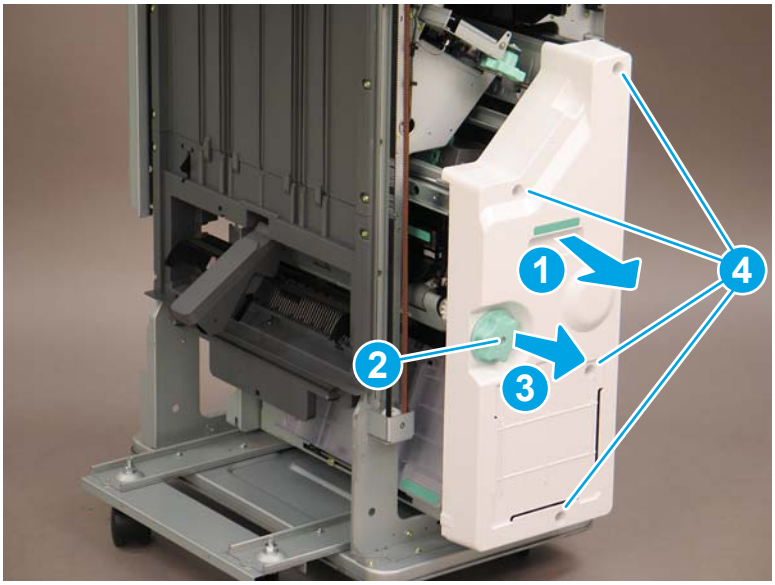
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-549 Remove five screws and the cover

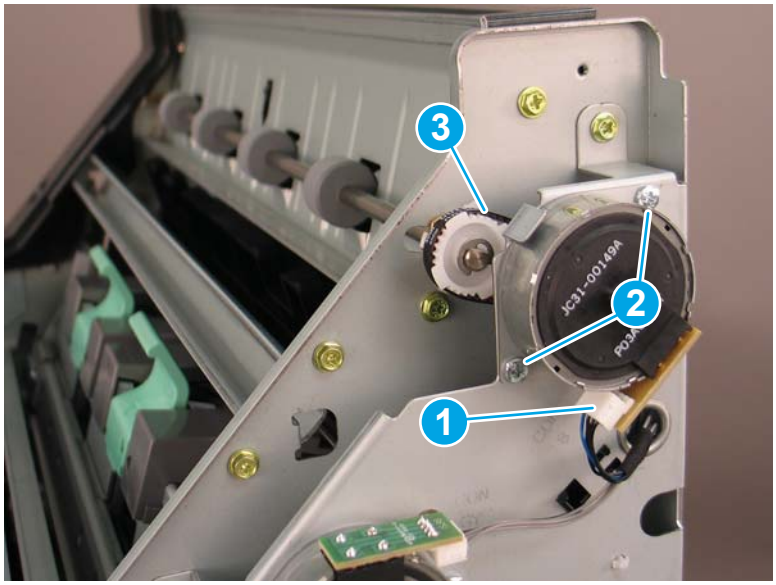


Step 2: Remove the booklet feed entrance motor (M13)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2). Lift the motor away from the booklet finisher and release the belt (callout 3) from the back of the motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-550 Remove the booklet feed entrance motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

TE presser motor (M14)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the TE presser motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

TE presser motor (M14) part number	
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

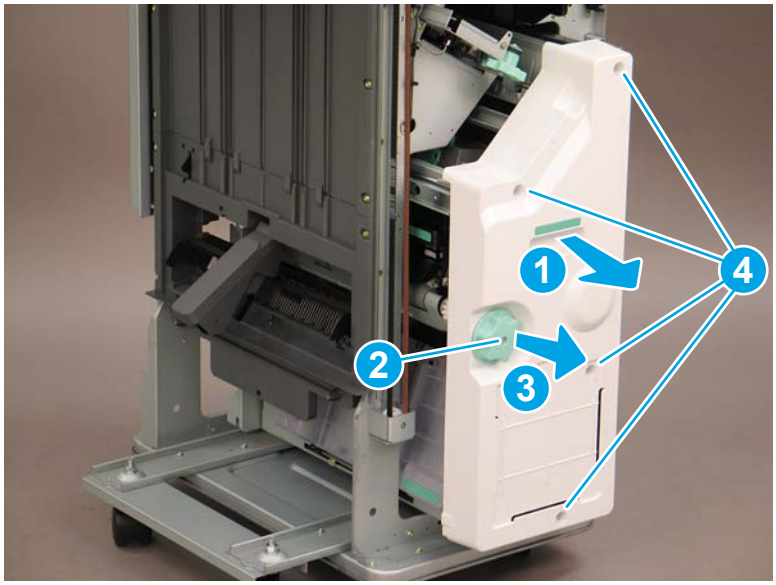
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-551 Remove five screws and the cover

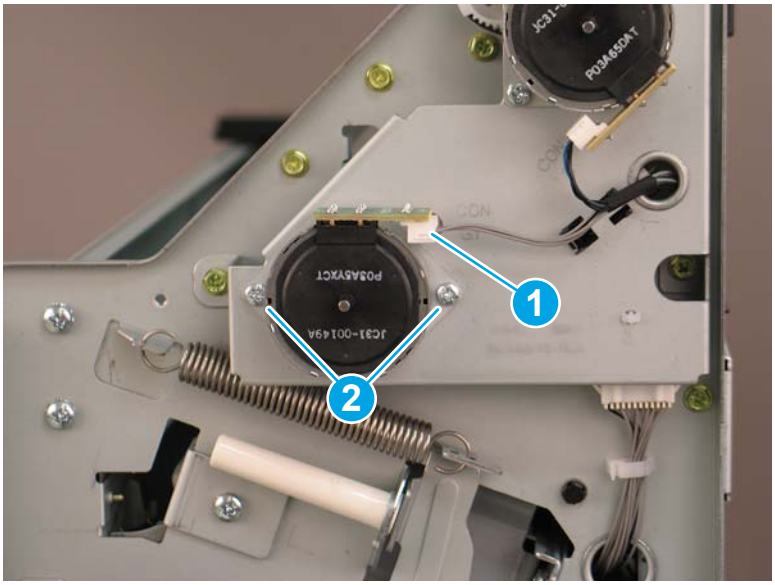


Step 2: Remove the TE presser motor (M14)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the TE presser motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-552 Remove the TE presser motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stopper moving motor (M16)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the stopper moving motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stopper moving motor (M16) part number	
SAM-JC93-01155A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

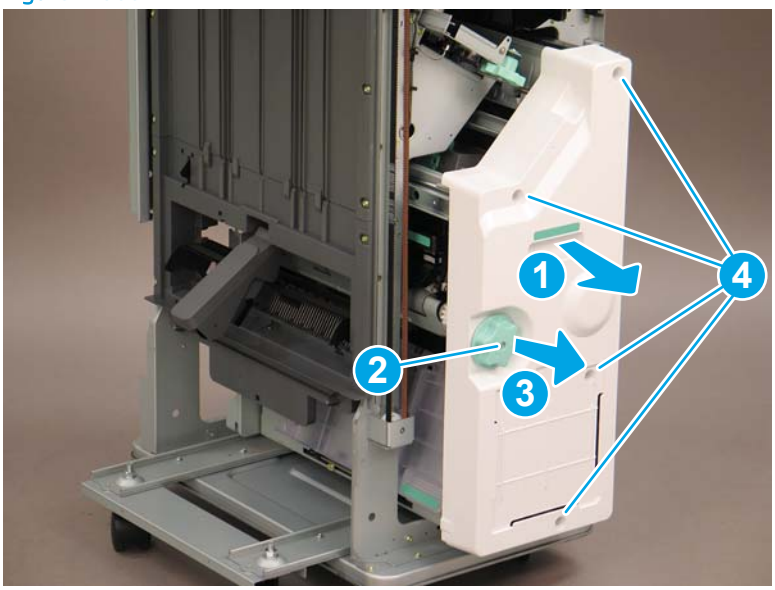
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

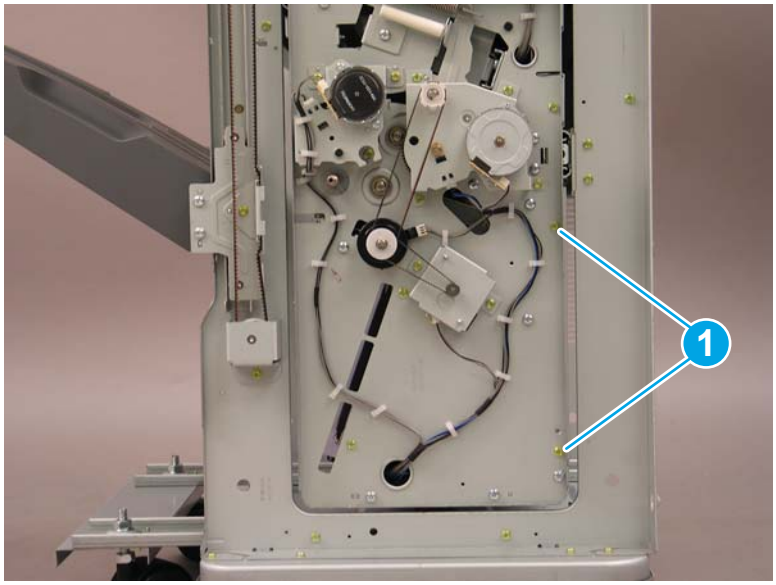
Figure 7-553 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

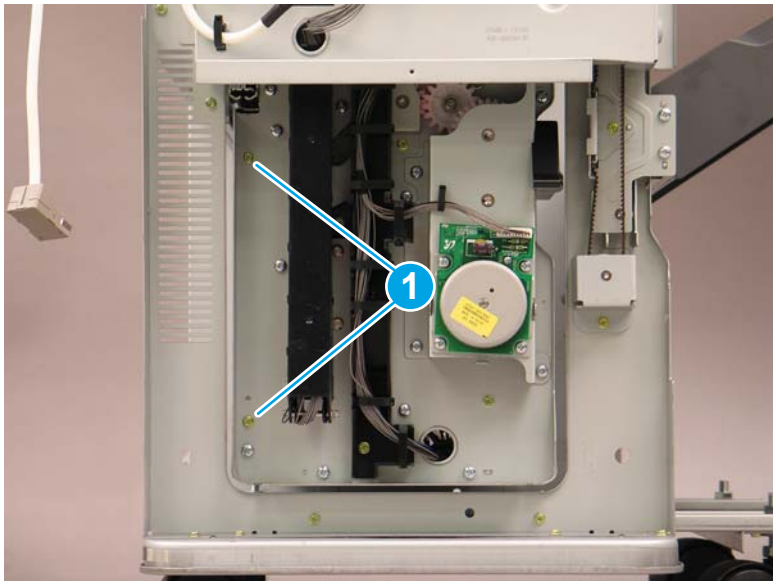
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-554 Remove two screws



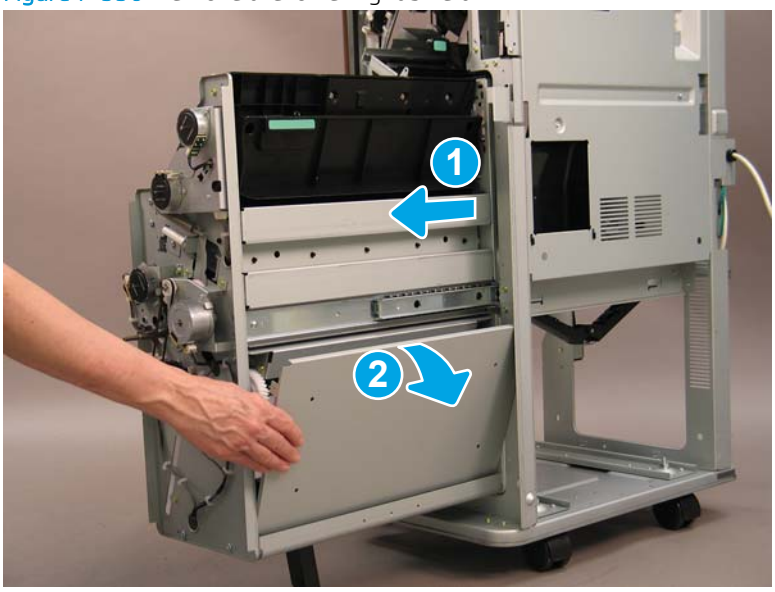
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-555 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-556 Remove the lower right shield

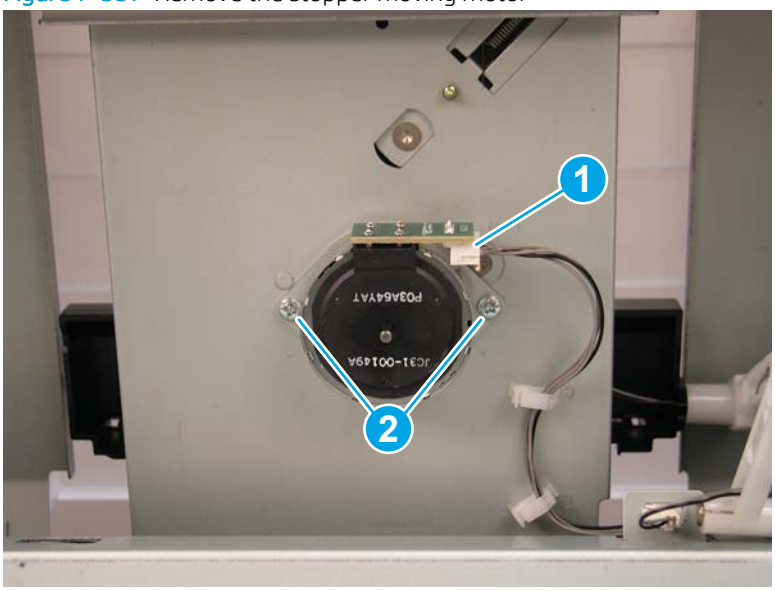


Step 3: Remove the stopper moving motor (M16)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stopper moving motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-557 Remove the stopper moving motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Separate pawl motor (M17)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the separate pawl motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Separate pawl motor (M17) part number	
SAM-JC93-01001A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

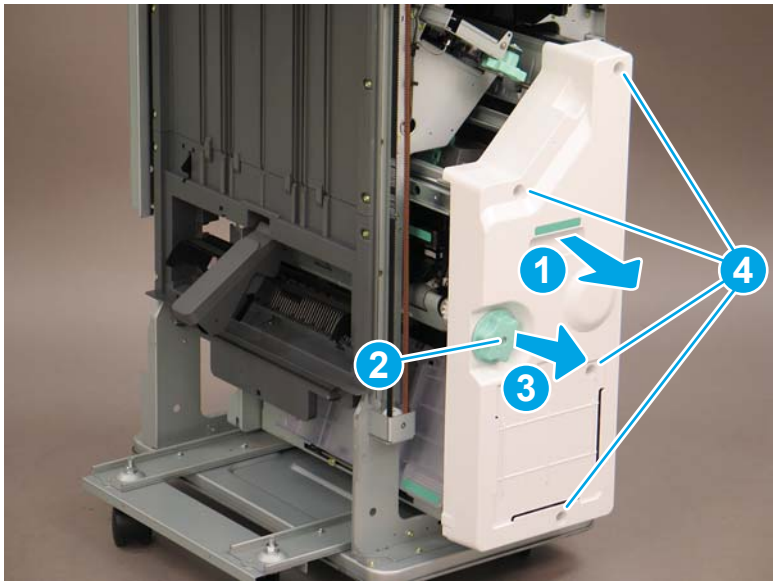
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-558 Remove five screws and the cover

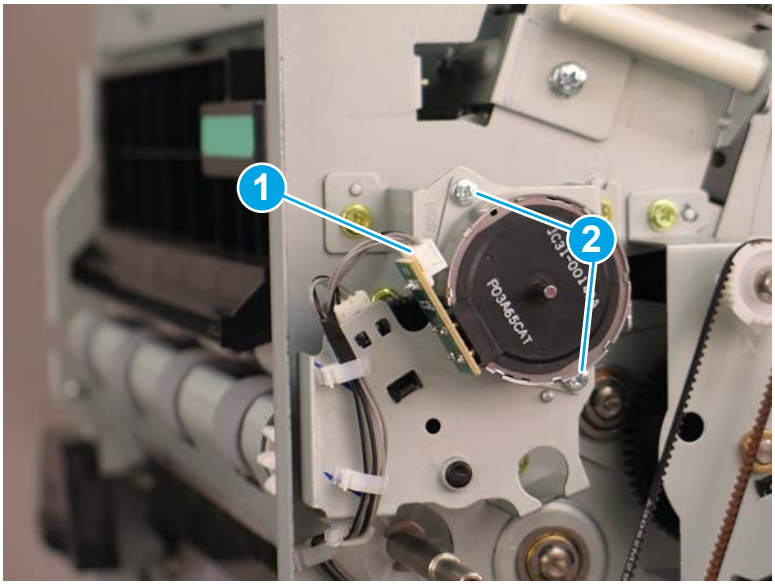


Step 2: Remove the separate pawl motor (M17)

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the separate pawl motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-559 Remove the separate pawl motor



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Folding roller motor (M18)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)
- Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)
- Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)
- Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the folding roller motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Folding roller motor (M18) part number	
SAM-JC31-00144B	Folding roller motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

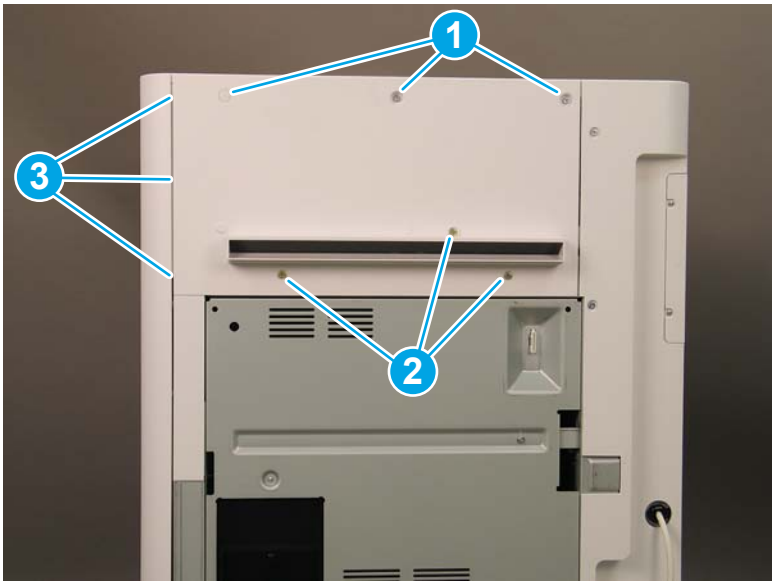
Step 1: Remove the right top cover (finisher)

- Remove one screw cap and three machine screws on the upper edge of the cover (callout 1). Remove three sheet metal screws (callout 2) on the lower portion of the cover. Rotate the right edge of the cover away from the finisher, and then slide the cover right to release three tabs (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The lower screws are shorter in length than the upper screws.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

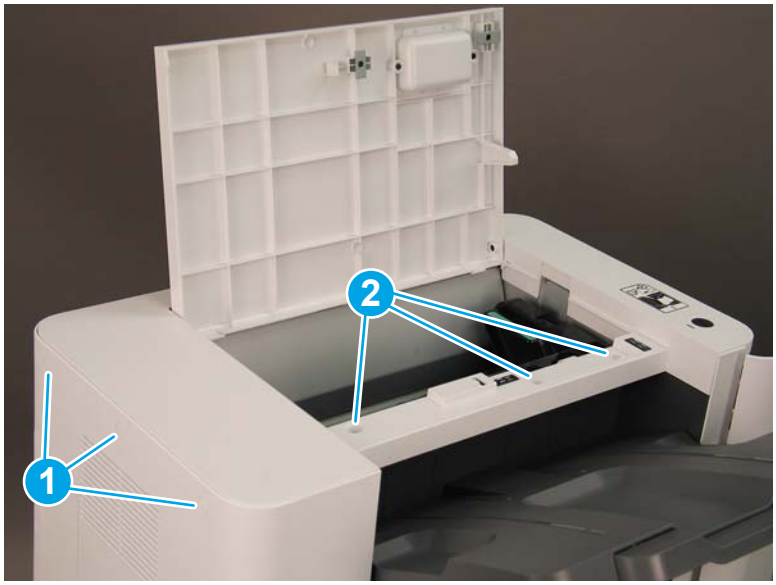
Figure 7-560 Remove six screws and the right top cover



Step 2: Remove the top cover (finisher)

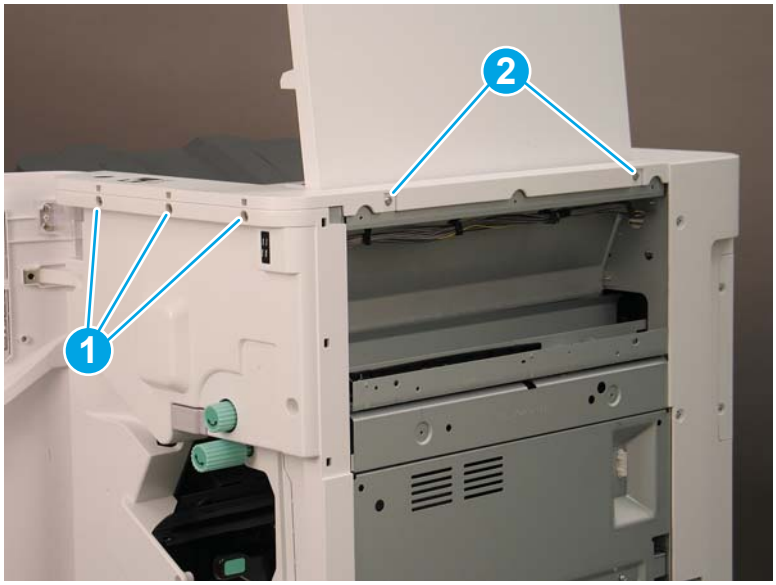
1. Remove three screw caps and three self-tapping screws at the top of the rear cover (callout 1), and then remove three machine screws (callout 2) on top of the cover.

Figure 7-561 Remove six screws



2. Remove three self-tapping screws at the top of the front cover (callout 1), and then remove two machine screws (callout 2) at the top of the right side.

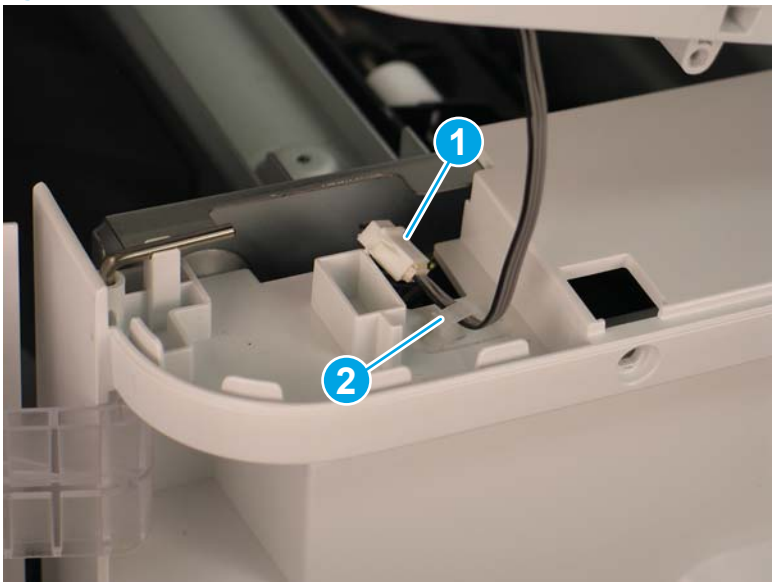
Figure 7-562 Remove six screws



3. Lift the cover up slightly. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1), and then release one retainer (callout 2).

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-563 Disconnect one connector and release retainer

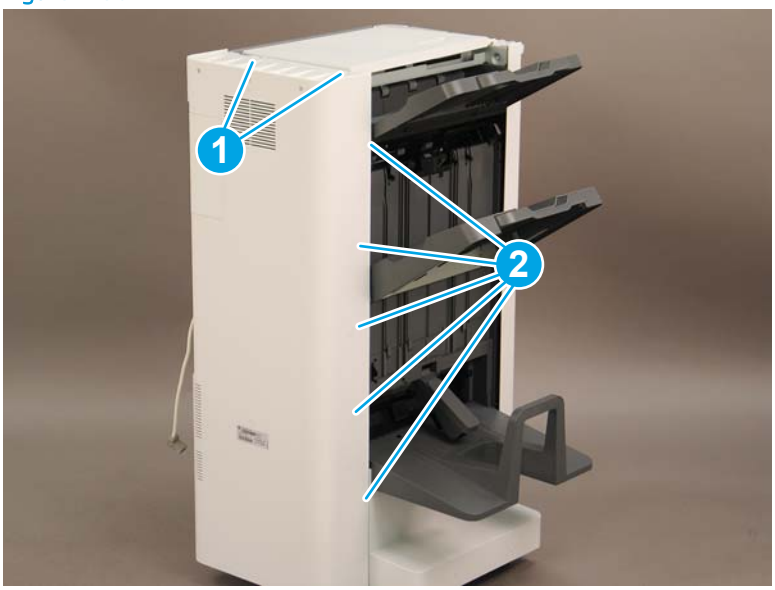


Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Step 3: Remove the rear cover (finisher)

1. Remove two self-tapping screws (callout 1) on the top of the rear cover, and then remove five screw caps and five machine screws (callout 2) on the left side of the cover.

Figure 7-564 Remove seven screws

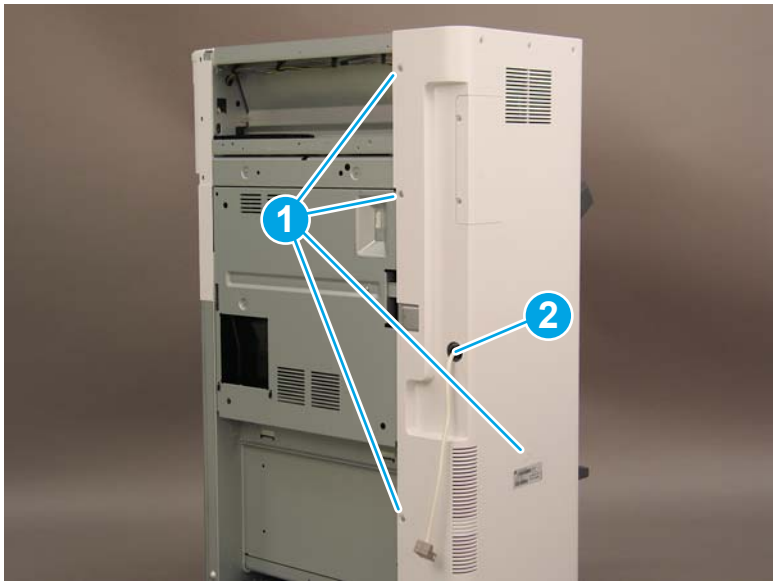


2. Remove one screw cap and four machine screws (callout 1) Remove the rear cover.

NOTE: Make sure to thread the power cable (callout 2) through the opening in the cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-565 Remove four screws and the rear cover

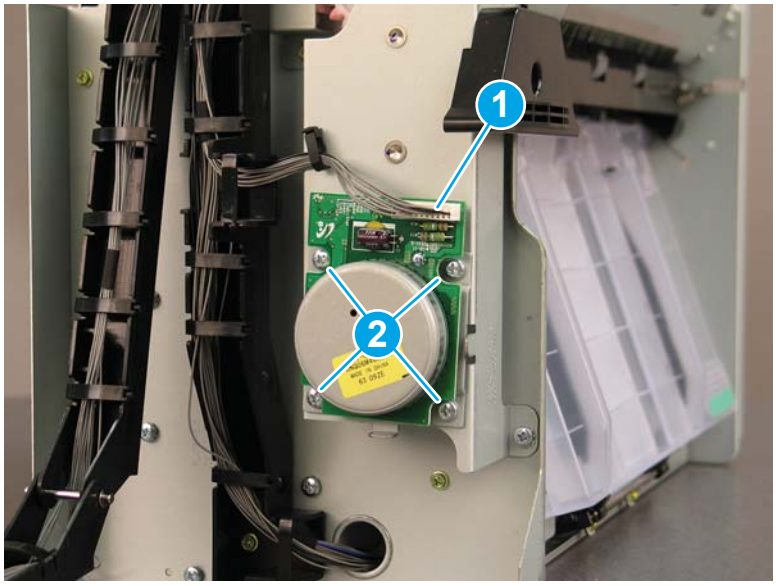


Step 4: Remove the folding roller motor (M18)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the folding roller motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-566 Remove the folding roller motor



Step 5: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Blade motor (M19)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield
- Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the blade motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Finisher sub - bm main blade part number	
SAM-JC90-01435A	Finisher sub - bm main blade

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.

- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

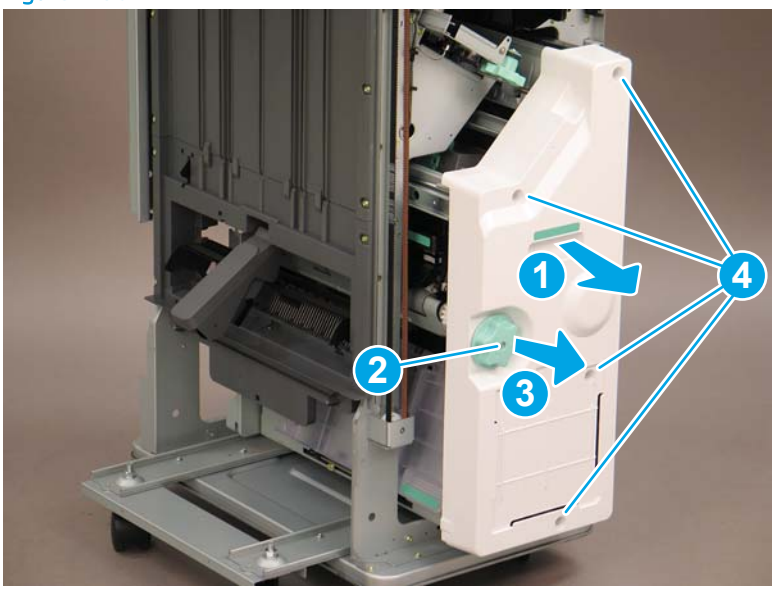
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

▲ Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

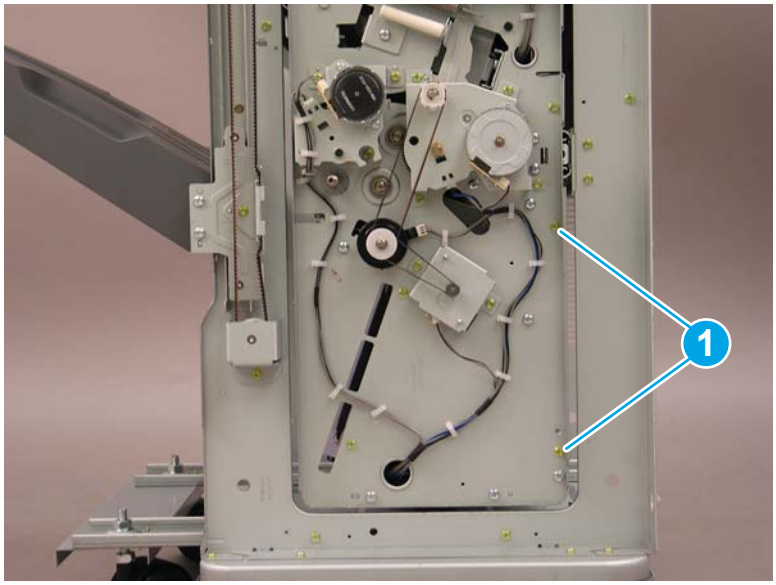
Figure 7-567 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the booklet finisher lower right shield

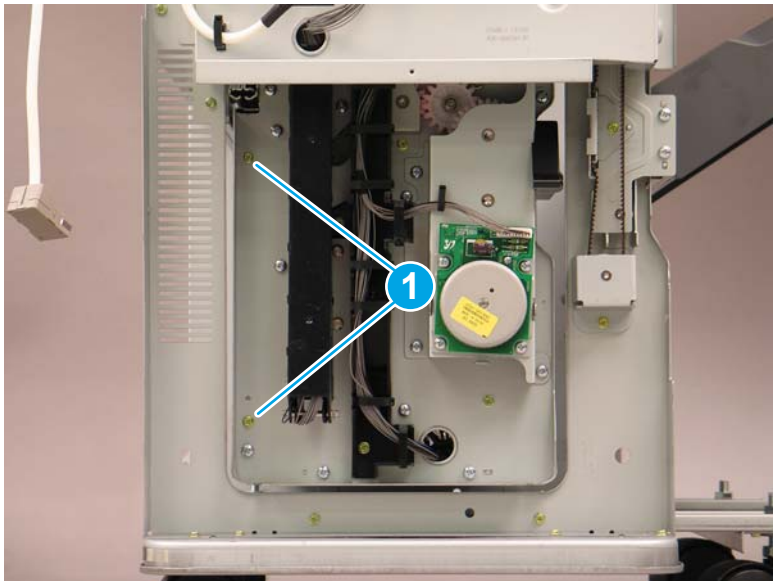
1. Remove two screws at the front of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-568 Remove two screws



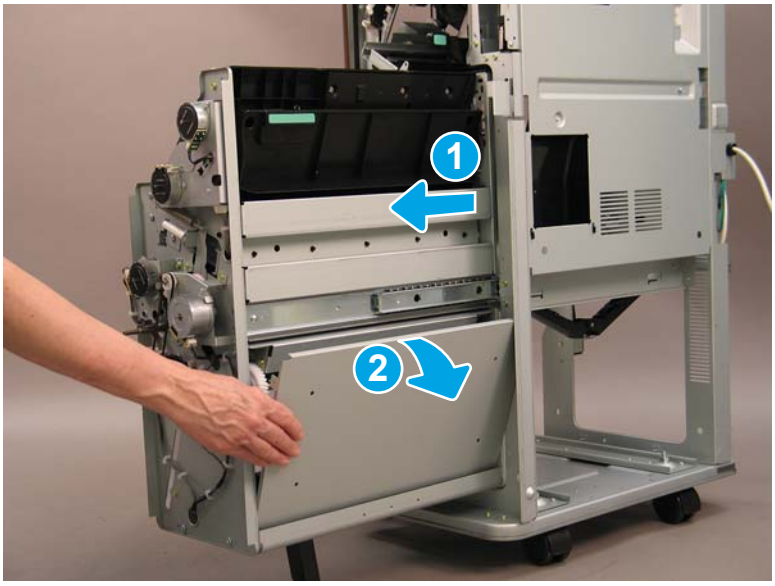
2. Remove two screws at the back of the booklet finisher (callout 1).

Figure 7-569 Remove two screws



3. Slide the booklet finisher out of the finisher (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the lower right shield (callout 2) away from the booklet finisher to remove it.

Figure 7-570 Remove the lower right shield

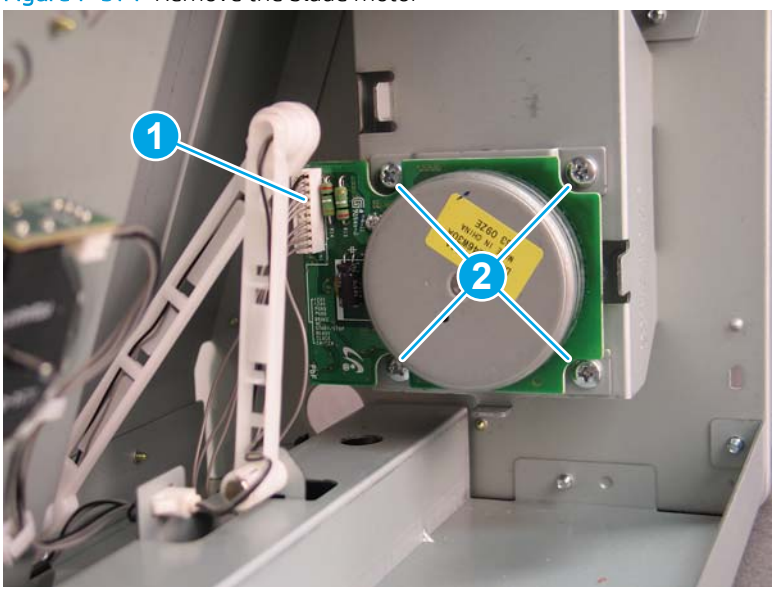


Step 3: Remove the blade motor (M19)

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the blade motor.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 7-571 Remove the blade motor



Step 4: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

C fold motor (M20)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover
- Step 2: Remove the C fold motor
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the C fold motor on the booklet finisher.

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Turn the printer power off. A shutting-down message appears on the control-panel display.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the power off and wait until the printer shuts down before removing the power cable.

- Disconnect the printer power cable after the printer has completely shut down (the control-panel display is blank).
- Release the finisher from the printer by pulling out on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Disconnect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Disconnect the cable from the finisher to the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

C fold motor (M20) part number	
SAM-JC93-01154A	Drive Motor, Step

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

- Connect the cable from the finisher to the printer.
- Connect the cable from the bridge unit to the finisher.
- Attach the finisher to the printer, and then push in on the release latch inside the finisher door.
- Connect the printer power cable.
- Turn the printer power on.

Post service test

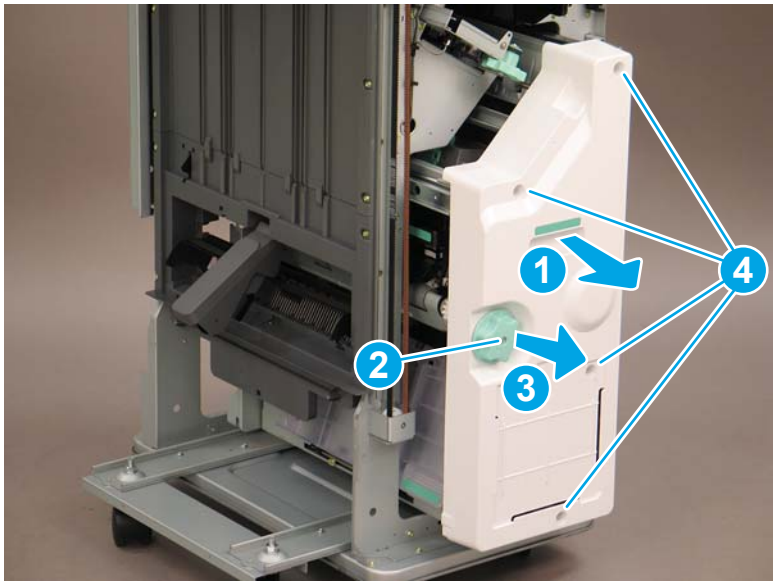
Process a job through the finisher and verify that the finisher works correctly.

Step 1: Remove the booklet finisher front cover

- Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1). Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3). Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Reinstallation tip: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

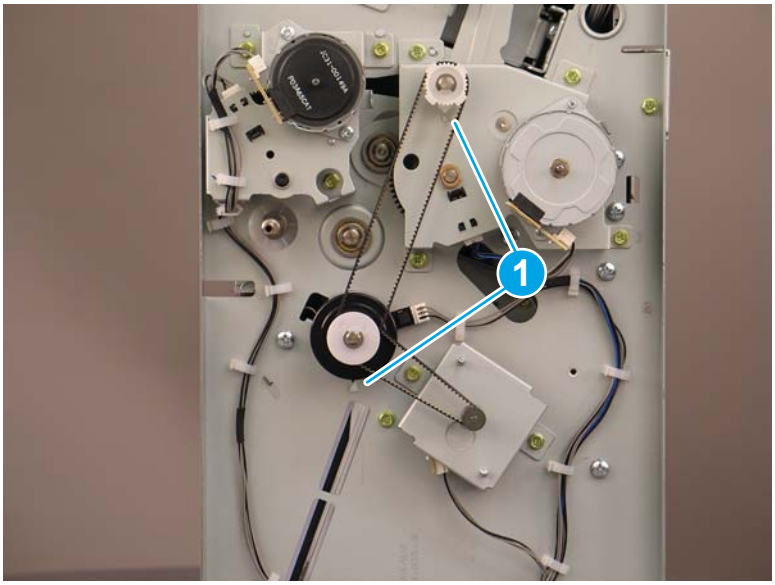
Figure 7-572 Remove five screws and the cover



Step 2: Remove the C fold motor

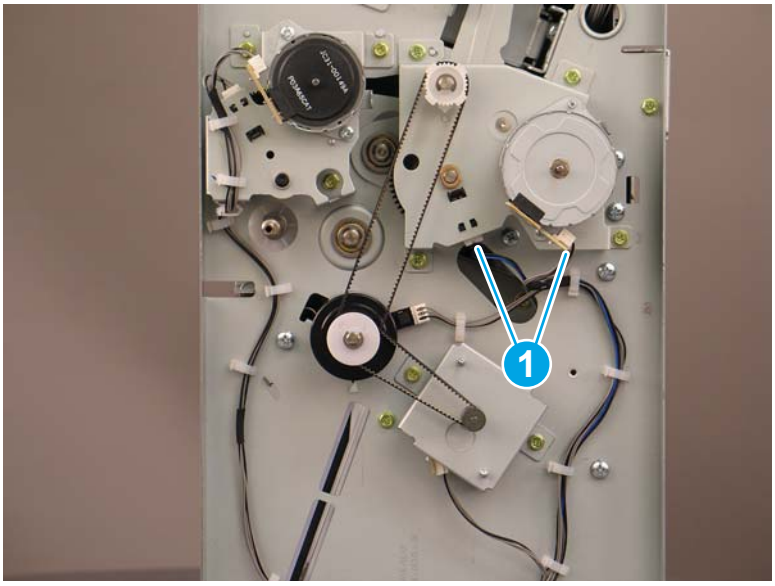
1. Note the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1). These arrows must be aligned in these positions when the motor is reinstalled.

Figure 7-573 Check arrow alignment



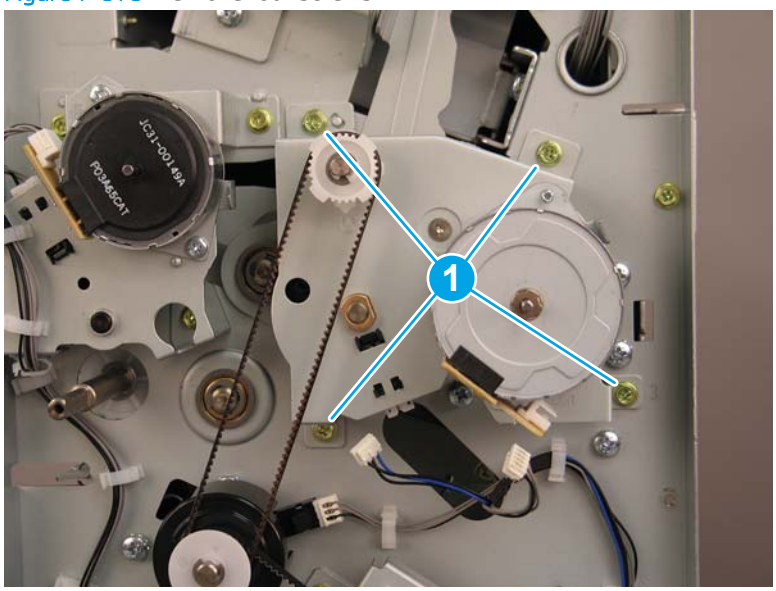
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 7-574 Disconnect two connectors



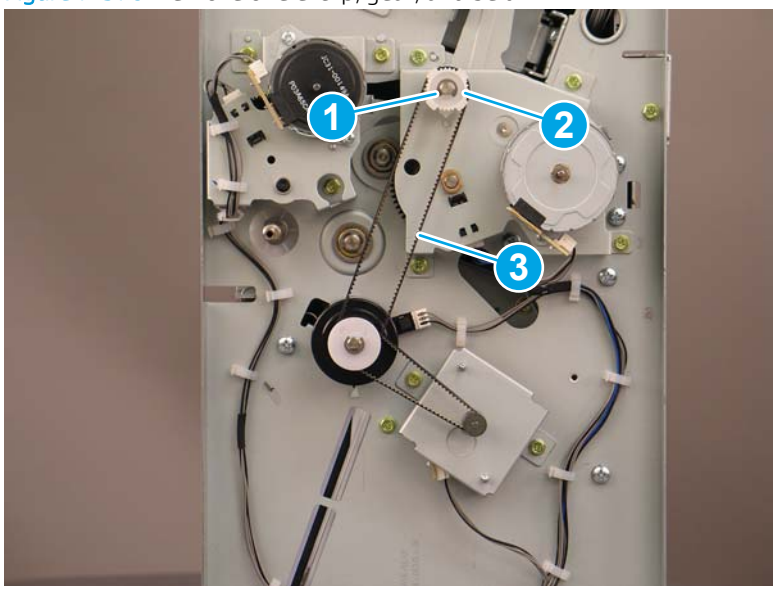
3. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 7-575 Remove four screws



4. Remove one e-clip (callout 1) on top of the white gear. Remove the white gear (callout 2) and release the belt (callout 3).

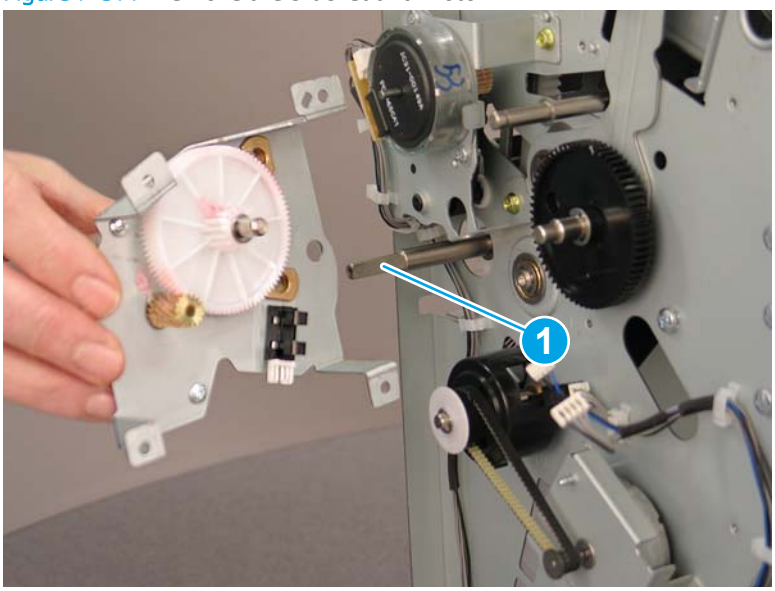
Figure 7-576 Remove one e-clip, gear, and belt



5. Remove the bracket and motor from the booklet finisher.

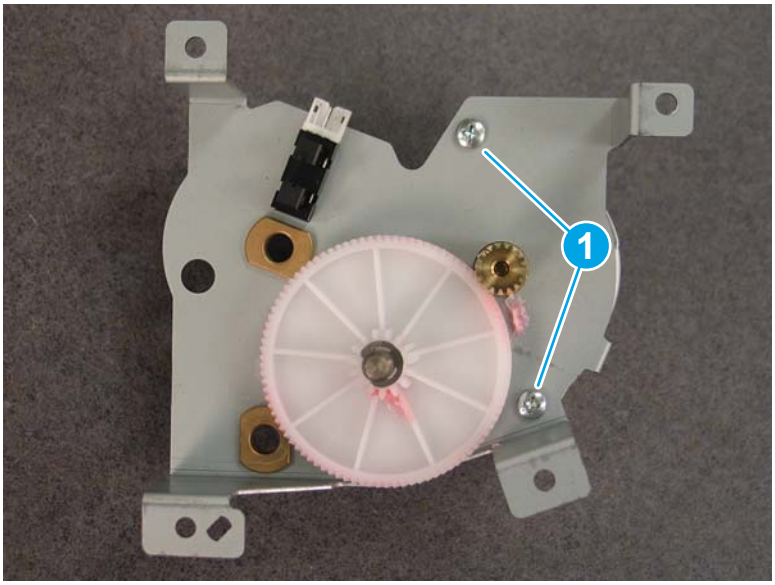
CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 7-577 Remove the bracket and motor



6. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the C fold motor.

Figure 7-578 Remove two screws



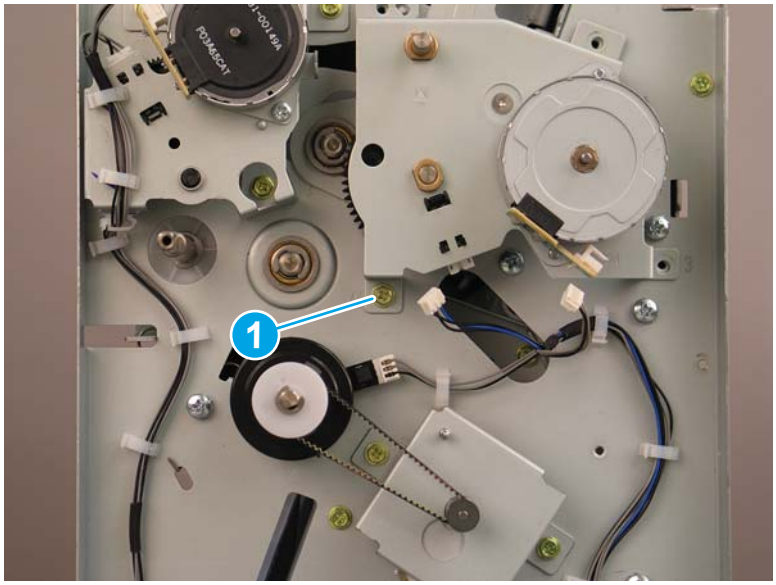
7. Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly. Also use the following special installation instructions.

NOTE: Continue to reverse the removal steps to finish installing the assembly.

Special installation instructions: C fold motor

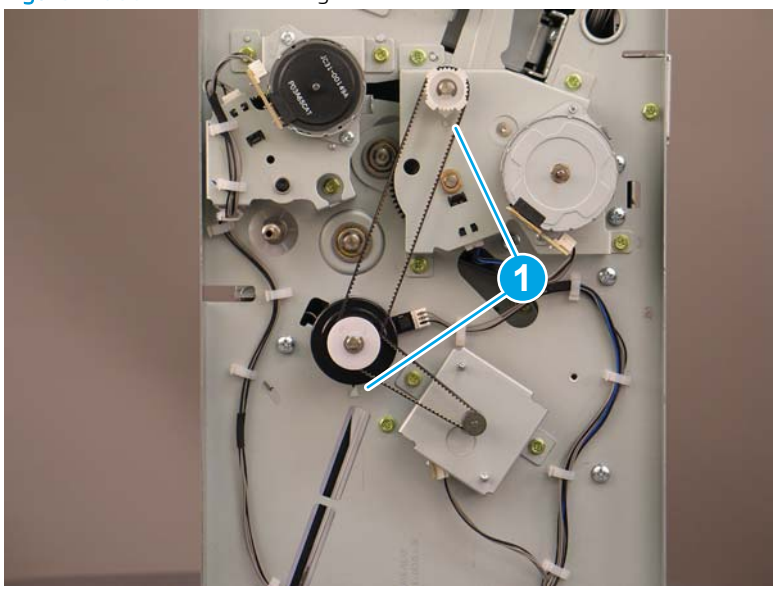
a. When installing the motor, install one screw (callout 1) to hold the bracket in place while installing the gear and belt.

Figure 7-579 Install one screw



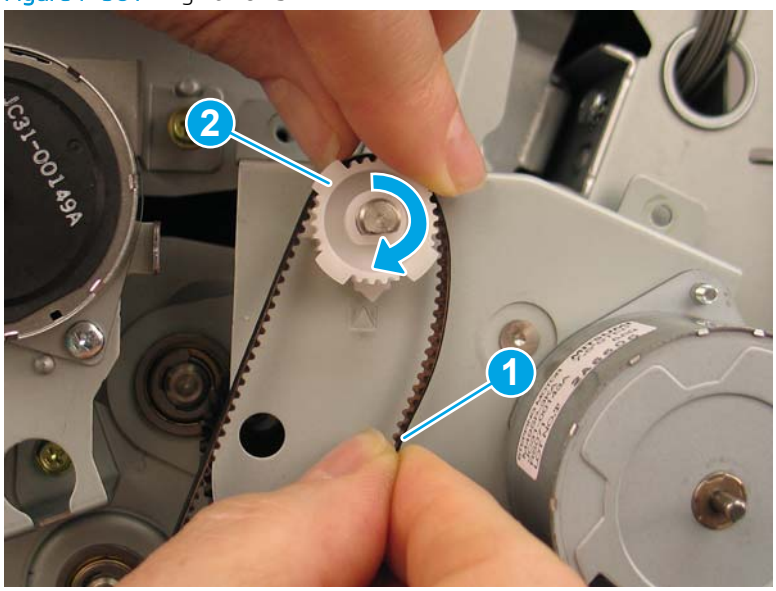
b. Check the position of the alignment arrows on the upper white gear and the lower motor (callout 1).

Figure 7-580 Check arrow alignment



c. If the arrows are not aligned, slightly pull up on the belt to create some slack around the gear (callout 1), and then rotate the gear (callout 2) until the arrows align.

Figure 7-581 Align arrows



Step 3: Unpack the replacement assembly

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Problem solving

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Control-panel messages and event log entries

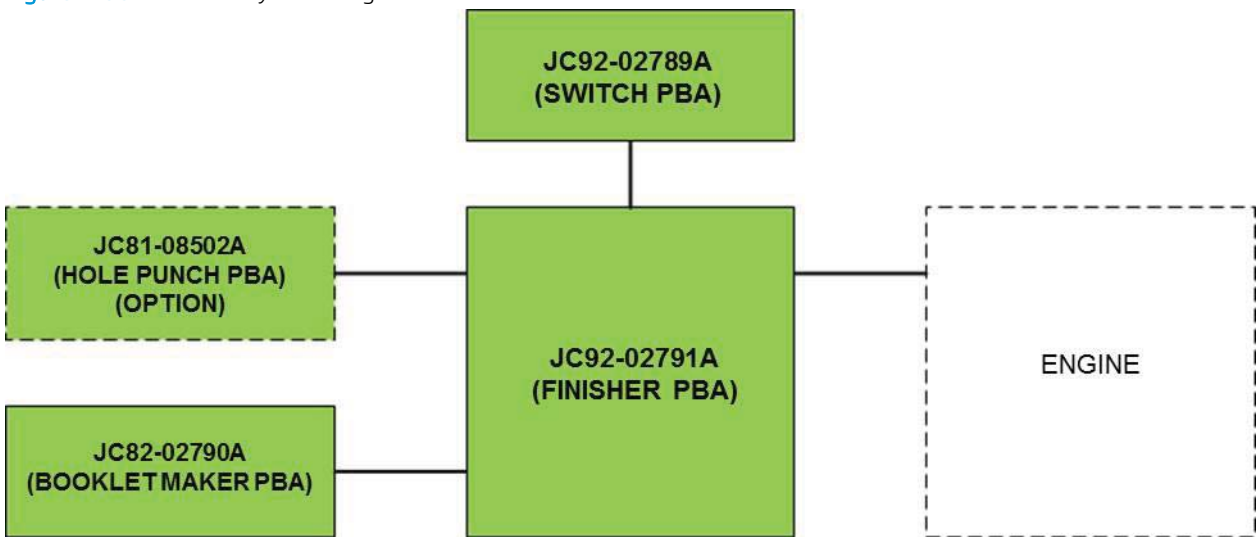
The CPMD is not provided in this service manual. The CPMD for this printer is available on the HP Service Access Workbench (SAW) Web site. Go to h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Finisher system diagram

PCA structure diagram

Finisher system consists of the FINISHER PCA, BOOKLET MAKER PCA, SWITCH PCA, and HOLE PUNCH PCA.

Figure 7-582 Finisher system diagram



PCA function

- FINISHER PCA

  This PCA controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- SWITCH PCA

  This PCA shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple operation.

- BOOKLET MAKER PCA

  This PCA controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

- HOLE PUNCH PCA

  This PCA controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs.

8 Inner finisher

- Precautions
- Product Specification and Description
- Service approach
- Removal and replacment (inner finisher)
- Problem solving
- Block Diagram

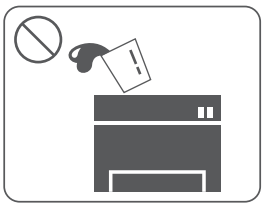
Precautions

Caution for safety

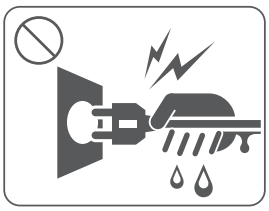
Electric shock and fire safety precautions

Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock or cause a fire.

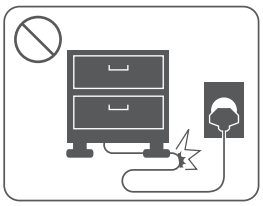
1. Use the correct voltage. Failure to do so could damage the printer and cause fire or electric shock.
2. Use the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause overheating and fire.
3. Do not overload the power socket. This could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and cause fire.
4. Keep water and other liquids, paper clips, pins, and other foreign objects away from the printer. Contact with liquids or these objects might cause electric shock or fire.



5. Do not touch the plugs on the ends of the power cable with wet hands. When servicing the printer, remove the power plug from the wall socket.

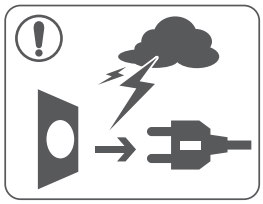


6. Use caution when connecting or disconnecting the power cable.
7. Take care of the power cable. Do not allow the power cable to become twisted or sharply bent around corners as this will cause damage. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. Damage to the power cable might cause overheating and fire. Exposed cables might cause electric shock. Replace damaged power cable immediately. Do not reuse or repair a damaged power cable. Certain chemicals can damage the coating on the power cable, weakening the coating or exposing cables which might cause electric shock or fire.

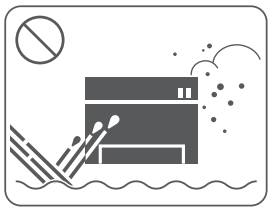


8. Make sure that the power outlet and plugs are not cracked or broken. Repair these defects as soon as possible. Be careful to not cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the printer.

9. Use caution during thunder or lightning storms. HP recommends the printer be disconnected from the power source when thunder or lightning is expected. Do not touch the printer or the power cable if it is still connected to the power outlet during these weather conditions.

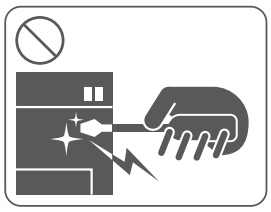


10. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas. Install the printer in a clean, well-ventilated location. Do not position the printer near a humidifier or in front of an air conditioner. Moisture and dust build up inside the printer can lead to overheating and cause fire or rust.



11. Do not place the printer in direct sunlight. Direct sunlight can cause the temperature inside the printer to rise causing failure to work properly, and in extreme conditions, might lead to fire.

12. Do not insert metal objects into the printer through the ventilator fan or other parts of the casing. Doing so could lead to the metal object making contact with the high voltage conductor inside the printer, causing electric shock.



13. Wait 5 minutes after unplugging the power cable before replacing the LVPS board to avoid electric shock.

Handling precautions

The following instructions are for the user's personal safety, to avoid injury, and to avoid damage to the printer.

1. Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.

2. The printer contains rollers, gears, and fans. Make sure to not catch fingers, hair, or clothing in any these rotating devices.

3. Do not place any small metal objects, or containers of water, chemicals, or other liquids close to the printer. If spilled, these objects or liquids could get into the printer and cause damage, or cause electric shock or fire.

4. Do not place the printer in damp or dusty areas, near an open window, or close to a humidifier or heater. These conditions can cause damage to the printer.

5. Do not place candles or burning cigarettes on the printer. Doing so could cause fire.
6. Make sure that the printer is installed and operated in an area that meets temperature and humidity specifications.
   - The printer cannot be used immediately after being stored at below zero Celsius for long periods of time. Doing so could cause malfunction. Place the printer in an area where it can reach room temperature before operation.

Removal and replacement precautions

1. Use caution when replacing parts. Always use HP parts. Make sure to note the exact location of parts and cable routing before dismantling any part of the printer. Make sure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Complete the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.
2. Make sure that the power cable is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
3. Disconnect interface cables and power cables.
4. Use approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, printer name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct.
5. Do not excessive force to remove or refit parts, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
6. Make sure not to drop any small parts into the printer.
7. Be careful when handling the OPC drum:
   - The OPC Drum can be permanently damaged if exposed to light. Be careful not to expose the OPC Drum to direct sunlight, fluorescent light, or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 minutes can damage the surface of the photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Be careful when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Be careful when working with the printer if the covers, especially the top cover, are open, as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
   - Make sure not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched, the print quality will be compromised.

Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

1. Be careful with high temperature parts.

   The fuser unit operates at high temperatures. Wait for the fuser unit to cool down before disassembly.



2. Keep fingers, hair, and clothes away from moving parts.

   To avoid injury, do not put fingers, hair, or clothes near moving parts such as the paper feeding entrance, motor, and fan.

3. Use safe lifting and handling techniques to move the printer.

   The printer is heavy. To avoid injury, use the lifting handles located on each side of the printer and lift carefully.



4. Make sure the printer is installed safely.

   Make sure the printer is placed on a level surface that is capable of supporting the weight of the printer. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall, possibly causing personal injury or damage to the printer.

5. Do not install the printer on a sloping or unstable surface. After installation, make sure that the printer is stable.

ESD precautions

⚠ CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Product Specification and Description

Specification

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	• Main: 148 - 320 mm x 140-457.2 mm (58.3-126 inch x 55.1-180 inch) • Top: 98 - 297 mm x 140-432 mm (38.6-116.9 inch x 55.1-170.1 inch)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/ Envelope
Media Weight	• Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) • Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	15 kg (33 lb.)
Tray1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Center)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X

Table 8-1 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R[1]	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R[1]	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	O	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	—	W 148-320 - L 140-1200	X	W 98-297 - L 140-1200	X	X	X

[1] "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid EXtra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	-	X	X	X	X	X

Table 8-2 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m²)	O	O	O	O

Table 8-2 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m²)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O
Perforated Paper (75-90 g/m²)	X	O	X	X

Finisher System

Sectional view

Figure 8-1 Finisher system—sectional view

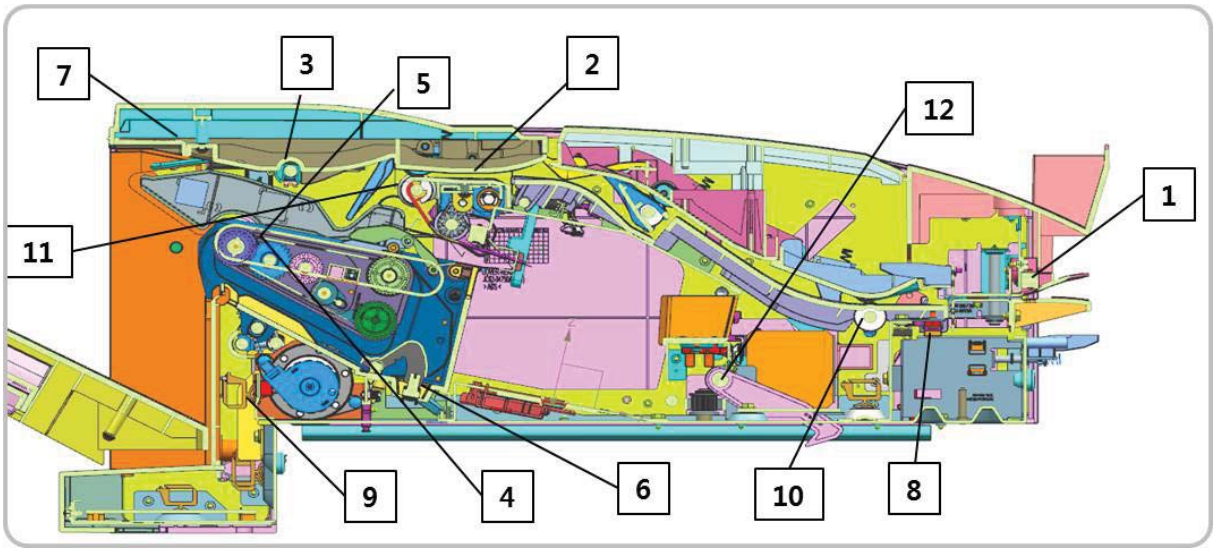


Table 8-3 Finisher system—sectional view

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Entrance sensor	7	Jam Door Open Sensor
2	Passthru Sensor	8	Front Door Open Sensor
3	Paddle Home Sensor	9	Stacker Tray Home Sensor
4	Tamper Home_F Sensor	10	Paper Feed roller
5	Tamper Home_R Sensor	11	Paper Exit roller
6	Eject Home Sensor	12	Turning Knob

Paper path

Figure 8-2 Finisher system—paper path

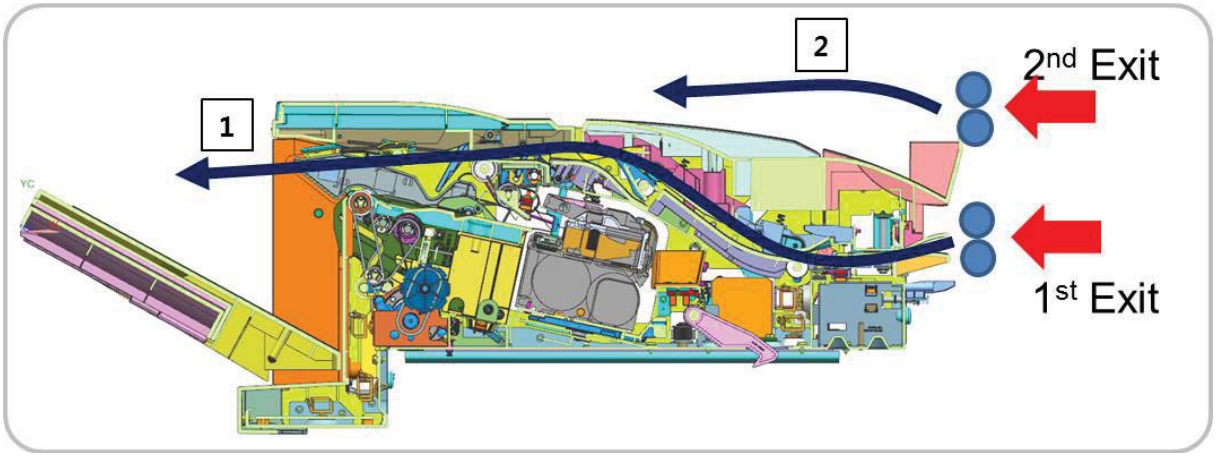


Table 8-4 Finisher system—paper path

Item	Description
1	Finisher Main Tray – Staple / offset / Punch
2	Finisher Top Tray – Stack only

Electrical parts layout

Figure 8-3 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

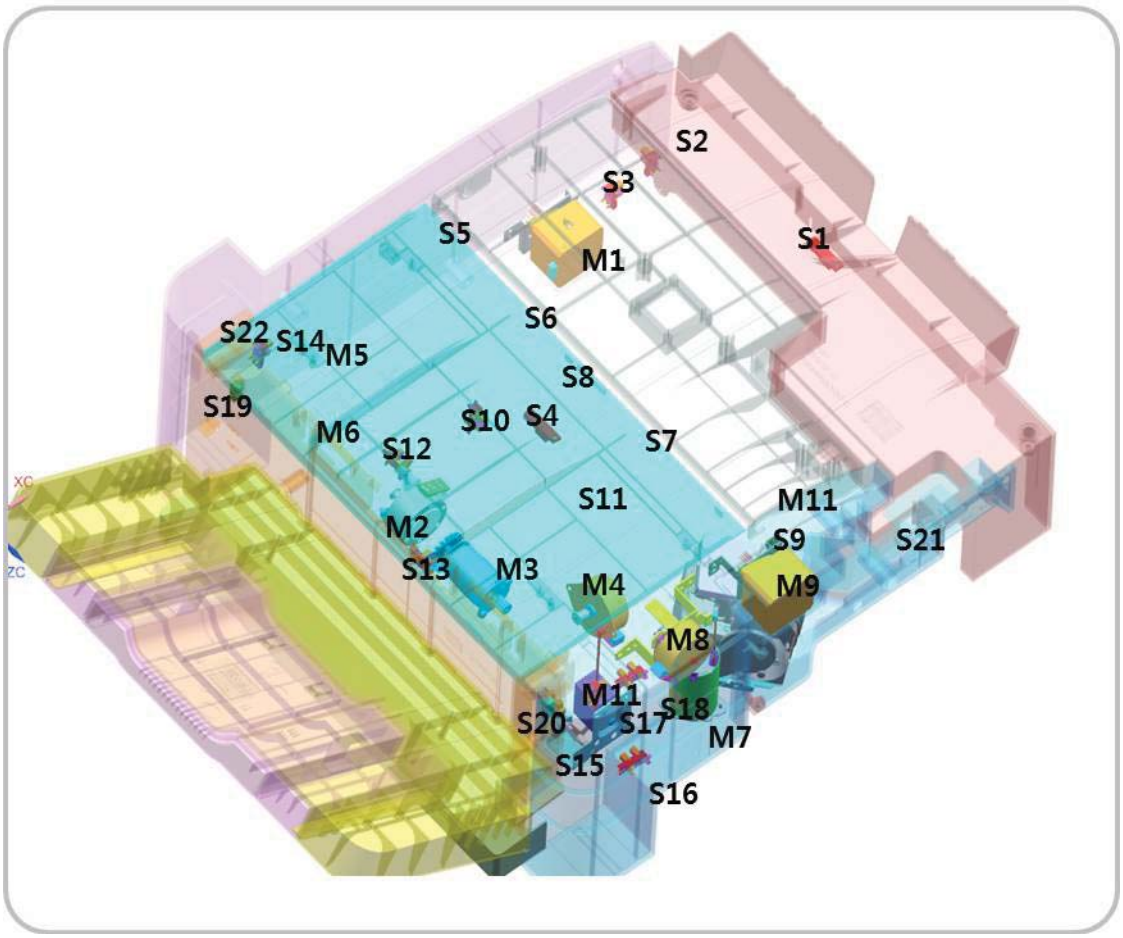


Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout

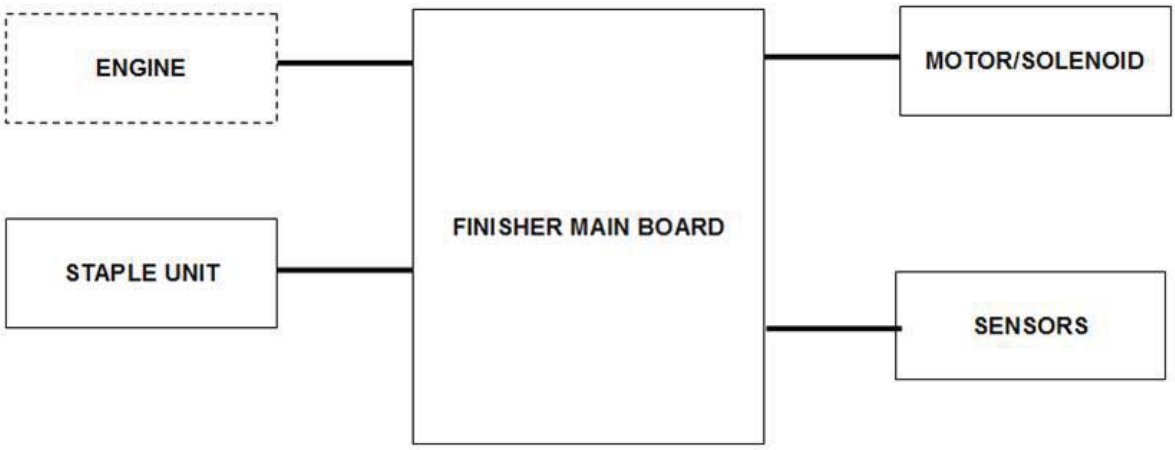
Item	Description	Function
S1	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Entrance Sensor
S2	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Shaft Docking Sensor
S3	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Dust Box Sensor
S4	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001381)	Sub Stay Sensor
S5	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Rear
S6	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 1
S7	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Staple Position Sensor_ Center 2
S8	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Exit Sensor
S9	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Stapler Position Sensor_Front
S10	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	End Defence Sensor
S11	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject Sensor
S12	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Support Sensor

Table 8-5 Finisher system—electrical parts layout (continued)

Item	Description	Function
S13	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Eject 2 Motor Sensor
S14	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Rear
S15	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Paper Holder Position Sensor
S16	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tray Home Position Sensor
S17	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Tamper Position Sensor_Front
S18	Photo- Interrupter (0604-001415)	Main Paddle Position Sensor
S19	JC81-07403A	AS- Sensor
S20	JC81-07396A	AS- Sensor
S21	JC39-01610A	Switch Front cover open
S22	JC39-02175A	Switch Jam door open
M1	JC31-00169A	Entrance Motor
M2	JC31-00009C	EJECTOR_1_Motor
M3	Mabuchi	EJECTOR_2_Motor
M4	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Front
M5	JC31-00149A	Tamper_Motor_Rear
M6	JC31-00149A	Paper Support
M7	KIG	Tray Motor
M8	JC31-00149A	Main Paddle Motor
M9	JC31-00169A	Exit Motor
M10	JC31-00149A	Traverse Motor
M11	TDS-10SL	Paper Holder Solenoid

Block Diagram

Figure 8-4 Finisher system—block diagram



PBA Connection Information

Figure 8-5 Finisher system—PBA connection information

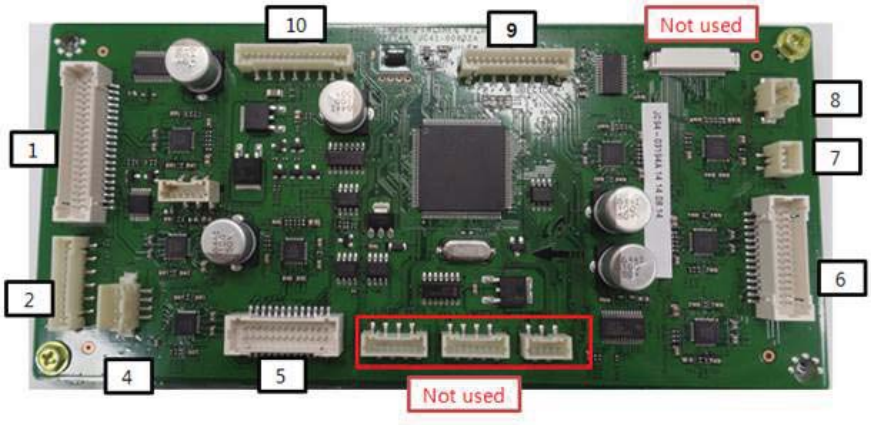


Table 8-6 Finisher system—PBA connection information

No.	Connection
1	CN3 : REAR Joint I/F
2	CN1 : REAR Sensor
3	CN10 : Traverse Mid Sensor
4	CN8 : Debug
5	CN2 : REAR I/F
6	CN7 : FRONT I/F
7	CN6 : Stacker Switch
8	CN9 : Solenoid
9	CN4 : Ejector & Supporter I/F
10	CN5 : Main I/F

Service approach

⚠ CAUTION: When working on the product, do not pick up the unit by the output tray, which will detach under the weight of the product.

Precautions when replacing parts

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the printer, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains 19 different screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCA

Static electric might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
  - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
  - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
  - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.
  - Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
  - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
  - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.

- Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches can break easily; release them carefully. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



Before performing service

- Remove all paper from the product.
- Turn off the power using the power button.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Remove the Tray 2 cassette.

After performing service

- Plug in the power cable.
- Verify the functions of the printer that might have been impacted by service procedures. Make sure the printer is in complete working order.
- Replace any accessories removed for service.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Ordering

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported Web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply Web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the diagrams in this chapter can be ordered. Refer to the table following the diagram or the parts lists at the end of this chapter to determine if a part is orderable.

Removal and replacment (inner finisher)

- Entrance sensor
- Entrance motor
- Exit sensor
- Exit motor
- Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly
- Front Jogger Motor
- Front Jogger Home Sensor
- Rear Jogger Motor
- Rear Jogger Home Sensor
- Stapler
- Stapler position sensor assembly
- Traverse Motor
- Stacker Motor
- Stacker Encoder Sensor
- Stacker Lower Limit Switch
- Stack Beam Sensor
- Stack Position Sensor
- Paper Holding Lever Solenoid
- Paper Support Motor
- Paper Support Home Sensor
- Ejector Motor assembly
- Main Paddle Motor
- Main Paddle Home Sensor
- Main Paddle
- Ejector assembly
- Punch Dust Full Sensor
- Door Switch
- Top Door Switch
- End Fence Home Sensor

Entrance sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Entrance sensor assembly part number
Entrance sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

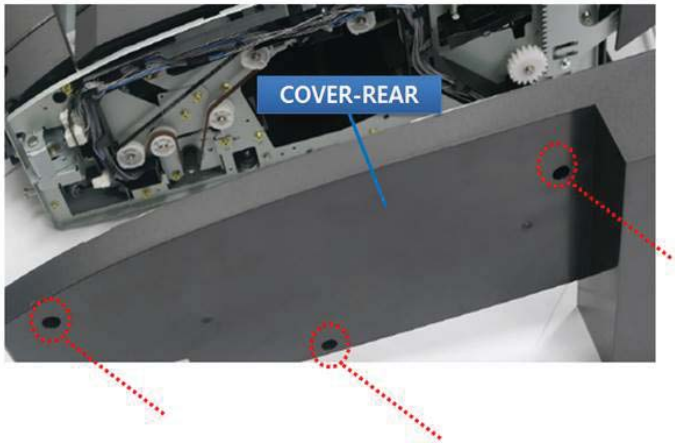
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance sensor

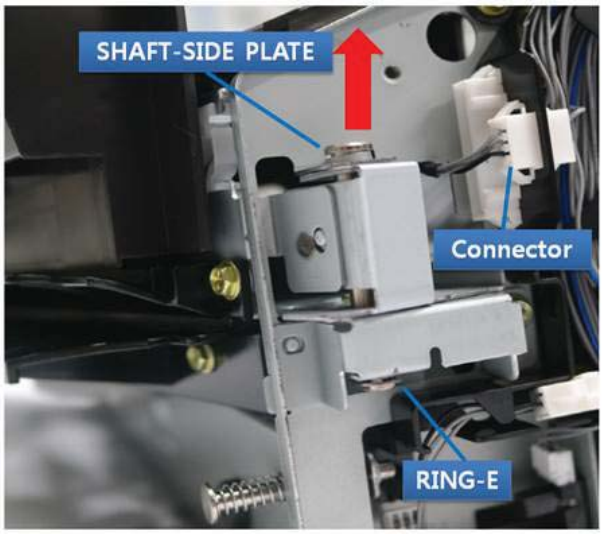
1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-6 Remove the entrance sensor (1 of 7)

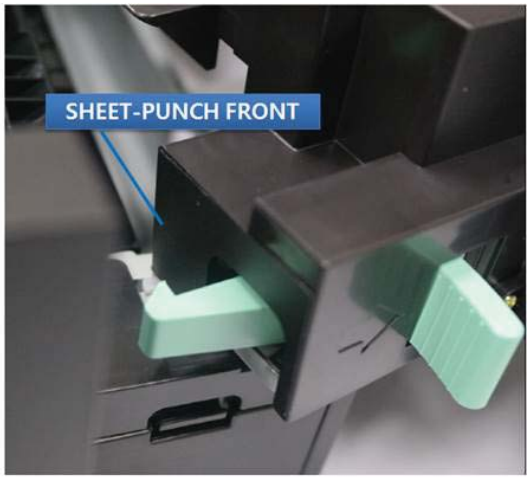
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate. Unplug the connector.

   Figure 8-7 Remove the entrance sensor (2 of 7)

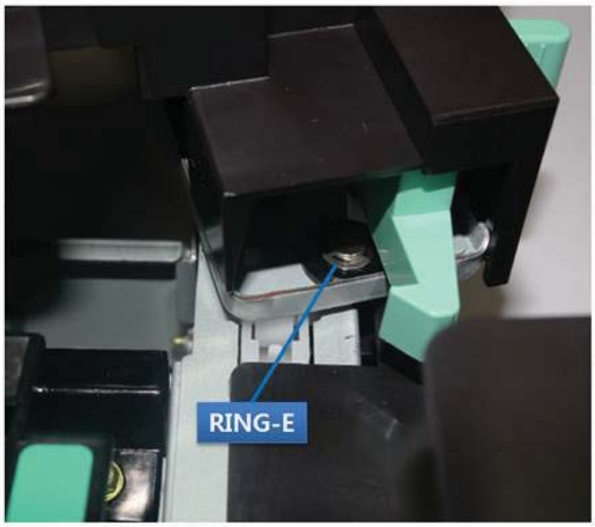
3. On the right, front-side of the printer remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 8-8 Remove the entrance sensor (3 of 7)



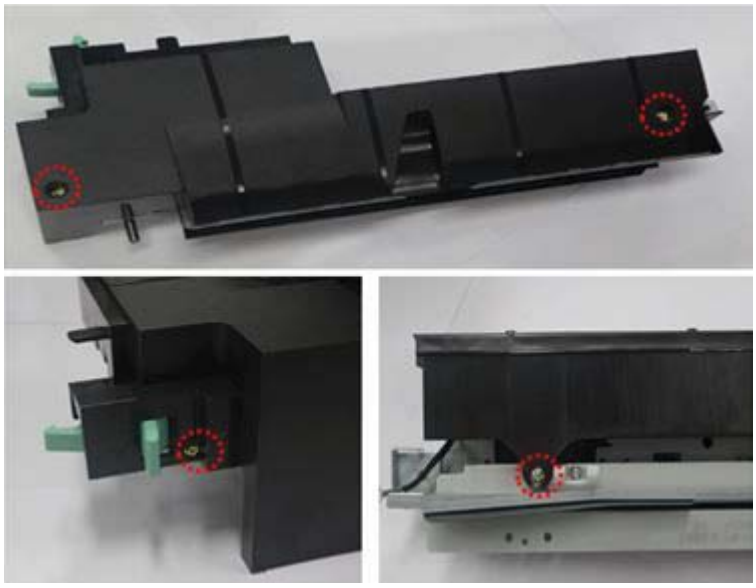
4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 8-9 Remove the entrance sensor (4 of 7)



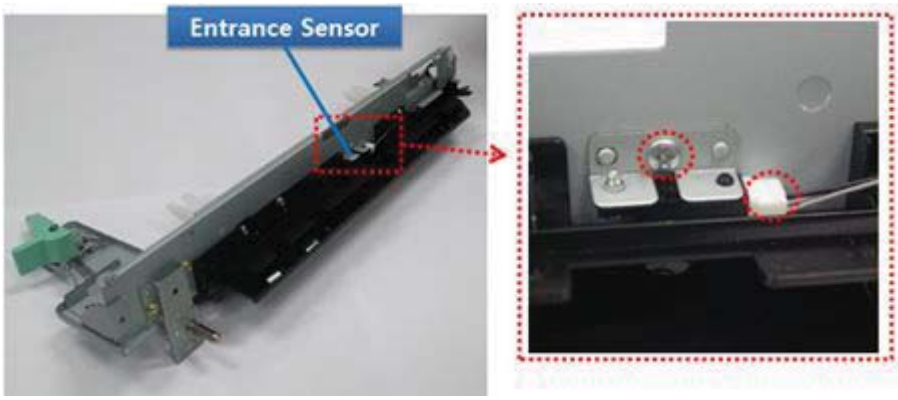
5. Loosen the adhesive tape around, and then remove, four screws. Remove the handle, and then remove the punch dummy cover.

Figure 8-10 Remove the entrance sensor (5 of 7)



6. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor bracket.

Figure 8-11 Remove the entrance sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-12 Remove the entrance sensor (7 of 7)



Entrance motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Entrance motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Entrance motor assembly part number
Entrance motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

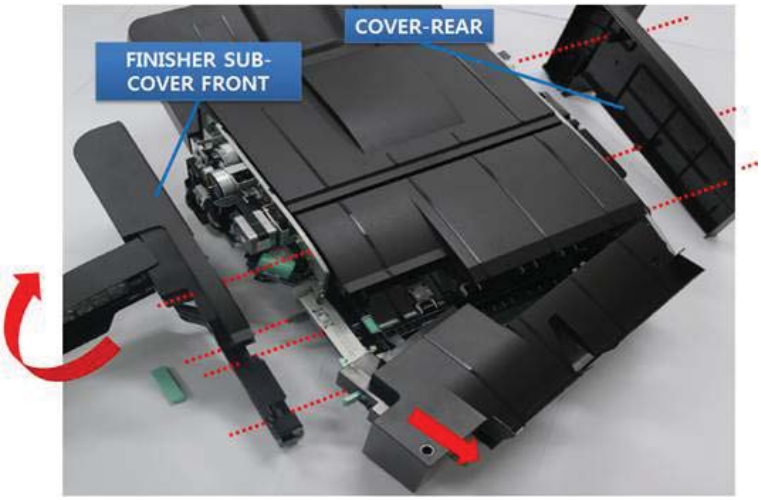
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

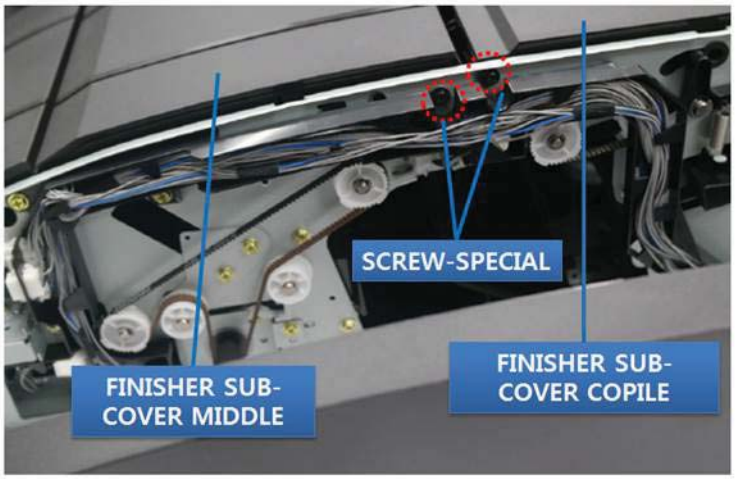
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-13 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-14 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-15 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

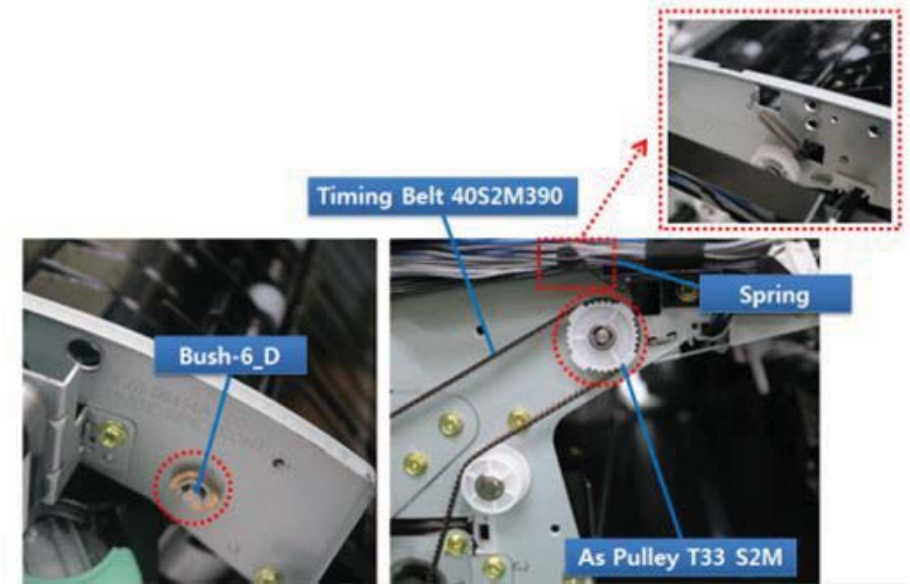
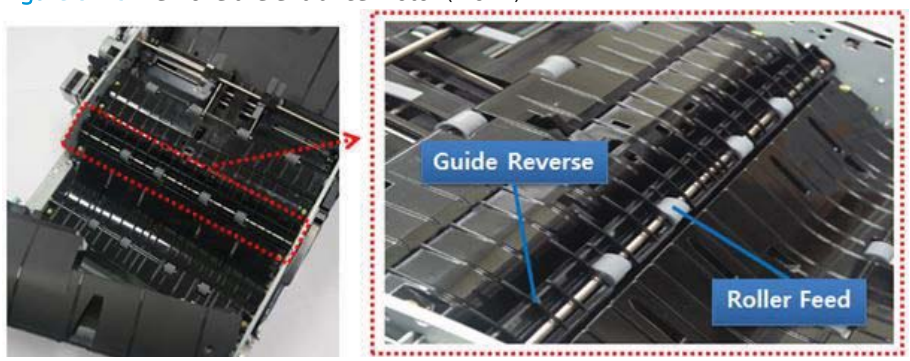


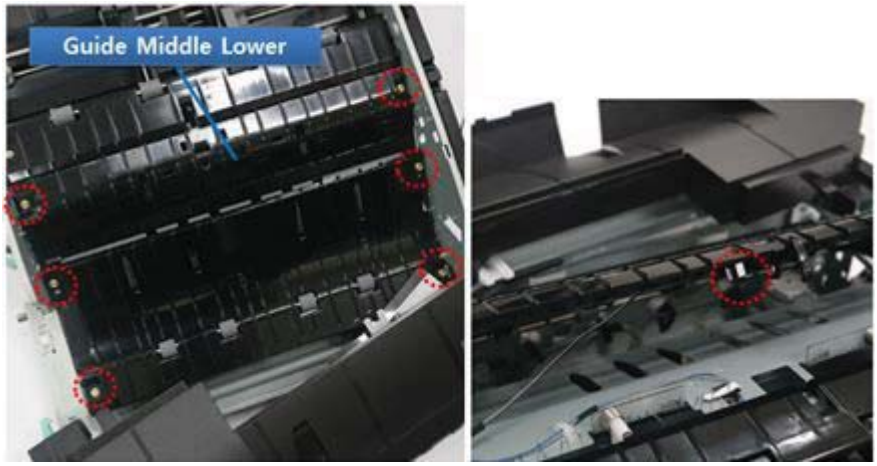
Figure 8-16 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

Figure 8-17 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



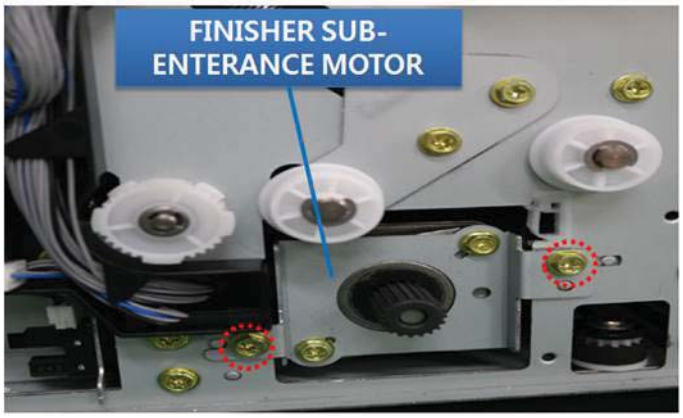
Step 2: Remove the entrance motor

1. Disconnect the sensor cable at the rear.
2. Remove the cable restraint at the rear.
3. Release two tabs that engage with the frame, and then remove the guide middle lower.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not damage the sensor flag.

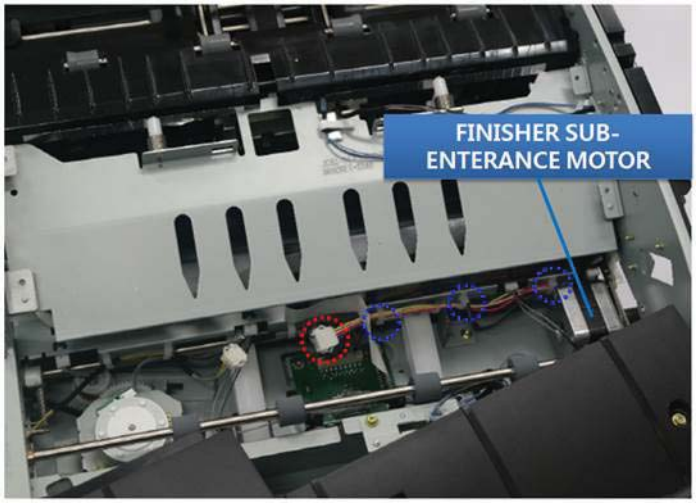
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 8-18 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



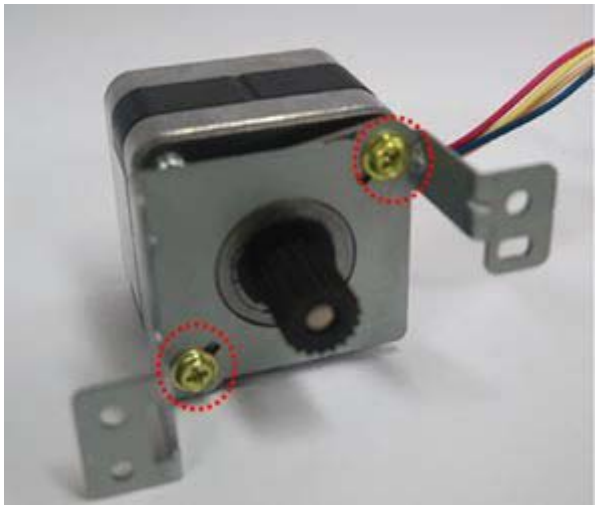
5. Open the clamps, and then unplug the connector.

Figure 8-19 Remove the entrance motor (6 of 7)



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 8-20 Remove the entrance motor (7 of 7)



Exit sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Exit sensor assembly part number
Exit sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

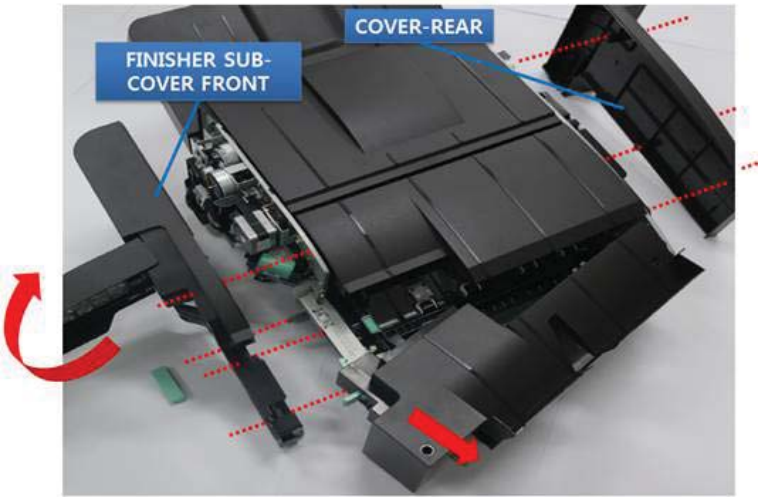
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

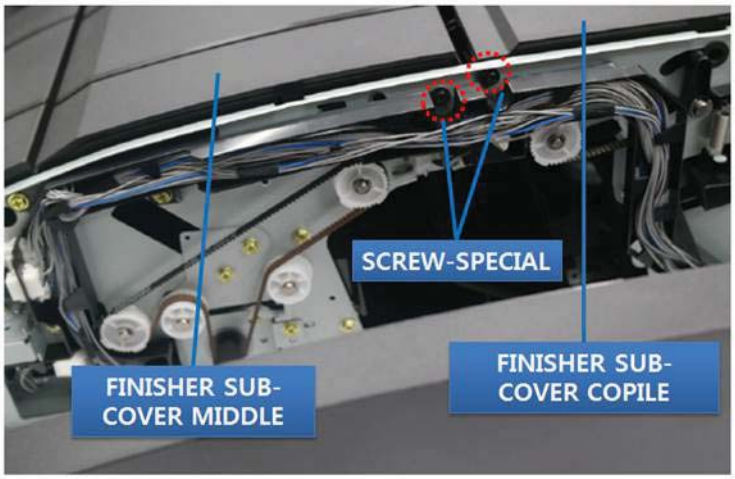
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-21 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-22 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-23 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

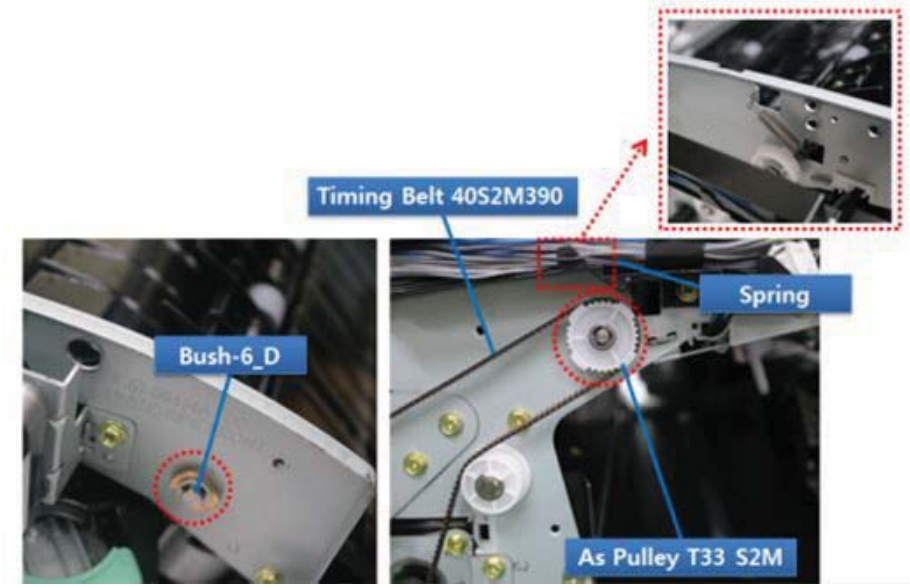
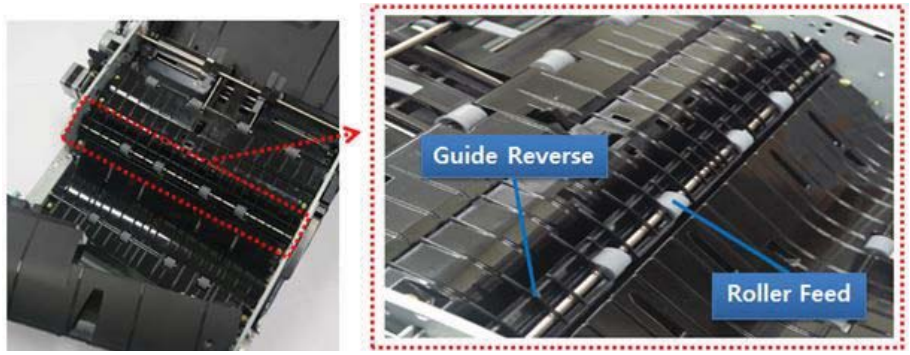


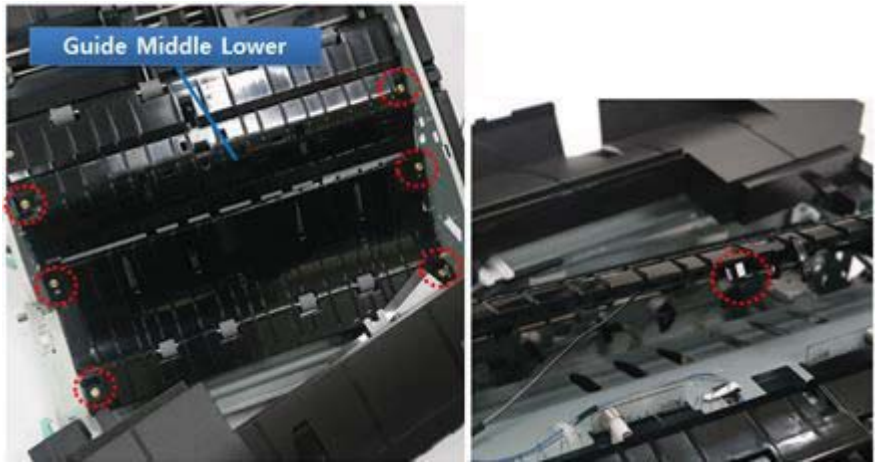
Figure 8-24 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

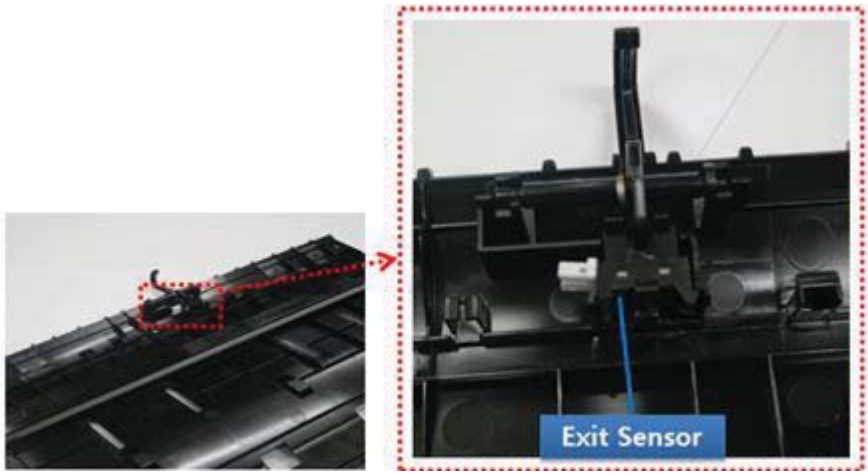
Figure 8-25 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the exit sensor

▲ Remove the hook, and then remove the exit sensor.

Figure 8-26 Remove the exit sensor



Exit motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the exit motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Exit motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Exit motor assembly part number
Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

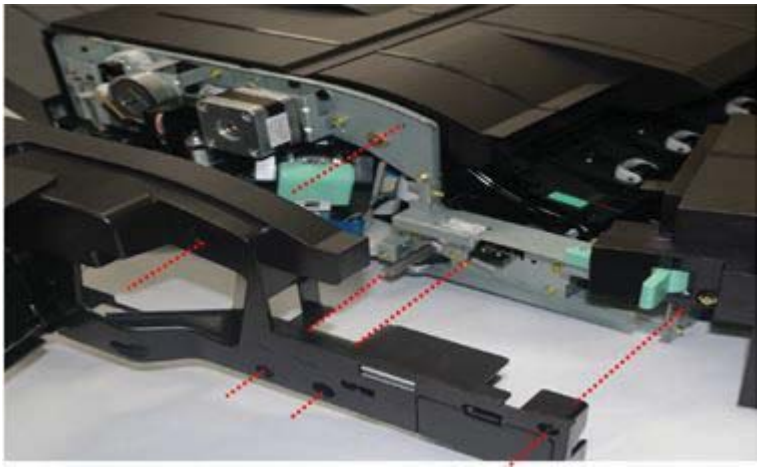
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the exit motor

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 8-27 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 8-28 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



3. Remove the exit motor from the BKT motor feed exit.

Figure 8-29 Remove the exit motor (3 of 3)



Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly part number
Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

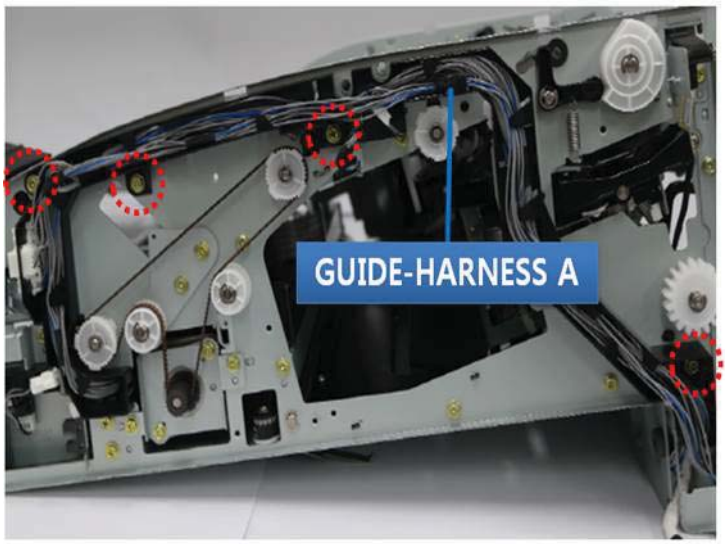
1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-30 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6)



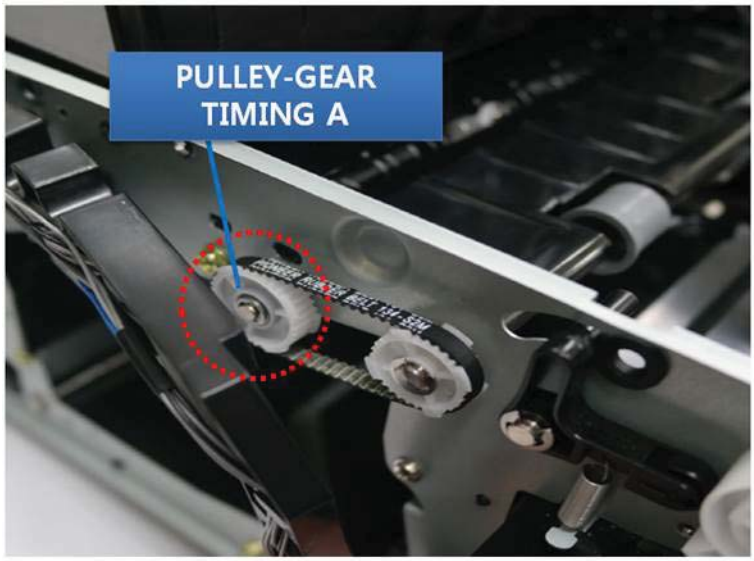
2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-31 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6)



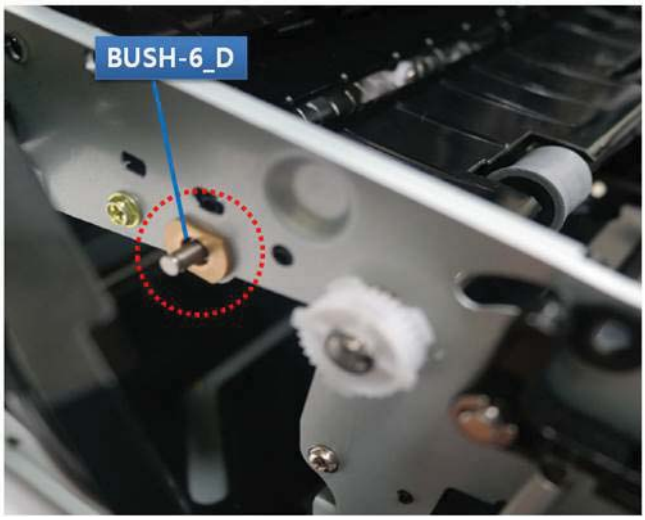
3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-32 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-33 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-34 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)



Front Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front Jogger Motor assembly part number
Front Jogger Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

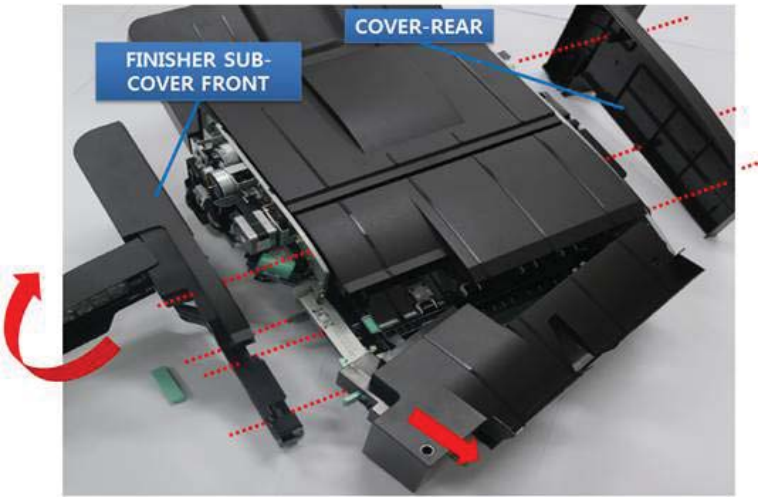
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

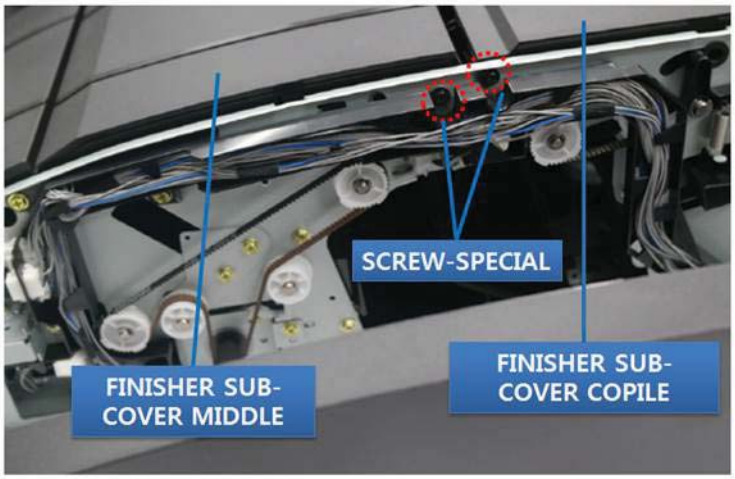
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-35 Remove the front jogger motor (1 of 22)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-36 Remove the front jogger motor (2 of 22)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-37 Remove the front jogger motor (3 of 22)

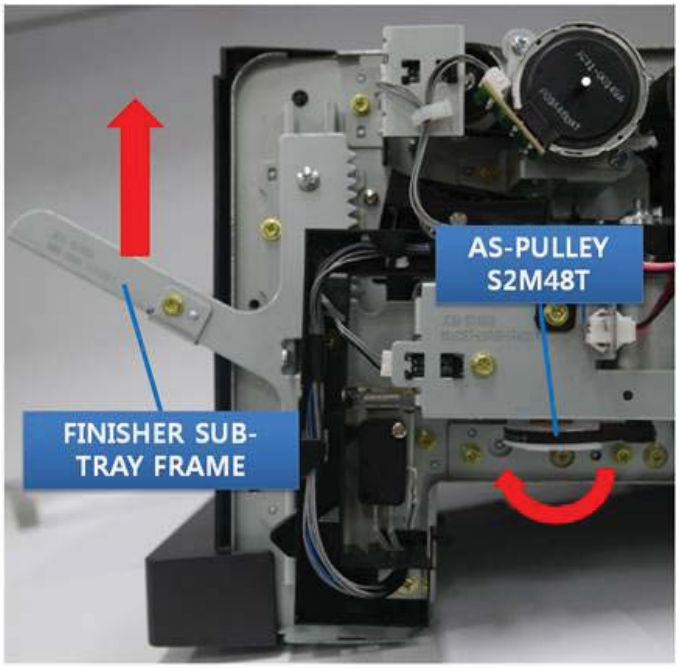


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

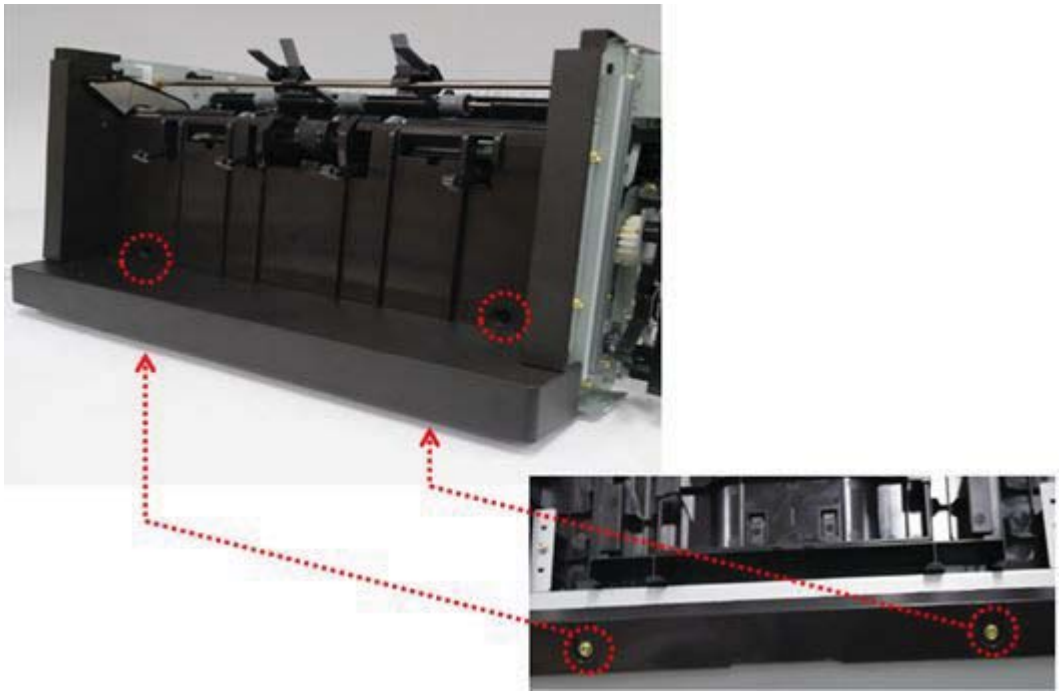
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-38 Remove the front jogger motor (4 of 22)



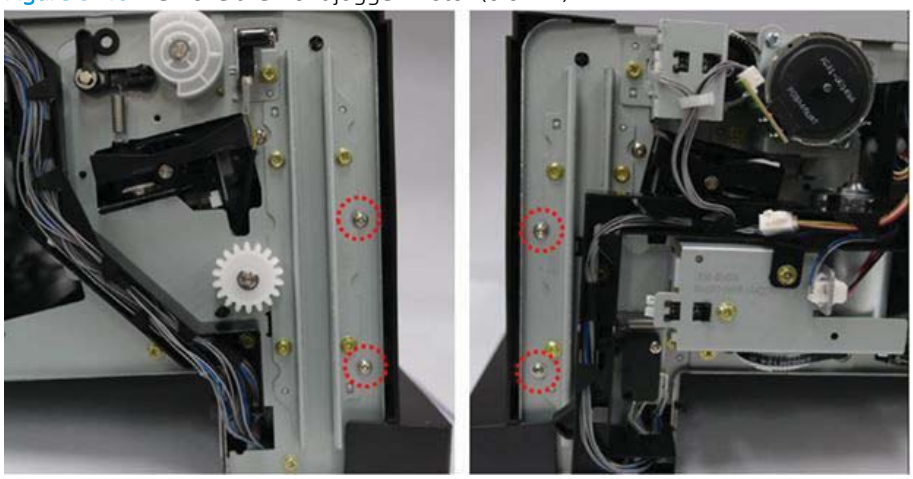
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-39 Remove the front jogger motor (5 of 22)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

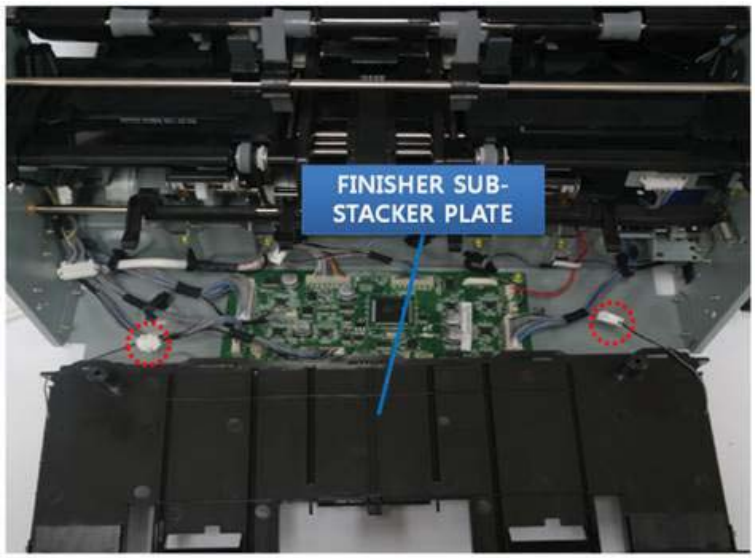
Figure 8-40 Remove the front jogger motor (6 of 22)



7. Remove two screws and then remove the lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-41 Remove the front jogger motor (7 of 22)



9. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

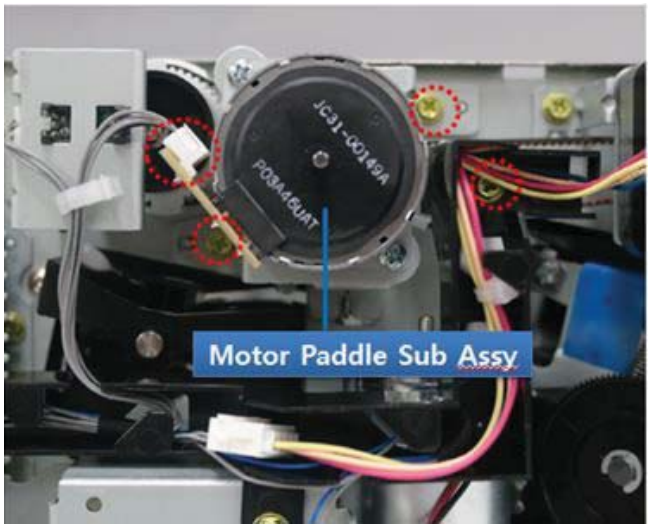
Figure 8-42 Remove the front jogger motor (8 of 22)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

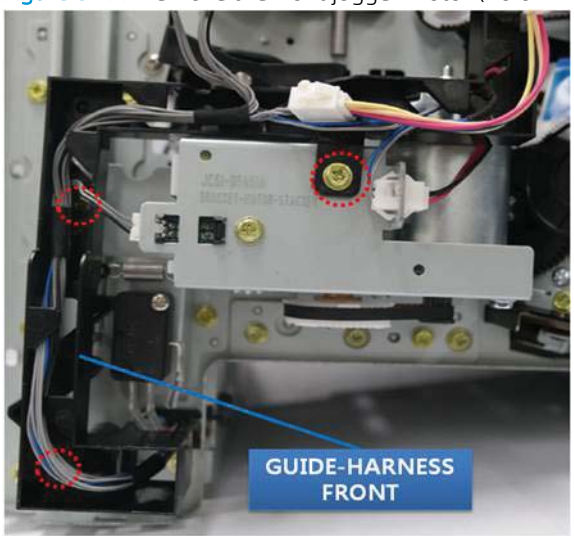
Figure 8-43 Remove the front jogger motor (9 of 22)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

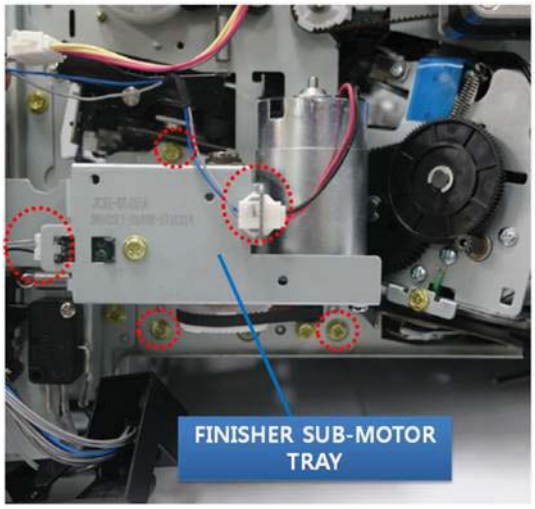
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-44 Remove the front jogger motor (10 of 22)



12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-45 Remove the front jogger motor (11 of 22)



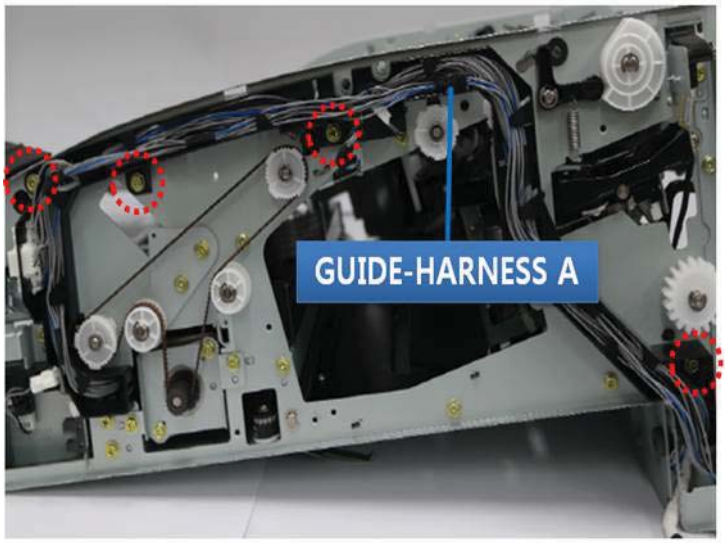
13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-46 Remove the front jogger motor (12 of 22)



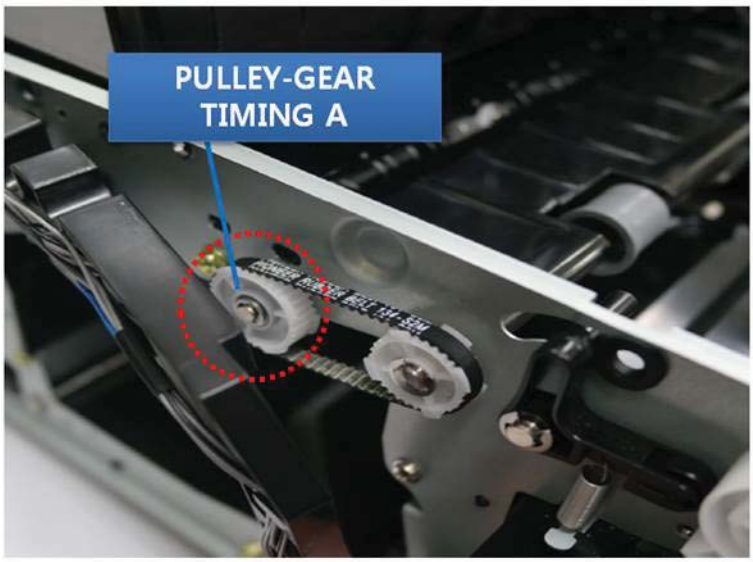
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-47 Remove the front jogger motor (13 of 22)



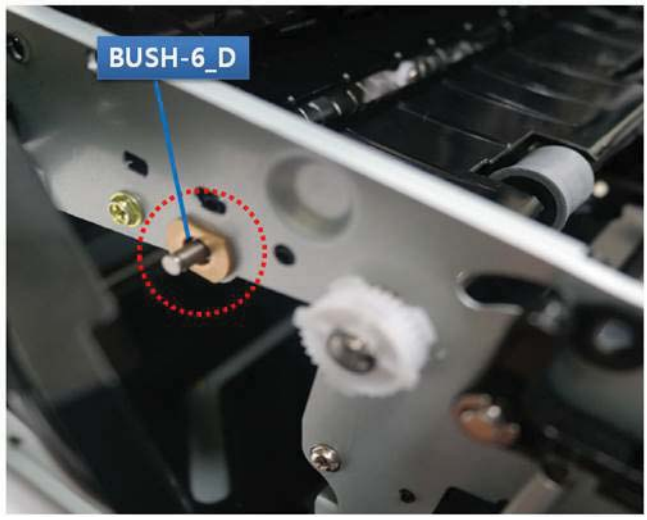
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-48 Remove the front jogger motor (14 of 22)



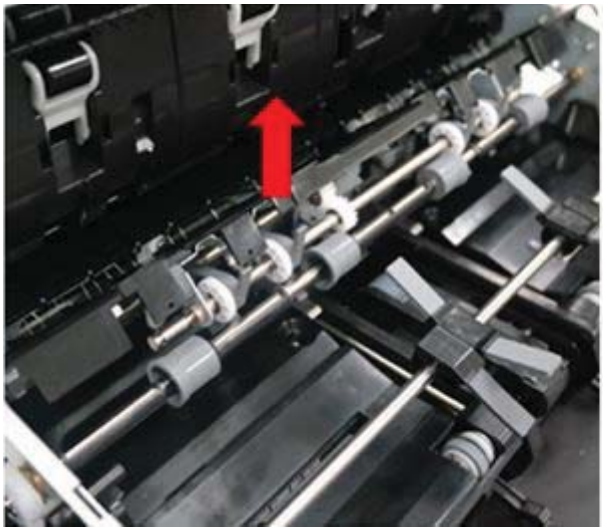
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-49 Remove the front jogger motor (15 of 22)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-50 Remove the front jogger motor (16 of 22)



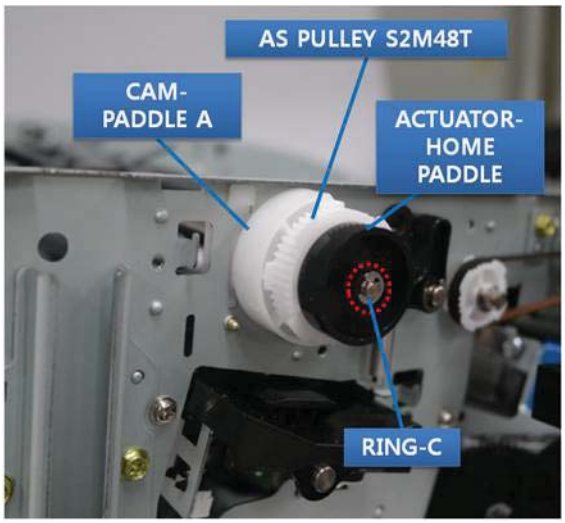


18. Remove the ring-c, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

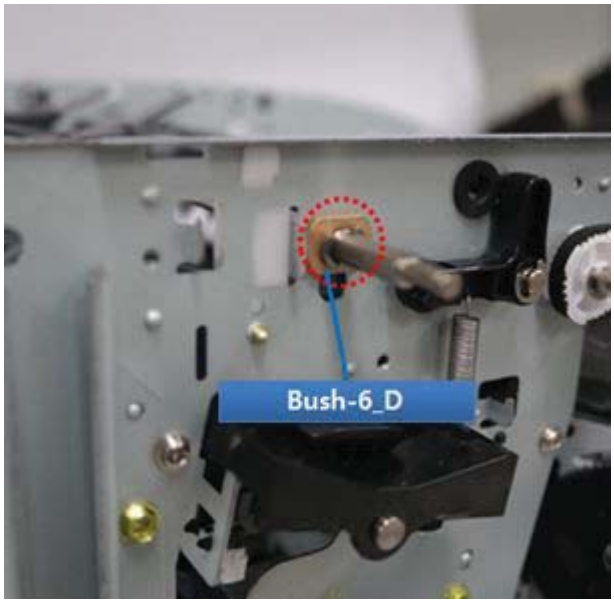
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 8-51 Remove the front jogger motor (17 of 22)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

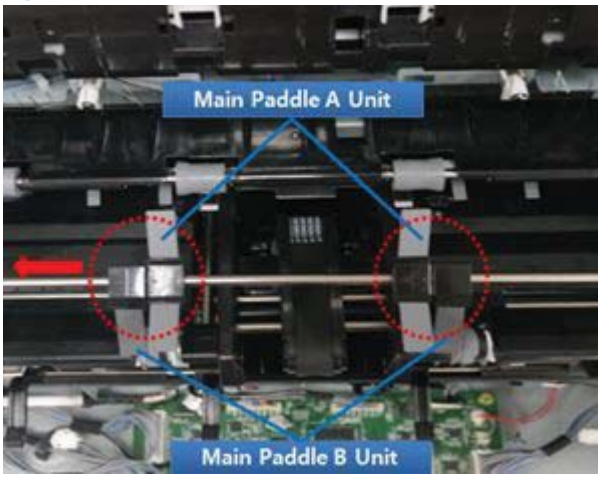
Figure 8-52 Remove the front jogger motor (18 of 22)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

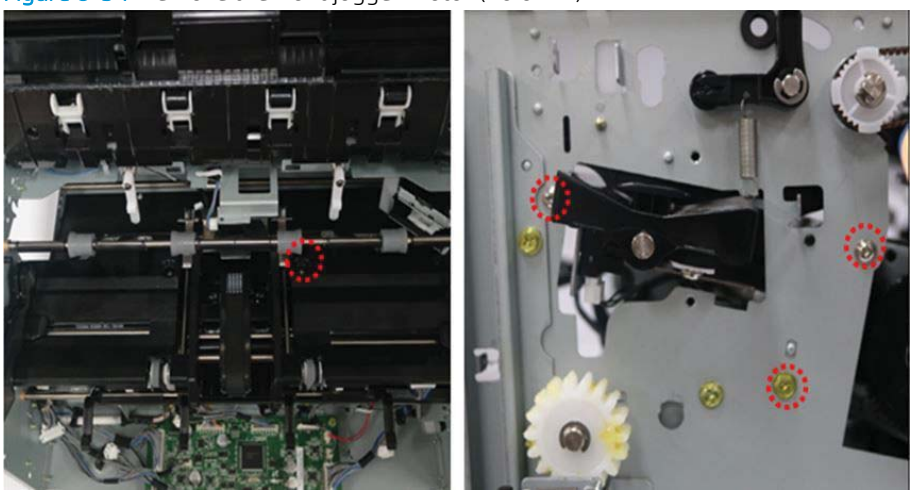
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 8-53 Remove the front jogger motor (19 of 22)



21. Remove four screws.

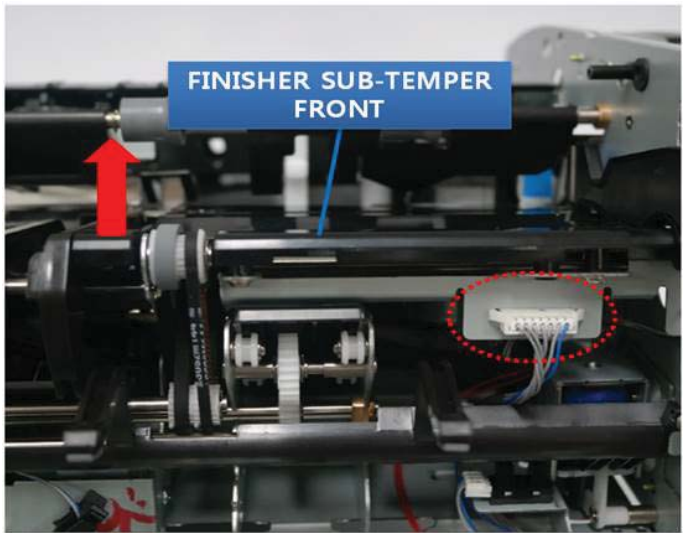
Figure 8-54 Remove the front jogger motor (20 of 22)



22. Unplug the connector, and then pull the finisher sub-tamper front up to remove.

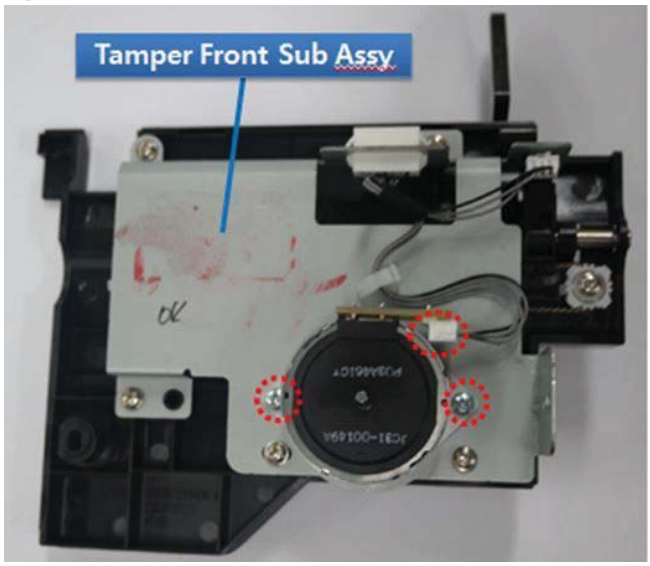
Reinstallation tip: Position the upper left-corner of the sub tamper, and then carefully rotate it counter-clockwise into position.

Figure 8-55 Remove the front jogger motor (21 of 22)



23. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 8-56 Remove the front jogger motor (22 of 22)



Front Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number
Front Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the front jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

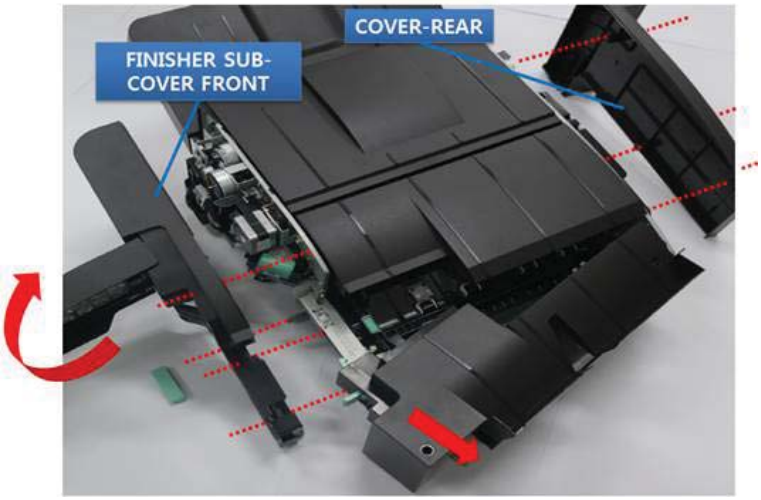
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

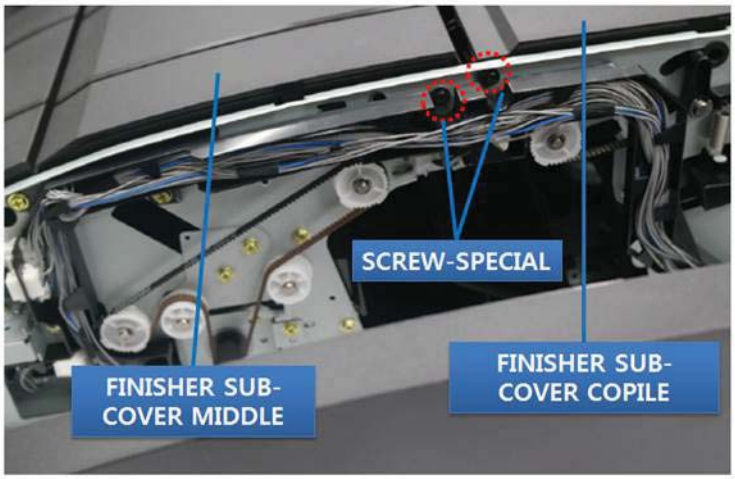
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-57 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-58 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-59 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

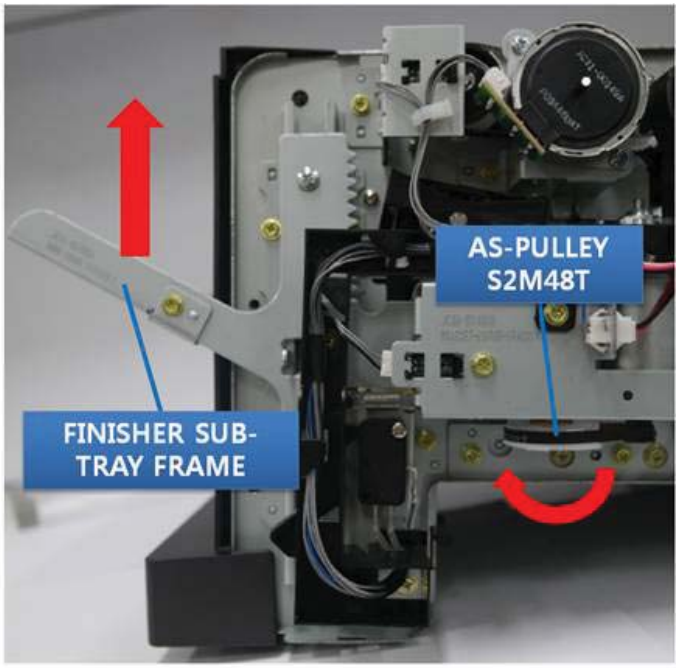


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

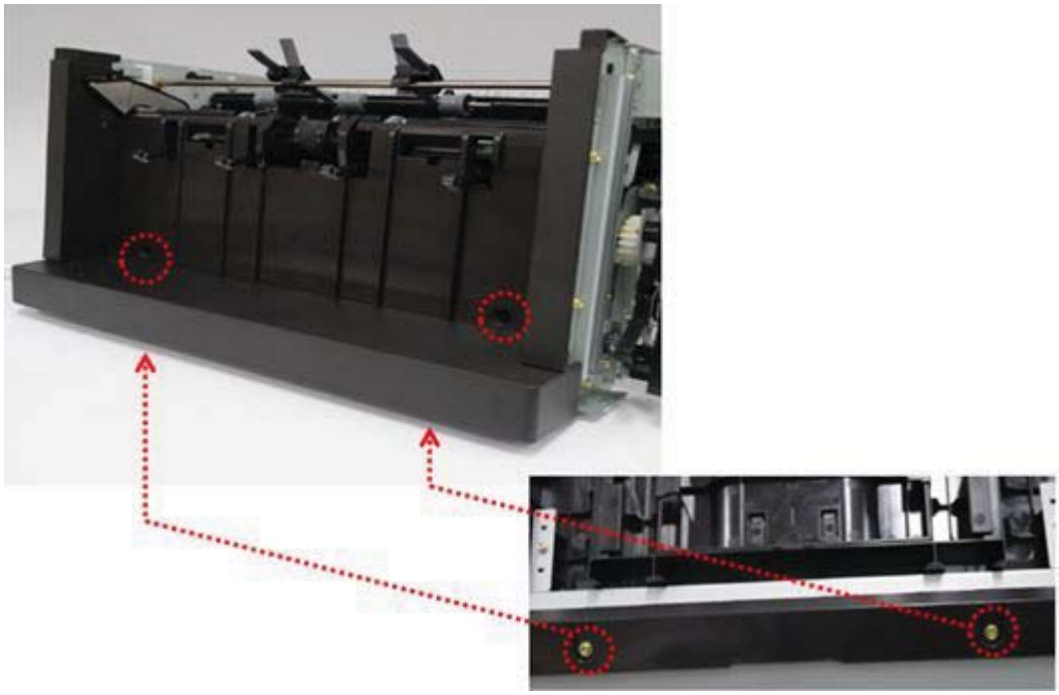
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-60 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



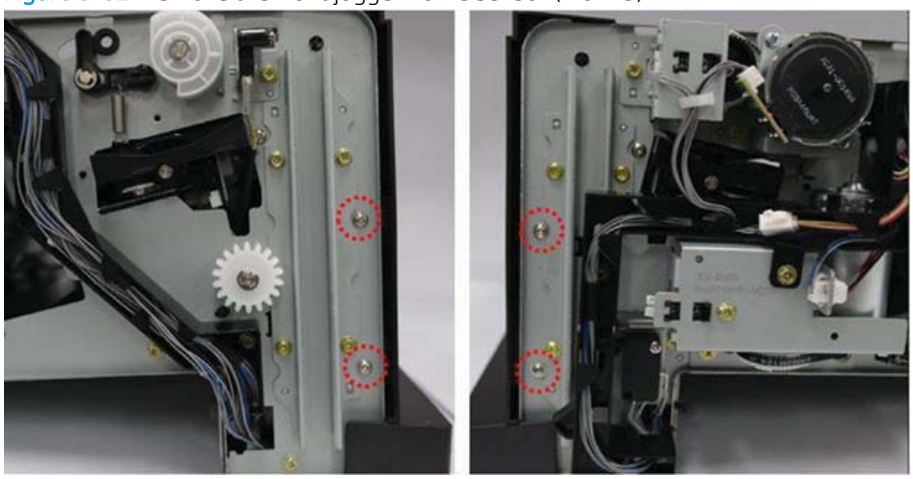
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-61 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

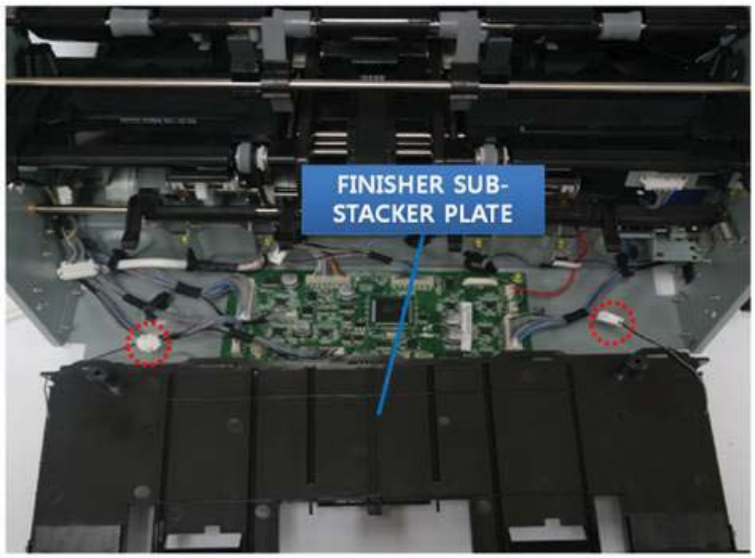
Figure 8-62 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-63 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

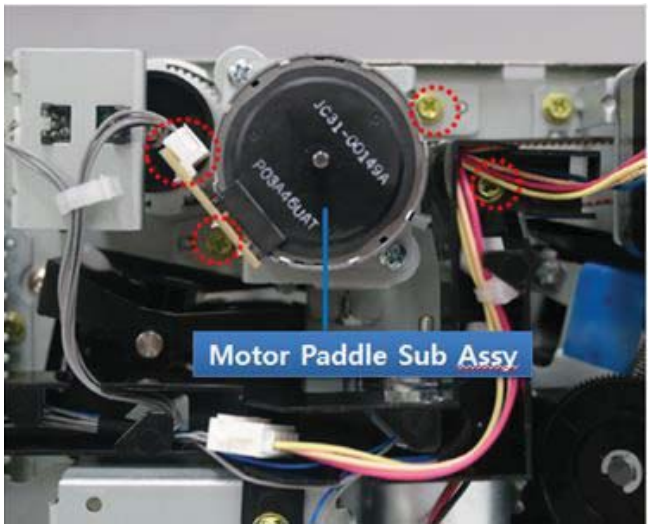
Figure 8-64 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

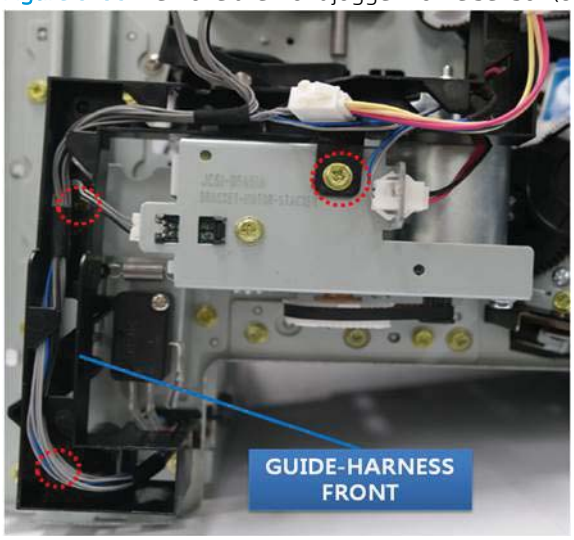
Figure 8-65 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

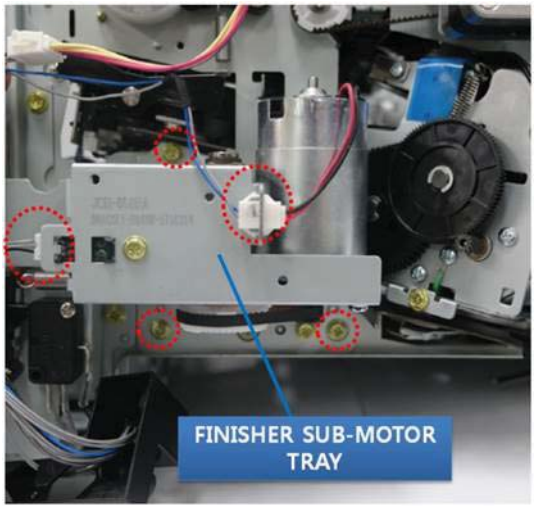
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-66 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-67 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



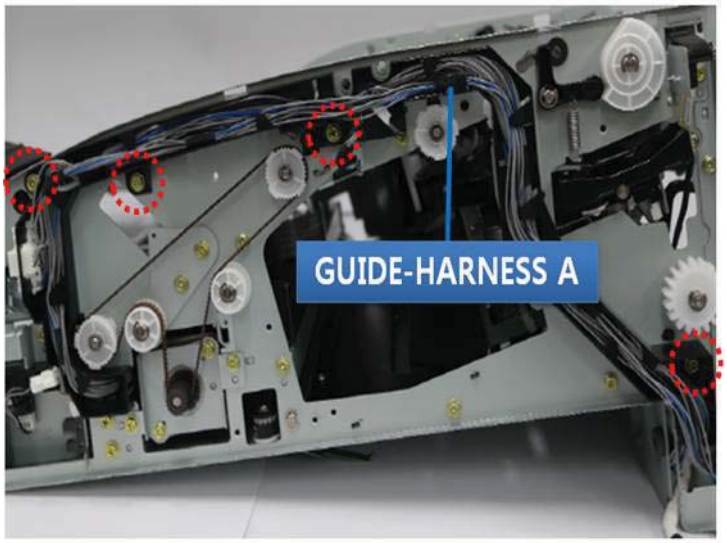
13. Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-68 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (1 of 6)



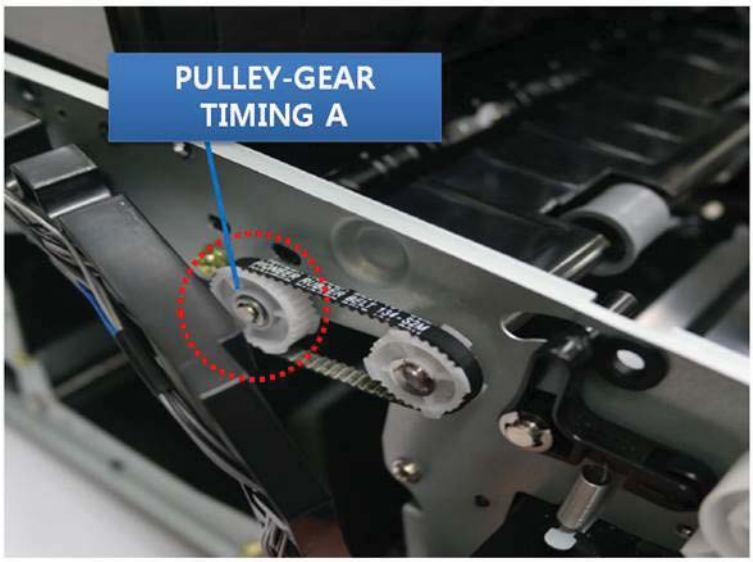
14. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-69 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (2 of 6)



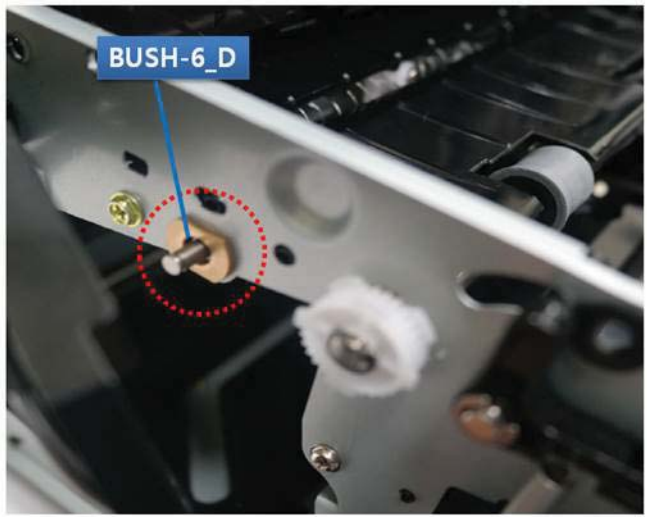
15. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-70 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (3 of 6)



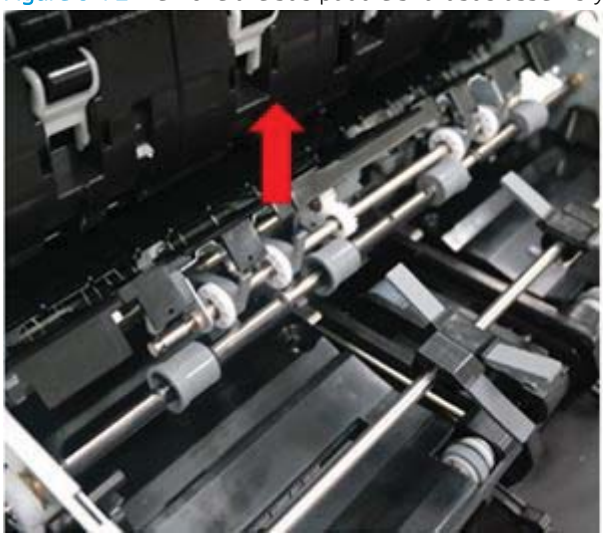
16. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-71 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



17. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-72 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)



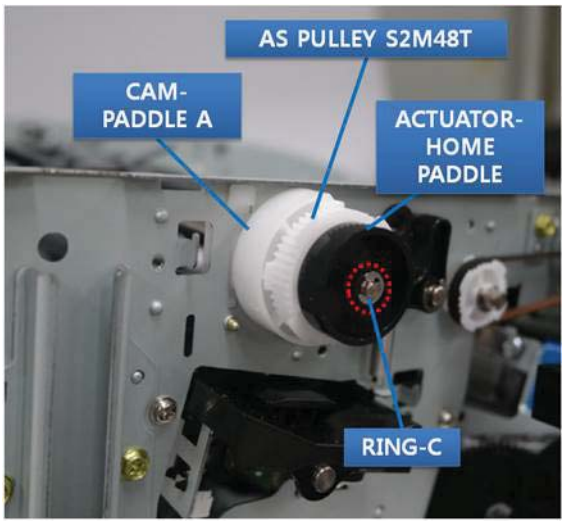


18. Remove the ring-C, actuator-home paddle, AS pulley S2M48T, and cam-paddle A.

Reinstallation tip: The cam must be installed with the same orientation as the cam on the opposite side.

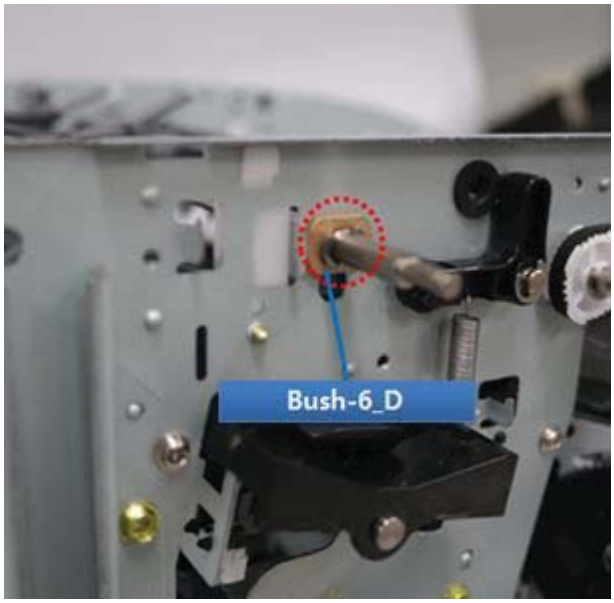
Reinstallation tip: The actuator home cam paddle is installed hollow side out

Figure 8-73 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 15)



19. Remove the e-ring and bush-6_D.

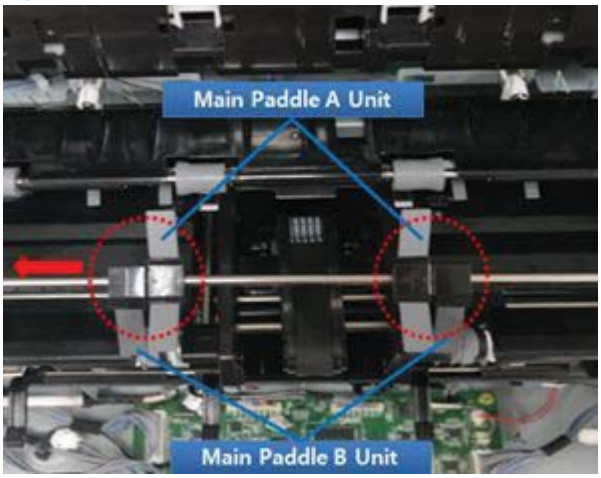
Figure 8-74 Remove the front jogger home sensor (11 of 15)



20. Remove the main paddle A unit / B unit, and then carefully remove the shaft from its retainer.

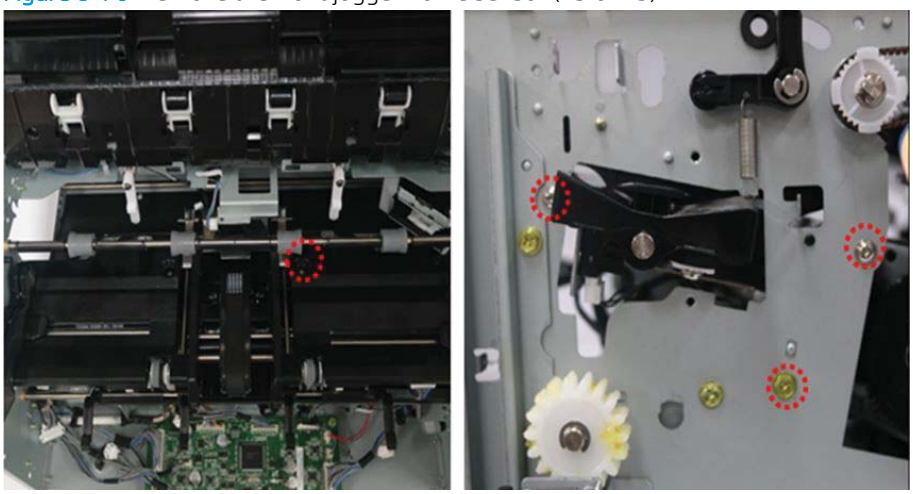
NOTE: Note the orientation of paddles and use caution to not break the plastic locator pin on the paddle.

Figure 8-75 Remove the front jogger home sensor (12 of 15)



21. Remove four screws.

Figure 8-76 Remove the front jogger home sensor (13 of 15)



22. Unplug the connector, and then remove the front jogger home sensor.

Figure 8-77 Remove the front jogger home sensor



23. Remove the tamper front sub assembly.

Rear Jogger Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear Jogger Motor assembly part number
Rear Jogger Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

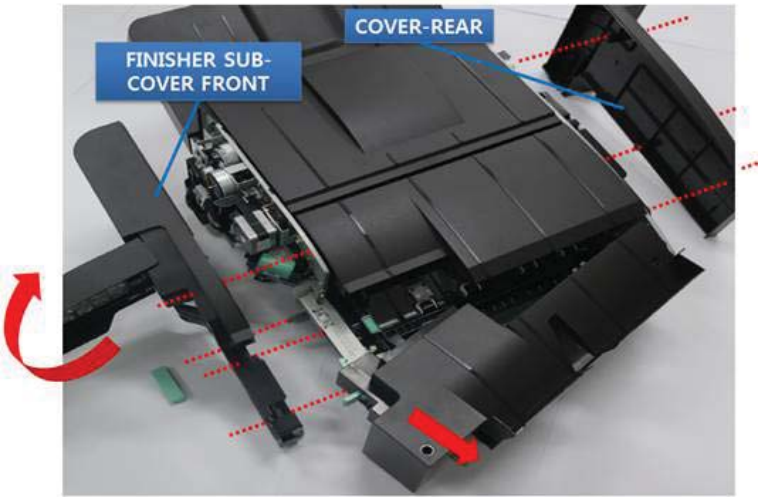
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

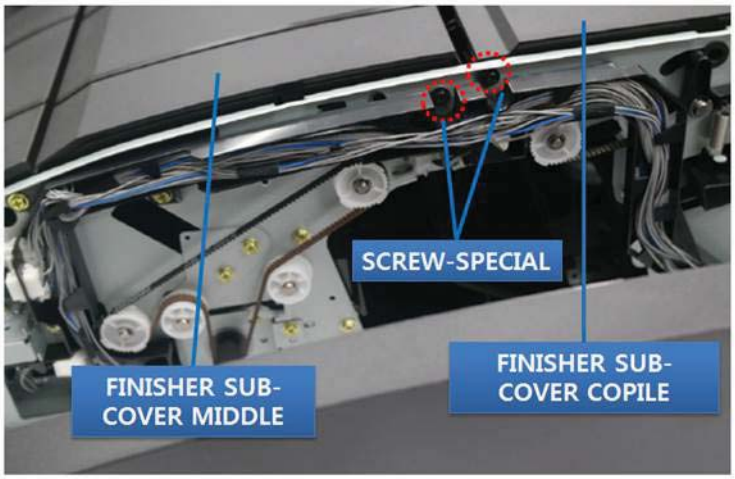
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-78 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-79 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-80 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

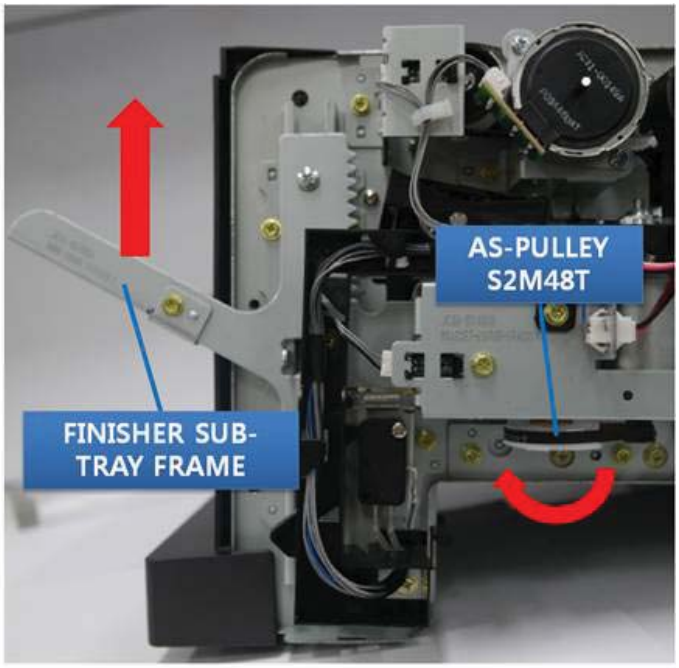


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

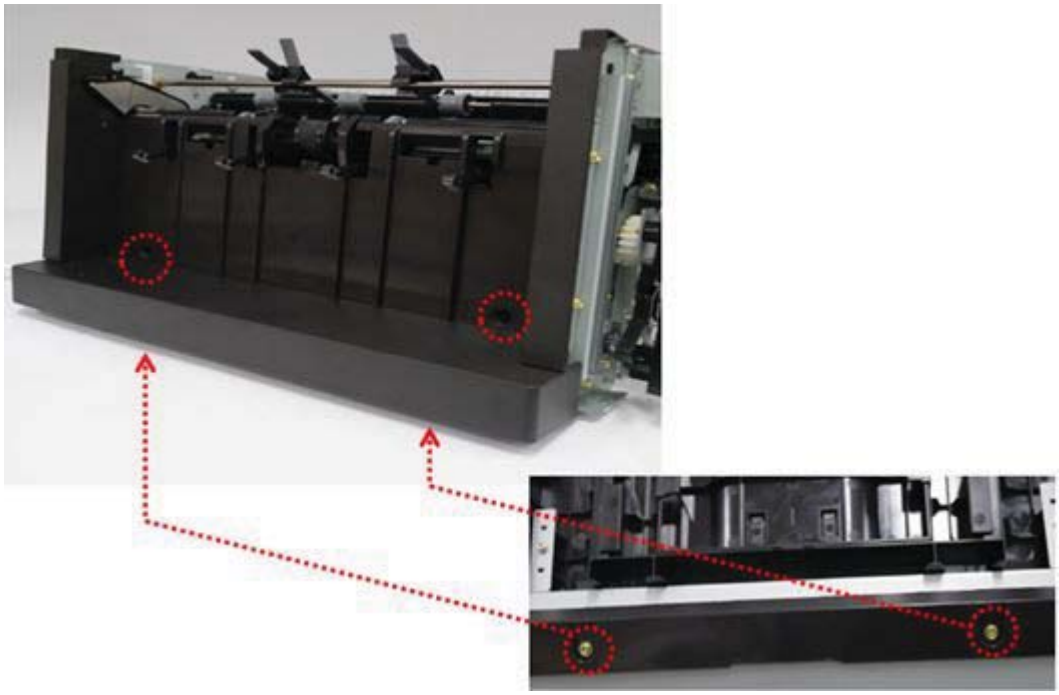
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-81 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



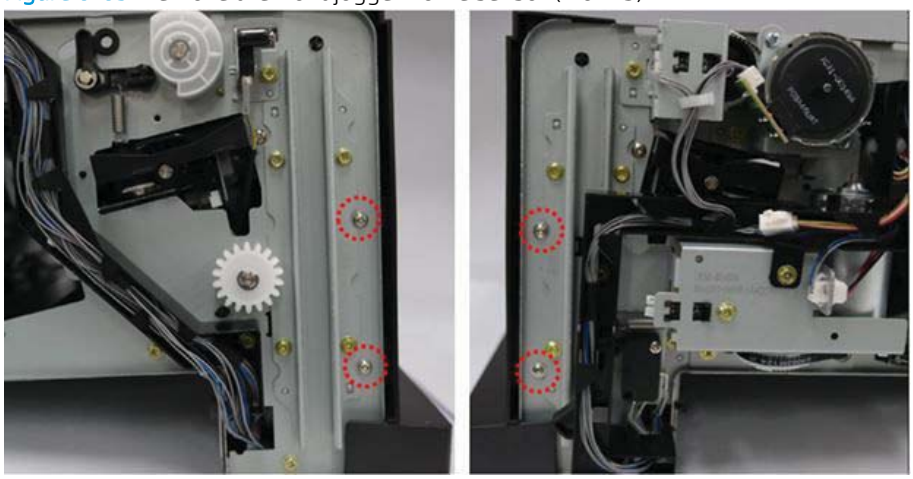
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-82 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

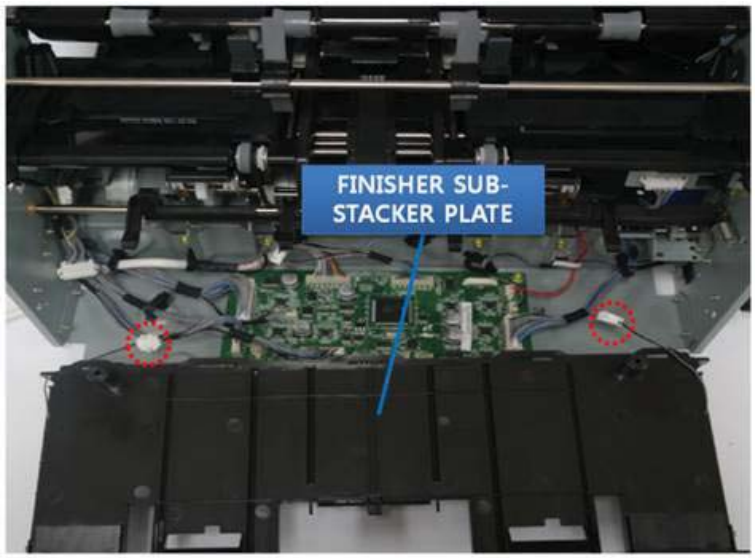
Figure 8-83 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-84 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



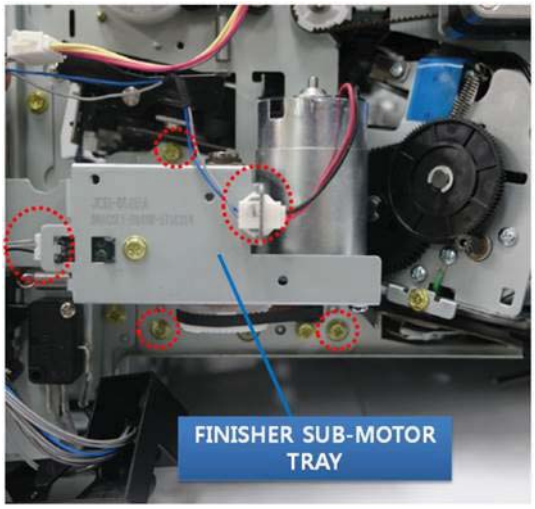
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-85 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-86 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 15)



11. Remove four screws.

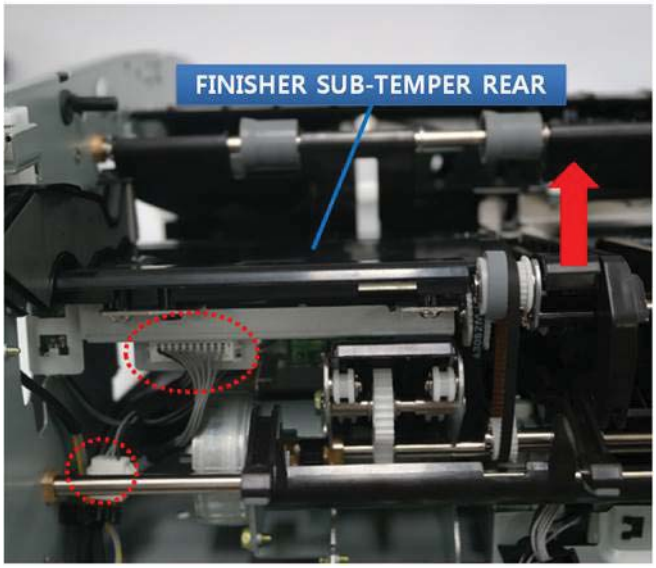
NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 8-87 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)



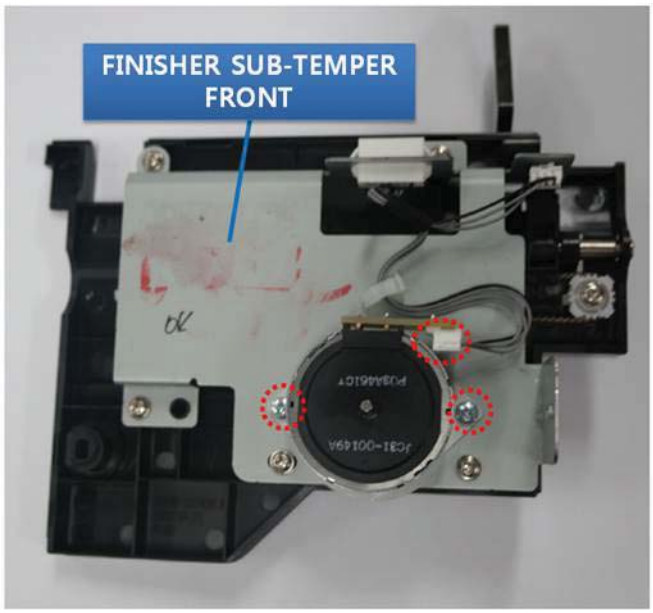
12. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 8-88 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



13. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 8-89 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



14. Remove four screws.

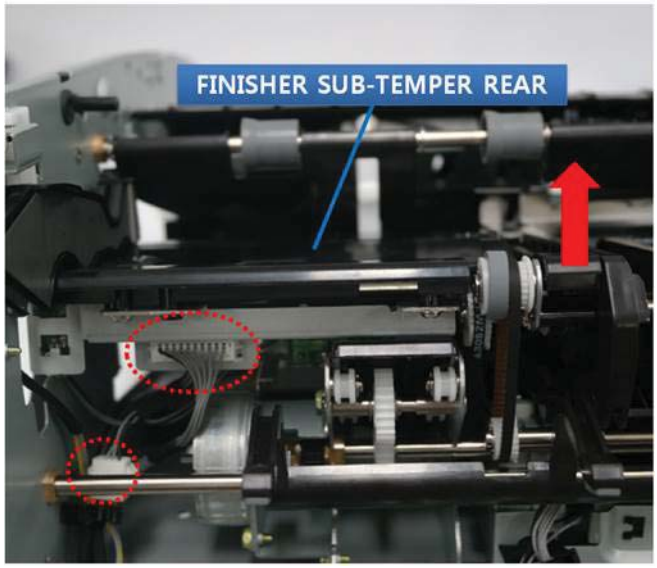
NOTE: Move cable guide out of position to access the screws.

Figure 8-90 Remove the rear jogger motor (1 of 3)



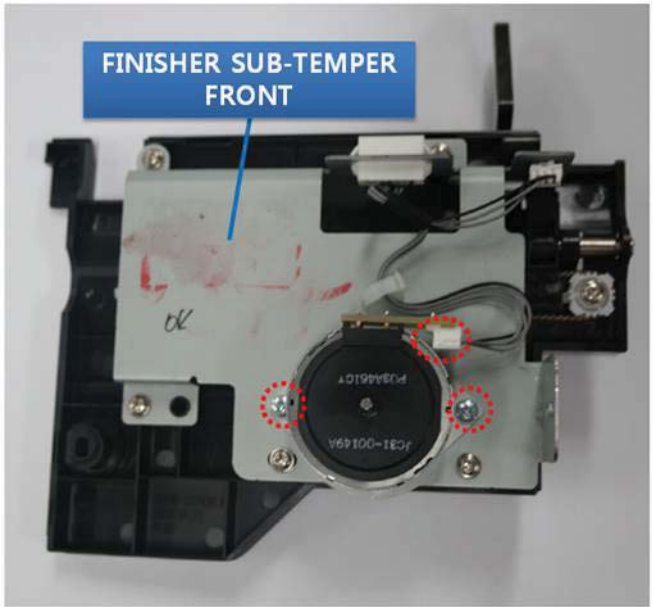
15. Unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-tamper rear.

Figure 8-91 Remove the rear jogger motor (2 of 3)



16. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger motor.

Figure 8-92 Remove the rear jogger motor (3 of 3)



Rear Jogger Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number
Rear Jogger Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the rear jogger home sensor

Remove the rear jogger home sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub-cover front and the cover-rear.

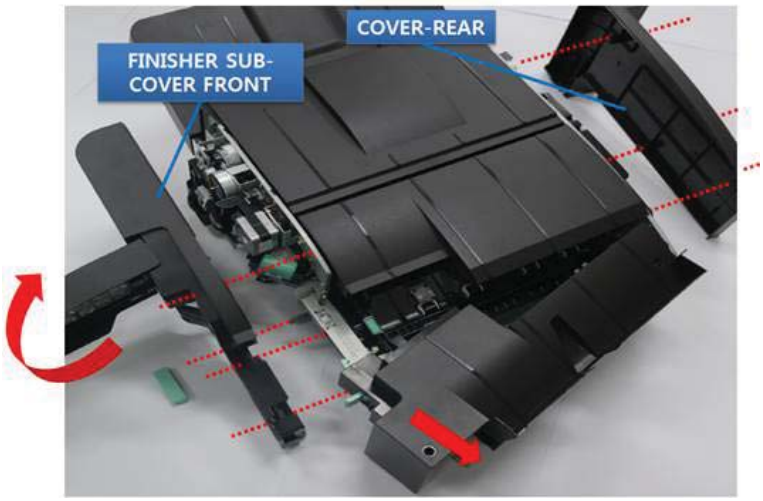
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

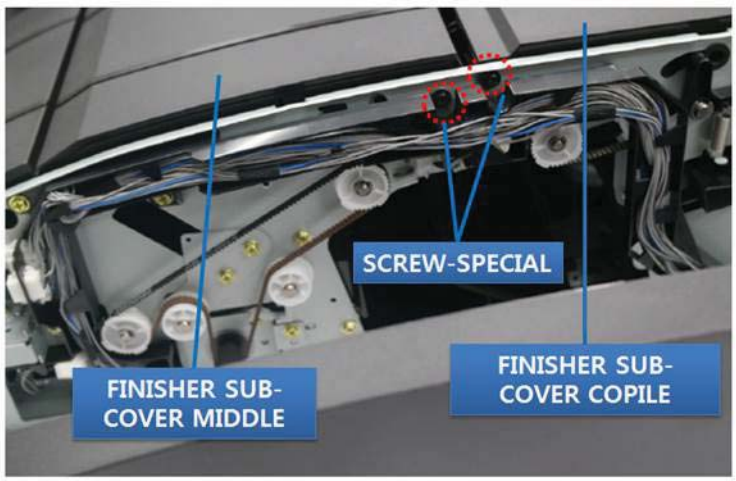
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-93 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 11)

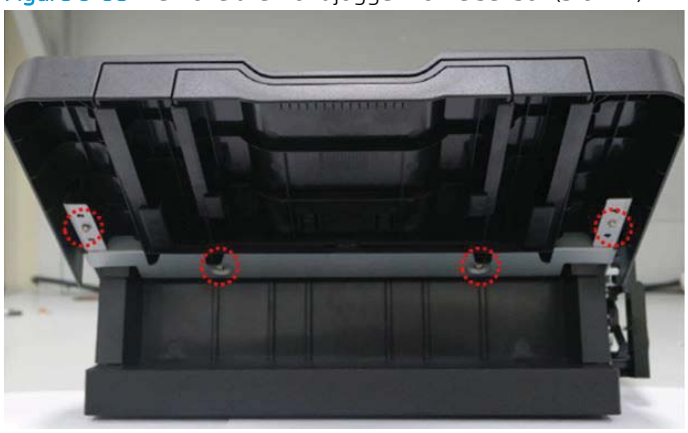
2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-94 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 11)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-95 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 11)

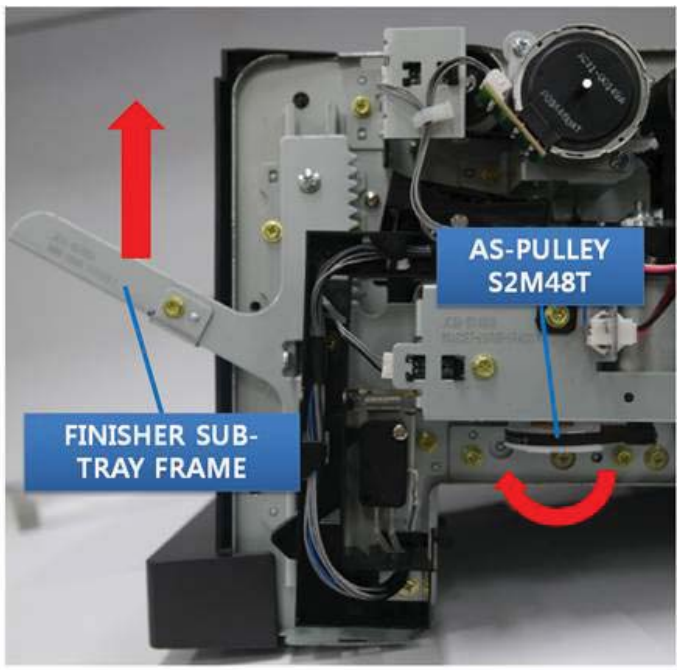


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

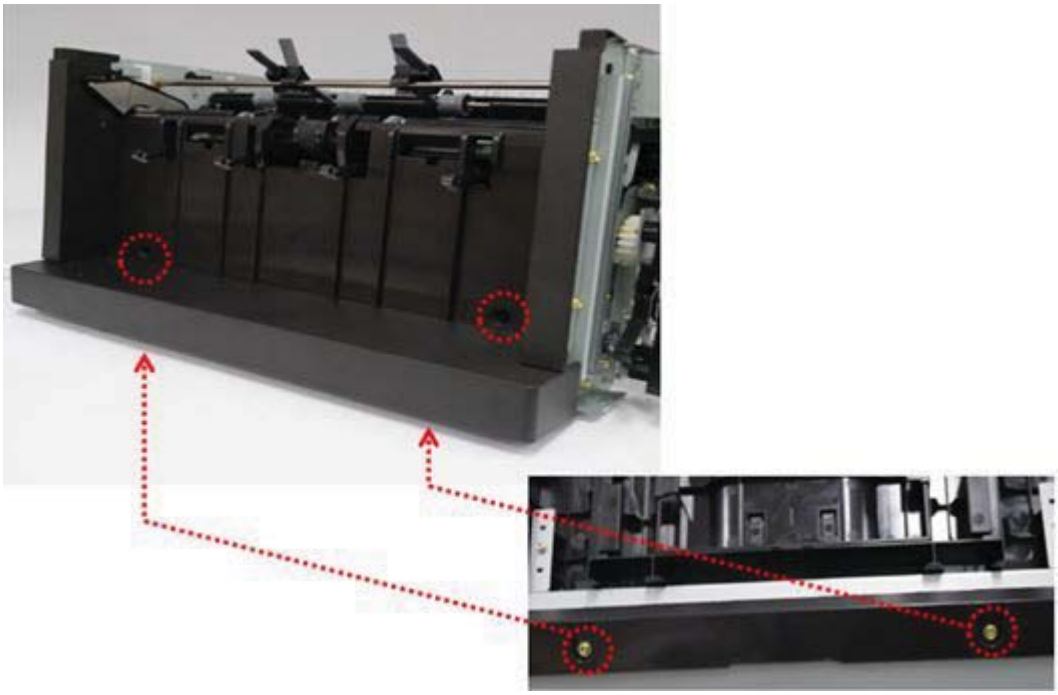
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-96 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 11)



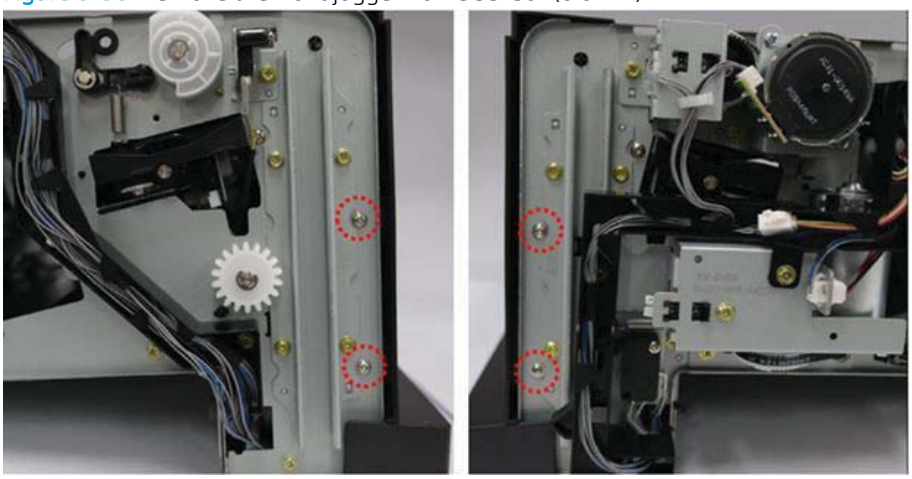
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-97 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 11)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

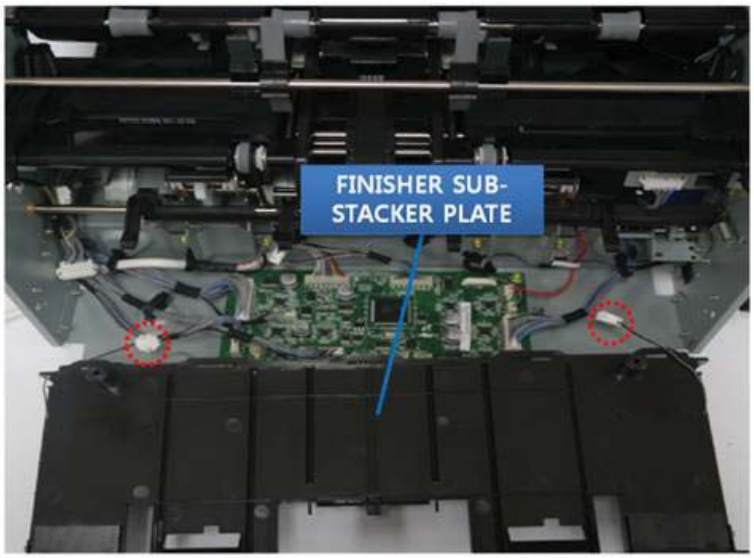
Figure 8-98 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 11)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-99 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 11)



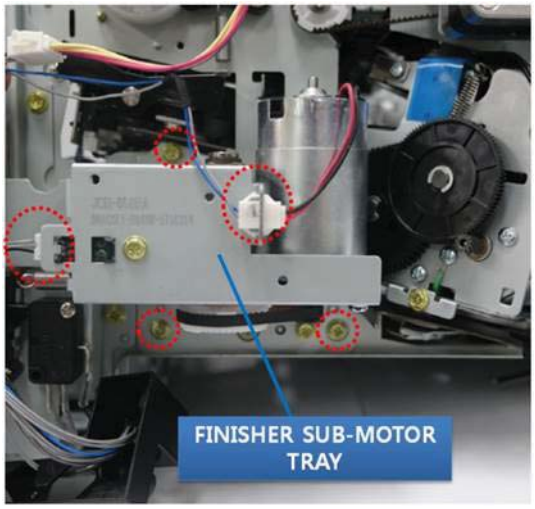
9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

Figure 8-100 Remove the front jogger home sensor (9 of 11)



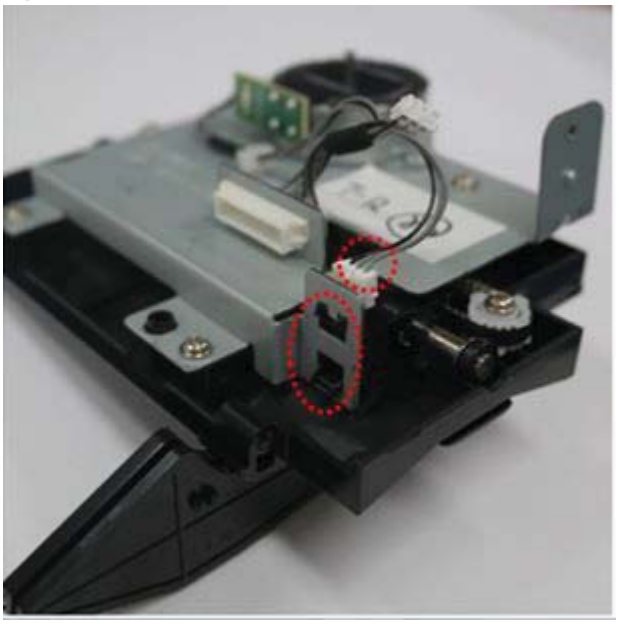
10. Remove three screws, unplug two connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-101 Remove the front jogger home sensor (10 of 11)



11. Unplug the connector, and then remove the rear jogger home sensor.

Figure 8-102 Remove the rear jogger home sensor (11 of 11)



Stapler

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stapler

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the stapler assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stapler assembly part number	
SAM-JC90-01342A	Stapler assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

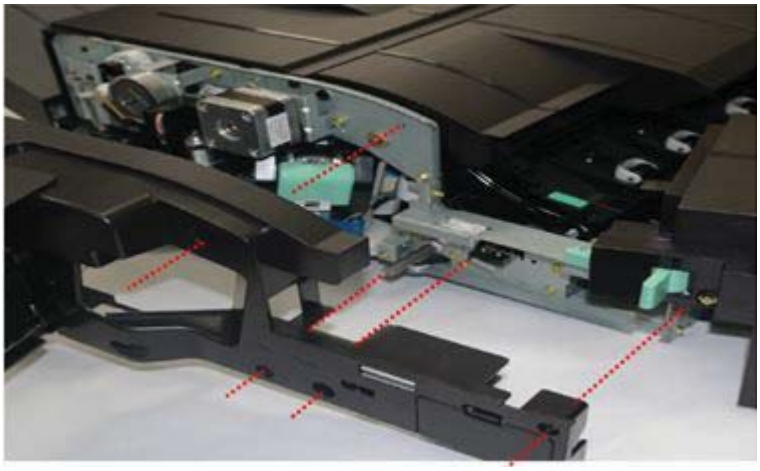
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stapler

1. Remove the front cover.

Figure 8-103 Remove the exit motor (1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws, and then unplug the motor connector.

Figure 8-104 Remove the exit motor (2 of 3)



3. Remove one screw, unplug two connectors, and then remove the stapler unit.

NOTE: Ensure the tab on the back of the stapler unit clears the chassis while removing.

Figure 8-105 Remove the stapler (1 of 2)



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the finisher sub-staple.

Figure 8-106 Remove the stapler (2 of 2)



Stapler position sensor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly
- Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stapler position sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stapler position sensor assembly part number
Stapler position sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

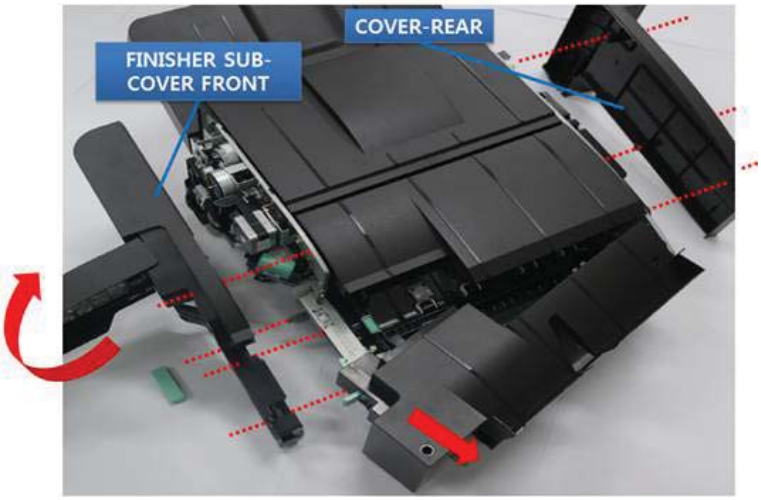
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

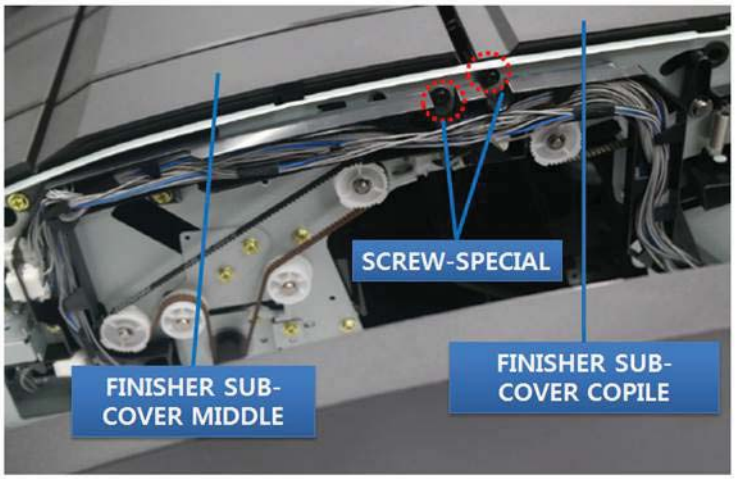
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-107 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-108 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-109 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

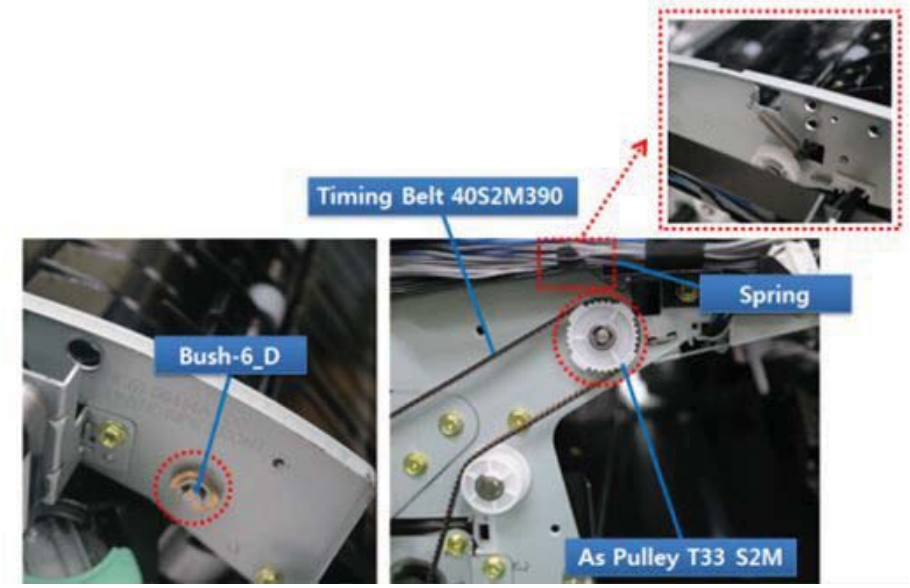
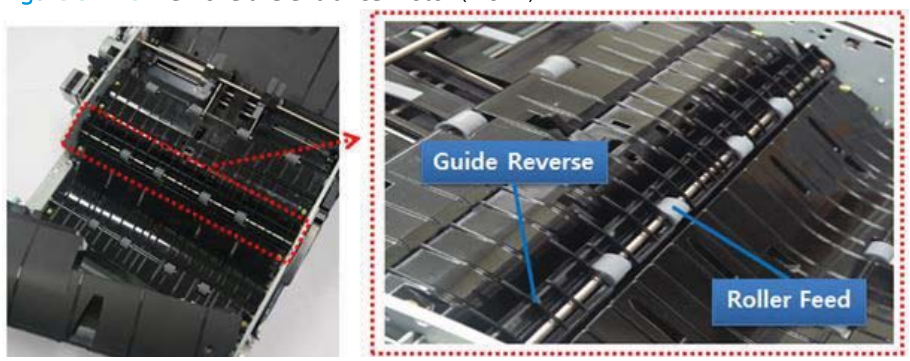


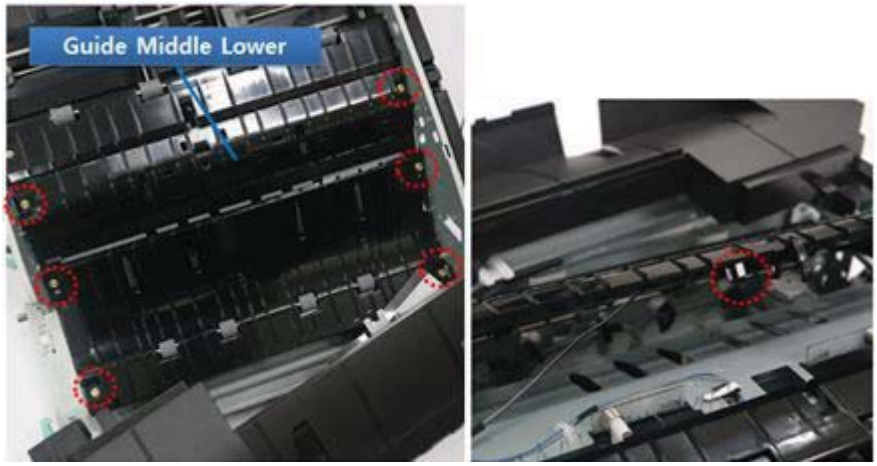
Figure 8-110 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

Figure 8-111 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly

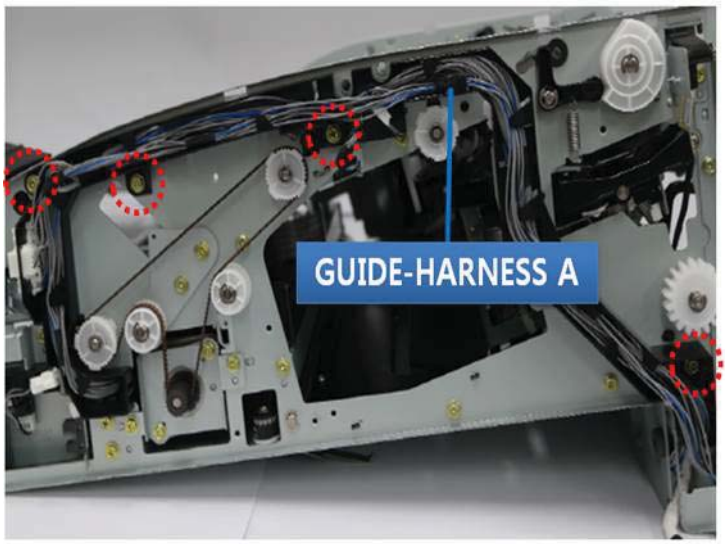
1. Open the cover top tray sub-assembly, and then remove one screw securing the guide-exit lower.

Figure 8-112 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (1 of 6)



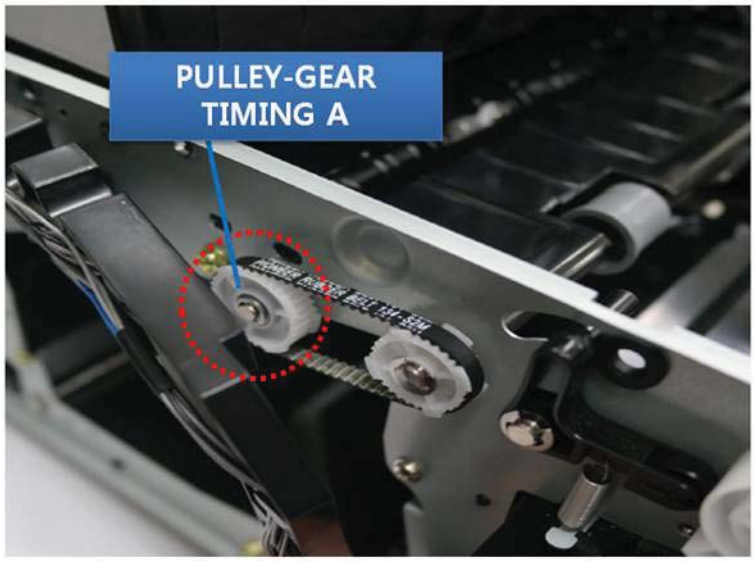
2. Remove four screws securing the guide-harness A.

Figure 8-113 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub-assembly (2 of 6)



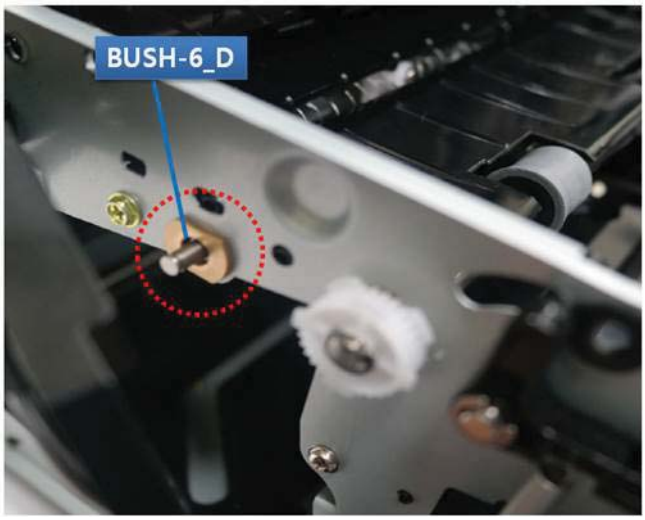
3. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the pulley and timing belt.

Figure 8-114 Remove the Sub Paddle Shaft Sub assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove the e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 8-115 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (4 of 6)



5. Lift up and remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly.

Figure 8-116 Remove the sub paddle shaft sub assembly (5 of 6)



Step 3: Remove the staple position sensor assembly

1. Remove two screws from the front of the printer. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support.

Figure 8-117 Remove the stapler position sensor (1 of 7)



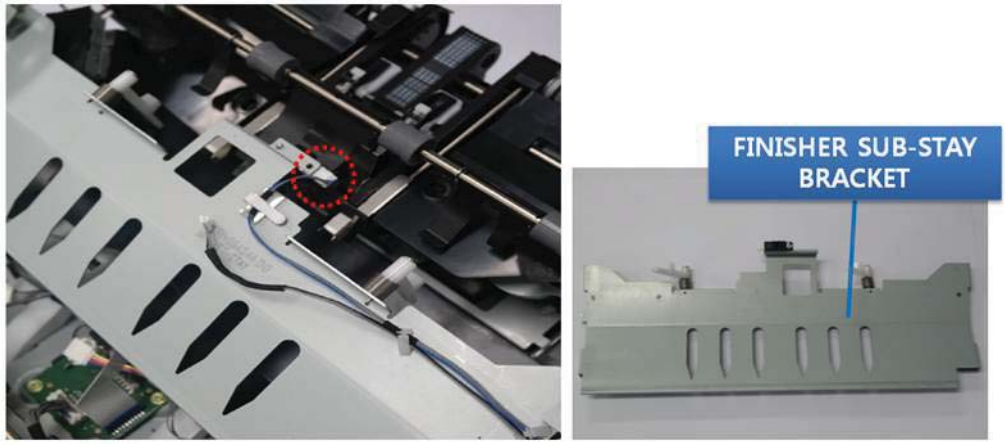
2. Remove two screws from the rear of the printer.

Figure 8-118 Remove the stapler position sensor (2 of 7)



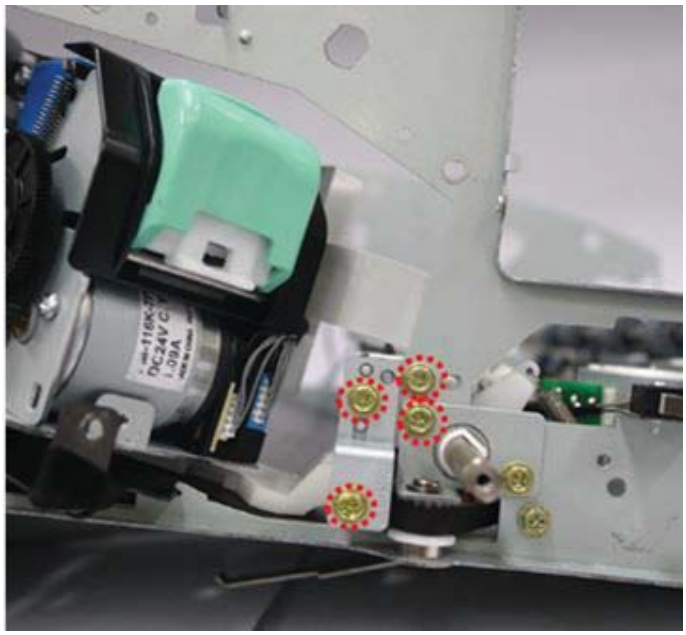
3. Loosen three cable restraints. Unplug the connector at the sensor, and then remove the finisher sub-stay bracket.

Figure 8-119 Remove the stapler position sensor (3 of 7)



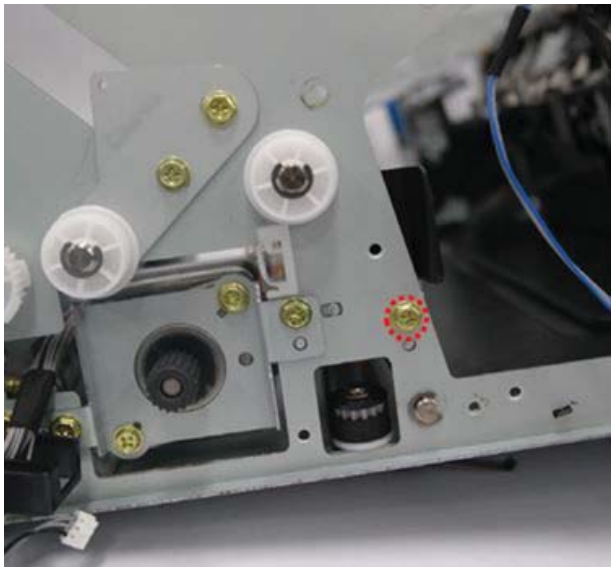
4. Remove one screw from the front of the printer.

Figure 8-120 Remove the stapler position sensor (4 of 7)



5. Remove one screw from the rear of the printer.

Figure 8-121 Remove the stapler position sensor (5 of 7)

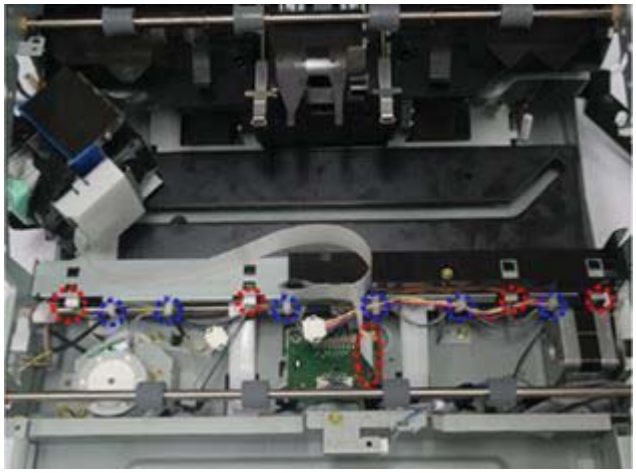


6. Unplug four photo-sensor connectors. Open the six cable restraints, and then unplug the FFC cable.

NOTE: The FFC is glued to the support bracket. However, the sensors can be replaced without removal of the FFC.

Reinstallation tip: Connect the sensors, lock the cable restraints, and then connect the FCC.

Figure 8-122 Remove the stapler position sensor (6 of 7)



7. Remove the assembly, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-123 Remove the stapler position sensor (7 of 7)



Traverse Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Traverse Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Traverse Motor assembly part number	
???	Traverse Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

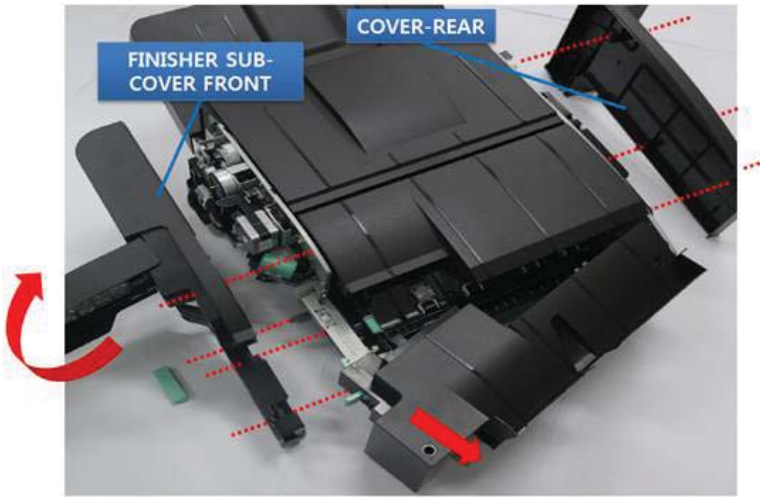
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

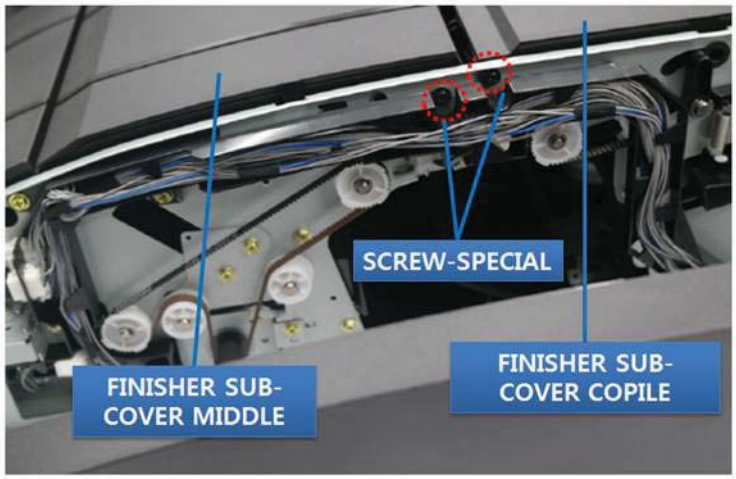
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-124 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-125 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-126 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

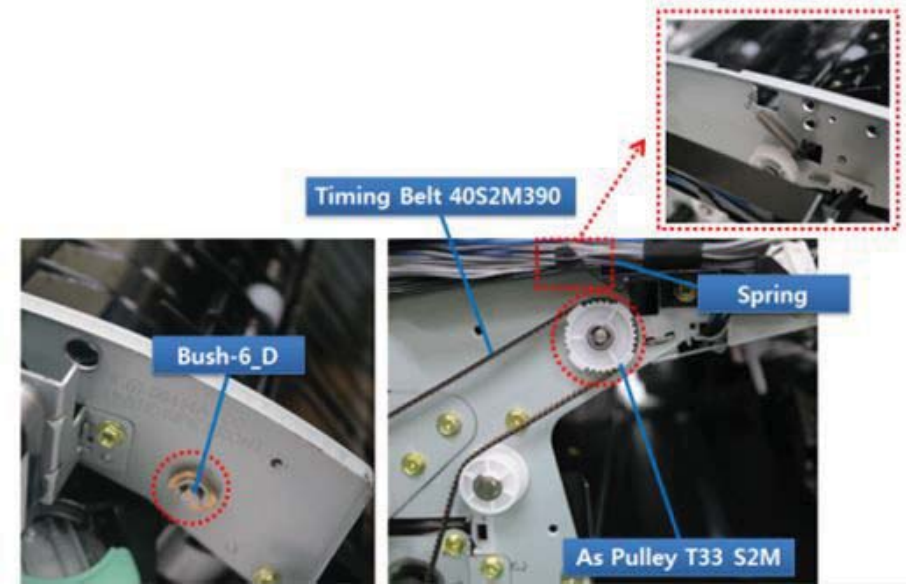
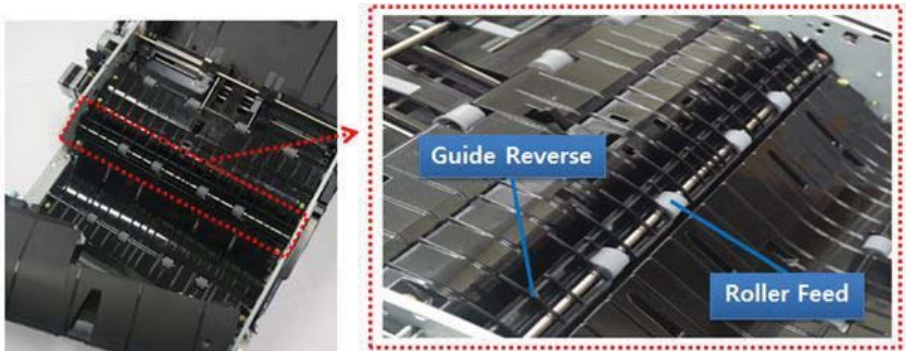


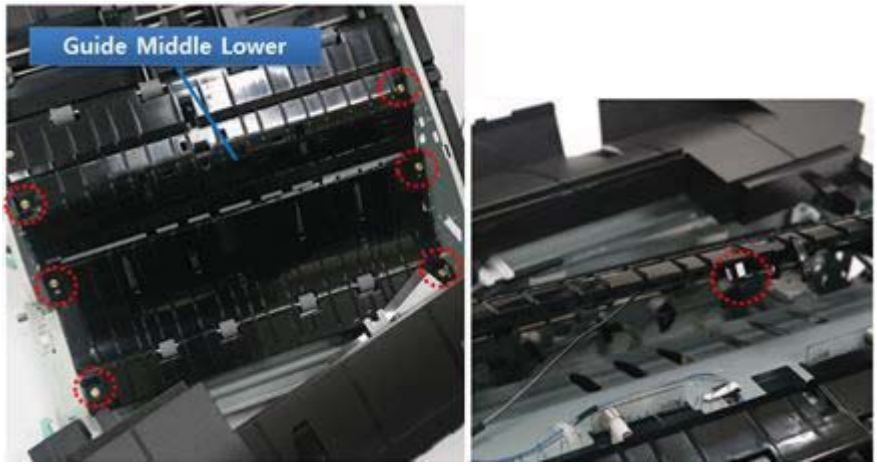
Figure 8-127 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

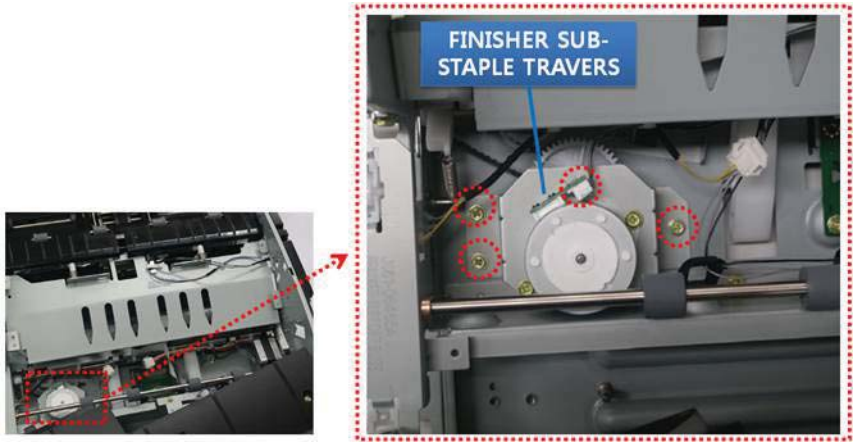
Figure 8-128 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the traverse motor

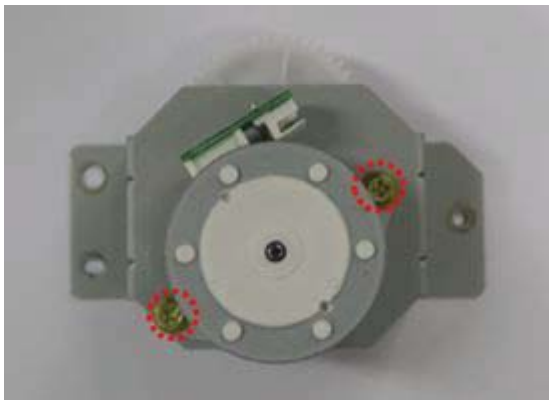
1. Remove three screws, unplug the motor connector, and then remove the finisher sub-staple travers.

   Figure 8-129 Remove the traverse motor (1 of 2)

2. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 8-130 Remove the traverse motor (2 of 2)

3. Use the following steps when reinstalling the traverse motor:

   a. Apply tension to the spring by pushing toward the center of the printer, and then tighten the screw. Tightening the screw puts maximum slack in the belt.

   b. Lower the motor while placing the belt on the motor pulley.

   c. Secure the bracket with three screws.

   d. Release the spring tension screw to allow the spring to apply tension to the belt.

   e. Tighten the screw.

Stacker Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboardr assembly part number	
???	Stacker Motor

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker motor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

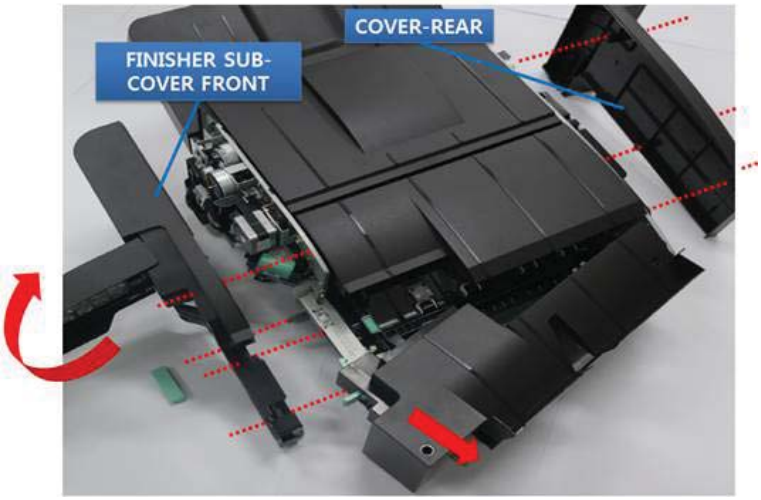
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

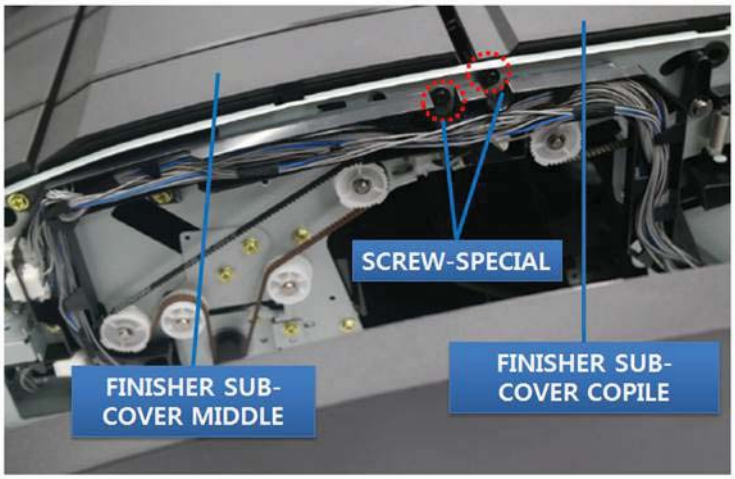
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-131 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-132 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-133 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

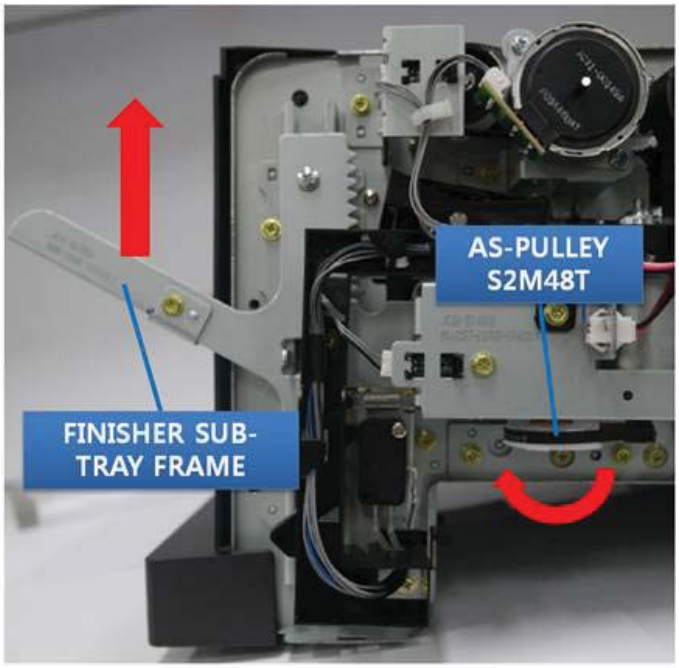


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

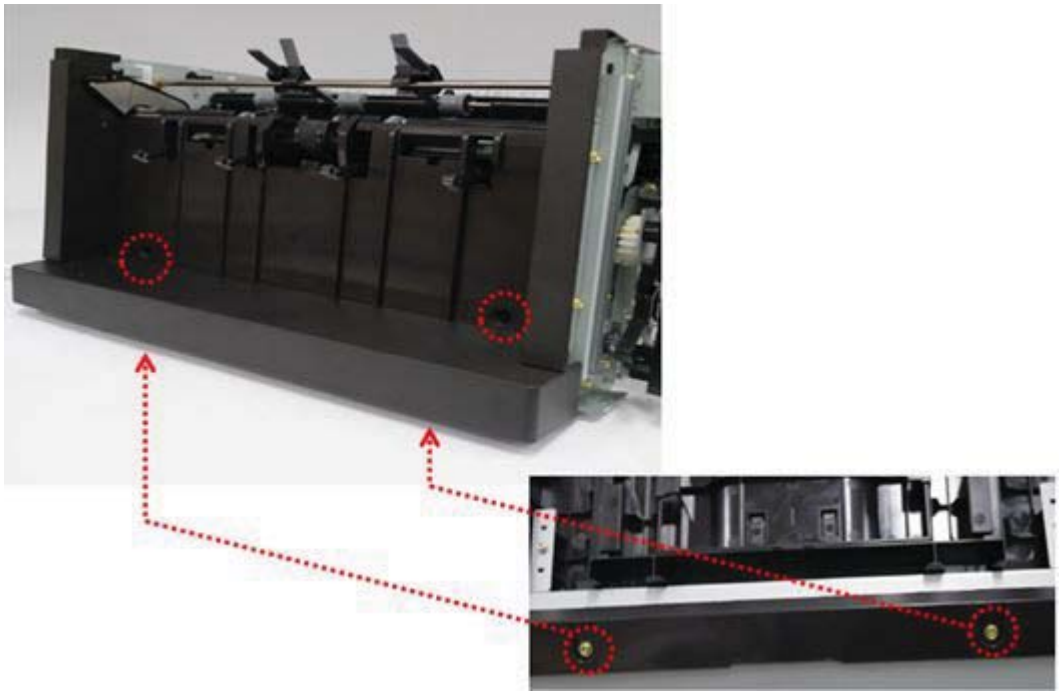
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-134 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



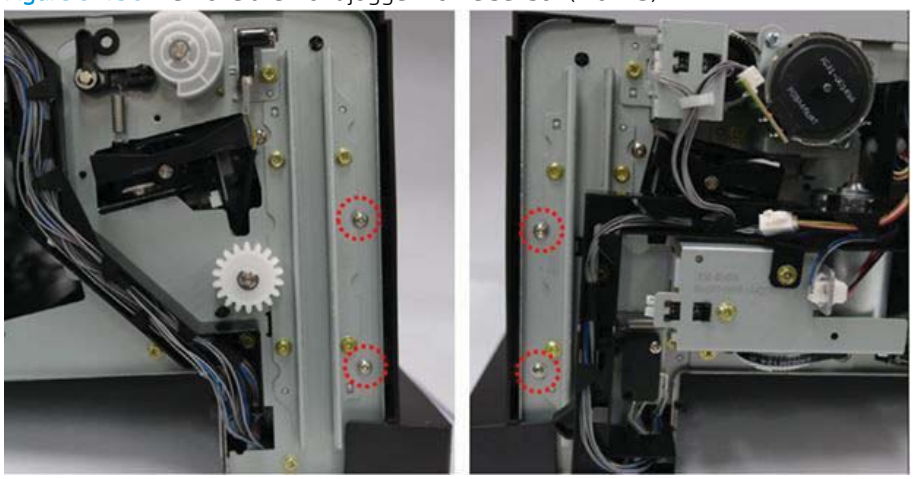
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-135 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

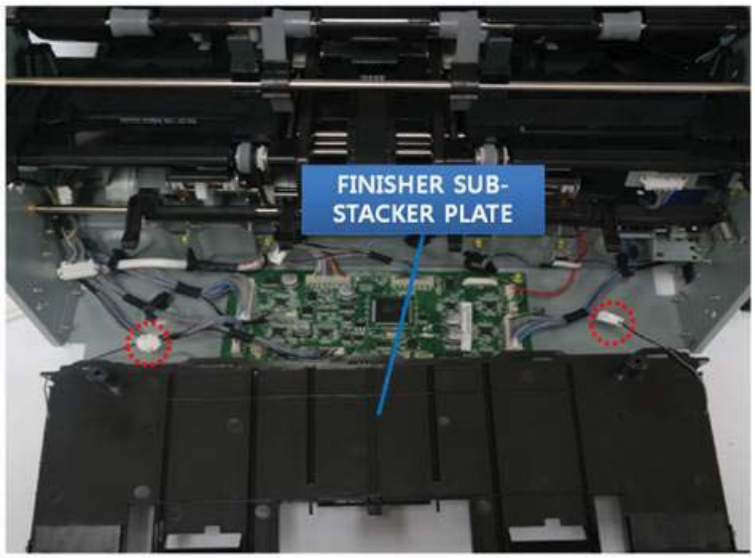
Figure 8-136 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove Lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-137 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

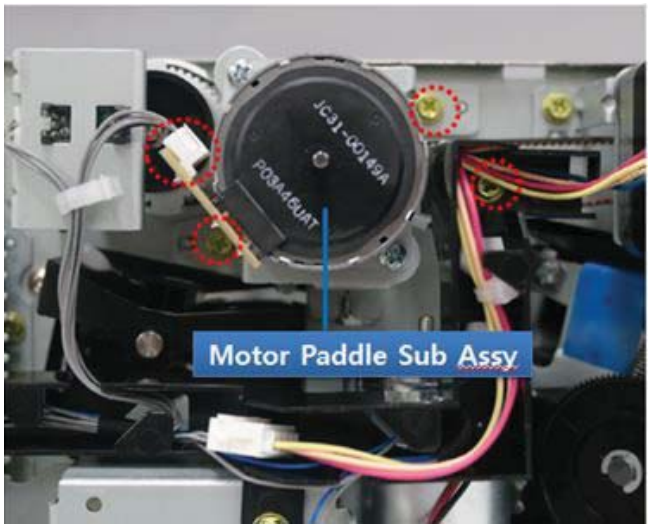
Figure 8-138 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

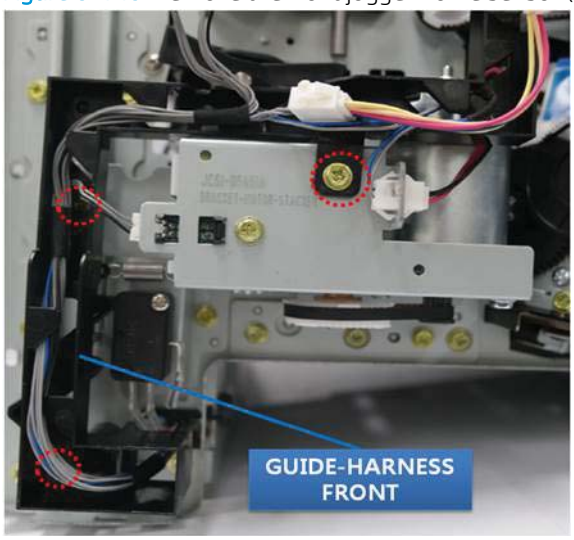
Figure 8-139 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-140 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the stacker motor.

Figure 8-141 Remove the stacker motor



Stacker Encoder Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly part number
Stacker Encoder Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker encoder sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

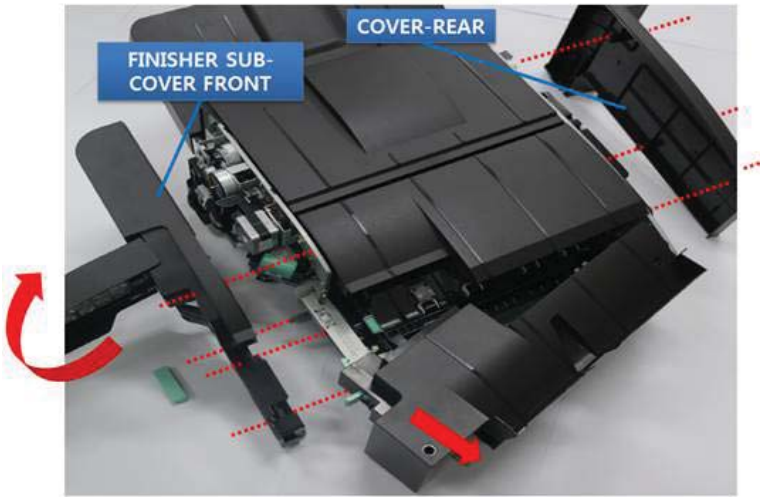
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

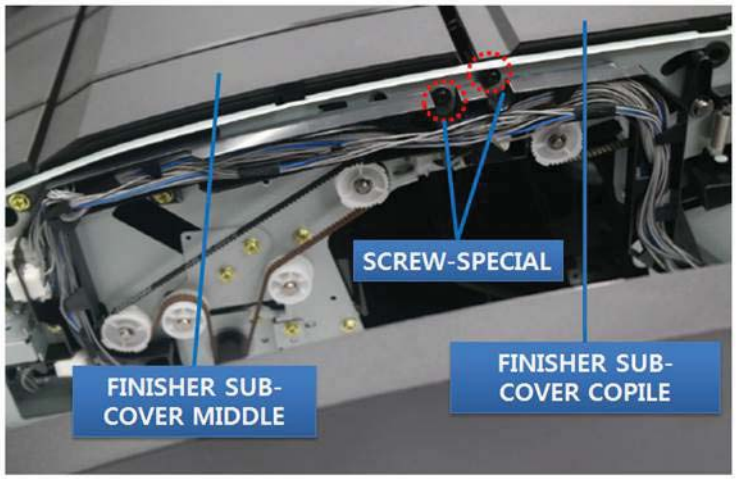
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-142 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-143 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-144 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

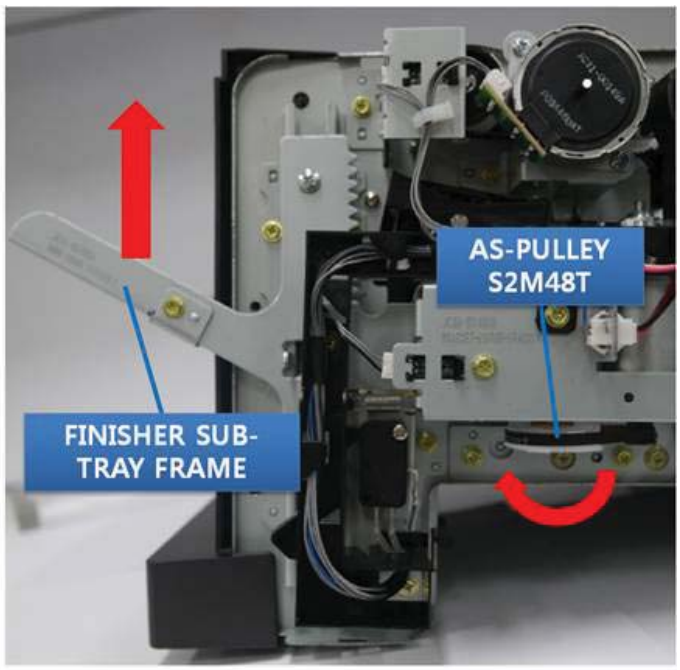


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

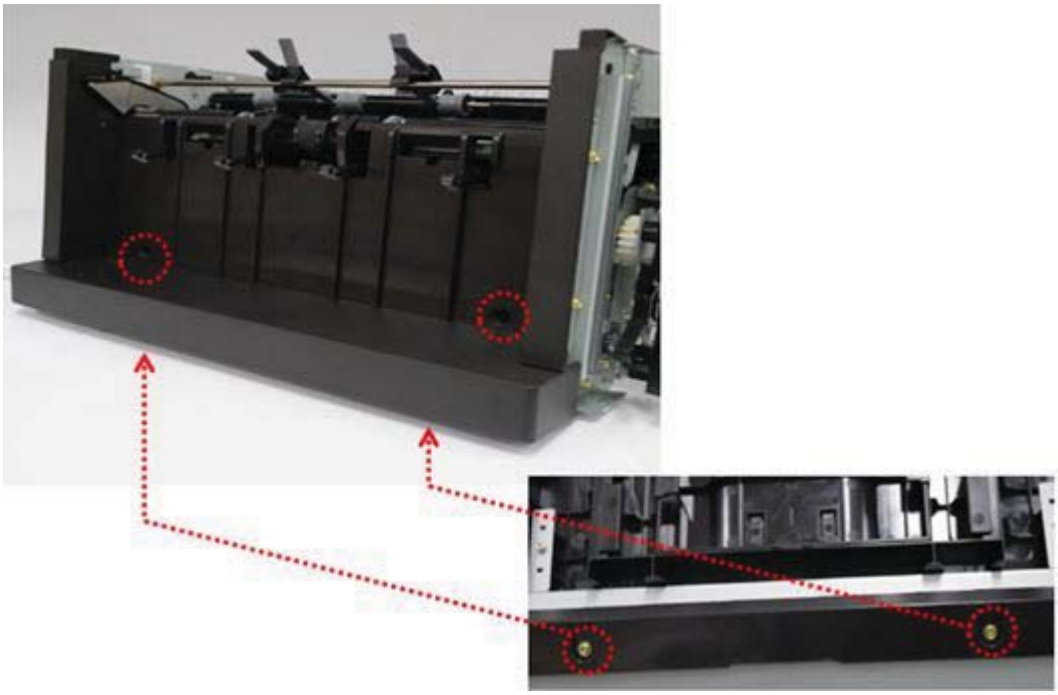
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-145 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



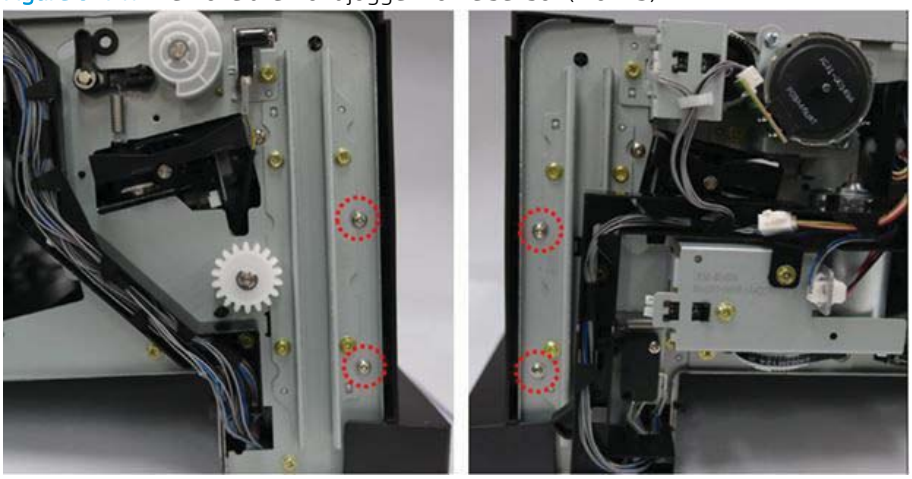
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-146 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

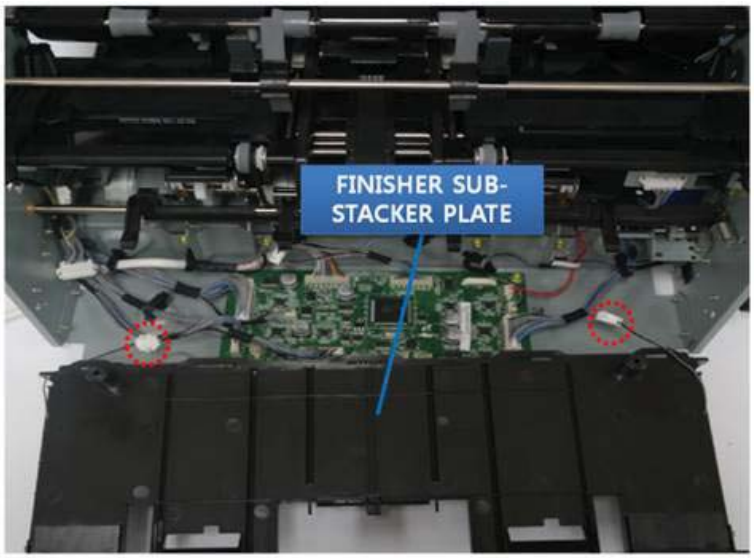
Figure 8-147 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-148 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

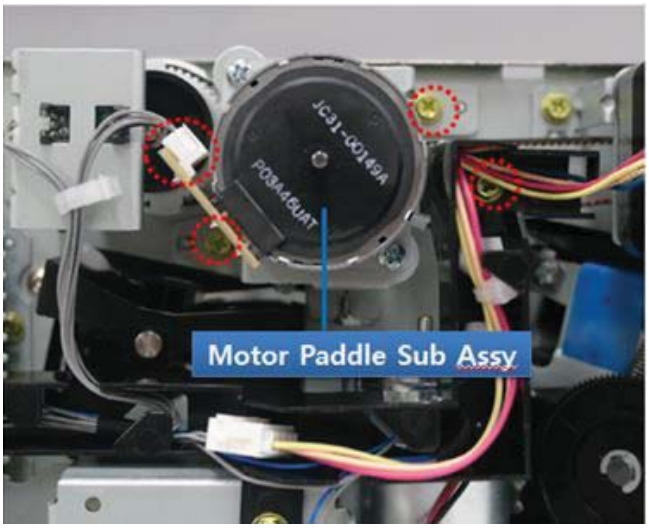
Figure 8-149 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

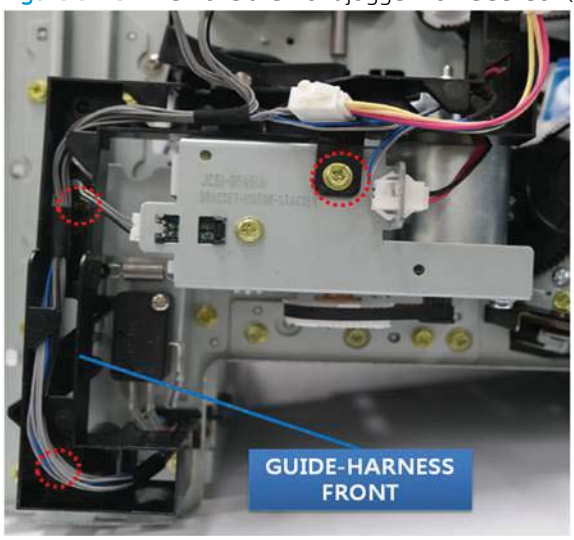
Figure 8-150 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

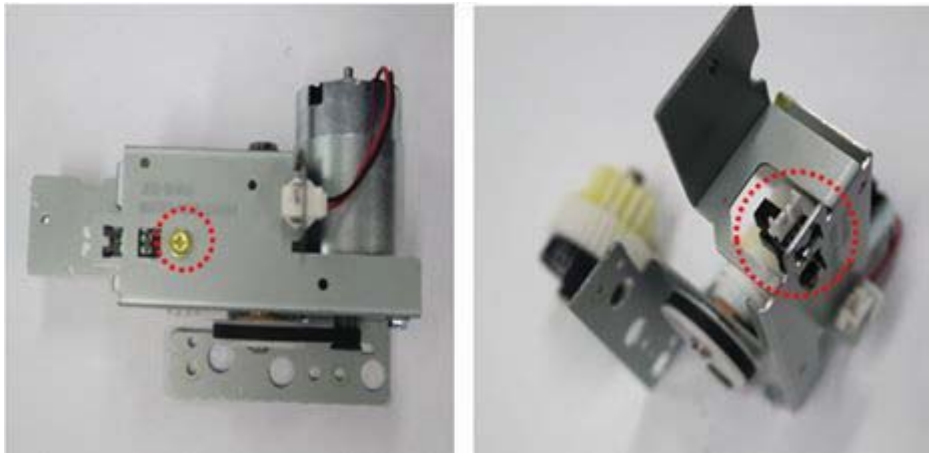
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-151 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



12. Remove one screw, remove the shaft, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-152 Remove the stacker encoder sensor



Stacker Lower Limit Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly part number
Stacker Lower Limit Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stacker lower limit switch

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

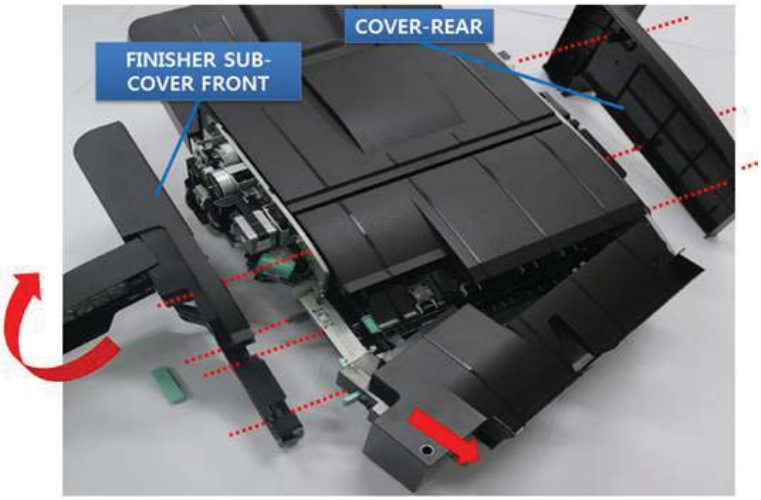
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

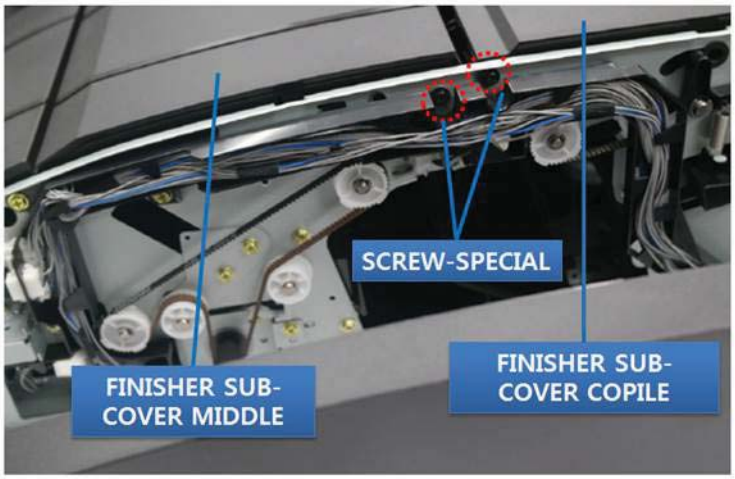
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-153 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-154 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-155 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

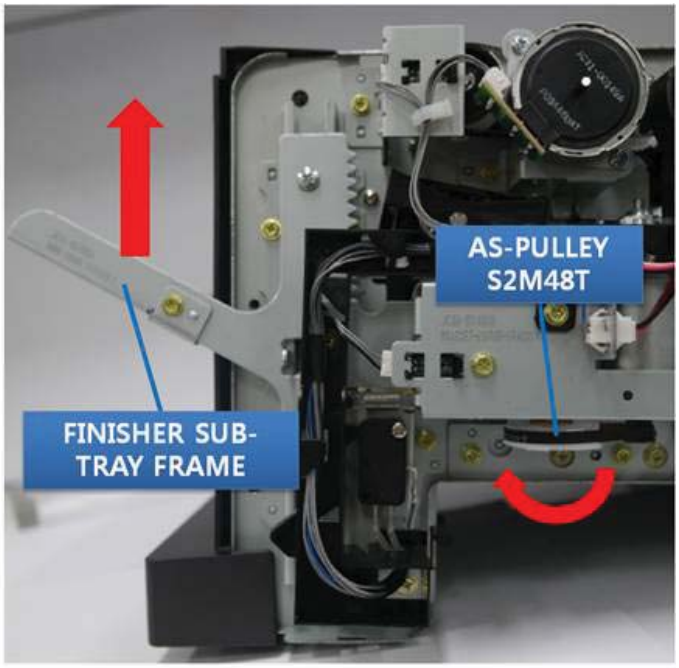


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

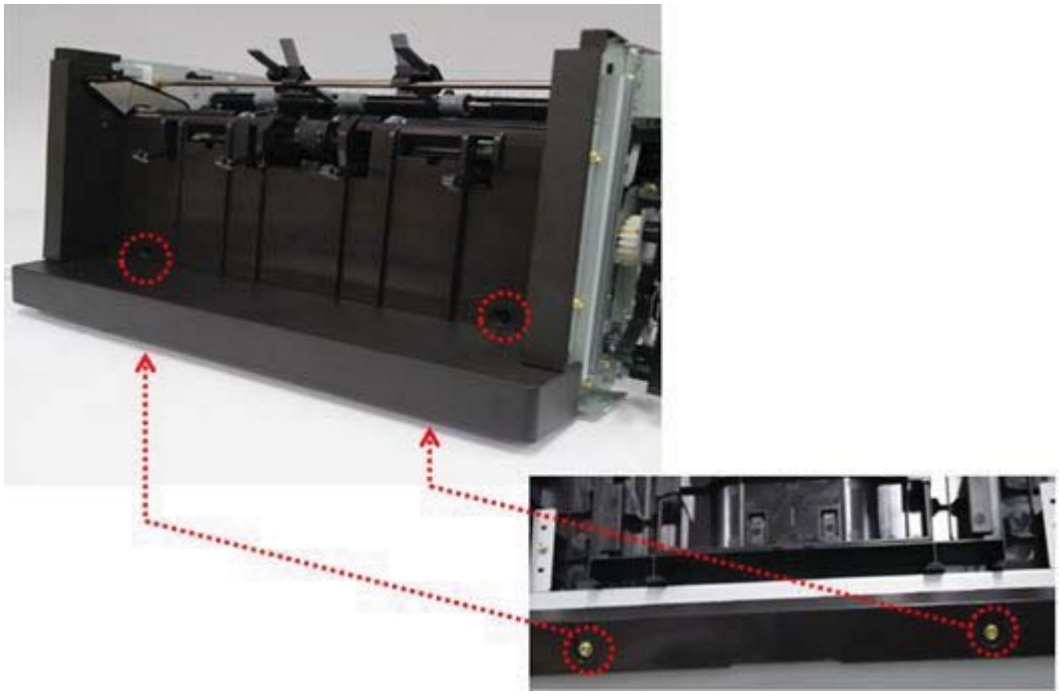
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-156 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



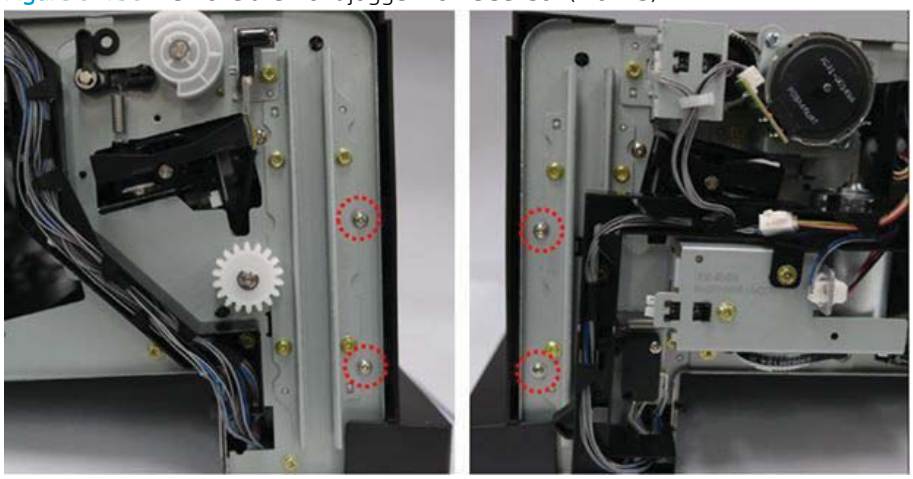
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-157 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

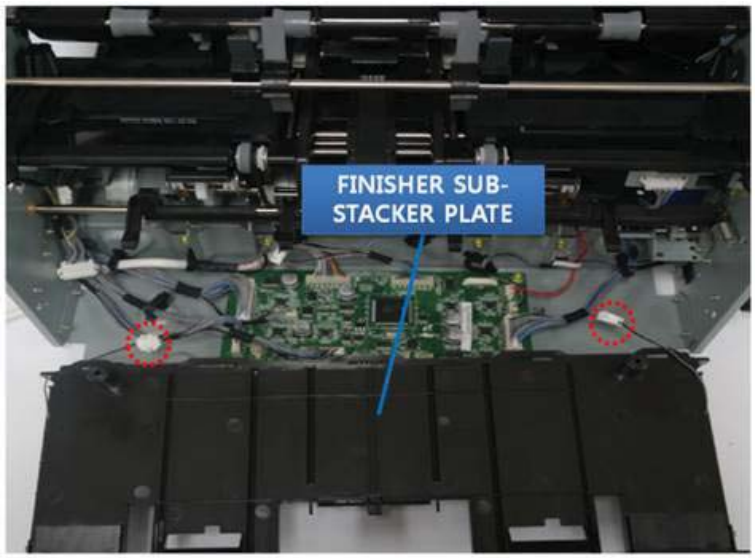
Figure 8-158 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-159 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

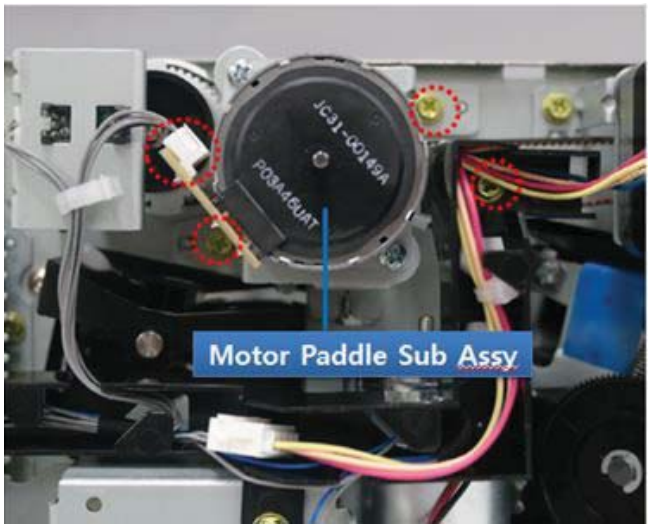
Figure 8-160 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

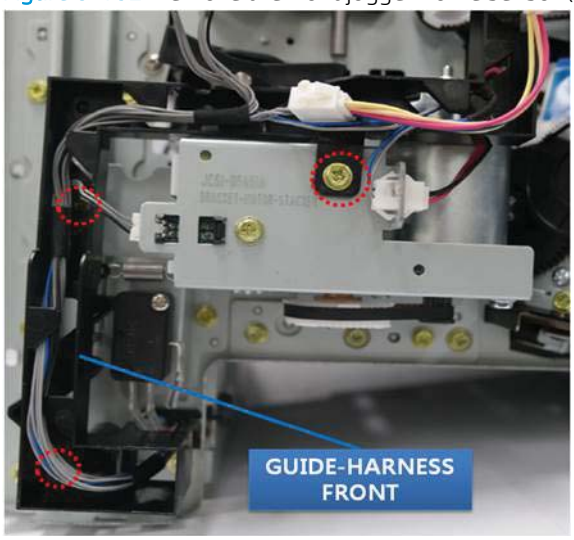
Figure 8-161 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

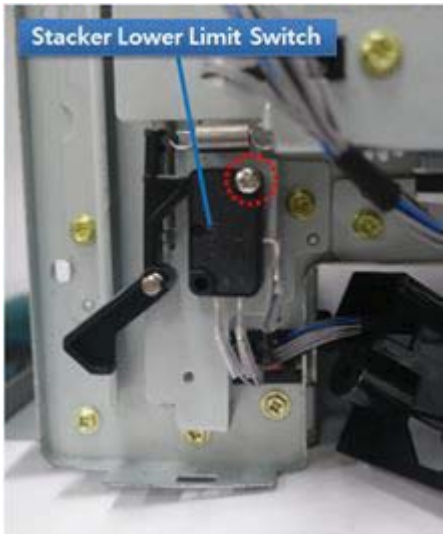
NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-162 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



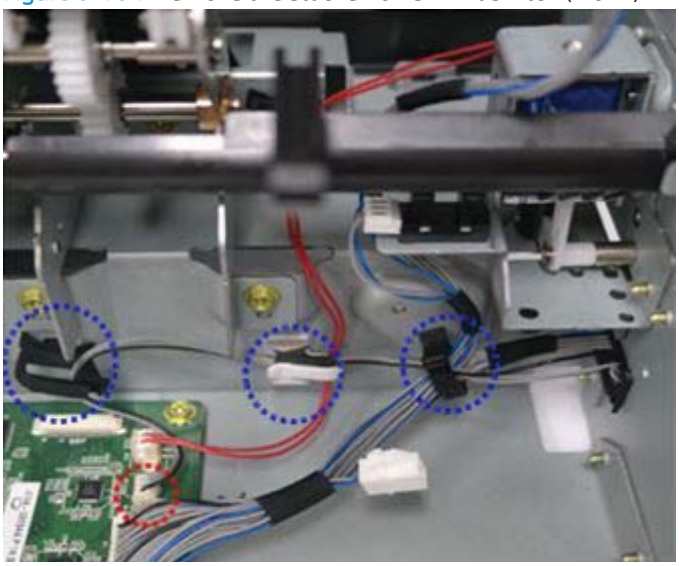
12. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-163 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (1 of 2)



13. Open three clamps, unplug the connector, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-164 Remove the stacker lower limit switch (2 of 2)



Stack Beam Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Beam Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stack Beam Sensor assembly part number
Stack Beam Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack beam sensor

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

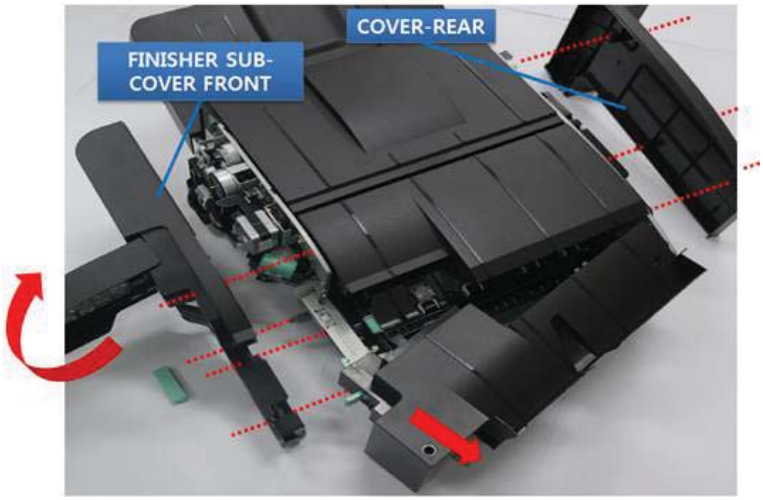
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

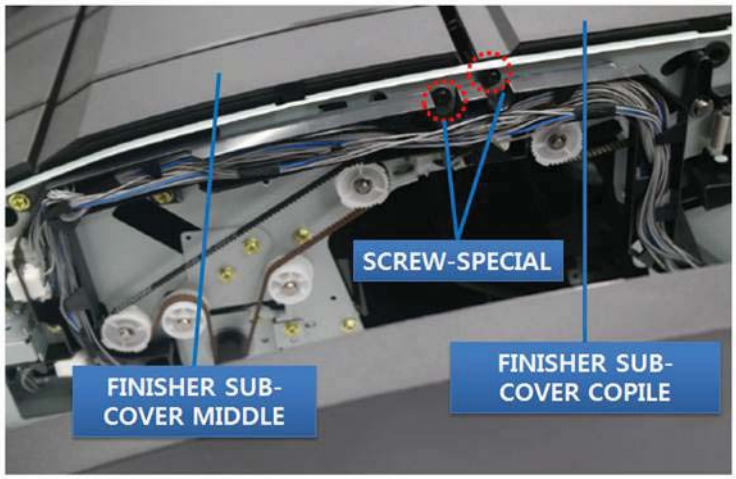
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-165 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-166 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-167 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

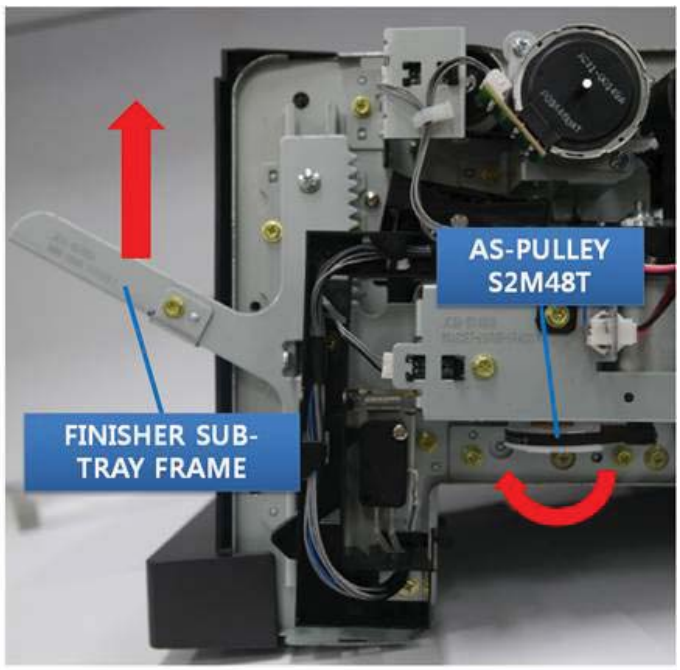


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

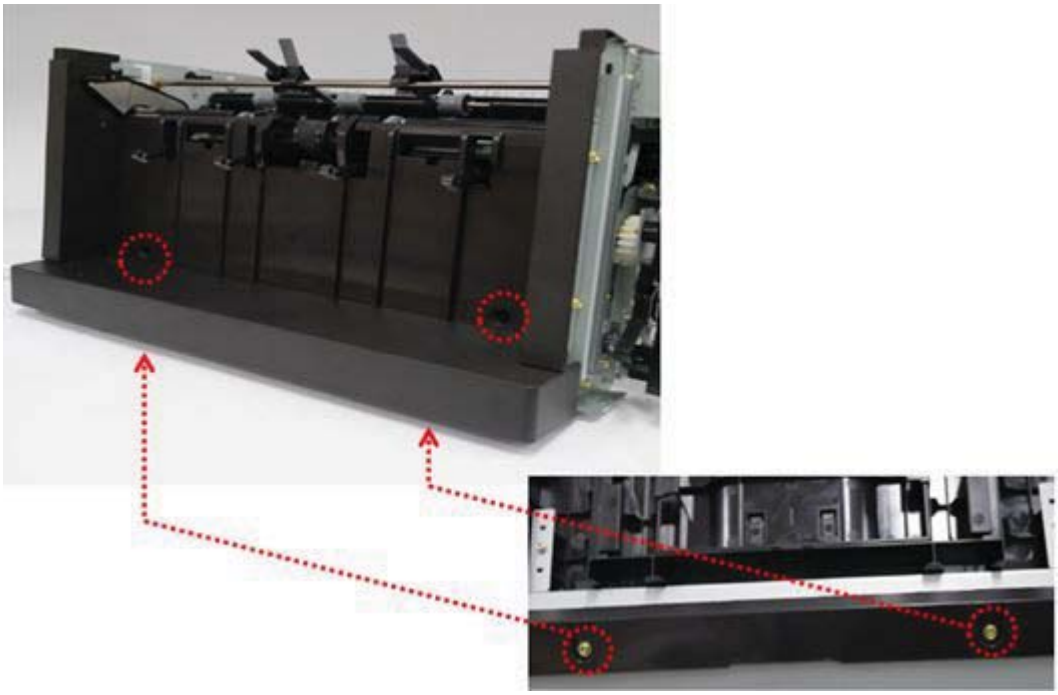
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-168 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



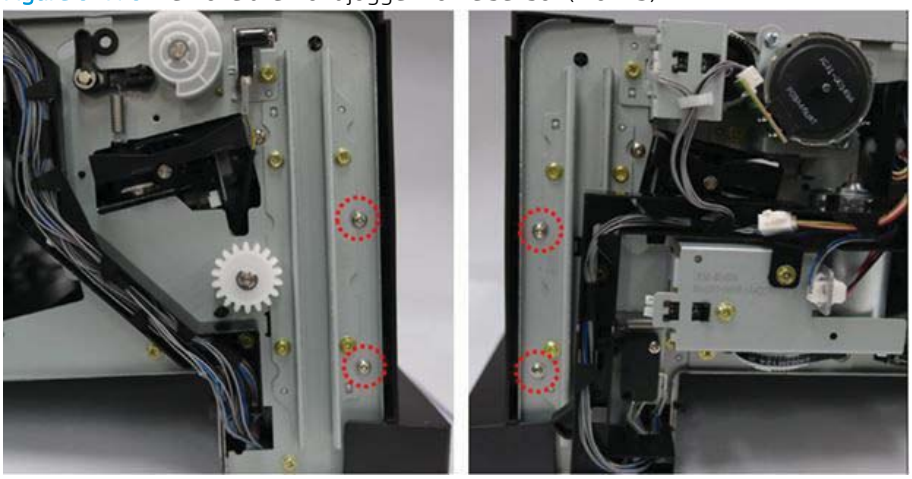
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-169 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

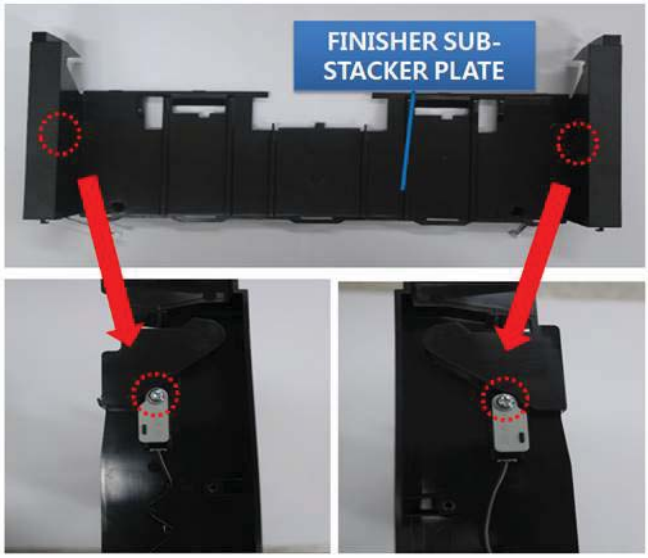
Figure 8-170 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove two screws from both sides of the finisher sub-stacker plate. Remove the bracket, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-171 Remove the stack beam sensor



Stack Position Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Stack Position Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Stack Position Sensor assembly part number
Stack Position Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

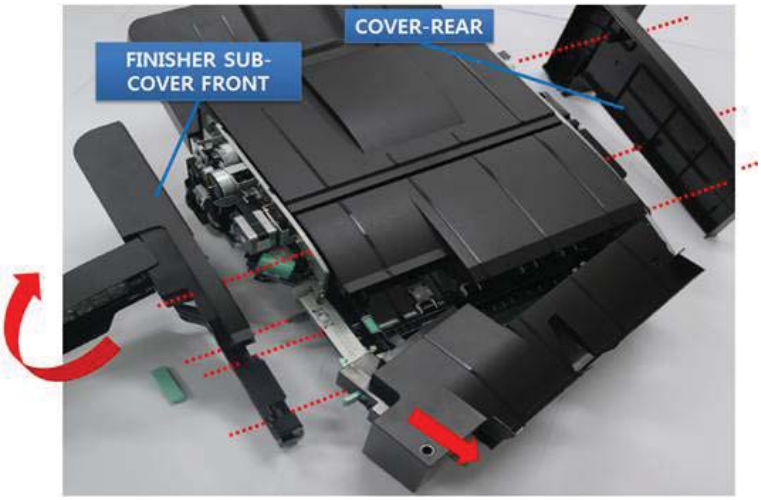
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

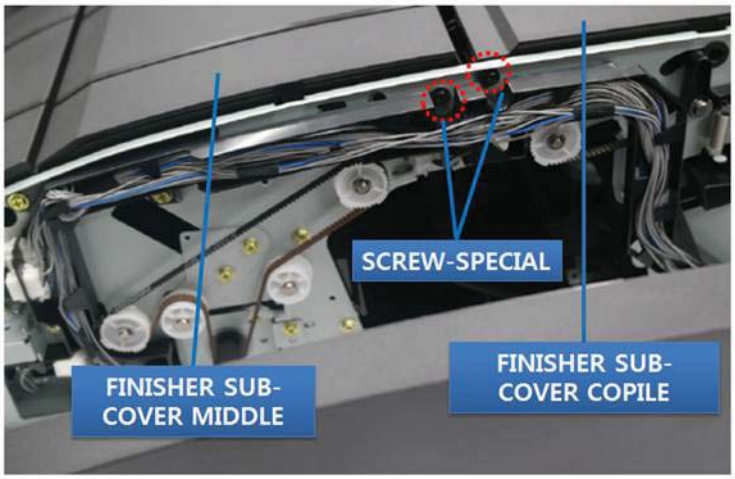
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-172 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-173 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-174 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

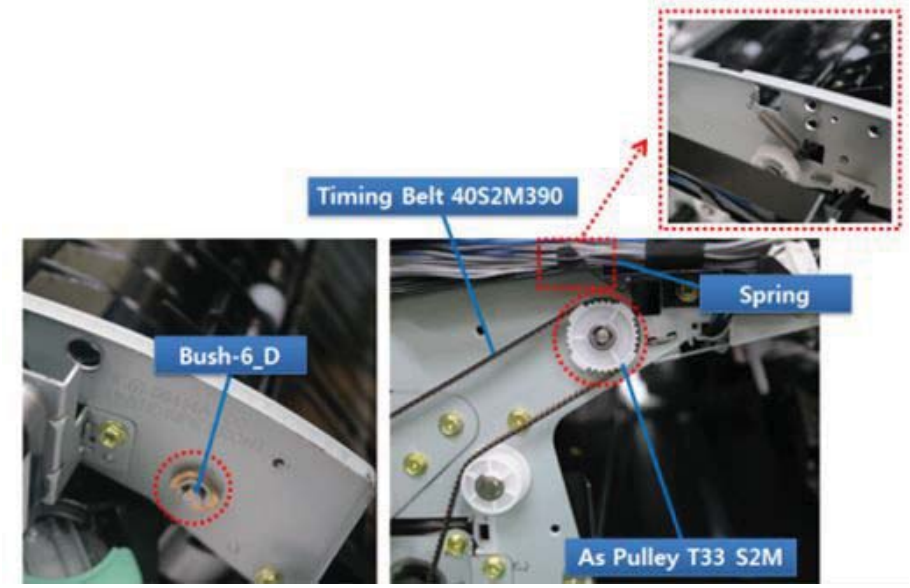
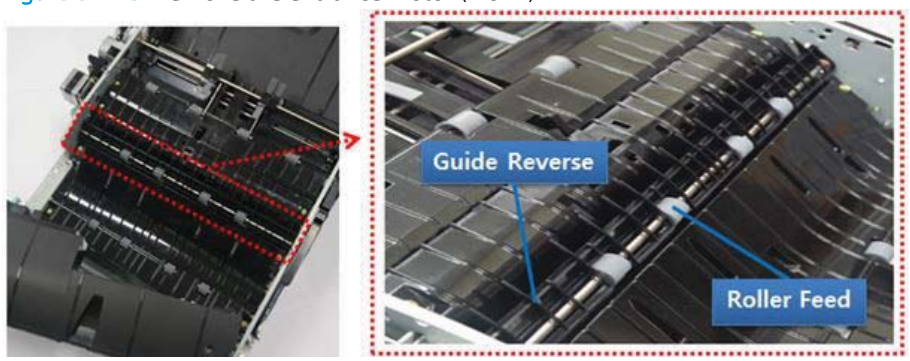


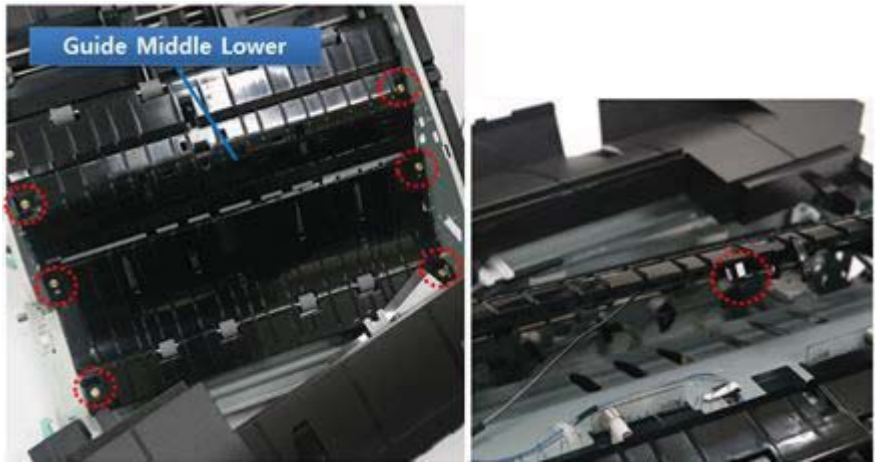
Figure 8-175 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

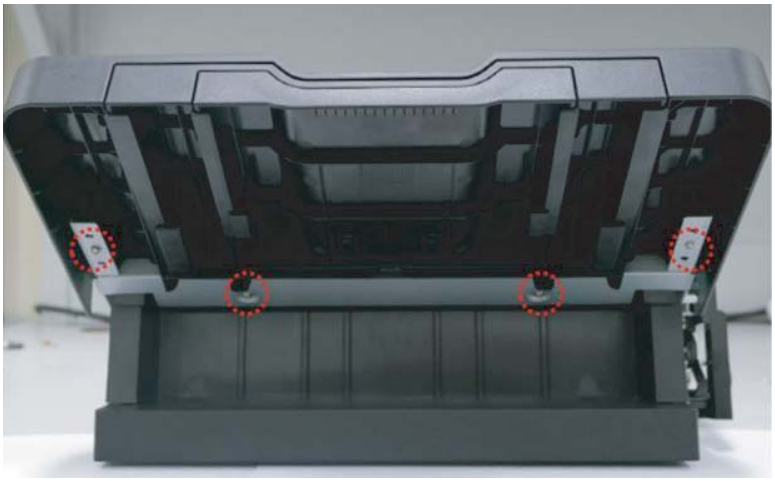
Figure 8-176 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-177 Remove the tray

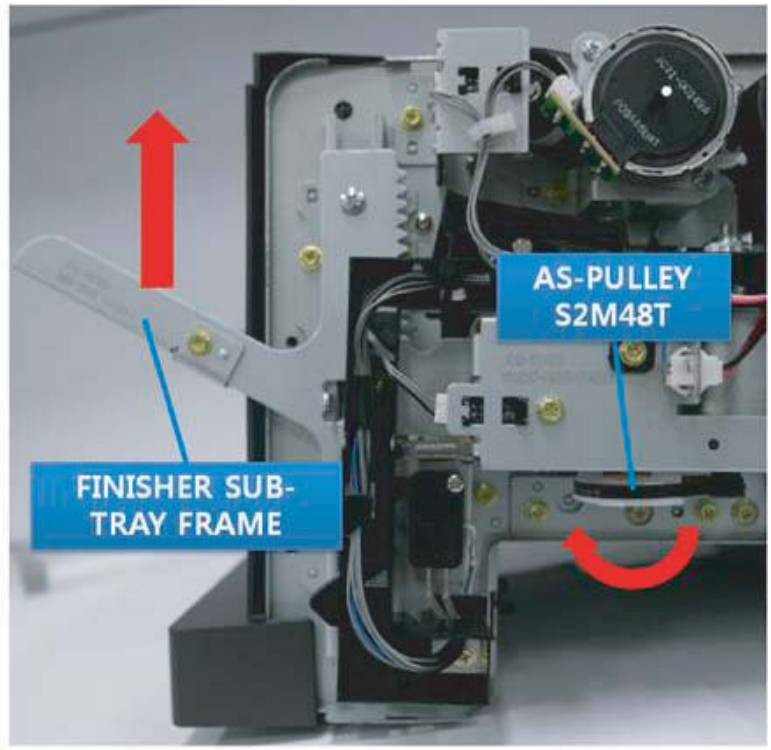


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

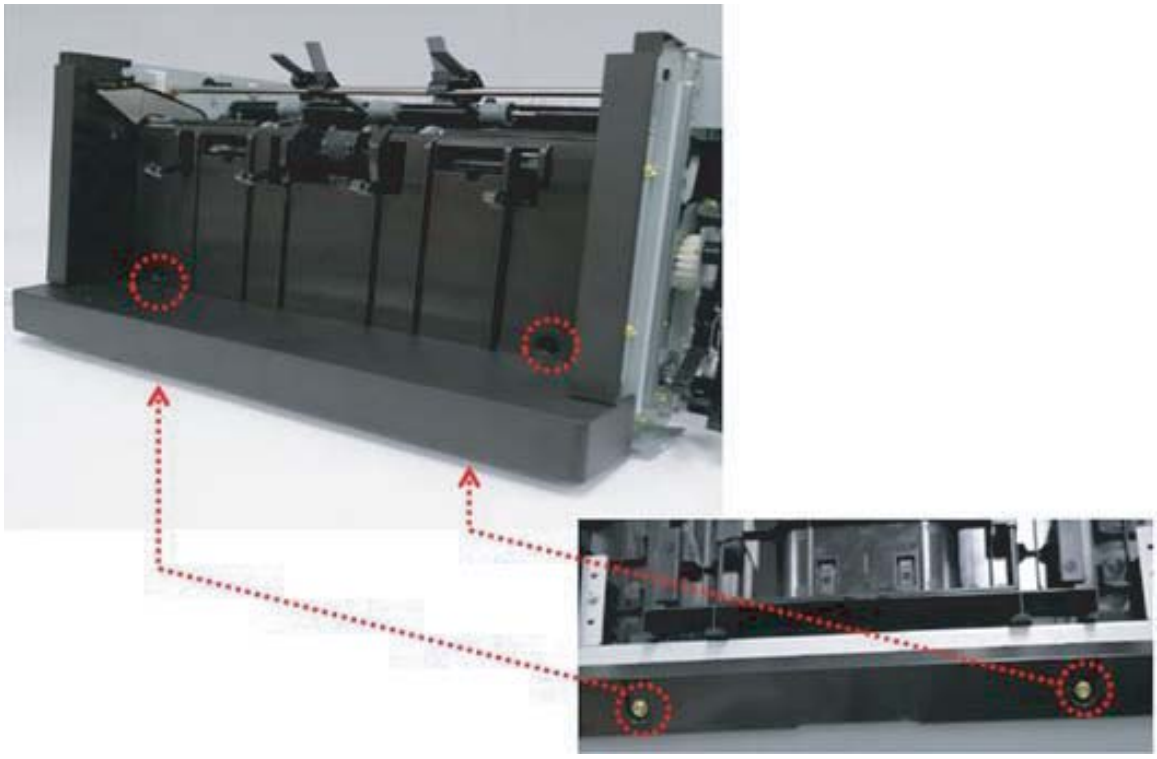
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-178 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

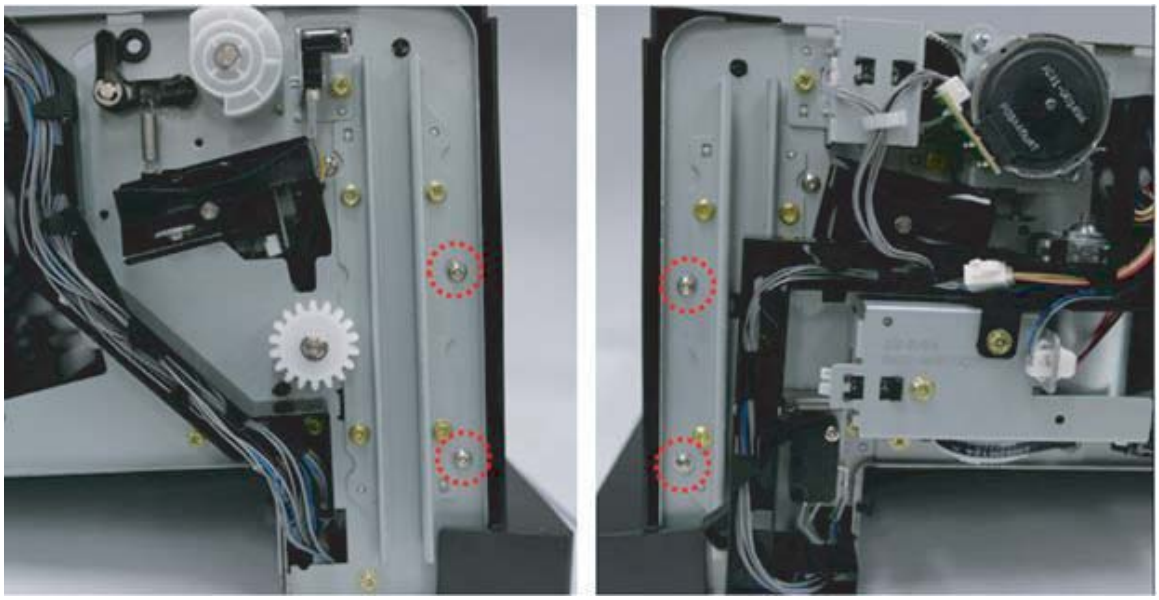
Figure 8-179 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

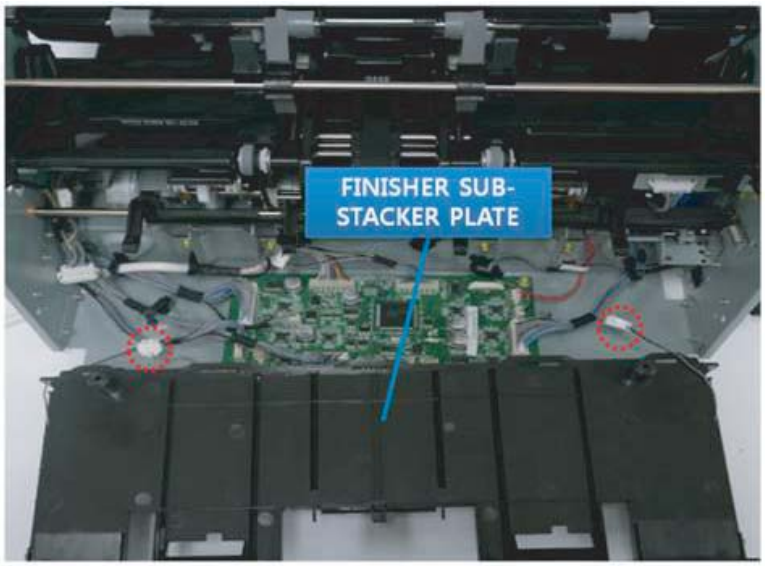
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-180 Remove the PBA



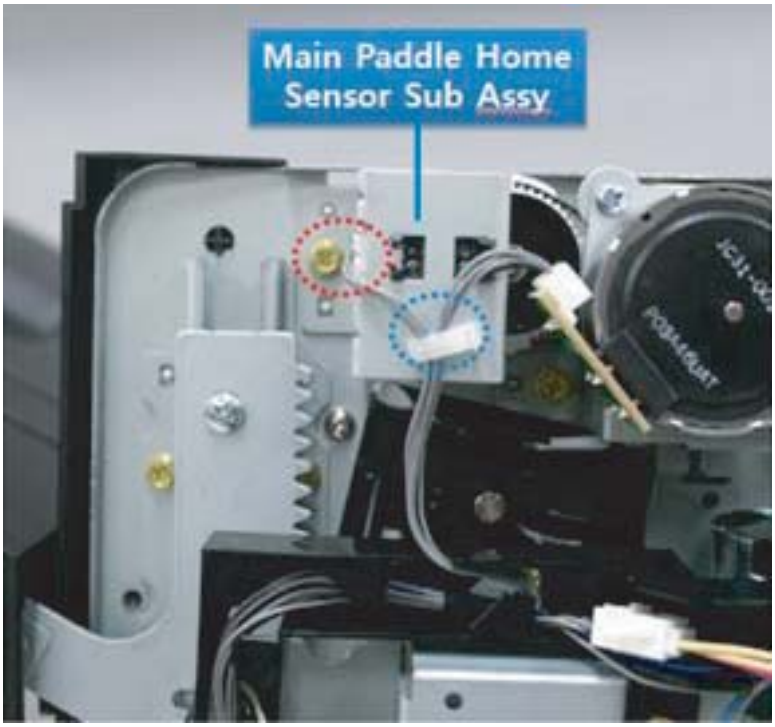
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-181 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

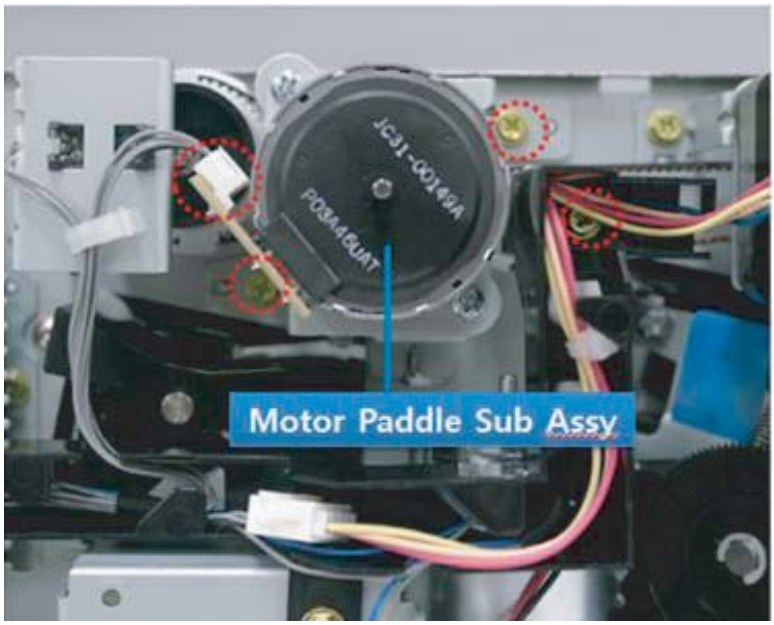
Figure 8-182 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

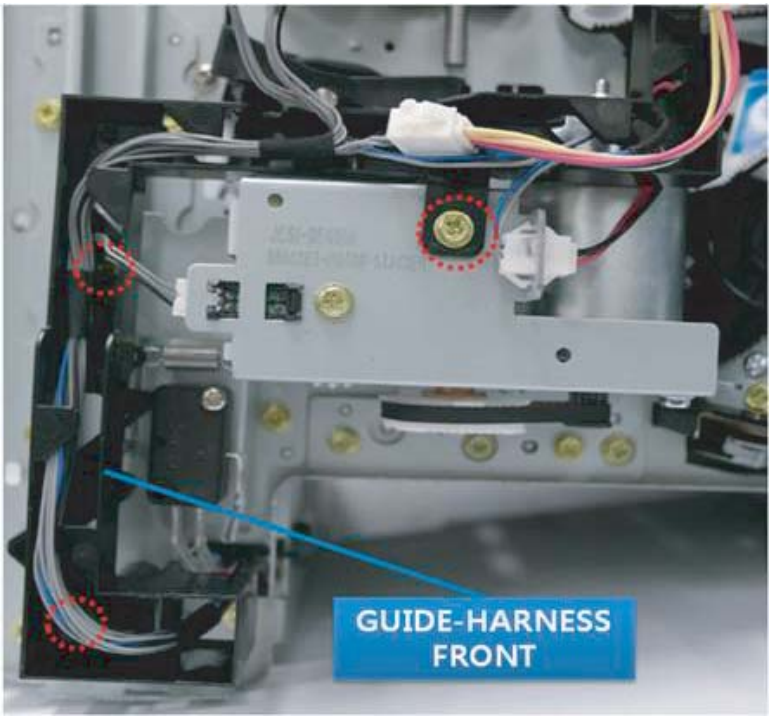
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-183 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



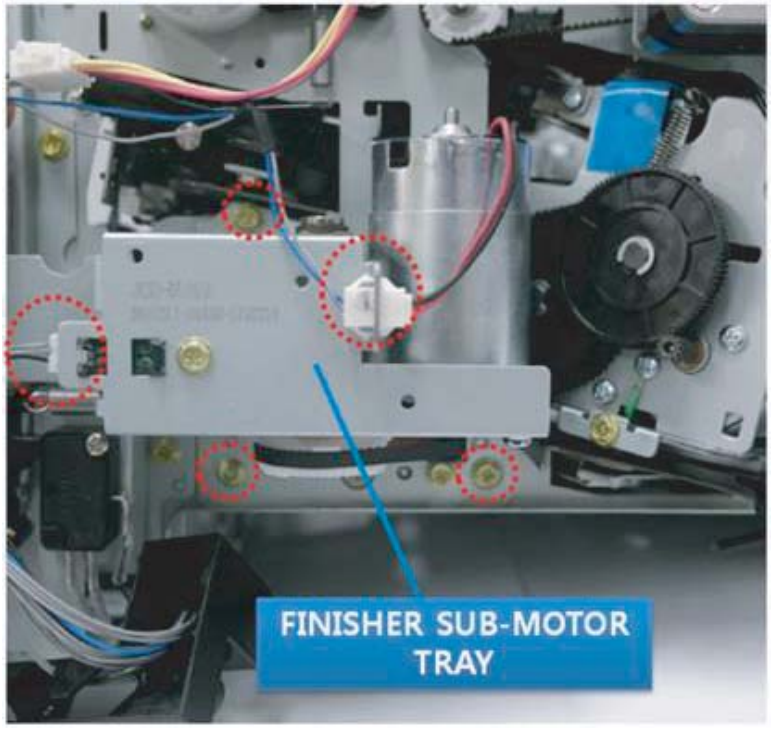
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-184 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-185 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



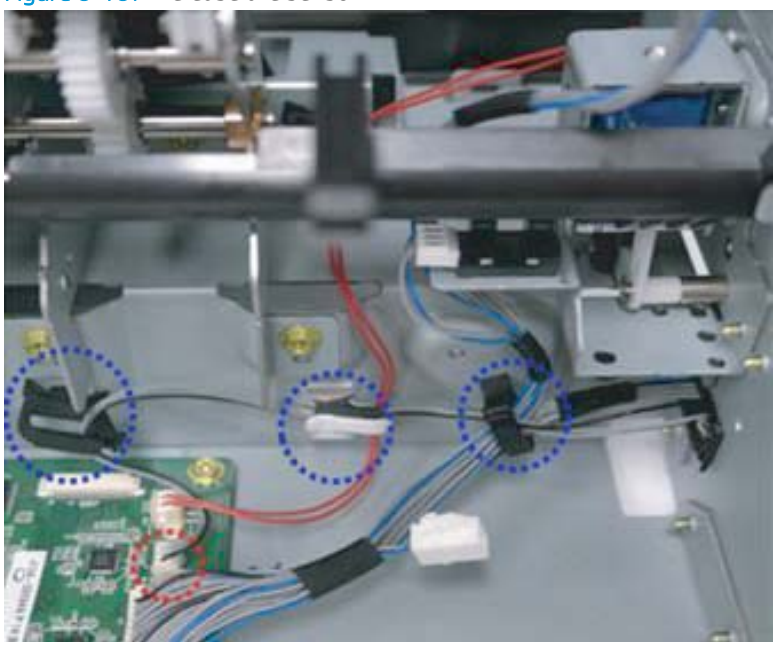
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-186 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-187 Release the sensor



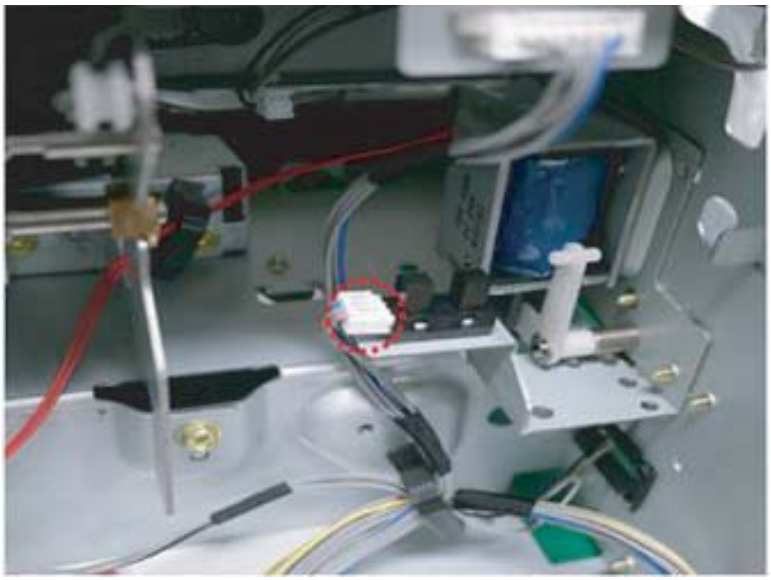
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 8-188 Remove the sensor



Paper Holding Lever Solenoid

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly part number
Paper Holding Lever Solenoid assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the paper holding lever solenoid

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

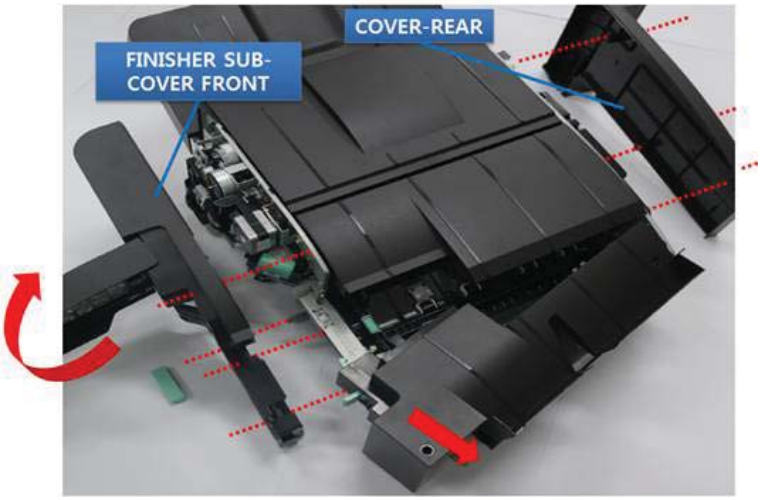
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

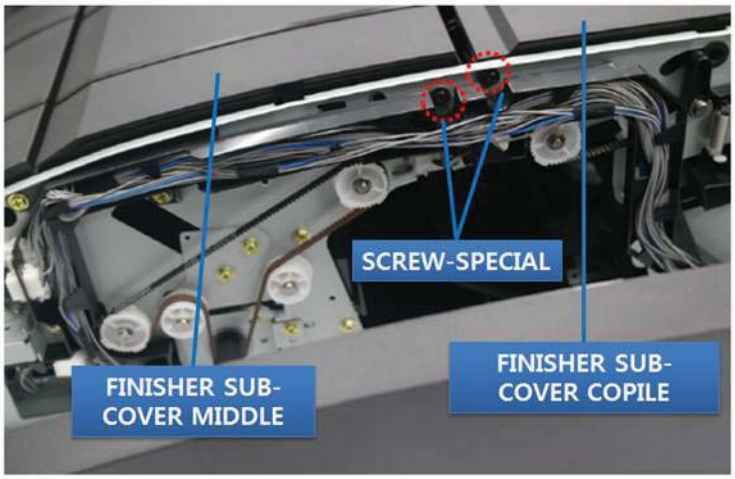
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-189 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)

2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-190 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)

3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-191 Remove the front jogger home sensor (1 of 15)

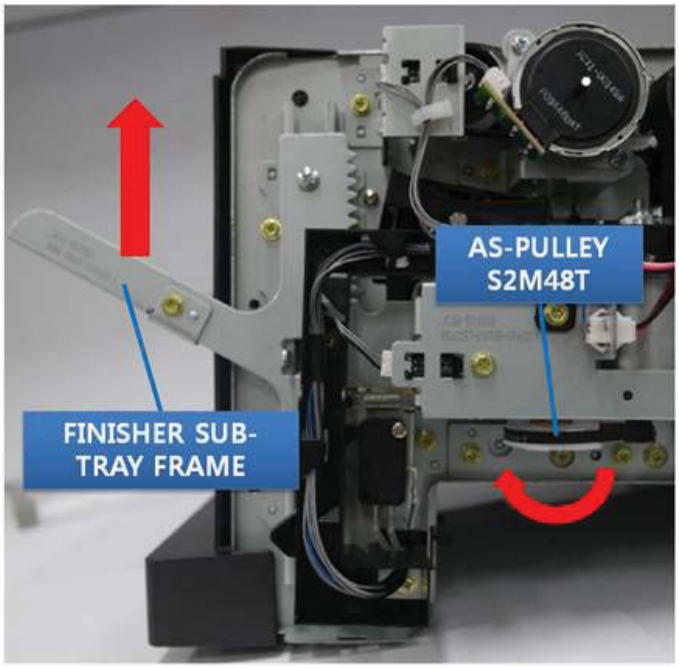


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

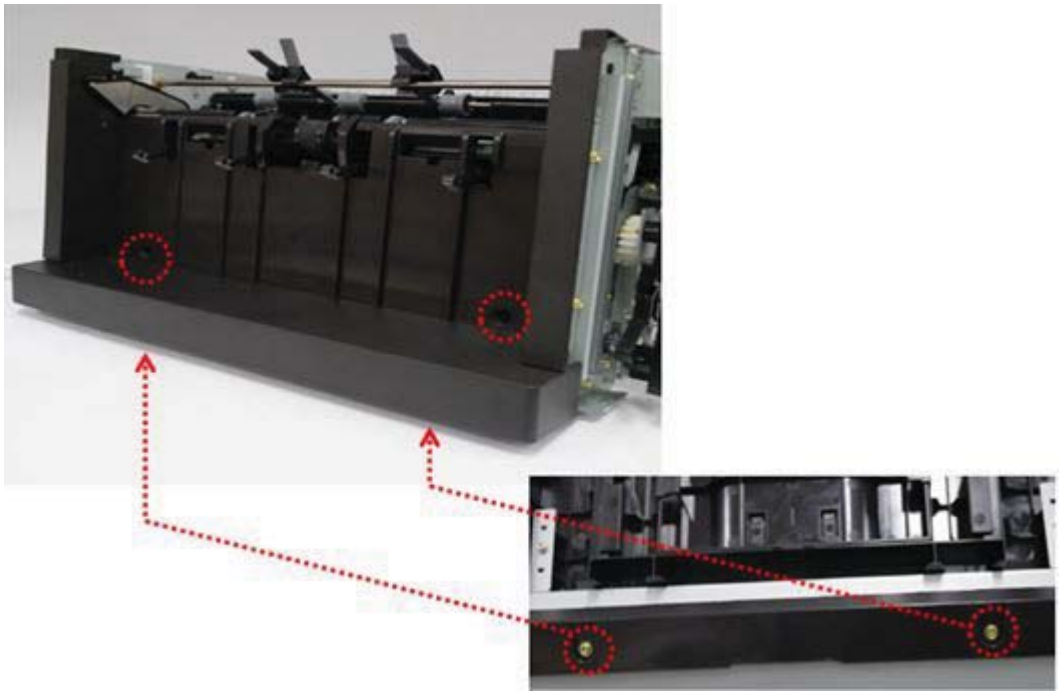
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-192 Remove the front jogger home sensor (2 of 15)



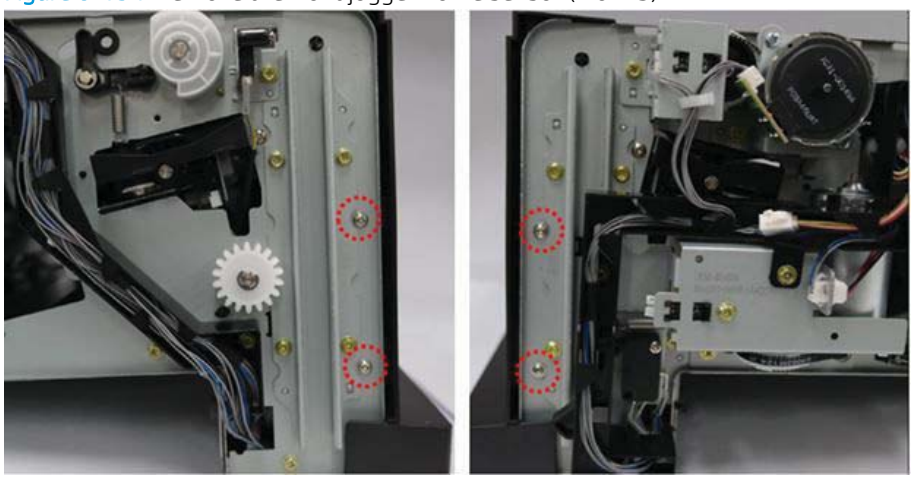
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-193 Remove the front jogger home sensor (3 of 15)



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

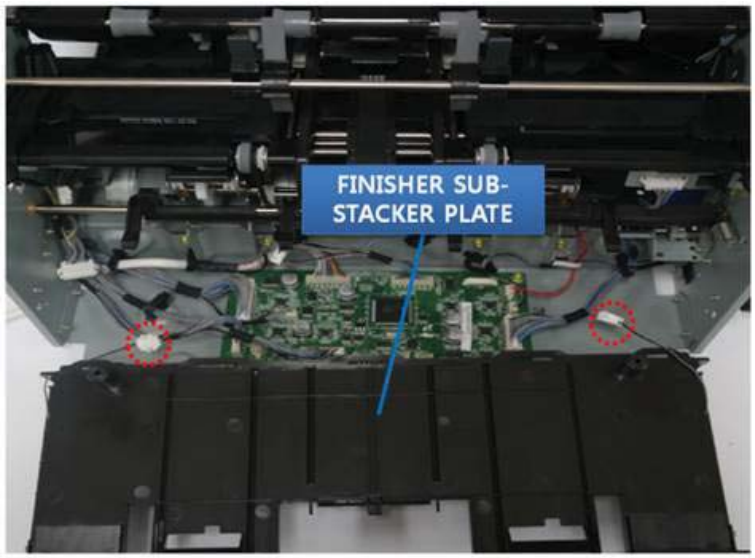
Figure 8-194 Remove the front jogger home sensor (4 of 15)



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Unplug two inline connectors, and then remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-195 Remove the front jogger home sensor (5 of 15)



9. Remove one screw and then remove the cable guide. Unplug the connector, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

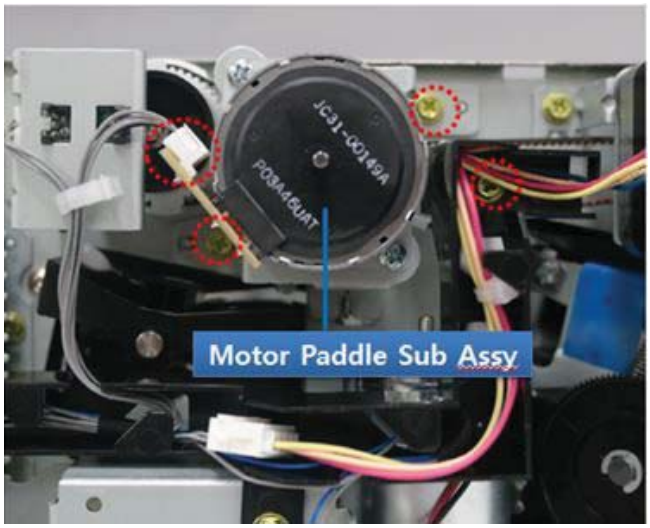
Figure 8-196 Remove the front jogger home sensor (6 of 15)



10. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor paddle sub assembly.

NOTE: Move cable out of the wiring guide to access the third screw.

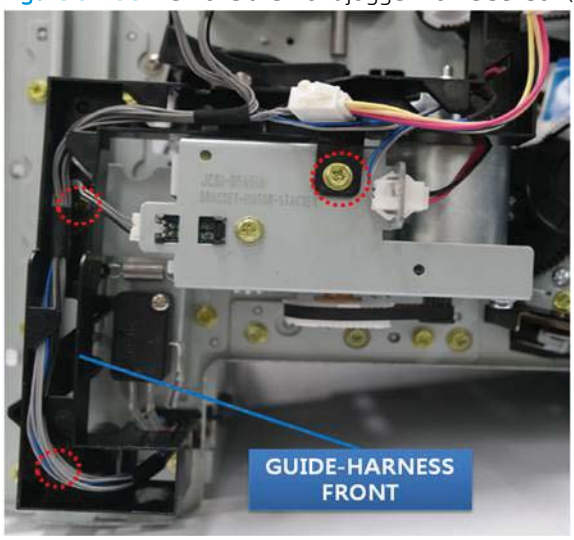
Figure 8-197 Remove the front jogger home sensor (7 of 15)



11. Remove the wire harness from the harness guide, remove three screws, and then remove the guide-harness front.

NOTE: The wire harness will hang loosely after the harness guide is removed.

Figure 8-198 Remove the front jogger home sensor (8 of 15)



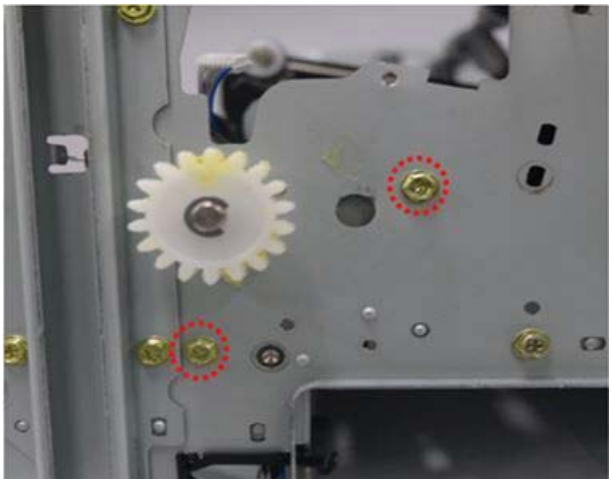
12. Remove one screw, and then remove stack lower limit switch bracket.

Figure 8-199 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



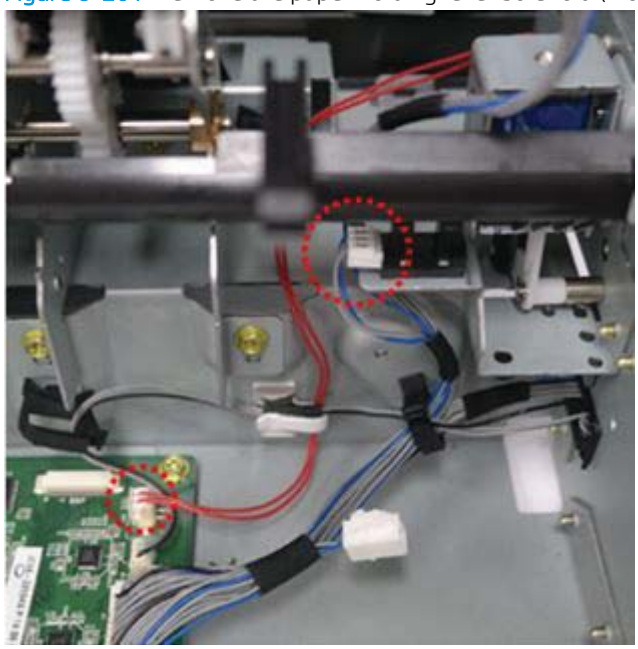
13. Remove the second screw.

Figure 8-200 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



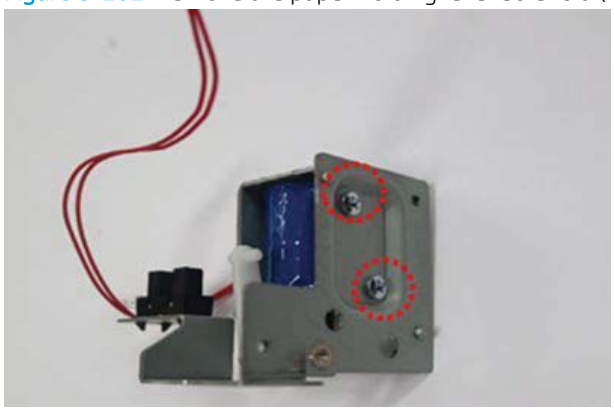
14. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 8-201 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



15. Remove two screws on the solenoid bracket.

Figure 8-202 Remove the paper holding lever solenoid (1 of 4)



16. Disconnect the connector from the main board.
17. Remove the solenoid assembly.

Paper Support Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper support motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Support Motor assembly part number
Paper Support Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

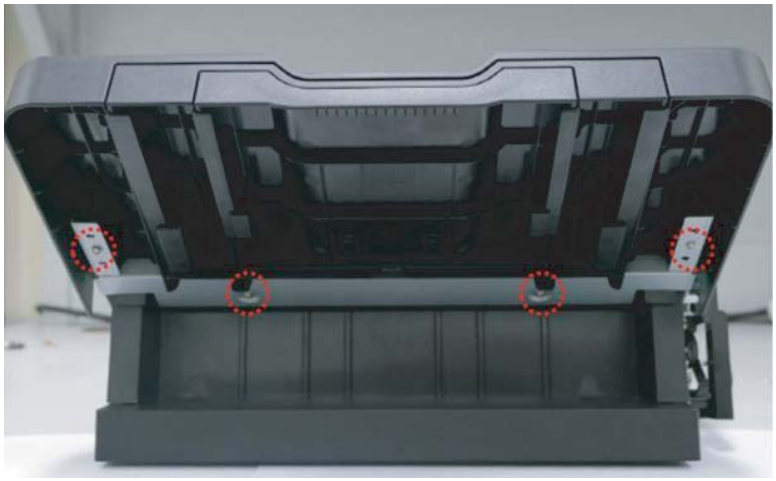
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-203 Remove the tray

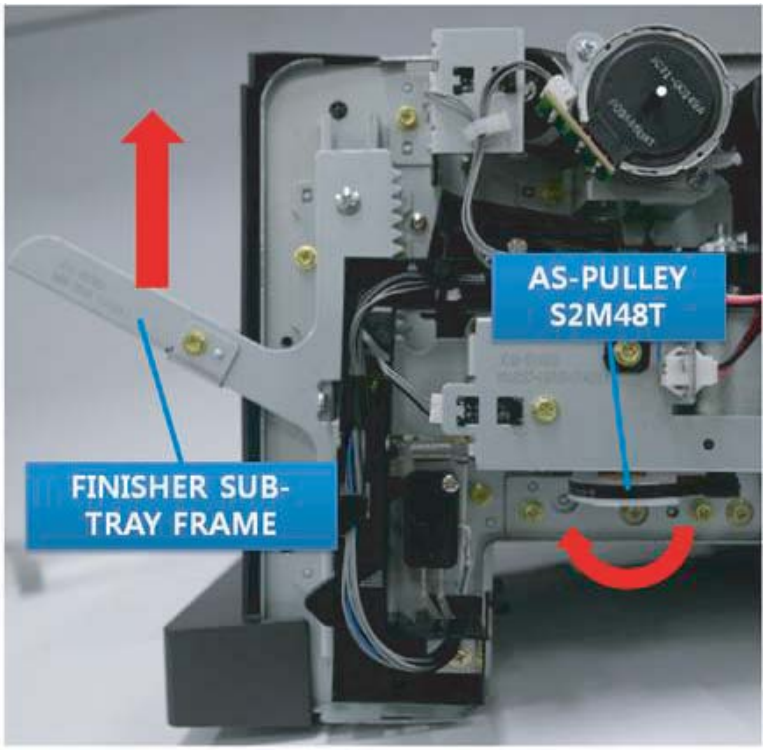


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

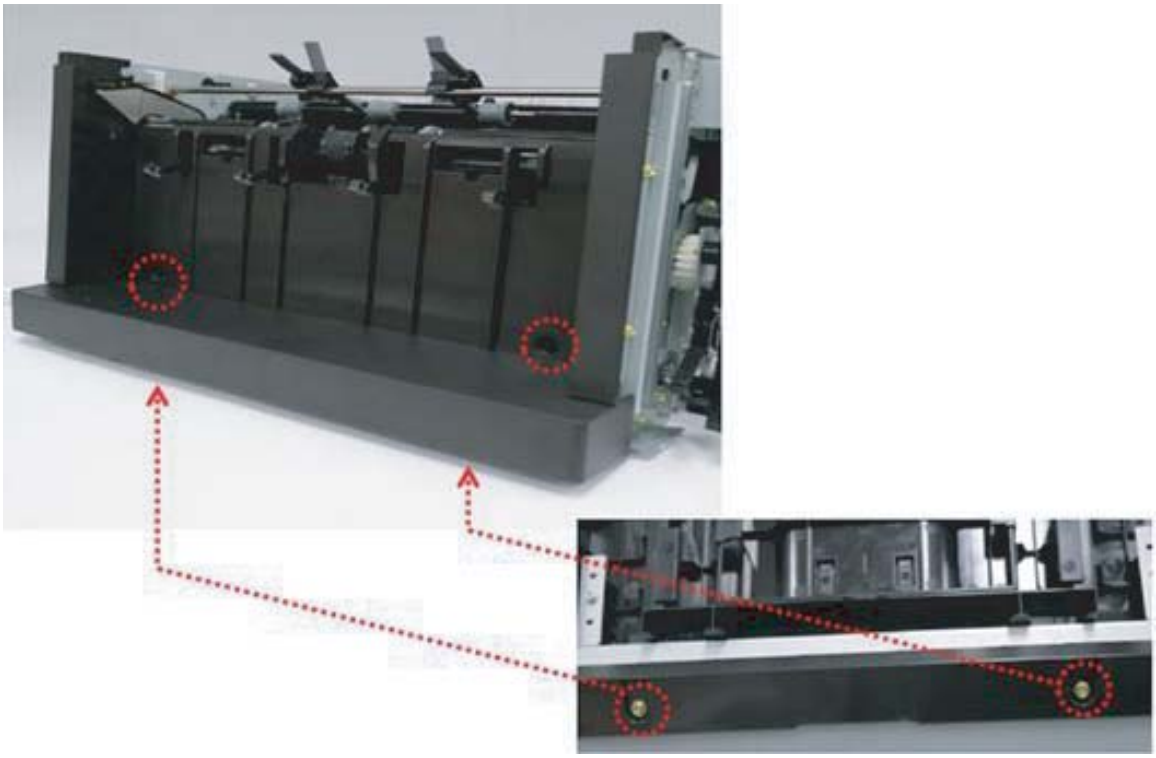
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-204 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

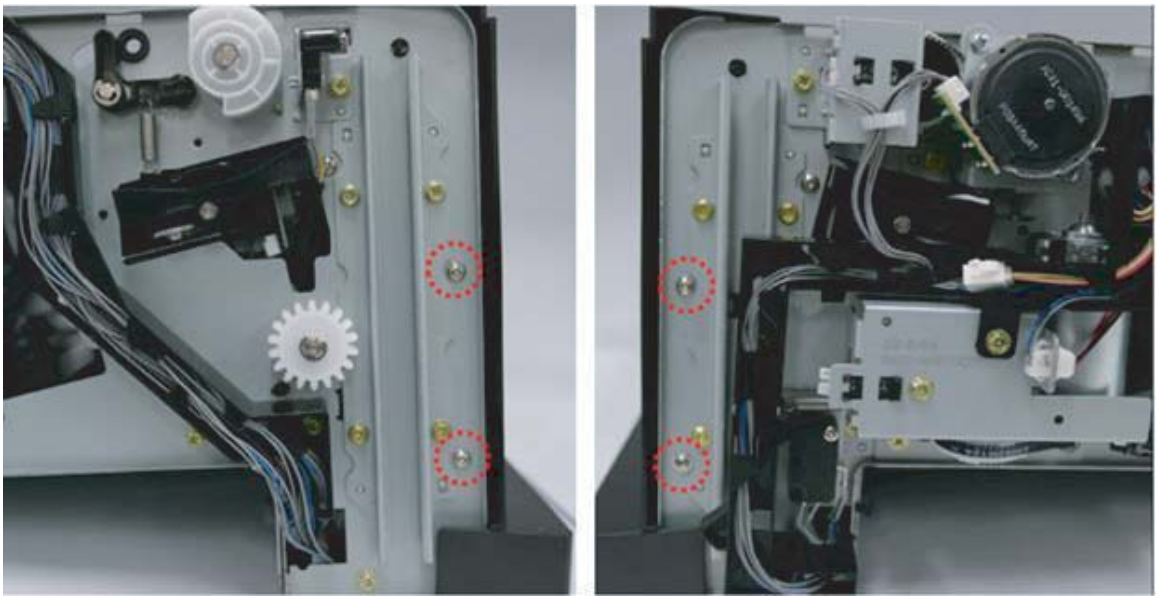
Figure 8-205 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

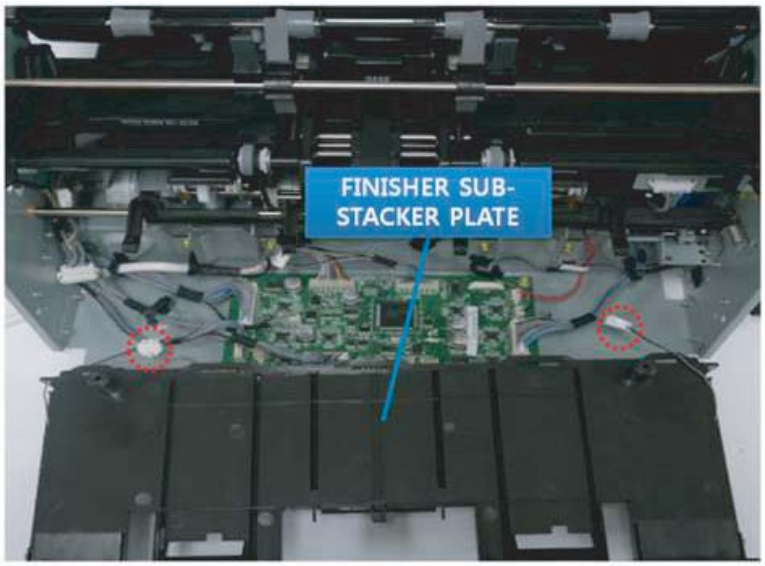
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-206 Remove the PBA



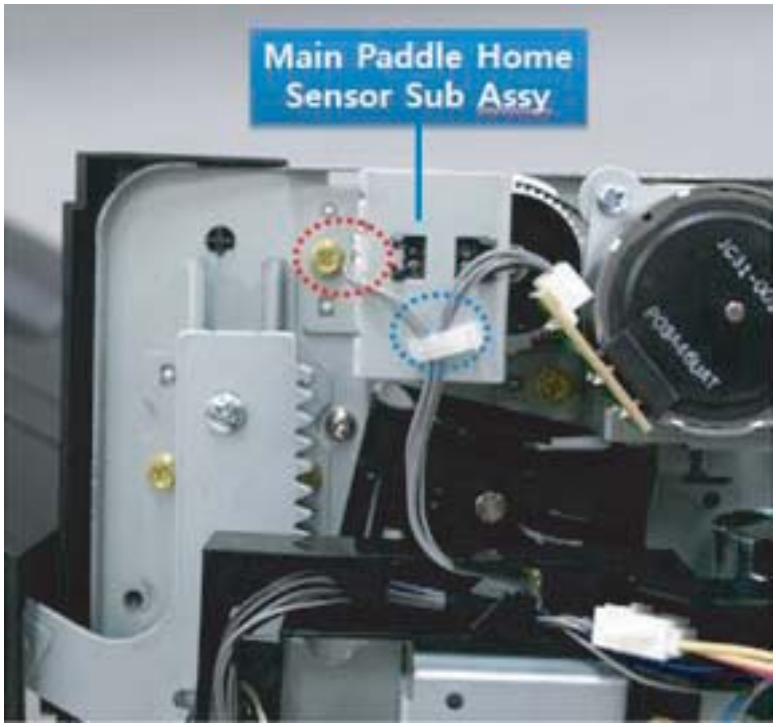
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-207 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

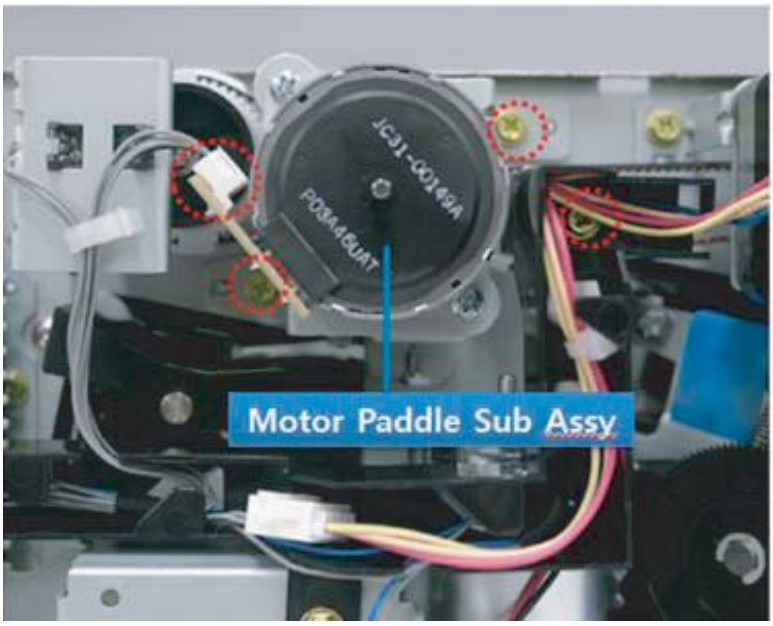
Figure 8-208 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

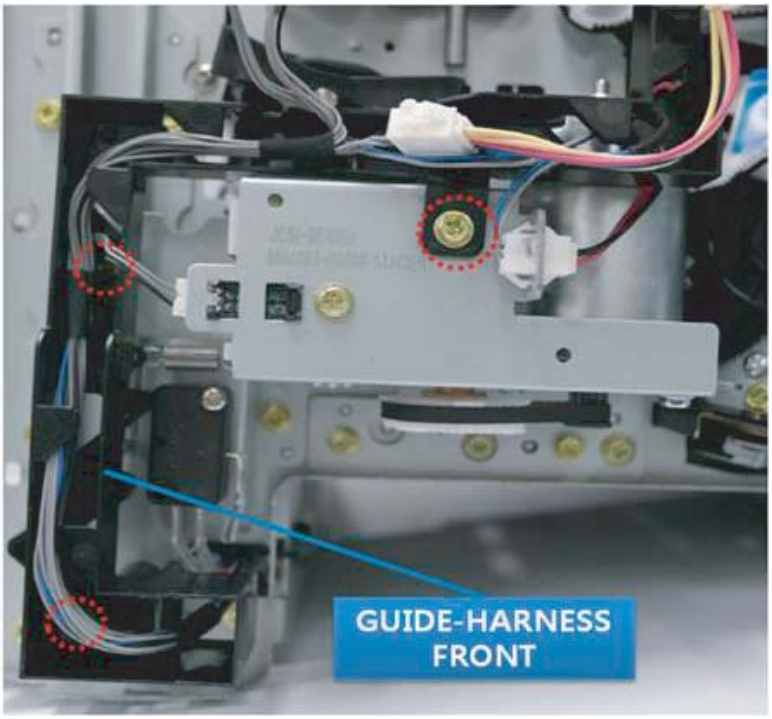
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-209 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



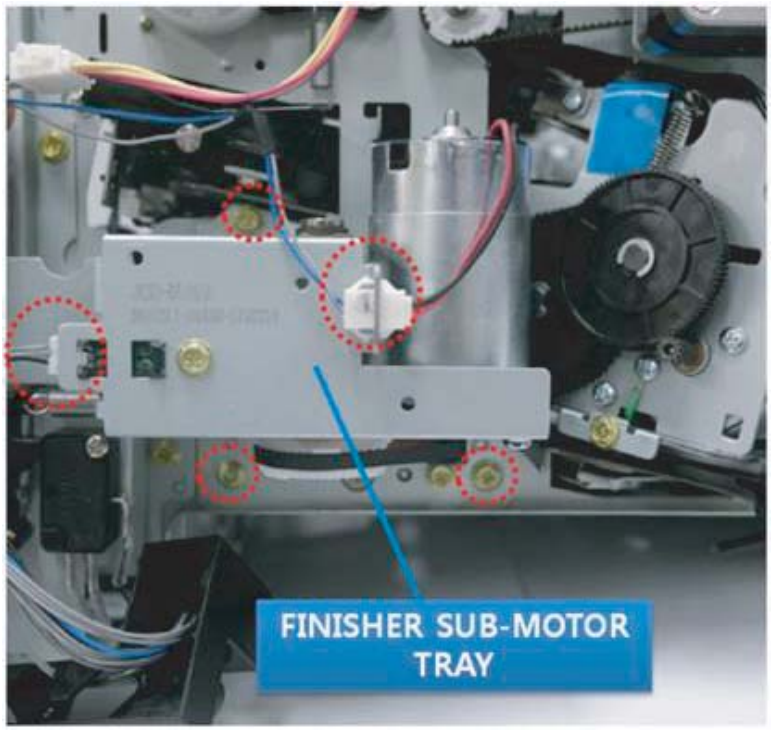
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-210 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-211 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



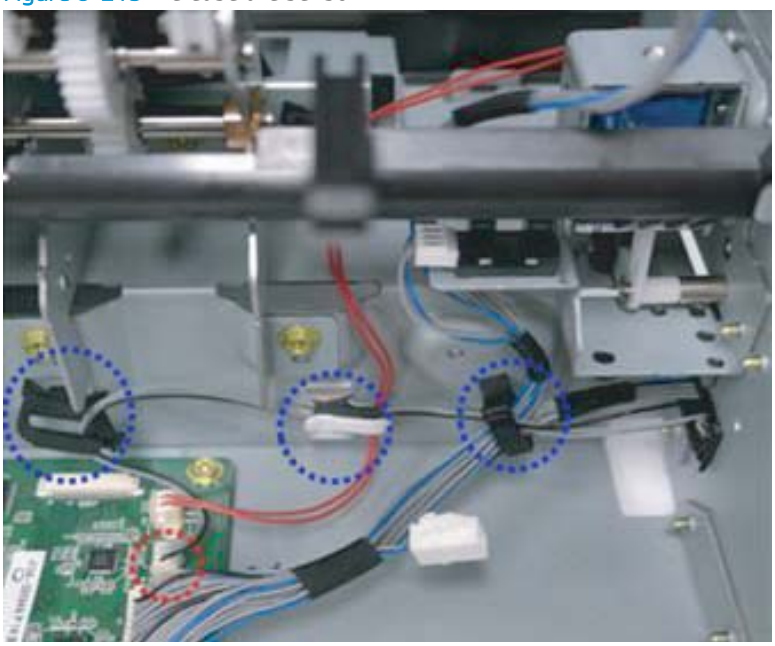
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-212 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-213 Release the sensor



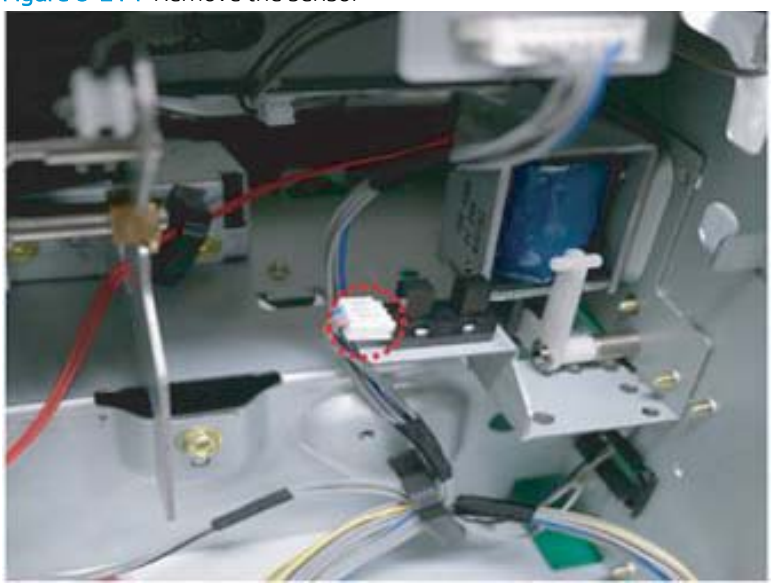
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

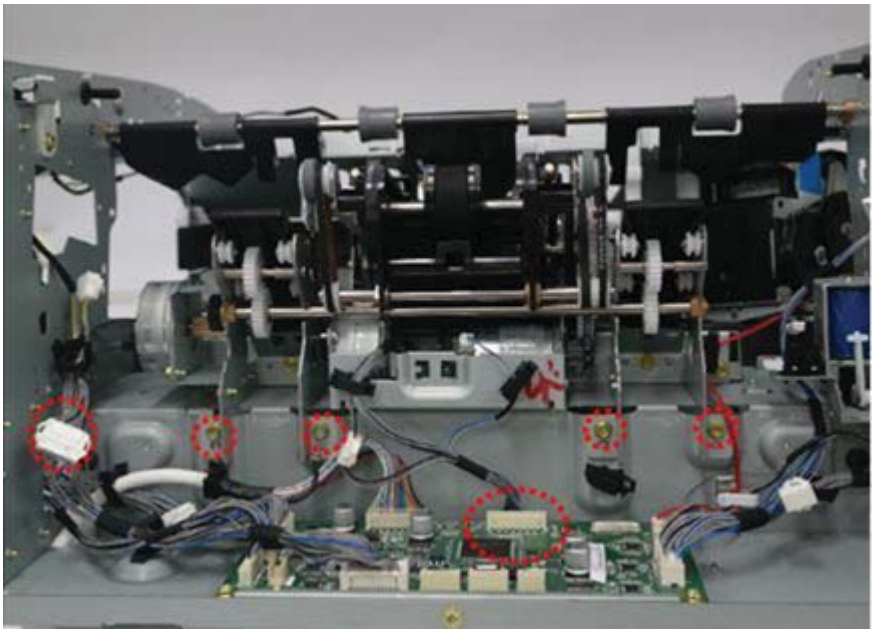
    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

Figure 8-214 Remove the sensor



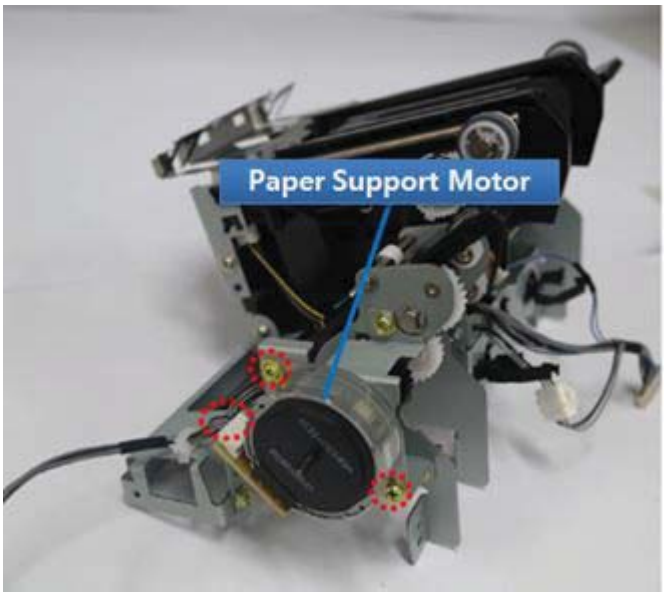
Step 2: Remove the paper support motor



1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove four screws.
3. Remove the cables from their restraints at the front of the ejector.
4. Disconnect the motor and the sensor cable at the rear

5. Remove the cables from the cable restraints at the rear.

NOTE: The black paddle is inside the chrome bracket at rear of ejector



6. Remove the ejector.

Paper Support Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Paper Support Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Paper Support Home Sensor assembly part number
Paper Support Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

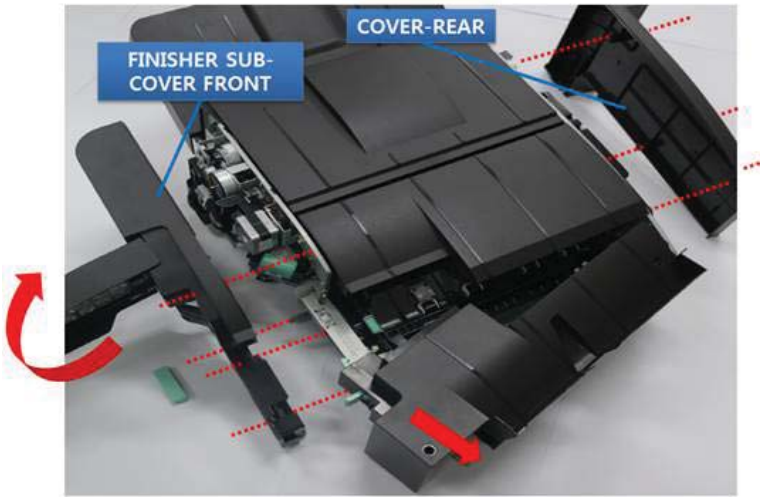
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

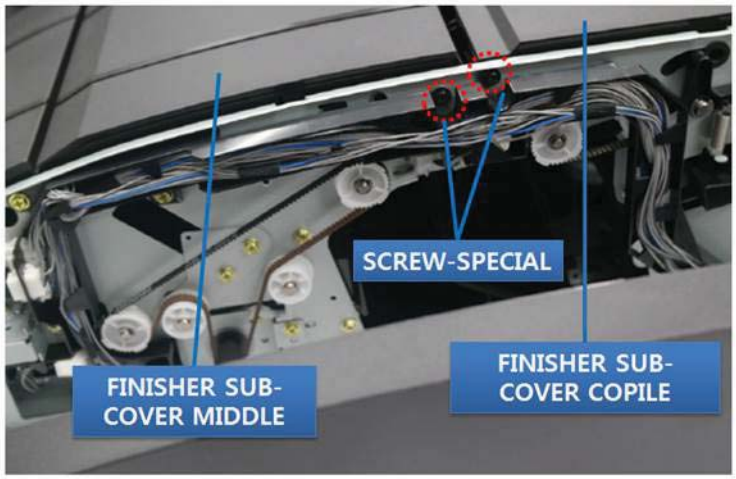
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-215 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-216 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-217 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

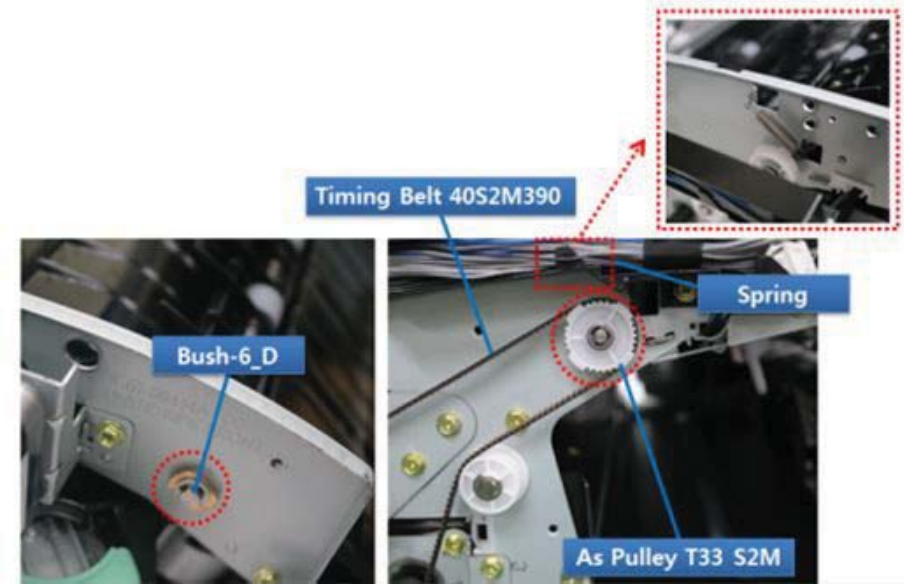
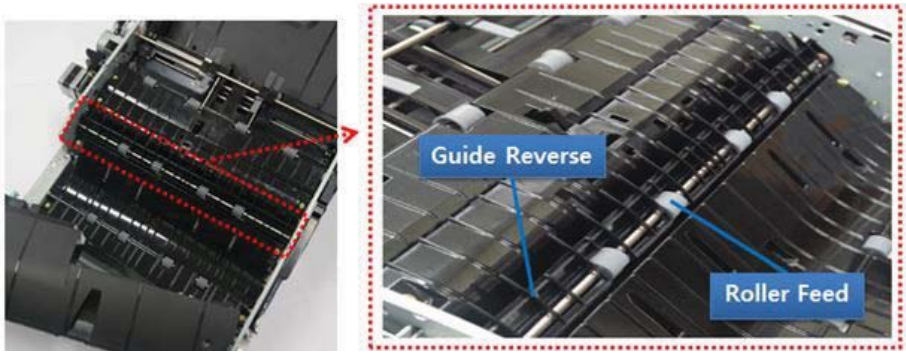


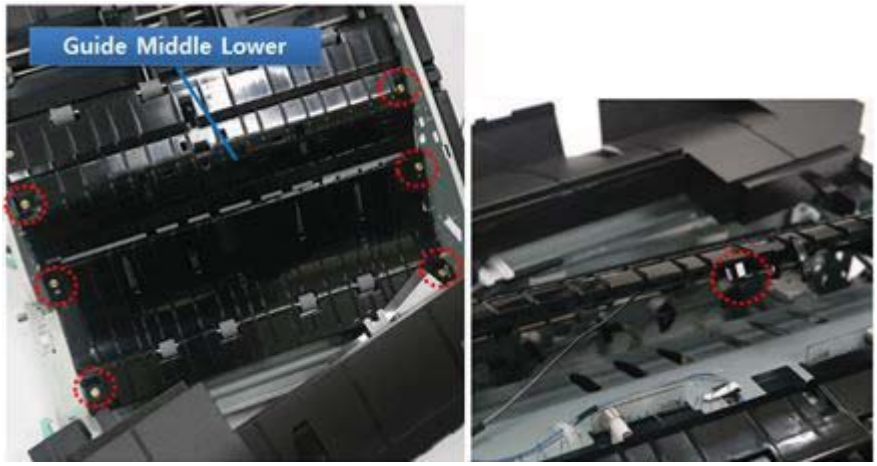
Figure 8-218 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

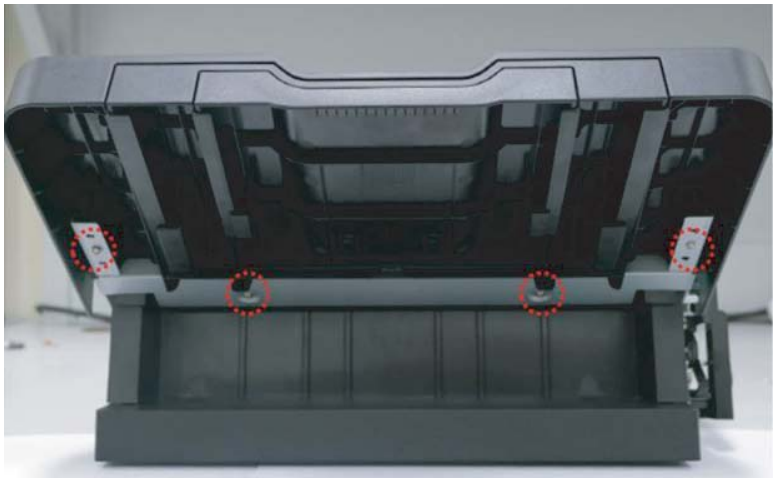
Figure 8-219 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-220 Remove the tray

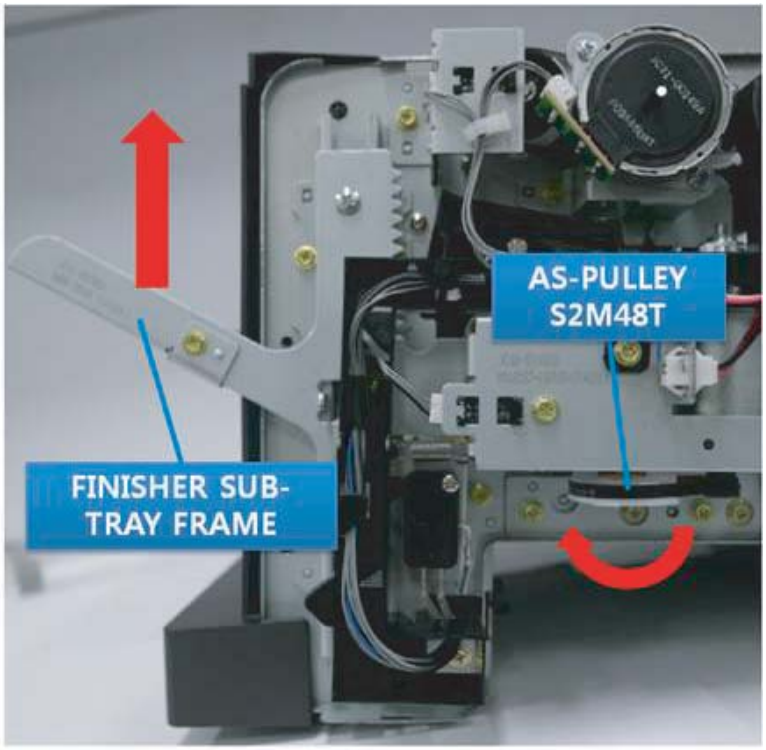


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

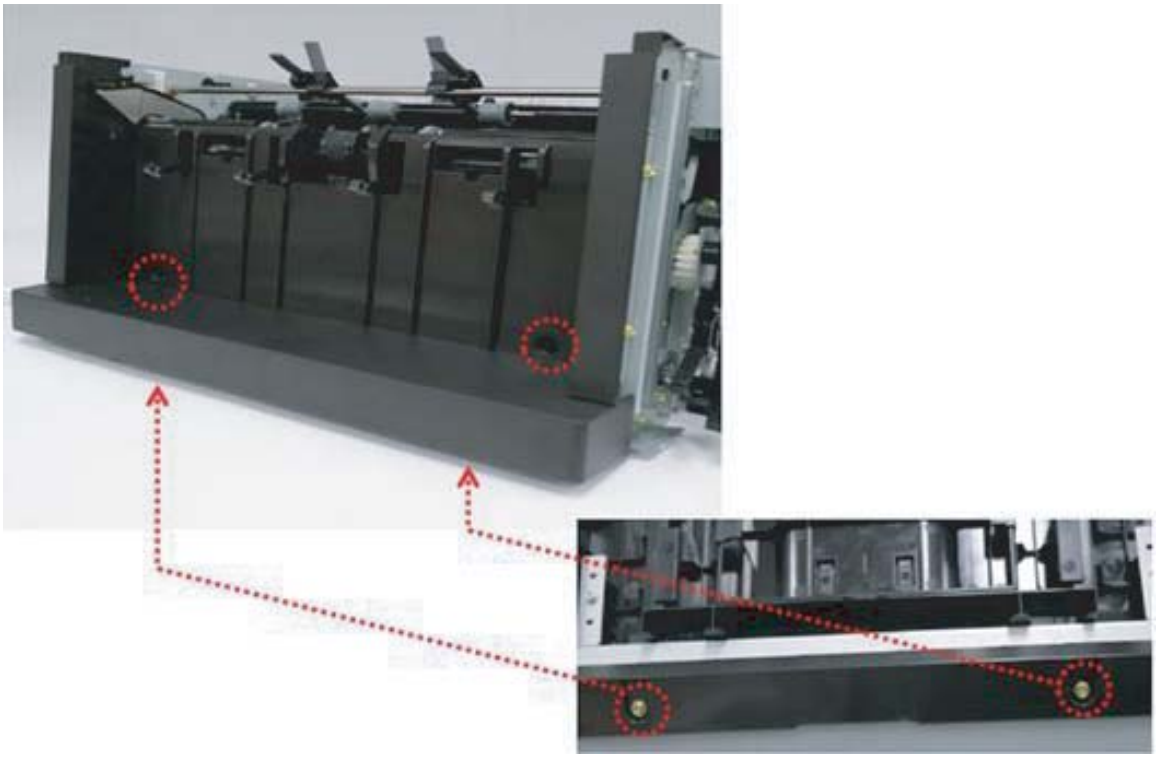
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-221 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

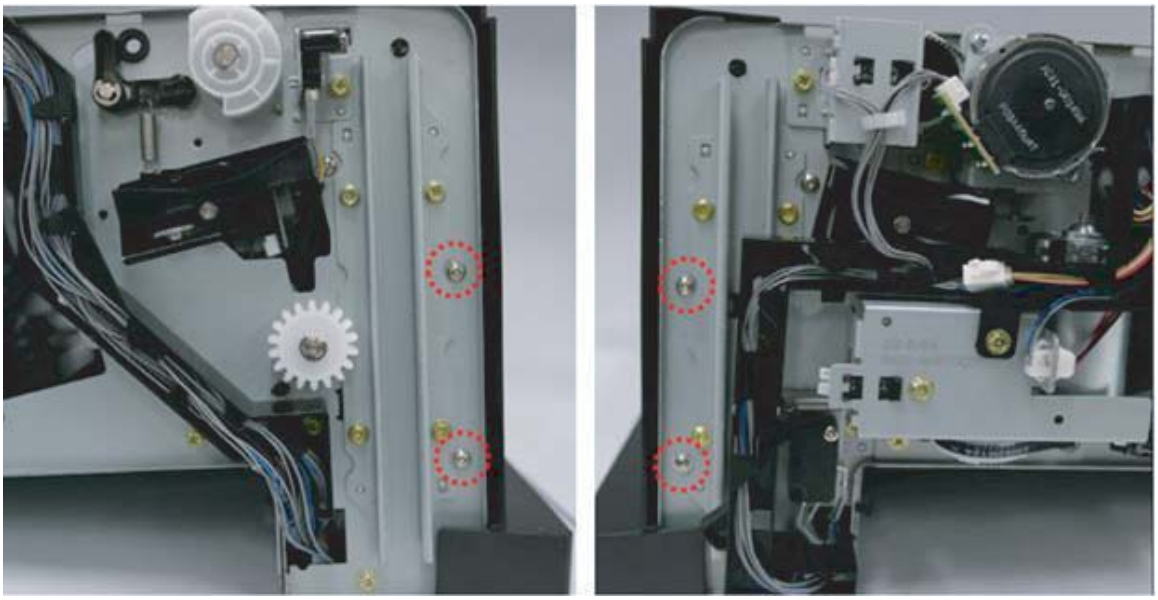
Figure 8-222 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

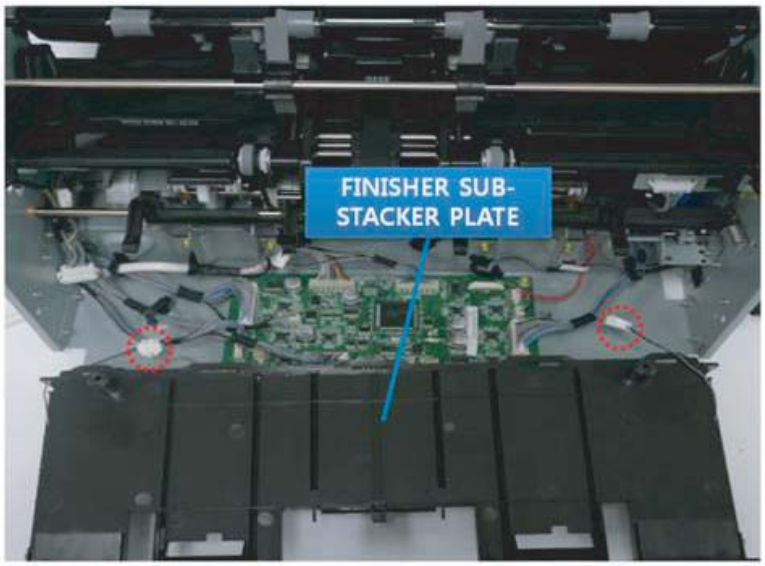
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-223 Remove the PBA



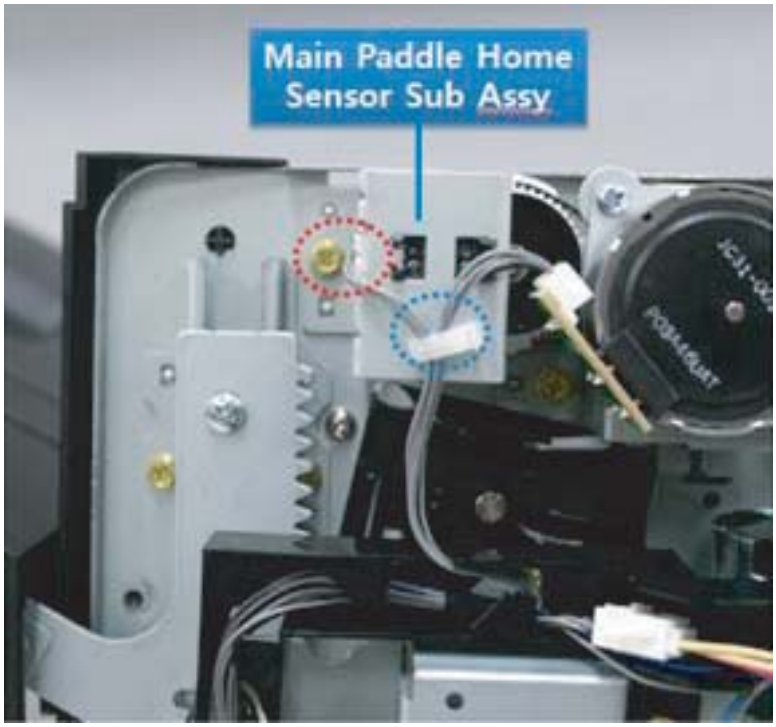
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-224 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

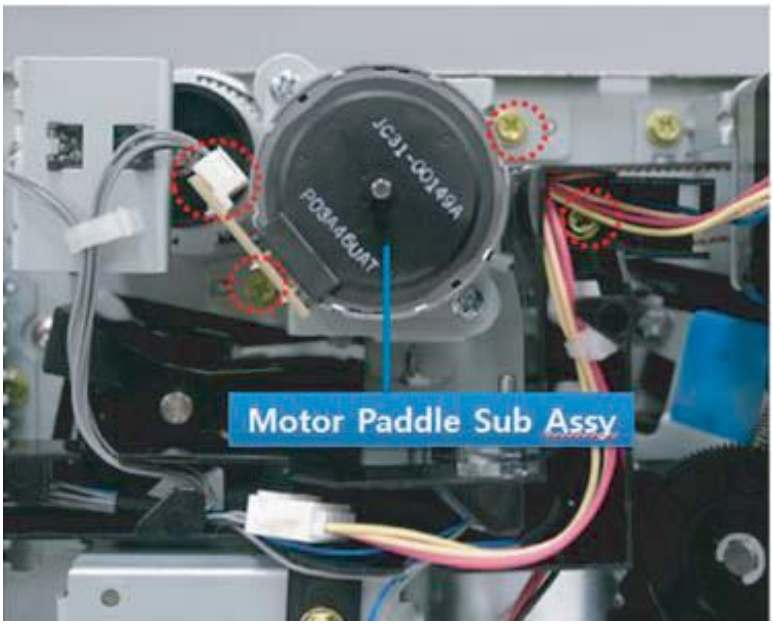
Figure 8-225 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

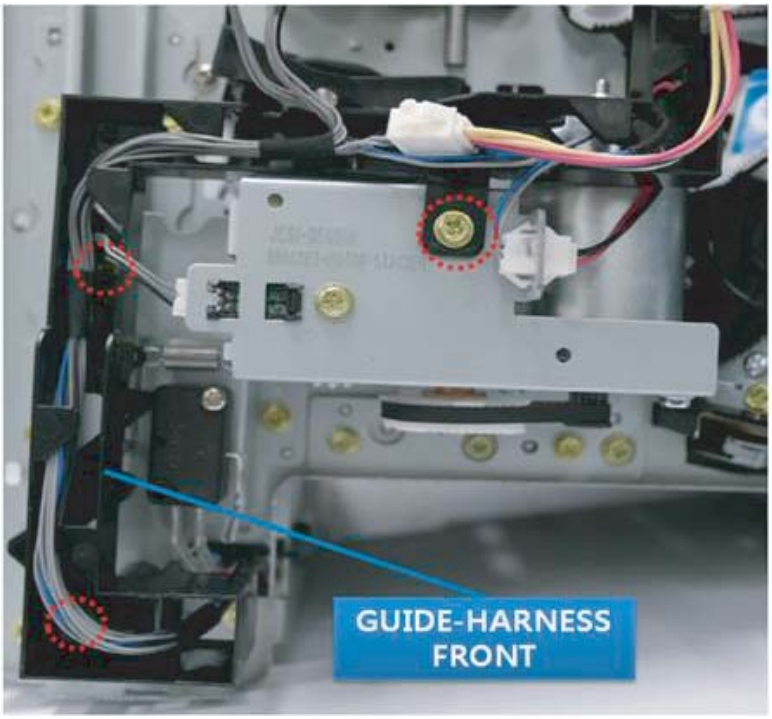
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-226 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



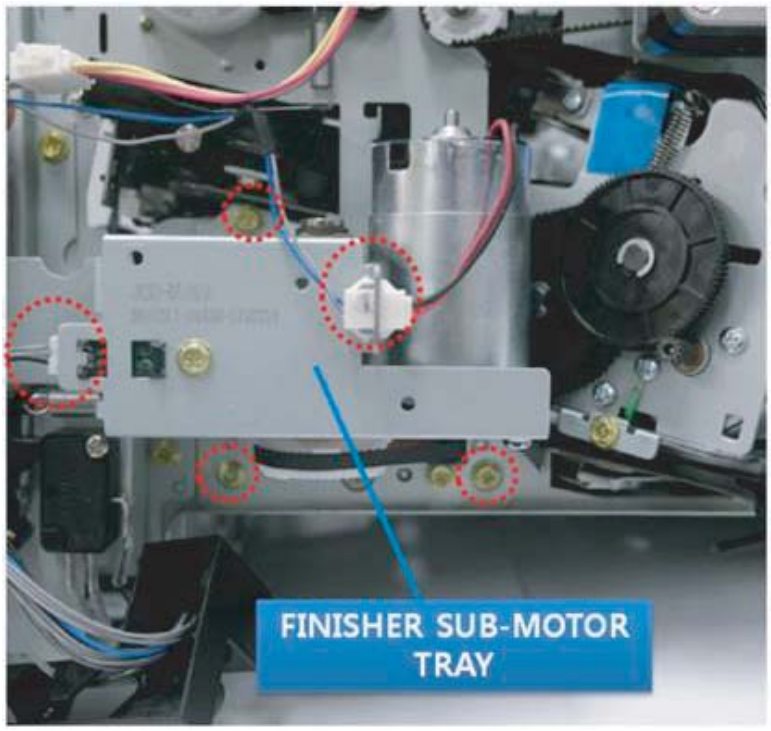
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-227 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-228 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



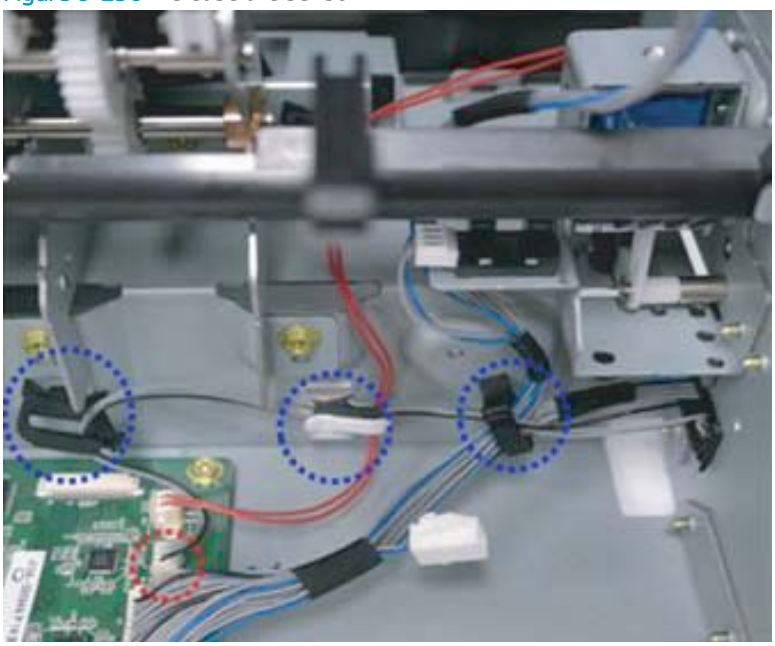
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-229 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-230 Release the sensor



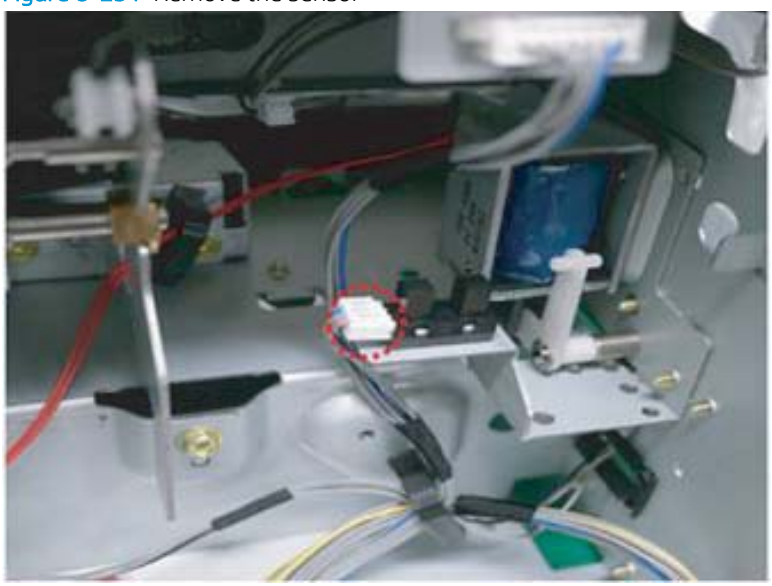
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

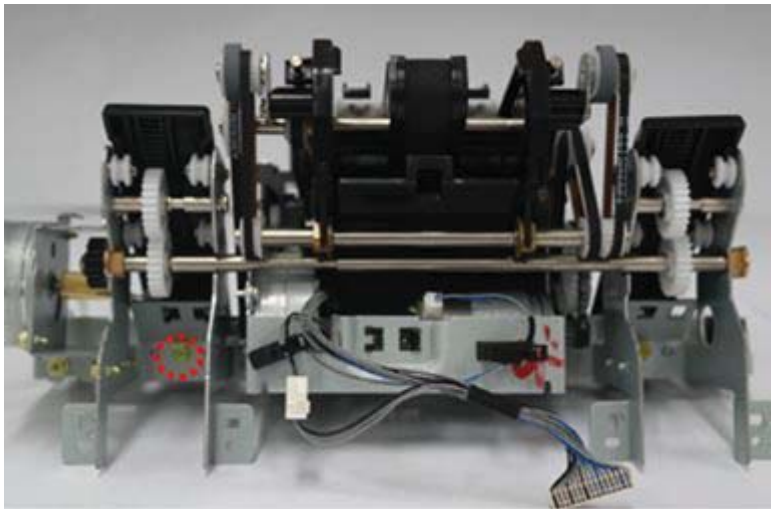
Figure 8-231 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper support home sensor

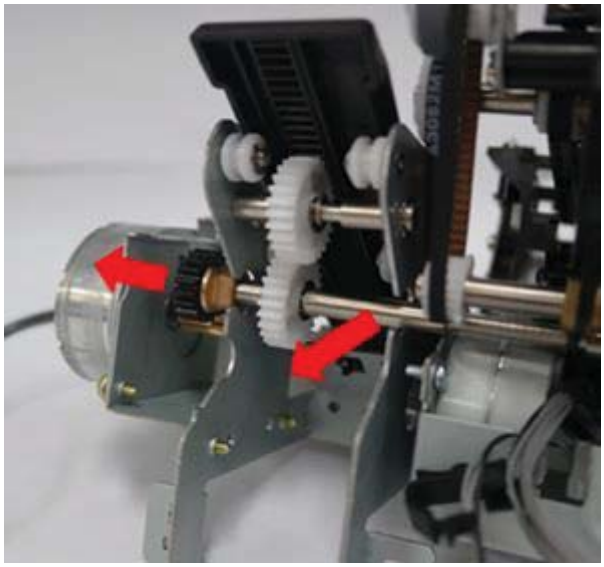
1. Disconnect one connector.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-232 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



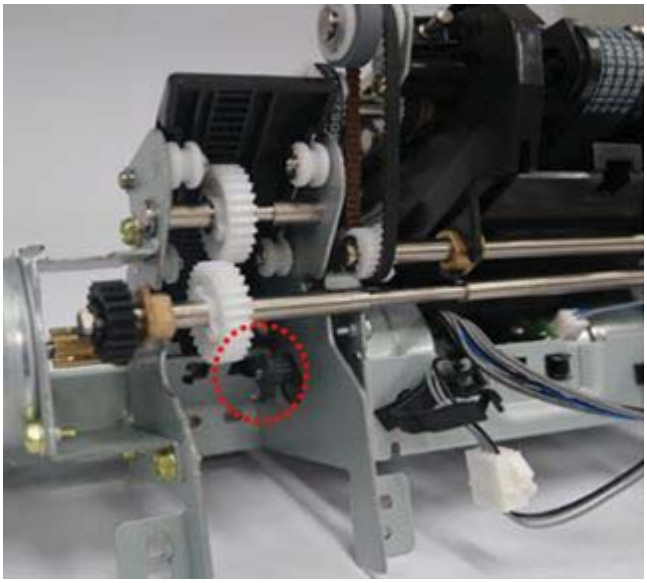
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-233 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the paper support with attention for pinion.

Figure 8-234 Remove the paper support home sensor (3 of 4)



5. Remove the sensor from the paper support.

Figure 8-235 Remove the paper support home sensor (4 of 4)



Ejector Motor assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector Motor assembly part number
Ejector Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

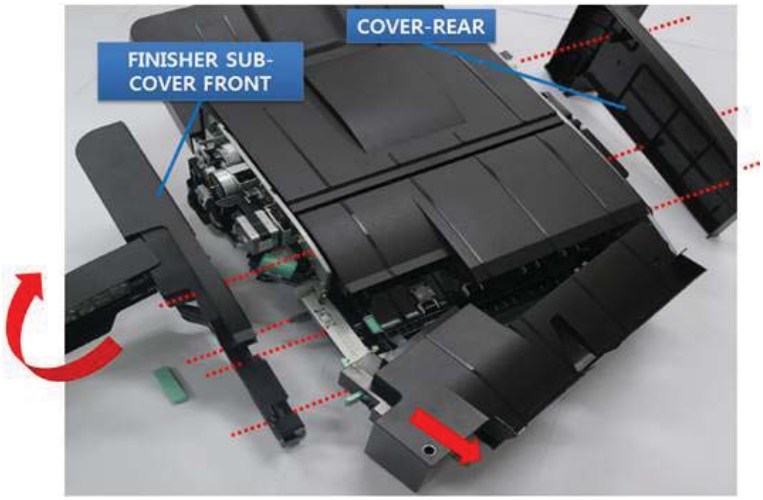
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

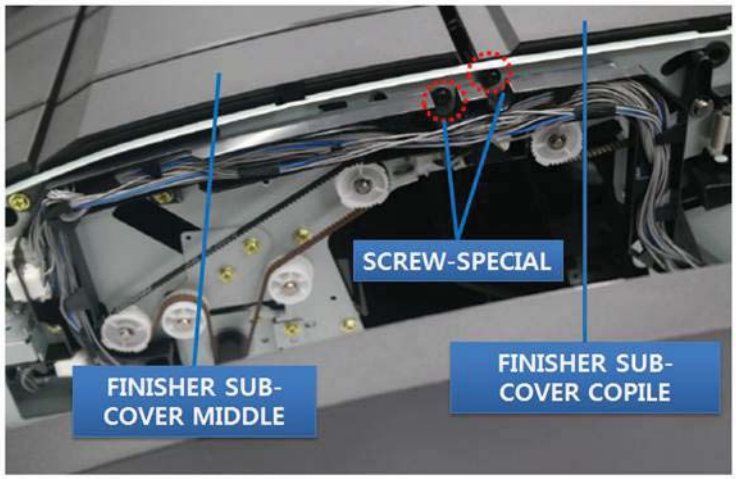
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-236 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-237 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-238 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

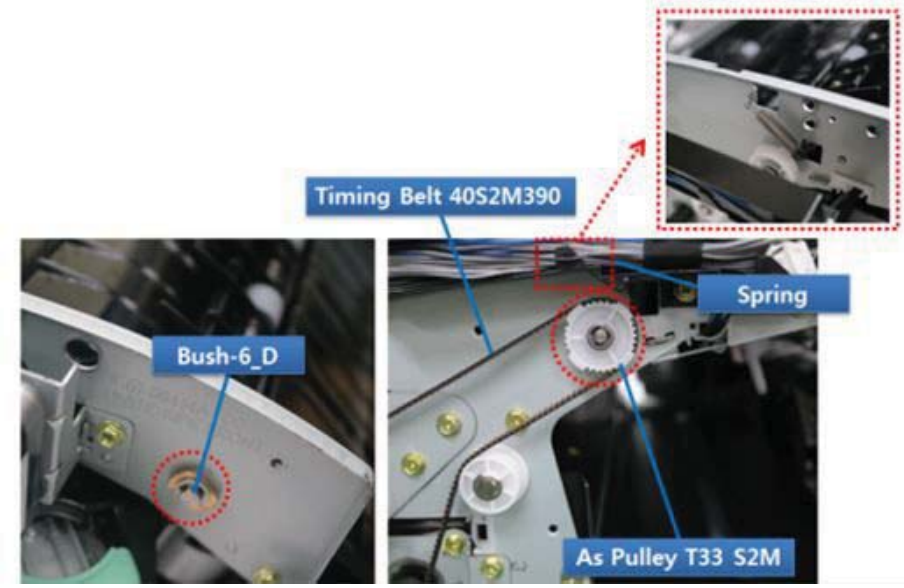
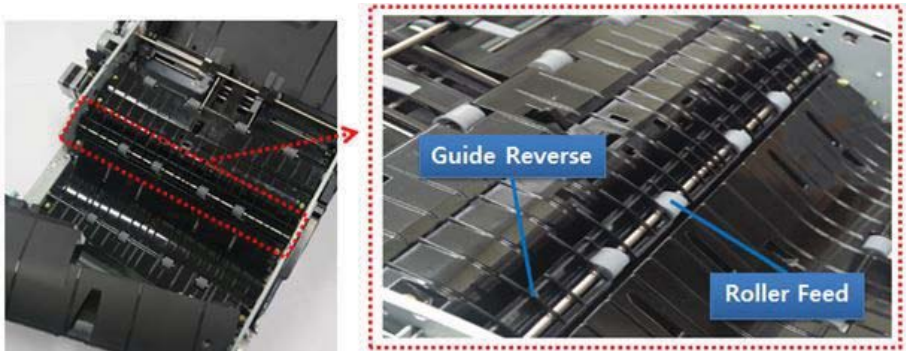


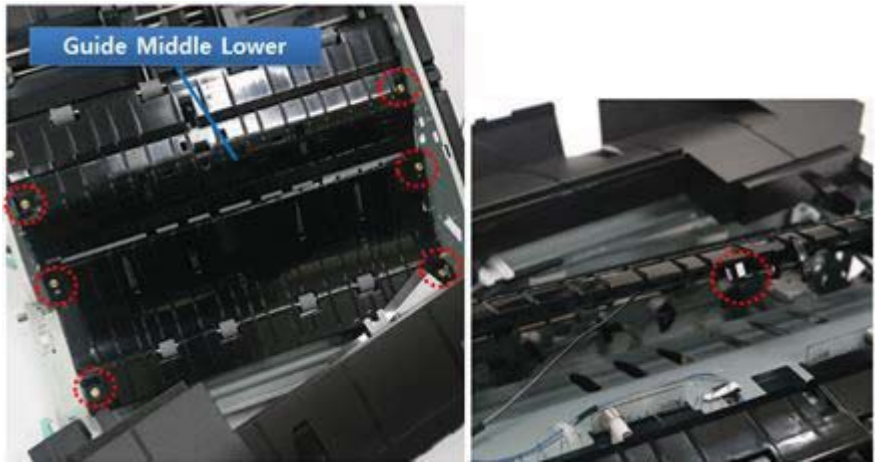
Figure 8-239 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

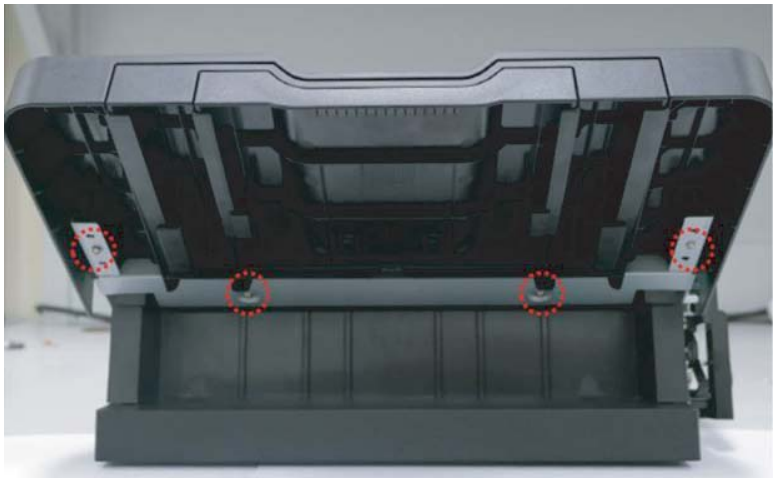
Figure 8-240 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-241 Remove the tray

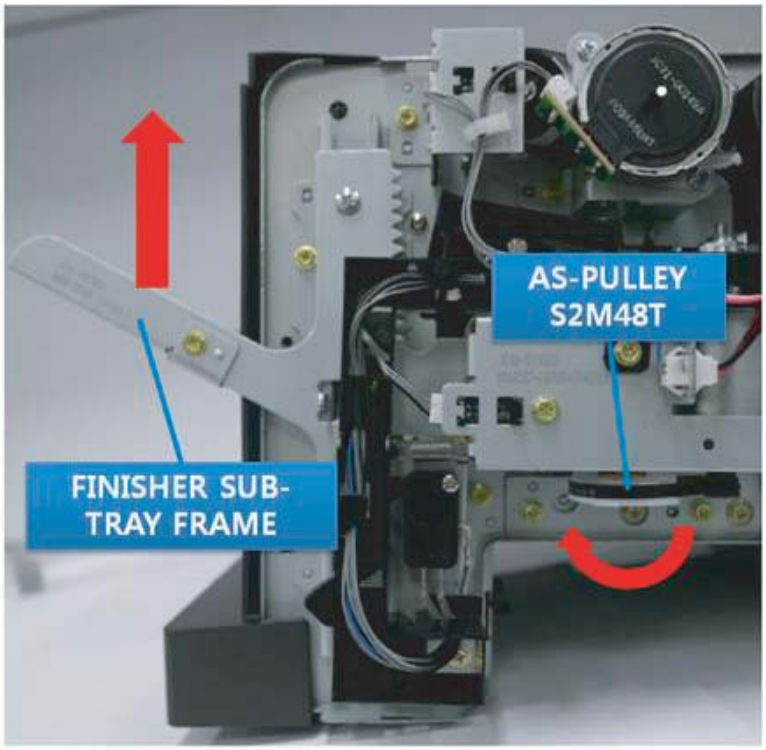


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

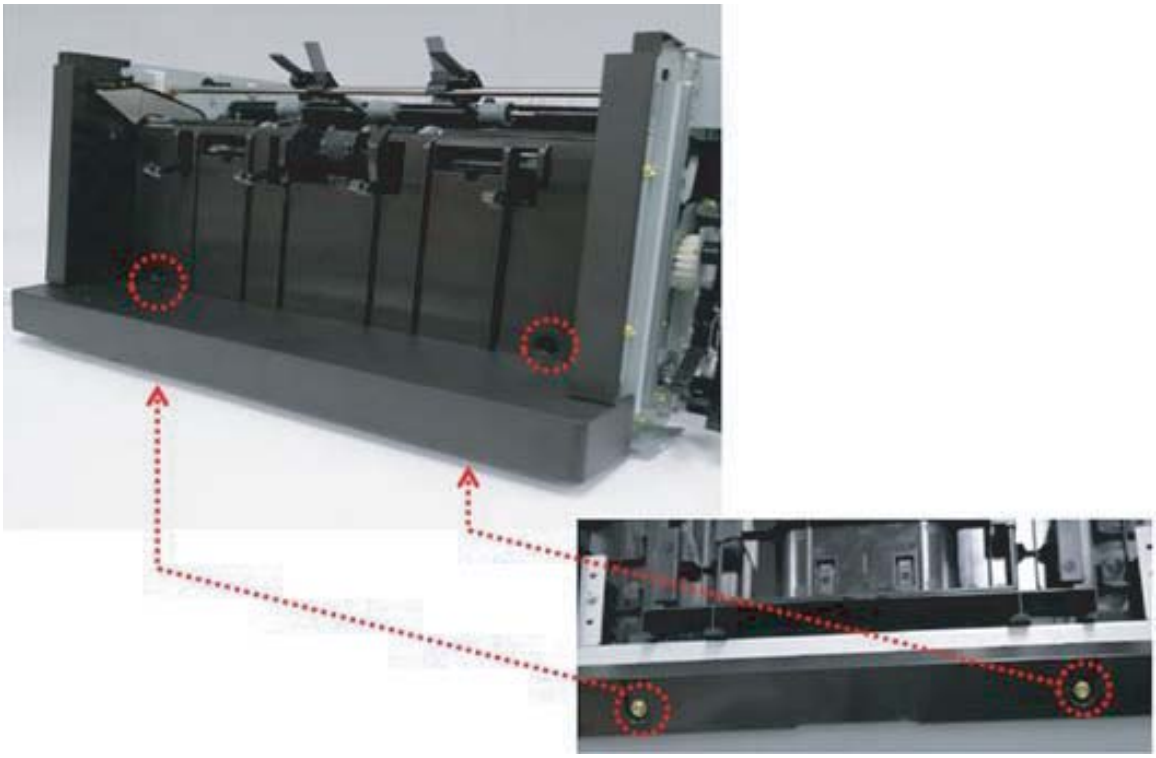
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-242 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

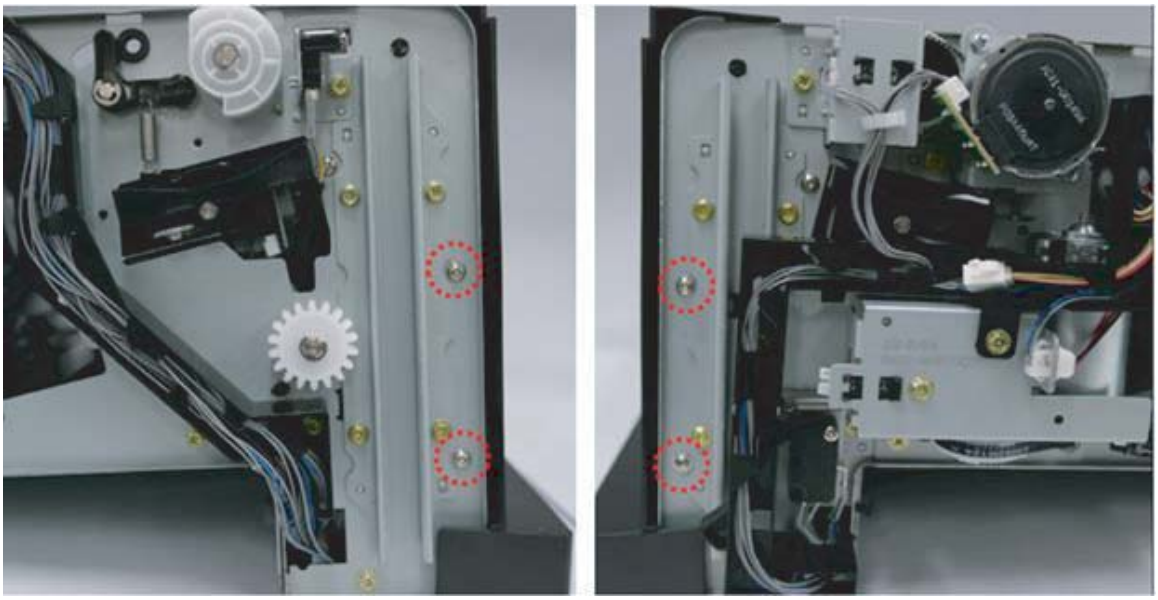
Figure 8-243 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

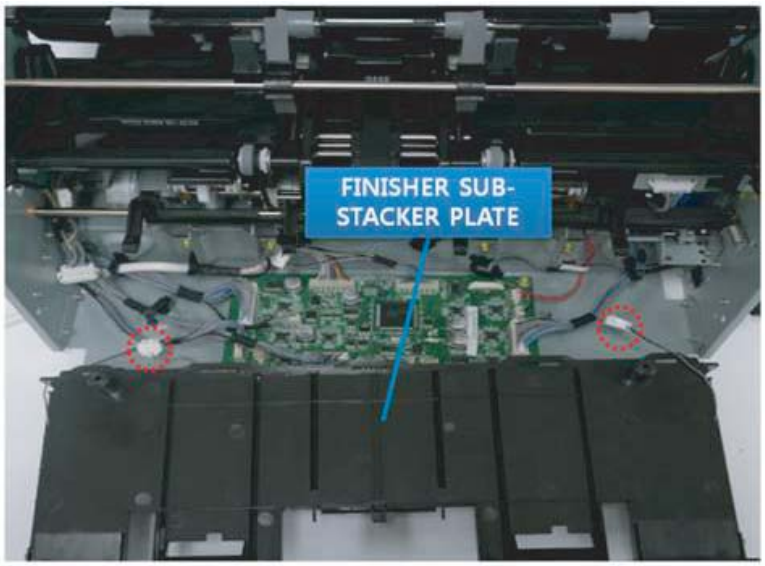
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-244 Remove the PBA



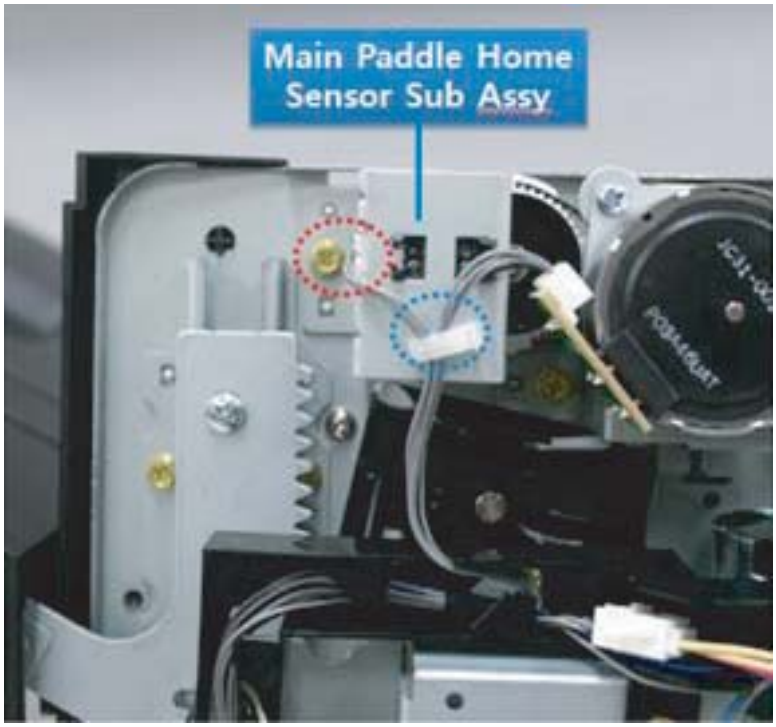
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-245 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

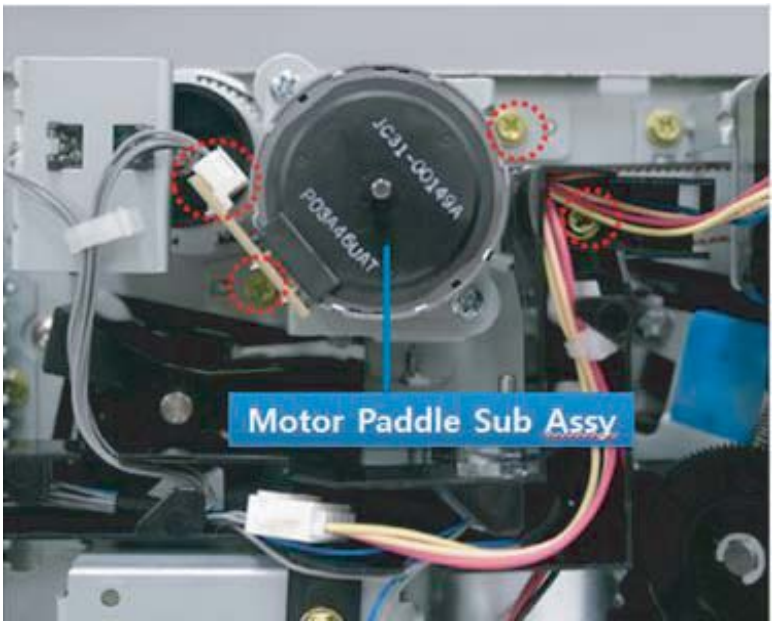
Figure 8-246 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

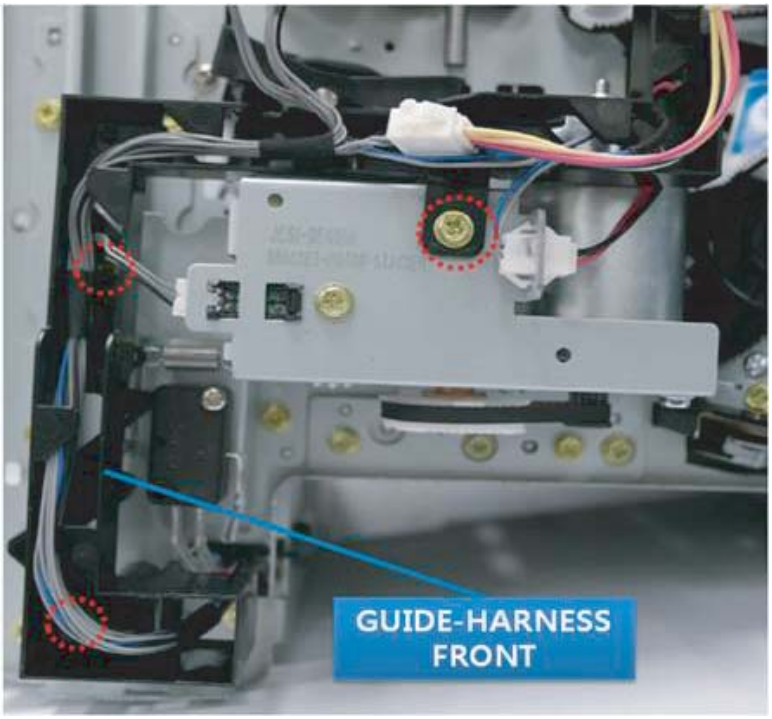
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-247 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



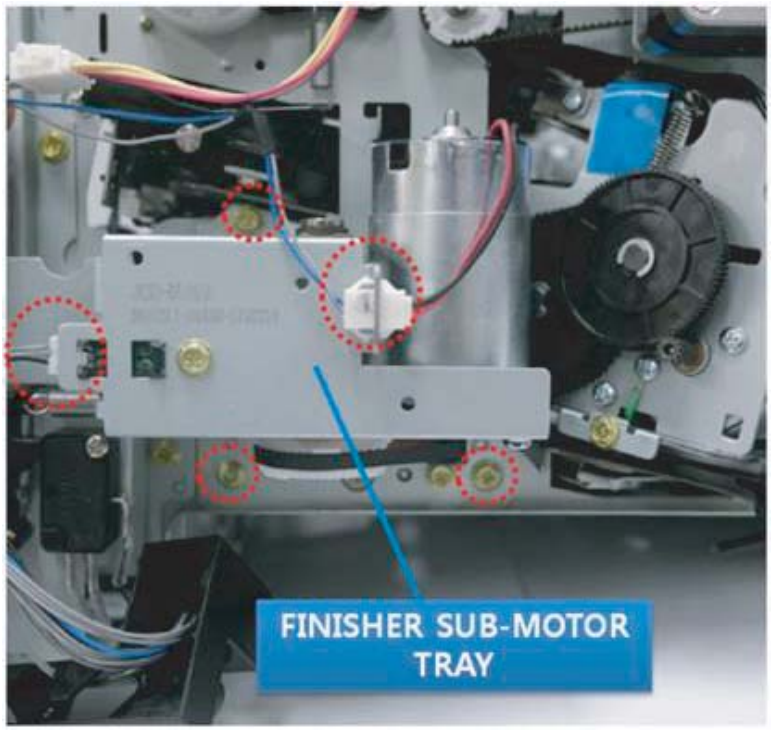
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-248 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-249 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



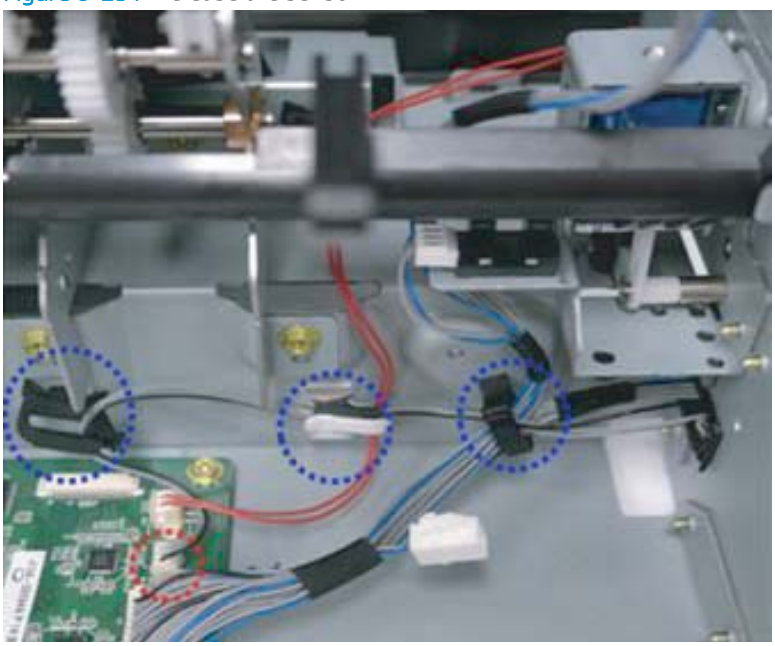
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-250 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-251 Release the sensor



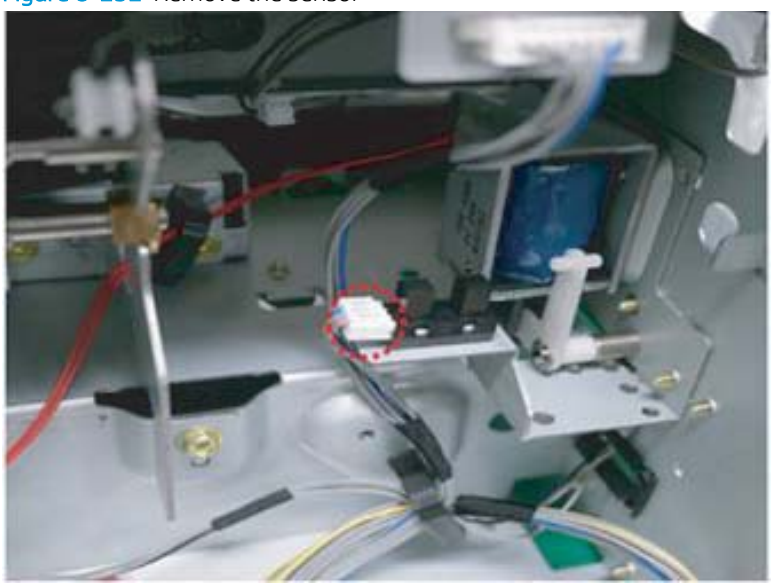
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

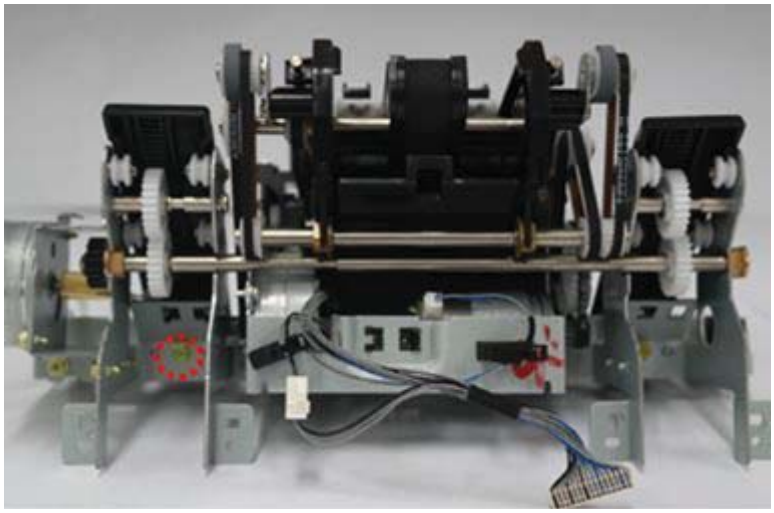
Figure 8-252 Remove the sensor



Step 3: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

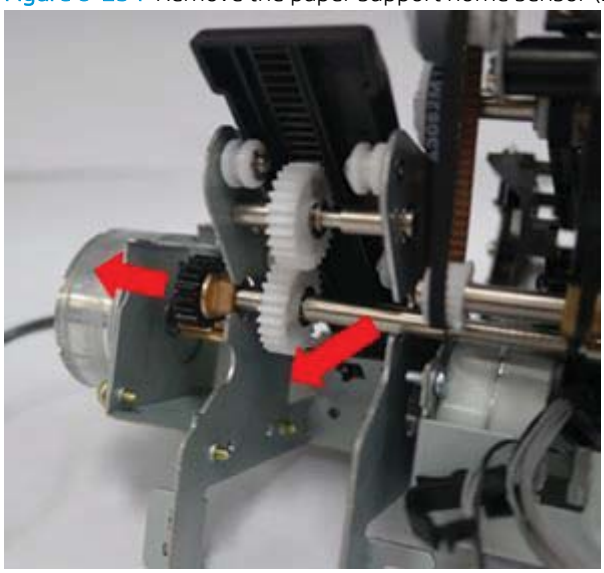
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 8-253 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



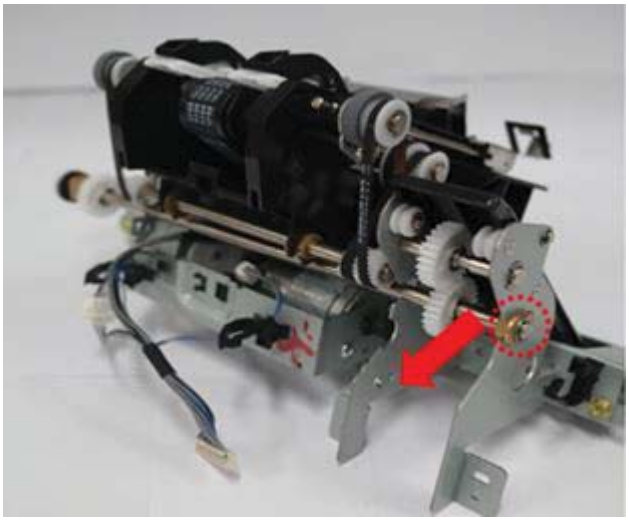
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-254 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

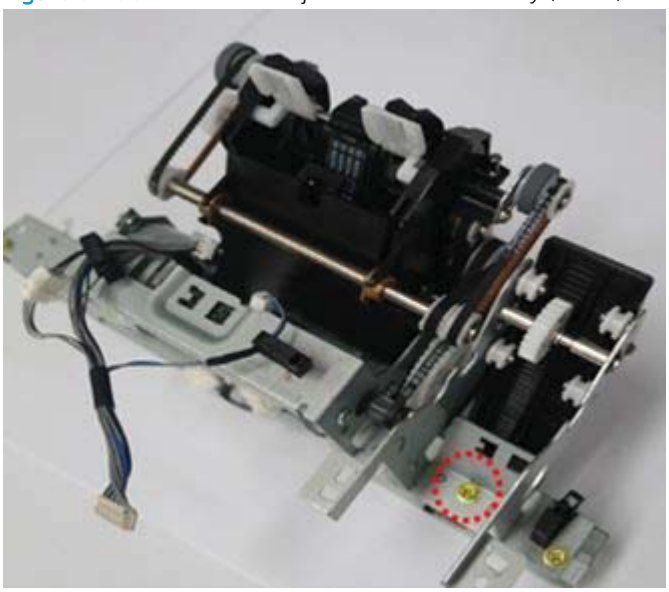
Figure 8-255 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

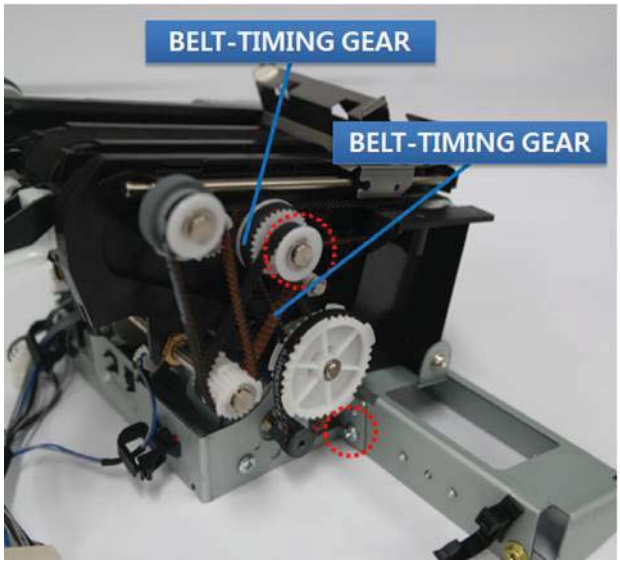
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-256 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



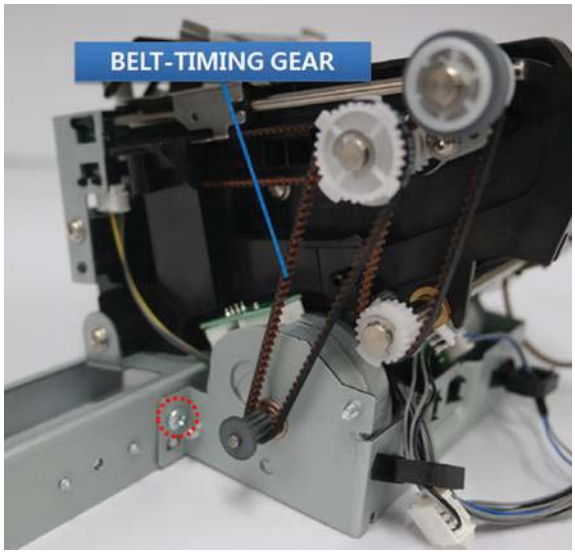
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-257 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-258 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 8-259 Disconnect connectors

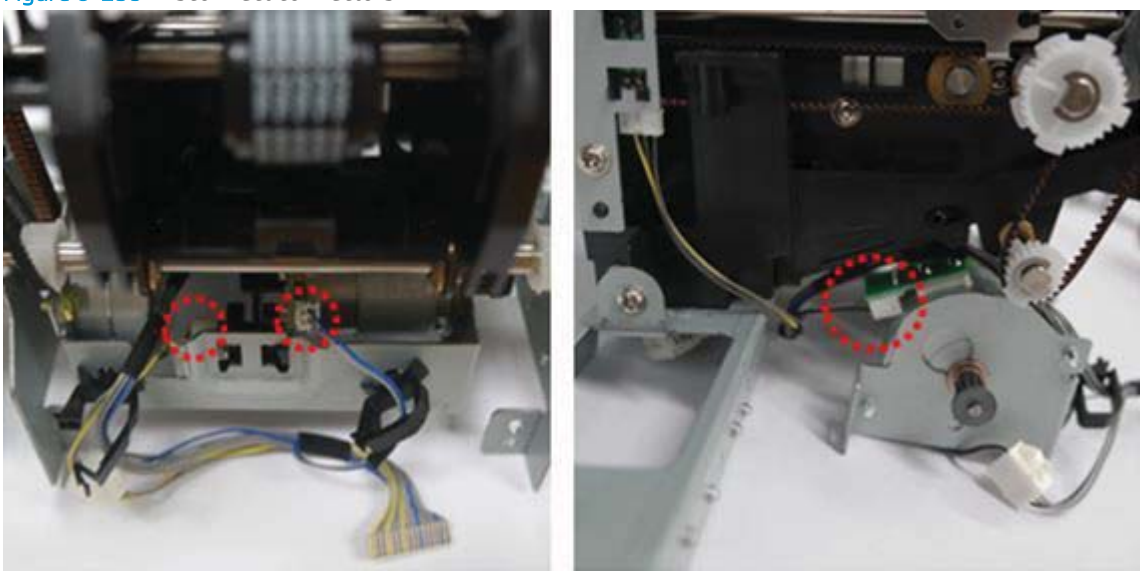


Figure 8-260 Remove the motor assembly



Main Paddle Motor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Motor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle Motor assembly part number
Main Paddle Motor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

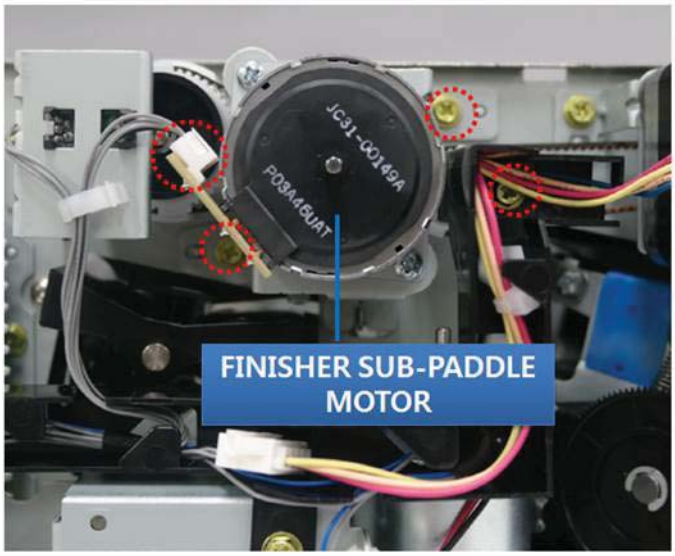
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle motor

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove three screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the motor assembly.

   Figure 8-261 Remove the motor assembly

3. Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

   Figure 8-262 Remove the main paddle motor

Main Paddle Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly part number
Main Paddle Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

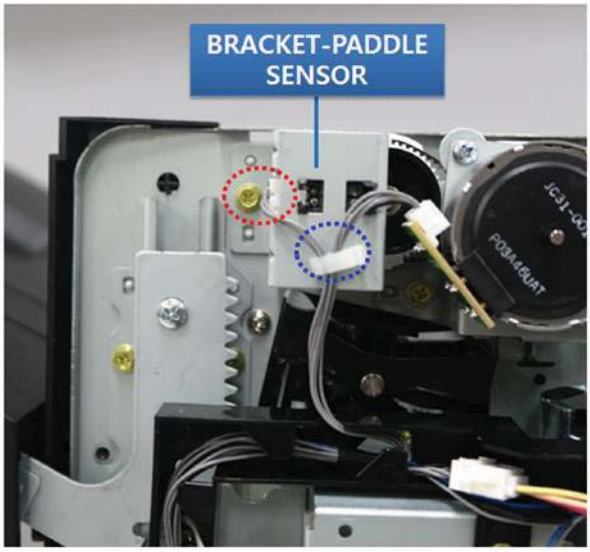
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle home sensor

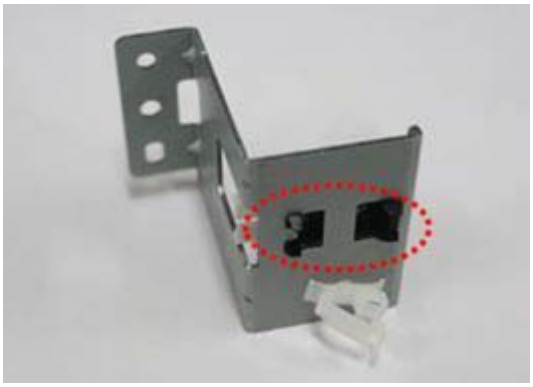
1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove one screw. Open the clamp, and then remove the bracket-paddle sensor.

Figure 8-263 Remove the bracket-paddle sensor



3. Remove the main paddle home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 8-264 Remove the main paddle home sensor



Main Paddle

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the main paddle

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Main Paddle assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Main Paddle assembly part number
Main Paddle assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

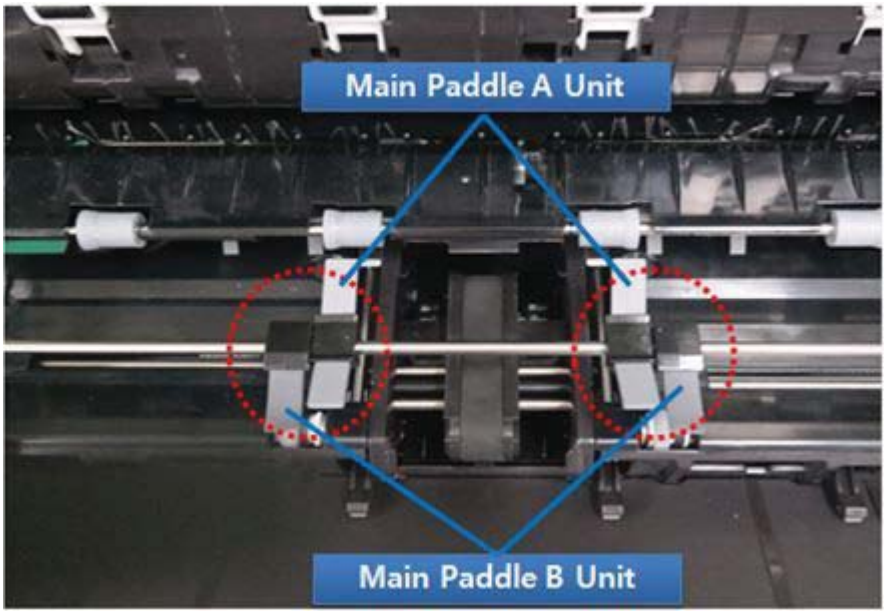
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the main paddle

▲ Open the cover top tray sub assembly, and then remove the main paddle A unit and main paddle B unit.

Figure 8-265 Remove the main paddle



Ejector assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor
- Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly
- Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Ejector assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Ejector assembly part number
Ejector assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

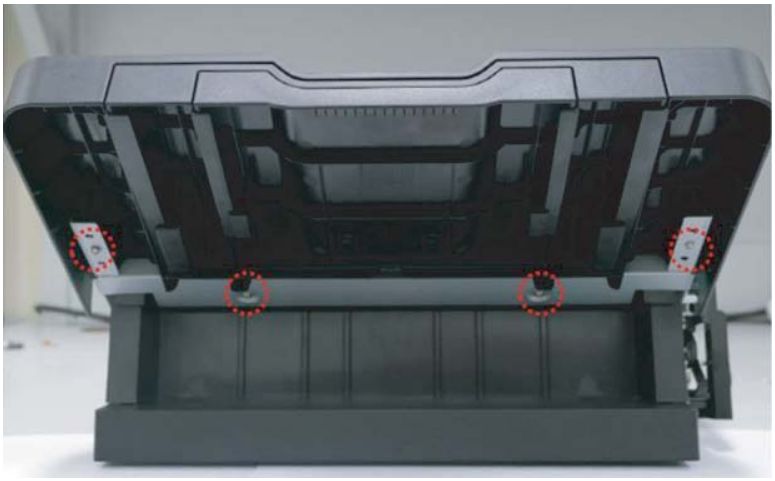
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the stack position sensor

1. Remove four screws, and then, remove the tray.

Figure 8-266 Remove the tray

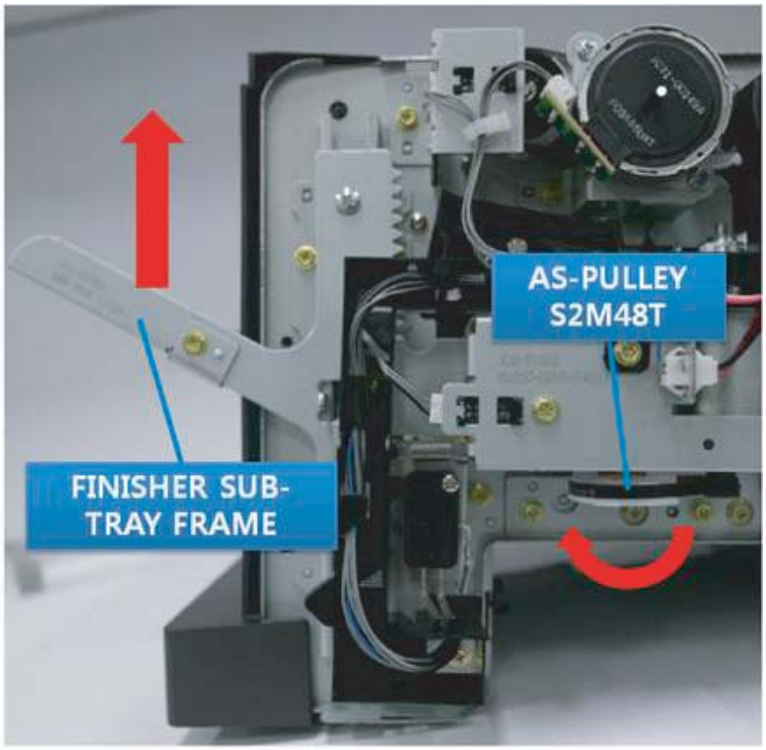


2. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the device while assembling.

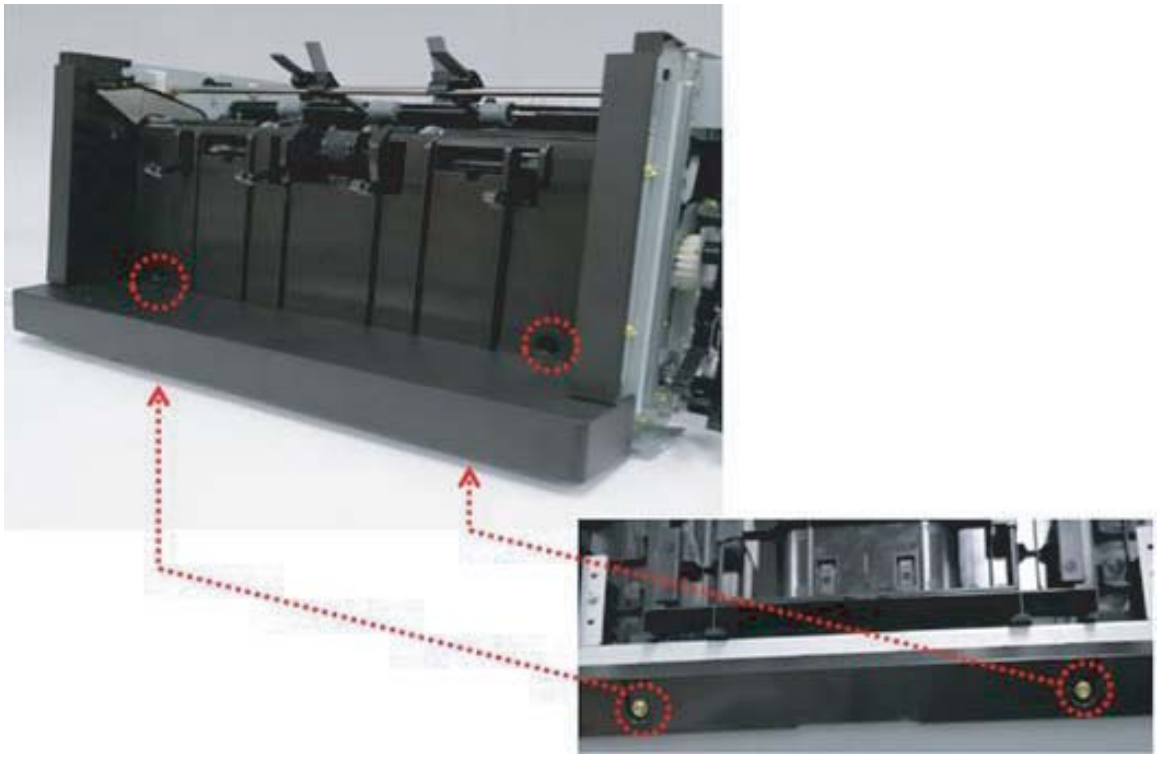
Hold the arms, and then drop the first wheel into the channel (on both sides). Simultaneously let the second wheel rest on the channel (on both sides). Gently squeeze wheels into the channel. The rack and pinion might need to be engaged several times to achieve a level assembly.

Figure 8-267 Remove the sub-tray



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

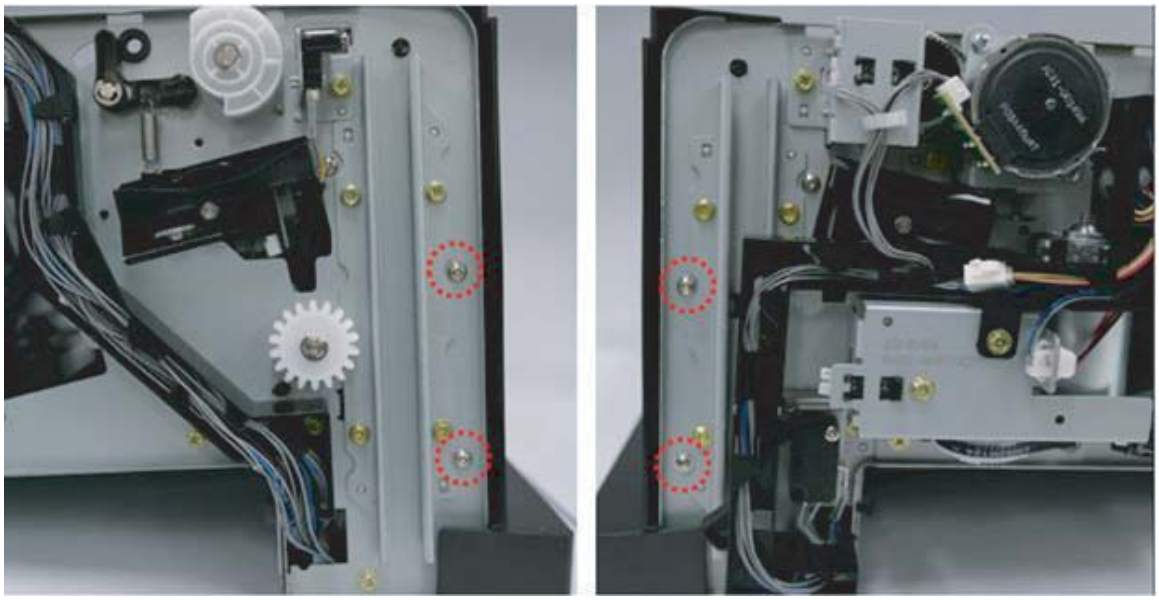
Figure 8-268 Remove the PBA



4. Remove four screws.

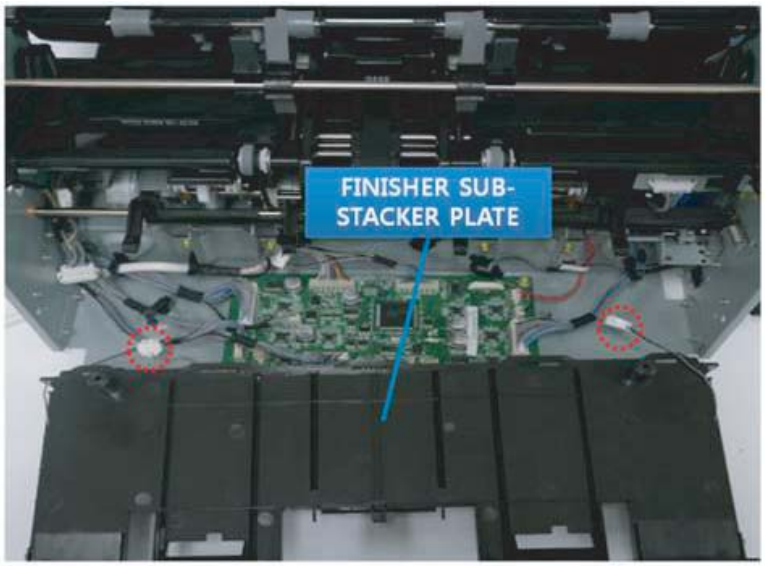
NOTE: Also, remove two screws, and then remove the lower PBA cover (not shown).

Figure 8-269 Remove the PBA



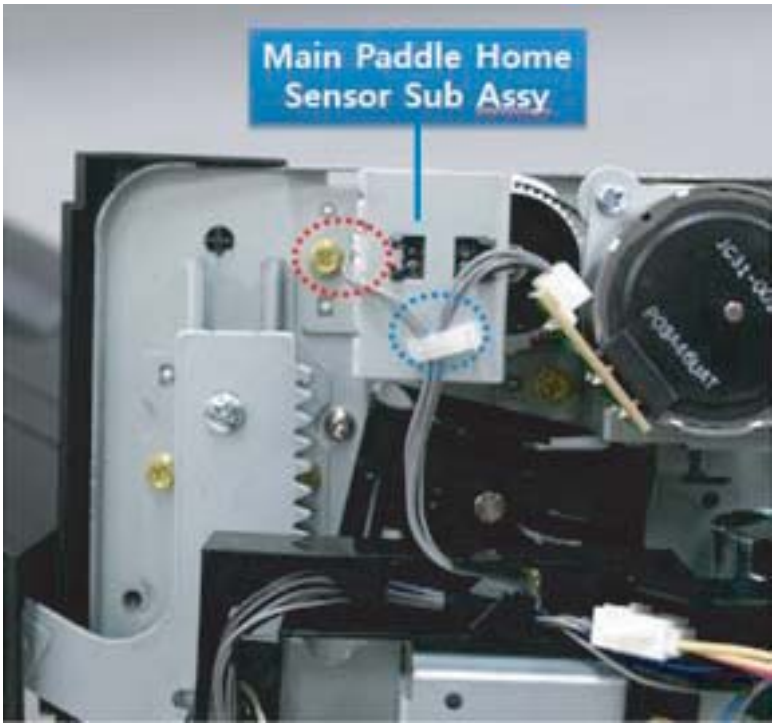
5. Disconnect two in-line connectors, and then, remove the finisher sub-stacker plate.

Figure 8-270 Remove the sub-stacker plate



6. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, release the cable guide, and then remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly.

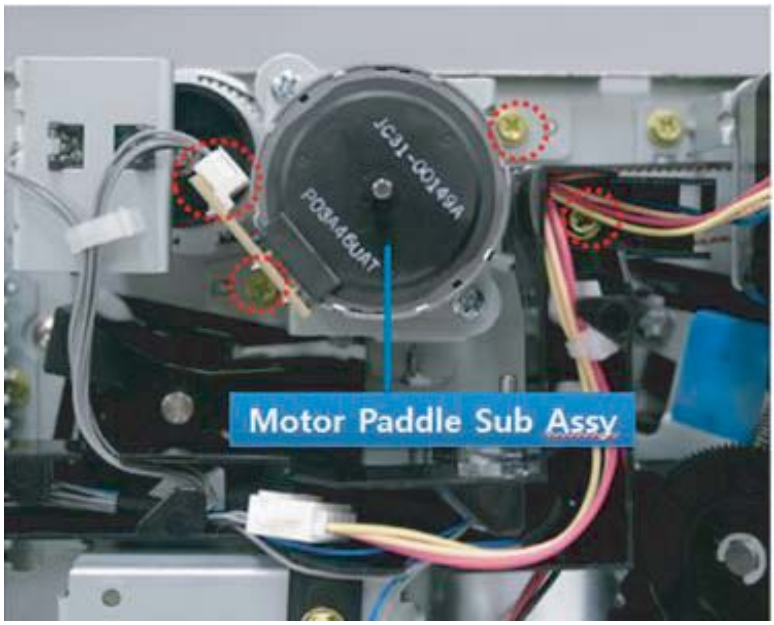
Figure 8-271 Remove the main paddle home sensor sub assembly



7. Remove three screws, disconnect the connector, and then release the motor paddle sub assembly.

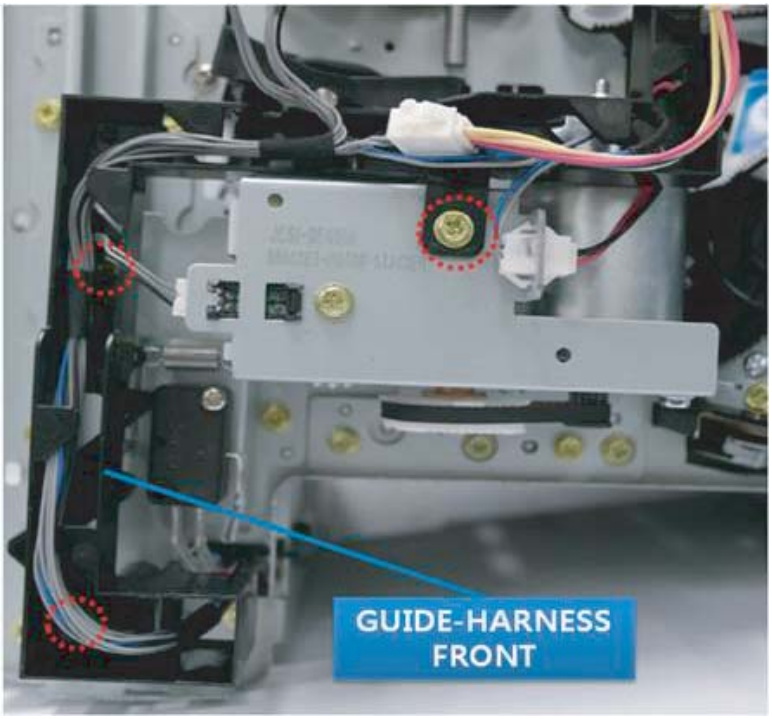
NOTE: Move the wire harness out of the guide to access one screw.

Figure 8-272 Release the motor paddle sub assembly



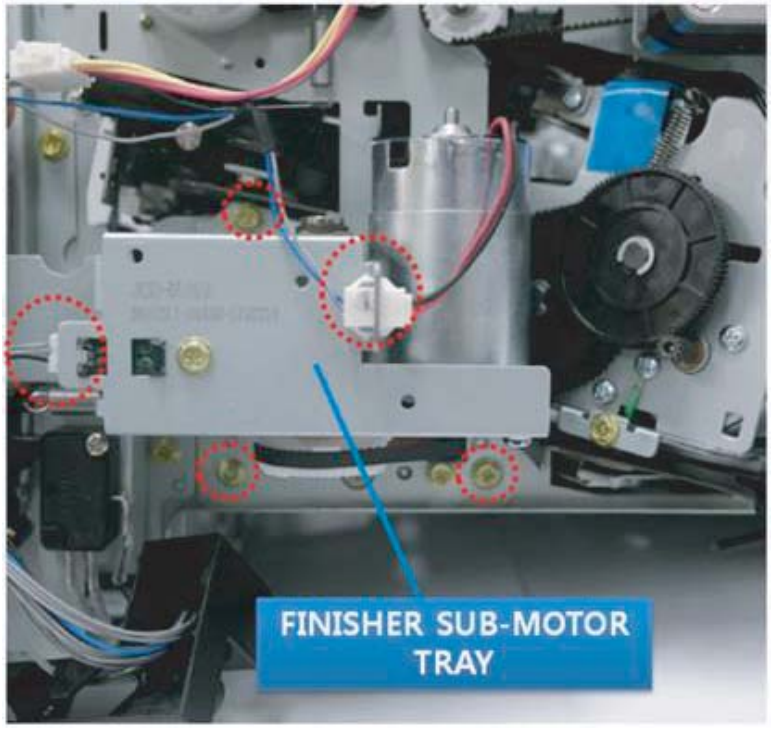
8. Remove three screws, release the wire harness from the guide, and then remove the guide harness front.

Figure 8-273 Remove the guide harness front



9. Remove three screws, disconnect two connectors, and then release the finisher sub-motor tray.

Figure 8-274 Release the finisher sub-motor tray



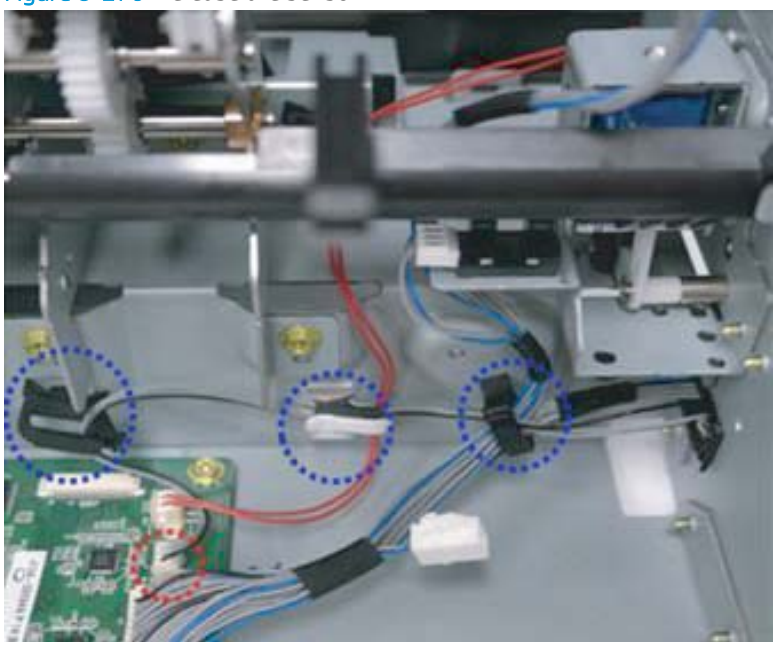
10. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-275 Remove one screw



11. Open three clamps, disconnect the connector, and then release the switch.

Figure 8-276 Release the sensor



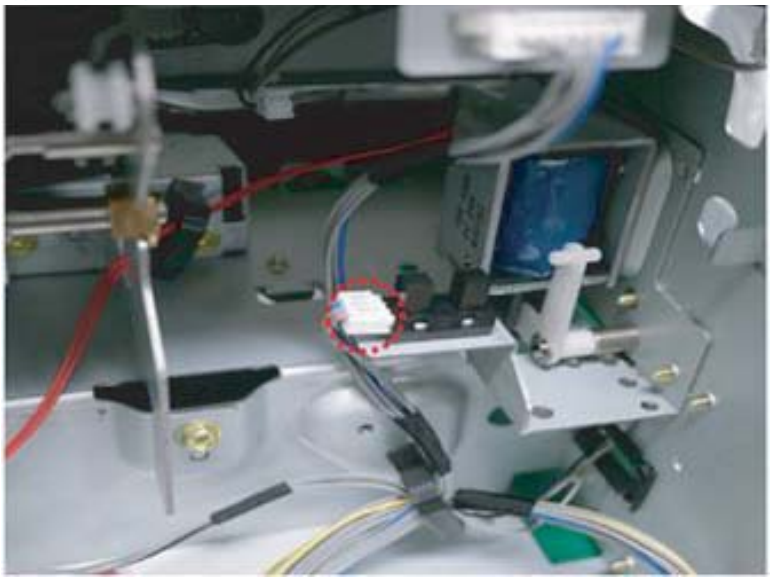
12. Do the following:

    a. Disconnect the sensor.

    b. Remove the adhesive strip from below the sensor.

    c. Remove the stack position sensor.

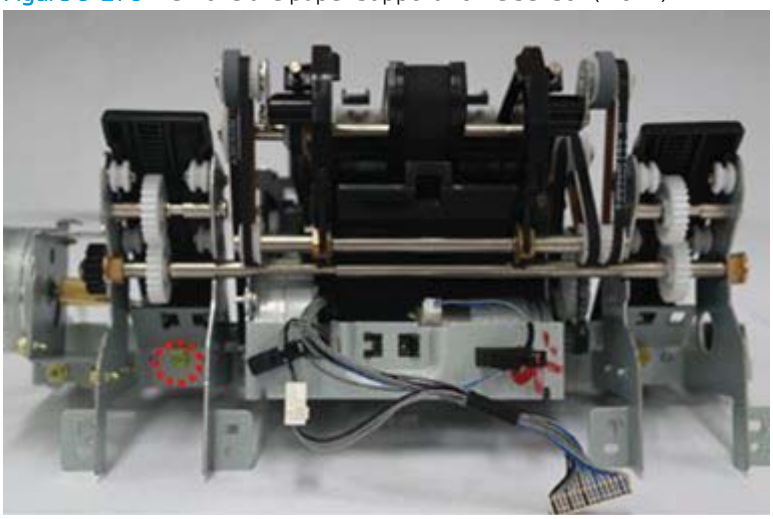
Figure 8-277 Remove the sensor



Step 2: Remove the paper ejector motor assembly

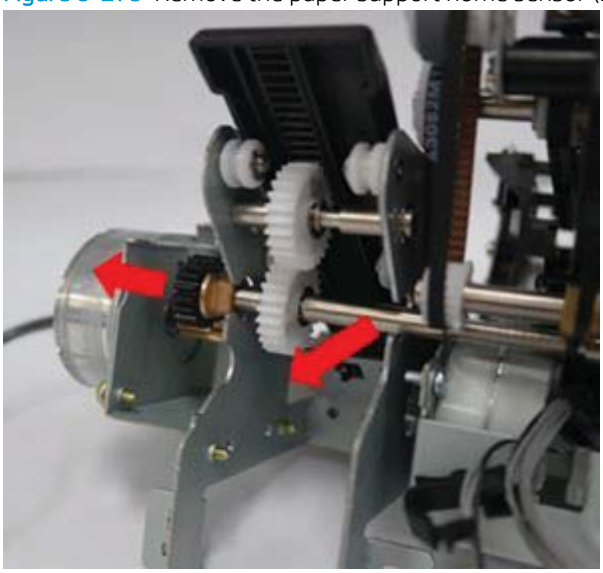
1. Disconnect one connector on the paper support motor.
2. Remove one screw on the paper support home sensor.

Figure 8-278 Remove the paper support home sensor (1 of 4)



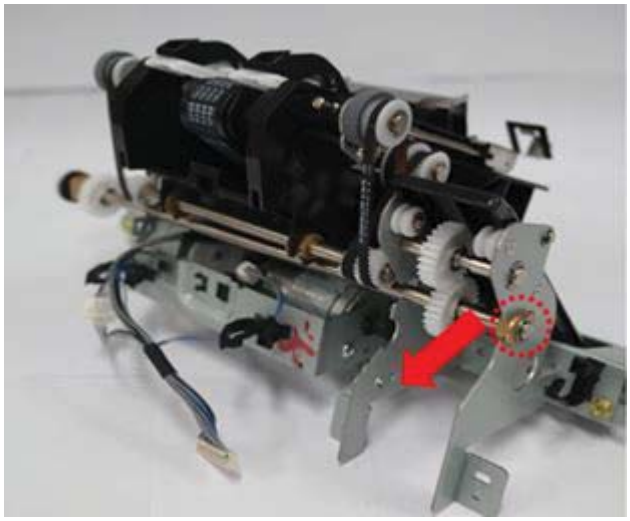
3. Remove the shaft while pulling the bushing in the direction of the arrow.

Figure 8-279 Remove the paper support home sensor (2 of 4)



4. Remove the e-clip and the bushing, and then pull and remove the drive shaft.

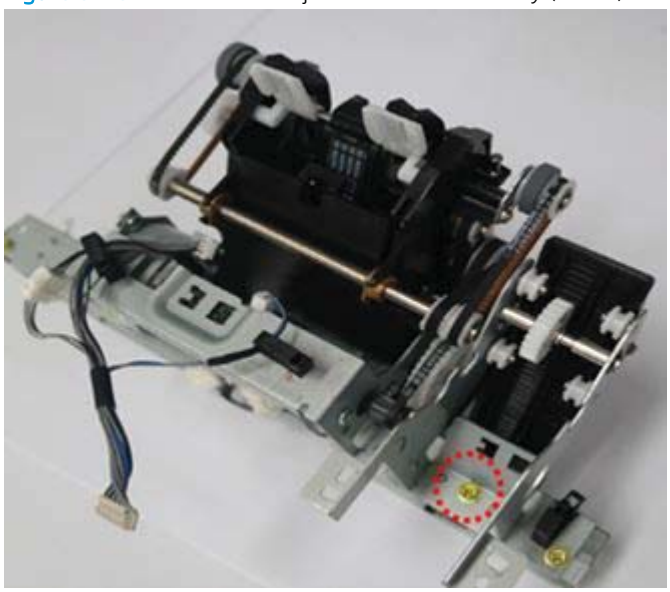
Figure 8-280 Remove the ejector motor assembly (1 of 6)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the drive shaft, ensure the paper supports are in the full down position (against the stops).

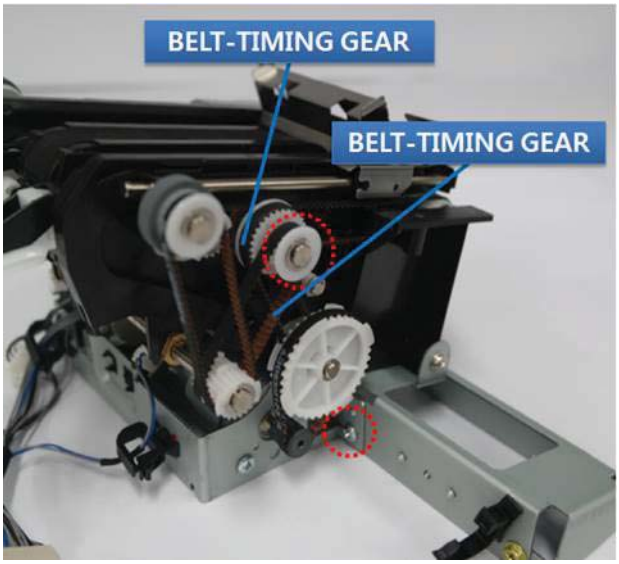
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-281 Remove the ejector motor assembly (2 of 6)



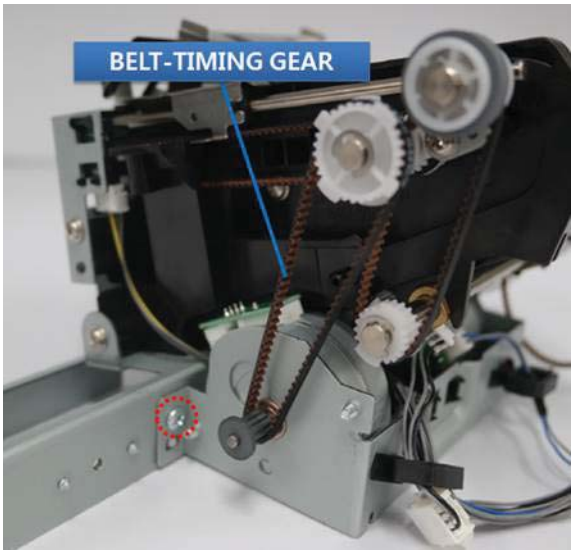
6. Remove the e-ring and washer. Remove two belt-timing gears, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-282 Remove two belt-timing gears



7. Remove the clip, remove the belt-timing gear, and then remove one screw.

Figure 8-283 Remove the belt-timing gear and one screw



8. Remove the cable from restraint, and then disconnect two motor connectors and the sensor connector. Remove the motor assembly.

Figure 8-284 Disconnect connectors

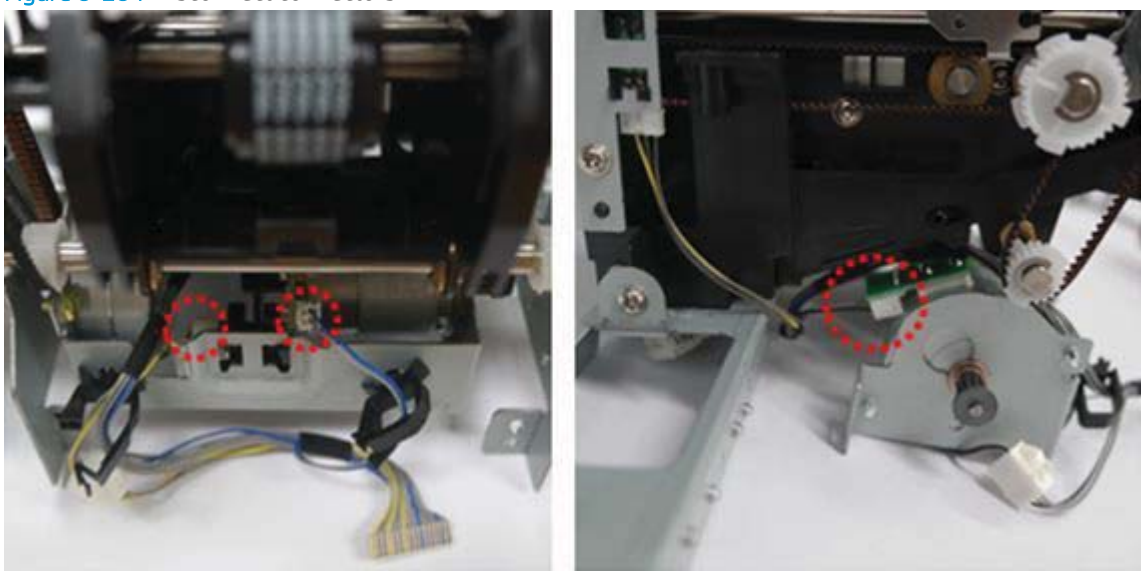


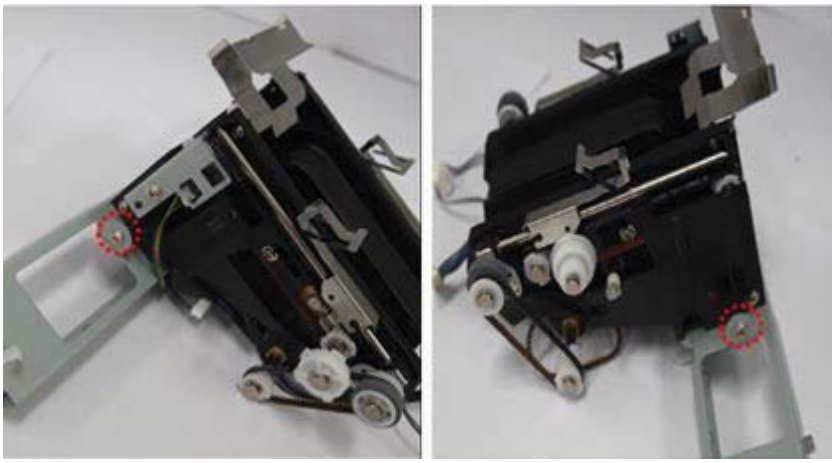
Figure 8-285 Remove the motor assembly



Step 3: Remove the paper ejector assembly

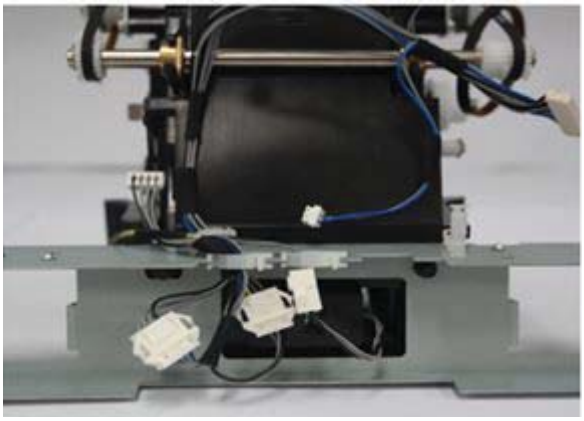
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 8-286 Remove two screws



2. Unplug the harness, and then remove the ejector assembly.

Figure 8-287 Remove the ejector assembly



Punch Dust Full Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers
- Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly part number
Punch Dust Full Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the entrance motor covers

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

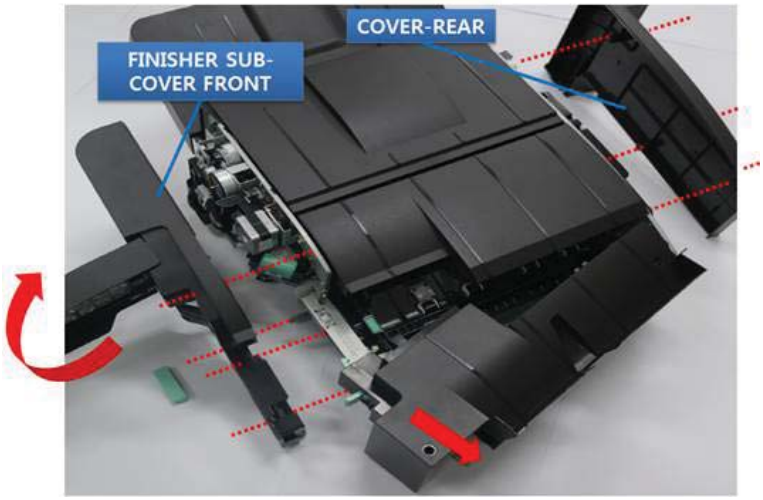
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub-cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub-cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub-cover front.

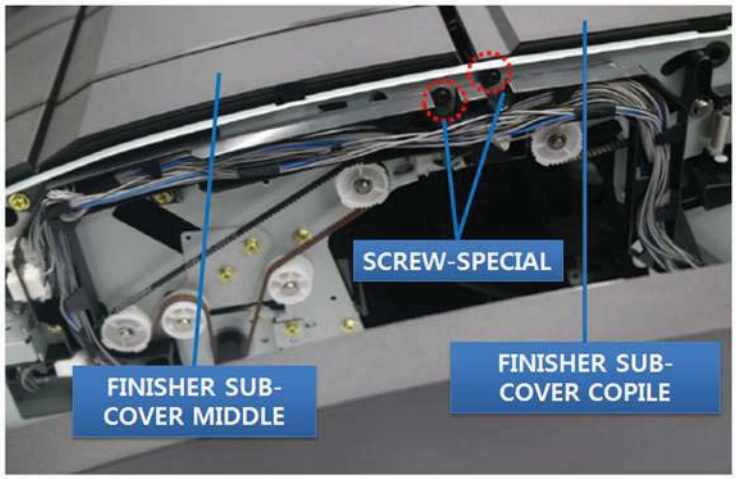
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-288 Remove the entrance motor (1 of 7)



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-289 Remove the entrance motor (2 of 7)



3. On the front of the printer remove the e-ring and bushing. On the rear of the printer remove the e-ring, pulley, bushing, belt, spring (slightly hidden from view), and then remove the guide reverse and roller feed.

Figure 8-290 Remove the entrance motor (3 of 7)

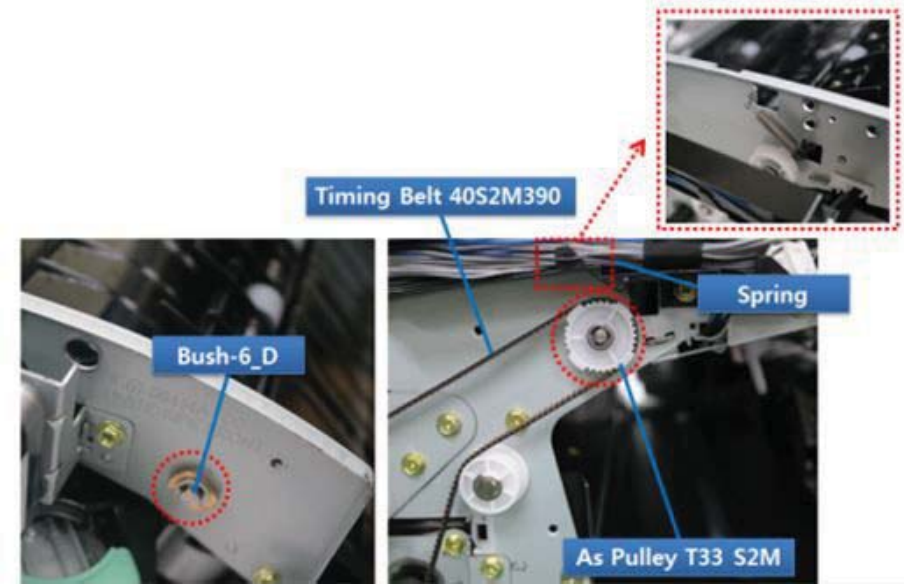
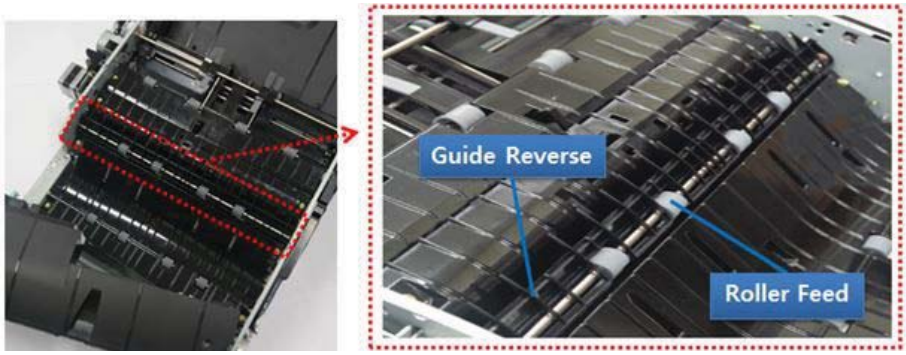


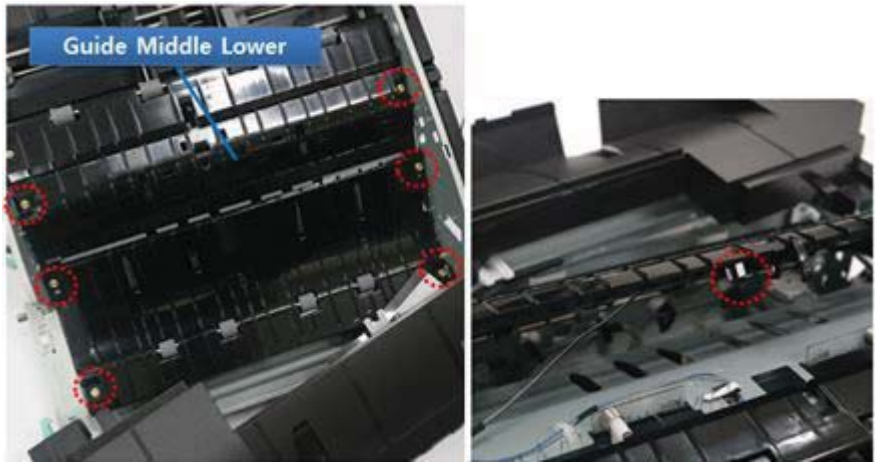
Figure 8-291 Remove the entrance motor (4 of 7)



4. Remove six screws.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the sensor.

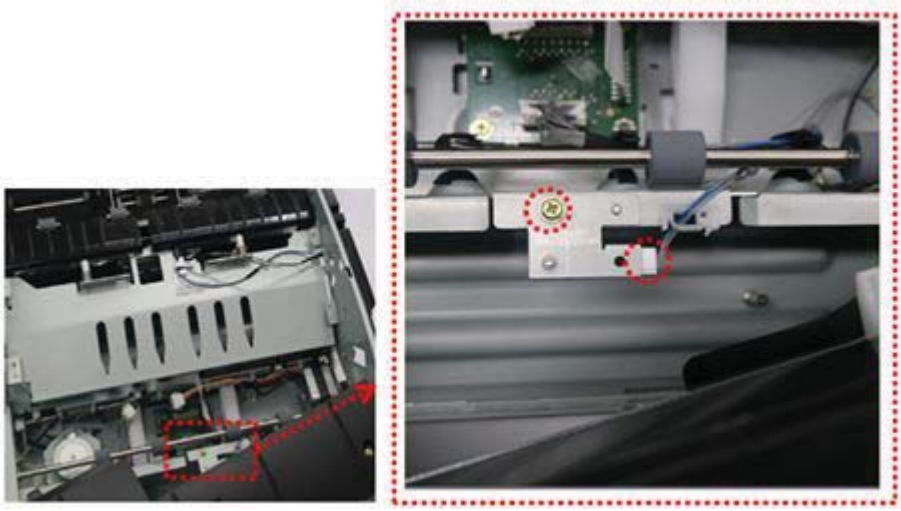
Figure 8-292 Remove the entrance motor (5 of 7)



Step 2: Remove the punch dust full sensor

1. Remove one screw, unplug the connector, and then remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly.

   Figure 8-293 Remove the punch dust full sensor sub-assembly



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the punch dust full sensor.

   Figure 8-294 Remove the punch dust full sensor



Door Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the door switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Door Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Door Switch assembly part number	
???	Door Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

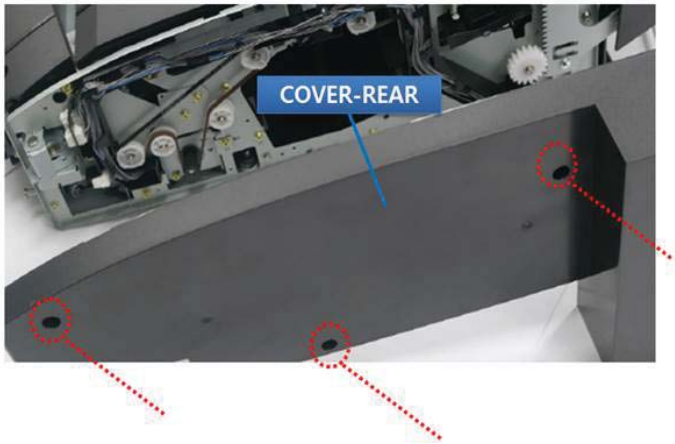
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the door switch

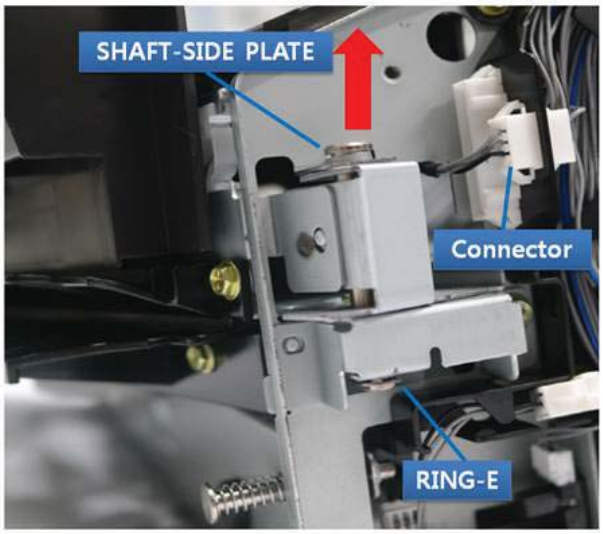
1. On the right-side of the printer remove three screws, and then remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-295 Remove three screws

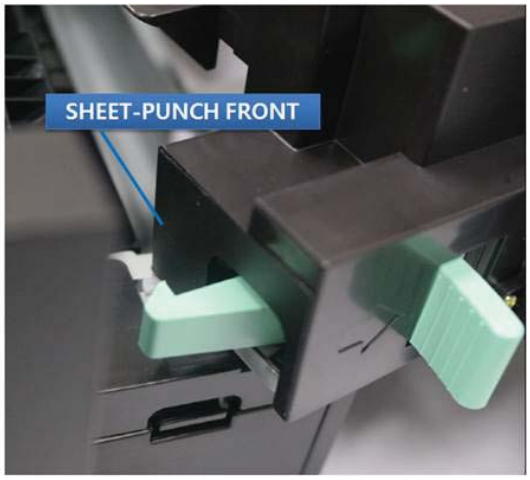
2. On the right, back-side of the printer remove the e-ring, and then remove the shaft-side plate and unplug the connector.

   Figure 8-296 Remove the e-ring

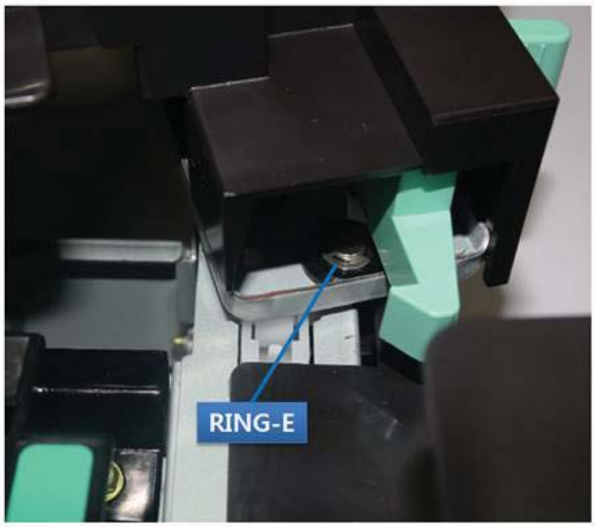
3. On the right, front-side of the printer, remove the sheet-punch front.

Figure 8-297 Remove the sheet-punch front



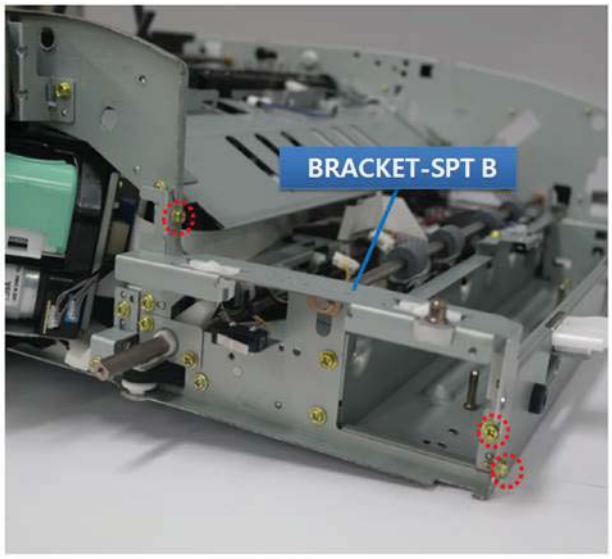
4. Remove the e-ring and washer, and then remove the punch dummy.

Figure 8-298 Remove the punch dummy



5. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket-SPT B.

Figure 8-299 Remove the bracket-SPT B



6. Remove two screws, unplug the connector, and then remove the door switch.

Figure 8-300 Remove the door switch



Top Door Switch

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the top door switch

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the Top Door Switch assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Top Door Switch assembly part number
Top Door Switch assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the top door switch

1. Remove the finisher sub cover front and the cover-rear.

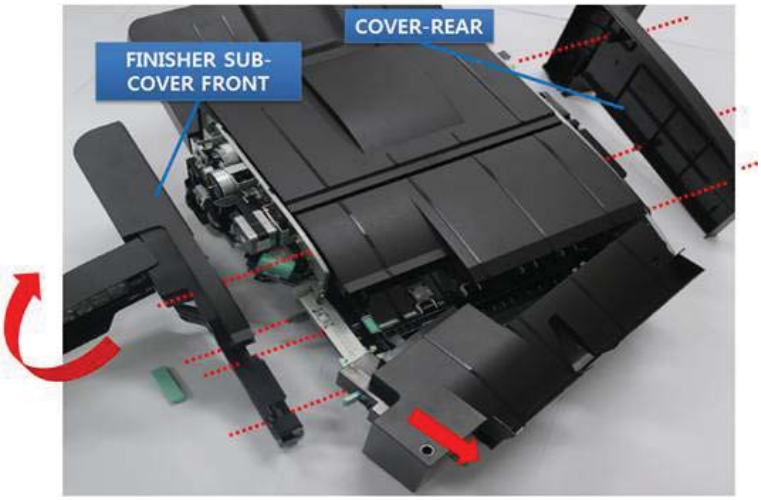
   a. Remove two screws in the front and one screw in the top-right of the finisher sub cover front.

   b. Remove the handle.

   c. From the right side of the finisher sub cover front, carefully lift and pry toward the top-left corner to remove the finisher sub cover front.

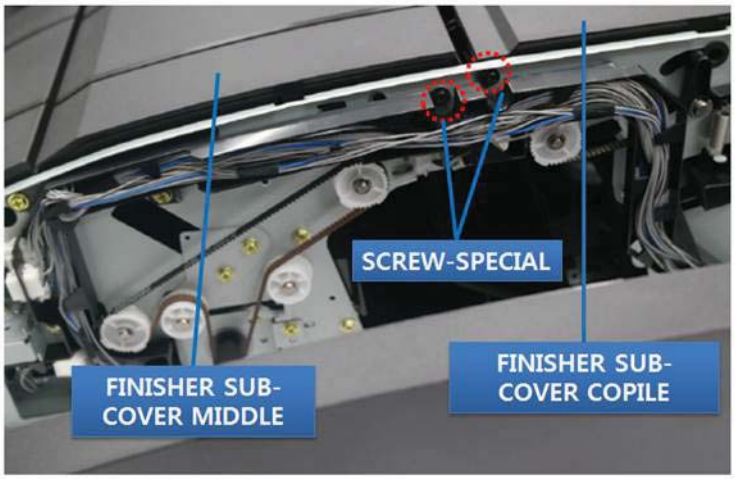
   d. Remove the cover-rear.

   Figure 8-301 Remove the cover-rear



2. Remove two shoulder screws at the rear of the printer, and then remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile by lifting off the hinge pins at the front.

   Figure 8-302 Remove the finisher sub-cover middle and finisher sub-cover compile



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the tray.

Figure 8-303 Remove the tray

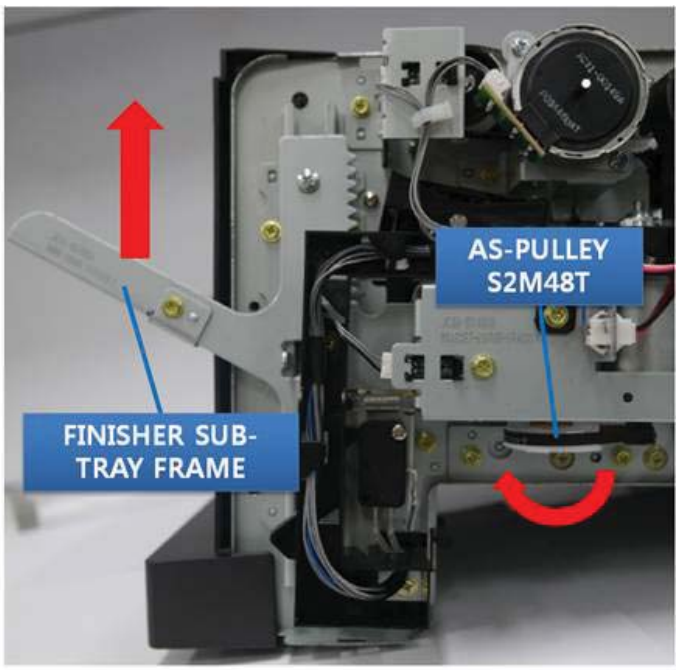


4. Remove the finisher sub-tray frame by rotating the pulley.

Reinstallation tip: Push the paper stopper arms into the printer when reassembling.

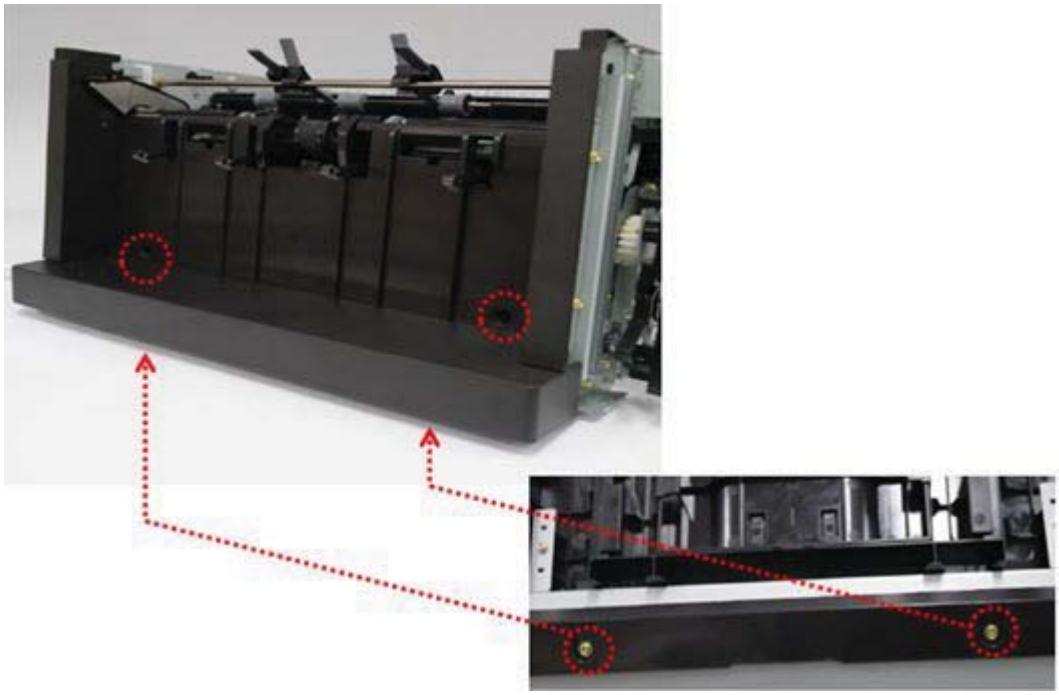
NOTE: Position the first wheel into the channel on both sides while holding the arms. Let the second wheel rest on the channel on both sides simultaneously. Gently squeeze the wheels into channel. The rack and pinion may need to be engaged several times to level the assembly.

Figure 8-304 Remove the finisher sub-tray frame



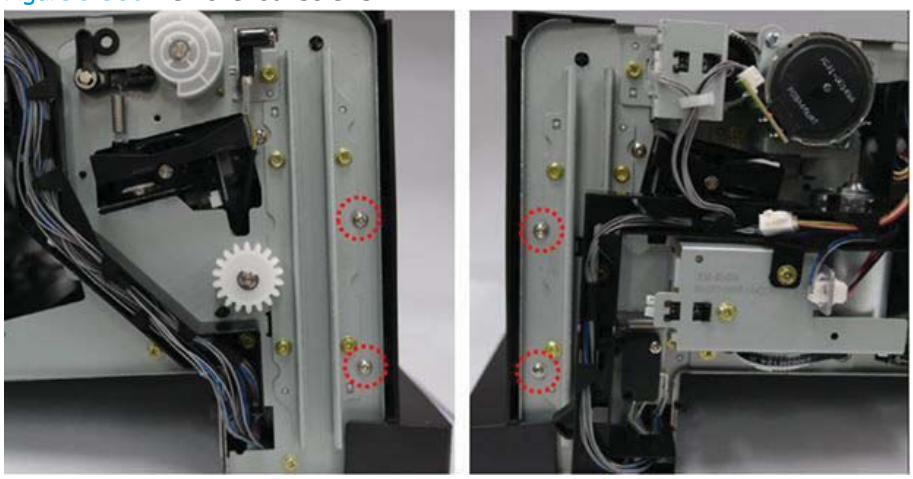
5. Remove four screws, and then remove the PBA cover.

Figure 8-305 Remove the PBA cover



6. Remove four screws from both sides.

Figure 8-306 Remove four screws



7. Remove two screws and then remove lower PBA cover.

8. Remove one screw.

Figure 8-307 Remove one screw



9. Unplug the connector, and then remove the switch assembly.

Figure 8-308 Remove the switch assembly



10. Remove two screws, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-309 Remove the sensor



End Fence Home Sensor

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove the End Fence Home Sensor assembly.

***** PLACEHOLDER FOR BRIGHTCOVE URL*****

IMPORTANT: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Before performing service

- Disconnect the power cable.

  WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cable before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

End Fence Home Sensor assembly part number
End Fence Home Sensor assembly part number

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

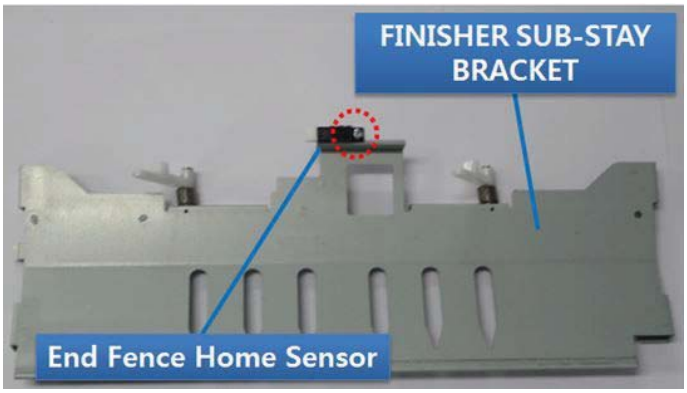
Post service test

Copy, scan, or print a document. Verify the document copies, scans, or prints correctly.

Step 1: Remove the end fence home position sensor

1. Follow steps 1-5 in the traverse front home sensor disassembly procedure.
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the sensor.

Figure 8-310 Remove the end fence home sensor



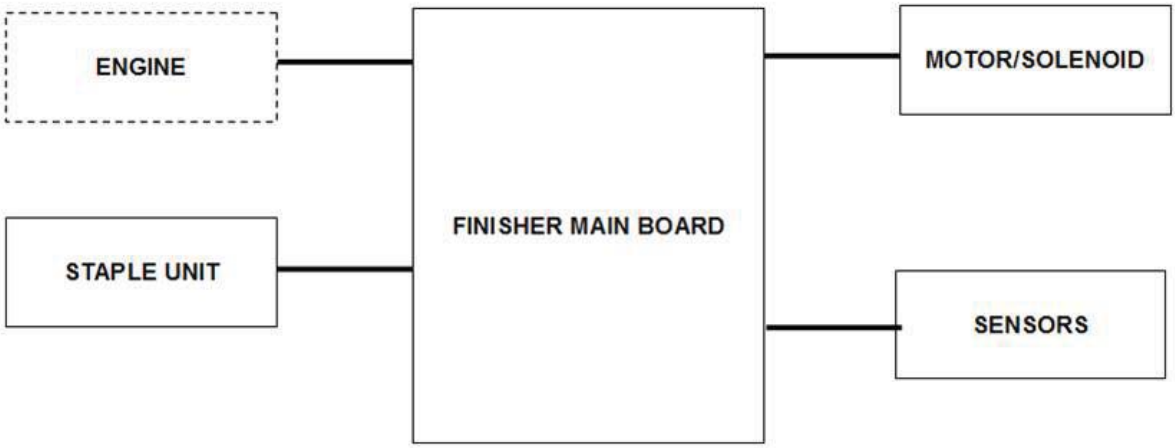
Problem solving

Control panel message document (CPMD)

Control-panel messages and event log entries

The CPMD is not provided in this service manual. The CPMD for this printer is available on the HP Service Access Workbench (SAW) Web site. Go to h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Block Diagram



A Appendix: Printer specifications

- Printer dimensions
- Printer space requirements
- Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions
- Certificate of Volatility

Printer dimensions

Printer space requirements

HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions provided in this chapter to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation. See {Xref Error! Target does not exist.} .

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

See www.hp.com/support/colorlje87600mfpwww.hp.com/support/colorlje82500mfp for current information.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Certificate of Volatility

Glossary

802.11
802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n
802.11b/g/n can share same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices may occasionally suffer interference from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

Access point
Access Point or Wireless Access Point (AP or WAP) is a device that connects wireless communication devices together on wireless local area networks (WLAN), and acts as a central transmitter and receiver of WLAN radio signals.

ADF
An document feeder is a scanning unit that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper so that the printer can scan some amount of the paper at once.

BIT Depth
A computer graphics term describing the number of bits used to represent the color of a single pixel in a bitmapped image. Higher color depth gives a broader range of distinct colors. As the number of bits increases, the number of possible colors becomes impractically large for a color map. 1-bit color is commonly called as monochrome or black and white.

BMP
A bitmapped graphics format used internally by the Microsoft Windows graphics subsystem (GDI), and used commonly as a simple graphics file format on that platform.

BOOTP
Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assign the IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables 'diskless workstation' computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD
Charge Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. CCD Locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when you move the printer.

Collation
Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel
A control panel is a flat, typically vertical, area where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. They are typically found in front of the printer.

Coverage
It is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. So, if the paper or original has complicated images or lots of text on it, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

CSV
Comma Separated Values (CSV). A type of file format, CSV is used to exchange data between disparate applications. The file format, as it is used in Microsoft Excel, has become a de facto standard throughout the industry, even among non-Microsoft platforms.

Default
The value or setting that is in effect when taking a printer out of its box state, reset, or initialized.

DHCP
A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

DIMM
Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM), a small circuit board that holds memory. DIMM stores all the data within the printer like printing data, received fax data.

DLNA
The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a standard that allows devices on a home network to share information with each other across the network.

DNS
The Domain Name Server (DNS) is a system that stores information associated with domain names in a distributed database on networks, such as the Internet.

Dot Matrix Printer
A dot matrix printer refers to a type of computer printer with a print head that runs back and forth on the page and prints by impact, striking an ink-soaked cloth ribbon against the paper, much like a typewriter.

DPI
Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

DRPD
Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers.

Duplex
A mechanism that will automatically turn over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a Duplex unit can print on both sides of paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle
Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.

ECM
Error Correction Mode (ECM) is an optional transmission mode built into Class 1 fax machines or fax modems. It automatically detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process that are sometimes caused by telephone line noise.

Emulation
An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior, which is in contrast to simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

Ethernet
Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. It has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to the present.

EtherTalk
A suite of protocols developed by Apple Computer for computer networking. It was included in the original Mac (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

FDI
Foreign Device Interface (FDI) is a card installed inside the printer to allow a third party device such as a coin operated device or a card reader. Those devices allow the pay-for-print service on your printer.

FTP
A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the Internet or an intranet).

Fuser Unit
The part of a laser printer that fuses the toner onto the print media. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to ensure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer.

Gateway
A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.

Grayscal
A shade of gray that represents light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

Halftone
An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

IEEE
The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

IEEE 1284
The 1284 parallel port standard was developed by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). The term "1284-B" refers to a specific connector type on the end of the parallel cable that attaches to the peripheral (for example, a printer).

Intranet
A private network that uses Internet Protocols, network connectivity, and possibly the public telecommunication system to securely share part of an organization's information or operations with its employees. Sometimes the term refers only to the most visible service, the internal website.

IP address
An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that devices use in order to identify and communicate with each other on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM
The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a way of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete within one minute.

IPP
The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing as well as managing print jobs, media size, resolution, and so forth. IPP can be used locally or over the Internet to hundreds of printers, and also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a much more capable and secure printing solution than older ones.

IPX/SPX
IPX/SPX stands for Internet Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. It is a networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems. IPX and SPX both provide connection services similar to TCP/IP, with the IPX protocol having similarities to IP, and SPX having similarities to TCP. IPX/SPX was primarily designed for local area networks (LANs), and is a very efficient protocol for this purpose (typically its performance exceeds that of TCP/IP on a LAN).

ISO
The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

ITU-T
The International Telecommunication Union is an international organization established to standardize and regulate international radio and telecommunications. Its main tasks include standardization, allocation of the radio spectrum, and organizing interconnection arrangements between different countries to allow international phone calls. A -T out of ITU-T indicates telecommunication.

ITU-T No. 1 chart
Standardized test chart published by ITU-T for document facsimile transmissions.

JBIG
Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality, which was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used on other images.

JPEG
Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a most commonly used standard method of lossy compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP
The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED
A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a printer.

MAC address
Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e. g., 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by its manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on large networks.

Mass storage device
Mass storage device, commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a nonvolatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

MFP
Multi Function Peripheral (MFP) is an office printer that includes the following functionality in one physical body, so as to have a printer, a copier, a fax, a scanner and etc.

MH
Modified Huffman (MH) is a compression method for decreasing the amount of data that needs to be transmitted between the fax machines to transfer the image recommended by ITU-T T.4. MH is a codebook-based run-length encoding scheme optimized to efficiently compress white space. As most faxes consist mostly of white space, this minimizes the transmission time of most faxes.

MMR
Modified Modified READ (MMR) is a compression method recommended by ITUT T.6.

Modem
A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MR
Modified Read (MR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.4. MR encodes the first scanned line using MH. The next line is compared to the first, the differences determined, and then the differences are encoded and transmitted.

NetWare
A network operating system developed by Novell, Inc. It initially used cooperative multitasking to run various services on a PC, and the network protocols were based on the archetypal Xerox XNS stack. Today NetWare supports TCP/IP as well as IPX/SPX.

OPC
Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer, and it is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape.

An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface by its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately since it gets worn from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

OPE unit

Originals
The first example of something, such as a document, photograph or text, etc, which is copied, reproduced or translated to produce others, but which is not itself copied or derived from something else.

OSI
Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) is a model developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for communications. OSI offers a standard, modular approach to network design that divides the required set of complex functions into manageable, self-contained, functional layers. The layers are, from top to bottom, Application, Presentation, Session, Transport, Network, Data Link and Physical.

PABX
A private automatic branch exchange (PABX) is an automatic telephone switching system within a private enterprise.

PCL
Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol and has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printer, and laser printers.

PDF
Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems for representing two dimensional documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PostScript
PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in the electronic and desktop publishing areas. - that is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM
Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media
The media like paper, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, a scanner, a fax or, a copier.

Printer Driver
A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

PRN file
An interface for a device driver, this allows software to interact with the device driver using standard input/output system calls, which simplifies many tasks.

Protocol
A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

PS
See PostScript.

PSTN
The Public-Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks which, on industrial premises, is usually routed through the switchboard.

RADIUS
Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a protocol for remote user authentication and accounting. RADIUS enables centralized management of authentication data such as usernames and passwords using an AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) concept to manage network access.

Resolution
The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

SMB
Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. It also provides an authenticated Inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP
Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for e-mail transmissions across the Internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipients of a message are specified, and then the message text is transferred. It is a client-server protocol, where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SSID
Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name of a wireless local area network (WLAN). All wireless devices in a WLAN use the same SSID in order to communicate with each other. The SSIDs are case-sensitive and have a maximum length of 32 characters.

Subnet Mask
The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP
The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

TCR
The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF
Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images make use of tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge
A kind of bottle or container used in a printer like a printer which contains toner. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers, which forms the text and images on the printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind to the fibers in the paper.

TWAIN
An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program. It is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Mac operating systems.

UNC Path
Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) is a standard way to access network shares in Window NT and other Microsoft products. The format of a UNC path is: `\\<servername>\<sharename>\<Additional directory>`

URL
>: Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB
Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Watermark
A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282; they have been used by papermakers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

WEP
Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is a security protocol specified in IEEE 802.11 to provide the same level of security as that of a wired LAN. WEP provides security by encrypting data over radio so that it is protected as it is transmitted from one end point to another.

WIA
Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is originally introduced in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

WPA
Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a class of systems to secure wireless (Wi-Fi) computer networks, which was created to improve upon the security features of WEP.

WPA-PSK
WPA-PSK (WPA Pre-Shared Key) is special mode of WPA for small business or home users. A shared key, or password, is configured in the wireless access point (WAP) and any wireless laptop or desktop devices. WPA-PSK generates a unique key for each session between a wireless client and the associated WAP for more advanced security.

WPS
The Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) is a standard for establishing a wireless home network. If your wireless access point supports WPS, you can configure the wireless network connection easily without a computer.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format, which has benefits for portable document and electronic document, developed by Microsoft. It is an XML-based specification, based on a new print path and a vector-based device-independent document format.

Index

A

accelerator board 208
  after performing services 208
  before performing service 208
  introduction 208
  post service test 209
  remove the accelerator board 209
  remove the formatter cover 209
  required tools 208
  unpack the replacement assembly 210
ADF pickup roller 196
ADF reverse roller 201
after-service checklist 139, 1271, 1661
alienation motor 365
APS sensor 790
auto closing unit 379
auto size sensor 481

B

blade motor (M19)
  removing and replacing 1629
booklet feed entrance motor (M13)
  removing and replacing 1609
booklet finisher
  removing and replacing 1574
booklet finisher fold stopper unit
  removing and replacing 1597
booklet finisher front cover
  removing and replacing 1571
booklet finisher PCA
  removing and replacing 1585
booklet tray
  removing and replacing 1312
bottom high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit
  bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 822
  bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 831
  bottom high-capacity input tray PCA 828
  bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 825
  bottom high-capacity input tray shaft motor 833
bottom high-capacity input tray feed motor 822
bottom high-capacity input tray lift-up motor 831
bottom high-capacity input tray PCA 828
bottom high-capacity input tray pickup motor 825
bottom high-capacity input tray shaft motor 833
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3)
  removing and replacing 1483
BYOD table
  card reader 156
  NFC kit 156

C

C fold motor (M20)
  removing and replacing 1634
Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 1142
card reader 155
  install 156
cassette 46
cassette lift drive 69
caster cover (finisher)
  removing and replacing 1315
caution for moving the scanner 85
cautions iii
CCDM PCA 117
checklists
  after-service 139, 1271, 1661
  preservice 139, 1270, 1661
cleaning
  laser scanner assembly 141
cleaning page 1143
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS 146
cleaning the paper dust stick 142
cleaning the scan glass 145
clear paper jams 1146
  clearing original document jams 1146
  clearing paper jams 1150
component test
  special mode test 1049
components
  diagnostic tests 1049
  scanning system 79
connection diagrams 1243
control panel 221
  after performing service 221
  Backup/Restore menu 1142
  before performing service 221
  Calibrate/Cleaning menu 1142
  Copy menu (MFP only) 1119
  Fax menu (fax models only) 1133
  introduction 221
  messages, types of 1642, 1858
  post service test 222
  Print menu 1137
  remove the control panel 222
  remove the control panel bezel 222
  Reports menu 1072

required tools 221
Scan menu (MFP only) 1124
Settings menu 1075
Supplies menu 1138
Trays menu 1139
troubleshooting menu 1140
unpack the replacement assembly 223
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 1145
control panel diagnostic flowcharts 1040
control panel menus 1072
controller PCA (finisher)
removing and replacing 1348
conventions, document iii
Copy menu (MFP only), control panel 1119
copy specifications 17
CRUM connector 447
CST lock diagram 1248
current settings pages 1053

D

DCF 119
defeating
interlocks 1047
determine problem source 1036
developer fan 338
developer unit 56, 167
diagnostics
adjustment 1189
component 1049
engine 1047, 1167
fax 1180
image management 1195
LED 1045
print test patterns 1196
scanner 1185
diagram
fuser 1244
HVPS/LVPS/FDB 1249
laser scanner assembly 1246
OPC 1248
scanner 1245
side/MP/feed/registration/pickup 1247
diagrams 1243
finisher system 1643
document conventions iii
document feeder pickup 196
drive system 69
cassette lift drive 69
drive motors 72
engage transfer roller drive 76
feed drive 70
fuser release drive 72
main drive unit motor 74
output drive 72
pickup drive 69
registration drive 71
toner collection unit drive 76
toner reservoir drive 75
toner supply drive 75
drum drive 55
dual cassette feeder 119
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 804
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 810
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup motor 808
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 813
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 798
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 797
dual cassette feeder (DCF) motor 804, 808
dual cassette feeder (DCF) PCA 810
dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup units 813
dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door 798
dummy feed guide
removing and replacing 1366
duplex 1 sensor 594

E

each unit functions
finisher system 1266
ejector unit
removing and replacing 1396
electrical parts layout
finisher system layout 1261
electrostatic discharge (ESD) 7, 1255, 1649
engine
diagnostics 1047
eraser PCA 114
error messages
types of 1642, 1858
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 7, 1255, 1649
event log 1053
clear using touchscreen control panel 1054

F

Fax menu (fax models only), control panel 1133
feed 2 sensor 496
feed drive 70
feed drive unit 418
feed entrance motor (M1)
removing and replacing 1471
feed exit motor (M2)
removing and replacing 1477
feed roller
MP 191
multipurpose 191
feeding system 41
cassette 46
main components and functions 42
MP feeder assembly 48
overview 41
pickup unit 47
registration unit 47
rollers 42
sensor, motor, and solenoid 44
feeding system information 41
FIH
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution, install 153
finisher sectional view 1256
finisher system 1256
diagrams 1643
each unit functions 1266
electrical parts layout 1261
finisher sectional view 1256
paper path 1260
PCA connection information 1267
flatbed scanner system
overview 77
flow ADF 703
contact image sensor (CIS) 720
contact image sensor (CIS) fan 744

document feeder PCA fan 741
front motor 727
input tray 713
jam access cover 707
rear motors 731
ultrasonic sensor with PCA 747
white backing 753
whole unit 703
flow ADF PCA 115
folding roller motor (M18)
removing and replacing 1623
formatter 217
after performing service 217
before performing service 217
introduction 217
post service test 218
remove the accelerator board 218
remove the formatter PCA 219
remove the hard-disk drive 219
required tools 217
unpack the replacement assembly 220
formatter cover 205
after performing service 205
before performing service 205
introduction 205
post service test 206
remove the formatter cover 206
required tools 205
unpack the replacement assembly 206
formatter hard disk drive 214
after performing service 214
before performing service 214
introduction 214
post service test 215
remove the formatter cover 215
remove the hard disk drive 215
required tools 214
unpack the replacement assembly 216
formatter lights 1045
front cover 272
open sensor 285
front cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1295
front cover open sensor 285, 483
front door (finisher)
removing and replacing 1283
front lower cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1303
front power cover 236
front power switch 239
front tamper motor (M6)
removing and replacing 1491
front tamper unit
removing and replacing 1421
front top inner cover 234
fuser diagram 1244
fuser drive assembly 109
fuser drive board 334
fuser drive unit 384
fuser fan 350
fuser out sensor 490
fuser PCA 114
fuser release drive 72
fuser unit 50, 173
fuser unit drive 51
overview 50
temperature control 51
fuser unit drive 51
fuser unit temperature control 51

G

General Settings menu, control panel 1075
general specifications 11

H

hard disk drive (HDD) 699
hardware configuration 95
CCDM PCA 117
eraser PCA 114
flow ADF PCA 115
fuser drive assembly 109
fuser PCA 114
high voltage power supply PCA 110
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 108
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5) 106
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 108
LVPS PCA (Type 5) 106
main controller 98
master system operation key 105
scan joint PCA 116
WLED IF PCA 117
WLED PCA 118
hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 1045
HCI 123
high capacity input tray 123
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 292
high voltage power supply PCA 110
high-capacity input tray (HCI) unit 821
home button is unresponsive 1044
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH), install 153
HP Jetdirect print server lights 1045
HVPS PCA 110
HVPS/LVPS/FDB diagram 1249

I

image creation 54
drum drive 55
imaging unit 55
intermediate transfer belt unit 59
overview 54
toner cartridge 58
toner reservoir unit 61
transfer belt drive 59
image quality
black band, vertical 1203
blank copy 1213
blurred image 1209
color registration, inccorect 1210
duplex blur 1218
foggy image 1207
jitter image 1210
light band, vertical 1204
light image 1208
periodic black band, horizontal 1206
periodic black dot, horizontal 1206
periodic light/dark band, horizontal 1206
periodic light/dark dot, horizontal 1206
poor fusing 1214
skewed image 1211
stain on back 1215
standard tone, setting 1215

uneven pitch 1210
white band, vertical 1204
white spot blur 1218
image scanner unit 756
imaging drum unit 164
imaging unit 55
developer unit 56
overview 55
individual component diagnostics 1045
inductor unit 374
information
general 1165
print reports 1166
software version 1165
supply status 1165
inner finisher
block diagram 1859
door switch 1846
ejector assembly 1829
ejector motor assembly 1809
end fence home sensor 1855
entrance motor 1668
entrance sensor 1664
exit motor 1679
exit sensor 1674
front jogger home sensor 1698
front jogger motor 1686
main paddle 1827
main paddle home sensor 1825
main paddle motor 1823
paper holding lever solenoid 1780
paper support home sensor 1797
paper support motor 1788
punch dust full sensor 1841
rear jogger home sensor 1719
rear jogger motor 1710
remove and replace 1663
stack beam sensor 1765
stack position sensor 1770
stacker encoder sensor 1751
stacker lower limit switch 1758
stacker motor 1744
stapler 1725
stapler position sensor assembly 1728
sub paddle shaft sub assembly 1682
top door switch 1850
traverse motor 1739
inner front cover 278
install
HP Foreign interface harness (FIH) solution 153
interlocks
defeating 1047
intermediate paper transport unit 230
after performing service 230
before performing service 230
introduction 230
post service test 231
remove the IPTU 231
required tools 230
unpack the replacement asembly 231
intermediate transfer belt
cleaning 60
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner 176
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 180
intermediate transfer belt unit
overview 59
interpret control-panel messages and event log entries 1642, 1858
IOD 211
IPTU 230
island of data 211
after performing service 211
before performing service 211
introduction 211
post service test 212
remove the formatter cover 212
remove the island of data 212
required tools 211
unpack the replacement assembly 213
ITB cleaning 60
ITB unit 59
overview 59

J

Jetdirect print server
lights 1045

K

keyboard (z bundles) 225
after performing service 225
before performing service 225
introduction 225
post service test 226
remove the control-panel 226
remove the control-panel bezel 226
remove the keyboard 227
required tools 225
unpack the replacement assembly 228

L

laser scanner assembly 63, 296
cleaning 141
CPR adjustment 65
laser scanning optical path 63
laser synchronizing detectors 64
maintenance 141
overview 63
laser scanner assembly diagram 1246
laser scanner assembly fan 302
LED lamp module 770
LEDs. *See* lights
left cover 251
left rear corner cover 261
lights
formatter 1045
troubleshooting with 1045
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 1
LVPS board 1 321
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 2
LVPS board 2 325
low voltage power supply (LVPS) board 3
LVPS board 3 329
low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 313
low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 317
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 4) 108
low voltage power supply PCA (Type 5) 106
lower rear cover 254

lower shield assembly
removing and replacing 1319
lower tray connector 345
LVPS board 1 321
LVPS board 2 325
LVPS board 3 329
LVPS PCA (Type 4) 108
LVPS PCA (Type 5) 106

M
machine cleaning for maintenance 141
cleaning the flow ADF white bar and CIS 146
cleaning the paper dust stick 142
cleaning the scan glass 145
machine external view 38
front view 38
inner view 40
rear view 39
main board 305
main controller
hardware configuration 98
new model (IR/UI) 102
previous model 99
main drive unit 357
main tray moving motor (M11)
removing and replacing 1561
maintenance 141
laser scanner assembly 141
machine cleaning for maintenance 141
maintenance counts
part replacement count 1166
maintenance parts 20
master system operation key 105
menu map 1053
menus, control panel
Calibrate/Cleaning 1142
Copy (MFP only) 1119
Fax (fax models only) 1133
General Settings 1075
Manage Trays 1139
Print 1137
Reports 1072
Scan (MFP only) 1124
Supplies 1138
messages
types of 1642, 1858
MP drive unit 418
MP empty sensor 519
MP paper length sensor 537
MP solenoid 556
MP unit 505
MSOK 105
multipurpose feeder assembly 48

N
network and software specifications 29
network interface 29
NFC kit 155
install 156
no control panel sound 1043
notes iii

O
OPC diagram 1248
OPE diagram 1246
option specifications 34
optional configurations 32
options list 33
ordering 1271, 1662
other errors
drive unit 1230
electrical circuit 1232
feeding system 1230
flow ADF 1227
fuser 1225
image system 1219
laser scanner assembly 1232
scanner 1227
output 1 bin full sensor 604
output bin 244
output drive 72
output drive unit 384
output gate solenoid 616
output unit 575
duplex 1 sensor 594
output 1 bin full sensor 604
output gate solenoid 616
return sensor 584

P
paper dust brush 275
paper handling specifications 23
paper path
finisher system 1260
parts and accessories 1271, 1662
parts and diagrams 851
alignment (finisher) 956
BKT main blade (finisher) 960
booklet finisher 936
cover 878
cover f bm (finisher) 978
CPR frame assembly 866
curl pawl (finisher) 950
curl pawl motor (finisher) 950
DCF frame 906
DCF main 904
DCF rear frame 908
DCF second pickup 912
div cam (finisher) 970
door (finisher) 966
drive buffer (finisher) 958
drive system 872
Dual cassette feeder (DCF) 904
entrance guide (finisher) 954, 968
entrance motor (finisher) 956
FD stopper unit (finisher) 960
finisher sub 1 986
finisher sub 7 988
finisher sub 8 990
finisher sub booklet 980
first cassette 858
Flow ADF 890
Flow ADF image scanner 900
Flow ADF image scanner, lower 902
Flow ADF main frame 898
Flow ADF open cover 892
Flow ADF stacker 896
Flow ADF upper pickup 894
fold roller (finisher) 962
front alignment (tamper) (finisher) 972
hb motor (finisher) 952, 970
HCI cassette 918
HCI drive 916
HCI frame 920
HCI main 914
HCI main pickup 922
High capacity input tray (HCI) 914
High capacity input tray side unit (sHCI) 924
idle fold (finisher) 978
idle fold paddle(finisher) 978
inner finisher 984
IPTU (bridge) 982
jam clear (finisher) 960

low output (finisher) 952
low paddle (finisher) 956
main assembly 854
main blade (finisher) 962
main frame assembly 862
main frame pickup 876
main frame pickup 1 874
main frame pickup 2 874
main frame registration 864
main output (finisher) 968
main parts 854
mainline finisher 1 938
mainline finisher 2 940
mainline finisher 3 942
mainline finisher 4 944
mainline finisher 5 946
mainline finisher 6 948
mid jam (finisher) 968
MP tray 882
Opt feed drive (DCF) 910
output 856
paddle motor (finisher) 956, 970
PCB bm (finisher) 978
pickup cover unit (sHCI) 932
rear alignment (tamper) (finisher) 974
rear frame assembly 870
registration guide (finisher) 966
right door 880
right door guide 884
right door output 886
right door takeaway 886
right jam (finisher) 970
SCU motor (finisher) 954
second cassette 860
sHCI frame 934
sHCI main 1 924
sHCI main 3 926
sHCI main 5 928
sHCI main 6 930
shield (finisher) 976
STK motor (finisher) 954
sub-inner finisher 984
T2 transfer 888
three fold blade (finisher) 964
three fold motor (finisher) 950
three fold output (finisher) 950
toner frame guide (CMYK) 868
top cover (finisher) 966
top door (finisher) 966
top frame (finisher) 962
top guide (finisher) 952
top jam (finisher) 958
top lower (finisher) 958
transfer buffer (finisher) 970
PCA connection information
finisher system 1267
PCA precautions 138, 1269, 1660
pick/feed separation roller 187
pickup drive 69
pickup drive unit 1 409
pickup drive unit 2 414
pickup lifting and empty sensor 633, 658
pickup roller
ADF 196
MP 191
multipurpose 191
pickup unit 47
pickup unit 1 649
pickup lifting and empty sensor 658
prefeed sensor 1 668
pickup unit 2 626
pickup lifting and empty sensor 633
prefeed sensor 2 641
plastic latches information 138, 1270, 1661
post-service tests 139, 1271, 1661
power subsystem 1036
power supply
troubleshooting 1036
power-on troubleshooting overview 1036
pre-boot menu options 1055
precations
information 137, 1269, 1660
prefeed sensor 1 668
prefeed sensor 2 641
preservice checklist 139, 1270, 1661
Print menu, control panel 1137
print quality
test 139, 1271, 1661
print quality troubleshooting 1200
flow ADF skew adjust 1238
image quality 1200
other errors 1219
print specifications 13
Print Test Page 1089
problem-solving
messages, types of 1642, 1858
Process Cleaning Page 1143
product overview 10

R

rear cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1290
rear tamper motor (M7)
removing and replacing 1517
rear tamper unit
removing and replacing 1446
registration assembly 679
registration drive 71
registration drive assembly 422
registration pickup diagram 1247
registration sensor assembly 688
registration unit 47
removal and replacement
bottom high-capacity input (HCI) tray 821
dual cassette feeder (DCF) unit 797
replacing the main SVC part 233
right top cover (finisher) 1276
side high capacity input (sHCI) 835
removal and replacement precautions 137, 1269, 1660
removal and replacement procedures 148
replacement of maintenance parts 161
removal order
removing order 140
remove and replace
inner finisher 1663
removing and replacing
blade motor (M19) 1629
booklet feed entrance motor (M13) 1609
booklet finisher 1574
booklet finisher fold stopper unit 1597
booklet finisher front cover 1571
booklet finisher PCA 1585
booklet tray 1312
buffer motor, gear, and sensor (M3) 1483

C fold motor (M20) 1634
caster cover (finisher) 1315
controller PCA (finisher) 1348
dummy feed guide 1366
ejector unit 1396
feed entrance motor (M1) 1471
feed exit motor (M2) 1477
folding roller motor (M18) 1623
front cover (finisher) 1295
front door (finisher 1283
front lowercover (finisher) 1303
front tamper motor (M6) 1491
front tamper unit 1421
lower shield assembly 1319
main tray moving motor (M11) 1561
rear cover (finisher) 1290
rear tamper motor (M7) 1517
rear tamper unit 1446
SCU motor (M10) 1543
separate pawl motor (M17) 1620
stapler unit 1354
stopper moving motor (M16) 1615
TE presser motor (M14) 1612
top cover (finisher) 1279
top jam access cover 1372
top lower feed assembly 1383
top output bin 1274
upper shield assembly 1332
removing parts
checklists 139, 1270, 1661
replacement of maintenance parts 161
developer unit 167
flow ADF pickup roller assembly 196
flow ADF separation roller assembly 201
fuser unit 173
imaging drum unit 164
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaner 176
intermediate transfer belt (ITB) unit 180
multipurpose (MP) tray pickup/reverse/feed roller 191
pick/feed separation roller 187
toner collection unit 162
replacing the main fuser fan 350
replacing the main SVC part 233, 305
alienation motor 365
auto closing unit 379
CRUM connector 447
developer fan 338
feed 2 sensor 496
feed drive unit 418
front cover 272
front cover open sensor 483
front power cover 236
front power switch 239
front top inner cover 234
fuser drive board 334
fuser drive unit 384
hard disk drive (HDD) 699
high voltage power supply (HVPS) board 292
inductor unit 374
inner front cover 278
intermediate paper transport unit 230
laser scanner assembly 296
laser scanner assembly fan 302
left cover 251
left rear corner cover 261
low voltage power supply (LVPS) cover 313
low voltage power supply (LVPS) fans 317
lower rear cover 254
lower tray connector 345
main drive unit 357
MP drive unit 418
output bin 244
output drive unit 384
output unit 575
paper dust brush 275
pickup drive unit 1 409
pickup drive unit 2 414
pickup unit 1 649
pickup unit 2 626
registration assembly 679
registration drive assembly 422
registration sensor assembly 688
reservoir unit 470
right door 267
right door open sensor 392
right rear cover 264
toner collection unit (TCU) drive 456
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 463
toner reservoir motors 439
toner supply drive unit 431
toner supply motors 439
top right cover 247
upper rear cover 257
Reports menu, control panel 1072
reservoir unit 470
return sensor 584
reverse roller
ADF 201
MP 191
multipurpose 191
right door 267
fuser out sensor 490
MP empty sensor 519
MP paper length sensor 537
MP solenoid 556
MP unit 505
open switch 400
right door open sensor 392
right door open switch 400
right rear cover 264
right top cover (finisher)
removal and replacement 1276

S

scan glass 768
scan joint board 782
scan joint PCA 116
Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 1124
scan specifications 16
scanner
caution for moving 85
imaging unit 778
scan glass 768
scan joint board 782
scanner diagram 1245
scanner imaging unit 778
scanner unit
image scanner 756
scanning system
components 79
scanning system components 79

SCU motor (M10)
removing and replacing 1543
separate pawl motor (M17)
removing and replacing 1620
service and support information 137, 852, 853
service approach 137, 1269, 1660
service functions
capture log 1197
debug log 1197
drain 1199
envelope rotate 1198
main memory clear 1197
transfer assembly control 1198
service mode 1159
diagnostics 1167
entering service mode 1159
information 1165
maintenance counts 1166
mode menu tree 1160
service functions 1197
sHCI 127, 835
side high capacity input (sHCI) 835
feed motor 838
lift-up motor 848
pickup motor 842
rear cover 836
sHCI PCA 845
side high capacity input tray 127
size sensor 481
software and solutions 30
specifications 11
copy specifications 17
general specifications 11
maintenance parts 20
network interface 29
network specifications 29
options 32
options list 33
paper handling specifications 23
print specifications 13
scan specifications 16
software and solutions 30
software specifications 29
supplies 19
stapler unit
removing and replacing 1354
static, precautions for 7, 1255, 1649
status
messages, types of 1642, 1858
stopper moving motor (M16)
removing and replacing 1615
supplies 1271, 1662
Supplies menu, control panel 1138

T

TCU drive 76
TE presser motor (M14)
removing and replacing 1612
tests
post-service 139, 1271, 1661
print-quality 139, 1271, 1661
tips iii
toner cartridge 58
toner collection unit 162
toner collection unit (TCU) drive 456
toner collection unit (TCU) sensors 463
toner reservoir motors 439
toner reservoir unit 61
main function 61
troubleshooting 62
working mechanism 61
toner supply drive unit 431
toner supply motors 439
top cover (finisher)
removing and replacing 1279
top jam access cover
removing and replacing 1372
top lower feed assembly
removing and replacing 1383
top output bin
removing and replacing 1274
top right cover 247
touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 1041
touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 1042
transfer belt drive 59
tray selection - use requested tray 1090
Trays menu, control panel 1139
troubleshooting
checklist 1050
control panel checks 1040
lights, using 1045
power 1036
process 1036
trusted platform module
removing and replacing 149
trusted platform module, removing and replacing 149

U

understand lights on the formatter
formatter lights 1045
understand the lights on the formatter
HP Jetdirect LEDs 1046
upper rear cover 257
upper shield assembly
removing and replacing 1332
USB diagram 1246
Use Requested Tray 1090

W

warnings iii
WLED IF PCA 117
WLED PCA 118
working table
card reader 156
NFC kit 156
WTB diagram 1248